COSMOGRAPHY AND GEOGRAPHY

In Two Parts:

THE FIRST,

Containing the General and Abſolute Part of COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY,

BEING A

TRANSLATION

From that Eminent and much Eſteemed

GEOGRAPHER

VARENIUS,

Wherein are at large Handled

All ſuch Arts as are neceſſary to be underſtood for the true knowledge thereof.

To which is added the much wanted *Schemes* omitted by the Author.

THE SECOND PART,

Being a Geographical Deſcription of all the WORLD,

Taken from the Notes and Works of the Famous

Monſieur SANSON

Late GEOGRAPHER to the *French* King.

To which are added

About an Hundred Coſmographical, Geographical and Hydrographical TABLES of ſeveral Kingdoms and Iſles in the World, with their Chief Cities, Sea-Ports, Bays, &c. drawn from the MAPS of the ſaid *SANSON*.

Illuſtrated with MAPS.

LONDON,

Printed by *S. Roycroft*, and are to be ſold by *William Abington* at the Three Silk-worms in *Ludgate-ſtreet*. MDCLXXXIII.

Vnam Christo Amigero nam
qualemcunq; Amicitiæ hostiam
dedit

Thomas Lanæ.

X

1481 § 14.

COSMOGRAPHY AND GEOGRAPHY

In Two Parts:

THE FIRST,

Containing the General and Absolute Part of COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY,

BEING A

TRANSLATION

From that Eminent and much Esteemed

GEOGRAPHER

VARENIUS,

Wherein are at large Handled

All such Arts as are necessary to be understood for the true knowledge thereof.

To which is added the much wanted *Schemes* omitted by the Author.

THE SECOND PART,

Being a Geographical Description of all the WORLD,

Taken from the Notes and Works of the Famous

Monsieur SANSON

Late GEOGRAPHER to the *French* King.

To which are added

About an Hundred Cosmographical, Geographical and Hydrographical TABLES of several Kingdoms and Isles in the World, with their Chief Cities, Sea-Ports, Bays, &c. drawn from the MAPS of the said *SANSON*.

Illustrated with MAPS.

LONDON,

Printed by *S. Roycroft*, and are to be sold by *William Abington* at the Three Silk-worms in *Ludgate-street*. MDCLXXXIII.

THE
Preface to the Reader.

AMongſt all thoſe Arts or Sciences *which Man ought to have a Knowledge of, the Deſcription of the* Earth *and* Heavens, *which is termed* COSMOGRAPHY *and* GEOGRAPHY *(for the Utility and Dignity thence ariſing) ought not to have the leaſt eſtimate; the Soul being naturally inclined to the exploration of* COSMOGRAPHY *and* GEOGRAPHY, *as a neceſſary inherent in it; which ſeems evident; in that* Men *of undoubted* Judgments, *out of a ſingular deſire to propagate this Study, and ſparing no Coſt or Labour, have travelled over the greateſt part of the* Univerſe. *Unto this we add, That ſeeing the Earth was created by God to be the habitation of Man, if by brevity of Life, and Humane imbecility, we cannot ſo well Travel with the Body, yet at leaſt-wiſe we would viſit, behold, and contemplate it in our Minds; for its beauty, admirable elegancy, and the Honour of the Creator. There are many other Forceable Arguments, by which it appears all Men are generally inclined to the knowledge thereof: As the Commodities of every Nation are peculiar to it ſelf, ſo that (according to Divine Providence) one Nation cannot well ſubſiſt without the help of another, to which end they are tranſported by way of Exchange and Traffick unto other Countries. But, to ſhew the uſe of it in all* Arts *and* Sciences; *there being none but receive ſome light and aſſiſtance from* COSMOGRAPHY *and* GEOGRAPHY. *To this the immortal* Stagyrite, *and Divine* Plato *flieth as a refuge, when a numberleſs multitude, and variety of Natures ſecrets in Lands diſjoyned, and the profound Ocean ſometimes nonpluſeth or ſtaggers their Capacities. The Moral* PHILOSOPHER *is a Non-eſſence, being unskilled herein; for how can he ſearch into, or inform himſelf of the Genius, Natures, Inclinations, or Studies of Men, and what is moſt proper for every diſtinct* Nation *or* People *(being his adequate ſubject) without this* Chart *to ſtear by? The* PHYSITIAN *is neceſſitated to have a great inſight in this Noble* Study, *both for obſerving the Drugs and Medicaments, tranſported from Foreign Parts, &c. judging their Natures and Effects from the ſeveral Climates, &c. but eſpecially for the variety of Bodies, or Conſtitutions, which are habituated according to the Climate and Soil of the Country. Take this away from the* MARTIALIST, *his Stratagems fail, and his whole Knowledge is in a feeble condition. The* MERCHANT *and* NAVIGATOR

are compelled unto an insight herein, for the knowing the Scituation *and* Climate *of* Countries, *their* Circumferences; *the* Latitude *and* Longitude *of* Places, *the* Currents *of* Rivers; *what* Commodities *each* Region *aboundeth in, and what they are deficient of, and the* Manners, Customs, *and* Dispositions *of the Inhabitants. Without COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY all* History *is a thing of little use, the affinity of them both being such, that they seem to center both in one. And, to come more home to the matter, the History of the* Scythians, Indians, Æthiopians, *and* Americans, *are only expressed unto us by* Geographers. *Farther,* Historiographers *make use of* Geographical Descriptions *for the better and more full illustration of their History: And lastly, in reference unto* POLICY, *or Management of State, no* Wars, Societies *or* Leagues, *can be well made with a* Foreign State *or* Kingdom, *except there be first a perfect knowledge of the* Nature, Disposition, Manners, Customs, Strength, &c. *of the* Nation *or* People *with which such a* Combination *or* League, &c. *is to be made and established.* Henry, *King of* Castile, *though much weakned by Sickness, yet neglected not to send frequent* Embassadors *into* Asia, *that he might have a continual information of the* Manners *and* Strength *of those* Provinces: *And the same was done by* Moses, *before his setting foot into* Palestine. *Now Nature, which exhibiteth and discovereth her elegancy and force in the production of variety of things; hath not only diversly distinguished the* Faces *and* Physiognomy, *but also the* Souls *and* Minds *of Men; The* Modes, Genius's, Customs *and* Natures *of Nations being vastly different; unto this very end she hath variously disposed the causes themselves.* GEOGRAPHERS *have divided the World into* Climates, *and every* Climate *is distinctly subject to the Dominion of some* Planet, *as the chief cause of this Diversity; where observe, that the first* Climate, *which extendeth through the* Meroë (*an Isle, made so by the River* Nilus) *is subject to* Saturn. *Those under the second* Climate, *is attributed to* Jupiter, *and passeth through* Siene, *a City in* Ægypt. *Those inhabiting under the third, is subject to* Mars, *and extendeth through* Alexandria. *Those under the fourth, is appropriated to the* Sun, *and stretcheth through* Rhodes, *and the middle of* Greece. *Those under the fifth, which passeth through* Rome, *and divideth* Italy *from* Savoy, *is attributed to* Venus. *Those under the sixth, where* Mercury *is predominate, passeth through* France. *And those under the seventh, which is subject to the* Moon, *passeth through* Germany, *the* Low Countries *and* England; *which said* Planets *have their* Operations *or* Influences *on the* Inhabitants *dwelling under each of the said* Climes. *So that although the glorious and eternal* Luminaries *of Heaven have an efficacious operation, yet notwithstanding the* Disposition *of the* Earth, *hath a far greater prevalency; seeing that through the various scituation of* Hills *and* Vallies, *we experimentally find more great and different effects of the* Celestial Rays, *which are also contemporated by the* Rivers *and* Lakes. *This can be denied by no man, that Nature is admirable in her Works; sometimes as it were on set purpose deluding the curiosity of Humane wisdom, by receding from the ordinary* Laws *of* Causes. *Who can render a sufficient reason of that which is testified by* Mariners *concerning the* Region *of* Maliapur, *in which is seated* Calicut? *an exceeding high Mountains, topping the Clouds, dividing this Province*

throughout

throughout, and ending in a Promontory, which is now called Comorium, which although it hath the same Altitude of the Pole, yet when the Winter rageth, and the Waters swell on the one side, on the other side the Fields and Towns are schorched with excessive heat, and the Sea calm. Wherefore this diversity which is discovered in the Climates, the scituation of Provinces; Contemporation of the Air and Elements, do variously discriminate the Constitutions of Men, and those Constitutions, their Natures; for the manners of the Mind follow the temperament and disposition of the Body. The Septentrional or Northern People being remote from the Sun, and by consequence inhabiting in cold Countries; are Sanguine, Robust, full of Valour and Animosity; hence they have alwaies been Victorious and predominant over the Meridional or Southern Nations; as the ASSYRIANS over the CHALDEANS, the MEDES over the ASSYRIANS; the PARTHIANS over the GRECIANS; the TURKS over the ARABIANS; the GOTHS over the GERMANS; the ROMANS over the AFRICANS; and the ENGLISH over the FRENCH. They love Freedom and Liberty, as those also do which are Mountaineers, as the Helvetians, Grissons, and Cantabrians. The Nations proximate to the Sun, have their Blood wholly exsiccated by immoderate Heat; hence the Inhabitants of those Places are melancholy, and profound in the penetrating of the secrets of Nature: For all the Northern Nations receive the Mysteries of the Sciences from the ÆGYPTIANS and ARABIANS. The Provinces which are immediately between both Torrid Zones enjoy a a Benign Heaven; so that they Florish in Religion, Justice and Prudence. The Mutations of Governments, the Transmigration and Emission of Colonies, Converse, Matrimony, War and Peace; also the Motions of the Celestial Spheres, which drive from the Poles, and the Zodiack of the Primum Mobile, the Heavenly Images on these Inferiour Bodies, do change and alter the Habits, Manners, and also Nature it self. If we have recourse unto History, we shall find the GERMANS noted of old for lofty Minds, and the ITALIANS on the contrary too abject and low, which difference now cannot be discerned. Nations have Swayed and been Predominate by turns, and as long as the Monarchy hath had duration amongst them, Vertue hath flouriſhed, Arts and Arms have gone hand in hand, which afterwards with the Ruine of the Empire hath been smother'd in its Ashes, and received Vivification in another place; yet notwithstanding these Obstacles every Nation hath certain Propensions and fixed Affections appropriate to every one, which will adhere to Forrainers, if that they long remain amongst them.

The Intelligent Reader, who desireth a Knowledge in these and other Particulars, with a throughout Prospect of the Utility of COSMOGRAPHY and GEOGRAPHY, may consult the Work it self.

RICHARD BLOME.

The Contents of the SECTIONS and CHAPTERS.

GENERAL GEOGRAPHY, *which may be divided into* III. Parts;

1. *The* Absolute Part *divided into* Five Sections,

The first Section *of things to be foreknown,*
- Chap. 1. *Of the Precognita's,* Pag. 1
- Ch. 2. *Things necessary to Geometry and Trigonometry,* p. 6

The Second Section *explaineth the* Affections *of the whole* Earth,
- Chap. 3. *Of the* Figure *of the* Earth, p. 11
- Chap. 4. *Of the* Dimension *and* Magnitude *of the same,* 15
- Chap. 5. *Of the* Motion *of the same,* p. 23
- Chap. 6. *Of its* Place *in the System of the* World, p. 27
- Chap. 7. *Of its* Substance *and* Constitution, p. 30

The Third Section, *in which the* Constitution *and* Parts *of the* Earth *are explained,*
- Chap. 8. *Of the division of the* Earth *by* Waters, p. 35
- Chap. 9. *Of* Mountains *in general,* p. 40
- Chap. 10. *Of the difference of* Mountains, p. 46
- Chap. 11. *Of* Woods, Deserts, *and* Mines, p. 54

The Fourth Section *of* Hydrography, *in which the* Waters *and their* Properties *are explained,*
- Chap. 12. *Of the division of the* Ocean *throughout the* Earth, p. 57
- Chap. 13. *Of the* Ocean *and its Parts,* p. 65
- Chap. 14. *Of the* Motions *of the* Sea, *especially of the* flux *and* reflux, p. 83
- Chap. 15. *Of* Lakes, Pools, *and* Marishes, p. 102
- Chap. 16. *Of* Rivers, p. 108
- Chap. 17. *Of* Mineral Waters, Baths, Spaws, &c. p. 130
- Chap. 18. *Of the mutation of* Dry places *into* Watery, *and the contrary,* p. 142

The fifth Section *of the* Atmosphere *and* Wind,
- Chap. 19. *Of the* Atmosphere *and* Air, p. 154
- Chap. 20. *Of the* Winds *in general,* p. 179
- Chap. 21. *Of the differences of* Winds, *and of them in particular.* p. 187

2. *The* Respective *Part explaining the* Celestial Affections,
- Chap. 22. *Of the* Celestial Affections *in general,* p. 203
- Ch. 23. *Of the* Latitude *of a* Place, *and the* Elevation *of the* Pole, p. 207
- Chap. 24. *Of the* division *of the* Earth *into* Zones, p. 213
- Chap. 25. *Of the* Longitude *of the* Days, *and division of the* Earth *into* Climates, p. 220
- Chap. 26. *Of the* Light, Heat, Cold, Rains, *with other Properties of the* Zones *according to the* Season *of the* Year, p. 231
- Chap. 27. *Of* Shadows, *and the* division *of the* Inhabitants *in respect of the* Shadow, p. 259
- Chap. 28. *Of the Comparation of the* Celestial Affections *in divers places, where is treated concerning the* Antœci, Periœci, *and* Antipodes, p. 269
- Chap. 29. *Of the diversity of* Time *in divers* Places, p. 275
- Chap. 30. *Of the divers Rising of the* Sun *and* Moon, *and of the other* Appearances, p. 280

3. *The* Comparative Part *considering the* Affections *which do arise from the comparing of one place to another,*
- Chap. 31. *Of the* Longitude *of* Places, p. 291
- Chap. 32. *Of the* Scituation *of* Places *one to another,* p. 309
- Chap. 33. *Of the mutual distances of* Places, p. 335
- Chap. 34. *Of the visible* Horizon, p. 342
- Chap. 35. *Of the* Art *of* Navigation *in general, and of the Building of* Ships, p. 344
- Chap. 36. *Of the* Lading *or* Ballacing *of* Ships, p. 345
- Chap. 37. *Of the* Directory *of the* Nautick Art, *in the first part the knowledge of the* Distance, p. 347
- Chap. 38. *The second part, the knowledge of the* Quarters, p. 348
- Chap. 39. *The third part, of* Histiodromia, *or the Course of a* Ship, p. 353
- Chap. 40. *The fourth part of the* place *of a* Ship *in a* Voyage, p. 361

THE

A Streight Line

A Superficies

A Sollid body

Lib. 1. Cap. 2.

A Circular line

Semidiameter

Diameter

An Arch

7.th

8.th

8

9.th

The Wh

21 20 19

Lib. 1. c. 2.

Lib. 1. cap. 2. 13.th 14. 15. 16. 17. 18

The Cathetі

The Hypothenusis

The Base

A Half English foot.

A Half Dutch and also an old Roman half foot

A Half foot of Paris in French. And also a half Greek foot.

A Half foot of Antwerp in Flanders.

A Half Ægyptian foot from Alexandria.

A Half Babylonian foot mentioned by Historians.

A Half foot of Venice.

A Half foot of Toledo in Spaine.

A Half foot of Vienna in Austria.

4.th way of Snelly Lib. 1. c. 4.

5.th way fifth for Triall

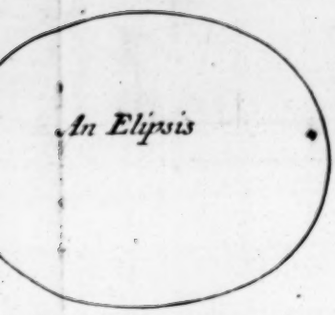
L. 1. c. 4

Lib. 1. Cap. 4.

Lib. 1. c. 4. mo: 1. arab.

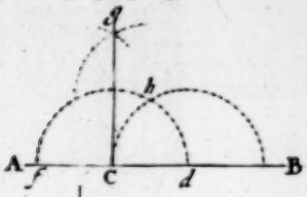
Lib. 1. cap. 4. mo. 2.

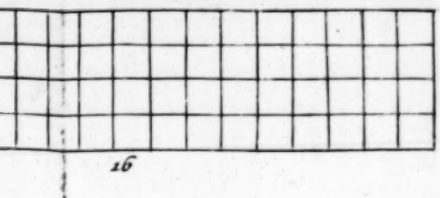
Lib. 1. c. 4. m. 2

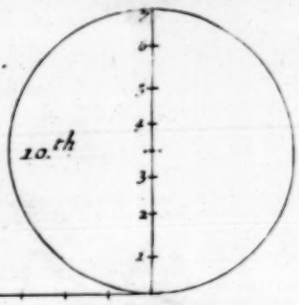


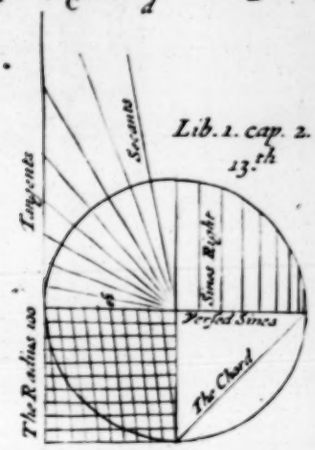
A Spiral Line

Lib. 1. c. 2. 6.th









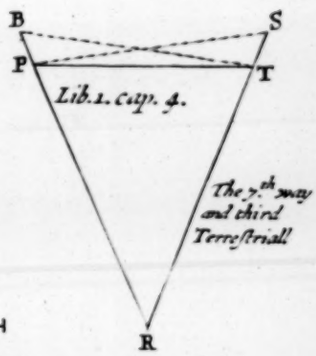
The Whole Circumference extended in a streight Line

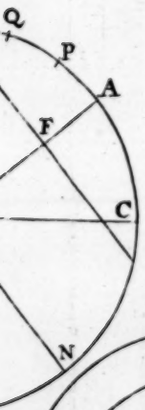
20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

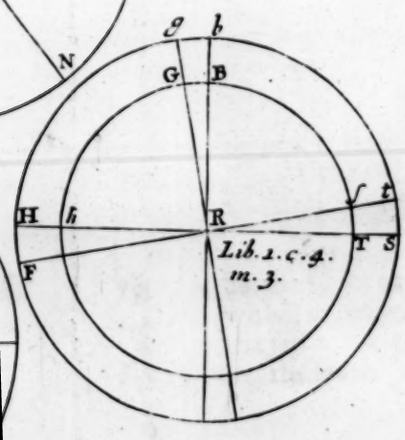
The Proportion of diverse Miles according to theire compaired Length

Lib. 1. c. 2.

An Indian Mile
A Russian Mile
A Mile of Cambaja
An English Mile
A French Mile, And allmost an old Arabian League
A Holland Mile
A Spanish League
A German Mile
A Swedish Mile

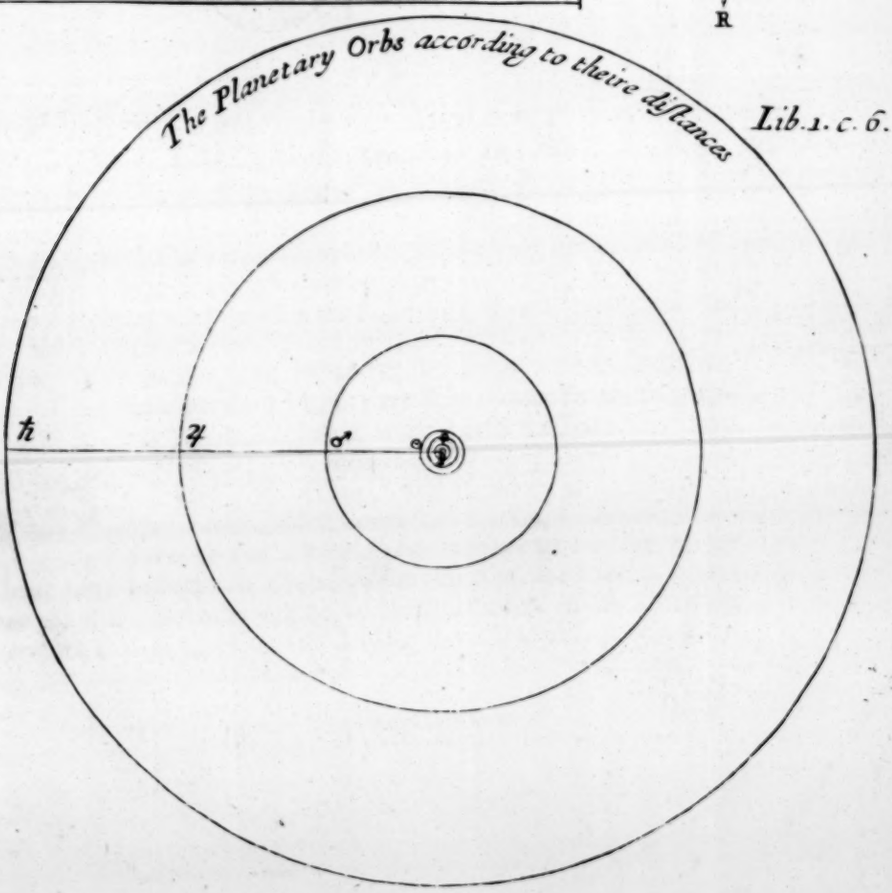






The Planetary Orbs according to theire distances

Lib. 1. c. 6.



First Plate
Folio 1.

THE ABSOLUTE OR COMPLEAT PART OF General Geography.

BOOK I. SECT. I.

CHAP. I.

Concerning the Precognita's, *or things known before the handling of the* Art *it ſelf; as the* Definition, Diviſion, Object, Properties, Principles, Order, Method, Original, Excellency, *and other affections of* GEOGRAPHY; *to be ſpoken of by way of Preface.*

THE Cuſtom or faſhion hath for a long time prevailed, that they who compleatly treat of, and handle any *Art* or *Science*, do in the firſt place declare ſome things touching the *Conditions*, *Method*, *Conſtitution*, and other properties of their Doctrine. Neither do I think that this is done by them without reaſon; ſo that it be performed without any *Sophiſtical encroachment*; ſeeing that by ſuch like fore-had Inſtruction, the Readers Underſtanding may before-hand conceive a certain *Idea* or *Platform* of the whole *Art* or *Science* to be afterwards handled, or at leaſt may underſtand the *Argument* or *Contents* thereof; and withal may gather thereby, how he ought to order himſelf in the ſtudying the ſame. I therefore ſhall in this Chapter deliver ſome few paſſages concerning the ſame. *A Preface to an Art, very neceſſary.*

The Definition of Geography.

GEOGRAPHY is called a mixt *Mathematical Science*, which teacheth the affections or qualities of the *Earth*, and the parts thereof depending of quantity; that is to say, the *figure*, *place*, *magnitude*, and other like properties.

Geography by some (but too strictly) is taken for the only description and placing the Countrys of the Earth; And on the contrary, by others it is extended (but too largely) to the political description of every Country. But these Men are easily excused, seeing they do it to retain and stir up the Readers affections; who otherwise by a bare account, and naked description of those Countrys, would be made drowsie and heedless.

The Division of Geography.

We will divide *Geography* into General and Special, or Universal and Particular. *General* or *Universal Geography* is that, which doth generally consider the *Earth*, and declare its properties without any respect of particular Countrys. *Special* or *Particular Geography* is that, which teacheth the constitution and placing of all single Countrys, or every Country by it self. And this *particular Geography* is twofold, to wit *Chorography* and *Topography*. *Chorography* proposeth the description of any Country, having at least a mean magnitude. *Topography* describeth any little tract of Land, or place.

Particular Geography twofold, *Chorographical* and *Topographical*.

In this Book we will present you with a *General Geography*; which we have distributed into Three parts, to wit, the Absolute part, the Respective part, and the Comparative part. In the *Absolute part* we will consider the very Body of the Earth, with its parts, and proper affections and qualities; as *figure*, *magnitude*, *motion*, *Lands*, *Seas*, *Rivers*, &c. In the *Respective part* we will contemplate those properties and accidents which from *Celestial causes* happen to the Earth: And lastly, the *Comparative part* shall contain an explication of those properties, which arise from the comparing of divers places of the Earth.

General Geography, and its parts.

The Object of Geography.

The *Object* of *Geography*, or *Subject* about which it is employed, is the *Earth*; but principally its *Superficies* and *parts*.

The Properties of Geography.

Those things which deserve to be considered in every Country, seem to be of a triple kind, to wit *Celestial*, *Terrestrial*, and *Human*; and therefore may be declared in the particular Geography for every *Country*, with the profit of Learners and Readers.

The Celestial properties of Geography.

I call those *Celestial properties* which depend on the apparent motion of the *Sun*, *Stars*, and other Planets: and seem to be Eight. 1. *The elevation of the Pole, the distance of the place from the Equator, and from the Pole.* 2. *The obliquity or wriness of the daily motion of the Stars above the Horizon of that place.* 3. *The Quantity of the longest and shortest day.* 4. *The Climate and Zone.* 5. *Heat and Cold, and the Seasons of the year: also Rain, Snow, Winds, and other Meteors*: for although these things may be referred to Terrestrial properties, yet because they have a great affinity with the four Seasons of the Year, and motions of the Sun; therefore we have marshalled them in the order and rank of Celestials. 6. *The rising of the Stars, their appearance and continuance above the Horizon.* 7. *The Stars passing through the Vertical point of the place.* 8. *The quantity or swiftness of the Motion, wherewith, according to Copernicus his Hypothesis, each one is every hour wheeled about.* According to Astrologers a Ninth property may be added; because they do appoint one of the Twelve Signs of the *Zodiack*, and the peculiar Planet of that *Sign*, to rule and govern every Country. But this

Doctrine

Doctrine hath ever seemed to me frivolous, neither can I perceive any ground for it: nevertheless at the end of our Special or Particular *Geography*, we will reckon up this their distribution.

These may suffice for the Celestial affections or properties. I call those *Terrestrial properties*, which are considered in the place of every Country it self; of which I shall note Ten. 1. *The bounds and circumference of the Country.* 2. *Its Figure.* 3. *Its Magnitude.* 4. *Its Mountains.* 5. *Its Waters, as Rivers, Springs, Bays of the Sea.* 6. *The Woods and Deserts.* 7. *The Fruitfulness and Barrenness, as also the kinds of Fruits.* 8. *The Minerals, or things dig'd out of the Earth.* 9. *The living Creatures.* 10. *The Longitude of the Place*, which ought to be added to the first Terrestrial property, to wit the *Circumference.*

The Humane properties of Geography.

I make the third kind of Properties, which are to be considered in every Country, to be *Humane*, which do depend of the Men, or Natives and Inhabitants of the Countries: of which *Humane properties* about Ten also may be made. 1. *The stature of the Natives, as to their shape, colour, length of life, Original, Meat, Drink, &c.* 2. *Their Trafficks and Arts in which the Inhabitants are employed.* 3. *Their Vertues, Vices, Learning, Wit, &c.* 4. *Their Customs in Marriages, Christnings, Burials, &c.* 5. *Their Speech and Language.* 6. *Their State-Government.* 7. *Their Religion and Church-Government.* 8. *Their Cities, and most renowned Places.* 9. *Their memorable Histories.* And 10. *Their famous Men, Artifices, and Inventions of the Natives of all Countries.*

These are the three sorts of Properties to be declared in *Special Geography*; although those *Terrestrial properties*, which make up the third rank, are not so rightly referr'd to Geography: But we must yield somewhat to Custom and the Profit of Learners. We will besides these, joyn many Chapters to *Particular Geography*, concerning the practice of Geography.

But in *General Geography*, which we will unfold in this Book; first the *absolute* properties of the *Earth*, and its constitution, are considered. Lastly, in the *Comparative* part those things shall be proposed, which are offered unto us in the comparing one place with another.

The Principles of Geography.

The *Principles* which *Geography* useth for the confirming the truth of her Propositions, are threefold: 1. *Geometrical, Arithmetical*, and *Trigonometrical* Propositions. 2. *Astronomical* Precepts and Theorems; although it may seem like a miracle for the knowledge of the Earth in which we dwell, to use the Celestial Bodies, which are so many thousand miles remote from us. 3. *Experience*; for indeed the greatest part of *Geography*, especially that which is Particular, is upheld by the only Experience and Observation of men who have described every Country.

The Order of Geography.

Concerning the *Order* which I esteem fitting to observe in this Art of *Geography*, it hath been already spoken in the *Division* and *Explication* of the properties thereof; yet here meets us a certain difficulty concerning the Order to be observed in the explication of these Properties: Forsooth, whether to all Countries their own Properties are to be attributed, or whether the Countries themselves are to be ascribed to the Properties generally explicated? *Aristotle* in the first Book of the History of *Living Creatures*, as also in his first Book of the Parts of *Living Creatures*, moveth the like doubt, and disputes it at large; whether according to the single sorts of *Living Creatures*, their Properties are singly to be reckoned up; or else, whether these *Properties* are generally to be declared, and the *Living Creatures* in which the may be found are then to be subjoyned? The like difficulty occurs also in other parts of Philosophy. We in *General Geography* have generally unfolded some *Properties*, which in *Special Geography* we will apply to the application of single Countries.

The

The Method of Geography.

As touching the *method* and manner of proving the truth of *Geographical* Tenents, very many are proved in *general Geography* by Demonſtrations properly ſo called, eſpecially *Celeſtial Properties:* but in *ſpecial Geography* (the Celeſtial Properties only excepted, which may be demonſtrated) are in a manner declared without demonſtration, becauſe experience and obſervation doth confirm them, neither can they be proved by any other means.

Alſo very many *Propoſitions* are proved, or rather demonſtrated by the *Terreſtrial Artificial Globe*, and alſo by *Geographical Maps*; and ſome of theſe Propoſitions which are thus explained upon the Globe, &c. may be confirmed by lawful demonſtrations. Again, ſome Propoſitions can in no wiſe be ſo proved, but are therefore received; becauſe we ſuppoſe, that all places in the Globe and Maps are ſo diſpoſed, even as they lie on the Earth. Yet in theſe things we will rather follow the Deſcriptions made by Authors of Geography. The *Globe* and *Maps* ſerve for the clearing and more eaſie comprehenſion thereof.

The Original of Geography.

The *Original* of *Geography* is not New, nor brought into the World at one birth, neither came ſhe to us from one Man: but her Principles and Foundations were laid long ago, yea many Ages ſince; although ancient Geographers were employed only in deſcribing Countries, which is the part of *Chorography*, and *Topography*. The *Romans* were accuſtomed, when any Country by them was ſubdued, to ſhew in their Triumph the *Chorography* thereof lively pencilled, and drawn on a Table, and flouriſhed with Pictures to the Beholders. There were beſides at *Rome* in *Lucullus* his Porch, many Tables of Geography expoſed to the view of all men. The Senate of *Rome* about an hundred years before Chriſts Birth, ſent Surveyors and Geographers into divers parts of the World, that they might meaſure out the Earth; but they came far ſhort thereof. *Neco* King of the *Egyptians*, many Ages before the Birth of Chriſt, commanded that the whole outer-ſide of *Africa* ſhould be diſcovered by the *Phœnicians* in three years ſpace. King *Darius* commanded, that the Mouths of the River *Indus*, and the *Ethiopian* Eaſtern-Sea ſhould be ſearched out. *Alexander* the Great in his Voyage to *Aſia*, took with him *Diognetus* and *Beton* (as *Pliny* noteth) two Surveyors and Deſcribers of his Journies; out of whoſe Annotations and Journals *Geographers* of ſucceeding Ages took many things.

Ancient Geography very imperfect.

But the *Geography* of the Ancients was very lame and imperfect; for firſt they knew not *America* in the leaſt. 2. The *Northern-Lands*. 3. The *Southland* and *Magellan* were utterly unknown to them. 4. They knew not whether the *Earth* might be ſailed about, or the Main Ocean with a continual trace did encompaſs it; but yet I deny not, but that ſome of the Ancients were of that opinion; yet I utterly deny they knew it certainly. 5. They knew not whether the *Torrid Zone* were habitable. 6. They were ignorant of the true *dimenſions* of the *Earth*, although they wrote many things in this buſineſs.

The Excellency of Geography.

Firſt, the ſtudy of *Geography* is commended to us by the great worthineſs thereof, becauſe it moſt of all becometh Man, being an Inhabitant of the Earth, and endued with Reaſon above all Living Creatures. Secondly, It is alſo a pleaſant thing, and indeed an honeſt recreation to contemplate the Kingdoms and Properties of the Earth. Thirdly, The commodity and neceſſity of it is notable, inſomuch as neither Divines, Phyſitians, Lawyers, Hiſtorians, nor other Profeſſors can want the knowledge thereof. But the Excellency of *Geography* hath been ſufficiently handled.

I place

I place hereunder a Table, which openeth the order in *Special Geography*, to the observing the Explication of single Countries.

Special Geography considereth in every Region,

- Ten *Terrestrial*,
  1. Limits and circumscription.
  2. Longitude of place, and scituation.
  3. Figure.
  4. Magnitude.
  5. Mountains, { The Appellation, Scituation, and Altitude. / Their properties, and things contained in them.
  6. Mines.
  7. Woods and Deserts.
  8. Waters, { The Sea, Lakes, Marshes, Rivers. / Their Springs, Inlets, Tracts, and Latitude. / The quantity of Water, the celerity, the quantity, the Cataracts.
  9. Fertility, Sterility, and Fruits.
  10. The Animals.
- Eight *Celestial*,
  1. The distance of place from the Æquator and Pole.
  2. The obliquity of Motion above the Horizon.
  3. The Quantity of Dayes.
  4. The Clime and Zone.
  5. The Heat, the Seasons of the Year, the Winds, Rain, and other Meteors.
  6. The rising and stay of the Stars above the Horizon.
  7. The Stars passing through the Vertex of the place.
  8. The celerity or quantity of their Motion according to the Hypothesis of *Copernicus*.
- Ten *Human Things*,
  1. The Stature, Life, Meat and Drink, and the Original of the Inhabitants.
  2. The Income, Arts, Merchandize or Traffick.
  3. Vertues and Vices, the Genius and Erudition.
  4. Customs about Marriages, Children, and Funerals.
  5. Speech and Language.
  6. Politick Government.
  7. Religion, and Ecclesiastical Affairs.
  8. Cities.
  9. Memorable Histories.
  10. Famous Men and Women, Artificers, and Inventions.

CHAP. II.

Certain things taken out of Geometry *and* Trigonometry, *which it behoveth the Students of* Geography *to know.*

Geometry and Arithmetick neceſſary to be underſtood in Geography.

PLato wiſely called *Geometry* and *Arithmetick* two Wings with which mens minds might ſoar up into Heaven, that is, might ſearch out the *Motions* and *Properties* of the *Sun* and *Stars*. Thoſe *Sciences* are no leſs neceſſary in *Geography*, as that man may truly underſtand, who deſires to learn it without any hindrance. In the mean while, *Geography* is content with fewer circumſtances then *Aſtronomy*. And becauſe many men are taken up with the ſtudy of *Geography*, who have no knowledge in thoſe Arts, I ſhall ſet down ſuch things as are moſt neceſſary for the ſtudy thereof: not allowing of that naughty cuſtom which is too much uſed by many Maſters in theſe days, in teaching Youth *Philoſophy* before they have taſted of *Geometry* and *Arithmetick*. I ſhall ſuppoſe the Reader to have the knowledge of *Addition*, *Subtraction*, *Multiplication*, *Diviſion*, and of the *Rule of Three*, or *Golden Rule*; therefore I ſhall not treat thereof: and if there be any ignorant in them, they may be inſtructed therein by the lively voice of a Maſter; my purpoſe being to give *Geometrical Matters*.

See Scheme. Three ſorts of Magnitudes in Geometry.

Firſt then, *Geometry* acknowledgeth three ſorts of Magnitudes, by which it meaſureth forth all things, to wit, *Lines*, *Superficies*, that is, *Outſides* or *Surfaces*, and *Solid Bodies*: neither is there any fourth thing given in Nature.

Sorts of Lines.

Secondly, A *Line* is one ſtrait, another crooked, and the crooked *Line* is uniform, or circular, or different and unlike in faſhion; as *Oval Lines*, *Lines* winding about like *perwinckles* or *ſteeple ſtairs*, or *Heliacan Lines*.

A Circle.

Thirdly, A *Circle* is called a ſpace, or plain *Superficies* and *Figure*, included in a *crooked Line*; in which ſpace is ſome *point*, from which all *ſtrait Lines* drawn to that ending crooked Line, are equal. And that *crooked Line* bounding in that ſpace, is called the *Circular Line*, or *Peripherie* of the *Circle*. The middle point is called the *center* of the *Circle*.

Diameter of a Circle.

Fourthly, The *Diameter* of the *Circle* is the *ſtrait Line* drawn from either ſide through the *center* of the *circumference*.

An Arch. A Quadrant. The Complement.

Fifthly, An *Arch* is called a part of the *circumference* of a *circle*. A *Quadrant* is called the fourth part of the whole *circumference*. The *complement* of any *Arch* is called the *Arch* by which it differeth from, or faileth of a *Quadrant*. The *Exceſs* of an *Arch* is by which it exceeds a *Quadrant*.

The Probleme.

How to draw a Perpendicular Line. See Scheme.

Sixthly, *A ſtrait Line being given, and a point in it, or out of it, to draw from that point a perpendicular Line.* Let the *Line* given be A B, the *Point* C; let any open ſpace of the *Compaſſes* be taken, and one foot thereof put in C, and with the other foot let the *Line* be cut in D and F; then in the *Center* D, let the *Arch* be deſcribed over the part d f: alſo in the *Center* f, let another *Arch* be deſcribed in g and h, and let g h be drawn, and this ſhall be a *Perpendicular Line*.

How to divide a Circle into four parts. See Scheme.

Seventhly, *To cut or divide a circle and circumference into four parts.* Let there be drawn one *Diameter*, and from the *center* let there be raiſed a *perpendicular line* over it: And this alſo ſhall be a *Diameter*, and the *circumference* together with the *circle*, ſhall be cut into four equal *parts* or *quadrants*.

To divide a Circle into Degrees.

Eighthly, *To divide the circumference of a circle into degrees.* But a *degree* is the three hundred and ſixtieth part of a *circumference*: for indeed *Mathematicians* do cut a *circumference* into three hundred and ſixty parts; and they

they divide a *degree* into ſixty firſt *minutes*: and then again they divide the *prime*, or firſt *minute*, into ſixty *ſeconds*. See Scheme.

Therefore to diſpatch this *Probleme* above propoſed, there being firſt taken a *quadrant* of the *circle*, let then, by the open ſpace of a pair of *Compaſſes*, the half *diameter* of the *circle* be taken; and by this ſpace of the *Compaſſes*, let the *Arch* be taken away from the *circumference*. This *Arch* ſhall be ſixty *degrees*, and there ſhall remain in the *quadrant* thirty *degrees*, which being divided into two parts, you ſhall have fifteen *degrees*, which again being mechanically divided into three parts, you ſhall have five *degrees*; and theſe again are to be divided into five parts, which ſhall be the *degrees* themſelves. But theſe things by the help of *Mathematical Inſtruments*, are more readily and perfectly performed. To divide a Circumference into Degrees.

Ninthly, *To find out the Area or contained ſpace of a Quadrangle ſtrait-angled, two ſides of a Quadrangle being given.* Let one ſide be multiplied into the other, the *product* ſhall ſhew the ſpace contained. But it is to be known, that *Lines* are meaſured by *Lines*, *Superficies* or *Spaces* are meaſured by *Meaſures*, which may be *Superficies*, and they indeed ſquare. Laſtly, Bodies or ſolid things are met by Meaſures, which may be Bodies and Solid Cubicks. Thus we meaſure the ſides of an Houſe with Feet-lines, but we meet the floor or pavement of an Houſe with Square feet; and we deſcribe the capacity or ſolidity of a Houſe by Cubick feet. To find the Area of a Quadrangle. See Scheme.

Tenthly, *The half Diameter, or Diameter of a Circle being given, to find out in the ſame Meaſure the circumference of the Circle:* and contrariwiſe, *The circumference of the Circle being given, to find the Diameter thereof, and that indeed the neareſt way that can be.* The ſolution of the *Probleme* depends of the proportion of the *diameter* to the *circumference*, which according to the moſt famous demonſtration of *Archimedes*, is in a manner as 7 to 22; or more accurately, as 10000000000 to 31415926535; ſo 12 to the ſame *circumference*. The Diameter of a Circle being given, to find out the circumference of the Circle, in the ſame Meaſure.

Contrariwiſe, if a *circumference* be given, but a *diameter* may be demanded; let it be wrought as 22 to 7, or as 31415926535 to 10000000000: ſo a *circumference* given according to the *diameter* demanded. See Scheme.

Eleventhly, *The circumference of a Circle being given in feet, or miles and a Diameter: or alſo a circumference alone, or a Diameter alone being given, to find out the ſpace of the Circle, in feet or ſquare miles.* According to the firſt Propoſition, let the given *circumference* into the fourth part of the *diameter*; or let half the *circumference* be multiplied into half the *diameter*; and the *product* ſhall be the ſpace demanded. According to the ſecond Propoſition, it is better to find out firſt the half *diameter*, or half *circumference*, by the foregoing *Probleme*, although it may be diſpatched without it. The Circumference of a Diameter being given in feet or miles, to find out the ſpace of the Circle in feet or ſquare miles.

Twelfthly, *The half Diameter, or Diameter of any Globe being given, to find the Superficies thereof in ſquare meaſure, and its ſolidity in Cubick meaſure.* The *Globe* is called a round or ſolid Body, in whoſe middle there is ſome *point*, out of which all the *ſtrait Lines* drawn to the *Superficies* are equal. And this *point* in the middle is called the *center* of the *Globe*. The *Line* through the *center*, is called the *diameter*: and it is called the *axis*, if the *Globe* be turned, or rolled about that *diameter*. Moreover, if the *Globe* be cut any way, howſoever the Section is the *circle*. And if it be cut through the *center*, or we imagine it to be drawn through the Plain, the Section ſhall be the *circle*, whoſe *diameter* is the ſame, as the *diameter* of the *Globe* it ſelf. And ſuch *circles* are called the greater *circles* of the *Sphere* or *Globe*: the reſt are called the leſſer *circles* of the *Sphere*. The Globe called a round ſolid body.

Therefore for the reſolution of the *Probleme*, firſt let the *circumference* of the *circle* be found out by the given *diameter*. Then let the *diameter* be multiplied into this *circumference*, and then the *ſuperficies* of the *Globe* ſhall be the *product* in ſquare Meaſure.

Furthermore, let this *ſuperficies* be multiplied by the ſixth part of the *Diameter*, and the *product* ſhall be the ſolidity of the *Globe* in *Cubick Meaſure*. See Scheme.

A Triangle.

Thirteenthly, *A Triangle is called rectangled, one side of which standeth perpendicularly upon the other side*; or with it maketh a strait Angle of ninety *degrees*. These two sides are called *Cathets*; the third side is called *Hypotenusa*.

The measure of the Angles in the Arch.

The *Measure* of the *Angles* is the *Arch*, which is described, a *center* being taken in the top of that *Angle*; to wit, of how many *degrees* that *Arch* intercepted between the thanks of the *Angle* is, of so many *degrees* that *Angle* is said to be. So a strait *Angle* is said to be ninety *degrees*, because the *Arch* so described is always the *Quadrant*, or fourth part of the *circumference* of the *circle*.

The Sine of an Arch.

The *Sine* of any *Arch* is called a *strait Line*, which is drawn perpendicular from the extream of the *Arch* into the *diameter*, drawn through the other extream of the *Arch*.

A Tangent of the Arch.

A *Tangent* of that *Arch* is said to be a *strait Line* touching the *Arch* in one end, and a *strait ended Line*, which is drawn from the *center* through the other end of the *Arch*. But this *Line* thus drawn is said to be the *secant* of that *Arch*.

But the *Sine* of an *Angle* is said to be the *Sine* of that *Arch* which measureth that *Angle*: so the *Tangent* of the *Angle*, and its *Secant*.

Tables called the Mathematical Canon or Rule.

Furthermore it is to be known, that by the labour and study of *Mathematicians*, *Tables* were made, in which the half *diameter* of 100000 (or of more Cypliers) being taken, the *Sines*, and *Tangents*, and *Secants* of all the *Arches* of the *circumference* are found out. For example sake; 2 *degrees*, 10 *degrees*, 20 *degrees*, 32 *minutes*, &c. And these *Tables* are called the *Mathematical Canon* or *Rule*, and have infinite Commodities in all the *Mathematical* and *Natural Sciences*. And therefore I am willing to teach the Studious of *Geography* these few things: But the principal use thereof is in the measuring, as well of *Spherical* as *plain Angles*. But because the measuring of *Spherick Angles* hath some difficulty, which seemeth necessary only for them who desire to enter themselves more profoundly into *Art*: therefore we will speak only of *Triangles* strait angled, whose dimension any one may easily apprehend.

Two Theorems, whose use is frequent in Geography.

Rules to be observed.

Fourteenthly, *Three Angles of what Triangle soever, being taken together, are equal to two strait Angles*, or are 180 degrees: and therefore two Acute in a *Triangle* strait angled, makes 90 *degrees*. Furthermore, *if a strait Line touch a circular Line, and from the point of their contact or meeting, a strait Line be drawn to the center of the Circle, this makes a strait Angle with the Line Tangent.*

Fifteenthly, But these are the *Problems* whose use is frequent. First, *the Hypotenusa, and together the Cathetus of a Triangle strait angled, being given, to find out the Angle contained, or another Acute.* For the finding out of which, let it be wrought according to the *Golden Rule*, as the given *Hypotenusa* is to be the given *Cathetus*, so the whole *Sine* 100000 (which number is the half *Diameter* taken in the *Tables* of *Sines*) is to the *Sine* of the other *Angle*. This *Sine* sought out in the *Canon*, will shew the *Arch* or quantity of the *Angle*, which joyneth to the *Hypotenusa*. But the contained *Angle* is the *complement* of the found out *Angle*, to 90 *degrees*. Therefore, if the found out number be subtracted from 90 *degrees*, the demanded *Angle* is left remaining. Secondly, *A Cathetus, and an acute adjacent Angle being given, to find out the Hypotenusa.* Let this be wrought according to the *Golden Rule*: as the *Sine* of the *complement* of the given *Angle* is to 100000 (or to 1000000 in the greater *Canon*) so is the given *Cathetus* to the demanded *Hypotenusa*. Thirdly, *Two Cathetuses being given, to find the Angle adjacent to either of them.* Work thus; as one *Cathetus* is to another, so is the whole *Sine* 100000 to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* which is adjacent to the first assumed *Cathetus*. Fourthly, *A Hypotenusa, and one acute Angle being given, to find either Cathetus.* Let the Work proceed thus; as the whole *Sine* 100000 is to the *Sine* of an *Angle*, which is opposite to the *Cathetus* demanded, so the given *Hypotenusa* is to that *Cathetus*.

Con-

Concerning divers Meaſures.

Becauſe the uſe of *Meaſures* is very frequent in *Geography*, and that alſo divers People uſe ſundry Meaſures, therefore I ſhall give the Reader ſome Advertiſements therein. Meaſures uſeful in Geography.

The famous Meaſure is *the length of a Foot*; but this is very different. The *Rhindlandiſh* Foot of *Snellius* is the now uſual Mathematicians *Foot*, which is equal to the Old *Roman* Foot. And becauſe *Snellius* was moſt diligent, and curioſeſt in meaſuring the Earth, therefore that *Rhindlandiſh foot* is deſervedly taken for the rule of all Meaſures. The *Foot* the moſt famous Meaſure, firſt found out by *Snellius*.

The *Decempeda*, or *Land meaſuring Rod*, containeth ten ſoot *Rhinlandiſh*. It is alſo called a *Perch*, or *Pole*; but *Geodeſians* or *Surveyors* make a *Rhindlandiſh Perch* to be twelve *Rhindlandiſh foot*, or elſe ſixteen foot *Germiſh*, or or ſixteen foot and an half *Engliſh*. The aforeſaid *Snellius* makes a *Hollandiſh* Mile to conſiſt of 1500 *Rhindlandiſh* Perches (every Perch being twelve foot long) or to conſiſt of 18000 *Rhindlandiſh* Feet. A Rod, or Perch.

And theſe two Meaſures, to wit, the *Perch* and *Mile*, ariſe from the multiplication and aggregation of Feet: But the Meaſures that ariſe from the diviſion of a Foot, are a *digit* or *finger*, a *palm* or *hands breadth*, and a *grain*. A *digit* is the twelfth part of a ſoot; a *palm* contains four digits, and a *grain* is the fourth part of a digit: but theſe are ſeldom uſed. It is better to divide a ſoot into ten digits, and then a digit into ten grains. Meaſures which ariſe from the diviſion of a Foot.

And theſe Meaſures are ſufficient for the uſe of *Geography:* But there are other Meaſures hereunto to be added (which I have noted in the Scheams) to wit, thoſe of the Ancients, as *Egyptians*, *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Perſians*, &c. alſo thoſr of later times, as of the *Turks*, *Polanders*, *Germans*, *Moſcovians*, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Engliſh*, &c.

The *Grecian Stadium* or Furlong is judged to be 600 *Greek* feet, which makes 625 *Roman* or *Rhindlandinſh* feet.

A *German* Mile, of which Geographers allow fifteen to one *degree*, contains 14000$\frac{1}{19}$ feet. It is eſteemed to be 4000 paces; that is, 32 *ſtadia's* or furlongs. Its proportion to the *Rhindlandiſh* Mile is as 15 to 19.

The *Italian* or *Roman* Mile is a thouſand *paces*, or eight *ſtadiums*.

A *Geometrical pace* contains five *foot*.

A *Fathom* is ſix foot; which is reported by ſome to have been the *Grecian* Pace.

A *Cubit* is a foot and a half.

Paraſange, that is, the *Perſian* Mile, is eſteemed to have contained 30 *ſtadiums*; but it contained 3000 *Perſian* Paces.

Schænus the *Egyptian* Meaſure containeth, according to *Herodotus*, ſixty *ſtadiums*, and according to *Pliny*, forty; but peradventure the ſize thereof was divers, according to the different places wherein it was uſed: Alſo, either *Herodotus*'s *ſtadium* differed from *Plinys*, or elſe their Books are faulty.

The *French League* holds proportion to the *Rhindlandliſh* Mile, as 25 to 19, or elſe as 60 to 19.

The *Spaniſh League* holds proportion to the *Rhindlandiſh* Mile, as 17$\frac{1}{2}$ to 19. But becauſe in divers places both of *France* and *Spain*, a different greatneſs of a League is obſerved; therefore theſe things are not altogether certain.

The *Engliſh* Mile holds proportion to the *Rhindlandiſh* Mile, as 55 to 19, or elſe as 16 to 19. But the *Engliſh* have three ſorts of Miles, to wit, the greater, of which 27$\frac{1}{2}$ are equal to a *degree:* the mean, of which 50 makes a degree; and the leaſt of which 60 or 55 miles makes a degree.

The *Daniſh* or *Swediſh* Miles, holds proportion to the *Rhindlandiſh* mile as 10 to 19: But in ſome places the *Danes* and *Swedes* uſe the *German* mile.

The *Ruſſian* Mile holds proportion with the *Rhindlandiſh* mile, as 80 to 19.

The

The *Turkiſh* Mile or League is thought to be equal with the *Italian* Mile, inſomuch that 60 of them make a *degree*.

The *Arabian* League formerly was the twentieth part of a *degree*, ſo that twenty five *Arabian* Leagues did equalize one *degree*, or nineteen *Hollandiſh* Miles: But yet the *Arabians* did alſo uſe another Meaſure, fifty five of which ſaid to be a degree.

An hundred *Indian* Miles are judged to be equal to a *degree*; although the *Indians* commonly deſcribe their diſtances by the Journeys of Days and Hours.

The Inhabitants of the Kingdom of *Cambaia* and *Guzuratta* uſe a certain Meaſure, which they call *Coſa*, thirty of which makes a *degree*.

Thoſe of the Country *Sinæ* or *China* obſerve three Journey-Meaſures, which they call *Li*, *Pu*, and *Uchan*. *Li* is the ſpace from whence the voice of a man crying aloud may be heard in a Plain, and in a calm Air, which is thought to be three hundred *Geometrical* Paces. *Pu* containes *Li* ten times; ſo that twenty *Pu*'s makes a *degree*, and ten *Pu*'s make an *Uchan*, which they determine one days Journey, which is 30000 Paces.

The Square *Rhinlandiſh* Mile conſiſts of *ſquare feet*.

The Cubick *Rhindlandiſh* Mile conſiſts of *Cubick feet*.

But the account of a ſquare *Rhinlandiſh* Mile ariſeth from multiplying the ſame *mile* into it ſelf, and the *Cubick mile* is compleat, if the *Square mile* be multiplied by a *ſimple mile*. The ſame is to be underſtood as touching *ſquare* and *Cubick feet*.

OF

OF

Abſolute Geography.

SECT. II.

Containing the General and Abſolute properties of the Whole Earth, in Five Chapters.

CHAP. III.

Concerning the Figure of the Earth.

FIGURE is firſt the principal of all *Properties* of the *Earth*; not only in nobleneſs, but alſo excelling the reſt in the profit and neceſſity thereof, foraſmuch as without it nothing can be fully and ſolidly demonſtrated or known in *Geography*; and all things therein following do in a manner depend and proceed from her alone. In the firſt place therefore it is manifeſt that our diſcourſe is to be begun at her.

Things to be obſerved concerning the *figure* of the *Earth*.

But there have been divers opinions concerning the *figure* of the *Earth*, for indeed the Vulgar ſort, (that is, men endued with no knowledge in *Geography*,) do think that the *Earth* extendeth it ſelf in a vaſt and broad Plain, whoſe boundary is a Circular line, but that the Hills and Valleys meet and ſtop it. *Lactantius* and other Fathers were of this Opinion, who earneſtly defended and maintained the *Earth* to be extended downwards with infinite Roots, and in that manner to have its foundation; this they thought, being moved thereto by certain places of Holy Scripture, either miſinterpreted or wrong underſtood. This Opinion is attributed to the Ancient Philoſopher *Heraclitus*: although ſome men write that he attributed to the Earth the ſhape of a *Boat*, or made hollow in the bottom. Furthermore, of theſe of latter days; *Francis Patric*, no baſe Philoſopher, did ſtiffly maintain that the *Earth* is extended on a plain foot. *Peucer* writeth, that *Anaximander* judged the form of the *Earth* to be like a *Rowling-pin*; but that is not likely, ſeeing that he both eſſayed the dimenſion or meaſuring the *Earth*, and was skilful enough in *Aſtronomy*, according to the manner of that Age; foraſmuch as he at *Lacedemon* ſat up, and made *Heliotropes*, or *Sun-dials*, in which the top of the finger or ſtile

Lactantius his Opinion of the *Earth*.

See *Lactantius* in his 3d Book chap. 24. And *Auguſtine* in his 16 Book *de Civit. Dei*, chap. 9.

The Opinions of *Francis Patric*, *Anaximander*, *Leucippus* and Others, concerning the Earth.

ſtile of the *Dial* with its *ſhadow*, did mark out and ſhew the day of the *Equinoxes* and *Solſtices*. *Leucippus* is recorded to have thought the Earth to be ſhaped in the form of a *Drum*: and there are other men which dare aſcribe I know not what fond Opinions to the Ancient *Philoſophers*. But the true Opinion maintained by almoſt all Philoſophers that were *Mathematicians*, was, that the Earth is round like a *Globe* or *Sphere*. But the Arguments, which Authors for the confirmation thereof do uſe, they propoſe ſo obſcurely and confuſedly, that they cannot compel or convince an obſtinate and pertinacious Defender of the contrary Opinion. We therefore, as much as may be, will moſt clearly ſet forth thoſe very Opinions, and examine them, that the Readers may have a diſtinct knowledge thereof.

See *Ariſtotle* in his 2d Book *de Cœlo*, ch. 13.

Reaſons to prove the *Earth* round.

Firſt, I reject the ſlighter Reaſons or Arguments, which are probable, or rather Sophiſtical. Firſt, the *Spheriek figure* is moſt capacious; therefore the *Earth* ought to have ſuch a kind of *figure*. Secondly, all the parts of the *Earth* tend to the ſame *Center*; therefore all thoſe parts make a *round figure*. Thirdly, when as in the Creation the *Water* as yet was confuſedly mixed with the Earth, without doubt the *Earth* was moiſt and ſoft; but the figure or ſhape of Liquid things is *round* or *ſpherical*: therefore ſuch alſo the *figure* of the *Earth* remained after the ſeparation of the moiſt from the dry.

These and the like Arguments being ſlighted, let us view and conſider the ſtronger and moſt ſolid. There is but one Argument of one and the firſt kind, which is taken *à priori*; but the other two kinds are taken *à poſteriori*: to wit, ſome Arguments are taken from the *Celeſtial appearances*; ſome again from them which we either obſerve in the *Earth* or in *Heaven*. As for the firſt Argument, concluding *à priori*, it is taken from the nature of *Water*; and this demonſtration is wont to be taken either from *Ariſtotle*, or *Archimedes*. *Ariſtotle* in his ſecond Book *de Cœlo*, chap. 5. hath propoſed his Demonſtration in theſe very words: *It ſhall manifeſtly appear that the* ſuperficies *or* ſurface *of the* Water *is round; if we ſhall take the Suppoſition, That* Water *of its own nature makes its confluence always to a hollow place, and that that place is more concavous which is nearer the Center.* Therefore from the *Center* A let the *ſtrait lines* A B and A G be drawn, and from B unto G let the line B G be drawn, unto which from A let a *perpendicular line* A D be drawn into E. It is manifeſt therefore that the *line* A D is leſs than the *lines* A B and A G (by the 18*th* of the firſt Book of *Euclid's Elements Geometrical*;) therefore this place D is more concavous; wherefore the *Water* ſhall flow from B and G until the *lines* A B, A D, A G may be equal; But A E is equal to A B, A G; therefore it muſt needs be, that the very *water* ſhould be in theſe *lines* which are drawn in the *Center* (this part of the Demonſtration is clearly known; but A E, &c. makes nothing for the Demonſtration.) But that *line*, which toucheth them which are drawn from the *Center*, is the *circumference*; therefore the *ſuperficies* of the *Water*, which truly is B E G, is round.

The ſuperficies of the *Water* round.

See Scheme.

Things to be noted.

This is *Ariſtotles* Demonſtration, in which, beſides the confuſed and evil compoſure thereof, theſe things I obſerve. Firſt, that it ſuppoſeth ſome *Center* of the whole *Univerſe*: Secondly, that it taketh the place more or leſs bending down in regard of that *Center*. For he which ſhall deny the ſhape or figure of the Earth to be *ſpherical*, would call theſe things into queſtion. Yet the firſt may be ſufficiently, concerning the *Center* of the Univerſe, proved or corrected: For we muſt ſay, that either the *Stars* are wheeled round about by a *Diurnal motion*, or that the *Earth* is turned round about its own *Center* (for this the apparent motion of the *Stars* forceth and cauſeth.) If the *Stars*, then that *point* about which they are turned, ſhall be the *Center* of the *Univerſe*; if the *Earth*, then the middle point of the *Earth*, or that about which it is turned, ſhall be taken in the Demonſtration for the *Central point* of *Ariſtotle*. But the chiefeſt difficulty lies in the ſecond Suppoſition, to wit, that the leſſer or greater declivity or bending downward, ought to be conſidered in reſpect of that *Center*: For he which would defend the *ſuperficies* of the *Water* to be plain and of another *figure*, he would deny this Suppoſition, and would ſay, that the declivity muſt be conſidered according to our ſenſes, to wit, in reſpect of our

Horizontal

Horizontal plain, according to which the *Earth* with infinite ſpaces is extended into profundity; or elſe he would define the declivity in another manner. And thus this demonſtration concludeth nothing at all, unleſs it be granted, that the declivity of the places of the *Earth* muſt be taken in reſpect of that *Center*, about which the daily apparent motion of the *Celeſtial Bodies* is performed: which thing, although it may be true, and all other definitions of declivity, according to which the *Water* may be moved, may alſo be confuted; yet notwithſtanding it can ſcarce be admitted for a principle, ſeeing that it in a manner ſuppoſes the figure of the Earth to be *Spherical*.

Archimides his demonſtrations by ſome preferred before thoſe of *Ariſtotles*.

Others therefore prefer *Archimedes* his Demonſtration before this of *Ariſtotle*, which is found in his firſt Book, concerning thoſe things that are carried in the *Water*. This indeed is more Artificial than that of *Ariſtotle*, yet it is oppreſt with the ſame difficulties, foraſmuch as it ſuppoſeth the *Spherical figure* of the *Earth*, and its *Center*, in reſpect of which it taketh the depreſſion of the *Water*. We will bring hither ſome Arguments framed from thoſe that are taken from *Celeſtial appearances*. Firſt, let us conceive the *Meridian line* of our place, or of any point of B in the *Earth*, or a Section of the *Earth* made in plane, which through the *Poles* of the World M N, paſſeth through A B C D: this *line* is uſually called the *Latitude* of the *Earth*, and the *line* which is drawn perpendicular to this is named the *Longitude* of the *Earth*, or another *plain Parallel* to the *Celeſtial Equator*, making in the *Earth* the *line* E B F C. I ſay, as well the *line* A B C D, as the *line* E B F C in the Earth to be *circular*. But it is a *Geometrical Thorem*, If any *Superficies* according to one dimenſion be cut through any point, and the *ſection* be made in the *periphery* or *circumference* of the *Circle*; then according to the other dimenſion through the ſame point the ſection be made in *plain*, which is *perpendicular* to the former plain, and the ſection again be made in the *periphery* of the *Circle*, that *ſuperficies* is *ſpherical*. See Scheme.

Therefore, becauſe we have taken the point B in the *ſuperficies* of the *Earth*, according to our own pleaſure, and have ſhewed the Section A B C D, and E B F C to be the *peripheries* of the *Circles*; therefore by the aforeſaid *Theorem*, we conclude, that the *ſuperficies* of the Earth is *ſpherical*, and that the *Earth* is a *ſpherical Body*. The Earth a Spherical body.

The Section of the Earth, according to the dimenſion of the latitude from one Pole to another, is circular.

Furthermore, that the Section of the *Earth*, according to the dimenſion of the *Latitude* from one *Pole* to another A B C D is circular, is proved by many *Celeſtial* appearances: Firſt, if this *line* A B C D, any place whatſoever being taken in B, ſome man go forward towards either *Pole* M, or towards the *Star* near it, he obſerveth by his progreſſes made equally, that he approacheth equally to the *Pole*. But this could not be done, unleſs the line of his Journey B A C D were *circular*, and it is commodiouſly ſhewed by the *Artificial Terreſtrial Globe*. Secondly, becauſe A B C D is the *Meridian line*, into which when the *Sun* cometh it is midday to us, and to all People dwelling in this *line* A B C; experience witneſſeth, that the *Sun* in the *line* A B C doth perpendicularly hang over any place, to wit in the *Torrid zone*, for example P; and if we take equal ſpaces equal to B Q, Q P, we ſhall perceive that the diſtance of the *Sun* from the *vertex* or top of Q, is equal to the *exceſs* of the diſtance of the *Sun* from the *vertex* of B, above the diſtance from the *vertical point* of Q: which could by no means be accompliſhed, unleſs the *line* B P Q were circular. Thirdly, the ſame is the reaſon of all the *Stars*, which when they come into the *Meridian* A B C, their diſtances from the *vertexes* P Q B have the ſame reaſon, as the diſtances P Q, P B, Q P. So when our Mariners ſail towards the South, the *Stars*, which before were not conſpicuous, become higher and more manifeſt to the eye, according to the proportion of their *ſayling*. Fourthly, ſo if many *Stars* be taken, and the places of the Earth, through whoſe *Zenith* they paſs, in one *Meridian*, you ſhall perceive that the diſtances of theſe places have the ſame proportion among themſelves, as the diſtances of the points of the *Meridian* in which thoſe *Stars* keep their Noon, or full South point. Now, foraſmuch as belongeth to the *Longitude* of the Earth; for example E B F C, that is alſo circular, and that the Earth hath a *ſpherical tumor*

Of the riſing and ſetting of the Stars.

or ſwelling according to this dimenſion, is proved by that, becauſe the *Sun* and *Stars* do ſooner by a great deal riſe to thoſe People which live from us towards the Eaſt, than to us; and do alſo ſooner ſet to them, than to us: But to them that dwell from us Weſtwards, contrariwiſe they riſe and ſet later than to us; and indeed according to that proportion of time, which the diſtances of the *Meridians* of thoſe places have from our *Meridian*. So if two places be taken from ours, to wit, the diſtance of one *Meridian* towards the Eaſt 225 miles; the diſtance of the other 450: then we ſhall find, that in this place the *Sun* riſeth two hours ſooner than with us; but in the other place it riſeth but one hour ſooner than in ours. The Argument becomes more clear, if this *Theorem* be propoſed of the *Suns* coming to the *Meridians* of divers places. For indeed look what is the account of the diſtance of places from ours, and the ſame will be obſerved the account of times which come in between the arrivings to thoſe *Meridians* and ours, or between the *Arches* of the *Equator* intercepted between their *Meridians* and ours: which is made evident by the *Eclipſes*; for theſe things are ſhewed by the *Artificial Globe*, if we aſcribe a *Spherick form* to the Earth: but other ſhapes thereto applied are very abſurd.

Of the riſing of the Sun.

So now the *Spherical form* hath as well been demonſtrated, as touching the *latitude*, as the *longitude* of the Earth.

Other Reaſons to prove the Earth *Spherical*.

Yea, but the *Spherical form* thereof may alſo be proved by the only *Latitude* of the Earth, for indeed all *diviſions* of the Earth which are made according to the *latitude* thereof in divers places, are the *Peripheries* of the places; but they paſs through the ſame point of Heaven, to wit, the *Pole* of Converſion near adjacent to the *Polar Star*. From theſe two Reaſons we may ſolidly infer and prove, that the *figure* of the Earth is *ſpherical*. For it is a *Geometrical Theorem*, which therefore ought to be demonſtrated by *Geometricians* thus; if any *ſolid body* be cut in many *planes*, it matters not how paſſing through ſome one point, and all the *ſections* or *diviſions* be performed in the *ſuperficies* of the *periphery* of the *Circle*, that body is *ſpherical*.

Other reaſons.

Here cometh another Reaſon, taken from the ſhadow which the *Earth* on her averſe part to the *Sun* diſperſeth to the *Moon*, whereby ſhe ſuffereth an Eclipſe: foraſmuch as this ſhadow is *conical*, or like a *ſpire* of a Steeple, as is declared by the obſcuration of the *Moon*.

But if we deal rigidly, the Arguments taken from the *ſpherical roundneſs* of the Earth, from the viewing and conſideration of the *Earth*, are theſe following:

Again.

Firſt, from the *ſayling* round the Earth; becauſe our men of *Europe* hoiſting Sail eight times from *Europe* with a direct Journey to the Weſt and South, even unto the *ſtreights* of *Magellan*; afterwards to the Weſt and North; they returned again from the Eaſt into *Europe*, and all thoſe appearances hapned to them which ariſe from the property of the *Globe*; which ſurely had not been done, if the Earth had not been round. And certainly, upon the ſuppoſition of that figure of the Earth all thoſe *Circumnavigations* were grounded, which therefore had not taken ſuch happy ſucceſs, if the form had been otherwiſe.

Furthermore.

Secondly, when either by *Sea* or *Land* we take our departure from high Towers and Mountains, then the lower parts thereof are abſconded from us, and by degrees more and more, till at laſt the very tops thereof are quite taken from our ſight. In the ſame manner, when as for a long diſtance we come to a Tower or Mountain, firſt the top preſenteth it ſelf to our view, then the inferiour parts, till at laſt through our nearer diſtance the foot thereof is ſeen. And this increaſe of Apparition and Occultation is altogether made according to ſuch a proportion, as the *ſpherical tumor* or ſwelling of the Earth is able to make; neither can it be explicated by any other *figure*. The Diagram will make the Propoſition more clear.

Thirdly, becauſe that the meaſuring the height of Mountains, or great Hills, which is grounded upon the *hypotheſis* of the globous form of the Earth, is found by experience to agree with a real truth of the thing it ſelf.

Furthermore, that we may draw together the whole number of these Arguments taken *à posteriori* into one ſum, (although they might be handled *Geometrically*, but that buſineſs would be of great labour and difficulty; for it muſt be demonſtrated, that this or that different property being put, that the *line* is circular:) therefore a *round ſpherical figure* is to be aſſigned to the Earth. Becauſe all the *appearances* as well *Celeſtial*, (as the divers elevation of the *Pole*, the divers altitude of the *Sun* of that day in divers Countries, the reaſon of the *Shadows*, the difference and increaſe of the Longeſt days towards the *Pole*, times of the riſing and ſetting of the *Stars*, &c.) as *Terreſtrial*, (as the direction of *Navigations*, the appearing and hiding of *Towers* and *Mountains*, the diſtances of *Places*, the *Ports*, *Coaſts*, *Winds*, &c.) are moſt commodiouſly declared by that *round* or *ſpherical* form or *figure*: neither can another figure be deviſed which can perform that, as it is manifeſt by the conſideration of divers *figures* and forms of *Bodies*. And our *artificial Terreſtrial Globe* ſo juſtly repreſents all theſe things, as they are really found to be in the *Earth*: which certainly could not be done, if the *Earth* had any form or figure than that of our *artificial Globe*. And what other form ſoever you ſhall chuſe, there will follow innumerable abſurdities: For it is manifeſt, that it is not plain by the appearances hither alledged; and that it neither can be hollow is clear from this, that the *Sun* and *Stars* ought firſt then to appear to the *weſtern People*, than to the *Eaſtern*, if it were of ſuch a figure; as we ſee the *Sun* riſing firſt to illuminate the *Valleys*, before it can give light to the averſe parts of *Mountains*.

Further Reaſons to prove the rotundity of the *Earth*.

CHAP. IV.

Concerning the Dimenſion and Magnitude of the Earth.

THe Dimenſion or meaſuring of the *Earth* comprehends three principal Heads: Firſt, the *Longitude* or length of the *Diameter*, or *half Diameter*, that is, of a line from the *Superficies* to the *Center*, as alſo of a *periphery* of the *Earth*, or the *Circumference*. Secondly, the *magnitude* of the *Superficies* of the whole *Earth*. Thirdly, the ſolidneſs or *corporeal Dimenſion* of the *Earth*. But theſe things are ſo contrived together, that one of them being known, the other two come to our knowledge by *Geometrical Inſtruments*, becauſe the *Earth* is a certain *Sphere*; as it is ſhewed in the ſecond Chapter. This property is the moſt noble and hard to know, and hath exerciſed the moſt excellent Wits for many Ages: inſomuch that ſome Men have written whole Books concerning this matter. And therefore I have thought, that it would not prove ungrateful to the Students of *Geometry*, if I ſhould fully relate here the Hiſtory of this Dimenſion. *Diogenes Laertius* praiſeth *Anaximander* the *Mileſian*, the Scholar of *Thales*, that beſides other *Aſtronomical Inventions*, he firſt of all others deſcribed the circuit or *perimeter* of both *Land* and *Sea*. But *Anaximander* lived about the year 550 before the Birth of *Chriſt*. The *Mathematicians* of ſucceeding Ages ſeem to have followed his Dimenſion, even until *Eratoſthenes*, becauſe Authors make mention of none other; and therefore I judge that to be the Magnitude aſſigned by *Anaximander*, which *Ariſtotle* hath noted in the end of his ſecond Book *de Cælo*, ſaying; The *Mathematicians* alſo, which endeavour to meaſure out the *Magnitude* of the World, report that the *Earth* is bounded in and girt with four hundred *Stadiums*. By this *perimeter*, it is no difficult matter to aſſign the *half diameter* of the *Earth* according to *Anaximander*. But becauſe we can find nothing noted concerning *Anaximanders* Invention, beſides that one place of *Diogenes*

The Opinions of divers Writers concerning the Dimenſion and Magnitude of the *Earth*.

Anaximander the *Mileſian*, the Scholar of *Thales*.

Ariſtotle.

Eratosthenes. *Laertius*; his and *Eratosthenes* his diligence is obscured, who next after *Anaximander* undertook this business with great applause of all men: he lived about two hundred years before Christ; and as he was most conversant in the rest of the *Mathematicks* and *Dimensions*, so he is esteemed most accurately to have perfected *Geodesia*, or *Surveying*; and this glory is principally ascribed to him.

The circuit of the Earth. But he discovered and delivered, that the *perimeter* or circuit of the *Earth* is two hundred fifty thousand *Stadiums* or Furlongs; but others two hundred fifty two thousand, which *Pliny* reports to make up three hundred fifteen thousand *Roman miles*, every one of which are thought to be a thousand Paces.

Eratosthenes. Strabo. Cleomedes. *Eratosthenes* had written three Books of *Geography*, which by reason of the injury of time are now not to be found. *Strabo*, the famous *Geographer*, relateth the Contents and Arguments of each Book: and *Cleomedes* hath noted up his manner which *Eratosthenes* used for the discovery of the *Circuit* of the *Earth*; in which, what can be wanted, we will hereafter declare. For indeed *Eratosthenes* his measuring forth the Earth, was by many *Mathematicians*, especially *Hipparchus* (a hundred years after *Eratosthenes*) judged to swerve from the truth; although there is nothing written touching *Eratosthenes* his Dimension or measuring forth the *Earth*, but that he added twenty five thousand *stadiums* to the *perimeter*. But *Posidonius* being not only a most knowing *Astronomer* and Practitioner, but also in every part of *Philosophy* most expert, did next after *Eratosthenes* enter upon this Doctrine a little before the birth of *Christ*, to wit, in the time of *Cicero* and *Pompey*. This man by his Dimensions found the *circumference* of the *Earth* to be two hundred forty thousand *stadiums*, as *Cleomedes* hath noted; but 180000 *stadiums*, as *Strabo* hath delivered: whereby ariseth a great doubt concerning the cause of this difference between *Cleomedes* and *Strabo* his allowance; seeing this of *Strabo* is the truer, although uttered in a few words: But *Cleomedes* his assignation of the same is far from truth, although he read and expounded *Posidonius* his *Geodesie* to many. Concerning his size or manner, we will speak hereafter.

Posidonius. Cleomedes. Strabo.

But the Dimension of *Eratosthenes* was used as yet of many, even to *Ptolomy*'s time, (the year 144 after *Christ*) who used a *Perimeter* of 180000 *stadiums*, and affirmed it to be more agreeable to truth, insomuch that this very Invention was by *Theon* ascribed to him. It is gathered that *Marinus* a famous *Geographer*, and by whose Writings *Ptolomy* was much aided, did attempt something in this business, as appeared by his *Geographical Writings* of the same *Ptolomy*.

Theon. Marinus.

After these times, when as the study and prosecution of the *Sciences* by little and little vanished away in *Greece*, nothing was done in this business, neither did the *Romans* undertake any thing herein.

But the *Arabians* and *Saraxens* having obtained the Empire, or glory of other Arts from the *Grecians* to themselves, so likewise they left not this part of the *Mathematicks* untouched. Forasmuch (as *Snellius* relates out of *Abulfedea* an *Arabian Geographer*, who flourished about the year of *Christ* 1300, and whose Writings were printed at *Rome*) about the 800 year of the *Christian* Account, *Maimon* King of the *Arabians*, or the *Calife* of *Babylon*, being studious in the *Mathematicks*, forasmuch as he commanded the great construction of *Ptolomy* to be turned out of *Greek* into the *Arabian* Language, which is called by the *Arabians* the *Almageſt* of *Ptolomy*. This *Maimon*, I say, having assembled together certain skilful *Mathematicians*, commanded them that they should search after the *Perimeter* of the *Earth*. To perform which task, they chose the Fields of *Mesopotamia*, and they under the same *Meridian* proceeding from the North to South, until the Elevation of the *Pole* had decreased one *degree*, found after an even level, that the space or Journey was fifty six or fifty six and a half; from whence it is found that the *Perimeter* according to them, is twenty thousand and sixty, or twenty thousand three hundred and forty Miles.

Maimon King of *Arabia* studious in Geography, in whose days it flourished.

From

From that time even to our Age no man hath aſſayed this; but many *Arabians* have uſed this dimenſion of their own *Mathematitians*: But the *Latines*, when they began to handle *Aſtronomy*, uſed that of 18000 *Stadiums* (which *Ptolomy* had uſed) which makes 324000 *Italian miles*, or 5400 *German miles*; for 15 *German*, or 60 *Italian miles*, are allotted to one *degree*, when as there ought to have been aſſigned thereto 15 and ½, becauſe about 38 *Stadiums* are given to one *German mile*; and ſo the *Perimeter* ſhould be 5625 *German miles*. But about thirty years ago, *Snellius* a famous *Mathematician*, Profeſſor of *Leyden*, obſerved that uſual *Perimeter* of the Earth, or the magnitude of one *degree* defined in 15 *miles*, to depend on no certain demonſtration, but to be uncertain; therefore with very great induſtry he ſet upon this dimenſion, and happily finiſhed it, demonſtrating the magnitude of one *degree* in the *Earth* to be 28500 *Perches* or *Poles* (every one of which contain 12 *Rhindlandiſh feet*, or 19 *Dutch miles*) and the whole *Perimeter* to be 8640 *miles*. But he defines a *mile* with 1500 *Poles*, or 18000 *Rhindlandiſh feet*. We will now ſpeak concerning the manner of meaſuring the *Earth*.

The dimenſion of the Earth by the Latins.

Its dimenſion according to *Snellius*.

But indeed this Invention depends on the *Figure* of the *Earth*, which in the foregoing *Chapter* we have proved to be *Spherical*: For indeed we conceive the *Earth* to be cut by a Plain paſſing through the *Center*. This *Section* or *Diviſion* maketh the greateſt *Circle* of the *Earth*: For a *Sphere* being cut in any manner, the *Section* is made a *Circle*; but if it be cut through the *Center*, it ſhall be the greateſt *Circle*, and therefore the *Periphery* of this *Circle* in the *Superficies* of the *Earth*, ſhall be the *Circumferente*, *Circuit*, and *Perimeter* of the *Earth*. And this work of *meaſuring* beginneth from the magnitude of this *Periphery*; becauſe therefore this *Periphery* or *Circumference*, as others are, is divided in the mind into three hundred and ſixty *degrees*, (as hath been ſaid in the ſecond Chap.) but indeed we cannot perform the magnitude of the whole *Periphery*, and therefore the Problem is thither reduced, that we may find out the magnitude of one *degree*, or other part in the known meaſure. For example; the magnitude of half a *degree*, the neceſſity of which alſo meets in other *Problems*. And we take the *Periphery* of the *Earth* for the moſt part to be that of the *Meridian Circle*, becauſe this is more eaſily, and with leſs occaſion of errour, determined by our own place, and by the *North* or *Polar Star*, or other means, which we will declare in the Three and twentieth Chapter.

The Circumference of the Sphere divided into 360 degrees.

The firſt mean or way which the Arabians, *and other Mathematicians have uſed.*

Let the *Horizon* therefore of our *Terreſtrial Meridian* (which lieth juſt under the *Celeſtial* a b c d, and is concentrical thereto) be H h, R s s; let the *Periphery* A B C D, R the *Center* of the *Earth*; our place B the *Vertex*, or ſupreameſt point over our heads; the *Pole* of the *Earth* A lying under the *Celeſtial*; the *Elevation* of the *Pole* above the *Horizon* ſhall be A H a h: Let us now take another place in the ſame *Meridian* A B C D or G, lying under the ſame a b c d, the *Vertex* g, the *Horizon* f F R t T. Let here now the *Elevation* of the *Pole* be exactly obſerved in the place B, *viz.* a h or a H; alſo of the place G, to wit f a, or F A; and let F A be taken away from H A, and the remainder is H F, to which the *Arch* B G intercepted between the places, is equal. After that the interval or ſpace between B G muſt be meaſured accurately in a certain *meaſure*. For example; how many *Perches* or *Poles* it may contain, or how many *miles*? For theſe ſhall be correſpondent to the *Arch* B G. And by the *Golden Rule*, as B G is to A B G c d the 360 *degrees*; ſo the ſpace or interval found out, or the *Perches* or *Miles* are to the *Perches* or *Miles* of the whole *Perimeter* A B G C D, or as the *Arch* B G is to one *degree*, ſo the *Perches* or *Miles* found are to the *Perches* or *Miles* which are due to one *degree*.

See Scheme.

Note, if your pleaſure be not to meaſure the interval B G thus, but to follow the vulgar determination, then according to that way the quantity muſt be determined. As for example; that to 1 *degree* 15 ſuch *miles* anſwer, as between B G may be 10, &c.

Example;

Elevation of the Pole at *London.*

Example; B *London*, where the *Elevation* of the *Pole* A H, a h, is 51 *degrees* 32 *minutes.* Let G be *Hartford* lying under the ſame *Meridian* with *London*, the *Elevation* of whoſe *Pole* a f, a f, is 51 *degrees* 54 *minutes*; therefore f h, or B G is 29 *minutes.* But the diſtance between *London* and *Hartford* is 20 *Engliſh miles*, or 13875 *Rhinlandiſh Perches* of 12 *foot*: therefore as 29 *minutes* are to 60 *minutes*, ſo $9\frac{1}{4}$ to 19 *Holland miles*: therefore 19 *Holland miles* make one *degree* in the *circumference* of the *Earth.* Or the interval B G is accounted to be $7\frac{1}{4}$ *German miles*, a *German mile* being reckoned to be 1900 *Rhinlandiſh Perches*: therefore let it be wrought thus; as 29 parts are to 60, ſo is $7\frac{1}{4}$ to 15 ſuch *German miles.* So at *Prague* the *Elevation* of the *Pole* is 50 *degrees* and 6 *minutes*: at *Lincium* it is 48 *degrees*, and 16 *minutes*: the difference of B G ſhall be one *degree* and 50 *minutes*; and it is thought to be diſtant 26 *German miles*; therefore the *Perimeter* was 5105 *miles*, and the whole Circuit of the *Earth* is 5400 *miles.*

The Elevation of the Pole at *Prague.*

The ſecond manner of Eratoſthenes.

Eratoſthenes's manner uſed about the dimenſion and magnitude of the Earth. See Scheme.

Let there again be two places of the *Earth* in the ſame *Meridian*; let B be the City *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, let G be *Syene*, another City of *Egypt*, under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; let now the ſame places in one and the ſame day, in the full ſouthing of the *Sun*, when he comes into the *Meridian line* a b c d, the diſtance from the *Verticles* b g be obſerved by a *Quadrant.* Let at *Alexandria* in the day of the *Solſtice*, 21 of *June* g f, or G F be obſerved, $\frac{1}{50}$ of the *Periphery*, or 7 *degrees* 12 *minutes*: but in *Syene* let there be no diſtance, the *Sun* hangeth perpendicularly over their heads; therefore B G ſhall be the *Arch* intercepted between thoſe two places. And becauſe the diſtance put is 5000 *Stadiums*, therefore according to the *Golden Rule*, it ſhall be, as 7 *degrees*, 12 parts to one *degree*, (or as $\frac{7}{12}$ to $\frac{1}{360}$, or as 5 to 36) ſo 5000 to $694\frac{4}{5}$ *Stadiums*, which are requiſite for one *degree*; or as $\frac{1}{50}$ is to 50, or as 1 to 50, ſo 5000 to 250000 *Stadiums* of the whole *Periphery* A B C D according to this *meaſure.* Yet ſeeing there are divers ways to take the *Meridian Altitude* of the *Sun*, and the diſtance from the *Vertical point* g b, *Eratoſthenes* wrought it by a hollow *Spherical Sciotérick* or *Sundial*, which they called *Scaphe*, where the *Style* B x ſheweth the *Vertex* o x z, but the *Radius* or beam of the *Sun* terminaitng the ſhadow of the *Style* or *Pin*, marks out B z how much the diſtance of the *Sun* o b from the *Vertex* 7 *degrees* 12 *firſts* at *Alexandria.* But in the City *Syene*, the *Style* G x makes no ſhadow that day; becauſe o the *Sun* hangeth perpendicularly over it, and therefore there is no diſtance of the *Sun* then, becauſe therefore the *Angle* B x z is equal to the *Angle* b x o, whoſe *meaſure* is B o, or B z: there B o is equal to B z 7 *degrees* 12 firſt *minutes*, or $\frac{1}{50}$ of the *Periphery.* The other things are performed as it hath been ſaid.

The third manner of Poſidonius.

Poſidonius's manner uſed about the magnitude, &c. of the Earth.

See Scheme.

Let two places B G be under the ſame *Meridian.* *Poſidonius* took B *Rhodes*, and G the City *Alexandria* in *Egypt*: let the *Altitude* of ſome *Star* in theſe two places, when it cometh into the *Meridian*, above the *Horizon*, and that in the ſame day, or in divers days, which matters not at all. *Poſidonius* took the ſhining Star *Canobus*, which is of the firſt magnitude in *Argo navi*; but this *Star* did not riſe above the *Horizon* of *Rhodes* h H S, but did only touch the *Horizon* in S; yet it was elevated above the *Horizon* of *Alexandria* F R t in the *Arch* t S $\frac{1}{48}$ part of the whole *Periphery*, or 7 *degrees* 30 *minutes.* Therefore the diſtance of the *Arch* T s, that is B G, ſhall be 7 *degrees* 30 *minutes* unto 1 *degree*, or as $\frac{1}{48}$ part unto $\frac{1}{360}$; that is, as 1 to 48, ſo 5000 to 240000 *Stadiums* of the whole *Perimeter* of the *Earth*, according to theſe *Hypotheſes* of *Poſidonius.*

The

The fourth manner or way of Snellius.

Becauſe in the former ways we have taken two places B G lying under the ſame *Meridian*, and yet the places fit for this buſineſs may lye under divers *Meridians*, therefore we thought it requiſite that an example, and that of *Snellius*, ſhould be alſo concerning this caſe here propoſed. *Snellius's* way about the dimenſion and magnitude of the Earth.

Let therefore A B C D be the *Meridian* of *Alcmaria*; B *Alcmaria* it ſelf, the *Elevation* of the *Pole* h a 52 *degrees* 40½ *minutes*; the diſtance from the *Pole* B A 37 *degrees*, 19 *minutes*, 30 *ſeconds*.

Let the other place be P *Bergenapſome*, the *Meridian* A P V V the diſtance from the *Pole*, that is the *Complement* of the *Elevation* (51 *degrees*, 29 *minutes*,) A P is 38 *degrees*, 31 *minutes*: therefore P G a *Perpendicular Line* being drawn to A B G, the difference of the diſtances from the *Pole* is B G, 71 *minutes*, 30 *ſeconds*, or 1 *degree*, 11 *minutes*, 30 *ſeconds*. See Scheme.

Moreover, *Snellius* by a laborious *Geodeſie* or *Earth-meeting*, found the diſtance of *Alcmaria* from *Bergen* B P, to be 34710 *Rhindlandiſh Perches*, and the *Angle* of *Poſition* P B G, to be 11 *degrees*, 26 *minutes*, 2 *ſeconds*. Therefore in the *Triangle* ſtrait angled P B G, the *Hypotenuſe* B P, and the *Angle* B P G is given; therefore by the *Problem* of the ſecond Chapter, B G is found 34018 (for which *Snellius* takes 33930; for he detracts 88 *Perches* from the Stations of the *Elevations* of the *Pole*.) But the *Arch* B G 71½ *ſcruples* is the difference of the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, therefore as 71½ *minutes* is to 1 *degree* or 60 *minutes*, ſo is 33930 (or 34018) to 28473 *Perches* for one *degree*, or according to the round number 28500, or 19 *Holland miles*. They which underſtand *Spherical Trigonometry*, from the given A B, A P, the *Angle* A B P, may find the *Arch* B P to be 1 *degree*, 14 *minutes*; which when they are equal with 34710 *Perches*, 1 *degree* ſhall be equal to the *Perches*, or of 18 *miles*, and ⅘. But the cauſe that this number differeth from that of *Snellius*, is firſt, that *Snellius* did not take the very points of the *Towers* B P, by which he obtained the *Angle* G B P, for the knowing the *Elevations* of the *Pole*; but he took the places a little diſtant from them: Notwithſtanding no *man* can doubt but the ſame may be found to be the *Altitude* of the *Pole*. The other cauſe is, that he taketh the *Lines* B G, B P, P G as ſtrait, which nevertheleſs are not ſtrait, although this diſcord may ſeem to make little or no difference of any moment. But let *Snellius* his quantity of a *degree* of 28500 *Perches* be taken (mine of 28300 *Perches*) his makes 19 $\frac{141}{170}$ *miles*, (mine 18⅔ *miles*) the *Perimeter* or *Circuit* according to *Snellius*, ſhall be 10260000 *Perches*, 123120000 *feet*, or 8640 *Holland miles*. See *Snellius* in page 197.

The fifth manner, being the firſt Terreſtrial way of meaſuring the Earth.

The three following manners or ways are *Terreſtrial*, performing the work without the *Heaven* or *Meridian Line*. Let B P be the *Altitude* of the *Tower*; this is to be ſought out in a *Land-meaſuring* way: then let P s be the diſtance of the moſt remote term from whence the *Tower* may be ſeen. And although P s be not a *ſtrait Line*, yet becauſe it is the leaſt part of the *Periphery* of the whole *Earth*, therefore it is taken for a *ſtrait line*; and the *Triangle* ſtrait angled B P s, in which by the given B P, P s, the *Angle* B s P is found, to whom B R s is equal, whoſe *meaſure* is the *Arch* S P. Therefore as this *Arch* is to one *degree*, ſo P s the found *diſtance*, is to the quantity of one *degree*. As for Example; let B P the *Altitude* be 480 *Paces*, and let the *diſtance* P s of the *point* s, which endeth the Sight, be 40000 Paces, or 10 *German miles*: therefore let it be wrought according to the *Problem* of the ſecond Chapter. As P s 40000 *paces* are to B P 480 *paces*, ſo the whole *Sine* 10000000 is to 11904, the *Tangent* of the *Angle* B S P, or S R P, or of the *Arch* S P, to wit, 41 *minutes*; therefore as 41 *minutes* are to 60 *minutes*, ſo 40000 *paces* are to 59000 *paces*, that is about 15 *miles* for 1 *degree*. The firſt Terreſtrial way for the finding out the magnitude, &c. of the Earth. See Scheme.

Or

Or the *Diameter* P R may be found without the *Table* of *Sines*, or without the finding the *Perimeter*: For as B P is to P S, ſo P S is to P R; as 480 is to 40000, ſo 40000 is to 3333333 *paces* for the half *Diameter* R P.

The ſixth manner of meaſuring the Earth, being the ſecond Terreſtrial, without the knowledge of the diſtance.

The ſecond terreſtrial way for the meaſuring the Earth.

But truly the ſame half *Diameter* R P ſhall alſo be concluded in this manner: Let B P be the high *Tower*, to wit, the *Plummet* being let down from the *hole*, the height thereof may be found to be 100 *paces*. Or if the height of the *Mountain* P B be known by another *Geodeſie*, or *ſurveying* 4000 *paces*, afterwards the *Inſtrument* being applied in the top of B, let the *Angle* of the laſt Sight be found P B S, 88 *degrees*, 37 *minutes*: Therefore B R S ſhall be one *degree*, 23 *minutes*.

Out of the *Canon* of *Sines*, let the *Sine* of 88 *degrees*, 37 *minutes*, be taken, and let this be ſubtracted from the whole *Sine* 10000000. And let it be diſpatch'd thus: as the remainder is to the *Sine* of 88 *degrees*, 37 *minutes*, ſo B P of 1000 *paces* is to the half *Diameter* S R in *paces*.

The ſeventh manner, being the third Terreſtrial.

The third terreſtrial way for the meaſuring the magnitude of the Earth.

This way or manner ſhall ſeem more accurate then the former ways, and ſhall appear more applicable to the practice, taking two *mountains* or *heights*, of whom, not the height but the diſtance may be known, which may be found *Geodetically*, or by the Art of *Surveying*. Let B P be one *Altitude* of the *Mountain*, *Tower*, &c. S T the other height; let T P be the diſtance of five *German miles*; let the *Angle* B T R 89 *degrees*, 55 *minutes*, be found by the *Inſtrument*, and in the other *Mountain* T B R 89 *degrees*, 55 *minutes*. The *Angle* P R S ſhall be 920 *minutes* (becauſe the three *Angles* T, B, R, are equated to two ſtrait *Angles*, 180 *degrees*) wherefore according to the *Golden Rule*, Work, as 20 *degrees* are to 60 *degrees*; ſo 5 *miles* to 15 *miles* for 1 *degree*.

See Scheme.

Theſe are the principal manners and ways of *meaſuring* the *Earth*: For by the found out *meaſure* of 1 *degree*, the whole *Perimeter*, *Diameter*, *ſuperficies* and *Solidity* is found out.

Becauſe according to *Snellius*, the *Perimeter* is 8640 *Holland miles*, or 10260000 *Rhindlandiſh Perches*, or 123120000 *feet*: therefore by the *Problem* of the ſecond Chapter, the *Perimeter* of the *Earth* is found to be 1088¼ *miles*, or 1633190 *Perches*, or 19598300 *feet*. The *Superficies* of the *Earth* 18811353¾ ſquare *Holland miles*.

And the whole *Solidity* is 4095683512 *Cubick miles*.

The calculation of German miles uſual.

But becauſe the calculation by *German miles* is more uſual, 15 of which makes 1 *degree*, therefore theſe may be uſed, but upon this condition, that ſuch *miles* may be underſtood, of which 15 may make 19 *Holland miles*, or that 1 *mile* may contain 1900 *Rhindlandiſh Perches*.

Therefore the *Periphery* of the *Earth* ſhall be 5400 ſuch *miles*, the half *Diameter* 860, the *Superficies* 9278181 ſquare *miles*, the *Solidity* ſhall be 265693384 *Cubick miles*.

The Italian miles moſt commodious.

Yet the *Italian miles* are the moſt commodious, 60 of which are allowed to 1 *degree*; for ſo 1 *mile* fittingly anſwereth one *minute* of a *degree*. But ſuch an *Italian mile* ought to be underſtood, which may contain 475 *Rhindlandiſh Perches*; ſo the *Circuit* of the *Earth* ſhall be 21600 ſuch *miles*, the half *Diameter* 3440 *miles*. Theſe things being thus expounded, we muſt alledge and bring hither the cauſes why the fore-rehearſed dimenſions or meaſurings of Authors may ſo differ, and what is wanting in every one of them.

Reaſons ſhewing errors in the differing of the dimenſions of the Earth according to the *Arabians*, and others, Mathematicians.

In the firſt manner of dimenſions theſe things occur; Firſt, That an Errour may be committed in taking the *elevation* of the *Pole*. Secondly, that a doubt may be made concerning places under the ſame *Meridian*. Thirdly, that the diſtance may not be declared diſtinctly: And becauſe the *Arabians* uſed this manner,

manner, therefore the things that are desired in their dimension, are these: First, the exact quantity or greatness of their *mile*, (which according to *Alfraganus* is 4000 *Cubits*) as unknown to us. Secondly, the *Arabians* have not shewed to us the places, whose *Elevations* they took, and therefore we cannot make further search concerning their diligence. Thirdly, neither did they demonstrate their manner by which they measured.

In *Eratosthenes*'s *dimension* these things deserve correction. First, that to the *Arch* found B z of 7 *degrees*, 12 *minutes*, he did not add 15 *minutes*, for the *Arch* intercepted between the *Radius Solis* X Z, which was to be taken. Secondly, that he did not prove *Syene* and *Alexandria* to lye under the same *Meridian*. Thirdly, that the term of the *Shadows* cannot be exactly noted; and besides, that the places about *Syene*, even to 150 *Stadiums*, have this property, that the *Style* is without a shadow. Fourthly, that he took the distance between *Syene* and *Alexandria*, according to the opinion of the Vulgar sort, which neglecteth, and hath no care of exactness; neither can the *magnitude* of the *stadiums* be certainly manifest unto us.

In *Posidonius* his manner these blemishes are judged to be; First, that he thought *Canobus* was not lifted up above the *Horizon* of *Rhodes*, whenas notwithstanding it may be elevated 2 *degrees* above it. Surely he could not know, that it exactly touched it. Secondly, that he determined the distance between *Rhodes* and *Alexandria* by conjectures and common journeys. Thirdly, that his *stadiasm*, or *measure* of a *stadium*, is not sufficiently determinate. Fourthly, because it may be doubtful whether *Alexandria* and *Rhodes* lye under the same *Meridian*, &c.

In the *Terrestrial* manners of measuring the *Earth*, there is this defect: First, that in the exact measuring of *Hills*, a fault may easily be committed. Secondly, the furthermost point of the Sight cannot be known accurately, both because of the refractions, as also for the weakness of the eyes.

It may suffice to have spoken thus much concerning the greatest *Circuit* of the *Earth*, its half *Diameter*, *Superficies*, and *Solidity*. We might, if it were a *similar Body*, by the *solidity* of the *Earth*, judge of its *weight*: but because parts of a different *weight*, whose proportion is hidden from us, are in it; therefore its weight cannot, but by a conceived supposition, be determined.

The half Diameter of the Earth is the measure of all Celestial dimensions.

It is worthy observation, that the half *Diameter* of the *Earth* is the measure of all *Celestial dimensions*, as well in assigning the distances of the *Planets* from the *Earth*, and from themselves, as in numbring and computing their *magnitude*. So we say that the *Sun* is distant from the *Earth* about 1200 half *Diameters*, the *Moon* 40, &c.

The distance of the Sun and Moon from the Earth.

But seeing in *Geography* we do not only consider the great *Circles* of the *Earth*, as the *Equator*, &c. but also the *Parallels* of the *Equator*. Therefore we must likewise determine how many *miles* or *perches* answer one *degree* in every *Parallel*. We have taken the accounting of the *Perches* out of *Snellius*, but I my self have reckoned up the *miles*; to wit, 1900 *Perches* for a *German mile*; 1500 for a *Belgick* or *Holland mile*: 475 for an *Italian mile*.

A TABLE of the Quantity of one Degree in every Parallel.

The Degrees in which the Parallels are distant from the Equator, or the Elevation of the Poles of the Parallels.

Equator of the	Perch of one degree	Holland miles. mil.	per.	German miles. min.	Italian miles. min.
	28500	19	0	15. 0	60. 0
1	28496	18.	1496	14. 59	59. 56
2	28483	18.	1483	14. 59	59. 55
3	8461	18.	1461	14. 58	59. 52
4	28431	18.	1431	14. 57	59. 50
5	28392	18.	1392	14. 56	59. 46
6	28344	18.	1344	14. 55	59. 40
7	28288	18.	1288	14. 53	59. 37
8	28223	18.	1223	14. 51	59. 24
9	28149	18.	1149	14. 48	59. 12
10	28067	18.	1067	14. 46	59. 4
11	27976	18.	976	14. 43	58. 52
12	27877	18.	877	14. 40	58. 40
13	27769	18.	769	14. 37	58. 28
14	27653	18.	653	14. 33	58. 12
15	27529	18.	529	14. 29	50.
16	27653	18.	453	14. 25	57. 40
17	27255	18.	255	14 21	57. 20
18	27105	18.	105	14. 16	57. 4
19	26947	18.	0	14. 11	56. 44
20	26781	18.	0	14. 6	56. 24
21	26607	17.	1107	14. 0	56. 0
22	26423	17.	925	13. 54	55. 36
23	26234	17.	734	13. 48	55. 12
24	26036	17.	536	13. 42	54. 48
25	25830	17.	330	13. 36	54. 24
26	25616	17.	116	13. 29	54. 0
27	25394	16.	1394	13. 22	53. 28
28	25164	16.	1164	13. 15	53. 0
29	24927	16.	927	13. 7	52. 28
30	24681	16.	681	13. 59	51. 56
31	24429	16.	429	12. 51	51. 24
32	24169	16.	169	12. 43	50. 52
33	23902	15.	1402	12. 35	50. 20
34	23628	15.	1128	12. 26	49. 44
35	23346	15.	846	12. 17	49. 8
36	23057	15.	557	12. 8	48. 32
37	22761	15.	261	11. 59	47. 56
38	22458	15.	0	11. 49	47. 16
39	22149	14.	1149	11. 39	46. 36
40	21832	14.	832	11. 29	46. 0
41	21509	14.	509	11. 19	45. 16
42	21180	14.	180	11. 9	44. 36
43	20843	13.	1343	10. 58	43. 52
44	20501	13.	1001	10. 47	43. 8
45	20152	13.	652	10. 36	42. 24

The Latitude	Of a Perch of one degree.	olland miles. mil.	per.	German miles. min.	Italian miles. min.
46	19798	13.	298	10. 25	41. 40
47	19437	13.	0	10. 14	41. 0
48	19070	12.	1070	10. 2	40. 8
49	18698	12.	698	9. 50	39. 20
50	18319	12.	319	9. 38	38. 32
51	17936	11.	1436	9. 26	37. 44
52	17546	11.	1046	9. 14	37. 0
53	17152	11.	652	9. 2	36. 8
54	16752	11.	252	8. 49	35. 26
55	16347	10.	1347	8. 36	34. 24
56	15932	10.	937	8. 23	33. 32
57	15522	10.	522	8. 10	32. 40
58	15103	10.	103	7. 57	31. 40
59	14671	9.	1179	7. 44	31. 0
60	14250	9.	750	7. 30	30. 0
61	13817	9.	317	7. 16	29. 4
62	13380	8.	1380	7. 2	28. 8
63	12939	8.	939	6. 48	27. 12
64	12494	8.	994	6. 34	26. 16
65	12045	8.	45	6. 20	25. 20
66	11592	7.	1092	6. 6	24. 24
67	11136	7.	636	5. 52	23. 28
68	10676	7.	176	5. 38	22. 32
69	10213	6.	1213	5. 23	21. 32
70	9748	6.	748	5. 8	20 32
71	9279	6.	279	4. 53	19. 32
72	8807	5.	1307	4. 38	18. 32
73	8333	5.	933	4. 23	17. 32
74	7846	5.	346	4. 8	16. 32
75	7376	4.	1376	3. 53	15. 32
76	6895	4.	895	3. 38	14 32
77	6411	4.	411	3. 23	13. 32
78	5925	3.	1425	3. 8	12. 32
79	5438	3.	938	2. 52	11. 28
80	4949	3.	449	2. 36	10. 24
81	4458	2.	1458	2. 20	9. 20
82	3966	2.	966	2. 5	8. 20
83	3473	2.	473	1. 50	7. 20
84	2979	1.	1479	1. 34	6. 12
85	2484	1.	984	1. 18	5. 12
86	1988	1.	488	1. 3	4. 12
82	1492	0.	1492	0. 47	3. 12
88	995	0.	995	0. 31	2. 4
89	497	0.	497	0. 16	1. 4
90	0	0	0	0. 0	0. 0

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

THE *Pythagorical motion*, or turning the *Earth* about, as with a *wheel* (not that quaking and ſhaking) is the cauſe of very many *Celeſtial appearances* according to the *Copernicans* opinion, ſeeing that without it every place would have a perpetual conſtancie of theſe. But indeed there is no property or quality of the *Earth*, concerning which there can be greater diſputations, ſith that not very long ago it hath ſuffered the Cenſure of the *Church* of *Rome*. Yet becauſe to many men it ſeemeth likely to be true, that ſuch a *motion* of the *Earth* may be given, therefore I will endeavour briefly to unfold the ſame.

The Pythagorical motion of the Earth is the cauſe of many Celeſtial appearances.

It is not unknown to any of the very Vulgar ſort, that the *Sun*, *Moon*, and all the *Stars* of *Heaven* appear every day, that is, in the ſpace of 24 *hours* to be moved from Eaſt to Weſt, and commonly to return to the ſame places of *Heaven*. It muſt therefore needs be that either they are really moved, or that we are moved, and that our motion or moving be imputed to the *Stars*: For if two things change their diſtance, one of them at leaſt was moved; which principle is moſt manifeſt.

The Motion of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, and their appearances.

That the *Earth* ſtandeth ſtill, and that the *Stars* with the *Heavens* are moved, was, and is yet, the common opinion of *Aſtronomers*, which are called *Ptolomaians*, or of ſuch as follow the Doctrine of *Ptolomy*; yet the *Pythagoreans* long ago maintained that the *Stars* held their place conſtantly without budging from thence, and that the *Earth* was rouled and wheeled about its *Center*; one of whom was the famous *Ariſtarchus* of *Samos*, who for his defending this Opinion, was by his Adverſary accuſed of prophaning and violating *Religion*, before the moſt famous and ſevere *Bench* of the *Areopagites*, but he was nevertheleſs quitted by the ſentence of thoſe moſt ſincere *Judges*. Yet this Opinion found but few Abettors, inſomuch that many Ages it was as it were buried in oblivion: ſo that there was no mention in *Schools* made thereof, until ſuch time that eminent Aſtronomer *Copernicus*, ſome two or three Ages paſt made it famous, and ſo prevailed therein, that very many excellent *Aſtronomers* imbraced this Opinion, and confirmed it with ſundry Arguments and Reaſons; among whom not long ſince flouriſhed *Kepler* the Emperour's profeſt *Mathematician*, and *Galilæus* of *Galilee* the *Italian Mathematician* to the grand Duke of *Tuſcany* or *Florence*, and *Lansbergius Belga*. And becauſe there is a twofold motion of the *heavenly Bodies* perceived by us; the firſt whereof is, whereby all the *Stars*, as well fixed, as *Planets*, ſeem with equal time, to wit, in 24 *hours* to be carried round about the *Earth*, and to riſe, and keep their ſouthing and ſetting: The ſecond motion is, that which is called proper, whereby the *Planets* are obſerved with a different or diverſe motion, as alſo are the *fixed Stars* to be carried from Weſt to Eaſt. The *Ptolomaians* affirm that both theſe *motions* are in the *Stars* themſelves, or their *Orbs*: But the *Copernicans* aſcribe that firſt *motion* not to the carrying about of the *Earth* only from one place to another, but to the wheeling and turning about of it remaining in her own place, about her own *Axil*, from Weſt to Eaſt, (ſuch as is ſeen to be implanted in all the *Stars*:) yet they acquit the *fixed Stars*, as alſo the *Sun* from the aforeſaid ſecond *motion*, and attribute the apparent *motion* of theſe to the carrying of the *Earth* about the *Sun*, and to the inclination of the *Axil*, notwithſtanding they leave the ſaid ſecond *motion* to the reſt of the *Planets*. Forſooth they deny the *Sun* to be a *Planet*, but place the *Earth* in his ſtead: and they preſer the *Sun* into the *Ptolomaian* place of the *Earth*, to wit, the *Center* of the whole World, foraſmuch as that is the cauſe which maketh the *Earth*, *Saturn*, *Jupiter*, *Mars*, *Venus*, and *Mercury* to turn round about.

The opinion of the *Ptolomaians* and *Pythagoreans* concerning the motion of the Stars, &c.

The opinion of *Copernicus* therein.

These are the Reasons of this Opinion.

Of the great number of the Stars which seem to perform their circuit in 24 hours.

1. Because so great is the number of the *Stars* which seem to perform their *Circuit* in 24 *hours* about the *Earth*, and this appearance may be declared by the *motion* of the *Earth*, only remaining in her place; therefore it is more agreeable to reason to determine this *motion*, rather then that; insomuch as when we sit in a *Ship*, and sayling nearer to a Station or Harbour of many *Ships*, which in the mean while seem as it were to approach or sayl to us, yet we do not ascribe a motion or sayling to them. And seeing nature doth in no case work by many things, that which she can perform with a few; it is likely in this business also that that is so observed and kept by her.

Of the swift motion of the Stars, &c.

2. Because the swiftness of that *motion* of the *Stars* would be incredible, and such as would surpass all our imagination: for seeing that they are distant from the *Earth* almost an infinite space, and that most vast *circuit* ought to be run in one *minute* of an *hour*; at least, that they should be carried through 100000 *miles*. Contrariwise, if this motion should be ascribed to the *Earth*, she remains still in her place, neither need we to fear the least swiftness, because she is turned about her own *Axil* as a *Wheel*.

The vastness of the Celestial Bodies compared with the body of the Earth.

3. There accrues a greater force to this Argument, if we compare the huge vastness of the *Celestial Bodies* with the Body of the *Earth*: for seeing that the *Sun* at least is 200 times bigger then the *Earth*; but the *fixed Stars* are in a manner 1000 times bigger; to what man can it not be made more probable, that the *Earth* is turned about its own *Axil* by a natural *motion*, than that so huge *Celestial Bodies* should be moved from place to place?

Of the solidity of the Celestial Orbs according to *Tycho Brahe*.

4. Because all the most famous *Astronomers* being compelled with *Tycho Brahe* by the appearances of the *Stars*, &c. do now deny that the *Celestial Orbs* are solid and hard, which appearances the ancients used for proving the more easie supposition of the motion of the *Stars*; therefore the carrying or wheeling of them about the *Earth*, seemeth more incredible. Yea, they deny the *Orbs* to be solid, because if these were so, a mutual penetration of the *Orbs* must needs be granted, seeing that some *Planets* are found frequently in the *Sphere* of some other.

No reason for the motion of the Stars about the Earth.

5. No reason can be given why the *Stars* can be moved about the *Earth*, when as contrariwise there may some reason be given, why the *Earth* and the rest of the *Planets* may be moved about the *Sun*.

Of the Pole and Axil.

6. Neither is the *Pole* nor *Axil* real, about which the *Stars* are determined to be moved: contrariwise in the *Earth* there is both *Pole* and *Axil*.

The sayling of Ships from West to East, more easie, than from East to West.

7. Because the *sayling* of *Ships* from West to East is more easie, than from East to West: For out of *Europe* into the *Indies* they sayl in about four *months*; when as in their return home it is about six *months*. And this is because in their *Voyage* thither they are carried or moved into the same point with the *Earth*; but in their return they are moved or carried into the contrary.

From the moving of the Earth, the Celestial appearances, &c. may be declared.

8. Because all the *Celestial appearances*, the rising and setting of the *Stars*, the increase or lengthning of the *days*, &c. may be evidently declared, if we maintain the *Earth* to be moved: But most especially the commodiousness and necessity of this *Hypothesis* is seen in those admirable properties of the *Planets*, to explicate which the *Ptolomaicks* are compelled to invent many *Circles*, *Epicycles*, and *Eccentricks* without any reason: But the *Copernicans* do so derive them from the second motion of the *Earth* about the *Sun* with easie labour, insomuch that thereby they can make the cause of them manifest, and so easie, that the very unlearned may understand them; to wit, first, why the *Planets* may seem sometimes to be retrograde or go backwards, and indeed *Saturn* oftner and longer than *Jupiter*, *Jupiter* than *Mars*, &c. sometimes to be carried with a swifter motion, and sometimes to be stationary. 2ly, Why *Venus* and *Mercury* can never the whole night long be seen. 3ly, Why *Venus* can never depart any greater distance from the *Sun* than 50 *degrees*, but *Mercury* no greater

greater then thirty *degrees*, and therefore those two *Planets* can never be seen to be opposite to the *Sun*. Fourthly, why *Venus* in the evening of the same day after the *Sun* and in the morning before the *Sun*, may be seen.

I forbear to bring hither any more *appearances*; but they are the principal, from which I think an Argument of greatest moment may be fetcht for this Motion of the *Earth*; when as by this Motion of the *Earth* they may be so commodiously declared, that it should rather be admired, if the *Earth* could not be moved by such evident appearances.

These are the easier Arguments by which the *Copernicans* would evince the motion of the *Earth*, which although they be not demonstrative, yet they make this *hypothesis* more probable, than that which determines the *Heaven* to be moved: for one of them must needs be admitted.

The Reasons of some against the moving of the Earth, as the *Ptolomaians*.

But these Reasons which some men (to wit, the *Ptolomaians*) alledge to the contrary, are easily dissolved; which are these: First, that the *Earth* is unfitting for motions by reason of its ponderosity. Secondly, that the parts of the *Earth* are naturally moved with a *strait motion* to the *Center*; therefore a *circular motion* is contrary to the nature thereof. Thirdly, if the *Earth* should be moved, a *stone* cast down from a *Tower* could not fall to the foot thereof. Fourthly, a *bullet* shot out of a *piece* of *Ordnance* towards the East, at some mark, it could not come home to it or hit it, if the *mark* with the whole *Earth* were moved towards the East, or at least the hitting the mark should be more swift, than if the *bullet* were shot towards the East. Fifthly, neither the *Towers* nor *buildings* could stand stedfast, but would fall by reason of that *motion* of the *Earth*; neither could men be without giidiness, by reason of the whirling about of the *Earth*. Sixthly, because we see that the *Stars* change their place, but not the *Earth*. Seventhly, because the *Earth* is in the Center of the World, but the *Center* is not moved. Eightly, because the *holy Scriptures* do confirm the stability or stedfastness of the *Earth*.

The aforesaid Reasons of the *Ptolomaians* answered by the *Copernicans*.

Yet indeed the *Copernicans* to these Arguments use to answer after this manner. To the *first* they Answer, denying the whole *Earth* to be heavy; for ponderosity is a tendency of the parts to their whole homogeneous (of the same kind) and such a heavines is also discovered in the parts of the *Sun* and *Moon*, and yet notwithstanding neither the *Sun* nor *Moon* is said to be heavy.

To the *second* they Answer, That that right *motion* of the parts of the *Earth*, not of the whole *Earth*, and the *circular motion* thereof, doth not hinder the strait carrying of those parts, which is evidenced by the parts of the *Sun* and *Moon*.

To the *third* Argument they reply in a threefold manner: First, that such heavy things are not primarily carried to the *Center* of the *Earth*, and therefore are born by a very short line to the *superficies* thereof; as *Iron* tendeth not to the *Center* of the *Loadstone*, but to the *Loadstone*. Secondly, the whole *Air* cleaveth to the *Earth*, and is moved together with her; therefore all such heavy things being thrown together downwards, get this *circular motion*, and are moved as it were in a Vessel. And Thirdly, *Gassendus* by frequent experience hath demonstrated, that if any thing be cast from a moved body, that which is so cast is also moved with that motion of the moved body; as for example, a *stone* thrown down from the top of the *Mast* of a *Ship* moved most swiftly, is nevertheless not left by the *Ship*, but falls down to the foot of the *Mast*; and from the foot of the *Mast* a *bullet* being shot perpendicularly out of a *hand-Gun*, falleth again perpendicularly: therefore the alledged Objection is nothing worth.

The Opinion of *Gassendus* therein.

To the *fourth* Reason, they answer in the same manner as unto the third.

To the *fifth* they say, That some such thing hath no place, because the *motion* is equal, neither doth it dash against another body: and the *buildings* as it were heavy bodies and homogeneous, or of like to the *Earth*, are moved as in

in a *Ship*; for we find in a *Ship* moved very ſwiftly, or ſlowly, the *bodies* ſet upright therein are not overthrown; yea *Cups* and *pots* full of *Wine*, or other liquor, ſhed nothing thereof at all.

To the *ſixth* we ſay, That the change of the *Stars* place is not perceived, but we find the change of their ſituation in reſpect of our ſelves; but this mutation of poſition may be obſerved and be, whether we be moved with the *Earth*, or the *Stars* be moved, we being ſtedfaſt, or alſo both we and the *Stars*.

In the *ſeventh* Objection, both the *major* and *minor propoſition* is falſe, or at leaſt doubtful.

To the *eighth* they reply, Firſt, that the *holy Scripiure* in *phyſical* or *natural things* doth ſpeak according to appearances and the capacity of the Vulgar; for example, when the *Moon* with the *Sun* is called a *great light*, becauſe it was created to give light to the Night, whenas indeed the *Moon* is not great in reſpect of the *Stars* and *Earth*, neither hath ſhe any light of her own proper nature, nor doth ſhe give light in all Nights to the *Earth*. So the *Scripture* ſaith, that the *Sun* goeth to the extreameſt part of the *Earth*, and that he returneth to that end again, when as notwithſtanding there is no ſuch end or furthermoſt part. So in the book of *Job*, a plane and ſquare figure is attributed to the *Earth*, under whom *Pillars* are ſet, upon which it leaneth; which indeed muſt not at all be ſo underſtood, as the very Vulgar well know. There might more places be alledged hither; but theſe are ſufficient: For the *holy Scriptures* were not given to us, thereby to play the *Philoſophers*, but to practice Piety. Secondly, certain places of *Scripture* are wont to be alledged, which ſpeak not concerning the immobility thereof, but concerning its conſtancy and durance, as that place which we have brought hither out of *Job*.

Of the *Moon*.

Of the *Sun*.

Thus have we briefly declared of what ſort the motion may be, which the *Copernicans* aſcribe to the *Earth*, of which a more exquiſite explication is uſually given in *Aſtronomy*. But that being ſuppoſed, all thoſe things are to be applied to the *Earth*, which are wont to be conſidered in a *Globe* turned round about, to wit, the *Axil* about which it is turned is one of the *Diameters*: the *Poles* are the *extremities* or two *points*, which are not moved: the greater *circle* or *periphery*, according to which the circumrotation or wheeling about is made, and its *parallels*. Now let us ſee concerning the ſwiftneſs of that *motion*. The firſt *motion* by which the *Earth* is turned round about his *Axil*, cannot be ſeen and conſidered in the whole *Earth* at once, but in divers places it is alſo different, to wit, how much the nearer the place is to the *Equator*, with ſo much the greater ſwiftneſs and ſpace it is moved; but the greateſt *motion* is in the places that lie in the *Equator*. For indeed, becauſe every place of the *Earth* in twenty four hours, is rouled about by the ſpace of a whole *periphery*, to wit, by 360 *degrees*; therefore the ſpace of one hour is found. If 360 be divided by 24, the quotient is fifteen, which are ſo many *degrees*. Theſe are the *degrees*, by which the place lying in the *Equator*, or without it, is turned about in one hour; but they make, if the place lye in the *Equator*, two hundred twenty five *German miles*, whence ſhe will be turned in four *minutes* of an *hour* through one *degree*, that is fifteen Miles.

Of the *Axil*, *Poles*, *Periphery*, *Parallels*, &c. of the Globe.

Of the motion of the *Earth*; its difference, ſwiftneſs, &c.

But the places lying without the *Equator* towards either of the *Poles*, are in the ſpace of the ſame *hour* wheeled about by ſo many *degrees*, but ſuch as are much leſs; forſooth the reaſon is the ſame between the ſwiftneſs of the *motion* and the diſtance of two places, as is between the *ſigns* of the *Arches* by which thoſe places are diſtant from the *Pole*: for example, the diſtance of *Amſterdam* from the *Equator*, or the *elevation* of the *Pole*, is 52 *degrees*, 23 *minutes*. So the diſtance from the *Pole* is 37 *degrees*, 37 *minutes*, whoſe *ſign* is 61037. Let us take one place to be in the *Equator*, whoſe diſtance from the *Pole* is 90 *degrees*, his *ſign* is 100000. But the place under the *Equator* in four *minutes* is carried through 15 *miles*, and in an *hour* is carried through 225 *miles*. Wherefore by the *Rule of Three*, as 100000 are to 61037,

The diſtance of *Amſterdam* from the Equator, or the Elevation of the Pole.

ſo

ſo fifteen to nine miles, or as 225 to 135 *miles*; therefore *Amſterdam* every hour by this motion is carried through 135 *miles*.

But the diſcovery of this is much eaſier by the *Table*, which we have ſet in the end of the foregoing *Chapter*: For the *diviſion* of 360 *degrees* being made by twenty four *hours*, we find that any place every *hour* is moved through fifteen *degrees* of his own *Circle*, and therefore that it is moved through one *degree* in four *minutes*. If we therefore enter that *Table* with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, or diſtance from the *Equator* of that place propoſed, we ſhall find the *miles* ſet down at the *degrees* of the given *Elevation*, which are due to the motion of the place propoſed in the ſpace of four *minutes*; for example, At *Stockholme* the *elevation* of the *Pole* is about 60 *degrees*, and in the *Table* at the *degree* 60, I find ſeven *miles* to anſwer with one *degree*; therefore I ſay, that *Stockholme* is moved about in four *minutes* by ſo many *miles*.

The Elevation of the Pole at *Stockholme*.

So great is the firſt *motion* conſidered in the places of the *Earth*; but the ſecond *motion* is of the whole *Earth* from place to place, and all the parts or places thereof are moved with an equal ſwiftneſs, and by equal *peripheries*. The quantity hereof dependeth of the diſtance of the *Earth* from the *Sun*, and is performed in a whole years ſpace, and thereby the *Earth* every day moveth through about one *degree*.

The ſecond motion of the whole *Earth*, which is moved with an equal ſwiftneſs, and by equal *peripheries*.

Concerning the third *motion* of the *Earth*, becauſe it hath a more hard conſideration, I leave it to be treated of by *Aſtronomers*, becauſe in *Aſtronomy* there is a neceſſity of ſuppoſing it. Indeed *Origanus* hath raiſed a Controverſie concerning the ſecond *motion* alſo, thinking the firſt *motion* to be convenient for the *Earth*, but that the ſecond ſhould be left for the *Sun* and fixed *Stars*; but the *Phænomena's* or appearances in the motions of the *Planets*, which we have alledged before, do ſufficiently enough maintain the Motion of the *Earth*.

CHAP. VI.

Concerning the ſituation or place of the Earth, in reſpect of the Planets and Stars.

THe conſideration of the *Earths* ſituation in this whole ſyſteme of the *World* in reſpect of other *Planets*, hath a contemplation ſuitable to that which we have alledged concerning the Motion of the *Earth* in the foregoing Chapter: For the common Opinion of *Philoſophers* and *Aſtronomers*, according to *Ptolomy*, hath decreed, that the *Earth* takes up the *Center* of this whole Univerſe, ſo that ſhe is converſant in the middle of all the *Stars* and *Planets*. But they of *Copernicus* his Sect, with the ancient *Pythagoreans*, place the *Sun* in the *Center* of all the Stars; but they ſet the *Earth* as it were a *Planet* between *Mars* and *Venus*, and they think that ſhe is carried there about the *Sun* with a yearly courſe or ſpace, which is underſtood better by the *Diagram* or deſcription thereof. Yet notwithſtanding therein do theſe two differing Opinions agree, that both confeſs, that the *Center* of that firſt *motion*, whereby the *Stars* ſeem to us in the ſpace of twenty four *hours* to be carried about, is in the *Earth*. For both *Aſtronomy* and *Geography* do want this Suppoſition, inſomuch that whether you follow the *Ptolomaican* or *Pythagorean* Opinion, the firmneſs and certainty of *General Aſtronomy* and *Geography* loſeth nothing: For the difference of Opinions conſiſteth in this, that the *Ptolomaians* will have this motion to be in the *Stars* themſelves; but the *Pythogoreans* is to be the *Earth*, the *Stars* in the mean while reſting, and never moving; neither of which is it neceſſary either for common *Aſtronomy* or *Geography* to determine.

The Earth according to the Opinion of the Philoſophers and Aſtronomers of *Ptolomy*, takes up the Center of the Univerſe.

The *Sun* according to the *Copernicans*, the Center of the Univerſe.

See Scheme.

According

The placing the *Sun*, *Earth*, and other Planets, according to the *Ptolomaians* and *Copernicans*.

According to the *Ptolomaians* this is the placing of the Planets to the Earth and fixed Stars; The *Earth*, *Moon*, *Mercury*, *Venus*, *Sun*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and the *fixed Stars*.

According to the *Copernicans*, such is the situation or placing; The *Sun* is placed in the middle of the consistence or systeme of the World, as the *heart*, or *fire*; next to him the Orb of *Mercury*, *Venus*, the *Earth*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and the *fixed Stars*.

If you demand, how much the *Earth*, and we being on the Earth, are distant from the *Planets*, you must know that the *distance* is not always the same, but is changed every day, and therefore *Astronomers* do reckon up three *degrees* of *distances*, *viz.* the least, the mean, and the greatest. The mean *distance* of the *Earth* from the rest of the *Planets*, is according to many *Astronomers* this following:

The mean distance of the *Earth* from the other Planets.

The *Earth* is distant from the *Moon* with its sixty half *Diameters*. From *Mercury*, 110. From *Venus*, seven hundred. From the *Sun*, 1150. From *Mars*, about five thousand. From *Jupiter*, about 11000: And from *Saturn*, 18000.

But yet indeed the distance of *Mars*, *Jupiter*, *Saturn*, and the *fixed Stars*, is altogether uncertain, by reason of the defect of the *parallaxy* or *mutual changing*. In the *Copernicans Hypothesis*, the distance is varied not only from the motion of the *Planets*, but also from the motion of the *Earth* it self.

The Reasons of either Opinion, to wit, of the *Ptolomean* and *Copernican*, concerning the place of the *Earth*, are almost the same with them, which in the precedent *Chapter* we have alledged: for this disputation hath great affinity with the same. For if you ascribe and allow the second motion to the *Sun*, which is called the proper motion; not the *Sun*, but the *Earth* shall be in the midst; but if you allow that second Motion to the *Earth*; not the *Earth*, but the *Sun* shall be in the middle. These Arguments following may be said for the *Copernicans* Opinion.

The *Sun* not only the fountain of Light, but also the vital Spirit of the whole Universe.

1. The *Sun* is not only the Fountain of Light, which as a most clear shining torch illuminates the *Earth*, *Moon*, *Venus*, and without doubt the rest of the *Planets*; but he is the *fire-hearth* of *heat* and *vital spirit*, by which this whole Universe seemeth to be cherished and sustained. Therefore it is probable that he holdeth the middle place, and that these are moved round about him.

2. It is more likely that the *Earth* should be moved about the *Sun*, that together with the rest of the *Planets*, she may receive *light* and *heat* from him.

The *Sun* a vast body, &c.

3. The *Sun* being placed in the midst, some cause is rendred why the rest of the *Planets* and the *Earth* may be carried round about him, to wit, because the *Sun* is a most vast body, and endowed with great *vertues* and *forces*, therefore he rowleth and stirreth up the rest of the *Planets* to their motion. And this Reason especially taketh place, if we admit *Keplers Hypothesis* concerning the motion of the *Planets*.

Spots in the *Sun*.

4. The Observations of *Galilæus* and *Scheiner*, concerning the *spots* in the *Sun*, prove, that the *Sun* is moved about his *Axil*. In the same manner therefore the rest of the *Planets* have their cause of going about, neither seems it consistent with reason, that any other should be attributed to him.

5. If we allow the *Earth* a place between *Mars* and *Venus*, and allow the Center to the *Sun*; the motion of every *Planet* fittingly answers and agrees to the distance from the *Center*, which in the *Ptolomaick* Supposition is manifest not to be effected, by the consideration of the motions of the *Sun*, *Venus*, and *Mercury*.

6. Those *Celestial appearances*, which we have used in the former *Chapter*, for the proving the second Motion of the *Earth*, are also valid and efficacious for this place, which I have said must be assigned to the *Earth*, to wit, the *Retrograde* course and station of the *Planets*, and the admirable apparent motions

motions of *Venus* and *Mercury*, &c. For indeed that ſecond motion of the *Earth*, doth before hand ſuppoſe this place, and placing of the *Earth*, or hath it joyned to it ſelf very nearly: But this Argument in my Opinion is the chiefeſt. Yet for the firſt motion of the *Earth* nothing can be fetcht by way of Argument, for gathering thence the ſituation of the *Earth*. For the *Earth* might be in the *Center* of the *World*, if ſhe were without, or wanted the ſecond motion, as *Origanus* alſo determines.

7. So alſo the variation of the diſtance of the *Planets* from the *Earth*, is well declared. Yet notwithſtanding the *Ariſtotelians* and *Platoniſts* oppugn the *Pythagoreans* Opinion with many Arguments, and endeavour to challenge the *Center* of the *Earth* for a place, by theſe Arguments. Firſt, heavy things are carried to the *Center* of the *World*; but the *Earth* is the heavieſt body, therefore it takes up that *Center*. Secondly, heavy things would go from the *Earth* towards the *Center* of the Univerſe, unleſs this *Center* were in the Earth. Thirdly, the *Center* is the ignobleſt place, and the *Earth* alſo is the vileſt part of this Univerſe: therefore it ſhall have the *Center* thereof. Fourthly, if the *Earth* were without the *Center* of the *World*, and motion of the *Stars*, then the *Stars* and *Conſtellations* would be ſeen in ſome ſeaſons of the year, and ſome *days*, bigger than in others. Fifthly, neither would the middle part of Heaven always be conſpicuous, as *Taurus* riſing, the *Scorpion* ſhould ſet, &c. Sixthly, neither would there be *Equinoxes*. Seventhly, neither the *Moon* riſing eclipſed, would the *Sun* ſet, &c. Eightly, neither would the number of Miles in the *Earth* equally anſwer every *degree* in *Heaven*.

The *Ariſtotelians* and *Platoniſts* Arguments about the Earth.

The *Copernicans* do eaſily weaken theſe Reaſons of the *Ariſtotelians*. For the firſt and ſecond is refell'd, becauſe the motion of heavy things is not to the *Center* of the *Univerſe*, but to the *homogeneal body*, as is proved by the parts of the *Moon*, the *Sun*, and *Loadſtone*. The third Reaſon taketh a falſe *major* and *minor* propoſition: For the *Center* is alſo a noble place, and the *Earth* is not ignoble or baſe.

The aforeſaid Reaſons of the *Ariſtotelians*, refuted by the *Copernicans*.

The other Reaſons are eaſily diſproved by *Diagrams* or *Deſcriptions*, this at leaſt being fore-ſuppoſed, that the diſtance of the *Earth* from the *Sun* or *Center*, how great ſoever it be; yet if it be compared with the diſtance of the fixed *Stars* from the *Sun*, it would be ſo little, as that it would have no proportion to it.

Moreover, the Explication of the *Theorem* belongeth to this place, that the diſtance of the *fixed Stars* and *ſuperiour Planets*, *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn*, is ſo great from the *Earth*, that the *half Diameter* of the *Earth* hath no proportion to it; but the diſtance of the *Moon*, *Venus*, and *Mercury*, is not ſo great: touching the *Sun* there is as yet a doubt; ſurely, if there be any proportion of the *half Diameter* of the *Earth*, to the diſtance of the *Earth* from the *Sun*, that will be very ſmall.

The diſtance of the *Moon*, *Venus*, and *Mercury* from the *Earth*, not ſo great, as of *Mars*, *Jupiter*, and *Saturn*.

But the *Theorem* is proved thus; Firſt, the fixed *Stars* and higher *Planets* appear to us to riſe at the ſame moment, at which they would appear to riſe by a right contrived ſupputation and calculation, if we were ſet in the *Center* of the *Earth*: Therefore the diſtance of our place from the *Center* of the *Earth*, that is, the *half Diameter* bears no proportion to the diſtance of the *fixed Stars*. Secondly, if we take the *Meridian* or *Altitude* of a *fixed Star*, or one of the ſuperiour *Planets*, with an *Aſtronomical Inſtrument*, we find the ſame, as if we had obſerved it in the *Center* of the *Earth*: Therefore the *ſemidiameter* of the *Earth* vaniſheth away in reſpect of that diſtance. Thirdly, if there were any proportion, then the diſtance of two *Stars* would be found to be leſſer about the *Horizon*, than about the *Meridian*, becauſe in this poſition they are nearer to the *Earth* almoſt by one *ſemidiameter* of the *Earth*.

The ſame Argument is valid as touching the *Sun* alſo; for his *Diameter* is not found greater in the *Meridian*, than when he is yet on the *Horizon*.

But the *Diameter* of the *Moon* is obſerved to be a little greater in the *Meridian*, than when as yet ſhe is on the *Horizon:* Therefore in the *Meridian* it is ſomewhat nigher to us, to wit, almoſt one *Semidiameter* of the Earth.

CHAP. VII.

Concerning the ſubſtance and conſtitution of the Earth.

WE have in the foregoing *Chapters* conſidered the *qualities* or *properties* of the *Earth*, no regard being taken of its ſubſtance or being. But now theſe being declared; it is fitting we conſider this alſo, that we may know what kind of body the *Earth* is, and how its parts cohere together; the which although it may rather rather ſeem natural, yet becauſe it is requiſite for the perfect knowledge of the *Earth*, we will here handle briefly, leaving the accurate conſideration thereof to the *Natural Philoſopher*.

Propoſition I.

To declare of what ſimple and ſimilar Bodies the Earth may conſiſt, or be compounded of.

Of the four Elements of the Earth.

There are divers opinions of *Philoſophers* concerning this matter. The *Peripateticks* number four *Elements* of the *Earth*, and the whole *ſublunary World*, being now ſufficiently known to the very Vulgar, *Fire*, *Air*, *Water*, and *Earth*. Many of the Ancients, as *Democritus* and *Leucippus*, determined that the whole World conſiſted of very little ſolid pieces, which differ only in their various *figures*, *ſhapes* and *magnitude:* and them many of the later *Philoſophers* do follow; and of late *Carteſius* endeavoured by ſuch an *hypotheſis* to declare all natural appearances.

The three Principles of the Earth by *Chymiſts*.

Chymiſts make three Principles, *Sal*, *Sulphur*, and *Mercury*, to whom ſome do rightly add *Caput mortuum* or the *Dead head*, when as they three are fruitful. But to me, doubtful terms and words being laid aſide, and the things themſelves well conſidered, there ſeem to be five *ſimple Bodies* the firſt Principles of all things, to wit, *Water*, *Oyl* or *Sulphur*, *Salt*, *Earth*, and a certain Spirit which the *Chymiſts* call *Mercury*. For indeed all *Bodies* and the parts of the *Earth* are reſolved into thoſe five *Elementary ſubſtances*. Notwithſtanding I deny not that thoſe differ not ſo much in eſſence, as in the ſingular variety of their *ſhapes* and *magnitudes*.

By Others, Five ſimple bodies, the firſt principles of all things.

Therefore the whole *Earth* conſiſteth of theſe *ſimple Bodies*, which are divers ways commixed, from whence ariſeth ſo great variety of *Bodies*, which do appear different from one another, and ſimilar or *Bodies* of like parts. But the more exquiſite declaration of theſe points belong to *Natural Philoſophy*, which I ſhall have occaſion to treat of more at large in the firſt Volume of my Book of the *Arts* and *Sciences*, now ready for the Preſs.

Propoſition

Propoſition II.

The Earth is divided into dry and moiſt parts, or into Earth and Water, to which ſome joyn the Atmoſphere.

This is the vulgar diviſion of *Geographers*, and then the *Water* is taken in a large ſignification for all that is liquid or moiſt, and fluid and running, as the *Land* is taken for the whole dry and conſiſtent part of the *Earth*, and thereby doth embrace and comprehend ſuch various bodies of Nature, to wit, Firſt, *Sand*, *Loom*, *Clay* and *Mineral Earths*, *Chalk*, *Cinnaber*, *Ochre*, *Terra ſigillata* or *Saracens Earth*, *Earth* of *Samos*, *Bole-Armoniack*, with divers other kinds of *Earth*. Secondly, *Stones* of various ſorts, the chief among which are *Diamonds*, *Emeralds*, *Rubies*, *Saphirs*, &c. Thirdly, *Mettals*, among which are *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, *Mercury* or *Quickſilver*, *Iron*, *Steel*, &c. Fourthly, *Brimſtone*, *Salts*, *Niter*, *Alom*, *Bitumen*, *Vitriol*, *Antimony*, &c. Fifthly, *Herbs*, *Plants*, &c. Of the Land, and its various bodies of Nature.

To the *Water* are referred, firſt the *Seas*; ſecondly, *Rivers* and ſweet *Waters*; thirdly, *Lakes* and *Fens*, or *Marſhes*; fourthly, *Mineral Waters*, as *hot Baths*, *ſowr Waters*, &c. Of the Water and its parts.

The *Atmoſphere* is that thin and ſubtile Body, which girts and encompaſſes the *Earth* towards Heaven, and contains the *Air*, *Clouds*, *ſhowers of Rain*, &c. Therefore into theſe three Parts the Earth is fitly divided. Of the Atmoſphere, which encompaſſes the Earth.

Propoſition III.

To expound how the Earth and Waters cleave or hold together, and make the Land.

1. The *Land*, that is, the dry part of the *Earth*, is not bounded with one and that even *ſuperficies* or *ſurface*; but ſhe hath many hollow *Caves*, many parts lifted up aloft. In her *Cavities*, *caves* or *hollows*, which are here and there found round about the whole *Earth*, the *Sea* or *Ocean* is contained; and therefore part of the Earthly *ſuperficies* is covered with *Waters*. Thoſe *hollows* or *cavities* are not made of an even hollowneſs, but have here and there *Rocks* and elevated parts, and elſewhere they have *Gulphs* and *ſwallows* ſunk very deep. So the part of the *Earth* appearing out above the *Waters*, hath certain (as it were) *Navels* in its middle, and ſome parts are more or leſs raiſed up, or ſunk down, than others. So it cometh to paſs, that the *Water* environing the whole *Earth* is hindred, that it overwhelms not the whole *Earth*, but the higher parts, and ſuch as appear above the *Waters* are *Iſlands*, of which ſome are great and ſome ſmall. The *Earth* not bounded with one Superficies, but hath hollow Cavities.

2. Beſides that continual Channel in the *Earth* in the outward *ſuperficies*, within alſo in the ſolid body of the *Earth* there are innumerable *Mouths*, *holes*, *ſwallows*, *windings*, *conveyances*, *deeps*, *pipes*, and huge vaſt *Receivers*, in ſome of which there is the *Sea*, which by that ſecret conveyance are joyned to the Channel of the *common Sea*; in ſome again there is *Sweet Waters*, *Rivers*, *Streams*: In ſome *ſpirits*, or elſe a *ſulphury* and *ſmoking* ſubſtance. *Seneca* ſaith rightly, *He gives too much way to his eye-ſight, who believeth not, that there are in the hidden and ſecret boſom of the Earth* Bays *of a vaſt Sea*. Neither do I perceive what may hinder, that there may not be ſome *Sea-ſhore*, and the *Sea* received by hidden paſſages. There is therefore no cauſe of doubting of there being many hollows in the very ſolid *Earth*: For verily we conjecture at it by theſe means: Mouths, holes Pipes, & other conveyances in the body of the Earth.

Firſt, by the *Rivers*, which are found in many places where Earth is digged, even to a notable depth, which is frequent in *Mines*.

Secondly, in ſome places the profundity of the *Sea* is beyond all ſounding or meaſure.

Thirdly, there are ſome *Caves* in the *Earth*. In the Weſtern part of *Hiſpaniola* is a *Mountain* of a great height, being hollow within with many

Caves, in which *Rivers* of *Waters* are thrown down headlong with ſo great ſound and ruſhing noiſe of ſtreams, that the very fall of thoſe *Waters* may be heard five miles diſtance.

Fourthly, ſome *Gulphs* or *Whirlpools* are found in the *Sea*.

Fifthly, *Earthquakes* do alſo prove the being of Cavities under the *Earth*.

Sixthly, ſome *Rivers* bury themſelves under the *Earth*, as *Niger*, *Tigris*, &c.

Seventhly, *Salt-ſprings*, which without doubt (for the greateſt part) ſpring and flow from the *Sea*, are found in many places.

Eightly, ſo in many places the grounds at the entrance of men walking, tremble and ſhake, as about the Abby of St.*Omer* in *Flanders* in the Province of *Brabant*, (*die Peel.*)

Propoſition IV.

The Superficies or ſurface of the Lands is continual; but that of the Waters is not ſo.

Indeed the *Superficies* of the *Earth* or *Land* appearing out above the *Waters* is continued, or always the ſame to the *ſuperficies* of the *Channels* of the *Sea*; and this of the *Sea* again is continued to the other parts of the *Land* appearing above. So there is one continual *ſuperficies* of the *Ocean*, the *Baies*, and *Rivers*, but not of all *Waters*; becauſe there are ſome *Lakes*, which are not joyned with the *Ocean* in the *ſuperficies*, as the *Lake Parime*, and the *Caſpian Sea*.

One continual ſuperficies of the Ocean, Bays, and Rivers.

Propoſition V.

It is certain how, or in what manner the parts of the Earth, which are removed from the ſurface, that is, from our habitation towards the Center.

Some men think, that the *Water* is in the bottom about the *Center* of the *Earth*: but it is moſt likely true, that the *Earth* occupies that place. *Gilbert* an *Engliſh* man is of opinion, that the body of the *Earth* within, is nothing elſe but a moſt hard *Loadſtone*; but that thoſe parts to which men have admittance by digging, and in which *Herbs* grow and we alſo live, are as it were the ſhell or cruſt of the *Earth*, wherein continual generations and corruptions are made.

The body of the *Earth* within (according to *Gilbert*, an *Engliſh* man) is a hard *Loadſtone*.

* *Carteſius* his Opinion is not much different from this, who thinketh, that there are three *Regions* or *Parts* of divers ſubſtance in the body of the *Earth*. The moſt inward *Region* of the *Earth* he deemeth to be about the *Center* thereof; the ſecond he judgeth to be thick and dusky, of very ſmall parts; the third he thinketh (wherein Men are employed) to be made up of little parcels, not well cleaving together.

* See Fig. But *Carteſius* is of a different opinion. See Scheme.

But indeed touching this thing, there can ſcarcely any certainty be affirmed. It is manifeſt by the *hot-Baths*, that in very many places under the Earth, *fire* and *fumes* are lifted up from *Sulphur*.

Propoſition VI.

The conſiſtency or ſtanding, and faſt cleaving together of the Earth, is from Salt.

The *Artificial* reſolving of the Parts of the *Earth* ſheweth, that in all *Earths* may be found a certain kind of *Salt*, and ſo much the more: as the harder the body is, (a few *Oily* ones being excepted;) as in *Mettals*, *Stones*, &c. and that the concretion or hard growing together of all things is by

In all kinds of *Earths* may be found a certain kind of Salt.

by reaſon of *ſalt*, is manifeſt by *ſtones*, which we may by Art make very hard with *ſalt*: but if you ſeparate the *ſalt* from the *earth*, ſhe will no longer cleave or ſtick together, but will be a *powder*; neither can it be reduced to hardneſs without the admixtion of *ſalt* thereto.

Propoſition VII.

The kinds of Earths are divers ways mixed together in the Earth.

Of Metals found in Mines.

Thus in *Mines* are found ſmall pieces of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Lead*, &c. not heaped together, and joyned apart from others, but both mixed among themſelves, and alſo with unprofitable *earth*, according to the leaſt parts, that *Artificers* not at the firſt ſight, but by divers ſigns do find out what may be contained in any *Metalline earth*. In the ſame manner in the *Fields*, *ſand* is mixed with *clay* or *loam*, *lime*, *ſalt*, &c. When as on a certain time at *Amſterdam* for making a *Well*, the *earth* was digged out, even to the depth of 232 foot; theſe ſorts of *earth* were ſhewed to the beholders, *viz.* of *Garden-earth* 7 foot, of *Black-earth* fitting for *fire*, which is called *Peat*, 9 foot, of *Soft-clay* 9 foot, of *Sand* 8 foot, of *Earth* 4 foot, of *Clay* 10 foot, of *Earth* 4 foot, of *Sand* upon which the *Houſes* of *Amſterdam* are wont to be rammed and paved 10 foot, of *Clay* 2 foot, of *White-loam* 4 foot, of *Dry-earth* 5 foot, of *muddy* 1 foot, of *Sand* 14 foot, of *Sandy-clay* 3 foot, of *Sand* mixt with *Clay* 5 foot, of *Sand* mixt with *Sea-fiſh ſhells* 4 foot, then a bottom of *Clay* to the depth of 102 foot, and laſtly of *loam* 31 foot, where the digging ceaſed, and they came to *Water*. The Figure of which ſee among the Schemes.

Of the different ſorts of Earths, as did appear by the Well digged at *Amſterdam*.

Propoſition VIII.

The Cavities of the Earth, and as well the outward diſpoſition thereof, and the poſition of its parts, are not perpetually the ſame, but are at divers times divers.

The water of the Sea maketh divers changes and ruins in the earth, where likewiſe lye hid Spirits and Sulphureous Subſtances.

Indeed not only the *Water* of the *Sea* maketh divers changes and ruins in the parts of the *earth*; whilſt certain holes are ſtopt up, ſome are made more broad: but alſo *Spirits* and *Sulphury Subſtances* lying hid here and there in the *earth*, when they begin to encreaſe, and to be reſolved into *Vapours*, do impetuouſly ſhake and thruſt forwards the parts of the *earth*, as it is manifeſt by *Earthquakes*. And it is likely that ſuch like motions are made in the interiour parts and *bowels* of the *earth*, the greateſt part of which we feel not, neither perceive.

But we will ſpeak of the mutual changing of the *water* and *earth* in the *Superficies* of the *earth*, in the eighteenth *Chapter*.

The

The *Earth* is divided into *Land* and *Waters*. The Superficies of the Earth extant out of the Water by the Interflux of the Sea, is distinguished into these four parts,

1. Into great *Continents* or great *Islands*, of which four are reckoned by us,
   - 1. The Old World; whose parts are *Asia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*. The bounds of this Continent are: On the North, the *Frozen* and *Tartarian* Ocean. On the East, the *Pacifick* and *Indian* Ocean. On the South, the Southern Ocean. On the West the *Atlantick* Ocean.
   - 2. The New World, or *America*, whose parts are *Meridionalis*, *Septentrionalis*. The bounds of it are: On the North, *Davis Streights*. On the East, the *Atlantick* Ocean. On the South, the *Pacifick* Ocean. On the West, the *Streights* of *Magellan*.
   - 3. The Polary North-land, or *Greenland*, is every where encompassed by the Sea and *Streights*.
   - 4. The South-land, and Land of *Magellan*, yet undiscovered.
2. Into *Peninsulas*, or *Chersonesus*, which are parts of those Continents,
   - Round, whose Latitude and Longitude are equal about, *Africa* it self. *Peloponesus*, the *Chersonesus* of *Grecia*. *Chersonesus Taurica*, or *Tartaria Precopensis*. *Cambaja*.
   - Long, among which are: The *Chersonesus* of *Malacca*, adjoyning to *India*. *Cimbrica* or *Jutland*, adhering to *Holsatia*. *Borea* adjoyning to *Tartaria*. The North and South parts of *America*. *California*. *Jucatan*. The *Chersonesus* of *Thracia*. *Nova Francia*. *Ionia*, *Cindensis*, *Mindensis*.
   - Of Affinity to *Peninsulas*, *Italy*, *Greece*, *Acaia*, *Spain*, *Norway*, *Sweden*, *Lapland*, *Asia minor*, *Arabia*, *Beach* a Region of *Magellan*, and *New Guiney*, *Indostan*, *Cochinchina*, *New-England*, *Monomotapa*, *Camboia*.
3. *Islands*, which may be considered in four sorts, *viz.*
   - Great, as: *England*, *Japan*, *Island*, *Canada*, *Sumatra*; *Madagascar*, *Borneo*, *Nova Zembla*, *California*.
   - Indifferent, as: *Sicilia*, *Ireland*, *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, *Java Major*, *Celebes*, *Creet*; *Luconia*, *Sardinia*, *Friesland*, *Terra Nova*, *Mindanoa*, *Cilan*.
   - Small, as: *Gilolo*, *Amboina*, *Timor*. *Corsica*, *Majorca*, *Cyprus*, *Negropont*. *Sealand*, *Jamaica*.
   - The very small ones, in which we consider:
     1. The more famous, *Solitaria*, *Rhodes*, *Malta*, *Lemnos*, *Helena*, St. *Thomas*.
     2. A knot or heap of *Isles* together, as: The *Canary Isles*. The *Flandrian* or *Caribbe Isles*. The *Hesperides*. Those of the *Gulph* of *Mexico*. Of *Maldives*. Of *Japan*. About *Madagascar*. The *Moluccoes* and *Isles* of *Banda*. The *Philippine Isles*. The *Isles* of *Theeves*. The *Isles* in the *Ægean Sea*. The *Isles* about *England*. The *Isles* of *Solomon*.
4. The *Isthmuses*,
   - Between *Egypt* and *Arabia*, or *Africa* and *Asia*.
   - That of *Corinth* between *Peloponesus* and *Achaia*.
   - The *Isthmus* of *Panama* or *America* the longest of all.
   - Between *Jutland* and *Holsatia*.
   - Between *Malacca* and *India*.

OF

OF
Abſolute Geography.

SECT. III.

Wherein the conſtitution of the Land, *or the dry part of the Earth, in four Chapters is declared.*

CHAP. VIII.

Concerning the natural diviſion of the parts of the Earth, made from the Ocean, flowing round about it.

THE things which in this *Chapter* we ſhall deliver concerning the *diviſion* of the *Earth*, and in the fifteenth *Chapter*, we ſhall teach touching the *diviſion* of the *Sea*, will greatly facilitate the young *Student* in the underſtanding the diſtinction of the *ſurface* and *parts* of the *Earth*; and to fix them the faſter in the memory: they are carefully and fully to be read, and to be compared with the *Terreſtrial Artificial Globe* and *Maps*.

Propoſition I.

A certain portion of *Earth* is covered with *Water*, and a certain part ſtands out above the Surface of the *Water*; but yet there are ſome parts which at ſome time are covered with *Waters*, and ſome parts are free from them and conſpicuous, as many *Iſlands* by *Norway*, *Scotland*, and other *Countries*: Add to theſe the *beds* or *ſhelves* of *Sand* and *Seaſhores*. But ſeeing theſe parts are ſo ſmall, we take no account of them at preſent; neither will we move that Queſtion here, Whether the *Land* takes up the greater part of the *Superficies* of the *Earth*, or whether the *Water*? We will treat of this briefly in the eighteenth *Chapter*. Now we will conſider the part ſtanding up, or extant above the *Waters*, and we will call it *Lands* or *Iſlands*.

Of parts of the Earth covered, and of parts not covered with water.

Pro-

Propoſition II.

The Earth ſtanding out above the waters, not one but many Lands: of which may be five ſorts.

The *Land* or *Earth* ſtanding out above the *Waters* is not one, and continual, but many *Lands* divided and disjoyned from one another by the *Water* flowing in between them. We will make five differences of them, to wit, 1. *The greateſt Lands or Iſlands*; 2. *The great ones*; 3. *The mean ones*; 4. *The little ones*; and 5. *The leaſt ones*. We will treat of the cauſe and original of theſe *Lands* extant or above the *Waters*, or of the *Iſlands*, in the eighteenth *Chapter*; for there will be a more commodious place to treat of this Matter or Subject.

All Lands extant above the waters may be called Iſlands.

But all *Lands* extant above the *Waters* were to be called *Iſlands*, ſeeing that an *Iſland* is no other thing then a *Land* begirt with *Waters*; yet the common uſe of ſpeaking hath taken away from the greateſt *Lands* this name, becauſe that they are ſo great, and of ſuch a huge tract and continuance, that the *Circuit* of the *Water* is thereby the leſs to be perceived. Inſomuch that they are uſually called the *firm Land*, and alſo great *Continents*. And indeed by reaſon of their vaſt bulk and greatneſs, unto which the *magnitude* of other *Iſlands* being compared, is ſmall, they deſerve this peculiar name; therefore we will alſo call them *firm Lands* and *great Continents*.

Propoſition III.

The firm Lands four.

The greateſt *Lands*, *Continents*, or *Iſlands* (not contending with any about their name) are four.

Firſt, the *Old World*; Secondly, the *New World* or *America*; Thirdly, the *Polar Land Artick*, or *Artick World*; and Fourthly, the *South-Land* or *Magellanick Land*.

The old world moſt famous, with its bounds, &c.

The *Old World*, the moſt famous of thoſe four, and only known of the *Ancients*, which we inhabit, is commonly divided by the *Sea* into two parts, but joyned together by an *Iſthmus*, or narrow *neck* of *Land*; one whereof is *Africa*, and the other *Aſia* and *Europe*. It is invironed by the *Ocean* in this manner: from the Eaſt by the *Chinean Ocean* and the *Pacifick Sea*: from the South by the *Indian Ocean* and *Æthiopick Sea*: from the Weſt by the *Atlantick Sea*: and from the North by the *Frozen* or *North Sea*, the *White Sea* and *Tartarian Ocean*.

Africa divided from *Aſia* and *Europe*.

The *diviſion* of this *Continent* of which we have ſpoken, is made by the *Mediterranean Sea* and the *Arabick Bay* or *Red-ſea*. For the diſtance of the *Bays*, that is the *Latitude* or breadth of the intercedent Tract, is not greater then about 30 miles, if which were away, *Africa* would make a peculiar firm Land, and would increaſe the number.

The diſtance of the old world from the new.

The diſtance of the *Old World* towards the Eaſt, is but a very little ſpace from the *New World* or *America*, about the *Streight* of *Anian*, if only this be exiſtent in the Univerſe of Nature. And the diſtance of *Europe* from *America* is alſo very little between *Norway* and *Newfoundland*. Alſo the *Old World* is but a very ſmall diſtance from the *Pole Artick-land* about the *Streight* of *Waigats*, from the *South Polar* or *Magellan* about *New Guiney*.

The new world, with its bounds, &c.

The *New World* or *America* is thus begirt by the *Ocean*; On the Eaſt by the *Atlantick Sea*: On the South by the *Magellanick Streight*; On the Weſt by the *Pacifick Sea*; and on the North by a *Sea* unknown or uncertain, except *Davis Streight*.

This *World* alſo wants but little, but that it may be cut into two *Iſlands*, to wit, at *Panama* and *Nombre de Dios*, where the confluence of the *Pacifick* and *Atlantick Ocean* is by a ſmall Tract of *earth* intercepted. It is diſtant from the *Old World* a very little ſpace, as before noted.

The Polar Artick and South Land, with its bounds, &c.

The *Polar Artick*, and the *South* or *Auſtral Land*, are begirt round with the *Sea*; the firſt with the *North Sea*, whoſe parts are the *Streights* of *Davis*, *Waigats*, and *Anian*. This *South-land* with the *Pacifick Sea*, *Indian Ocean*, and *Magellanick Streight*.

The

The *Polar Artick Land* hath a very little diſtance at the *Streight* of *Waigats* from the *Old World:* from *America* at the *Streight* of *Davis*. But it is removed from the *South-land* by a huge ſpace.

The *Polar Auſtral*, or rather the *South-land*, is very nigh to the *Old World* at the running out Tract of *New Guiney*; as alſo to *America* at the *Streight* of *Magellan*.

But concerning the *South-land*, only we have aſſuredly diſcovered, that it is round about environed with the *Sea*, and is ſeparated from the reſt. Concerning the reſt of the *Lands*, to wit, the *Old World*, *America*, and the *Pole Artick World*, the matter and diſcovery is not yet certain, whether they be round about begirt by the *Sea*, and ſeparated from one another: but yet it is very likely they are ſo, by reaſon of divers *Bays* and *Entrances* of *ſtarts* running within the Earth. The *South-land* only as yet is fully ſailed about; this could not be hitherto performed in the reſt. For the *Old World* as yet hath not been ſailed round beyond *Waigats Streight*, although the whole Weſtern, Southern, Eaſtern ſhore hath been viewed, and that but a little part of the North ſhore remaineth to be diſcovered. *America* hath been ſailed round, only part of her Septentrional ſhore being excepted, by reaſon of the uncertainty of the *Streights* or *narrow Seas*. Thus have we declared the placing of the greateſt *Iſlands* or *Continents*.

Propoſition IV.

We reckon up ten great *Iſlands* on the Surface of the *Land*, which are theſe following: Ten great Iſlands.

1. *Britain*, comprehending *England* and *Scotland*; it is eſteemed the greateſt of all *Iſlands* which are commonly ſo called, thoſe being excluded which in the foregoing *Propoſition* we have related at large.
2. *Japan*, which in *Maps* and *Globes* hath a leſſer magnitude than it ought to have: for they which have been there affirm, that it is as great, if not greater than *Britain*.
3. *Luconia*, one of the *Philippine* Iſles, which alſo from its Metropolitan Town is called *Manilha*.
4. *Madagaſcar* or St. *Laurence*, ſeated on the Eaſtern ſhore of *Africa*.
5. *Sumatra*, one of the *Indian* Iſles.
6. *Borneo*, not far from *Sumatra*.
7. *Iſland*, not far from *Norway*.
8. *Newfoundland*, nigh unto *Canada*.
9. Between *Davis Streight* and *Hudſons Streight* in the Northern Ocean, lyeth a great Iſland about the *Polar Land*, which according to *Viſher's Univerſal Tables*, is in form round.
10. *Nova Zembla*, nigh unto *Ruſſia*.

To theſe is *California* to be alſo numbred, if that be an Iſland, which it is eſteemed to be, and not a part of *America*.

Propoſition V.

We number up ten mean Iſlands on the Surface of the Earth, viz.

1. *Java*, one of the *Indian* Iſles.
2. *Cuba*, nigh unto *Hiſpaniola*.
3. *Hiſpaniola*.
4. *Ireland*, nigh unto *England*.
5. *Crete* or *Candia*, not far from *Greece*.
6. *Sicily*, nigh unto *Italy*.
7. *Ceylan*, one of the *Indian* Iſles.
8. *Mindanao*, one of the *Philippine* Iſles.
9. *Sardinia*, ſeated in the *Mediterranean Sea*.
10. *Celebes* in the *Indian* Ocean.

To theſe may be numbred *Friezland*, an Iſle not far from *Iſland*.

Proposition VI.

Ten little Isles. We will also number ten little Islands on the Surface of the Earth, to wit;

1. *Gilolo*, one of the *Indian* Isles.
2. *Amboina*, not far from *Gilolo*.
3. *Timor*, one of the *Indian* Isles.
4. *Jamaica* in the *Bay* of *Mexico*.
5. *Sealand* in *Denmark*.
6. *Corsica*, seated in the *Mediterranean Sea*.
7. *Eubæa*, now *Negropont*, seated in the *Mediterranean Sea*.
8. *Majorca*, nigh unto *Spain*.
9. *Cyprus*.
10. *Isabella* in the *Pacifick* Ocean.

There are more Islands which may be reduced to this rank, but we shall refer them to the last order of them, as more commodious.

Proposition VII.

The least Isles. *Of the least Islands there is almost an innumerable multitude on the Surface of the Earth; among which these following deserve a peculiar consideration: First, the famous Solitary Islands; Secondly, those which are found in great numbers in some Tract of the Ocean, and for their Neighbourhood are comprehended under one name.*

We shall term them in general, a body or fry of Islands, because we are left destitute of a more fitting name. The Tract of *Sea* wherein these Isles lye, is called the *Archipelago*. The notable *Solitary Islands* are in the *Mediterranean Sea*, *Rhodes*, *Malta*, *Iviſa*, *Minorca*, *Chios*, *Cephalonia*, &c.

In the *Atlantick Ocean* between *Africa* and *Brazile*, lieth the Island of St. *Helen*, where also the Island of the *Ascension*, the Isle of St. *Thomas*, is placed in the very *Equator*.

The Island *Madera* over against the *Gaditane Streight*.

Zocotora, seated before the mouth of the *Arabian Bay*.

Gothland in the *Baltick Sea*.

Among the notable *Solitary Isles*, those are also worthy of remembrance which swim on the *waters*, of which see *Chapter* eighteenth.

Proposition VIII.

The lesser Isles. *There are fifteen fries or files of the least Islands numbred on the Surface of the Earth; to wit,*

1. The *Canary Islands* in the *Atlantick Sea*.
2. The Isles of *Azores* in the Northern Sea.
3. The Islands of *Hesperides*, or the *Green Islands*, over against *Cape Verd*.
4. The Islands of *Maldives* in *Indian* Ocean.
5. The *Lucar Islands* between *Florida* and *Cuba*, nigh unto *America*.
6. The *Princes Islands* between *Hispaniola* and *America*, to which I refer and reduce all the least Islands seated in the *Bay* of *Mexico*.
7. The *Camercan Isles* lying before *Hispaniola*.
8. The *Mascarenian Islands* between *Madagascar* and *Africa*.
9. The *Molucco Islands*, seated in the *Indian* Ocean.
10. The *Philippine Islands* in the *Pacifick* Ocean.
11. The *Ægean Islands*.
12. The *Japonian Isles*.
13. The Islands of *Solomon* in the *Pacifick Sea*.
14. The Isles of *Theeves* in the *Archipelago* of St. *Lazarus*.
15. The Isles of *Banda* nigh unto *Java*.

16. The

16. The Iſlands ſcituate near *England* and *Scotland*; as the *Hebrides*, *Orcades*, *Sourlings*, *Sporades*, &c.

17. The Iſlands between the *Magellanick Streight* and the *Streight Le Maire*.

Here I do not reckon to theſe thoſe Iſlands which lye cloſe on the ſhore of ſome *Continents* in great numbers, as on the *Coaſt* of *China*, *Norway*, *Brazile*, *Daviſes Streight*, &c. Other Iſles may be reckoned.

Unto this rank alſo the Iſlands in great *Rivers* are to be referred and marſhalled, as ſuch as are found in the River *Nile*, in the River of St. *Laurence* of *Canada*, in the River *Wolga*, and in ſome other Rivers; as alſo thoſe which are in certain *Lakes*, as in the *Lake Zembre*, a *Lake* in *Africa*; in *South America*, where the *Iſlands* of *Lead* are ſcituate in a *Lake*, &c. But all (or moſt of) theſe Iſles, eſpecially theſe aforegoing, together with ſeveral others, I have largely treated of in the *Geographical Deſcription* of the four Parts of the World in their fit places, to which I refer the Reader.

Propoſition IX.

The Parts of all Lands or Iſlands are not of the ſame ſhape or figure, but are unlike. The more famous differences of theſe are a Peninſula and an Iſthmus.

A *Peninſula* or *Cherſoneſe*, that is, ſuch a Tract of *Land* that is almoſt encompaſſed by the *Sea*, except at one only narrow place, where with a ſtrait neck of Land, (called an *Iſthmus*) it is knit to the *Main Land*. A Peninſula.

An *Iſthmus* is that narrow or ſtrait neck of *Land* that couples and joyns the *Peninſula* to the *Continent* or *Main-land*, and that by which we paſs out of one broad *Land* into another. An Iſthmus.

The *Peninſula's*, *Cherſoneſuſſes*, or *Cherſoneſes*, that is, running out Lands, are theſe following, to wit; 1. *Italy*, 2. *Spain*, 3. Part of *England*, 4. All *Greece* and *Macedonia*, 5. *Norway* and *Swedeland*, with *Lapland*, 6. *Aſia minor*, 7. *India*, 8. *Camboia*, 9. *New Guiney* of the *South-land*, 10. *Beach*, a Country of the ſame Land, 11. Part of *Virginia* and *New-England*, 12. The *Tongue of Africa*, &c. Of Lands which are (or may be termd) Peninſula's.

Propoſition X.

We will number up further fourteen *Peninſula's* or *Cherſoneſes*; and theſe we will divide into longiſh ones, and ſomewhat round ones. Other Lands termed *Peninſula's*.

The longiſh ones are, firſt, the *Golden Cherſoneſe* of the Ancients, now called the *Malaccan Cherſoneſe*, and joyns to the *Indies*. The *Cherſoniſus* of the Ancients.

2. The *Cymbrick Cherſoneſe*, now called *Jutland*, adjoyning to *Holſatia*.

3. *California*, on the Weſtern ſide of *North America*, near the Sea *Vermejo*: But late Obſervations report it to be an *Iſland*.

4. *New France*, on the Eaſtern ſide of *North America*.

5. The *Jucatan Cherſoneſe* in the *Bay* of *Mexico*.

6. The *Thracian Cherſoneſe* on the *Helleſpont*.

7. The *Caſſandrian Cherſoneſe* by the *Bay* of *Theſſalonica* in the *Grecian Sea*. There are alſo certain *Peninſula's* leſs celebrious, of the *leſſer Aſia*, to wit, *Ionia* or the *Smyrnenſian Peninſule*; 2. The *Cnidenſian*, or the *Countrey* of *Doris*; and 3. The *Mindenſian Peninſula's*.

Concerning *Corea*, it is doubtful whether it be a compleat *Iſland* or a *Peninſula*. Some *Maps* joyn it to *Tartary*, ſome again begirt it round with the *Sea*: yet notwithſtanding the lateſt Obſervations make it a *Peninſule*.

The ſomewhat round Peninſula's *are*,

1. *Africa* her ſelf, a huge part of the *Old World*, is ſuch an one: it is environed with the *Mediterranean Sea*, the *Atlantick Ocean*, the *Æthiopick*, *Indian* and *Red-ſea*: It ſticketh faſt to *Aſia* by a narrow Tract of Land at *Egypt*.

2. Three parts of *America*, to wit, *Mexican* and *Peru* ſtick faſt together at *Panama* by a narrow paſſage of the Earth.

3. *Peloponneſus*, now called the *Morea*, being part of *Greece*.

4. *Taurick Cherſoneſe*, or *Peninſula* in the *Euxine Sea*, and the mouth of the *Fen Mæotis*, now called the *Precopenſian Tartary*.

5. *Cambaia* in *India*.

Propoſition XI.

Of the chief *Peninſula's*.

We reckon as many *Iſthmuſſes* as *Peninſula's*; the more famous are five in number.

1. The *Iſthmus* between *Egypt* and *Aſia*, whereby *Africa* joyneth to *Aſia*.

2. The *Corinthian Iſthmus* between *Peloponneſus* and *Greece*.

3. The *Panamenſian Iſthmus* between *Mexico*, *America*, and *Peruvia*.

4. The *Iſthmus* between the *Cherſoneſus Aurea*, or *Golden Cherſoneſus*, and the *Indies*.

5. The *Iſthmus* of the *Taurick Cherſoneſe*.

CHAP. IX.

Of Mountains and Hills in General.

Of Mountains and Hills.

TOuching *Mountains*, very many things worthy to be known in *Geography* will here occur and meet us, partly becauſe they ſeem to hinder the roundneſs of the *Earth*, and partly becauſe divers things amongſt renowned Authors are here delivered concerning them.

Propoſition I.

But a *Mountain* or *Hill* is ſaid to be a part of the *Earth* riſing aloft, which if it be leſſer, is called a *Hillock* or *Clift*.

Of Promontories and Rocks.

Alſo a *Promontory* is ſaid to be a *Hill*, or *Mountain* running out at length into the *Sea*. *Rocks* are called parts jutting or appearing forth in the *Sea*, or alſo ariſing up out of huge ſtony Bulks or Bodies. But it muſt be generally known, that the parts of the *Earth* which appear plain, are not all of the ſame height, but ſome are ſunk lower, eſpecially at or near the Sea ſhores, inſomuch as the height encreaſeth from *Maritine places*, or ſuch as abutt upon the *Sea*, even to the *Inland Regions*. This alſo is proved by the *Fountains* and *flowing Streams* of *Rivers*: For ſeeing that that part of the *Earth*, to which the *water* floweth, is lower than that from which it floweth, and that the *Fountain-heads* and *Springs* of *Rivers* are ſeldom in the *Inland places*, and ſuch as are far remote from the *Sea*: It is clearly manifeſt thereby, that the *Inland places* are more elevated than thoſe adjoyning to the *Sea Coaſts*. So *Bohemia* is higher then *Holſatia*; which is perceived by the ſtreaming courſe of the River *Elbe*, which floweth from *Bohemia* to *Holſatia*. In like manner we take apparent *Signs* and *Arguments* of the greater height of *Inland places*, from the Rivers *Danubius*, *Viſurgis*, *Rhene*, *Moſa*, &c. The *Swiſhers* and *Rhetians* Countries are judged by ſome men to be the higheſt of all *Europe*, becauſe the Rivers *Rhene*, *Roan*, and the greater *Danou* do flow and ſtream down from thence. Moreover, look how great the declivity or bearing downwards of the *Rivers* are, ſo great is the height of the *Inland places* above the *Maritine places*.

Inland places higher than thoſe near the Sea-coaſts.

Pro-

Proposition II.

To finde out the height of a Mountain by Geodesie *or* Land-measuring, *commonly called* Surveying.

This is performed in the same manner which we use in the searching out the height of *Towers*, if so be the top of the *Mountain* or *Hill* is remarkable by some peculiar sign.

For the finding out the height of a Mountain by *Gradisit.*

Let A B be the *Mountains* height, A the *foot*, B the conspicuous *head* thereof. We will take the *line* F C by a mean distance from it, so that neither of the *Angles* A F C, A C F may be made very acute, but may in a manner be equal. Then let the *Angles* A F C, A C F be observed by a collimation, or levelling with winking be made to B, and these being subtracted to 180 *degrees*, the remaining *degrees* shall shew forth the *Angle* C A F. After that the distance of the stations of F C is exquisitely to be measured; and let it be wrought, As the sign of the *Angle* F A C to the sign of the *Angle* C F A (or F C A, if you would take F A) so F C to A C, the distance of the *Mountain* from C. Then the Instrument being hanged up, or placed upright in C, and levelling with the *Eye* to B, let the *Angle* B C A be taken. And because the *Triangle* C A B is *strait angled*, to wit, the *Angle* B A C is *strait*, therefore also the *Angle* A B C of 90 *degrees* shall be given.

See Scheme.

Let it therefore be wrought by the *Triangle* BAC: As the whole *sign* 10000000 to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* B C A, so the distance A C to the perpendicular height of the *Mountain* A B.

The height of the Mountain *Olympus* measured by *Xenagoras.*

For Example, Let us put it, that *Xenagoras* the Son of *Eumelus* used this manner or way of Measuring in finding out and knowing the height of the Mountain *Olympus*, and to have found the *Angle* A F C to be 88 *degrees*, 29 *minutes*: but the *Angle* A C F 57 *degrees*, 30 *minutes*. Therefore C A F shall be 34 *degrees*, 13 *minutes*; and by *measure* he found F C to be 400 *Grecian foot*, or two third parts of one *stadium*. Therefore it shall be; As the *sign* of the *Angle* C A F 34 *degrees* 13 *minutes*, to the *sign* of the *Angle* A C F 57 *degrees* 13 *minutes*: So C F 400; the foot of the *Mountain* to the distance F A: to wit, as 56226 to 84339, so is 400 to 600; therefore F A is 600 *foot*. Furthermore, let the *Angle* B F A be found 84 *degrees* 23 *minutes*. It shall be in the *Triangle* F A B, as 100000 to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* B F A 1016000: so 600 to 6096 *foot* for A B, the height of the Mountain *Olympus*: but 600 *foot* make a *stadium*. Therefore 6096 being divided by 600, there are found 10 *stadiums*, and 96 *Greek feet* for the height of the Mountain *Olympus*, just so much as *Xenagoras* found it to be. But these *stadiums* make $\frac{1}{4}$ of a *German mile* with $\frac{1}{12}$, or about $\frac{1}{16}$.

The Mountain *Olympus* said to be very high by *Aristotle.*

Aristotle, with many other Writers, affirms, that the height of the Mountain *Olympus* is so great, that the top thereof feels no motion of the *Air*, or *showers of Rain*, and also that it is elevated above the second Region of the *Air*: and the *Ancients* gathered that, by the *Ashes* left thereon, being never moved thence by any *Wind*; and by the draughts and forms of *Letters*, being no whit consumed, but found there after divers years, fresh, and as they were there drawn at the first.

It is to be noted, that in divers places the height of the *Mountain* is also diverse; therefore the consequence availeth not. The *Clouds* do likewise cover this *Mountain*, therefore it is as high; for indeed in the Northern parts and Coasts of the World, the *Clouds* are a great deal lower.

There is also another manner of Measuring in *plane*, the *Mountains* by two *stadiums* in the same *strait line* with the Mountain; but it is prone to errour, by reason of the small difference of the *Angles*.

Another way to find the height of a Mountain.

Yet by one height known; as for example, by a *Tower*, whose height is known, and the distance from the *Mountain*, we shall more accurately gain the height of the Mountain, *viz.* if we suppose *F* to be the *Tower* 300 *foot* high, and on the top thereof, or in some commodious place, the *Angle B F T* See Scheme.

be

be obſerved to be 83 *degrees* 30 *minutes*. *P B* ſhall be found to be 5896 *foot*, to whom *B A* the height of the *Tower* muſt be added.

Propoſition III.

The height of the ſeen Mountain being given or known, to find out Geodetically, *or by Land-meaſuring, how great diſtance we are from it, if we have either a Geometrical Inſtrument or* Radius, *or* Altimetrical Scale *with us, that is to ſay, a Height-meaſuring Scale.*

Another way to find the height of a Mountain.

Let *A B* be again the height of the *Mountain*, being now known by the deſcriptions of the other 10 *ſtadiums*, and 96 *Greek feet*, or 6096 *feet*. Let *F* be our place, and let us deſire to know the diſtance *F A*. Let the *Angle B F A* be taken by a *Geometrical Inſtrument* or *Quadrant*; let it be for example 48 *degrees* 23 *minutes*: Therefore the *Triangle* ſtrait *Angled B A F*, when three are known, it ſhall be, As the whole *ſign* to the *Tangent* of the *Angle A B F*, 5 *degrees* 37 *minutes*: So *B A* the known height ſhall be to the demanded *A F*.

See Scheme.

As 100000 are to 9234, ſo 6096 to 600 *foot*, or one *ſtadium*: Therefore at ſo great a diſtance, which is *F A*, we are from the *Mountain*. If we uſe a *Land-meaſuring Quadrant*, or *Square*, or *Radius*, we ſhall not then need the *Canon* of *ſigns*, which is manifeſt by the declaration and explication of the *Inſtruments*; but yet the calculation or computation becomes thereby not ſo accurate, by reaſon of the want of true proportion.

Note, In theſe two *Problems* I have added *Geodetically*, becauſe the manner of *meaſuring* is otherwiſe, when we uſe a *Semidiameter*, or *Periphery* of the *Earth*, as we ſhall now propoſe: For in the former we have taken the diſtance *F A* as a *ſtrait line*, becauſe there is but a ſmall difference between that and a *crooked line*.

Propoſition IV.

A diſtance being given, from whoſe term or extreameſt boundary the top of the Mountain is firſt ſeen, to find thereby the height of the Mountain by Geography.

A diſtance of a Mountain being given, to find the height. See Scheme.

Let us take the moſt high Mountain of *Teneriff*, called *El Pico*, or the *Pike*, and let *A B C D F* be the *periphery* of the *Earth*, and indeed the *Meridian* of that Mountain: Let the *Center* be *R*, the *Mountain* it ſelf *A B*; let from *B* a *ſtrait Tangent-line* be drawn to the *periphery B F*. *F* then ſhall be the furthermoſt or firſt *point*, from which the top of the Mountain *B* ſhall be ſeen: let *F R* be drawn.

But ſome Mariners do teſtifie, that when they are four *degrees* diſtant from it in the *Meridian*, they can deſcry the top of that Mountain. Therefore the *Arch A F* ſhall be four *degrees*: Let us therefore ſuppoſe that this Relation of our *Seamen* is true, and that the firſt viſive ray *B F* come directly from the top of the Mountain *B*; and let us ſearch out, how great the height of the Mountain may be, if the matter were ſo. The *Angle B F R* is ſtrait, and becauſe *F A* is four *degrees*, therefore alſo the *Angle B R F* is four *degrees*, and *R F* the half *diameter* of the Earth is known; and in the *Triangle B R F* are the three given, and it ſhall be,

As the whole *ſign* to the *ſecant* of the *Angle B R F* four *degrees*, ſo *R F* to *R B*. As 10000000 are to 10024419, ſo 3440 *Italian* miles *R F*, or 860 *German* miles,) to 3448 *Italian* miles for *R B*: take away thence 3440 for *R A*, and there remains 8 *Italian* miles, or 64 *ſtadiums*, or two *German* miles for the height of the Mountain *A B*; which is almoſt incredible, and altogether againſt the *Ancients* and *Old Geographers*. Therefore it is to be known, that there are two things taken in the *Problem* which are falſe; firſt, that that *Radius* or *Ray*, which coming from *B* firſt ſtrikes the *Eye*, is direct, when as

The height of the Mountain *El Pico* in *Teneriff*.

yet

yet by reaſon of the thickneſs of the *Air* it is refracted or turned. Indeed from *B* the top of the Hill, there cannot be a *ſtrait line* drawn to *F* (if *FA* be four *degrees*,) but that firſt it muſt incur or run upon the Earth; and therefore the top *B* cannot be ſeen directly in the place of *F*, but by a refracted *Radius*, to wit, *BTF*, which is broken, and indeed the firſt of the broken rays, which may reach to *F*.

If therefore we ſuppoſe, that this refraction brings it to paſs, that this Mountain may be ſooner ſeen by one *degree*, than it would be ſeen, if it were without this Refraction, to wit, with a direct ray *BF* to be ſeen from three *degrees AF*, the height *AB* ſhall be found out according to the declared form of five *Italian* miles, or 40 *ſtadiums*. But becauſe it is alſo likely (which is the ſecond) that our *Seamen* ſpeak more at large, and not with ſo accurate a dimenſion; if we therefore ſubtract yet half a *degree*, ſo as we may reſolve that it is ſeen $2\frac{1}{2}$ degrees thence, or 38 *German* miles for *FA*: This I ſay being put, and our Calculation being ordered as at firſt, the height of the Mountain *AB* ſhall be found to be about one *mile*.

If the Mountain may be ſeen from the diſtance of two *degrees* (the refraction being ſet apart) it ſhall be $2\frac{1}{2}$ *Italian* miles high.

But if it can be ſeen at one *degrees* diſtance, or 15 *German* miles, it ſhall be in height half an *Italian* mile, or about 5 *ſtadiums* high. To this end we add the Table following:

If the height of the *Mountains* be	$\frac{1}{8}$ mile *Germ.*	$\frac{1}{7}$ mile	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1
Then it ſhall be ſeen from the diſtance of *miles*	14	18	20	25	26	$27\frac{1}{2}$	28	$29\frac{1}{4}$

But all theſe things are to be underſtood without Refraction, which for the moſt part increaſeth the ſeen height of the Mountain, and the diſtance of the ſight, as you may perceive by the deſcription; for the refracted *Radius TF* produced, gives the height *NA*.

Propoſition V.

The top of any Mountain *being firſt ſeen, whoſe height is known, to find by* Geography *how great ſpace we are from it.*

See Scheme. The top of a Mountain whoſe height is known, to find at the firſt ſight its diſtance.

This is the conſequent of the former Propoſition, and the ſolution thereof may be fetch'd from the Table before deſcribed: but the Calculation will ſhew a more accurate ſolution. Let therefore the known height of the Mountain be *AB*, and let it be ſeen in *F*, it may pleaſe us to know the diſtance *AF*, *BF* toucheth the *Periphery*. In the *Triangle ſtrait angled BFR*, the *Angle F* is is ſtrait, and the two ſides *RF*, the half *diameter* of the Earth, and *RB* the ſame half *diameter* with *AB* are known, which we may put to be half a *German* mile. And becauſe *RF* and *RA* is 860, *RB* ſhall be $860\frac{1}{2}$: And it may be wrought, As *RB* is to *RF*, ſo the whole *ſign* to the ſign of the *Angle RBF*.

In *Rhindlandiſh feet*:
As $860\frac{1}{2}$ to 860, ſo 10000000 to
As 19609700 to 19598300, ſo 10000000 to 9994186,
the *ſign* 88 *degrees*, 2 *minuees*, 40 for *RBF*.

Therefore *BRF*, that is, the *Arch AF* ſhall be one *degree*, 55 *minutes*, 20 *ſeconds*. Therefore from this diſtance the Mountain ſhall be ſeen with *refraction* of *Rays*, if it is half a mile high; to which for the Argument of Refraction we may add eight miles, inſomuch that it may be ſeen at the ordinary diſtance of 37 miles: But the refraction alſo varies according to the diverſe *Altitude* of the *Sun*, neither is it abſent before the riſing, or after the ſetting of the *Sun*. But we will treat more at large concerning this buſineſs in the *Chapter* touching the *Air*, and the Third part of this Book, where we ſhall diſcourſe of the viſible *Horizon*.

Propoſition

Proposition VI.

The length of the shadow being given, which any mountain casteth, and the height of the Sun being given to that time, to find out the Altitude of the Mountain.

To find out the Altitude of a Mountain by its *shadow*, knowing the height of the Sun.
Of the Mountain *Athos*, its height, &c.

We will propose this *Problem* rather for its Antiquity and pleasantness, than that we think that the Altitude may accurately by the *shadow* be obtained.

Plutarch and *Pliny* have written, that the Mountain *Athos* will cover or hide the sides of the *Lemnian Heifer*, because the Mountain *Athos* scituated on the shore of *Macedonia*, is so highly elevated, that its casts its shadow into the Island *Lemnos*, the *Sun* being in *Cancer*, and indeed into the Market of the City *Myrrhina*, where the boundary or end of the *shadow* was signified by a *Brazen Heifer* there erected, which the *Inhabitants* placed there for the strangness and wonder of the matter: And *Pliny* writeth, that the interval or distance between the Mountain *Athos* and the Isle *Lemnos*, is judged to be 87000 paces, or 87 *Italian* miles. But Writers have not noted the *Altitude* of the *Sun*, according to the shadow thereof: but yet it is likely, that this *shadow* cast from the *Sun* being at the point of setting, or when it began to be hidden from the City *Myrrhina* by the Mountain *Athos*; (for *Athos* standeth Westward from the Isle *Lemnos*;) or when in it, it was hid from the *Vertical point* of *Myrrhina*, which is drawn through the Mountain *Athos*. But although we may put, that the *Sun* was then as it were in the *Horizon* of *Myrrhina* F O, and so that the *Radius* O F passed through the top of the Mountain B, and cast the *shadow* A F, and O F shall be the *Tangent* of the *Periphery*; and because F R is given, and the *Angle* F R B (or by taking the *Triangle* B A F, and F A as a *strait line*) B A shall be found to be eight *stadiums*, the height of the Mountain. But because notwithstanding in this position of the *Sun*, the term or boundary of the shadow cannot be noted, because it is infinite; and besides that, the buildings of the City *Myrrhina* might hinder both the *shadow* and the near *Rays* of the *Sun* near to the shadow: Therefore it is to be determined, that the *Sun* at the least was elevated two *degrees* above the *Horizon* of *Myrrhina*. For example, In S, that the *Angle* S F O be two *degrees*, and the *Radius* of the *Sun* passing through the top of the Mountain T, and ending the shadow in F.

See the Scheme to the fifth Proposition.

Therefore in the *Oblique angled Triangle* R T F, the given *Angle* shall be T F R 92 *degrees*, and F R T is given one *degree* 16 *minutes*: And therefore F T R is 86 *degrees* 45 *minutes*; and the half *diameter* F R is known, 860 *German* miles. Therefore T R shall be found according to the proportion,

As the *sign* of the *Angle* F T R 86 *degrees* 54 *minutes*, to the *sign* of the *Angle* T F R 92 *degrees*: so F R to R T, 860.

Therefore R T shall be 861 *German* miles, and A T the height of the Mountain *Athos*, somewhat above one *German* mile.

If we take the Altitude of the *Sun* one *degree*, the height of the Mountain *Athos* will be found to be 20 *stadiums*.

Yet notwithstanding I esteem the over great distance of *Lemnos* from the Mountain *Athos*, assigned by *Pliny*, to be the cause of the over-great Magnitude arising from the Calculation: For *Sophians Table* of *Greece*, and *Blavius* his *Table* of Modern *Greece*, do only exhibit and allow 55 *Italian* miles, the distance for F A. Therefore the *Angle* F R T shall scarcely be one *degree*, to wit, 55 *minutes*; and the Altitude of the *Sun*, one *degree* 30 *minutes*: and therefore F R T, 87 *degrees* 35 *minutes*; and if it be done in the *Triangle* F R T,

As the *sign* of the *Angle* F R T 87 *degrees* 35 *minutes*, to the *sign* of the *Angle* T R R 91 *degrees* 30 *minutes*: so F R 860 to R T. Or in the *Triangle* T F A *strait angled* to A, the *Angle* T F A shall be one *degree* 30 *minutes*; and F A is assumed as the strait or right of 55 miles. The Altitude A T shall be found according to this Proportion: As the whole *sign* to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* T F A, one *degree* 30 *minutes*: So F A 55 *miles*, to A T the height of the *Mountain*.

Here

Here alſo is the *Problem* to be anſwered, *viz.* How the height of any *Mountain* may be found, if it be fully ſearched out? how much ſooner the *Sun* is ſeen to riſe in the top of that Mountain, than at the foot thereof? And contrariwiſe, if the *Altitude* be given, how, and in what manner this difference of time is to be found out? touching which matter *Ariſtotle* and *Pliny* have delivered incredible ſtories, and ſuch as the true Calculation and account do teach to be evidently otherwiſe. But ſeeing this cannot be explicated without the ſolution of another *Problem*, which we have referred to the ſecond part of this Book: therefore we will defer theſe two *Problems* to the Thirtieth *Chapter*.

Propoſition VII.

The Altitude of Mountains hath no ſenſible proportion to the half diameter of the Earth, or elſe ſo little, that it hinders the roundneſs of the Earth no more, than a pointed note upon the ſurface of the Artificial Globe.

The height of the Mountains no hindrance to the roundneſs of the Earth.

For we have ſhewn that the Mountain of the Iſland *Teneriff*, called *El Pico de Tayde*, to have no greater Altitude than one *mile*, or at moſt 1 ½ *mile*. And certainly, Experience can ſcarcely find out a Mountain higher than that. Seeing therefore the half *diameter* of the *Earth* is 860 *miles*, it ſhall be the model and account of the greateſt height of the Mountains to the half *diameter* of the *Earth*, which is 1 to 860, to wit, of which parts the *half diameter* of the *Earth* or any *Globe* is 360, one of ſuch the greateſt height of the *Mountains* ſhall have. And whereas there are very few Mountains of ſo great height, but that very many of them ſcarcely aſcend to the fourth part of a *mile*, it is manifeſt, that they heave or liſt up the roundneſs of the *Earth* no more, than certain ruggedneſſes in *Globes* made by the hands of Artificers, do diſproportion the roundneſs of thoſe *Globes*. For indeed there is no body in the whole nature of things, that can have an exact *Geometrical roundneſs*.

Propoſition VIII.

Why ſhowers of Rain, Miſts, and Snows, are frequent on the tops of Mountains, *when as in the neighbouring Valleys the Air is ſerene and calm without any ſuch Meteors?*

Showers of Rain, Snow, Miſts, &c. on the tops of Mountains, when not in the Valleys.

They which have travelled on the high *Lands* or Mountainous places of *Aſia*, *Peruvia*, and other Countries, aver, that it oft falls out, that they which are converſant on the top of *Mountains*, do there feel and find *ſhowers of Rain*, *Snow*, and thick and *foggy Miſts*; but deſcending thence to the *Valleys* lying thereunder, they feel no ſuch thing, but find a clear and calm *Air*. We ſometimes obſerve the ſame in the Mountains of our own *Country*.

Some ſay, that the cauſe of this *Phænomenon* or appearance is, that the *Mountains* attract thither the *Air* and *Clouds*; but they do not declare, by what faculty or power they may do it, and therefore they ſay nothing to the purpoſe. It ſeems to me, that it is done in this manner: The *vapours* and *exhalations*, when as in the middle Region of the *Air*, (in which very many tops of Mountains are) they are condenſated into ſmall drops, begin to decline downward. And becauſe the top of Mountains are nearer to thoſe *vapours* and *exhalations* condenſated in the middle Region of the *Air*, than the Valleys lying under them; therefore thoſe ſmall drops, which are above thoſe Mountain tops, coming firſt to the ground, leave a place in the Region of the *Air*, which preſently the next ſmall drops do enjoy; becauſe they are forced and thruſt forth by others; either by reaſon of Natures abhorring and ſhunning of vacuity or emptineſs, or becauſe this is the nature of *Water*, that it flows and runs to that place where its flux or flowing firſt began, or where the place is more low and ſunk.

Propoſition IX.

Whether the Superficies of a Mountain *be more capacious, than the plane underneath it, upon whom it ſtandeth?*

Of the Superficies of Mountains.

Geometry proves it to be greater; but yet it is another Queſtion, Whether therefore it can ſuſtain the more Men, or bear the greater plenty of Proviſion? I prove the Affirmative: for although all things placed in a *Mountain* ought to be perpendicular to the under ſunk or placed Plane, yet greater ſtore of *Earth* and a greater ſurface is there.

CHAP. X.

Of the differences and tract of Mountains; *and in ſpecial, concerning Burning Mountains.*

Propoſition I.

Some Mountains are bounded about with a little ſpace; Others extend themſelves out, and march forth at a long reach and trace.

Of Mountains or Hills.

AND theſe *Mountains* or *Hills* of the later ſort are called *tops*, *yokes*, or *chains* of *Mountains* or *Hills*. There are found ſuch like Chains of Mountains or Hills almoſt in all Countreys in the World, ſo that they may be judged to be thereby continual, but that ſmall ſpaces interpoſe and thruſt in themſelves; but they march out at length into divers Coaſts: ſome from the North into the South, ſome from the Eaſt into the Weſt, and otherſome to Coaſts collateral to the *Cardinal points*.

The moſt famous Chains or Cliffs of Hills are theſe following.

Of the Hills or Mountains call'd the *Alps*.

1. The *Alpes*; which ſeparating *Italy* from the neighbouring Countries, extend themſelves out by a vaſt tract of Earth, and do as it were ſend forth their Arms into other Provinces and Countries, to wit, through *France* to *Spain*, where they are called the *Pyrenean* Hills or Mountains; and to *Rhetia*, where they are called the *Rhetick* Hills; and to *Hungaria*, where they are named the *Hungarian* Mountains, and doubtful ones; then above *Dalmatia*, the *Dalmatian* Hills; and they are ſtretched out through *Macedonia* to *Thrace* and *Pontus*. But becauſe there cometh in a little ſpace between the *Julian* and *Dalmatian* Hills; therefore ſome men determine, and make the end of the *Alpes* to be in the *Julian* Mountains. It ſendeth out one Arm with continual *chains* and *yokes* of Hills, and with a winding courſe, like a *creſcent*, paſſing through all *Italy*, and dividing it into two parts, it runneth along even to the *Sicilian Sea*: Neither doth it march forward in one form every where, but in many parts it putteth forth collateral, or ſide-Companions and fellow Branches, as it alſo ſendeth forth ſome Mountains ſtyled with ſeveral Names, as the Mountain *Maſſicus*, the Hill *Gaurus*, *Monte di Capua*, or the Mountain of *Capua*, and the burning *Veſuvius*, &c.

2. The

2. The Hills of *Peru* or *Peruviana*, the longeſt of all others; for they paſs through the whole *South America*, even from the *Equator* to the *Magellanick ſtreigths*, and do ſeparate the Kingdom of *Peru* from other Provinces, inſomuch that the whole tract of this Chain of *Hills* is about 800 *German* miles. And the *heads* or *cliffs* of the Hills are ſo high, that they are reported to weary Birds in their flight over them: and there is but one only paſſage over theſe Hills (which as yet is diſcovered,) and that very cumberſom. Many of thoſe are covered with perpetual *Snows*, as well in Summer as Winter; and many of them are alſo wrapt up and involved with the Clouds, and ſome likewiſe are elevated beyond the middle Region of the *Air*. Truly it hath hapned, the *Spaniards* ſometimes paſſing out of *Nicaragua* into *Peru*, that many of them, together with their Horſes, on the tops of thoſe interpoſed *Mountains*, have ſuddenly died, and if they had become ſtiff with cold Froſt, they remained there immovable like ſtanding Images. The cauſe of which ſeemeth to have been the want of *Air*, ſuch as our breath or Lungs require. There are alſo found in theſe Mountains *Sulphury* and *ſmoking Hills*. The Hills of *Peru*. Theſe Mountains exceeding Cold.

3. There are very many other Mountains between *Peru* and *Braſil*, which alſo ſtretch themſelves out through the Country of *China* to the *Magellanick ſtreights*, where the high tops of the *Hills* are perpetually hidden with Snows, although they lie under the *Latitude* of 52 *degrees*. The Hills between *Peru* and *Braſil*.

4. Add to theſe *Chains* of *Hills*, thoſe of *Canada* and *New England*, and very many others in *North America*, covered with continual *Snow*, although they are leſs famous. The Hills of *Canada*, and *New England*.

5. The top of *Taurus*, a Mountain in *Aſia*. This was amongſt ancient Writers accounted the moſt noble and greateſt *Mountain* of the World. It riſeth up in *Aſia Minor*, from the *Pamphilian Sea* nigh to the *Chelidonian Iſlands*, and thence marcheth along through divers *Countries* and great *Kingdoms* under divers Names, from the Weſt into the Eaſt, unto *India*, and divideth all *Aſia* into two parts, one whereof which looketh to the North is called *Aſia* within *Taurus*, and the other which faceth the Weſt is named *Aſia* without *Taurus*. It is fenced in on either ſide with many Companions, amongſt which the famous and moſt notable ones are the greater and the leſſer *Anti-Taurus*, which cut and divide the *greater* and *leſſer Armenia* into two parts, where *Taurus* it ſelf paſſeth between *Armenia* and *Meſopotamia*; it ſendeth forth many Arms towards the North and South. The Mountain *Taurus*.

6. The Mountain *Imaus* marcheth forth in form of a *Croſs* two ways, as well towards the Eaſt and VVeſt, as towards the North and South. The Northern part is now called *Alkai*. It is ſtretched out forward towards the South, even to the very ends of the *Indies*, and the fountain heads of the River *Ganges* in length about four hundred *German* Miles. It divideth the *Aſian Scythia* into two parts, of which that which looketh on the *weſt* is called *Scythia* within the Mountain *Imaus*; but that which beholdeth the Eaſt, is named *Scythia* without the Mountain *Imaus*. The Mountain *Imaus*.

7. The top of the Mountain *Caucaſus* is ſtretched out from the North to the South towards *Pontus Euxinus*, from the *Caſpian Sea* (to whom it is a neighbour) at the breadth of fifty miles, and to thoſe that ſail in the *Caſpian Sea*, it is an infallible mark to govern and ſteer their courſe by: It reacheth to Mount *Ararat* in *Armenia*, where *Noah*'s Ark reſted, which the *Turks* and *Perſians* believe to be there kept to this day. But the Mountains of *Ararat* are neighbours to *Taurus*; becauſe all theſe *Mountains* are contiguous. VVe will ſpeak of the height of *Caucaſus* in the Thirtieth *Chapter*. The Mountain *Caucaſus*.

8. The Hill of *China*, which embraceth and comprehends the *Damaſcian Mountains*, ſo called by the Ancients towards the VVeſt, and *Ottorocora* towards the North. This Cliſt or Chain of *Hills* conſiſteth of many *Mountains*, not indeed continually yoked together, but here and there affording a paſſage between them. And the Mountains of *Camboja* ſeem to be a part of that gang of Hills. The Hill of *China*.

9. The Hills of *Arabia*, which march forward in a triple rank, of whom the Holy Mount *Sinai* is a part. The Mountains of *Arabia*.

The Mount *Atlas.*

10. The moſt famous *Hill*, and which is celebrated with innumerable *figments* of the *Greek Poets*, is Mount *Atlas* in *Africa*. It riſeth at the ſhore of the Weſtern Ocean of *Africa*, and extends it ſelf through all *Africa*, even to the borders of *Egypt*. It hath the *Fountains* and *Springs* of almoſt all the Rivers of *Africa*; in many places it is full of *Snow* and *Cold*, although it lieth in the *Torrid Zone*.

The Mountains of the *Moon.*

11. The Cliſt of *Africa* nigh to *Monomotapa*, which is called the *Mountains* of the *Moon*. It compaſſeth in almoſt all *Monomotapa*; and the *arms* or *branches* thereof are many, as the Hill *Zeth*, and the *Snowy Mountains*. There are found very many, and in a manner innumerable other *yoaks* or *chains* of *Mountains* in *Africa*, ſevered and disjoyned by a ſmall ſpace, inſomuch that they are almoſt all contiguous, and ſeem to be parts of one Chain of Hills.

The *Riphean* Mountains of *Europe.*

12. The *Riphean Mountains* of *Europe*, which are alſo called the *Obian Hills*; they march on forward from the *White Sea* or *Muſcovian Bay*, to the very mouth of the River *Ob*, and the *Muſcovites* call them *Weliki Kameypoyas*, that is, the great *Stony Girdle*; becauſe they think that the whole World is girted in with them. There is here another *yoak* of *Hills*, which the *Ruſſians* call *Joegoria*. It beginneth at the Southern boundary of *Tartaria*, and extends it ſelf unto the North *Sea*, and very many *Rivers* riſe and ſpring out of this, *viz.* the Rivers *Wiſſagda*, *Neem*, *Wiſſera*, and *Petſora* the greateſt of all. Beſides a triple *yoak* of *Hills* runneth down betwen *Siberia* and *Ruſſia*, from the North towards the South. One of them the *Ruſſians* call *Cooſvinſcoy Camen*, whoſe breadth or paſſage is two days Journey. To this ſome *Valleys* coming in betwixt them, is a ſecond bordering called *Cirgins Koy Camen*, alſo of two days Journey; the third is *Podvins Coy Camen*, the higheſt of theſe three *Mountains*, which in many parts throughout the whole year is covered with *Snow* and *Clouds*, and therefore it affordeth a very difficult paſſage, which is of four days. The City *Vergateria Siberiæ* is nigh unto it.

The Mountains of *Norway* and *Lapland.*

13. The *Mountains* of *Norway* and *Lapland*, which begin from the Southern Promontory of *Norway*, and ſeperate *Sweden* in part from *Norway*, then in many orders proceed even to the fartheſt part of *Lapland*, and are diſtinguiſhed by divers names, as *Filleſiel*, *Dofreſiel*, and the like.

The Mountain *Hercinium* in *Germany.*

14. In *Germany*, the famous Mountain *Hercinium* encompaſſing all *Bohemia*, and by various windings extending it ſelf into divers Regions, and that alſo by various names. In the *Dutchy* of *Brunſwick* it retaineth its Ancient appellation, the Mountain *Bructerus* is part of it.

Propoſition II.

In moſt Iſlands, and in the procurrent parts of the Continent, the Mountains are ſo ſcituated, that they paſs through the middle of the Land, and divide them into two parts.

The diviſion of Lands by Mountains.

So in *Scotland* the Mountain *Grampius*, (called by the Inhabitants *Granſbaine*) which extendeth through this Iſland from the Eaſt to the Weſt, and divides it in two equal parts, both which differ not only in the nature of the Soyl, but alſo in the Inhabitants. So in the Iſlands of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, *Luconia*, *Celebes*, *Hiſpaniola*, *Cuba*, Mountains are found, which ariſe from the Sea-ſhore by degrees towards the midſt of the Iſlands unto a very great height.

The Mountain *Gatis.*

So the Mountains *Gatis* paſs through the middle procurrent part of *Aſia*, which is called *India*: For they ariſe from the extremities of *Caucaſus*, and proceed to the Promontory of *Corus*, vulgarly called *Cabo de Comerino*, from the North to the South, and ſo divide this procurrent into two parts, whereof that part which is on this ſide *Gatis* towards the Weſt, is termed the Region of *Malabar*, and the other beyond the Mountain *Gatis* towards the Eaſt the Region of *Choromandel*. This very ſame ridge of Mountains paſſeth through the

the other part of *India* which is now called *Bengala*, through the Kingdoms of *Pegu*, *Siam*, and the whole *Cherſoneſus* of *Malacca*.

So alſo the Mountains of the procurrent of Earth termed *Camboia*: The like Mountains are in the *Peninſula* or *Iſle* of *Caliſornia*, in the procurrent *Africa* from the *Lake Zair* to the *Promontory* of *Good-hope*: In the *Peninſula Corea*, the *Apennine* in *Italy*. The Mountains in *Camboja*, *Caliſornia*, *Coria*.

How theſe Mountains came, whether created with the *Earth* it ſelf, or whether they afterwards ſprung from natural Cauſes, is uncertain.

Propoſition III.

Of Mountains famous for their exceeding Altitude.

1. *El Pico* in *Teneriff*, eſteemed the higheſt in the whole *World*, whoſe top is conſpicuous at *Sea* 60 *miles*; there is no aſcending up it, but in *July* and *Auguſt*, by reaſon that it is covered all the other part of the *Year* with *Snow*, although that *Snow* is never ſeen in the Iſland it ſelf, or the adjacent *Canary Iſles*. The *Vertex* is manifeſtly diſcovered to be advanced above the *Clouds*, ſeeing that theſe encompaſs the middle of the Mountain, and the *Vertex* is beheld to be above this *Cloud*; but becauſe it ſuffereth *Snow*, thence it is certain that it is not protended beyond the middle *Region* of the *Air*. Three days are required to aſcend to the top of this Mountain: for it is not a ſpiral top, but plain, and the *Air* being ſerene, and without *Clouds*, one may diſtinctly diſcern from it all the other circumjacent *Canary Iſles*, of which ſome are 50 *miles* remote from it. In thoſe two *Months* many Sulphureous ſtones are brought from the Mountain, and carried in great abundance into *Spain*. The Mountain of *El Pico* the higheſt in the world.

2. In one of the *Azores* near to the *Iſle Fayal*, there is found a Mountain called *Pico de St. George*, whence the *Iſle* is called *Pico*. It is reported to have an equal *Altitude* with the *Mountain* of *Teneriff*. The Mountain *Pico de St. George*.

3. The Mountain called *Cordillera* in the Southern *America*, ſeparating *Peru* from the other *Provinces*, is ſaid to be of that exceeding height, that it giveth place to no Mountain of the *Earth* for *Altitude*. It extendeth from the *Streights* of *Magellan* to *Panama*. The Mountain *Cordillera*.

4. *Ætna*, a Mountain in *Sicilia*, from the top of which *fire* is diſcerned to be ejected in the *Iſle* of *Malta*, whence it is ſuppoſed to have at the leaſt an intire *mile* in *Altitude*: but in the preceeding *Chapter* we have given a reaſon of this apparent *Altitude*. Mount *Ætna*.

5. *Hecla*, a Mountain of *Iſland*. *Hecla*.

6. *Pico de Adam* in the *Iſle* of *Ceilam*. *Pico de Adam*.

7. The Mountain *Bructerus* in *Germany* and *Abnoba*.

8. The Mountain *Figenojamma* in *Japan*, is ſuppoſed to exceed the *Clouds* in *Altitude*. *Figenojamma*.

9. The Mountain *Caucaſus* much celebrated by the Ancients for its great height. *Caucaſus*.

10. The Mountain *Pelion* in *Macedonia*. *Pliny* ſaith that *Dicæarchus* the *Mathematician*, by the command and expence of ſome *Kings*, meaſured the *Altitude* of this Mountain, and found it to be 1250 *paces*, that is, 10 *Stadia*, or ¼ of a *German mile*. *Geminus* ſaith that the Mountain *Cyllene* was found by *Dicæarchus* to be of the ſame *Altitude*. The Mountain *Pelion*.

11. The Mountain *Athos* (as *Mela* in *Lib.* 2. *Chap.* 2. relateth) is ſo elated, that it is believed to riſe higher than that *ſhowers* ſhould fall thence. This Opinion received credit, becauſe that the *Albes* are not waſhed away from the *Altars* that are on the top of it, but remain in the heap as they were left in. It runneth along with a great broad Ridge into the *Sea*, where it adhereth to the Continent. *Xerxes* making his Expedition againſt the *Græcians*, dugg it through, and made it Navigable. The Mountain *Athos*.

12. *Olympus*, a Mountain of *Aſia minor*, of which we have ſpoken in the former *Chapter*. *Olympus*.

13. *Caſius*,

Caſius. 13. *Caſius*, a Mountain in *Aſia*, which *Pliny* writeth to be four *miles* in height.

Hæmus. 14. Mount *Hæmus*, which *Martianus Capella* deſcribeth to be 6 *miles* in *Altitude*.

Atlas. 15. *Atlas*, a Mountain in *Africa*, of which we have ſpoken in the preceeding *Propoſition*. The *Poets* feigned this Mountain to be ſo high, that it upheld *Heaven*, but experience hath found the contrary.

Propoſition IV.

The many differences of Mountains.

In the former *Propoſitions* we have ſhewed three differences, *viz.*

The differences of Mountains. 1. Some are extended in a long Tract, and ſome are terminated in a ſmall *Circuit*.

2. Some divide the *Regions* in two parts; others paſs through any Tract of the *Regions*.

3. Some are of an exceeding height, ſome of a mean, and ſome but low.

To theſe differences theſe may be added:

4. Some are *Sandy*, ſome *Rocky*, *Clay* or *Chaulky*.

5. Some include or contain the *Springs* of *Rivers*, whereas others are without them.

6. Some are adorned with *Woods*, and other ſome deſtitute of *Trees*.

7. Some are *burning* and *ſmoaking*, whereas others are without *fires*.

8. Some are rich in *Metals*, and others without them.

9. And ſome Mountains are covered with *Snow* all the *Year*, whereas others have no *Snow* at all.

Propoſition V.

To enumerate the burning Mountains, and thoſe that caſt out flames.

Of *Vulcan's* or burning Mountains. Such Mountains at this day are called *Vulcans*, which Appellation the *Portugal Marines* firſt introduced, and now are commonly ſo called; and ſuch are

Mount *Ætna*. 1. The moſt famous is *Ætna*, a Mountain in *Sicilia*, at this day called *Gebel*, from whoſe top the ejected *flames* and *ſmoak* are diſcovered at a long diſtance in the *Mediterranean Sea*, even to *Malta*, which is 40 *German miles*. Howbeit that the ejaculation of the flames be continual, yet notwithſtanding ſometimes it rageth with a greater force. In the *Year* 1537. from the firſt of *May* to the twelfth, all *Sicilia* was ſhaken with an *Earthquake*, then a great and horrible noiſe was heard, as if *Canons* had been fired: there followed the deſtruction of many *Edifices* throughout the whole *Iſle*, when that this *ſtorm* had continued for eleven *days*, the *Earth* was rent in twain, or opened it ſelf with a vaſt *Gulph*, whence a great *flame* and *fire* brake forth, by which, within the ſpace of four *days*, all was conſumed and burnt which was not diſtant above five *miles* from *Ætna*. A little after the *Funnel*, which is on the top of the Mountain, for three *days* caſt forth an abundance of *Aſhes* and *Coals*, which were not only diſperſed throughout all the *Iſle*, but alſo beyond the *Seas* into *Italy*. And the *Ships* in the *Sea* about 200 Leagues diſtant, ſteering towards *Venice*, were much damnified. *Farellus* hath at large deſcribed the *fires* of this Mountain, and doth alſo ſay that the foot of it is 100 *Italian miles* in Circuit. And in *Anno* 1669. the flames broak forth in a violent manner, to the great damage of the Inhabitants of thoſe parts.

A great ſtrange Earthquake.

Mount *Hecla*. 2. *Hecla*, a Mountain of *Iſland*, doth ſometimes rage as much as *Ætna*, and caſt forth great *ſtones*: And continual *fires* in it wanting a free evacuation, oftentimes ſend forth noiſes like unto lamentations; thence many ſimple people ſuppoſed that there was the place of *Hell*, where the *Souls* of the damned were tormented.

3. *Veſu-*

3. *Veſuvius*, at this day *Mont de Soma*, not far from the *City* of *Naples*; is planted with moſt fertile *Vines*, which, without the time of the Conflagration, maketh the beſt *Falernum*, but it is obnoxious to frequent burnings. *Dion Caſſius* relateth, that in the Time of *Veſpaſian* its Conflagration, and the force of its Flames were ſo vehement, that the *Aſhes* caſt forth from its bottom with the Sulphureous ſmoak, were not only carried by the wind to *Rome*, but alſo beyond the *Mediterranean Sea* into *Africa*, even to *Egypt*: moreover, the *Birds* being ſuffocated in the *Air*, fell to the *Earth*; the *Fiſhes* periſhed in the adjacent, infected warm and frequent water. Concerning this Conflagration, and the ſad mutation of the Mountain, there is an excellent Epigram in *Martial*, who lived at that time, and ſaw the Mountain in its Verdure, and afterwards buried in its *Aſhes*. But then the Conflagration ceaſing, and the Showers watering the Sulphureous *Embers* and *Aſhes*, in the Superficies of the Mountain here and there was great fertility of *Wine*. But again within theſe few years this Mountain burned afreſh, and ſent forth an abundance of Smoak. The adjacent *Land* was burnt, and became dangerous to *Travellers*, by reaſon of the various Pits which the flame cauſed. *Veſuvius*, or *Monte de Soma*.

4. A Mountain in the Iſland of *Java*, not far from the City *Panacura*: This in the Year 1586. when it had never burned before, firſt was rent with a violent eruption of flaming *Sulphur*, ſo that about 10000 perſons were ſaid to have periſhed in the neighbouring places; and it ejected exceeding great *Stones* into the *City*; and for the ſpace of three days it vomited forth ſo much black Smoak mixt with *Aſhes* and *Embers*, that it obſcured the face of the *Sun*, and almoſt cloathed day with nights dark Mantle. A Mountain in *Java* worthy of note.

5. *Gonnapi*, a Mountain in one of the Iſles of *Banda*. This in the Year 1586. in the Month of *April*, when that it had burnt for 17 years, was rent with a great noiſe, and caſt forth ſuch an abundance of great *Stones* of *Sulphur* and ardent matter on the *Sea* and *Land*, that it aſtoniſhed all perſons: The abundance of *Aſhes* and *Embers* alſo rendred the *Cannons* of the *Hollanders* in their Caſtle unſerviceable, ſuch a vaſt heap overwhelmed them. Vaſt *Stones* were found in the *Sea*, with a multitude of ſmall ones, ſo that the Barks had ſcarce a free paſſage. The *water* on the *ſhoar* ſo boyled, as if that *fire* had been placed under it: An abundance of *Fiſhes* were killed and ſeen floating on the *water*. The Mountain *Gonnapi*.

6. *Balaluanum*, a Mountain in the Iſle of *Sumatra*, caſteth forth *Smoak* and *Flames* as *Ætna*. *Balaluanum*.

7. In the *Molucco Iſles* the *Land* in many places belcheth forth *fire* with an huge noiſe; but it is chiefly noted for the Funnel of *Ternate*. The Mountain is advanced to the *Clouds*, and very ſteep, the lower parts of which are covered with thick *Woods*, the upper naked by reaſon of the *fire*. On the top is the Funnel of a vaſt wideneſs, which is in the form of an *Amphitheater* with many *Circles*, the greater including the leſſer; thence in the *Equinoctials*, eſpecially thoſe in the *Spring* and *Autumn*, certain *Winds* blowing, chiefly the Northern, with an horrible noiſe, Flames mixed with black *Smoak* and *Embers*, break forth, and fill all places to a great diſtance with *Aſhes*. There are annual ſeaſons of ſeeing it; neither can one aſcend but by *Ropes* or *Chains* in certain places. Here in ſome places of this Mountain the *Inhabitants* gather good *Sulphur*. Many places in the *Molucco Iſles* caſt forth fire. See *Maſſeus*.

8. One of the Iſlands of *Maurice* (60 *Leagues* diſtant from *Moluccoes*) oftentimes the whole *Iſle* is ſhaken with an *Earthquake*, and vomiteth *Fire* and *Aſhes*: and there is ſo great an abundance of *Fire*, that whole *Mountains* and *Rocks* do burn. Oftentimes *fiery Stones* break forth of a vaſt bigneſs. When the *Wind* is more vehement, ſo vaſt an abundance of *Aſhes* is poured forth, that *people* labouring in the *Fields* are forced to return home, being covered with *Aſhes*: thoſe *Aſhes* alſo kill their living *Creatures*. From the top of the Mountain this black and diſmal *Fire* breaketh forth with a dreadful noiſe, like unto *Thunder* or great *Guns*: And from thence cometh abundance of *Pumice Stones* and other *Stones* burnt in the *fire*.

9. In

A Mountain in *Japan* worthy of note.

9. In *Japan* (as *Maffæus* relateth) there is a Mountain which continually vomiteth *Flames*, on the top of which the *Evil Spirit* sheweth himself to certain Persons, after that they have macerated themselves for a Vow sake.

10. Many *Vulcanellos* are found in the *Isles* of *Japan*, distant 70 *miles* from *Ferando*. Also in a certain small *Isle* which lieth between *Tanaxuma*, and the *Isles* called the *Sisters*, a *burning Mountain* is discovered, at other times smoaking.

Certain *Vulcans* in the *Isle Tindai*.

11. In *Tendai*, one of the *Philippine Isles*, where the *Promontory* of the *Holy Spirit* is, certain *Vulcans* are found: One also in the *Isle Marindique*, another of the *Philippine Isles*.

12. In *Nicaragna*, a *Province* in *America*, a lofty Mountain casteth forth *flames* in such great abundance, that they may be seen 10 *miles* distant.

Vulcan Mountains in *Cordillera*.

13. In the Ridge of *Peru* called *Cordillera*, here and there are certain *Rocks* and *Vulcan Mountains*, partly *smoaking* and partly *burning*, and they are said to cast out *fire*: Especially in the *Province* of *Carrapa*, there is a Mountain from whose top, when the *Heaven* is serene, much *smoak* is discovered to be elevated.

Craters in *Peru*.

14. Near to *Arequipa* a City of *Peru*, 90 *miles* distant from *Lima*, a certain *Sulphureous Mountain* continually ejaculateth *fire*, which is found dangerous to the *City*.

15. In *Peru*, near the Valley *Mulahallow*, about 50 *Leagues* from *Quito*, there is a *Vulcan*, which once rending, cast forth great *Stones*, and terrified also the remote places with the huge noise.

Other *Vulcans*.

16. In one of the *Islands* which they call *Papoys*, which *Le Maire* discovered (except peradventure it may adhere to the *South Continent*) on the *Oriental Coast* of *New Guiney* is a *Vulcan*, which at that time burned.

17. Certain Mountains lying on the *Oriental Shore* of the River *Jeniscea*, in the *Country* of the *Tingesi* beyond *Ob*, towards the East, by a *journey* of some *weeks*, there are *Vulcans* as the *Muscovites* do report.

18. Certain Mountains at the River *Pesida* beyond the Region of the *Tingæsi*.

A *Vulcan* in *Liburnia*.

19. In *Liburnia*, near the City *Apollonia*, is a rocky Mountain, from the top of which continually issueth *smoak* and *flame*. In the Land adjoyning there are hot *Fountains*; there are also certain Mountains which have now ceased to burn. So the Isle *Queimoda*, on the *Coast* of *Brasil*, not far from the mouth of the *Silver River*, in time past did burn: so the Mountains in *Congo* or *Angola*, which they term *Vesbrande Bergen*. In the *Isles* of the *Azores*, especially *Tercera* and St. *Michael*, formerly the *Earth* burned in many places, but now the *smoak* in some places is sometimes expelled; hence also they have often *Earthquakes*. The *Isles* of St. *Helena* and of the *Ascension*, have also its *Earth* like unto these, *viz.* a *Dust*, *Embers*, and *Ashes*, so that in times past it is probably the Mountains of these *Isles* burned, which is also manifest from the *Sulphureous Earth* and *Coals*, which they call *Smitskolen*. Now the cause of these *Vulcans* or *burning Mountains*, is a *Sulphureous bituminous Substance*, which is contained in such like Mountains.

Proposition VI.

The Tanges of the Mountains, some admit of no passage or opening, some of many, othersome of one or another only.

Of the Tanges of the Mountains.

They are called *Portæ* and also *Thermopylæ*. Of which the more noted are, 1. The *Thermopylæ* in *Phocis*, from which this name was commmunicated to the rest. 2. The *Caspian Portæ*, which, as through a narrow passage, are admitted into the *Caspian* Mountains. 3. The Port of the Mountain *Cordillera* in *Peru*. 4. The Port of the Mountain which is extended between *Abyssine* and *Arabia Troglodytica*, through which they carry *Provision* and *Grain* from that *Region* unto this. 5. In *Caucasus* the *Sarmatick* and *Albanian Ports*.

Pro-

Propoſition VII.

That Mountain is termed a Promontory which runneth forth in a certain Tract to the Sea, or on the Shore is elevated above the adjacent places.

In *Mapps* they are called *Capes* or *Heads*; among which the more noted are, Of Promontories or Capes.

1. The *Cape of Good-hope* in *Africa*, which muſt be paſſed by thoſe that ſail into *India*. Cape of *Good-hope*.
2. *Cape Victoria* in the end of the *Streights* of *Magellan*. *Cape Victoria*.
3. *Cape Verd* in the *Angle* or *Point* of *Africa*, where the *Shore* windeth from Weſt to Eaſt. *Cape Verd*.
4. *Cape Vincent* in *Spain*. *Cape Vincent*.
5. The *Promontory* of *Atlas*, ſo anciently called, not a *Cape*, becauſe that *Mariners* ſome Ages paſt ſuppoſed that it could not be paſſable; or that if any one had ſailed beyond it, yet he could not return back ſafe: therefore this was the bound of their *Navigation* on the *Coaſt* of *Africa*. Other *Promontories* may be ſeen in the *Mapps*. Promontory or *Cape* of *Atlas*.

Propoſition VIII.

Unto Mountains are oppoſed Caves and deep Abyſſes, which are found in few places of the Earth.

In times paſt that *Mephitick Cave* in *Iſland*, called the *Cave* of St. *Patrick*; and that *Cave* in *Italy*, called *Grotta del Cane*, was famous. In the Mountain of *Feſſano Beni Guazeval*, is a *Cave* that vomiteth forth *fire*. Of Caves or deep Abyſſes.

In the Iſland *Baruch*, adjoynig to *Wales* in *England*, near the *Sea* is a *Rock*, in which there is a *Cave*, unto which if you apply your ear, a noiſe like ſtroaks of *Hammers* upon *Iron*, as in a *Smith's ſhop*, may be heard.

Not far from the City *Beſſa* in *Aquitain*, is a *Cave*, vulgarly called *Du Souley*, in which, in the *Summer ſeaſon*, a noiſe is heard like unto *Thunder*.

In many places betwixt the midſt of the Mountains, there are found *Valleys* ſo profound, that they ſtrike the Beholders with horrour, and cauſe a giddineſs.

I CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

Of Mines, Woods, and Deſarts.

Of Mines, Woods, and Deſarts.

Mines, *Woods*, and *Deſarts* do ennoble certain Parts or Tracts of the *Earth*; concerning which, although little can be propoſed, yet for an exact knowledge of the *Terreſtrial Superficies*, it will not be unneceſſary to conſider thoſe *Places*, and to deſign the *Tracts* and *Limits* of them; which we ſhall briefly perform in this *Chapter*.

Propoſition I.

A Mine is a place in the Earth from which Metals, Minerals, or other ſorts of Earth are dugg.

Of Mines.

But becauſe what is dugg up out of the *Earth* is various, therefore all theſe *Mines* receive various denominations, as *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Iron*, *Marble*, *Mines* of *precious Stones*, and the like.

Peru and *Caſtella Aurea*, and *Potoſi*, rich in Mines.

The moſt famous of the *Gold* and *Silver Mines* are thoſe of *Peru* and *Caſtella Aurea*, the richeſt in the world: for throughout all the *Provinces* of *Peru* are found *Mines* abounding with *Gold* and *Silver* (yet not excluding the other *Metals*); ſo that the Natives of *Peru*, and the *Spaniards* in times paſt did boaſt that the Ground or Soyl of this Kingdom was *Gold* and *Silver*. *Girava*, a *Spaniſh* Writer teſtifieth, at the City *Quito* are *Mines* which yield more *Gold* than *Earth*; therefore when that the *Spaniards* firſt arrived in this *golden Kingdom* (which for that reaſon they have fortified with ſtrong *Caſtles* and *Forts*) in many *Cities*, eſpecially the *Regal City*, called *Cuſco*, they beheld many *Houſes* ſpread within and without with *Plates* of *Gold*. The moſt rich *Mine* of *Silver* is in the Mountain *Potoſi*, in which 20000 *men* are employed to digg the *Earth*, deſcending by at leaſt 400 *ſteps*, and by theſe *Mines* the *King* of *Spain* receiveth a vaſt Revenue annually, to the envy of all other *Emperours* and *Potentates*.

2. The moſt excellent *Silver Mines* are in the *Iſles* of *Japan*, hence termed by the *Spaniards* the *Silver Iſlands*. There are alſo *Mines* of *Gold* found there, but now leſs rich than formerly.

3. *Arabia* had more abundance of *Mines* of *Gold*, than at this day.

4. In the mountainous parts of *Perſia*, as alſo in *China* there are certain *Mines* of *Silver*.

This Gold is called *Seed Gold*.

5. In *Guiney* are many Mountains producing *Gold*, but yet remote from the *ſhore*. The *Gold* is not dugg up that cometh from thence, but is gathered by other ways. Every one of their *Kings* are ſaid to have their proper *Mines*, and ſell the *Gold*, for which the *Europeans* give in exchange other *Commodities*.

6. In *Monomotapa* there are found rich *Mines* of *Gold* and *Silver*, as alſo in *Angola*.

7. Of all the *Provinces* of *Europe*, *Germany* is the moſt rich in abundance of *Mines*, whereof ſome afford ſome little *Gold*, divers *Silver*, and very many *Copper*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Vitriol*, *Antinomy*, and the like.

Rich Mines in *England*.

8. In many parts of *England* are rich *Mines* of *Lead* and *Tin*, which are found very profitable to the *Kingdom*, not only by that which is uſed here at home, but alſo by the great quantities which are tranſported to other *Countries*. Likewiſe *Mines* of *Iron*, *Coals*, ſome of *Silver*, &c.

9. *Sweden* hath the moſt rich *Copper Mine* of any hitherto known, in a vaſt Mountain which they call *Den Copperberg*: ſuch a great quantity of *Copper* is dugg, that it is ſaid to make up the third part of the *King*'s *Revenue*. There are alſo *Mines* of *Silver* and *Iron*, but they hardly diſcharge the expences in digging it.

10. *Mines*

10. *Mines* of *Jewels* are found in the Iſland of *Ceiland*, where there is alſo a *Silver Mine*, and a great *Marble Mine*. Mines of Jewels.

11. In the *Region* of *Chili* are rich Mines of *Jewels*, as alſo of *Silver* and *Gold*, but the warlike *Natives* having more eſteem to *Iron Weapons* than to *Gold* and *Silver*, have vanquiſhed the *Spaniards* and demoliſhed the *Mines*.

12. In the *Iſle* of *Madagaſcar*, *Iron* and *Gold* doth much abound; there is a moderate quantity of *Silver*, little *Gold*, no *Lead*; whence it cometh to paſs that the Natives more value *leaden diſhes* and *ſpoons*, than thoſe of *ſilver*.

13. In the *Iſle* of *Sumatra*, they write, that there are large *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Braſs*, and *Iron*, inſomuch that their *King* in the Year 1620. had by him 1000 *l.* weight of *Gold*.

14. In the *Philippine Iſles*, *Java*, *Hiſpaniola*, *Cuba*, and the reſt, *Hiſtories* record that *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, and *Iron* are found. In the Mountains of *Siam* alſo they relate that *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Tin* are found.

15. *Mines* of *Salt* are found in *Poland* at *Pochniam*, four *miles* from *Cracovia*, where they cut of huge lumps of lucid and white *Salt* from the *Earth*. In *Tranſilvania*; in the County of *Triol*; in *Spain*; in *Aſia minor*; in *Kiliſim* a Mountain of *Perſia*; in places near the *Caſpian Sea*, not far from the River *Volga*, where is the Iſland *Koſtowata*. Hence the *Ruſſians* digg their *Salt*, and boyle it up to a more pure Subſtance, and tranſport it throughout all *Ruſſia*. There is a ſalt Mountain in *Cuba*. All the Mountains of the Iſles of *Ormus* in the entrance of the *Perſian Gulph*, conſiſt of a *Chriſtalline ſalt*; yea, the whole *Iſle* is almoſt nothing elſe but *ſalt*, out of which they make the *Walls* of their *Houſes*. In *Africa* there is no other *ſalt* but what is dugg out of the *ſalt* parts of *Caves*, as *Marble* is, of a white, red, and aſhy colour. In *Peru*, 80 *miles* from *Lima*, in a certain *Valley* great plenty of *Salt* is found, whence every one may take what they pleaſe, becauſe it continually encreaſeth, neither doth it ſeem poſſible ever to be exhauſted. In the Kingdom of *Muſulipatan*, near the City *Baganaga*, great abundance of *ſalt* is dugg up, whence all the *Indians* fetch it. Of *ſalt Fountains* we ſhall ſpeak in another *Chapter*. Salt Mines.

Propoſition II.

A Wood is a multitude of Trees ſtretched forth in a long and continued Tract of Earth, and propagated without any Culture, or dreſſing and planting.

Moſt *Woods* have only *Trees* of one ſort, and are denominated from them; and ſeeing that there is great variety of *Trees*; there are alſo various differences of *Woods*, as a *Wood* conſiſting of *Palm-trees*, is termed *Palmetum*; of *Oak*, *Quercetum*, and the like. Although theſe terms are frequently uſed for *Groves* or leſs *Woods*. But they are divers in ſeveral *Regions*, eſpecially in thoſe more remote. In *Africa* at *Cape Verd*, are Woods of *Citrian* and *Orange-trees*, ſuch as are alſo found in other places. In *France* are whole *Woods* of *Cheſnut-trees*. In the *Iſle* of *Ceiland* are *Trees* whoſe bark doth afford *Cinamon*. In *Banda* are *Nuces Muſcatæ*. In *Braſil* are *Woods* of *Trees* called *Braſil* of great uſe for *Diers*. In *Madagaſcar* are *Tamerind Trees*, as alſo in other places. *Cedars* on Mount *Lebanus*, of which whole *Woods* are alſo found in *Japan*, ſo that they uſe them for *Maſts* for *Ships*. In *Spain*, *France*, and *Italy* are *Olive* and *Mirtle Trees*. In *Germany* the *Woods* conſiſt of *Beech*, *Oak*, *Alder*, *Pine*, *Juniper*, *Maple*, *Firr*, *Aſh*, and *Elm*. The moſt noted *Woods* or *Foreſts* are, that of *Hercinia*, which in times paſt almoſt overſpread all *Germany*; part of it is the *Bohemian Wood*, and *Bacen* or *Semana* in the Dukedom of *Brunſwick*, *Gabrata*, *Martiana*, and others. In *England* the *Woods* conſiſt of *Oak*, *Elm*, *Aſh*, *Beech*, and *Maple Trees*. In *Scotland* the famous *Wood* called *Caledonia*, and others in other places, eſpecially in *Norway*, where there is an abundance of vaſt *Trees* above all other *Countries* in *Europe*, called *Firr Trees*, whence all the *Maſts* of *Ships* almoſt throughout *Europe* are made. *Lithuania* hath almoſt nought elſe but *Trees*, whence the *King* of *Poland* hath a great Revenue. of Woods.

Propoſition III.

Deſarts are vaſt Tracts of Land not inhabited by man.

Of Deſarts. They are twofold; thoſe properly ſo termed, and thoſe improperly: The former are thoſe whoſe *ſoil* or *earth* is ſteril: The latter, which indeed is fertil, but not inhabited by man, as in many places in *Muſcovia* about the *Caſpian Sea*, from the ſhore of *Volga*, are many fertil and fat *Fields* which lie uncultivated, and chiefly by reaſon of the ſloath of the *Inhabitants*; as alſo by reaſon of the *Wars* of *Tamerlane*, by which thoſe *Countries* were depopulated: but theſe are leſs properly termed *Deſarts*. Of thoſe properly ſo termed, theſe are moſt noted, which may be divided into four *kinds*, *viz.* *Sandy*, *Ericoſe*, *Stony*, and *Mariſh* or *Boggy Deſarts*: Thoſe that are *Ericoſe* have for the moſt part here and there in many places *Woods* and *Foreſts*, are the more uſeful, and eaſier to be cultivated.

1. All the *Deſarts* of *Africa* are almoſt Sandy, neither is any part of the Earth more peſtered with Deſarts; the greateſt are found in *Lybia*; they alſo encompaſs all *Egypt*.
2. The *Deſarts* of *Arabia* are partly Sandy and partly Stony; but the moſt famous is that *Sandy Deſart* in *Arabia*, termed vulgarly the *Sandy Sea*.
3. The *Deſarts* of *Tartaria* about the Mountain *Imaus*: Alſo the Deſart *Belgian* about the *Moguls*, where hitherto it hath been (though falſly) believed, that the rich Kingdom of *Cathaie* is ſeated.
4. The *Deſarts* of *Camboia*.
5. The *Deſarts* of *Nova Zembla*, which are *rocky*.
6. The *Deſarts* of *Norway*, *Lapland*, *Sweden*, and *Finmarch*.
7. All the *Deſarts* of *Germany* are *Ericoſe*, they term them *Een Heide*, whence they call the *Deſart* in the *Dutchy* of *Luneburgh*.
8. The *Deſarts* of *America*, and the like.

OF

OF

Abſolute Geography.

SECT. IV.

Containing the Hydrography *or the deſcription of the* Water, *explained in Six Chapters.*

CHAP. XII.

Of the diviſion of the Ocean throughout the Earth.

BY reaſon that we have treated in the precedent Chapters of the *diviſion* of the parts of the *Earth*, order requireth that we contemplate the *diviſion* and *ſcituation* of the *Waters*, which compoſe the other part of the *Earth*, and alſo take a ſurvey of their *Properties* which do appertain unto *Geography*. In *Chapter VII. Propoſition II.* we diſtributed the *Waters* into four ſorts; which are, 1. *The Ocean*; 2. *Rivers* and *Fountains of Freſh-waters*; 3. *Lakes* and *Mariſhes*; and 4. *Mineral Waters*. In this Chapter we ſhall treat of the *diviſion* of the *Ocean*. The diviſion of the Ocean.

Propoſition I.

The Ocean in a continued tract encompaſſeth the whole Earth, and the Terreſtrial parts, neither is the Superficies of the ſame any where altogether interrupted by the Lands interpoſed; but the more large continuity and free congreſs is only impeded.

The truth of the *Propoſition* can only be proved by Experience, eſpecially from the *Circumnavigation* of the *Earth*, which hath now for a long while been ſo often attempted, and hapily performed firſt by the *Spaniards*, under the conduct of *Magellan*, who firſt found out the *Streights*: then by the *Engliſh* twice,

twice, *viz.* under *Drake* and *Cavendiſh*; and laſtly, five times by the *Hollanders*.

The opinion of the Ancients concerning the Old World.

The *Ancients* nothing doubting of this continuity, by reaſon that they accounted the Old World only for the extant *Earth*, and thought it on every ſide to be encompaſſed by the *Ocean*; yea ſome ſuppoſed it to float. But when that *America* was detected (which is extended from North to South in a very long tract, and impedeth the continuity of the *Ocean*;) and moreover the *Polary Land* North and South, then not undeſervedly was it doubted concerning it: For many ſuppoſed, and that not without probability, that *America* and the South *Continent* were conjoyned, as many *Geographers* now think, that the *Northern America* is contiguous to *Greenland*; which two, if both true, the Ocean could not encompaſs the whole Earth. But in truth *Magellan* removed the doubt, when in the *Year* 1520 he found out the *Streights* between *America* and the *South Continent*; by which it was manifeſt that the *Pacifick Ocean* was joyned with the *Atlantick*. What therefore the *Ancients* imagined from a falſe Opinion that they knew, that we know from infallible Experience. The like hapned with *Africa*, for then alſo the *Ancients* without any heſitation placed the *Ocean* without or beyond it, and thought *Africa* to be extended beyond the *Equator* in a far leſs ſpace than in truth it is; but when the *Portugals* had ſailed the Coaſt of *Africa*, and had found vaſt Lands in a long tract beyond the *Equator*; and then alſo it was queſtioned whether *Africa* could be ſailed about, that they might ſail into *India*; that is, whether it were encompaſſed with the *Ocean*? This doubt was removed by *Vaſques Gamma*, under whoſe conduct in *Anno* 1497. *Africa* was firſt ſailed about, the Promontory of *Good Hope* being found to be the ultimate bound of the ſame towards the South; which appellation it received from the King of *Portugal* in *Anno* 1494, when that *Diaz*, which firſt related concerning (although he paſſed it not, Victuals failing him, and the *Tempeſts* forcing his Return) the ſtorm and raging Ocean of this *Promontory*, and ſpake much more to the King.

Propoſition II.

The difference in the parts of the Ocean, which ariſeth from the Earth, is threefold; or the Water of the Ocean may be divided into three kinds, which are, 1. The particular Ocean or Seas; 2. The Bays of the Sea or Ocean; and 3. The Streights.

The Water in the Ocean may be divided into three kinds.

The word *Ocean* is taken in a twofold acceptation: Sometimes for the whole *Ocean* or *Water*, which encompaſſeth the Earth; ſometimes, and that frequently, for any part of the large *Ocean*, which adhereth to another part by a large tract, and that from on both ſides: So we ſay the *Atlantick Ocean*, the *German*, the *Ethiopick*, the *Indian*, and the *Chineſan Oceans*. In this latter ſignification by uſe of Speech we ſometimes uſe the word, although we ſometimes call a part of the entire Ocean the *Sea*; but by reaſon of the *homonymie* of the word *Mare*, or *Sea*, which ſhall be explained by and by, the word *Ocean* is uſually uſed in that ſenſe.

A Bay.

A *Sinus* or *Bay* of the *Sea* is ſaid to be a part of the Sea or Water which runneth between two *Lands* from the *Sea*, or ſome other *Bay* until it ſtop at ſome Land. It is alſo commonly termed a *Sea*.

A Streight.

A *Fretum* or *Streight* is a part of the *Ocean*, or part of a *Bay* of the Ocean or Sea, running between two Lands in a narrow tract, and conjoyning of two *Seas*, or conjoyned with the *Sea* from both extremities, by which they Sail from one Sea into another.

Pro-

Propoſition III.

We reckon four principal Oceans, or great parts of the whole Ocean or Seas, in reſpect of the ſcituation of the four Continents or Quarters of the Earth. Four principal Oceans.

1. The *Atlantick Ocean* is that part of the Ocean which is ſcituated between the *Occidental Coaſt* of the Old World, and the *Oriental* of the New. It is vulgarly termed *Mare del Nort*, or the *North Sea*; but improperly, ſeeing that it extendeth it ſelf beyond the *Equator* towards the South. It is more aptly divided into two parts, one from the *Equator* towards the North, the other ſtretcheth towards the South. It hath therefore on the Eaſtern quarter, the *Occidental Coaſt* of the Old World, and on the Weſtern, the *Oriental Coaſt* of *America*. Towards the North it conjoyneth with the *Hyperboreal*, or *Northern Ocean*; and towards the South with the *Southern Ocean*. Atlantick Ocean.

2. The *Pacifick Ocean* lieth between the Occidental Coaſt of *America* and *Aſia*, in a long tract, even to the Iſles of *India* and to *China*. Pacifick Ocean.

3. The *Hyperboreal Ocean* about the *North Polary Land*. Hyperboreal Ocean.

4. The *Southern Ocean* about the *South Continent*, part of which Ocean is the *Indian Ocean*. Southern Ocean.

Other *Geographers* make the four parts of the *Ocean* by another difference or diviſion; one of which they make the *Atlantick*, but extend it not beyond the *Equator*; for here they begin the ſecond, which they call the *Ethiopick*: For the third they reckon the *Pacifick* with us; the fourth they make to be the *Indian Ocean*. But we in our *diviſion* have regard unto the four great *Continents* of the Earth, or to the greateſt *Iſles*: We may make three parts, *viz.* the *Atlantick*, the *Pacifick*, and the *Indian Ocean*; but then we extend the *Atlantick* further. The matter is of no great moment, ſo that either may be choſen: for this diviſion rather dependeth on our Invention, than on Nature.

Propoſition IV.

The parts of the Ocean receive denominations from the names of the Lands they paſs by.

So we ſay the *Cantabrian*, the *Britiſh*, *German*, *Indian*, *Chineſan Ocean*, and the like.

Propoſition V.

The Bays of the Ocean are twofold, long, and broad; they are alſo twofold in another reſpect, to wit, primarily, and ſecondarily; they begin from the Ocean, theſe from another Bay; or they are a part of the primary Bay. The long primary are theſe: The Bays in the Ocean.

1. The *Mediterranean Sea*, it breaketh in from the Ocean between *Spain* and *Barbary*, and for a long ſpace runneth between *Europe* and *Africa*, even to *Syria*, *Aſia Minor*, and *Thrace*. It is called the *Internal Sea*. It maketh many ſecundary Bays, *viz.* the *Adriatick* (Gulph of *Venice*,) the Bay of *Theſſalonia*, the *Ægean Sea*, and the like. Mediterranean Sea.

As for the *Euxine Sea* we may doubt, whether it may be ſaid to be a part of this *primary Sinus*, of which ſee Chapter Fifteen. Euxine Sea.

The *Mediterranean Sea* is diſtinguiſhed by divers Names, taken from various Regions that it watereth; for towards the North it hath *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, *Sicilie*, *Illyricum*, *Greece*, *Creet*, *Thrace*, and *Aſia minor*; towards the South *Morocco*, *Feſs*, *Tunis*, *Algier*, *Tripoli* and *Egypt*. Thence are the Names of the *Iberian*, *Gallick*, *Liguſtick*, *Sicilian*, *Balearian*, and *Cretian Sea*. It is extended from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt*.

2. The

Baltick Sea. 2. The *Baltick Sea*, or *Sinus Codanus*, breaketh in from the *Ocean* between the Lands betwixt *Zeland* and *Jutland*; first it floweth by a long way from the North to the South, and then reflecting by a long space it runneth forth to the North, between the Provinces of *Germany*, *Megapolis*, *Pomerania*, *Cassubia*, *Borussia*, *Livonia*, &c. from one side, *viz.* the Oriental quarter. On the Occidental quarter it hath *Sweden* and *Lapland*. It maketh thtee secondary Bays, whereof two are long, *viz.* the *Botnick* and *Finnick*; the third is broad, *viz.* the *Livonick*. It receiveth Rivers of great Magnitude.

The Red Sea. 5. The *Red Sea*, *Arabian Gulph*, or Sea of *Mecca*, floweth from the *Indian* Ocean between the Promontory of *Arabia* to the City *Aden*, and between the Promontory of *Africa*, and runneth between *Africa* towards the West, and *Arabia* towards the East: it stoppeth at the *Isthmus* of *Africa* at the City *Suez*, where is the station or harbour of the *Turkish* Navy; it receiveth very few Rivers, and those of small Magnitude: but none from *Africa*, as some observe. It extendeth from the South quarter of the East, to the collateral quarter of the North quarter towards the West.

The Persian Gulph. 4. The *Persian Gulph* runneth between *Arabia* and *Persia* from the *Indian* Ocean, about the Isle of *Ormus*. It hath *Persia* on the East, and *Arabia* on the West: it stoppeth at *Chaldæa*. It extendeth from East and by South to the West and by North quarter; and receiveth very few Rivers except *Euphrates* and *Tigris*, long before conjoyned.

The Bay of California. 5. The *Sinus* or Bay of *California*, *Mer Vermejo*, runneth between *California* and the Occidental Coast of *Mexico* from the South towards the North: it is terminated at the unknown Province of *America Tatonteac*: It receiveth few Rivers. The Modern Mariners affirm *California* to be an Isle; and if so, this tract of Water cannot be a *Sinus*, *Gulph*, or *Bay*, but a *Streight*.

The Bay of Nanquin. 6. The Bay of *Nanquin*, runneth between *Corea* and the Coast of *China* and *Tartary* unto the Northern parts of *Tartary*, where *Tenduc* the Kingdom of *Cathay* is placed; yet falsly as those suppose, who will have *Corea* to be an Isle. It receiveth few Rivers: it extendeth from West to North.

These are the long Gulphs, unto which lesser may be added; as the Gulph of *Cambaia*, and others. The four last rehearsed do not afford secondary Gulphs, *viz.* *Arabia*, *Persia*, *California*, and *Nanquin*, but only the *Mediterranean* and *Baltick*.

Proposition VI.

Broad Gulphs are in number Seven, viz.

Gulph of Mexico. 1. The Gulph of *Mexico* floweth from the *Atlantick* Ocean, between the North and South parts of *America*, which it separateth from the Oriental quarter to the Occidental. It stoppeth at a long *Isthmus* between those Lands; which impedeth the conjunction of the *Pacifick* and *Atlantick* Ocean on this quarter. It receiveth many Rivers, and for multitude of Isles may compare with the *Ægean Sea*.

Gulph of Ganges. 2. The Gulph of *Ganges*, (Gulph of *Bengala*) floweth between *India* and the *Chersonesus* of *Malacca*, from the *Indian* Ocean: it stoppeth at the Kingdoms of *India*, *Bengala*, *Pegu*, and others. It receiveth noted Rivers, besides the *Ganges*.

3. The Gulph between *Malacca* and *Camboja*, not far from the Gulph of *Bengala*, and likewise floweth from the South towards the North: it stoppeth at the Kingdom of *Siam*.

The Gulph Lantchidolinum. 4. The *Russian Gulph*, or *White Sea*, floweth from the North Ocean, between *Lapland* and the utmost Coasts of *Russia*, towards the South: it is terminated partly at *Finland*, and partly at the Kingdom of *Moscovia*: it maketh a certain small long Gulph, which is extended to *Lapland*; where is that noted and well frequented Mart *Archangelo*. It receiveth eminent Rivers.

5,6. The

5, 6. The Gulph *Lantchidolimum* floweth from the *Indian Ocean*, between the Provinces of the South Country *Beach* and *New Guiney*: it ſtretcheth from the North to the South, and terminateth at the unknown parts of the South Continent. The Gulph *Lantchidolimum*.

Another *Gulph* is near unto it towards the Weſt, between *Beach* and the other procurrent Land of the South, where is the Land called *Anthonij à Diemen*, which is the Name of a *Dutch* Maſter of a Ship by whom it was diſcovered.

7. *Hudſon's Sea* is a *Gulph* between *New France* and *Canada*, and other parts of the Northern *America*; it is terminated at *Eſtotiland*. *Hudſon's Sea.*

Propoſition VII.

Fretum, or Streights are threefold. For either they conjoyn the Ocean with the Ocean; or the Ocean with a Gulph; or a Gulph with a Gulph. Of Streights.

We will enumerate fifteen, whereof three are of moſt note.

1. The *Streights* of *Magellan* of a very long Tract; it conjoyneth the *Atlantick Ocean* with the *Pacifick*, and affordeth a paſſage from one into the other. The *Longitude* of it from Eaſt to Weſt is 110 *miles*: the *Latitude* is various, ſometimes two *miles*, ſometimes one, and ſometimes a quarter of a *mile*. *Magellan* was the firſt that found it, and ſailed it in *Anno* 1500: its *Latitude* from the *Equator* is 52 *degrees* 30 *minutes*. On the North it hath *Chica*, a Province in South *America*: On the South the Iſles of *Magellan* and *Terra del Fuego*. Streights of *Magellan*.

2. Near unto this is *Fretum le Maire*, between the South Continent and the Iſles of *Magellan*; through that the way is far ſhorter through the *Ocean* of *Atlas* into the *Pacifick Sea*. It is diſtant from the *Equator* 54 *degrees* 30 *minutes*. *Fretum le Maire*

3. The *Streight* of *Manilhas* extended between *Luconia*, *Mindanoa*, and other *Philippine Iſles*; it is reported to be 100 *Leagues*. It is dangerous to *Ships* by reaſon of the abundance of *Sands*. It is extended from the Eaſt to the Weſt. It conjoyneth the *Pacifick Ocean* with the *Indian* on that part, albeit there be more free conjunctions in the *Vicine*. Streights of *Manilhas*.

4. There be many *Streights* among the *Indian Iſles*, as alſo between the *Iſles* and *Vicine Continents*. As firſt between *Ceilan* and *India*. 2. Between *Sumatra* and *Malacca*. 3. Between *Sumatra* and *Banda*.

5. *Waigats Streights*, through which there is a paſſage from the North or *Ruſſian Sea* into the *Tartarian Ocean*, but as yet is ſtopped with *Ice*, at leaſt from the *Europeans*. It lieth between *Samojeda* and *Nova Zembla*. *Waigats* Streights.

6. The *Glacick Streights* between *Nova Zembla* and *Spitzberga*, or by another name termed *Terra Polaris*. *Glacick* Streights.

7. *Davies Streights* between *Groenland* and the Northern *America*, but the *Exit* of it is not yet diſcovered, and therefore it is doubted whether it be a *Streight* or a *Gulph*. *Davies* Streights.

8. *Forbiſchers Streights* afford a way to the *Atlantick Ocean*, if not by the *Pacifick Ocean*, yet at leaſt by *Hudſon's* Paſſage. *Forbiſchers* Streights.

9. The *Streights* of *Anian* between North *America* and *Tartaria*, through which there is a paſſage from the *Tartarian Ocean* into the *Pacifick*; but as yet uncertain. But yet that there is ſome *Streight* between the North part of *America* and *Tartaria*; and alſo another between *America* and *Groenland*, ſkilful Mariners do hence collect, becauſe that in that part of the *Pacifick Sea*, which lieth between *Tartaria* and the *Occidental Coaſt* of the Northern *America*, 70 *miles* from *Japan* to *America*, the names of the *Sea*, and motion of the ſame is from the North, and Weſt and by North, although divers winds, or thoſe from another quarter do blow; but for 100 *miles* before that Shore of *New Spain*, thoſe *floods* and *motions* ceaſe altogether, for they are carried to ſome open *Streight* beyond *New Spain*, ſcituated towards the North. Add Streights of *Anian*.

moreover, that in thoſe 70 *miles*, many *Whales* and *Fiſhes* which the *Spaniards* call *Albacores*, *Bonetos*, and *Arum* are found, which kind of *Fiſhes*, for the moſt part, move about *Streights*; ſo that it is probable that they come from the *Streights* of *Anian* into this part of the *Pacifick Ocean*, ſeeing that they are not found in any part of the *Ocean*. But very many of the Moderns altogether deny this *Streight*, and place the wide *Ocean* between *Tartaria*, *Corea*, and *America*.

Straits of *Gaditanum*. 10. The *Streights* of *Gaditanum*, *Herculeum*, or of *Gibraltar*, through which the *Atlantick Ocean* floweth into the *Mediterranean Streight*; The leaſt *Latitude* is about one *mile*; the *Longitude* greater. It lieth between *Spain* and *Africa*. Writers affirm that in times paſt there was no ſuch *Streight*, but that it proceeded from the *Oceans* breaking through into the *Land*.

The *Sound*. 11. The *Streights* of *Denmark*, or the *Sound*, lie between *Zeland* and *Scandia*; through it the *Atlantick Ocean* floweth into the *Baltick Sea*. The *Latitude* is about ½ a *mile* where it is narroweſt. Unto this *Streight* we muſt add another between *Zeland* and *Funen*; and a third between *Funen* and *Jutland*, called the *Belt*.

Arabian Gulph 12. The Mouth of the *Arabian Gulph*; it is near the *Emporium Aden*, through which there is a paſſage from the *Indian Ocean* into the *Red-ſea*.

Perſian Gulph. 13. The *Streights* of the *Perſian Gulph*, yet improperly ſo termed, by reaſon that the entrance is no more narrow than the *Gulph* it ſelf.

The *Helleſpont*. 14. The *Helleſpont*, a *Streight* ſufficiently famous amongſt the *Greeks*, through which there is a paſſage from the *Euxine Sea* into the *Propontis*. Near unto this is another *Streight* termed the *Thracian Boſphorus*, by which they ſayl from the *Propontis* into the *Ægean Sea*.

15. The *Streights* between *Sicily* and *Italy*.

Thus have we explained the differences of the Parts of the *Ocean* exiſting from the ſcituation of the *Land*, as in the eight *Chapter* we have ſhewed the differences of the Lands proceeding from the *Oceans* flowing between. For the more facile retaining of the ſame, it will be advantageous to have a *proſpect* or *periplus* of the *Maritinate Coaſt* of the *Lands* and *Tract* of the *Ocean*.

For the more eaſie remembring of the ſcituation of the Parts of the *Earth*, it will be neceſſary to know the *Shores* of the *Continents* of the *Maritine Coaſts*, and their conjunction; alſo the conjunction and ſcituation of the Parts of the *Sea*.

The *Periplus* of the Maritine Coaſts of the old world. The *Periplus* of the *Maritine Coaſt* of the *Old World* is that which comprehendeth *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa*. The bound of the ſame towards the North is *Waigats Streights*; hence therefore it is beſt to begin. The Province of *Samojeda* adjoyneth to *Waigats Streights*, and in proceeding forwards towards the Weſt of *Muſcovia*, where alſo the *Land* by a *Gulph* made receiveth the *white Sea* from the North: Then *Lapland* and the *Coaſt* of *Norway* towards the Weſt, lying from the North to the South. Here a bending being made towards the Eaſt, the *Coaſt* of *Scania* and *Gotland*, where another bending being made, whoſe other *Coaſt* is *Jutland*, receiveth the *Sea*, which is called the *Baltick Sea*, flowing to *Swedeland*, *Finland*, *Livonia*, *Boruſſia*, *Caſſubia*, *Pomerania*, *Megapolis*, *Holſatia*, and *Jutland*. Then followeth the other *Coaſt* of *Jutland* and *Holſatia*, *Frieſland*, *Holland*, *Zeland* (where the *Sea* is termed the *German Sea*) *France* and *Spain*. Here again is a divarication, and a *Gulph* being made, the Internal Sea is received in and floweth by *Spain*, *France*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Græcia*, *Thracia*, *Aſia Minor*, *Egypt* and *Barbary*, where at *Morocco*, the Shore again is oppoſite to the *Spaniſh Coaſt*; and afterwards followeth the Occidental ſhore of *Africa* at *Cape Verd*, where the Coaſt bendeth to the Eaſt, *viz.* here is *Guiney*, *Angola*, *Congo*, towards the South at the *Cape* of *Good-hope*, where again the Shore bendeth towards the North, *Mozambique*, *Soffala*, and a *Gulph* is made for the *Red-ſea*: then followeth the *Coaſt* of *Arabia*; here the *Coaſts* of the *Perſian Gulph*; and towards the Eaſt, the *Coaſt* of *Perſia*, *Cambaja*, *Indoſtan*, *India*, *Malacca*, *Bengala*, *Camboja*, *China*, *Tartary* at *Corea*, or the *Streight* of *Anian*,

Anian, whence by or through the Northern Coast of *Tartary* and *Samojedia*, you return to *Waigats Streights*.

The *Circumscription* or *Periplus* of *America* is thus:

The *Periplus* of *America*.

We begin from the Shore of *Davies Streights*, whence in a *Gulph* being made, the Sea named from *Hudson* is received. Here by a reflexion are the Coasts of *Estotiland*, *New-England*, *New-France*, *Virginia*, *Florida*, *Mexico*, the *American Isthmus*, *Castelle del Oro*, *Guiana*, *Caribana*, *Brazilia*: Here the Coasts of the *Streights* of *Magellan* looking towards the South, but extended from the East to the West: hence from the South to the North runneth the Shore of *Chili*, *Peru*, the *American Isthmus*, *Mexico*, where at *California*, the Sea of *Vermejo* is received in a *Gulph*; hence the Coast of *California New-England*, *Quivira*, *Anian*, where are the Coasts of the *Streights* of *Anian*, which now they deny, and follow unknown Shores, which are extended to the *Streights* of *Davies*.

The *Circumscription* of the *North Polary Land* is thus: From *Davies Streights* the Coasts of *Groenland* do begin, which run a little towards the South, and then return to the North, and are termed the *Coasts of Spitzbergh*.

Then the Shore runneth from the Region of *Nova Zembla*, and is opposite to the *Tartarian Ocean*; where the other Coasts, even to *Davies Streights*, are unknown.

The *Periplus* of the Land of *Magellan*.

The *Periplus* of the Land of *Magellan* is thus: The Coast beginneth from the *Streights* of *Magellan* or *Le Maire*, and making divers windings to the Region *Beach*, where the *Lantchilonium* Sea is received in a *Streight*: hence the Coasts of *New-Guiney* run forward to the North, and then return to the South, then they go strait on to the *Streights* of *Magellan*. Thus the *Periplus* of the Land is finished.

Now let us take a prospect of the *Circumscription* of the *Ocean*: We will make entrance between *Davies Streights* and *Nova Zembla*; and here is the *Hyperborean Sea*, the *Frozen Sea*, the *Caledonian* or *Sea* of *Groenland*: then it runneth between the Coast of *Europe* and *America*, and is called the *British Sea*, the *Danish Sea* (where it maketh a *Gulph*) the *German*, *French*, *Spanish*, (where it maketh the *Mediterranean* and *Sea* of *Mexico*) the *Atlantick* in part, here, *viz.* where it runneth between the *Coasts* of *Brasil* and *Africa*, by and by it is called *Æthiopia*; and the *Streights* of *Magellan* on one side enter in, from the other Eastern quarter is the *Indian* and *Southsea*, where it is extended between *Africa* and the *Land* of *Magellan*, then between *Asia* and the same *Land* of *Magellan*, and cometh into the *Pacifick sea*, which is extended to the *Streights* of *Waigats* and *Anian*; and to the South *Streight* of *Magellan* (by the middle of which it is joyned to the *Atlantick*) it directly tendeth to the *Oriental Coast* of *America*, *Chili*, *Peru*, *Mexico*, *California*, *New-England*.

To these I should subjoyn two *Tables*, whereof one containeth the division of the Parts of the *Earth*; the other the *division* of the Parts of the *Ocean*, but having made use of the former in the eighth *Chapter*, I omit it here, and only make use of the latter, *viz.* the Parts of the *Ocean*.

The *Earth* is divided into *Land* and *Waters*. The *Water* is divided into *Rivers*, *Lakes*, *Marshes*, and the continued *Ocean* or *Sea* is distinguish'd through the *Lands* by these differences.

1. The OCEAN, whose chief parts are four,
   1. The *Atlantick*, *Mer del Nort*, following with the *Ethiopick Sea*, between *Europe* and *Africa* on the one part, and *America* on the other, obtaineth divers Names, according to the parts; as the *Ethiopick*, *British*, *French*, Ocean.
   2. The *Pacifick Ocean*, *Mer del Zur*, between the extream parts of *Asia*, the *Indian Isles*, and the Occidental Coast of *America*.
   3. The North Ocean, about the North Continent, the *Tartarian*, *Hyperborean*, *Frozen* Ocean.
   4. The South Ocean, about the Land of *Magellan*, part of which is the *Indian Sea*.

2. BAYS, or GULPHS.
   - *Long*; whereof there are six, to wit,
     1. The *Mediterranean*, running between *Africa* and the Regions of *Europe*, whose parts are The *Iberian*, *Sicilian*, *Cretan* Sea, &c. The secondary Gulphs, which are many, The *Adriatick*, Gulph of *Venice*, *Euxine* Sea, The Bay of *Corinth*, &c.
     2. The *Baltick* Ocean, whence are these secondary Gulphs, as that of *Livonia*, *Botnia*, *Finmarke*.
     3. The Gulph of *Arabia*, between *Africa* and *Arabia*.
     4. The *Persian* Gulph, between *Arabia* and *Persia*.
     5. The Gulph of *California*, between *California* and New *Granada*.
     6. The Gulph of *Corea*, between *Corea* and the utmost bounds of *Tartaria* and *China*.
   - *Broad* or *Wide*, as
     1. The Gulph of *Mexico*, between the North and South *America*.
     2. The Gulph of *Bengala*, between the Coasts of *Indostan* and *Malacca*.
     3. The Gulph between *Malacca* and *Camboja*.
     4. The *White Sea* from the North Ocean, between *Lapland* and the utmost Coasts of *Moscovia*.
     5. The *Lantchidol Sea*, between the *Beach* and New *Guiny* of the Land of *Magellan*.
     6. *Hudsons* Sea, between New *France* and *Canada*, arising from the Northern Ocean.

     These want Streights.

3. *Streights*, as the Streights of
   1. *Magellan*, by which you come from the *Atlantick* or *Ethiopick* into the *Pacifick*; and this is the longest Streight of all others.
   2. *Le Maire*, near to that of *Magellan*, and of the same use.
   3. *Waigats*, by which you sail from the North Ocean into the *Tartarian*.
   4. *Anian*, by which you sail from the *Tartarian* into the *Pacifick Ocean*; which is now denied.
   5. *Davis* and *Forbishers*, by which you sail from the *Atlantick* into the *Tartarian* or *Pacifick*.
   6. *Nova Zembla*, by which a way might be granted from the *Hyperborean* and *Frozen-Sea* into the *Tartarian*, but that the Ice doth hinder.
   7. *Gibraltar*, by which a passage is from the *Atlantick* into the *Mediterranean*.
   8. *Denmarke*, (or the *Sound*) by which you pass out of the *Atlantick* into the *Baltick Sea*.
   9. The Mouth of the *Arabian Sea*, by which you arrive in the *Arabian* Gulph.
   10. The Mouth of the *Persian Sea*, by which you come into the *Persian* Gulph.
   11. The *Hellespont* and *Bosphorus*, by which you come from the *Ægean Sea* into the Sea of *Pontus*.

As concerning the *Caspian Sea*, whether that it be peculiar, or whether that it belongeth to the broad Gulphs of the Ocean, of which it is a subterranean passage, is yet doubted.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

Of ſome Properties of the Ocean, and its Parts.

Propoſition I.

The Superficies of the Ocean, and all Liquid Bodies, is Rotund, Spherical, or elſe is part of a Spherical Superficies, whoſe Center is the ſame with that of the whole Earth or Land.

The verity of this *Theorem* is manifeſt from thoſe Arguments, by which we proved in the *third Chapter*, that the *Superficies* of the *Earth* is *Spherical*, which is true concerning the *Water* as the *Earth*, as I have there proved. But becauſe thoſe probations only conclude *à poſteriori*, I here therefore determine to make demonſtration *à priori*, by which *Archimedes* proved concerning all *Liquid Bodies* that the *ſuperficies* was *ſpherical*, this ſuppoſed as a thing certain, conſiſting in the *Earth*, or in part of the *Earth*. For *Archimedes* ſuppoſeth in his demonſtration three things; 1. In the middle of it the *Earth* hath ſome kind of *Center*, and therefore is of a *ſpherical figure*. 2. That this is the nature of all *liquid bodies*, that the parts of them lying equally, or in an equal diſtance from the *Center* of the *Earth*, and continuous amongſt themſelves, the leſſer preſſed is expelled by the more preſſed, which he ſheweth from experience. 3. That every part of a *liquid body* is preſſed by the *liquid body* above it, to the Perpendicular in reſpect of the *Center* of the *Earth*, if ſo be that this *liquid body* be deſcending or preſſed by ſome other body. Beſides theſe three Suppoſitions, *Archimedes* uſeth a certain *Geometrical Propoſition*, which is not found demonſtrated in the *Elements*, and therefore he demonſtrateth the ſame, which is this: If any *ſuperficies* be cut from whatſoever places paſſing through one *point*, and every *ſection* be the *periphery* of the *Circle*, having that *point* its *Center*, this *ſuperficies* is *ſpherical*; whoſe *Center* ſhall be the *point* named. Now this is very eaſie to ſhew: For let the *ſuperficies* of any *body* be cut through the *point* D in the plain I F K E P, and let the *line* of the *ſection* I F K E P be the *periphery* of the *Circle*, having it for its *Center*, and in every *ſection* made by D, let the *periphery* of the *Circle*, having the *Center* D, be found. We muſt ſhew that this *ſuperficies* is *ſpherical*, and D is its *Center*, D its *point*, that is, all the *points* of this *line* are equally diſtant from the *point* D; for we may conceive as many *right lines* as we will draw from the *point* D to the other *points* of the propoſed *ſuperficies*. Therefore theſe muſt be demonſtrated to be equal mutually one to the other, let any one of thoſe drawn from D to the *ſuperficies* be taken, and through that and through the *right line* D F let a *plain* be drawn, this *plain* therefore cutting the *ſuperficies* will make the *periphery* according to the *Hypotheſis*: wherefore that being drawn, ſhall be equal to the *right line* D F, and ſo we ſhall ſhew concerning all drawn from the *point* D, that they are equal to D F it ſelf, by reaſon that they are all mutually equal one to another: from whence we infer, that this *ſuperficies* is *ſpherical*, having for a *Center* the *point* D: for a *ſpherical ſuperficies* is a *crooked ſuperficies*, within which is a certain *point*, from whence all the *right lines* being drawn are equal at the *ſuperficies*.

The demonſtration of *Archimedes*.

See Scheme.

This premiſed, the *ſpherical ſuperficies* of every liquid body is demonſtrated in this manner: Let any conſiſting matter be E F G H, let D be the *Center* of the *Earth*, and let us conceive this *liquor* to be cut in a plain paſſage through D; let the *ſection* made on the *ſuperficies* of the liquor be the *line* E F G H: but we muſt firſt ſhew that this *line* E F G H is crooked, *viz.* the *periphery* or *arch* of the *periphery* of the *Circle* whoſe *Center* is D: But if it may be brought to paſs, that there may be no ſuch *periphery*, the *right lines* drawn from D to that will be unequal: let the unequal drawn *lines* be D E, D G, to wit, D G will be greater than D E, and let D G be the greateſt of all which are drawn from

from D, and let D E be the leaſt: let the other *right line* D F be drawn twice cutting the *Angle* G D E at E F G H, ſo that this *line* D F ſhall be greater than D E, but leſs than D G: then let the *periphery* or *arch* of the *Circle* I F K H be deſcribed in the *Center* D, the internal D E in this ſame *plain*, the *periphery* of which will cut the *right line* D E protracted beyond the *point* E, *viz.* in the *point* I, but the *right line* D G on this ſide G, *viz.* in the *point* K.

Moreover, in the *Center* D, the interval D L, which is leſſer than D E, let the *periphery* or *arch* L M N be deſcribed beneath or within the liquor in the *plain* I F K H; therefore the parts of the liquor contained within D L N, or about the *periphery* L M N by an equal diſtance are placed, and are continuous from the *Center* D; but thoſe parts which are about M N are more preſſed than thoſe that are about L M, becauſe they are preſſed by a greater weight, *viz.* a greater quantity of *water* being above them, than thoſe at L M.

Therefore the parts near L M being leſs preſſed, are expelled from the parts near M N, and theſe ſhall poſſeſs their place, neither ſhall the liquor conſiſt; but let the liquor be ſuppoſed to conſiſt and be quiet, there ſhall be then a liquor conſiſting; and not conſiſting which will be abſurd: wherefore the *right lines* drawn from D to the *line* E F G H are not unequal, but equal, and therefore the line E F G H is the *Arch* of the *Periphery* of the *Circle*, whoſe *Center* is D. The ſame is the demonſtration concerning all places cutting the *Superficies* of the *Liquors*, and paſſing through D, *viz.* it will ſhew the *Section* of the *Arch* of the *Periphery* of the *Circle* of the *Center* D. Now by reaſon that the *Superficies* of *Liquors* is ſuch, that if it be cut by *Planes* in any ſort paſſing by D, the *Section* may always be the *Periphery* of the *Circle*: Therefore it followeth from the aforeſaid demonſtrated *Propoſition*, that the *Superficies* of *Liquors* is *Spherical*, having the *Center* the *point* D, which is the *Center* of the *Earth*; therefore the *Superficies* of the *Ocean* is *Spherical*, having the ſame *Center*, which is the *Center* of the *Earth*; which will alſo be manifeſt from the confirmation of the following *Propoſition*.

Propoſition II.

The Ocean is not of a greater height than the Shores of the Earth are, and therefore the Earth and Water are almoſt of the ſame Altitude, high Mountains excepted.

The Earth and Water are almoſt of the ſame Altitude.

The truth of this *Propoſition* is demonſtrated from the former *Propoſition*: For if the *Superficies* of the *Ocean* be *Spherical*, and of the ſame *Center* with the *Superficies* of the *Earth*, and the *Sea* be no higher about the *Shores* than the *Earth*, therefore neither ſhall the middle of the *Ocean* be higher than the *Earth*, but its *Superficies* with the *Superficies* of the other ſhall make one and the ſame *Spherical Superficies*: But without the former *Propoſition* we ſhall ſhew this *Theorem à poſteriori* after this manner, as the preceeding *Propoſition* may be ſhewed from this, if that they conſide not in the former demonſtration by reaſon of the aſſumed *Hypotheſis*.

1. Experience teſtifieth that *Water* being free, and not hindred, doth flow from more high places to places more low: If therefore the place about the Shore was not ſo high as in the middle of the *Ocean*, part of the *Sea* would flow from the middle of the *Ocean* to the *Shore*, and would neither conſiſt or be calm, which yet is not found in the tranquillity of the *Air*.

2. If that the *Ocean* far remote from the *Shores*, were more high than the *Sea* at the *Shore*, that *Altitude* would be diſcovered a far longer interval, than a *Spherical Superficies* doth admit of; yea, it would be ſeen from the ſame diſtance from which the parts of the *Ocean* intercepted between that *Altitude* and the *Shore* are ſeen. And experience teſtifieth, that it cannot be beheld from a greater diſtance, but that by *degrees* the more remote part is detected after the more near, when we come to *Mediterranean places* to the *Shore*: And by

by how much any part is more vicine to the *ſhore*, by ſo much it is firſt, or by a larger interval beheld from the *ſhore*: Therefore the part of the *Ocean* removed from the *ſhore* is not higher than that part that is nigh unto it. Wherefore the *Ocean* is of the ſame *Altitude* every where, both in the middle, and at the *ſhore*, and not higher than the *Earth*.

3. *Mariners* in the midſt of the *Ocean* and deep *Sea*, although they apply their *Mathematical Inſtruments*, yet find it no higher there than in the parts near the *ſhore*: which certainly could not be, if that the *Sea* had any *Altitude* elevated as a *Tower* or *Mountain*. For as by *Inſtruments* we find the *Altitude* of *Towers* or *Mountains* above the ſubjected parts of the *Earth*, ſo alſo if that there were any *Altitude* of the middle *Ocean* above the vicine parts, it could not be obſtructed, and avoid the ſubtilty of *Inſtruments*.

4. Alſo here and there in the middle of the *Ocean* are found *Iſlands*, and that in great number in ſome parts, which are near to the *Continents* or great *Iſlands*: Therefore the middle of the *Ocean* is not higher than the *Earth*, becauſe it is not higher than the Shores of thoſe *Iſlands*.

5. No cauſe can be ſhew'd, why *Water* in the middle of the *Ocean* ſhould be higher, and not flow into the *Chanels* of *Rivers*, if that their *Waters* be more depreſſed: For by experience we find that *Water* any where ſcituated moveth to the vicine parts, and theſe are leſs high, which have been the cauſe of ſo many inundations.

From theſe I think we ſufficiently collect, that the *Waters* of the *Ocean* are not higher than the *ſhoars* of the Land. Seeing therefore the Altitude of very few *ſhoars* is elevated little more than the vicine *Mediterranean Land*, and in moſt leſſer, ſeeing that the Altitude of the Lands from the *ſhoars* to the *Mediterranean places* increaſeth and riſeth into *Hills*; thence we conclude, that the *ſuperficies* of the *Ocean* is not higher than the *ſuperficies* of the *Land*. Now that the Altitude of the *Land* from the *ſhoars* to the *Mediterranean places* augmenteth, or that the *Mediterranean places* are higher than the *ſhoars*, is proved from the flux of *Rivers*, moſt of which ariſe in *Mediterranean places*, and flow to the *Ocean*. So then at leaſt the *Mediterranean parts* are ſomewhat more elevated than the *ſhoars*, becauſe the flux is from theſe unto them; for *Water* floweth from the more high parts to places more inferiour. Now that ſome are ſomewhat depreſſed lower than the *Water*, we ſhall not go about to deny; but they are either defended by the height of their *ſhoars*, or by *banks* or other interpoſed *earth*. Now theſe *Banks* are raiſed for the moſt part, not becauſe of the great Altitude of the *Ocean*, being tranquillous and in its natural ſtate; but by reaſon of its impetuous motion, cauſed by the *Winds*, or from ſome other cauſe.

Corollary. Therefore they are deceived who will have the *Waters* of the *Ocean* to be higher than the *Earth*, and flie to a miraculous providence, by which the inundation of the *Ocean* on the Land and drowning of the World is hindred and reſtrained: For we have ſhewed, that the *ſuperficies* of the *Water* and *Earth* are one and almoſt the ſame, to wit, *ſpherical*; and that many parts of the *Earth*, at leaſt the *ſhoars*, have a greater Altitude than the middle of the *Ocean*, and that this is the cauſe that the *Ocean* cannot overflow the Lands. Which greater Altitude, if it be elevated in ſome *ſhoars*, the Banks being broken, or the Water being augmented or forced to them in great abundance, cauſe inundations. Neither is it altogether impoſſible or contrary to nature, that the whole *Earth* ſhould be covered with *Water*, as we ſhall ſhew in the end of the Chapter. Corollary.

Propoſition

Propoſition III.

Why the Sea being beheld from the ſhoar, ſeemeth to ariſe in a greater Altitude and tumor, by how much it is more remote.

The middle of the Ocean by ſome ſaid to be many miles higher than the Shoars.

It is a fallacy of the ſight, or of the eſtimating faculty, which hath brought many into this errour: ſo that they have endeavoured to defend, that the middle of the *Ocean* is many miles higher than the *Shoars*. But it is a wonder that none of them have taken notice of daily Experiments in the ordinary courſe of our life, in which this fallacy is ſufficiently manifeſt: For if that we look on any Pavement or floor ſtretched at length, or any row of Pillars, the more remote parts of the *Pavement* will appear more high than the vicine parts, ſo that from thence, from our place to the moſt remote, the *Floor* will ſeem by degrees more and more to elevate, which yet notwithſtanding it is every where of the ſame Altitude. After the ſame mode it is with the *Waters* of the *Ocean*; for if on the *Shoar* you uſe a *Geodetical Inſtrument*, commodious to meaſure places withal, you ſhall find no elevation of the remote part of the *Ocean* above the *Shoar*, but rather a little depreſſion; ſo that the Waters ſink beneath the *Horizon* of the *Shoars*.

See Scheme.

Thoſe that are verſed in the *Opticks* declare the cauſe of the fallacy: Let A be the *Eye*, and let it ſurvey the *pavement* or *ſuperficies* of the Water extended at length unto the long ſpace a e. Let the *Angle* a A e be divided into equal parts or four *Angles*, which are e A d, d A c, c A b, b A a from the right drawn A b, A c, A d, to wit, the more remote ſhall be far more great, as appeareth from the *Diagram*, *viz.* e d is greater than d c, and d e greater than b c, and b c than a h. Although theſe parts are very unequal, yet they will appear equal, becauſe they appear under the equal *Angles* a A b, b A c, c A d, d A e, and the Eſtimative faculty will judge them to be removed an equal diſtance from the *Eye* A (in which there is a great deception) and therefore will judge the *lines* A b, A c, A d, A e, to be A f, A g, A h, A k, as they are equal a b, f g, g h, h k; whence the parts b c, c d, d e ſeem elevated, as if they were f g, g h, h k. Or more briefly, becauſe the *Eye* is more elevated to behold Objects remote, than it is depreſſed at things near; therefore remote things are judged to be elevated, and thoſe nigh, depreſſed: or becauſe we compare the elevation of our Eye to parts vicine, therefore we judge them depreſſed; but we cannot ſo compare the *elevation* of our *Eye* to parts remote, wherefore they ſeem more elevated than in truth they are.

So therefore we ſee from this, that the *Ocean*, to one that beholdeth it from the Shoar, ſeemeth higher, by how much it is the more remote; from thence, I ſay, it is no probation that it is more elevated.

Some render another Reaſon, *viz.* that therefore a greater Altitude is to be attributed to the middle of the *Ocean* than to the *Earth*, by reaſon that they ſuppoſe that otherwiſe it cannot come to paſs, that *water* ſhould flow from the *Ocean* to *Fountains* of *Rivers*; which *Fountains* are in *Mediterranean planes*, ſeeing that no *water* floweth, but from an higher place unto one more low depreſſed. But I ſhall ſhew it to be performed by another way in the *Chapter* where I treat of the Original of *Rivers* or *Fountains*.

And ſo alſo any one may inferr, that the Mountain of *Teneriff* is not ſo high (as alſo other *Mountains*) as to be beheld in the *Ocean* for ſo long an interval at four *degrees*, except that the *foot* of the *Mountain* or the *Ocean* be higher than the *Sea* at the Shoar of *Teneriff*. But what Anſwer is to be returned to this is manifeſt from the *Eleventh Chapter*, whe e we have treated of the Original or heights of *Mountains*.

Propoſition

Propoſition IV.

To exhibit the cauſe and Original of Gulphs, Bays, and Streights of the Ocean.

The cauſe of Gulphs, Bays, and Streights in the Ocean.

Theſe *Bays* in proper manner of Speech are the *Sinus* of the *Land*, not of the *Ocean*, but rather Arms, branches, and procurrent parts of the *Ocean*: But more properly we may term thoſe to be *ſinus* or *Bays* of the *Ocean*, where the Ocean receiveth into it ſelf *Peninſula's* of the Earth; as where it receiveth *Jutland*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Malacca*, *California*, and the like.

But the uſual mode of Speech hath ſo obtained, that contrary to the nature of things, the word is ſo taken in the firſt ſignification, and a *Sinus* or Bay of the *Ocean* is the ſame with a branch or procurrent part of the Ocean.

The cauſe of Bays.

The cauſe of theſe *Sinus* or *Bays* is, by reaſon that the extant parts of the *Earth* are in ſome places mutually rent from one another and divaricated; ſo that the part of the Earth interpoſed between the divaricated parts, is more depreſſed than the *ſuperficies* of the *Ocean*; therefore the *water* always tending to the more depreſſed part, floweth into the divaricated parts, and runneth forward ſo far until it meeteth the elevation of the Earth: for here it can go no farther, and therefore it receiveth its end or bound.

The ſame is the cauſe of the *Streights* of the *Ocean* or *Sea*. The cauſe of the ſeparation or divarication of the parts of the *Earth* (which is required to the exiſtence of *Bays* and *Streights*) is the violent motion of the *Sea*, when it is forced by *Winds* or ſome other cauſe: which ſeeing that it is done almoſt every day, ſo that it beateth the Lands with its waves, thence it cometh to paſs that in progreſs of time, in ſome parts of the Shoars the Land is ſo ſhaken, that it falleth on the ruſhing in of the Ocean, and maketh way for it: and if the *Land* adjoyning to the *ſhoar* be depreſſed, *Bays* do more eaſily ariſe, *viz.* when the *Land* of the *ſhoar* is broken through, the *water* will overflow the adjacent *Lands*, and ſo make a *Bay*, if that the *land* be ſo depreſſed, or conſiſt of ſo much matter, which may eaſily be removed by the violent *waves*.

And ſo it is manifeſt, that *Bays* and *Streights* may be made and exiſt anew; but thence we may not conclude, that all *Bays* and *Streights* that are at this day were ſo generated: for it may be that ſome exiſted with the *Earth* it ſelf or *Ocean*, and therefore coeval with the very *Ocean*. For there is no record of the making of any new *Bay* of the *Sea* or *Streight*, although the Ancient *Grecians* fabulouſly reported ſuch concerning the generation of the *Gaditan* or *Herculean Streights*; *viz.* they ſaid, that the Mountain *Calpe* on the *Spaniſh Coaſt*, and the Mountain *Abyla* on the *African Coaſt* were one *Mountain*, but ſeparated by *Hercules*; whence they called theſe Mountains *Hercules Pillars*, and the Streights, *Hercules Streights*.

The Streights between *Sicily* and *Italy*.

But as concerning the *Streights* between *Sicily* and *Italy*, which the Ancients believed to be cauſed by an incurſion of the *Sea*, we ought leſs to doubt, that ſuch ſmall *Streights* ſhould be generated; for we deny not, but ſuch like may be generated at this day. Alſo *Bays* may be made of *Streights*, and *Streights* may become *Bays*: For Example, If that either of the Mouths of *Magellans Streights*, or of the *Streights* of *Manilhas* ſhould be obſtructed, thoſe *Streights* would become long *Bays*: on the contrary, if that the *Iſthmus* between *Aſia* and *Africa* ſhould be taken away, then the whole *Red Sea* would become a *Streight*, through which a Ship might ſail from the *Indian Ocean* into the *Mediterranean Sea*.

Propoſition V.

Whether the Ocean every where be of the ſame Altitude.

That all the parts of the *Ocean* are of the ſame Altitude, being in its natural conſtitution, and all impediments removed, is manifeſt from the

first *Propoſition*, by which we ſhewed, that the *ſuperficies* of the *Ocean* is *ſpherical*, and that its *Center* is the *Center* of the *Earth*: hence it plainly followeth, that it muſt be of the ſame *Altitude* in all its parts. But here is a doubt, whether there be not ſome cauſes that may render ſome parts of the *Ocean* more high than other? This is moſt worthy of conſideration, and is alſo of great moment, when we conſult concerning the digging through of *Iſthmuſſes*, and conjoyning parts of the *Sea*.

Many will have, that the *Ocean* and *Earth* is higher about the North, and lower about the *Equator*. So *Ariſtotle*, *lib.* 2. *De Cœlo*, *Cap.* 2. they alledge this Reaſon, That the *Ocean* ſeemeth to flow from the North *Regions*, as from a Fountain. But we cannot conclude any thing certain from this: for whether the Northern *Lands* (eſpecially the North *Channels*) be more high or lower than the *Channels* of the Lands near the *Equator* is yet doubted: neither is it ſufficiently proved from the motion, becauſe this is not general, or is not found in all the *Northern Regions*. And if this motion of the *Ocean* from the North ſhould be granted, yet thence it would not follow, that the *Ocean* was there higher, for to avoid this exceſs of *Altitude*, the *Ocean* floweth from thoſe places towards the *Equator*.

Now the original of the Opinion concerning the greater *Altitude* of the *North Land*, more than of others, ſeemeth to ſpring hence, becauſe that the face being turned to the North, we diſcover the *Pole* elevated above the *Horizon* and our place; and therefore the *Pole* of the *Earth*, and the vicine tracts of the *Land*, in their ſuppoſition, is higher than other *Regions*.

Some determine the *Indian Ocean* between *Africa* and *India* to be higher than the *Atlantick Ocean*, which they endeavour to prove from the *Bay*, *viz.* the *Arabian* and *Mediterranean*: where alſo the doubt is to be conſidered, Whether the *Altitude* of the *Bay* be the ſame with that of the *Ocean*, or leſſer, eſpecially in the extream parts of the *Bay*, and chiefly in thoſe *Bays* which are joyned by a narrower *Streight* of the *Ocean*.

The Indian and Atlantick Ocean higher than the Mediterranean.

But it is not improbable but that the *Atlantick* and *Indian Ocean* are higher than the *Mediterranean Bay*, eſpecially in the extreams parts of this at *Aſia Minor* and *Ægypt*. For the *Atlantick Ocean* floweth through the *Streights* of *Gades* into the *Mediterranean Bay*, and it is probable that the *Altitude* of the *Ocean* is ſomewhat greater than that of the *Streight*, becauſe a free Influx is impeded in theſe. Here indeed will be a ſmall difference, but then proceeding forwards in ſo long and large a tract between *Europe* and *Africa*, the depreſſion of this *Bay* will ſeem to be made greater than that of the *Ocean*, eſpecially when it meeteth many *Rocks*, *Iſlands*, and procurrent *Lands*, which repel the current *Water*, and therefore either diminiſh or beat back the Influx. Yea, if that be true, which is reported by credible Authors concerning *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*, *Darius*, and other *Egyptian Kings*, we ought no longer to doubt of this inequality of *Altitude*: For thoſe Kings attempted to draw a Trench or Channel from the *Red-ſea* into the *Nile*, ſo that by this paſſage a Navigation might be performed from the *Indian* and *Red-ſea* through *Egypt*, and hence through the mouths of the *Nile* into the *Mediterranean Sea*, which would have offered great profit and conveniency to many Regions of the *Mediterranean Bay*: But they were forced to leave their enterpriſe, when it was diſcovered by thoſe that were skilful, that the *Red-ſea* was much higher than the interiour *Egypt*. Now if the *Red-ſea* be higher than the *Land* of *Egypt*, it will alſo be higher than the *Water* of the *Nile*, and by conſequence than the mouths of the *Nile*, and then the *Mediterranean Sea* it ſelf, for that the water of the *Nile* is not of a leſſer *Altitude* than the *Mediterranean*, is hence manifeſt that it floweth into it; wherefore the *Red-ſea*, and therefore alſo the *Indian Sea* is higher than the *Mediterrean*, at leaſt at the extream parts of it about *Egypt*, *Syria*, *Thrace*, and in the *Ægean Sea*.

Moreover, other *Egyptian Kings* in times paſt; and of late the *Egyptian Sultans* and *Turkiſh Emperors* have conſulted how to digg through the *Iſthmus*, which conjoyning *Africa* and *Aſia*, disjoyneth the *Mediterranean* and *Red-ſea's*: but the reaſon why they proceeded not, is reported to have been the *Altitude* of the *Indian* and *Red-ſea* above the *Mediterranean*, and the *Coaſts* adjacent to it, and therefore they feared leaſt that the water flowing from the *Red-ſea* ſhould overflow and drown the *Regions* of thoſe *Coaſts*, eſpecially *Egypt*, concerning whoſe low ſcituation all Writers do conſent.

The Iſthmus, which conjoyneth *Aſia* and *Africa*, endeavoured to be cut by the Egyptian Sultans.

If therefore the *Iſthmus* between the *Red-ſea*, and the *Mediterranean* ſhould be cut or dugg through, then by an open paſſage the *Indian Ocean* would immit much water into the *Mediterranean Bay*; but whether it could let in ſo great a quantity that there ſhould be any danger of an inundation of the *Regions* adjacent to the *Mediterranean ſea*, I doubt: For peradventure it may be thus; if that the *Indian Ocean* ſhould let in ſomewhat overmuch, then the *Atlantick Ocean* would let in leſs through the *Streights* of *Gades*, from whoſe *Altitude* ſomewhat would be detracted, if that the motion were made from the *Indian Sea* into the *Mediterranean*.

But although I deny not but that this may be, yet I ſuppoſe that the *Egyptian Sultans*, and the *Turks* were moved by other *reaſons*, and Political Cauſes for the omitting the digging through of this *Iſthmus*. As

Reaſons why the Egyptian Sultans and Turks did not digg a paſſage through the *Iſthmus*.

1. The vaſt expence, it being forty *German miles*, and the *Earth* rocky, alſo banks muſt have been made by the advice of skilful *Artiſts*, which they wanted.

2. They ſuppoſed that the *Inhabitants* of the *Chriſtian* part of the World, as the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Italians*, &c. would have reaped more benefit by that means than they themſelves: For then through that *Streight* they might have ſailed into *Perſia* and *India*, whereas now they fetch a vaſt circuit compaſſing all *Africa*, and have laden themſelves with their rich *Commodities*, which they are now contented to have at *Aleppo*, being thither brought on *Camels* through the *Turks Territories*, and in many places receive *cuſtoms* for the ſame, which is no ſmall benefit unto them.

See *Maffeus* in his third Book of his *Indian Hiſtory*.

3. That the *Sultans* and *Turks* knew that the *Chriſtians* excelled in the abundance of *warlike Ships*, which they were deficient in, and therefore feared leaſt they ſhould be invaded by a ſtrong *Navy*, which might land a powerful *Army*, and ſo over-run their *Country*.

Theſe were neceſſary to be explained concerning the *Altitude* of the *Mediterranean Sea* compared with the *Red-ſea*, the *Atlantick* and *Indian Ocean*, by reaſon that ſome thence take occaſion to maintain, that the *Altitude* of the parts of the *Ocean* is divers.

But we may confirm them alſo by another example, if that we may compare ſmall matters with great. The *German Ocean*, which is part of the *Atlantick*, flowing between *Frieſland* and *Holland* into a *Bay*, which although it be ſmall in reſpect of the more noted *Bays* of the *Sea*, yet it is alſo called a *Sea*, and watereth the *Empory Amſterdam*. Not far from thence is the Lake *Harlame*, which is alſo termed the *Sea* of *Harlame*, whoſe *Altitude* is no leſs than the *Altitude* of that *Belgick Bay*, which we have ſpoken of, and ſendeth a branch into the City of *Leyden*, where it divaricateth into many Trenches. Now ſeeing that neither this *Lake*, nor that of the *Belgick Sea*, do cauſe the inundation of the adjacent *Lands*; it is thence manifeſt that they are not higher than the Lands of *Holland*: But the *Inhabitants* of *Leyden* have experimentally found the *German Ocean* to be higher than theſe *Lands*, when they undertook to make a Trench or Channel from this City to the *Coaſts* of the *German Ocean* near the Town of the *Catti*, (it is the ſpace of two *miles*) that they might ſail through this Channel, the Sea being conveyed into the *German Ocean*, and hence into various parts of the *Earth*; but when that they had perfected a great part of the Channel, they were compelled to deſiſt, by reaſon that at length they found by obſervation that the water of the *German Ocean* was higher than the *Land* of *Leyden*, and the *Shores* of this *Ocean*; therefore the *German Ocean* is higher than the *Belgick Bay*.

The Water of the German Ocean higher than the Land.

But we must esteem otherwise of those *Bays* which flow between the *Lands*, not by an oblong, but by a broad tract, as the *Bays* or *Gulphs* of *Mexico*, *Bengala*, and others; that these are of the same Altitude with the *Ocean*, from which they are separated by no strait passages, is not to be doubted of. Although I am not ignorant, that the *Spaniards* formerly did question this latter, (*viz.* whether the *Pacifick Ocean* were higher than the *Bay* of *Mexico*) when they consulted of digging through the *American Isthmus*, or that of *Panama*, that they might have a free and convenient passage from the Bay of *Mexico* to *Peru*, *China*, and the *Indian Isles*, *viz.* the *Spaniards* feared least the *English*, *Dutch*, and other Nations should use this Streight, and stop the mouth of it, and so invade *Peru*.

Wherefore to conclude, it seemeth that we must determine that all the parts and broad Bays of the *Ocean* are all of the same Altitude (as the first *Proposition* proveth;) but that the long *Gulphs* or *Bays*, especially those let in through an angust Channel or *Streight* are somewhat more low, chiefly in the extream parts. Concerning which yet I could wish that more diligent Observations were made, *viz.* these are the doubts, 1. Whether the *Indian*, *Atlantick* and *Pacifick Ocean* be of the same Altitude; or whether the *Indian* or *Pacifick* be higher than the *Atlantick*? 2. Whether the *Northern Ocean*, properly so called, *viz.* that which is near to the *Pole*, or in the *frigid Zone*, be higher than the *Atlantick Ocean*. 3. Whether the *Red Sea* be higher than the *Mediterranean*? 4. Whether the *Pacifick* be higher than the *Gulph* of *Mexico*? 5. Whether the *Baltick Ocean* be equally as high as the *Atlantick*? The same should be observed concerning *Hudsons* Bay, Streights of *Magellan*, and such other. Concerning the *Euxine Sea*, we shall treat in the *fifteenth Chapter*.

See *Propos.* 1.

The continual *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea*, and other fluxes, altogether cause the divers Altitudes of the parts of the *Ocean*, and in the same part in a diverse time and hours of the day. But these are external causes, and we at present only consider the natural constitution of the *Water*: moreover they do not so vary the Altitude in the *Ocean* it self, as it appeareth at the *shoars*.

Corollary. Therefore we cannot assent to *Papyrius*, *Fabianus* and *Cleomedes*, which made the greatest Altitude of the *Ocean* to be fifteen *stadia's*, (half a *German* mile) except we must take their Opinion concerning the profundity, and so *Altitude* is ill placed there for *profundity*.

Proposition VI.

The depth of the Sea or Ocean, in most parts may be sounded by the Load or Plummet; there being very few places whose bottom hath not been yet found out.

The depth of the Sea in most places may be sounded.

The profundity of the *Ocean* is various, according to the more or less depression of the *Channels* it is found $\frac{1}{80}$ of a *mile*, $\frac{1}{20}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, $\frac{1}{3}$; in very few places about a *German* mile, where they have not *line* enough to sound the depth, albeit here it be probable that it is not terminated at any vast distance. But yet we deny not, but that in the profound *Channels* there be as it were some hollownesses.

The profundity of the *Sea* is far lesser in the *Sinus* or *Bays*, than in the *Ocean*, which *Channel* is less profound or hollowed by reason of the vicinity of the Land; as for the same reason the Ocean is less deep at the *shoar*, than in places more remote from the Land, which hapneth only by reason of the hollow figure of its *Channels*.

Of the Mariners Plumet.

Mariners sound the profundity with a *Plumet* of *Lead* in form of a *Pyramid* of about 12 pound weight, if that the *line* be of three or four pound, such as is sufficient unto 200 *perches*, although others require a *plumb* of more weight. Yet there may be a deceit in this Observation, if so be that the *line* being snatched by the *Vortices* of the waters, or *waters* themselves do not descend perpendicularly, but obliquely.

But

But where the profundity of the *Ocean* is ſo great, that neither *Cables* or *Chains* are ſufficient is uncertain, although ſome have invented ſomething for finding out of this: For they determine, that you muſt obſerve how much time paſſeth in the ſpace whilſt a *Plumet* of noted weight deſcendeth to the profundity of the *Sea:* Then you muſt apply a *Cork* or *Alder-pith* to the *Plumet*, or a blown-up *Bladder*, ſo that this may preſently be ſeparated from the *lead*, when that the *lead* hath hit the bottom of the *Sea*, and ſo an application being made, the *lead* muſt be let down again to the bottom, and the time muſt be noted until the *Cork* return to the *ſuperficies* of the *Sea*. From this Obſervation, if it be compared with the obſervations made in another place, they ſuppoſe that the profundity of the *Ocean* may be found by the uſe of ſome *Canons:* But the uncertainty of the *Rules*, and the fallacy of the *Obſervations*, and the ſo great brevity of time is ſuch, that I think the knowledge of the depth can never be obtained by this method. Yet this is ſufficiently manifeſt, that the depth of the *Ocean* is no where infinite, but every where hath a bottom: For ſeeing that the *Earth* it ſelf is not infinite, but round, and in a figure returning into it ſelf, it is manifeſt that the profundity of the *Ocean* is not infinite; neither doth it extend from one part of the *ſuperficies* through the *Center* to the oppoſite *ſuperficies*, ſo that it may ſeparate the parts of the *Earth* mutually from one another, becauſe the *Earth* is heavier than the *Water*, and therefore the parts of the *Earth*, if that they were ſeparated by the interceding *Earth*, yet preſently would be conjoyned again.

But from the profundity obſerved hitherto in moſt places it is manifeſt, that it is almoſt equal to the *Altitude* of the *Mountains* and *Mediterranean places* above the *ſhoar*, *viz.* as much as theſe are elevated, and are extant above the *Horizon* of the *ſhoar*, ſo much are the *Channels* of the *Sea* depreſſed beneath it; or as much as the *Earth* riſeth from the *ſhoars* towards the *Mediterranean places*, ſo much by *degrees* more and more is it depreſſed, even unto the places of the middle of the *Ocean*, where for the moſt part is the greateſt depth. The profundity is changed ſometimes in this, ſometimes in that part, for divers reaſons; 1. By reaſon of the *flux* and *reflux:* 2. With the increaſe and decreaſe of the *Moon:* 3. From the *Winds:* 4. From the ruin or ſubſidency of the *Channels* or *Shoars*; alſo if that the bottom of the *Channel* be made higher in progreſs of time by the fall of the *Sand* or *Mud*.

Propoſition VII.

The Ocean hath no Fountains, but is contained within the Cavities of the Earth; yet it doth not remain always the ſame.

Experience teſtifieth, that *waters* of *Rivers* proceed from *Fountains* or *Springs*; and becauſe that this hath been for ſo many *Centuries* of *years*, it thence neceſſarily followeth, that that *water* which continually floweth from the *Springs* to the *Sea*, returneth through ſubterranean paſſages, or ſome other ways to the ſame *Fountain*. After the ſame manner there were *Philoſophers* in Old time ſaid, that the *Sea* ſprang from certain *Fountains*. Neither could the magnitude and perpetuity of the *Ocean* withdraw them from this Opinion; for they ſaid, that it returned unto the ſame Fountains by ſome hollowneſs of the *Earth*, or by ſome other mode, that ſo they might render a cauſe of the perpetual *flux*. This Opinion may be anſwered after this manner: If that the *Ocean* have *Fountains*, they muſt either be in the extant part of the *Earth*, or in that part which is covered by the *Ocean*, that is, in the very Channel or boſom of the *Ocean*; but they are not in the extant part of the *Earth*, for Men have no where found them. Neither may you object, That peradventure they are in the unknown Lands of the *North* or *South:* for this would be a part of high confidence to require that to be granted, which carrieth no weight of reaſon with it, eſpecially ſeeing, that at not a few of the *Northern Lands* the *Sea* is found frozen up with *Ice*, and in moſt of thoſe

The Ocean hath no Fountains.

thoſe *Regions*, hitherto diſcovered, no Springs are found: Therefore the *Fountains* of the *Ocean* are not in the extant part of the *Earth*. It remaineth that we prove, that they are neither in the part of the *Earth* covered with *waters*, that is, in the boſome of the *Sea*. If that they were in this, there would be no more diſtance from the *Center* of the *Earth*, than the *waters* of the *Ocean* it ſelf, and therefore there would be no *flux* from them, but the water would reſt in them, whoſe nature it is not to be moved from places depreſſed to places more high: For the *Fountains* of all *Rivers* are more elevated than the *waters* that they ſend forth.

But ſome may object, That this is a violent motion, becauſe that the Channel of the *Ocean*, and the *Land* is perforated within with many hollowneſſes and pits, call them what you pleaſe, which proceed for a long Tract under the *Earth*, until they are let into ſome other place of the Channel of the *Ocean:* So that there are two Orifices of theſe Channels, which may have a ſufficient great Latitude and Extenſion within the *Earth*, going forth into the Channel of the *Ocean*; therefore it may be, that the *water* from the *Ocean* may flow into one of theſe two *Orifices*, and ſome forth of the other, as from a *Fountain*, which may be illuſtrated by an eaſie *Diagram:* And by that reaſon that nothing hindreth but that there may be many of theſe ſubterraneous paſſages, and no abſurdity thence followeth; therefore it may ſeem probable to ſome that there are many of theſe *Fountains* in the very Channel of the *Sea*. But this imagination is vain, and not agreable to the properties of *water*; for *water* having fallen into either of theſe Channels would not go forth by the other *Orifice*, but would reſt filled in it, (except moved by ſome violent cauſe): For although water ſhould be preſſed and ſtirred, by water forcing in on the *Orifice*, yet it could not exonerate it ſelf by the other *Orifice*, becauſe that *water* incumbeth on this *Orifice* alſo, no leſs than the incumbing *water* at the former *Orifice*, which may thus be proved by experience. Let there be in any Veſſel *water* A B C D, A B is the *ſuperficies* of the *water* lying equally and ſpherically, but let in a ſtick R P E F into the middle of the *veſſel*, which may perforate it by an oblique paſſage, ſo that the part of the *veſſel* A ſhall be higher than the whole of the part of the *veſſel* B, therefore the *water*, as well on the part A as on the part B, ſhould, for example, flow through g h into this paſſage, and fill it up, and ſhould not be effuſed through either of the *Orifices*, not through g, becauſe this is higher; nor through h, becauſe though it be more depreſſed than g; yet the *water* flowing from the part B, and perpendicularly tending to the bottom of the *veſſel*, would prohibit the *influx*.

See Scheme.

From theſe it is manifeſt, that the *Ocean* hath no *Fountain*, but is perpetually contained within its own Channel.

Objections.

But ſomewhat may be objected againſt this, which is worthy of conſideration: Firſt, That at ſome part or other of the *Ocean* there is always a violent external moving cauſe, as *Winds*, *Fluxes*, *Refluxes*, mutations of the *Earth*, and the like. Therefore theſe cauſe, that ſometimes in ſome one part of the *Ocean*, and ſometimes in another, there is a greater *Altitude*, and abundancy of *water*, than in the other parts; and therefore that higher *water* falling into the *ſubterraneous paſſages*, is again poured forth into another part of the *Channel* of the *Ocean*, where there is a leſſer *Altitude* of *water* by reaſon of that external cauſe, and where the incumbent *water* then leſs reſiſteth the eruption or efflux, becauſe it is moved another way by an external cauſe: for although this may be, yet it cannot be proved by experience, neither can the contrary, that is this, be demonſtrated to be ſo; therefore at leaſt the truth is uncertain, and we muſt doubt concerning this Problem. Now that there are ſuch *ſubterraneous pits* or *paſſages* in the *Channel* of the *Ocean* cannot be denied, and thoſe places of the *Ocean* ſeem to ſhew them, to wit, where there is an immenſe profundity, ſeeing there is no ſuch in the vicine parts. To this I anſwer, although we ſhould admit of thoſe *ſubterraneous paſſages*, yet therefore it doth not follow that

we

we ſhould grant, that they proceed to another part of the *Channel* of the *Ocean*, or go forth into it: and if that this ſhould be granted, yet ſeeing that there are no ſuch paſſages in all places, and that theſe external cauſes ſometimes are predominate in one part of the *Ocean*, and ſometimes in another there is no conſequence from the objection, that the *Fountains* of the *Ocean* are in any certain place, but that it floweth ſometimes from one part of the *Channel*, and ſometimes from another; ſo that that *flux* continueth no longer than the external cauſe continueth.

2. Some one may thus ſeem to argue: The *flux* of the *Ocean* is perpetually diſcerned from the Northern Land or quarter toward the South, between *Europe* and the Northern *America*; alſo between *Aſia* and the Northern *America*. Yet notwithſtanding, no part of the *Ocean* or vicine place is to be found whereby it may come unto thoſe Northern *Regions*. Seeing that therefore this *flux* is perpetual, neither doth the *water* come by a manifeſt way unto thoſe *Regions*, whence the *flux* is made, therefore it ſeemeth neceſſary to conclude, that the *waters* come through *ſubterraneous paſſages* unto thoſe Northern Regions, and ſo there to be effuſed from the holes of the *Channel*, as from a *ſpring*, and that the *water* moveth hence towards the South. There falleth in another cauſe taken from the former: For the *water* of the *Ocean* in the *Torrid Zone* is more heavy than that in the Northern places, by reaſon of the great abundance of *Salt*, as we have proved in the *Eighth* and *Twelfth Propoſition*. Therefore the *water* or *Ocean* in the *Torrid Zone* doth more preſs through the *Orifices* of the *Subterranean paſſages*, than in the Northern *places*; and therefore in theſe places the water leſs reſiſting, ſuffereth the *water* to flow from the *Orifices* of the *Channels*. Unto this I anſwer, That that *flux* of the *Ocean* is not only from the North, as the *Objection* ſeemeth to inferr, and as ſome, eſpecially the *Ancients* conceived of it, (who would have the *water* to flow in four *Channels* from the very *Pole*, as alſo ſome *Geographical Maps* do exhibit it) neither is it continual, but is obſerved by reaſon of the frequency of Northern *Winds*: moreover the great and perpetual abundance of *Snow* and *Rain* in thoſe places augmenteth the *water*, and cauſeth it to flow towards the South. Add likewiſe, that in other parts another motion of the *Ocean* is found, concerning which ſee the following *Chapter*.

3. It ſeemeth not abſurd, but rather moſt true, that all the *Fountains* of *Rivers* taken together, disburthening themſelves into the *Ocean*, are the very *Fountains* of the *Ocean*: For ſeeing that in perpetual progreſs of time, ſo great an abundance of *water* floweth from them into the *Ocean*, queſtionleſs the *water* cometh from the *Ocean* to the very *Springs* and *Channels* of the *Rivers*, partly through the *Subterranean paſſages*, and partly by *Rains*.

4. It may ſeem to prove, that the *Fountains* of the *Ocean* may be in the very *Channel*, becauſe that in the bottom of the *Ocean*, in ſome parts ſweet or *freſh water* is found, which could not be but by ſome *Fountains* flowing in the bottom. *Linſchaten* relateth, that in *Ormus* freſh *water* is drawn by divers in the *Ocean*, at the depth of four or five *Orgya*: and the like *Fountains* are found in other parts of the *Ocean* and *Bays*. Unto this I anſwer, That few ſuch *Springs* have yet been found, which ſuffice not the vaſt *Ocean*. Neither do we diſpute concerning theſe *Fountains*, as we have ſaid before.

Hence it is manifeſt, that in ſome ſort it is true; and we may well ſay, that the *Ocean* hath *Springs*, but not in that ſenſe that we are wont to ſpeak concerning the *Springs* of *Rivers*, and in which we would have our Propoſition to be taken. Hence alſo it is manifeſt what we ought to think concerning that Queſtion, *viz.* Whether the *Sea* is always one and the ſame, and perpetually ſo remaineth, or whether it be another thing, whoſe parts are perpetually conſumed and generated again?

Propoſition VIII.

The ſaltneſs of the Waters proceedeth from the particles of Salt, which are mixed with it; but whence they may exiſt or are ſo augmented, is the doubt.

Of the Saltneſs of the Sea-water.

Experience proveth the firſt member of the Propoſition, by which it is commonly known that *Salt* is made of *Sea-water*, by decoction of the *water*, or by the heat of the *Sun*, or the fervour of the *Fire:* In *Germany* and other places the *water* is ſeparated by the help of the *Fire:* In *France*, the greater heat of the *Sun* performeth the ſame, the *Ocean* being let into certain Trenches made, in which in the ſpace of ſome *Months* the *water* being exhaled by the force of the *Sun*, concreted and hard *Salt* is found. On the *ſhoars* of many Regions, as of *England* and other parts, plenty of *Bay-Salt* is found, the *Sea-water* continually overflowing thoſe *ſhoars*, leaveth daily ſome particles or humors, from which the *water* exhaleth, and concrete Salt is left, whoſe blackneſs is taken away by boyling; although it be waſhed away and diſſolved from many Coaſts by the violence of the *Ocean*, which is the cauſe that it is not found on all Coaſts. Seeing therefore that this Experiment is common, *Ariſtotle* had ſmall reaſon to alledge a falſe Experiment concerning a *waxen Veſſel* let down into the *Sea*.

Of Salt, and of what made.

Hence it is manifeſt, that the proximate cauſe of the Saltneſs of the *Sea-water*, or the true ſubject of this *ſaltneſs* is the *Saline particles*, which are contained in that water. Therefore the *Ariſtotelians* with their *Maſter* ſpake improperly and obſcuredly without cauſe, when they defend and ſay, That the *ſaltneſs* of the *Sea* proceedeth from the aduſtion of the *Sea*, cauſed by the *Sun*, or from the aduſt *particles*. But of this more anon.

The chief difficulty and controverſie is concerning the other member of the *Propoſition*; Whence theſe *Salt particles* of the *Ocean* exiſt.

Ariſtotle ſuppoſeth, that dry exhalations or fumes (all which he ſaith are of an aduſt and Saline nature) elevated from the *Earth*, are mixed with humid *vapours*, and when that theſe have met together in *Rain*, they fall with theſe into the *Sea*, and that thence proceedeth the *ſaltneſs* and *Salt particles* in the *Sea*; and on this account he ſeemeth to defend this Opinion, becauſe that from thence he may render a reaſon, why the *Sea* is always *ſalt*.

See *Ariſtotle*, lib. 2. chap. 7.

But other *Peripateticks* will have it, and ſo do endeavour to draw *Ariſtotle* to their part, that this *ſaltneſs* is in the *Sea* it ſelf, by reaſon that it is perpetually ſcorched by the *heat* of the *Sun:* a ſign of which is, that the *water* is found by ſo much the leſs *ſalt*, by how much it is more deep or remote from the *ſuperficies*; for in the *ſuperficies* we diſcover it to be moſt *ſalt*.

Both theſe Opinions are obſtructed with great difficulties and abſurdities, ſo that it ſeemeth wonderful that the minds of *Philoſophers* and Learned men could acquieſce in them. Firſt, the opinion of *Ariſtotle* is thus obſtructed, that *Salt-rain* ſhould be found in the *Ocean*, which never yet was found to be void of all taſt of *ſalt*. Secondly, the *Sea* ſhould be leſs *ſalt*, when it raineth not for a long time; the contrary of which yet is found.

The other Opinion hath theſe difficulties; 1. It is falſe, that the *waters* of the *Ocean* are found the leſs *ſalt*, by how much they are nigh to the bottom; for there are few places, *viz.* in thoſe bottoms where Springs of *freſh water* do flow. 2. Experience teſtifieth, that *freſh water*, although long expoſed to the *Sun* or *heat* of the *Fire*, yet doth not become *ſalt*. This Objection *Scaliger* endeavoureth to avoid by an over-nice ſubtilty; for he ſaith, that this hapneth in theſe Obſervations by reaſon of the exiguity of the *water*, which doth not grow thick, but reſolveth: For although you take a great quantity of *water*, and that you provoke with a light and gentle *fire*, that the reſolution may be impeded, yet the *water* acquireth no *ſalt* taſt. 3. *Lakes* and *Marſhes*, though heated by the *Sun*, yet wax not *ſalt*. This Objection alſo *Scaliger* endeavoureth to avoid, ſaying, that this hapneth by the ſucceſſion of *freſh water*.

And

And the ſame is found in thoſe ſtanding *Pools* and *Lakes*, which only proceed from *Rain* or *Snow* diſſolved, where there is no place for that refuge of ſucceſſion for thoſe *Lakes* are rather dried, when that it raineth not for a long ſpace, than turned into *Salt*, or rendred *ſalt*.

Therefore rejecting thoſe falſe Opinions concerning the cauſe and original of *Salt* in the *Ocean*, let us lay hold of one of the moſt probable Opinions, with little or no difficulty in it, *viz.*

1. That theſe *particles* are Coeternal with the very *Ocean*, and therefore we ſhould no more diſpute concerning their original, than concerning the original of the *Ocean* it ſelf, the *Earth*, yea and of the original and generation of the World.

2. If that this Opinion be leſs complacent, we may make choice of another, *viz.* that theſe ſalt particles are here and there pulled from the *Earth*, and ſo diſſolved into *water*. Now it is certain, that there are many *ſaline Mountains* or *Rocks* in the boſom of the *Sea*. The whole Iſle of *Ormus* is nothing elſe but a white and hard *Salt*, of which they make the Walls of their Houſes, and therefore no *Fountain* of freſh *water* is found in that Iſle. And none can be ignorant, how that many *mines* of *Salt* are found on the Land; and we have related concerning ſome in the *Eleventh Chapter*; but we need not particulars. Let us conſider the whole *Earth*, the greateſt part of which is nothing elſe but a *Salt*; for it hath its conſiſtency from *Salt*; for the *Chymical Philoſophers* do rightly prove, that the conſiſtency and compaction of every thing proceedeth from *Salt*; and Experience is anſwerable to the Aſſertion: for if that you take an hard piece of *Earth*, and burn it to *aſhes*, much *Salt* will be found in it.

Iſle of *Ormus* a ſalt Rock.

The greateſt part of the Earth hath much Salt in it.

Nothing can be alledged againſt this Opinion that is of any value, and is not eaſily refuted: for ſome ſay, that it is impoſſible that thoſe *ſalt* parts of the *Earth* ſhould perpetually ſuffice, and ſhould not at ſome time or other be conſumed by the water of the *Ocean*, which continually taketh away ſome part of them? Unto this I anſwer, That the *Salt* of the *Ocean* is not conſumed in ſo great abundance, that it ſhould ſtand in need of much inſtauration; and if that any be conſumed, yet notwithſtanding that is laid up in another place, ſeeing that it is not removed out of the *Earth*.

Propoſition IX.

Whether that Water be the freſher in the Ocean, by how much it is nigher the bottom? and why in ſome parts of the Ocean, freſh Water is found in the bottom?

Unto the firſt I Anſwer, That experience doth not teſtifie concerning that ſweetneſs, but in ſome places, of which the other Queſtion ſpeaketh; that in theſe places, in the bottom of the *Sea* are *Fountains* of freſh *water*, I have ſufficiently ſaid; for it cannot naturally be, that the more *Salt-water* ſhould exiſt above water leſs *Salt*, ſeeing that that is more heavy.

Of the freſhneſs of Water in the Sea.

Thoſe places of the *Sea*, where *freſh water* is found to ſpring at the bottom, may be collected by thoſe that are ſtudious, from the Writers of *Geography*.

Propoſition X.

The Water of the Ocean becometh leſs ſalt by how much it is nearer the Poles; and on the contrary, the more ſalt, by how much it is more near the Æquator *or* Torrid Zone.

Although this may be underſtood of moſt parts of the *Ocean*, yet the *Propoſition* admitteth of ſome exceptions. The cauſe of this inequality in ſaltneſs is ſixfold.

The Cauſes of the Inequality of the ſaltneſs of the Sea in different places.

1. That the heat of the *Sun* in the *Torrid Zone* lifteth up more vapours from the *Ocean* into the *Clouds*, than in the Northern places, which are the vapours of freſh-water; becauſe that the *particles* of *Salt*, by reaſon of their gravity, are not ſo eaſily liſted up. Seeing therefore that from the *Water* of the *Ocean* of the *Torrid Zone*, or where the place is more near the *Torrid Zone*, ſo much the vapours are ſeparated by the heat of the *Sun*; thence it cometh to paſs, that the water that is left is found more *ſalt* there, than in the Northern places, where there is not ſo much freſh-water ſeparated by reaſon of the weak heat of the *Sun*.

The 2d Cauſe.

2. *The ſecond Cauſe* is the *heat* or *cold* of the water; for the ſame *numerical water*, or *ſalt meat*, as alſo *pickled meat*, *ſauce*, and the like, afford a more ſenſible *ſaltneſs* to the taſt when they are eaten hot, than when cold; for the *heat* or *particles* of the *fire* do move and render the particles of the *ſalt* contained in ſuch meat, more acute, and ſeparates them from the admixtures, whence they bite and prick the Tongue more ſharply. Now becauſe the *water* of the *Ocean* is the more *hot* by how much it is nigher the *Æquator*, or the *parallels* of the *Sun* at every day; and contrariwiſe the more *cold*, by how much it is more near the *Pole*; thence it followeth that *waters*, though they ſhould contain the ſame quantity of *ſalt*, yet they muſt ſeem and appear ſo much the *ſalter* to the taſt, by how much they are nearer to the *Torrid Zone*; and by how much they are more near the *Pole*, by ſo much they have leſs ſenſible *Salt*.

The 3d Cauſe.

3. *The third Cauſe* is the more or leſs quantity of *Salt* in the diverſe parts of the *Channel* of the *Ocean*: for as we find in the parts of the *Earth*, that there are not pits of *Salt* in them all, neither where they are found is there the like quantity of *Salt*, muſt be held concerning the part of the *Earth* that the *Sea* waſheth or covereth, that is, the *Channel* or the *Shoars*: where there is therefore moſt quantity of *Salt* or *Mineral* in the *bottom* or *ſhoar* of the *Ocean*, there the *water* is more *ſalt*, becauſe that it is impregnated with a greater quantity of *Salt*. So the Iſle of *Ormus* conſiſteth all of *Salt*; therefore the adjacent *Ocean* hath very *Salt waters*. But whether there be greater plenty of *Salt* in the *Channel* and *ſhoars* of the *Ocean* in the *Torrid Zone*, or more *ſaline Mines* than in the North, is very doubtful, by reaſon of the want of obſervation; yet it ſeemeth probable unto ſome, that there is greater quantity of *Salt* in thoſe places, by reaſon of the greater heat of the *Sun*, by which the parts of the *water* are ſeparated from the *Terreſtrial* and *Salt*; but this is a deceitful ſign.

The 4th Cauſe.

4. *The fourth Cauſe* of the unequal *ſaltneſs* is the frequency or ſcarcity of *Rains*, unto which we may add *Snow*: and in the Northern places *Snow* and *Rain* is frequent; in the places of the *Torrid Zone* they are leſs frequent in ſome parts of the year, and in otherſome they are almoſt continual. And therefore in theſe places, in the *pluvial Months*, the *water* of the *Ocean* is not ſo *ſalt* on the *ſhoar*, and hath leſs *Salt* in it than in the *dry Months*. Yea in many Regions of the Coaſt of *Malabar* the *Ocean* is freſh in the *pluvial Months*, by reaſon of the abundance of *water* that floweth from the top of the Mountain *Gatu*, and falleth into the *Sea*: for this very reaſon, in divers Seaſons of the year the ſame *Ocean* is of a various *ſaltneſs*; yet becauſe in the Northern places, the *Rains* and *Snows* are continual throughout the whole year, therefore this *Sea* is leſs *ſalt* than in the *Torrid Zone*.

The 5th Cauſe.

5. *The fifth Cauſe* is the diſſimilary ſolution, or unequal faculty of the *Water* to diſſolve this *Salt* and unite it to its ſelf; for hot *water* ſooner uniteth *Salt* unto it ſelf than cold *Water*: although therefore in the *Northern places* of the *Ocean*, the *ſhoars* and *Channels* of the ſame contain more, or the like quantity of *Salt*, that thoſe places of the *Torrid Zone* do; yet becauſe the *water* is there more cold, it is not ſo able to diſſolve and unite the Salt to it ſelf ſo ſubtily, as the *water* in the *Torrid Zone*, which is more hot.

6. *The*

6. *The ſixth cauſe* is the exoneration of many and great *Rivers* into the *Sea*; but this cauſe only taketh place in the parts of the *Ocean* that are vicine to the *ſhoars*; but is not diſcovered in the remote parts: So *Mariners* affirm, that the *Ocean* on the Coaſt of *Braſilia*, where the *Silver-River* disburtheneth it ſelf, loſeth it *ſaltneſs*, and affordeth freſh *waters* fifteen miles diſtant from the *ſhoar*. The ſame is obſerved of the *African Ocean* on the Coaſts of *Congi*, where the River *Zaire* exonerateth it ſelf, and of many more Rivers. Unto theſe add runing *Fountains* in ſome parts of the bottom of the *Ocean*. The 6th Cauſe.

Theſe are the Cauſes which ſeem to concur to the variety and diverſity of *ſaltneſs* in divers parts of the *Ocean*, from which the ſaltneſs of every one of the *Seas* may be explained.

From whence alſo it is eaſy to give an account, why the *water* of the *German* and *Northern Ocean* is leſs apt to ſeparate *Salt* from it ſelf by coction, than the *water* of the *Spaniſh Ocean*, the *Canary Iſles*, and that of *Cape Verd*, (whence the *Dutch* fetch *Salt* in great abundance, and tranſport it into the Northern Regions) *viz.* this *Ocean* is more near the *Torrid Zone*, and receiveth water from the *Ocean* of the *Torrid Zone*; the other is more remote from the *Frigid Zone:* yet I cannot deny the conſtitution of the *Channels* themſelves to be more or leſs *ſaline*. The *Sea-water* at *Guinee*, in the *Ethiopick Ocean*, affordeth *Salt* at one coction as white as *ſnow*, ſuch as neither the *Spaniſh Ocean*, nor any other in *Europe*, do produce at one coction or boyling.

Propoſition XI.

Why Rain-water in the middle of the Ocean is found ſweet; but the water which we ſeparate from the Marine or Salt-water, either by decoction or diſtillation, is yet notwithſtanding found ſalt, when yet the Rain-water proceedeth from the Vapours exhaled from the Sea.

The Learned *Chymiſts*, or true *Naturaliſts*, have hitherto laboured in vain, that they might find out an Art by which they might diſtill and abſtract *freſh water* from the water of the *Ocean*, which would be of great advantage; but as yet their Labours have proved fruitleſs: for although, as well in the decoction as diſtillation, *Salt* may be left in the bottom of the Veſſel, yet the *water* ſeparated by *decoction* as well as *diſtillation*, is yet found *ſalt*, and not fit for men to drink, which ſeemeth wonderful unto thoſe that are ignorant of the cauſe. Yet *Chymiſtry*, that is, true *Philoſophy*, hath taught the reaſon; for by the benefit of this we know that there is a twofold *ſalt* in Bodies, or two kinds of *ſalt*, which although they agree in taſt, yet they much differ in other qualities: one of theſe *Artiſts* term *fixed*, the other *volatile ſalt*. The *fixed ſalt*, by reaſon of its gravity, is not elevated in *diſtillation*, but remaineth in the bottom of the Veſſel; but the *volatile ſalt* is full of ſpirit, and indeed is nothing elſe but a moſt *ſubtile ſpirit* that is elevated by a very light *fire*, and therefore in the *diſtillation* aſcendeth with the freſh water, and is more firmly united by reaſon of the ſubtilty of the *Attoms:* neither is this *volatile ſalt* found only with *fixed ſalt* in *Sea-water*, but almoſt in all bodies, as *Chymiſtry* proveth by experience; but in ſome in a greater, and in otherſome in a leſſer quantity: in a greater quantity in ſharp taſted Herbs, in a leſſer in oily Herbs. Therefore difficulty conſiſteth in the ſeparation of this ſalt ſpirit or *volatile ſalt* from the *water*. Freſh-water abſtracted from Salt-water.

But why the *pluvial water* in the midſt of the *Sea* is no leſs freſh than on the *Land*, ſeeing that yet it is generated by abſtraction of the *exhalations* of the *Ocean* cauſed by the fervour of the *Sun*, or from ſome ſubterraneous *fire*, which evaporation doth little differ from *diſtillation*.

The cauſe ſeemeth to be Fourfold; 1. A ſlow operation, by which the tenuous part is only elevated from the *Ocean*, which although it containeth a *ſaline volatile ſpirit*, yet it hath it in leſs quantity, than if that this exhala-

exhalation were cauſed by a more forcible heat. 2. The long way that this *vapour* paſſeth through, before that it arriveth unto that *Region* of the *Air*, where it is condenſated into *rain*, in paſſage it is poſſible that the *ſaline ſpirit* is by *degrees* ſeparated from the *watery particles*. 3. The admixture of other *watery particles* exiſting in the *air*. 4. A *Refrigeration*, *Coition*, and *condenſation* of the *vapour*: for theſe exhalations exhaled from the *Ocean* by degrees are more and more refrigerated, and being conjoyned with other obvious and admixed vapours, they condenſe into a more thick *vapour* or *cloud*: in this *Refrigeration* and *condenſation* or *coition* of the *ſaline ſpirit* with the *fiery particles* they fly into the more exalted part of the *Air*.

Now why the ſame is not performed in *diſtillation* (where the vapours exalted are alſo condenſed) the cauſe is, 1. That by reaſon of the ſmall paſſage, the *ſaline ſpirit* is as yet over ſtraitly conjoyned to the *watery particles*. 2. That the *vapour* reſtrained in the *veſſel*, admitteth not a free paſſage to the evolant ſpirit.

Propoſition XII.

Sea-water is more ponderous than freſh water, and the water of one Sea is more heavy than another.

Sea water more heavy than freſh water.

The cauſe is manifeſt from what hath been ſaid, by reaſon that the *Sea water* containeth a fixed *ſalt*, which is a far more weighty body than freſh *water*. And we have ſhewed that in divers parts of the *Sea*, there is a divers quantity of *ſalt*. Yet doth it not follow, that *water* is more heavy by how much it is the more *ſalt*, which doth not augment the gravity, but leſſeneth it, and yet rendreth the *water* very *ſalt*.

Propoſition XIII.

Salt water doth not ſo eaſily freez as freſh, or a greater degree of cold is required to the congelation of Sea water than of freſh.

Salt water doth not ſo ſoon freez as freſh.

Experience ſufficiently ſheweth this againſt the *Ariſtotelians*, who defend that *water* is ſo much the leſſer obnoxious to congelation, by how much it is the more pure, and therefore ſhould more eaſily congeal, as receding more from the *elementary water*, which is falſe. Now the cauſe is, that in the *ſalt* it ſelf their is a certain *ſpirit*, which reſiſteth *congelation*, and being ſeperated from the *ſalt*, admitteth of no *congelation* from the hardeſt *froſt*, as thoſe that are skilful in *Chymiſtry* know. For the *ſpirit* of *ſalt* is a medicament ſufficiently known, and of frequent uſe.

Propoſition XIV.

Why the Ocean is not bigger, ſeeing that it receiveth ſo many Rivers.

The cauſe is, 1. That the *water* returneth to the *Sea*, through *ſubterraneous* paſſages unto the *fountains* of the *Rivers*, as ſhall be explicated in the following *Chapter*. 2. Becauſe that many vapours are elevated from the *Ocean*, whereof many being reſolved into *rain* fall into the *Ocean*, and part on the *land*.

Propoſition XV.

Certain parts of the Ocean differ in colour.

The water in the Ocean in all places not of one and the ſame colour.

Experience teſtifieth, that in the *Northern places* the *Sea* ſeemeth of a more *black colour*; in the *Torrid Zone*, of a *duskiſh colour*; in other places of a *blew*. About certain ſhoars of new *Guinee* the *Ocean* is found of a *white colour*,

lour, in ſome other place of a *yellow*. In *Streights* the *water* appeareth to incline to *white*, at the *Shoars* of *Congi* not far from *Bay a D'Alvaro Gonzales* a *Rivulet* or an *Arm* is disburthened into the *Sea* of ſomewhat a *Rediſh colour*, taken from a *mine* of *red earth*, through which it floweth. But the *Arabian Gulph* called therefore the *Red Sea*, by reaſon of the property of the colour, ſome will have the denomination taken from *King Erythreus*, others from the ſplendour which the *Raies* of the *Sun* repercuſſed doth effect. But the more probable opinion, and that which is confirmed from experience, is, that the redneſs doth ariſe from the *ſand* of a red colour, which is found in the bottom of this *Sea*, and on the *Shoars*, and is frequently admixed with the *water*. The cauſe of this admixture which ſeemeth contrary to the ponderouſneſs of *ſand* is the vehemency of the *flux* and *reflux* of the *water*; or its ſwiftneſs and agitation in this *Sea*; by which it cometh to paſs that the *ſand* or *gravel* is agitated and moved up and down, and ſo hindred by the continual motion of the *Sea*, that it cannot reſt. *Mariners* affirm that the *water* of this *Sea* ſometimes appeareth as *red* as *blood*, but if taken up in a *veſſel*, the ſand will ſink down, and then the *water* appeareth otherwiſe. It often happens that *ſtorms* from the *Red Sea* ruſhing into *Arabia*, or *Africa*, carry with them ſo great an abundance of *ſand*, and caſt it on the *earth*, that it covereth whole troops of *men* and *beaſts*, whence proceedeth the true *Mummie*.

The water in the *Red* Sea only red by reaſon of the red ſand in it.

Whether from the ſame or another cauſe the *Sea* between *California* and *America* be termed red (*Vermejo*) I have not as yet found it obſerved by Writers.

Propoſition XVI.

Certain peculiar things are found in certain parts of the Ocean.

Of things in the Ocean peculiar to certain places.

The *Sea* termed *Di Sargaſſo* by the *Portugals*, which beginneth not far from *Cape Verd* in *Africa*, about the *Iſles* of *Salt*, and extendeth it ſelf from the *20th. degree* of *Northern Latitude*, unto the *34th. of South Latitude*. The colour of this *Sea* ſeemeth to be *green*, which is not the colour of the *Sea* it ſelf, but of a certain ſmall *leaved herb* in the bottom of it, called by the *Portugals*, *Sargaſſo*. The leaves of this weed mutually complicated one into another, ſwim on the face of this *Ocean* in ſo continued a tract, that the *water* can hardly be ſeen, ſo that the *Seamen* afar off diſcovering this *Ocean*, take it for an *Iſland*, and *green Land*, neither can they paſs through this knot of *weeds* except that they be helped by a moderate wind at leaſt: the *herb* beareth a ſmall *berry*, whence it ariſeth is not yet known. Seeing that this *Sea* is not ſo near any *land*, that it ſhould have its original from them, neither is it probable that it ſhould come from the bottom of the *Sea*, by reaſon that the profundity of this *Sea* is ſuch, that in many places it exceedeth the length of any line or cord. In the *Ocean* not far from the *Promontory* of *Good Hope*, are many floating *red-like ſhrubs* of a great thickneſs diſcovered, unto which the *herb Sargaſſo* is implicated. *Seamen* take it for a certain, that if they ſee them thereabouts, that they are near to the *Promontory of Good Hope*, or elſe have juſt paſt it.

Coral found on the Shoar of *Madagaſcar*.

On the Shoar of the *Iſle* of *Madagaſcar* the *Ocean* caſteth up *red* and *white Coral*, which augment like *ſhrubs* under the *water*, and although that they be ſoft in ſome places, yet between *Madagaſcar* and *Africa* there are reported to be Rocks of hard *Coral*.

In the *Baltick Ocean*, nigh to the Shoar of *Boruſſia*, the Shoar caſteth forth moſt excellent *ſuccinum*, which the *Inhabitants* are taught, when certain *winds* do blow, to draw up with certain *Iron hooks*.

Amber only in the Ocean in the *Torrid Zone*.

The *Ocean* caſteth up *Amber* only in the *Torrid Zone*, *viz.* at the *Shoar* of *Brazile* (where a peece of 500 *l. weight* was taken up by a *Dutch Soldier*, and preſented unto *Count Naſſaw*) at the *Iſle* of *Madagaſcar*, at *Cape Verd*, at the *Iſle* of *Maurice*; at the *Iſle* of *Sumatra*, and other *Indian Iſles*. *Garci-*

as relateth that a piece of 200*l. weight* was found; yea that some *Islands* consist wholly of *Amber*, but he doth not name them.

In the *Æthiopick Ocean* at *Guinea*, *Congo*, and *Angola*, this is peculiarly observed, that at the sides of the *Keil* of the *Ship*, whilst that they remain there, *green Cockles* like unto *grass* do stick, which hindreth the sailing of the *Ships*, and eateth the *wood*.

On the Coast of *Languedock* in *France*, Birds unshaped first of all, then by degrees they receive form, and fixing of their *bill* in the *wood*; when they begin to move, by degrees they are pulled off, and swim on the water like *Geese*.

The excrement of the *Ocean*, termed the *Scum* of the *Sea*, is found floating in many places; but in some in greater quantity than in others.

Serpents on the Coast of *Malabar*.

On the Coast of *Malabar*, and at *Cambaja*, Serpents are discovered on the *superficies* of the *water*: this is a sign to Sea-men, that they are near to those Regions.

About four miles from *New Spain* many *Roots*, *Bulrushes* and *Leaves* like unto *Fig-leaves* float on the *water*, which they eat, and are in tast like unto *Coleworts*.

In the description of the first Navigation of the *Dutch* unto the *Streights* of *Magellan*, we read that on the 12*th* of *January* in *Anno* 1599. the water of the *Ocean* not far from the *Silver-River*, or *Rio de la plata*, in *Brasil*, appeared of a *red* and bloody colour; but being drawn up in a *bucket*, or the like, when that they had more throughly viewed it, they found that an innumerable multitude of *Worms* of a *red* colour were contained in that *water*, and being taken up in the hand they leaped like unto *Fleas*: And these Sea-men call *Sea-fleas*; and they are supposed to come from an innumerable company of small *Crabs*, which being found on the *South Continent*, fill the Sea.

Here is no place to treat of the *Animals*, of which there are various kinds in divers places of the *Sea*.

Proposition XVII

Why the Sea in the Night season seemeth to glitter, especially if that the Waves be raised the more vehemently by the Winds.

The Sea in the Night seemeth to glitter or shine.

This question requireth the knowledge of that difficulty concerning the causes of Colours. Divers are the resolutions of *Philosophers* concerning them; but as for the explication of the proposed *phenomenon* or Question, that Opinion seemeth the most commodious, which sheweth how *Colours* do exist, or rather appear from a certain and various motion; but we leave the accurate explication of the same to Naturalists.

Proposition XVIII.

The Ocean, or rather all Water casteth out Terrestrial Bodies on the shoar, especially in the Full Moon.

Terrestrial bodies are cast out of the Ocean on the Shore.

It is not difficult to render an account of this property, which Experience sufficiently testifieth: For *Water* is never without some *motion*, which if it be swift, and towards one quarter, it carrieth *Terrestrial bodies* with it, until it meeteth with the *shoar*; where, by reason of the ceasing vigour of the motion of the *water*, those *Terrestrial bodies* are laid down; but in the *Ocean* the *Waves* are carried hither and thither. By these the *Terrestrial bodies* are carried after the same mode; and because that all *Waves* tend to some *coast* of Land, therefore all *Terrestrial bodies* are carried towards the *shoar*.

In

In the Full *Moons* is the greateſt motion of the *Ocean:* therefore vain is their Opinion, who believed the *Ocean* to be an *Animal*, and to have ſenſe, by which it purgeth it ſelf from all *dregs*, *Terreſtrial bodies*; but here the cauſe is ſufficiently manifeſt.

CHAP. XIV.

Of the Motions of the Sea in general, and in particular of the Flux and Reflux.

Propoſition I.

Water hath no natural Motion, except one, by which it moveth from a more higher place unto theſe that are more low; but if the vicine place or body be equal, or of a greater Altitude than the ſuperficies of the Water, then the Water naturally reſteth, that is, it is not moved, except that it be compelled by a violent cauſe.

THe truth of this *Propoſition* is manifeſt from Vulgar experience; for if that a *veſſel* containing *water* be moved, the *water* ſo long fluctuateth in it until no part be higher than the other, that is, until they compoſe a *Spherical figure* or *ſuperficies*, as we have ſaid in the *Thirteenth Chapter*. For although this Motion hath a violent cauſe, *viz.* the *motion* of the Air about the Earth; yet becauſe that there is a great queſtion concerning this cauſe, and it is ſo manifeſt in the *water*, that it ſeemeth not to come unto it from an external cauſe, ſo for to diſtinguiſh this motion of the *water* from other *motions*, we term it Natural. Now this motion is unto that quarter, unto which the place more depreſſed is ſcituated.

Water hath no natural motion, except one.

Propoſition II.

When part of the Ocean is moved, the whole Ocean is moved, or all the other parts of it are alſo moved; but by ſo much the more that every one is nearer the part moved.

For becauſe that if part of the *Ocean* be moved, it doth neceſſarily change place, and therefore this place is more low than the place of the *vicine water*, this nearer *water* ſhall be moved into this place, and the vicine *water* of that into the place of that, and ſo forward in the other parts: But there is leſſer motion in the places of the more remote parts.

Propoſition III.

To obſerve the quarter into which the Sea that is moved, tendeth.

Chuſe a time, if you can, when no violent Wind bloweth, and caſt into the *Water* a body almoſt of the ſame gravity with the water; let the place be obſerved where it was caſt in, to wit, let the Boat remain there immovable: then when that this body is carried by the *Sea* a moderate ſpace from the place where it was caſt in; then let another *Boat* be placed at the place of that, and let the *quarter* be obſerved into which the ſcituation of this ſecond *Boat* vergeth from the former: For this alſo ſhall be the quarter, in which we ſay that the *Sea* at that time is moved.

The quarter into which the Sea that is moved, tendeth.

Propoſition

Propoſition IV.

The Motion of the Sea is either direct, or a Vortex, or a Concuſſion.

I call that direct which tendeth unto ſome quarter; a *Vortex*, when the *water* moveth into a round, and is in ſome part rejected: a *concuſſion*, when it trembleth. But laying aſide the two latter unto the end of the *Chapter*, we ſhall treat of the direct motion, and therefore we ſhall call this by a general term, the *Motion of the Sea.*

Propoſition V.

Of the Motions which we find in the Sea, ſome are general, ſome proper and ſingular, other ſome contingent.

General, proper and ſingular motions of the Sea.

I call that General which is found almoſt in all the parts of the *Ocean*, and that at all times. I call thoſe proper and ſpecial *motions* by which only ſome parts of the *Ocean* are moved, and they are twofold, *perpetual* and *anniverſary*: the former are thoſe which perſiſt without mutation or ceſſation; the other, which are found at certain *months* or *days* of the year in ſome certain *Sea.*

I call thoſe *motions* of the Sea *contingent*, which without any certain order ſometimes do ceaſe, and other ſome begin; ſuch are infinite.

Propoſition VI.

Wind is the cauſe of the contingent motion of the Sea, forcing the Sea to a quarter oppoſit to the Wind; neither is the Sea ever free from ſuch motions.

Wind is the cauſe of the motion of the Sea.

For ſeeing that the Air toucheth the *Sea*, and the Wind is nothing elſe but a ſtrong commotion of the *Air*, and a preſſure towards the *Earth*; therefore the *Air* being forced to the *Sea*, endeavoureth to drive it from its place, and by reaſon of the *Sea* is fluid, and not able to reſiſt the forcing *Air*; therefore it is moved from its place towards the place of the oppoſite *quarter*, and foreeth another *water*, and this another, and ſo on.

Now ſeeing that there is always ſome *wind* in the *Air*, ſometimes in this place, and ſometimes in that, and ſometimes diverſe in divers places at one and the ſame time, thence it followeth, that there are certain contingent motions always in the *Sea*, which are more diſcernable in the parts nearer the Wind, and therefore the rather, by reaſon that the Sea doth moſt eaſily receive an impreſſion, becauſe it is fluid.

Propoſition VII.

The general motion of the Sea is twofold; one continually from the Eaſt to the Weſt, the other compoſed of two contrary Motions, which is termed the Flux and Reflux of the Sea, in which the Sea at certain hours floweth to the ſhoar, and in certain others floweth back again. We ſhall firſt treat of the firſt.

The motion of the Sea twofold.

That the *Sea* moveth from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt* continually, is chiefly proved from the motion of that *Sea*, which lieth in the *Torrid Zone* between the *Tropicks*: For becauſe the *motion* is more ſtrong, hence it is leſs hindred by other *motions.*

This *Motion* of the *Sea* is manifeſtly found by thoſe that ſail from *India* to *Madagaſcar* and *Africa*, alſo in the *Pacifick Ocean*, between *New Spain*, *China*, and the *Moluccoes*; alſo in the *Ocean*, between *Africa* and *Braſil.*

So

So through the *Streights* of *Magellan* the *Sea* is carried from the *East* to the *West* with a vehement *motion*. So through the *Streights Manillan*, through *Channels* between the *Isles Maldives*, the motion of the *Sea* carrieth *Ships* from the *East*. The *Sea* glideth impetuously between *Cuba* and *Jucatan* into the *Gulph* of *Mexico*; and floweth out into *Cuba* and *Florida*. At the *Gulph* of *Paria* there is a violent *influx*, so that that Gulph is termed *Os Draconis*, the *Dragons Mouth*. Famous also is the *flux* at the *Land* of *Canada*. From the *Tartarian Ocean* the Sea moveth through the *Streights* of *Nova Zembla*, and *Waigats Streights*, which is proved both from the very motion it self, and also from the abundance of *Ice*, which the *Tartarian Ocean* casteth up at the *Streights* of *Zembla*. And at the *Northern shoar* of *America* in the *Pacifick Ocean*, the motion is towards the *Streight Anian*; also from *Japan* the *Sea* is moved towards *China*. So in the *Streight Manillan*, the motion is from *East* to *West*; so also in the *Streight Java*. And when the *Atlantick Ocean* is moved towards the *Coast* of *America*, the contrary is found in the *Pacifick Ocean*. For this is moved from the *shoars*, which is the most conspicuous at *Cubo dez Correntes*, between *Panama* and *Lima*.

Proposition VIII.

The winds oftentimes change the general motion of the Sea, especially those fixed winds, which we shall shew to be termed Motions, in the XXI. Chap.

For because that most of these do blow from the *South* and *North*, or from the *Collateral quarters* of these, thence it cometh to pass that the *Sea* by reason of its general motion tendeth towards the *West*, it moveth towards the Collateral quarters of the *West*, *viz. North-west*, or *South-west*: yea the general *wind*, when that it seldom bloweth from the *East*, but most commonly from the Collateral quarters of the *East*, changeth this general *motion* of the *Sea*. Much more do the *North winds* in the Northern *Sea*, where the general motion is little discernable in the parts of the *Ocean*.

The motion of the Sea oftimes changed by the winds.

Proposition IX.

The cause of this general motion of the Sea from the East to the West is uncertain.

The *Aristotelians* suppose (although it were unknown unto *Aristotle* and his followers; and indeed to all the *European Philosophers*, before the *Navigation* of the *Portugals* through the *Ocean* of the *Torrid Zone*) that it is caused by the prime motion of the *Heaven*, which is not only common to all the *Stars*, but also to the *Air* in part, and to the *Ocean*, by which all are carried from the *East* to the *West*. But some that follow *Copernicus*, as *Kepler*, although they also acknowledge the *Moon* also the cause of this *motion*, yet they determine that the motion of the *Earth* doth not a little contribute unto this motion, *viz.* they suppose that the *water*, seeing that it is not continuous, but only contiguous unto the *Earth*, cannot follow the circumrotation of the *Earth*, and resist it towards the *West*, whilst the Earth withdraweth it self towards the *East*, and therefore that the *Sea* moveth not from one part of the *Earth* unto another, but that the *Earth* leaveth part of the *waters* one after another.

The Opinion of *Aristotle* and *Copernicus* concerning the general motion of the Sea from *East* to *West*.

Othersome, who are not pleased neither with the solution of *Aristotle* nor *Copernicus*, having recourse unto the *Moon*, will have her to be *Empress* of the *waters*; and that she leadeth about with her, and draweth the *Ocean* from the *East* to the *West*. If it is demanded how? they reply, there is an occult *faculty influence*, *sympathy*, *vicinity* to the *Earth* and such like: indeed it is very probable that the *Moon* is the causer of this *motion*, by reason that in the *new* and *full Moons* this motion is more violent than in the *quarters*, where the motion for the most part is very little.

The moſt acute *Carteſius* hath explained a *Mathematical mode* by which the *Moon* cauſeth both this *motion* of the *water* and *Air*; for he ſuppoſeth according to his general *Hypotheſis*, that an infinite number of *Atoms* do move round about the *Earth*, by which the ſpace even unto the *Moon* is filled without any *Vacuum*, which ſpace he calleth the *vortex* of the *Earth*, viz. Let the *Earth* be F E G H. The *water* 2143, the *Air* 6587. the *vortex* of the *Earth* B A D C, the *Moon* B. Therefore ſaith he, if that there were no *Moon* in the *vortex* B A D C, the *particles* of its *vortex* would be turned round about the *Center* T: but becauſe that the *Moon* is in it, therefore the ſpace through which the *Celeſtial matter* floweth between B and T, is rendred more Anguſt, and thence it followeth that the *Celeſtial matter* floweth there more quick (between B, and T) and therefore more preſſeth the *ſuperficies* of the *Air* in 6, and alſo the *ſuperficies* of the water in 2. than if the *Moon* were not in the *Diameter* of the *vortex* B D: and ſeeing that both the *bodies* of the *Air* and *water* are *fluid* and eaſily pliant to this preſſion, it muſt not be ſo high above the part of the *Earth* F, as if the *Moon* were without the *Diameter* B D. and on the contrary muſt be more high towards E. But whilſt that the *Earth* is carried from E through F towards G, or from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt*, the tumour of the *water* 412, and alſo of the *Air* 856, which now incumbs over the partof the *Earth* E, by *degrees* do move unto other parts more *Occidental*, ſo that after ſix *hours* they incumb over the part of the *Earth* H; and after twelve *hours* over the part of the *Earth* G. Whence it cometh to paſs that the *water* and the *Air* are carried from the *Oriental* parts of the *Earth*, unto the *Occidental* parts of the ſame by a continual flux; thus *Carteſius*. The ſtreſs of the Demonſtration is in this, becauſe the *Earth* E F G H with the *water* 1234 is moved round, and alſo the *Celeſtial* matter of the *vortex* between B A D C and 6587. The *Moon* being in B, maketh the ſpace B 6 with a certain preſſure paſſing through the *Air* and *water*, whilſt that it paſſeth through B, is expreſſed towards J H G, and whilſt that *j* paſſeth through B, is expreſſed towards H G F, and ſo forwards. Neither doth the part of the *Celeſtial* matter at the *Moon* having allapſed in B D mount upwards, becauſe it is repelled, and that all are full of bodies. And although it preſs the *Air* and *water* 62 F, not only towards the *Weſt*, E 15, but alſo towards the *Eaſt*, 73 G. yet becauſe the parts ſcituated from 62 F, towards 73 G, do more and more recede from theſe *Streights*, but the parts towards E 15, do more and more draw near, therefore by theſe chiefly is that force received.

But in this explication of this ingenious perſon, theſe things are required or wanted.

1. From that it ſhould follow that the *Sea* ſhould ceaſe to ſwell when that the *Moon* approacheth unto it, and that it ſhould ſwell in the parts, which are a *quadrant*, or ſix *hours* abſent from the *Moon*: *viz.* The tumour is in E 15, but in F 26 where the *Moon* is *vertical*, the *Altitude* is leaſt. But this is repugnant to experience, for in F 26 the *Sea* ſwelleth, but in E 15 the *tumour* is very little. How this abſurdity may be avoided, we ſhall ſhew in the following *Propoſition*.

2. It is not ſufficiently ſhewed (*Carteſius* hath omitted this) why, whilſt the *Celeſtial matter* in the narrow ſpace *B* 6, preſſeth the *Air* C, and the *water* 2; it is not equally moved towards G 37 from both the *water* and the *Air*, and the *Celeſtial matter* is carried with the *Earth* towards G 37, and therefore the *water* and the *Air* is rather carried towards the *Eaſt* than the *Weſt*. And it is a doubt whether it can be avoided by the only ſubduction of the parts from 6 *D B*, towards G 37.

3. The *Moon* drawing near to any *Sea*, a more vehement *wind* is found in that part towards the *Weſt*, from the *Eaſt*, than another time; but this hapneth not.

4. It is more manifeſt that the *Sun* maketh that *motion* of the *Air* from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, or that a general *wind* doth it; for we find that in the *morning* before the *riſing* of the *Sun*, and alſo with the *riſing* of the *Sun*, in many places; for then it is diſtant a quadrant from the *vertex* of the place. Theſe things deſerve conſideration in the *Carteſian Explication*, to ſay nothing of the *Hypotheſis* it ſelf.

But

But whether this *motion* can be referred to a general *East-wind*, is doubted: For seeing that that *Wind* is always under the *Torrid Zone*, it would seem to cause that motion of the *Sea* to be perpetual. For it is evident, that with the augmentation of the *Wind*, the *motion* of the *Sea* is augmented; but that it is a sufficient sign, that the motion it self doth depend on the *Wind*. For the connexion hindreth, which this *motion* hath with the *Moon*, *viz.* that the *Moon* approaching to the *Sea*, it causeth that 2 to swell, because in the *Full* and *New Moon* that *motion* of the *Sea* is more vehement from the *East* to the *West*, which the Demonstration of *Cartesius* excellently explaineth, *viz.* because the *Moon* in the *New* and *Full* is more near unto the *Earth*, and so the *port* B 6 is rendred more angust for the transition of the *Celestial matter*, and therefore the pressure is the greater. And although when the *Moon* is at *Full*, that *intumescency* may be referred unto the greater light of the *Moon*, yet the *Moon* being in the *New*, this cause ceaseth; and therefore it is evident, that the *Moon* is not the cause of this *motion*, but rather that pressure of *Cartesius*, as we shall observe in the following *Propositions*.

Proposition X.

The second general Motion of the Sea is the flux and reflux of the Sea, in which the Sea in the space of twelve hours and about half an hour, floweth unto most Coasts, and floweth back again: It floweth when that the Moon approacheth unto the supream or lowest Meridian; and reflowеth, when the Moon recedeth from the Meridian towards the West, and towards the East.

The flux and reflux of the Sea is the second general motion.

Where we must first discover, whether the *Ocean* by this *motion* be moved unto one certain *quarter*, *viz.* from the *East* to the *West*, or from *West* to *East*? For the shoars of *Gulphs* and *Channels* of *Rivers*, in which this *flux* and *reflux* is more manifestly found, than in the vast *Ocean*, are extended nigh unto, or according unto divers *quarters*, some towards the East from the West, as the *Mediterranean*; some from the South towards the North, as the *Arabian Gulph*. And in every one of these *Gulphs* and *Shoars*, the *water* floweth towards the *quarter* of extension. Therefore in divers *Gulphs* and *Shoars*, this motion of the *Sea* or *Ocean* tendeth into divers *quarters*: therefore our first Inquiry must be, Whether this *motion* of the *Ocean* observeth any certain *quarter*; and whether it be moved elsewhere unto other *quarters*; or whether it observe two *quarters*, *viz.* the *Occidental quarter* in the *flux*, and the *Oriental* in the *reflux*? Or whether one and the same *quarter*, both in the *ebbing* and *flowing*? *viz.* the *Occidental*. Unto this may be answered, That the last is true, *viz.* that the whole *Ocean* in the *flux* is moved from the *East* to the *West*; but in the *reflux* it is moved indeed by a general *motion* again fromthe *East* to the *West*: but yet in the *flux* more quantity of *water* floweth unto a certain part; but in the *reflux*, (or to speak more properly, the *deflux*) it is not moved into a contrary *quarter*, but unto the same *Occidental quarter*; but yet a lesser quantity of *water* doth flow in.

So then we must determine, that the *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea* is not a distinct *motion* from the general motion of the same, which we have explained in the former *Proposition*, by which the *Ocean* continually moveth from *East* to *West*, but that it is a certain mode or affection of this general motion; and therefore if that this *motion* be considered in the whole, or in the middle of the free *Ocean*, it is not so properly termed a *flux* or *reflux* of the *Sea*, but rather a *flux* or *deflux*, yea those terms are not apt enough; but it is better to call it an *Intumescency* and *Detumescency*, so that by these peculiar appellations, the quality of the *flux* or motion may be distinguished from the *motion* or *flux* it self. For the *Sea* always floweth from the *East* to the *West*, and only appeareth to re-flow, by reason that when in one place there is a greater quantity of *water*, and that it floweth with vehemency to a certain place, afterwards in another time this *impetus* ceaseth.

But it is therefore termed a *reflux*, because that the Sea seemeth in *Bays* and *Shores* to draw near and depart. According to the extension of *bays* and *shores*, which happeneth not by reason of the quality of the Motion it self; but by reason of the scituation of *Coasts* and *Channels*, *viz.* that the *Water* doth return back to a contrary quarter, but that the *Sea* falleth down; this proceedeth not from the scituation of the *Coasts*, but from the condition of the place it self.

Neither ought or can the *motion* of the *Sea* be regarded from the appulse to the *shore*; for whatsoever the motion of the *Sea* be, or unto what *quarter* soever it be made, the *flux* is always towards the *shore*, which is by reason of the fluid nature of the *water*.

Now seeing that both the *flux* or *reflux*, or in the *intumescency* and *detumescency*, the *Sea* is moved towards the same quarter, *viz.* from the *East* to the *West*, and doth not re-flow again, is collected from hence. First, that in the *Ocean* removed from the *shores*, under the *Torrid Zone*, no other *motion* is found than that by which it is carried from the East to the West. Secondly, In the *Streights* which directly extend from East to West, and in which the parts of the *Ocean* are joyned; as the *Streights* of *Magellan*, *Manillan*, *Java*, and others amongst the *Indian Isles*: In these *Streights*, I say, the *Sea* indeed swelleth and falleth in *twelve hours*; but yet the *Sea* in the *detumescency* doth flow back from out the *Streights* from the *West* to the *East*; therefore another orifice of the *Streight* into the *West*, which is a manifest sign that this *intumescency* and *detumescency* is not a peculiar motion, but a modification of the general *motion*, neither doth the Sea flow back into the *East*. Therefore *Scaliger* and all others are deceived, which here introduce a double motion replicated into it self.

But yet this must be understood, that when we say, that this *motion* is made from the *East* to the *West*, the *Cardinal quarters* are not only understood, but also those *quarters* that are *collateral*, *viz.* the *Sea* is moved also by this *flux*, from the *Collateral quarters* of the *East* unto the *Collateral quarters* of the *West*, yea unto the *North* and *South*; but not by so forcible and valid motion.

Proposition XI.

To declare the cause of the intumescency and detumescency of the Sea, or the flux and reflux, vulgarly so termed.

The cause of the flux and reflux of the Sea.

There is almost no *phænomenon* of Nature, that hath more exercised the wits of Learned men and *Philosophers*, and that hath deluded more endeavours. Some have made the *Sea* and *Earth* to be an *Animal*, which by its inspiration and expiration, hath caused the *flux* and *reflux*. Others make the cause to be a great *Vortex* near to *Norway*, which for six hours sucketh up the *water*, and for so many spueth them out again. *Scaliger* and Others supposed the *Coasts*, especially those of *America*, to be the cause thereof, by reason that they repel the appulse of the Sea, which proceedeth from the general *motion*: But many, when that they discover the connexion of this *intumescency* and *detumescency* with the *motion* of the *Moon*, determined, that it only depended on that. But how this should be, is a more than ordinary task to discover; seeing that they reply nothing else, but that the *Moon* doth attract upwards humors by an occult quality and sympathy. But these are only *words*, which signifie nothing else, but that the effect is caused by the *Moon* after some mode that we are ignorant of: but this is the mode demanded.

See Scheme.

Cartesius deduceth it from his general *Hypothesis* after this manner; Let the *Diagram* of the *Ninth Proposition* be taken, in which let A B C D be that *Vortex* which hath the *Earth* for its Center, which with it and with the *Moon* is carried in a greater *Vortex* about the *Sun*. M the *Center* of the *Vortex*, E F G H the *Earth*, 1234 the *superficies* of the *Sea*; from which, for the greater perspicuity, we do suppose the *Earth* to be encompassed on every side; and 5678 the *superficies* of the *Air* encompassing of the *Sea*. Now if that there

there were no *Moon* in this *Vortex*, the point T, which is the *Center* of the *Earth*, ought to be in the *point* M, which is the *Center* of the *Vortex*; but the *Moon* being towards B, this *Center* of the *Earth* T ought to be between M and D, by reaſon that the *Celeſtial matter* of this *Vortex*, is ſomewhat more quicker moved than the *Moon* or the *Earth*, which it carrieth with it. Except that the *point* T were a little more diſtant from B than from D, the preſence of the *Moon* would hinder, that that ſhould not ſo freely flow between B and T: ſo ſeeing that the place of the *Earth* in this *Vortex* is not determinated, except from the equality of the ſtrength of the *Celeſtial matter* flowing about it; therefore it is evident that it ought ſomewhat to approach towards D. And after the ſame mode, when the *Moon* ſhall be in C, the *Center* of the *Earth* ought to be between M and A, and ſo always the *Earth* departeth a little from the *Moon*. Moreover, becauſe by this means, from this that the *Moon* is towards B, not only the ſpace through which the *Celeſtial matter* floweth between B and T, but alſo that ſpace through which it floweth between T and D is rendred more anguſt; thence it followeth that this *Celeſtial matter* there floweth more ſwiftly, and therefore doth more preſs both the *ſuperficies* of the *Air* in 6 and 8, and alſo the *ſuperficies* of the *Water* in 2 and 4, than if that the *Moon* were not in the *Diameter* of the *Vortex* B D: Now ſeeing that both the *bodies* of the *Air* and *Water* are fluid, and eaſily obnoxious to this preſſion, they ought not to be ſo high above the parts of the *Earth* F and H, as if the *Moon* were without this *Diameter* B D; and ſo alſo on the contrary they ought to be higher towards G and E, ſo that the *ſuperficies* of the *Water* 1 and 3, and of the *Air* 5 and 7, do there protuberate. Now becauſe that part of the *Earth* which is now in F, on the oppoſite quarter of the point B, where the Sea is very little high, after *ſix hours* it will be in G, on the oppoſite Region of the *point* C, where it is moſt high, and after other *ſix hours* in H, on the Region of the *point* D, and ſo conſequently, or rather becauſe that the *Moon* in the mean ſpace doth ſomewhat proceed forwards from B towards C, as running in a *Months* ſpace through the *Circle* A B C D, part of the *Earth* that is now in F, on the oppoſite Region of the body of the *Moon* after *ſix hours* and *twelve minutes*, either more or leſs, ſhall be beyond the *point* G in that *Diameter* of the *Vortex* A B C D, which interſecteth that *Diameter* of the ſame *Vortex* in which the *Moon* ſhall then be at *right Angles*, and then ſhall the *water* be there moſt high: and after *ſix hours* with *twelve minutes* it ſhall be beyond the *point* H. in the place where the *water* ſhall be very low, &c. whence it is clearly diſcovered, that the *water* of the *Sea* in every *twelve hours* and *twenty four minutes*, ſhall *flow* and *re-flow* in one and the ſame place.

This is the Demonſtration of *Carteſius*, in which that is eſpecially ingenious, that it aptly ſheweth not only how the *flux* or *intumeſcency* is made at the place, when that the *Moon* is moved at its *Vertex* or *Meridian*; but alſo when that the *Moon* beneath the *Horizon* is moved to the *Meridian* of Midnight.

We have ſaid in the end of the *Ninth Propoſition*, what any one may ſeem to require in this Demonſtration, eſpecially that which ſeemeth to be admired at, that *Carteſius* ſhould not ſo much as think that according unto this Demonſtrarion, That the leaſt *Altitude* of *water* and all kind of *Detumeſcency*, ought to be when that the *Moon* cometh to the *Meridian*; as the *Moon* being in B, the leaſt *Altitude* of *water* is in 2 and 4, and on the contrary the *water* increaſeth with the departure of the *Moon* or *Earth*, ſo that when F ſhall be in G. that is, *ſix hours* from the *Moon*, it ſhall have the greateſt *Altitude*; which in truth is contrary to all Experience; for with the acceſs of the *Moon* to the *Meridian*, the *water* increaſeth, and with the departure of the ſame, decreaſeth. But the words of *Carteſius*, as well as the *Diagramma*, aſſert the contrary. But I ſuppoſe this abſurdity may be removed from the Demonſtration, and that by this mode (ſo that it may be approved of by *Carteſius*;) for let us place the *Vortex* of the *Earth* A B C D to be without the *Moon*, and the *water* 1 2 3 4 to be equally diſtant from the *Center* T without any *Tumor*,

but

but yet to be moved round with the *Earth* and *Celeſtial matter*, between A B C D and 5 6 7 8. Now let the body of the *Moon* draw near unto this *Vortex*; for Example, into B, and therefore the ſpace T B becometh more narrow; and the *Celeſtial matter*, whilſt that it endeavoureth to paſs through it, preſſeth the *Water* in 2 towards E.

Therefore whilſt that the *Water* is expelled from 2 towards E, it is demanded where the greateſt tumor of *Water* will be, whether in the place E, which is a quarter diſtant from the place F, (unto which the *Moon* is *vertical*;) or whether in a place nigh unto F towards E? If that you aſſert the firſt, *viz.* that the tumor ought to be in E, Experience doth then gainſay; but that the ſecond is truly ſo, Experience confirmeth, and Reaſon doth induce to believe, *viz.* whilſt that the *Moon* conſiſteth above the place E, the *Water* is expelled from 2 towards I: but the greateſt tumor will be in the place near to 2, not in I. For this is manifeſt by Experience, becauſe the *Occidental places* do later diſcover the *intumeſcency*; but reaſon and the motion of the *Water* do altogether require the ſame Laws: for if the *Water* be poured forth into 2, that it may flow towards E, the greateſt quantity will be in the place E, a little leſs in the place near to that, and yet far leſs in the place nigh to that, and leaſt of all in E. So alſo, when that *water* is driven from 2 towards E, its greateſt quantity and accumulation ſhall be in the place near to 2; and ſo much the leſſer, by how much the place is more remote from 2; but becauſe the *Earth* is moved round that E may come unto F, then at length ſhall the greateſt tumor be in E, and the *water* ſhall be forced towards H.

Therefore the *Diagram* of *Carteſius*, with the Demonſtration it ſelf, ought to be changed, that the tumor may be in the place near unto the very 2, that is, to that unto which the *Moon* is *vertical*. What elſe may be here ſaid, we ſhall handle in our treatiſe of the conſideration of the *Carteſian Philoſophy*.

Propoſition XII.

In Full and New Moons the general motion of the Sea from the Eaſt to the Weſt is more violent; alſo the intumeſcency of the Sea is found great in moſt parts: but in the quarters the motion is found the leaſt of all, and ſo alſo in the intumeſcency.

In Full and New Moons, the motion of the Sea from Eaſt to Weſt, moſt violent.

Experience ſufficiently proveth this *Propoſition*: for *Mariners* teſtifie, that the *Sea* doth foam and ſwell in *New* and *Full Moons*, and in the *quarters* is calm. Now it is eaſily demonſtrated according to the *Hypotheſis* of the preceding *Propoſitions*: for the *Moon*, when it is either *Full* or *New*, is more near the *Earth* than at any other time; and in the *quarters* more remote, as *Aſtronomers* do demonſtrate. Now when the *Moon* is more near the *Earth*, that is, when that the ſpace B T is leſs; the *Celeſtial matter* being hindred, more vehemently preſſeth the *water* from 2 to 1 (becauſe it is more near) but on the contrary in the *quarters*.

Yet the *motion* is obſerved to be more violent in the *Full Moons* than in the *New*, at leaſt in ſome places, which except you will aſcribe to the light of the *Moon*, I ſee no other cauſe, neither can we otherwiſe ſhew, why in the *Full Moon* both *Trees* and *Animals* have greater humors, than in the *New*, ſeeing that the *Sea* is equally augmented in the *New Moon*. Yet that is marvellous, that one *Twiſtius* a *Dutch-man* relateth in his deſcription of *India* concerning the Kingdom of *Gazaratt*, where for many years he dwelt; that *Cockles*, *Crabs*, and other *ſhelly Fiſhes*, are leſs fleſhy and juicy in the *Full Moon* than in the *New*, which is contrary to the nature of all *Regions*. Neither is it leſs admirable, that on the *ſhoars*, near to the mouth of the River *Indus* in the ſame Kingdom, that the *Sea* is augmented and ſwelleth in the *New Moons*; and not far from thence, in the *Sea* of *Calicut*, the increaſe is in the *Full Moon*.

Propoſition

Propoſition XIII.

In the time of the Vernal and Autumnal Equinox, or in the Spring and Autumn, the intumeſcency of the Sea is greater than in the other ſeaſons of the year, but leaſt in the Solſtices.

In *Spring* and *Autumn* the intumeſcency of the Sea is greateſt.

Carteſius indeed pretendeth to ſhew a *demonſtration* of this propriety from his *Hypotheſis*, but I cannot apprehend it from his words, neither do I ſee how it can follow from his *Hypotheſis*. It is probable that the *Sun* and general *winds* do very much contribute to this intumeſcency of the *water*, and ſeeing that the *Sun* in the *Æquinoctials* doth incumb on the middle of the *Sea* of the *Torrid Zone*, therefore either he, or the *winds* cauſe that the *Sea* then ſwelleth more than at another time. But as concerning the *Solſtices* we muſt ſay, in a contrary mode, or that the ſame is the cauſe of the greater intumeſcency of the *Sea*, in the time of the *Æquinoctials* either of the *Spring* or *Autumn*, which is the cauſe of more frequent *rains*, *winds* and *inundations* in thoſe *ſeaſons*.

Propoſition XIV.

In ſome parts of the Ocean, Gulphs, and Shoars, great is the encreaſe and decreaſe of the water in the influx, and deflux: in other ſome it is very ſmall, in ſome not diſcernable, and ſo there is no flux and reflux, or intumeſcency and detumeſcency.

The increaſe and decreaſe of the water in ſeveral parts of the Ocean.

Thoſe places receive great *Augmentation* and *decreaſe*, 1. That are under the *Torrid Zone*, between the *Tropicks*, for then the *Moon* preſſing for the moſt part is there carried round. 2. In places that are directly extended from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, or nigh the *Collateral quarters*. 3. In thoſe *Gulphs* that are long and leſs broad, the Augmentation is the more ſenſible. 4. In thoſe places in which few *Iſlands* or *procurrents* adjoyn to the *Earth*.

The greateſt flux and defluxe in the Streight of *Cambaja*.

The greateſt *flux* and *defluxe* hitherto obſerved, is that which is in the *Streight* of *Cambaja* in one of the inlets of the *River Indus*, and it hath ſtruck many with admiration, for the water recedeth to an high diſtance, and that very ſpeedily. Whence not without reaſon the *River Indus*, or the *Gulph* of *Cambaja* is thought to be that unto which when that *Alexander the Great* came, and endeavoured to paſs his Army over, as it is there related; the *water* preſently went back and left his Ships a ground; hence he went no farther, but judged that the *Gods* had here fixed the bounds of his Expedition, with a prohibition of proceeding any farther. The cauſe is the ſmall or narrow, and deep depreſſion of the *Channel*; but yet 'tis probable there was ſome other cauſe.

Fluv and reflux at *Damman*.

At the *City Damman* in *India* not far from *Surat*, the *Altitude* of the *water* by *flux* and *reflux* is varied at two and a half *Orygas*, and the *Sea* departeth from the *ſhoar* the ſpace of half a *mile*.

In the *Gulph* of *Cambaja* the *flux* augmenteth the *Altitude* five *Orgyas*, others ſay ſeven, which unuſual augmentation hath been the cauſe of the loſs of many Ships by unexperienced *Mariners*; for the *water* falling, they have been ſplit on the Rocks.

No conſtant time of the flux and reflux in the Streights of *Magellan*.

In the *Gulphs* and *ſhoars* of the *Streights* of *Magellan*, no conſtant time of the *flux* and *reflux* is obſerved, for ſometimes the *water* floweth and refloweth in three *hours*, otherſome in twelve *hours*; which inconſtancy is to be aſcribed to the violent irruption of the *Ocean* into that *Streight*, and from the various agitations of the *wind*.

The flux and reflux in the *Red-ſea*.

About *Malacca*, alſo at the *Streight* of *Sunda*, a notable *flux* and *defluxe* is obſerved.

In the *Arabian Gulph*, or *Red Sea*, ſome of the Ancients have written that there is ſo great a *reflux* (as *Scaliger* writeth) that *Moſes* and the *Iſraelites* paſſed over without any Miracle. But it is falſe, becauſe the *reflux* is not there ſo great as to leave the Channel dry.

On

On the *Coaſts* of *China* the *flux* and *reflux* is very ſenſible, as alſo at the *Iſles* of *Japan*.

The Sea at the flux much exalted at *Panama*.

At *Panama* on the Coaſt of *America* lying at the *Pacifick Ocean* the *Sea* is very much exalted, and by and by depreſſed again; in the *full Moons* the *flux* is ſo much augmented, that *water* entreth into the Houſes of the *City*. Yea in almoſt all the ſhoars of the *South Sea*, the *Altitude* of the *water* is wonderfully augmented and diminiſhed, ſo that in the *reflux*, the decreaſe is ſenſible for *two miles*. In the *Gulph* of *Bengala* at the ſhoar of *Siam* the *flux* augmenteth the *Altitude ten foot*.

The flux not perceivable in the *Mediterranean Sea*.

But in the *Mediterranean Sea*, which floweth in through the *Streights* of *Gibralter*, from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt* the *flux* is not perceivable, becauſe the ſcituation is contrary to the *quarter* into which the *Sea* is moved, and therefore the *water* of it is little augmented by the *flux*, ſo that it is not diſcernable, unleſs in the *Gulph* of *Venice*, which by reaſon of its long extenſion and ſmall *Latitude*, ſheweth the *flux* and *reflux*, when in the other part of the *Mediterranean Sea* by reaſon of its notable *Latitude*, that little augmentation and decreaſe is not diſcovered. Whence this *flux* and *reflux* was unknown to the *Grecians*, as alſo to the *Romans* in the time of *Scipio Africanus*. And the *Grecians* as well as the *Romans*, accounted it as miraculous what ſometimes they diſcovered in other places, as is manifeſt from the Expedition of *Alexander* the *Great*, and of *Scipio* in the expugnation of *Carthage*; but in the time of *Cicero* it was known to the *Romans*. Yet ſome obſerved it a little at *Maſſilia*; alſo at certain *Coaſts* of *Barbary*, it is noted enough.

The flux and reflux in the *Baltick* Sea not yet found out.

In the *Baltick Ocean*, as alſo in the whole *Northern Sea* beyond *England*, towards *Norway*, and *Greenland*, the *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea* is not yet found out, as neither in the North Coaſt of the *Pacifick Ocean*. But the cauſe is not yet ſufficiently known, unleſs you will ſay that thoſe *Seas* are remote from the courſe of the *Moon*, and alſo that they are extended from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt* and *North*; moreover that many *Iſles*, and *procurrencies* of land do hinder. Theſe three muſt be conjoined to impede the *flux* of the *Sea* in theſe places.

Propoſition XV.

The flux and reflux of the Sea is a violent motion, viz. *an impulſe, but the reflux is a natural motion of the water.*

For the *flux* is cauſed by the preſſion of the *Moon*, or *matter* between the *Moon* and the *Earth*, or alſo becauſe that the *Sea* doth not remain in that *ſcituation* which is received in the *flux*, this is a ſign that it was a violent *motion*. But in the *reflux* the *Sea* is moved from a more high place to a more depreſſed place, which is the natural *motion* of *water*.

Lemma.

The place of the Moon being given in the Ecliptick, and the Latitude and hour of the day, from an Ephemerides, or by Supputation or Aſtronomical obſervation, to find on the Terreſtrial Globe the place, unto which the Moon at the hour given is vertical, alſo to exhibit all thoſe places of the Earth unto which the Moon will be vertical that day, viz. *one after another.*

See Propoſition 13. in Chap. 19.

The uſe of this Problem is great, yea very neceſſary in the Doctrine concerning the *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea*. The mode of performing of the ſame you ſhall find in the *Nineteenth Chapter*, and the *Thirteenth Propoſition*. For there it is more conveniently explained: yet the *Explication* of that *Propoſition* may be anticipated, and demonſtrated to the ſtudious in this *Chapter*.

Propoſition

Propoſition XVI.

In thoſe places of the Sea, to which the Moon is vertical, the flux and deflux is greateſt, except that there be other impediments, which we have reckoned up in the XIV Propoſition. And by how much the parts of the Sea are more remote from the place, by ſo much the flux and deflux is leſſer, other things being equal.

For becauſe in that place the preſſure is greater, and the tumour of the water greater, which is more vicine to the *Moon* preſſing, and the *Celeſtial matter*; thence followeth that, that the *Propoſition* intimateth the objections concerning ſome other places, in the comparison of which the contrary is found, are to be excuſed by the admixtion of other cauſes.

Propoſition XVII.

The quantity of the flux and reflux is unconſtant in every place, and divers on ſeveral daies, and by ſo much the greater, or leſſer, by how much the Moon is more remote, or near unto that place.

For the *Moon* every day changeth her place in the *Ecliptick*, and ſo on other *daies* is vertical to other places, and by conſequence is more remote from any place, or more near. Which being obſerved, we conclude from the preceeding *Propoſition*, that there is a divers quantity of the *flux* and *reflux* in one and the ſame place, on divers *daies*, whether that the diverſity be ſenſible or inſenſible. The Moon every day changeth her place in the *Ecliptick*.

Propoſition XVIII.

The greateſt intumeſcency of water in any place, and term of the flux, ought to be when that the Moon doth occupy the Meridian of the place. But in many places it is found to be in another ſcituation of the Moon.

For then is the *Moon* moſt nigh to any place of the *Earth*, when that it is in the *Meridian* of that place, becauſe that the *Hypotenuſa* of a *right angled Triangle*, is lower than the *Cathetus*. Whence it is inferred by the XVI *Propoſition*, that when the *Moon* is in the *Meridian*, there ought to be the greateſt *intumeſcency*, and *Altitude* of *water*, and immediately a decreaſe to ſucceed. But when the *Moon* is in the loweſt of the *Meridian*, then the narroweſt of the *vortex* of the *Earth* oppoſite to it in the upper *Meridian*; and therefore doth effect the ſame, as if that the body of the *Moon* were preſent. See Propoſition 16.

But here ariſeth a great difficulty. For there are many *places* and *Coaſts* of the *Earth*, in which we find that the term of the *flux* is not when that the *Moon* cometh to the *Meridian*, (as the *Philoſophers* held before this age) but ſooner or later, *viz.* when that the *Moon* cometh to a certain *quarter*, not *Cardinal*, and this *quarter* is not conſtantly obſerved, but in *new* and *full Moons*; for the moſt part the greateſt *intumeſcency* is, and the begining of a *detumeſcency*, before the *Moon* cometh to this *quarter* or *vertical Circle*. So at *London* the *water* is at the higheſt when the *Moon* cometh to the *quarter* which is between the *South* and *Weſt*, or *North* and *Eaſt*; that is to the *South Weſt*, or *North Eaſt quarter*. At the Coaſt of *China*, in the Port of the City *Maccau*, a certain *Portugal Mariner* obſerved the time of the greateſt intumeſcency by this *mode*. The *Elevation* of the *Pole* is 22 *degrees*, 20 *minutes*; in the *Year* 1584 on the 19 of *September*, the *Moon* was at full, then the *intumeſcency* or *Altitude* of the higheſt water was obſerved in the morning at $\frac{1}{3}$ or $\frac{1}{4}$ of an *hour* paſt 8. therefore then the *Moon* was removed from the *Meridian* 3 $\frac{1}{4}$ *hours*. Whence the *quarter* or *vertical Circle* in which the *Moon* at that moment of time was, is found according to the Problem of the 30 *Chapter*. The greateſt flux at the Coaſt of *China*, obſerved by a *Portugal*.

Anno 1585, on the 16 of *February*, in the full Moon, the greateſt hight of *water* was obſerved at half an *hour* paſt a *eleven* a *Clock* at *Noon*.

Certain observations taken by a *Dutch Mariner* of the flux of the Sea in many places.

A certain *Dutch Mariner* on the *daies* of the *new* and *full Moon*, noted the *hours* of divers places, for the *term*, or *intumeſcency* of the *flux*, from which I have extracted theſe.

At the twelfth *hour* (on the *daies* of the *new* and *full Moon*) on the Coaſt of *Flanders*, at *Enchuſen* in *Holland*, at *Horn*, at *Embden* in *Eaſt Freezland*, at the mouth of the *Elve*, at *Eider*, at the Iſles of *Jutland*, and at *Dover*, at *England*. At 45 *minutes* paſt 12 at *Fluſhing* in *Zealand*, half an hour after one a Clock, at the *Occidental Coaſt* of the Iſle of *Wight*, at *Calis*, at the *mouth* of the *River* of *Thames*, at the *ſhoar* of *Zeland*, in the mouths of *Scald*, in *Moſa*, and at *Gored*. A quarter after two, before the mouth of *Scald*, and the mouth of *Moſa*. At three a Clock at *Amſterdam*, *Roterdam*, *Dort*, in *Holland*, at *Newcaſtle* in *England*, at *Arment* in *Flanders*, in the mouth of the *River* of *Burdeaux* in the *South* Coaſt of *Britain*, *Gallocia*, *Gaſcoyn*, *Biſcay*, *Portugal*, and *Spain*, and on the *Weſtern* Coaſt of *Ireland*, even to *Hitland*. A quarter after four in the evening at *Roan* in *France*, between *Moſa* and *Rochel*, in the River of *Burdeaux*, in the *Bays* of the *Spaniſh*, *Portugal*, and *Gallecian Coaſt*; in the *South* Coaſt of *Britany* in *France*, *Gaſcoyn*, and on the *Weſtern* Coaſt of *Ireland*. Half an hour paſt four from the *Texel*, at the *South* Coaſt of *Ireland*. A quarter paſt five in all the *Ports* of the Southern Coaſt of *Ireland*, at *Plymouth* in *England*, and other *Southern* places of it, even to the Coaſt of *Wales*. At ſix in the *evening* and *morning* before *Hamburgh* in the *Elbe*, before *Bremen*, the *Texel*, *Antwerpe*, in the Channel between *England* and *Brabant*, without *Sorlis*. A *quarter* before ſeven in the *evening*, between *Fawick* and *Vaelmuya*, in the Channel even to *Briſtol*; before St. *Nicholas* and *Podeſſembe*, even to *Waymouth*, and *Hartepole*. At half an hour paſt ſeven in the Haven at the *Texel*, at *Kilduyna*, in the middle of the *Channel*, nigh *Plymouth*, and in the *Sea*, even to the *Promontory* of the *Lizard*. A *quarter* paſt eight in the evening, nigh the Iſle of *Wight*, in the *Channel*, even to *Beveſier*, without the *Fly* on the Coaſt of *Holland*. At nine before the mouth of the River *Ems* in *Freezland*, before the *Fly*, before the Coaſt of *Freezland*, at the *Eaſtern* Coaſt of the Iſle of *Wight*. At half an hour paſt *ten* before the mouth of the River *Thames*, on the Coaſts of *Normandy* and *Picardy*. And at a *quarter* paſt *eleven* a Clock in the River *Thames*, and other places of *England*.

A difficult task to explicate the cauſe of this difference.

Now it is a moſt difficult task to explicate the cauſe of this ſo notable a difference, and that in all places, although it be incumbent on the *Philoſopher*, or *Geographer*. Yet it is probable that the various windings of the *ſhoars*, the ſcituation of the *Coaſts* in reſpect of the *Sea*, the obſtacles of *Iſlands*, the mutual meetings of the *water*, the diſtance of the places from the *Lunary way*, various waies, eſpecially thoſe that are conſtant and general, the declining of the *ſhoars*, and other things, do very much conduce to this propriety of the *flux*. For example: at the *Port* of *London*, in the *Coaſt* of *England*, the *water* encreaſeth until the Moon cometh unto the quarter of the *South-Weſt*, *viz.* when it declineth from the *Ecliptick* towards the South; for then *water* begineth to flow back again, but not when the Moon cometh to the *Meridian*. Therefore we ſay, that whilſt the Moon moveth to the *Meridian* of *London*, towards *Brazile*, (or from *Brazile* towards *London*) the *Sea* doth not recede from *London*, but is yet augmented, by reaſon that the Coaſts of *America*, unto which the *Ocean* is moved by the Moon, do repel that *water* towards *England*, and this happeth therefore, becauſe it affordeth not a paſſage for the *water*. But why, when the Moon is declining from the *Ecliptick* towards the *North*, is the greateſt *Altitude* of the *water*, and the begining of the decreaſe obſerved, before the Moon cometh to the *Meridian*, *viz.* in the *North-Eaſt*?

I anſwer, that this cometh to paſs, becauſe that the Moon is then far more near to *England*, than when it declineth from the *Ecliptick* towards the *South*: and therefore then it more ſwiftly filleth; but the cauſe, why then the *flux* is no longer protracted, even until the Moon cometh to the *Meridian*, may be, by reaſon that the Moon forceth the *Sea* more near the *Sea* of *Mexico*,

and

and *Hudſons Streights*, where there is found a great *intumeſcency* and *detumeſcency*.

On the *Coaſt* of *China*, we therefore ſay, that the intumeſcency doth anticipate the appulſe of the *Moon* at the *Meridian*; by reaſon that a continnual *Eaſt wind* driveth that *Sea* towards the *Weſt*.

But theſe *allegations* I leave to be farther examined, by the ſearchers of nature. But for the finding out of the true cauſe, it is altogether neceſſary that we acquire accurate obſervations how the *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea* is made in divers places, *viz.* in what *vertical* the *Moon* is in that *flux*; how the *quarter* is varied in a divers place of the *Moon*, as in the full and new; eſpecially in thoſe places where the *Moon* becometh *vertical*, alſo in thoſe which directly reſpect the *Eaſt*, *Weſt*, and *North*. Alſo that muſt be diligently obſerved, how the *flux* is here made in thoſe *hours* of the *day*, whilſt that the *Moon* being in the *North part* of her *Circle*, hath not the *Sea* placed *vertically* under her, but *Lands* in a long tract, *viz.* from *Cambaja* and *China*, even to the *Occidental Coaſts* of *Africa*. For becauſe then that it doth not directly preſs the *water*, it being depended over the *Mediterranean places*; I thence ſuppoſe that ſome variety muſt happen to this *motion*. Alſo what then it doth, whilſt the *Moon* ruling in the *South Hemiſphere*, paſſeth over the *Mediterranean parts* of *Brazile*, or *Southern America*. Without theſe obſervations we ſhall hardly arrive at the true cauſe, neither ſhall we neglect this argument.

Propoſition XIX.

The Sea floweth to moſt Coaſts in ſix hours and twelve minutes, and refloweth alſo in ſo many hours.

In very few places it floweth in more *hours*, and refloweth in leſs: and on the contrary, in very few places it floweth in fewer *hours*, and refloweth in more: yet ſo that the time of the *flux* and *deflux* (*viz.* between the two greateſt *intumeſcencies*) together make twelve *hours*, with 24 $\frac{1}{2}$ *minutes*, and two ſuch times make 24 *hours* with about 50 *minutes*, (48 $\frac{1}{2}$) and therefore on every *day* the greateſt *intumeſcency* falleth out later almoſt by an *hour*, becauſe that the *Moon* almoſt an intire *hour*, returneth more ſlowly to the ſame *Meridian* every day. The Sea in few places floweth in more hours and refloweth in leſs.

We have ſufficiently explained the firſt part of the *Propoſition* in the *Demonſtration* of the Eleventh *Propoſition*, although in this demonſtration we have taken the *Altitude* of the *Sea*, the *Moon* poſſeſſing the *Meridian*: but in this *Propoſition*, by reaſon that in the proceeding we have ſhewed that in many places that *Altitude* doth happen, the *Moon* being conſtituted without the *Meridian*; we do not reckon in them the *hours* from the time in which the *Moon* poſſeſſeth the *Meridian*, but for that time in which the *Moon* occupieth that *vertical place*, in the which when that the *Moon* is, it is manifeſt that the greateſt *intumeſcency* is. Yet in theſe places the period of the *increment* ot *decrement* doth not exactly obſerve theſe twelve *hours* witih twenty four *minutes*, or twenty four *hours* with fifty *minutes*; becauſe that the *Moon* by reaſon of its various and mutable diſtance from the *vertex*, either in more or fewer hours returneth to the ſame *vertical*, which difference notwithſtanding is not great.

Although therefore in all places the *flux* and *reflux* be compleated almoſt in twelve *hours* and twenty four *minutes*, (when that there are no *tempeſts*) alſo in moſt this time is equally divided between the *flux* and *reflux*, ſo that in ſix *hours* it *floweth*, and in ſo many *refloweth*; yet in ſome places the time of the *flux* is unequal to the time of the *deflux*, *viz.* more or leſs. The *Ocean* entereth *Garumna* a *River* in *France* in ſeven *hours*, and refloweth in five. So at the *Port* of *Maccoa*, on the Coaſt of *China*, the *flux* is in nine hours, and refloweth in three, yea in leſs, if that the *Eaſtern winds* blow. The flux and reflux of the Ocean at the River *Garumna* in *France*.

On the contrary at the *Coaſt* of *Zenega* (a *River* of *Æthiopia*) the Sea *floweth* in four *hours*, and *refloweth* in eight.

The cauſes of theſe differences are difficult. Some refer them to the ſwift and valid *efflux* of the *Rivers*, or alſo to a ſimple *efflux*; for therefore the Shoar of *Garumna* diſcovereth the *flux* in ſeven *hours*, becauſe that its ſtrong *motion* retardeth the *flux*, but yet aſſiſteth the *deflux*; therefore the *Sea* refloweth in five *hours*. Others have added thoſe *hours* to the *flux*, by reaſon that the *Sea* reflowing from the more Northern place, hindreth leaſt the *Sea* ſhould hinder the egreſs from *Garumna*, but rather be more forced on it. But I ſuppoſe therefore to be, by reaſon that *Garumna* poureth forth it ſelf by a ſtrong Motion from its inlet or mouth into the *Ocean* for ſome diſtance; this *efflux* is prohibited on ſome part from the *Sea*, and ſo the *water* of *Garumna* is at a ſtand alſo for ſome ſpace, before that the *Sea* by reaſon of the *Moon* entreth its *Channel*.

As for the encreaſe of *Zenega*, which only hath four hours, whether the cauſe ought to be aſcribed to the extenſion of the *Channel* from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt*; or unto the ſwift *deflux* of *Zenega*, which may prohibit the influx for two hours: or whether to ſome other cauſe, I queſtion, and require a more accurate obſervation. *viz.* Whether it decreaſeth eight hours, or only ſix hours; and in the other two do neither encreaſe nor decreaſe, becauſe the ſtrong flux of the River hindereth the flux.

That alſo muſt be conſidered, that depreſſed and low places may have the flux in more hours, and the deflux in fewer.

Propoſition XX.

Whether the flux doth begin when the Moon toucheth the Horizon, or in the increment be in the place, whoſe the Horizon is.

So they commonly ſay: but yet we hold the contrary in thoſe places, in which the *water* is at the higheſt, when that the *Moon* is in the *Meridian*. For when the *Moon* declineth from the *Æquator* towards the South, then ſhe *arriveth* at the *Meridian* in leſs than ſix hours, and therefore the flux ſhould begin when that the *Moon* is yet depreſſed beneath the *Horizon*. On the contrary, when that the *Moon* declineth from the *Æquator* towards the *North*, ſhe requireth more than ſix hours to come from the *Horizon* to the *Meridian*; and therefore when that the *Moon* is elevated above the *Horizon* unto the *horary Circle* of the ſixth hour, then at length the flux begineth, and ſo it is obſerved in moſt places; but the contrary is at *London*, as we have ſaid in the precedent *Propoſition*. And the reaſon ſeemeth to require, that although the *Moon* decline from the *Æquator* towards the *North*, yet that the flux ſhould begin in the place where the *Moon* cometh to the *Horizon*; for then the place is diſtant by a *quarter* from the place unto which the *Moon* is *vertical*. And therefore the preſſure of the *Sea* cometh or extendeth hither: and here more accurate obſervations are required.

See Propoſition xix.

Propoſition XXI.

The hour being given, in which the greateſt or leaſt Altitude of the water is on the day of the new or full Moon in the place where the ordinary flux and reflux is (viz. *of ſix hours, with twelve degrees*) *to determine the hours of the days following after the new Moon, in which the greateſt or leaſt Altitude ſhall be.*

See the foregoing Propoſitions.

We have ſaid in the foregoing *Propoſitions*, that the time of the greateſt increaſe and decreaſe (if we have reſpect to the middle *motion* of the *Moon* from the *Sun*) in one day after placeth 48 ½ *horary minutes*, in half a *day* 24 ¼ *minutes*.

If therefore the greateſt increaſe in any place happen on the *day* of the *new* or *full Moon*, on the twelfth hour of the *day*, theſe hours of encreaſe ſhall be on the following *daies*.

The

The age of he Moon.	The hours of the day.	Scruples.
1	12	48
2	1	37
3	2	27
4	3	17
5	4	5
6	4	55
7	5	59
8	6	49
9	7	23
10	8	12
11	8	56
12	9	51
13	10	40
14	11	29
14½	12 Mid night.	
15	12 Mid day.	

Viz. In the end of the first day of the age of the *Moon*, the greatest *intumescency* falleth out later by 48 ¼ *Horary minutes*. But in practice it is sufficient to add to the *hour* of the *new Moon* for the end of the *first day* 48 *minutes*, or ¼ of an *hour*.

For the end	Hours.
of the second	1 ¼
for the third	2 ½
for the fourth	3 ¾
for the fifth	4
for the sixth	5
for the seventh	5 ¼
for the eighth	6 ½
for the ninth	7
for the tenth	8 ¼
for the eleventh	9
for the twelfth	9 ¼
for the thirteenth	10 ½
for the fourteenth	11 ¾
for the fifteenth	12 ¼

This Supputation of time supposeth the middle or equal *motion* of the *Moon* from the *Sun*, which notwithstanding is unequal, so that the *Moon* in her *Perigee* departeth more swiftly from the *Sun* than in her *Apogee*, and therefore then the greatest encrease is longer protracted than six *hours* and twelve *minutes*. But when the *Moon* is in the *Apogee* the encrease is more quick. For certain true *Lunary Months* exceed 30 *daies*, others are less than 29 *daies*, when that the mean of 29 *daies*, *twelve hours*, 44 *minutes* is assumed. True *Lunary* Months exceed 30 daies.

But in places where the greatest, or least *Altitude* is made by the appulse of the *Moon* to a certain vertical place, although it be done after the same manner, yet for all that the time is not so accurately discovered.

For neither doth the same time, in which the *Moon* is joyned to the *Sun*, fall out on the *hours* of the *day*, or the same moments of the same *hour* in divers *new Moons*.

How this is performed by the *Terrestrial Globe*, we shall shew in the XXX *Chapter*. And in the Thirty seventh *Chapter*, we shall treat more of the use of *Navigation* concerning a more accurat Method. See Chap. 30. and 37.

We may also use this method for those places where the time of the *flux* is more or less, than in the time of the *deflux*; so that we are certain of the difference. The consideration of the thing it self and practice will more easily teach this, than our discourse.

Pro-

Propoſition XXII.

The winds do oftentimes protract, and often diminiſh the time of the flux or reflux in ſome places. Neither are *winds* of that place only able to do it, but *winds* blowing in an other place may alſo effect the ſame.

The truth of the *Propoſition* is ſo manifeſt, that it needeth no *demonſtration*.

Propoſition XXIII.

Great is the variety of peculiar or proper motions of the Sea, viz. *in which a certain part of the Ocean is moved either perpetually, or in ſome certain months.*

Peculiar motions of the Sea.

The firſt of thoſe peculiar *motions* which are moſt conſiderable is that *motion*, by which part of the *Atlantick* or *African Ocean* about *Guinee*, is moved from *Cape Verd*, towards the bending of *Africa*, which is called *Fernando Poo*, that is, from the *Weſt* to the *Eaſt*, which is contrary to the general motion from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt*; now this motion is vehement, ſo that it violently toſſeth the *Ships* approaching to the *ſhoars*, unto this Gulph, beyond the imagination of the *Mariners* and ſupputation of their Voyage. Thence it cometh to paſs, that Ships which have *ſailed* in two *daies* from the *Coaſts* of *Mourræ* to *Rio de Benin*, (which are one hundred miles) ſcarcely in ſix or ſeven weeks can return from *Rio de Benin* to *Mourræ*; except they launch out into the middle *Sea*, which is not eaſily to be performed, ſeeing that the *Sea* is moved with a ſtrong *motion* to the *North-Eaſt quarter* from the *Iſle* of St. *Thomas* to the *Gulph* of *Fernando Poo*, carrying in with it the *Ships*; although they have a fair *North Eaſt wind:* and they can hardly get from that *Coaſt*, except they be forced thence by thoſe ſudden *winds*, termed *Travados*, which ſometimes for ſome months are leſs frequent, or not at all. For either they periſhed by *Shipwrack*, being carried or forced on the *Rocks* that lay hidden beyond all expectation, or elſe the *Seamen* periſhed by famine, being detained in this *Gulph*.

But yet this *Motion* is not common to the whole *Æthiopick Ocean*; but only to that part which adjoyneth to the *Coaſt* of *Guinee*, even to that *Gulph* or *Bay*; for in the *Sea* it is not found to be above the diſtance of fourteen *miles* from the *ſhoar*, at the diſtance of one *degree* from the *Æquator*. Therefore *Mariners* ſayling by thoſe *Coaſts*, are very cautious not to approach over near unto them, ſo that they may Steer their Courſe according to their *minds* and the *ſcituation* of the appointed place.

Now it is difficult to find out the cauſe of this literal *motion*, eſpecially ſeeing that the neigbouring *Ocean* is moved by a contrary way from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt*, yet two things may be ſaid,

1. That the *Ocean* being repulſed from the Coaſts of *America*, floweth back ſomewhat towards the *Eaſt*; and becauſe that the *Æthiopick Ocean* is extended in a long tract to the *Gulph* of *Fernando Poo*, therefore it refloweth into this, which yet is only diſcovered at the *ſhoars*, not in the deep *Ocean*, becauſe in this the contrary motion rendreth it inſenſible: but towards the *ſhoar* the *Sea* is moved more violently, and therefore is chiefly diſcovered in that *Bay* of *Fernando Poo*, becauſe that the *Sea* by reaſon of the Rivers flowing in with a great violence, is repelled from the Shoars of the reſt of *Africa* (as of *Congo*).

2. There may be a certain *ſubterraneous Channel* in this *Gulph* of *Fernando Poo*, into which the *Sea* may fall and attract the reſt of the *Ocean* with it.

Pro-

Propoſition XXIV.

The ſecond peculiar perpetual motion.

About *Sumatra* the *Sea* floweth from the *South* towards the *North*, into the *Gulph* of *Bengala*, and that with a violent *motion*, ſo that it is probable that by the violence of the *Sea* this *Gulph* was made, and that the *Cherſoneſus* of *Malacca* was ſeparated from *India*. Whether the cauſe be that the *Ocean* which tendeth towards the *Weſt*, be forced from ſo many *Iſlands*, and the *Promontory* of the Land of *Magellan*; ſo that it ſhould be carried violently flowing towards the *North*, or whether a *ſubterraneous Channel* be in that *Gulph*, is to be queſtioned. The ſecond peculiar motion of the Sea.

Yet I ſuppoſe it is not directly carried to the North, but to a *Collateral quarter*, which declineth towards the Weſt. Yea, this very ſame *motion* is found between *Java* and the *Land* of *Magellan*. Therefore the *Dutch* ſayling towards the *Indies*, direct their Courſe to that procurrent part of the *Land* of *Magellan*, or the *South* Continent, and then ſail from the *South* towards the *North*, *viz.* to *Java*.

Propoſition XXV.

The third ſpecial perpetual motion is obſerved between the *Iſle* of *Madagaſcar*, and the *Promontory of Good Hope*; eſpecially on the Coaſt of *Africa*, between *Terra de Natal*, and this *Promontory of Good Hope*. This motion is found from the *quarter* of the *North-Eaſt*, to the *South-Eaſt* (and from the *North* to the *South*, according to the extenſion of the Coaſts) ſo vehement, that *Ships* with a ſtiff *gale* can hardly overcome it, and hold the contrary courſe to *Madagaſcar*. On the contrary, thoſe who ſail from *Canali*, into *Madagaſcar*, and *Africa*, towards the *Promontory of Good Hope*, without any help of the *winds*, are carried unto it by the motion of the *Sea* alone. I ſuppoſe the cauſe to be, the forcing of the *Ocean* by a general motion to the Coaſts of *Africa*, where it findeth a paſſage. For this motion is not found in the middle of the *Ocean*, or that part removed from the *ſhoars*, between *India* and *Africa*, from a *Collateral quarter*. But the *Ocean* is moved from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt*. The third ſpecial perpetual motion of the Sea.

Propoſition XXVI.

The fourth ſpecial perpetual Motion is in the *Pacifick Ocean* on the Coaſt of *Peru*, and the reſt of *America*, where the *Sea* is moved from the *South* to the *North*: queſtionleſs the cauſe is a perpetual *South wind*; which is found to predominate on thoſe *Coaſts*, as we have ſhewed in our *Chapter* of *Winds*. In the *Sea* remote from the *Coaſts* this motion is not diſcovered, neither this *wind*. The fourth ſpecial perpetual motion.

Propoſition XXVII.

The fifth ſpecial perpetual motion is obſerved in the *Sea* on the *Coaſts* of *America*, from the *Promontory* of St. *Auguſtin* in *Brazile*, to the *Iſles Antilles* in the *Gulph* of *Mexico* towards *Florida*, that is, from the *South* to the *North*. Peradventure the cauſe is that the *Ocean* being carried by a general motion towards *Brazile*, is repelled, and by reaſon that a more free and broad paſſage is granted towards the *North*, thither is carried. The like motion is obſerved in the *mouth* of the *Streight* of *Manilla* near the *Phillippin Iſles*. So in *Japan* a moſt ſtrong *motion* proceedeth forwards from the Port of *Xibuxia* towards *Arima*. The fifth ſpecial perpetual motion.

Pro-

Propoſition XXVIII.

The ſixth ſpecial perpetual motion of the Sea.

The ſixth ſpecial perpetual motion is in the *Streight Le Maire*, where the *Mariners* of the Prince of *Naſſau* found the *Sea* to be carried from the *Weſt* into the *Eaſt*. But one obſervation ſufficeth not, eſpecially ſeeing that *Le Maire* writeth the contrary.

More ſpecial motions are found in the parts of the *Ocean* at or near the Coaſts, but as yet they are not accurately enough obſerved, or deſcribed.

Propoſition XXIX.

Unto the ſpecial perpetual motions of the parts of the Ocean, alſo thoſe do pertain, which great Rivers cauſe where they exonerate themſelves into the Sea.

The River *Zaire* caſts it ſelf with a violent motion into the Sea.

So on the Coaſt of *Africa*, *Loango*, *Congo*, for ten or twelve *miles* from the *ſhoar*, is a ſtrong motion of the *Sea*, from the Coaſts towards the *Weſt*, becauſe many *Rivers*, (amongſt which is the great *River Zaire*) caſt themſelves with a violence into the *Sea*, and ſo repel the *Sea*, which motion is helped by the general motion. Therefore ſome *daies* are required that *Ships* may touch thoſe *Coaſts*, although they may be diſtant only one or two *miles* from them.

So at the *Iſle Lamon* adjacent to the Coaſt of *China*, the *Sea* is moved from the *ſhoar* towards the *Eaſt*, contrary to the general Motion which is from the *Eaſt* towards *China*: this contrary Motion is cauſed by the impetuous flux of the great River *Thoucoan* in *China*, but in the *Sea* more remote from *China*, this motion is obſtructed by the general Motion: neither is it diſcovered, beyond the Iſle of *Branco*.

Hitherto concerning the *ſpecial perpetual motions*: a little muſt be ſubjoyned concerning the ſpecial fixed, and anniverſary motions.

Propoſition XXX.

Great is the variety of the ſpecial ceaſing, or periodical motions; and thoſe periodical fixed, and anniverſary motions do all almoſt ariſe from *anniverſary* and *ſtated winds*. And *ſtated* or *fixed winds* of one place may make the motion of the *Sea* fixed in another place.

The flux of the Sea in divers places at certain times.

So between the *Iſle Celebes*, and *Madera*, when that the motion is *Weſt*, *viz.* in *December*, *January*, and *February*, the *Sea* floweth to the *South Eaſt*, or a more near *Collateral wind* than the *Eaſt*.

So at *Java* in the *Streight Gallappa*, when the motion is *Weſt*, *viz.* in *May*, the *Sea* floweth towards the *Eaſt*, contrary to his general Motion.

At the *Iſle* of *Ceilan*, from the middle of *March*, to *October*, the *Sea* floweth towards the *South*. on the reſt of the Months towards the *North*, *viz.* becauſe that in thoſe Months the *North winds* are frequent, in others the *South winds*.

Between *Cochin* and *Mallacca*, the *Sea* floweth with a *Weſternly motion* from *April* to *Auguſt*, contrary to the general motion towards the *Eaſt*: then the reſt of the time towards the *Weſt* the *winds* aſſiſting the general motion: the *Sea* floweth here with ſo great a noiſe, that thoſe who know not the ſame, ſuppoſe Rocks to be there, againſt which the *waters* beat ſo for ſome months: after the 15 of *February*, the *Sea* is moved from the *Maldivian Iſles*, towards the *Eaſt*, and *India*, contrary to the general motion.

At the Coaſt of *China* and *Camboja*, in *October*, *November*, and *December*, the *Sea* is moved towards the *North-Weſt*; but in *January*, towards the *South-Weſt*, with a very ſwift courſe to the Sands *de Champa*, ſo that they ſeem to exceed the celerity of a ſtone that is ſlinged.

At

At *Pulo Cato* even unto *Varella* (on the coaſt of *Camboja*) when *motions* or *winds* do not blow, the ſwift *motion* of the *Sea* is towards the *South*; but the *motions* or *winds* move towards another *quarter*.

On the Coaſt of the *Gulph* of *Bengala*, from *Patana* to the Promontory of *Malacca*, in *November* and *December*, a ſwift courſe of the *Sea* is obſerved towards the *South*.

In a *motion* or *wind* from *China* to *Malacca*, in *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*, there is a vehement *motion* of the *Sea* from *Pulo Cato* to *Pulo Cambir* on the Coaſt of *Camboja*.

Many more Examples, but leſs accurately conſigned, are to be read in the *Journals* of the *Mariners*.

At the Coaſt of *Aguada de ſan Bras*, not far from the Promontory of *Good Hope*, this is peculiarly obſerved, that the *Sea* is always moved from the *Eaſt* to the *Weſt* towards the *land* ſo much the more vehemently, by how much the *Occidental wind* oppoſite unto it is more violent. Queſtionleſs ſome adjacent Coaſt higher than it, is the cauſe of it.

Propoſition XXXI.

The circular motions of the Sea, termed Whirlpools and Vortices, are threefold: For ſome only move the *water* in a round; otherſome ſuck in the *water*, and in certain *hours* let it forth again; and others ſuck it in, but caſt it not forth. Although without doubt there be a fourth ſort in the *Channel* of the *Sea*, which caſteth out and ſucketh not in the *waters*. Yet I do not remember, that I have read in any Author ſuch a *Vortex* to be found in the *Sea*; but many are found on the *land*. The circular motions of the Sea are threefold.

The *Chalcidican Euripus* or *Vortex* is famous in *Greece*, eſpecially by reaſon of the Fable concerning the death of *Ariſtotle*; it receiveth *water* at certain *hours*, and caſteth them out in others.

The *Vortex* at *Norway* is the moſt noted and greateſt of all, for it is related to be 13 *miles* in circuit; in the middle of it is a Rock called *Mouske*. This *Vorago* in ſix *hours* ſucketh in all that approacheth near it; as *Water*, *Whales*, laden *Ships*, and in ſo many hours vomiteth them all out again with a great violence, noiſe, and *circumgyration* of *water*. The cauſe is unknown.

Between *Normandy* and *England* is a *Vorago* or *Whirlpool*, unto which *Ships* are carried with a great ſwiftneſs, and being near the *Whirlpool* are repelled back again.

Propoſition XXXII.

The motion of the Sea, which we call a Concuſſion or Trembling, cometh from a ſpiration or wind, which moveth the Earth or Water it ſelf, and cauſeth it to riſe.

On the Coaſt of *Biſcay* is a place which the Inhabitants call *Capbreton*; there ſometimes the *Sea* ſwelleth without any *winds*, ſo that it ſeemeth to overflow the *ſhore* it ſelf, and on a ſudden falleth low. The like *intumeſcency* is found in a Lake of *Scotland*, called *Loumond*, moved by a *ſubterranean wind*. Of the conciſſion of the Sea, and its cauſe.

The *Portugals* in *Anno* 1523, in the Sea of *Cambaja* diſcovered a trembling of the *water*; for in a great calm (as *Maffeus* writeth) all *winds* being ſtill, the *Sea* on a ſudden ſwelled from the bottom; thence the *Ships* began to roul, and to fall foul of one another, to their great aſtoniſhment: Now in this great confuſion and diſturbance, ſome caſt the *lead*, ſome *pumped*, others more wiſe bethought themſelves of eſcaping, and got *barrels* on which they might ſwim; but on an inſtant it was found to be an *Earthquake*, which thus alſo diſturbed the *Ships* on the *Sea* as well as the *Land*.

Propoſition XXXIII.

Why the Pacifick Ocean is more calm, and without great floods or waves; and why it is eaſily moved, or rough with a wind.

The cauſe without doubt is, becauſe its motions towards the Weſt are not hindred by the intercourſe of *ſhoars*, as the *Atlantick Ocean* is.

CHAP. XV.

Of Lakes, Pools, or ſtanding Waters, and Mariſhes.

Propoſition I.

Definitions.

Of Lakes. A *Lake is a quantity of Water in any cavity of a Mediterranean place*, of a notable amplitude and compact, on all ſides encompaſſed with the Land, and at the leaſt having a moderate profundity: But more properly, that is termed a *Lake* which receiveth in, and letteth forth *Rivers*.

Pools. A *Pool* is a ſmall *Lake*, which doth never receive or ſend forth *Rivers*.

Mariſhes. A *Mariſh* is water in a *Mediterranean place*, here and there having the lands extant and about it, or mixed with the *Earth*.

Propoſition II.

Lakes are fourfold. *Lakes are Fourfold:* 1. Some neither ſend forth or receive *Rivers*, and ſuch Lakes, if ſmall, are termed *Pools*; but if large, they are called *Lakes*. 2. Some ſend forth *Rivers*, but receive none. 3. Others receive *Rivers*, and ſend forth none: And 4. ſome both receive and ſend forth *Rivers*; and ſome of thoſe ſend forth greater than they receive, ſome equal, and ſome leſſer. Alſo ſome ſend forth a *River* almoſt in the ſame *line* with that which they received; others in another *line*, or to another *quarter:* alſo ſome receive more than they ſend forth; ſome more few, and ſome equal.

Propoſition III.

To declare the generation and conſervation of thoſe Lakes, which neither ſend forth nor receive Rivers.

Thoſe *Lakes* are either great, moderate, or ſmall. Some of the moderate and ſmall perpetually remain ſo in the *Summer*, and when it hath not rained for a long ſpace, are dried up; and both theſe are termed *Pools*. Now it is eaſy to declare the generation of thoſe that are dried up, *viz.* the plenty of *rain*, and cavity and depreſſion of the place in which ſuch ſtanding *Pools* are: For if that any place be ſcituated in the midſt of elevated places, all the *rain-water* runeth unto it, and ſo cauſeth a *Pool*.

In India are many Pools. So in *India* there are many *Pools* or *Standing-waters* made by the induſtry of the Inhabitants, whereof ſome are in compaſs a *mile*, and ſome *two*, encompaſſed with a *Stone-wall*, which are filled in the *Pluvial months*, that in the *Summer months* they may furniſh thoſe with *water*, who live far from *Rivers* or *Fountains*.

After

After the like mode ſmall *Lakes* and *Pools* are made by the exundations of the *Sea* and *Rivers*.

So the River *Nilus* and *Niger* exundating, when that they have reflowed, leave many *Pools* behind them, which either the Natives fortifie or make, that thence they may draw *water* on the other *Months* of the year. For the ſame reaſon, in *Moſcovia*, *Finland*, *Lapland*, in the Spring, Summer and Autumn, are many *Lakes*, partly by reaſon of the *ſhores*, and partly becauſe of the diſſolving of the *Snows* and *Ice*. But although ſome *Lakes* be dried up in the *Summer*, and after a long ceſſation of *Rains*; we may not thence firmly conclude, that they had all their *waters* from thoſe *Rains*, for they may be dried up.

As for other Lakes without *Rivers* that are not dried up, their generation may be alſo referred to the *Rains*, *viz.* if that they have a profound *Channel*, in which ſo great a quantity of *water* collected from *Rains* may be kept, as that the heat of the *Sun* is not of force enough to conſume it all before that another Rain falleth: but it is more probable, that theſe Lakes have peculiar *Rivulets* in the bottom, from which they receive ſo much *water*, as is conſumed by the exhalation. And this cauſe alone taketh place in thoſe *Pools* that are found on the tops of *Mountains*; as in the Mountain *Bructerus* in *Ceniſius*, and others. Now it is probable, that ſome of theſe alſo were generated long ſince by a great inundation of *Waters*, and thence conſerved by Rivers: nay, without queſtion ſome of theſe Lakes that are near the *Sea*, and alſo *ſalt*, had their being from ſome inundation of the *Sea* through ſome paſſage; as the Lake *Harlem*, and others in *Holland*. There are alſo many *ſalt* Lakes in *Peru*.

Neither is there any great number of theſe Lakes without *Rivers*; ſome ſmall ones are found in *Moſcovia* and *Finland*, the Lake or Pool *Lychnitis* in *Macedonia*, the Lake *Appollonia* in *Myſia*; one in *Carniola*, called *Zrinzee*; a round one in *China*; another called *Hilam* in *Cochinchina*; one in *Zanhaga*; one at the City of *Mexico*, twelve Leagues in length. All theſe are ſmall, except that in *China*, in compariſon of great ones. Not many Lakes without Rivers, and thoſe not large.

There is only one great Lake of this kind in the whole Earth, and which exceedeth all others, to wit, that of *Parima* in *America*, which is about 300 *miles* in length from Eaſt to Weſt, and about an hundred in breadth, where broadeſt; yet nevertheleſs it doth not receive, nor ſend forth any *Rivers*. How it had its original, is no mean doubt; whether long ſince cauſed by the inundation of the *Ocean*, or flowing from ſome *ſubterranean Fountains* or *Springs*? Alſo, whether it be conſerved by *Rains*, or from the ſame *Springs*? It ſeemeth to me probable that it hath *Springs* at the bottom, that ſupply as much as the heat of the *Sun* conſumeth. The Lake *Parima* the greateſt Lake.

Propoſition IV.

To declare the generation and conſervation of thoſe Lakes *that neither receive, nor ſend forth any Rivers.*

There is an infinite namber of theſe Lakes, ſeeing that moſt *Rivers* flow from Lakes, as from *Fountains* or *Springs*; eſpecially thoſe that ariſe in *Moſcovia*, *Finland*, and *Lapland*, *viz.* where there is any cavity in the place of a *Spring*, but not ſo large as to contain a quantity of runing *water*; then it becometh a Lake; thence proceeds a *River*, the *water* gliding to the adjacent places. Neither may we doubt, but that theſe Lakes have their generation and conſervation from *Springs* in the bottom, whether it be a true Spring, or an apparent Spring, *viz.* Water flowing from another place thither through a ſubterraneous paſſage; which laſt appeareth more probable in reference to certain Lakes which immediately ſend forth great *Rivers*. Of ſuch ſmall Lakes there is a great multitude, as I have ſaid; as *Volga*, from whence is the firſt original of the River *Volga*; *Odoium*, from whence floweth *Tanais*; *Adac*, the original of one of the branches of Of the Generation and Conſervation of Lakes, that neither receive nor ſend forth Rivers.

the River *Tigris*; *Osera* in *Moscovia*; the Spring of the River *Sosnam*, which is discharged into *Volga*; and many other small ones, we only reckon up the greatest of most note.

1. The famous Lake *Chiamy*, not far from *India*, in the *latitude* of 31 *degrees*, from which run four *Rivers* of note, magnitude, and inundation into the Kingdom of *Sian*, *Pegu*, and the like, *viz.* the Rivers *Menam*, *Axa*, *Cosmum* and *Martavam*; but some *Maps* have a very small River which runeth into this *Lake*.

2. The Lake *Cincuyhay* in *China*, which sendeth forth a great River towards the North, which joyned with another entreth *China*.

3. The Lake *Titicaca* in *America meridionalis* of 80 *miles* compass; it sendeth forth a great *River*, which terminateth in a small *Lake*, neither is it seen any farther: and about this Lake are many *Cities* and *Towns*.

4. In *Nicaragua* in *America* is a *Lake* so called, about *four miles* from the *Pacifick Ocean*, and 100 *miles* from the *Atlantick*, into which it runeth in a great *Channel*.

5. The Lake *Iroquois* in *Canada*, the original of the *River* of St. *Lawrence*.

6. The Lake *Annibi* in *Asia*, under the *latitude* of 61 degrees.

Proposition V.

To declare the generation and conservation of those Lakes that receive Rivers, and let out none.

Of Lakes that receive Rivers, and letteth out none.

Now it is manifest, that these *Lakes* are generated and conserved from those *Rivers* which they receive, and that flow into them: For when that *Rivers* having gone from their *spring*, and arrived in their passage at any noted and ample cavity, the *water* is collected in this, and maketh a *Lake*.

Now if the *Earth* at the bottom prove porous, it sucketh in the *water*, and transmitteth it the to adjacent *Earth*, or that which I suppose to be more frequent, if there be a *Subterraneous passage*, or that such an one be caused by the *water*; through this part of the flowing *water* is carried away, so that on that account the *Lake* doth not flow over.

Of these kind of *Lakes* there is but a small number on the *Earth*.

1. In the preceding *Proposition* we have said, that the Lake *Nicaragua* sendeth forth a River, which endeth in a small *Lake*; this *Lake* therefore shall be one of this number.

2. The Lake *Asphaltites* in *Palestine*, termed also the *Dead-Sea*, receiveth the River *Jordan*, but sendeth forth none; it is seventy *miles* long and five broad.

3. A small one in *Asia minor*.

4. A small one in *Macedonia*, called *Janna*, which receiveth little *Rivers*.

5. The *Lake* of *Geneva*.

6. A *Lake* in *Persia*.

7. The Lake *Soran* in *Moscovia*, which receiveth two small *Rivulets*.

8. The River *Ghir* in *Africa*, rising in *Mount Atlas* endeth in a *Lake*, as *Leo Africanus* writeth, and so some *Maps* do represent it; but others bring the River into *Nubia*.

Proposition

Propoſition VI.

To explain the generation of thoſe Lakes, which both receive and ſend forth Rivers.

There is a threefold difference of them, as we have ſaid in the ſecond *Propoſition*; for either they receive a greater quantity of *water* than they ſend forth, or an equal quantity, or a leſſer. If that they ſend forth a greater quantity, it is manifeſt that that *Lake* hath occult *ſprings*. If leſs, it is a ſign that there are ſecret *Aqueducts* in the bottom, or a ſpungious Earth: but if it be equal, we gather that there are neither occult *Aqueduct* nor hidden ſprings in the bottom. The cauſe of the *generation* therefore is partly the ſame, which we ſhewed in the *fourth Propoſition*, *viz.* the *cavity* and *depreſſion* of the place, and the quantity of *water*, unto which are adjoyned occult *ſprings* and much *rain*, and diſſolved *Snow* and *Ice* help on the ſame. Of Lakes which both receive and ſend forth Rivers.

Thoſe that are generated from the *influx* of one *River*, they are placed in the middle tract of the *Rivers*, and render the *Rivers* directly, and of theſe there are a great number. So the River *Niger* maketh four *Lakes* in its paſſage. The *Nile* maketh many *Lakes* in its paſſage, which the *Maps* do not ſhew. The River *Duina* paſſeth through ſix or ſeven at leaſt: and you ſhall ſee other *Rivers* in *Moſcovia* and *Finland*, in the great *Maps*, to make ſixteen *Lakes* before that they come to their *mouth*. But it is beſt to conſider thoſe, which produce other *Rivers* than they have received.

The moſt famous for *magnitude* are theſe:

1. *Zaire*; a *Lake* of the procurrent of *Africa*, lying between the *thirteenth* and *ſixth degrees* of *South latitude*, and therefore in *Longitude* hath 105 *miles*; in the midſt of it lieth an *Iſland* (beſides other ſmall ones) of that *magnitude*, that they can bring into the field at leaſt twenty or thirty thouſand *fighting men*. This Iſle doth in a manner twice cut the *Lake*, ſo that one part is accounted for a peculiar *Lake*, it is called *Zembre*: from this *Lake* flow three mighty Rivers, *Nile*, *Cuama* and *Zaire*; but certain ſmall *Rivulets* do flow into the ſame, which do not only ſeem ſufficient to ſupply the greateſt of the ſame; ſo that it is probable, that it hath certain *ſprings* at the bottom, although the inundation to be aſcribed to be the ſhowers that fall in the *pluvial months*. The Lake *Zairt*.

2. *Zaſlan*; a *Lake* not far from *Zaire* between the *tenth* and *ſixth degrees* of *South latitude*, and therefore about ſixty *miles* in *Longitude*: It ſendeth forth a branch into the *Nile*, and receiveth ſmall *Rivers*. The Lake *Zaſlan*.

3. The Lake *Sachaf*, not far from *Zaire*, towards the *Promontory* of *Good hope*, ſendeth forth a *Rivulet*, which being augmented with other *waters*, at length maketh the River of the *holy Ghoſt*: It receiveth ſmall *Rivers*. The Lake *Sachaf*.

4. The Lake *Aquilunda* receiveth a branch from the Lake *Zaire*, and ſendeth forth many *Rivers* into *Congo*. The Lake *Aquilunda*.

5. *Onega*; a Lake in *Finland*, between the 60 and 63 *degrees* of *Latitude*, hath 44 *miles* in length and 30 in breadth, where it is at the broadeſt: It receiveth many ſmall *Rivers*, which proceed from other *Lakes*, and ſendeth forth the moderate River *Sueri* into the Lake *Lodoga*. The Lake *Onega*.

6. The Lake *Lodoga*, 30 *miles* long and 15 broad; it receiveth the River *Sueri* from *Onega*, and many leſſer from other places; a moderate one from *Ilmen*, a noted *Lake* in *Moſcovia*. It ſendeth forth a River into the *Baltick Sea*. The Lake *Lodoga*.

7. The Lake *Oſera*, receiveth the River *Kouſam*, and others, and ſendeth forth *Soſnam*, which runeth into the *Volga*. The Lake *Oſera*.

8. *Enarack*; a Lake or Mariſh in *Lapland*, in length 40 *miles*, in breadth 15: It receiveth the River *Avilan*, and other leſſer *Rivers*, and ſendeth forth the River *Paes* into the *Lappian Sea*. The Lake *Enarack*.

9. *Ula*,

The Lake *Ula.* 9. *Ula*, a Lake in *Moscovia* 30 *miles* long, and 15 broad; it hath in the midst of it an Island, as in the Lake *Zaire:* It receiveth a River that passeth through 10 *Lakes*, and sendeth forth a famous *River*. There are many more in *Moscovia*, *Finland*, and *Norway*.

Lakes in *China.* 10. In *China* are four famous *Lakes*, which receive *Rivers*, and again distribute them into divers parts.

Lakes in *Brasil.* 11. In *Brasil*, in the same manner as in *China*, are the Lakes *Euparia*, and *Puerto de los Reyes*, in which the Rivers *Argenta* and *Omoranna* do meet and pass through.

Proposition VII.

Many Lakes contain fresh Water, very few salt or Marine.

Divers Lakes contain fresh-water, very few salt. Those that have their being from *Rains* or *Rivers*, as also those that have their own proper *springs* more remote from the *Sea*; but those that are caused by an inundation of the *Sea* through a certain passage, are *salt*, as also some which have springs of *Salt-water* in the bottom: So the Lake *Harlem* and others in *Holland*, are *salt*. There is a *salt Lake* found in the Isle of *Madagascar*, in *Peru*, in *Cuba*, which hath two Leagues in circuit, scituate not far from the *Sea*, and although it receive certain Rivers of *fresh-water*, and breedeth *Fish* and *Tortoises*, yet it is *salt*. So the Lake *Asphaltites*, although it receive the *fresh-water* of *Jordan*, yet it is not sweet, but sendeth forth so stinking and violent a vapour, that the circumjacent land for the space of half a *mile* is barren.

Proposition VIII.

Whether the Caspian *Sea be a Lake, Streight, or Gulph of the Ocean.*

The *Caspian* Sea, whether a Lake, Streight, or Gulph. Some will have it to be properly termed a *Sea*; but no *Sea* can properly be termed a *Sea* except it be a part of the *Ocean*, that is, except it doth adhere to the *Ocean* by some manifest tract; but they will have it joyned to the *Ocean* by some *subterraneous passage*. The *Ancients* indeed would have it to be joyned with the *Indian Ocean*, others with the *Northern*; but experience sufficiently sheweth both to be deceived. Concerning a *subterraneous passage* the matter is uncertain; yet it seemeth to be probable from thence, that it receiveth so many *Rivers*, and those noted for great quantities, which quantity of *water* the Channel could not possible contain, except that it exonerated the same by *subterraneous Caverns* and *passages* into the *Ocean*. But others suppose that quantity of *water* otherwise to be consumed, *viz.* that it penetrateth not into the *Ocean*, but into the vicine *Mountains*, of which there is a great number, and almost all send forth *springs*. *Scaliger* and others assert, that this *Caspian Sea* is carried by a *subterraneous passage* into the *Euxine Sea*; but he alledgeth no probation of it: yet that may be a sign, by reason that the *Euxine Sea* perpetually sendeth forth *waters* in great abundance through the *Bosphorus*, which abundance of *waters* some think that it doth not receive from the *Rivers*, but by a *subterranean passage* from the *Caspian Sea:* But it seemeth not so to me to have any conjunction with the *Sea*, and therefore I suppose it to be a *Lake*, and so rather to be called, than a *Sea*. Now whence it was first generated is a greater difficulty: Some say, that great *Mountains* of *Salts* are found in its bottom, and that thence it hath its saltness; but the *water* they suppose to proceed from the multitude of *Rivers* that exonerate themselves into this *Lake* or *Sea*. Yet although these *waters* make to the conservation of it; yet I think it more probable, that this *Sea* for some Ages since was conjoyned to the *Ocean*; neither do I question but that the *Euxine Sea* will at length become a *Lake* for the same reason, the *Bosphorus* being obstructed.

Proposition

Propoſition IX.

To make a Lake in a place, if that it be poſſible.

It may be done, if that there be a *River* in the land adjoyning, or that a Spring be found in the *place*, and that the place be ſomewhat more depreſſed and low than in the adjacent places; although ſmall *Lakes* may be alſo made on the tops of *Mountains*: therefore the place muſt be hallowed, and the *earth* dug away unto ſo great a depth and amplitude as we require, and its ſides muſt be fenced with *banks* upheld by *wood*, if need ſo require; then an Inlett being made from the Channel of the *river*, the *water* muſt be let in; or if that a Fountain in that place affordeth a ſufficient quantity of *water*, there is no need of that *inlett* or *aqueduct*. Of making Lakes.

Propoſition X.

To take away, or dry up a Lake.

That may be performed two ways; 1. If the bottom of that *Lake* be higher, or of almoſt an equal depreſſion with the vicine place, an *Aqueduct* being made, the *water* will flow from the place or Lake, and at length will render the bottom dry, the heat of the *Sun* aſſiſting, and *Earth* being caſt in. 2. If that the bottom of the *Lake* be lower than the vicine place, it muſt firſt be fenced with a trench in its whole circuit, leaving only ſome *Channels* or open paſſages; then making uſe of *Water-mills*, the *water* muſt be expelled and drawn out, and then the bottom muſt be covered with *earth* and *dung*, and ſuch ſeeds caſt in, which ſuddenly will take root, as *Muſtard-ſeed*, *Coleworts*, and the like. By this mode the *Dutch* very well know how to drain *Lakes*, and to make fruitful *lands* of them. Of drying up of Lakes.

Propoſition XI.

Mariſhes are of two ſorts; ſome are ouzey, and conſiſting of a mixt ſubſtance as it were, viz. *of Water and Earth, ſo that it will not ſuffer the footſteps of a man: others have ſmall ſtanding Pools, with ſmall portions of dry land here and there.*

Of the firſt ſort are thoſe that receive or ſend forth no *Rivers*; ſuch *Mariſhes* are in *Holland*, *Brabant* (where is the *Mariſh de Peel*,) and many in *Weſtphalia*, to which ſome of the ſecond ſort are admixed. But many of the ſecond kind are found at the *originals* or *ſprings* of Rivers, whence ſome are wont to call theſe Springs or Fountains, *Mariſhes*; as the *Mariſhes* of *Tanais* in *Moſcovia*, of the *Nile*, *&c.* Such *Mariſhes* alſo ſeem to be in *Savolax*, a Province in *Finland* in a great tract of *land*; alſo the *Mariſhes* of *Enarack*; the *Chelonides* Mariſhes of *Africa*, the *Mariſhes* of *Chaldea*, through which the *Euphrates* doth paſs. Theſe *Mariſhes* are frequently found in *Woods* and *Deſarts* that are *Ericoſe*, becauſe that the *rain* which irrigateth thoſe *lanes*, and collecteth in its cavities, is not attracted by the *Sun*, by reaſon that the Leaves of *Trees* do repel its Rays. Such kind of *Mariſhes* are found here and there in *Germany* and *Moſcovia*. Mariſhes are of two ſorts.

Moreover theſe *Mariſhes* of the ſecond ſort are four-fold; *viz.* ſome both receive and ſend forth *Rivers*; ſome only receive, ſome only ſend forth, and ſome neither receive nor ſend forth. The firſt ſort are generated and conſerved, partly by occult *ſprings* and *water* effuſed before that it be brought to a certain *Channel*, and alſo from a greater quantity of *water* than can poſſibly be brought through a *Channel*; many of which ſort are in *Moſcovia* and *Finland*: *Mariſhes* of the laſt kind probably are conſerved, and ſpring from *rain* and ſmall *ſprings*. *Ariſtotle* calleth the *Palus Mæotis* a *Lake*, and that more rightly.

Propo-

Propoſition XII.

Mariſhes have a ſulphurous, bituminous, and fat Earth.

Of the earth of Mariſhes.

This is diſcovered both from the black colour, and from the Reeds which are generated from it, and eaſily take fire, as is found in *Holland* and other places. The cauſe is, by reaſon that ſuch ſubſtances are contained in the raiſe of the *earth*, where theſe *Mariſhes* do exiſt. Yet all *Mariſhes* are not ſuch; but where the Earth is ſtony and hard, there are no *Mariſhes:* for where there is a ſoft *earth*, there for a certain is a fat and ſulphurous ſubſtance.

Propoſition XIII.

To drain Mariſhes and Fens.

Of draining of Fens.

Although ſome *Fens* have an high profundity, yet no more is required to drain them to ſuch a depth; which we may do, if that we cauſe the *water* to flow away by ſome *Channel* or *Aqueduct*. 2. If that after ſome *weeks* they have been dried by the *Sun*, we caſt in a great quantity of dry *earth*. 3. If that we make a fire upon them: and 4. If that we hinder *water* from flowing into them; as *rain*, and the like.

CHAP. XVI.

Of Rivers in General.

Propoſition I.

We comprehend in this Propoſition the definitions neceſſary for this doctrine.

Of Rivers, and their definition.

1. A *River* is *water* flowing from a certain place of the *Earth* to another place in a long tract, and within its *Channel*. A *Channel* is that cavity in the *Earth* in which the *water* is contained, which is more depreſſed and lower than the *ſhore* of that *water*.

2. A *Rivulet* is a River that hath not the profundity and breadth, as to admit of ſmall laden *Veſſels*.

3. That is termed *Amnis* which admitteth of thoſe *Veſſels*; but if they will bear moderate *Veſſels*, great ones laden, then it is called by the general term of *Fluvius*, and *Flumen*.

4. That *water* is termed a *Torrent* which floweth from the Mountainous places with a violence.

5. Where two Rivers meet, that place is called a *Confluence*.

6. A River or Rivulet which floweth from another, is termed a *Branch* or *Arm*; yet for the moſt part it is taken for ſuch an *arm* which is leſſer than the other part of the River. Yet thoſe are alſo frequently termed *Arms* which proceed from a River divaricated into two Channels.

7. A *Fountain* or *Spring*, is *water* bubling and flowing forwards from a certain place of the *Earth*.

8. A *Well* is, when the *water* bubleth up, but floweth not forwards.

Pro-

Propoſition II.

Torrents and Rivulets may ſometimes proceed from a quantity of rain, and diſſolved Snow.

From whence Torrents and Rivulets do proceed.

For in the Mountainous, or more elevated parts of the Earth, are found many *Cavities*, ſmall *Lakes*, and ſtanding *Pools*: Now if that ſo great a quantity of water flow into theſe from the falls of *Rain* or *Snow*, that they cannot well contain them, they overflow and run down on the more depreſſed places; and becauſe that on every *year* this happeneth, it maketh a *Channel* for it ſelf: but ſometimes *Torrents* do flow without any *Channel*. From this cauſe, *viz.* *Rains* and the diſſolution of *Snow*, many *Rivulets* are made alſo *Torrents*, and moderate or indifferent Rivers in thoſe places, which have ridges of Mountains in a long tract, as the *Procurrent* of *Africa*, *India*, *Peru*, *Sumatra*, and the like. And theſe *Rivulets* flow neither in the *Summer*, nor in the *night*, but only in the *day*.

Propoſition III.

Moſt Rivulets proceed from Fountains. But Rivers of a great magnitude, have their Original either from the congreſs of many Rivulets, and indifferent Rivers, or flow from Lakes and Marſhes. For no Rivers of any conſiderable magnitude (as the *Albis*, the *Rhine*) *do flow from one Fountain, but exiſt from many ſmall Springs, or Lakes*: But theſe proceeding from *Lakes*, are augmented by the acceſſion of other *Rivers*. The River *Volga*, or *Rha*, receiveth two hundred and more partly *Rivulets*, and partly indifferent *Rivers*, before that it diſchargeth it ſelf into the *Caſpian Sea*; and the *Danube*, as many before ſhe flow into the *Pontus*.

Rivulets proceed from Fountains.

And although that *Pliny* and *Cardan* write, that no Rivers flow into the *Nile*, yet experience teſtifieth the contrary to them that have travelled in *Abyſſine*. The *Propoſition* is eaſily proved by an enumeration of Examples.

Springs proceed commonly from Hills & Mountains.

The *Springs* of ſome *Rivulets* and Rivers are in Mountains, and elevated places; and ſome on a *Plane*. As for the *Springs* of thoſe Rivers that proceed from *Lakes*, we have ſaid in the former Chapter, that thoſe *Springs* are in the *bottom*, or *Channel* of the *Lakes*: and that ſuch *Lakes* are as it were *Conduits* and *effuſions* about the *Spring*, before that the water floweth in a *Channel*, or in a greater quantity. For ſome *Spirngs* are covered with Earth or water, others open.

The *Springs* on a *Plane* are of thoſe Rivers, from which *Tanais* and *Albis* exiſt in their firſt tract, unto which others do accede. It were eaſie to collect other Examples.

Cardanus denyeth theſe Fountains to be generated in theſe plane places, but to be derived from the vicine Mountains, by ſome *ſubterraneous paſſage*. But I ſuppoſe that ſuch *Springs* firſt make a ſtanding *Pool*, or *Marſh*. For *Tanais* ſeemeth not to flow from a *Spring*, but from a *Marſh*, or ſome leſs profound *Lake*.

Many are the Mountainous *Springs* of *Rivulets*, as of thoſe of the *Rhine*, *Po*, *Danube*, *Boryſthenes*, &c.

The *Nile*, *Wolga*, and the great River of St. *Laurence* in *Canada* flow from a *Lake*.

Yet there is one *mode*, by which from one Fountain a great River may proceed, *viz.* if that the Fountain be on an Elevated place; but the *Channel* of the River muſt be a little higher than the *Altitude* of the

inlet. So the flowing water, firſt in a more ſwift Current, then in a more ſlow, is collected in the *Channel*, and in courſe of time may be a very great River, by reaſon that ſo much did not flow out in the firſt generation.

Propoſition IV.

Rivers are very much augmented by frequent Rains, and diſſolved Snow, and that in divers ſeaſons and months of the year.

Rivers are much encreaſed by rain and ſnow.

So in the *Region* of *Peru*, and *Chili*, ſome Rivers are ſo ſmall that they flow not in the night time, but only in the day; becauſe that then the water floweth from Snow diſſolved on the Mountains of the *Andes*, through the heat of the Sun. So the Rivers both in the *Oriental* and *Occidental* Coaſt of the procurrent of *Africa*, as in *Congo*, *Angola*, and the like, are bigger in the day than in the night. So it is alſo in the ſhoars of *Malabar*, and *Chormandel* in *India*. Yea in thoſe four *Regions* in *Summer* time the Rivers are almoſt dried up, and in the *Winter*, or wet ſeaſon, are overflowing. So *Wolga* in the Months of *May*, and *June*, aboundeth with water, ſo that the *Lands* and *Iſlands*, are then covered with water, in the other Months the Sands will hardly admit a paſſage over them for Ships that are laden. The reaſon is, becauſe that then, the Snow is diſſolved on the Mountains, whence thoſe Rivulets proceed, which being more than one hundred, do exonerate themſelves into the *Volga*. So the *Nile*, *Ganges*, *Indus*, &c. are augmented from rains, or Snow: ſo that they overflow the *Lands*. But theſe augments happen in a different ſeaſon, becauſe that they ariſe from divers cauſes, and divers places; for by reaſon that rains are more frequent in the *Winter*; therefore Rivers are more high at the ſeaſon, except another cauſe intervene from the diſſolution of Snow, which ſometimes happeneth in ſome places and Mountains in the *Spring*, in others in the *Summer*, and in others in the intermedial time, by reaſon that the Snow is then diſſolved on the *Mountains* that are adjacent to the *Rivulets* of theſe Rivers. Moreover ſome Rivers, eſpecially the greater, proceed from remote places, where it is then *Summer*, when it is *Winter* in the place through which they flow; and thoſe variations cauſe the ſwelling of Rivers in divers ſeaſons. But moſt Rivers do ſo in the *Spring*, becauſe that then Snow is diſſolved in moſt places. The variety of theſe cauſes muſt be ſhewed in the particular deſcription of every River.

Concerning that peculiar *Spring* of *Japan*, which floweth every day only for two hours, we ſhall ſpeak in the following Chapter.

Propoſition V.

What may be the Original of that water which floweth from Springs? Or whence are Rivers generated?

The cauſe of water flowing from Springs.

We have before our eyes the great River *Rhine*, *Albis*, and others, the generation of which by reaſon of their abundance of waters, ſeemeth more admirable than that of *Rivulets*: but we have ſhewed in the precedent and third *Propoſition*, that the water of Rivers partly proceeds from rain, and the diſſolution of Snow, partly from Lakes, and partly from the meeting of *Rivulets* and Rivers. Therefore the queſtion is not ſo much concerning the Riſe and Springs of Rivers, as the Original and perpetuity of *Fountains* and *Springs*.

The Opinion of Philoſophers, and Geographers, are various.

The Opinions of *Philoſophers* and *Geographers* concerning it are various.

1. Some

1. Some think that all the *water* of *Springs* of *Rivers* proceed from *Rain*, or diſſolved *Snow*. And this they take for a ſign of it, that *Rain*, and diſſolved *Snow* do much augment the *Rivers*, that oftentimes they extend beyond their *Channel*, and overflow *Regions*: alſo that *Rivers* do much decreaſe, and ſome leſſer ſort of them are altogether dried up, when no *Rain*, for a long while in the *Summer ſeaſon*, hath fallen; becauſe that their *Channel* is not very profound, and therefore have collected little water: but thoſe that have a deep Channel are not dried up in the *Summer*, by reaſon that they have gathered ſo much *water* from the *Rains* that fell, and diſſolved *Snow*, ſo that all cannot be turned into vapours, except by a daily and continual heat. 2. Becauſethat there are very few *Rivers* in thoſe places where there is little *rain*: as in the more inward part of *Africa* there are few *Springs*.

But theſe allegations reſolve not the queſtion, becauſe we are not to demand, or ſeek the Original of *Rivers*, but only the Original of the *Water* of *Fountains*. Therefore thoſe that ſpeak thus, have not well conſidered the ſence of the queſtion, as we have taken notice before; although alſo the experience that they alledge, is not general, becauſe that there are *Rivers* found in places, where there is little *rain* and no *ſnow*; although it be true in the Region of *Peru*, and *Ægypt*, which they aſſert. Moreover *rain* moiſteneth not the *Earth* above *ten foot* deep: but *Fountains* ſpring from a far greater profundity.

2. Others ſuppoſe, that we ſhould not demand whence the *water* of *Fountains* doth ariſe, by reaſon that *water* is an Element as much as *Earth*, *Air*, and *Fire*, concerning the Original of which we do not diſpute; thus *Seneca* diſcourſeth. But other Authours cut in twain this *Gordian knot* with the Sword of *Alexander*. For it is not enquired after, how that water hath a Being, but how it cometh to the places of Fountains, and not to other places. Moreover, the *Earth* doth not ſo flow forward as *Rivers* do. But for the *Air*, it is falſe that we ſhould not ſeek concerning it, as they determine. The Opinion of *Seneca*.

3. *Ariſtotelians* follow the opinion of their *Maſter*, who in the whole *Eleventh Chapter* of his firſt Book of *Meteors*, endeavoureth to prove, that the *water* of *Fountains* is generated from *Air*, contained in the *bowels* of the *Earth*. He alledgeth theſe reaſons; 1. *Waters* are generated from *Air* above the *Earth*, *viz. Rain*: therefore ſeeing that *Air* is in the *bowels* of the *Earth*, and that there is the ſame cauſe of condenſation, *viz.* Cold: therefore he ſaith it is abſurd for any one to think that *water* is not produced from *Air* there. 2. Experience teſtifieth that more great drops that fall, are made of ſmall ones, and therefore the Original of *Rivers* muſt be, as it were, certain *Brooks* of *water* that meet in one part of the *Earth*; for therefore thoſe that make *Aqueducts*, are wont to bring the water down by *trenches*, and ſmall *Channels*. 3. Becauſe that many *Springs*, and thoſe of the greateſt *Rivers* are found in mountanous places, very few in *Plains*, or *Valleys*: which is an evidence, that the *water* of *Fountains* proceedeth from a condenſed *Air* or *Vapour*; which *Air* and *Vapour* tend towards higher places, and mountainous places are as it were ſpunges incumbing over lower places. Thoſe are the reaſons of *Ariſtotle*. See *Ariſtotle lib.* 1. *Chap.* 11.

4. *Cardanus* with others, ſuppoſe, that the water of *Fountains* proceeds from *Rivulets*, which are generated of *watery* vapours, condenſed both within, and without the *Earth*, but that theſe *Fountains* alone ſcarce make up *Rivers*, unleſs aſſiſted by *rain*, or diſſolved *Snow*. His Reaſons are theſe, 1. If betimes in the morning one view the *Mountains*, they will appear moiſt. 2. *Rivers* overflow in the *morning*, and ſo much the more, by how much the part of it is more near the *Fountain*. The Opinion of *Cardanus*.

But the perpetual and constant *impetus* of the *water* bubling and leaping from the *Springs*, doth not seem to have its Original from so weak and inconstant a cause. Neither doth this opinion of *Cardanus* much differ from that of *Aristotle*; but that *Aristotle* placeth *Air* with the generation, *Cardanus vapours*, with the generation, to be the cause of *Springs*, and indeed small is the difference between *Air* and *vapours*.

5. Some of the *Antients* supposed *Rains* to be coacervated within the *Earth* in Cavities, and thence to break forth as from a mighty belly, and that all Rivers sprang from one of them, or from some other of them; neither that there was any other *water* generated, but what were collected in the *winter months* into those receptacles, they supposed to evade into the multitude of these *Rivers*, and therefore that they flowed more in the *winter* than in the *Summer*, and that some were continual, and some not. They added the same cause that we have laid down in the first opinion. But *Aristotle* receiveth this opinion, because that more *water* in one year floweth out from the mouth of the *River*, than the bulks of that whole part of *Earth*, or *Land*.

6. Of Modern *Philosophers* many, as also of the Ancients, determined that the *Earth* again received whatsoever *waters* flowed out from the mouth of the *Rivers* into the *Sea*. For the *water* of the *Sea* by an hidden passage went under the *Earth*, and is beaten in its passage through divers windings of the *Earth*, and strained through *Sand* and *Chalk*, which removeth its saltness, and so passeth into pure water. I also defend this opinion, and suppose it true, yet so as not to exclude the cause laid down in the first and third place: the reasons are these. 1. Because more than one thousand *Rivers* exonerate themselves into the *Sea*, and the greater of them in such an abundancy, that that water, which they send forth into the *Sea* throughout the whole year, exceedeth the whole *Earth*; as the River *Volga* into the *Caspian Sea*, and also other Rivers. Therefore it cannot otherwise be, but that *water* must be sent forth into many places of the *Earth*, even to the Fountains of *Rivers*. Now if that this were not so, we could not possibly imagine, how that the *Sea* should not be augmented unto an immensity, or why *Fountains* should not cease to send forth water. Neither may it be objected, that so many vapours are elevated from the *Sea*, that are equivalent to the *water*, that the *Sea* hath received from the *Rivers*. For first, only *Rain* maketh those *vapours*: then again it is most false that so great a quantity of vapours should be elevated from the *Sea*, as are generated from the *water* which floweth from the *Rivers* into the *Sea*.

Fountains the nearer the Sea, are salter than those farther distant.

2. This opinion is proved from that, *to wit*, that the *Fountains* near the *Sea* are *salt* and *brackish*; and by how much they are nigher to the *Sea*, by so much they are the more *salt*, as on the Coast of *Africa*, especially on the Coasts of *Choromandel* in *India*, where no Vines do grow, and where that all Wells are *salt*. In the City of *Suez* at the Termination of the *Red Sea*, all Wells are *salt*, or brackish, and the *water two miles* distant is somewhat *salt*. So in many *Islands* in the *Sea*, no Wells of fresh *water* are found, (though not so *salt* as the *Sea water* it self) as in the *Isle* of St. *Vincent* and others. In *Peru* in the low Region, the *Lakes* are *salt* by reason of the vicinity of the *Sea*. Yea in the Oriental Maritimate places, the *Nuts* called *Coco Nuts* are found somewhat salt. Also in the *Mediterranean* places themselves, *Fountains* of *salt water* are found, as in *Lorrain*, *Lunenburgh*, and the like.

3. Because that it is manifest, that the Sea emitteth its water through subterraneous passages, from the salt *Fountains* of *Lunenburgh*, where beneath the *Earth* those *Aqueducts* full of salt or *Sea-water* are found.

4. Because that digging to a great depth, as also in *Mines*, much *water* is found, of which neither the *Rain*, nor the *Air* can be made the efficient cause.

How

How water cometh from the *Sea* to the places of *Fountains*, ſo as to become ſweet, we have now ſhewed, *viz.* the bottom of the *Sea* is not every where *Rocky* or *Stony*, but in many places *Sandy*, *Muddy*, *Gravelly*, *Spungy*, drinking the water of the *Sea*, and by a continuation of the Earth, brings it by degrees to a long diſtance from the *Sea*, where at length the *Guttulæ* unite; eſpecially in a narrow ſpace, ſuch as are *Mountains*, and make a *Fountain* in the given place, or Cavity: but if ſo be that Cavity be hidden from the *Earth*, then the *water* ſo collected either followeth another way, whereſoever it be made, and ſo a *Fountain* ſeemeth to break forth in another place, which yet is not in that place; but is a River derived from the former place by a *ſubterraneous paſſage*. Or if that the water of that Cavity findeth no way about it ſelf, neither by violence can break through the Earth that covereth it, then that *water* is not augmented; but what *water* flowed unto it to have been its encreaſe, that is averted to another place. For that is the property of all humid bodies, that all their parts and particles are moved towards that place where the deflux is made. So if you fill a *Veſſel* with *water*, that the ſwelling or tumour may be above the brim of the *Veſſel*, then all the parts of the extant water have an equal inclination, and power of deflux in the vicine part of the brim. But yet by reaſon of the mutual coherence of the particles (whoſe cauſe is declared in *Natural Philoſophy*) if that the deflux be made in one part of the brim, all the other parts leave the vicine *brim*, and draw to that part of the brim, or they follow where the deflux is made. So if you immerge a long cruſt of Bread into *water*, you ſhall ſee the *water* born upwards, and and the part of the *Bread* that is not immerged, to be humid. Moreover the *Sea* goeth under the *Earth* through *Caverns*, from which, after the ſame mode the water may glide or creep forth, unleſs you had rather aſcribe it to evaporations, which are carried upwards, and uniting the drops in a narrow place.

The Sea goeth under the Earth through Caverns.

But becauſe there are many things, which may ſeem to render this opinion leſs probable, theſe ought alſo to be conſidered, that it may be evident, that they weaken not this aſſertion laid down.

Things to be noted.

1. The places of *Fountains* are more elevated than the *Superficies* of the *Sea*, by reaſon that moſt of them are in Mountanous places, therefore water cannot flow from the *Sea* to thoſe places, becauſe the nature of *water* is to move to places more depreſſed, or leſs elevated, as it is manifeſt from Rivers, and the *Artifices* of *Drainers*.

2. Although the bottom of the *Sea* be *gravelly*, *muddy*, and *ſandy*, ſo that the *water* may penetrate it ſelf through its *particles*; yet the reaſon doth not appear evident enough, but that it may more moiſten the adjoyning *Earth*, and that which is not ſo high, than to glide upwards to the places of *Fountains*, ſeeing eſpecially that the *Earth* is Rocky and Stony, as in the Mountains of the Iſland of St. *Helena*.

3. There is no reaſon, why the *water*, ſo gliding from the *Sea*, ſhould not break forth in a middle way between the *Sea* and the *Fountain*.

4. In the moſt profound *Mines*, none, or very little *water* is found, as *Thurnheuſerus* witneſſeth.

5. This *water* of the *Fountains* ſhould be ſalt, becauſe that it doth proceed from the *Sea*. Theſe are the chief Arguments which may ſeem to weaken the opinion propoſed. For I paſs by thoſe ſlight ones alledged by others, *viz.* that they ſuppoſe that the *Sea* is not ſufficient to ſupply ſo many *Rivers*; then again that *Rivers* then ſhould never be diminiſhed, if that were the true cauſe of *Rivers* that we have laid down. But unto theſe two, the anſwer is eaſy, becauſe that the *Sea* again receiveth the water again from the *Rivers*, that it ſent forth into the *Fountains*. Then as for the other we have ſhewed before, that the queſtion is not, neither do we determine, that all the *water* of the *Rivers* is from the *Sea*; but only concerning the *water* of *Springs*, which is not the alone cauſe of *Rivers*, as we have ſaid already: and we alſo aſſert, that the *water* of *Fountains* is augmented from *rains*, and *Dew*; becauſe that theſe, moiſtening the *Earth*, glide, or are drawn towards the places of *Fountains*,

Other Arguments Anſwered.

Four Other Arguments of great concernment.

tains, where the *efflux* of the *water* is made, which we have explained by other Examples. We come now to those four *Arguments* alledged, which may seem to carry some weight with them.

The first is esteemed very valid, as being taken from multiplicit experience: therefore many solutions are brought, and alledged by Learned men. First, they the most easily discharge themselves, who defend the *Ocean* to be more high than the *Earth*, for so they deny the assertion, and they say that this *Altitude* of the *Ocean* is the cause of *Springs*, because that *springs* are less high than the *water* in the middle of the *Ocean*. Moreover *Olearius* in the Description of his Voyage into *Persia*, relateth that he ascended the *Mountain* that adjoyneth to the *Caspian Sea*, and with an *Astrolabe* (or rather a *Gæodetical* Instrument) to observe the Elevation of this *Mountain* above the *superficies* of that *Sea*, but found none, but that the extream *superficies* of that *Sea* was seen in the *Horizontal Line*, yea somewhat elevated above it, so that the Tumour of this *Sea* was found a little more high than the *vertex* of the *Mountain*, on which he made his observation. But in truth this solution cannot be admitted of, because we have shewed in the Thirteenth *Chapter*, that the *water* of the *Ocean* is not higher than the *Mountains* and *shoars* of the *Earth*: and the frequent observations of *Mathematicians*, made on *Towers*, or *shoars* testifie it. And as for the observation of *Olearius*, that seemeth to cause no small difficulty here, for that the *Caspian Sea* is no higher than the vicine *Lands*, much less than the *Mountains*, is collected from hence, *viz.* that many *Rivers* do exonerate themselves into the *Sea*, therefore we must say, that refraction obstructed the observation of *Olearius*, and caused the *water* of the *Sea* to appear higher than in truth it was: and peradventure the *waves* of the *Sea* encreased the cause, and the *Mountain* that he ascended was none of the highest.

See *Olearius* his Voyage into *Persia*.

See Chap. 13.

Some discovering the weakness of this Argument, bring this; that the natural place of water is above the *Earth*, and therefore that it must cover the whole *Earth*, because that it is higher than the *Earth*. Now by reason that it is impeded from its natural place by the *Mountains* above the *Earth*, arising towards the *Mediterranean places*, therefore that part of the *Ocean* which ought to be where the *Mountains* and Elevated parts of the Earth are, seeing that it is not in its natural place, doth press down the subjected *water*, which indeed is in its natural place, but yet is driven or pressed to the bottom, by the Superiour *water*, which is not in its natural place, where when it findeth no way, neither can give place, it retireth towards the sides, and passeth under the Roots of the *Mountains*, where being collected as in a *Cistern*, it is squeezed out by the *water* of the *Ocean*, pressing towards the *vertex* of the *Mountain*. No other than in a *Vessel* which hath on the side a *Funnel* touching the very bottom of the *Vessel*, from whence we infuse *water* or other *liquor* into *Glasses*; If, I say, we drop in a stone into such a *Vessel* full, or half full of *liquor*, the *liquor* flieth out through the Orifice of the *Funnel*. This is the subtilty of *Scaliger*; but in truth it is very thick. For *water* is not expelled so from the bottom of Mountainous places towards the *vortex*, because that experience testifieth the contrary in *Trenches*; and if that were so, all *Spring waters* should be *salt*: moreover it is false that he assumeth, that part of the *water* is not in its natural place, and therefore presseth down the subjected part. for this is taken up *gratis*, aud contrary to experience; because that the water presseth not down the subjected part, except when it is higher than the vicine *water*, and therefore where the Superficies of the *Ocean* is *Spherical*, it resteth: but if that any *motion* were made from the pressure, this would drive the *water* of the *Sea* to the *Coast*, where the place is more broad, not through the small *Caverns* of the *Earth*. Now it is certain that *water* floweth in from the bottom of the *Sea* through the great *Caverns*, but they make not the *Fountain* fresh, because they take not away the saltness of the *water*.

I think not the ſolution of the Argument to be difficult, if that we conſider how water cometh to the Fountain, *viz.* not from any *Channel* from the bottom of the *Sea*, or foot of the Mountain (for ſo it would retain its ſaltneſs) but by or through a continual progreſſion of the watery particles, or a creeping in the *Terreſtial matter*, to the places adjacent to the Fountain, where at length it is gathered into drops by reaſon of the cavity, and continual ſucceſſion of the water, and ſo cauſeth a Spring. For this we find in the Earth dug to a great depth, that here and there drops of water do conſiſt, and are forced by thoſe that are nigh, ſo that a little *Rivulet* is made, which are termed Veins of water. Many ſuch *Rivulets*, if collected into one Cavity, make a Fountain; as thoſe perſons well known that are skilled in making of Fountains, or *Aquiducts*, or Wells. For in Wells water is collected from many drops, which meet together in the bottom of the well, from the adjacent Earth. And thoſe that make *Aquiducts*, bring the water by gutters and trenches into one place, ſo that the drops may fall from the higher places into the Cavity.

Veins of water in the bowels of the earth.

But if that you object that many Fountains bubble up in the midſt of ſtones, by reaſon of which it is not probable that the watery particles ſhould ſo creep forwards; to that I Anſwer, that this confirmeth our Opinion: For thoſe ſtones do not go through from the top to the foot of the Mountain (at leaſt in thoſe Mountains, where the Fountains are found) but only occupy the Superficies of the Mountain, and a certain ſmall profundity within the Earth of the Mountain is more ſoft, or leſs ſtony, or at leaſt ſuch as may receive and attract water. Therefore when by penetration it is come to the ſtony part, becauſe that it can penetrate no farther, there it ſtandeth, and is collected into drops, and maketh a ſpringing Fountain between the ſtony parts; *to wit*, if that a paſſage be granted; and that the Mountains and Rocks of the Iſle of St. *Helena*, and almoſt of all Iſlands, are not within ſo rocky and hard, is collected from hence, that almoſt all thoſe Mountains have ſometimes burned, or at the leaſt ſmoaked, which is diſcovered from the Aſhes on the Earth, and alſo the *Brimſtone*, or *Sulphur* found in thoſe places: add moreover what we obſerved before, that the ſpring of the water is not alwaies there where it ſeemeth to be, but floweth from ſome higher place through a ſubterraneous paſſage to the Fountain, and ſo cauſeth the water to leap up with ſome force, which I ſuppoſe to be done in many Fountains, and the more, if we conſider, that *fire* is moved alſo downwards, by reaſon of the continuation of the matter, when in truth, if that the ſame be free, it tendeth upwards. So if you put the end of a long piece of Iron in the *fire*, this will penetrate through the whole Iron, untill it come to the other extream, although this other extremity doth not tend upwards but downwards.

So much for the firſt Argument; unto the ſecond I anſwer, that a reaſon may be given, why the Sea water ſhould not penetrate ſo much into the Earth towards the *Center*, as towards the Mountains, *viz.* becauſe the Earth is there more full of Mettals, and hard, as experience teſtifieth: but where it is not ſo hard, there the water penetrateth; and therefore we deny not but that Rivers, or at leaſt ſweet or ſalt Lakes may be found beneath the bottom of the Sea, within the Earth, towards the *Center*, where any ſuch Cavity is. But becauſe that there are few ſuch Cavities, and that every where the Earth is Metallous, and hard beneath the bottom of the Sea, therefore it cannot continually imbibe water, but when it is full it ceaſeth to imbibe any more; neither doth it receive more. Therefore then the water glideth towards higher places, unto the motion of which, it is probable that the mutation of the height of the Sea availeth much; ſometimes in this, and ſometimes in that part, by reaſon of the *floods*, *waves*, or *tempeſt*. For the water being made higher, more preſſeth the water, and promoteth its ingreſs through the Earth to the Springs. And ſeeing that every day the Altitude of the Sea is augmented, and diminiſhed in the parts of the *Ocean*, not only by ſtorms, but alſo by the flux, and reflux; therefore ſuch a preſſure hap-

The ſecond Argument anſwered.

happeneth every day: but I queſtion whether this cauſe can effect much.

The third Argument anſwered.

Unto the third Argument, I ſay that the reaſon is the diſpoſition of the places, and of the Earth it ſelf; and as I ſaid, that the humour is moved, and glideth towards that part, where the *flux* is made: neither do I think it needeth any farther explication.

The fourth Argument Anſwered.

The fourth Argument taken from the ſaltneſs, hath a more difficult ſolution; becauſe that it ſeemeth not poſſible, that the ſaltneſs ſhould be taken away only by tranſcolation; for the ſaltneſs of the water conſiſteth in a double *Salt* (which the *Ariſtotelians* never obſerved) the one of which, the *Chymiſts* aptly call fixed, the other volatile *Salt*. And the fixed *Salt* may indeed be ſeparated from the marine water, as well by continual tranſcolation, as by *coction*, and *diſtillation* of the water: but the volatile *Salt* becauſe it is *ſpirituous* is immediately advanced with the water, neither can it be ſeparated by frequent and often repeated *diſtillation*: Therefore it is hard to give a mode, by which this volatile ſalt *ſpirit* in its paſſage between the *Sea* and the Fountain, may be ſeparated from the *Sea water*. Yet in the mean while theſe will ſuffice for the ſolution. 1. Although we have not diſcovered the *mode*, and *artifice*, by which this volatile ſalſitude may be ſeparated from the Sea water, yet we muſt not deny, but that it may be ſeparated: for by nature we find it ſeparated; *viz.* for freſh ſhowers fall into the *Ocean*, which yet were generated of the vapours taken up from the *Sea*. 2. Thoſe *particles* of *Salt* water penetrating the Earth before they flow to their Fountain, are mixed here and there with other waters proceeding there from *rain*, or *vapours*, and ſo that ſmall ſaltitude, that they yet had, is rendred altogether inſenſible. 3. It is not true that the ſalſitude is altogether inſenſible in all *Springs*, becauſe that ſome Fountains are ſalt, as we ſaid before; otherſome brackiſh a little, as thoſe, two *miles* from the City *Suez*, and in places leſs remote from the *Sea*. Therefore there is need of a long tranſcolation, and gentle evaporation, to ſeparate the water from the volatile *Salt*, and by this artifice we make *Sea* water leſs *ſalt*, and ſuch alſo is the generation of *rain* water, which therefore is not *ſalt*, or at leaſt leſs *ſalt*. For it is certain that ſometimes ſaltiſh kinds of *rain* do fall into the *Sea*.

Therefore the waters *of* Fountains *proceed partly from the* Sea *or* ſubterranean waters, *partly from* Rivers, and Dew, *that moiſten the* Earth. *But the* water *of* Rivers *partly proceedeth from* Springs, *and partly from* Rain *and* Snow.

Propoſition VI.

Certain Rivers hide themſelves in the midſt of their paſſage under the Earth, and in another place riſe up again as if they were new Rivers.

Of Rivers which in the midſt of their paſſage hide themſelves under the Earth, and riſe again.

The moſt celebrated of them are, 1. The River *Niger*, which meeting the Mountains of *Nubia*, is obſerved under them, and cometh forth again from the other Occidental quarter.

2. *Tigris* having paſſed the Lake *Arethuſa*, meeting the Mountain *Taurus*, is hidden in a *Cave*, and floweth out on the other ſide. Then when it hath paſſed the Lake *Thoſpites*, it is again obſcured in *ſubterranean Caverns*, and then after it hath thus run the ſpace of about ſix *German miles*, it breaketh forth again.

3. About

3. About *Arcadia* in *Peloponneſus* many ſuch *Riverets* are to be found, as *Ariſtotle* writeth in his firſt Book of *Meteors*, Chapter Eleventh.

4. *Alpheus*, a River of *Achaia*, is abſorbed by the Earth. The *Grecians* write, that it keepeth its courſe under the *Sea*, and beneath the *Earth*, even unto *Sicilia*, where they will have it to emerge on the Coaſt of *Syracuſe*, and to be that River that is called *Arethuſa* in *Sicilia*. Now this they eſpecially collected from this, *viz.* that *Arethuſa* in *Sicilia* every fifth Summer caſt up the dung of thoſe Beaſts at that time, when the *Olympian Games* were celebrated, and the dung and garbage of the ſlain Victims were caſt into *Alpheus*. Therefore being carried with a direct Current, they were caſt up in *Sicilia*.

5. The River *Guadiana*, between *Portugal* and *Biſcay*, in times paſt called *Anas*, wholly obſcureth it ſelf at *Medelina*; and about 8 *German* miles further diſcovereth it ſelf again.

6. *Dan* (which flowing with the River *Jor*, maketh *Jordan*) breaketh forth ſome miles from its Fountain *Phiala*. *Straw* or *ruſhes* being caſt into the ſame, are found and diſcovered in the Fountain or proruption of the River *Dan*.

The Reaſons why theſe *Rivers* hide themſelves under the *Earth*, and again emerge, are, 1. The obſtacle of a more elevated place, than the Channel of the River. 2. Either perchance ſome cavity exiſting in the *Earth*, or ſome inconſtant matter, which eaſily giveth place to the gliding River.

There are alſo other *Rivers*, which hide themſelves under the *Earth*; but do not again emerge, as we ſhall ſhew in the following *Propoſitions*.

Propoſition VII.

Moſt of the great and indifferent Rivers, as alſo a great part of the leſſer, do exonerate themſelves into the Sea, or a Lake; and the place where this exoneration is made, is termed the Mouth of the River. Some Rivers have one, ſome three, and ſome more ſuch Mouths. Some of the Rivers of indifferent magnitude, as alſo the leſſer ſort, diſcharge themſelves into greater Rivers: the others either ſtagnate, or are ſucked up by the Earth.

Moſt Rivers, both great and ſmall, loſe themſelves in the Sea, or in Lakes.

Concerning the greater *Rivers*, the thing is evident by the Example of the *Rhine*, the *Danube*, the *Wolga*, and ſuch like: For the *Danube* is exonerated into the *Euxine Sea* by *ſeven Mouths*; the *Wolga* hath at leaſt *ſeventy Outlets* or *Mouths*; the *Nile* hath *ſeven*, and where it overfloweth, more.

The cauſe why greater *Rivers* do exonerate themſelves into the *Sea*, is their abundance of *water* and vehement courſe. Now why they have more outlets than one, there is a twofold reaſon for the ſame; 1. The abundance of *water*. 2. The generation of *Sands* and ridges in the *mouths*, which in progreſs of time was ſo augmented, that they become either part of the *Land* or *Iſland*, and ſo cauſe, that the River gliding is divided into two branches. And when many ſuch ridges are generated, the *River* is divided into many *branches*, or one *mouth* into many; but then for the moſt part the *mouths* are carried forwards, and the *Sea* recedeth from the *Land*.

Courſes of water often made by the Induſtry of Men.

The *Ancients* teſtifie, that the *Nile* in times paſt let it ſelf into the *Sea* by one *mouth*, which was termed *Canobus*. Unto theſe two former cauſes a third may be added, *viz. Human Induſtry*; for men oftentimes from ſome *River* derive courſes of *water*, and prepare a paſſage or *Channel* for them into the *Sea*, partly to water their *Fields*, and partly for the convenience of *Navigation*; which *Aqueduct* in progreſs of time, by the violence of the *water*, becomes greater. Therefore the *Ancients* write, and that not without

out probability, that all the mouths of the *Nile*, except *Canobus*, were made by men. But of this we ſhall treat more fully in the following *Propoſition*; where alſo ſhall be declared, how it cometh to paſs, that one River floweth into the *Channel* of another.

Wolchda in *Moſcovia* (not *Wolga*,) ariſeth from a *Lake*, and exonerateth it ſelf into another *Lake*.

Rivers, and *Riverets*, which neither exonerate themſelves into the *Sea*, or into other *Rivers*, are either *Arms* or *Branches* of other Rivers, or elſe peculiar Rivers. Thoſe which are *branches* of other Rivers very probably do ſtagnate, and go not under the *Earth*. Now the cauſe why they tend not towards the *Sea* is twofold; 1. Becauſe the Channel is not ſo deep, and therefore they have not much water. 2. The more hard *Earth* hindereth the progreſs. 3. Many of them are made to water the *Fields*, and for the more eaſie uſe of *water*. 4. The Mouth is obſtructed, the *Sea* departing, and the *Land* augmenting or promoting towards the *Sea*, or the *banks* or *ridges* generated in the *Channel*, are ſo augmented, that they admit of no *water*, but repel it; ſo that branch of the *Rhine*, which formerly diſcharged it ſelf into the *Belgick* Ocean near the Village of the *Catti*, now ſtagnates in the midway, between *Leyden* and that *Village*.

But thoſe peculiar *Rivers*, which neither exonerate themſelves into the *Sea*, nor into other *Rivers*; but riſing in the *Earth*, ſeem to be abſorbed by the *Earth*; theſe *Rivers* are very ſmall, alſo few; as alſo thoſe that flow from the Mountainous places of *Peru*, *India*, and *Africa*, are ſwallowed up either within the *Sandy ſoil*, or are abſconded in the *Earth*. So at *Meten*, a Village in *Arabia*, near the Gulph, is found a River with a glorious Channel. Under theſe *Reeds*, in the Summer ſeaſon, the ſtreams hide themſelves with ſuch a ſilent courſe, that there appeareth nothing of humidity on the top; but if that no way be admitted to theſe *Riverets* under the *Earth*, they make *Mariſhes* and ſmall *Lakes*. Notwithſtanding ſome run with ſo ſlow a ſtream; that almoſt ſo much is ſeparated by exhalations, as they receive by the Stream, and ſo are ſtayed on the *Earth*, and neither make *Lakes*, nor are abſorbed; as the *Riverets Conitra*, *Salle*, *Marefsa*, *Jeleeſa*, and others in *Moſcovia*.

Propoſition VIII.

Whether the paſſage or Channel, through which the Rivers run, be made by the Induſtry of men, or by Nature?

Of the Channels of Rivers.

It is probable, that the *Channels* of thoſe *Rivers* which were not generated with the *Earth*, were made by hands, on thoſe very accounts: 1. Becauſe that Experience teſtifieth, that when new *Fountains* do flow, the water ſo flowing out maketh not a certain *Channel* to it ſelf, but doth dilate it ſelf through the adjacent *Land*. And therefore, if that it muſt flow, there is need of the help of *man* to hollow a *Channel*. 2. It is manifeſt, that men have made many *Channels*: So the *Chineſes* made a Channel, by which *water* runeth from the *yellow River* into another *River*. 3. Becauſe *Lakes* and *Mariſhes* do confirm the ſame; ſuch as are found about the *Fountains* of many *Rivers* that are on a plain; ſuch as are thoſe *Lakes* or *Mariſhes*, from which the *Nile*, *Tanais*, *Wolga*, and others do flow. Which *Lakes* we doubt not, but to be generated and conſerved from the effuſion of *water*, made round about by the *Fountain*; and therefore men made a certain *Channel* to defend their Fields from ſuch a *water*, into which *Channel* the *water* might fall and drain the *Lands*. The ſame muſt be underſtood of *Rivers*, whoſe *Springs* are on the *Mountains*.

Of affinity to this *Propoſition* is this other, *viz.* Whether that *Rivers*, which exonerate themſelves into others, or meet together, made that paſſage by their motion; or whether they were brought into them by men which made a *Channel*? The latter ſeemeth more probable, for the reaſons before alledged.

alledged. The ſame muſt be obſerved concerning the branches of Rivers and Circumductions, by which Iſlands are made in the *Tanais*, *Wolga*, &c. So one Arm of the *Euphrates* formerly paſſing through the *Chaldean* Mariſhes, was let out into the Sea; afterwards it left its courſe, many *Aqueducts* and *Channels* being made by the *Natives* to water their grounds; neither doth it arrive to the *Sea*, its *mouth* being obſtructed, and its *water* is partly taken up in the *Aqueducts* that are made, and partly averted into the other *Arm*, which exonerateth it ſelf into the *Tigris*. And ſo it ſeemeth to be the caſe of other *Rivers*, which we now ſee do not go forwards into the *Sea*, but to *ſtagnate*. It is probable, that in times paſt they did exonerate themſelves into the *Sea*. Of Iſles made in Rivers.

Propoſition IX.

Why no ſalt Rivers are found, ſeeing that Salt-ſprings are found in many places.

The reaſon is, becauſe that men have no need of *Salt-water*, and therefore make no *Channel*, by which the *water* of the *ſalt Fountain* may flow, by reaſon that they can have *Salt* at an eaſier rate: But if that a fit *Channel* were prepared from thoſe *ſalt Springs*, we ſhould have *ſalt Rivers*; ſuch as are in *Lunenburgh* and other places, under the *Earth*. Neither do we queſtion, but that many Rivers of *Salt-water* do flow from their *Fountains* under the *Earth*. The reaſon, why no Salt Rivers are found.

Propoſition X.

The Channels of Rivers, by how much they are the more near their Fountains, by ſo much they are the more high; and by how much they are the more near the Mouths of Rivers, and the Sea, by ſo much (for the moſt part) they are the more depreſſed.

But in ſome *Channels* ſome parts more removed from the *Spring*, are higher than that part more near to the *Fountain*; either by reaſon of the *Hills* and *Valleys*, as I may ſo ſay, in their *Channels*, or by reaſon of their *Whirlpools*: yet no part of the *Channel* is higher than the *Fountain*. Furthermore, of Channels of Rivers.

The cauſe or reaſon of the Propoſition is manifeſt, becauſe that *water* floweth not but from a place more high to a place more low, and ſo every part of the *Channel* (eſpecially the mouth of the River) is lower than the *Spring*: for otherwiſe it would flow back again to the *Fountain*. Now that the elevation of the *Channel* doth decreaſe even to the mouth of the River, that at leaſt is true concerning many parts of the *Channel*; for becauſe here and there are found *Whirlpools* in a River, places more depreſſed; and on the contrary, *ridges* and little *hills*; thence it cometh to paſs, that one part of the *Channel*, although more removed from the *Springs*, is higher than the other part of the *Channel* which is more nigh the *Fountain*; and yet notwithſtanding the *water* floweth from this to that, becauſe that quantity of water floweth into the places depreſſed, that the *ſuperficies* of it becometh higher than the little *hillocks* or *ridges*, or the vicine patts, which being more elevated, lie towards the mouth. And there is ſcarce any River to be found, whoſe *Channel* hath not theſe inequalities; eſpecially in the *Nile* and *Wolga* theſe *ridges* do abound. The flowing of water.

And where the water falleth from a higher place to a more depreſſed part of the *Channel*; if the depreſſion be great, the place is termed the *Cataract* of the River, where the River runeth downwards with a great violence. Such *Cataracts* great Rivers have, eſpecially the *Nile*. A Cataract, what.

For the *Nile* in two places of his *Channel* falleth down between the *Mountains* with that noiſe and rapidneſs, that the Inhabitants are reported to be deafned by the ſame. *Wolga* alſo, a ſmall River in *Moſcovia* (not *Wolga*) hath two *Cataracts* near *Ladoga*.

So the *Zaire*, a River in *Congo*, ſix *miles* from the ſhoar, hath a *Cataract*, where it falleth from a *Mountain*: alſo the *Rhine* at *Beleſilda* and *Saraſſusia*, falleth with a great noiſe. But *Drainers* have obſerved, that if the bottom of the *Channel* be depreſſed one paſs in 200 *paces*, it will hardly be navigable by reaſon of its celerity. Seeing therefore that all great Rivers are Navigable, we infer, That the depreſſion of the *Channel* is no greater than one *paſs* or *mile* in 200: but particular *Cataracts* and *Whirlpools* are excepted. Now this depreſſion of one part of the *Channel* beneath the other part is termed *Libramentum*; and the depreſſion of the mouths of the River beneath the place of the Fountain is termed, the *Libramentum* of the River.

Propoſition XI.

Why Rivers have, or acquire a greater Latitude in one part of them, than in the other.

Of the Latitude of Rivers.

The cauſes are fourfold; 1. If that the *bank* or *ſhoar* be more low in this part, than in that. 2. If that the *Earth* of the *ſhoar* be leſs hard and coherent, as not being ſufficient to reſiſt the violent acceſs of the River, which ſometimes proceedeth from the *winds*, or plenty of *water*. 3. If that the *Channel* on that part be leſs profound, or hallowed, or have ridges: And 4. If that it flow from any *Cataract* into that part.

Propoſition XII.

The Channels of Rivers become more or leſs depreſſed, ſometimes in this, and ſometimes in that part.

They become leſs depreſſed, or elevated, and not ſo hollow; 1. If that *Ridges* be generated. 2. If that the River become more broad on that part. 3. If that the flux become leſs ſwift.

The depreſſion or cavity of the *Channel* is augmented, if that the *flux* of the River be more vehement and ſwift, eſpecially from ſome *Cataract*, or between the narrowneſſes of the *ſhoars*; more eſpecially, if that the whole bottom conſiſt of *earth* leſs coherent.

Propoſition XIII.

Why ſome Rivers run with a more ſwift current, and others with a more ſlow. And why one and the ſame River is carried with a ſwift current in one place, and with a ſlow in another, which is obſerved of the Rhine *in many places.*

Of the motion of Rivers.

The cauſes are, 1. The *Altitude* of the *Spring*. 2. The depreſſion in the parts of the *Channel*, or *bottom* (eſpecially in the mouth,) for if that the bottom be depreſſed one *mile* in two hundred; *Drainers* have obſerved, that the *water* is ſo ſwiftly moved, that there is great danger in *ſailing*: For where there are *Cataracts*, there the Rivers ruſh with a mighty violence; and therefore *Torrents* are carried ſo furiouſly, becauſe that they flow from *Mountains*. 3. The ſtreightneſs of the *Channel*, and profundity joyned with an abundant quantity of *water*; as when Rivers paſs between two Mountains or procurrent Lands.

Rivers

Rivers famous for their ſwift courſe, are the *Tigris*, *Indus*, *Danube*, *Triiu*, *Malmiſtra*, that floweth with ſo great a noiſe, that it may be heard a great diſtance off.

Propoſition XIV.

The mouths of *Rivers* may be by ſo much the more eaſily obſtructed, by how much they are the more broad, and by how much they are the deeper, or leſs depreſſed, and by how much there is leſs quantity of *water*, and the *flux* is leſs ſwift and vehement. For theſe cauſes make the River to be carried with a leſſer violence, neither doth it thruſt forth the *Terreſtrial matter*, which is collected in its *mouths*, but rather ſuffereth it to ſink.

Propoſition XV.

Very few Rivers are carried in a direct courſe from the Spring to the Outlet, many ſeek divers quarters in their flux, and ſome flow with many windings.

The cauſe ſeemeth partly to be the induſtry of *men*, partly the *motion* of the *water*, partly the interpoſition of a ridge or bank in its direct courſe. The courſe of Rivers from the Spring.

Winding *Rivers* are, 1. *Rio de Orellana* in *Brazilia*, making innumerable windings, ſo that its *Paſſage* or *Channel* is reckoned to be above 1500 *miles*; when in a direct line from the *ſpring* of it to the mouth are only 700 *miles*.

2. The River *De Madres* in *Anatolia*, which hath 600 *windings*.

3. The River *Tœra* ariſing in *Siberica*, floweth with ſo many curvatures, or windings; and the *Ruſſians* and *Siberians*, when they fail in it, carry the *Boat* or ſmall *Veſſel* and its lading by *land* from one winding to another, to avoid greater expence.

Propoſition XVI.

Whether the Lakes, through which ſome Rivers do ſeem to paſs, (or to enter into, and to go out from) be cauſed by Rivers? or whether they have their peculiar Springs, and augment the water of Rivers? alſo whether that a River flowing from a Lake be the ſame with that which floweth in?

All *Rivers* have not ſuch *Lakes*, but ſome only. *Nubia*, a River of *Africa*, hath five; the River *Niger* four; *Rhodanus*, the Lake *Lemanus*, &c. Of the cauſe of Lakes.

Concerning thoſe *Lakes* we have ſpoken in the preceding *Chapter*, *viz.* that a *River* going forth muſt be compared with that which entereth in: if that which goeth forth be greater than that which entereth in, there will be peculiar *Springs* in the bottom of the *Lake*, which cauſeth that *River*: but if that a leſſer, or at leaſt no greater, goeth forth, this *Lake* is made and conſerved by the *River* entering in, and the cauſe or original of its generation was the latitude and cavity, or depreſſion of the *Channel*; and a *Lake* may be made from any *River*, as we have ſaid in the preceding Chapter.

Although the *River* going forth be ſituated almoſt in a direct *line* with the *River* entering in, yet thoſe two *Rivers* ſhall be accounted one *River*, or the parts of one *River*, *viz.* when that which goeth forth is greater than that which entereth in: for if it be leſſer, or no greater, I think we ought not to queſtion, whether that which goeth forth be the ſame with that which cometh in.

Other

Other *Notes* or *Signs* are in ſome, as the *Rhodanus* entereth the Lake *Lemanus*, and again goeth forth, and yet cauſeth not that Lake; which is diſcovered, beſides other *tokens*, from the *colour*, which this *River* beareth contrary to the *Lake*; neither doth the *Rhine* cauſe any *Lake*, but is produced and conſerved from *waters* bubling under the *earth*; yet I do not propoſe theſe as undoubted.

Propoſition XVII.

Moſt Rivers are by ſo much the broader, by how much they are near to their mouth, or removed from their Spring, and great in their Latitude in their Mouths or Outlets.

The Mouths of Rivers broader than at their Springs.

The cauſe is, 1. Becauſe other Rivers enter into that which exonerateth it ſelf into the *Sea*, and ſo the quantity of *water* is augmented. 2. Becauſe the *Channel* is leſs depreſſed in the parts nearer the *mouth*. 3. Becauſe that the *water* is forced back by the wind blowing from the *Sea* from the *mouth* to the *Fountain*, which violence is only diſcovered in the parts near to the *mouth*, not in thoſe remote and near the *Fountain*. 4. The *Sea* it ſelf, when ſuch a wind bloweth, entereth the mouth, and rendereth it more large and broad by vehement agitation.

And by ſo much the *outlets* are larger and broader in great *Rivers*, by how much they are the fewer. Great are the *mouths* or *outlets* of the River *Maragnon* in *Brazilia*; of St. *Laurence* in *Canada*; of the *Zaire* in *Africa*; of *Rio de la Plate* in *Brazilia*: for this *River* is carried into the *Sea* by an *outlet* of 40 *miles*, as ſome have obſerved; or as others, of 20 *miles* only. And I ſuppoſe thoſe that write of 40 *miles*, comprehend the other *mouths* of the *River* together. Thoſe who have been in *Congo*, relate that the *mouth* of the *Zaire* is 28 *miles*: and theſe *Rivers* ſending forth ſuch a large quantity of water, overcome and obſcure both the ſalt taſte of the *water*, and the *motion* of the *Sea* towards the ſhoar, and that unto 10 or 12 *miles* in the *Sea*.

Propoſition XVIII.

The water of Rivers carrieth with it many particles of various Metals, Minerals, Sands, of oyly or fat Bodies.

Rivers in their courſe carry various things with them.

Some *Rivers* carry *gold*, that is *ſands* mixed with ſome grains of *gold*, and ſuch are 1. ſome in *Japan*; 2. In the *Iſlands* of *Lequeo* not far from *Japan*; 3. A Riveret called *Arroe* in *Africa*, which ſpringeth in *Monomotapa* from the foot of the *Mountains* of the *Moon*, in which *Mountains* there are *golden Mines*; and it floweth into *Magnice*, a River in *Soffalæ*. 4. In *Guiney*, where the *Negroes* ſeparate theſe *grains* from the *ſand*, and ſell it, or exchange it with the *Europeans* for Toyes or ſlight Commodities. 5. In the Riverets about *Mexico*, grains of *gold* are alſo gathered up, eſpecially after ſhowers of Rain. Which muſt be underſtood of all theſe Riverets: For except in the times of ſhowers, ſcarcely any, or very little, is found. 6. In *Peru*. 7. In *Sumatra*. 8. In *Cuba*. 9. In *Hiſpaniola* and other adjacent *Iſles*. 10. In *Guiana* a Province in *America*. 11. In the Rivers of *Caribana* great *grains* are found after ſhowers. 12. Many *Riverets* and *Springs* are found in the Regions about the *Alpes* in *Germany*, eſpecially in the Province of *Tirol*, from the *water* of which *gold* and *ſilver* is extracted, although nothing of *grains* be conſpicuous in them, becauſe they carry very ſmall *Particles* or *Atomes*. The *Rhine* alſo carrieth *golden clay* in many places, as alſo the *Abbis*. In times paſt the River *Tagus* was famous for rowling down *Sand-gold*; but at this day no ſuch are found in it: neither do I remember that any *River* in *Europe* is celebrated for ſuch riches. Alſo in *Haſſia* at this time a ſmall *River* is reported to be found, in the *ſands* of which were *grains* of *gold*; but I have read no Author worthy of credit concerning it.

No

No *Silver Rivers* or *Riverets* are taken notice of by Writers, yet I doubt not, but that there as many, or more *Riverets*, which carry *grains* of *gold*; but becauſe they are not ſo eaſily diſcovered from the *ſand*, and no great gain can be obtained, therefore it hath not yet been obſerved by any. The ſame is alſo the cauſe why we meet with no mention of thoſe *Riverets* that carry *grains* of *Iron*, *Copper*, *Tin*, except of very few, of which queſtionleſs there are a great number, the admirable effects of which being diſcovered, men admire and are amazed, and vulgar *Philoſophers* fly to an occult quality. Let us only caſt an eye on that River in upper *Germany*, which changeth *Iron* into *Copper*, as the Vulgar think; ſo that if you hang an *Iron* ſhoe in it, you will draw it out *Copper*. But the *Iron* is not changed into *Copper*, as is vulgarly ſuppoſed, but the *grains* and *particles* of *Copper* and *Vitriol* that are in this River, corrode the *Iron* by the aſſiſtance of the motion of the *water*, and the particles of the *Iron* being removed, thoſe of the *Copper* ſucceed in their places. This the Modern *Phyſicians*, that are skilful in *Chymiſtry*, have learned by another experiment.

A ſtrange River in *Germany*.

Much leſs are the Riverets that are impregnated with many particles of kinds of *earth and ſalts* obſerved: But we ſhall explain in the following Chapter the *Mineral* and *Metallick Springs*.

From this admixture of various particles proceedeth the great diverſity of *waters* in *Rivers* and *Wells*. The *water* of ſome, if that you uſe it to boyl *Meat*, maketh it black, (which is a ſign that it is impregnated with *Iron*;) neither are *Peaſe* ſo eaſily ſoftned, as when they are boyled in other *water* which is ſomewhat more fat. Of divers *waters* the ſame or like *Beer* cannot be made. Now the *Albis* is of the number of theſe fat ones, as I may ſo ſay. The cauſe of this variety is to be ſought from the variety of the *Lands*, through which the River runeth, which are either *ſtony*, *gravelly*, or *metallick*. And experience teſtifieth, that Rivers, whoſe *water* is fat, do run through *clayie Lands*, ſo all the places that adjoyn to the *Albis* are fruitful.

Propoſition XIX.

The waters of moſt Rivers differ in colour, gravity, and other qualities.

The waters of moſt Rivers are of different qualities

For ſome *waters* are *black*, ſome inclining to *black*, ſome inclining to *red*, ſome to *white*.

And this diverſity of them is chiefly noted, when that two Rivers do meet; for we may diſcover for many *miles* thoſe *waters* where now they exiſt in the ſame part of the *Channel*: From whence alſo 'tis manifeſt, that they differ in gravity, when that one rather ſinketh to the bottom of the *Channel*, than the other; although this is made more manifeſt by the examination by weight.

The *water* of the *Ganges* is accounted the moſt wholſome, and the moſt light; and the great *Mogul*, in whatſoever place he is, cauſeth this *water* to be brought him, of which he only drinketh. Some will have the *water* of the *Nile* to be the moſt fruitful, and the moſt wholſome. Moſt heavy *waters* are impregnated with *Iron* or *Mercury*.

In great Rivers we muſt have reſpect to the Riverets, of which they are compounded: For the *Rhine* receiveth many Mineral Riverets; ſo alſo doth the *Danube* of *Gold*, *Iron*, and *Vitriol*: and hence have they their quality, although many *Fountains* have little of them.

Propoſition

Propoſition XX.

Some Rivers every year at a ſet time are ſo augmented, that they overflow their Channel, and inundate the adjacent Lands.

Of the increaſe and overflowing of Rivers.

River *Nile.*

The moſt famous of thoſe is the *Nile*, that ſo encreaſeth, that it overſpreadeth all *Egypt*, except the *Hills*. In *Congo*, *Angola*, *Monomotapa*, *Soffala*, *Moſambique*, from thoſe it is known that the *Fountains* of the *Nile* are the great Lake *Zaire*, (or in the Lake *Zaire*) which is ſituate in the procurrent of *Africa*, in a middle place between the Eaſtern and Weſtern ſhoar, under the tenth *degree* from the *Equator* towards the South, as we have ſaid in the former Chapter.

Near unto this Lake are many ridges of *Mountains*, which are called the *Mountains of the Moon*; ſo that the Lake lieth, as in a Valley, between *Mountains*. Now becauſe that theſe places lye from the *Equator* towards the South, therefore the reaſon of the Solary motion requireth that they ſhould have *Winter* when that we have *Summer*: but by reaſon of their ſmall diſtance from the *Equator*, they feel no cold; but inſtead of *Snow* they have almoſt continual *Rains* two hours before and after Noon in the Kingdom of *Congo*; the *Clouds* hardly permitting the ſight of the *Sun*: with the ſame *Clouds* the tops of the *Mountains* appear as covered; and in theſe Mountainous places *rains* and *ſhowers* are almoſt continually, which run down like Torrents, and all flow together into the Lake *Zaire*, and from thence into the *Channel* of the *Nile*, *Zaire*, *Cuama*, and others that ariſe from the ſame Lake, but yet do not abound with ſo great a quantity (yet the *Zaire* doth overflow every year) as the *Nile*, becauſe the *Channel* of them is more deep; and after a ſhort Tract they exonerate themſelves into the Sea: yet all of them encreaſe at the ſame time, and diſgorge themſelves of a great quantity of *water* into the *Sea*.

River *Niger.*

The ſecond River among thoſe that overflow the adjacent *Lands* at a certain time, is the *Niger*, of no leſs Tract than the *Nile*, though not ſo famous. It overfloweth at the ſame time that the *Nile* doth.

River *Zaire.*

The third River of the overflowing Rivers is the *Zaire*, a River in *Congo*, of which we have ſpoken. Add to this the leſſer Rivers of *Congo*.

Rio de la Plate.

The fourth is *Rio de la Plate*, a River in *Braſil*, which overfloweth the adjacent *Fields* at the ſame time with the *Nile*, as *Maffæus* writeth.

Rivers *Ganges* and *Indus.*

The fifth of the overflowing Rivers is the *Ganges*.

The ſixth is the River *Indus*: theſe two Rivers in the *Pluvial months* of thoſe *Regions*, pour themſelves forth upon the *Lands* without their *Channels*, where then the *Natives* do gather the *water* into ſtanding *Pools*, that in the other *months* of the *year*, when there is almoſt no *Rain*, they may thence fetch *water*; and this inundation cauſeth great fertility in the *Fields*.

The ſeventh comprehendeth many, *viz.* four or five, which flow from the Lake *Chiamy* in a moderate *Channel*, and exonerate themſelves into the *Gulph* of *Bengala*, paſſing through the Kingdoms of *Peru*, *Sian*, and others. That which paſſeth through the Country of *Sian* is called *Menan*. And at the time of the inundation, the *Fields* and *Streets* of the *Cities* are covered with *water*, ſo that they are forced to make uſe of *Boats* to ſail from one houſe to another. And this inundation alſo cauſeth exceeding fertility.

River *Macon.*

The eighth is *Macou*, a River in *Camboja*, which overflows in the *Summer months*.

River *Parana.*

The ninth is the River *Parana*, which overfloweth after the ſame manner as the *Nile* doth.

The tenth in *Choromandel* a part of *India*, the Rivers overflow by reaſon of the plenty of *waters* that flow from the top of the Mountain *Gatis* in the *Pluvial months*.

The Eleventh is the *Euphrates*, which at ſet-times of the year overfloweth *Meſopotamia*. River *Euphrates*.

The Twelfth of theſe overflowing Rivers is *Sus*, a River in *Numidia*, which overfloweth in the *Winter*. River *Sus*.

I have not read of any other *Rivers*, that I can remember, that do overflow in an Anniverſary time of the *year*, although ſome may do it in moſt years; to wit, the River *Obius*, and *Flavius* a River of *China*.

There are many *Rivers* that overflow without any order, or in a ſet-time, yea there is ſcarcely any River of noted magnitude which overfloweth not its *Banks* ſometimes; So it is evident concerning the *Albis*, the *Rhine*, and the like. And but that the capacity of the *Channel*, and the height of the Banks obſtructed, all great Rivers (in an Anniverſary time) would inundate, becauſe that moſt of them are much augmented in the *Spring ſeaſon*. And it may ſo happen, that a River that did uſe to overflow, may begin to do it in an Anniverſary time, *viz.* if that any part of it, by reaſon of *ridges* or *ſands*, or any other way, become higher, and the *Coaſts* or *ſhoars* become more high: but then men are accuſtomed to raiſe Banks.

The only cauſe of theſe *Inundations*, is the abundancy of *Water*, which in ſome Examples alledged, may proceed peradventure from diſſolved *Snow*; but in moſt, from frequent Rains. Yet that is a wonder, that the *Indus* and *Ganges* ſhould overflow in other *Months*, than the adjacent Rivers, from the Lake *Chiama*; but the cauſe of this diverſity, which is obſerved here in this *Seaſon*, muſt partly be taken from the *Anniverſary rains* in the adjacent places, partly from the *Mountains* and *Rains* about the places of the *Fountains*. But we, to avoid prolixity, ſhall ſuperſede to diſcuſs every Example. The River *Bibara* in *France*, near to *Paris*, ſometimes without any *Rains*, or at leaſt with thoſe that are uſual, ſo ſwelleth, that it cauſeth deſolation unto the *Suburbs* of St. *Marcellus*. Now the reaſon why almoſt all theſe *Inundations* make the *Lands* fruitful, is, becauſe that *water* that inundateth is either *Rain* or *Snow-water*; which *waters*, both by reaſon of their *Spirituous levity*, and alſo, becauſe of their *Sulphureous ſubſtance*, which they have admixt in the *Air*. Above all other, *Minerals* are very prevalent to fructifie, and are alſo wholſom. Now that there is ſuch a *Spirit* and *Sulphur* in *Rain-water*, is proved,

1. From the *Worms* that are generated in it.
2. From its eaſie *putrefaction*.
3. From the very *Chymical diſtillation*.

Yet ſome *Rivers* by their *Inundation*, do not make the *Earth* fertile, but rather cauſe ſterility; as *Ligeris* in *France*; when that *Sequana* maketh them fruitful by its *fat water*.

Propoſition XXI.

To explain, how Springs or Fountains break forth.

In the fourth *Propoſition* we have ſhewed, whence the *water* ariſeth that floweth from *Fountains*. Now here we demand, by what force that *water* collected in the *Earth* is thruſt forth, ſeeing that it ſeemeth not poſſible to be done without a violent removing of the *Earth*: But the cauſes are various, which make way for a *Spring* in any place. 1. If that in any place there be a certain cavity; the *water* diſtilleth into that without the help of any other cauſe, when that by creeping it cometh into it, and then in courſe of time, maketh greater paſſages for it ſelf, until that cavity being filled, it floweth out and maketh a River. The ſame alſo hapneth without a cavity, if that the *Spring* be on the top of a *Mountain*. Alſo for this reaſon Of the breaking forth of Springs and Fountains.

frequent Springs are found in *Woods* and ſhady places: For the *Rain-water* moiſtneth the *Earth*; and becauſe it is not extracted by the heat of the *Sun*, and an open and free *Air*, by degrees it allureth to it ſelf the hidden water of a future *Fountain*. 2. A way is prepared, and the *Earth* removed by the *Spirits*, which are admixed with the *waters*, yet in the *Earth*; alſo the rarefaction of *water* in the *Earth*, by which it requireth the larger place: For the *Waters*, whilſt that yet they are hidden within the *Earth*, carry many *Spirits*. Alſo *Subterranean fires* add not a little to this. 3. Oftentimes *Fountains* are brought to light by *ſhowers*, for *ſhowers* do render the Pores of the Earth more ample and large, when that they conjoyn with the *water* of the hidden *Fountain*; and ſo this followeth that, by reaſon of the mutual conjunction and coherency. 4. Sometimes *Springs* are opened by an *Earthquake*: ſo an *Earthquake* ſent forth the River *Ladon*. 5. Sometimes they are diſcovered by the Induſtry of Men, by digging the *Earth*. 6. Many *Fountains* have been diſcovered by *Animals*, which are wont to dig up the *Earth* with their Snouts: ſo a *Hog* firſt diſcovered the firſt Salt Spring in *Lunenburgh*; for when he had rooted up the *Earth* and made a gutter, the *water* ſpouted out, which filling the gutter, the *Hog* (according to their cuſtome) lay down in it; then when he aroſe, and that his back was dry, ſome diſcovered a very white colour on him, which when they had more accurately contemplated, they found it to be *white Salt*: then they went to the Spring, and from thence forwards many more were ſought and found out; from which the *City* obtaineth almoſt all its *riches* and *ſplendor*: And in Memorial thereof the *Hog* was quartered and ſmoak-dried, and is kept at this very day in the Palace of *Lunenburgh* to be ſeen.

Propoſition XXII.

A place being given in the Earth, to enquire, whether a Spring or Well may be made in it.

See *Vitruvius*, Lib. 8. Cap. 1.

See *Vitruvius* in the Eighth Book of his *Architecture*, Chap. 1. At this day we perform the ſame by digging up the *Earth* oftentimes to a great depth; and for the moſt part *veins* or *heads* of *Springs* or *Wells*, or the *Wells* and *Springs* themſelves are found.

Propoſition XXIII.

A place being given, to make a Spring or Well in it, if that it be poſſible to be made.

See *Vitruvius*, Cap. 7.

We will alledge the words of *Vitruvius*, as being a man excellently skilled in theſe affairs, ſeeing that we never uſed our ſelves to this kind of Exerciſe. In his *Seventh Chapter* thus he ſpeaketh, "Reaſon muſt not be contemned "in digging of *Wells*, but the natural *reaſons* of things are to be conſidered "with ſharpneſs of wit and great prudence, by reaſon that the *Earth* hath many "and various things within it; for it is compounded, as other things, of *four* "*Principles*, and the firſt is *Terrene*, and hath from the humidity of the "water *Fountains*; alſo heats, whence proceed *Sulphur*, *Alom*, *Bitumen*, and "groſs Spirits of *Air*, which being thick, when by the fiſtulous intervenings "of the *Earth* they come to the place where the *Well* is dug, and find men "digging, by their natural vapour they ſtop up the Animal *ſpirits* of thoſe "that work, at their Noſtrils: ſo that thoſe that fly not quickly away, are "there choaked. Now to avoid this, we muſt thus act; Let a *Candle* be "lighted and let down, and if that it continueth burning, you may deſcend "without danger; but if that the light be extinguiſhed by the force of the "*Vapors*; then let *Æſtuaries* be dug on the right and left hand, near the *Well*, "ſo as by the *Noſtrils* the *Spirits* will be diſſipated. When thoſe are ſo expli-"cated, and that you are come to the *water*, let the ſtructure be ſo fenced, that "the

"the *veins* be not ſtopped: But if that the places ſhould prove hard, or "that the *veins* ſhall not be altogether at the bottom, then aſſiſtance muſt "be taken from the coverings of *Plaſter-works*. Now this muſt be ob- "ſerved in *Plaſter-work*, that the rougheſt and pureſt *Sand* be gotten, that "the *Cement* be broken with a *Flint*, that the moſt vehement *Chalk* be mixed "with the Mortar; ſo that five parts of *Sand* anſwer to two of *Chalk* or "*Lime*: Let the *Cement* be added to the *Mortar*; of it, let the *Walls* in the de- "preſſed trench, unto the *meaſure* of the future *altitude* be ſpaged, the Bars "being made of *Iron*. The *Walls* being *plaiſtered*, let that which is *Earthy* "in the midſt, be evacuated to the lower *meaſure* or libration of the *Walls*; "and the *bottom* being levelled, let the *Pavement* be *plaiſtered* with the ſame "*Mortar*, unto the thickneſs that is appointed. Now theſe places, if they "ſhall be made double, or treble, that they may be tranſmutated by the per- "colations of the *water*, will make the uſe of it far more wholſom; for the "Mud, when that it hath found a place to ſink in, the *water* becometh more "clear, and will keep its taſt without any ſcent; if not, you muſt of neceſſity "add *Salt*, and extenuate it.

Propoſition XXIV.

To prove, whether the Water of a Spring be wholſom.

Concerning this, *Vitruvius* thus writeth; "Their probations muſt be thus "looked after: If that they flow and be open before that they begin to be "drawn, look on them and obſerve of what membrature they are; what "*Inhabitants* dwell about thoſe *Fountains*, whether they be of ſtrong Bodies, "of good colours, not lame, blear or ſore-eyed; if ſo, the *Waters* are very "excellent. Alſo, if that a new *Spring* be dug, and the *water* be put into a "*Corinthian Veſſel*, or any other kind made of *Braſs*; and if it cauſeth no "ſtain, it is then moſt excellent *water*. Alſo, if that that *water* be heated, "and afterwards ſetled and poured forth, and that no Sand or Mud be found in "the bottom, that *Water* is alſo very good. Alſo, if that *Roots* put in that "*water* be quickly boiled, they ſhew the *water* to be good and wholſom. Alſo "that the *water* in the *Fountain* be clear and pellucid, if that no *Moſs* or "*Reeds* grow about it: Or if that the place be not defiled with any filth, but "a pure ſhew. Theſe ſigns ſhew it to be tenuous and very wholſom.

Of Spring-water, whether it be wholſom, or not.

Propoſition XXV.

A place being given, to make an apparent Fountain in it, if that it be poſſible.

That is termed an apparent *Spring*, as we have ſhewed in the *th Propoſition*, where the *water* ſpouteth out, being ſent from a more high place through a Subterraneous paſſage. Now ſuch a *Spring* may be made, if that any *Lake*, *River*, or *Fountain* be in the adjacent Land, *viz.* a *Pipe* or *Channel* muſt be made under the *Earth*, from the given place to the adjacent *Lake* or *River*, through which the *water* may flow to the given place, as we ſhall ſhew in the following *Propoſition*.

See Propoſition V.

Propoſition XXVI.

To bring a River, from a given Fountain or River, to the place given.

If that the *Fountain* or *River* given be higher than the place given, the work will be eaſy: Now this is found out by *Geodetical* or *Surveying Inſtruments*; and the operation it ſelf is termed or ſaid to waſh the places, for the *leading* of the *water*; and the difference between the *Altitude* of the *Fountain* and the place given, is termed the *Libramentum* of the River to be *lead*. Therefore a *Channel*

must be dug from the *Fountain* or *River* unto the place given, the *Libra-ment* of which must be greater or leſſer, as we will have the River to be ſwifter or ſlower: For the Problem is undeterminated for the moſt part in *Aqueducts*, that the celerity of the *flux* may be moderate. It is thus obſerved, that in the *Longitude* of a *Channel* of two hundred foot, the depreſſion is no leſs than half a foot, (for otherwiſe the *water* will not flow, or elſe it will overflow: *Vitruvius* in one hundred *foot* requireth no leſs depreſſion than half a *foot*,) neither ought it to be greater than an whole foot, or at moſt a foot and a half (otherwiſe it will flow with an over violent and quick courſe.) But if that the *Fountain* be not higher in the given place, there will be need of *Inſtruments*; concerning which you muſt conſult *Mechanicks*, as alſo concerning many other things, which are to be conſidered in this Affair. By this Problem alſo is made a conjunction of two *Rivers*, when that a *Channel* is drawn from one River into another, that a *Navigation* may be made from one into another; as from *Duina* into the next River; from *Tanais* into *Wolga*; from the River *Flamus*, in *China*, into *Nanchina*.

Propoſition XXVII.

Some Rivers are noted and famous for long Tracts, ſome for Latitude, ſome for quickneſs of Courſe, ſome for the peculiar properties of the Waters that they carry; ſome for one or two of theſe cauſes.

Rivers are noted for ſeveral occaſions.

The truth of the *Propoſition* needeth no probation. I will only reckon up here thoſe *Rivers* which are the biggeſt of all, *viz.* thoſe of a long tract, which alſo are famous for *Latitude*: ſuch only are ſixteen in the whole *Earth*, as yet known, *viz.* the *Nile*, *Ob*, *Jeniſcea*, *Orellana*, *Rio del Plata*, *Parana*, *Maragnon*, *Omarranna*, *Ganges*, *Danube*, *Canada* or *St. Laurence*, *Niger*, *Nubia*, *Wolga*, *Janſu*, and *Flavus*.

After thoſe, theſe following are famous for the breadth of their *Channel*, but not for the length of their Courſe, and which are about *twenty* in number, *viz.* the *Indus*, *Zaire*, *Cuama*; the Rivers from the Lake *Chiamay*, *Euphrates*, *Tanais*, *Petzora*, *Peſida*, *Tabat*, *Irtiis*, *Santa Eſprit*, *Amana*, *Magdalen*, *Julian*, *St. Jaques*, *Rhene*, *Albis*, *Moſa*, *Boryſthenes*, and *Totouteack*.

We ſhall only here contemplate the courſes of the *ten* greater *Rivers*, leaving the more accurate explication of them, and the other Rivers, to *Special Geography*.

The River *Nile*.

1. *Nilus*, *Niger*, *Ganges*, run almoſt a ſtrait courſe; the reſt have many, and thoſe vaſt Curvatures. The Spring of the *Nile* is placed in the Lake *Zaire* in the *South latitude* of 10 *degrees*; its mouth *Canobus* is in the *North latitude* of 31 *degrees*; it floweth from the South to the North: in ſome places it ſendeth forth it ſelf in a broad ſpace, in other places it is very narrow: it hath two *Cataracts*; its tract or Longitude is about 630 *German miles*, or 2520 *Italian miles*, for which may be ſet down 3000 by reaſon of the windings; it overfloweth every year, as I have elſewhere treated of.

The River *Niger*.

2. *Niger*, a River in *Africa*, whoſe *Fountain* or *Spring* is in the 11*th degree* of *North latitude* from the *Lake*. Some write, that it is derived from the *Nile* by a *Subterranean paſſage*: the ſign of it is, that it overfloweth every year at the ſame time as the *Nile* doth. One of its Mouths is in the ſame *degree* of Latitude in which the Spring is; but it is more removed from the *Æquator* than 15 *degrees* of Latitude; it floweth from the Eaſt to the Weſt. In ſome places it hideth it ſelf under the *Earth*, and again emergeth. Its tract is about 600 *German miles*; but it will be leſſer, if that you wholly neglect its great and noted bendings; and larger, if that all ſhould be reckoned.

3. *Ganges*,

3. *Ganges* in *Asia*; its most remote *Fountain* is placed in the *North Latitude* of 43 *degrees* in *Tartaria*, but some bring it back to 33 *degrees*; its Mouth is in the *Latitude* of 22 *degrees*: it floweth from North to South. Its course is about 300 *German* miles: it overfloweth every year. The River *Ganges*.

4. *Ob* also in *Asia*, very great, and every where broad; its Spring is placed in the 48 *degree* of *North latitude* in the *Mountains* of *Tartaria*, near the *Stone-Tower*. Its Mouth is in the 69 *degree* of *Latitude*; its tract is about 400 *German* miles, omitting its windings. It divaricateth it self into two Arms in *Siberia*, or rather sendeth forth a branch from its self, which having finished a crooked passage, returneth into its self and so formeth an *Island*, in which there is a City built by the *Muscovites* and *Siberians*, called *Jorgoet*. The River *Ob*.

5. *Jenisca*, another River in *Asia*, heretofore unknown to *Geographers*, but observed by the *Moscovites*. It is found to be greater than the *Ob*, from which it is distant *ten weeks voyage* towards *Tartaria*; at the *Oriental shoar* of which a ridge of *Mountains* are extended in a long tract: on the *Occidental shoar* inhabit a People called *Tingæsi*. Every year in the *Spring* it overfloweth the space of 70 *miles* towards the *Western lands*, at which time the *Tingæsi* betake themselves with their *Cattle* and *Housholdstuff* into the *Mountains*, on the *Eastern shoar*. Its *Fountain* and *Outlets* are unknown; its tract is supposed to be no lesser than that of the *Ob*. The River *Jenisca*.

6. *Pesida*, removed some days Journey towards the East from *Jenisca*: its *Oriental shoar* is thought to touch on *China*, and the Kingdom of *Cathay*: its *Fountain* and *Outlets* are unknown. It is none of the number of the great *Rivers*; but I have briefly touched on it, because that no *Geographers* have hitherto made mention of it; as also of the River *Jenisca* and *Irtiis*. The River *Pesida*.

7. *Orellana*, in *America*, (so called from *Francis Orelli*) is accounted amongst the greatest *Rivers* of the Earth. Its *Fountain* is in the Kingdom of *Peru*, in the Province of *Quito*, in the *South latitude* of 72 *degrees*, (but this is not altogether certain; its Mouth is *fifteen miles*, in *Latitude* two *degrees* Southerly. Its tract is said to be 1500 *Spanish miles*, by reason of its great number of *bendings*, when that in truth it extendeth not 700. Others confound with it, or make the River *Maragnon* to be a branch of it. It is in some places *four* or *five Leagues* broad; but it receiveth not its *water* so much from a *Spring*, as from Rains falling on the *Mountainous* parts of *Peru*; so that in the dry *mouths* of those *Mountains* it carrieth little *water*. And indeed the Moderns do much detract from its magnitude. The River *Orellana*.

8. *Rio de la Plata*, in *Brasilia*; its *Fountain* is in the Mountains of *Peru*: Its Mouth is in the *South latitude* of 37 *degrees*, and that is said to be about *twenty miles*; but when it overfloweth it hath many *Outlets*, which some account for one; at that time it carrieth not much *water*. The *Natives* call it *Paramaguasu*, that is, a water like the *Sea*, as some observe. *Rio de la Plata*.

9. *Omaranna* also, a River in *Brasilia*, flowing from the Mountains of *Peru* in a long tract. These three great Rivers in *Brasilia*, viz. *Orellana*, *Rio de la Plata*, and *Omoranna*, meet somewhere in some *Lakes* in the *Mediterranean* places of *Brasilia*; and emerge again, being disjoyned. The River *Omaranna*.

10. and lastly, *Canada* or St. *Laurence*, in *America Septentrionalis*: its *Spring* is in the *Lake* called *des Iroquis*. Its large Mouth is in the 50*th degree* of *North latitude*, and its tract is no lesser than 600 *German miles*. The River *Canada*.

Proposition XXVIII.

Whirlpools are found in the Channels of some Rivers.

So in the River *Sommona*, between *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, in *Picardy* in *France*, is a secret *Whirlpool*, into which the *waters* rush with such violence, that their sound may be heard for some *miles*.

Proposition

Propoſition XXIX.

River-water is more light than Sea-water.

Sea-water more heavy than River-water.

The cauſe is eaſily known, to wit, *Sea-water* carrieth much *Salt* in it.

Thence it hapneth, that many things ſink to the bottom in *Rivers*, which float on the *Sea*; which frequently is ſeen in *Ships* heavy laden, that are raiſed up in the *Sea* higher than when in *Rivers*. Now various is the proportion betwixt theſe *waters*, becauſe that the *Sea-water* is not every where of the ſame gravity, nor the water of divers *Rivers*; but yet the proportion is about 46 to 45, ſo that 46 ounces of *River-water* do equally ponderate 45 of *Sea-water*.

CHAP. XVII.

Of Mineral Waters, Baths, and Spaws.

Becauſe that there are many kinds of liquid Bodies, or Waters, the peculiar properties of which men do admire at; therefore *Geographers* are wont to treat of them: But all of them hitherto, except a bare recital of their Names, and a reckoning up of ſome wonderful Fountains, or Springs, have added nothing to ſolid knowledge. But we ſhall treat more clearly of them, and that with a declaration of their cauſes.

Propoſition I.

No Water is pure and Elementary, but containeth or hath admixed particles, ſuch as are found in Terreſtrial Bodies: Theſe particles are not only Earth, but alſo they are various; as Oyls, Spirits, and the like. That is termed Mineral-water, which containeth ſo many, or ſuch particles of a different nature from the Water, ſo that from them it gaineth, or hath notable qualities, which we diſcover by ſenſe, or the properties are notable by ſenſe.

No Water is pure, but hath admixed particles.

THe truth of the *Propoſition* is manifeſt by Experience, and is proved both from the differences of *taſts*, and from *diſtillation:* and all *Naturaliſts* agree, that ſimple or pure *water*, as the other *Elements* ſeparated from others, do not exiſt in nature. The cauſe is, the various and perpetual agitation of the *particles*; but in *Waters*, that I may ſay ſomewhat in particular concerning our matter in hand, by the cauſe of admixtion of Heterogeneous, they receive Spiritual particles. The *Rain*, and the *Air* it ſelf, touching the *water*, conſiſts of divers *particles*; therefore all *waters*, have admixed *particles* of another nature; but there is not the like quantity in all of them. Into the *Rhine* indeed, the *Danube* and *Albis*, and into all great Rivers, other *Riverets* do flow in, impregnated with innumerable particles, and in ſuch quantity, that they are evident to the ſenſes: but becauſe beſides theſe, many other *Riverets* do flow into them, not impregnated with ſo great a quantity of *Heterogeneous particles* as are diſcoverable to the *eyes*; and becauſe that the greateſt part of the water that they carry, conſiſts of *Rain* and *Air*, therefore alſo in theſe greater *Rivers*, thoſe *Heterogeneous particles* are not eaſily diſcovered,

but

but must be separated from them by Art, if that any one will have them discovered to the sense. But we shall especially call them *Mineral waters*, which have some notable property beyond the common *waters*; that is, that contains such an admixture of *Heterogeous particles*, that thence posses a notable and sensible quality.

Proposition II.

Mineral Waters are of three kinds.

Some are *Corporeal* (we want an apter word,) others *Spiritual*, others both *Corporeal* and *Spiritual*. I term those *Corporeal Mineral waters*, which contain solid and fixed *particles* of *Minerals*; so that these may be discovered and separated by the sight. These *Corporeal Bodies* are twofold; some carry those *particles* of *Minerals* of a very great magnitude, that without any trouble, or very little at the least, they may be beheld in the *water*, and to speak properly, they are not commixed *waters*. Such are those of which we have spoken in the former Chapter, because that the *grains* of *Gold*, *Silver*, and the like, are contained in their *waters*; therefore they are termed *Gold* and *Silver*-bearing Rivers: but these *waters* in property of Speech, are not to be termed *Mineral*, because that they have not these *particles* commixed with them, but free; neither do they recive any property or quality from them: Yet because that men also admire such *Rivers*, and the explication of them hath great affinity with the enodation of *Mineral waters*, properly so termed; therefore I comprehend them under the general appellation of *Mineral waters*. *Bituminous Fountains*, and the like, may be reduced under this *Classis*. Of Mineral waters.

But those are termed more properly *Corporeal Mineral waters*, which contain indeed solid *particles* of *Minerals*; but so little, small, and altogether commixed, that they are not presently discovered by the sight, but either by *Art*, or a long tract of time, subsiding and concreasing, and are reduced into a sensible quantity; as are *salt Springs*, *sulphureous Fountains*, and such like; and *Chymical waters*, in which *Mettals* are dissolved. Corporeal Mineral waters.

Spirituous waters are those, that contain only a *volatile Spirit*, such as is found in *Minerals*; but no fixed *particles*, and therefore none can be elicitated from them apparent to the sight. Spirituous waters.

These are termed *Corporeal* and *Spirituous waters* together by me, which have both fixed or solid, and volatile or *Spirituous particles* of *Minerals* in them. We shall alledge Examples of the *Species* of them in the following *Propositions*.

Proposition III.

To explain, how Mineral Waters are generated.

1. If that *Waters* be carried by a violent torrent or course through *Subterraneous passages*, in which *Metallick Earth* and *Minerals* are less thick; it is manifest, that the *water* may take and carry away from these with it *grains* of those *Mineral waters*: this therefore is the generation of *Corporeal Mineral waters*, that carry *grains*. Of the generation of Mineral waters.

2. If that the *Minerals* be imperfect, or less dense; as *Vitriol*, *Sulphur*, and the like: or also the *Salts*, which of their own nature are easily united to the waters, if that the *Waters* or *Riverets* be carried through these *Earths* (without *Channel* or *Aqueduct*, as we have explained in the generation of *Fountains*) the *water* cometh to the *Fountain*; this will have the *Atoms* of these *Minerals* admixed, and it will be a *Corporeal Mineral water* of a subtile conjunction, according to the *Atoms*. Now whether that the *water* can unite the *Atoms* of *Mettals* after this manner to it self, is questioned, because that they are hard and solid, neither are they easily united to the *water*. I suppose it possible

to

to be done, but not by ſimple *water*, but by a ſalt *vitriolated water*, which is like unto the *Aqua fortis* of the *Chymiſts:* For as theſe *waters* of *Aqua fortis* diſſolve *Metals* into *Atomes*, and intimately unite them to themſelves, ſo that they ſink not to the bottom, unleſs that they be ſeparated by *Art:* So alſo if that ſuch *waters* be carried through *metallary earth*, they are able to diſſolve the *metallick particles*, and unite them to themſelves. After this mode is the generation of *mineral corporeal waters* of the ſecond *Claſſis* explained.

3. In the *bowels* of the *earth*, before that *Metals* are generated, *vapours* and *fumes* are condenſed unto the extant *Angles* of the *Rocks* unto which they adhere; and firſt they meet together in a ſoft ſubſtance, and at length they are condenſed: therefore if that the *waters* are carried or glide through the *earth* where ſuch vapours are, and are raiſed, they are impregnated by them, and ſo *ſpirituous mineral waters* are made. But imperfect *Minerals*, after another mode, cauſe *mineral waters* of their own nature, *viz.* becauſe that being heated by their own or ſubterraneous heat, they ſend forth *ſpirits* and *vapours*, as *Salt*, *Sulphur*, *Vitriol*, *Coals*, and ſuch like: and ſuch *fumes* and *exhalations* are continually made in places of ſuch *Minerals*, through which if that the *water* glide, it is impregnated with the *ſpirit*. There are ſome that ſuppoſe theſe *ſpirituous waters* may be generated only by being carried through the *metallick earths*, or by a continual ſtay upon them, or in their *Mines:* but it is certain by experience, that the *waters* receive no quality from the *Metals* and *Minerals*, if that they ſhould lye 100 *years* immerſed in them: therefore laying aſide this opinion, we affirm that thoſe *waters* are generated, or *ſpirit* received, from, firſt, the ſeed of *Metals*, as I may ſo ſay, or their *Primordia*; or ſecondly, we may ſay, that thoſe *waters* are now impregnated by other ſubtile *Spirits* of *Vitriol* or *Salt*, by the benefit of which a *Spirit* is extracted from the hard *Metals:* But I attribute the leſs to this cauſe or mode of generation, becauſe here ariſeth a queſtion again concerning the generation of the *ſpirituous water* of *Mineral*, *Vitriol*, and *Salt*.

4. From theſe together, it is evident how *mineral waters*, that are both *corporeal* and *ſpirituous*, are generated.

Propoſition IV.

There are innumerable kinds of mineral waters, according to the variety and diverſity of the particles which they contain of divers Minerals.

Many kinds of Mineral waters.

In the precedent *Propoſition* we have explained, how that *mineral waters* may receive thoſe *particles* (from which their admirable qualities do ariſe) from *Minerals* or *Foſſils*. Now becauſe that there are various ſorts of *Minerals*, thence it cometh to paſs that the *mineral waters* are various and different in their qualities; yea, they are almoſt infinite: For neither only are every one of theſe *waters* impregnated by one kind of *mineral*, but together many of many; wherefore *mineral waters* will either be ſimple or mixed, and the mixed will have ſomething either from three or four, or from many *Foſſils* or *Minerals*.

Thence 1. are *Metallick waters*, *viz.* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, *Iron*.

2. *Salt waters*, *viz.* of *Common Salt*, *Niter*, *Alome*, *Vitriol*.

3. *Bituminous waters*, *Sulphureous*, *Antimonial*, of *Coals*, and of *Amber*.

4. The *waters* of the *Earth* and *Stones*, *viz. Lime-waters*, *Chalk*, *Ochre*, *Marble*, *Alabaſter*.

5. *Mercurial waters*, and the like.

These denominations, or kinds of *waters*, are to be understood according to the triple mode, by which in the second *Propasition* we said, that *Mineral waters* were, 1. Some *Corporeal*, and even manifest to the sense; or *Corporeal* by a subtile and accurate commixion. 2. That others were *Spirituous*. 3. That others were *Corporeal*, and also *Spirituous*. These differences must be applied to every kind of *Mineral-water*, *viz.* (to demonstrate by one or another Example) *Gold-waters* are, 1. *Corporeal*, which carry grains of *Gold* of that *magnitude*, that with little trouble they are discernable to the sense, neither have they any accurate coherencies admixed unto them. 2 *Corporeal waters*, which possess very small *particles* of *Gold*, and indeed very closely connexed to the *water*; such *waters* I suppose to Be. Although the nature of *Gold* be such, that the least *grains* in the water sink to the bottom, yet that such may be, is manifest from the *Aqua Regia* of the *Chymists*, in which *Gold* is dissolved into *Atoms*. But this *Aqua Regia* is not simple; therefore neither do those *waters*, that are found in nature to have *Atoms* of *Gold* admixed, want other *particles* of *Minerals*. 3. *Spiritual Golden-waters*, which conceive a *spirit* and *vapour* in the *Earth*, from whence *Gold* is wont to be generated. 4. *Golden Corporeal-waters*, and also *Spiritual*, which possess both *Atoms* of *Gold*, and a vapour generating *Gold*. See Proposition II.

After the same manner the Readers must apply this fourfold difference unto every kind of *Mineral waters*, both simple and admixed, (whence innumerable kinds do exist; for either the *bodies* of the *Minerals*, or the *Spirits*, or the *body* of one with the *spirit* of another, are conjoyned in the *water*:) so *Leaden-waters* are fourfold, *viz.* 1. Manifestly *Corporeal*. 2. *Corporeal*, of a subtile mixture. 3. Infected with a Spirit of *Lead*: and 4. Impregnated both with the *Spirit* and *Atoms* of *Lead*. So those four divers participations of *Minerals* are to be applied to *Vitriol*, *Sulphureous*, and *Mercurial waters*, and the like; and more especially to these, to wit, to *Salt*, *Vitriolate*, and *Sulphureous*, because in these, Nature it self doth exhibit this fourfold variety. I doubt whether that *Corporeal waters* of a mixed subtilty do exist. *Spirituous Metallick waters* are very rare; but *Sulphureous* and *Salt waters* are frequent. But the *Corporeal* and *Spirituous*, because these sorts of *Metals* are both found in many places of the *Earth*, and also in a greater quantity, and easily suffer their *particles* to be gnawed off; they send out also frequently, a fume and vapour. We will explain by one Example this fourfold variety of participation, and that in *Gold*; 1. In the preceding *Chapter* and the *sixteenth Proposition*, we have enumerated those *Riverets* which carry *grains* of *Gold*, and with this Treasury make glad the *Natives*; such are many in the Earldom of *Tirol*, and the places adjacent: and we have said that the *Rhine* it self, *Albis*, *Danube*, and most great Rivers in some places carry *grains* of *Gold* (as also of other *Metals* and *Minerals*;) by reason that they receive *Golden*, or *Gold-bearing Riverets*. The *Rhine* carrieth *grains* of *Gold* commixed with *Clay* and *Sand* in many places; but especially at these, 1. Near *Curia* in *Rhetia*; 2. At *Meinfield*; 3. At *Eglinsan*; 4. At *Secningham*; 5. At the Town *Augst*, not far from *Basil*; 6. At *Norinburgh*; 7. At *Wormes*; 8. At *Seltz*; 9. At *Mentz*; 10. At *Bacherack*; 11. At *Bononia*, and the like. The Reader may see those *Gold-bearing Riverets* which the *Rhine* receiveth in *Thurnhuserus*, as also those that the *Danube* and *Albis* do receive. In the *water* of this, *viz.* the *Albis*, are found grains of *Gold*: 1. At *Leutmeritz* in *Bohemia*; 2. At *Puru*; 3. At *Dresda* in *Misnia*; 4. At *Torga*; 5. At *Magdeburgh*; 6. At the Tower of *Lunenburgh*, fifteen *miles* from *Hamburgh*. Concerning the *Gold-bearing Riverets* consult the forecited Book of *Thurnhuserus*; where also you may see those that carry other *Mettals* and *Minerals*. A fourfold difference of Mineral waters.

These *Waters* are therefore the *Corporeal Golden-waters* of the first mode, *viz.* those that carry *grains* of *Gold*; which less properly are termed *Mineral* or *Golden*, because the *Golden-grains* are not permixed with the *water*, but are carried down by the rapid Current of the water; and the *waters* themselves are simple or uncompounded. 2. *Golden Corporeal-waters* of a subtile

commixtion, to wit, the Atoms of whose *waters* are mixed with the *Atoms* of the *Gold*; as we have said of the *Aqua Regia* of the *Chymists*, which dissolveth the *Gold*, and uniteth it to it self by *Atoms*. And now, because there may be like *waters*, which whether they be carried through *Golden-lands* or *Mines*, may gnaw off and dissolve some *Golden-Atoms* of it with Earthly ones; such *Golden-waters* many *Riverets* seem to be, which *Thurnhuserus* writeth to participate of *Gold*, and reckoneth them up in the description of the *Danube*, *Rhine*, and other great *Rivers*.

3. The *Golden Spirituous-waters* are very few, and some of those are they peradventure, which *Thurnhuserus* enumerateth. Now such *waters* are less noted or sensible, because *Golden-Earth* and *Mines* are very rare, and that in a small quantity: Moreover where the *Mines* are, a quantity of other *Minerals* are also together with the *Gold*, whence the *water* receiveth many more *Spirits*. Yet some *Riverets* in the high *Alpes* of *Bohemia*, are said to participate of these *Golden-Spirits*; also in *Silesia*, and the *Mountain* that they call *Fitchtelberg*. The *Pepper-Baths*, in the Bishoprick of *Curia*, are believed to be impregnated with such a *Spirit*; but by reason of the admixture of other *Minerals* in greater quantity, the *waters* receive a less sensible quality from it.

4. *Golden-waters*, which carry both *Atoms* of *Gold* and *Spirit*, are some of the *Riverets* mentioned by *Thurnhuserus*.

We will add the Example of *Salt-waters:*

Example of Salt-waters.

1. *Salt Corporeal-waters*, *viz.* which carry the more gross *particles* of *Salt*, and not accurately mixed; they are many, and sufficiently known to any person, as certain *Springs* of which *Salt* is made: Hitherto appertaineth the *Sea-water*, if that it be made more gross by the *heat* of the *fire*.

2. *Salt Corporeal subtile-waters*, which contain the *Salt* reduced into little *particles*; they are those, which when they are most *Salt*, yet withal they are very pellucid and subtile, as many *salt Springs* and *tenuous Sea-water*; although that there be great difference in this subtile commixtion: Hitherto appertaineth the *Urin* of all *Animals*.

3. *Salt Spirituous-waters*, which contain not the *particles* of *Salt*, but the *spirit* of *Salt*: they are such, that if you should boyl many *Vessels* of them, yet notwithstanding you should receive no *Salt*. Not a few of these are in *Germany*, and elsewhere; but they are rarely found simple.

4. *Salt Corporeal*, and *Spirituous-waters*, which have *particles* of *Salt* and *Spirit*.

Almost all the *Corporeal* have also some portion of *Saline spirit*, but most of them very little: So, near the City *Saltzinga*, not far from the *Rhine*, the *Fountains* are *salt*; the *water* of which, though more *salt* than other *waters*, yet it affordeth less *Salt*, because its sharp and salt sapor is sharpned by a *spirit* or *volatile Salt*, that flyeth away in the *boyling*. Hence it is manifest how this fourfold difference of participation is to be applied unto every sort of *Mineral waters*, *viz. Vitriolate-waters*, *Alom-waters*, *Lead-waters*, and the like.

Proposition V.

To reckon up the noted differences of Mineral Waters.

The noted differences of Mineral Waters.

In the foregoing *Propositions* we have explained the true kinds and differences of *Mineral waters*, taken from the very essence of them, *viz.* from the particles of the *Minerals* which they carry, or by which they are impregnated; but those differences, because they do not so strike the senses; and moreover, by reason of the various mixture of *Minerals*, communicate various properties to the *water*, wherefore they are less vulgarly known; for the denomination of all *Bodies* ariseth from manifest qualities on the Sense, as also doth the celebrity of *waters* amongst men. The explication and cause of which

which apert *qualities* and *properties* muſt be ſought from the inmoſt compoſition of things. Therefore the noted and famous differences or ſpecies of *Liquors* flowing from the *Earth*, and alſo known to the Vulgar ſort of men, are theſe ten; to wit, 1. *Sowr-waters:* 2. *Bitter:* 3. *Hot:* 4. very *Cold:* 5. *Oily* and *Fat:* 6. *Poyſonous:* 7. *Coloured:* 8. *Ebullient:* 9. *Water* that converts leſs hard into harder, or after any other mode, changing any Bodies caſt in or ſtained with them: 10. *Salt-waters:* And in the 11*th* place we may add thoſe, which are endowed with any other wonderful property. Unto theſe *Claſſes*, thoſe that are ſtudious in theſe things may reduce all *Waters*, which are found deſcribed in *Authors*. We ſhall only in brief ſhew their generation and differences, and alledge ſome Examples.

Propoſition VI.

To explain the cauſe or generation, difference or kinds of Acid or Sowr Waters.

Great is the celebrity of *Acid waters* or *Springs*; they commonly call them *Spaws*. Of Sowr Waters.

1. They ariſe from the admixture of a *Spirit* of *Vitriol*, *Salt*, and *Alom*; which *Minerals*, being partly ſimple, and partly more or leſs admixed with other *Minerals*, are found in the cavities of the *Earth*, eſpecially in *Iron*. We prove this to be the true cauſe of *Acidula's* and *Spaws:* 1. By reaſon that almoſt every where, where ſuch *Acid waters* break out, Mines of *Vitriol*, *Salt*, and *Alom*, are found. 2. Becauſe the *Spirits* of *Vitriol* and *Salt*, are *Acid*, as alſo ſome *Spirits* of *Sulphur*; as is evident from *Chymiſtry*. 3. Becauſe that from theſe kind of *Acid waters*, no *Acid body*, but *Spirits*, is ſeparated, which are altogether like unto the *Spirits* of *Vitriol* and *Salt*.

2. Great is the quantity of *Acid waters* or *Spaws* in divers *Regions*, where *Mines* eſpecially abound. The cauſe is, becauſe that an Acid, Sowr *Spirit* is almoſt in all *Bodies*; (by reaſon that we have ſhewed, that it is Elementary, in the *Seventh Chapter* and *firſt Propoſition*) it is found in all *herbs* and *fruits*.

3. The difference of *Spaws* is found to be notable: Some are fouud to be ſo ſharp or ſowr, that men make uſe of them inſtead of *Vinegar*. Such a *Spring* is found in *Nicana*, a Province of *Sicilia:* In *Germany*, the Fountain at *Elleboga* is of a wonderful *Acidity*. Other *Acid Springs* are termed *Winy*, becauſe that by their ſharpneſs they come near the grateful taſt of *Wine*; amongſt which, that is famous which is in the Earldom of *Catzenellebocen* in *Germany*, at the Town *Schwalbach*. In the Province of *Lyons* in *France*, at the Town of St. *Baldomare*, is a Fountain termed *Fontaine forte*, that is, the *ſtrong Fountain:* it ſupplieth the want of *Wine*, and if that one fourth part of it be mixed with *Wine*, it will want nothing of the taſt of Wine; if it is poured on *Flour* it will preſently ferment. They can boil no *Meat* in it, for by reaſon of its ſubtilty it flieth away: It is very wholſom, ſo that the *Inhabitants* ſeldom uſe a *Phyſician*. The difference of *Spaws*.

In *Aquitaine*, not far from the City *Beſſa*, is the like *Winy* ſharp *Spring*; unto the *waters* of which, if that you only admix the ſixth part of Wine, you will imagine, that you drink pure Wine without any admixture of water. Nigh to *Rome* is an *Alomy ſharp Fountain*, which being mixed with Wine, maketh a very grateful Drink. Great is the number of *Acid Springs* in the *Upper Germany*, whereof ſome flow into the *Danube*, and others into the *Rhine*. Very many are in the forementioned Earldom of *Catzenelleboch*, in the Province of *Triers*, in *Tirolis*, *Rhætia*, *Vindelicia:* a noted ane is near *Anderna*, called *Heilbrun*. In the Province of *Toledo* in *Spain*, near the Village *Valentiola*, are Springs, which at the bottom are found Acid, and of a Winy taſt, and in the upper part, *ſweet*; which *Baccius* thinketh to happen, becauſe that the Nitrous and Acid parts do ſubſide and ſink to the bottom. But I ſuppoſe, if that the Relation be true, that it proceedeth from the ſubtilty of the *Spirit*, which being brought to the *ſuperficies*, preſently do expire.

Other *Acid Fountains* are aſtringent, and contracting the palate, which is a token of *Iron particles*, or of the admixture of *Vitriol*, as alſo of *Alom*.

The *Water* of *Acid Fountains*, in *Rainy* and *Cloudy weather*, is found leſs *Acid*; which is a ſign of an admixture of condenſated *Air*. Alſo, if that the *water* be expoſed to *heat*; or if it ſtand in an open *Veſſel* for ſome hours; or if it be carried a long Voyage not well covered, in cold *Veſſels*, it preſently loſeth its *Acidity*; which is a ſign, that the *Acidity* of them dependeth on a ſubtile Spirit.

Yet they alſo have *Atoms*, and the very *Vitriol*, *Alom*, *Iron*, *Salt*, *Gravel*, and the like. This is proved from the matter that is diſcovered to adhere to the *Conduit-pipes*.

The Studious may collect Examples by reading of *Authors*: At leaſt two hundred *Acid Springs* or *Riverets* run into the *Rhine*; but by reaſon of the ſubtilty of the *Spirits*, nothing of acidity is diſcovered in the *Rhine*.

Do you demand, why there are no *Acid Fountains* in the *Northern places*? I ſuppoſe that cauſe to be the defect of *Subterraneous heat*, and an over great condenſation of the *Earth*; as alſo for that cauſe it cometh to paſs, that little or no *Gold* is found in thoſe *Regions*.

Propoſition VIII.

To explain the generation of hot Springs, termed Baths, *and the places of the more famous of them.*

Of the generation of hot Springs or Baths.

A Spring in *Iceland* is judged the moſt fervid of them all, whoſe *water* little differeth from that, which hath arrived to the higheſt degree of *heat* and boyling on the *fire*. But *Caronius* writeth, that in *Japan* there is a *Spring* ſo *hot*, that no *water* can be brought to that degree of *heat* by the moſt vehement *fire*. It floweth not continually, but twice in a day for one *hour* with a great force of *ſpirits*, and maketh a great *Pool*; which another hath informed me to be called by the Natives, *Singacko*, that is, *Hell*.

After thoſe, the hot *Fountains* or *Baths* of *Baden* in *Helvetia*, are famous. Then the *Baths* of *Appona* in *Italy*. Of *Vulgar Baths* there is a great number in the *Upper Germany*, as alſo in other places. In *Scotland* is the Lake and River *Neſſa*, which is not *hot*, yet it is never congealed with Cold.

The cauſe and generation of *Baths*, is firſt the admixture of *Sulphureous particles*, whilſt the *water* is carried through *Subterraneous paſſages*; or rather, whilſt that it glideth through the *Sulphureous Mines* to a collection about the *Springs*. 2. The vapours of *Smoak* and *exhalations* within the *Earth*, where *Sulphur* is pure or impure, as *Peat*, *Coal*, *Amber*, and the like; for theſe *materials* continually ſend forth a calid or warm fume, which heat the *waters* carried thither, or gliding through thoſe places. Yet *particles* of *Alom* are admixed to many, nay the moſt *Baths*; as alſo of *Iron* and *Niter*, whence they have ſomewhat a ſharp and aſtringent taſt or ſapor. Almoſt all the *Baths*, which we know, flow without ceaſing, except the *Pepper-Baths* of *Germany*, which are famous in *Rhetia*, not far from *Curia*. And beſides *Sulphur*, they contain ſomething of *Gold*, and not a little *Niter*. The *water* of theſe *Baths* breaketh out every year about the third of *May*, and it ceaſeth to flow about the fourteenth of *September*. The famous *Baths* in *Germany* are the *Plumbariæ* in *Lorrain*; *Emſebadæ*, above *Conſtantina* in *Alſatia*, near *Geberſweil* in the *Marquiſate* of *Bada*; *Wildbad*, in the *Dukedom* of *Wertebergh*; The *Blaſianæ* near *Tubin*. There are many alſo in *Japan*, and the *Indian Iſles*. There are ſuch hot ones in the *Iſlands* of the *Azores*, that an *Egg* may be boyled in them.

Propoſition

Propoſition IX.

To explain the generation of oyly and fat liquors flowing from the earth, and to enumerate the places of the earth in which they are found.

Some *Fountains* ſend forth a *bituminous liquor*, ſome a *fat* water, or water on which *drops* of *oyl* do flow. In *Scotland*, two *miles* from *Edenborough*, a *Fountain* floweth, on the whole *Superficies* of which drops of black *oyl* do *ſwim:* the *Inhabitants* uſe it to mollifie the *skin*, and to take away *ſcabs*. So the River *Cilicia*, tearmed *Liparis*, was famous amongſt the Ancients, in which thoſe that waſhed themſelves, were anoynted by the *water:* whether it be ſo at this day, I much doubt. So likewiſe there was a *Lake* in *Æthiopia*, which anointed thoſe that ſwam it. Alſo there was a *Fountain* in *India*, which on a clear day ſent forth a great quantity of *oyl*. In *Zant*, and about *Dyrrachium* and *Appallonia* (as *Vitruvius* writeth) there were *Fountains* which vomited out abundance of *pitch* with *water*. There was a *Lake* in *Babylon* of great magnitude, called *Limne Aſphaltis*, it had *liquid Bitumen* ſwiming upon it, with which, the black *Semiramis*, encompaſſed *Babylon* with a *Wall*. At this day alſo at *Monaſterium* in *Bavaria*, is the Fountain *Degemſte*, on the top of which *oyl* ſwimmeth, and is daily taken off. The *Acid waters* of *Schwalback*, if they be taken in a *Veſſel*, and have been ſettled for ſome *days*, ſmall drops of *oyl* ſwim on the top of them. There is a greater quantity in the *Fountain* tearmed *Oelbrum*, not far from *Hagenaw*, at the Village *Lamperſcholch*. Alſo in the many *Bathes* are found *bituminous partitles*, if ſo be that they ſtood quiet for ſome days; as in the *Baths* of the Kingdom of *Naples*, tearmed the *Bath* of *Petrolei*. Of oyly liquors.

Now the *Fountains* that ſend out not an *oyl* ſwimming on the *water*, but a meer fat or bituminous liquor, are alſo many. Near *Gersbachium*, in the *Valley* called *Leberſthal*, from an antiquated and exhauſted Mine, *oyl* or *bitumen* floweth, with which the *Country Swains* beſmear their *Cart-wheels*. Neither do the *Inhabitants* know its excellency. In the *Iſle* of *Sumatra* is a Spring from which *Naptha*, like unto *oyl*, floweth; others ſay that it is a kind of *Balſom:* they report *Fountains* of *Amber* to be there likewiſe. In *Peru*, near the *Sea*, is a *bituminous Fountain*, ſending forth a Branch or Riveret into the *Sea*. The *Natives* uſe it inſtead of *pitch*, neither do they uſe any other matter. In *Perſia*, not far from *Schimachia*, at or near the high Mountain *Barmach*, in a *Valley*, are about thirty *Fountains* of *Bitumen* or *Naptha*, but runing in deep *Wells* with a great force; the Depth is about two *Ells*, wooden ſteps being made for the conveniency of deſcent, it ſendeth forth a Sulphureous and ſtrong Spirit: it is of a twofold *colour*, in ſome *red*, in others *white*.

The cauſe of theſe *bituminous Fountains* is a *ſulphureous* and *bituminous matter* in the *bowels* of the *earth*, thruſt forth by a *heat* and *ſpirit*. The cauſe of the differences is to be ſought from the differences of the fat matters themſelves; as *Succinum*, *Amber*, *Oyl* of *Petrolei*, *Pitch*, *Naptha*, and the like.

Propoſition X.

To explain the generation of bitter water, and to reckon up the places of the earth in which they are found.

Many *Fountains* and *Wells* in the *Regions* of *India*, on the *Choromandel*, have bitter water, although that they ebulliate in, and flow from *Rocks*. In *Pontus*, a Region of *Aſia minor*, a little River tearmed *Exampeus*, at the Town *Callipadus*, is very bitter, it rendereth the River *Hypanis*, into which it floweth, alſo very bitter. Of the generation of bitter waters, and the places where they are found

They

They arise from impure *Sulphur*, *Bitumen*, *Nitre*, *Ink*, *Copper*: as *water* left a long time in a *Copper vessel* acquireth a bitter taste.

The Lake *Asphaltites* in *Palestine*, which is called *Mare Mortuum*, or the *Dead Sea*, hath a bitter *water* by reason of the impure *Bitumen*, whence it ought to be referred to the fat *waters* of the former *Proposition*. It sendeth forth a stinking scent and vapour: all things without life sink to the bottom; but it suffereth not any *Animal* to sink; neither doth it grow sweet, although that it continually swalloweth up the River *Jordan*. It is venomous by reason that it containeth *Arsnick*.

Proposition XI.

To explain the cause of very cold Springs, and to enumerate the places of the Earth where they are found.

The cause of cold Springs.

In the Province of *Dauphin* in *France*, not far from *Vienna*, is a *Fountain* of so great cold, that the *mouths* of those that drink it are swelled with it, neither can they endure their hands in it: it is not diminished for the water that is drawn out of it, nor augmented by the *water* poured into it. In *Arabia* or *Æthiopia* are most cold *Springs*, although that the heat of the *Sun* be most excessive there. In *Stiria*, not far from *Gretz*, are *Fountains* so cold at the *bottom*, that none can drink any *water* runing or drawn from thence.

In a mile from *Calma*, a *Spring* sendeth forth water as it were boyling, with a great *wind*, when yet it is very cold; hence they call it *The mad water*. The cause of the coldness of these *Fountains* are, 1. The admixture of *Nitre* and *Alom*, also of *Mercury*, *Iron*, and the like. 2. The depth of the *Spring*, by reason of the defect of the *Solary Beams*, and of the *sulphureous subterraneous heat*.

There are also some *Springs* which are sometimes *cold* and sometimes *hot*. In *Catalonia*, the *Lake* and *Fountain Salsula* in the *Winter* is *hot*, and in the *Summer* very *cold*. This is common to it, with many others. I think the cause to be, that in the *Summer* the pores of the *Earth* are open, through which the hot *Spirits* break forth; in the *Winter* they are closed, whence within there are hot *Furnaces* that heat the *waters*: So some *Fountains* are more hot in the night than in the day.

Proposition XII.

To explain the generation of those waters which seem to change bodies into another kind; and to reckon up the places of the Earth where they are found.

Of the generation of waters which change bodies into another kind, &c.

There are some *waters* which change *wood* into the hardest *stone*. In *Ireland*, above the City *Armagh*, in a *Pool* not very large, a stake of wood if it be fixed for some months, the part that sticketh in the Mud will be *iron*, the part which is touched with the *water* is turned into *stone*, and the rest remaineth *wood*; so *Giraldus* and *Maginus* relate: but *Brietius* sayeth, I know not by what authority, that it is a meer fable. The *waters* of *Loches* in *Blois*, a Province in *France*, turn all things put into it into *stone*. At the City *Senon* in *Burgundia*, near a *Lake*, a Spring floweth which hardneth into *stone*. *Vitruvius* saith, that in *Cappadocia*, between *Mazaca* and *Tuana*, is a large Lake, which changeth a *reed* or *wood* put into it in one day into *stone*. In *Bohemia*, near the *Baths* of *Charles*, is a *Fountain*, in which *wood* lying long, is changed into *stone*. Other *waters* are thought to change *Iron* into *Copper*, which yet really they do not; but by reason that *waters* themselves carry *particles* and *spirit* of *Copper* and *Vitriol*, therefore they dissolve the *particles* of *Iron*, and by degrees take away from it, which whilst that they do, the *Copper particles* of the water are reposed in the place of the *Iron* ones taken away, or there adhere whilst that they glide with the runing water.

The

The reaſon of thoſe that change *wood* into *ſtone* are theſe:

1. Some do not change the *wood* it ſelf into *ſtone*, but *earthy*, *ſtony*, and *ſaline particles* contained in the *water*, do apply themſelves to the *wood*, and ſo, as it were, cover the wood with a ſtony cruſt, and do not really change it.

2. Some do not change the *wood* into *ſtone*, but cauſe a *ſtony* hardneſs to the *wood*, which ſome *mineral waters* may poſſibly do.

3. If that ſome *waters* have truly changed *wood* into *ſtone*, I conceive it to be done after this manner; that chief difference is found by ſight between the *wood* and the *ſtone*, that in the *wood* there are certain long *Fibres* or *Veins*, unto which the *particles* do cohere, and thoſe are leſs thick: but in *ſtone* the *particles* are like unto *Atoms*, without any certain extenſion into long *Fibres*. If that therefore any water diſſolve, and as it were grind the *particles* cohering in the *wood*, according to a long *line*, ſo that now they do no more cohere after this mode, but yet are more condenſed; there will be no more any great difference between the *wood* and *ſtone*, as may be obſerved by our *Eyes*; yet it is probable that theſe *mineral waters* communicate ſome ſubſtance to the *wood* it ſelf.

There are other *waters* whoſe faculty is reported to be able to change the colours in the *hair* of *man* or *beaſt*.

Propoſition XIII.

To explain the cauſe of poiſonous and death-cauſing waters, and to reckon up the places where they are.

Such is the Lake *Aſphaltites* by reaſon of its *Arſenical Bitumen*. In times paſt, famous was the *Fountain* of *Terracina*, which was called *Neptunicus*, in the Region of the *Volſci*, of which thoſe that *drank* were deprived of their *lives*; therefore it was filled up with *ſtones* by the *Inhabitants*. In *Theſſalia* a *Fountain* ſpringeth of which no *Cattle* drink, nor no kind of *Beaſt* approacheth. Famous, or rather infamous, is the *water*, which in the Region of *Arcadia*, called *Nonacris*, the Ancients write to drop exceeding cold from ſtony *Rocks*, therefore called the *Infernal* and *Stygian water*, which no veſſel, either of *ſilver*, *braſs*, or *iron*, could be preſerved in, without breaking. And by this *water* Hiſtorians report that *Alexander* the Great was killed by *Jolla* Son of *Antipater*, and that not without the infamy of *Ariſtotle*. At this day many mortiferous waters are found in the Places or Regions called the *Alpes*; but moſt of them are ſtopped with *ſtones*, which is the reaſon that ſo few death-cauſing *Fountains* are known. Of poiſonous waters.

Now the generation of ſuch *water* is, if the *water* glide or flow through *Arſenical*, *Mercurial*, or *Antimonial Earths*, and are impregnated with their fumes: For as the ſmoak or fume of *Arſnick* killeth *living creatures*, ſo *waters* impregnated with ſuch a fume, do the ſame.

Propoſition XIV.

To explain the generation of coloured waters, and their differences, and to enumerate the places of the Earth in which they are found.

At *Chinen* in *France*, *water* floweth from a *Cave* of ſomewhat a *yellowiſh colour*. In the Kingdom of *Congo* a *Riveret* floweth of a *red colour* into the *Sea*. In ſome places *waters* flow of a *black*, of a *green*, and ſuch like *colours*, but they are but few. Of coloured waters,

The cauſe of the colour of theſe *waters* is, that they glide or run from *lands*, before they come to the *Fountain*.

Propoſition XV.

To explain the generation of Salt-waters, and to reckon up the places of the Earth in which they are found.

Of the generation of Salt-waters.

The *generation* is twofold: 1. From the *Ocean* they come through *Subterraneous paſſages*, and flow to the *Superficies* of the *Earth*. 2. They are *generated* of a *Salt* contained in the *Earth*, ſuch as is found in many places, through which whilſt the water glideth, it conceiveth *Saline particles* and *ſpirits*, before that it arrive at the *Spring*. Great is the plenty, and that known to every one, of *Salt Fountains*. We have ſpoken in the preceding *Chapter*, and this matter is eaſily known, by reaſon of the abundance of *Salt*, almoſt every where lying hidden in the *Earth*, ſeeing that *Salt* it ſelf is an Element.

Propoſition XVI.

To explain the cauſe of Ebullient Fountains, and thoſe that break out with a great ſpirit and wind; and to enumerate the places of the Earth wherein they are found.

Of ebullient Fountains.

The cauſe is partly a *Sulphureous ſpirit*, and partly a *Nitrous ſpirit* commixed with *water* in the *Earth*: if that it be a *Sulphureous ſpirit*, the *waters* are hot; if *Nitrous*, cold: For neither are all the *waters* which ebulliate like to thoſe that are *hot*, *hot*, but many of them are *cold*, as is evident from that near to *Culma*, called a *mad-water*, of which we have ſpoken in the *Twelfth Propoſition*. The River *Tamayus* in *Galæcia*, ariſeth from a Lake; in its riſing, for ſome months of the year, it ſendeth forth a mighty noiſe. In *Japan* that wonderful *hot Fountain*, of which we have ſpoken in the *Eighth Propoſition*, not above twice every day breaketh forth, for the moſt part for one *hour*; now when that the *water* beginneth to flow, it is carried with ſo great a force and vehemency of *wind*, that it moveth the vaſt *ſtones* incumbent on the *Well*, and leapeth to the height of three or four *Ells* with ſo great a noiſe, like unto the diſcharge of *Cannon*. In *Weſtphalia* a *Fountain* breaketh forth, tearmed *Bolderborn*, from its noiſe.

Moſt of the *Spaws* and *Baths* break forth with an abundance of *wind*, and ebulliate as if they boyled; a *Sulphureous ſpirit* cauſeth this in the *Baths*, and in the *Spaws*, the *Spirits* of *Vitriol*, *Nitre*, and the like.

Propoſition XVII.

To enumerate the kinds of waters which have other certain wonderful properties, and to explain the cauſes of them.

Other kinds of waters of wonderful properties.

Unto this *Claſſis* all others ought to be reduced, which cannot conveniently be referred unto the former ſorts. So there is a *Fountain* in *Portugal* tearmed *Cadina*, devouring all that is caſt into it: Alſo in times paſt there was another near to it, rejecting all things caſt into it; but this latter is obſtructed. In *Andaluſia*, not far from the City *Guadiana*, *Euſebius Nierenburgius* relateth, that there is a Lake which ſheweth the Seaſons or Tempeſt; for when that this is approaching, it maketh an horrible noiſe, which is oftentimes heard for the ſpace of 18 or 20 *miles*. In *Calice* in *France* is a *Well*, into which if that a *ſtone* is caſt in, a noiſe will be heard like *Thunder* in the cavities of the *Well*. In the *Alpes* are *Wells*, whoſe water being drank off, contracteth ſwellings of a great bigneſs hanging from their necks. In the Kingdom of *Granada*, at the Town *Antiquarius*, is a *Fountain* of ſo great force, that it diſſolveth *ſtones*.

Near

Near unto *Tours* in *France* are *Caves* to be ſeen, tearmed commonly *Les Caves Gouttieres*, from the roof of which the water which falleth is formed into divers ſhapes, as *Nuts*, *Almonds*, and the like.

The *hot Fountain* of *Japan* burneth all things, and devoureth *cloth*, *iron*, *fleſh*, &c. The ſtudious may collect divers other *examples* from other *Authors*, and reduce them to this *Claſſis*, if that they ſeem not poſſible to be reduced to any of the former. The Cauſes muſt be ſought from the peculiar *ſituation* and *property* of each place.

Propoſition XVIII.

To enumerate thoſe Fountains which break forth at a ſet time, not continually; to explain the cauſe, and thoſe which ebb and flow.

This *Propoſition* belongeth not to this *Chapter*, but to the preceding; yet becauſe it belongeth to the wonder of *waters*, and was neglected in the former *Chapter*, here it ſhall be explained. Of Fountains which break forth at a ſet time, not continually.

In a *Fountain* ſituated on the top of an high Hill, in the Province of *Canaugh* in *Ireland*, the water *ebbeth* and *floweth* every day with the flux and reflux of the *Sea*; yet the water is *freſh*. The ſame is obſerved in the *Fountain Louzara*, which is in the mountainous places of *Galæcia*, called *Cabreti*, 20 *miles* from the *Sea*. Alſo in *Aquitain*, in the Village *Marſacus*, is a *Fountain* which imitateth the ſwelling of the *Sea*, and ſwelleth with the increaſe of *Garumnæ* in *Burdeaux*. Elſewhere there are ſaid to be *Fountains* which augment and decreaſe contrary to the ſwelling of the *Sea*.

In *Wales*, near the mouth of the River *Severn*, is a *Pool* called *Linliguna*, which ſwalloweth in the *Marine floods*, whilſt that they ariſe, but it is by no means filled with the ſame; and the *flood* of the *Sea* ceaſing, then it riſeth with a great force, and vomiteth out the *water*, with which it covereth the Banks.

In *Biſcay* there are the four Springs *Tamarici*, whereof three every day are ſo dried twelve times, as if that no *water* were in them, as *Pliny* reporteth: But I queſtion whether they be to be found at this day.

In *Savoy* is a *Fountain* of noted magnitude, callen *Wonderful*, which ſinketh low twice in an hour, and twice floweth; and before that it floweth, and doth break forth with a great noiſe, it floweth into the Lake *Burgites*.

In the *Mountains* of *Foix* in *Languedoc* riſeth the River *Lers*, which in the Months *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt* ebbeth and floweth 24 times in a *day*. See *Bertius*.

In a Region of *Weſtphalia*, called *Paderborn*, is a *Fountain* which ebbeth and floweth twice every *day*, although it ſendeth forth ſo much *water*, that not far from the *Fountain* the *water* driveth four *Water-mills*; and it breaketh forth with a mighty noiſe.

In the Province of *Wallis* in *Germany* is a *Fountain*, called the *Fountain* of St. *Mary*; it ceaſeth to flow in the *Autumn* at the day dedicated to St. *Mary*, and returneth in *May*.

The Pool or Lake *Maron* in *Paleſtine* is ſo dry in the *Summer*, and bringeth forth *Herbs* and *Shrubs* ſo high, that *Lions*, *Wolves*, and other wild *Beaſts* do abide there.

In *Spain*, two *miles* from *Valindolid*, is a *Fountain* which ariſeth in *May*, and falleth in *November*.

All *Baths* flow without any ceſſation or change, except thoſe that are in *Rhætia*, and are called the *Pepper Baths*: for they flow only in the *Summer*, from the third of *May* to the fourteenth of *September*, then they ceaſe.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the Mutation of the places of the Water and Land, or of the Mutation of the watery ſuperficies into the earthy, and the contrary.

Propoſition I.

To know the Superficies of the Earth, which the water poſſeſſeth, how great it is, and that which the Earth occupieth.

Of the Superficies of the earth, which the water poſſeſſeth.

WE cannot accurately know this, becauſe we are ignorant whether the *Sea* or *Land* doth poſſeſs the *Superficies* of the *North* or *South Polary-land*. Moreover, becauſe the *Superficies* of the *water*, as alſo of the *land*, is terminated on the *Globe* by an irregular bending of the *lines*, therefore it would be a very difficult task to compute the quantity of the *Superficies* of the *water* and *land*; but as far as we are able to collect in groſs from the inſpection of the *Terreſtrial Globe*, the *Superficies* of the *water* and *land* ſeem almoſt equal, ſo that the *Superficies* of the *water* is half to the *Superficies* of the *land*, and ſo alſo is the *Superficies* of the *land*.

Propoſition II.

The Superficies of the Water, as alſo of the Land, is not at all times of the ſame magnitude, but ſometimes greater, and ſometimes leſſer; and when the Superficies of the Water is augmented, the Superficies of the Land is diminiſhed.

For the *Sea* overfloweth ſometimes here, ſometimes there, or taketh away and carrieth with it: ſo therefore his *Superficies* is augmented more or leſs, as it hath overflowed a great or leſs tract of *Land*, as in times paſt it did in *Theſſaly*. Yet this variety, as far as it is yet known, hath a very little proportion unto the whole *Superficies* of the *water*: it may be made great, as we ſhall ſhew in the *eighteenth Propoſition*.

Propoſition III.

To compute what quantity of Water the Earth containeth, and what quantity of Land.

Of the quantity of Land and Water which the Earth containeth.

For the finding out the accurate and true quantity of *water* and *land*, firſt we ought to know both the whole *Superficies* of the *water*, as alſo its depth in divers parts of the *Sea*: alſo the *ſubterraneous heaps* of *water* ought to be examined. All which, ſeeing that we cannot find out by any method, therefore we cannot find out the accurate quantity of the *water* or *land*; but only from certain *Hypotheſes*, *viz.* we laid down the *Superficies* of the *water* to be half the *Superficies* of the *earth*; the profundity to be a quarter or half a *mile*: neither do we reckon the *waters* in *ſubterraneous Channels*.

The quantity of *water* may be thus found out: Take a quarter, or half a *mile* from the *Semidiameter* of the *earth*, and the ſolidity of the *Sphere* may be found, whoſe *Semidiameter* is equal to the reſidue; let this ſolidity be taken from the ſolidity of the earth; the half of the reſidue is the quantity of the *water*: the ſame half ſubſtracted from the ſolidity of the whole *earth*, leaveth the quantity of the *earth*, unto which muſt be added a fourth or fifth part of the bulk of *water*, or of the former half. But theſe are uncertainties from ſuppoſed uncertainties, or at leaſt nigh unto truth.

Pro-

Propoſition IV.

The Water may leave the ſhoar and place of the Earth which it doth occupy, for divers cauſes, ſo that the Land may appear dry, where the Water or Sea was before, and ſo a new Land may ſeem to be generated.

There are a ſevenfold Tract of *waters*, *viz.* 1. the *Ocean*, 2. *Gulphs* or *Bays* of the *Ocean*, 3. *Streights*, 4. *Rivers*, 5. *Lakes*, 6. *Pools*, and 7. *Mariſhes*. A Sevenfold Tract of Waters.

1. *Mariſhes* may be exſiccated or drained either by ſubduction of the *water*, or by exſiccation of the *earth*, as none can doubt; for in many *Regions* the *Soil* is fruitful where there were *Mariſhes* ſome years ſince, as in *Weſtphalia*, *Gelderland*, *Brabant*, *Holland*, *Muſcovia*.

2. The ſame is the account of *Pools*, ſeeing that they differ not much from *Mariſhes*.

Propoſition V.

Rivers leave their Channel or Shoar, (that is, part of their Channel) and afford new Land.

1. If that they carry much *Terreſtrial matter*, *Sand*, or *Gravel* with them, which ſinketh to the bottom, in progreſs of they time ſo augment the *Altitude* of the *Channel*, that it is no more depreſſed than that place from whence the *water* floweth from the vicine *earth*; but if that that matter ſinketh into one place in part of the *Channel*, it will ſeparate one part, which then at length will be dried up. Rivers quit their Shoar, and afford new Land.

2. If that the *River* take another *Channel*, whether it be done by *Art* or *Nature*, and a violent cauſe, as by *Wind*, *Inundation*, or the like.

3. If the *Springs* of the *Rivers* be obſtructed, or ceaſe to ſend forth *water*, the *earth* being fallen in or condenſated, or a great quantity of *Sand* being driven by the *winds* into the *Fountains* or adjacent places.

Examples of *Rivers* whoſe *Channels* are exſiccated at this time, either in whole, or in part, are every where obvious in *Writers*, yet not of great *Rivers*, but of ſmall, or of the parts of any great *Rivers*: So a *Channel* of an *Arm* of the *Rhine*, which flowing by *Leyden*, flowed in times paſt into the *German Ocean*, now for ſome Ages deſerted by the *water*, at this day is *land*, the *Rhine* ſtagnating between *Leyden* and the *Vicus Cattorum*.

The *Shoars* are uncovered from the *waters* of *Rivers*, and that ſome *Rivers* run in a more narrow *Channel* than they did formerly, is manifeſt from many examples, and from thence that ſome at this day are not *Navigable*, which formerly were, may eaſily be collected; the *Altitude* of the *water* being diminiſhed, and none at all to be left in their *Channel*, at ſome time or other, as in the River *Scaldis*: Therefore *Governours* of *Commonwealths* have a great care that the *Mud* and *Sediments* be drawn from out the *Channels* of *Rivers*, that they may remain *navigable*, as is ſeen in many places.

But great *Rivers* cannot be dried up or changed into *land*; except in many *ages*, becauſe that many leſſer *Rivers* flowing from divers parts, make them, (of which though ſome may be dried up, or change their courſe, yet all do not ſuffer the ſame, except in a long ſpace of time) and the *Channel* is deeper. But one heap or ridge of *Sand* may cauſe the River to run through another *Channel*, and the former to be dried up, yet it taketh not away the *River*, except the *Fountains* or *Branches* of it be obſtructed: Therefore it is true, that neither the *Nile*, *Tanais*, *Albis*, or the *Rhine*, or other *Rivers*, always flowed, or ſhall perpetually flow, but that there was *earth* before, and ſhall be afterwards where they now flow.

Propoſition VI.

Lakes are dried up and changed into Land.

Lakes dried up and changed into Land.

1. If that a *Lake* be conſtituted from *Rivers* that flow in, that mutation is made by the abduction, withdrawing, or ceſſation of the *River*, and alſo by evaporation.

2. If that a *Lake* receiveth *waters* by a *ſubterraneous paſſage* from the *Ocean* or *Sea*, there will be a mutation of that *Lake* after that thoſe *ſubterraneous paſſages* are obſtructed; and ſo *Lakes* are firſt changed into *ſtanding Pools* and *Mariſhes*, then at length into dry *Land*. *It is evident*, ſaith *Ariſtotle*, *that becauſe a force of* waters *hath brought in* Mud, *or ſomething of that ſort*, (he ſpeaketh of Lakes made of *Rivers*) *therefore ſtanding Pools are made*, *and the* earth *is dry*, *and that their* water *being left and ſtanding*, *in ſucceſſion of time it is exſiccated*, *and altogether vaniſheth*. So the *Lands* that touch upon the Lake *Mæotis*, by the Soil brought down by the *Rivers*, are increaſed ſo much, that *Ships* now, far leſs then thoſe about 60 *years* ſince, for *traffick* ſake, enter into it. There are many examples found of ſmall *Lakes* changed into dry *Land*, eſpecially in *Holland*.

Propoſition VII.

Streights are exſiccated and changed into Iſthmuſſes or Continents.

Streights

That happeneth, when that by reaſon of the continual ſinking of the *Terreſtrial matter* made in a long time, the channel of the *Streight* is become ſo high, that it denieth a paſſage to the *Sea*.

So it is very probable that the *Iſthmus* between *Africa* and *Aſia*, was a *Streight*, by which the *Mediterranean* and *Red-ſea* were conjoyned, as we ſhall ſhew in the following *Propoſition*. In many *Streights* at this day, the *Altitude* of the *Sea*, and the *Altitude* of the *Channel* is found leſſer than in former time; which is a certain token that thoſe *Streights* ſhall have no *water* in them in the time to come, and ſhall be changed into a dry *Iſthmus*. So the *Streight* through which the *Atlantick Ocean* maketh a *Gulph*, which the *Hollanders* called *Snyder-zee*, and the *Texell*, at this day receiveth no larger landing *Ships*, and the depth of the *Sea* is every year found leſſer, and the *Land* higher; therefore where the *water* is at the *Texell*, there, after ſome Ages, will be dry *Land*. Concerning the *Ulier*, the ſame in time to come will alſo happen.

Propoſition VIII.

The Bays or Gulphs which the Ocean maketh between the Mid-lands, in courſe of time do become dry places.

Bays or Gulphs in time do become dry Land.

This is done by a double cauſe; 1. If that the *Streight*, by which the *Bay* is conjoyned to the *Ocean*, becometh an *Iſthmus*, or elſe be ſtopped by *Sand* and *Gravel*, which is done in progreſs of time, as we have ſaid in the preceding *Propoſition*: For by this cauſe the *Bay* of the *Ocean*, and a part or member of it ſhall be cut off from the *body*, and ſhall become a *Lake*; and then a ſtanding *Pool* and *Mariſh*, and by exſiccation become *earth*, and no *water* ſhall be ſeen there.

2. If that the very *Channel* of the *Bay* become higher by reaſon of the *Rivers* flowing into it, and carrying *Sand* along with it, that it in time cannot receive the *Sea*; ſo by degrees the *Sea* will recede from the ſhoars of that *Bay*.

Therefore the *Mediterranean*, the *Baltick*, the *Red*, *Perſian*, and other *Seas* that are *Bays* of the *Ocean*, will ceaſe in time to be *Seas*, and will be changed into *Lands*, which ſhall be fully proved in the following *Propoſition*.

Pro-

Proposition IX.

The Ocean forsaketh some Shoars or Coasts, so that it becometh Land, where the Ocean formerly was.

That happeneth for these causes; 1. If that the force of *water* be broken at the *shoars* by *Rocks*, here and there on the Coasts or Clifts in the Sea: for that force being broken, the *Terrestrial parts* of the *water* subside and sink, and augment the *Altitude* of the banks of *Sand*; whence it cometh to pass, that the *impetus* of the *Ocean* is more and more broken, and therefore more *Terrestrial* matter subsideth: so that the *ridges* being augmented, they exclude the *Ocean*, or make the Channel more shallow. 2. It conduceth much to the Augmentation of the *shoars*, if that the shoars be *sandy* and *stony*, that the *Ocean* runing by, can separate or take away little with it: so that when it can take away nothing, it always leaveth some *particles*, that in progress of time the *shoars* become more high, and force or stop the *Ocean* from its accustomed place. 3. If that another adjacent *shoar* hath less solid Earth, that is light and full of *Caverns*: for the *Ocean* carrieth the dissolved and broken parts of *Earth* to the vicine *shoars*. 4. If that great *Rivers* discharge themselves by the shoar into that *Sea*: for these *Rivers* carrying with them much *Sand* and *Mud*, or *Gravel*, when that they arrive to the *mouth* and *shoar*, where they endeavour to exonerate themselves into the *Sea*, they leave it, partly because the *Channel* is there more broad, and partly, because that the *Sea* resisteth the flux of them: and this is chiefly observed in *Regions*, which *Rivers* overflow every year. 5. If that frequent *Winds* blow from the Sea to the *shoar*, and the *shoar* be rocky and firm, not *sandy*. 6. If that the *flux* of the Sea be swift and vehement, and the *reflux* slow and gentle; for the gentle *reflux* taketh not away the matter that the swift *flux* brought, but suffereth it to sink. If that the *shoar* descendeth obliquely into the Sea for a long space, and bend not down directly and perpendicularly: for so the violence of the Sea decreaseth, and leaveth the matter behind.

Where the Ocean formerly was, is now Land, by its forsaking the shoars.

There are many places of the *Earth*, which it is evident were formerly taken up by the *Ocean*. Where *Ægypt* is, in time past was the *Sea*, as is proved by the testimony of the *Ancients*, and by Experience at this day: For the *Nile* flowing from the remote Regions of *Æthiopia*, and every *year* entring the *Channel*, where it swelleth, it expandeth it self through all *Ægypt*, where, when the force of the River ceaseth, the *Mud* sinketh, and also the *Terrestrial matter*, which the swift course of the River brought in; and so *Ægypt* becometh higher. And before that so much matter was brought in by the *Nile*, then the Sea covered the Land of *Ægypt*; but now the *Sea* is not admitted, by reason of the height. Of this, *Aristotle* and Others are *Witnesses*; his words are these, *This place, and the whole Region of* Ægypt, *which was only made by the River, seemeth always to become more dry; and because that the* Marishes *by degrees drying up the adjacent places, began to be inhabited, the length of time obliterated the beginning of it; therefore all the* mouths *of the* Nile, *except that of* Canopus, *seem to be made by the Industry of Man, and not by the River.* Moreover, all *Ægypt* anciently consisted of a City called *Thebes*, as is very manifest; which *Homer* also declareth, who flourished (as I have said) after this Mutation: For he maketh mention of that place, as if that *Memphis* as yet had no Being, or at least not so big. *Seneca* here explaineth it more clearly: *All* Ægypt, saith he, *is made up of Mud; for (if that we may credit* Homer) Pharos *was so far from the* Continent, *as that a* Ship *with a full spread* Sail *could hardly measure or encompass it in an whole day; but it is now adjoyned to the* Continent: *for the* Nile *flowing muddy and troubled, and drawing much Mud with it, and so adding to it the former* Lands, *hath made* Ægypt *larger by an Annual increase. Hence the soil is muddy and fat, neither hath it any Intervals in it, but hath increased to a solidity.*

The Land of *Ægypt* cauled by the *Nile*.

Ganges;

The Rivers *Ganges* and *Indus*, by their Inundations, both cauſe alſo Land.

Ganges, and *Indus* in *India*, both famous Rivers, have cauſed the ſame by their Inundations that the *Nile* hath; alſo *Rio de la Plata* in *Brazil*. And it is probable, that *China* was generated, or at leaſt augmented after the ſame mode, by reaſon that a violent River, which they call the *Yellow River*, flowing from *Tartary* into *China*, often overflowing (although not in an Anniverſary time,) hath ſo much *Sand* and *Gravel*, that it maketh the third part of its *water*.

Theſe *Examples* demonſtrate the cauſe laid down in the fourth place, *viz.* why Rivers ſhould cauſe the Sea to forſake the *Shoar*: but the *Sea* it ſelf is alſo oftentimes the cauſe of its departure in divers Regions, *viz.* whilſt that it carrieth and layeth down the matter, by which the *Channel* and *Shoar* acquire the greater Altitude, and admit not the approach of the Sea: ſo *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Gelderland* were made; for that the *Ocean* in time paſt poſſeſſed theſe Countries, is known both from Ancient *Hiſtories* or *Monuments*, as alſo from the quality of the *Soil* it ſelf. The *ſhells* of *Fiſhes*, found on the *Clifts* or higher parts of *Gelderland*, not far from *Noviomagus*, do ſufficiently teſtifie the ſame; as alſo *ſhrubs* and *ouzey* matter found in the profundity of the *ſoil*: Add, that the *Sea* is higher than the *Land* of theſe Regions, and hath overflowed it, and would cover it again, if that it were not obſtructed by banks of *Sands* and *Ramparts*. Yet there are ſome that ſay, they ſuppoſe that *Holland* and *Zeland* were brought from the *Rhine* and the *Moſa*; which is not improbable.

Propoſition X.

To ſhew the Generation of Sandy-banks in the Sea, and elſewhere.

The generation of Sandy banks.

We term thoſe banks of *Sand*, that are elevated above the *Channel* of the River to that height, that they hinder the paſſage of Ships. Neither do they differ from *Rocks*, but that their parts do cohere and are condenſated; but the *Sand-banks* do not conſiſt of parts very coherent. But theſe words are oftentimes confounded.

The *Sand-banks* do either lie in the *Channels* of Rivers, (as many are in the *Wolga*, and the *Albis*,) or at the *mouths* of Rivers, (which is frequent, as in the *Wolga*, and the *Albis*) or on the *Sea-ſhoar*, or amidſt *Seas*. The mode of the generation is the ſame, by which we have ſaid in the foregoing *Propoſitions*, that the *Channels* of Rivers are dried, and the *Sea* forſaketh the *ſhoar*; for ſo oftentimes it cometh to paſs, that the *Ocean*, before that it leaveth part of the *Earth* altogether, firſt generateth this ridge of *Sand* not far from the *ſhoar*, and ſo by degrees retreateth back, and theſe banks become parts of the *Continent*. After the ſame mode it hapneth in the *Channels* of Rivers, before that they are wholly dried and forſaken by the *water*. The moſt frequent cauſe is, when Rivers are augmented by *rain*, or diſſolved *ſnow*, and ſo run violently; for then where their motion is more vehement, and *Channel* more narrow, they eat off the *mud* and *ſand* from the *ſhoars* or ſome *banks*; alſo the ſubſtance of the *bottom* is advanced and lifted up, and is carried by the impetuoſity of the *River*, until it come to a more large and ample *Channel*, and be removed from the Fountain or cauſe of abundancy of *water*; for here the vehemency of the *motion* is remiſs, and then the *Terreſtrial parts* ſubſide, and *Sand-banks* are generated: of which, many are found in places where there are broad *Rivers*, but none almoſt in narrow.

Neither is there any miſchief, which taketh away more ſplendor from the moſt flouriſhing and rich *Empories* or places of *trade*, without any hope of recovery, or bringeth greater detriment to Ships. That we may paſs over thoſe Ancient *Cities*, now for many Ages buried in oblivion, we have Examples before our eyes of *Stavoren* in *Friezland*, *Armuyen* in *Zeiland*, of *Dort* in *Holland*, *Antwerp* in *Brabant*, and *Stade* in the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*.

Nothing took away the power of *Traffick* from theſe *Cities*, (which was the cauſe of all their *ſplendor* and *riches*) but the banks of *Sand* ariſing in their Rivers, or the Neighbouring Seas.

Neither

Neither is there almoſt any *Empory* that is Maritimate, that is free from the fear of theſe *Sand-banks*. Thoſe that are in the *Albis* or the *Elbe*, have deſtroyed many *Hamburgian* Ships, that have eſcaped the grand ſtorms of the *Ocean*. The ſame is manifeſt in others, to him that conſidereth, eſpecially in the *Texel* and *Ulie* of *Amſterdam*.

They are diſcovered in a great number on the *Sea-coaſts* of *Flanders* and *Friezland*, and the ſuff of the Sea going down, many of them are diſcovered to be part of the Continent; for the Channel interceding hath then little *water*, and admitteth of no *ſailing*. The famous, or rather infamous amongſt *Mariners*, by reaſon of *Shipwrack*, are thoſe that are found in a great number in one part or place of the Sea. They are theſe; 1. The *Sand-banks* of *Brazil*, *Abrolhos de Braſilia*, *Het riff van Braſilian*, alſo *de Droogte van Braſil*. They lie from the Coaſt of *Brazil* for the ſpace of 70 *miles*, which the Mariners that ſail to the *Indies*, ought to avoid with great diligence, whilſt that to ſhun the calm of *Guinea*, they ſail towards *Brazil*: yet they come as near to thoſe *Sands* as they may, that they may have the greater *Wind*; but they muſt be cautious, that they be not carried between *Brazil* and the *Sands*. 2. The *Sands* of St. *Ann*, not far from *Guinea*, ſix *degrees* at the elevation of the *North Pole*. Ships being carried upon theſe, come not off without great danger and labour, and are detained for many daies, when that *Seamen* ſuppoſe that they have paſſed beyond them: For theſe *Sands* are not continual, but they are disjoyned by broad and deep *Whirlpits* or *Gulphs*; ſo that in a ſmall diſtance, here is a depth of about eight *fathom*, by and by about *two*. 3. The *Sands* between the Iſle of *Madagaſcar* and *Arabia*, called *Baixos de India*; they are ſharp *Rocks* of *Coral* of divers Colours. 4. The *Sands* of *China*. 5. The *Sands* of *Flanders*. But more may be ſeen in *Geographical Sea-charts*. We have declared one mode of the generation, by which theſe *ſands* have an Original, by ſinking of the Sandy matter, which the Sea carrieth with it. The ſecond mode to be adjoyned to this is, by which ſuch Sands can, or may have a Being; to wit, if that the Sea overflow the Earth, in which the *hills* and *riſings* are *ſandy*, (for then thoſe *hills* are, or ſhall be called, *Sand-hills*:) they are diſcovered in a large tract; but the Land it ſelf is more low.

If therefore the Sea by an irruption, ſhould inundate and cover thoſe *Lands*, then thoſe *Hills* would be *Sand-banks*: ſo we muſt judge of others.

Therefore at the Mouths of Rivers, *Sand-banks* are moſt frequent, becauſe the *Channel* is there broader, and therefore the *impetus* of the efflux of *Rivers* is there diminiſhed; and therefore the matter ſinketh, which the violent *Flood* brought with it: Alſo the *waves* of the *Ocean* repel the *Waters* flowing from the Mouths of the *Rivers*, whence all the force ceaſeth.

And it is worth our labour to diſtinguiſh, and conſider theſe two modes of the generation of *Sand-banks*.

Propoſition XI.

To conjecture, whether the Sand-hills, *which lye in the* Sea, *not far from the* Continent, *ſhall be part of this future Continent.*

Of Sand-banks or Hills in the Sea, not far from the Land.

We have ſaid in the former *Propoſition*, that theſe *Sand-banks* are generated two manner of ways; one truly by the ſubſidency or ſinking of the *Sand* into the Sea, the other by denomination, *viz.* all *Hill*, the *water* encompaſſing and overflowing the *Earth*. If that they are generated by the former mode, and are found to increaſe more and more, it is a ſign that they will joyn to the *Continent* of the *Earth*; that is to ſay, that the *Channel* of the Sea will be dried between theſe *Sand-banks* and the adjacent *Land*: But if that the *Sand-banks* are generated after the ſecond mode, then we may conjecture, that thoſe *Sand-banks* will not ſo eaſily be conjoyned to the adjacent *Earth*; but that the Sea rather will farther overſpread the Land.

Propoſition

Propoſition XII.

Iſlands are produced in the Sea *and* Rivers *after the ſame mode that* Sand-banks *are; yea Iſlands may proceed from* Sand-banks, *yet they are alſo made after another mode.*

Of the generation of *Iſlands.*

For if that in any part of the Sea, ſo great a quantity of *Sand, Gravel, Mud,* and *Ouze*, be aggregated in progreſs of time, that it becometh higher than the Sea, it will become an *Iſland*; which is the firſt Mode. Then by the ſecond *mode*, If that the Sea breaking into the Land, overfloweth only the lower parts, but not the higher, and the *Hills*, thoſe will be *Iſlands*. And by this latter Mode it is probable, that thoſe *Iſlands* were generated, or had original, which ariſe to an huge *Altitude*; as St. *Helena*, *Aſcenſion*, and the like; eſpecially thoſe which are *rocky* and *ſtony*.

Sicilia ſeparated from *Italy* by the Sea.

Hitherto appertain *Iſlands*, which the Sea hath cut off from the prominent Lands: So *Writers* teſtifie, and the *Poets Verſes* are known, that *Sicilia* was ſeparated from *Italy* by the violence of the Sea.

By the firſt Mode, *viz.* the ſubſidency and congregation of many *Terreſtrial particles*, the Iſlands of *Zeland*, *Denmark*, and *Japan*, had their original. The ſame ſeemeth to have been the original of the *Molucco* Iſles: for if that you dig on the Plain to a ſmall depth, you ſhall meet with an abundance of *ſand* and *ſhells*.

Other Iſles ſeparated from the Continent by the Sea.

The Inhabitants of *Ceiland* relate, that the *Iſle* was ſeparated from the procurrent of *India*, and it is very probable ſo. The Iſle of *Sumatra* is ſuppoſed formerly to have been united to *Malacca*.

The *Iſles* of the *Maldives* in times paſt was were ſaid to adhere to *India*, and were a continuous Continent; yet at this day they are far in the Sea, and divided into an innumerable many *Iſles*, (eſteemed about 1100,) neither ought we to doubt of it, ſeeing that narrow *Euripuſes* paſs through every two of theſe *Maldivian Iſles*, ſo that in ſome places they exceed not *four* or *five* Ells; but in progreſs of time many of them unite into one, the *Euripus* being diminiſhed, and all of them at length will conjoyn in one oblong *Iſland*. Yea all the *Oriental Iſles*, ſcituate between the Continent of *Aſia* and the Land of *Magellan* in a great number, ſeem to ariſe from the violence of the *Ocean*, the Land being ſeparated: For the *Pacifick Ocean*, in the *Torrid Zone*, is moved by a perpetual motion and force from the Weſt to the Eaſt, that is, from *America* to thoſe *Oriental Iſles:* Moreover, a perpetual *Wind* greatly augmenteth the violence of the *Ocean* towards that *Oriental quarter*. Therefore it is not improbable, ſeeing that all theſe *Iſlands* are in the *Torrid Zone*, but that *Aſia* formerly did adhere to the *South-land*, or that of *Magellan*, in a continual tract of Land: then at length the violence of the *Ocean* eat off, and ſeparated ſometimes here and ſometimes there, until that a way being made on every ſide, it was conjoyned to the *Indian Ocean*, and made ſo many *Iſlands*, as that we ſtand amazed at this day, in that *quarter* being diſtant a very ſmall ſpace, *Java*, *Celebes*, *Borneo*, *Madera*, *Amboina*, *&c.*

Concerning the *Iſlands* in the Gulph of *Mexico*, as alſo in the Streights of *Malacca* we conjecture altogether the ſame.

The *Iſles* of the *Ægean* Sea, whether they had a Being from the divulſion made by or from the Sea (the Sea flowing from the *Euxine* Sea, and the *Mediterranean* raiſing up of contrary floods,) or after the former *mode*, by a ſubſidency of the *Terreſtrial matter*, which the *Propontis* had carried from the *Euxine* Sea, as yet I doubt: It is more probable, that a divulſion was made; and peradventure that famous Inundation of *Deucalion*, here alſo exerciſed its force. It is certain, that the Iſle *Eubœa*, at this day called *Negropont*, did formerly adhere to *Greece*, as Authors of no mean Credit do relate; for ſo ſmall an *Euripus* interfloweth, that it may be joyned by a Bridge.

We

We ſhall ſhew, that *Iſlands* may be made of *Sand-banks* by many Examples. So the Iſlands in the River *Nile*, and in the River of St. *Laurence*, were formerly *Sand-banks*. *Rivers* make Iſlands after another manner, when that they ſend forth a branch, which they receive into themſelves in another place, as may be ſeen in the *Wolga*, *Tanais*, and other places. That this was not done by Nature, but by the Induſtry of Man, we ought not to queſtion: the River *Ob* doth the ſame.

Theſe two Rivers, *Rengo* and *Coanza*, made the Iſle *Loanda*, ſcituated on the Coaſt of *Africa*, which exonerated themſelves into the *Sea* in that place; by reaſon that they bring great ſtore of *Mud* and *Rubbiſh* with them, they falling with an exceeding force from Mountainous places, ſo that they left this, and as yet the ſame in their Inlets, and ſo in courſe of time made the Iſland *Landa*; firſt made a *Sand-bank*, now moſt fertile and likewiſe populous: And ſo we ſuppoſe that many *Sand-banks* formerly made the *Iſlands*, ſcituated at the Coaſts; although that ſome were alſo cauſed by a diviſion made by the Sea, as *Norway*. And it is more probable, that this is the mode of generation of *Iſlands* in ſtony and rocky Iſles: But in the *Indian* Sea, *Iſlands* may have an original both by diviſion and ſubſidence, or ſinking of matter; becauſe that whilſt it forceth away, it alſo eateth between the middle of the *Earth*, which at length it putteth in another place; unto this many furious *Winds*, which are very frequent in the *Pluvial months* from *May* to *September*, do much conduce: For by theſe the *Sea* is mightily troubled, ſo that the *Sand* and *gravel* is ſeparated from its bottom, and from other Regions, which matter is forced on the Coaſts of *India*. So the Mouths of the Port of *Goa*, by the violence of the *Winter-winds* (from *May* to *September*) are ſo obſtructed with congeſted heaps of *Sand*, that they hardly afford a paſſage to ſmaller *Veſſels*. So theſe heaps of *Sand* ſhut up the Port of *Cocin*, on thoſe Months, ſo that neither ſmall nor great *Veſſels* can paſs.

For a continual *Rain* on the Mountain *Gatis*, and a frequent *Ecnephias* or impetuous wind from a *Cloud* breaking forth with an abundance of *water* from the *Clouds*, which are beheld to hang as it were on the top of *Gatis*, ſend forth ſuch an abundance of *water*, and with that violence, that it carrieth much *Sand* with it to the *ſhoar*, where the *Ocean* reſiſteth; which *Sand*, when that the *Winter* endeth, is taken away by the *Ocean*, and the *Ports* are opened.

There are ſome *Lands* ſo nigh the *ſhoar*, that the flux of the *Sea* doth make them *Iſlands*, and in the reflux they are in appearance part of the *Continent*; and if that the interpoſed Channel acquire a greater *Altitude* in progreſs of time, at length the flux of *water* is excluded, and the *Iſlands* become part of the Continent without reciprocal mutation.

And alſo the *Nile* overflowing *Ægypt* every *year*, cauſeth the *Cities* and *Hills* of *Ægypt* then to ſeem *Iſlands*: So the River *Wolga* doth ſo increaſe in the Months of *May* and *June*, that it covereth the *Sands* and *Iſlands*, and many of the *Iſles* that adjoyn unto *India* become *Sands* in the *Pluvial Months*, where that the *Nile* and the *Ganges* do overflow the *Regions*.

Propoſition XIII.

There is yet another Mode, beſides the two already related, by which Iſlands have a Being or Original; viz. for the coherent Earth ſuddenly to be carried from the bottom of the Sea to the ſuperficies.

Another Mode by which Iſlands have an Original.

Others ſuppoſe this Mode, and that not undeſervedly, to have proceeded from the fabulous *Grecians* and *Poets*: But *Seneca* a grave Author relateth, that the Iſland *Thracia* in his time ſprang up in the *Ægean Sea*, whilſt that the *Mariners* looked on. Although therefore that very few Examples of ſuch productions of Iſlands are to be found, yet it ought not to be ſuppoſed impoſſible; for it may be, that a *porous*, *ſpongy*, *ſulphureous Earth* doth exiſt (as there is a various difference and mixture of light *Earths*,) which even now hath increaſed to a notable *altitude*, yet ſo, as that it yet remaineth beneath the *ſu-*

ſuperficies of the *water*. Now, if that ſuch a *Sand* or *Earth* adhere leſs firm at the bottom of the *Sea*, it may be ſeparated by the violence of the *Sea*, becauſe that it is little lighter than the *water*, or almoſt of the ſame levity, therefore it will aſcend to the *ſuperficies* of the *water*, and ſuddenly an *Iſland* will ſeem to ſpring up: or a *Spirit* or *Wind* included in the *bowels* of the *Earth*, without any violence of the *Sea*, and endeavouring to break forth, may ſend forth ſuch an Iſland above the *Water*: for great is the force of *Winds* included in the *Earth*, and requiring a larger ſpace, as is evident from *Earthquakes*. By which it is manifeſt, that ſometimes *Mountains* are ſent forth of the *Earth*, and ſometimes ſwallowed up: the ſame is manifeſt from *Warlike Mines*, where the *Wind* breaketh up great *Towers* and *Walls* and carrieth them into the *Air*.

If that therefore ſuch an *Iſland* of a ſudden ſpringing in the *Sea* adhere to the bottom of the *Sea*, we muſt neceſſarily ſay, that it was forced upwards by the violence of ſome *ſubterraneous Wind*: As ſome write, that *Mountains* ſometimes are thruſt forth of the *Earth*; but if that it no longer adhere to the bottom, as well the *Wind*, as the violence of the *water*, may ſeparate it from the bottom; ſo that at length, by its own levity, it is carried upwards, to the *ſuperficies*.

Propoſition XIV.

Whence another doubt doth ariſe, *viz.* whether that there be certain *Iſlands* that ſwim on the *Sea*, as *Thales* ſuppoſed the whole *Earth* to ſwim on the *Ocean*? For the Opinion of *Thales* it is ſufficiently refuted, ſeeing that the *Channel* of the *Sea* is found continuous to the *Land*: but reaſon perſwades us, that there may be *ſwiming Iſlands*, if that the Land be light and *ſulphureous*. *Seneca* addeth Experience; for he ſaith, *that he ſaw the Iſle* Catylias *ſwiming*, *which had Trees, and brought forth Graſs and Herbs*; *that the* water *ſuſtained it*; *and that it was not only driven hither and thither by the* Wind, *but alſo by the* Air; *and that it continued not in one ſtation either by Day or by Night*. Moreover there was another Iſland in the Lake *Vadimon*: another in the Lake *Station*. So the Ancients relate, that *Delos* and all the *Cycſades* formerly ſwam in the *Sea*. Neither may you object, why do not thoſe *Iſlands* ſwim at this day? For unto this the Anſwer is eaſie, That ſuch a *ſwiming* cannot continue long; for ſeeing that thoſe *Iſlands* almoſt touch at the bottom of the *Sea*, whilſt that they are moved hither and thither, they are carried more or leſs elevated to the *Sands* or *Channels*, eſpecially if that they come in the midſt between two *Sands*, that motion is ſtopped, and other collected *Earths* are united with this *Sandbank* or *Channel*, and ſo of *ſwiming Iſlands* they become firm. In *Fondura*, a Country in *America*, at this day is a Lake in which are many *Hills*, which are moved to and fro with the *wind*.

In the great *Lake* of *Scotland*, called *Loumond*, is an *Iſle* that ſwimeth, and is moved about, although that it be apt for Paſturage, as *Boetius* writeth.

Hitherto we have treated of the generation of the *Lands*, or of the Acid part of the *Earth* that is extant on the *ſuperficies*: we ſhall now conſider how the *Ocean* and *Waters* may change their places, and poſſeſs new.

Propoſition XV.

Rivers poſſeſs certain tracts of Land, which they poſſeſſed not before, and that for divers reaſons.

Certain tracts of Land which Rivers poſſeſs, which they poſſeſſed not before.

1. When that they firſt ariſe from their *Fountains*, and receive a *Channel* either from *Nature* or by *Art*, of which we have ſpoken in the *fifteenth Chapter*.

2. If that a River maketh another *Channel* for it ſelf, or ſendeth forth a braneh from it ſelf; which is moſt commonly done by men, *viz.* that they may bring part of the *Rivers* unto *Cities*, or into another *River*; Examples of which we have alledged in the forecited *Chapter*.

3. If

3. If that *Rivers* more and more poſſeſs the *banks* in progreſs of time, which hapneth, 1. If that the *Channel* become higher from the ſinking down of the *Earth* or *Sand*. 2. If that it eateth off the ſides of the Bank by its ſwift courſe. 3. If that it be augmented by another *River*, and by an abundance of *Rain*, or an *Exhydria* or impetuous *wind*, accompanied with a mighty fall of *water*.

4. If that they overflow the *Earth*, which if not going back again, but do more and more augment, they become *Lakes*; or if they return to their Ancient *Channel*, the *water* being effuſed into the *Fields*, becometh a *Marſh*, if that there be great abundance of it.

Corollary. It is probable therefore then, that there was a time in which thoſe tracts of *Land*, which now the *Rhine*, *Elbe*, and the *Nile* poſſeſs; as alſo other *Rivers*, were dry, and poſſeſſed by the *Earth*.

Propoſition XVI.

Lakes, Mariſhes, and ſtanding-Pools, occupy parts of the Earth that before they poſſeſſed not.

1. When that they firſt ſpring up, and are augmented in progreſs of time; of which we have ſpoken in the *fifteenth Chapter*.

Lakes, Mariſhes, and Pools, poſſeſs parts of the Earth, which formerly they did not.

2. If that abundance of *Rain* fall.

3. If that *Rivers* bring ſtore of water with force into the *Lakes*.

4. If that the *Channel* become more high.

5. If that the *Lakes* being agitated by often and more vehement *floods*, by degrees do more eat the *banks* and cover the *land* with *water*. So the Lake of *Harlem* within *thirty* or *forty years*, hath extended beyond its former Bank, about the ſpace of the twentieth part of a *mile*.

Corollary. Therefore it is probable, that there was a time when thoſe tracts of *land*, which now the Lake *Zaire*, *Lemanus*, *Parina*, *Harlem*, *Mæotis*, or the *Mariſhes* of *Weſtphalia*, and all others formerly poſſeſſed, were dry *Lands*.

Propoſition XVII.

The Ocean poſſeſſeth part of the Land, which formerly it did not poſſeſs.

This hapneth after various manners; 1. When that breaking through the middle of the *land* it maketh *Streights* and *Gulphs*; as the *Mediterranean*, the *Arabian*, that of *Bengala*, *Camboja*, and ſuch like: So the *Streight* between *Sicily* and *Italy*; between *Ceilan* and *India*, between *Greece* and *Eubœja*, between *Manilla* and *Magellan*, and alſo the *Daniſh*, &c. Neither is it improbable, but that the *Atlantick Ocean* was ſo generated, and that *America* was ſo divided from the Old World, or at leaſt from *Europe*, which ſome do the more eaſily embrace, that they may thence only deduct the Original of the *American Nations* from *Adam*. Indeed the *Ægyptian Prieſts* related unto *Solon*, about ſix hundred *years* before *Chriſt*, (as you may ſee in the Dialogue of *Plato*, termed *Timons*,) that there was formerly oppoſite to the *Herculean Streight* of *Gibralter*, an *Iſle* bigger than *Aſia* and *Europe* together, called *Atlantis*, and that part of it afterwards by a great *Earthquake*, and a great *deluge* of one *day* and one *night*, was ſwallowed up in the *Ocean*. From which Narration we may collect, that in former times amongſt the *Ægyptians* there was a fame, eſpecially amongſt thoſe that were Learned, of the ſeparation of *America* from our *World*, made many Ages before. But it is far more likely, that the North part of *America*, in which is *New France*, *New England*, *Canada*, and the like, did in former Ages adhere to *Ireland*. The *Ancients* write, that the *Streights* of *Gibralter* were dug through by *Hercules*.

Land poſſeſſed by the Ocean, which formerly it did not poſſeſs.

2. When with a violent *Wind* the *Ocean* is forced, and overfloweth the *land* by breaking through, or over the *banks* that are made by *Nature* and *Art*. There are many Examples of the *Inundations* of the *Ocean*; as formerly in *Theſſaly*, and not long ſince in *Friezland* and *Holſatia*.

3. When by reaſon of the ſame cauſes, it penetrateth the firm *Land*, and maketh *Iſlands*. By this Mode we have ſaid in the former *Propoſitions*, that it is likely that that *Sea* had its original which interfloweth between thoſe innumerable *Oriental Iſles*, and that which floweth between the *Maldivian Iſles* and *India*, and alſo between the Gulph of *Bengala* and *Camboja*.

4. When it by degrees eateth and conſumeth the *Coaſts* or *Shoars*, and ſo in progreſs of time covereth ſome parts of the *ſhoar* and of the adjacent *land*. So the *Baltick Sea* invaded the Coaſts of *Pomerania*, and deſtroyed the famous Town or Empory of *Vinetam*: ſo taking away the *Iſlands* from the Coaſt of *Norway*, it let in it ſelf between theſe *Iſles* and the *Continent*. So the *German Ocean* hath poſſeſſed the *ſhoar* of *Holland*, near the Village of the *Catti*, in a great ſpace of *Land*: ſo that the Ruins of the *Britiſh Tower*, formerly a *Fortreſs* or *Caſtle* of the *Romans*, now lieth inconſpicuous, being covered with *water* far from the *ſhoar* in the *Sea*. The *Ocean* hath taken from the North part of the *Iſland* of *Ceilan* the ſpace of 20 *miles*, ſo that at this day it is far leſſer than it was. And there are many more Examples of the like kind.

Corollary. From hence we may collect, that thoſe places of the *Earth*, where now the *Ocean* is, in times paſt were *Land*; and again ſhall be *land*, to wit, if that we do ſuppoſe, that the *earth* hath continued ſo many thouſand years, and ſhall yet continue. Concerning this Argument you may conſult *Ariſtotle* in the firſt Book of his *Meteors*, and the *twelfth Chapter*; and *Stevinus* in his *Geography*. If that you demand, how the *Ocean* ſhall occupy the place of *Mountains*, that then the Mountains ſhall not be covered by the *Sea*, but ſhall then become either *Rocks* or *Iſlands*, other *earth* being foreed unto them; that is, confirmed by the example of many *Iſlands*, yea almoſt of all; becauſe that Experience teſtifieth, that almoſt all *Iſles* have *Mountains* in the midſt, as *Ceilan*, *Sumatra*, *Java*: furthermore, ſome are nothing elſe but *Mountains*, as St. *Helena*, *Aſcenſion*, the *Heſperides*, and the like. Seeing therefore that thoſe places of the *Ocean* in which theſe *Iſles* lye, in Ages to come ſhall be, or already have been *land*, then indeed the *Mountains* of theſe *Iſles* ſhall be Mountains of the *Continent*.

Propoſition XVIII.

Whether it is poſſible, that the whole ſuperficies of the Earth ſhould become dry, or Land? Or, that it ſhould be all liquid or covered with water? That the moſt parts ſhould be of an Earthy ſuperficies at one time more than at another, or that more ſhould be covered with water.

Of the whole Superficies of the Earth, whether it may become all Land or all Water.

1. That ſometimes the *land* ſhould poſſeſs a greater part of the *ſuperficies* of the *Earth*, than at another. Alſo that which is a conſequence to the former, that *water* at one time ſhould poſſeſs the greater part of the *ſuperficies* of the *Earth*, more than at another, hath been ſufficiently ſhewed in the ſecond *Propoſition* of this *Chapter*.

2. Whether the *Water* or *Ocean* can cover the whole *Earth*, ſo that there ſhall be no *Earth* or *Iſland* above it, and ſo cauſe a Univerſal *flood*? Unto this I anſwer, That a mode may be conceived and explained, by which it may naturally be done; but yet by reaſon of the compaction of the *Lands*, and *Altitude* of the *Mountains*, it is ſcarcely probable that any ſuch thing will be. The *mode* by which it may be done, is the ſame with that explained in the ſecond *Propoſition*: For if that the *Ocean* continually eateth the *land* from the *ſhoar*, and layeth it down in the profoundeſt parts of its Channel, and do this in a perpetual courſe of time, then it ſhall take away all the Lands of the *ſuperficies*, or extant parts, and it ſelf ſhall cover all the *Earth*. And the *Mountains* ſhall either be made Rocks, or ſhall by degrees ſink and fall, their *Foundations* being conſumed by the vehement force of the *water*. But this may be done more eaſily, if that we will follow their opinion, who attribute a greater height to the *Ocean* than to the *Land*. But we have in the precedent diſcourſe ſufficiently confuted that opinion.

3. Whether

3. Whether that the *Land* can ſo occupy the whole *ſuperficies* of the *Earth*, ſo that all the *water* and the whole *Ocean* may be contained in the Caverns of the *Earth*, or in the *ſubterraneous paſſage*, and covered by the *Earth*? Unto this I anſwer after the ſame manner, that it is not impoſſible, and that a Mode may be conceived by which it may be done; but yet ſcarcely ever ſhall be. Now there is only one Mode to be conceived, *viz.* that if now there are or may be ſo many cavities within the depth of the *earth*, within the which the *Ocean* may be contained: for neither hath it been demonſtrated by any, as hitherto, that ſuch cavities are not in the depth of the *earth*; and if they be not, but that they may be done, 1. by the violence of the *earth*, and 2. by *ſubterraneous winds*.

Propoſition XIX.

Why, in the middle of the Ocean, no Iſlands are found, and no abundancy of Iſles, but moſt at great Continents, or great Iſlands?

Of the truth of this Propoſition we ought not to doubt, for experience manifeſtly proveth it. In the midſt of the vaſt *Pacifick Ocean*, between *Africa* and *Braſilia*, beſides the Iſle of *Sancta Helena*, and that of the *Aſcenſion*, few are found: but about the *ſhoars* of the *Continent*, or in the *Ocean*, not far from the *Coaſts* of the greateſt *Continents*, all *Iſlands* are (thoſe few only excepted which I have ſpoken of): this may eſpecially be taken notice of in thoſe numerous ones that we tearm troops of *Iſles*, which are all near the *Continent*. The troop of the *Iſles* of the *Ægean Sea* adjoyneth to *Europe* and *Aſia*; the *Heſperides* to *Africa*; the *Maldivian Iſles* to *India*; as alſo all the *Indian Iſles* between *Aſia* and the *South Continent*; only the *Flandrian Iſles*, or *Azores*, ſeem to be ſituated in the midſt of the *Ocean*, between the *old World* and *America*, although that they are more near to that than to this. No Iſles found in the middle of the Ocean.

The cauſe of this *Phenomenon* or *ſituation* of the *Iſlands* without doubt is, that they had a Being from the irruption of the *Ocean* into the *Continents*, by which violence the *Lands* of the *Continents* were ſeparated: but becauſe the *Altitude* of the *Ocean* was not ſo great, that it could cover all the Lands intercepted, thence here and there between the *Continents*, and at the *Continents*, troops of *Iſlands* did ariſe: alſo it is likely that ſome of them were generated by another mode, *viz.* becauſe the *Ocean* cannot carry the *Lands* ſeparated, and cut off any long ſpace with it, but ſuffereth them by degrees to ſubſide not a long diſtance from the *ſhoars*, which ſubſidency or ſinking continued for many Ages, at length cauſed *Iſles*: therefore in the middle of the *Ocean* are few *Iſlands*. 1. Becauſe that place is more remote from the *ſhoar* than that any of the eaten off parts ſhould be carried thither. 2. Becauſe that the commotion and force of the *water* is greater there, which moveth the *earth* of the *Channel*, or rather promoteth the depth, than ſuffereth *Iſlands* to be generated there. 3. Becauſe there are no *Continents* there, therefore neither can troops or heaps of *Iſlands* be according to the firſt *mode*, by which we have ſhewed ſuch heaps of *Iſles* to be produced; yet in times paſt, when that the middle of the *Ocean* was not where 'tis now, it is not unlikely that ſuch *Iſles* were here, and by degrees were ſwallowed by the *Ocean*.

OF

OF

Abſolute Geography.

SECT. V.

Containing an explication of the Atmoſphere, and the Winds. In three Chapters.

CHAP. XIX.

Of the Atmoſphere and Air.

Propoſition I.

From the parts of the Earth, as well dry as moiſt, or from the Earth and Water, vapours and fumes do continually exhale into that ſpace, which is about the Earth.

Of vapours and fumes.

THE Cauſe is twofold; firſt, the Celeſtial heat of the *Stars*, eſpecially the *Sun* and *Moon*. The other is a *Terreſtrial heat*, or *ſubterranean* or rather *terreſtrial fire*, or which is admixed with the parts of the *earth*: For we ſee that almoſt all *bodies*, the leaſt *fire* being moved towards them, ſend forth a fume. Seeing therefore that both the *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial heat* is naught elſe but a certain *fire*, therefore it is alſo neceſſary that vapours and fumes ſhould be advanced by it from the parts of the *earth*. So the truth of the *Propoſition* is evidenced *a priori*; Experience alſo confirmeth the ſame. For thoſe that travel in the night time, eſpecially when the *Moon* ſhineth, and that towards the *water*, diſcover many vapours to wander and be advanced about the Superficies of the earth. Alſo it is vulgarly known, that in the *day* the *Sun* doth raiſe many *vapours*: alſo when that a *miſt* ariſeth upwards, which is a certain token of *rain* to follow,

Pro-

Propoſition II.

The Atmoſphere is a ſpace about the whole earth, in which the exhalations raiſed from the earth are always preſent. And it is uncertain whether that anything or body elſe be contained in it beſides theſe exhalations.

Of the Atmoſphere.

It is alſo taken for the exhalations themſelves about the whole *earth*. There is no ſmall controverſie amongſt *modern Philoſophers*, concerning the *body* which conſiſteth about the *earth*. For many *Mathematicians* of ſound knowledge determine, that there is nothing beſides exhalations elevated from the earth, and therefore they take the *Atmoſphere* and *Air* for one and the ſame; and immediately after the *Atmoſphere*, place the *Ætherial ſubſtance*. But other *Philoſophers* ſuppoſe, that beſides theſe exhalations in the ſpace about the *earth*, that there is a certain peculiar and ſimple *body*, which they call *Air*, although that they freely grant, that exhalations may be changed into *Air*; and contrariwiſe into *clouds* and thick *vapours*. The ſame Perſons, after this *Air* even to the Lunary Orb, place another ſubtile thin body different from the *Æther*, which indeed they tearm *Fire*, but they confeſs that it is leſs properly done, and that it doth not agree with our fire; for it is a calid ſubſtance (not burning) dry and very ſubtile, not to cauſe the refractions of the *rayes* of the *Sun* and *Stars*, which yet they will have to be done in this *Air*. Thoſe being well conſidered, theſe two opinions of the *Philoſophers* ſeem rather to differ in *words* than in *matter* it ſelf. For as for the *Air*, becauſe that they grant it ſo groſs, that a refraction of *rayes* may be made in it, and that it may be generated from exhalations by a light mutation, the *Air* ſeemeth nothing elſe but a ſubtile exhalation, although it was not exhaled from the *earth*. As for the Sublunary *Fire*, when that they confeſs that it is ſo improperly tearmed, but they affirm, that it is ſo tenuous that it cauſeth no refraction of rayes; this ſeemeth little to differ from the *Æther*. We affirm therefore, that the *Atmoſphere* and *Air* are a body about the *earth*, on which the rayes falling are refracted, (laying aſide the controverſie whence this body hath its original) which definition agreeth with the former: For neither is it likely that any *exhalations* can be elevated from the *earth* ſo ſubtile, that they ſhould cauſe no refraction or impediment to the luminous rayes proceeding from the *Æther*: yet if that ſuch be granted, we cannot know their Altitude, and whether that they be excluded from the *Atmoſphere*; which yet if that any one will ſharply urge, ſuppoſing that the little *fires* or *rayes* caſt from the *Sun* on the *earth*, again recoil to the *Sun*; he will not deny but that the latter definition is commodious: Therefore the *Atmoſphere* and *Air* are naught elſe but a contexture of many ſmall bodies which adhere to the *earth*, as a *down* or *wool* circumveſteth a *Peach*.

Propoſition III.

Sometimes more, ſometimes leſſer exhalations are drawn from the earth, eſpecially in divers places.

Of exhalations

The cauſe is, 1. The various elevation of the *Sun* above the *Horizon*, or depreſſion beneath it. 2. The diverſity of the age of the *Moon*, and its elevation above the *Horizon*. 3. The riſing and ſetting of the other *Stars*, and their conſtitution above the *Horizon*. 4. The diverſity in the parts of the *earth* themſelves; for watery and humid places do more eaſily ſend forth vapours than earthy and dry.

Pro-

Propoſition IV.

The exhalations which conſtitute the Atmoſphere, are of a divers kind (eſpecially in ſundry Regions) viz. watery, ſaltiſh, earthy, ſulphureous, ſpirituous. The ſenſible compounded exhalations, or parts of the Atmoſphere are divers, viz. *mixed of ſimple particles.*

Of the exhalations which conſtitute the Atmoſphere.

The cauſe is, becauſe that in the parts of the *earth* ſuch *bodies* are of a divers ſort, and are advanced by *heat*, ſome more eaſily, and other ſome with greater difficulty. Concerning the earthy particles ſome one may doubt, becauſe that thoſe are ſcarcely apt to be elevated. 1. By reaſon of the ſmalneſs of their *duſts*, which are light; ſeeing that gravity is an affection of compacted *bodies*. 2. By admixture of *ſulphureous particles* which violently carry thoſe earthy ones with them.

Moreover, that there are *ſulphureous particles* in the *Air* is proved from the *fiery Meteors*, *Lightnings*, *Thunder*, and the like: yea, a *ſulphureous odor* or ſcent after *Thunder* and *Lightning* manifeſtly aſſerteth the ſame.

As for the *watery parts* we ought not to queſtion; for *ſaline* and *ſpirituous exhalations*, by reaſon of their tenuouſneſs, are eaſily exhaled from the *earth*. Little *Animals* generated in great number and abundance in the *Air*, confirm the ſame.

The *Ariſtotelians* divide *exhalations* into two kinds, to wit, *vapours* and *fumes*. *Vapours* are generated of *water*, and eaſily return into the ſame again. *Fumes* proceed from dry *bodies*. So *Sal Armoniac* vaniſheth into *ſmoak*, *fire* being placed under it. This alſo is the cauſe that in divers *Regions* a different *Air* is diſcovered. Alſo that it *raineth* in one place, and not in another.

Propoſition V.

The leaſt particles of the Air, and thoſe all inſenſible, repell or reflect the rayes as a Looking-glaſs, but ſome of the particles of the Air being ſenſible and compounded, do tranſmit many rayes, but reflect fewer; others, on the contrary, tranſmit fewer rayes, and reflect more.

The parts of the Atmoſphere.

Therefore the parts of the *Atmoſphere* are divided into thoſe that are opac and pellucid: theſe are thoſe that tranſmit many *rayes*, the former are thoſe that tranſmit fewer.

Therefore becauſe that the leaſt *particles* (both *water* and *earth*) being *Atoms*, are ſolid little *bodies* without any *pores*, ſo that they tranſmit no *rayes*, but repell them; becauſe that it is very probable that a perſpicuity, or a tranſmiſſion of *rayes* doth require *pores* orderly placed in a body, and empty little ſpaces.

But the parts of the *Air* or *Atmoſphere* compoſed of little *particles*, if that they ſhall have ordinate and many *pores*, they will be perſpicuous and tranſmit many *rayes*: but if that thoſe *particles* ſhall be compoſed or aggregated very confuſedly, they will tranſmit *rayes* without any *pores*; thence it cometh to paſs that the *Sun* diſcuſſing a thick cloudy opac *Air*, doth make it perſpicuous, to wit, more porous.

Now that the leaſt *particles* reflect *rayes*, is manifeſt from hence, that the *rayes* of the *Sun* in a moſt ſerene *Air* be admitted into an obſcure Chamber through a narrow hole, you will ſee manifeſtly from the *particles* flying in a great number in the *Air*, that the *rayes* are reflected to the *eye* as from a *glaſs*. Now ſeeing that thoſe *particles* are yet ſenſible, the ſame muſt be concluded concerning the leaſt *particles*, and thoſe that fly the ſenſe.

Now

Now thoſe, who will have humid attenuated vapours to be perſpicuous, but not dry ones and ſmoaks, they are refuted by experience and reaſon. By reaſon, becauſe that fumes and dry exhalations may be made equally ſubtile and porous, as thoſe that are watery; but they ſuppoſe that perſpicuity doth not conſiſt in the mode or reaſon of the pores, but in a peculiar quality: But it is manifeſt by experience, becauſe that the Air is ſerene, it hath more dry than moiſt particles; for in that new kind of Wind-gun, which is not diſcharged by powder or fire, but by the help of wind and air, the Air is ſo condenſated, that it ſcarcely comprehendeth the ſixtieth part of the former ſpace; yet neither do they create any kind of humidity in the Gun, which muſt altogether happen, if that the particles of the ſerene Air were watery.

Propoſition VI.

Exhalations do not aſcend of themſelves, and of their own nature upwards, but they are forced by a violent motion; or the Air is not light but heavy in a proper mode of expreſſion.

All that is to be termed grave or heavy, is moved to the Center of the Earth, except that it be hindred; but the Air doth that: for the Earth being digged up, the Air deſcendeth into the ſpace made. That therefore it is carried upwards, is thus performed. Of exhalations

1. That heat rarifieth it to ſeek a greater ſpace.
2. Becauſe that it is forced by another vapour.

So in cold places, as in *Nova Zembla*, and with us in the night ſeaſon no Miſt aſcendeth, but the heat of the Sun approaching rarifieth it, and cauſeth one part to force out and thruſt forwards the other: For if that thoſe ſmall particles of Air were free, neither mutually implicated one within another, then at length it would be light.

Propoſition VII.

The upper parts of the Atmoſphere are more ſubtile than the lower, yet it may ſo come to paſs, that the middle parts may be more groſs and condenſed than the lower parts about the Earth.

Therefore the more light parts fly to the upper place, they are more ſubtile and light; hence the truth of the member of the former Propoſition is manifeſt: Now the cauſe of the latter member is, that the parts in the middle Air eaſily counite again, and ſo become thicker: for the hot or calid Particles being carried up with them, have forſaken them, and the Rays refracted from the Earth, in that middle *Region*, by reaſon of their diſtance, have no force.

Thence it cometh to paſs that after Rain, the middle Air is more ſerene, becauſe the more thick parts are ſeparated.

Propoſition VIII.

The Atmoſphere or Air being heated, poſſeſſeth more ſpace than before; now by how much it is more deſtitute of heat, by ſo much the more it contracteth it ſelf, and occupieth the leſſer ſpace.

This is excellently ſhewed by that Inſtrument which we call a *Thermometer*, or *Weather-glaſs*, becauſe that we meaſure the temperature of the Air and heat by it, in hot and cold, in which we diſcover the Air to become more condenſed, and to occupy leſſer ſpace in the Glaſs, by how much the Air acquireth leſs heat, as we ſhall ſhew in the following Propoſition. Now the cauſe of the The Air being heated poſſeſſeth more ſpace than before,

Proportion is *à priore*, becauſe the calid Particles, either of the Rayes of the Sun, or of another fire, are moſt ſubtile of all the Particles of the whole world, and in continual motion. Therefore thoſe Atmoſpheres, whilſt that they are admixed, ſeparate and divide theſe Particles with a great force, and ſo cauſe more pores; and theſe little fires departing, the Particles of the Air left to themſelves unite again, or are mutually complicated within themſelves.

Corollary. Therefore the Altitude of the Air or Atmoſphere is not conſtant, but decreaſeth and increaſeth, *viz.* at Noon-day it ought to be greater, at Midnight leaſt, about the time of the riſing and ſetting of the Sun moderate, as in Propoſition XIV.

Propoſition IX.

To make a Thermometer, Thermoſcope, or Weather-glaſs, by which we may diſcover the mutations of the Air in heat and cold.

How to make a Thermometer or Weather-glaſs.

Take a Glaſs of an oblong and cylindrical neck with the ſpherical ſmall head L H, let this be fixed to the Table or Board M N P Q, the head being erected. Let a Veſſel with water be placed under the Orifice (which is beſt to be coloured) ſo filled that part of the pipe or neck L F may be hidden in it: Now let the time of the moderate conſtitution of the Air, or at that time at whoſe temperature you will compare the temperature of the Air of the other days, and at that time let the water be poured into the Veſſel, ſo it will happen that the Air becoming more frigid, the water will aſcend upwards beyond F, becauſe that the Air being condenſated with cold, which before filled up the ſpace F A, now poſſeſſeth leſs ſpace. On the contrary, the Air being rendred more hot, the water will deſcend from F towards L, becauſe that the Air F H being rarified now requireth more ſpace.

See Scheme.

Now you will find the degrees of accretion and diminution of the heat and cold, if that you divide the Line F A on the Table into certain parts of numbers. Or without putting a Veſſel under, ſet the Glaſs L H even at the extremity L, have a Globe with a little hole from the ſide, and let this Globular Veſſel be filled with Air; for ſo alſo the degrees of heat will be ſhewed by the aſcent and deſcent of the water.

Propoſition X.

The ſerene Air may be carried ſo by a moſt vehement fire that it may occupy a ſpace 70 times greater than it did before: On the contrary, it may be ſo condenſed in a Wind-gun, that it may only poſſeſs a 60 part of the former ſpace, but the heat of the Sun bringeth not ſo great a rarification, or the cold ſo great a condenſation to the Air,

The ſame is proved from that, that if you take an *Æolopile* and heat it with fire, ſo that it may then contain 13 ounces; but the ſame being cold, and returning to its former natural eſtate, it will contain 13 ounces, a dram and a half: Therefore the ſpace that the Air occupied whilſt that it was hot, is greater than the ſpace that the Air poſſeſſed when refrigerated, that the difference of the ſpace is that part of the *Æolopile* that receiveth half a dram of water, if that the whole receiveth 13 ounces with half a dram; and the part of this *Æolopile* is almoſt the 70 part of the whole ſpace in the *Æolopile*, therefore the Air being hot, hath poſſeſſed a ſpace 70 times greater than it doth when it returneth to its natural eſtate.

Propoſition XI.

Why in the places in the Frigid Zone, at the time in which the Sun ariſeth not altogether unto them, on ſome days the Air is clear and ſerene, and for the moſt part cloudy and foggy.

Of the Air in places of the Frigid Zone.

I anſwer, the cauſe of this groſs and almoſt perpetual Miſt or Fogg, is the ſmall heat of the ſubterraneous Earth it ſelf; or elſe it is derived from the Sun, and likewiſe the Moon (which in the time of the obſcurity of the Sun remaineth many

days

days and *nights* continually above the *Horizon*) & the other *Stars*; which heat becauſe it is weak, cannot diſſipate this *Miſt*. Now that ſome *days* or *nights* afford a ſerenity of the *Air*; this happeneth not becauſe the thick vapours are attenuated, but becauſe that they either ſink down into the *earth*, or elſe are forced into other places by the *winds*.

Propoſition XII.

Why oftentimes in the greateſt cold of the Winter, the Air is yet ſubtile and ſerene, when that yet the cold condenſateth and contracteth the Air?

Cold is twofold, Moderate or Extream. Moderate cold rendereth not the *Air* ſerene, but cloudy, by reaſon that *vapours* are elevated, but not diſcuſſed by that little heat which is mixed or adjoyned to that cold. But an extream cold maketh the *Air* ſerene for a twofold reaſon. 1. Becauſe it rendereth the groſſer vapours of the *Air* more groſs, and ſo cauſeth them to fall, and make the *Air* more ſubtile. 2. Becauſe that the pores of the *earth* are ſhut and bound up, and the vapours themſelves cannot exhale and render the *Air* turbid. The *Sea* it ſelf indeed is not bound up with *Ice*, yet the *particles* are ſo condenſated with *Ice*, that it is not ſo apt for exhalations, although it ſendeth forth many; for the condition of it, and the earth, are different. The Air ſubtile and ſerene in the greateſt cold of the Winter.

Propoſition XIII.

Why the Air being beheld at the Horizontal Line, appeareth more thick and cloudy than that in which we are?

The cauſe is twofold: 1. Becauſe that the *Air* about the *Horizon* is indeed more cloudy. The other is a fallacy or deception of the *ſight*, or *judgment* from our ſight; for the *eye* apprehendeth the diſtances of columns placed in a long order and *ſeries*, and therefore as the judgment ſuppoſeth the remote columns to be conjoyned, ſo alſo it apprehendeth not the diſtances of the *particles* of the *Horizontal Air*, but imagineth them conjoyned: but the eye beholdeth the diſtances of the elevated *Air* under greater *Angles*, and therefore better apprehendeth it. The ſame is the reaſon why the *Air*, which appeareth cloudy to us, removed from it, when we come to it, or are in it, ſeemeth leſs miſty or cloudy.

Propoſition XIV.

Whether that the Altitude of the Atmoſphere or Air above the Earth, be the ſame in all places at one and the ſame time; and whether its figure be ſpherical.

That the *Altitude* is not the ſame, but divers in ſundry places, ſeemeth to follow from thence, that the *Sun* is only *Vertical* to one place at one time, and it ſendeth forth oblique rayes; and therefore more weak unto other places, by how much the place is more remote from the *Sun*, and nearer to the *Poles*: therefore the *pores* of the *rayes* of the *Sun* are very different to the elevating of the vapours, and therefore they are raiſed to different *Altitudes*, to wit, in a place unto which the *Sun* is vertical, his *Altitude* is the greateſt, in the oppoſite place the leſſer, in the places about the *Pole* moderate, ſo that the *Air* receiveth an oval figure. Of the Altitude of the Atmoſphere.

But the contrary is more probable, *viz.* that the Altitude of the *Atmoſphere* is the ſame in all places; for although that the *Vapours* and *Air* be more elevated in ſome places than in others, yet becauſe that the *Air* is fluid and tendeth by its gravity to the *Center* of the *earth*: therefore the more elevated part of the *Air* preſſeth down the *Air* placed under it, and this thruſteth down another more depreſſed, until all the parts acquire the ſame *Altitude*.

And after the ſame mode the *Spherical Figure* of the *Air* ſhall be demonſtrated, as in the *thirteenth Chapter* we have proved, with *Archimedes*, concerning the *water*, by reaſon that the ſame *Hypotheſes* are prevalent here, which we there aſſumed, to wit, that the part of the *Air* leſs preſſed is expelled by that which is more preſſed; for every part is preſſed by the *Air* that is above it: wherefore the *Figure* of the *Air* is *ſpherical*, not *oval* as ſome will have it: but if the forementioned *Hypotheſes* be not granted, the demonſtration falleth. *Des Cartes* alſo maketh the *Air* oval in *figure* for a peculiar reaſon; ſee *Chapter fourteen.*

Propoſition XV.

Condenſation or Rarefaction of Air changeth not its Altitude.

Condenſation of Air changeth not its Altitude.

Becauſe that the whole *Atmoſphere* is not condenſed, but only ſome parts: and at all times ſome parts are condenſed, ſometimes theſe, ſometimes thoſe; wherefore the *condenſation* or *rarefaction* of one time, doth no more alterate the *Air* than the *condenſation* or *rarefaction* of the firſt time. There only ſeemeth to be a difference, that at one time there may be a greater *condenſation* or *rarefaction* than at another: but this difference can little augment the *Altitude*.

Propoſition XVI.

The Altitude of the Atmoſphere or Air is not only the ſame in divers places, but it remaineth the ſame, and that conſtantly at all times both Winter and Summer.

The Altitude of the Atmoſphere is always the ſame in divers places.

For although that *heat* in the *Summer* of our place may more elevate alſo our *Air* more than in *Winter*, yet becauſe that the *Winter* is at the ſame in another place of the *earth*, the *Air* is leſs raiſed in it; wherefore part of our *Air* ſhall be moved towards the *Air* of thoſe places, where the *Air* is leſs elevated, *viz.* to the more depreſſed place, as we have ſhewed in the *fourteenth Propoſition*. And on the contrary, whilſt that the *Air* of the place where we are, is depreſſed by reaſon of the cold of the *Winter*, part of this *Air*, where the *Summer* or the greater heat is, ſhall be moved towards our place, *viz.* until the whole *Air* be equally diſtant from the *Center* of the *earth*.

The ſame is the reaſon concerning the *Day* and the *Night*, for whilſt that the *Air* is depreſſed and contracted in the *Night* to us, in another place it is more rarefied, and ſo is moved towards the *Air* of our place, until it again make a *ſpherical figure*; and becauſe that all are equal on every ſide, therefore the name *Altitude* ſhall remain in every time. But becauſe that the *Air* is condenſed more in one time and place than in another, that difference ſeeing that it is very ſmall, can very little vary the *Altitude*, as we have ſhewed in the precedent *Propoſition*.

The ſame is the account of *Rains* or *Miſts*, or *Vapours* that are in ours, or in another place: for to theſe it ſeemeth that the *Altitude* of the *Air* ſhould be leſs or more. But I anſwer, that there is ſcarce any time, in which in ſome place of the earth it *raineth* not, and that the *Miſts* fall not: and therefore when that it raineth in one place, the *Air* becometh not leſſer than it was before, becauſe that before it rained in another place: and ſo the reaſon is equal, and the quantity of the *Air* is neither augmented nor diminiſhed.

Pro-

Propoſition XVII.

By how much the Air is more cold, by ſo much the more it is condenſed; and therefore for the moſt part, more condenſed in the Winter than in the Summer, (to wit, in ſome places of the Earth;) alſo in the Night than in the Day: Now watery thick exhalations in the Winter and the Night, cauſe and augment that condenſation, eſpecially in the Morning and Evening.

The truth of the *Propoſition* is manifeſt from the preceding *Propoſitions*: neither doth it obſtruct, for that part of the more hot *Air* is moved to the more cold, as to a more depreſſed place; becauſe that not that it ſelf, but another adjoyning approachment, by reaſon of continual protruſion, and if that that happeneth, yet in a cold place that becometh alſo cold. The Colder the Air the more condenſed.

Propoſition XVIII.

There are three Regions vulgarly made in the Air, whereof the middle is that in which the Snow, Rain, and Hail is generated: The firſt is that in which we are, extending it ſelf even to the middle Region: the third is that which beginneth the uttermoſt bound of the middle Region, and extendeth it ſelf to the utmoſt ſuperficies of the Air (even to the Sublunary fire, as the Ariſtotelians *affirm.)*

The *middle Region* is more cold than the *firſt* and *third*, which are reckoned more hot; but the *third*, by reaſon that it containeth more ſubtile, fiery, and ſulphureous parts of *exhalations*, which fly to it about the place of the *watery particles*, or are thruſt down as more light: (The *Ariſtotelians* ſay, that it is hot by reaſon of its vicinity to the *fiery Sphere.*) But the firſt, becauſe that the Rays of the *Sun* falling, are near there reflexed, and ſo duplicate the *heat*: It happeneth that ſome *particles* of *ſubterraneous fire* exhaling, are in this *Region.* But the *middle Region* is more cold, by reaſon that the reflected *Rays* are there vicine to thoſe that fall in on the *Earth*: neither do they contain any fiery ſulphureous *particles*, but watery ones; for the ſulphureous and fiery ones, that have carried up the watery ones, fly higher. Three Regions in the Air.

Propoſition XIX.

By how much that place of the Earth, unto which the Sun is vertical, receedeth to the Pole; or by how much the place is more near the Poles, by ſo much the leſs diſtant the place of the Air is from the Earth, in which the Rain, Snow, Hail begin to be generated.

The reaſon is, That the *Rays* of the *Sun* do fall more obliquely on the places about the *Poles*, than on the places about the *Æquator*; and therefore the *Rays* refracted are much withdrawn from thoſe falling in, and ſo cauſe leſſer heat; and for a leſſer ſpace than the *Rays*, under the places of the *Sun*, or under the *Torrid Zone*: and ſo in a more nearer place, the *watery vapours* may unite to generate *watery Meteors.*

Corollary. The Superficies terminating the firſt Region of the *Air*, is of an oval *figure*, or rather *Elliptical* or *Sphere* like, protuberating in the *Torrid Zone.*

Pro-

Propoſition XX.

By how much the place of the Earth is nearer the Pole, by ſo much diſtance the Region of the Air is diſtant from that Earth that beginneth the third, or in which the more ſubtile and Sulphureous particles are.

For there are the fewer and more ſubtle *particles* in part of the *Atmoſphere*, by how much it is nearer the *Pole*, becauſe that the heat of the *Sun* elicitateth fewer from the *Earth*. Therefore, becauſe that there are fewer *particles* of the third Region under the *Frigid Zone*, than in the temperate, and in this fewer than in the *Torrid*; and yet the utmoſt bound of that third Region is equally diſtant from the *Center* of the *Earth*, according to the *ſixteenth Propoſition*. Thence it followeth, that the beginning of the *Region* under the *Torrid Zone*, is far more diſtant from the *Center* of the *Earth*, than the beginning of that in the *Torrid* and *Temperate Zone*.

See Propoſition 16.

Corollary. The *Superficies* terminating the ſecond Region of the *Air*, or diſtinguiſhing it from the third, is *Spherical*, and protuberating in the *Frigid Zone*.

All theſe muſt be ſhewed to Youth by *Diagrams*.

Propoſition XXI.

The Rays of the Sun, Moon, and Stars, do not directly arrive at our eyes from the Æther through the Air; but where they enter the Air, they are withdrawn or deflected a little from a direct paſſage, which the skilful in the Opticks *term to refract the Rays, and ſo thoſe Rays refracted come to our eyes, and ſhew us the Star.*

Of the Rays of the Sun, Moon, and Stars.

This part which treateth of the refraction of light, is the moſt ſubtle part of the Science of the *Opticks*; for Experience teſtifieth, that *Rays* proceeding from any viſible *body*, if from one *medium*, they fall in upon another, that is, either more thick or ſubtle than the former, they are refracted where they have entered at this other *Medium*, or deflect from a ſtrait direct courſe to the ſides. The Explication is eaſie from a Vulgar Experiment: Let any *Veſſel* be taken, and let a ball of *Gold* or *Copper*, or *Gold money*, be affixed to the bottom; then depart back from the *Veſſel*, by reaſon of the obſtacle of the ſides of the *Veſſel*, you can no longer ſee the *Money* at the bottom. Then pour water into the *Veſſel*; which being done, you ſhall ſee again in the former diſtance, the *Money* at the bottom. From hence it followeth, that ſeeing no Ray could directly come from the *Money* to the *eye*, by reaſon of the interpoſition of the ſides of the *Veſſel*, and yet afterwards the *water* being infuſed, the Rays arrived at the eye: It followeth, I ſay, from hence, that the *Rays* proceeding from the *Money*, where they enter into the *Air*, from the *water*, do deflect, or are refracted from the direct way, and being ſo refracted, they arrive at the eye. It is called *refraction*, by reaſon that for this cauſe an *Oar* being partly in the *water*, doth appear refracted or broken.

See Scheme.

So let the *Center* of the *Earth* be T, L the *eye* in the *ſuperficies*: let *d r f p* be the *ſuperficies* of the *Atmoſphere* or *Air*. Therefore no *ray* can directly arrive at the *eye* L, becauſe it is beneath L *f g*: for other inferiour *rays* would fall in on the tumor of the *Earth* L o. Wherefore no *Star* can appear in a direct *ray* until it come to the *Horizontal line* L *f g*: And the *Stars* appear before, *viz.* whilſt that they are yet beneath L *g*; for Example, in *S*; and yet from S to the *eye* L, no *ray* can directly come, becauſe that it ſhould firſt fall on L o. Therefore of neceſſity, the *ray* which cometh from the *Star* S to the *eye* L, is not a direct, but a refracted *ray*, *viz.* L *f*, which refracted *ray* is propogated from the incident *ray* S *f*, to wit, S *f* falling from the *Æther*, on the more thick *Medium*, *viz.* the *Atmoſphere* in *f* is refracted and becometh *f* L, when that it was direct in *n*. And ſo the *Star* appeareth before that it could

could truly appear by a direct *ray*, that is, before that it arriveth at the *Horizontal line* L *f g*.

So a *Star* being in S, is not seen by the direct *ray* S L, but by the refract r L, whose incident *ray* is ſ r, and direct *r m*; and therefore the *Star* S appeareth higher, by reaſon of refraction, than it is; and in another place it appeareth high in the Arch *x g*, or in the Angle *r l g*, as if it were in x, when indeed it is in ſ.

For this is the nature of *refractions*, that the *rays* falling from a more rarified *medium* on a more thick, as from the *Æther* upon the *Air*, they become refracted, or decline towards the perpendicular, drawn through the point of incidency, or falling into the *ſuperficies* of the incidency or *medium*. For Example, the *ray* S *f* falleth in from the *Æther* on the *Air*: f is the point of the incidency, T f the perpendicular drawn through *f* to the *ſuperficies d r f p*; therefore the *ray* S *f n* ſhall be refracted *f* T, that of *f n* may be made *f* L.

So of *r m* is made *r* L; but the contrary is, when that the *rays* proceed from the *water* to the *Air*, for then they more recede from the perpendicular *line* drawn.

Laſtly, this alſo is the nature of *refractions*, that the *rays* falling in perpendicularly on the *ſuperficies* of another *medium*, are not refracted, but only thoſe that fall obliquely, and not perpendicularly; and by ſo much they are the more refracted, by how much they fall in the leſs perpendicularly, or by how much the more they depart from the perpendicular. So the *rays* S T, *f* T, H *d* T, are not refracted, becauſe that they are perpendicular on the *ſuperficies d r f p*; but the *rays* S *f*, S *r*, are refracted, becauſe that they fall obliquely, and indeed S *f* more than S *r*.

From whence it followeth, (which Experience alſo teſtifieth,) that by how much the *Stars* are more near the *Horizon*, by ſo much the more they refract their *rays*; by how much the higher, by ſo much the leſs. And *Aſtronomers* have obſerved, that the refraction is inſenſible where the *Star* hath attained the *altitude* of 20 *degrees*; not that there is no refraction, but that it is very ſmall.

And for many Examples the skilful in the *Opticks*, and later *Mathematicians*, have derived the Rule of *refraction* of all *Rays* falling in obliquely, *viz.* that in every *medium* there is one conſtant account between the ſign of the *Angle* falling in, and the ſign of the *Angle* refracted; to wit, the *Angle n f* T is termed the *Angle* of incidency, L f T the *Angle* refracted, *n f* L the *Angle* of refraction: and ſo in the refraction of the *ray ſ r m*. Therefore as the ſign of the *Angle* T *f n* is to the ſign of the *Angle* T *f* L, the ſame is the reaſon of the ſign of the *Angle* T *r m* to the ſign of the *Angle* T *r* L. Thence it followeth, that if from obſervation we have the quantity of refraction to the elevation of one *Ray*, we may thence know the quantity of the refraction of all others, howſoever elevated.

Propoſition XXII.

The Atmoſphere or Air, cauſeth the Sun, or the reſt of the Stars, to be ſeen before that they ariſe in the Horizon; alſo to appear for ſome ſmall ſpace of time after that they have ſet; alſo that they appear higher than they are, and in another place of the Heavens, as long as that they are no higher than 20 degrees.

The Air cauſeth the Sun and Stars to be ſeen before they ariſe in the Horizon.

We have ſufficiently explained the Cauſe in the precedent *Propoſition*; only we ſhall add ſome Experiences or Natural *Phænomenons*. When that the *Dutch* wintered in *Nova Zembla*, the *Sun* appeared to them ſooner by *ſixteen days* than it was in the *Horizon*, that is, when that it was as yet depreſſed beneath the *Horizon* about *four degrees*, and that in a ſerene *Air*. And famous *Aſtronomers* have found it out with *Tycho Brahe*, that in our places the *Morning-ſky* or *Air* being ſerene, we may behold the *Sun* elevated above the *Horizon* 34 *minutes*, when that as yet he is wholy under the *Horizon*, yet ſo that

that his *limbus* or *skirt* doth enlighten the *Horizon*. And the *Sun* ſeemeth to ariſe, when that as yet he is depreſſed about 34 *minutes* beneath the *Horizon*, to wit, the *Air* of the place where we are, being ſerene.

So the *Spica Virginis*, a bright *Star*, ſeemeth to riſe to us, when that yet he is depreſſed 32 *minutes* beneath the *Horizon*, which is thence collected, becauſe is ſeemeth to ariſe, when the *Cauda Leonis* is 34 *degrees* 30 *minutes* high, and in the ſame quarter in which this *Star* of the *Lion* then is. And the *Cauda Leonis* and the *Spica Virginis*, are diſtant thirty five *degrees* and two *minutes*.

Propoſition XXIII.

By how much the Air or part of the Atmoſphere, on which the ray of the Star falleth, is thicker, by ſo much it maketh the greater refraction, other qualifications being equal; viz. *the ſame elevation of the Star, and the ſame altitude of the Air.*

So the *Angle n f* L (which is, and is called *Refraction*,) is by ſo much the greater; or the refracted *Angle f* L approacheth ſo much the nigher to *f* T, by how much the *Atmoſphere* is more groſs: For ſo the Studious in the *Opticks* have found it true in all ſorts of *Mediums*.

Propoſition XXIV.

By how much the Air is thicker, by ſo much the more the Star is depreſſed beneath the Horizon, when that it firſt beginneth to appear.

The thickneſs of the Air cauſeth the depreſſing of the Star.

L *f* is the refracted *ray*, which firſt maketh the *Star* to appear: L *f* T is the refracted *Angle*; and let S *f n* be the incident *ray*, and *n f* T the *Angle* of incidency, *n f* L ſhall be the refraction.

Now let us ſuppoſe the *Air f n L o* to be thicker than where it maketh the refraction of the *ray n f L*. If therefore it be thicker, it ſhall make the *Angle* of refraction greater, *viz. c f L*, and the incident *ray* ſhall be K *f c*. Therefore the *Star* being in K, the *ray* K *f* ſhall be refracted, that the refracted *Angle f L* may ſhew the *Star*: but the *Air* being leſs thick, the *Star* in S ſhall be firſt ſeen.

Propoſition XXV.

By how much the Air is the lower, by ſo much the Star is the more depreſſed beneath the Horizon, when that at firſt it beginneth to appear, (that is, if there be the ſame ſerenity and thickneſs of the Air.)

See Scheme.

For the *Air* being ſuppoſed lower, the refracted *Angle T f L* ſhall be greater. For Example, If that *T* 4 be the *altitude* of the *Air*, the refracted *Angle* ſhall be (for the *ray* refracted coming firſt to *L*) *T* 4 *L*. Let 49 be drawn *parallel* with *f n*, becauſe that ſo it is from the *Hypotheſis* of the 21 *Propoſition*, as the ſign of one refracted *Angle T f L* is to the ſign of the other refracted *Angle T* 4 *L*, (for they are ſuppoſed to differ ſo much in *altitude*, not in *denſity*;) ſo is the ſign of the *Angle* of incidency *n f T*, to the ſign of the *Angle* of incidency 3 4 *T*, for the refracted 4 *L*, and the incident 3 4 6. Now the ſign of the *Angle T* 4 *L* hath a greater reſpect to the ſign *T* 4 9, than the ſign *T f L* to the ſign *T f n*, as is eaſily demonſtrated by a *Diagram* deſcribed according to this draught. Wherefore the ſign of the *Angle T* 4 L hath a greater reſpect to the ſign *T* 4 9, than the ſame ſign *T* 4 *L* to the ſame ſign *T* 4 3. And therefore the *Angle T* 4 3 is greater than the *Angle T* 4 9, and 3 4 *L* is greater than 9 4 *L*, that is, than the *refraction n f T*: The ſign *T* 4 *L* is greater than the exceſs of the ſign *T f n* above *T f L*. Wherefore the *Angle* 3 4 *L* is greater than the *Angle n f L*; and therefore 43 protracted, *viz.* 346 the *ray* incident, for

for the refracted 4 *L* ſhall fall beneath *Sf*, and the *Star* ſhall be in 6, that it may make the refracted *ray* 4 *L*; and therefore it is more depreſſed, than when it is in *S*, where the *altitude* of the *Air* ſhall be *Lf*.

Propoſition XXVI.

The ſame may be the refraction of any Star to the ſame ſituation of it, although the altitude of the Air be different, if that there be only a difference in the thickneſs of the Air.

The form of the *Problem* is more rightly propounded thus: *The altitude of the Air, and the refraction being given, which the Star maketh at the given Altitude; and moreover another altitude of the Air being given, to find the denſity of this Air, or proportion of this refraction, ſuch, that the ſame refraction may be at the given Altitude of the Star, which was in the firſt altitude of the Air.* For Example, In the *altitude* of the *Air Tf*, the ray of the *Star* *Sf* maketh the *Angle* of refraction *n f L*. If now that there be another *altitude* of the *Air T* 4, and yet of the *Star* S in the ſame ſcituation of the incident ray 54, (which by reaſon of its great diſtance is as it were *parallel* with *Sf*) the refraction 34 *L* is equal to the refraction *n f L*. See Scheme.

It is demanded, whether that this can be done; and if that it can, whether that this other *Air* ought to be thicker, and in what proportion of denſity or rarity?

I Anſwer, that it may be done, and that if the other *latitude* of the *Air* be greater than the former *Tf*, the denſity of this other or ſecond *Air* ought to be greater; but if that the other given *altitude* be leſſer: for Example, *T* 4, the thickneſs of the other ought to be leſſer, or rarity greater. Now how great this denſity or rarity ought to be, is thus known.

Firſt, let the *Angle T* 4 *L* be found out (from the given *T* 4, and *TL*) alſo *Tf L*; then the ſign of the *Angle T* 4 *L*, alſo the ſign of the *Angle T* 4 3 (which is the *Angle* of the incidency of the *ray* 34*b*:) therefore you have the *proportion* of the denſity of this *Air*, or rarity of the ſame to the rarity of the *Æther*, from whence the incident *ray* cometh. After the ſame manner let the *ſigns* of the *Angle Tf n* and *Tf L* be taken, ſo theſe *ſigns* will ſhew the *proportion* of the rarity of the former *Air* to the rarity of the *Æther*, and by the comparing of theſe accounts you will know, how much the latter *Air* of a leſſer *altitude* ought to be more rare, or of a leſſer thickneſs than the former.

Yet in proper manner of ſpeaking, the *refraction* is not the ſame, becauſe we underſtand the ſame refraction, if that the *rays* falling in equally are elevated above the *ſuperficies* of the *Mediums*.

Propoſition XXVII.

If that the Air of one place be both thicker and lower than the Air of the other place, the Sun and the other Stars ſhall be more depreſſed beneath the Horizon of the former place, when that they begin firſt to appear, than in the ſecond place.

The *Demonſtration* of this *Propoſition* is manifeſt from the 25 and 26*th* preceding *Propoſitions*. It followeth from thence, that if the *Air* be thicker and more low in the places of the *Frigid Zone*, than in the places of the *temperate* and *Torrid Zone*; that the *Sun* may be ſeen in thoſe places, far ſooner before his riſing, and longer after his ſetting, than in the other places: for when that he is more depreſſed beneath the *Horizon*, and therefore aſcendeth more obliquely, and in a longer time to the *Horizon* of thoſe places; thence it followeth, that he is ſeen far ſooner before his riſing in the *Frigid Zone*, than in the *Torrid*. But it is a queſtion, whether that the *Air* be lower in the *Frigid Zone*, and though the *Sun* appeareth ſooner before his riſing, whether that only a thickneſs of Air is ſufficient; of which more afterwards.

The Air cauſeth the depreſſure of the Sun and Stars beneath the Horizon.

Propoſition XXVIII.

Of the thickneſs of the Air.

If that the *Air* of one place be of a more thickneſs, and higher than the other, it may be an exceſs of thickneſs, ſo that they may not ſee the *Stars* before the riſing in ſo great a depreſſion beneath the *Horizon*, than in the other *Air*: alſo the exceſs of thickneſs may be ſuch, that the *Stars* may begin to be beheld in the ſame *depreſſion*. Laſtly, the exceſs of thickneſs may be ſuch, that the *Stars* may be beheld in a far diſtanter or longer depreſſion beneath the *Horizon*, than in the other *Air*. Yea this thickneſs may bring with it a far greater depreſſion than the lowneſs of the *Air*; and inſtead of *refractions* in *Nova Zembla*, a notable *altitude* of the *Air* with thickneſs is required.

Propoſition XXIX.

It cannot be, that the refractions of any one Star in two Altitudes in one Air, ſhould be equal to the refractions of the ſame Star in the ſame Altitudes in another Air, that is higher or lower, or thicker or more ſubtile.

See Scheme.

In the former *Propoſition* we have demonſtrated, that if in the *altitude* of the Air Tf, the incident ray Sfn maketh the refraction nfL, *viz.* $T4$, the ray $S4$ in another *altitude* (which is parallel with Sf, by reaſon of its great diſtance, and the *rays* are from one point) make the ſame refraction $34L$, which is equal to the refraction ncL, *viz.* if that the *Air* $4oLW$ be leſs thick than $foLd$. Now therefore it is demanded, whether that this may be done in the two *altitudes* of the *Star*: For Example, It being ſuppoſed that in the ſcituation of the Star S, the *Air* $foLd$, and the *Air* $foLW$ are ſo, that they cauſe an equal refraction: whether that in the *altitude* of another *Star*, for Example, in S, in the ſame *Atmoſpheres* $frdLo$, $4WLo$ can again be an equal refraction, or the ſame mcL. And I ſay, that it cannot be; for let the *Periphery* of this Air $T4$ be deſcribed in the Center T, the interval of another *Altitude*, cutting Lr in 3. Therefore $3L$ ſhall be the *ray* refracted in this other Air, through which the Star S is ſeen: for the ray $3L$ is the ſame with rL, by reaſon that the ſame apparent *altitude* xg, or Angle rLf, of the Star S is laid down. Moreover for this refracted *Angle*; let the incident ray be drawn through $3,73W$, which ſhall be parallel with Srm, if that the refraction $L3W$ were equal to the refraction Lrm: for let $T3$ be alſo drawn, the Angle $T3W$ ſhall be the Angle of incidency, TrL the Angle refracted, $W3L$ the refraction.

Therefore as the ſign $34T$ is to the ſign $L4T$, ſo is the ſign $W3T$ to the ſign $L3T$.

And as the ſign nfT is to the ſign LfT, ſo is the ſign mrT to the ſign LrT.

And now $34L$ is equal to nfL; wherefore $W3L$ is not equal to mrL, or $W3$ is not parallel with mr.

Now this conſequence requireth a more difficult and operoſe Demonſtration than can be propounded in this place, ſeeing that it rather belongeth to *Geometry*; yet it ſhall be made manifeſt from the *Analyſis* of the following *Propoſition*.

Pro-

Proposition XXX.

The two refractions of any Star being observed in two Altitudes, to find thence both the altitude of the Air and the thickness of the Air in respect of the Æther, or the rule of Refraction in this Air.

The refraction of a *Star* is of an equal difference between his observed *Altitude* and the true one, which is known by calculation, and therefore it is easie to know the refractions of the *Stars*. Now to come to the purpose, let the refraction *n f L* of a *Star* in *S*, and ejaculating his *ray Sf* be given; then again in the *altitude* of the same *S g*, the same refraction *m r L*. Of refracti. of Stars.

Then in the Circle *d r f p d*, whose *Center* is *T*. *T L* is given (the *Semidiameter* of the Earth,) and *T r*, *T f*, *L f*, *L r* being drawn, let the Angles *T L f*, *T L r* be given (compounded of the Altitude of the *Star* and 90 *minutes*,) and the Angles *n f L*, *m r L* are given; and we know besides, that the same is the account of the *sign* of the Angle *n f T* to the *sign L f T*, which is the account of the *sign m r T* to the *sign L r T*. From these we must find the *Semidiameter* of the Circle *T f* or *T r*, and moreover the account or equality of the *sign n f T* to the *sign L f T*, or we must find out the Angle *T f L*.

Indeed the *Analysis* doth teach that it may be found out, but by a most difficult Solution, so that the *Synthesis* or collection cannot be found out without many *Propositions* premised, like so many *Indexes*, which are altogether improper to this place. Yet we will produce the *Analysis*, both that we may shew this Problem to be determinated, and also that the truth of the preceding *Proposition* may also be confirmed.

Let *T L* be *f*,
The sign of the right Angle T L f S. b
The sign T L r S. c
The sign n f L S. d
The sign of the Complement S. g.
The sign m r L S. b
The sign of the Complement K.
The sign L f T S. a

Let us seek the Angle *L f T*, because that after we have gained this, also *T f* and the rest will be known.

Therefore it is in the Triangle *f L T*.
As the *sign L f T* is to the *sign T L f*, so *T L* is to *T f*.
As *a* to *b*, so is *f* to $\frac{bf}{a}$

And because that the *sign* of both the Angles *T f L*, *L f n* is given, the *sign* also of the whole Angle *n f T* shall be given, *viz.* if that the *signs* of both Angles be multiplied alternately unto the *sign* of the *Complement* of the other; and the aggregate of the produced be divided by the ray *b*; therefore the *sign* of the Angle *n f T*, is $\frac{ha\,t.db-dv(bbaa)}{f}$.

Then in the *Triangle T L r* are now known *T r*, *T L*, the sign *T L r*. Therefore as *T r* is to *T L*, so is the sign *T L r* to the sign *T r L*.

As $\frac{bf}{a}$ is to *f*, so is *c* to $\frac{ca}{b}$ for the sign *T r L*.

And let the *sign m r L* be also given, and you shall find according to the former Rule of the whole *Sinus*, *m r T*, *viz.* if that $gf\,\frac{kca}{bf} - v\frac{ggffbb-ggccaa}{bbff}$

or if $\frac{kc}{b}$ be equal to *m*, and $\frac{ggcc}{bb}$ be *n n*, that the sign shall be $g\,\frac{ma}{f} - v\frac{(ggff-nnaa.)}{ff}$

Therefore we shall have the *signs* of four *Angles L f T*, *n f T*, *L r T*, *m r T*: now we know these to be proportional; therefore as the sign *T f L* shall be to the sign *T f n*, so the sign *T r L* shall be to the sign *T r m*.

As *a* to $\frac{hax\,bd-du(bbaa)}{f}$, so *c* $\frac{ca}{b}$ to $g+\frac{ma}{f}$ v $\frac{(ggffnnaa)}{ff}$.

And therefore as b to c, so is $ha+db-d$ v $(bb-aa)$ to $gf+ma-$v$(ggff-nnaa.)$
And $bgf+cdb-bma+cha+bu(ggff-nnaa)$ equal to $+dv(bbaa.)$

For $bgf+cdb$ take p^3, and for $-bma+cha$ place qqa.

And $-p^6-qua^4-2pqqa^3$
$+bbggff--bbnnaa.$
$+ccddbb+ccddaa.$

Equal 2 v $\left\{\begin{array}{l} bbggffccddbb+bbggffccddaa. \\ +bbnnccdda^4 \\ ccddbb^4nnaa \end{array}\right\}$

And the *division* being made by $2p^3$, and other *signs* being substituted, it shall be

$r^3-taa+qqa$ equal to v$(x^6-yaa+zza^4.)$

And $r^6+tta^4+qaa.$

$-2.tqqa^3+2.rtaa.$ $+2\ r^3qqa$ equal to $x^6-yaa+zza^4.$

So a *division* again being made by $tt-zz$, and other *signs* being substituted, it shall be $a^4-ba-zzaa+ww$ equal to y^4.

For by this equation it is manifest, that the Problem is determined, and this very letter a, that is the sign of the *Angle* T f L, may be found as well by *Geometry*, as by the *Arithmetical Analysis* of *Vieta*: or also more easily, if that the equation may be reduced to a lesser power by the *division*: and from hence it is collected, that two refractions may suffice to find out the *altitude* of the *Air*, T f, and the very rule of *Proportion*; which I therefore take notice of, because that I see *Kepler* in the *Epitome* of his *Astronomy*, page 65. to require *three refractions*, although that he hath not attempted this way.

See *Kepler* in his Epitome of *Astronomy*, page 65.

Although therefore it hath been shewed, that the solution of this Problem may be had both by *Geometry* and *Arithmetick*; yet because that both are very laborious and difficult, especially to those that are studious in *Geography*; wherefore most understand not this, therefore for their sakes I shall demonstrate another Method, by which the Problem may be more easily absolved, although it be less *Mathematical*, *viz.* by the Rule of *Position*: Therefore let T f be taken in a certain *measure* at T L.

See Scheme.

Therefore in the *Triangle* f L T from f T, T L, T Lf, the Angle T f L shall be found: So in the *Triangle* T Lr, from T r, T L, T Lr, the Angle T r L shall be found.

Then let the *signs* of the Angles T f L, T fn, T r L, T r m be taken also, let a fourth part proportional be taken at the *signs* T f L, T fn, T r L. If that therefore the sign T r m be equal to this fourth proportional part, then the assumed *magnitude* or *altitude* of the *Air* T f shall be true and legitimate; but if the sign T r m be greater than that fourth proportional, the lesser sign T f shall be taken; but if that the *Minor* be greater, then the *Major* must be taken, and this must be done so long until the sign T r m be found equal unto the fourth found out proportional part.

Example.

Let the *Spica Virginis*, or any other *Star*, or the *Sun* be placed to be beheld in the *Horizon* L f, when that it is yet depressed 40. 32 *minutes*, *viz.* in S. therefore the refraction n f L is 32.

Then when that the same *Star* or the *Sun* hath the *altitude* g x 1 *degree* 22 *min.* or the true *altitude* g S 1 *deg.* then the refraction L n r is found 22 *minutes*.

The

The *Semidiameter* T L is 860 *German miles*, let us put it to be 1000, and the Altitude *o f* let us suppose to be of such part S, (*viz.* $\frac{1}{10000}$, or $\frac{1}{1000}$ of the whole *Semidiameter* T L, that is $\frac{1}{10}$ of about one *mile*.)

Therefore the whole assumed *sign* in the Triangle *T L f* 10000000.

As *f* T is to T L, so is the sign T f L, 2001-2000-10000000-9995992 *signs*, 88 *deg.* 22 *min.* 40 *seconds*.

Therefore *T f n* is 88 *deg.* 54 *min.* 40 *seconds*, whose sign 9998200.

Again in the Triangle *T r L*.

As *T r* is to *T L*, so is the sign of the Angle *T L r* to the sign *T r L*. 2001-2000-9997155-9992159. Signs 87 *deg.* 42 *min.* 40 *seconds*.

Therefore *T r m* is 88 *deg.* 5 *min.* 40 *seconds*, whose sign 9994500.

Let the fourth proportional part now therefore be found at the sign *T f L*, *T f n*, *T r L*, *viz.*

T f L *T f n* *T r L*

As 9995992 to 9998200, so is 9992159 to 9994366.

With this fourth number, let the sign of the Angle *T r m*, which is 9994500, be compared.

Therefore we find, that this sign is almost equal to that fourth part, and therefore the assumed *altitude* of the *Air* ($\frac{1}{10}$ of one *mile*) doth not much differ from the true Altitude. But if that you desire to have it more accurately, you may take another *Altitude* and work after the same manner, until the sign *T r m* be more equal to this fourth proportional part; or else apply the rule of *Falshood*, or from the defect of two Positions, to collect the true *Altitude* as far as you may; for you cannot well find it altogether accurate, because that signs in little numbers do very much vary, although at least there be only the escape of half a *minute*: moreover the *Canon* of *signs* ought to be most accurate.

We conclude therefore, that the *altitude* of the *Air* is the 2000*th* part of the *Semidiameter* of the *Earth*: this *Semidiameter* is 1633190 *Perches*; therefore the *altitude* of the *Air* is 816 *Perches*; wherefore one *Perch* containeth 12 *Rhindlandish* miles: but half a *German* mile is more truly taken, because that the refraction *L f n*, by *Tycho*, is greater than that we took, and 36 yea 38 may be taken, which being laid down, the *altitude* of the *Air* cannot be less than one mile.

The *altitude* of the *Air* being known, an account must also be given of the density of the *Air* to the thickness or subtlety of the *Æther*, or a rule of the refraction in this *Air*, *viz.* which maketh such refractions at such situations of the *Star*; *viz.* the account of the sign T f L, found before at the sign T f n, is the account or reason demanded.

As 9995992 to 9998200. And the reason why these refractions are so small, is, because that we have taken the most serene *Air*, which differeth not so much from the *Æther* in rarity, as some imagine to themselves.

Moreover, whether that the found out *altitude* of the *Aire* be the same every where, and at every time, if from the two refractions observed at the two *altitudes* of the *Star* in another *Air* and in another time, the *altitude* of the *Air* be calculated after the same mode, as we have now done.

And that those that are studious in nature may have whereon they may exercise their calculation, and make a trial of the matter (whether that the *Altitude* be the same every where, and at every time,) I will give them here Examples from the *Observations* of *Tycho*, who hath observed the refractions of the *Sun* and *Moon* at every *degree* of their *Altitude*. And because that the *Observations* of *Lansbergius* (because that he observed them in a different Air, if that he observed them at all) differ from those of *Tycho's*, I will also add them.

The

The TABLE of Refractions.

The degrees of Altitude.	*The Refraction of the Sun, according to* Tycho.	*The Refraction of the Moon, according to* Tycho.	*The Refraction of the Sun and Moon according to* Lansbergius.	
Degrees.	Minute I.	Minute I.	Minute I.	II.
0	34	33	34	
1	26	25	26	
2	20	20	21	
3	17	17	18	
4	15	15	15	45
5	14	14	14	0
6	13	14	12	30
7	12	13	11	15
8	11	12	10	5
9	10	11	9	5
10	10	11	8	15
11	9	10	7	35
12	9	10	7	5
13	8	9	6	40
14	8	8	6	19
15	7	8	6	0
16	7	7	5	42
17	6	7	5	24
18	6	6	5	7
19	5	6	4	50
20	4	5	4	33
21	4	4	4	16
22	3	3	4	0
23	3	3	3	44
24	3	3	3	28
25	2	2	3	12
26	2	2	2	56
27	2	2	2	40
28	2	2	2	24
29	2	2	2	9
30	1	1	1	54
31	1	1	1	39
32	1	1	1	24
33	1	1	1	9
34	1	1	0	55
35	1	1	0	41
36	1	1	0	27
37	0	1	0	13
38	0	1	0	0

Lansbergius placeth both the same *refractions* of the *Sun* and *Moon*: but *Tycho* maketh them somewhat divers, *viz.* about the *Horizon* he maketh the refractions of the *Sun* greater than those of the *Moon*; then the fifth degree of *Altitude*, he maketh them equal from this; then at length he maketh the *refractions* of the *Moon* a little bigger than those of the *Sun*. Indeed I confess my self ignorant of the cause of this, except it be to be ascribed to the weakness of the light of the *Moon*. Moreover, *Tycho* omitted the second *Minutes*, which yet should not be omitted, if that they come near to 60; because that there is use of them in the calculation of the *altitude* of the *Air*. Now you must know, that the refractions of all the *Stars* are the same, or else that the difference is insensible, *viz.* in one *Air*: But if that the *Air* be thick, the refractions will be greater. An Example of it is this (whereof a cause hath not yet been rendred sufficiently hitherto by any,) The *Dutch* Wintering in *Nova Zembla*, beheld the *Sun* after the *night* of some *Months*, when that as yet the *Limbus* or edge of the *Sun* was yet beneath the *Horizon* four *degrees* at least; therefore the refraction *n f L* is 4 *deg.* 30 *min.*

The refractions of the *Sun* and *Moon*, according to *Lansbergius* and *Tycho*.

Then at length, when that it was depressed beneath the *Horizon* 3 *degrees* 40 *minutes*, they saw him elevated above the Horizon 30 *degrees* (*viz.* his upper *Limbus*;) therefore the refraction *m r L* (we conceive *m r S* to fall beneath the Horizon, and *r L g* to be 30 *min.*) shall be 4 *deg.* 11 *min.* and *L L T* 90 *deg.* 30 *min.* From hence shall be found the *altitude* of the *Air L f*, and the reason of the density of that Air at *Nova Zembla*, which yet was serene at the time of the Observation. Now the *Altitude* is found much greater than the other refractions admit of, *viz.* of almost two *miles*; neither is it corrected by the position of a greater thickness of *Air* (as shall be shewed in the following *Proposition*) by reason that the Angle *T f L* cannot be greater than 85 *deg.* 30 *min.* (if that *n f L* is 4 *deg.* 30 *min.*) it becometh greater, if that *d f* be placed less than 2 *miles*. Therefore we do not undeservedly doubt of the truth of the observation of the *Mariners*, seeing that no like Example hath been observed, yea the contrary hath been observed in the same place. Moreover, no reason can be rendred, that in those places (after so long an absence of the *Sun*) the *Air* should be higher, than at the time wherein after so long a stay the *Sun* departed; seeing that rather the contrary doth follow, *viz.* the *Air* becoming more thick and lower (by reason of contraction) if that any one will urge the *altitude* of the *Air* to be inconstant. Yet when I more accurately weigh all the matters, three things fall in with me, by which that apparancy and great refraction may be salved, (for seeing that the *Master* or *Pilot* was skilful in *Astronomy*, and also that they saw the *Sun* elevated above the Horizon, in which he was yet depressed; therefore we ought not to deny the Observation, neither ought we to be suspicious concerning an Errour in the numeration of the *days* by reason of that long *night*; for when that they returned to their own Countrey, they reckoned the same day of the year that their Countrymen reckoned, which they could not have done, if that before they had made a false reckoning of the *days*: For if that we will admit so great an *altitude* of the *Air*, such as the refractions of the *temperate* and *torrid Zones* do not admit of, we must say, that the Air is every where the same both in the *torrid* and *temperate Zone*, as it is in the *frigid*; but the supream Region of the *Air*, both in the *torrid* and *temperate Zone*, is so subtile, that it maketh no refraction, but only the middle Region: Whence it is no wonder, if that the refractions in the *torrid* and *temperate Zone* be lesser; for although the Air be lower that causeth them (for which cause the refraction ought to be greater) yet its far more rare than the other *Air*.) But yet an Objection may be made against this, *viz.* that the observation of the *Mariners* was made in a serene Air, as they themselves testifie. Unto this I answer, That yet it seemeth not so probable that the *Air* should be so subtile, as in the *torrid* and *temperate Zone*, when that the *Sky* is most serene; Secondly, it may be said, That that *Air* of the *frigid Zone*, when that the *Sun* after a long absence, returneth unto it, is first attenuated in the superior Region, and the middle is yet somewhat more thick; and therefore the *Sun* was seen through two *refractions*, as the Stars through the *Air* and a *Glass*.

See Chap. 6. Propos. 11.

Now

Now a double refraction doth far more depreſs the Star beneath the *Horizon*, than a ſimple, and ſo the *altitude* of the Air, the ſpace of one mile or $\frac{1}{4}$. Neither may you here object, why the ſame doth not happen at that time, when that the Sun departeth from the Air, and maketh the beginning of the long Night: For then it is probable, that there is leſs difference in the thickneſs of the Air, by reaſon of the long ſtay of the Sun; or ſhall we ſay, that a thicker exhalation conſiſteth in the Morning times in that *Zone*, after that long abſence. Thirdly, If that you are not pleaſed to admit that double refraction, neither are you willing to grant, that the ſupream part of the Air, in the *torrid* and *frigid Zone*, maketh any refraction; I ſay, if that the two premiſed Reſponſes or Explications pleaſe not, then you muſt confeſs, that the Air in that place of the *torrid Zone* at that time was much higher than in our *temperate Zone*, and likewiſe more thick (for only the *altitude* diminiſheth the refraction;) but if that there be a great thickneſs, refraction is much more augmented by this, than it is diminiſhed by the *altitude* decreaſing. But I am moſt taken with the firſt of theſe three Cauſes, which maketh the *altitude* of the Air two *miles*, for we may not in the Horizontal refraction of 4 *degrees* 30 *minutes*, make a leſs in *Nova Zembla:* the other two are perplexed with many difficulties. Now why they beheld not the Sun for ſo many days, the ſame *altitude* remaining, after he ceaſed to riſe the third day of *November*; I ſay, that the cauſe was the thickneſs of the Air. The ſame anſwer muſt alſo be given, why the ſame *Dutch Mariners* in the year 1596, on the 30*th* of *May*, beheld not the Sun at Midnight under the elevation of 69 *deg.* 24 *minutes*, when that yet it was not under the Horizon 1 *degree:* Why here it made no refraction the cauſe may be the ſame. But we have been too large concerning this matter, which prolixity the Reader muſt aſcribe to the difficulty of the Doctrine: For to accurate knowledge of this matter, moſt accurate Obſervations are required; neither yet may we, if that the Obſervations made at divers elevations of the ſame Star on one place make not the ſame *altitude*, aſſert, that therefore the *altitudes* of it are diverſe: for the cauſe may be the diverſity of the rarity of the Air, *viz.* by how much it is nigher the *Horizon*, by ſo much it is leſs rare. If that this be ſo, the Obſervations will in no wiſe produce the ſame *altitude*, although it be the ſame; becauſe that we ſuppoſe in the Calculation, that the ſame rarity of the Air is in both parts of the Air; and therefore the ſame rule of Refraction.

Propoſition XXXI.

The depreſſion of the Star beneath the Horizon being given, when that it firſt beginneth to appear (that is, the Horizontal refraction of the Star, being given) to find out the leaſt altitude of that Air, as may be; the thickneſs of that Air for ſuch a refraction, and the greateſt exceſs of denſity (as may be) of that Air above the denſity of the Æther, that is the greateſt Rule that can be of Refraction. Alſo more generally, the refraction of a Star being given unto the given apparent altitude of it above the Horizon, to find the greateſt Altitude that may be.

Of the depreſſion of the Star beneath the Horizon.

See Scheme.

So let the given Horizontal refraction $n f L$, or the depreſſion of the Star beneath the Horizon $g f S$, or $g L S$, when that it firſt beginneth to appear, ſuch as it was in *Nova Zembla*, 4 *deg.* 30 *min.* It is manifeſt therefore from the *Opticks*, that if the *radius* Sf touch the Air in f; that is, if that the Angle NfT be ſtrait, then indeed that *ray* is not refracted; but if that no Star be beneath the Tangent $i n$, then no ray can immediately come near to f. Therefore it is required, that the Star ſhould be about the Tangent, and the Angle $n f T$ ſhould be leſſer than the right Angle, or than 90. Let it therefore be ſuppoſed, that 89 *deg.* 59 *min.* (or 90 *degrees*) although very great, yet not greater than 90. Moreover, let nfT the Angle given, or the Horizontal refraction 4 *deg.* 30 *min.* the Angle $Tf L$ 85 *deg.* 29 *min.* is left, the greateſt which may be; whence, if that it cometh to paſs, that as the ſign $Tf L$ is to the ſign $fL T$,

ſo

ſo is LT to Tf: And the found out Tf ſhall be the leaſt *altitude* of the *Air* that may be; the fourth proportional Tf ſhall be the leaſt that may be, if ſo be that the middle bounds or terms, *viz.* the whole ſigns TLf, and TL, remain the ſame, if that the refraction Tf be not given to the apparent *Horizontal ray*, but to the *altitude* of the Star xLg. We ſhall act after the ſame mode in $\triangle TLrT$.

Alſo the reaſon of the ſign of the Angle nfL, 89 *deg.* 59 *min.* to the ſign TfL, 85 *deg.* 29 *min.* ſhall be the greateſt reaſon which may be, of the denſity of the *Air* to the denſity of the *Æther*.

Propoſition XXXII.

The altitude of the Air, and one refraction of a Star in it, being given to a certain altitude of it, to find out from it the rule of refraction or proportion of the ſigns of the Angles of Incidency, to the Angles refracted, or to the thickneſs of that Air, for the given refraction at the given Altitude.

Now the given *altitude* of the *Air* ought to be greater than that, which according to the precedent *Propoſition*, is found to be the leaſt: For if that it be not greater, it is a ſign that the refraction is not obſerved, and that the Problem is impoſſible. Let therefore the Tr given be greater: for Example, let xLg act the apparent *altitude*, let the known refraction be mrL; therefore in the Triangle TLr, is given Tr, TL, and the Angle TLr. From theſe is found out Trf, the refracted Angle; unto which, if that you add mrL, you have the Angle of Incidency mrT, and the reaſon or account of the ſign mrT to the ſign LrT ſhall be found: This ſhall be the rule of Refraction in this *Air*, or the reaſon of the thickneſs of it to the denſity of the *Air*. See Scheme.

Propoſition XXXIII.

The altitude of the Air, and Refraction being given to the one altitude of a Star, to find out the Refraction in another altitude of a Star.

For Example, Let the *altitude* of the *Air* Tf or Tr, and the refraction nfL at the apparent *altitude* o be given, *viz.* the Horizontal ray fL is that refracted. Then let the *altitude* of the apparent *altitude* of the Star rLg or xLg be given. Let the rule of Refraction, or the reaſon of the ſign nfT, TfL, or the ſign nfT, TfL be found by the precedent *Propoſition*. Then on the Triangle TrL, from the notes Tr, TL; and on the Angle rLT let the Angle TrL be found. And as the ſign TfL is to the ſign Tfn: ſo is TrL to the other ſign, which ſhall be that of the Angle mrT: from which, if that you take away Trf, the refraction mrL demanded is left. See Scheme.

The Ancient *Opticks* uſed another far more intricate, but yet a more falſe method.

Propoſition XXXIV.

The Altitude and Rule of Refractions of the Air being given, to find the refraction at the given apparent altitude of the Star, and thence the true Altitude.

This is the ſame with the former; becauſe in the former, from the given refraction at the given *Altitude*, that rule of Refraction was to be found. Examples for Exerciſe may be taken from the Table laid down before. Of Refractions

Of the Reflection of Light in the Air.

Propoſition XXXV.

The Rays of the Sun and Moon having entred the Air, or Atmoſphere, are not only refracted, but are alſo reflected or repercuſſed from the particles of the Air, as from a rough Looking-glaſs, *by reaſon of the inordinate ſcituation of the particles.*

Of the Rays of the Sun.

For except the Rays of the *Sun* were reflected from the particles to our eyes, no part of the *Air* would appear lucid unto us, except that above, which the *Sun* is; and ſo the *Sun* being in the Oriental part, neither the Meridian or Occidental *Air* would be lucid: Therefore ſome *rays* being refracted, paſs through by the *Atmoſphere*; ſome are refracted here and there with many reflections from one particle unto another, and ſo they make the Air luminous or light.

Propoſition XXXVI.

The reflection of the rays of the Sun from the particles of the Air, is the chief cauſe of the Twilight; that is, of the light before the riſing, and after the ſetting of the Sun.

Chief cauſe of Twilight is the reflection of the Rays of the Sun from the particles of the Air.

It is manifeſt from the precedent *Propoſition*: for as the *Sun* being in the Eaſt, his rays being ejaculated to the Weſt, do reflect to our eyes, and ſo make the Occidental part conſpicuous: ſo the *Sun* being beneath the Horizon, his rays ſent forth into our Air are reflected to our Eyes and to the Occident, and from the Occident to our Eyes.

Propoſition XXXVII.

The beginning of the ſcituation of the Morning Twilight, that is, the Oriental Air is illuminated, and is ſo beheld, the Sun being depreſſed about 18 *degrees beneath the Horizon: and the end of the Evening Twilight* (*that is,* no more illumination appeareth in the Occidental Air,) *is, when the Sun is depreſſed* 18 degrees *beneath the Occidental Horizon.*

Of the Morning Twilight.

This *Propoſition* dependeth on Experience and Obſervation, for if in the Morning ſeaſon (that is, after the firſt and ſecond hour after Midnight,) we diligently obſerve, our Eyes being turned towards the Eaſt, when that any bright colour ſheweth it ſelf in the Oriental *Air* about the Horizon, and that we know at that time the *hour*, and *minute* of the *hour*, we may thence know the depreſſion of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon. Now we underſtand a ſerene *Air*, of which ſeeing that there is or may be a great difference; thence it cometh to paſs, that ſome do extend the Twilight to the twentieth *degree* of the depreſſion of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon; others unto the ſixteenth: for by how much the *Air* is more thick, by ſo much the leſs will the light of the Twilight be diſcovered, contrary unto what we ſaid, may happen in refraction.

Propoſition

Propoſition XXXVIII.

The Altitude of the Air, or matter, may be found from the quantity of the Twilight, which by reflection createth the light of the Twilight, as hitherto they have thought; neither doth the beginning of the Twilight ariſe from a ſimple, but at leaſt from a double reflection.

Let *T L h* be the *Earth*, *g f o m* the bound of the *Air*; *L* the place of the Earth in which the Twilight appeareth, or the light in the Horizontal Air *f*, the incident Solary ray *f g s*. Therefore *Mathematicians*, that have hitherto written concerning Twilights, ſay, that the ray incident on *f*, which maketh the reflection *f L* to come from the very Sun *S*, and becauſe that no ray can come from the Sun to *f*, ſo long as the Sun is beneath the Tangent *f h s*; for Example in *S*, then its *ray* may come to *f* firſt: or becauſe that they will have reflection to be made from *f*, as from an hollow *Looking-glaſs*; therefore *T f h* ought to be equal to the Angle *T f L*: wherefore becauſe that the *Sun* is found depreſſed 18 *degrees* beneath the Horizon, therefore the Angle *n f s* ſhall be found 18 *degrees*, and *L f h* 162, and *T f h* or *T f L* 81 *degrees*, and *L T f* 9 *deg.* whence *T f* is found about 874 *German miles*, and the *altitude* of the *Air* 11 *miles*, as *Clavius* and *Nonius* make it. *Alhacen* and *Vitellio* make it 13 *miles*. See Sch.....

This ſo great an *altitude* of the *Air* muſt in no ſort be granted, when that other *Phænomenons* do repugn: Now that it is found ſo great according to that method, that happeneth from a falſe *hypotheſis* that they aſſume, *viz.* the ray *g h f*, which maketh the reflected *f L* to come from the very *Sun*: for this is falſe, becauſe that it cometh by reflection from another ray; for Example, *g L*. Now that to make the ſmall light in *f*, it is not neceſſary that the ray *f g* ſhould come from the very *Sun*, but another reflected ray may do the ſame, is proved from thence, that in the Occidental Air we behold the light before the riſing of the *Sun*; when yet it is certain, that no direct ray then cometh from the Sun *S* to the Occidental Air *m*, but from another point of the Air; for Example, from *f* and *o*, and ſo the reflected ray *L m* proceedeth from the incident ray *f m*, which very *f m* is reflected from the incident *g f*, and this *g f* from another *g L*, which perchance alſo cometh from another. Secondly, that alſo is worthy of note, That they have determined, that reflection is cauſed from the Air as from an hollow *Looking-glaſs*, the Center of whoſe cavity is *T*, *viz.* the ſame with that of the *Earth*: for this alſo is falſe, for the rays are reflected from the particles of the Air, no regard being had to the Center of the *Earth*, but according to the ſuperficies of thoſe *particles*: this is manifeſt from the ray *L m*, which ſlideth from the *Occidental* Air *m* to *T*; for if that it came from *M* as from the *hollow-glaſs* of the Center *T*, its incident ought to come from the quarter *x*; but now it cometh from *o*, or between *f* and *o*: therefore the ray *L m* is ſo reflected from the particle *m*, as the *figure* of it required. And there are in the Air *particles* of a moſt different figure, and therefore it is no wonder, if that divers reflections are here and there cauſed into all quarters.

Propoſition XXXIX.

It being ſuppoſed, that the light of the Twilight is not generated by a ſimple, but by a double reflection, to find thence the altitude of the Air, which may more agree with other Obſervations.

In the former *Propoſition* it is ſaid, that that ray *g h f*, which maketh the firſt reflection *f L* in the beginning of the Twilight, cometh not from the *Sun* it ſelf, but that it is alſo reflected in *g*; let therefore his incident be *g l* (which may touch the *Earth* in *p*, for ſo *L g* is the firſt ray that can come to *g*:) and this we place to come now immediately from the *Sun* it ſelf, yet by reaſon of refractions it may a little deviate, *viz.* let *Q L* be the very ray it ſelf of the Sun, *l p g* See Scheme.

the refract, $g\,h\,x$ the reflex, $f\,L$ the second reflex. The *altitude* of the Air $T\,x$ is to be found out; because that therefore the ray $g\,l\,x$ is the refract of the incident $Q\,L$, let us suppose the refraction to be made 30 *minutes*, *viz.* the Angle $Q\,l\,x$: moreover, the Center of the *Sun* to be 17 *degrees* beneath the Horizon, when that the Twilight beginneth; therefore the Limbus of the *Sun* Q, which shall be distant beneath the Horizon 16 *deg.* 45 *min.* and 30 *min.* being taken away by reason of refraction; the Angle $n\,K\,x$ 16 *deg.* 15 *min.* shall be the refracted depression of the Limbus of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon: And moreover, because that $K\,L$, $K\,p$ are equal, and also $f\,L$, $g\,p$, therefore $K\,g$, $K\,f$ are also equal, and the Angle $K\,f\,g$ is equal to the Angle $K\,g\,f$. Now both of them taken together are equal to the Angle $n\,K\,g$, 16 *degrees* 15 *minutes*; wherefore $K\,f\,g$ is 8 *degrees* 7 *minutes*, and $f\,T\,L$ is 4 *degrees*, and $T\,f\,L$ 86 *minutes*, whence is found that $T\,f$, 86½ *miles*. And therefore the *altitude* of the Air is found 1½ *mile*, which is far lesser than the *Mathematicians* formerly deduced from the Twilight, and it will yet be found far lesser, if that a threefold reflection be placed to make the beginning of the Twilight, which is not impossible; and this twofold or threefold reflection is more rightly admitted of for the cause of the duration of the Twilight, than that which *Kepler* alledgeth concerning the splendid matter in the vicinity of the *Sun*. See the other things concerning the time of the Twilight, and variation of Longitude, in the second part of this Book.

Proposition XL.

To find out the Altitude of the Clouds by a Geodetical *dimension.*

By a *Geodetical* dimension to find out the Altitude of the Clouds.

The Air being serene and quiet, let any point, or little Cloud more observable than the rest be taken, and measure the *altitude* of this, as the top of an high Tower, from two *stations*; so that at the same time one Observer may be in one *station*, and the other in another: so you shall find the *altitude* of this Cloud, which is never found to exceed a quarter of a *mile*.

Proposition XLI.

To suppute the quantity of the Air, its altitude being given.

This is nothing else, but to suppute the space between the *Earth* and the outward superficies of the *Air*, which is easie, if so be that we know the *altitude* of the Air: For let the solidity of the Sphere be supputed, whose Semidiameter is composed of the Semidiameter of the *Earth*, and the Altitude of the *Air*; and from the found out solidity, let the solidity of the *Earth* be taken away, that which is left is the solidity or quantity of the Air.

Proposition XLII.

The Air in some places hath some things peculiar.

Of Rains. In *Ægypt* it seldom or never raineth.

So in *Ægypt* it very seldom Raineth, or rather not at all: and if at any time a light Rain falleth, *Catarrhs*, distempers of the Lungs, *Feavers*, and other Diseases do follow. The inundation of *Nilus*, and almost a *quotidian Frost* in the Morning, do supply the stead of Rains. So in *Peru*, Rains are never seen. In many places under the *Æquator* it raineth for an whole half year, and in the other half it is fair. See in the Second Part, Chapter the 26*th*.

Also in *Peru*.

The Island *Pulon Timor*, is for the most part covered with *Clouds* and *Frost*.

The Air of *Sumatra*.

In the Island of *Sumatra* the Air is very heavy and cloudy, by reason of many standing-Pools. The like is in many other places: so in Old *Mexico*; also in *Malacca*, and the like.

The

The Isle of St. *Thomas*, lying under the *Æquator*, is reputed to have the most unwholsom Air of all Regions, although that it abound in all Fruits. St. *Thomas*.

In the Province of *Chili* the Air is so subtile, that a Sword sheathed in its Scabbard without any wiping, yet receiveth no rust. *Chili*.

In the Isles of the *Azores* the Air and Wind is so sharp, that it eateth plates of *Iron*; and the Walls, covered with the same, in a short space, and reduceth them to dust. Isles of the *Azores*.

Aristotle relateth, that on Mount *Olympus* there is no motion of *Air*, (yea no Air at all, if that that be true which followeth); and that Characters written in the Dust, are found there after many years without any disturbance; and that those that ascend that Mountain cannot continue their lives, except that they carry moistned Sponges with them, by the help of which they breath.

In *America*, when that the *Spaniards* passed through from *Nicaragua* into *Peru*, on the tops of the Mountains interposed, many suddenly died, or were frozen to death, with their Horses, like unto Statues, even unto the return of those that escaped. Some think, that a defect of *Air* was the cause; but that is not probable. Neither do I receive that for truth, which *Aristotle* writeth concerning Mount *Olympus*, because the contrary is found in higher Mountains, whose tops are covered with *Snow*. Whence we formerly conclude, that they are not above the Air, but that the Air floweth over them. *Busbequius*, an Eye-witness, declareth, that Mount *Olympus* in the Summer is also covered with *Snow*. See the Chapter of Mountains.

About the Isles of the *Indian Ocean* the Air is fragrant with the scent of the Odours, especially at that time when that *Aromaticks* are mature. *Mariners* discover this scent when that as yet they are three or four miles distant from these Isles, *viz.* when that a Wind contrary to their course bloweth. The Authors relation of the Mountain *Carpathus* in *Hungaria*.

The Air of the *Sea* is more heavy than that of the *Land*, and less acceptable unto those that are not accustomed unto it: the difference is manifestly discerned when that *Mariners* approach near the shoar; for by the distance of an whole mile they will discover how nigh the Land they are, by the very Air. *Mariners* relate this especially concerning *Soffala*, which is scituated in the Oriental Coast of *Africa*.

When that I had printed these, I hapned by chance on a certain Observation made by *David Frælichius* on the Mountain *Carpathus* in *Hungaria*, which because it made not a little to the confirming our Judgment concerning the *altitude* of the Air, and the constitution of its Regions, I therefore have thought fit to annex it here, although it ought to have been adjoyned to the 18*th Proposition*. Of the Mountains of *Hungaria*, *Carpathus* (saith he) is the chief, by which vulgar appellation all the tract of the *Sarmatian* Mountains is denominated, which separate *Hungary* from *Rutheni*, the *Polonians*, *Moravians*, the *Silesians*, and that part of *Austria* which is on this side the *Danube*. Their more high and astonishing tops are in the Earldom *Sepusia*, at my Native Country, *Cæsariopolis*. Now by reason that they are almost covered with perpetual *Snows*, they are termed by the *Sclavonians*, *Tatry* or *Tarczal*, as it were the shaved and bald *Mountains*. And these Mountains, by reason of their roughness and precipices, far exceeding the *Italian* and the *Helvetian Alpes*, and those of *Tiroli*, are almost unpassable, and are seldom travelled over, except by the Searchers of Nature. Now I my self (that I may relate this by the by) in the Month of *June*, *Anno* 1615, being desirous to try and discover the height of these Mountains (with two others of my Associates) when being on the top of the *Mountain* with great pains, I thought that I had attained unto the uttermost height, of a sudden another sublimer Mountain offered it self, unto which I arrived through vast and tottering Stones, which if moved falleth down towards the Valley, and that with so great a noise to the astonishment of the Passenger! After I was ascended, another more high was discovered by me, and so some lesser tops, the latter of which always exceeded the former in *altitude*, through so many Valleys was I forced to pass, with the great hazard of my life, until I had arrived unto the uppermost top of all; and when that I surveyed the Valleys beneath beset with

with huge Trees. From the declivities of the Mountains, I could obſerve nothing but an obſcure Night, or a blewiſh colour, like unto profound Air; and it ſeemed to me, that if I ſhould chance to fall from the Mountain, that I ſhould not light on the Earth, but fall directly into the Firmament: For by the overmuch declivity, the viſible Objects were extenuated and dulled. But whilſt that I aſcended a more high Mountain, I was pendent, as it were, amongſt moſt thick Miſts. Having overcome theſe, after the ſpace of ſome hours, when that I was not far from the higheſt top of all, repoſing my ſelf, from aloft I beheld and diſcovered, that in thoſe places, where I ſuppoſed my ſelf before to be lodged amongſt Miſts, that there moved compacted and white Clouds; above which for ſome miles, and beyond the bounds of *Sepuſa*, I had a commodious proſpect. Yet alſo I ſaw ſome Clouds higher, likewiſe ſome more low, and alſo ſome equally diſtant from the *Earth*. And hence I underſtood three things: 1. That then I had paſſed the beginning of the Middle Region of the *Air*. 2. That the diſtance of the Clouds from the *Earth* was not equal, but according to the mode of the Vapour, in ſome places higher, and elſewhere more low. 3. That the diſtance of the Clouds near the *Earth*, was far leſſer than what ſome *Philoſophers* do determine, and that not 72 *German miles*, but only half a *German mile*. When that I came to the higheſt pitch of the Mountain, I found the *Air* ſo calm and ſubtle, that I diſcovered not the motion of an hair; when yet notwithſtanding, I had found in the more depreſſed parts of the Mountain a vehement Wind: whence I gathered, that the higheſt top of this Mountain *Carpathus* ariſeth a *German mile* from its lower root or *baſis*, and extendeth to the ſupream Region of the Air, unto which the Winds aſcend not. On the top I fired a Piſtol, which gave no greater a Report at firſt, than if I had broken a ſmall Stick; after a ſhort ſpace of time, a great rumbling or murmuring increaſed, and filled the lower parts of the Mountain, Valleys and Woods, like unto the report of a Canon: (here I feared, leaſt that the whole Mountain being ſhaken, ſhould have fallen with me;) and this noiſe continued for about half a quarter of an hour, until that it had penetrated the moſt obtruſe Caverns, at which the Air being multiplied on every hand rebounded. And indeed ſuch concave Objects did not preſent themſelves on the top of the Mountain; therefore the ſound at firſt was repercuſſed almoſt inſenſible, until that by deſcending it became more near to the Caves and Valleys, it moreforceably ſtruck againſt them. Alſo in theſe high Mountains, for the moſt part, in the midſt of Summer it *Snoweth* or *Haileth*, when that it *Raineth* in the adjacent Plain; as I alſo my ſelf have found. The *Snows* of divers years may be known from their colour and hard Cruſt.

Three things obſerved by him.

CHAP.

CHAP. XX.

Of the Winds in general, and the Quarters of the World.

A Certain affection of the Air is the *Wind*, and therefore the conſideration of the ſame doth appertain to the abſolute contemplation of the *Earth*, eſpecially ſeeing that its cognition is required in *Hydrography*, and moſt of all in the Art of *Navigation*, which is a part of *Geography*: which although I grant more to belong unto *Natural Philoſophy*; yet becauſe that it containeth many things belonging unto *Geography*, therefore I ſhall briefly treat of the ſame here.

Propoſition I.

The Wind is a commotion of the Air, ſenſible by touch, or with ſome force.

So I think it may be defined with the conſent of all Nations: neither ſhall I here contradict ſome Conceited perſons. If that the commotion be higher, it is termed an *Air* or *Breez*; but if that the agitation be ſo ſmall, that of it ſelf it aſſerteth not the ſenſe of Touching, then it is not termed a Wind: And the Air is never without ſuch an agitation of *particles*, as a ray of the *Sun* let into a Chamber by a narrow paſſage, doth evidence; therefore we add the word *Touch* in the Definition, for that motion of the *Atoms* is only perceivable by the Eye. Of the Wind.

Propoſition II.

Moſt Winds tend from one quarter to the oppoſite quarter, and force Bodies with them.

This is perceivable both from the force of the *Winds*, or our *Bodies*; and alſo from the *Vanes* fixed on the top of the *Maſts* of the *Ships*, which are extended by the Wind to the contrary quarter. Winds force Bodies with them in their motion.

Yet this is not done altogether directly and continually, but with ſome motion of the *Vanes* hither and thither. There are ſome that ſuppoſe, that we ought to have added in the Definition, A commotion made towards one quarter, or towards the ſame parts: But we thought theſe more fit to be omitted, ſeeing that alſo ſome circular *Winds* are found, and to ſpeak properly, no *Wind* conſtantly obſerveth the ſame quarter.

Propoſition III.

A Quarter is an imaginary point, which we conceive to be extended from any place of the Earth perpendicularly, towards one point of thoſe which circularly ſtand about that place.

Such the true and common Notion ſeemeth to be; in the finding out of which I have not a little endeavoured: ſometimes the *Points* ſtanding about are termed *Quarters*. Of Quarters.

Indeed the Explication of the *Quarters* doth not belong unto this Section of *Geography*, but unto the third, concerning the *Compleat Affections*; but becauſe that the ſorts or kinds of *Winds* are denominated from them, or theſe from the *Winds*, therefore here we ſhall anticipate that Tractation. Now this is the uſe of the *Quarters*, that ſeeing various things and appearances do appear in a various ſcituation from ours, we may be able to explain the ſame.

Propo-

Propoſition IV.

The Quarters are infinite in number, ſeeing that Plains may be drawn through every point of the Horizon; but only 32 have obtained peculiar appellations at this day, which are alſo common to the Winds, that blow from ſuch Quarters.

But 32 particular Winds.

The *Quarters* are twofold (as alſo the Winds) *Cardinal* and *Collateral*; the *Cardinal* are thoſe which paſs through by the four circumſtantial *Points* depending on the daily circumvolution of the *Stars*. Such are the *North*, *South*, *Eaſt* and *Weſt*: by which names, both the *Quarters* and alſo the *Winds* are deſigned. For we ſay, the North and South *quarter* and *wind*, the Weſt, South, Eaſt *quarter* and *wind*: and the Winds are called by one term *Aquilo* or *Boreas*, the North-wind; *Auſter* or *Notus* the South-wind; *Eurus*, the Eaſt; *Zephyrus*, the Weſt-wind. Thoſe are collateral which ſtand between two *Cardinal Winds*, of which there are infinite. At this day are accounted only 28, *viz.* ſeven between two *Cardinal Winds*, as between the North and Eaſt, the Eaſt and South, the South and Weſt, and the Weſt and North. Of theſe intermedial ones, four are primary *Quarters* or *Winds*, *viz.* that are exactly in the middle between the *Cardinal* ones, and are diſtant from them 45 *degrees*, which are the North-eaſt, the South-eaſt, the South-weſt, and the North-weſt.

Propoſition V.

Theſe 32 Quarters are equally diſtant one from another, viz. *every one from that which is next; whence it cometh to paſs, that 11 degrees of the Horizon, and one quarter, do intercede between two quarters. The Cardinal Quarters are diſtant from one another 90 degrees.*

The 32 Quarters are equally diſtant one from another.

For ſeeing that the *Horizon*, as a Circle comprehending all the *Points* about any place, hath 360 *degrees*, as all other Circles; if that 360 *degrees* be divided between 32 *Quarters*, every one ſhall receive 11 *degrees* 15 *minutes*; but if that they be divided amongſt four *Cardinal Quarters*, every one of thoſe *Cardinals* ſhall receive 90 *degrees*. Therefore the *quarter* from the *North* towards the *Eaſt* is the firſt, which is diſtant from the *North* towards the *Eaſt*, 11 *deg.* 15 *minutes*: the ſecond, which is 22 *deg.* 30 *minutes*: the third, which it 33 *degrees* 45 *minutes*: the fourth, which is 45 *degrees*; this is in the midſt: and ſo in the other *Quarters*.

The terms given to theſe 32, both *Quarters* and *Winds*, by the *Germans*, are moſt commodious; but are very difficultly imitated by other Tongues. Therefore you may ſee the order of the *Quarters* in the Table annexed with their *degrees*. We have alſo added the *Latin* and *Italian* appellations.

Propoſition VI.

Now becauſe as yet Intervals very great interceded between the two Quarters, from which the Winds may blow, and in which other Bodies are often placed, the ſcituation of which unto our place we deſire to know; therefore ſome cut twice every one of theſe 32 Quarters, and interplace one, ſo that they reckon 64 Quarters and Winds, which ſome Mariners obſerve in long Navigations.

The 32 Quarters, by ſome divided into 64 Quarters.

But *Mathematicians*, ſeeing that theſe do not ſufficiently ſuffice to an accurate deſignation, they reckon ſo many *quarters* as there are *degrees* and *minutes* in the Horizon, and they denominate and deſign them by the number of the *degrees* and *minutes* by which they are diſtant from any *Cardinal quarter*; or by how much the *Arch* of the Horizon is intercepted between the

Cardinal

Cardinal quarter, and any point of the *Horizon*: ſo the quarter of the firſt degree, from the South towards the Eaſt, and the like. But in the *Sea-mans* obſervation of the Winds, ſo ſubtle a diviſion ought not to be required.

Yet a Mode may be thought on, by which the 32 *Winds* may more commodiouſly be denominated, that it may be eaſie to the Tongue and Speech of all Nations, *viz.* if that they be named from the order in which they mutually follow from one *Cardinal quarter* to the other.

For Example; the firſt from *South* to *Eaſt*, or the firſt *South-Eaſt*; the ſecond *North-Eaſt*; the third, fourth, and ſo on.

Propoſition VII.

The Ancients both Greeks *and* Latins *reckoned leſs Winds, or that we may ſpeak more truly, they impoſed names on fewer Winds; neither do they conſent in theſe, but call the ſame Winds by divers names, which they took not from the Order, but from ſomewhat elſe. Whence there ariſeth no ſmall difficulty concerning their diſtribution of the VVinds.*

In time paſt amongſt the *Grecians* only four Winds had names, *viz.* the *Cardinal winds*; *Eurus* blowing from the Eaſt, *Zephyrus* from the Weſt, *Boreas* from the North, and *Notus* from the South. Neither doth *Homer* make any other mention of the *Winds*. Then at length unto theſe they added four others, to wit, of thoſe that blow from theſe quarters: 1. In the quarter in which the *Sun* doth ariſe, when the *Winter Solſtice* is between the *Eaſt* and *South*, which quarter is called the *Winter Solſtice* of the *Eaſt*: and the *wind* is termed *Eurus*; for they call the Eaſt-wind it ſelf *Subſolanus*: but *Gellius* calleth it *Vulturnus*, and he will rather have the Eaſtern wind called *Eurus*. 2. In which the *Sun* ſetteth, which is called *Africus* and *Lybs*. 3. In which it riſeth in the time of the *Summer Solſtice*, between the Eaſt (*Eurus*) and the North, which quarter is called the *Solſtitial* riſing abſolutely; and the wind is termed by them *Aquilo*. 4. In which he ſetteth in time of the *Solſtice*, which quarter is termed the *Summer* or *Solſticial* ſetting of the *Sun*. This *wind* was termed by the *Grecians*, *Corus*.

The *Greeks* and *Latins* reckon fewer Winds than twelve.

The annexed *Diagram* repreſenteth the Order of the *Winds*, according to the annumeration of *Seneca*, in the fifth Book of his *Natural Queſtions*.

See *Lib.* 5. of *Seneca's* Natural Philoſophy.

Propoſition VIII.

This deſignation of the Grecians *is very inconvenient for Navigation, and other uſes, which inconveniency they did not much diſcover, when for a long ſpace they departed not from* Greece *in their Navigations.*

For in places of a diverſe Latitude, or of a diverſe diſtance from the *Poles*, diverſe alſo is the diſtance of the *VVinter* and *Solſticial* riſing from the quarters, *North*, *South*, and ſo on. Yet the *Grecians* retained it, augmented with other appellations of the four intermedial Winds, ſo that there were 12 *winds*, every one of which they deſigned by their proper terms; although that ſome others reckon otherwiſe. The *Latins* beſides theſe twelve, added the names of twelve more, which blow between two of the former twelve; the following *Diagram* ſheweth their appellations and order, in which the *Greek* winds are noted by Greater letters, and thoſe which the *Romans* have interpoſed between every two, are noted by Leſſer letters: yet *Seneca* noteth, that this inconveniency was long ſince obſerved by *Varro*, and that therefore he ordered theſe twelve *VVinds* thus, that every two ſhould be diſtant by equal diſtances, not having any regard of the riſing of the *Solary quarter*; but in that *Seneca* affirmeth, that there are no more *VVinds* than twelve, is falſe and ridiculous, for they are infinite.

Propoſition IX.

Hitherto we have explained the diſtribution of the Winds taken from the quarters; and have alſo ſhewed, that both the diviſions of the Ancient Grecians *and* Romans, *is leſs adapted to the uſe of Navigation and Geography.*

Therefore we deſervedly retain the more recent diſtributions, which conſtitute 32 *Winds* blowing from quarters equally diſtant. Now thoſe are called *Oppoſite Winds*, or contrary, which blow from quarters diametrically oppoſite: For we conceive the *Winds*, as coming from another place to our place; but we ſuppoſe a quarter to be extended from our place to another place.

Propoſition X.

The Cauſes of the Winds are various; for ſeeing that the Wind is nothing elſe but a continued protraction of the Air, all thoſe things which are able to effect ſuch a protruſion, will be the cauſes of Winds. Now they are theſe:

The Cauſes of the Winds are various.

1. The chief and general cauſe is the *Sun* it ſelf, which attenuateth and rarefieth the *Air* by his fiery *beams*, eſpecially that on which he ſendeth forth his perpendicular rays, or over which he ſtandeth; for the *Air* being rarefied requireth far more ſpace. Thence it cometh to paſs, that the *Air* being forced by the *Sun*, doth protrude the vicine *Air* with a great force; and when that the *Sun* is moved round from the Eaſt into the Weſt, the chief force of the *Air* cauſed by him is towards the Weſt. And a ſign of it may be, that in many places of the *torrid Zone*, and every where in the *Sea*, a continual Eaſterly *wind* doth blow, *viz.* the *Sun* thruſteth forwards the *Air* from the Eaſt towards the Weſt, and exceedeth not the *torrid Zone*. Indeed the rareſied *Air* is thruſt forwards circularly towards all the quarters, *North*, *Eaſt*, *South*, *Weſt*; but yet it is not admitted in all quarters: But the more vehement protruſion is towards the Weſt, becauſe that the *Sun* moveth towards that quarter; therefore the *wind* is almoſt continually more ſenſible in the *torrid Zone* towards this quarter. But in our *Zone* for many days in the Morning before the riſing of the *Sun*, and after that, where for the moſt part other Winds do ceaſe. Of other *quarters*, ſome are ſometimes more diſpoſed than others to receive this force: therefore where the protruſion becometh greater towards the North, the South *Wind* is ſaid to blow; when that it is thruſt towards the Eaſt, then the Weſt *Wind* bloweth; when towards the South, the North, and ſo for other *quarters*. And it is to be noted, that when this protruſion is made to any quarter lying without thoſe four *Cardinal Quarters*, then in divers Regions a diverſe *Wind* ſhall be ſeen: For although that that quarter be one in reſpect of the place unto which the *Sun* is vertical, yet in reſpect of other places it is diverſe; and ſo the ſame cauſe maketh the ſame *Wind* to be termed by divers names in ſeveral Regions. Now this cauſe is either aſſiſted or hindred by other cauſes; if that it be aſſiſted, it maketh the *Wind* vehement; if it be hindred, it maketh it leſs vehement from that quarter, and oftentimes another *Wind* then bloweth, which is rather aſſiſted by that general cauſe. 2. I make the ſecond cauſe of the *Winds*, and that more frequently, *Exhalations* elevated copiouſly, and with a violence from the Sea and Land; but they ſcarce cauſe any *Winds*, except that when they begin to be rarefied. 3. The attenuation and rarefaction of the *Clouds* and *Miſts*, whether that it be cauſed by the *Sun*, or from other Stars; or whether from included or adjoyned *fires*, or *ſulphureous particles*. 4. The diſſolving of *Snow* and *Ice*, eſpecially of that which lieth on Mountainous places, and are not wholly diſſolved into *water*. 5. The various ſcituation and riſing of the *Moon* and the other *Stars*. 6. The condenſation and rarefaction of the *Air* and *Vapours* by any heat or cold. 7. The deſcent of the *Clouds*, by which the ſubjected Air is preſſed.

The

The conſideration of the *Æolopile* conduceth much to the more eaſie underſtanding of theſe cauſes, into which the *water* included, *fire* being put to it by an arrow orifice, ſendeth forth the *winds* with a great force, until that all the *water* be exhaled. Now theſe retain the place of a narrow orifice in the Air; 1. The more denſe circumſtantial Air. 2. If that the ſame vicine Air be forced by, or prohibited to give place by other Vapours or Miſts. 3. If that the Air be more condenſed towards one quarter, and ſo layeth open a way to Blaſts.

Propoſition XI.

Why the Winds blow ſo that they make a perpendicular line over the Horizon; or why the going forth of the Winds is perpendicular to the Horizon.

The cauſe is, by reaſon that the *Air* in a *Spherical figure* doth encompaſs the *Earth*, and the protruſion of the *Air* is made for the moſt part through the greateſt circle of the *Sphere*, which paſſeth through the Center of the *Earth*: for although we may ſuppoſe the *Air* to be forced according to a tranſverſe *line*, yet becauſe that there is a leſſer force from the ſides, and greater reſiſtance; thence it cometh to paſs, that the *winds* incumb into the midſt of the paſſage. But we ſhall more commodiouſly conceive this mode, if that we do but conſider the firſt cauſe of the *winds*: for the *Sun* thruſts forwards the Air towards all the quarters of that place, unto which it is vertical; but that force is not received in all, as I have ſaid. If that now we conſider the great Circles drawn from that place, and amongſt theſe, thoſe in which the Air is thruſt forwards, all thoſe places of the *Earth* ſeated in this *circle* or *ſemicircle*, ſhall find the *wind* falling down perpendicularly, by reaſon that every great Circle of the *Earth*, paſſing through any place of it, is perpendicular to the *Horizon* of that place. The ſame is the reaſon, if that at any time the *wind* breaketh forth from a thick *Fog*, or diſſolved *Clouds*; but thoſe places that are ſcituated without theſe Circles, feel not the *wind*, although that the *Air* be moved above their Horizon; becauſe that it is not perpendicular to that Horizon, but oblique.

The *winds* ſo blow, that they make a perpendicular line over the Horizon.

Yet it is not general, that the *wind* proceedeth in a perpendicular way to the Horizon, becauſe that oftentimes in the *Air* tranſverſe Blaſts are found. So we ſee, that Smoak coming forth of a *Chimney*, is not carried by the *wind* towards one quarter, but part of it is carried unto other quarters.

Propoſition XII.

Why the Winds blow by an interrupted force, ſo that ſometimes they ceaſe, and other ſome, as it were, with redoubled ſtrength they return with the greater importunity: And why that they ſeem more continually to blow on the Sea, ſo that it is diſcovered leſs calm.

I ſuppoſe the reaſon to be, that the cauſe that moveth or ſtirreth up the *Winds*, continueth not always, but that ſome ſpace is required unto the collection of ſuch a quantity, which by ſuch a vehemency may break through the *Air*; and therefore, becauſe that *Exhalations* are more continual in the *Air*, and the motion is leſs impeded, there the calm in the *Ocean* is leſs diſcovered, although that it be not wholly removed.

The *winds* blow by an interrupted force.

Proposition XIII.

Why no Wind bloweth perpendicularly from the Air unto the places of the Earth.

See *Aristotle*, lib. 2. chap. 9. of *Meteors.*

Concerning this question, *Aristotle* in his *Second Book, Chap.* 9. of *Meteors*, treateth very absurdly; so that the *Peripateticks* are not agreeing concerning his Opinion: neither shall I in this place relate their *Sentiments*. The cause seemeth easily to be explained, *viz.* that the *Air* being thrust downwards towards the Center of the *Earth*, cannot break through this way, by reason that other vapours are expelled or born upwards; and therefore the overmuch resistance of the *Air*, which is directly scituated under the *Air* moved, causeth the protrusion to be made to the sides of the place in which the violence beginneth. Which is therefore the more probable, seeing that the matter of the *Wind* is for the most part more light than that *Air*, and that is more rarified than that which is more near unto the *Earth*.

Proposition XIV.

Why Westerly-winds are less frequent than Easterly-winds.

See *Proposition* 10.

The cause of this is manifest from the *Tenth Proposition*, where we have made the *Sun* to be the first cause of *Winds*, who so rarifieth the Air proceeding from the East to the West; and therefore the Air is more thrust towards the West. Therefore that this general cause may be impeded, of necessity very many *Exhalations* must consist in the Western-quarters, which doth happen less frequently.

Proposition XV.

Why the Northern and Eastern-winds are more impetuous and stormy: and on the contrary, the Southern and Western more relaxed and weak.

The Northern and Eastern *Winds* more stormy, than the Southern and VVestern.

The cause is by reason that the *Northern Air* is more thick, by reason of Cold; and the *Southern* (in our *Zone*,) by reason of the greater dissipation caused by the *Sun* and *Heat* is more rarified. Now by how much the *Air* is more rarified, by so much the lesser is it carried with an impetuous force. Yet you must know, that the *South-winds* are cold, dry and violent in the *Temperate Zone* or the *Artick Zone*, opposed to ours, no less than the *Northern-winds* are unto us; but the *Eastern-wind* is more rigid, or more intense for another cause, *viz.* because that it ariseth for the most part from the refraction of the Air, made by the *Sun*, which being continually carried from the East to the West, the Air also is thrust forwards with the greater violence from the East to the West: But it is probable that other causes may accede, that may either help or obstruct that violence.

Proposition XVI.

Why the Southernly and Westernly-winds are found more hot than the Easternly and Northernly, which have a wonderful power of causing Cold in respect of them.

The Southern and VVestern *winds* are found more hot, than the Easternly and VVesternly.

So this Question is wont vulgarly to be propounded; yet we must know that it must not generally be understood of all places, but only concerning the places of our *Zone*: For in the other *temperate Zone* scituated towards the South from the *Æquator*, the contrary holdeth true; because that in these places the *Northern-winds* are hot or warm, and the *Southern* are found more cold. And so the nature of the thing, and the condition of the cause required:

For

For the reaſon why the *South-wind* is diſcovered more warm to us, and the *North* more cold, proceedeth hence, *viz.* that the *South-winds* come from a quarter and places more near unto the *torrid Zone*, or way of the *Sun*; but the *Northern places* more remote from that way of the *Sun*, that is, from more cold places. But the contrary is found in places ſcituated towards the *Antartick Pole* from the *Æquator*, becauſe that the *Northern-winds* approach to them from the way of the *Sun*, the *Southern* from the places more near the *Pole*.

But as concerning the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern-winds* I muſt anſwer otherwiſe, neither doth that diverſity of the places of our Zone, and that of the oppoſite, here take place: Therefore firſt, it is ſaid in the preceding *Propoſition*, that the *Weſtern-winds* are leſs frequent in all places; the cauſe of which is the ſame with that, by reaſon of which the *Occidental winds* are diſcovered more warm, *viz.* becauſe that for the moſt part they blow in the Night, and after the ſetting of the Sun, where the *Air* that is thruſt forwards towards our place, is more calid or leſs frigid, than the Air of our place, which is more remote from the Weſt, than that which lieth between the *Sun* and our place. There is alſo another cauſe (which alſo is of force in the difference between the *Northern* and *Southern-winds*) *viz.* that the *Weſtern-winds* blow with leſs violence, and not ſo intenſe, but with ſome relaxation. Now it is known, that any Air or Wind is diſcovered ſo much the more cold, by how much it bloweth with the greater or more intenſe force, although in truth it be no hotter or colder, which is evident by our expiration, which we can exhale either cold or hot.

Propoſition XVII.

Why Mariners from the ſight of a Cloud, eſpecially ſuch a one that is of a pale or duskiſh colour, predict a wind from that quarter: alſo to declare the other ſigns of future winds.

Mariners from the ſight of a Cloud, predict a *Wind* from that quarter.

A twofold Reaſon may be rendred; for either *Clouds* of that colour do ſhew, that by and by they ſhall be diſſipated and diſſolved into *Blaſts*: or elſe the *Clouds* ſinking by their own weight, and ſegregated from other *Clouds*, preſs down the *Air* beneath them, and ſo cauſe it to blow. Concerning the peculiar *Clouds*, termed by the *Dutch* the *Bulls-eye*, ſee the following *Chapter*.

1. The *Sun* appearing ſpotted in his riſing, and lying obſcured under a paſe or black *Cloud*, foretelleth either *ſhowers* or *winds*. 2. If that the *Sun* at his riſing appeareth concave, ſo that it ſhineth from the middle and ſendeth forth *rays*, it ſignifieth a *moiſt* and *windy ſeaſon*. 3. If that the *Sun* be pale in his ſetting; but if it be red, the *Air* will be quiet and ſerene the next day. 4. If the *Sun* being pale ſetteth in black *Clouds*, it ſignifieth a *North-wind*. 5. If that the *Moon* be red like unto gold, it is deemed a certain ſign of a *Wind*, according to the Verſe,

Pallida Luna pluit, rubicunda flat, alba ſerenat.

6. A circle about the *Moon*. 7. If that the Northern-horn or corner of the *Moon* appear more extended, a *North-wind* is approaching: 8. If that the Southern, a *South-wind* is at hand. 9. The riſing of the *Moon*, and the more noted *Stars*; as of the *Bear*, *Orion*, and eſpecially the *Goats*, with the *Sun*. 10. If the ſmall Stars in *Cancer*, termed *Aſellos*, be covered with a *Cloud*, if the Northern of them be covered, the *Wind* will be South; if the Southern be covered, it will be North. 11. For the moſt part *Winds* begin to blow, when that the Wind ceaſeth. 12. When a certain noiſe and murmur, like to an Ebullition, is heard in the Sea. 13. The *Ancients* alſo prognoſticated from the *Raven*, the *Dolphin*, and other *Animals*. 14. From fiery *Meteors*, as from *Lightning* and *Falling-Stars*; but not from the *Ignes fatui*.

Propo-

Propoſition XVIII.

Why in the Spring and Autumn the Winds are more frequent, and blow with greater force, than in the hot Summer or cold Winter.

Greater and more frequent *winds* in Spring and Autumn, than in Summer and cold Winter.

In the *Spring* it is ſuppoſed to be partly by reaſon of the diſſolving of *Snow*, eſpecially in Mountainous places; partly, becauſe that the Pores of the *Earth* are then opened, and ſend forth many exhalations: partly, becauſe that the Air and Vapours are then more thin, when that they were condenſed in the *Winter*. Add, that for the moſt part in the Month before the beginning of the *Spring*, and in the very *Spring*, many Rays do fall, by reaſon that humid Conſtellations then have poſſeſſed thoſe houſes of the *Zodiack*, into which on the entrance of the *Sun* we account the beginning of the *Spring*; and alſo in *Autumn* the frequent Rays and Exhalations are to be accounted the cauſe of the *Winds*, as well as in the *Spring*, by reaſon that a moderate heat proceeding from the *Sun*, advanceth the Vapours and Exhalations; yet ſuch as are more thick and leſs attenuated. But in the heat of *Summer* there are no *Winds*, for the moſt part, for the ſame reaſon, by reaſon of which Rays are very ſeldom ſeen at that Seaſon, *viz.* becauſe that the *Sun* overmuch attenuateth the Exhalations, and doth not permit them ſo to conjoyn or meet in ſuch a quantity, as is required to the generation of the *Winds*. Which cauſe is not general or always true: and neither is it generally true, that in the heat of *Summer* there are no *Winds*; for here we are only to underſtand it concerning that which oftentimes happeneth: But in the ſharp *Winter* the *winds* are more rare, and that by reaſon that both fewer Vapours are raiſed from the *Earth*; and thoſe alſo that are elevated, are either condenſed into Clouds, or are ſo diſſipated by *Froſt*, that they cauſe no *wind*.

Propoſition XIX.

In what Altitude of the Air, or in what Region of the Air the Winds begin to blow.

In what Region the *winds* begin to blow.

There are ſome that ſuppoſe the *winds* not to exceed the lower Region of the *Air*, becauſe that they diſcover, that the tops of the high Mountains, as *Olympus*, feel no Blaſts. But I queſtion the Obſervation, ſeeing that the Smoak caſt forth from the top of Mount *Ætna*, is diſcerned to be moved to and fro by the *wind*: therefore I ſuppoſe, that ſuch a windy commotion may be cauſed alſo in the upper Region of the *Air*.

Propoſition XX.

Unto what ſpace one and the ſame Wind may extend it ſelf.

How far one and the ſame *wind* may extend it ſelf.

There is great diverſity in this matter; for the *winds* blowing from the Eaſt to the Weſt, under the *torrid Zone*, ſeem to encompaſs the whole *Earth*: and thoſe alſo that blow either from the North or South, for many days and long ſpaces, are wont to accompany and follow *Mariners*. The ſame ſeemeth true concerning collateral Lines; but this diverſity is, becauſe that the ſame *wind* is different in divers places, as we have ſhewed in the *Tenth Propoſition*, in the end of the explication of the firſt cauſe.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

Of the Winds in particular, and Tempeſts.

IN the foregoing Chapter we have alledged the diſtribution and differences, or rather the denominations of the *Winds*, which they receive from the quarter from whence they blow, or ſeem to blow; which diviſion alſo is accidental, by reaſon that they are taken in reſpect of a certain place of the *Earth* unto which thoſe Quarters are related. Now in this Chapter we ſhall alledge the diviſions and *Phænomena* which are in a certain time of the year, or elſe are proper to certain tracts of the *Earth*, although that we deſire to have more, and thoſe likewiſe more accurate Obſervations concerning theſe things. But we will produce what we have collected with much labour from the *Diaries* of the *Seamen*.

Propoſition I.

One Wind is conſtant, and another inconſtant.

Of Winds conſtant and inconſtant.

That is a conſtant *wind*, which at the leaſt for one or two hours bloweth from the ſame quarter.

That is an inconſtant *wind*, which ſometimes bloweth, and other ſome is changed into other *winds* blowing from other quarters.

The cauſes of the more or leſs duration of the ſame *wind*: alſo of the ſwift immutation ſeemeth to be, 1. if that it be from a general cauſe, or from a cauſe leſs conſtant. So *Winds* proceeding from the motion of the *Air*, with the motion of the *Sun* in the *torrid Zone*, are conſtant: ſo thoſe alſo that blow from the diſſolving of the *Snow*, eſpecially in the Mountains. 2. If that by chance there be no ſuch vapours in other quarters, which are apt to generate *Winds*. 3. If that the circumambient Air about the *Cloud*, of which the *Winds* are generated, be more thick, and granteth no paſſage to the *Exhalations*: but if that the Air be not ſo thick, or more relaxed, and that few *Vapours* be here and there in divers places and quarters; and laſtly, if that the general cauſes do ceaſe, then indeed the *Winds* are found variable, which are for the moſt part gentle.

Propoſition II.

One Wind is general, and another particular.

Of general and particular Winds.

The general Wind is termed by *Mariners* a *Paſſant wind*, which at many places at once, in a long tract of *Earth*, bloweth on the Sea almoſt for a whole year. That is termed a particular on the contrary, which bloweth not at once in many places for a whole year.

Now a *general Wind* is hindred, 1. In the parts of the Sea near the *Earth*; for here *Vapours* from other quarters do interpoſe or force in: and therefore a general Wind is conſidered, eſpecially in the midſt of the Sea, moſt remote from the Land. 2. Yet another *wind* may alſo blow in the midſt of the Sea, *viz.* if that in another a *Cloud*, or other cauſe generating of a *wind*, be very great. From theſe two Cauſes it happeneth, that a *general wind* is leſs or more conſtant, or continual in divers places.

Now the *general winds* are only found in the Sea of the *torrid Zone*, or that which lieth between the *Tropicks*, about the whole *Earth*; yet in ſome places it extendeth it ſelf without the *Tropicks* the ſpace of 7 *degrees*, and they are called *Eaſtern*, that is, the Eaſt-wind or collateral to the Eaſt, as the *South-Eaſt*, *North-Eaſt*, *viz.* which blow from the Eaſt towards the Weſt

for

for the whole year. But they do not conſiſt with the like conſtancy in all the parts of that Sea; but in ſome they are more hindred, and in ſome leſs. They are more conſtant in the *Pacifick Ocean* (*viz.* in that part of it which lieth between the *Tropicks*,) ſo that Ships that looſe from the Port of *Aquapulco* in *New Spain*, in *America*, towards the *Philippin Iſles*; that is, ſuch as ſteer their courſe from the Eaſt to the Weſt, oftentimes for 60 *degrees* Sail continually, without any alteration or furling of the Sail, with a conſtant Eaſt, or North-Eaſt wind; neither unto this day hath any Ship in that moſt long Voyage (of 1650 *miles*) been caſt away. Whence the *Mariners* ſay, that they may ſleep ſecurely in this Voyage; neither is there any need of guiding the Ship, ſeeing that the general Wind bringeth the Ship to the wiſhed Port: for here other *winds* do impede the general Wind. The ſame conſtancy of this ſame *Eaſterly wind*, is found in the Sea from the Cape or Promontory of *Good-hope* in the bounds of *Africa*, or rather from that procurrent part of *Africa* which lieth in the *Torrid Zone* even to *Brazil*; in the midſt of which Voyage lieth the Iſle of St. *Helena*, unto which *Mariners* returning from *India* unto *Europe*, are wont to direct their Courſe. The Iſle of St. *Helena* is diſtant from the Promontory of *Good-hope* 350 Miles, and is oftentimes accompliſhed in ſixteen days, or alſo in twelve (as the *general wind* is either vehement or ſlack, for in this there is not a perpetual likeneſs) the *Sea-men* uſing the ſame ſecurity (when that they have firſt ſailed to the Parallel of that Iſland, for the Promontory of *Good-hope* lieth without the *Tropicks*) which we have ſaid that they uſe, who Sail in the *Pacifick Ocean*, from *Aquapulco* to the *Philippins*: yea, when that they have paſſed the Promontory of *Good-hope*, they judge themſelves to have eſcaped all danger and variation of the *winds*, and ſleep ſecurely, the *wind* conſtantly filling their Sails towards that Iſland and *Brazil*: But yet this only is their great care, that they may not Sail beyond the Iſland, ſeeing that it is a very ſmall one; for if that they have paſſed it the eighth part of a mile, they cannot regain it, *viz.* an *Eaſterly wind* forcing them towards the Weſt: therefore then they are forced with great loſs of their Voyage to make to the Coaſts of *Brazil*, or the other Iſle called *Aſcenſion*, to *water* at. If then you demand by what courſe they Sail, when that the Ships make a contrary Voyage in this Sea, *viz.* whilſt that they ſteer from the *Philippin Iſles* unto *New Spain*, or from *Brazil* and the Iſle of St. *Helena*, unto the Promontory of *Good-hope*, whilſt that they Sail from *India*; in theſe Voyages the Reader muſt know, that *Mariners* uſe a threefold mode; for either they navigate the Sea ſcituated without the *Tropicks* (therefore they do not touch at the Iſle of St. *Helena*, whilſt that they Sail from *Europe* into *India*) or where neceſſarily they muſt paſs by this, they do not directly ſteer their courſe from the Weſt to the Eaſt, but obliquely from the North, the *Collateral quarter* of it, to the South or the *Collateral quarter* of it: or laſtly, they chooſe ſuch a time of Navigation in which they know, that that *general wind* is impeded often by others. But this latter, becauſe that it happeneth rarely, therefore they rather make choice of the two former Modes, of which we ſhall ſpeak more in the Chapter of *Navigation*.

Therefore there are two Seas of the *Torrid Zone*, in which that general *Oriental wind*, with its *Collaterals*, reigneth throughout the whole year, *viz.* that which lieth between the procurrent of *Africa* and *Brazil*: the other is that which is extended between *New Spain*, or rather between *America* and the *Oriental Iſlands*, of which the *Philippins* are a part. The third part of this Sea under the *Torrid Zone*, *viz.* between the Procurrent of *Africa* and the *Philippins*, or *Oriental Iſlands*, is not indeed deſtitute of this *general wind*; but oftentimes it is hindred in this Sea, by reaſon of the frequency of *Iſlands*, which hindrance yet in ſome places is more frequent than in other ſome. Between *Mozambique* and *India*, the *general wind* is of moſt force in *January*, *February*, *March*, *April*; in other Months other *winds* do blow, of which we ſhall ſpeak in the following *Propoſition*. This *general wind* is more hindred in the Sea of the *Indian Iſles*. At the Iſle of *Banda*, in the Month of *May*, the *Oriental winds* begin to be prevalent, being very violent,

violent, and accompanied with rain: at *Malacca* in *September*, and in other places otherwise, as we shall shew in the following Proposition. See Proposition 3.

Yet this you must know, that this general wind doth not equally extend it self in these Seas towards the *Tropicks* in all parts, but that there is a great difference in this. For the *Tropicks* are distant from the *Æquator* on both sides 23 ½ *deg.* but the general wind may be discovered in one *Meridian* unto the Latitude of 20 *degrees*, in another *Meridian* unto 15, in another unto 12.

So in the *Indian Ocean*, when in the Months of *February*, and *January*, the East wind, or South, or South-East bloweth, it is not discovered until you come to the 15 *degree* of Latitude. So unto those that Sail from *Goa* unto the Promontory of *Good-hope:* here a general wind meeteth them at the 12 *deg.* of South Latitude, and at the 28 *degree* of the same Latitude accompanieth them.

So also *Mariners* have observed that no general wind bloweth between the 4. *degree* of Northern Latitude, even unto the 10, or 11 *deg.* between *Africa* and *America*; for when they have Sailed by that wind from St. *Helena* towards the *Æquator*, even unto the 4 *deg.* of Northern Latitude; then are they destitute of that wind, even until they come unto the 10 *degree* of Latitude. And from that *degree*, even unto the 30, the North-East is again manifestly found continually to blow, although that the 30 *degrees:* be 7 *degree* from the *Torrid Zone.* Yet notwithstanding in the 6, 7, and 8. *degree* of Parallel Latitude it also bloweth in some places, but in all places almost in the Parallels of the 10 *deg.* even unto the 30 *deg.* North. After the same manner beyond the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, in the Sea between the Promontory of *Good-hope* and *Brazile*, the South-East wind bloweth even unto the 30 *deg.* of Latitude, that is 7 *degrees* beyond the *Torrid Zone* towards the South, and that through the whole year.

And although as we have said, that this general wind is not discovered on all Coasts, much less in *Mediterranean* places, yet in some it is sufficiently observable. So on the Coasts of *Brazile* Easterly unto the Coasts of *Loango*, the South-East is a Quotidian wind, although that other winds do admix themselves.

There is a threefold Cause of this continual general wind alledged by Modern *Philosophers*, (for both it, and the *Torrid Zone* were unknown to the Antients, who have not so much as mentioned it). Some Determine that the *Sun* is the cause of this wind, blowing from the East to the West; by reason that by its great faculty it rarifyeth the *Air* in the *Torrid Zone*, and so it thrusteth it forwards from the East to the West, seeing that the *Sun* it self goeth this way.

Some and those of the Opinion of *Pythagoras*, that Determined the Heaven to stand still, and the Earth to moved round; some of them I say, supposed this general wind to Proceed from hence, *viz.* that whilst the Earth is moved round, and the *Air* with it; this less followeth the motion of the Earth, but is somewhat more slower to motion: and therefore whilst that we are carried with the Earth from the West to the East, the *Air* moved with less celerity to the same quarter, seemeth to meet us, and to be moved from the East to the West, when that yet we do rather meet it.

Des Cartes alledgeth the third Cause, and that altogether new in the 222 *Proposition* in his *Principles*. Where he endeavoureth to shew that the *Moon* causeth this motion, as well as the motion of the *Sea* from the East to the West. See *Des Cartes* in his 222 Proposition of his Principels. But because that his Opinion cannot be understood, except that all his *Philosophical Hypotheses* should be Explained; therefore we shall say nothing concerning it here, especially seeing that we shall shew in another place, that that Cause is not true. I approve of the first Cause; the second seemeth therefore not to be received, because that many *Copernicans* approve not of it; and no reason can be given, why this wind should be found to blow only between the *Tropicks*, or to the 30 *deg.* of Latitude, and not in the whole *temperate Zone.*

Propoſition III.

Some Winds are Periodical and fixed, others wandering and Erratick.

Some winds fixed, others wandering.

Thoſe are termed fixed, and periodical, which blow on certain daies, and then ceaſe for a certain number of daies, until that they begin to blow again. Some return in the ſpace of half a year; otherſome are Monthly, which return in the interval of one or two Months. Alſo the fixed *winds* are otherwiſe ſubdivided, *viz.* ſome when that they begin to blow, continue for ſome Months, others for half a year, others for a Month, others for a few daies.

Amongſt theſe thoſe are chiefly obſerved by *Mariners*, which blow for ſome Months in certain places of the Sea, (and they call theſe *winds*, as alſo the times wherein ſuch *winds* blow, *Motions*, or *Mouſſons*). And ſuch Motions are more eſpecially notable in the *Indian Ocean*, from *Africa* to the *Philippine* Iſles, although that they be not wanting in other places: there is a very great moment to be placed in the obſervation of theſe Motions; for *Seamen* ought to chooſe the time of them for the Voyage that they intend to that ſame quarter, (or that which is collateral unto which that *wind* bloweth;) neither to undertake a Voyage to the *quarter* of this Motion, but to expect the contrary Motion. For in the parts of the *Indian Ocean*, where that one *wind* ceaſeth to blow for ſome Months, another ſucceedeth contrary to the former, and continueth with the ſame conſtancy, until that it hath compleated its time, and therefore they call theſe, Contrary Motions. They term thoſe the time of the mutation of thoſe Motions, which intercede between the end of one *Mouſſon*, and the begining of the contrary. For one Motion ceaſing, another doth not preſently begin to blow, but ſome days fall between, ſome times more, ſometimes fewer, alſo more in ſome places, and fewer in other ſome. And in theſe intermedial *daies*, in which no certain Motion bloweth, the *wind* is variable; the calm dangerous, and for the moſt part the Sea is toſſed with uncertain *waves*, and ſudden Tempeſts ariſe: ſome of theſe Motions return twice in a year, but not with the ſame vehemency, whence *Mariners* term the one the great Motion; the other the leſſer.

Months moſt fit to take a Voyage from *Europe* to *India*.

1. In that part of the *Atlantick Ocean*, that lyeth in the *Torrid Zone*, as alſo that which is in the *Temperate Zone*, the North *wind* perpetually bloweth in the Months of *October*, *November*, and *January*. And therefore theſe Months are chiefly fit to undertake a Voyage in from *Europe* to *India*; that they may paſs the *Æquator* by the help of thoſe *winds*. For it is manifeſt by experience, that ſome Ships that have ſet Sail from *Europe* in *March*, have arrived no ſooner at *Brazile*, than thoſe that have ſet Sail in *October*; *viz.* both of them have come thither in the Month of *February*, being helped by the North *wind*. Yet becauſe that this *wind* is not ſo continual and certain, therefore *Mariners* are not wont to call it a Motion. Neither is it an eaſie matter to render a cauſe of this *wind* in theſe Months, unleſs you will refer it to copious thick *vapours*, or to a continnual preſſure made from thick Clouds. But thoſe that have wintered in *Nova Zembla*, teſtifie that there is a moſt frequent North *wind* all the time of the *Winter*, where this effect cannot be aſcribed unto the *Sun*, rarifying the *Air*, ſeeing that he lyeth obſcured under the *Horizon*. Yet I ſuppoſe that in general the Cauſe may proceed from the diſſolving of *Snows* or groſs *Vapours*, or *Clouds*, collected in the *Winter* in the Northern and Southern places, eſpecially on the Mountains. Which I am induced to believe by this Argument more eſpecially, becauſe that theſe Motions blow for the moſt part from the North and South *quarters*, or the Collateral unto them. Therefore by reaſon that *Snow* and thick Clouds are diſſolved in the Northern places by the *Sun*, eſpecially in that half of the year in which he paſſeth through the North part of the *Ecliptick*; therefore thoſe Motions ſhall then be Northernly. After the ſame manner in the Southern

Southern or *Antartick* places for the other half of the year, the *Sun* diſſolveth the Snow, and the thicker Clouds, therefore then the Motion ſhall be diſcovered Southerly.

Now that theſe Motions blow more from the *Sea* in the Collateral quarters, *to wit*, In the South-Eaſt, and North-Eaſt, or in the quarters more near to the North, and South; its cauſe ſeemeth to be referred either to the divers ſcituation of the places, in which the Snow and the more thick Clouds are there collected, or rather unto a general wind, which is very forcible to attract thoſe Motions unto another quarter. For ſeeing that a general wind of its own nature tendeth directly from the Eaſt, to the Weſt, and theſe Motions tend from one *Pole* unto the other, thence ariſeth a mutual hindrance; and thence it may come to paſs, that the wind may gain an intermedial quarter between the Eaſt and South, and Eaſt and North. The South-Weſt, and North-Weſt Motions are unconſtant, rare, and weak; and therefore are ſcarce reckoned amongſt Motions, when that the North and South by accident ſeem to decline ſometimes to the Weſt, but they are attracted to the Eaſt by a general wind. Now to render a reaſon concerning the great diverſity of theſe Motions in divers places, more accurate obſervations are required, and thoſe not of one year but of many, with the notation of the *Winter*, *Rainy*, *Snowy Seaſons*: and the Mountains of theſe places from the quarters of which theſe *ſtate* winds do blow; we ſhould alſo know the *Phaſis* and Motion of the *Moon*, and what variation this maketh.

2. In *July* South winds blow at *Cape Verd*, (for then there is the *Winter* in the time of Rain) and this ſeemeth to produce from no other Cauſe than that, by which in our *Zone* North winds blow in the *Winter*. Several winds blow at certain times in ſet places.

3. At the Promontory of *Good-hope*, in *September*, the North-Eaſt wind bloweth.

4. At *Patanen* in *India*, in *November*, *December*, and *January*, continual Rains, and a North-Eaſt wind predominateth, but in other Months an Eaſt wind bloweth, and it is *Summer*.

5. About *Sumatra*, there is a mutation of the Motions in *November* and *December*.

6. In the Iſle of *Mayo*, one of the *Azores*, in the end of *Auguſt*, a vehement wind bloweth from the South and bringeth Rain, which moiſtens the Earth, otherwiſe dry, and then firſt of all Graſs ſpringeth up, which feedeth many *Goats* at the end of *December*.

7. In *Congo* from the middle of *March*, to *September*, (at what time it is *Winter* there) the North and North-Weſt wind blow, or other intermedial winds, which force and gather the Clouds on the tops of the Mountains, and generate an obſcure *Air* with Rain. But from *September*, to *March*, the South and South-Eaſt and other intermedial winds blow that are contrary to the former. We have taken theſe differences of the *ſtate* and Anniverſary winds, from the Obſervation of *Mariners*, that term them *Mouſſons*, or Motions, if that they blow in a long tract of the *Sea*. And now we ſhould Treat of their Cauſes, but that we are ignorant of the Mountains of the *Regions*, of the times of the Snows, and their meltings, and many other matters. Moreover thoſe Obſervations of *Seamen* are not ſufficiently accurate, ſo that they deſerve a diligent inquiſition concerning their Cauſes. See the following Propoſition.

The more noted Motions are theſe,

1. In the *Indian Ocean*, between *Africa* and *India*, and to the very *Moluccos*, in an *Oriental* Motion towards the Weſt, which begineth in *January*, and bloweth for ſix Months, even to the begining of *June*: In *Auguſt*, and *September*, a contrary Motion begineth, *viz.* Weſtern winds. In *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, is a mutation of Motions, and great Tempeſts from the North. Now when that we ſpeak of *Oriental* and *Occidental* winds, we do not only underſtand the Eaſt and Weſt winds, but alſo the Collateral winds. More noted Motions.

2. The *Oriental motion* varieth very much at the Shoars, ſo that Ships can only Sail from *India* on this ſide *Gatu*, or on the Coaſts of *Malabar*, from *January* to the middle of *May*, to *Perſia*, *Arabia*, *Mecha*, and *Africa*: for ſeeing that in the end of *May*, and all *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, the *Tempeſts* rage violently, and often a *North* wind, or furious *North-Eaſt* wind frequently intermixing it ſelf: therefore in theſe Months no Ships paſs from *India* on this ſide *Gatu*: but on the Coaſt of *India* beyond the *Gatu*, or *Ganges*, that is on the *Eaſt quarter*, or on the Coaſts of *Choromandel*, ſuch *Tempeſts* are not known. A Voyage is undertaken from *Ceilan*, *Java*, and other Iſles, to the *Moluccoes*, in *September*, becauſe that then the *Oriental motion* begineth, which hindereth the general wind. But when you depart to 15 *degrees* of South *Latitude*, beyond the *Æquator*, this Occidental *motion* is not diſcovered in the *Indian Ocean*, but a general *South Eaſt* wind filleth the Sails.

3. From *Cochin* to *Malacca*, that is from the *Weſt*, to the *Eaſt*, they begin their Voyage in *March*, becauſe that then there the Weſtern *motion* begineth, or rather the *North Weſt* wind frequently bloweth.

4. In the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, half the year the *North* winds blow from *March* to *September*, and in the other half the *South* winds, and that without any other hindrance cauſed by other winds.

5. The *Dutch* ſet Sail from *Java* for the moſt part in *January*, or *February*, when that they return for *Europe*: then they Sail with an *Eaſterly* wind even to 18 *degrees* of *South Latitude*: and here the *South* or *South-Eaſt* wind begineth to blow, by which they Sail even to St. *Helena*.

6. Although in the *Indian Ocean* from *January*, even to *June*, the *motion* be *Oriental*, and then from *Auguſt* to *January*, the *motion* be *Occidental*; yet nevertheleſs in divers parts of it, when we muſt Sail from one place to another, divers ſeaſons are diſcovered more or leſs convenient, by reaſon that the Collateral winds do more or leſs blow, or the *motion* is more or leſs vehement at thoſe times, or other winds more often or more ſeldom intermix at that time: therefore thoſe that are to Sail from *Cochin* to *Malacca*, obſerve another *motion*, another from *Malacca* to *Maccou*, the *Emporium* of *China*, another from *Maccou* to *Japan*.

7. At *Banda* the *Weſtern* winds ceaſe with the end of *March*, and at the end of *April* there are variable winds, and calms: with the Month of *May*, violent *Eaſternly* winds with Rain begin.

8. At *Ceilan* about the Promontory called *Punto Gullo*, on the 14*th*. of *March*, the firſt *Occidental* wind beginneth, *viz*. the *Weſt-South-Weſt*, then the *South-Weſt* conſtant and continnual from the end of *March*, to the firſt of *October*: then the *North-Eaſt* begineth, which bloweth there even to *March*, but ſome daies at ten, or alſo more, theſe *State-winds* or *motions* happen ſooner or later.

9. In the Voyage from *Mozambique* to *Goa*, in *May*, and *June*, the *South-Eaſt* winds are predominate even to the *Æquator*, but from the *Æquator* to *Goa*, the South-Weſt and Southwinds reign in *July*, *Auguſt*, and the following Months.

10. In the 35 *deg*. of the *Elevation* of the *Meridian* which paſſeth through the Iſle of *Triſtan de Cunha*, in *May*, on the *New Moon* the *Weſt* wind reigneth..

11. At the 2 ⅓ of *North Latitude*, in the *Sea ſeventy miles* from *Guinea*, a *South-Eaſt* wiad predominateth from the 20*th*. of *April*, to the 5*th*. of *May*, but not on the Shoar, or in *Guinea* it ſelf: after the 5*th*. of *May*, the ſame wind is alſo diſcovered at the 3 *deg*. and 3 ½ of *Latitude*.

12. At the Iſle of *Madagaſcar*, from the 15*th*. of *April*, unto the laſt of *May*, the *North*, and *North-Weſt* wind bloweth; but in *February*, and *March*, the winds blow from the *Eaſt* and *South*.

13. In *April* or *May*, in the tract of *Land*, and *Sea*, from *Madagaſcar* to the Promontory of *Good-hope*, the *North* wind, and the wind Collateral to the *North* blow continually to the *Eaſt*, ſo that it is eſteemed a Miracle if that the *South* o *South-Eaſt* wind blew for two daies.

14. Af-

14. After the 20 of *April*, in the *Sea* of *Bengala*, the South wind is violent: before that day, the South-West, and North-West, and those being very impetuous, do predominate.

15. There is a Motion for Navigation from *Malacca* to *Maccou*, in *July*, *October*, *November*, *December*, *viz.* the South winds, and South-West winds, and oftentimes the South-East winds, but in *June*, and *July*, at the begining the West winds rage, about *Malacca*, and in the *Sea* of *China*.

16. The Motion by which they Sail from *Java* to *China*, (from the West, to the East) begineth with the Month of *May*.

17. The Motion by which they Sail from *China* to *Japan*, from the West, to the East, is in force in *June*, and *July*: *viz.* the South-West wind; but the North and Collateral wind to the North, at the East oftentimes interpose, and that especially at the day time, but in the night season the South-East and the first Collateral wind at the East do interpose, and let.

18. A contrary Motion, *viz.* from *Japan* to *Maccou*, from the East, to the West, is in *February*, and *March*, *viz.* the East, and North-East winds, but these pr edominate not in the *Sea*, but on the Coasts of *China*, which those that Sail in that Voyage from *Japan*, observe, they term them the Winds over the Land.

19. The motion by which they Sail from the *Phillippine* Isles, or *China*, to *Aquæpulco* in *America*, *viz.* the Western winds are observed in *June*, *July*, and *August*, but they are very weak, except in the Full *Moon*; now they are the South-West winds: but they avoid the *Torrid Zone*, and choose the Coasts of *America Septentrional* is to shun the wind that is general from the East, which yet then is less vehement. This therefore must be known in general, that the *Occidental* Motions, or West winds, are more weak than the *Oriental*, because that these are helped by a general wind; but these are diminished by it.

20. In the *Sea* of *China*, a South, and South-West Motion reigneth in *July*, *August*, and *October*. But if that these winds be changed into an *Oriental* Motion, they never presently return to the South; but first to the North: hence when they have blowed some daies, they return to the East, and lastly to the South: sometimes the North-East, is immediately changed into the South-West, sometimes presently from the North to the South, and that here is sufficiently frequent.

So in the *Sea* anniversary winds are more constant, unto which I add those that are less constant, and those which on the Coasts, and also on *Maritimate* places are observed to be Anniversary.

Proposition IV.

The Etesian *winds, so termed, that are Anniversary in* Greece, *proceed from Rain and Snow dissolved on the Mountains.*

Of *Etesian* winds and from what they proceed.

The *Grecians* observed a twofold kind of Winds on every *Year*, which were Stated and termed *Etesian winds*. *Viz.* 1. Those in the *Summer*, or *Canicular* winds; which they called by the General term *Etesiæ*, because that they were more strong and sensible. 2. The *Winter* winds, which they called the *Chelidonii*, or *Ornithiæ*.

The *Canicular Etesian* winds are Northern, in the placing of the begining of which to a certain, Writers do much differ. When that *Aristotle* had added that they blow after the *Summer Solstice*; he mentioneth nothing of the true time, which certainly is a very great negligence, which at length he augmenteth, where making mention of the *Ornithiæ*, he omitteth both the time, and the *quarter* of these winds: but those that have noted the time of the *Etesian* winds, they have observed that the forerunners of them begin to blow either on the 6 of *July*, or on the 15 of *July*, at the rising of the *Canicular* or *Dog Star*. Now those winds blow 40 *daies*, the whole space of the *Dog daies*, and therefore end with the Month of *August*; but others extend them to *September*: they

they only blow in the day, and ceaſe in the night, therefore *Mariners* formerly called them, the ſleepy and delicate winds.

The cauſe of theſe winds queſtionleſs is the diſſolving of the Snow cauſed by the heat of the *Sun* on the Northern Mountains, which at that time is very great, by reaſon that now for divers Months together, almoſt he hath continually ſhined on thoſe Mountains without any ſetting; and with this cauſe it aptly agrees that the *Eteſian* winds ceaſe on the night, becauſe that then the reſolution of the Snow ceaſeth, or at leaſt is leſſer than the generation of the wind requireth, becauſe that the *Sun* then is over or near the *Horizon*, or elſe ſetteth wholly.

The ſame Northern *Canicular* wind is not only in *Greece*, but alſo in *Thrace*, *Macedonia*, the *Ægean Sea*, and the Iſles of the ſame, (all which *Regions* are ſometimes comprehended under the general term of *Greece*,) yea in *Ægypt* alſo; and it is probable that the wind which we have ſaid in the former *Propoſition*, bloweth in *Congo*, (ſcituate beyond the *Æquator*,) that that wind that bloweth from the North, between *March*, and *September*, is the ſame with theſe *Eteſian* winds of the *Grecians*, or at leaſt proceed from the ſame cauſe: as alſo that North wind which we have ſaid bloweth in the ſame Months in the Kingdom of *Guzurat*, from *March*, to *September*; theſe I ſay, we ought to Determine to proceed from the diſſolved Snows of the Mountains of *Aſia*, termed the *Sarmatian* Mountains, and the Girdle of the World, and therefore we reckon it amongſt the Motions.

The ſecond Anniverſary wind of the *Grecians*, is the *Chelidonian*, which they relate to begin after *Winter*, but have not noted the day of the begining. Now theſe are South winds (contrary to the *Canicular* or *Eteſian* winds) and very weak, without violence. Moreover inconſtant, and not ſo continual, whence they render the *Sea* calm.

Ariſtotle relateth that they blow by Courſe even unto the middle of *Summer*, until the Northern *Canicular Eteſian* winds begin, but that they are not ſo much diſcerned.

The Cauſe alſo of theſe winds, is the diſſolving of the Snow on the Mountains of *Monomotapa*, which Snow the *Sun* rariſyeth, becauſe that in the time of *Winter*, and that of *Greece*, they have *Summer*, the *Sun* paſſing through the Southern parts of the *Zodiack*; and this wind is alſo found in *Congo*, *Ægypt*, and the *Ægean Sea*, and the like is in *Guzurat*, but for very many Months, when it beginneth to blow in *Congo*, and *Guzurat*, in *September*, it continueth even to *March*.

The Anniverſary wind of the *Grecians*, which they call *Ornithia*, or the *Bridges* wind, this they ſay bloweth after the *Vernal Æquinox*, the *Sun* aſcending to the *Vertex* of the *Europeans*.

Propoſition V.

Why the Eteſian *winds blow not in* Italy, France, Germany, Perſia, *and other Regions? eſpecially ſeeing that they are more near the Northern Mountains, from whence we aſſert the* Eteſian *winds of the* Grecians, Congo, *and* Guzurat *do ariſe and blow.*

The *Eteſian* winds blow not in all Regions, though near the Northren Mountains.

The Queſtion is of no ſmall moment, and I wiſh that we had more accurate Obſervations concerning this matter, *viz.* the notations of the winds, which at that time are obſerved in each Region, whether in every Year the ſame never return?

Yet if that any thing muſt be ſaid to the Queſtion, theſe ſeem convenient. 1. We cannot deny but that the North wind often bloweth in our *Canicular*, or *Dog daies*. 2. That it is diſcovered leſs continual and in each year, peradventure the Cauſe is the often blowing of other winds, which hinder the diſcovery of the ſame. 3. We may ſay that the Mountain from which this firſt reſolution of the Snow begineth, is ſcituated directly from *Greece*, and therefore the firſt *Canicular* wind is carried hither, but the Vapours are carried hither from the Snow of the other Mountains, becauſe that here they find a free paſſage made, but I ſhall reject theſe my extemporay thoughts, when that I ſhall ſee a better reaſon, and more accurate Obſervations.

Pro-

Propoſition VI.

Some winds are proper and almoſt perpetual to ſome place or tract of Land, others are ceaſing.

Thoſe places of the Earth are very few which have a certain wind at a fixed time, *viz.* theſe: Places which have a certain wind at a fixed time.

1. The places of the *Torrid Zone*, eſpecially of parts of the *Pacifick* and *Æthiopick Sea* ſcituate in the *Zone*, enjoy a perpetual wind, *viz.* an *Oriental* wind or its *Collateral*, which they call a General wind, as we have ſhewed in the ſecond Propoſition, where we have treated largely of it. Yea this wind is not ſo much to be reckoned amongſt the proper winds, but rather to be determined to be common to all places; for although by accident it happeneth that it be not diſcerned in all places, *viz.* becauſe other winds blow more ſtrong, yet it is proper to ſome: the Cauſe is alledged in the place cited.

2. On the Coaſts of *Peru*, and part of *Chili*, and to the adjacent *Sea*, the South wind is almoſt perpetual, and his *Collateral* wind at the Weſt. It beginneth at the 46 *deg.* of Latitude, and bloweth to *Panama* the *American Iſthmus*, and cauſeth that in few daies Ships arrive from *Lima* at *Panama* laden with Gold, Silver, *&c.* But it requireth many daies ſail from *Panama* to *Lima*. But this wind bloweth not in the *Sea* remote from the Coaſts of *Peru*. It is difficult to render the cauſe of this wind, by reaſon that the South Land from whence it ſeemeth to blow, is not yet known unto us. Yet I think it probable, that becauſe that Mountains are found in it covered with perpetual Snow; therefore the winds are generated from a continual reſolution of them. But I will not infect the mind of the Reader with theſe my ſuſpicions, or conjectures. For peradventure the Snows which are found all the year long in the high Mountains, at the *Streights* of *Magellan*, are the cauſe of theſe winds, but yet it may be Objected, that thoſe Mountains lie from the South towards the Weſt, declining from the South: wherefore we ſhall leave this to a more diligent inquiſition, or a more full knowledge of the South *Continent*.

3. At the Coaſts of the Land of *Magellan*, or *Del Fugo*, about the *Streight Le Mair*, continual or at leaſt very frequent Weſternly winds do blow, and that with that force, that they make the Trees to bend towards the Eaſt from their perpendicular rectitude; neither is there any part of the Earth in which thoſe *Occidental* winds ſo often blow: but on the other part of the *Streights Le Mair*, at the Coaſt of the South Land the South wind bloweth. I can render no other cauſe of thoſe *Occidental* winds, but that I ſuppoſe them to be raiſed from Snow and Clouds in the South *Continent*, which extendeth it ſelf from the ſide of that *Occidental Streight*, from the South towards the North. But theſe are doubtful and more diligently to be inquired after.

4. On the *Malabarian* Coaſts of *India*; for almoſt the whole year, the North and North-Eaſt winds blow: the cauſe proceedeth from the reſolution of the Snows of the Mountains of the *Aſiatick Sarmatia*, *viz. Imaus*, or *Caucaſus* from the *Clouds* on the other Mountains of *Aſia*, which are collected and preſs the ſubject *Air*.

5. In the *Sea* near to *Guinea*, the North Weſt wind is frequent, and in the remote *Sea* the North Eaſt.

6. In the middle paſſage between *Japan* and *Liampo*, a *Maritimate* City of *China*, even unto theſe are found *Occidental* winds, which blow in *Japan* in *November*, and *December*.

7. At the Iſle *Guotou*, not far from the Iſle *Dos Cavallos* in the *Sea* of *China*, is a frequent South wind, when that yet in the neighbouring *Ocean* a North wind is predominate.

Pro-

Propoſition VII.

Unto theſe Periodical or ſtate Winds, appertain thoſe alſo that are tearmed day Winds, which in ſome Regions, and at a certain time of the year blow for ſome hours every day.

of Day Winds ſo called.

Now they are found to be twofold, and that only in ſome *Maritimate* places, for ſome blow from *Mediterranean* places to the Shore towards the Sea; and others on the contrary from the Sea to the Shoars.

1. On the *Malabarian* Coaſts in the Summer ſeaſon, *viz.* from *September* to *April*, the *Terreſtial* winds, or *Terrinhos* do blow from the twelfth hour of the night to the twelfth hour of the day, now theſe winds are Eaſtern winds. But from the twelfth hour of the day to the twelfth hour of the night, the *Sea* wind, or *Viraconus*, *to wit*, the Weſt wind bloweth: but this is very weak, ſo that by its aſſiſtance the Ships can hardly arrive at the Shoar. I ſuppoſe the cauſe of thoſe *Oriental* winds from twelve at night to twelve in the day, partly to be a general wind, and partly Clouds on the Mountain *Gatis*. But the cauſe of the Occidental Winds, that blow from twelve in the day to twelve at night, is the reſolution of thick Clouds cauſed by the ſetting of the *Sun*, which Clouds before by the *Oriental* wind were forced towards the Weſt. Out of thoſe named Months, the North wind predominateth, alſo the Eaſt and North-Eaſt, neither by reaſon of the often Tempeſts are theſe *Terreſtrial* and *Marine* winds diſcerned.

2. In *Muſulipatan* a City on the Coaſts of *Charomandel*, theſe *Terrinhos* begin to blow on the firſt day of *June*, and continue only fourteen daies, and then the Ships depart thence. But theſe are rather to be referred amongſt the motions, becauſe that as far as I can conjecture from the words of the *Nautick Deſcription*, theſe *Terreſtrial* winds on thoſe daies are there continual, neither do the *Marine* winds ſucceed them.

3. On the Coaſts of *America*, and new *Spain*, unto the *Pacifick Ocean*, *Terreſtial* winds blow in the middle of the night; and *Marine* winds in the day.

4. In *Congo*, and the Provinces at *Lopo Gonſalvo*, *Terreſtrial* winds blow from the evening all night; and *Sea* winds begin in the morning, and ſo leſſen the heat of the day.

5. The *Subſolan* winds alſo, which are found to blow before the *Sun*, and with the *Sun* riſing every day, in all places, eſpecially in *Brazile*, where it hapneth every day in the morning. It is no difficulty to explain the cauſe of it: for either we ſay that it is a particle of the General wind, or that the *Sun* diſcuſſeth and rarifieth the more groſs particles condenſed by the night.

6. The *Eteſian* and *Chelidonian* winds of the *Grecians*, appertain to the Diary or day winds.

7. On the Coaſts of *Camboja* from *Varrella* to *Pulo-Catte*, from the 28 of *July*, to the fourth of *Auguſt*, *Terreſtrial* and *Sea* winds ſucceſſively blow often every day, becauſe that the motions then ceaſe there, and cauſe a calm. The Weſt and North-Weſt are the *Terreſtrial* winds. But the Collateral are the Eaſt, to paſs through the North, and preſently are reflected at the South; then a calm ſucceedeth until the *Terreſtrial* winds begin to blow again, which yet are diſcovered on the *Sea* not above two miles from the Shoar.

8. Thoſe *Terreſtrial* and *Sea* winds are found to blow in the night in *America* at *Havanna*.

Pro-

Propoſition VIII.

By how much you draw near to the Æquator *from the* Artick Pole, *by ſo much the Northern-winds are found to be leſs vigorous; and having paſſed the* Æquator *in part of the South Continent, Southern-winds are vigorous, which in theſe places are cold and dry, eſpecially in* Chilis *and* Peru.

The cauſe of both are the ſame, by reaſon that they both proceed from the *Polary* places; yet *South-winds* are found in the North *Continent*, and *Northern* in the South.

Propoſition IX.

From what hath been ſaid it is manifeſt, that there are four differences of Winds.

Four differences of Winds.

1. Thoſe that are common, which blow at all times, and in every place, except that they be hindred by other *winds*; ſuch is only one, *viz.* the *General wind.*
2. Proper *winds*, which blow at all times; but yet only in a certain place or tract of the *Earth*, not in all the *Earth.*
3. Thoſe that blow in many places, but not continually, or at all times; as are *Motions*, *Anniverſary winds*, and ſome *Diary winds.*
4. Thoſe that blow not at all times, nor in many places.

Propoſition X.

Some Winds are ſudden, impetuous and violent, not continuing long.

Of ſudden and violent Winds, and not of long continuance.

Such are the Winds termed *Preſter*, *Typhon*, *Turbo*, *Exhydrias*, *Ecnephias*. Theſe Winds are Anniverſary in ſome places; and ſome are more frequent in ſome places in the Sea.

The Wind called *Preſter* is a violent wind, breaking forth with Lightning; ſuch are ſeldom obſerved, and it is ſeldom ſolitary without a wind termed *Ecnephias*. But *Seneca* ſaith, that a *Preſter* is a *Typhon*, or Whirlwind, with an inflamed Air.

An *Ecnephias* is a ſudden Wind, and violent breaking through ſome Cloud or Vapour; ſuch *Ecnephiæ* are often in the *Æthiopian Sea* between *Brazil* and the Procurrent of *Africa*, eſpecially at the Promontory of *Good-hope*, and from the other ſide of *Africa* to *Terra de Natal*, alſo at *Guinee* under the *Æquator*. *Mariners* call them *Travados*, by a *Portugal* word: alſo in ſome Months of the year it is more frequent in ſome Seas.

That Cloud, and ſometimes many thick and dusky Clouds, are manifeſtly beheld by the *Mariners* to collect and augment by degrees, and that in a moſt ſerene Sky, before that the Wind breaketh forth: and therefore when that they ſee it, they ought to furl their Sails, and defend themſelves againſt a future Storm. But before that *Sea-men* had learned the nature of theſe Clouds, and their Prognoſticks, many Ships having entred into this Sea were caſt away, which the *Portugals* firſt experimented; for that Nation firſt of all the *Europeans* ſailed the *Æthiopian Ocean*: For *India* being diſcovered by *Gamma*, the King of *Portugal* ſent thirteen Ships, a new Navy of great burthen, thither, under Admiral *Capralis*, in *Anno* 1500. This Navy firſt of all the *Europeans* arrived at *Brazil* to the great joy of the *Portugals*. Here, when that they had ſtayed ſometime, *viz.* the Month of *April*, they ſet Sail thence on the Month of *May* towards the Promontory of *Good-hope*; but they had a moſt cruel Storm from an *Ecnephias*, the approach of which they ſaw, yet were not acquainted therewith. Which *Maffæus* thus deſcribeth: From *Brazil*

to the Promontory of *Good-hope* they reckon almoſt two thouſand Leagues (that is, about a thouſand *German* miles,) thoſe are the Kingdoms eſpecially of the raging Ocean and violent Winds. The *Portugals* having entred into that ſpace more adventurouſly than fortunately on the Month of *May*, a flaming Comet appeared incontinently even to the tenth day. And now the Sky often changing, as alſo the Sea, black and ſordid Clouds were conglobated to the North, and collected all the Wind into it ſelf, as it were by reciprocation, the Sea was languid, and the Calm treacherous; the *Sea-men* unskilful both in the Places and Tempeſts, ſpread their Sails to receive all the gale of Wind; when from thoſe Clouds, as I have ſaid, the North-wind pouring it ſelf ſuddenly with an univerſal violence, it Shipwracked four of their Ships that were not ſo well diſpoſed to hand their Sails in a moment, the reſt looking on, ſo that of ſo great a Company of men none eſcaped. The ſudden ſtriking of the Yards or Sails rent by the wind, preſerved the reſt by accident. Then the North-wind blowing furiouſly, the Sea ſwelled, the Flouds ſometimes advanced to the Skies, and ſometimes ſunk to the depths of Hell: the *water* in the day time appeared as black as Pitch, and in the night time of a fiery colour. This diſmal Tempeſt continued the ſpace of 20 days.

See *Maffeus.*

The Promontory of *Good-hope* is eſpecially infamous for ſuch *Ecnephiæ* or *Travados*.

There is not far from the Shoar a very high Mountain not ending in an *Apex*, but having a plain on the top, like to a Table. From that top an *Ecnephias* breaketh forth with a great violence, and wonderful Prognoſtick. For the Sky being very clear, and the Sea calm, a Cloud is beheld to ſtand on the Table of the Mountain, which is ſo ſmall at firſt, that it ſeemeth not to exceed the bulk of a grain of Barly, and at length it increaſeth to the bigneſs of a Walnut. The *Dutch* call it the *Oxes-eye*, becauſe that this Cloud is ſaid to be like unto it, then after a while the Cloud augmenteth, and extendeth it ſelf over the whole plain of the Mountain. Then on a ſudden an *Ecnephias* breaketh forth from the top of the Mountain with ſo great violence, that it over-ſetteth and ſendeth to the bottom Ships that are unprovided and not well ſtrengthned; but *Sea-men* being now more cautious, when that they once diſcover that *Bulls* or *Oxes-eye*, preſently depart from the Shoar as far as they can, and then furl their Sails, and uſe other Artifices to preſerve their Ships; neither doth this Prognoſtick ever fail: therefore they fly this deadly Banquet. After the ſame mode an *Ecnephias* rageth at *Terra de Nata*: the *Bulls-eye* fore-runing it, by which many Ships have been caſt away. And ſo it is alſo in that whole tract between that Land and the Promontory of *Good-hope*. In *Dauphin* in *France*, not far from *Vienna*, is a high Mountain, on the top of which is a ſtanding-Pool, from whence all Tempeſts ſeem to ariſe in theſe places: on the top of it is procreated a Cloudy exhalation, which foreſheweth immediately Thunder or Storms to ſucceed.

In the Sea between *America* and *Africa*, and near the *Æquator*, ſuch *Ecnephiæ* and *Travados* are frequent, eſpecially in thoſe Months in which no Winds blow conſtantly, or if they do, it is very ſeldom, *viz.* throughout the whole year, eſpecially in *April*, *May*, and *June* (in other Months it is more rare,) and they are very obſervable on the Coaſts of *Guinea*: The *Portugals*, as I have ſaid, call them *Travados*, which word alſo the *Dutch* keep; but the Inhabitants of *Guinea* call them *Agremonte*. They often happen, *viz.* three or four times in a day, by and by they ceaſe; for they continue for the moſt part above an hour and a half, but the firſt ſhock is very violent. They break out of black and duſty Clouds, the Sky being clear at hand. By their aſſiſtance *Sea-men* oftentimes paſs the *Æquator*, becauſe that other continual Winds are often wanting there, eſpecially in thoſe three Months; neither do they hinder Ships to ſail, except at the firſt onſet. But in the Sea that is near to that part of *Africa*, in which the Kingdom of *Loango* is ſcituated, there is a frequent *Ecnephias* in *January*, *February*, *March* and *April*: ſo on the Promontory of *Africa*, called by the Ancients *Aromata*, and now *Guardafu*, not far from the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, in *May* every year the North-wind rageth, and a moſt violent *Ecnephias*.

For

For you must know, that as some Anniversary winds are less violent: so also *Tempests* and *Ecnephiæ* are Anniversary in some places. In such an *Ecnephias*, not far from that place, the *Portugal* Admiral *Sodrens* was lost *Anno* 1505; who being forewarned by the *Africans* would not follow good Advice.

But in the Mouth of this *Arabian* Sea, as also in *Arabia* and *Æthiopia*, a peculiar and wonderful *Ecnephias* doth somewhat happen, *viz.* a thick and black Cloud, mixed with Nubicular flames like to a burning Furnace (dismal to behold) cloudeth the day in darkness, of an instant a Storm breaketh forth, the rage of which is by and by pacified; but it casteth forth red Sand in great abundance on the Land and Sea, so that the *Arabians* say, that it hath often happened, that such Storms of *Sand* have overwhelmed the Annual Company of Merchants and Travellers with their Camels, they term them *Caraxwanen*, *Caravans*, or *Caffila*, *viz.* every year once or twice Merchants being met together from divers parts of *Asia* in *Syria*, go from *Aleppo* into *Arabia* about six thousand persons, by reason that the wonted Robberies of the *Arabians*, and the difficulty of the way, cause them to fear to Travel alone: which also they do from *India* to *China* and *Tartary*: and thence they say, that the *Mumia* of the *Arabians* and *Ægyptians* hath its original. *Viz.* those Bodies covered with the drifts of Sand, are dried up by the great heat of the Sun. Now this *Ecnephias* ariseth from the Northern quarter into which the *Red-Sea* is extended; and therefore it is probable, that seeing so great a quantity of this Sand is found on the shoar of this Sea, that it is raised aloft by the Wind, and that thence that Red colour is seen in the Clouds, and thence also the *Sand* is ejected from the Clouds.

That such an *Ecnephias* ariseth in *Lybia*, by reason of the great quantity of Sand, is not improbable, and was in some measure known to the Ancients; who therefore writ, That the access to the famous Temple of *Jupiter Ammon* in *Lybia*, was difficult, neither were they altogether ignorant of the generation of *Mumia*. *Twistius* a *Dutch-man*, that lived a long time in *India*, saith, that in the Kingdom of *Guzurat* Clouds of Sand, or an huge quantity of Dust (that are elevated by the heat of the Sun) do oftentimes overwhelm the Travellers. Now we must speak of the Causes of this Tempestuous wind, whence the *Ecnephias* proceedeth. It is evident, that it breaketh forth of a Cloud. Now there are two Modes by which such a *Wind* may seem to be generated from a Cloud: 1. If that a Cloud tending downwards by its gravity striketh the Air with a great force, as we discover by Experience, if that stretched forth Sails fall, the Air is moved with an *impetus*. And thence it cometh to pass, that by how much the *Cloud* or *Bulls-eye* appeareth less, by so much the Storm is the greater that followeth, *viz.* because that the Cloud is more high, and therefore appeareth small; and descending down from a higher place, it more vehemently striketh the Air; the other is the motion of the generation, if that the Wind included in the Cloud breaketh forth suddenly, or by reason of some fire or Sulphureous matter, the way being rendred strait, and other outlets being restrained, the Vapours strike, as from a Vessel of a narrow mouth containing water, if that it be heaped, the *wind* breaketh forth; but the first cause seemeth more probable.

Proposition XI.

An Exhydrias *is a Wind breaking from a Cloud with great abundance of water.*

A Wind called an *Exhydrias*.

It is little different from an *Ecnephias*, but that the Cloud from whence it seemeth to break, is now condensed into *water*, and so long upheld by other circumstantial Clouds, and peradventure forced into one by the *winds*, until by its ponderosity it rusheth downwards, and strikes the Air, whence a great Wind proceedeth. But these *Exhydrias* are very rare: yet the *Ecnephias* hath for the most part Rains, Showers, or thick Clouds accompanying him; and therefore only differeth from the *Exhydrias*, according to the more or the

leſs. For a *Nimbus* is nothiing elſe, but a Wind with a violent Rain, and therefore is more general than an *Ecnephias:* but an *Exhydrias* oftentimes falleth perpendicularly from the top.

Propoſition XII.

A Typhon *is a violent Wind, paſſing ſwiftly through all the quarters about a place, and for the moſt part ruſhing from the top.*

A VVind called a *Typhon.*

The *Saracens* call it *Oliſant*; the *Indians*, *Orancan*. It is often in the *Oriental Sea*, eſpecially in the Sea of *Sian*, *China* and *Japan*, (between *Malacca* and *Japan*.) This violently breaking almoſt from the Weſtern quarter, and being whirled about the Horizon with a rapid courſe, perfects its circumference by continual increaſe in the ſpace of twenty hours, raiſing thoſe vaſt Seas with an horrid violence and ſwellings; the Billows beating one another, take away all hope of ſafety from the *Mariners*: and ſo both by reaſon of theſe *Typhons*, and alſo other Storms, ſailing from *India* to *Japan* is very dangerous, ſo that it is accounted an happy Voyage, if that one Ship of three keepeth its courſe. At the Autumnal Seaſon a moſt furious *Typhon* doth eſpecially predominate, and that often with ſo great violence, that thoſe that have not ſeen it, can hardly believe it; ſo that it is no wonder, that ſome mighty Ships have been weakned by thoſe great Waves: you would think in this Storm, that Heaven and Earth would meet.

Neither doth it only rage on the Sea, but alſo on the *Shoars*, and overwhelmeth many Houſes, and throweth up huge Trees by the roots, and forceth great Ships from the *Sea* on the *Land* for about a quarter of a mile.

The *Mariners* term it a Wind that runneth round the *Compaſs*. In the *Indian Ocean* it ſeldom continueth above ſix hours, and maketh the Sea ſo level at the firſt, as if that it were plained; but on a ſudden horrible Waves do follow. So about the City *Ardibil* in *Perſia*, in *June* and *July* every day, when that the *Sun* is at his *Meridian* height, a *Whirlwind* ariſeth for an hour, by which a great duſt is raiſed.

Queſtionleſs the cauſe of a *Typhon* is, that a *wind* breaking forth with violence from ſome one quarter towards another, findeth an obſtruction in this, and therefore is wreathed and turned into it ſelf; as we ſee, that if *water* be ſuddenly moved, if that an obſtacle be put in its way, it moveth in a round ſuddenly, and with a force. It may be, that a *Typhon* may ariſe from oppoſite *winds* blowing together violently, which render the *ſuperficies* of the *Sea* ſo plain, and comprehend the Ships in the middle. If that it ruſh from above, it is called *Cætegis*: and then it maketh the *Sea* ſo plain, as if that it had been plained; but preſently mighty *Floods* or *Waves* ariſe.

Propoſition XIII.

Whether that ſome Winds break forth from the Earth, or Water.

Of VVinds breaking forth from the Earth or VVater.

We eaſily apprehend that this may eaſily be, ſeeing that *Cavities* are here, and alſo *Winds*, *Sulphureous ſubſtances*, and *Moiſture*. Now nothing hinders, but that a guſt ſufficiently vehement may be there generated, *viz.* if that it be any thing hindred, as it is procreated, to go forth; or if that it be preſently generated in a great quantity, as much as the *winds* require.

If that the Outlet be hindred, an *Earthquake* is generated, or a *wind* with a violent force maketh way for it ſelf, and thruſts forwards the *Earth*. So oftentimes a *Smoak* breaketh forth from the *Earth* in the Iſles of *Maarice*: ſo alſo from ſome *Caves*. In *Japan* is a *Fountain*, breaking forth at certain hours of the day with great noiſe.

Yet I do not remember, that I have read of any *Wind* breaking forth out of the *Sea*.

Propo-

Propoſition XIV.

Whether that a certain Wind may ariſe from the flowing of the Sea, and of the Rivers?

Of a Wind that floweth from the Sea and Rivers.

Experienced teſtifieth, that in thoſe places where the *flux* and *reflux* of the *Sea* is diſcovered, if at any time the *Air* be free from other winds, from the moſt part with the *water* flowing from the *Sea*, a wind alſo bloweth from the *Sea*.

Therefore it ſeemeth probable, that the *Air*, by reaſon of the contiguity, is carried with the *water* to the ſame quarter: But this ſhould be more diligently obſerved, Whether, when that the *Air* is ſtill, the ſame *wind* is diſcovered with the afflux of the *Sea*? I think yet, that another cauſe of this *Wind* may be given, *viz.* that the *Air* is forced from the place by the flowing water. Now the *Air* is much moved at a very little impreſſion: ſo they will have the *Air* moved with the Rivers that run ſwiftly.

Propoſition XV.

Why Ignes fatui, Caſtor *and* Pollux, *and* Helena, *are amongſt Tempeſts.*

The *Portugals* call them *Corpo Santo*; the *Spaniards*, St. *Elmo*. Now not only one, but many are oftentimes beheld in Ships at the *Maſts*, wandring with an uncertain motion, as other *Ignes fatui*, although that ſometimes they may ſeem to fix on the *Sails* and *Maſts*: But ſometimes leaping up and down they appear like a flame, or a Candle burning obſcurely. If that four ſuch vicine Lights be ſeen, the *Portugals* term them *Cora de Noſtra Seneora*, the *Crown of our Bleſſed Lady*, or *Virgin Mary*. And theſe they account of as a moſt certain ſign of the *Tempeſts* to ceaſe. The cauſe of thoſe *Fires* is a Sulphureous part, full of *Bitumen*, forced downwards through that great motion of the *Air*, and forced or fired into one by agitation or congregation. So we ſee by agitation, that the Butter of *Milk* is ſeparated: from this *Phænomenon* is alſo collected, that for the moſt part thoſe violent Tempeſts proceed from a *Sulphureous ſpirit*, rarefying and moving the *Clouds*.

Propoſition XVI.

Why there is ſo frequent a Calm in the Sea near Guinee, *and under the* Æquator *in the Atlantick Ocean, between* America *and* Africa.

Frequent Calms in the Atlantick Ocean.

This is one of the *Phænomenons* about *Winds* of no ſmall difficulty, That at *Guinee*, which is two *degrees* from the *Æquator*, and under the *Æquator*, is almoſt a perpetual Calm, eſpecially in *April*, *May*, and *June*, where no motions are found there, when that no ſuch thing is obſerved in other parts of the *Ocean* ſcituate under the *Æquator*. Indeed an *Ecnephias* is ſometimes ſufficiently frequent there; but this alſo is deſired oftentimes by the *Sea-men*, becauſe that by the force of frequent *Ecnephiæ* they endeavour to ſail beyond the *Æquator*: For it happeneth very often, that Ships ſailing from *Europe* to *India*, are detained a whole Month at the *Æquator* before that they can paſs it. Now eſpecially they avoid the Coaſts of *Guinee*, and the Calm there; and therefore with ſome hindrance to their Voyage, they ſail towards *Brazil*: yea ſome *Ships* are detained here for three Months, before that they can depart from the Coaſts into the Mid-Sea. I have not yet found out the cauſe of the *Phænomenon*, unleſs perchance this be it, that *Snows* are found intercepted in no *Mountains* of *Africa* between *Guinee* and *Barbary*, which may generate the *Winds*.

Propo-

Proposition XVII.

In some Regions the Tempests are Anniversary.

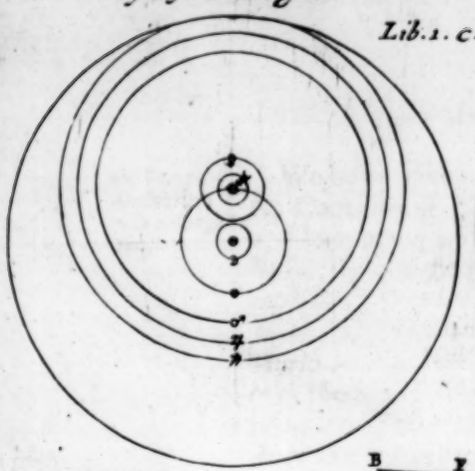
Of Tempests Anniversary in some Regions.

We have given some Examples of these in our former *Propositions, viz.* 1. Concerning the mutation of *Motions.* 2. Concerning our *Ecnephias.* 3. Concerning a *Typhon.* 4. At the Promontory of *Good-hope*, in *June* and *July.* 5. In the Isle *Del Majo*, with the Southern-motion in the end of *August*, in 35 *degrees* of the Meridian of *Tristian de Cunha*, in *May*, in the *New Moon*, the *West-wind* rageth, and Shipwracks: but in 33 *degrees* of the same Meridian, the *North* and *North-east Winds* predominate. 8. In *June* and *July* in the Sea of *China*, at *Pulon Timor*, the *West-winds* are violent and dangerous. 9. Between *China* and *Japan*, many Storms are from the *New Moon* of *July* to the twelfth day of the *Moon.* 10. There, if in *June* other winds blow besides the motion, sometimes from this, sometimes from that quarter, until that they are setled in the *North-east quarter*, of a certain a Storm followeth.

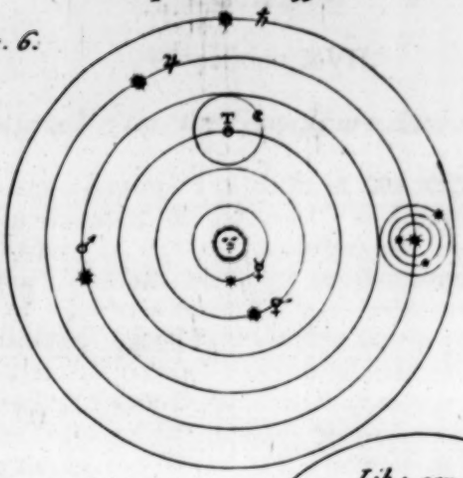
THE

The Suyſtem of the World by Tycho Bragh.

Lib. 1. c. 6.

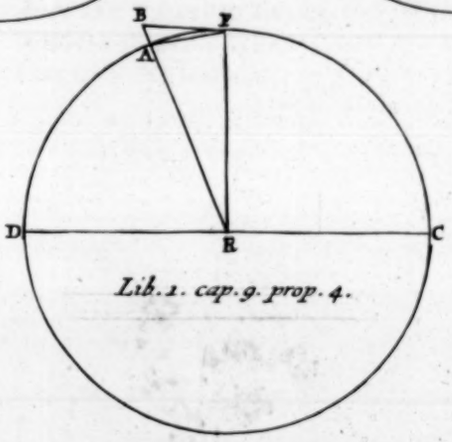


The Copernican Suyſtem.

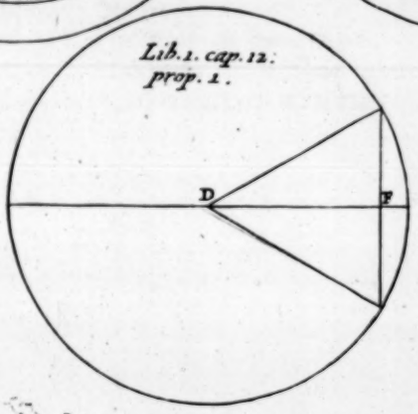


Of the Regions in ye Earth according to Carteſius

Lib. 1. cap. 7. Prop. 5.



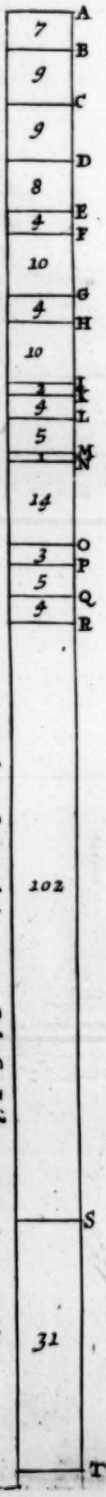
Lib. 1. cap. 9. prop. 4.

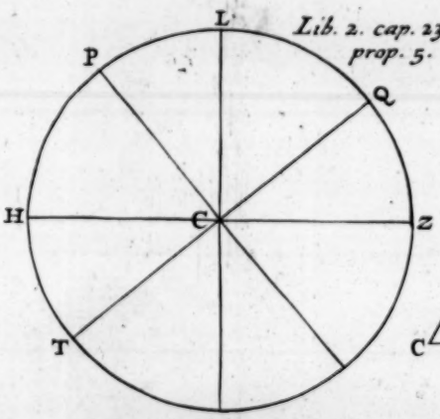


Lib. 1. cap. 12. prop. 1.

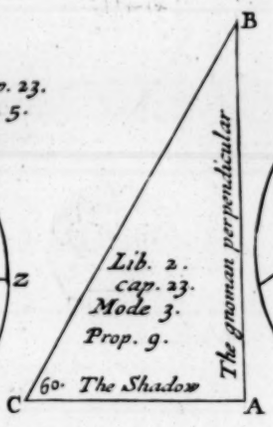
Lib. 1. cap.

The dimentions of a deepe Well in Amſterdam & the divers matters that ye Earth is compoſed of; Lib. 1. cap. 7. prop. 7.

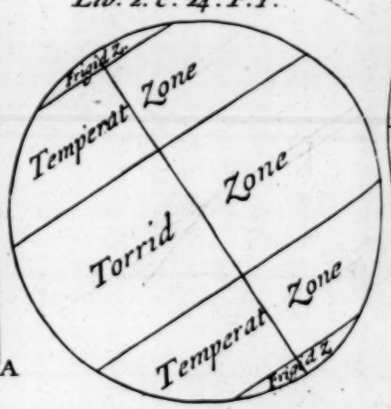


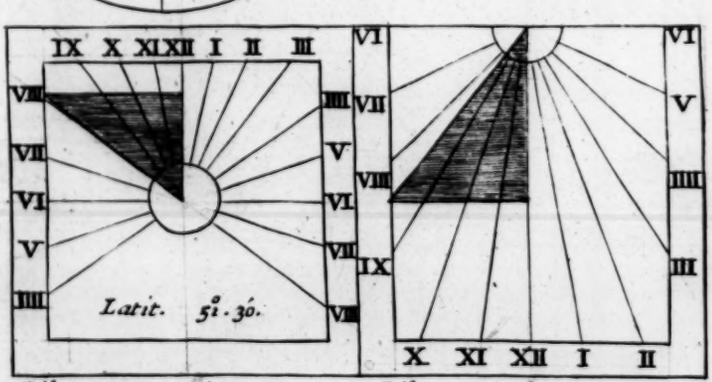


Lib. 2. cap. 23. prop. 5.



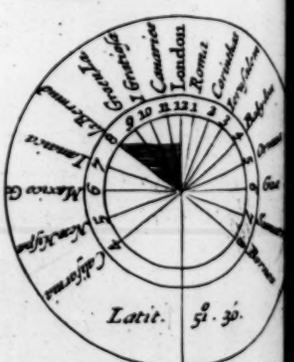
Lib. 2. c. 24. P. 1.





Lib. 2. cap. 27. prop. 22.

Lib. 2. cap. 27. p. 23.



Lib. 2. c. 27. P. 24

Lib. 2. c. 30. prop. 19.

The Second plate Folio 203.

Lib. 1. cap. 13
Prop. 3.

Lib. 1. cap. 9. p. 5. & 6.

Lib. 1. c. 13.
prop. 3.

Lib. 1
cap. 9.
prop. 2. & 3.

Lib. 1. cap. 9.
prop. 2.

Lib. 1. c. 20
prop. 4.

Lib. 1. c. 19. P. 37. 38.

Lib. cap. 19.
Prop. 21. 22. 23.
24. 25. 26. 27. 28.
29. 30. 31. 32. 33. 34.
35. 36.

Lib. 2. cap. 22.

Lib. 2. cap. 27.
prop. 21.

Lib. 1. cap. 27.
prop. 21.

The Stile Perpendicularly
erected.

Lib. 2. c. 27.
prop. 25.

Lib. 2. cap. 28

Lib. 2. cap. 30. prop. 12.

THE SECOND BOOK OF General Geography,

CONCERNING

The Affections of the places of the Earth depending on the apparent motion of the Stars.

CHAP. XXII.

Of things requiſite to be foreknown in the knowledge of Geography.

Hitherto we have been employed in an abſolute contemplation of the *Earth*; we now draw near the Second Part of this Doctrine, in which we ſhall conſider thoſe Properties or Affections which happen to the *Earth* from the apparent motion of the *Sun* and *Stars*: Neither would they be, except this *Motion* were evident. The Explication of which Affections will, with greater right, appertain unto *Geography*; if ſo be that ſame *Motion* be attributed unto the *Earth* it ſelf, of which we have treated in the Sixth Chapter. Now for the right knowledge of theſe Affections, theſe following *Hypotheſes* and *Definitions* are neceſſary to be underſtood.

Defini-

Definitions.

An Artificial Terreſtrial Globe termed a factitious Globe.

First, the *Artificial Terreſtrial Globe* is termed a factitious Globe, from whoſe Superficies the parts of the *Earth*, and their ſcituation, are ſo repreſented, as they have an exiſtence in the *Earth* it ſelf, according to the proportion of this Superficies to the Superficies of the *Earth*.

A Map, a plain Figure, and of what Lines it conſiſts.

A *Map* or *Geographical Card* is a plain figure, in which the ſcituations of the *Terreſtrial Superficies* are repreſented. And this again is either Univerſal or Particular: The firſt exhibiteth the whole Superficies of the *Earth*; the other, ſome one or other Region.

Some *Maps* conſiſt of ſtrait Lines, and others of crooked: Theſe of ſtrait are ſuch in which the Peripheries or Circumferences of the *Terreſtrial Circles* are repreſented by right Lines; the other in which the ſame *Peripheries* are exhibited by crooked Lines. But as for the compoſure of a *Terreſtrial Globe*, and *Geographical Maps*, we ſhall take an occaſion to treat of in the end of our Book, by reaſon the ſame cannot be underſtood before the Doctrine, which we now handle, be well apprehended.

Of the Poles and Axis of the Earth.

Secondly, The *Poles* of the *Earth* are two points diametrically oppoſite in the *Superficies* of the ſame, which remain immoveable in the Diurnal circumrotation of the *Earth*, or which are ſubjected unto the *Poles* of the apparent Quotidian motion of the *Stars*. But the *Axis* of the Earth is ſaid to be the *Diameter* conjoyning the Poles: Or thus, The *Axis* of the Earth is that *Diameter* of the Earth, about which the Diurnal motion of the *Stars*, or *Earth* it ſelf, is perfected. Now the *Poles* are ſaid to be the Extream points of the *Axis* in the Superficies of the *Terreſtrial Globe*; and that *Pole* which is ſubjected to the Conſtellation termed the *Bear*, is called the *Artick*, *Septentrional*, or *Northern Pole*: the other is called the *Antartick*, or *Southern Pole*. Theſe are by more facility explained by an *Artificial Terreſtrial Globe*, than by words. If the former be wheeled round, thoſe two immoveable points will appear, which are the *Poles*, and the *Diameter* imaginarily drawn from one *Pole* to the other through the *Center* of the Earth, ſhall be the *Axis*.

The Æquator, or Æquinoctial Line.

Thirdly, The *Æquator* is ſaid to be the Periphery or Circumference of the greateſt *Circle* in the Globe of the Earth, equally diſtant from both the *Poles*, or placed in the middle between the *Poles*, or whoſe Poles are the ſame with the Poles of the *Earth*. It is alſo termed the *Æquinoctial Line*, and that by Mariners. All the Stars in their Diurnal motion, make *Peripheries* equid ſtant or parallel to the *Æquator*; wherefore the Æquator is the Rule of *Diurnal motion*.

Parallels.

Fourthly, The *Parallels* of the *Æquator* are ſaid to be leſſer Peripheries, which are parallel to the *Æquator*. In an *Artificial Globe* the *Æquator*, by reaſon of its Magnitude, is more conſpicuous than the others, and its name is aſcribed, and it is divided into 360 *degrees*. The *Parallels* are alſo conſpicuous, which are likewiſe termed the *Circles* of the Latitude of Places, as we ſhall ſhew in the following Chapter.

Of Maps.

Theſe may alſo be ſhewed in *Geographical Maps* that are Univerſal. Indeed in Maps of *Right Lines* the *Poles* are not repreſented, but the Extremities of every Meridian are the *Poles*: but in Maps conſiſting of *Crooked Lines*, the *Poles* are thoſe points in which the Crooked Lines do meet the *Æquator*, being tranſverſe in both kind of *Maps*, paſſeth through the middle of them, and hath a greater Latitude than the other Lines, and withal it is a ſtrait Line; although in the particular Maps of *Aſia* and *Europe* it be made crooked. The Parallels of the *Æquator* in ſtrait-lined Maps, are ſtrait-lines; and in crooked-lined Maps, they are crooked.

The Ecliptick.

Fifthly, The *Ecliptick* is the greateſt Circle of the Heavens, which the *Sun* deſcribeth in his Annual motion. In truth it exiſteth not in the Earth; but by reaſon of its notable uſe it is marked in the *Artificial Globe*, as alſo in *Geographical Maps*.

Sixthly,

Sixthly, The *Tropicks* are two Parallels of the *Æquator*, which are distant from the *Æquator* by so great an interval, as the greatest recess of the *Sun* is from the *Æquator* towards the *Poles*, or as the greatest declination of the *Sun*, or obliquity of the *Ecliptick*. The Tropicks.

The Tropick of *Cancer* is that which is interposed between the *Æquator* and *Pole Artick*.

The Tropick of *Capricorn* is that, which is between the *Æquator* and the *Southern Pole*.

In the *Globe*, and in *Maps*, they are wont to be noted by a double *Periphery*, and the same appellation is ascribed. The *Polary Circles* are two *Parallels*, so called; whereof one is distant from the *Pole Artick*, the other from the *Antartick*, so many *degrees* as the *Sun* is from the *Æquator* in his greatest recess; and the first is termed the *Artick Circle*, and the other the *Antartick*. The Polary Circles.

The *Circles* hitherto explained do not depend on certain Places, such as the following do, which in divers places are various and different.

Seventhly, The *Meridian* of any place in the *Superficies* of the Earth, is a *Line*, so termed, which passeth through that place, in which, when the *Sun* cometh, the *Meridies* is in that place. Now the *Meridies* is that moment of the day, which is equally distant from the rising and setting of the *Sun*. The Meridian.

Theorem.

The Meridian of every place passeth through both the Poles of the Earth.

The *Meridians* are drawn through every ten *degrees* of the *Æquator*, which are the *Meridians* of all those places through which they pass. But instead of the *Meridians* of all other places, that doth supply the place, which is made of *Brass*, and in which the *Globe* doth hang. For Instance; If that any place in the *Superficies* of the *Globe* be brought unto the *Brazen Meridian*, that shall be the *Meridian* of the place.

In Maps of Strait lines the Meridians *are Strait lines drawn from the top, or uppermost part, unto the bottom. In Maps of Crooked lines, they are those Crooked lines which joyn in the Pole.*

Eightly, The *Horizon* of any place in the *Superficies* of the *Earth*, is the greatest imaginary *Circle* in the Heavens, which terminateth the visible part of the Heaven in that place. It is also termed the *Rational Horizon*, that it may be distinguished from the *Visible Horizon*, which is improperly so called. It hath no place in the *Artificial Globe*, but a Wooden Circle, in which the *Globe* is sustained with its *Brazen Meridian*, and serveth instead of the *Horizon* of any place, as shall be shewed in the next Chapter; and therefore it is termed the *Wooden Horizon*, and simply, the *Horizon*. The Horizon.

These are the *Definitions*, whose knowledge is necessary for the attaining the following Doctrine: besides which, it behoveth us to borrow from *Astronomy* the mode of the Motion of the *Sun* and *Stars*.

The first and common Motion is that, by which the *Sun*, *Moon*, and all the *Stars* seem to be carried round about the *Earth*, to arise to us, to make the Meridian, and to set; and that in the space of twenty four hours. Every one of the *Stars*, and the *Sun*, every day by this their common Motion, seem to describe Parallel Circles unto the *Æquator*; because that this motion is performed upon the *Axis* of the *Earth*, and the *Poles* of the same; and therefore the *Æquator* is the greatest Circle of this Motion, and the Rule and Square by which we measure the Motion of the other *Parallels*. In every hour they pass fifteen *degrees* through the Meridian, both of the *Æquator* and every other *Parallel*: for 360 *degrees* divided by 24, the *hours*, gives unto every The Motion of the Sun, Moon and Stars.

hour fifteen; and therefore one *hour* and fifteen *degrees* of the *Æquator*, make an equal proportion. The *Horary Circle* sheweth the hours; which *Circle* being affixed unto the *Artificial Globe*, is seen in the *Brazen Meridian*, where the Pin or Hand adhereth to the extremity of the *Axis* of the *Earth*, and it is turned about in the *Horary Circle* to shew the hours.

The second motion of the *Sun*.

Secondly, The proper and second Motion of the *Sun*, which is also Annual, is that in which the *Sun*, (or rather the *Earth*) is moved from West to East, or contrary to its first motion. The time or number of the days, in which the *Sun* returneth unto the same point from whence it departed, or in which it performeth its whole Period or Circle; is termed a *Year*. Now such a Year is 361 *days*, and one *fourth part* of a day, or thereabouts. The Way of this second *Solary motion* is termed the *Ecliptick*, as we have said before, which is divided into *twelve parts*, which are called *Signs:* For *Astronomers* have observed these *Constellations* of the *Heaven*, through which this Way of the *Sun* doth lye; and from these *Constellations* denominated the *twelve parts* of the *Ecliptick*. And because that all *Constellations* represent the forms of *Animals*, therefore the Ancients termed that Way or Ecliptick, the *Zodiack:* Yet those which spake more distinctly, call the *Zodiack*, a *Zone* or *Girdle* in the Heaven, whose middle is the very *Ecliptick* it self, or Path of the *Sun*; but the extream parts from both sides of the *Ecliptick*, are distant from it eight *degrees*, by reason that the rest of the *Planets* have a certain peculiar motion from East to West. In which motion they do not describe the *Ecliptick* it self, but paths declining somewhat from the *Ecliptick*, which declination, by reason that it exceedeth not 8 *degrees*, therefore they do attribute 16 *degrees* of Latitude unto the *Zodiack*, *viz.* Eight from both parts of the *Ecliptick*, so that the *Zodiack* is that space of the Heaven in which the *Planets* are always moving, neither do they ever move out of it: and the *Ecliptick* is the middle Line of the *Zodiack*, which the *Sun* passeth through by an Annual motion, in which it always keeps its fixed course. Moreover, the *Signs* or *Constellations* of the Heaven, through which the *Ecliptick* and the *Zodiack* passeth, are these:

The *Zodiack*, *Zone* or *Girdle* in the Heaven.

March 21.

The Signs of the *Zodiack*.

♈	♉	♊
Aries,	*Taurus*,	*Gemini*,

June 21.

♋	♌	♍
Cancer,	*Leo*,	*Virgo*,

September 21.

♎	♏	♐
Libra,	*Scorpius*,	*Sagitarius*,

December 21.

♑	♒	♓
Capricorn,	*Aquarius*,	*Pisces*.

Ecliptick.

Moreover the *Ecliptick* obliquely cutteth the *Æquator*, so that its greatest distance is twenty three *degrees*, and about thirty *minutes*. Where therefore the *Ecliptick* cutteth the *Æquator*, which he doth in two points, in one of these is placed the beginning of the *Ecliptick*, and also the beginning of the accounting of the *Signs*. In those points the *Sun* then being in, causeth the equality of the *days* and *nights* in all places, as also the beginning of the *Vernal* and

and Autumnal quarters. We begin to number from that point in which the Sun makes the beginning of the Spring to us; that is, we being ſcituate from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole Artick*; the firſt Sign, or firſt twelfth part of the *Ecliptick*, is termed *Aries*, the ſecond *Taurus*, the third *Gemini*, and ſo forth as aforeſaid; becauſe about twenty Ages paſt, thoſe Signs of the Heaven were in theſe very parts of the *Ecliptick*.

Every one of theſe twelve Signs are divided into thirty Degrees, for the whole *Ecliptick* hath three hundred and ſixty Degrees, which being divided by 12 makes 30.

Moreover, ſeeing that the Sun paſſeth over the whole *Ecliptick* (that is 360 Degrees) in 365 days, and one fourth part of a day, hence we collect, that in every day he paſſeth 59 Minutes, and 8 Seconds, which is ſomething leſs than a Degree.

Now as the Sun in a years time, or 12 Months, runneth over the whole *Ecliptick*, or 12 Signs of the *Zodiack*, ſo alſo in every Month he paſſeth about one Sign, but his entrance into the Sign is not at the beginning of the Months, but on the 21th day of every Month; and this is according to the *Gregorian Kalender*, and on the 11th day of every Month according to the old *Julian Account*, *viz.* on the 21th of *March*, he entreth the Sign of *Aries*, or the very Section of the *Ecliptick* with the *Æquator*: then on the 21th of *April* he entreth *Taurus*, and ſo on. Now this his entrance doth not happen on the 21th of every Month, but in ſome Months before, and in ſome after. Therefore when we deſire to know the preciſe place of the Sun, we muſt look for it in an *Ephemerides*, or in our *Almanacks*. The place of the Sun is found alſo in the wooden Horizon of the Artificial Globe for every day of the year, when one may ſearch when the Globe is at hand: for it is a grand fault in a learned or knowing perſon to be ignorant of the Motion of the Sun, ſeeing that from thence all the ſeaſons of the year, alſo the days and nights, with many other things do depend, of all which there is great uſe in the life of man.

The Motion of the Sun.

CHAP. XXIII.

Of the Latitude of places, and the Elevation of the Pole.

Propoſition I.

The Latitude of a place in the Superficies of the Earth is the diſtance of the ſame from the Æquator.

Now a Perpendicular Line or Arch drawn from the place given to the *Æquator*, meaſureth this diſtance, and by reaſon that the Meridian of every place is perpendicular to the *Æquator*, therefore the Latitude of the place is the Arch of the Meridian of that place intercepted between the place and the *Æquator*.

Of the Latitude of the Earth.

This is termed the Latitude of the Earth, whoſe extenſion is in the Superficies from one Pole to the other: as the Longitude of the Earth is the extenſion of the ſame returning from the Weſt by the Eaſt, unto the Weſt; which is the ſame with the Æquinoctial Line.

The Longitude of the Earth.

Propoſition II.

The Elevation of the Pole of any place, or above the Horizon of any place, is called the Arch of the Celeſtial Meridian of that place intercepted between one or other Celeſtial Pole, and the Horizon of that place.

Elevation of the Pole.

It may alſo be ſaid to be the Arch of the *Terreſtrial Meridian* intercepted between one or other of the Poles of the *Earth*, and the *Horizon*. For by this Mode it may be more juſtly deſired, if that the *Earth* cauſe the firſt *motion:* but *Aſtronomers* for the moſt part apply the definition to the imaginary *Celeſtial Pole*.

Propoſition III.

To find the Latitude of a place given in the Superficies of the Globe of the Earth, in degrees *and* minutes, *(if that the Globe be great) the ſame Latitude in Geographical Maps.*

For the finding the Latitude of a place by a Globe, or by Maps.

In a *Globe*, let the place given be brought to the Meridian, and let the *degrees* be numbred from the *Æquator* to the place; they ſhall be the ſought for Latitude of the place.

In *Geographical Maps*; if the Map conſiſts of Right lines, let a Right line be drawn through the place given, parallel to the *Æquator*, except it be already drawn in the Map; or let a Rule only be applied to the place, ſo that it be parallel to the *Æquator:* and ſo the bounds of this Line in the Side-lines of the Map, will ſhew the *Latitude* of the place.

But if the *Map* be of Crooked lines, ſo that no parallel can paſs through by the place given; one foot of the Compaſs ſhall be placed in the Pole of the *Map*, and the other foot in the place given: and in this ſpace the Parallel of the place to be deſcribed in the Side-line, again will ſhew the *Latitude* of the place; if that the *Parallels* be deſcribed from the *Pole*.

Alſo the diſtance of the place from the *Pole* may be found out.

Propoſition IV.

The Place being given in the Superficies of the Globe, ſo to conſtitute the Globe, that the Wooden Horizon may be the Horizon of that place.

Let the Place given be brought to the Meridian, and let 90 *degrees* be numbred from it towards the adjoyning Pole in the Meridian. Let the term of the Numeration be placed in the *Crena* of the Horizon: ſo the *Wooden Horizon* ſhall be the Horizon of the place propoſed. Nevertheleſs in the *Corollary* of the following *Propoſition*, we ſhall ſhew an eaſier method of performing the ſame.

Propoſition V.

The Latitude of the Place is equal to the Altitude, or Elevation of the Pole, above the Horizon of that place.

This is ſhewed by the *Globe*, thus; Take a place as you pleaſe in the Superficies of the Globe; then ſo place the Globe, that the Wooden Horizon may be the Horizon of the place. Now let the degrees of *Latitude* of the place, and the Elevation of the *Pole* be numbred, and they will be found equal.

The

The Theorem is thus ſhewed by a *Mathematical* Demonſtration: Let *C* be the *Center* of the Earth, *L* any place in the *Superficies*, *P* the *Poles*, *H P L Z* ſhall be the *Meridian*, and *H Z* the *Diameter* of the Horizon; *P H* the *Elevation* of the Pole; *Q T* the *Diameter* of the Æquator, or the *Section* of the Meridian and the Æquator: and *P Q* ſhall be the *Quadrant* of the Meridian, or of 90 *degrees*, becauſe that *P* is the *Pole* of the Æquator. For the former reaſon *L H* ſhall be the *Arch* of 90 *degrees*, becauſe *L* is the *Pole* of the Horizon: Therefore *L H* is the *Arch* of an equal Arch *P Q*, and the common part *L P* being taken away, the remainder of the Arch *P H L Q* will be equal. The Theorem ſhewed by a Mathematical Demonſtration. See Scheme.

The *Latitude* of any place being known, you have alſo the *Elevation* of the *Pole* for the ſame place. Now the diſtance of a place from the *Pole*, and the diſtance from the *Æquator* joyned together, makes 90 *degrees*, wherefore one being known, the other is alſo.

A Place being given in the Superficies of the *Globe*, to elevate the *Pole* ſo, that the elevation of the Place requireth the elevation of the *Pole*. This is the ſame with what was propounded in the preceding *Propoſition*, *viz.* to cauſe, that the *Wooden Horizon* become the Horizon of the place given. Firſt find out the *Latitude* of the Place, and let the *Latitude* be numbred from the *Pole* in the Meridian, deſcending downwards towards the Horizon. Let the *Terminus* of the Numeration be conſtituted in the *Crena* of the Horizon: ſo the *Pole* will be elevated, as the ſcituation of the Place given requireth.

Propoſition VI.

A Place being given in the Superficies of the Globe, or the Latitude of any Place being given, to ſhew all the Places of the Earth, which may have the ſame Latitude or diſtance from the Æquator, *or Elevation of the Pole: Or, to find all the places of the Earth, which may have the diſtance given from the* Æquator.

In the *Globe*; Let the Place given be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*, or let the *Latitude* given be numbred from the *Æquator* in the *Meridian* towards the *Pole*: then let a pointed *Chalk* be applied unto the term of the Numeration, and turn the *Globe* round: ſo the *Chalk* will deſcribe the *Periphery*, which ſhall contain all the places, whoſe *Latitude* is the ſame with the Place given. Further Rules to be obſerved concerning the Latitude of places.

In *Maps* of ſtrait Lines, let a ſtrait Line be drawn through the Place given parallel to the *Æquator*; all the Places through which that Line paſſeth, ſhall have the ſame *Latitude* with the place given. In *Maps* of Crooked lines, let the *Periphery* be deſcribed paſſing the place given from the *Pole* of the *Maps*, as from a *Center*: ſo by the ſame means as before, the Places ſought for ſhall be found. But if no certain Place, but a *Latitude* be given, let one foot of the *Compaſs* be placed in the *Pole* of the *Map*, and the other on the ſide Line to the degree of *Latitude*, and then the *Parallel* ſhall be deſcribed.

Propoſition VII.

To find the Meridian, *or the* Plaga, *and point of the North and South in the given place of the Earth, or in the given plane.*

There are divers ways by which the *Line* ſought for may be found.

Firſt, The moſt eaſie Mode is that, which maketh uſe of the *Magnetical Needle*: For ſeeing that the *Magnetical Needle*, or *Needle* of the *Compaſs*, with one extream looketh to the *South*, and the other to the *North*, the extenſion of it will ſhew the *Meridian Line*. But becauſe in very few places it hath reſpect to the *Northern* and *Southern* Point or Clime, and in very many declineth from them, as we ſhall ſhew elſewhere; therefore the *Meridian line* is not accurately found by that, but only an adjoyning *line*, which although Rules for the finding the Meridian. See in Chapter the 38th.

although it may ſerve, when the matter is not much material for which we deſire it; yet in concernment of greater moment it may be the cauſe of a great errour.

First draw the Line which the Magnetical Needle ſheweth, then taking any point in this Line, let the Periphery of the Circle be deſcribed from it, as from a Center, in the which let the Degrees of the Declination of the Needle be numbred, beginning from the falſe drawn Meridian Line, and that towards the Eaſt, if the given Declination be towards the Weſt; and contrariwiſe towards the Weſt, if the given Declination be towards the Eaſt. Laſtly, let a ſtraight Line be drawn through the term of the Numeration of the Center of the Periphery. This ſhall be the true Meridian Line.

The Mariners Compaſs uſeful.

There is no need of this labour, if that you have the Mariners Compaſs at hand, in the which the Declination of the Magnetick Needle is corrected to the place propoſed.

The Meridian Line found by the Stars.

Secondly, The Meridian Line is more accurately found out by the benefit of the Stars: First when the Sun ſhineth, a ſtyle or pin being erected, the ſhadow of it will ſhew the Meridian Line. But by reaſon that it is not ſafe to confide in Dyals, therefore this mode is not altogether accurate, and it ſheweth a true Line, yet a little diſtance from the true.

Thirdly, A Periphery being drawn in a plain given, let a ſtyle or pin be erected from the Center of the ſame, and let the term of the Shadow before the *Meridies* be noted: or firſt, the extremity of the Shadow being noted, let the Periphery or Circumference be deſcribed by the extremity of the Shadow from the place of the ſtyle. Then you muſt expect ſo long after the *Meridies*, until the extremity of the Shadow touch the ſame Periphery.

The Latitude being known, the Meridian Line by the help of the Globe may be found out.

Fourthly, If that the Elevation of the Pole or Latitude in the place of the Obſervation be known, we may by the benefit of the Globe find out the Meridian Line by this means: First by obſervation, let the Altitude of the Sun above the Horizon be found out; then let a ſtrait Line be drawn on a plain, in which the Sun then ſeemeth to be; and a point being taken as a Center, in this Line whatſoever it be, the Periphery is deſcribed: then let the Pole be elevated in the Globe according to the elevation of the place given; let the place of the Sun in the Ecliptick for the day given be noted; let the Quadrant be applied to the Vertex, and in that let the obſerved Altitude of the Sun be marked. Then let the Globe and the Quadrant be moved together until the point of the Quadrant and the noted place of the Sun do meet. The Globe thus remaining, let the intercepted Degrees between the Meredian and the Quadrant of the Vertical point be numbred in the wooden Horizon: let ſo many Degrees be cut off in the Periphery before deſcribed, beginning from the Line of the *Plaga* of the Sun towards the Eaſt or Weſt, as the time of the obſervation ſhall be, and let a right Line be drawn through the term or bound of the Reſection and Center of the Circle. This ſhall be the true Meridian Line.

The invention will be far more eaſie, and without the uſe of the Vertical Quadrant, if the *Plaga* be obſerved, or a Line drawn in the plain, in which the Sun either riſing or ſetting is beheld: For then a Circle being again deſcribed, let the place of the Sun be brought to the Horizon, and let the intercepted Degrees between the place of the Sun, and the North or South be numbred; let ſo many Degrees be cut off in the Periphery deſcribed from the Line drawn; and let a right Line be drawn through the term or bound of the Reſection and Center. This ſhall be the true Meridian Line.

Pro-

Propoſition VIII.

To place a Globe, ſo that the Cardines *of the ſame may reſpect the* Cardines *of the Earth; that is, that the* Brazen Meridian *may be ſeated in the true Meridian of the place.*

Let the *Meridian Line* be found in that plain on which the *Globe* ſtandeth, and let the *Globe* be ſo placed that the *Brazen Meridian* may exactly hang over the *Meridian line:* ſo the Globe ſhall be fixed according to the *Plagas* or *Climates* of the World. Or let the *Mariners Compaſs* be placed at the foot of the Globe, and let the Globe, with its foot, ſo long be moved in the plain, until the *Brazen Meridian* and the *Meridian line* of the Compaſs, be found to be in the ſame plain: ſo the Globe ſhall be again conſtituted according to the *Plaga* or *Climates* of the Earth; that is, ſo that the North part of the Globe, ſhall have reſpect to the North part of the Earth; the South to the South, Eaſt to the Eaſt, and Weſt to Weſt. Of the placing the Globe.

A Problem may be propounded concerning *Geographical Maps*, (and the uſe is alſo in the Art of *Navigation*) *viz.* ſo to place them on a plain, that the Northern places of them may look towards the North of the *Earth*, the Southern to the South, and the like. The Solution is eaſie, if that a *Meridian line* may be found in that plain, or if you have an accurate *Mariners Compaſs:* for the *Side line* of the Map ſhall be placed on the *Meridian line* of the plain; and ſo the Map ſhall have its required ſcituation.

Propoſition IX.

To find the Latitude *of the place from the Heaven, or the Elevation of the Pole above the Horizon of any place, by the benefit of the Stars.*

Although the *Latitude* of a place exiſt in the *Superficies* of the Earth, *viz.* its diſtance from the *Æquator*; yet it cannot be found without the *Stars*. The modes of finding the ſame are various. To find the Latitude of a place above the Horizon, by the Stars.

Firſt, Let the Altitude of the *Sun* above the Horizon be obſerved, when he cometh to the *Meridian line*, and let its complement or diſtance from the Vertex of the *Sun*, be taken. For this, take away the declination of the *Sun* to the day of the Obſervation; that is, if that the [illegible] be fixed in the Southern part of the *Zodiack*; but let it be added, if that it be in the Southern, the reſidue ſhall be the Latitude of the place. But the declination of the *Sun*, that is, his diſtance from the *Æquator*, in the day of the Obſervation, is found from the place of the *Sun*, and that from a Table of the declination of the parts of the *Ecliptick*, or from the Globe; for let the place of the *Sun* be noted in the Globe at the day of the Obſervation, and brought to the Meridian, the *degrees* of the Meridian being intercepted between the *Æquator* and the place of the *Sun*, exhibit the declination of the *Sun* at the day given.

Secondly, The *Sun* riſing or ſetting, by the benefit of the Globe, the *Latitude* ſhall thus be found: Let the *Plaga*, or part in which the *Sun* riſeth or ſetteth, be obſerved, which *Mariners* are accuſtomed to do by their *Compaſs*; (but the true *Meridian line* is required to this.) Let the ſame *Plaga* or *degree* be marked in the Wooden Horizon of the Globe: Let the place alſo of the *Sun* in the Ecliptick, for the day of the Obſervation, be noted; then let the *Brazen Meridian* in the *Crena* of the Horizon be turned thereunto, the *Pole* being more or leſs elevated, until the noted place of the *Sun* meet with the noted place of the Horizon: ſo the elevation of the *Pole* in the Globe, ſhall be the ſame which the place hath, where the Obſervation was made. The Solution will be more eaſie by Calculation; but by reaſon very few *Students* of *Geography* underſtand the ſolution of *Spherical Triangles*, therefore I omit the ſame, which ſhall alſo be obſerved in the following Problem.

Note,

Note, That in the time of the *Æquinoxes*, when the *Sun* is in the begining of *Aries* or *Libra*, then this method hath no uſe, becauſe that then the *Sun*, in one and the ſame *Plaga* or part, riſeth and ſetteth to all places, *viz.* in the part of the true Eaſt or Weſt, or in the *Plaga* of the *Æquinoctial* riſing or ſetting.

See Scheme. Thirdly, When the *Sun* ſhineth at Noon, let the ſtyle or pin *AB* be perpendicularly erected on an *Horizontal plain*, and let the Longitude of the ſhadow *AC*, and the ſtyle *AB* be taken in ſome divided line. Therefore in the *right Angled Triangle ABC* ſhall be both the noted ſides *AB*, *AC*, whence the *Angle ABC* ſhall be found to be the diſtance of the *Sun* from the *Vertex*: *viz.* if that it may be, that as *AB* hath its ſelf to *AC*, ſo the whole *ſign* hath it ſelf to the *Tangent* of the *Angle ABC*; from thence the *Latitude* of the place ſhall be found, as we have ſhewed in the firſt Mode. But if the Obſervation be made on the day of the *Æquinox*, then the diſtance of the *Sun* from the *Vertex* being found, the ſame is the *Latitude* of the place.

The elevation of the Pole at *Rome* and *Carthage*. So *Pliny* writeth in the 72 *Chap.* of his *Second Book*, that in the City of *Rome*, the ninth part of the Gnomon or pin is wanting unto the ſhadow; whence the elevation of the *Pole* is collected to be 41 *degrees*, 25 *minutes*. At *Carthage* the Gnomon hath the ſame proportion to the *ſhadow*, as 11 hath to 7; whence the elevation of the *Pole* is collected to be 32 *degrees*, 13 *minutes*.

Fourthly, In the Night time, when the *Stars* can be ſeen, if we take the Altitude of any *Star* in the Meridian with an Inſtrument, or from a Table know the declination of the *Stars*; thence with little trouble we ſhall find the *Latitude* of the place.

For if that *Star* be ſcituate between our *Vertex*, and the *Semicircle* of the *Æquator* elevated to us, we muſt then add:

But if the declination of the *Star* be Northernly, and the *Star* ſeated between our *Vertex* and the *Polary Star*, we muſt then ſubtract from that declination the diſtance of the *Star* from our *Vertex*; the remaining number ſhall be the *Latitude* of the place.

If that the Declination be Northern, and the *Star* be ſeated between the *Pole Star*, and the proximate part of the *Horizon*, the complement of the declination ſhall be added to the found out Latitude of the *Star*. The aggregate number ſhall give the Latitude of the place, or the elevation of the *Pole*.

If the Declination ſhall be Northern, and the *Star* is placed between our *Vertex*, and that part of the Horizon remote from the *Polary Star*; that declination ſhall be added to the diſtance of the *Star* from the *Vertex*, or to the Complement of the Altitude. The aggregated number ſhall be the *Latitude* of the place.

Finally, if that the Declination of the *Star* be Southern, this muſt be deducted from the Complement of the Altitude obſerved; and the remaining number will ſhew the *Latitude* of the place. Neither in this caſualty doth any variety occur, as in the *Star* of the Northern declination; which is to be underſtood of the places ſcituated between the *Æquator* and the *North Pole*: for it is otherwiſe with the places which lye between the *Æquator* and the *South Pole*.

Fifthly, If the *Plaga* or part be obſerved, in which any *Star* riſeth or ſetteth, the *Latitude* of that place may be found by the benefit of the *Celeſtial Globe*, according to what we have ſaid in the third Mode.

Sixthly, If that you have not a Table of the Declination of the *Stars* at hand, you may obtain the thing required, if that you obſerve ſome *Stars* not ſetting, *viz.* ſuch a one, which in its whole circumrotation is remaining above the Horizon: for thoſe *Stars* come twice to the Meridian, and therefore their *Meridian altitude* is twofold, one greater, and the other leſs. Both theſe muſt be obſerved, and the half difference muſt be added to the leſſer Altitude, or taken from the greater: ſo we ſhall obtain the *Latitude* of the place.

Seventhly,

Seventhly, If we enquire not after an accurate Latitude of a place, but would be contented with one, not much receeding from the true; we muſt take the Altitude of the *Polary Star*, when that it hath far departed from the Meridian: for that is equal to the Latitude of the place.

Propoſition X.

The Places of the Earth ſcituated under the Æquator, *have no Latitude or elevation of the* Pole; *but both the* Poles *lye in their Horizon. The places under the* Pole *have the Latitude of* 90 degrees, viz. *the* Pole *in the* Vertex, *and the* Æquator *in the Horizon. The places between the* Poles *and the* Æquator, *have a leſs Latitude than Ninety* Degrees.

The places under the Æquator have no Latitude.

The truth of this Propoſition is evident, therefore it needs no Explication.

Propoſition XI.

If we are either on the Sea *or* Land, *and know not the place where we are, let the* Latitude *be found to exhibit that Parallel in the* Globe, *that we may be certain that we are in one point of it.*

This is done after the ſame manner, that we have ſhewed in the ſixth Propoſition, *viz.* a *Parallel* muſt be deſcribed at the given or obſerved Latitude: and this is the *Parallel* demanded. The ſame is alſo eaſie in Maps.

CHAP. XXIV.

Of the diviſion of the Earth into Zones; *and the Celeſtial Appearances in the divers* Zones.

Propoſition I.

From the proper or Annual motion of the Sun, *there ariſeth a certain diviſion of the Superficies of the Earth into five parts or Zones.*

SEEing that the *Sun* doth not always continue in the *Æquator*, but declining from it, deſcribeth by his Motion a path which cutteth the *Æquator*, ſo that his greateſt declination is in $23\frac{1}{2}$ *degrees*, as well towards the North from the *Æquator*, as towards the South, in which declination he deſcribeth the Tropicks of *Cancer* and *Capricorn:* thence it is, that he is not perpetually vertical to the Places lying under the *Æquator*; neither doth he always keep one diſtance from other places, for ſometimes he is more nigh, and ſometimes more remote from a certain place; and variouſly changeth *heat*, *cold*, *rain*, and other conditions of the Seaſons. Theſe which we have now ſpoken of, may be ſhewed as well on the Globe, as in Maps.

The diviſion of the Earth into 5 Zones. See Scheme.

A *Zone* is termed a part of the Earth included within the *Tropick* and the *Polary Circle*. And becauſe there are two *Tropicks*, and two *Polary Circles*; thence it cometh to paſs, that there are five *Zones*, *viz.* 1. *Torrid*, 2. *Temperate*, and 2. *Frigid*.

A Zone, what

Torrid Zone. The *Torrid Zone* is that part of the Earth, which lieth between the Tropicks of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*.

Temperate Zones. The *Temperate Zones*, which lye between one of the Tropicks, and the adjacent Polary Circle: the Northernly Temperate Zone, is that which lieth between the Tropick of *Cancer*, and the *Artick Circle*: the Southernly temperate Zone, is that which lieth between the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick Circle*.

Frigid Zones. The *Frigid* or *Cold Zones*, are those parts of the Earth which lye about the *Poles*, even to the Polary Circles; and they are as well Northernly, as Southernly, cold Circles.

Proposition II.

The Places, according to their Latitudes, in what *Zones* they are in. Those places of the Earth, whose Latitude is less than 23 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*; they lie in the *Torrid Zone*.

Those whose Latitude is 23 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*; they lie in the *Tropicks*, *viz.* in the extremity of the *Torrid Zone*.

Those whose Latitude is greater than 23 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*, and less than 66 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*; they lie in the *Temperate Zone*.

Those whose Latitude is 66 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*; they lie in the Polary Circles, *viz.* in the term of the *Temperate Zone*.

Those whose Latitude is greater than 66 *degrees* and 30 *minutes*; they lie in the *Frigid Zones*.

These are manifest from the definitions of the *Tropical* and *Polary Circles*, which we have treated of in the 23*th Chapter*.

Proposition III.

The Æquator of the Earth passeth through these Places.

Places which the *Æquator* passeth through. Through the Island of St. *Thomas* in the great Bay of *Africa*, which is called the *Æthiopian Ocean*.

Through *Æthiopia*,

Through the *Indian Ocean*.

Through the middle of *Sumatra*.

Through the *Chersonesus* of *Malacca*, and other Islands in the *Indian Ocean*.

Through the *Moluccas* themselves, and the *Pacifick Ocean*.

Through the entrance of the Province of *Peruana*.

By the Lake *Parima*.

Through the *Atlantick Ocean*, even to the Island of St. *Thomas*.

The *Æquator* divideth the *Torrid Zone* into two equal parts, so that they may deservedly be termed two *Torrid Zones*, one Northern, and the other Southern.

These Places lie in the Torrid Zone.

Places which lie in the *Torrid Zone*. The greatest part of *Africa*, the *Indian Ocean*, *Abyssine*, part of *Arabia*, *Cambaja*, *India*. The Isles of the *Indian Sea*, *Java*, *Ceilan*, *Peruvia*, *Mexico*, great part of the *Atlantick Ocean*, the Island of St. *Helena*, *Brazil*, *New Guinee*.

Places which the Tropick of *Cancer* passeth through. The Tropick of *Cancer* passeth through these places, *viz.* through the Confines of *Lybia*, and other places in the Inland *Africa*; through *Syena* in *Æthiopia*. Thence passing the *Red Sea*, beyond the Mountain *Sinai*; and *Mecca*, the Birth-place of *Mahomet*, it passeth through *Arabia Felix*: hence it entreth the *Indian Ocean*, and toucheth the borders of *Persia*, and passeth over *Cambaja*, *India*, and the Borders of *China*, until it come into the *Pacifick Sea*; which being passed over, it falleth in with *California* into the

the Kingdom of *Mexico*; and again entring into the *Atlantick Ocean*, paſſing the Gulph of *Mexico*, it ſweepeth the Coaſt of the Iſle of *Cuba*, and thence returneth to the Occidental ſhoar of *Africa*.

The Tropick of *Capricorn* paſſeth through very few places of the Earth; its greateſt part lying in the Sea. The places through which it paſſeth, are, through the Tongue of *Africa*; through *Monomotapa*, *Madagaſcar*, the *Indian Ocean*, *New Guinee*, the *Pacifick Ocean*, *Peru*, *Brazil*, and through the *Atlantick Ocean*. Places which the Tropick of *Capricorn* paſſeth through.

Many places in the Earth lie in the *Northern temperate Zone*, and thoſe almoſt all known and inhabited; *viz.* all *Europe*, all *Aſia*, (except part of *India*, *Malacca*, and the Iſles of the *Indian Ocean*,) great part of *America Septentrionalis*, and part of the *Atlantick* and *Pacifick Ocean*. Places ſcituate in the Northern and Southern temperate Zones.

In the *Southern temperate Zone* few places lie, and thoſe not fully known, with a large portion of the Sea; *viz.* part of the *Prominent*, part of *Africa*, *Monomotapa*, a great part of *Terra Magellanica*, part of *Brazil*, *Chili*, the Streights of *Magellan*, and a great part of the *Atlantick*, *Indian*, and *Pacifick Ocean*.

The *Artick Polary Circle* paſſeth almoſt through the middle of *Izland*, through the Upper *Norway*, the *North Sea*, *Lapland*, the Bay of *Ruſſia*, *Samojeda*, *Tartaria*, *America Septentrionalis*, and *Groenland*. Places which the *Artick* and *Antartick* Polary Circles paſs through.

The *Antartick Polary Circle* paſſeth through *Terra Magellanica*; of which we have little or no knowledge at this day.

In the *Cold Northern Zone* lieth part of *Izland*, the Utmoſt part of *Norway* and *Lapland*, *Finmarch*, *Samojeda*, *Nova Zembla*, *Groenland*, *Spitſberga*, and ſome part of *America Septentrionalis*, not yet diſcovered. Places which lie in the cold Northern, and Southern Zones.

In the *Cold Southern Zone*, what it is, whether Land or Water, is unknown.

What we have ſpoken on hitherto, are ſhewed by the Globe and by the Maps; but they are proved by the Tables of the *Latitude* of Places, which are made by Obſervations.

Propoſition IV.

In the Places which lye in the Tropicks, *the* Sun *once in every year is only vertical in the* Meridies *or* Noonſtead; *but in places lying under the* Torrid Zone, *he is vertical twice a year*, viz. *two days, which are equally diſtant from the Longeſt day. But in Places without the* Torrid Zone, *and ſcituated without the* Tropicks, *the* Sun *never in any day of the year is vertical.*

For when the *Sun* is in the firſt *degree* of *Cancer*, which is about the one and twentieth of *June*, then he deſcribeth the *Tropick* of *Cancer* in the Heaven; and by how long a ſpace this *Tropick* is diſtant from the *Celeſtial Æquator*, by ſo much the *Terreſtrial Tropick* of *Cancer* is diſtant from the *Terreſtrial Æquator*; and ſo the *Terreſtrial Tropick* is ſubject to the *Celeſtial*, and the *Sun* therefore becometh vertical to the Places ſeated in the *Tropick* of *Cancer*. In the places of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, it happeneth after the ſame manner about the twentieth of *December*, the *Sun* then entring the Sign of *Capricorn*. Theſe are manifeſt from the Globe, and from Maps. The Sun, how oft, and in what places, Vertical.

But for further Explanation, to ſhew the *Sun* to be vertical twice a year in a place:

Explanation. Take a place lying in the *Torrid Zone*, and let the place taken be brought to the *Meridian*, and a pointed Chalk being applied, let the *Globe* be turned round, that the Parallel of that place may be described, that will cut the *Ecliptick* in two points, which will be equally distant from the first *degree* of *Cancer* or *Capricorn*. And the *Sun* being in these points of the *Ecliptick* will be vertical in the place taken; for the Parallel which the *Sun* in those days describeth, will directly hang over the Parallel of the place described Wherefore the *Sun* will pass through the *Vertex* of that place, and therefore will be vertical to it in the *Meridies* of these two days; but not so in other days. Now that it is only vertical in the *Meridies* unto places, is perspicuous from his diurnal revolution.

Now that in places scituate without the *Torrid Zone*, and the *Tropicks*, the *Sun* is never vertical, is manifest, by reason that no Parallel of the *Sun* is imminent over the Parallel of those places: for the *Sun* is never vertical in the *Temperate* and *Cold Zones*.

Proposition V.

To places seated in either of the Frigid Zones, *the* Sun *every year some day or other setteth not, and so many days riseth not; and that so many days the more, by how much those days are nigh the* Poles: *so that in a whole place of the* Pole, *for six Months space it setteth not, and ariseth not to another. But in places in the* Artick *or* Antartick Circle, *the* Sun *setteth not, one only day in the year, and one day ariseth not; but other days it setteth and ariseth.*

The rising and setting of the *Sun* in places seated in the *Frigid Zones*. Take any place you please of the *Frigid Zone* in the Globe, and let the *Pole* be so elevated as the Latitude of the place requireth, or that the Wooden Horizon may become the Horizon of the place, as in the preceding Chapter. Then let a pointed Chalk be applied to the *Crena* of the Horizon, which is more nigh the *Pole* elevated; and let the Globe be turned round, so that the Chalk may mark some Parallel of the *Æquator*. This Parallel shall cut the *Ecliptick* in two points, which shall be equally distant from the first *degree* of *Cancer*; and the *Sun* being in any of these points of the *Ecliptick*, and in all Intermedial points, shall not set; which hence is manifest, because the Parallels of the *Sun*, existing in these points, remain above the Horizon in the whole Circumrotation.

On the contrary, If that the Chalk so pointed be applied unto the other *Crena* of the Horizon, and the Parallel be described, we shall find those points of the *Ecliptick*, or the *Arch*, about the beginning of *Capricorn*; in which, whilst the *Sun* is, he doth not arise to that place of the *Frigid Zone*, but remaineth beneath the Horizon. The contrary appeareth, if the place be taken in the cold *Antartick Zone*.

What we have said of the places lying under the *Artick* or *Antartick Circle*, is shewed after the same manner, *viz.* the *Pole* must be elevated to *66 degrees, 30 minutes*: so the Wooden Horizon shall be the Horizon of any place lying under the *Artick Circle*. And it will be manifest, that the Tropick of *Cancer* setteth not, and the *Tropick* of *Capricorn* ariseth not, but that they touch the Horizon; therefore the *Sun* in the first *degree* of *Cancer* setteth not, and in the first *degree* of *Capricorn* ariseth not, but on both days radiateth the Horizon: But in other degrees of the *Ecliptick* it will arise, and set, which may be discerned by the Oriental and Occidental points of the *Ecliptick*.

Propoſition VI.

In places ſeated without the Frigid Zone; *that is, in the* Temperate *or* Torrid Zones, *the* Sun *every day riſeth and ſetteth.*

In places without the *Frigid Zones*, the Sun riſeth and ſetteth every day.

Take any place in the Globe lying without the *Frigid Zones*, and *Polary Circles*, and let the *Poles* be elevated according to its Latitude, ſo that the Wooden Horizon doth become the Horizon of that place: If that now you turn the Globe, it will be apparent that all the points of the *Ecliptick* do riſe and ſet; that is to ſay, ſometimes they are depreſſed beneath, and ſometimes elevated above the Horizon. The *Sun* then being in thoſe points doth the ſame.

Propoſition VII.

A place being given that is ſeated in the Torrid Zone, *to find thoſe two days in the which the* Sun *is vertical to that place.*

Let the place given be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*, and let the *degree* of *Latitude* be marked with Chalk: then move the Globe, until one point or other of the *Ecliptick* do paſs through this noted point of the *Meridian*. Let theſe two points be noted, for they are thoſe in which when the *Sun* is, he is vertical to the place given: let alſo the days of the Year be found, in which the *Sun* occupieth thoſe points of the *Ecliptick*, which may be done either in the Wooden Horizon, or from a Table, or by the method of the *22th Chapter*, thoſe will be the ſought for days; whereof one will be before the *Solſtice*, the other after it, In which the *Sun* is vertical to that place, when he cometh to the *Meridian*.

This *Problem* is alſo eaſily reſolved in Univerſal *Maps*.

For if a Parallel line be drawn through the place given to the *Æquator*, right, or circular from the *Pole* of the Map in Crooked lines; this being drawn will cut the *Ecliptick* in two points, from which the days of the year will be manifeſt.

But if you require the reſolution of the *Problem* on a Globe, or on Maps, you ought to know the *Latitude* of the place; with this enter the Table of the *Declination*, placed in the *22th Chapter*; and except the days in which the *Sun* hath ſuch a declination: they ſhall be the days required.

Propoſition VIII.

A place being given, ſeated in the Frigid Zone, *to ſhew thoſe days in which the* Sun *doth not ſet to that place, and in what days he riſeth not: Alſo the firſt and laſt of thoſe days in which he ſetteth not to that place, or in which he riſeth not to the ſame.*

Of the riſing and ſetting of the *Sun* in the places ſeated in the *Frigid Zone*.

In the *Globe*, let the place given be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the *Pole* be elevated for the Latitude of the place: then turning the Globe round, let the points of the *Ecliptick*, which ſet not, be marked in the *Crena* of the Horizon, and in the other *Crena*, thoſe that do not ariſe. Therefore that *degree*, which is between the firſt *degree* of *Aries* and the firſt of *Cancer*, will ſhew the firſt day, in which the *Sun* ſetteth not to that place: and the other *degree*, between the firſt of *Cancer* and the firſt of *Libra*, will ſhew the laſt day. And in theſe days the *Sun* radiateth the Horizon, yet he will remain above it: which yet muſt be underſtood of the Center of the *Sun*. But in the Intermedial days, he will perpetually remain above the Horizon. By the ſame method, thoſe days will be found, in which the *Sun* will remain beneath the Horizon,

Horizon, in the oppoſite part of the year, and the firſt and laſt day of them.

This performed by the Globe.

By a more eaſie method this may be done upon the Globe, yet with leſs manifeſt demonſtration. As many *degrees* as the place given is diſtant from the *Pole*, let ſo many be numbred in the Meridian from the *Æquator*, and let the term be noted on both ſides of the *Æquator:* then the Globe being turned round, obſerve what points of the *Ecliptick* paſs through the noted points of the Meridian: For thoſe that are near to the beginning of *Cancer*, and the *Arch* comprehended, will ſhew the days of the perpetual ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon of the place given. The other *Arch* within the points, about the beginning of *Capricorn*, will ſhew the days of the perpetual abſence of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon of the place given.

Alſo by Maps.

In *Maps*, let the Complement of the *Latitude* of the place, or diſtance of the place from the *Pole*, be numbred in the Side-line of the Map from the *Æquator* toward both the *Poles*, and the Parallel to the *Æquator* be deſcribed through the term of the Numeration, whether the Map conſiſts of Strait, or Crooked lines, as we have ſhewed in the forecited Propoſitions. Theſe Lines ſo drawn ſhall cut the *Ecliptick* each in two points: theſe Points will ſhew the firſt and laſt day of the perpetual ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon, and the *Arch* intercepting all the days of the perpetual ſtay. The other Line in the oppoſite points of the *Ecliptick*, will ſhew the perpetual deliteſcence of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon.

Likewiſe by a Table of the Declination.

By a Table of the *Declination* it is thus done; If the *Latitude* of the place be known, enter with the Complement of the Latitude the Table of the Declination; and ſeek that declination, ſuch as is the Latitude of the place, which you ſhall find four times, and take thoſe four days in which the *Sun* hath that declination. Two of them, whereof one is between the 21*th* of *March*, and the 21*th* of *June*; the other, the 21*th* of *June*, and the 21*th* of *September*, are the firſt and laſt of the perpetual ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon. The other two, of the perpetual ſtay beneath the Horizon of the place propounded; the Intermedial days will be of the perpetual ſtay of the *Sun* above, or under the Horizon.

Propoſition IX.

The day of the year being given, to find thoſe places of the Earth in the Globe, or the Map, in which the Sun *that day is vertical in the* Meridies, viz. *one place after another.*

From the day given, the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* may be found, according to the method of the 22*th Chapter*.

In the *Globe*; Let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the point of the *Meridian*, which it hangeth over, let the *Globe* be turned round: ſo all the places, which paſs through the marked points, are thoſe which are ſought for.

In *Maps*; Let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be marked, and through it let a right Parallel of the *Æquator* be drawn, or otherwiſe a crooked; as the Table ſhall either conſiſt of ſtrait or crooked Lines. So all the places of this Parallel ſhall be thoſe demanded; but it ought to be in the Hemiſphere of the *Maps*.

By the Table of the *Declination* delivered in the precedent Chapter, the *Latitude* of thoſe places may be found.

Propoſition

Propoſition X.

The day of the year being given, to find thoſe places of the Earth, in which the Sun, viz. *his Center doth not ſet, ſo that this day may be the firſt of all thoſe, in which the* Sun *doth not ſet in thoſe places: And to find thoſe places in which the* Sun *doth not ariſe, with the ſame condition.*

The day must be one of thoſe, which fall between the 21*th* of *March*, and the 21*th* of *June*; or the 21*th* of *September*, and the 21*th* of *December*. The day of the year being given, to find thoſe places of the Earth, in which the Sun doth not ſet, nor ariſe.

Firſt of all, let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* at the day given be found, then the reſt will follow ſo.

In the *Globe*; Let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be brought to the *Meridian*; and how many *degrees* are intercepted between that and the *Æquator* in the *Meridian*, let ſo many be numbred from the *Pole* towards the *Æquator*: or how many *degrees* are between the place of the *Sun* and the *Pole*, let ſo many be numbred from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole*; let the Term of the Numeration be noted with a Chalk, or let a Parallel be drawn to it.

All the places ſeated in this *Parallel* ſatisfie the firſt demand; but thoſe places which are ſought for in the ſecond place, ſhall be in the *Parallel* equally diſtant from the other *Pole*.

In *Maps*; Let the Declination of the *Sun* noted, be numbred from the *Pole* towards the *Æquator*, in the Lateral line, and let the *Parallel* of the *Æquator* be drawn through the Term. All the places lying in this *Parallel* of both the *Planiſpheres* are thoſe demanded: The places of the ſecond demand ſhall be found in the ſame *degrees* in the *Parallel*, diſtant from the other *Pole*.

In the Tables of the *Declination*, let the *Latitude* be found for the place demanded.

Propoſition XI.

To compute the Latitude and Magnitude of all the Zones, *in Miles, or ſome other famous Meaſures.*

The *Latitude* of the *Torrid Zone* is 47 *degrees*, *viz.* 23½ from both parts of the *Æquator*: the *Latitude* of both the *Temperate*, is 43 *degrees*. The *Latitude* of both the *Temperate*, is 43 *degrees*. The *Latitude* of both the *Frigid*, 47 *degrees*. Theſe *Degrees*, if changed into *Miles*, one *degree* being eſtimated at 15 *German miles*, the *Latitude* of the *Torrid Zone* will be 705 *miles*: one of the *Temperate*, 645; and one of the *Frigid*, 705. The computation of the Latitude and Magnitude of the *Zones* in Miles, &c.

The place requireth, that we ſhould now treat of the *Seaſons* in the divers *Zones* and places; but becauſe ſome of them do appertain unto the following *Chapter*, I have omitted them here.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the Longitude *of the Days in divers Places of the* Earth: *And of the diviſion of the* Earth *into* Climates, *which proceed from them.*

Propoſition I.

In two Days of the year are the Æquinoxes, *or the Night equal to the Day in all places of the Earth.*

The Days and Nights in all places are equal in two days of the year.

THe Days are thoſe in which the Sun entreth the *Æquator*, whether he deſcribes the ſame by Motion, or Diurnal circumvolution; which is, when that he entreth the firſt *degree* of *Aries*, and the firſt *degree* of *Libra*, *viz.* on the 21*th* of *March*, and the 21*th* of *September*, according to the *Gregorian Kalendar*. Now we ſhall ſhew, that on theſe days the Night is equal to the Day, conſiſting of twelve hours in all places of the Earth: Now this Day noteth the ſtay of the Sun above the Horizon; and the Night, the ſtay beneath the Horizon.

Take any place in the Globe, and let the *Pole* be elevated for the Latitude of that place, ſo that the Wooden Horizon may become the Horizon of that place. Then let the firſt *degree* of *Aries* or *Libra* be placed in the Oriental Horizon, the *Index* at the twelfth hour of the Horary Circle: then turn the Globe, until the firſt *degree* of *Aries* come to the Occidental Horizon, you ſhall ſee that the *Index* in the Horary Circle hath paſſed twelve hours. The ſame method may be uſed to manifeſt the Night, conſiſting of twelve hours.

In Places ſcituated in the *Poles* of the Earth, which are only two; the *Sun* neither riſeth nor ſetteth in theſe two days of tqe year, but his Center ſhall be wheeled round in the Horizon (which is the ſame with the *Æquator*,) ſo that they ſhall have at one time both Day and Night. Seeing therefore that in other places, the term of the Days and Nights is a moment, there, on the contrary, the intire revolution or Natural day, is the term or *medium* of the perpetual appearancy or diſappearancy of the *Sun*. And in theſe two days of the *Æquinoctials*, (the 21*th* of *March*, and 21*th* of *September*) the half Sun ſhall be above the Horizon in thoſe two places, and half beneath it. And on the 21*th* of *March* in the *Pole Artick*, it ſhall make the beginning of a long day of ſix Months; and on the 21*th* of *September*, ſhall be the beginning of a long night of ſix Months, as we ſhall ſhew anon: therefore it is no abſurdity, that ſome places for twenty four hours ſhould neither have night or day. Here I ſhall mention many things peculiar to the *Poles* above other places of the Earth, *viz.*

Several things here noted peculiar to the *Poles*, above other places of the Earth.

1. The *Sun* in a whole year only once riſeth, and once ſetteth; that is to ſay, it riſeth in one *Æquinox*, and ſetteth in the other.

2. They have no *Meridies*, or Midnight, at a certain time; but at all hours they have a perpetual *Meridies* for ſix Months, or perpetual Night for ſix Months.

3. No *Fixed Stars* ariſe, nor ſet; but ſome remain perpetually above the Horizon, and ſome always beneath it.

4. The *Stars* keep the ſame Altitude above the Horizon, and diſtance from the Vertex, as the *Sun* alſo doth in his whole Diurnal circumvolution.

5. No *Winds* there can be called *Northern*, for they are all Southern in the *Artick Pole*; and contrariwiſe in the *Antartick Pole*, all Northern, and none Southern, Weſtern, or Eaſtern.

6. If the *Stars* and *Sun* do not move, but the *Earth*, according to *Copernicus* his Hypotheſis, then if the Eye were a point, that it could be ſeated in the

the Pole, all the *Stars*, *Sun*, and *Moon*, would appear immovable in the same *Plaga*.

All these are easily shewed by the *Globe*.

Proposition II.

In places scituated in the Æquator, *the days and nights are always equal. In the places of the Poles, there is only one day, and one night in the whole year. Now the day is longer than the night in the North Pole; but in the South, the day is shorter than the night.*

Take any place you please in the Globe, you must shew that in every day in the year, the night is equal to the day; that is, that the *Sun* for so long time remaineth beneath the Horizon, as he doth above it. Take the day of the year as you please, and let the place of the *Sun* be enquired after to it, which is noted in the Ecliptick: then let the place taken be placed in the *Vertex*, that the Poles may hang over the Horizon; for so the Wooden Horizon shall be the Horizon of the places of the *Æquator*. Let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the Meridian, and the Parallel described, which the *Sun* perfecteth that day. Then let the two Points of this Parallel in the Horizon be noted, and it will be manifest, that the Arch of this Parallel above the Horizon, will be equal to the Arch which is beneath the Horizon. And because the Motion of the *Sun* Diurnal is equal, as that of all the *Stars*, therefore in an equal time, it will pass through the equal Arches of the Parallels. So that the first part of the Proposition concerning every day is shewed. Now for the shewing of the other part of the places of the Poles, either of the Poles must be placed in the *Vertex* of the Wooden Horizon, so shall this be the Horizon of the Pole.

The days and nights alwaies equal in places seated in the *Æquator*.

And the Globe being turned round, we shall see that one half of the Ecliptick remaineth above the Horizon, and the other beneath it. Therefore whilst the *Sun* is in this, he setteth not, whilst in that he riseth not. And he is more daies in the Northern Semicircle of the Ecliptick, than in the Southern by nine daies. Therefore his perpetual stay above the Horizon shall be longer than beneath it of the Pole *Arctick*. But it is otherwise in the *Antarctick* Pole.

Proposition III.

In places lying beneath the Æquator, *and the Pole, no days are equal to the nights, except the two days of the* Æquinoctials, *but all the rest are either greater or lesser than the nights.*

Let any place in the Globe be taken beneath the *Æquator*, and the Pole, and let the Pole be Elevated according to the Latitude of the place, and any day of the year being taken, (except the daies of the *Æquinoxes*). Let the place of the *Sun* for that day be found, and so be noted in the Ecliptick, and being brought to the Meridian, let the Parallel be described, which the *Sun* maketh by his Diurnal Circumrotation. Let the two Points of this Parallel in the Horizon be noted, and it will be manifest, that the Arch of the Parallel above the Horizon is greater or lesser than the Arch of the Parallels lying hid beneath the Horizon, and so the day, or stay of the *Sun* above the Horizon, will be greater or lesser than beneath it.

The days not equal to the nights in places lying under the *Æquator*.

Or in the place of the *Sun* brought to the Oriental Horizon, let the *Index* be placed above the 12*th* hour of the Horary *Circle*, and let the Globe be turned round, until the place of the *Sun* doth come to the Occidental Horizon. The *Index* in the *Circle* will shew the number of the hours of the day. Then let the *Index* be brought back to 12, and the Globe turned round, until the place of the *Sun* passing beneath the Horizon, returns to the

East. The *Index* again will shew the number of the hours of the night, and the inequality will be manifest.

Proposition. IV.

A Place being given in the Globe, or the Latitude of a place being given, and the day of the year also given, to find how many hours the Sun in that day remaineth above the Horizon of that place, and how many beneath it; that is, to find the Longitude of the day and night for that place at the day given.

Latitude of places.

Let the place of the *Sun* in the Ecliptick at the day given be found. And let it be noted in the Ecliptick of the *Globe*. Let the Pole be Elevated according to the Latitude of the place given. Let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the Oriental *Horizon*, and the *Index* of the *Circle* to 12, let the *Globe* be turned round, until the place of the *Sun* come to the Occidental *Horizon*; the *Index* will shew the number of the hours of the day; the other at 24 will shew the hours of the night.

Proposition. V.

In all places seated between the Æquator, *and the Pole Arctick, the longest day and shortest night, is when the* Sun *enters the first degree of* Cancer; *and the shortest day, and longest night is when the* Sun *entreth the first degree of* Capricorn. *But in the places seated between the* Æquator *and the* Antarctick *Pole it is just contrary.*

Of places seated between the *Æquator* and the Pole Arctick. The daies longest, and nights shortest, when the *Sun* entreth into *Cancer*; and daies shortest, and nights longest when into *Capricorn*.

To shew this on the *Globe*, take what place you please, and let the Pole be Elevated according to its Latitude. Then according to the preceeding Proposition, find out the number of the hours, when the *Sun* is in the first Degree of *Cancer*, then any other point of the Ecliptick being taken for any day of the year, let the number of the hours again be found for that day. And it will be manifest, that the number of the hours of the day, when the *Sun* is in the first Degree of *Cancer*, is greater than the number of the hours of another day. And because this other day is taken at pleasure, and in every day the same Demonstration is in force, therefore the day, when the *Sun* is in the first Degree of *Cancer*, is the longest of all daies, and consequently the shortest night.

After the same way we may shew, that the day is the shortest, when the *Sun* is in the first Degree of *Capricorn*, and the nights the longest.

The same Method of Demonstration shall be observed for places scituated on the other side of the *Æquator*, towards the *Antarctick* Pole.

Proposition VI.

In the Northern places of the Earth, whilst the Sun *moveth from the first degree of* Capricorn, *to the first of* Cancer, *the days continually encrease: and whilst he moveth from the first of* Cancer, *unto the first of* Capricorn, *they continually decrease. But it is contrary in the places Southerly, for they encrease from the first of* Cancer, *to the first of* Capricorn; *and decrease from the first of* Capricorn, *to the first of* Cancer.

Of the encreasing and decreasing of the daies in the Northern places of the Earth.

Take any Northern place you please in the *Globe*, which lyeth between the *Æquator*, and the Pole *Arctick*, and let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of that place. Then taking two, or more of the Points of the Ecliptick, which lie between the first of *Capricorn*, and the first of *Cancer*, he quantity of the day may be found for these Points, or for the *Sun* then

then in those points; And it will be manifest, that the day from the day of the first of *Capricorn* being more remote, will be greater than that day which was more near to the same day of the first of *Capricorn*.

The same way we must use in the daies scituated between the first of *Cancer*, and the first of *Capricorn*. And in places seated Southernly, we shall shew the Proposition by such like Method. The Demonstration will be more perspicuous, if that it be done through the Parallel *Arches*, which are above, and under the *Horizon*.

Proposition VII.

If the place of the Earth be more remote from the Æquator, *or more propincate to the* Pole, *than another place, the difference is greater between the daies and the nights, and the longest day is greater, and the shortest night is less. Contrariwise, if the place be more nigh the* Æquator, *the difference between the quantity of the daies and nights is lesser, and the longest day lesser, and the shortest night greater; so that the places near the* Æquator, *or scituate in the* Torrid Zone, *have almost all the days equal to the nights, as the places of the* Æquator *it self, and the exceß of the longest day above that of the* Æquinoctial *about one hour.*

According to the scituation of the places of Earth to the *Æquator* and the Pole, the daies and nights are longer and shorter.

Take in the Globe two places, one more remote from the *Æquator*, the other more nigh, and take what day of the year you please (except the *Æquinoxes*) you may shew that in the place more remote, the day more differeth from the quantity of the night, than in a place more near the *Æquator*.

Let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be found at the day taken, and noted in the *Ecliptick* of the Globe. Then let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the Earth of the one place taken, and let the Longitude of the day and the night, (or the stay of the *Sun* above or beneath the *Horizon*) in that place at the assumed day be found by the sixth Proposition of this Chap. Then let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the other place; and let the Longitude of the day and night, or stay of the *Sun* above or beneath the *Horizon*, be found at the same assumed day. Let this Longitude so found, be compared with the other, and the truth of this Proposition will be manifest.

So that the place more remote hath all the daies of one half year longer, than the place more nigh. On the contrary, it will have all the daies of the other half year shorter.

Corollary, What hath been shewed of all the daies of the year (except the *Æquinoctials*) the same is also of force in the quantity of the longest and shortest day. And in this it is most observed, and noted, because here is the greatest difference between the Longitude of the night and day, not so great in other daies of the year. Therefore of the two places, that which is more remote from the *Æquator*, or more near to the Pole, hath the longest day greater than the place more Vicine to the *Æquator*: and the shortest day lesser.

Proposition VIII.

All places of the Earth scituated in one of the same Parallel, have all the days of the year equal, and therefore the same quantity of the longest day.

The Demonstration of this Proposition is easie by the Globe. Let any Parallel be taken in the Globe, and what places you please. Let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of this Parallel, and let any Parallel of the *Sun* be taken for any part of the year: Out of the Degree let the Tropick of *Cancer* be taken for the longest day; let one of the places taken be constituted under the *Meridian*, that so it may possess the *Vertex* of the *Horizon*; or that the Wooden *Horizon* may be the *Horizon* of the place. Then let the *Arch* of the Tropick above

The equality of the daies according to their scituation in one of the same Parallel.

the *Horizon* be noted, or the two points of the ſame which are in the *Horizon*; for the *Arch* in theſe, denoteth the ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon* of the place; then let the ſecond place be brought to the *Meridian* or *Vertex*, that the *Wooden Horizon* may be the *Horizon* of it, and let the *Arch* of the *Tropick* above the *Horizon* again be marked, which if it be compared with the former, we ſhall find that they are equal. The ſame may be ſhewed alſo by hours on the *Horary Circle*.

Therefore the *Sun* remaineth an equal time above the *Horizons* of thoſe places, and therefore the daies ſhall be equal, as alſo the nights.

Definitions.

Obſervations concerning a Climate.

From theſe aforeſaid *Propoſitions*, the *Original of the diviſion* of the *Earth* into *Climates*, is eaſily to be underſtood.

For a Climate is ſaid to be one part of the Earth of thoſe parts into which the Superficies ſcituated between the *Æquator* and the *Pole* is ſo cut by drawn Parallels, that the longeſt day in the Parallel more remote from the *Æquator*, exceedeth the longeſt day of the Parallel more near the *Equator* in a certain part of an hour, or number of hours. *Viz.* Half an hour in places ſcituated even to the *Artick Circle*; in other places a whole hour, or ſome hours, and daies.

The begining of a Climate is called a Parrallel, with which the Climate begineth, and is more nigh the *Æquator*: The end of a Climate is called a Parallel terminating the Climate.

The middle of a Climate is called a Parallel, drawn almoſt through the middle Superficies of a Climate, ſo that in that the longeſt day exceedeth the longeſt day of the begining of a Climate, by a quarter of an hour, or an half difference, wherein the longeſt day of the end of a Climate, exceedeth the longeſt day of the begining of a Climate.

A Parrallel ſpace, is ſaid to be that, which the middle Parrallel of a Climate comprehendeth, with the begining, or end of a Climate.

Propoſition IX.

If more places of the Earth be taken from the Æquator, *towards the* Pole, *whoſe diſtance from the* Æquator *equally augmenteth, from one degree, to* 10, 20, 30, 40 *degrees. The longeſt days in theſe places ſhall not be equally greater, or not equally augment; but they ſhall more augment in places more remote, and where the place is more near to the* Pole.

Touching the length of daies of Places taken from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole*.

To ſhew the Verity of this *Propoſition* by the *Globe*, let places be taken remote from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole* by an equal encreaſe of diſtance, *viz.* for conveniency, Parallels of 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60 *degrees* of *Latitude*. For theſe Parallels in the *Globe*, let the *Pole* be Elevated to the *Latitude* of 10 *degrees*, and the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* being brought to the *Oriental Horizon*, and that being noted; let the point of the *Tropick* be alſo noted, which then is in the *Occidental Horizon*. For the *Arch* of the *Tropick* then being above the *Horizon*, ſheweth the ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon* of the place 10 *degrees* of *Latitude*. The hours of this his ſtay may alſo be known by the *Index* and *Horary Circle*.

Then let the *Pole* be Elevated according to the *Latitude* of the ſecond place 20 *degrees*, and the firſt *degree* of *Cancer*, being again brought to the *Oriental Horizon*, let the point of the *Tropick* be noted in the *Occidental*: for the *Arch* above the *Horizon* will again note the ſtay, which alſo may be known by the *Index*, and the *Circle* in the Hours.

The

The ſame may be uſed with places whoſe *Latitude* is 40, 50, 60, 70 *degrees*, and the like; which being done, let the *Diurnal* hours of the *Suns* ſtay above the the *Horizon*, or the *Arch* of the *Tropick* be compared, and it will be manifeſt, that the quantity of the longeſt day doth much more increaſe in places more remote, than in the places more adjacent to the *Æquator*, and therefore the encreaſe of the longeſt day doth more augment, than the encreaſe of the diſtance of the places from the *Æquator*.

Note, what hath been ſaid, and ſhewed concerning the longeſt day, that is true of all the daies of one half of the year, and is demonſtrated after the ſame manner, if inſtead of the Tropick of *Cancer*, the Parallel of the place be taken. And therefore although Generals muſt be delivered generally, yet becauſe the Doctrine of Climates eſpecially requireth the Explication of the increaſe of the longeſt day, therefore we do not obſerve in this Doctrine that Law, κυβὸς στρῶσιν.

Propoſition X.

If ſo many places or Parallels are ſo taken between the Æquator *and the* Pole, *that the longeſt day of one place, exceedeth the longeſt day of the Vicine place,* (*which is more nigh the* Æquator) *every where equal in exceſs, or that the longeſt day equally may encreaſe, theſe Parallels ſhall not equally be diſtant one from another,* (viz. *every vicine Couple*) *but theſe which are more remote from the* Æquator, *ſhall have a leſs diſtance than thoſe more near the* Æquator. Of Parallels between the *Æquator* and the *Pole*.

The truth of this *Propoſition* is ſhewed from the precedent, for if theſe Parallels ſhould be equally diſtant from one another, *viz.* every two Vicine, the quantity of the longeſt day in theſe Parallels would not Augment by an equal encreaſe, as we have here ſhewed. And it is now laid down that the places or Parallels ſo taken equally encreaſe, that the longeſt day may equally increaſe in them; wherefore every two Vicine or near Parallels, ſhall not ſo equally be diſtant one from another, but many Parallels being taken from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole*, on this condition, that the longeſt day may equally encreaſe. Theſe Parallels ſhall not be equally diſtant from one another, but the diſtance of the third from the ſecond, ſhall be leſſer than the ſecond from the firſt, that of the fourth leſs from the third, that of the fifth leſſer from the fourth, and ſo forwards.

Corollary, and becauſe that many of the Climates are ſo taken, that the longeſt day in the final Parallel of the Climate, exceedeth the longeſt day of the begining at the Climate by half an hour; it followeth from this *Propoſition*, that the Climates more remote from the *Æquator*, are leſs broad, or more narrow, then theſe more near the *Æquator*; and therefore the Latitude, and Magnitude of the Climates, decreaſeth towards the *Pole*. Hence it cometh to paſs, ſeeing that the Climates at length would become very narrow towards the *Pole*, if that the ſame exceſs ſhould be kept, *viz.* the exceſs of half an hour, ſo that *Geographers* define the bounds of the Northern Climates not by half an hour, but firſt by whole hours, and then by whole daies.

Propoſition XI.

The number of the hours of the longeſt day being given in any place or Parallel of the Earth, to find the Latitude of the place, or Elevation of the Pole *of this Parallel, and to exhibit the Parallel it ſelf in the* Globe; *or to exhibit thoſe places where the longeſt day is ſo great.*

For the finding the Latitude of a place, &c. The longeſt day in all Northern places, is when the *Sun* is in the firſt Degree of *Cancr.*

Let the place of the *Sun* of the longeſt day, be brought to the *Meridian*. Let the *Index* be brought to the 12*th.* hour of the *Horary Cycle*: let the Globe be turned, until the *Index* ſhew that hour of the *Cycle*, from which the given number of the longeſt day is denominated, and then let the point of the Tropick in the *Meridian* be noted. Then let the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* be brought to the Oriental *Horizon*, and the *Meridian* in the *Crena*, be ſo moved to the Pole, Elevated or depreſſed, until the other noted point of the Tropick be in the Occidental *Horizon*; but ſo that the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* be yet in the Eaſt: which being done, number the Degrees of the Elevation of the Pole. For that is the ſought for Elevation, or Latitude of the Parallel, which you ſhall find in the very Globe it ſelf, if you number ſo many Degrees in the *Meridian* from the *Æquator* towards the Pole, and a *Chalk* being applyed, you may turn round the Globe to the term of the Numeration. For the deſcribed Parallel is that which is ſought. The Probation of the Method is eaſie.

Propoſition XII.

The number of ſome days being given, to find out the Latitude of the places, or Parallels, and to exhibit the place of the Frigid Zone *on the Earth, when the* Sun *for ſo many days ſetteth not, and for ſo many more ariſeth not.*

Further concerning the Latitudes of places.

Let the number of the daies be divided in half, and let ſo many Degrees be numbred in the *Ecliptick* from the firſt Degree of *Cancer*, as that divided or half number is, or as many Unites as this hath, (the Numeration may be made from both parts of this begining.) Let the term be be noted with *Chalk*, if the daies be more than thirty; the number of the Degrees muſt be taken leſſer than an Unite. Then let this noted point be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the Degrees interrupted between that and the Pole be numbred. For theſe are the ſought for Elevation of the Pole, or Latitude of the places, wherein ſo many daies as are given, the *Sun* ſetteth not, and in ſo many daies riſeth not. You ſhall find the very places and Parallels in the Globe, if that you number the found out Latitude from the *Æquator*, towards the Pole in the *Meridian*, and deſign the Parallel by *Chaulk* applyed to the Term. For this is that ſought for, and it containeth all the places ſought for.

For the Demonſtration of this Solution, let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the places found out, and it will be manifeſt, that the noted Degrees of the *Ecliptick* about the firſt Degree of *Cancer* ſet not beneath the *Horizon*, but remain above it. The *Sun* therefore paſſing over theſe points of the *Ecliptick*, ſetteth not: now he paſſeth through theſe points in ſo many days, as are given, as is apparent by the connſtruction. After the ſame manner we ſhall ſhew the truth of this Solution concernig the daies, in which the *Sun* doth not ariſe at all in the places Parallel found.

Corollary,

Corollary, It is eaſie therefore to find the Elevation of the *Pole* of thoſe places, or *Climates*, which lie in the *Frigid Zone*, where the longeſt day encreaſeth not by hours, but by a number of whole daies.

Propoſition XIII.

To frame or compoſe a Table of the Climates.

This is called a *Table* of *Climates*, in which at the beginning, middle and end of every *Climate*, the Elevation of the *Pole*, or Latitude of the Parallel, and the very quantity of the longeſt day is found noted, as alſo the interval of the *Climates*, or diſtance of the Parallels. Of the making a Table of the Climates.

The *Conſtruction* is eaſie, for from the order of the *Climates*, the quantity for the longeſt day for the beginning, middle, or end of every *Climate* is found, by adding $\frac{1}{4}$ of an hour, to twelve hours by a continual Succeſſion.

Then from the quantity of the longeſt day of every Parallel, is found out the Elevation or Latitude of the *Pole* of every one of them, according to the XI. *Propoſition*.

Laſtly, you have the interval, or Latitude of the *Climates*, if you take the Latitude of the beginning Parallel, from the Latitude of the ending Parallel. All theſe being noted in the *Table*, we ſhall have a Table of the *Climates*, which I have hereunto annexed.

A Table of the Climates and Parallels.

Climates.	*Parallels.*	*Longeſt days.*		*Elevation of the Pole.*		*The Interval.*	
		hours.	*min.*	*deg.*	*min.*		
The	The begin-	12	0	0	0		
firſt.	ing, middle,	12	15	4	15	0	1
	end,&begin-	12	30	8	25	8	25
The	ing of the 2.	12	45	12	30		
ſecond.	The middle.	13	0	16	25	8	
The	the end.	13	15	20	15		
third.	The middle,	13	30	23	50	7	25
The	the end.	13	45	27	40		
fourth.	The middle,	14	0	30	20	6	30
The	the end.	14	15	33	40		
fifth.	The middle,	14	30	36	28	6	8
The	the end.	14	45	39	2		
ſixth.	The middle,	15	0	41	22	4	52
The	the end.	15	15	43	32		
ſeventh.	The middle,	15	30	45	29	4	7
The	the end.	15	45	47	20		
eighth.	The middle,	16	0	49	1	3	31
The	the end.	16	15	50	33		
ninth.	The middle,	16	30	51	58	2	7
The	the end.	16	45	53	17		
tenth.	The middle,	17	0	54	27	2	49
The	the end.	17	15	55	34		
eleventh.	The middle,	17	30	56	37	2	10
The	the end.	17	45	57	32		
twelfth.	The middle,	18	0	58	29		
The thir-	the end.	18	15	59	14		
teenth.	The middle,	18	30	59	58		
The four-	the end.	18	45	60	40		
teenth.	The middle,	19	0	61	18		
The fif-	the end.	19	15	61	55		
teenth.	The middle,	19	30	62	25		
The ſix-	the end.	19	45	62	54		
teenth.	The middle,	20	0	63	22		
The ſe-	the end.	20	15	64	40		
venteenth	The middle,	20	30	64	6		
The eigh-	the end.	20	45	64	30		
teenth.	The middle,	21	0	65	49		
The nine-	the end.	21	15	65	6		
teenth.	The middle,	21	30	65	21		
The twen-	the end.	21	45	65	35		
tieth.	The middle,	22	0	65	47		
The	the end.	22	15	66	57		
21*ſt.*	The middle,	22	30	66	6		
The	the end.	22	45	66	14		
22*d.*	The middle,	23	0	66	20		
The	the end.	23	15	66	25		
23*d.*	The middle,	23	30	66	28		
The	the end.	23	45	66	30		
24*th.*	The middle,	24	0	66	31		
	the end.						

The

The *Climates* were wont to be extended no further, becauſe that in the following places the Longeſt day doth not increaſe by hours, but by whole Days, or Diurnal revolutions; and it is loſt labour to compute them. Notwithſtanding the following *Canon* will ſhew the Elevation of the *Pole*, or Latitude of the Places, where the Longeſt days increaſe by whole Months.

Months,	1	2	3	4	5	6
The Latitude of the places	*deg. min.* 67 20	*deg. min.* 69 30	*deg. min.* 73 20	*deg. min.* 78 20	*deg. min.* 84 0	*deg. min.* 90 0

Propoſition XIV.

To explain the method of other Geographers *in reckoning of the* Climates, *and making the Table of the* Climates.

The Ancient *Geographers*, eſpecially the *Grecians*, who ſuppoſed only a ſmall portion of the Earth to be inhabited, becauſe that as well the places Northernly, as thoſe of the *Torrid Zone*, they denied, as impoſſible to be inhabited; therefore they divided only that portion of the Earth, which they knew, into *Climates*, and ſo only numbred ſeven *Climates* from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole Artick*, and named them from ſome noted place, through which the Parallel of the *Climates* paſſed; *viz.* The diviſion of the Earth into Climates, by the Ancient *Geographers*.

The firſt *Climate* they called, the Climate through *Meroe*, (which is an Iſland and City in *Africa*, encompaſſed by the *Nile*.)

The ſecond, through *Syene*, a City of *Ægypt*.

The third, through *Alexandria* in *Ægypt*.

The fourth, through the Iſland of *Rhodes*;

The fifth, through the *Helleſpont*. Others through *Rome*.

The ſixth, through *Boryſthenes*, a famous River of the *European Sarmatia*.

The ſeventh, through the *Riphæan* Mountains of *Sarmatia*.

The Ancients numbred not the other *Climates* from the other ſide of the *Æquator* towards the South, becauſe all thoſe places were unknown to them; and many thought, that the Sea poſſeſſed all the *ſuperficies* of the Earth. Which, ſeeing it ſeemed ſomewhat improbable to the latter, theſe alſo numbred the *Climates* from the other ſide of the *Æquator*: and they named them, not from any noted places, (for they had no knowledge of any,) but by the ſame appellations with thoſe of the Northern, only prepoſing the Prepoſition ἀντὶ, as the Climate ἀντὶ τὸ Μερόης; as if you ſhould ſay, the Climate oppoſite to the Climate through *Meroe* or *Syene*, &c.

But when through progreſs of time, they diſcovered many parts of the Earth lying towards the *South Pole* to be inhabited, many more Climates were numbred and conſtituted. Some named the eighth Clime from the *Palus Mæotis*; the ninth, from the *Baltick Sea*; the tenth, the eleventh, and the reſt, from other places. Which denominations, although not neceſſary for the conſtruction of a Table, yet they may be added unto our Table in thoſe *Areæ*, where we have placed the number of the Climates: for ſo the Climates will ſtick cloſer in our memory, as alſo the Places in every Climate; and we may be able to make a better compariſon between the difference of Cold and Heat. But this is better to leave to the Induſtry of the Reader, and to thoſe that are Studious, than to add it to it, that ſo we may afford them a greater occaſion of contemplating the *Terreſtrial Globe*; and by this means may more eaſily commit them to Memory. Other Climates added by the Ancients.

Where the Ancients began the Climates.

You must also take notice, that the Ancients did not begin the Numeration of the Climates from the *Æquator* it self, as our Table doth, but from the Place or Parallel, where the Longest day consisteth of $12\frac{1}{4}$ hours; and therefore their first Climate is the second in our Table, their second our third, and so on: for they supposed those places, which we ascribe to the first Climate, could not possibly be inhabited by men, by reason of the excessive heat of the *Sun*, that therefore they judged it not meet to reckon those places; but seeing that Experience hath demonstrated the contrary, we would observe their Mode of naming and constituting of those Climates.

The first Climate of 9 degrees of Latitude.

Ptolomy beginneth the first Climate from the Parallel, where the Longest day is $12\frac{1}{4}$ hours; or where the Latitude or distance from the *Æquator*, is four *degrees* 15 *minutes*.

The matter is of no great concernment; yet it is better to begin from the *Æquator*, that all the places may lie in some Climate.

Proposition XV.

To shew the use of the Table of the Climates.

1. The *Latitude* of some place, or Elevation of the *Pole*, being given, to know the quantity of the Longest day in that place, and the Climate in which it lieth.

Let the given Elevation of the *Pole* be sought in the Table, and on the opposite Region we shall find both the quantity of the Longest day, as also the Climate and the Parallel. If that the given Elevation cannot be found in the Table, then take that Elevation which is less near, or the like, which is found in the Table.

From the Longitude of the Longest day of any place, to know the Latude of the place, and the Parallel and Climate.

2. The *Longitude* of the Longest day of any place being given, which any person hath observed, or received by relation, to know from thence the *Latitude* of that place, the *Parallel*, and the *Climate* in which that place lieth.

Enter the Table with the *Latitude* given, and you shall see on the opposite Region both the Latitude and the Place demanded; as also the Climate and Parallel.

3. A Climate being given, to determine the *Longitude* of the Longest day, and the Elevation of the *Pole*.

This is facil from the very sight of the Table.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the Light, Heat, Cold, Rains, in the diverſe parts of the Earth *or* Zones, *and other properties of the* Zones.

Propoſition I.

Theſe Cauſes are efficacious to generate and procure Light, Heat, Cold, and Rain, with other Meteors in the places of the Earth, and the vicine Air.

1. *THe more, or leſs, or no obliquity of the Rays of the* Sun *coming to, or emitted on any place.* For the Rays falling perpendicular on any place cauſe great heat, and the other Rays ſliding obliquely, have for that very reaſon a leſs power of heating, by how much the obliquity of them is the greater; that is, by how much the more they decline from the perpendicular Ray. Of the cauſes of Heat.

2. *The diurnal ſtay of the Sun above the* Horizon *of the place.* For the ſame heat maketh more hot, and changeth the Air in a longer time, than in a ſhorter.

3. *The depreſſion of the Sun beneath the* Horizon, *being more or leſs in the Night ſeaſon.* For this difference of depreſſion cauſeth, that either more or leſs Light is perceived in the Air; alſo more or leſs Heat, Rain, thick Clouds. Hitherto belongeth the Twilight.

4. *The more or leſs Elevation of the* Moon *above the Horizon, the more or leſs depreſſion of the ſame beneath the Horizon; the more or leſs Diurnal ſtay of the ſame above the Horizon.* The Cauſes are the ſame with thoſe alledged in the three foregoing Paragraphs.

5. *The ſame may be ſaid of* fixed Stars, *eſpecially of thoſe more noted ones, and of the five other Planets*, Saturn, Jupiter, Mars, Venus *and* Mercury. For they generate ſome light and heat in the Air, although it be but little, and change the Air divers ways, and raiſe Vapours, if that we may credit *Aſtronomers.* The Planets and fixed Stars, raiſe Vapours, &c. in the Air.

6. *The propriety or ſpecies of the* Earth *of every place.* For where the Earth is more *ſtony* and *rocky*, there for the moſt part it is more Cold, than where it is *ſulphureous* and *fat*; and here again it is more fertil. Where there is much *Sand*, and no *Rivers*, there is greater Heat.

7. *Lakes, or the Sea adjacent.* From thence alſo Fumes and Miſts are raiſed more moiſt and frequent in the Air; and the Rays are leſs powerfully reflected from the *Sea*, than from the *Earth.* Fumes and Miſts proceed from Lakes.

8. *The ſcituation of Places.* For the *Sun* acteth otherwiſe on Mountains and Mountainous places, than on Valleys and Plains. Moreover *Mountains* hinder the free acceſs of the Rays of the *Sun* to the ſubject places; for to them the Vapours of the Air are in ſome ſort attracted; whence the *Mountains* change the ſeaſons of the adjacent places, as Heat, Rain, and the like. For theſe would be otherwiſe in the Subject places, if that the *Mountains* were abſent. See Chap. 20.

9. *The* Winds *eſpecially, the general.* So the *Eteſian winds* temperate and allay the *Canicular heat.* A general Wind in the *Torrid Zone*, eſpecially the *Subſolan winds* in *Braſilia*, render the Heat temperate; when in *Africa*, which is Occidental, the Heat is vehement, becauſe theſe places feel not ſo general a Wind. The *Northern winds* are cold and dry; the *Southern*, warm and moiſt in our places. The Winds cauſe difference in the weather.

10. Clouds, Rain *and* Fogs, *take away and diminiſh* light *and* heat. I ſuppoſe that there are not many cauſes of this variety in *light* and *heat*, &c. which is obſerved in divers places of the Earth, or alſo in the ſame places; but yet in a different time or ſeaſon.

Propoſition II.

How are the Seaſons of the year, Spring, Summer, Autumn *and* Winter, *to be defined?*

The four Seaſons of the Year.

Although in Sciences we ought not to contend and diſpute concerning Definitions; yet becauſe certain *Homonymes* or Likeneſſes do here occur, without the Explication of which there will ariſe much confuſion in the following Doctrine: therefore I will ſo propoſe this Queſtion, that you may the more cautiouſly avoid this *Homonyme*, that they may not be deceived and intangled by the ſame.

According to *Aſtronomers* and *Aſtrologers.*

The Queſtion comprehendeth two difficulties: firſt, *Whether theſe Seaſons ought to be defined from the entrance of the Sun, and his ſtay in certain ſigns of the* Ecliptick *and* Zodiack? For ſo *Aſtronomers* and *Aſtrologers* commonly do, ſaying, that that is the *Spring*, whilſt the Sun moveth from the firſt degree of *Aries* to the firſt of *Cancer:* that is *Summer*, whilſt the Sun moveth from the firſt of *Cancer* to the firſt of *Libra:* that is *Autumn*, whilſt the Sun moveth from the firſt of *Libra* to the firſt of *Capricorn:* and that is *Winter*, whilſt the Sun moveth from the firſt of *Capricorn* to the firſt degree of *Aries*. Now it is manifeſt, that theſe Definitions are not general and agreeable to all places, becauſe they are only of force in the Northern places (ſcituated from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole Artick*,) and not in the Southern: ſo that for theſe Definitions, the ſame perſons bring Definitions contrary to the former; ſaying, that in theſe places, the *Spring* beginneth from the firſt degree of *Libra*, proceeding unto the firſt of *Capricorn:* the *Summer*, from the firſt of *Capricorn* to the firſt of *Aries:* the *Autumn*, from the firſt of *Aries* to the firſt of *Cancer:* and the *Winter*, from the firſt of *Cancer* to the firſt of *Libra*.

But from thence it would follow, that thoſe Seaſons cannot poſſibly be defined; which is falſe; and Generals ought to be defined by Generals. Secondly, Definitions ſo made, cannot have place in the places of the *Torrid Zone*; for when the Sun paſſeth through the *Vertex* of thoſe places, then every one will then confeſs, that there ought to be *Summer*, except ſome other cauſe obſtructed, in reſpect of the Celeſtial cauſe: and ſo in places ſcituated in the *Æquator*, the Spring or Summer ought not to be in the entrance of the Sun into the firſt degree of *Aries*, or *Libra*; but rather the Summer, becauſe then he paſſeth through the *Vertex* of thoſe places, and cauſeth great heat; except ſome other cauſe hinders. Neither can the Summer be transferred unto the firſt degree of *Cancer*, or *Capricorn*. The ſame alſo holdeth, concerning places ſcituated between the *Æquator* and the *Tropicks*; becauſe the Sun paſſeth through their Vertex, before that he draweth near to the firſt degree of *Cancer*, or *Capricorn*, and therefore firſt cauſeth the Summer there. For we muſt know, that although Definitions may be free, yet ſeeing that by the common notions of all Nations, they define the Summer by Heat, and the Winter by Cold, or at leaſt, by a leſſer degree of Heat; and ſo the Definitions ought to be made, that they may render as little as may be from theſe Notions, and in no ſort be contrary to them.

The ſame difficulty is, concerning the Spring and Autum of the places of the *Torrid Zone*; yea, they do not ſeem to have place here, eſpecially in places which lye in the *Æquator*.

The

The ſecond difficulty, for which this Queſtion is propoſed, is this, *Whether the Seaſons are to be defined from the very degree of heat and cold*, viz. the Spring, Summer, Autumn *and* Winter; *or from the acceſs or receſs of the Sun?* For the common notion of the Men of *Europe*, which they form concerning thoſe Seaſons, or in which they do conceive them, comprehendeth both, although they have more reſpect to *heat* than *cold:* But *Aſtronomers* are more attentive to the *acceſs* and *receſs*, or entrance of the *Sun* into certain Signs of the *Zodiack*, as we have ſaid before. Moreover it is obſerved in many places of the *Torrid Zone*, that thoſe Seaſons anſwer not the acceſs and receſs of the *Sun*; but that contrary to the Celeſtial motion of the *Sun*, they are tried by a Winter (raging, not with *cold*, but with *ſtorms* and *rains*,) when they ſhould have Summer, by reaſon of the vicinity of the *Sun*; and on the contrary, they have Summer when the *Sun* is remote, when they ſhould have Winter, (of which more anon,) and ſo thoſe People define not the *Summer* and *Winter*, by the acceſs of the *Sun*, and his entrance into certain Signs; but they define the *Summer* by its ſerenity, and the *Winter* by its rain and ſomewhat cold Air. And ſo it is impoſſible to make definitions of the *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn*, and *Winter*, as to be general and agreeable to all theſe places, according to the notions of the People. Of Heats and Cold.

Theſe difficulties thus conſidered, I thus think; Firſt, ſeeing that in many places of the *Torrid Zone*, (as we have ſpoken in the ſecond difficulty,) and alſo ſome certain places of the *Temperate Zones*, Heat and Cold happen contrary to the Celeſtial mode or motion of the *Sun*; yet notwithſtanding thoſe definitions cannot be made accurately by Heat and Cold: therefore theſe terms of the *Seaſons* muſt be diſtinguiſhed, as being *Homonymical*, ſo that we muſt make ſome *Seaſons* to be Celeſtial, and others Terreſtrial. I confeſs theſe terms to be leſs fit, but the want of better doth compel me to uſe them: ſo that it is termed the *Terreſtrial Summer* of any place, in which, in that place a great heat is cauſed every year by the *Sun*; but the *Celeſtial Summer* is termed that ſeaſon of the year, wherein a great heat ought to be in that place, by reaſon of the vicinity of the *Sun*. So that is termed the *Celeſtial Winter* of a place, in which ſeaſon Cold ſhould be in that place, by reaſon of the great diſtance of the *Sun*; but that ſeaſon is termed the *Terreſtrial Winter* of any place, in which there is very great Cold in that place every year. And although in many places the *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial Winter* happen in one ſeaſon of the year; as alſo the *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial Summer*; yet there are ſome places of the *Torrid Zone*, where they obſerve divers *ſeaſons* of the year, as we ſhall ſhew in the following diſcourſe. The ſame ſhould be ſaid of the *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial Spring*, and likewiſe of the *Autumn*.

Secondly, Seeing that there are few places, where the *Terreſtrial Summer* and *Winter* differ from the *Celeſtial* in the ſeaſon of the year; but in moſt places fall in with the ſame time of the year: therefore the *Celeſtial Summer* may be abſolutely termed the *Summer*; ſo alſo the *Winter*, the *Spring*, and the *Autumn*. But when we ſpeak of the Terreſtrial, we muſt add the word *Terreſtrial*; but where we ſimply ſay, the *Summer*, the *Winter*, *Spring* and *Autumn*, we are to underſtand the *Celeſtial ſeaſons* agreeing with the *Terreſtrial*.

But how ſhall we make diſtinct and accurate definitions of the *Summer* (*viz.* the *Celeſtial*) the *Winter*, the *Spring*, and the *Autumn*, ſo that they may be general for all places, and alſo take place in the *Torrid Zone*?

I know no other Mode, whereby ſuch definitions may be made, but only this:

1. The *Celeſtial Summer* of any place, is that ſeaſon of the year, whoſe beginning is that day in the *Meridies* of which, the *Sun* hath the leaſt diſtance from the *Vertex* of the place, (and that in the firſt ſeaſon, if the *Sun* become vertical to that place in two ſeaſons.) The end that day, in whoſe *Meridies* the Sun receiveth a moderate diſtance from the firſt *Vertex* of that place, or whether it be leſſer than that of all other days of the year. The definitions of the four Seaſons of the year.

2. That

2. That is termed the *Winter* of any place, the beginning of which is that day, in whoſe *Meridies* the Sun obtaineth the greateſt diſtance from the *Vertex* of that place. And the end that day, in whoſe *Meridies* the Sun acquireth a moderate diſtance from the *Vertex* of that place.

3. That ſeaſon is termed the *Spring* of any place, which falleth between the end of the *Winter*, and the beginning of the *Summer*: or whoſe beginning is that day, in the *Meridies*, of which the Sun hath acquired a moderate diſtance from the *Vertex*, when he hath come from a great diſtance. And the end is that day, where in whoſe *Meridies* the Sun hath acquired a very ſmall diſtance from the firſt *Vertex* of the place.

4. The *Autumn* of any place is termed that ſeaſon of the year, falling between the end of *Summer* and the beginning of *Winter*; or whoſe beginning is that day, in the *Meridies* of which the Sun receiveth a mean diſtance from the *Vertex* of the place coming from a leſſer. And the end that day, in the *Meridies* of which the Sun hath obtained a very great diſtance from the *Vertex* of the place.

According to theſe Definitions, *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn* and *Winter*, may be attributed to all places of the Earth. Neither is it eaſie to find out any other Mode of defining them, ſo that they may agree with all places. Now theſe Definitions being laid down, let us come to the matter it ſelf.

Propoſition III.

The Celeſtial Summer *of the places of the Earth, which lye between the* Tropick *of* Cancer *and the* Pole Artick, *beginneth with the entrance of the* Sun *into the firſt degree of* Cancer (viz. *the* 21 *of* June) *and ends with the entrance of the* Sun *into the firſt degree of* Libra (viz. *the* 21 *of* September,) *and that together at once in all thoſe places. So that* Autumn *is in thoſe places, the* Sun *going from the firſt of* Libra *unto the firſt of* Capricorn: *the* Winter, *whilſt the* Sun *moveth from the firſt of* Capricorn *to the firſt of* Aries: *the* Spring, *whilſt the* Sun *moveth from the firſt degree of* Aries *unto the firſt of* Cancer.

Further, concerning the Seaſons of the Year.

The truth of this Propoſition is eaſily ſhewed by the antecedent Definitions, and may be demonſtrated on the Globe, and in Univerſal Maps: For the Sun coming to the firſt degree of *Cancer*, hath the leaſt diſtance in the *Meridies* from the *Vertexes* of every one of the places of the *Northern*, *Temperate*, and *Frigid Zone*. After the ſame Mode, the Sun in the firſt degree of *Libra* hath a moderate diſtance from thoſe *Vertexes*: In the firſt of *Capricorn* a greater: In the firſt of *Aries* a moderate, and he aſcendeth to a more great, which is apparent, both from the declination of the Sun, and from the Globes and Maps. Therefore it is inferred, by the Definitions laid down before that the *Summer*, the *Winter*, and the *Spring* of thoſe places, begin and end in thoſe days we have ſpoken of.

The *Summer* of thoſe places of the Earth, which lye between the Tropick of *Capricorn* and the *Antartick Pole*; or thoſe of the Southern Zone, *temperate* and *frigid*, beginneth with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Capricorn* (*viz.* 21 of *December*,) and ends with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Aries*, (*viz.* the 21 of *March.*) The *Autumn* of thoſe places beginneth with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Aries*, and ends with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Cancer* (*viz.* the 21 of *June.*) With this the *Winter* of thoſe places beginneth, which endeth with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Libra* (*viz.* 21 of *September*:) And with this their *Spring* beginneth, and endeth with the entrance of the Sun into the firſt of *Capricorn* (*viz.* 21 of *December*,) where the *Summer* beginneth again.

Theſe

These are shewed after the same Mode, by the Definitions delivered, and by the Globe or Maps, by which we shewed the former, because in the first degree of *Capricorn* the Sun hath the least distance from the Vertexes of those places: In the first of *Aries*, a moderate, and descends to the less: In the first of *Cancer*, the greatest: In the first of *Libra*, a moderate, and ascendeth to a greater.

But the *Celestial Summer*, *Spring*, *Autumn*, and *Winter* of the places of the Earth, which lie in the *Torrid Zone*, between the Tropick of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*, do not begin on one and the same day of the year, but on divers days in every place of diverse Parallels, or of a diverse Latitude of this *Zone*. Now the places of the *Torrid Zone* are threefold, *viz.* the places of the *Æquator*; the Northern places of the *Torrid Zone*; and the Southern places of the *Torrid Zone*.

1. *The Places lying in the* Æquator *have this peculiar to them, that they enjoy two* Summers, *two* Winters, *two* Spring seasons, *and two* Autumns, *and that in every Year:* so that in half a year they have, or ought to have those four Seasons, according to our Definitions, and the Celestial Law. They have again the same four Seasons, from the 21 of *September* to the 21 of *March*, *viz.* one *Summer*, whilst the Sun moveth from the first degree of *Aries* to the second of *Taurus*, (from the 21 of *March* to the 22 of *April.*)

Half a year, is from the 21 of *March* to the 21 of *September.*

Autumn, whilst the Sun moveth from the second degree of *Taurus* to the first of *Cancer*, (from the 22 of *April* to the 21 of *June.*)

The motion of the Sun in the 12 Signs of the *Zodiack.*

Winter, whilst the Sun moveth from the first degree of *Cancer* to the second of *Leo*, (from the 21 of *June* to the 19 of *August.*)

The *Spring*, whilst the Sun moveth from the 28*th* degree of *Leo* to the first of *Libra*, (from the 19 of *August* to the 21 of *September.*)

The other *Summer*, whilst the Sun moveth from the first degree of *Libra* to the second of *Scorpio*, (from the 21 of *September* to the 22 of *October.*)

The other *Autumn*, whilst the Sun moveth from the second degree of *Scorpio* to the first of *Capricorn*, (from the 22 of *October* to the 21 of *December.*)

The other *Winter*, whilst the Sun moveth from the first degree of *Capricorn* to the 28*th* of *Aquarius*, (from the 21 of *December* to the 19 of *February.*)

The other *Spring* is, whilst the Sun doth move from the 28*th* degree of *Aquarius* to the first of *Aries*, (from the 19*th* of *February* to the 21 of *March.*)

All these are easily demonstrated from the Definitions laid down, because that the Sun in the first degree of *Aries*, and in the first of *Libra*, hath the less distance in the *Meridies*, from the Vertices of the places lying under the *Æquator*; for it hath none, because it is vertical unto them: therefore then do the *Summers* begin. Then in the second degree of *Taurus* and the second of *Scorpio*, (where the declination of the Sun is 11 *degrees* 45 *minutes*) it acquireth a mean distance, departing to a greater: then therefore the *Autumns* do begin. Moreover, when he is in the first degree of *Cancer* and the first of *Capricorn*, he hath a greater distance from the places of the *Æquator*: therefore then do the *Winters* begin. Finally, on the 28*th* degree of *Leo*, and the 28*th* of *Aquarius*, he receiveth a moderate distance from the places of the *Æquator* (10 *degrees* 45 *minutes*,) ascending towards the least: and therefore then doth the *Spring seasons* begin. These are understood more perspicuously from the *Globe*; therefore here these Seasons may be distinguished thus, according to the Celestial Laws, notwithstanding the Terrestrial Seasons are in many places of the *Æquator* otherwise observed, as we shall shew in the following Propositions.

2. *All the Places of the Earth, lying under the* Torrid Northern Zone, *have the end of the* Autumn *and the beginning of the* Winter *together, both at one time*, viz. *the* 21 *of* December; *but they have not together the beginning and end of the* Summer *and* Spring, *as also the* Autumn; *but different places have them in several days.*

For

Other Obſervations about the beginning of the Seaſons.

For the end of the *Autumn*, and the beginning of the *Winter* in thoſe places, is, when the *Sun* obtaineth the greateſt diſtance that poſſibly he can from the *Vertex* of thoſe places, as it is laid down in the Definitions. And it is true concerning all the places of the *Torrid Northern Zone*, that the *Sun* entring into the firſt degree of *Capricorn* acquireth the greateſt diſtance in the *Meridies* from the *Vertex* of thoſe places, becauſe that in all the other days he is more near to thoſe places. Therefore the *Sun* being entred into the firſt degree of *Capricorn*, the beginning of the *Winter* happeneth to all thoſe places; and alſo the end of *Autumn*, which is the firſt part of this Propoſition.

The other part is alſo eaſily proved; for if theſe places be of a diverſe *Latitude*, then the *Sun* is not vertical in the *Meridies* to thoſe places in the ſame days, but in diverſe: for then is the beginning of the *Summer* of any place of this *Torrid Zone*, when the *Sun* by his aſcent from the firſt of *Capricorn* cometh to that degree of the *Northern Ecliptick*, that he is vertical to that place. So that in divers days the beginning of *Summer* may be in thoſe divers places; yet in all thoſe places its beginning falleth between the 21 of *March*, and the 21 of *June*. The *Summer* ſhall alſo end in different days, and the *Autumn* begin, becauſe the *Sun* in divers days cometh to his mean diſtance, (or to the points of the *Ecliptick*, which have a moderate diſtance from thoſe places,) becauſe theſe points are differently ſeated between the firſt of *Libra* and the firſt of *Capricorn:* notwitſtanding this beginning falleth out between the 21 of *September* and the 21 of *December*. After the ſame Mode, in divers days the *Winter* ſhall have an end, and the *Spring* begin, becauſe the points of the *Ecliptick* again of a moderate diſtance, are divers from the Vertices of thoſe places. Now the *Sun* touching them cauſeth the beginning of the *Spring*, which yet happens in all between the 21 of *December* and the 21 of *March*.

3. *All the places of the Earth ſcituated in the* Torrid Southern Zone, *have alſo the end of the* Autumn, *and the beginning of the* Winter, *together at one time*, viz. *the* 21 *of* June: *but they have not the beginning and end of the* Spring, *as alſo the beginning of the* Autumn, *together; but divers places have it in different days; yet ſo, that the beginning of the* Summer *of all thoſe places, doth fall between the* 21 *of* September, *and the* 21 *of* December: *The beginning of* Autumn, *and the end of* Summer, *between the* 21 *of* March *and the* 21 *of* June: *the beginning of the* Spring, *and the end of* Winter, *between the* 21 *of* June *and the* 21 *of* September.

The parts of this Propoſition are proved after the ſame manner as the former: For on the 21 of *June* the Sun is in the firſt degree of *Cancer*, and therefore hath the greateſt diſtance that is poſſible from the places of the *Auſtrial Torrid Zone*. Then therefore all of them ſhall have the beginning of *Winter*; but the beginning of *Summer*, the *Spring*, and *Autumn*, ſhall happen on divers days, becauſe the *Sun* in ſundry points of the *Ecliptick* becometh vertical unto divers places, and acquireth alſo a moderate diſtance from thoſe places, in many places.

4. *Thoſe Places of the Earth in the* Torrid Zone *have ſomething peculiar, which lye between the* Æquator, *and the Eighth degree of* Latitude, *as well towards the North, as South: For the* Sun *by his proper Motion, or by his acceſs or receſs, make two* Summers *in them*, *two* Springs; *but yet but one* Autumn, *and one* Winter, *and that by a confuſed kind of order*, viz. *this*, *the* Spring, *the* Summer, *the* Spring; *the* Summer *again*, *then* Autumn, *and then* Winter.

The places in the Torrid Zone have ſomething peculiar to them, which lye between the Æquator and the 8th degree of Latitude.

The cauſe of this Paradox is, becauſe the *Sun* receding from the Vertices of thoſe places, which lye between the *Æquator* and the 8*th* degree of the *Boreal* or *Northern Latitude* (where it maketh the beginning of the firſt *Summer*,) and going forwards towards the beginning of *Cancer*, it acquireth here a a moderate diſtance; when it returneth from the Vertices towards thoſe Vertices, it ſhall not make *Autumn* after that firſt *Summer*, but another *Spring*, ſeeing that it made the firſt before it began the firſt *Summer*; where it obtaineth a mean diſtance between the firſt of *Capricorn*, and the firſt of *Aries*.

For

For Example, let us take a place which is four *degrees* from the *Æquator*; becauſe therefore alſo the *Sun* in the tenth *degree* of *Aries* declineth, and is diſtant from the *Æquator* four *degrees*; therefore he being in the tenth of *Aries*, ſhall cauſe the beginning of *Summer* in that place. Moreover, the greateſt *diſtance*, which this place can have in the *Meridies* is 27 *degrees*, 30 *minutes*, (*viz.* in the firſt *degree* of *Capricorn*, where his *declination* from the *Æquator* is 30 *minutes*, 23 *degrees*, to which let the *Northern diſtance* of the place from the *Æquator* 4 *degrees* be added) therefore ſeeing his meaneſt diſtance is 0 *degrees*, let 0 *degrees* be his middle diſtance 13 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*. Wherefore when the *Sun* ſhall be in the *points* of the *Ecliptick*, which are diſtant from the place taken, or the *Parallel* of the place, 13 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*. Then the *Sun* ſhall make either *Spring* or *Autumn* in that place; the *Spring*, if the *Sun* be moved from thoſe points towards the *Vertex* of the place; but *Autumn* if the *Sun* tend from that point to a remote diſtance. Now the *points* of the *Ecliptick*, which are diſtant from the place aſſumed 13 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*, are found to be four, to wit, the 25th *degree* of *Libra*, the 3d *degree* of *Gemini*, the 27th of *Cancer*, and the 5th of *Piſces*, which is proved from the *declination* of theſe *points*. Becauſe that therefore the *Sun* coming to the fifth *degree* of *Piſces* from the firſt of *Capricorn*, acquireth here a middle diſtance from the *Vertex* of the place aſſumed, and tendeth towards the place he ſhall then make, (*viz.* he being in the fifth *degree* of *Piſces*) the beginning of the *Spring* in that place; which *Spring* ſhall continue until the *Sun* doth come to the tenth of *Aries*, where he ſhall become *Vertical* to the place, and that ſhall be in the beginning of the *Summer*, when the *Sun* by his *motion* hath departed from the place, to the third of *Gemini*. Again, he ſhall have a moderate diſtance from the *Vertex* of the place in the *Meridies*, *viz.* 13 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*, and then ſhall that *Summer* have an end, and the *Spring* begin; not the *Autumn*, becauſe that the *Sun* doth not tend to the greateſt diſtance from the *Vertex*, from the third of *Gemini*, but returneth to the leaſt, *viz.* whilſt he moveth through *Cancer* and *Leo*, he cometh to the twentieth of *Virgo*: For then again he becometh *Vertical* to the place aſſumed, and makes the beginning of a new *Summer*, which continueth until the *Sun* cometh to the five and twentieth of *Libra*: For then again he obtaineth a middle diſtance, and tendeth to the point of the greateſt diſtance (*viz.* the firſt of *Capricorn*) therefore then he ſhall make the beginning of *Autumn*: and in the firſt of *Capricorn* the beginning of *Winter*. So then we have ſhewed how ſuch a place which lieth between the *Æquator* and the eighth *degree* of *Northern Latitude* in the *Torrid Zone* may have two *Summers*, two *Springs*, one *Autumn*, and one *Winter*, which by the ſame Mode may be ſhewn concerning the places lying between eight *degrees* of *Latitude* from the other ſide of the *Æquator*.

But in places ſcituate eight *degrees* beyond towards the *Tropicks*, this holdeth not, becauſe thoſe points of the firſt *degree* of *Cancer*, or the firſt of *Capricorn*, have not a middle diſtance from them, but leſſer than a middle: For the greateſt diſtance of the *Sun* from the place of the ninth *degree* of *Latitude* (that is poſſible) is 32 *degrees*, 30 *minutes*. Therefore the middle is 16 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*; and therefore if the place be in the ninth *degree* of *Northern Latitude*, the *Sun* being in the firſt of *Cancer*, ſhall have a leſs diſtance from it than the middle diſtance is; for that is only 14 *degrees*, 30 *minutes*, but this is 16 *degrees*: Therefore in that place the *Summer*, which beginneth with the firſt acceſs of the *Sun* to the *Vertex* (in the four and twentieth of *Aries*, the fifteenth of *April*) is not finiſhed before the *Tropick* of *Caner*, but ſhall be continued in the whole courſe of the *Sun* through *Taurus*, *Gemini*, *Cancer*, *Leo*, *Virgo*, and *Libra*, in the four and twentieth *degree* of which, *viz.* about the fifteenth of *October*, it endeth.

But here ſeem to ariſe two new difficulties:

1. That theſe *Months* muſt not be aſcribed to *Summer*, becauſe the *Sun* doth not recede by a direct courſe from the *Vertex*, but firſt he acceedeth to another diſtance again and again, whilſt he receedeth from the *Vertex* of the place to the *Tropick* of *Cancer*: but the *Summer* muſt be defined only by the time of his receſs or departing back. But I anſwer to this, that the *Summer* ought to be defined by a departure, but not by a departure to every diſtance, but by a receſs to a moderate or middle diſtance. Neither by this is a mixt acceſs excluded from a receſs, ſo that the receſs be not greater than a middle diſtance.

2. For the places lying between the *Æquator* and the eighth *degree* of *Latitude*, ſeeing that before the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* (or if the *Latitude* be Southernly, before the firſt of *Capricorn*) the *Sun* acquireth a moderate diſtance from thoſe places where we ſaid the end of the firſt *Summer* is, it appeareth not that we ſhould place the entrance of the *Spring*, becauſe the *Sun* is not directly moved from that point again towards the place, but firſt it more departs, *viz.* from the firſt of *Cancer*, and from thence it returneth to the place. But we muſt know that the departure is ſo ſmall, that we ought little to regard the ſame, becauſe it ſcarce maketh one or another *degree*, and that time of a greater receſs cannot be aſcribed to another ſeaſon, except we will feign ſome new fifth and ſixth Seaſon.

Alſo it may otherwiſe ſeem concerning theſe places to ſome one, *viz.* that an *intermedial Spring* ſhould not be placed between two *Summers*, but one continued *Summer*; and that time of an *intermedial Spring* ſhould be attributed to this *Summer*, making no account of it, that the *Sun* is removed to a middle diſtance from the place, ſeeing that he remaineth ſo near the place, and ſo little receedeth beyond his middle diſtance, that he can hardly diminiſh the *heat* of the *Air*, but by reaſon of his continuity rather augment at that time. I ſhall conteſt with none about this; but I think it more advantageous to inſiſt on the explained Method; but here is overmuch concerning this Subject.

Propoſition IV.

A place being given in the Torrid Zone, to find out the daies of the year, in which the Summer, Autumn, Spring, and the Winter, begin and end in that place.

The finding out of the days of the year in which the Seaſons begin and end in places of the *Torrid Zone.*

1. If the place be ſcituated in the *Æquator*, we have ſhewed in the preceeding *Theorem* of the *Propoſition*, in what *degrees* theſe *Seaſons* of the year begin and end, which are there double.

2. If the place be without the *Æquator*, and removed from it beyond the eighth *degree* of *Latitude* or *Diſtance*, let it be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the imminent *point* of the *Meridian* be noted with *Chalk*; then let the *Globe* be turned round until ſome point of the *Ecliptick*, ſeated between the firſt *degree* of *Aries* and the firſt of *Cancer*, come to the ſame point of the *Meridian* (if the place given be in the Northern *Torrid Zone*; but if in the Southern *Torrid Zone*, then the point ought to paſs between the firſt *degree* of *Libra* and the firſt of *Capricorn*) this ſhall be the *point*, which when the *Sun* entereth, he makes the beginning of the *Summer* in the propoſed place. Then let the intercepted *degrees* between the noted point of the *Meridian*, and the *Tropick* of *Capricorn* (of *Cancer* if the place given be South) be cut into two equal parts, and let the middle point in the *Meridian* be noted, and let the *Globe* be moved until the point of the *Ecliptick*, ſeated between the firſt *degree* of *Capricorn* and the firſt of *Aries* (between the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* and the firſt of *Libra*, if the place be Southern) paſs through the laſt noted point of the *Meridian*. Again, let it be moved until another *point* between the firſt *degree* of *Capricorn* and the firſt of *Libra* (the firſt of *Cancer*, and the firſt of

of *Aries*, if the place be Southern) pass through the same *point* of the *Meridian*: the first *point* will note the day for the entrance of the *Spring*, the latter for the beginning of *Autumn*. But the beginning of *Winter* is in the first of *Capricorn* if the place given be Northern, but in the first of *Cancer* if Southernly.

They may also be resolved by *Maps*, but most accurately from the *Tables* of *Declination*, *viz.* with the *Latitude* of the place enter the *Table* of the *Solary Declination*, in which seek that *Latitude*, to which you see the four days of the year apposed: from those take that which is between the 21 of *March* and the 21 of *June*, if the place given, or the *Latitude* of it given be *Northern*; but if it be *Southern*, take that day which happeneth between the 21 of *September* and the 21 of *December*, this day shall be the beginning of the *Summer*.

Then take away half of the given *Latitude* of the *plain* from 11 *degrees*, 45 *minutes*, and seek the remaining Number in the *Table* of the *Declination*, you shall see again opposite four days of the year, in two of which the *Sun* shall obtain a middle distance from the place given; if therefore the place given be *North*, take two of those four days, whereof one happeneth between the 21 of *December* and the 21 of *March*, (this shall be the entrance of the *Spring*) the other between the 21 of *September* and the 21 of *December*, this shall be the entrance of *Autumn*: But if the place given be *South*, from those four days you must take the day between the 21 of *June* and the 21 of *September* for the entrance of the *Spring*; and for the beginning of *Autumn* that which happeneth between the 21 of *March* and the 21 of *June*. The beginning of *Winter* shall be the 21 of *June*, if the place be *South*; but if *North*, the 21 of *December*.

3. If the place given be between the *Æquator* and the eighth *degree* of *Latitude*, it shall have two *Summers* and two *Spring seasons*, besides *Autumn* and *Winter*, except peradventure we will cast away that second *Spring* which is intermedial between the two *Summers*, as we said in the end of the preceeding *Proposition*, and attribute a continual *Summer* to that time; which if you do, we must act no otherwise with the given place than in the former *Mode*. If we will attribute two *Summers* and two *Springs* to it, as the *definitions* of *Summer* and *Spring* accurately observed do require, we shall first act by the first *Mode*, as in the former *Theorems*, *viz.* we shall find the entrance of *Summer* and *Winter*, and except the four days of moderate distance found in the *Table* of those four, those two which we advised to take in the former *Mode*, for the entrance of the *Spring* and *Autumn*, here again we shall take on the same conditions; but of the other two days, that only which is proximate to the day of the *Summer* shall be taken.

For this will shew the end of the *Summer*, and the beginning of the *second Spring*; but for the day of the *second Summer*, another day of the three remaining shall be taken in that *Area*, from which the beginning of the *first Summer* was taken, *viz.* that which is distant by an equal number of days from the 21 of *June*, and (the 21 of *Capricorn* if the place be South) the first day of the *Summer*: So the days shall be found in which the *Summer*, the *Spring*, *Autumn*, and the *Winter* do begin and end in the places of the *Torrid Zone*.

Propoſition V.

In the places in the temperate and frigid Zones, the four ſeaſons of the year are almoſt equal, or conſiſt of an equal number of days: But in the places of the Torrid Zone they are unequal: Neither are only the times of the divers ſeaſons unequal, but alſo the time of the ſeaſon in the divers places of the Zones is unequal.

The ſeaſons of the year in the places in the Temperate and Frigid Zone are equal.

1. For the places of the *temperate* and *frigid Zones*, what I have ſaid is eaſily demonſtrated: For ſeeing that the Sun in every time of thoſe four quarters of the Year runs through three *Signs*, therefore the times of the *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn*, and the *Winter* ſhall be equal, or of equal days, except ſome days, *viz.* five in which the *Summer*, and four in which the *Spring* of the *Northern places* exceed the *Autumn* and the *Winter*: but in the *Southern places* it is otherwiſe; for *Autumn* and *Winter* exceed the *Spring* and *Summer*, which as we have ſhewed before, proceedeth from the excentricity of the *Sun*.

2. In places lying under the *Æquator*, there are two *Summers* (as alſo other *Seaſons*) but both ſhort, as alſo both the *Springs*, *viz.* each *Summer* and each *Spring* hath only 32 days, which is 64 days; but the *Autumns* and *Winters* are longer, *viz.* 55 days, which is 110 days.

3. In the places of the *Torrid Zone*, by how much the leſs they are remote from the *Æquator*, by ſo much the more they have the longer *Summer*, the leſs *Winter*, and more or leſs moderate *Autumn* and *Spring*: for in places not remote above 10 *degrees* from the *Æquator* the *Summer* continueth ſix Months. Now the greatneſs of the *Summer*, *Autumn*, *Winter*, and *Spring*, is known by the preceeding *Propoſition*.

What hath hitherto been ſaid, is only to be underſtood concerning the *Celeſtial Seaſons*, that is, thoſe which depend on a *Celeſtial Cauſe*, or from the acceſs or receſs of the *Sun*: for from this alone cometh not *light*, *heat*, and *cold*, as we have ſaid in ſome places before; therefore we ſhall conſider the other cauſes in the following *Propoſitions*.

Propoſition VI.

Of the Motion of the Sun in places of the Torrid, Frigid, and Temperate Zones.

In places of the Torrid Zone, as the Sun by day is very near the Vertex, ſo on the contrary by night he is beneath the Horizon, and very much removed from the Vertex of thoſe places, ſo that thoſe places by night lye almoſt in the middle ſhadow of the Earth, neither can the Air poſſibly any wayes be warmed by the Suns rayes by frequent reflection.

In places of the Frigid Zone, as the Sun by day is not very nigh the Vertex, ſo by night he doth not profoundly remain beneath the Horizon; but for the greateſt part of the night doth ſo turn round beneath the Horizon, that many rayes from him by reflection do penetrate into the Air.

In places of the Temperate Zone, as the Sun by day cometh to the Vertex of thoſe places by a moderate Vicinity, ſo by night by an eaſie diſtance he is depreſſed beneath the Horizon, ſo that ſome rayes at leaſt are in the Air.

To ſhew this by the *Globe*, firſt let the *Pole* be elevated for ſome place ſituated in the *Torrid Zone*, or rather let the *Pole* be placed in the *Horizon* it ſelf, that the places of the *Æquator* may be in the *Vertex* of the *Horizon*, or that the *wooden Horizon* may become the *Horizon* of the places of the *Æquator*; then conſider the depreſſion of the *Parallels*, which the *Sun* deſcribeth

by

by his circumrotation, beneath the *Horizon*, and the truth of the member of this *Propoſition* will appear.

Then let the *Pole* be elevated for the places of the *Frigid Zone*, or let the *Poles* be placed in the *Vertex* of the *Horizon*, and the *Parallels* of the *Sun* beneath the *Horizon* from the firſt *degree* of *Libra* to the firſt of *Aries*, being conſidered, it will again be manifeſt that they are very little depreſſed below the *Horizon*. And ſo we have ſhewed the ſecond member or part of this *Propoſition*.

Laſtly, let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of any place ſcituated in the *Temperate Zone*, and the *depreſſion* of the *Parallels* beneath the *Horizon* again being conſidered, the third part of this *Propoſition* will be proved.

Propoſition VII.

A place being given in the Globe, and the day of the year, to find the Longitude of the Crepuſculum or Twilight in the place given at the day given.

That *time* is termed the *Longitude* of the *Twilight*, in which either before the riſing of the Sun, or after his ſetting, ſome *light* is diſcovered in the *Air*.

For the finding out of the quantity of this *time*, we muſt ſuppoſe that which is obſerved by *Aſtronomers* (as we have ſaid in the nineteenth Chapter) that the *morning twilight* beginneth for the moſt part, if the *Air* be ſerene, the *Sun* drawing nigh to the eighteenth *degree* of *depreſſion* beneath the *Horizon*, and the *evening* endeth when the *Sun* hath come to that *degree* of *depreſſion*. For the finding the Longitude of the Twilight by the Globe, of any place and day of the year.

Let therefore the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given, and let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*, being found from the day of the *year*, be ſought in the *Ecliptick* of the *Globe*, and let his oppoſite *point* be noted; then let the *Quadrant* be applied to the *Vertex*, and the *point* noted be found to the *Horizon*; the *Index* to the twelfth hour of the *Cycle*; then let the *Globe* be turned round until the noted *point* be elevated 18 *degrees* above the *Horizon*, which is known by the help of the *Quadrant*; for ſo ſhall the place of the *Sun* be depreſſed ſo many *degrees* beneath the *Horizon*; and the *Index* in the *Cycle* ſhall ſhew how many *hours*, or parts of an *hour*, the ſerenity of the *Air* being laid down, the *twilight* continueth that day in the place given. It is convenient by three examples to learn the uſe of this *Problem*, chooſing a place for one of the *Torrid Zone*, another of the *Temperate*, and a third of the *Frigid Zone*.

Propoſition VIII.

In places of the Torrid Zone the twilights are ſmall, very long in thoſe of the Frigid, and moderate in thoſe of the Temperate Zone.

For in places of the *Æquator*, and thoſe near, the *Crepuſculum*, according to the *Hypotheſis* laid down in the former *Propoſition*, is of about one hour, which yet experience teſtifieth is only half an hour, or little more, becauſe the more thick and groſs *Air* is not ſo high there, as is required to make the *twilight* to the 18 *degree* of *depreſſion*; both alſo becauſe the *Hypotheſis* of the 18 *degree* is to be taken concerning very ſmall *light*, with which the *twilight* beginneth, ſuch as yet is not accounted by the Vulgar for a *twilight*. Of the difference of the Twilights in the ſeveral Zones.

In the *Frigid Zone* the *twilights* continue for many days when the *Sun* remaineth beneath their *Horizon*.

In the *Temperate Zone* it continueth 3, 4, 5 and 6 hours, and in ſome places all night; and in the days of the *Summer*, according as the places are more or leſs nigh the *Frigid Zone*. All theſe are proved by the *Mode* propoſed in the precedent *Propoſition*.

Pro-

Propoſition IX.

A place being given in the Temperate or Frigid Zone, and another in the Torrid Zone, and moreover the day of the year being given, to find out the hour of the place of the Torrid Zone, in which hour the Sun may have the Altitude above the Horizon of that place (and ſo ſtrike that place with his rayes equally elevated) as great as it hath in the place of the Temperate Zone in the Meridies it ſelf.

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place of the *Temperate* or *Frigid Zone*, and let the place of the *Sun* found from the day given be brought to the *Meridian*, and the *Altitude* of it reckoned, for this is the *Altitude* of the *rayes* heating that place, and illuſtrating it in the *Meridies*.

Then let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given in the *Torrid Zone*; let the *Quadrant* be applied to the *Vertex*, and let the *degree* of *Altitude* before found out be noted in it; let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the *Meridian*, the *Index* to the twelfth hour of the *Cycle*, then let both the *Globe* and the *Quadrant* be moved till the place of the *Sun* agree with the noted *degree* of the *Quadrant*: for ſo the *Sun* ſhall have the ſame *Altitude* above the *Horizon* of this place, as it is in the *Meridies* of the former. The *Index* will ſhew the hour demanded in the *Cycle*; therefore this hour, and the rayes of the *Sun* illuſtrating and beating of the place and *Air* of the *Torrid Zone*, are as equally elevated over the *Horizon* of it, as the *rayes* in the *Meridies* of the former place; it thence followeth, that the ſame *heat* will be in the *Torrid Zone* at the hour found out, as in the place of the *Temperate Zone* in the *Meridies*, except other cauſes intercede, *viz.* firſt, that the *Sun* in the foregoing days hath introduced ſome one or other calid Conſtitution to the place, and the *Air* of the *Torrid Zone*; and not ſuch, and ſo great in the places of the *Temperate* or *Frigid Zone*. Then ſecondly, that the *Sun* ſtraitly aſcending towards the *Meridian* above the *Horizon* of the places of the *Torrid Zone*, ſendeth forth all his *rayes* to the place, as in one *plain*, and to one *plaga*, and therefore cauſeth greater *heat* than in the *Temperate* or *Frigid Zone*, where the *Sun* moveth obliquely from the *Horizon* to the *Meridian*, and ſends forth his *rayes* from one and another *plaga*: therefore the *rayes* are not contracted into a place ſo narrow, nor do they continually *heat*.

Some hinderances.

For *example*, let us ſeek in what hour of the day in places being under the very *Æquator*, on the day of the *Æquinoctials*, the *Sun* will have that *Altitude* as he hath at *Amſtelodame* on the *Meridies* of the ſame day.

Propoſition X.

How the cauſes of light, heat, and of the ſeaſons, which we have reckoned up in the firſt Propoſition of this Chapter, have themſelves in the Torrid Zone, and how to ſhew them.

Of the ſeaſons, light, and heat in the Torrid Zone, and how they are ſhewed.

Firſt, every day of the year aſcendeth directly above the *Horizon* of thoſe places (eſpecially of the *Æquator*) towards the *Meridian* and the *Vertex* of them; and therefore about the ninth hour of Forenoon, he beginneth to ejaculate to thoſe places *rayes* about 40 *degrees* declining from the perpendicular *rayes*, which rectitude of the *rayes*, or perpendicular of the *rayes*, augmenteth towards the *Meridies*, and again decreaſing, continueth to the fourth hour after the *Meridies* or Noonſtead, where the *Sun* departing towards the Occidental *Horizon*, beginneth to ſend forth his *rayes* more obliquely to thoſe places; therefore the greateſt *heat* in thoſe places ought to be from about the ninth hour before Noon, even to the third or fourth after Noon, if that this cauſe be only regarded: but yet becauſe the *Sun* now departs from the *Vertex* of thoſe places, and ſometimes approacheth nearer, therefore the

the *Winter* of every one of those places shall be, when the *Sun* goeth from the *points* of the *Ecliptick* much remote from those places; that is, from the first *degree* of *Cancer* or *Capricorn*, towards the *points* having a middle distance from the place assumed; the *Spring* when he goeth from a *point* of moderate distance towards the very *Vertex* of the *Pole*, or to the *point* of the *Ecliptick*, which is *Vertical* to the place, or to the *Parallel* of the place: the *Summer*, where the *Sun* goeth from this other point of middle distance to a point of greatest distance, that is the first *degree* of *Capricorn* or *Cancer*.

2. In the places of the *Æquator* it self, the *Sun* no day of the *year* remaineth above the *Horizon* more or less hours than twelve, and so many beneath the *Horizon*. In other places of the *Torrid Zone* one hour, or an hour and an half at the most (*viz.* in the extream places of this *Zone* about the *Tropicks* of *Cancer* and *Capricorn*) when the day is at the longest, the *Sun* remaineth above the *Horizon* twelve hours, and in the shortest day about eleven hours, and in the intermedial days that time of the stay of the *Sun* above and beneath the *Horizon* doth not much differ from twelve hours. And therefore this is the cause that the *nights* are not without *cold*, and the *heat* of the day continueth not long about the *eveningtide*.

3. In the *night time* the *Sun* is profoundly depressed beneath the *Horizon*, for that he illustrateth the *Air* with none of his *rayes*, nay not *reflex*. This is the cause that most dark *nights* are there, and the *cold* of the *night* is augmented, the *Air* is condensed, and contracteth it self, and being cold, it descends towards the *earth* by its own ponderosity. Moreover, in a very short time (about the space of half an hour) before the rising of the *Sun*, and after his setting, those places have the *light* and *heat* of the *Twilight*.

4 The *Moon* almost after the same manner as the *Sun* ascends directly from the *Horizon* towards the *Meridian* of those places, yet a little more obliquely, because it departeth from the *Ecliptick*, and therefore towards the *Torrid Zone* about five *degrees*; and it remaineth after the same manner as the *Sun* a little above twelve hours above the *Horizon*; and is depressed beneath it almost so many hours, and that profoundly, as we have spoken of the *Sun*. Therefore with her direct *rayes*, or those near to the perpendicular, she will augment the warmness of the *night*, especially when she is *Vertical* to any place, and diminish it by her recess: but by reason of her short stay above the *Horizon*, the effect of it is little discerned in any place, except when it is *Vertical* to it.

5. All the *Stars* arise, and set in places nigh the *Æquator* (but those *Stars* which are near the *Pole* in places more remote from the *Æquator* do not arise, and those are but very few) and therefore they can cause little *heat* and *light*; and that also insensible in the *Air*.

6. In many places of the *Torrid Zone*, as in *India* and its *Isles*, in the Tongue of *Africa*, and in *Mexico* the *earth* is *Sulphureous*, which sendeth forth more calid *vapours*, whence it communicateth a certain *heat* to the *Air*, and a peculiar property. In some places it is *sandy*, as in the North part of *Africa*, lying in the *Torrid Zone*, in part of *Lybia*, and the *Land* of the *Negroes*, in many places of *Arabia*, in *Peru*, and in the places between *Peru* and *Brazilia*: whence in these places a very great *heat* is raised by the *Sun*; because the *particles* of the *Sand* do very long retain the *heat* received from the *Sun*, and soon communicate the same to the vicine *Air*.

In other places the Rivers are many, and in those Sandy ones few; there are many in *Abyssine*, in *Guiney*, *Congo*, *India*, and in *Brazilia*; hence humid *vapours* are raised, which do very much blunt the force of the *Suns rayes*, and render his *heat* more tolerable.

7. The

7. The moſt places of the *Torrid Zone* have the *Sea* adjacent; as *India* and its *Iſles*, the Tongue of *Africa*, *Guiney*, *Brazilia*, *Peru*, *Mexico*; ſome places of the *Torrid Zone* are *Mediterranean*, as the more inward *Africa*, the *Regions* between *Peru* and *Brazilia*; whence it cometh to paſs, that in thoſe places the *heat* and *drought* is greater: and in ſome, or moſt of them, the *Air* is more moiſt, and leſs fervent then can be cauſed by the *Sun*, except other cauſes happen.

8. Moſt of the *Regions* of the *Torrid Zone*, ſeeing that they are almoſt encompaſſed by the *Sea*, have in the middle places more or leſſer ridges of exceeding high *Mountains*, as *India* and its *Iſles*, the Tongue of *Africa* and *Peru*. Theſe rows of *Mountains* do very much vary the *light*, *heat*, and *rayes* of thoſe places: ſomewhere they hinder the *Oriental rayes* of the *Sun*, otherwhere the *Occidental*. Moreover, the humid *vapours* condenſed in the *Air* are moved to the *Vertices* of theſe *Mountains*, as we have ſhewed in the twentieth Chapter, whence *rains* and *clouds* proceed, by which the *heat* and *light* of the *Sun* is very much obſtructed, and the *Celeſtial cauſe* of the *Seaſons* is diſturbed. There are few of the places of the *Torrid Zone* which want thoſe ridges, as the inward *Africa*, *Mexico*, and the like.

9. The effects of the *Winds* in the *Torrid Zone* are various and notable; for a general *wind* blowing from the ſide *Plagas* of the *Eaſt*, or from the *Eaſt* continually towards the *Weſt*, refrigerateth the *Maritim places* which regard the *Eaſt*, as *Brazilia*, the *Oriental Coaſt* of *Africa*; but not ſo to thoſe towards the *Weſt*; as *Guiney*, *Congo*, *Angola*, and the *Coaſts* of *Peru*: Some *winds* are appropriated, as the South in *Peru*; which *winds* diſpel *vapours* towards the *Plaga* in which they blow. Some are fixed *winds*, of which we have largely treated in the one and twentieth Chapter. Now theſe *winds* do very much diſturb the *Celeſtial cauſe* of the *Seaſons*, for they are almoſt as equally conſtant, and obſerve order, as the *motions* of the *Heaven* it ſelf. They bring down the *Air*, compel the *vapours* towards the tops of the *Mountains*, and by other Modes alter the *Seaſons*. Ten *Anniverſary rains* are in many places of the *Torrid Zone*, and take away the *Celeſtial cauſe*, ſeeing that they are as equally conſtant as the *motion* of the *Sun* it ſelf. For thoſe err, who ſuppoſe that this our *Sublunary Orb* obſerveth all with inconſtancy, and without order, and that the *Celeſtial* only have a conſtant *motion*.

Seeing that the cauſes hitherto ſpoken of are ſo various, to be able to cauſe the *heat*, and the *properties* of the *Seaſons*; and in one place ſome are from other cauſes; in another, others are of force, or concur in divers *Seaſons* of the year, or mutually impede one another; hence we diſcover, why the cauſe and condition of the *Seaſons* of the *Torrid Zone* is ſo various.

Propoſition XI.

How the Spring, Summer, Autumn, and Winter (Terreſtrial) do behave themſelves, and in what Months of the year they commence in the divers places of the Torrid Zone.

Of the beginning of the Seaſons in places in the Torrid Zone.

We have ſaid before, and eſpecially in the ſecond *Propoſition*, that the *Seaſons* in many places of the *Torrid Zone* are contrary to the *motion* of the *Sun*, *viz.* that it is *Summer* there when the *Sun* is moſt diſtant, and *Winter* when he is neareſt, yea *vertical* to the *Vertex*. Therefore we have diſtinguiſhed the *Seaſons* into *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial*. We have ſhewed heretofore, and that in the third and fourth *Propoſition*, how any place being given in that *Torrid Zone*, the *Months* of the year are to be found, in which the place ought to have *Summer*, *Spring*, *Autumn*, and *Winter*, if we have regard to the acceſs and receſs of the *Sun*; that is, we have taught to deſign the times of the *Celeſtial Seaſons*. But ſeeing that in many places of this *Zone* the forementioned *Seaſons* do not happen in thoſe *Months*, but in others, and that in divers places in a different time; therefore the times of the

Terreſtrial

Terreſtrial ſeaſons muſt be taken, not from the Heaven, or a certain method, but from the experience made in thoſe places, and as much as poſſible, the cauſe of every one of them, why they repugn the *Celeſtial cauſe*, muſt be explicated; *viz.* from thoſe 10 cauſes, which we have laid down in the firſt *Propoſition*: this therefore ought firſt to be known, that the *Winter* in the *Torrid Zone* doth rage with cold and froſt, but rather with raines, and is to be defined by a leſſer heat then that in the time of the *Summer*. Farther in many places of the *Torrid Zone*, they reckon not four, but two ſeaſons of the year *viz.* *Summer* and *Winter*, and theſe are not diſtinguiſhed by heat and cold, but chiefly by ſiccity and humidity; for in the *Winter* they have often greater heat than in their *Summer*, with a ſhortneſs of reſpiration, becauſe the rain and the *Clouds* preſs the *Calid Air* downwards. But the *Spring* and *Autumn* are not to be found by ſo manifeſt ſigns, or differences.

We ſhall begin our Narration from that part of Africa, *which lyeth under the* Torrid Zone, *and proceeding towards the Eaſt, with* Brazilia, *we ſhall finiſh the whole* Torrid Zone, *ſeated in the Weſt meaſured by us.*

The *Regions* of the *Occidental* ſhore of *Africa* from the *Tropick* of *Cancer* to *Cape verd*, (that is diſtant 14 degrees from the *Æquator* towards the *North*) are all abounding both with Corn, and variety of Fruit; there are alſo heards of Cattell, and flocks of Sheep in great abundance: The Inhabitants are of a great ſtrength, the heat of the Air a little exceedeth Mediocrity, ſo that the Inhabitants go naked, except the *Noble*, and thoſe that are rich, whoſe clothing is a *Linnen Cloth*. The cauſe of this fertility and temperate Air contrary to the cuſtom of the *Torrid Zone*, is, Firſt, many Rivers, of which the chief are *Senega*, and *Gambea*; before they diſcharge themſelves into the neighbouring *Sea*, they water thoſe *Regions*, and render the Air more humid and frigid. Secondly, the vicinity of the *Sea*, which affordeth humid vapours, and ſomewhat cold Winds. How the *Seaſons* of the year have themſelves in this place, and what months of the year *Summer* and *Winter* happen, and are vigorous, I have not found noted by *Writers*, which is to be imputed to their negligence, and ſloth. Yet in one *Itinerary*, I have read, that in one of the *Iſlands* which lye not far from the *Promontary* of *Cape verd* (by name *Salinæ* or the *Heſperides*) in one of them, I ſay, called St. *Vincents* (the *Latitude* is 16 degrees) the *watery months*, that is *Winter*, are *Auguſt*, *September*, *November*, *December*, *January*, even to *February*. This time almoſt agreeth with the *Celeſtial cauſe*, for in the months of *May*, *June* and *July*; becauſe the *Sun* is very near, or elſe vertical to that place; therefore it maketh the *Celeſtial Summer*, and here the *Terreſtrial* agreeth with it, for then they have a greater heat, and dry Air without raine. In the months of *February*, *March* and *April*, is their *Spring*, becauſe the *Sun* is moved from a moderate diſtance to a leſſer, therefore they are then without raines, and have a moderate heat. The months of *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*, are to be aſcribed to *Autumn*, by reaſon of the raines, although it ought to begin later, becauſe the *Sun* in *Auguſt*, hath not yet returned from his leaſt diſtance to his mean. Laſtly, the months *November*, *December* and *January*, are *Winter*, becauſe the *Sun* hath then the greateſt diſtance from their *Vertex*, and then they find more and longer continuing rains, with ſome cold; but this is not to be obſerved every year, though moſt years: But how the ſeaſons are in the *Continent* of *Africa* is not related, except that concerning the ſhore of *Sierra Leon*, it is contrary, as we ſhall now ſpeak.

2. Now ſucceed the *Regions* of the *Coaſt* of *Africa* which look towards the *South*, and extend themſelves from the *Promontory* of *Cape Verd*, to the curvature or bending part of *Africa*, that is from the *Weſt* to *Eaſt*. Theſe *Regions* are termed by one name *Guiny*, although others attribute this term only to one part: Now they lie in the *Torrid Northern Zone* 3. 4. and more degrees from the *Æquator*. In theſe *Regions* there is a continual heat of the Air without any intervening *Cold*, yet they attribute ſome months to the *Summer*, and ſome to the *Winter*. I think the ſame muſt be underſtood of the former *Weſtern Coaſt*; for in the *Regions* of the Shore called *Sierra Leon*, which is removed above 9 degrees from the *Æquator* towards the *North*, as alſo in many Tracts of *Guiny*, they aſcribe the months *March*, *April*, *May*, *June* and *July* to *Winter*, eſpecially the three firſt, by reaſon that on theſe months there fall frequent and almoſt continual rains, hot or warm, great Thunders and Lightnings, and ſo great Storms rage without violent Winds, that none can eaſily conceive them, who hath not had experience of them. How they rage I have already ſpoken, alſo in theſe months the Fields lie Barren, but when theſe Stormy months are expired, then they dig up the dry Earth (which hath ſucked up the great Rains in the ſaid wet months) and mix ſtamped and bruiſed *Coals* (inſtead of manuring) and ſo for the ſpace of 10 days ſuffer the Earth to putrify, and then they ſow their Seed. There is here ſo great an heat of the Air, joyned with humidity by reaſon of the propinquity of the Sea, that the Fiſh which are taken, ſtink, if kept undreſſed half a day. Therefore in theſe places, the *Winter* ſhall be in *April*, *May* and *June*, when the Storms and Rains rage. The *Spring* in *July*, *Auguſt*, and *September*; the *Summer* in *October*, *November*, and *December*; and the *Autumn* in *January*, *February*, and *March*, where the Rains and Storms do begin.

See Chap. 21.

Now all theſe times of the Seaſons in thoſe places are contrary to the *Celeſtial* cauſe, or motion of the *Sun*, for in the months of *May*, *June* and *July*, great heat ought to be there, becauſe then the *Sun* is then vertical, or near the *Vertex*, which the heat or warmneſs of the Rain alſo teſtifyeth: contrariwiſe in the months of *October*, *November*, and *December*, it ſhould be *Winter*, becauſe that the *Sun* being about the beginning and *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, is moſt remote from the *Vertex* of thoſe places. Here therefore the time of the *Terreſtrial ſeaſons* do much differ from the *Celeſtial ſeaſons*. The cauſe therefore of theſe Rains, Storms, and Thunders, at that time in thoſe places, when the *Sun* is ſo near, is not eaſy to be explicated. But it ſeems to be, that the *Sun* in the day time forceth up many *Vapours* from the *Sea*, and *Sulphureous* exhalations from the Land of *Guiny*, which vapours being condenſed by the cool of the Night, cauſe the Rains; eſpecially when no continual wind bloweth in theſe places, which may diſcuſs the *Vapours*. But for the moſt part here is a calm, ſome Storms excepted. And theſe months of Rain which they attribute to *Winter* are not cold but hot, becauſe no wind bloweth, and the *Sun* is *Vertical*; yea the heat is *Suffocative*, which is the cauſe, of ſhortneſs of reſpiration to the Inhabitants.

And although the Fields be Barren of Grain in theſe *Watery months*, yet the Trees and Buſhes are in their *Verdure* all the year, and bear Fruit.

The Day is here equal to the Night almoſt throughout the whole year, the *Sun* in the *Eaſt*, riſing at ſix in the Morning, and ſets in the *Weſt* at ſix in the Evening: but the *Eaſterly* or *Weſterly Sun* is ſeldom conſpicuous there, becauſe for the moſt part he ariſeth involved with *Clouds* for half an hour, and half an hour before he ſetteth, he is again inveloped with *Clouds*.

That

That alſo deſerveth conſideration, why in the Months of *July* and *Auguſt* the ſame Rains and Storms rage not there, ſeeing that the *Sun* is then as equally nigh to thoſe places as in the months of *May* and *June*. Moreover why in the *Iſlands* of the *Heſperides*, which are not ſo far removed from *Sierra*, *Leon*, and *Guiny*, the *VVinter* falleth out in contrary months.

3. How the times of the ſeaſons are in the *Interiour*, or *Mediterranean* part of *Africa*, which is included in the *Arch* of the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, the Regions of the *Occidental* Shore, and *Guiny*, or the Land of the *Negros*, concerning which I have found nothing as yet noted, but that all thoſe places are almoſt *Steril*, except thoſe adjacent to the River *Niger*: for that River every year in the months of *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*, overfloweth, and communicateth much fertility to thoſe Lands; and moreover formeth many Lakes. The other places confining on *Lybia* are infeſted with violent heat, being for the moſt part Sandy. The *Watery Months* do not ſeem to bear ſway here after the ſame mode, as in *Guiny*.

4. Now follow the *Regions* of the *Coaſt* of the *Tongue* of *Africa*, which is ſtretched from the *North* towards the *South*, and regardeth the *Weſt*. The *Regions* are *Manicongo*, *Angola*, and the like, from the ſecond degree of *Nothern Latitude*, even to the *Tropick*, *South* of *Capricorn*, beyond the *Æquator*. Now the Kingdom of *Congo* beginneth from the ſecond degree of *South Latitude*. The *Winter* in theſe places is like the conſtitution of the *Vernal ſeaſon* in the Territory of *Rome* in *Italy*; the heat temperate, ſo that they alter their *Garments* in no time of the year. Neither are the tops of the adjacent *Mountains* infeſted with cold. Here almoſt with our *Spring*, the *Watery Winter* beginneth and continueth *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt* and good part of *September*. At that time the *Summer* beginneth, which poſſeſſeth the other Months, even to the 10 of *March*; even in this *Summer* they have no rains, or at leaſt very little, and ſeldom have a continual ſerenity. But in the *Watery Months* the *Sun* is ſcarce to be ſeen on any day, perpetual Clouds and rain ſo obſtructing the Air, alſo frequent *Travados* or *Storms*. It doth not rain whole days, but for the moſt part two hours before, and two hours after noon, great drops fall, which are ſoon received by the droughty Earth. Therefore although the Inhabitants divide the year only into two parts, it may be diſtributed into four; (our common people alſo do uſually divide the year into *Summer* and *Winter* becauſe the *Spring* is compriſed in the *Summer*, and the *Autumn* in the *Winter*.)

Theſe times of the *Terreſtrial ſeaſons* in theſe places almoſt agree with the *Celeſtial courſe*, for from the 25 of *March*, *April*, *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, to the 25 of *September*, the *Sun* departs from thoſe places to the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, where he is moſt remote from them, the 21 of *June*, and the reſt of the time he approacheth again to them: ſo that on the 30 of *September* he becometh vertical to them, and goeth to a moderate diſtance towards the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and returneth from thence in the months of *October*, *November*, *December*, *January*, and *February*; ſo that in *March* he again becometh vertical, therefore in thoſe Months they have a *Summer* by reaſon of the vicinity of the *Sun*, whoſe effects are not here hindred by a *Tereſtrial* cauſe. And then again in the Months from the 10*th* of *March*, to the 10*th* of *September*, they have *Winter*, becauſe then the *Sun* is more removed from them: but the times of the *Spring*, *Autumn*, *Summer*, and *Winter* which we have aſſigned, do not well agree with the *Celeſtial* courſe, and I doubt whether the *Summer* and *VVinter* may be diſtinguiſhed into the *Spring* and *Autumn* in thoſe places.

Therefore here a more eaſy cauſe may be rendred, why in thoſe Months from the 10 of *March*, to the 10 of *September* they ſhould have a quotidian Rain, and ſome kind of *VVinter*, viz. becauſe the *Sun* departs fron their vertex towards the place of the greateſt diſtance: but this cauſe is not only ſufficient, becauſe it is

not able of its self to produce such an effect, but another must be added: The tops of the Mountains, which lie not far from these Maritime places towards the east, are discerned in those watery Months to be continually covered with *Snow*, and this is caused by reason of the fixed wind which in these Months there bloweth; therefore the *Sun* elevateth the Vapours very much from the *Sea*. And this fixed Wind forceth them towards the tops of the Mountains where they are condensed, and then turn to Rain; and from the Rain which falleth from the Mountains springeth the inundation of the *Nile*, and other Rivers of *Africa*.

The Wind is the *North-west* Wind.

Moreover we must know that in these watery Months the Rivers of *Congo* overflow the adjacent Fields, which causeth great Fertility in them, and also disgorgeth great quantities of water into the *Sea*.

5. In the *Maritime Region Lowango*, adjacent to *Congo*, there are also observed to be Rainy Months, and other Months of *Summer* that are serene; but that which is to be admired is that they are not the same with those, in which we said the Rain doth wax vigorous in the Months of *January*, *February*, *March*, and *April*, when yet it is Summer and a serene Aire in *January* and *February* in *Congo*. Here therefore the Terrestrial Season is repugnant to the Celestial, because that in *January* and *February* the *Sun* is not most remote from those places, and therefore they should not have Rain, but rather *Siccity*. Without doubt the cause is either from another scituation of the Mountains, another fixed Wind, or the like.

See the Description of St. *Thomas*.

6. The *Island* of St. *Thomas*, and *Anobon* are very abundant in *Sugar*, *Grain*, *Fruits*, and Meats, and great plenty of *Oranges*, &c.

7. How the Seasons are in the other Regions of the *Occidental Coasts* of *Africa* from *Lowango* to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, I have not yet found to be observed by any one.

8. Therefore that shore being left, and the *Promontory* of *Good-hope* being sayled about, we return to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, where the *Oriental Coast* of the Promontory or *Tongue* of *Africa* is discovered, in which lyeth *Zofala*, *Mozambique*, *Quiloa*, even to the *Æquator*, which are illustrated by the *Oriental Sun*. In these places the Winter is in the Months of *September*, *November*, *December* and *January*; in the rest *Siccity* and *Summer*, which time is contrary to that, in which in *Congo* we have said that they have the Rain in *Winter*, and yet these Regions lye from the *Æquator*, but the ridge of Mountains which doubly divide this *Prominent Tongue* of *Africa* into the Eastern and Western Land, questionless are the cause of this diversity. The Land of these Regions are only of a moderate Fertility, in many places Sandy, Barren, and scorched with the chalure of the Sun; but the Rivers, the adjacent Sea, and general Easterly Wind much allay the heat.

9. The other Regions of the *Oriental Coasts* of *Africa* lying from the *Æquator* towards the North, at the mouth of the *Arabian Gulph*, and hence to the Shore of the said *Gulph*, even to the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; these Regions I say what seasons they have, and in what times of the year, I have not yet found observed by any, but that some write, that this tract is barren, sandy, oppressed with such a violent heat, and destitute of Rivers.

10. As to the seasons in the *Mediteranean* part of *Africa*, which is the Region of the *Abyssines*, which is cut almost in the middle by the *Æquator*, so that it hath some Provinces in the Southern *Torrid Zone*, and very many in the Northern *Torrid Zone*.

11. Now leaving *Africa*, we enter the Regions of *Asia* lying under the *Torrid Zone*, where first we meet with the Regions of *Arabia* adjacent to the *Red Sea*, from *Mecca* to *Aden* (12 degrees from the *Æquator* towards the North) which regard the West; on the East they have the *Arabian* Mountains. These Regions are exceedingly infested with heat in *March* and *April*, and more in the following Months, whilst the Sun approacheth to their *Vertex* and about it, it remaineth *May*, *June*, *July*, and *August*; the chalure is so great, that the Inhabitants, especially the better sort, cause water to be poured on their Bodies all the day long, or else lie in Vessels of Water to refresh them. I suppose the cause

The Merchants at *Aden* negotiate their affairs in the Night season by reason of heat in the day.

to

to be the defect of watery Vapours, because on the *Oriental* part the Region is Rocky, and hath but few Rivers; now the *Oriental* wind, which is general, although it be not there perceived, repelleth the Vapours rising from the *Red Sea*: Likewise the abundance of Sand which retaineth the heat received in the night, and communicateth it to the Air. Therefore this time of the *Summer* and *Winter* agrees with the *Celestial Course*.

12. The same is the case of all *Arabia*, and its Eastern Coast.

13. In *Camboja* in *India*, lying under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, as also in the Regions of *Malabar*, or the Eastern Coast of the *Indies* which regard the *West*, and extend themselves from the *North* towards the *South* to the eighth degree of *North Latitude*; I say these Regions the *Winter* or rainy Seasons possess the Months of *June*, *July*, *August* and *September*, but especially from the middle of *June* to the middle of *September*. Neither in all these places doth it rain in an equal time, but more continually in the province of *Goana* and *Cocina*; and less in *Camboja* where it only raineth three Months, in the other eight months it seldome raineth in *Camboja*, but in *Goa* in the Months of *April* and *May* it raineth, but less vehement, and beginning with Thunder and Storms; so that to *Autumn* here, may be ascribed half the Month of *March*, also *April*, and *May* to the 15*th* of *June*, then from the 15*th* of *June*, *July* and *August* to *Winter*, likewise from the 15*th* of *September* to *December* the *Spring*; the other Months from the 15*th* of *December* to the 15*th* of *March* to *Summer*, for in these Months is great drought, because that the *Water* of the former Rains is extracted by the Sun from the Earth. Yet the Inhabitants do not number four Seasons, but only two, *Summer* and *Winter*, or rather a dry, and a rainy Season. The *winter* is not so called from the cold (as with us) but from the Rains which then fall.

Besides these Raines, there are frequent Storms on the Coast, and also Thunders in those rainy Months; so that the Sea is supposed to be then shut up, and many Rivers then overflow; the Sea is open again in the Month of *September*, and then Ships put forth to Sea from the Coast of *Malabar* into various parts of the world. Neither are there any violent rains in these places in the Fields, except some Storms, by reason that it ceaseth for many hours of the day, therefore it affordeth the Inhabitants a time of Planting, and Sowing, which they do in these watery Months. The Air also is of a moderate heat at that time, because the Sun is obstructed with *Clouds*, so that the remote Inhabitants expatiate from the Shore to the Hills and Fields for recreation, where the inundation is not great, and incredible fertility is acquired to the Earth by this Rain. But if these Raines fall not on the year, (as in *Anno* 1630.) which seldom happens; then all hope of Sowing and consequently Harvest is taken away; thence cometh Scarcity of Corn, a hot Sultery Air, burning Feavours, Pestilences, and Deaths of Thousands of People. In the said year 1630, and the year following Mans Flesh was publickly sold in the Shambles in *Camboja*: Sometimes the Shores do so rage, that the Houses (which are but slightly built) fall by the inundation of the River. A great Famine in *Camboja* in 1630.

They Sow in *May*, and the beginning of *June*, and Reap in *November* and *December*: it is otherwise in *Guiny*.

This *Summer*, and this *Winter* is contrary to the *Celestial* Course or Motion of the Sun, for in the Months of *July* and *August* the Sun is vertical to those places, or very near the *Vertex*, therefore they must have heat and drought; this is the great felicity of those places, for if these Rains fall not, and the *Clouds* obscured not the Sun, that great heat of the Sun would render the ground Sandy, and Steril, as *Lybia*, and *Arabia*, where these Rains are not, the Sun being near the *Vertex*. Contrarywise in the Months of *December*, *January* and *February*, they should have *Winter*, or lesser heat, because that then the Sun is most remote from them; and then they have *Summer*: Yet in the night the Air is cold enough: moreover a continual Wind from the 12*th* hour of the day to the 12*th* hour of the night bloweth from the Sea, which is very acceptable.

14. In

14. In the Coaſt of the *Eaſt Indies* which is called *Choromandel*, the ſeaſons alſo differ from the *Heavens*; for in the Months of *March*, *April*, *May* and *June*, the *Sun* cauſeth vehement heat, and there is no rain. Now the People which for the moſt part are *Saracens*, divide the year into the *hot*, the *wet*, and the *Cold ſeaſons*; the *hot* or *Summer*, as I have ſaid, is in the months of *March*, *April*, *May*, and *June*, but the intollerable *heat* is from the middle of *May*, to the middle of *June*, the Wind blowing from the *North*, unto which if you turn your face, you ſhall diſcover ſo great a heat of the Air, as if you drew nigh an *Oven*; for the *Sun* then in that *Plaga*, is in the *Meridies*: alſo the Wood and Stones contract a great heat, yet the Waters in the Wells is ſo cold, that many drinking thereof for extream heat dye.

The greateſt heat of the day is between Nine in the Forenoon, and Three in the Afternoon; in theſe intermedial hours they reſt from travelling: the other hours before Nine in the Morning, and Three in the Afternoon, the Air is at leaſt tolerably temperate, ſerene, and acceptable, the Heaven delightful, and travelling pleaſant.

The *Wet ſeaſon* taketh up four months, *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*.

The *Cold ſeaſon*, *November*, *December*, *January*, and *February*: in *December*, and *January* the *Cold* is ſenſible enough, eſpecially in the night.

Here are many things which deſerve our enquiry, for in the months of *March*, *April*, *May* and *June*, the *Sun* cometh to thoſe places of the Coaſt of *Choromandel*, and becometh *Vertical* to them; therefore it is no wonder if they have great heat; but why have they not the ſame heat in *July* and *Auguſt*, ſeeing he is equally as near them in theſe months, and by reaſon of the former heat it ſhould be more hot? Moreover why do the ſeaſons of the *Coaſt* of *Choromandel* differ from the ſeaſons of the *Coaſt* of *Malabar*, ſeeing that they both lie in the ſame *Climate*, and have the *Sun Vertical* on the ſame days, and on the ſame remote? And that which is more to be wondered at, there interceedeth between theſe two Regions, in ſome places 70, in others only 20 miles interval; ſo that you may come into a place of a ſerene and fervid Air, where the *Winter* predominateth, and that in the ſpace of one day. '*Maffeus* thus ſpeaketh of theſe places, In theſe Regions ſaith he 'amongſt other admirable things, that above others exceedeth the reach of all '*Philoſophers*, that in the ſame *Plaga* of the Heavens, in the equal acceſs and 'receſs of the *Sun* in the ſame months of the year, from the *Sun* riſing beyond 'the *Mountain* of *Gatis*, (which by a direct excurſion to the *Promontory* of '*Cori* interſects the whole *Region* of *Malabar*) there is *Summer* and drought, and 'from the Weſt on this ſide *Gatis* there are *Rains* and *Winter*; that in ſo near 'a propinquity of places, in reſpect of the courſe of the ſeaſons, the ſame Peo-'ple almoſt ſeem *Antipodes* one to another. But not only in theſe, but alſo in others we have ſhewed this diverſity to be found, and ſhall ſhew more anon. The cauſe is the ſcituation of the *Mountains*, which determinate the Land of *Choromandel* from *Malabar*, proceeding from the *North* towards the *South*. To this muſt be added divers Winds, for on the *Coaſt* of *Choromandel* a general *Eaſtern Wind* is more diſcovered, (except in the *Summer months* of *May* and *June*,) which driveth the vapours towards the tops of the *Mountains*, whence it raineth in the Land of *Malabar*. Theſe *Mountains* tops are diſcovered to be continually covered with *Clouds* in the *Pluvial months*, alſo more vehement Showrs in thoſe, where the rain is in *Malabar*: But when it raineth in the Region of *Choromandel*, then is there a ſerenity in the tops of the *Mountains*, as in the Land of *Malabar* (except the months *July* and *Auguſt*,) for in theſe it raineth in both Lands.

15. In the *Regions* of the *Gangick Sea*, oppoſite to the *Coaſt* of *Chroromandel*, and in the *Northern Torrid Zone*, as *Sian*, *Peru*, the *Cherſoneſus* of *Malacca*, the *Pluvial months*, in which the Rivers overflow, are *September*, *October* and *November*. But in the Land of *Malacca* it raineth every week of the year twice, or thrice, except the months of *January*, *February* and *March*, in which there is a continual drought. All theſe are contrary to the

Cele-

Celeſtial courſe, and their cauſes muſt be ſought from the Mountains, Winds, the propinquity of the Sea, and the like: But becauſe as yet we have no accurate obſervations concerning theſe Regions, we will not ſearch them here. The chief cauſe of the Fertility of theſe Regions, is the overflowing of the Rivers. The vapours of the adjacent Sea, the Rivers, and the Winds do much allay the heat, whence the Inhabitants have great plenty of Fruits. In the Kingdom of *Patuna*, and thoſe bordering on it, the *Summer* beginneth in *February*, and continueth to the end of *October*; in which time there is a continual heat, which is allayd with a continual *Oriental Wind*, the Air wholſom. In *November*, *December* and *January*, there are continual Rains, which yet do not hinder a new increaſe every month at the leaſt. The ſame muſt be underſtoood of *Camboja*. And this Winter agreeth with the *Celeſtial* courſe.

16. Leaving *Aſia*, the *Pacifick* Sea being Sayled over, we enter that part of *America* which lieth under the *Torrid Zone*, which is twofold, *South* and *North*: the *South* again is twofold, *Peru* and *Brazilia*; although the parts of *Peru* be vicine, yet they have contrary Seaſons in one and the ſame time; for the Region of *Peru* is divided into three parts, the *Shoar* or *Maritim part*, the *Mountainous* and the *Plain part* which lie in the ſame *Climate*. In the *Mountainous places*; they have a *Pluvial Winter* from the month of *October*, to the end of *March*, when they ſhould have *Summer* by the vicinity of the *Sun*. They have *Summer* from the entrance of *April* to *October*, in which months no Rains do fall; but in the *Winter-months* there are continual Rains. Therefore the *Terreſtrial ſeaſons* differ here from the *Celeſtial*. In *Maritim Peru* there is almoſt no *Winter* in the whole year, but they account their *Winter* from the month of *April* to *October*, (which agreeth with the *Celeſtial* cauſe, becauſe the *Sun* is then removed from them to the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and thence returneth) by reaſon that in thoſe months it Raineth not, but almoſt every day the *Clouds* appear ſo thick as if it would immediately Rain, but there falleth only a certain kind of Dew, and that eſpecially in the months of *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*,: Yet this miſt is not unwholſom, but being condenſed into Dew, and falling, it irrigateth the Vallies. It doth not Rain at this time in the *Mountainous places*, but is a *ſerene ſeaſon*. This *Maritim Peru* is diſtinguiſhed into Vallies, and *Sandy places*: the Vallies are abundantly fertile; the *Sandy places* which are between every Valley are ſteril, alſo in the adjacent *Iſlands* it never raineth, but a Dew only falleth.

In the *Iſle* of *Gorgon*, which is removed three degrees from the *Æquator* towards the South, it raineth for Eight months almoſt continually, with ſo great *Thunder* and *Storms* not to be paralleld. In *May*, *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, it is *Summer*, and dry, contrary to the *Celeſtial courſe*. In ſome parts of this *Torrid Zone* it is very cold, for in the *Province* of *Paſtoa*, in the Valley *Atriſina* both in *Summer* and *Winter* the ſeaſon is very cold, ſo that the fruit encreaſeth not. In the *Region* of *Cuſco*, which lyeth almoſt in the middle betwen the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Æquator*, hard *Froſts* and *Snows* are alſo found.

From whence it is collected, that *Peru* is parched with no violent heat, but rather enjoyeth a temperate Air throughout the whole year; excepting its *Sandy places* and Hills, but the Vallies are moſt fertile and pleaſant, abounding with Trees and Fruits. Their Water they receive in the *Winter* from the Dew which I have ſaid falleth every day; but in the *Summer* from the Flouds which deſcend and ruſh from the *Mountains*, becauſe in the *Mountainous Region* it is then *Winter*, and raineth. And from theſe *Torrents* the Inhabitants conduct the Water by certain conveyances into the Vallies; yet ſome Vallies are content only with the Dew, and yet produce abundance of Fruit.

The cauſe of this diverſity between the ſeaſons of the *Mountainous* and the plain *Peru*, and why it never raineth in the level *Peru*, is difficult to declare; for theſe *Mountainous parts* are ſo near to the level *Maritim Peru*, that any one in the morning deſcending from theſe pluvial and raging ſhowers, in the evening may arrive at the level *Peruvia* where there is no rain but a ſere-

rene

rene Air. The cause seemeth to be twofold. First, those tops of the *Mountains*. And Secondly, a *South-West Wind* which is proper and perpetual to *Peru*. Therefore this *Wind* forceth the *Vapours* towards the *Mountains*, where they are as it were condensed, so that the *Clouds* may not destil their drops in the level *Peru*; but in the *Mountainous places* they are attracted after the mode which we have explained concerning *Mountains*.

Therefore *Peru* hath this in common with *Ægypt*, and some other places, that the *South Winds* are not the cause of Rain and warmth, but rather a clearing the Air; although it may seem to have place in all the places lying towards the *South* from the *Æquator*.

17. The *South* part of *America*, *viz. Brazilia*, is very pleasant, and excelleth with an wholsom disposition of the *Air*; so that it giveth place unto no *Region* of the *Earth*. Concerning its seasons, the Inhabited front of it receiveth the *Subsolan Wind*, which refresheth *Men* and *Beasts*, and freeth them from the intolerable heat of the *Vertical Sun*; which if it approach the *Sea*, is discovered in the morning; if it depats from thence, it is discerned more after the *Spring* of the morning, neither doth it languish about the evening. It is wont do do so in many parts of *India*; but it is so intense by the assistance of the *Sun*, that it is vigorous beyond midnight, and the *Nocturnal Condensation* of the Air cannot easily dul or overcome that dilation and natural motion of the Air.

See *Piso* in his Book *De medicina Brasiliensi* concerning the seasons.

But the other part (which is seperated from *Peru* by high ridges of *Mountains*, and vast spaces) although it be infested with an unwholsom *West Wind*, and a *Mediterranean Gale*, at midnight, yet it is every where encompassed with *Mountains* near the *Sea*, and is so driven from the Matutine Gale that it can hardly penetrate to the Shores.

As in these most delectable and constant seasons of the year, there are no great mutations, so they happen in the day and night seasons more evidently; because the days and nights are not more equal in space, than different in heat and cold: for the *Sun* ascending higher, after it hath opened the pores of the *Earth* and *Men*; it hideth it self more profoundly, and that by an equal interval, whence the greater condensation of the Air, effects the more extream rorifluous part of the night. Hence a penetrating cold, from the third hour of the night, even to the rising of the *Sun*, striketh the body, so that that this is wont to be very noxious to those that are new comers into the Land: which he that shunneth not, will hardly lead a good life in these, or other parts of the *Indies*. The *Brazilians* therefore very cautiously keep a continual fire in their habitations, and near their resting places: by the benefit of which they may be able to indure cold, and drive away venemous Insects.

Moreover the direct ascent and descent of the *Sun*, causeth the shortest *Crepuscules*, and maketh the nights so even to the days, that an hours difference can hardly be found.

The cold is more in the *Summer* nights than in the *Winter*, which is to be admired at; and it is more mildly discovered in the latter than in the former, the Air being tranquillous. The beginning of the *Wet season* is in the month of *March*, or *April*, and is finished in *August*; in which the *Sun* returning from *Cancer*, in part dissolveth the matter of the Rain into winds, whence immediately proceed storms and tempests; which by and by the *Spring Season* calmly composeth. The Inhabitants of the *Tropicks* know no mutation about the seasons of the year; the *Sun* twice coming towards, and departing back, as many supposed; but only going away from the *Æquator* to the *Tropick* of *Cancer* or *Capricorn*.

There are only two times of the year, whereof one is dry and hot, called *Summer*; the other hot and moist like to *Summer* with us in *Europe*, which supplyeth the place of *Winter*. And this is found most true in all the *Indies*, between both *Tropicks*. For although the beginning and end of the *Winter* and *Summer seasons*, by reason of the particular incidences of the place, and also for the greater or lesser vicinity of the *Æquator*, do not happen in the same; yet for the most part the year is accomplished in about six months, inclining

clining to *Humidity*, and ſix to *Siccity*: and on that account, as in the places of many Citties of *Aſia* and *Africa*, of the ſame *Latitude* with us, there is thence a great remiſſion of the heat; but here is little perceived, although the *Sun* paſſeth the *Zenith* of the *Brazilians* in the months of *October* and *February*, and ſtriketh the *Earth* with *reflex raies*, at moſt *acute Angles*. Which diverſity of theſe *Regions*, promiſeth the Inhabitants perpetual health, by reaſon of the often calms, and the Air quelling all noxious heats.

Hence it is eaſy to collect, that the ſeaſons of the year do not ſo much depend immediately on the *Sun* and his *motion*, as on the ſpecies of the *Winds*, the diverſity of aſpects of the *Stars*, the quality and peculiar ſcituation of the *Region*

Moreover in theſe *Mediterranean Regions* towards the *Weſt*, the *nights* are more *cold*, than in the *Maritim*; ſo much ſome times that the *Froſt* ſeizeth on the very *hairs* of the *People*. In the ſame months from the *Eaſt* about the *Ocean* is *Summer* and *Siccity*; from the *Weſt* beyond the *ridges* of the *Mountains*, and the *Marſhes* of *Brazilia*, is the *Winter*, *Fogs* and *Rain*. No Iſland are oppoſite to *Brazilia*.

Oftentimes the *Heavens* may be ſeen covered with vaſt *Clouds*, from the *Eaſt* towards the *Weſt*; but thoſe again very thin, except in the days of the *Rain*, the *Sun* both riſing and ſetting may be beheld with fixed eyes; for there is a wonderful ſerenity on every ſide, eſpecially towards the evening; which never afordeth any *Vapours* or *Clouds* to the ſucceeding *Moon*, but renders the night ſo clear, that the old and new *Moon* may be ſeen in one and the ſame day; and letters may be well read at the *quarter Moon*.

The *Æther* in reſpect of the diverſity of the *Planets*, other inferiour cauſes acceding, receiveth its diſtemperature; for the *Heaven* about evening is bright with *Lightning* without *Thunder* in the moſt dry and ſerene ſeaſon.

The drops of *Rain* are very great, and fall with great violence, which is wont to be preceeded by a ſuffocative warmneſs.

The *Dew* here is more fruitful than that of *Europe*, being impregnated with much *Winter*, and therefore is more penetrating and thin, eſpecially in *Summer*; which is manifeſt in all *Mettals*, and in *Iron* eſpecially, which it eaſily eateth up without the aſſiſtance of any *Clouds*,

The *Meadows* and open *Fields* do leſs wax green in the *Summer*, but more eſpecially in the *Pluvial months*, (although the *Earth* then ſeemed ſomewhat more ſad to the Innabitants) and the places unfit for *Tillage* afford *Paſture* See *Piſo*.

All the Lands of *Brazilia* ariſe into moderate and pleaſant *Hills*; there are no *Mountains* of any great hight in the *Coaſts*: but yet ſome are diſcovered afar off in the *Solitudes*, among the *barren hills*, yet not every where, but with ſome intervals of *Miles* the *Valleys* are interpoſed, every one irrigated with ſome ſmall *Rivers*; and for that reaſon are not only fertil in the *pluvial months*, but alſo in thoſe of the *Summer*. The *Hills* in the *Summer months* are ſteril by reaſon of the heat of the *Sun*; ſo that they wither, and *Graſs* doth not only die on them, but ſometimes the *Trees* alſo. It very ſeldom raineth throughout the whole day and night; and for ſome continual days very ſeldom without intermiſſion: the *Pluvial months* do a little differ. In the year 1640. (as *Marriners* have obſerved) there were 7 *Pluvial months*, viz *February*, *March*, *April*, *May*, *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*. But moſt, and almoſt continually from *April*, *May* and *June*. In the year 1642. the moſt *Pluvial months* ſix, *viz*. *March*, *April*, *May*, *Juxe*, *July* and *Auguſt*. But the account of the other years was not much different. Now theſe obſervations are to be taken only for one place, and not for all the places in *Brazilia*.

Hence it is manifeſt that the *Summer* and *Winter* of *Brazilia*, anſwereth to the *Celeſtial* account, ſeeing that in the greateſt diſtance of the *Sun* they have *Rain*; and in the leaſt and moderate towards the *South*, they have heat: Yet there are not a few irregularities, the cauſe of which are to be ſought from the ſcituation of the *Winds* and *Earth*.

18. This is enough for the *Southern America*; in the *Northern* it is otherwiſe. For in the *Province* of *Nicaragua* it raineth for ſix months; and the other ſix months it is *Summer*, and dry weather; ſo that paſſengers may travel in the night. This now is contrary to the *Celeſtial courſe*, for in the wet months The ſix rainy months are *May*, *June*, *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*.

months; for in *May*, *June*, and so on to *November*, the *Sun* is *vertical*, or near the *Vertex* unto these places: so that then they should have *Summer* and *Siccity* and not *Rain*. In *November* and *December* it is very distant, therefore they should there have *Rain*.

Thus have we declared the *Seasons* of the chief places of the whole *Torrid Zone*, from which being compared one with another we collect. 1. That in some places, the cold is scarce sensible in some part of the year; and therefore the *Winter* is rather to be defined by the *Rains*, than by cold in those places. 2. In some places the cold is sufficiently sensible. 3. In the night time, especially in the last quarter, the Air is discovered to be very cold, by reason of the depression of the *Sun* beneath the *Horizon*. 4. That it is not the least cause of the tolerable heat, and that those *Regions* are inhabited, *viz.* that no days are there long, but almost equal to the night; for if the days were as long there, the *Sun* remaining above the *Horizon*, as in the places of the *Temperate* and *Frigid Zones*; then doubtless they would be uninhabited. 5. That the Winds do much diminish the heat of the *Sun*. 6. That places which ly in one and the same *Climate*, have the *Summer* and *Winter* in divers times, although they be very near to one another. 7. That those places which have *Siccity* and *Humidity* contrary to the access and recess of the *Sun*, are so scituated, that on the *East* they have *Ridges* of *Mountains*, and that they regard the *West*, *Peru* excepted. 8. That the *Seasons* observe no certain rule in the places of the *Torrid Zone*. 9. That although most of the Inhabitants divide the year into two *Seasons*, which is likewise observed by many *Writers*, to wit, a *Pluvial* and *Dry Season*, yet it may aptly be divided into four, so that they may not only have a *Summer* and a *Winter*, but also a *Spring* and an *Autumn*. For as in our parts the *Spring* approacheth near the nature of *Summer*, and the *Autumn* of *Winter*; so also the dry places of the *Torrid Zone* may be divided. 10. And lastly in some places there is a continual *Harvest*; in some only in two parts of the year, and in others only in one part of the year.

Proposition XII.

To shew how the four Seasons of the year are made, &c. *in the places of the* Temperate Zones.

Of the seasons of the year in places lying in the *Temperate Zones*.

1. In these places that cause, which we have placed in the first place amongst the causes of the *Seasons* in the first *Proposition* of this *Chapter*; is so potent in respect of the other causes, that that above almost maketh up, and moderateth them. To wit, in the *Regions* of the *Northern Temperate Zone* it is *Spring* and *Summer*; the *Sun* going from *Aries* by *Cancer* to *Libra*; because then he is more near them. Then the *Sun* going from *Libra* through *Capricorn* to *Aries*, it is *Autumn* and *Winter*. But in the *Southern Temperate Zone* the matter is contrary; neither can those other causes altogether disable the force of this first, and induce a new course of the seasons, and be able to alter the times, as in the *Torrid Zone*.

2. Yet those Seasons of divers places vary, so that in one place there may be more Heat or Cold, or *Rain* than in another, although the places lie in the same *Climate*; but yet they cause not the *Winter* to be changed into *Summer*, or *Summer* into *Winter*. A *Rocky*, *Marshish*, and *Maritim Land*, findeth somewhat another *degree* of heat or cold, than *Vallies*, or a *Chalk* and *Maritim Land*.

3. The places in the *Tropicks* for the most part in the *Summer* have an exceslive heat, others a *Pluvial Season*; so that they almost approach to the nature of the places of the *Torrid Zone*. So in the part of the Kingdom of *Guzarat* lying without the *Tropick*; at the same time the wet and dry months are observed: which in the part lying beyond the *Æquator*, the *Summer* is changed into a *Pluvial Season*: yet then there is greater heat, than the dry part of the year, where they have a moderate cold; and in truth, in the pla-

ces

ces of the *Temperate Zones* we judg the *Summer* and *Winter* not from the drought and rains, but from the heat and cold.

Now in the *Coasts* of *Persia* and *Ormus*, there is so great heat without *Rains* in the *Summer*; by reason of the vicinity of the *Sun*, that both the *Men* and their *Wives* ly in *Cisterns* full of *Water*. The like heat is in *Arabia*.

The Regions of *Africa* on the *Mediterranean* Sea are called the coast of *Barbary*.

Throughout all *Barbary*, the middle of *October* being past, *Showers* and *Cold* begin to increase; and in *December* and *January* the *cold* is perceived more intense, and that only in the morning: and what so remiss, that the Fire is not desired. *February* taketh away the greatest part of the *cold* from the *Winter*; but yet it is so inconstant, that sometimes 5 or 6 times in one day the Air changeth. In the month of *March*, the *North* and *West Winds* blow violently and cause whole trees to be vested with blossoms. *April* giveth form almost to all Fruits; so that the entrance of *May* and the end of *April* is wont naturally to produce *Cherries*. In the middle of *May* they gather *Figs*, and in the middle of *June* in some places are ripe *Grapes*; the *Figs* of *Autumn* are gathered in *August*, and there is no greater plenty of *Figs* and *Pears* than in *September*. There is not so great intemperies of the year in those places; but that the three months of the *Spring* are always temperate. The entrance of the *Spring* (that is the *Terrestrial*, not the *Celestial*) is as they reckon on the 15*th* of *February*, and the end the 18*th* of *May*; in all which time the Air is most grateful to them. If from the 25*th* of *April* to the 5 of *May* they have no *Rain*, they esteem the same as ominous. They count their *Summer* even to the 16*th* of *August*, at which time they have a very hot and serene Air. Their *Autumn*, from the 17 of *August* to the 16 of *November*, and they have that for two months; to wit *August* and *September*, yet not great. That which is included between the 15 of *August*, and the 15 of *September*, was wont to be termed by the *Antients* the *Furnace* of the whole year; and that because it produced *Figs*, *Pears*, and that kind of Fruit to maturity. From the 15 of *November* they reckoned their *Winter*, which they extend to the 14 of *February*. At the entrance of this they begin to till their Land, which is the plain; but the mountainous in the month of *October*. The *Africans* have a certain perswasion that the year hath 40 very hot days, and on the other side so many cold, days; which they say begin from the 12 of *December*. They begin the *Æquinoxes* on the 16 of *March*, and on the 16 of *September*. Their *Solstices* on the 16 of *June*, and the 16 of *December*. The end of their *Autumn*, all their *Winter*, and a good part of their *Spring* is full of violent *Winds*, accompanied with *Hail*, *Lightnings*, and dreadful *Thunders*; neither is there wanting in many places of *Barbary* an abundance of *Snow*. In *Mount Atlas* 7 *degrees* distant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, they divide the year only into two parts; for from *October* even to *April*, they have a continual *Winter*; and from *April* again to *October* they have *Summer*. In this there is no day, in which the *Mountains* tops glitter with *Snow*.

Of the seasons of the year of *Barbary*.

The Opinion of the *Arabians*.

In *Numidia*, the parts of the year swiftly pass away, for in *May* they reap their Corn, in *October* they gather their *Dates*; but from the middle of *September* to *January* a violent *Frost* continueth; *October* abstaining from *Rains*, all hopes of *Sowing* is taken from the *Husbandman*: the same hapneth if that *April* produceth not *Pluvial Water*. *Leo Africanus* remembreth many *Mountains* of *Snow* in *Africa*, not far from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*.

The seasons of *Numidia*.

The North part of *China* although no more remote from the *Æquator* than *Italy*, yet it hath a cold more sharp; for great *Rivers* and *Lakes* are congealed up with *Frost*, the cause of which is not yet sufficiently known, except we should refer it to the *Snowy Mountains* of *Tartaria*, not far remote, to the avoyding of which cold, they abound with the *Skins* of *Foxes*, and *Scythilian Rats*.

Of *China*.

New England, although it lie in 42 *degrees* of *North Latitude*, and therefore no more removed from the *Æquator* than *Italy*, yet in the month of *June*, when Sir *Francis Drake* was there, the Air was so vehement cold, that he was compelled to sayl back to the *South*; for the *Mountains* were

New England

then covered with *Snow*. The cauſe is the *Frigid* temperature of the *Earth* being *Stony*.

The ſeaſons of *Ægypt*. In *Ægypt* which is bounded with the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, the *Spring* and *Temperate Seaſon* of the year is obſerved about *January* and *February*. The *Summer* beginneth with *March* and *April*; and continueth *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*. The *Autumn* poſſeſſeth *September* and *October*. The *Winter* hath *November* and *December*. About the beginning of *April* they *Reap* their *Corn*, and preſently threſh it. After the 20 of *May* not an *Ear* of *Corn* is to be ſeen in the Fields; no Fruits on the trees. On the *Ides* of *June*, the inundation of the *Nilus* beginneth.

The ſeaſons in the ſtreights of *Magellan*. In the *Streights* of *Magellan*, and the adjacent *Regions*; although they be no more diſtant from the *Æquator* than our parts are (under the 52 *degree* of *South Latitude*) yet they have no very hot *Summer*. So that the *Hollanders* in the month of *January* (when there ſhould be an hot *Summer*) found a great glade of *Ice* in the *Creek* of one of their *Seas*. In the *Mountains* of the adjacent *Coaſts Snow* is diſcovered all the *Summer* long; and it is obſerved, that in almoſt all the *Regions* of the *South Temperate Zone*; they have a Cold far more intenſe in *Winter*, and a violency of *Rain*, and a leſs heat in *Summer*, than the parts of our *Northern Temperate Zone*. Whether this be the cauſe, that the *Sun* makes a longer ſtay, and the ſlower progreſs in the *Semicircle* of the *Northern Zodiac*, than in the *Southern*; is to be queſtioned.

In the Neighbouring *Province of Peru*, which they call *La Valla Imperial*, in the *Province* of *Potoſi*; they find ſo great a *Cold*, that for four miles circumference there groweth nothing.

The ſeaſon of *Chili*. In the *Kingdom* of *Chili*, which extendeth it ſelf from 30 *degrees* of *South Latitude*, to 50 *degrees*; the *Spring* beginneth in the months of *Auguſt* (ſooner than the *Celeſtial Account* admitteth) and endeth in the middle of *November*: And from the middle of *November Summer* beginneth, even to the middle of *February*; from whence *Autumn* leadeth on to the middle of *May*, which the *Winter* ſuccedeth, which is very violent, and diſpoileth the *Trees* of their *Bloſſoms*, and ſcattereth a deep *Snow*; with a vehement *Froſt*, which yet is diſcovered by the *Sun*, except (which is very ſeldom) that the *Sun* appeareth not, but the *Snow*, rarely falleth in the *Vallies*; for although it falls in great abundance, and is heaped up ſo high, that it aſcends the tops of *Mountains*, and is heaped together in the vacuity of the *Mountains* as in ſo many wells, and indure almoſt the whole year; yet being there diſſolved, they flow into the *Rivers* and *Torrents*, which run through the *Vallies* with a great force even to the *Sea*; to the great enrichment of the *Grounds*. But although here it *Snow* not, except rarely in the *Plains*; yet it maketh ſo exceſſive a *Froſt* that the like is ſcarcely felt in many parts of *Europe*; which happeneth partly from the *Altitude* of the *Pole*; partly from the propinquity of the *Mountains*; from which deſcend ſo ſubtile and penetrating *Winds*, that ſometimes they are unſufferable; whence it cometh to paſs that the *Maritim* parts are more temperate:

He that is Studious may collect other differences of *Region* under the ſame *Climate*, or in the vicine *Climates* from *Writers*, for example; that in *England* the Air is not ſo cold as in *Holland*, ſo that they pen not up their *Heards* in the *Winter*. Betwen *Siberia* and *Tartaria*, in a place ſeated not far from the *Frigid Zone*, in the end of our *Temperate*, are ſaid to be pleſant *Fields*, and rich *Paſtures*, almoſt no cold, ſeeing that they ſcarce feel *Winter*; where by the command of the Duke of *Moſcovia* the City *Tooru* is built, which is at this day ſo much encreaſed, that it is able to repell the Aſſaults of the *Tartars*.

In

In *Japan* the *Winter* is *Cold*, *Snowy*, *Rainy*, when yet other *Regions* of *Europe* and *Asia*, lying under the same *Climate*, have far lesser *Winter*; the cause is because that *Japan* consists of many *Islands*, disjoyned by a small *Euripus*, and that it also lyeth in the middle of the *Ocean*. The Island of *Japan*.

In *Armenia* and the adjoyning places, there is great heat in *Summer*, because it lieth amongst *Mountains*, here and there mixed with *Fields*; hence the more rich in some places in *Summer* remove to the tops of the *Mountains*, and remain there for some months; but the meaner sort in the day time defend themselves in the *Mountains* from the heat, and about eventide do descend to the lower ground. *America* very hot in the Summer.

Proposition XIII.

To declare how in places in the Frigid Zone, *the four Seasons of the year have themselves with the light.*

The cause of those *Seasons*, with the *light* proposed in the entrance of this *Chapter*, thus stands in the *Frigid Zone*. Of the places in the *Frigid Zone*.

1. The *Center* of the *Sun* for some days or months, (as the place is either nearer or remote from the *Pole*) doth not arise above the *Horizon*, and for so many days setteth not.

2. In those days when he is above the *Horizon*, he only illustrateth those places with his oblique rayes, because he is not much elevated above the *Horizon*; but moveth round it, because those places are over much removed from the way of the *Sun*.

3. The *Sun* is not deeply depressed beneath the *Horizon*; yea, in places near the *Polary Circle*, or *Artick Pole*; although the Center of the *Sun* doth not arise, yet part of his Skirt ariseth and is beheld for some days above the *Horizon* before the *Center* it self ariseth, by reason that the half *Sun* possesseth 15 *minutes* in the *Heaven*. For example, let us take those places whose distance is from the *Æquator* 67 *degrees* towards the *Pole Artick*; let the *Pole* be elevated according to this *Latitude*, and in the *Meridian Circle* of the *Horizon*, you shall see that the *degrees* of the *Ecliptick* do not arise from the 19*th degree* of *Sagittarius*, to the 11 of *Capricorn*; that is the *Center* of the *Sun* being in that *Arch* doth not arise for 24 days, *viz.* from the 10*th* of *December* to the 4*th* of *January*; and yet part of the Skirt of the *Sun* for that whole time shall be above the *Horizon*, to wit, on the 21 of *December* the *Limbus* glittereth the *Horizon*; but on the 10 of *December* as also on the first of *January* half the *Sun* shall be above the *Horizon*, and half beneath, because the *Center* is then in the *Horizon*. But the whole *Sun* shall be elevated above the *Horizon*, when the *Center* of the *Sun* shall hold the 14 *degree* of *Capricorn*; that is about the 4 day of *January*: also the whole shall afterwards appear, when his *Center* shall possess the 16 *degree* of *Sagittarius*, that is about the 7 of *December*.

But in places where the elevation of the *Pole*, is 70 or 75 *degrees*, there this difference between the *Oriental Limbus*, and the *Oriental Center* is very little, so that the *Limbus* or Skirt scarcely anticipateth the rise of the *Center* of the *Sun* one day, or half a day.

From this smallest of depression, it followeth also that they enjoy the light of the *Crepusculum* many hours before the rising, and after the setting of the *Sun*, and although the *Sun* ariseth not, yet in all, or many of the hours of the day they have light in the *Air*.

There is also another cause, which maketh the *Sun* first to be seen before that he is elevated above the *Horizon*. See Chap. 19.

For thence it cometh to pass that not only the *Sun* is seen before he is elevated above the *Horizon*, and before the *Rayes* can directly come from him to the *Eye*; but also that the light of the Twilight sooner illustrateth the *Air*, than it would do without this refraction. We shall anon alledge an example of the appearancy of the *Sun* proceeding from refraction.

4. The

4. The *Full Moon*, and near the *Full*, remaineth above the *Horizon* for many days, when the *Sun* is depressed beneath it, *viz.* for so many more days by how much that place is more near the *Pole*. Yet it is not so highly elevated above the *Horizon*, as to cause any warmness. But the *Full Moon* in those months, in which the *Sun* remaineth above the *Horizon* in an whole revolution, the *Full Moon* is never above the *Horizon*.

The Planets not always the same above Horizon.

5. The *Fixed Stars* are almost the same always above the *Horizon*, but not the *Planets*. For *Saturn* remaineth 15 years above the *Horizon* of the place near the *Pole*, and 15 beneath the same: *Jupiter* 6 years beneath, and 6 above the same *Horizon*: *Mars* 1 year: *Venus* and *Mercury* about half a year. From this cause it is likely that there is great diversity of the motions of the Air and seasons in divers years.

6. The Land in most places of the *Frigid Zone*, is Stony, Rocky, and as hard as Flint; in few places Chalky, Sulphureous and Fat: In these places there is a moderate fertility, in the other a sterility.

7. Those Regions are incompassed with the Sea, but for the *Mediterranean* we as yet have no certain account.

8. Some of the Regions of the *Frigid Zone* have *Mountains* of a moderate hight, but most want them, running on a plain for a long space.

9. The cold Winds there frequently blow from the *Polary Plaga*, seldom the East Wind, and least of all the West. In the cold *Artick Plaga*, the North Winds rage; in the *Antartick*, the *South*.

10. *Clouds* and *Rains* frequently perplex these *Regions*.

From these causes it is not difficult to collect what the condition of the seasons in these *Regions* are; for in the *Winter* time when the *Sun* riseth not for whole daies, it cannot otherwise be, but that for the most part thick *Clouds*, *Frost*, and *Cold* must render the Land uninhabitable. They are not altogether deprived of light for that time; for the *Moon* being above the *Horizon* for a long time giveth light, and the twilight is daily afforded from the *Sun* to the *Vicine Horizon*. But the *Snow*, the *Clouds*, and the *Rain*, are able to hinder both causes, for thick *Clouds* stick close about the *Earth*; which cannot be discussed by the heat of the *Sun*; and therefore hinder the aspect of remote things. There is no fertility, but all barren and uncultivated; for that which some suppose, by how much any *Region* is nearer to the *Pole*, by so much less it feeleth the intenseness of the cold, and the Fields are found more fertil, seemeth not probable to me; when neither in *Nova Zembla* (which is distant 16 *degrees* from the *Pole*) nor in *Spitzbirga* (which is only 8 *degrees* distant) such a constitution of the *Earth* is found: but a roughness and hardness, and almost in the middle of *Summer*, *Snows* or at least *Showers* and very cold *Winds*. Neither is their opinion helped by one example, observed by *Mariners* in a certain *Region* 9 *degrees* distant from the *Pole*, which most men suppose to be *Groenland*. For in this *green Grass* is found, and an Air more warm than in *Nova Zembla*, as is most certain. The only *Animals* peculiar to these *Northern Regions*, is the *Rhinoceros*; and this in the space of a month becometh exceeding fat, by feeding on this grass.

Rhinoceros a kind of Venison.

Nevertheless, seeing that as yet not many *Regions* are hitherto found of this temperature in the *Frigid Zone*, it is not expedient for us from this single example to make a general conjecture, especially seeing that the cause of this peculiar constitution is manifest, for that Land is full of *Marshes* and *Sedgey*, and the grass by which the *Rhinoceros* or *Dear* are rendred so fat, is not a kind of *Terrestrial Grass*, but *Sedge* and *Osiers*; but other *Herbs* are not there found, or any *Trees*. From whence we may gather, that that Land containeth some fat and *Sulphureous Substance*; which being mixed which the water produceth such an *Oyle*, and fattening *Sedge*; but that the like *Earth* is to be found in other parts of the *Frigid Zone*, hath not as yet been observed, but rather the contrary.

There-

Therefore in the *Winter* in theſe places is little light, but an incredible and great violence of *Cold*, *Snow*, *Showers*, and *Polary Winds*. And this *Winter* beginneth in the *Northern Frigid Zone*, when the *Sun* firſt entreth *Capricorn*; although alſo the *Autumn*, the *Sun* going from the 1 *degree* of *Libra* to the 1 of *Capricorn*, be little different from this violent *Winter*. The *Spring* indeed is leſs infeſted with this violence of the Air; yet it is without *Snows*, *Showers*, and cold *Polary Winds*. Yet the increaſe of heat in the day, or rather the decreaſe of cold, is diſcovered at that time, *viz.* the *Sun* going from the 1 *degree* of *Aries* to the 1 of *Cancer*. And in this *Vernal ſeaſon*, or in the latter days of it, the *Sun* continueth above the *Horizon* in intire revolutions; and therefore then there is diſcovered a moderate heat, which yet is not of that force as to melt and diſſolve the *Snow* of all thoſe places into *Water*, much leſs is it able to melt the *Ice*; whence Marriners report, that here is to be found *Snow* and *Ice* of a perpetual duration: Then the *Summer* ſhall be, from the going of the *Sun* from the 1 *degree* of *Cancer* to the 1 of *Libra*; in the firſt part of which, the *Sun* yet remaineth for whole daies above the *Horizon*, and augmenteth the heat by ſome acceſſion; ſo that *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, are months of a tolerable Air. In ſome places among the *Mountains*, the heat of the *Sun* is intenſe; but the *Showers* and *Clouds* do much hinder this benignity of the *Sun*, and eſpecially the moſt ſharp *Northern Winds*, unto which ſometimes *Snow* is adjoyned; ſo that no fruits or Corn can here arrive to any maturity, except in ſome places near the *Artick Circle*.

CHAP. XXVII.

Of the Shadows, *which the bodies erected in the* Earth, *and illuminated by the* Sun *do caſt; and of the diviſion of the* Earth *ariſing from thence.*

SEeing that the *Shadows* in divers places of the *Earth*, which the illuminated bodies of the *Sun* do caſt, are carryed into divers places, and falling on the Senſe, have much variety; hence it came to paſs, that men who were ignorant of this cauſe, were ſtruck with an admiration; and in reſpect of the *Shadows* of the *Earth*, divided the Inhabitants of the *Earth*, as it were into three ſorts, (which diviſion muſt be applyed to the places of the *Earth*, or to its *Superficies*:) So that they termed ſome *Amphiſcij*, others *Heteroſcij*, and the reſt *Periſcij*. The explication of which terms, ſeeing that they contain but ſmall learning; we ſhall ſay ſomewhat alſo concerning *Shadows*, which although they do not pertain to *Geography*; yet by reaſon of their near affinity, they may be propoſed in this *Chapter*.

The *Shadows* receive their denominations from the parts or quarters of the *World* into which they are caſt, as the *Oriental Shadow*, which tendeth into the *Eaſt*, from the *Sun* placed in the *Weſt*. Contrariwiſe, the *Occidental Shadow*, which goeth into the *Weſtern Plaga* or *quarter*. But here is chiefly to be conſidered the *Meridian Shadow*, which is ſcituated on the *Plain* of the *Meridian*; or which is caſt from bodies perpendicularly erected, or ſeated in the *plain* of the *Meridian*; the *Sun* then being in the *Meridian*, and this is two fold, *viz.* *Northern* and *Southern*. Of Shadows

The Inhabitants of that part of the *Earth*, are termed *Heteroſcij*, where the *Meridian Shadows* of bodies erected, are conſtantly carried all days of the year to either *Pole*.

The *Periſcij*, are thoſe Inhabitasnt of the *Earth*, where the *Shadows* of erect bodies in one and the ſame day, are carried about into all the *Plagas* of the *Horizon*; or where the *Meridian Shadows* in one and the ſame day are caſt to both the quarters of the *Meridian*.

The *Amphiſcij* are thoſe Inhabitants of the *Earth*, where the *Meridian ſhadows* of the erected bodies in ſome days of the year, are caſt to the *North*, and on otherſom to the *South*.

Propoſition I.

The Shadows of bodies erected above the Horizontal plain, fall upon the quarter oppoſite to it, in which the Sun exiſteth.

Of Shadows in reference to Opticks and Dyalling.

Thoſe that are verſed in the *Opticks* and *Horology*, are wont to ſay that a *Shadow*, an *Opac* and *Luminous body*, are in one *Plain*; but the *Term* or *bound* of the *Shadow*, the *extremity* of the *Opac*, and the *Sun*, are in one *right line*.

For becauſe the *Opac*, the *Shadow*, and *line* concealed from the *extremity* of the *Opac*, to the *extremity* of the *Shadow*, make a *Triangle*: now every *Triangle* is in one *plain*, therefore thoſe three *lines* ſhall be in one *plain*: the *Sun* is in the extremity of the *line* conjoyning the extremity of the *Opacity*, and the *Shadow*. Moreover an erect body is right to the *Horizontal plain*; wherefore the *plain* drawn through it, (*viz.* that of the forementioned *Triangle*) is alſo ſtreight to that *Horizontal plain*, and therefore ſeated in the *Vertical plain*; and becauſe a body erected is ſeated as it were a *Vertex* between the *Sun* and *Shadow*, therefore the *Sun* and *Shadow* ſhall be in the oppoſite quarter.

There are three parts of this *Shadow*, which the *Stile erected*, being illuminated from the *Sun*, doth caſt, *viz.* a *Denſe Shadow*, a *Central*, and a *Shadow* which is almoſt a *Denſe Shadow*, which a ray coming from the uppermoſt edge of the *Sun* doth terminate; a *Central ſhadow* is that which is intercepted between the ray of the *Superior edge*, and the *Central ray*: the *penumbra* is that which is intercepted between the *Central ray*, and the ray of the lower.

Propoſition II.

The Inhabitants of the places of the Earth *which ly in the* Tropick *of* Cancer *and* Capricorn *are* Heteroſcij.

The people in the Tropicks are Heteroſcij.

For when the *Sun* is in the firſt *degree* of *Cancer*; that very day the bodies erected in any point of the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, do abſorbe the *Shadow* of the *Sun* poſſeſſing their *Meridian*, becauſe that then the *Sun* perpendicularly from his *Vertex* hangeth over the *Horizon*; and therefore illuminateth all parts of it: neither doth any ray from the erect *Opac* hinder like this, which perpendicularly falleth on the *plain* of the *Horizon*; and therefore lyeth in the very *Opac*.

But in other days of the year, becauſe the *Sun* declineth from the *Vertex* of the places of the *Tropick* towards the *South*; therefore the *Shadow* is caſt in the *Meridies* towards the *North*, never towards the *South*. On the contrary in the places of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, every day it is caſt towards the *South*, (except on one day, in which there will be no *Shadow*;) never towards the *North*.

Propo-

Propoſition III.

The Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone *are* Amphiſcii.

Let any place of the *Torrid Zone* be taken in the Globe, and let it be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the Parallel of the *Latitude*, which ſhall cut the *Ecliptick* in two points, be deſcribed by Chalk applied. When therefore the *Sun* ſhall be in theſe points of the *Ecliptick*, he ſhall deſcribe by his circumvolution a *Parallel*, which ſhall directly hang over the Parallel deſcribed; and therefore on thoſe two days, in which he obtaineth thoſe points of the *Ecliptick*, in the aſſumed place, and in all ſcituated in the deſcribed *Parallel*, he ſhall be vertical in the *Meridies*, and illuſtrate all the places of the Horizon. And therefore no *ſhadow* ſhall be caſt on theſe two days; and the Inhabitants ſhall be *Amphiſcii*, without any ſhadow: but on the other days of the year they ſhall not be ſo, but the *Meridian ſhadow* ſhall either be caſt to the North, or to the South; to the North, whilſt the *Sun* moveth in that part of the *Ecliptick*, which lie in thoſe two points before noted towards the South. On the contrary, to the South, whilſt the *Sun* moveth in that part of the *Ecliptick*, which is ſcituated from thoſe two points towards the North.

The Inhabitants of the Torrid Zone, are called *Amphiſcii.*

Propoſition IV.

The Inhabitants of the Temperate Zone, *are* Heteroſcii.

For becauſe the *Sun* in all thoſe days of the year, in the *Meridies*, is moved from the places of the *North Temperate Zone* towards that quarter, to wit, the *South*; and on the contrary, from the places of the *South Temperate Zone*, towards the *North*; it followeth from the firſt *Propoſition*, that the *Meridian ſhadow* of the places of the *North Temperate Zone*, bend to the ſame quarter all the days of the year, (*viz.* the *North*:) on the contrary, to the *South*, in the places of the *South Temperate Zone*.

The Inhabitants of the Temperate zone, are called *Heteroſcii.*

Propoſition V.

The Inhabitants of the Frigid Zones, *are* Periſcii.

For by reaſon, that on ſome days of the year the *Sun* ſetteth not in theſe places, but moveth round about the *Horizon*; it is alſo neceſſary that the *ſhadow* ſhould be carried round into all quarters, and the *Sun* being in the ſuperiour Semicircle of the *Meridian*, the *ſhadow* is caſt towards the *North*; and when the *Sun* is in the inferiour Semicircle, the *ſhadow* is carried towards the *Southern quarter*.

The Inhabitants of the Frigid Zone, are called *Periſcii.*

Propoſition VI.

A place of the Torrid Zone *being given, to find the days of the year, in which the Inhabitants of that place ſhall be without any ſhadow; and in what days the ſhadows are carried to the North, and in what to the South.*

Let the days of the year, in which the *Sun* becometh vertical to the place given, be found; thoſe ſhall be the days in which the Inhabitants of that place ſhall be without a ſhadow. For this, uſe the Mode in the third *Propoſition*.

Propoſition VII.

The day of the year being given, to find the places of the Earth in the Globe, whoſe Inhabitants are Amphiſcii *that day.*

Let the places be found, in which the *Sun* becometh vertical on the day of the year given, (according to the *9th Propoſition* in the *24th Chapter*,) theſe ſhall be the places ſought.

Propoſition VIII.

A place of the Frigid Zone *being given, to find the days of the year, in which the Inhabitants of it are* Periſcii.

Let the days of the year be found, in which the *Sun* ſetteth not in the given place, (according to the 10 *Propoſition* of the *24th Chapter*,) they are the days ſought.

Propoſition IX.

The day of the year being given, to find out the places of the Frigid Zone, *the Inhabitants of which are* Periſcii *that day, ſo that this day be the firſt day.*

Let thoſe places of the *Frigid Zone* be found, in which the *Sun* in the day given doth not firſt begin to ſet; they ſhall be the places ſought for.

Propoſition X.

In places ſcituated in the Æquator, *the* Meridian ſhadow *falleth half the year towards the North, the other half towards the South, and in the days of the* Equinoxes, *the Inhabitants are* Amphiſcii.

For becauſe the *Sun* in one half of the year recedeth from the *Æquator* towards the South, the other half, towards the North; the ſhadows are carried to the quarter oppoſite to the quarter of the *Sun*, and thence it cometh to paſs, that in one half year the *Meridian ſhadows* are carried to the North, and the other half to the South.

Propoſition XI.

To place a Plain above the Horizontal Plain *of our place, in which the erected* Styles *perpendicular may be the* Amphiſcii *for ſome days of the year; on ſome days of the year the* Meridian ſhadows *may be carried to the North, on others, to the South; that is, in which the* Meridian ſhadows *may be ſo caſt, as in ſome given place of the* Torrid Zone.

Let the *Latitude* of the place given of the *Torrid Zone* be taken from the *Latitude* of our place, if the *Latitudes* be cognominal; but if they be of a diverſe ſpecies, let both the *Latitudes* be added, and the remaining *degrees* kept; then in the *Horizontal Plain* the *Meridian line* being found, and alſo the *line* of the *Æquator*, which is perpendicular to the *Meridian line*, let ſome Plain be erected above the line of the *Æquator*, that it may incline above the Horizon ſo many degrees as were kept before. The *Styles* or *Pins* erected in this Plain ſhall caſt ſuch ſhadows, as if they were erected in the places of the *Torrid Zone*.

Pro-

Propoſition XII.

In the places ſeated in the Æquator, *the ſhadow of the* Style *perpendicularly erected in the whole days of the* Æquinoxes, *remaineth in one right Line, whether before Noon it be continually caſt into one quarter of the Weſt, or after Noon, into a quarter of the Eaſt; now in the other days of the year the ſhadow is carried round into the Semicircle.*

Of Places ſeated without the Æquator.

In Places ſcituated without the *Æquator* in the *Torrid Zone*, whilſt the *Sun* is moved in part of the *Ecliptick*, which lieth between the *Vertex* of any place, and the vicine *Tropick*, the *ſhadow* wandreth through the leſſer part of the ſubject Superficies in a *Semicircle*. In the Places of the *Temperate Zones*, whilſt the *Sun* is moved in a more remote *Circle* from thoſe of the *Zodiack*, the ſhadows ſteal by the leſſer Superficies in a *Semicircle*, and the greater, whilſt the *Sun* runneth through the nearer *Semicircle* of the *Zodiack*. In the days of the *Æquinoxes*, the *ſhadow* of an erected *Style* is carried round in a *Semicircle* in all the places of the *Earth*, except the *Æquator* and the *Pole*.

Theſe are all rendred perſpicuous, partly from the ſight of the Globe, and partly from the *declination* of the *Diagrams*.

Propoſition XIII.

In the places of the Torrid Zone, *whilſt the* Sun *is in the Arch of the Ecliptick, between the vicine Tropick and the Parallels of the place, in thoſe days the ſhadow of the erected Style twice returneth back, and goeth over the Lines left behind*, viz. *once before Noon, and once after Noon. The* Sun *alſo in theſe days will ſeem to inflect his courſe.*

Of the ſhadow of the Sun in the places of the Torrid Zone.

Take any place of the *Torrid Zone* in the Globe, and let the *Pole* be elevated according to his *Latitude*, and let the Parallel of the place be deſcribed, which ſhall cut the *Ecliptick* in two points; I ſay, that whilſt the *Sun* moveth in the intercepted Arch of the *Ecliptick*, between this *Parallel* and the vicine *Tropick*, in thoſe days the *Sun* will ſeem to be twice retrograde, and go over the *lines* left behind. Let any of the Points of that Arch be taken, and let the Parallel of the *Sun* be deſcribed, *viz.* which the *Sun* being in that point deſcribeth by *Diurnal circumvolution*: For Example, take the firſt *degree* of *Cancer* or *Capricorn*, and another of their *Tropicks*, for ſo there will be no need of the deſcription of a *Parallel*, until it come to the *point* in which the *Quadrant* toucheth the *Parallel*; the *Sun* being in this Seat, or in this quarter, will ſeem to bend his courſe towards the *Vertex* of the place, and the *ſhadow* ſhall begin to be retrograde from the *line* of the *Æquator* towards the *Meridian line*. After the ſame manner, if that you apply the *Quadrant* to the *Occidental part* of the *Parallel*, you ſhall ſee in that point in which the *Quadrant* toucheth the *Parallel*, that the *Sun* goeth to the quarters he hath left, and ſetteth in that quarter in which ſome hours before he was.

Corollary. Therefore it is not againſt Nature, that the *ſhadow* ſhould go back on *Sun-Dials*; but then it is miraculous, if that it be done ſuddenly in a noted ſpace; alſo if it repeateth the *lineary hours*, *viz.* if that the *Style* be not perpendicular, but parallel to the *Mundane Axeltree*: yea, although it be *perpendicular*, yet do not the *lines* of the *ſhadow* it ſelf ſhew the *hours*, but the *lines* of the *ſhadows* of the *Axis* of the *World*, part of which is concealed in the mind on the *Dial*, if that it be wanting.

Propoſition XIV.

A place being given in the Torrid Zone, *and one day of thoſe in which the Sun ſeemeth to bend his courſe, and the ſhadow of the Style ſeemeth to go back; to find the quarter in which the Sun then ſhall be, and the hour when it ſhall be.*

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given, and let the place of the *Sun* be found at the given day, and let it be noted in the *Ecliptick*, and let the *Parallel* be deſcribed with Chalk, which the *Sun* being in that point deſcribeth. Let the *Quadrant* be applied to the *Vertex*, and ſo turned about until it touch the deſcribed *Parallel*: ſo the extremity of the *Quadrant* in the *Horizon*, ſhall ſhew the place ſought for. Now that the hour may be found, let that point of the *Parallel* be noted in which the contact is made; let the *Index* be placed at the twelfth hour of the *Cycle*, and let the noted point of the *Parallel* be turned to the *Meridian*. The *Index* will ſhew how many hours before, and how many hours after Noon the regreſs beginneth.

Propoſition XV.

The Longitude of the ſhadows decreaſeth, the Altitude of the Sun *increaſing; and on the contrary, the Altitude of the* Sun *decreaſing, the ſhadow increaſeth.*

They decreaſe from the Eaſt to the *Meridies*; and from the *Meridies* to the ſetting, the Shadows again increaſe.

For the *Sun* is more near the *vertex* of the *Style*, by how much the more he is elevated above the *Horizon*; therefore the ray of the *Sun* terminating the *ſhadow*, becometh alſo more nigh the *ſtyle*, and on that account the *ſhadow* becometh leſſer. Moreover, the *Sun* hath the greateſt Altitude in the *Meridies*; therefore the Longitude of the *ſhadow* then ſhall be leſſer. But in the riſing and ſetting of the *Sun* there is no Altitude; therefore the Longitude of the *ſhadow* ſhall be infinite.

Propoſition XVI.

The Longitude of the Style, and the ſhadow being given, to find the Altitude of the Sun above the Horizon, *and thence the hour of the day; if that moreover the Latitude of the place, and day of the year be known.*

The Longitude of the *Style*, the *ſhadow*, and the *ray* terminating the ſhadow, makes a *right Angled Triangle*: therefore let the proportion be inſtituted according to the *15th Propoſition* of the *ſecond Chapter*. As the Longitude of the *ſhadow* is to the Longitude of the *ſtyle*: ſo are the whole ſigns to the *Tangent* of the *Angle*, which ſheweth the *Altitude* of the *Sun*.

See Propoſit. 3. Chap. 29.

From this Altitude and Latitude of the place, and day of the year, ſhall the *hour* of the *day* be found out.

Propoſition XVII.

The Semidiameter of the Sun *and Earth being given, and the diſtance of the* Sun *from the Earth, to find out the Longitude of the ſhadow, which the whole Earth caſteth towards Heaven.*

Of the Longitude of the Shadow.

The *ſhadow* of the Earth is Conical, as the *Opticks* demonſtrate, and is eaſily ſhewed by a *Diagram*: therefore the diſtance of the *vertex* of this Cone, which cauſeth the Eclipſe of the *Moon*, from the *Earth*, is ſought; that is found by this *Propoſition*: for as the diſtance of the *Semidiameters* of the *Sun*

Sun and *Earth* are to the distance given, so is the *Semidiameter* of the Earth to the *Longitude* of the *shadow* of the *Earth*, or to the Axis of the *shady Cone*.

Proposition XVIII.

The distance of the Moon *from the* Earth, *and the Longitude of the* Shadow *of the Earth being given, to find how great a part of the* Moon *is obscured; how great the Eclipse will be, if that the* Moon *remain in the Ecliptick.*

Let the *Rule* of *Three* be instituted according to this proportion; As the Longitude of the *shadow* is to the excess of this Longitude above the distance of the *Moon*: so the *Semidiameter* of the Earth is to that *shady Cone* of the Earth, in that part where the *Moon* entred it. Of the Eclipse of the *Moon*.

Furthermore; As the distance of the *Moon* is to the found out *Semidiameter* of the *shadow*: so are the whole signs of the *Canon* to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* of *sight*, which the half diameter of *shadow* subtendeth to our eye; which, if it be doubled, the *Angle* of *sight* is accounted for the whole diameter of the *shadow*. With this *Angle*, let the *Angle* of *sight*, or the apparent *Semidiameter* of the *Moon*, which is in opposition of the *Sun*, or in time of *Eclipse*, be compared.

From this *Comparation* the quantity of the obscurity will be made manifest, which if you desire to have in *Digits*, institute a *Rule* of *Proportion* after this manner: As the diameter of the *Moon* is to twelve *Digits*, so is the apparent diameter of the *shadow*, or *Angle* of *sight*, to the *Ecliptick Digits*.

Proposition XIX.

By how much the places of the Earth, every day are more remote from the Æquator, *or from the Parallel of the* Sun; *by so much the more, both the* Meridian shadow, *as well as the* shadows *of the rest of the hours, are longer.*

For because the *Sun* is more remote from the *Vertex* of those places, therefore also the *rays* of the *Sun* terminating the *shadow*, are more remote from the *Style*; and therefore the *shadow* is so much the longer extended.

Proposition XX.

If that the Style be placed in any plain after such a Mode, that it becomes part of the Axis of the World, or that it be Parallel to that Axis, the shadow of that Style shall fall on a certain hour, on the very line of that Plain, in which this Line is cut by the great Horary Circle, whether of declination, or from the Meridian, in which the Sun is at that hour.

For the *shadow* of the *Axis* of the World, or the *style* so placed, falleth on the *plain* of the *Horary* or *Meridian Circle*, in which the *Sun* is at that moment of time; for neither can it fall beyond the Plain, seeing that the *Sun*, the *Opac body*, and the *Shadow* are in one Plain, upon which the *Style* is placed. Wherefore seeing this *Style* is upon this Plain, as also on the Plain of the *Meridian*, which the *Sun* keepeth for a moment; thence it followeth, that this *shadow* may fall on the common Section of this *Plain*, or the Plain of the *Meridian*, or of the *Horary Circle*: For if any *Line* be in two or more Plains, it shall be in the common Section of those *Plains*. A moment, or small space of an hour.

Pro-

Proposition XXI.

To describe the Æquinoctial *Night-Dial.*

Æquinoctial Night-Dial.

A Plain of *Wood*, *Paper*, *Braß*, or other Mettal, must be erected above the *Horizon*, so many *degrees* as the *Æquator* is elevated above the *Horizon*; or so many *degrees* as are in the Complement of the *Latitude* of the place.

Before it be erected, it is necessary to draw the Lines of the *Scioterick*; therefore let what point you please be taken in that *Plain*, and let the *Periphery* of the Circle be described from it, as from a *Center*. Let a line Parallel to the *Horizon* be drawn through that *Center*; or let the Line be Parallel to the common Section of the *Æquator* and the *Horizon*, which shall be the Line of the *shadow* of the hour of six in the Evening, and six in the Morning. Let a Line perpendicular to this be drawn from the *Center*, which shall be the *shadow* of the twelfth hour: then let both the *Quadrants* be divided into three parts, and every one of those three, into two, so that the six Arches may be in every one of them, whereof every one shall be of fifteen *degrees*; and let them be drawn from the *Center* to the terms or bounds of the Arches of the right Line, these shall be the Lines of the *shadows* for the beginnings of the remaining hours, which fall between *twelve* and *six*, whose number and order must be set down at the extremities of the Lines drawn; the same Arches of fifteen *degrees* beneath the *Horizontal line* must be taken in the described *Periphery* for the hours before *six* in the Morning, and *six* in the Evening; and the Lines of the *shadows* must be drawn; the *perpendicular Style* must also be erected from the *Center*.

Furthermore, In the *Horizontal plain* (if that the Plain of the *Scioterick* be not yet erected) the *Meridian line* must be found, and the Line of the *Æquinoctial rising* and *setting*; and so it must be placed on or above this Plain of the *Scioterick*, that the *Horizontal line* of the *Scioterick* may be parallel to this Line of the *rising* and *setting*: so the *shadow* of the *Style* shall shew the beginning of the hours at every *day* of the year.

But because the *Sun* only illustrateth this one *Superficies* of this *Plain* half a year, and the other another half year, therefore in both the *Superficies* a *Scioterick* must be made after the appointed Mode laid down before; that on one side of it, in the time of *Summer* and *Spring*; in the other, in the time of *Autumn*, the *hours* may be known by the benefit of the *Shadows*.

The Lines of the *Circle*, which shew the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*, or the entrance of the *Sun* into the twelve *Signs* of the *Zodiack*, and which do represent the *Parallels*, which the *Sun* describeth in the Heaven by his *circumvolution*, may easily be drawn on this *Æquinoctial Scioterick*. For let a certain Magnitude of the *Style* be taken, and let it be accurately divided into *Ten parts*, and *one* of these Ten into *ten* other parts, that the whole *Line* may be conceived to be cut into an *hundred particles*: then from a Table of *Declinations*, let the Declinations of the *Sun* be excepted, the *fifth*, the *tenth*, the *fifteenth*, the *twentieth*, the *twenty fifth*, the *thirtieth degrees* of *Aries*; or the *first*, the *fifteenth degrees* of *Taurus*; the *first*, the *fifteenth degrees* of *Taurus*; the *first*, the *fifteenth degrees* of *Gemini*; the *first degree* of *Cancer*: and let the *Tangents* be taken from the *Mathematical Canon*.

Moreover, from the *Center* of the *Horologe* in the interval of the *Tangent* of Complement of the *fifth degree* of *Aries*, let the *Periphery* of the *Circle* be described; this will note the entrance of the *Sun* into the *fifth degree* of *Aries*, and the *twenty fifth* of *Virgo*, and the Parallel of the *Sun* for that day, *viz.* when the diurnal extremity of the *shadow*, by its *circumvolution*, shall fall on this described *Periphery*, it shall be a sign, that the *Sun* is in the *fifth degree* of *Aries*, or the *twenty fifth* of *Virgo*. After the same Mode, let the *Peripheries* be described in the interval of the *Complement* of the *tenth* and the

twen-

twentieth degrees of *Aries*, the *first* and the *fifteenth* of *Taurus*, the *first* and *the fifteenth* of *Gemini*, and the *first degree* of *Cancer*; those will shew the *Parallels* of the *Sun* in those points, and also in the points of the 20*th degree* of *Virgo*, the 10*th* and the *first* of *Virgo*; the 15*th* of *Leo* and the *first* of *Leo*; and the 15*th degree* of *Cancer*.

After the same Mode on the other side of the *Scioterick*, let the *Peripheries* be described for the *Parallels* of the *Sun* in the *first degree* of *Libra*, and the 25*th* of *Pisces*; in the 10*th* of *Libra*, and the 20*th* of *Pisces*; in the 15*th* of *Libra*, and the 15*th* of *Pisces*; in the *first* of *Scorpio*, and the *first* of *Pisces*; in the 15*th* of *Scorpio*, and the 15*th* of *Aquarius*; and in the *first degree* of *Sagittarius*, and the *first* of *Aquarius*.

Unto every one of these *Peripheries*, the Characters of the Signs of the *Zodiack* must be ascribed.

Proposition XXII.

To describe an Horizontal Scioterick, *or an* Horizontal Plain.

An Horizontal Scioterick, or Horizontal Plain, described.

By the Globe. Let the *Pole* and *Meridian* be elevated for the Latitude of the place, which *Meridian* is more conspicuous than the other *lines* in the *Superficies*, both for colour and magnitude: let it be brought under the *Brazen Meridian*; let the *Index* be placed at the hour of twelve; let the Globe be turned round, until the *Index* shew the hour One or Eleven, or until 15 *degrees* of the *Æquator* do pass the *Brazen Meridian*. In this scituation of the Globe, let the *degrees* intercepted between the *Brazen Meridian* and the *Meridian* of the Globe be numbred on the *Wooden Horizon*, and let this hour be noted for the hour of *One* after noon, and *Eleven* before noon.

Then let the Globe be turned again, until the *Index* shew the hour 11 or 10, and let the *degree* intercepted between those two *Meridians*, the *Brazen* one and that assumed, be noted for the 10*th* or 11*th* hour. After the same manner, let it be done for the hours 9 and 3, for 8 and 4, for 7 and 5, for 6 and 6, (but we shall not want this hour) for 5 and 7, for 4 and 8, for 3 and 9. These *degrees* being thus noted for every ascribed hour, let the *Meridian line* be found on the *Horizontal Plain*; and for any point of this *line*, let the *periphery* of the *Circle* be described as from a *Center*, and let it be drawn perpendicularly from the *Center* to the same, on either side. This shall be the *line* of the *shadow* at the hour 6 before noon, and 6 after noon. The *Meridian line* is the *line* of the *shadow* of the hour 12. In the described *periphery*, let the *Arches* before noted be cut of, beginning from the *Meridian line* towards the *line* of the hour 6, before and after noon. First, the *Arch* noted for 11 and 1, then for the hour 10 and 2, for 9 and 3, for 8 and 4, &c. The *Arches* thus cut off, let the *lines* be drawn from the *Center* to those bounds; these shall be the *lines* of the *shadows* in the beginning and end of the other hours.

But the *Style* must be so elevated from the Center of the *Horologe*, above the *Meridian line*, that the *Angle* which it maketh with it may be equal to the *Latitude* of the place, or elevation of the *Pole*. But it is more commodious to make some *Triangle*, whose *Angle* at the *Basis* is equal to the *Latitude* of the place. If the *declination* be made on Paper, let the *line* be drawn from the *Center*, which from the *periphery* may take an *Arch* equal to the *Latitude* of the place; (the *Numeration* being from the *Meridian line*,) and let the *Triangle* be cut out to be placed above the *Meridian line*; so the *shadow* will shew the *hours*. The making of this *Scioterick*, is easie without a Globe.

Pro-

Proposition XXIII.

To describe a Scioterick *on a vertical Plain, which may directly regard the East and West* Æquinoctial.

A *Sciotrick*, what.

The making of this is perfected after the same Mode, which we used in the *Horizontal*, if that the *Pole* be not elevated according to the *Latitude* of the place, but according to the *Complement* of it; and then the *Style* also be elevated above the *Meridian*, according to this *Complement*; but this is better learned by Instruction, than long Precepts.

Proposition XXIV.

To make a Scioterick *in our Horizontal, or other Plain, which shall shew the hours of other places, although remote from ours.*

This may be done on our *Scioterick*, which was made to shew the hours of our place. First consider, whether the place given lie *East* or *West* from ours; if *Eastwards*, the 12*th* hour must be reckoned there, before in our place; if *Westwards*, more later. Then let our place be brought to the *Meridian*, the *Index* to the hour 12; and let the Globe be turned until the other place come to the *Meridian*; the *Index* will shew what *hour* is in this place, when it is 12 in ours. From hence it is easie to collect the hours of that place, which may agree with the 1, 2, 3, 4; also 11, 10, 9, 8, &c. of ours, which then must be ascribed to them. But this may be done more elegantly without the Globe, according to the Mode that the *Horizontals* are composed.

Proposition XXV.

To elevate a Plain above the Horizon *of our place, and in that Plain to make a* Scioterick, *in which the shadows of the Hours may seem to go backwards, as in the places of the* Torrid Zone.

Because the Elevation of the *Plain* is left to our choice, therefore we shall chuse such an one as is commodious to our purpose: For Example, we shall so place the Plain above our *Horizon*, or above the *Æquinoctial line*, East and West, that the *Axis* of the World, or *Pole*, may be elevated ten *degrees* above it: So the shadow shall begin to be retrograde, the *Sun* being entred into the 26*th degree* of *Aries*: and it shall so do, until the *Sun* comes to the 4*th degree* of *Virgo*.

Therefore let the *Plain* be so constituted, and the *Horologue* so made, that it may be in the place of the *Latitude* of 51, the *Plain* shall be elevated 41 *degrees*; so the *Pole* shall be elevated above that 10 *degrees*. In this *Plain* an *Horizontal Scioterick* may be made for the Elevation of the *Pole* 10 *degrees*. Where, when the *lines* of the *shadows* are brought from the *Center* of the *Horologue*, and extended far enough, let their parts about the *Center* be blotted out, and the *Center* also, and let a *perpendicular Style* be erected in any point of the Altitude of the *Meridian line*, such as shall exhibit a *Gnomonical Triangle*; and the extremity of this *Style*, by its shadow falling on the *lines* of the *shadows*, shall shew the *hours*, and also the *shadow* shall seem to be retrograde on those days.

See Propos. 22.

Also by the assistance of the *Terrestrial Globe*, *Meridional*, *Polary*, and *Inclining Sciotericks* of all sorts may be described. But because this matter appertaineth to another Discipline, *viz.* to *Dialling*, therefore I think it unnecessary to treat of all these here.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVIII.

Of the Comparison of the Celestial Affections in divers places of the Earth.

From the consideration of the agreement and difference of the *Celestial Appearances*, in the divers places of the Earth, proceedeth the denomination of the Inhabitants, (which some have mistaken for the division,) by which some are said to be *Antœci*, others *Periœci*, and others *Antipodes*. See Scheme.

Those are said to be *Antœci*, or the Inhabitants of two places, which lye in the same *Semicircle* of the same *Meridian*, but from a divers quarter of the *Æquator*, to wit, one towards the North, and another towards the South; but yet so, that they are equally distant from the *Æquator*. Of the denomination of the Inhabitants of the Earth.

Periœci, are the Inhabitants of two places, which lye in the same *Parallel*, and in divers *Semicircles* of the same *Meridian*. Sometimes the word is taken for all the Inhabitants of any one *Climate*; but to avoid confusion, we shall abstain from that use of it.

Antipodes, are the Inhabitants of two places, which *diametrically* are opposed one to the other.

Note, That these three words are so taken for the most part, that they denote the Inhabitants of both places, which are compared as we defined them: but yet sometimes, when any certain place is adjoyned to them, they only denote the other place; as when we say, the *Periœci*, or *Antipodes* of this or that place.

Proposition I.

Those who live in the same Semicircle of the same Meridian, they have also the same Meridies, *or* 12 *hours; and also reckon together all the other hours.*

For the *Meridies* is defined by the existency or appulse of the *Sun* to the *Meridian*, because therefore those places of the Earth, which inhabit in the same *Meridian* of the Earth, have also the same *Meridian* of the Heaven; thence it is manifest, that the *Sun* in the same *Meridian* to those that inhabit it, maketh the *Meridies* and the 12*th hour* to them all at one time. Moreover an *hour* is defined to be that 24*th* part of that time, which intercedeth between two vicine *Noons*, or *appulses* of the Sun to the same *Semicircle* of the *Meridian*. Because therefore that it is the same time which intercedeth between the two *Meridies* of the places of the same *Meridian*; therefore also the 24*th* part of the same shall be equal, and the same in all; and on that account, they shall together number all their hours from the *Meridies*.

Proposition II.

They which dwell in the divers Hemispheres of the Earth, which the Æquator *maketh or distinguisheth; or those who live in the divers parts or quarters of the* Æquator; *they, I say, have contrary Seasons of the year at the same time, and the same Seasons in a different time of the year: so that in one Hemisphere it is Winter, when as in the other it is Summer; and when the Spring is in that, Autumn is in this.*

For the *Summer* beginneth in every place according to the *Celestial* course, *viz.* the motion of the *Sun*, when he obtaineth a small distance from the *Vertex* of the place: the *Winter*, when a great distance. Now because the Of the different Seasons which the *Æquator* maketh.

Sun moveth from one *Hemiſphere* to the other, thence it cometh to paſs, that when it draweth near the places of one *Hemiſphere*, it more and more departeth from the places of the other; and ſo the *Summer* of one *Hemiſphere* agreeth in time, with the *Winter* of another; and the *Spring* of one with the *Autumn* of another.

In the places of the *Torrid Zone*, the viciſſitude of the Seaſons hath ſome-
See Chap. 26. thing peculiar, of which we have treated at large in the *26th Chapter*.

Propoſition III.

Thoſe who live in the Northern Hemiſphere of the Earth, to them, when they turn their faces towards the Æquator, *the Eaſt is on the left hand, and the Weſt on the right; the South before them, and the North behind them. Thoſe who inhabit the Southern Hemiſphere of the Earth, they turning their faces to the* Æquator, *the Stars riſe on their right hand, and ſet on their left.*

Of thoſe who live under the Æquator.

Thoſe who live under the very *Æquator*, if they turn their faces towards the *Northern Pole*, they then have the *Eaſt* on their right hand, and the *Weſt* on their left; but if they turn their faces towards the *Southern Pole*, it is contrariwiſe.

Thoſe who live in the *Northern Hemiſphere*, to them, their faces being turned to the *Æquator*, the *Sun* going in the *Northern Semicircle* of the *Zodiack*, will ſeem to riſe and ſet behind them; but perambulating the other *Semicircle*, he will ſeem before them. The contrary hapneth in the *Northern Hemiſphere*: and the contrary will alſo be obſerved, if you turn your faces towards the *Poles*.

Theſe are manifeſt from the conſideration of his *circumvolution*, and may be illuſtrated on the *Globe*; but *Mariners*, and others, unskilful of the *Celeſtial motions* are wont to wonder at it, when they ſayl from our *Hemiſphere* into the *Southern Hemiſphere*.

Propoſition IV.

The Celeſtial Affections of the Antœci *compared amongſt themſelves, are thus.*

See Propoſ. 1. 1. They have the ſame *Meridies*, the ſame *Midnight*, and reckon all their hours together, as is manifeſt from the firſt *Propoſition* of this *Chapter*.

2. They have contrary Seaſons of the year at the ſame time; for when it is *Spring* in one place, it is *Autumn* in another; when that hath *Summer*, this
Propoſition 2. hath *Winter*, as is manifeſt from the ſecond *Propoſition* of this *Chapter*.

3. The *days* of one place are equal to the *nights* of the other; and the *days* of this, to the *nights* of the former.

4. When the *days* of one place increaſe to the longeſt day, in the mean while the *days* of the other decreaſe, even to the ſhorteſt: for they have oppoſite equal *days* in their Kalendar. For Example; the day of one place at the *twentieth* of *April*, is equal to the *twentieth* of *October* in the other place.

5. On the days of the *Æquinoctial*, the *Sun* riſeth and ſetteth together to them; but on other days ſooner to the one than the other: alſo in thoſe two days the *Sun* hath the ſame altitude above the Horizon of the *Antœci*, at every moment of time; but on other days a different *Altitude*.

6. To thoſe that turn their faces one towards another, or thoſe who regard the *Æquator*, to one the *Sun* ſhall ſeem to riſe on the right hand, and ſet on the left; and to the other, to riſe and ſet contrary. After the ſame Mode, all the *Stars* ſhall riſe to one on the right hand, and to the other on the left.

7. When

7. When the *Sun* riſeth and ſetteth behind to the one, he riſeth and ſetteth before to the other; contrariwiſe to this on the left hand, when to that on the right.

8. They have the divers *Poles* elevated by an equal Elevation.

9. The *Stars* appearing perpetually to one place, or not ſetting, never ariſe to the other place, but always remain depreſſed beneath the *Horizon*; contrariwiſe, thoſe which never ſet to this place, never riſe to that.

Theſe are all manifeſt from the Globe.

Propoſition V.

Thoſe which inhabit in the Æquator, *have no* Antœci; *but the* Periœci *of thoſe are the ſame with the* Antipodes *of theſe. The Poles of the Earth have no* Periœci, *for they are mutually one to the other* Antœci, *and* Antipodes.

The truth of this *Propoſition* is evident from the Definitions of the *Antœci*, *Periœci*, and *Antipodes*, and therefore needs no probation.

Propoſition VI.

A place being given in the Globe, to exhibit the place of the Antœci, Periœci, *and* Antipodes *of the ſame.*

Let the place be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*, and as many *degrees* as are intercepted between this and the *Æquator*, let ſo many be numbred from one part of the *Æquator*: the term of the Numeration ſhall be the place of the *Antœci*.

Then let the *Index* be applied to the 12*th hour* of the *Cycle*, and let the *point* of the *Meridian* be noted, which hangeth over the place given, alſo that which hangeth over the place of the *Antœci*; this being done, let the Globe be turned round, until the *Index* ſhall ſhew the other 12 *hours*: ſo the *point* of the Globe, which is ſubjected to the noted *point* of the *Meridian* of the place given, ſhall be the place of the *Periœci*; and the *point* of the Globe, ſubjected to the other noted *point* of the *Meridian*, ſhall be the place of the *Antipodes*.

Propoſition VII.

Thoſe who live in the ſame Parallel of the Earth, have every day, and every night, equal: every one of the Stars *alſo remaineth an equal time above their Horizons; the ſame* Stars *never ſet, the ſame* Stars *never riſe: the* Sun *every day, and all the* Stars *alſo, riſe and ſet to them in the ſame quarter; and in the ſame hour alſo the* Stars *are equally elevated above the Horizon, or depreſſed beneath it. They have the ſame Pole equally elevated; their faces being turned to the Æquator or the ſame Pole, the* Stars *riſe to them from the ſame ſide, and ſet on the ſame ſide: they have the ſame ſeaſons of the year*, Spring, Summer, Autumn, Winter *together, and at the ſame time, excepting the ſingular properties of ſome places.*

Theſe are manifeſt from the very conſideration of the *motions* of the *Stars*, and ſcituation of the Places of the Earth. In the Globe, if that one certain *Parallel* be taken, and the *Pole* be elevated near its *Latitude* or diſtance from the *Æquator*, the *Wooden Horizon* of all places ſhall be the *Horizon* of that *Parallel*, *viz.* if that every place be brought to the *Meridian*; and then will be manifeſt what this *Propoſition* containeth.

Propoſition VIII.

The Celeſtial Affections of the Periœci, *compared one with another, are thus:*

The Celeſtial Affections of the *Periœci* compared together.

1. They have all thoſe things common, which we have related in the preceding *Propoſition*, concerning the Inhabitants of one and the ſame *Parallel*.

2. They reckon contrary *hours* of the day in reality, but yet the ſame in name, *viz.* when in one place it is Noon, and the 12*th Meridian hour*, then in the other it is Midnight, and the 12*th* hour of Midnight: and the Inhabitants of this, number 1, 2, 3 from *Midnight*, whilſt they number 1, 2, 3 from *Midnoon*.

3. On the days of the *Æquinoxes* the *Sun* ſetteth to one place, whilſt it riſeth to another, and therefore the time of the *day* of one place, is the *night* of another; but on other *days* of the year, *viz.* on the half year, in which the *Sun* runneth through the vicine *Semicircle* of thoſe places of the *Zodiack*, that is, in the *Spring* and *Summer*, it firſt riſeth to one place before he ſetteth to another; and therefore in ſome *hours*, or ſome parts of an hour, they have both the *day* and the *night* conſpicuous together, *viz.* whilſt the *Sun* tendeth towards the ſetting to one place, he beginneth to aſcend towards the *Meridian* to the other, having now emerged above the *Horizon:* But in the other half of the year, *Autumn* and *Winter*, in which the *Sun* runneth the more remote Semicircle of the *Zodiack*, he firſt ſetteth to one place before he riſeth to another, (*viz.* the *Periœci*;) and therefore they have no part of the *day*, but ſome part of the *night* common, and the *Sun* for ſome hours, or for ſome parts of the hours, depreſſed beneath the *Horizon*; ſo that to one place it is the end of the *night*, to the other, the beginning.

4. After the ſame Mode, thoſe *Stars* which decline from the *Æquator*, towards the *Pole* elevated to the *Periœci*, may be ſeen for ſome hours, or for ſome parts of hours, at once, *viz.* before they are ſet to one place, they are riſen to another; and on the contrary, before they are riſen to that, they are not ſet to this; and in this, for ſo much the longer time, by how much the *Star* is more remote from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole* elevated. On the contrary, they never ſee thoſe *Stars* together, which decline from the *Æquator* towards the *Pole*, depreſſed to the *Periœci*; but they firſt ſet to one place, before they ariſe to another; and therefore for ſome time, or for ſome hours, or parts of the *hours* of the day, they are conſpicuous to neither of the *Periœci*; and for ſo much the longer time, by how much the *Star* is more near the *Pole*; and thoſe *Stars*, which remain continually to the *Antœci* above the *Horizon*, are perpetually obſcured to the *Periœci*.

5. What place of the Earth, one of the *Periœci* hath in the ſetting *Æquinoctial*, or to the *Weſt*; the ſame the other of the *Periœci*, being about to ſhew, directs the digit to the *Oriental quarter*, whereof one part is common to the *Antœci*, the reſt to the *Periœci*.

Propoſition IX.

The Celeſtial Affections of the Antipodes, *compared one with another, are thus:*

The Celeſtial Affections of the *Antipodes*.

1. In all the *days* of the year the *Sun* and the *Stars* riſe to one place, whilſt they ſet to another; for they have the ſame *Horizon*, although a different face.

2. The *day* of one, is the *night* of another.

3. They have oppoſite equal *days* of the year, as alſo *nights*; ſo that the longeſt *day* of the one place, is the ſhorteſt of the other.

4. They have contrary *ſeaſons* of the *year* at the ſame time, and the ſame *ſeaſons* in an oppoſite time; *viz.* ſome have *Spring*, whilſt the other hath *Autumn*; the one *Summer*, whilſt the other hath *Winter*; and contrariwiſe.

5. They

5. They have the different *Poles* elevated by an equal Elevation, they are equally distant from the *Æquator*; but that from the diverse quarters of it: they are seated in the same *Meridian*, but that is in its different *Semicircles*.

6. They reckon indeed the contrary hours of the *day*, but the same in name, *viz.* it is *Noon* to one place, whilst it is *Midnight* to the other.

7. What *Stars* continually appear to one place, or do remain above the *Horizon*, they perpetually remain beneath the *Horizon* of the other place: Also what *Stars* remain a long space above the *Horizon* of one place, they remain but a short time above the *Horizon* of the other place.

8. The *Sun* and *Stars* seem to rise to the Inhabitants of one place, on the *right* hand; to the Inhabitants of the other, on the *left*; if that both shall turn their faces to the *Æquator*.

Proposition X.

The Periœci *of one place are the Antipodes of the* Antœci *of that place, and the* Antœci *of the Antipodes of that place.*

So the *Antipodes* of one place, are the *Periœci* of the *Antœci* of that place, and the *Antœci* of the *Periœci*: These are plain from the *Definitions*, neither do they need probation.

Proposition XI.

A place in the Globe being given, to find those places which have the same Hours and Meridies with the place given: also those places which reckon contrary hours and Midnight, when it is Midday in the place given.

Let the place given be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*: so all the places which are subject to the same *Semicircle* of the *Meridian* of this, or those places, which number at once all the same hours: then let the *Index* be placed at the 12*th hour* of the *Cycle*, and let the Globe be turned round until the *Index* shew the other 12*th hour*: so the places which are subject to the same *Semicircle* of the *Brazen Meridian*, are those reckon'd *hours*, contrary to the *hours* of the place given.

Sundry Questions wrought and performed by the Globe.

Proposition XII.

A place being given in the Globe, to find those places, in which all the days of the year are equal to the nights of the former place.

Let the place given be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the *Parallel* of its *Antœci* be found. All the places scituated in this *Parallel* satisfie the demand.

But if that a *place* be required, whose *days* are equal to the *nights* of the place given, and all the hours of the same; then the place of the *Antœci* is only that sought for.

But if all the hours be contrary, the place of the *Antipodes* only satisfieth the demand.

Proposition

Propoſition XIII.

A place in the Globe, and the day of the year being given, to find the hours in which the Inhabitants of that place, and its Antœci *both together, may ſee the* Sun, *or in what hour the* Sun *is above the Horizon of both places; alſo the hour in which he is ſooner ſeen in one place, than in another.*

See Propoſ. 4. Chap. 25.

Let the *Longitude*, or time of the ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon* of the place given, at the day given, (according to the *fourth Propoſition* of the *25th Chapter*) be found; the *hours* in which this time is deficient from 24 *hours*, are the *hours* of the day in the place of the *Antœci*. For theſe two places have the *Sun* elevated together ſo many *hours*, as the day of the place given conſiſteth of *hours*, or the day of the *Antœci*, *viz.* of that day which hath no more than 12 *hours*, as he is in the days of the *Æquinoxes*; but leſſer than other days: Or, that I may ſpeak more plainly, if the *day* of the place given is leſs than 12 *hours*, then the *Antœci* ſhall ſee the *Sun* on the ſame *hours*; but yet in more, to wit, before and after that time. But if the *day* of the place given be more than 12 *hours*, the number of the hours of the *night* muſt be taken: for ſo many *hours* together the *Antœci* ſhall ſee the *Sun*, and no more; and theſe *hours* are to be reckoned about the *Meridies*, becauſe they have their *Meridies* together.

Then half of the difference of the *days*, (or the difference between the *day* and *night* of the ſame place) will ſhew the *hours* in which the *Sun* ariſeth ſooner above the *Horizon* of one place, and alſo ſetteth later than to the other place of the *Antœci*.

Propoſition XIV.

A place being given in the Globe, and the day of the year, to find the hours in which the Inhabitants of that place together ſee the Sun with their Periœci, *and what hours they do not ſee it together.*

Let the place of the ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon* of the place given, be found at the day given, and let the time of his ſtay beneath the *Horizon*, that is, the quantity of the *day* and the *night*, be found; half the difference between the quantity of the *day* and the *night*, will ſhew the *hours*, or part of the *hours*, in which the *Sun* firſt riſeth to one place, before he ſetteth to another; and ſetteth later alſo to that place, than he ariſeth to this.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXIX.

Of the Computation of time in the divers places of the Earth.

Propoſition I.

The Hour of one place being given in the Globe, to find the hour of another place given.

LEt the place, whoſe hour is given, be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*, the *Index* to that hour of the *Horary Cycle*, ſuch as is given. Let the *Globe* be turned round until the other given place come under the *Meridian*, the *Index* in that ſcituation of the *Globe* will ſhew the hour demanded of this other place. By the Globe, the hours of the places are found out.

Propoſition II.

The hour of our place being given, (or of ſome other place in the Globe) to exhibit on the Globe all thoſe places in which at that hour the Meridies *is; alſo thoſe in which it is Midnight; alſo thoſe in which is what hour we pleaſe. The Problem ſhould be propounded concerning the Earth, if we would act Scientifically; for it is an affection of the Earth. Underſtand the ſame concerning many other following Problems.*

Let the place given be brought to the *Meridian*, the *Index* to the given hour of the *horary Cycle*. Let the *Globe* be turned round until the *Index* ſhew the *12th hour* of the *Meridies*; ſo the places which are diſcovered to be ſubject to the ſuperiour *Semicircle* of the *Meridian* (from the elevated *Pole* to the *Pole* depreſſed,) are thoſe which have the *Meridies* at the time given. But if the *Globe* be turned round, that the *Index* may ſhew the *12th* inferiour hour, the places which are diſcovered to be ſubject to the ſame *Semicircle* of the *Meridian*, are thoſe in which the *Midnight* then ſhall be.

If we deſire places in which is any hour, let the *Globe* be turned until the *Index* ſhew that hour, if the places ſubject to the *Semicircle* of the *Meridian*, be thoſe that are ſought.

Propoſition III.

The Altitude of the Sun being given, the day of the year, and the Latitude of the place, to find the hour at the time of that altitude.

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the given *Latitude* of the place: from the given day let the place of the *Sun* be found in the *Ecliptick*, and let that be noted in the *Ecliptick* of the *Globe*, and brought to the *Meridian*. Then let the *Quadrant* be applied to the *Vertex*, and let the *degrees* of the given *Altitude* be noted in it, and let the *Index* be placed at the *12th hour* of the *Horary Cycle*. Rules for the finding the hour of the day.

Then let the *Globe* and the *Quadrant* be moved until the noted place of the *Sun* agree with the noted point of the *Quadrant*. In that ſcituation the *Sun* will ſhew the hour demanded.

Propoſition

Propoſition IV.

A Quarter being given, in which the Sun *is beheld ſometime of the day given; and the Latitude of a place being given, to find the hour of the day.*

Mariners obſerve the quarter of the *Sun* on the Compaſs.

Let all be done as in the preceding *Propoſition:* that the *Quadrant* may be applied to the *Vertex*, let his end or extremity be brought to that *quarter* of the *Horizon* which was obſerved, and let the *Globe* be turned round until that point of the *Sun* come to the *Quadrant*. In this ſcituation, the *Index* will ſhew the hour of the day.

Propoſition V.

The Sun *ſhining, by the benefit of the Globe to know the hour of the place given; or the Latitude thereof, which is given.*

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the given *Latitude* of the place, and let the *Globe* be placed at the four *quarters* of the World; then let a *Needle* be fixed perpendicularly at the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*; or, which is better, let the *Spherical Gnomon* be applied to the *Ecliptick*, ſo that the *Apex* of the *Gnomon* fix on the place of the *Sun*, and ſo let it be brought to the *Meridian*, and the *Index* to the *12th hour:* let the *Globe* be turned, until the *Needle* make no ſhadow on the *Globe*. In this ſcituation the *Index* will ſhew the demanded hour.

Propoſition VI.

An hour of our Numeration being given, to find what hour it is from the riſing of the Sun, *that is, the* Babyloniſh, *or* Norimbergian *hour.*

In time paſt the *Babylonians*, and now the Inhabitants of *Norimberg*, and ſome other People, reckon 24 *hours* from one riſing of the *Sun*, to the riſing of the *Sun* the next day.

Let the *Pole* be elevated from the *Latitude* of the place given, and the place of the *Sun* being found from the day given, let it be brought to the *Meridian*, the *Index* to the *12th hour* of the *horary Cycle:* let the *Globe* be turned until the *Index* ſhew the hour given. Then the *Globe* remaining immovable, let the *Index* be reduced to 12, which being done, let the *Globe* be turned from the ſetting to the riſing, until the place of the *Sun* appear in the *Oriental Horizon:* and in the *horary Cycle*, let the hours be reckoned from 12, toward the Eaſt or riſing, even to the *Index:* for theſe are the *Babyloniſh* or *Norimberg* hours ſought for.

Propoſition VII.

On the contrary: *The hour being given from the* Babyloniſh *riſing, to find out the hour of our Numeration, which is from Midnight, or Midnoon.*

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given, let the place of the *Sun* be noted in the *Ecliptick*, and brought to the *Oriental Horizon*, the *Index* to the *12th hour*; let the *Globe* be turned towards the Weſt, until the *Index* ſhew the hour given on the *Cycle* from the Eaſt. Which being done, let the *Index* be reduced to the *12th hour*, and then let the *Globe* again be moved, until the place of the *Sun* be brought back to the *Semicircle* of the *Meridian* which is next paſſed through, and let the *hours* be numbred from 12 to the *Index* towards that *quarter*, unto which the motion of the *Globe* was made: ſo ſhall be found the hour of our numbring from the *Meridies*, or *Midnight*.

Pro-

Propoſition VIII.

An hour of our reckoning being given, to find what hour it is from the preceding ſetting of the Sun, *that is, the* Italian *hours.*

Of *Italian* hours.

At this day, in many places of *Italy*, and in times paſt in *Greece* they numbred 24 *hours* from one ſetting of the *Sun* to the following, or next ſetting; to find out which, we muſt thus do from the *hours* of our Numeration.

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given; let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be noted and brought to the *Meridan*; let the *Index* be placed at the 12*th hour* at Noon of the *Cycle*: let the *Globe* be turned until the *Index* ſhew the *hour* given. Then the *Globe* being immovable, let the *Index* be brought to the 12*th hour*; and this being done, let the *Globe* be turned towards the Eaſt, until the place of the *Sun* be beheld in the *Occidental Horizon*. Then let the *hours* be numbred from 12 to the *Index*, near the quarter of his motion; for theſe ſhall be the *Italian hours* of Numeration.

Propoſition IX.

The hour from the ſetting of the Sun, *or of* Italick *Numeration, being given, to find what hour it is of our Numeration from the Midnoon or Midnight.*

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given; let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be noted, and brought to the *Meridian*; let the *Index* be placed at the *hour* 12; let the *Globe* be turned to the ſetting, until the *Index* ſhew the given *Italick* hour. Then the Globe remaining immovable, let the *Index* be brought to the 12*th* hour; this being done, let the place of the *Sun* be turned back to that *Semicircle* of the *Meridian* which it did neareſt paſs through, ſo the hours interrupted between 12 and the *Index* (numbring from 12 towards the riſing) are the hours from the *Meridies* or *Midnight*, according to our numeration or reckoning.

Propoſition X.

An hour of our Numeration being given on the day given, to find what hour of the day that hour is, according to the ancient Judaick *account, and that of other Nations.*

The *Jews* diviſion of the day and night.

In Ancient times, the *Jews* and other Nations (*Aſtronomy* being not yet poliſhed) divided every day, from the riſing of the *Sun* to his ſetting, into 12 hours, and the night into as many, which hours are therefore termed *Judaical hours*, *Planetary hours* (for another reaſon,) but more fitly unequal hours; for ſeeing that neither the *days* or *nights* are equal amongſt themſelves, or of equal *Longitude*; but increaſe for half a year, and decreaſe the other half (except in the places of the *Æquator*,) thence it cometh to paſs that thoſe hours are ſometimes greater, and ſometimes leſſer; for they increaſe with the Longitude of the days, and decreaſe with the decreaſe of the ſame. But in places near the *Æquator* this increaſe is not great, as we have ſhewed in the 25*th Chapter*: but all the days of the whole year are almoſt equal; and thence it cometh to paſs, that the People more remote from the *Æquator*, as thoſe of *Europe*, never uſed theſe hours, but only thoſe People who are not far removed from, or that dwell under the *Torrid Zone*.

See Chap. 25.

Therefore the *Problem* may be thus more clearly propounded, *viz. an equal hour being given in a given day, to find an unequal hour.* An *equal hour* is termed the 12*th* part of any *day* or *night*, or of the time in which the *Sun* doth remain above, or beneath the *Horizon*. An *unequal hour* is termed the 24*th* part of that time, in which the *Sun* is moved from the *Semicircle* of

the *Meridian*, until it return again to the ſame *Semicircle*, which time is called an *Aſtronomical day*.

Now for the Solution of this *Problem*, we muſt thus act:

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given; let the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* be noted, and brought to the *Eaſt*, the *Index* to the 12*th* hour of the *Cycle*: let the *Globe* be turned, until the noted place of the *Sun* come to the *Weſt*; the *Index* will ſhew the hours for the *Longitude* of this day, or the ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon*, which muſt be obſerved. Then let it be found, what is the hour given from the *Eaſt* or *riſing* (or from the *Weſt* and *ſetting*, if that any hour be given after the *ſetting* of the *Sun*) according to the 6 or 8*th Propoſition*. And let the proportion be compared after this Mode, that as the noted hours of the *Longitude* of the whole *day* or *night* are unto 12 hours, ſo the hours found from the riſing, (or ſetting, if that an hour of the *night* be given) are to the number of the *Judaick* hours.

See Propoſition 6 and 8.

Propoſition XI.

The Judaick *hour being given, in the day given to find what hour that is according to our Numeration or account; or to reduce a given unequal hour to an equal hour.*

Of the *Judaick* hour.

Let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given; the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick* from the day given being found, let it be brought to the *Eaſt*, the *Index* to the 12*th* hour; and let the *Globe* be turned to the *Weſt*, that the *Longitude* of that day may appear in *unequal hours* on the *horary Cycle*, which is noted. Then let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the *Meridian*, the *Index* unto 12; and let the place of the *Sun* be turned round to the *Oriental Horizon*, the *Index* will ſhew the hour of the riſing.

Then let it ſo be brought to paſs, that 12 be added to the number of the *Judaick* hour, ſo alſo let the found out *Latitude* of the whole be added to the other number, which if that be added to the hour of the riſing, we ſhall have the hour from the *Midnight*, according to our *numeration*: if that the number of theſe hours be more than 12, let 12 be caſt away, and the remainder will ſhew the hour from *Noon*.

Thoſe *Judaick* hours which are related in the Sermon of *CHRIST*, cannot accurately be reduced to the hours of our account, becauſe the day of the year is not added: ſo that the *third hour* of that day, may be our 8*th*, 9*th* or 10*th*; ſo that the 11*th hour* of that Sermon, may be our 7*th*, 6*th*, or 5*th*, *viz.* as that day may be taken either according to the *Summer* or *Winter Solſtice*, or the *Æquinoctial*.

Propoſition XII.

Thoſe who go from ſome one part of the Earth, or ſayl towards the Sun riſing, and the whole Globe of the Earth being encompaſſed by them, they return to the ſame place whence they ſet forth; they in the mean ſpace, at once have often had the Sun riſing, ſetting, the Meridies, and the Midnight, the very ſame with the Inhabitants of the place, from which they went from; and therefore when they return, they number one day of a year more than in that place. For Example, *If in this place it be the firſt day of* January, *they reckon the ſecond of* January; *if they account it to be* Saturday, *they reckon* Sunday. *And if they ſhall have ſayled about the Earth, twice, thrice, or four times, they ſhall ſtill number ſo many more days.*

Of the compaſſing of the Earth.

Thoſe who by a determined courſe ſayl about the whole *Earth* towards the *Weſt*, they in the mean while for one ſpace have the ſetting or riſing *Sun*, the *Meridies* and *Midnight* more rare; and therefore when they return, they number one day leſs than in that place, to wit, the 31 of *December*; if in that

that place it be the first of *January*, and *Saturday*, or the last day of the Week, when in this place it shall be *Sunday*, or the first day of a new Week: And if they have sayled round the *Earth* twice, thrice, or four times, they shall also reckon so many *days* less.

This was a matter of wonder and admiration some Ages ago to *Mariners* and others; but the frequency of this Experiment hath lessened the admiration, and hath administred occasion to *Mathematicians* to enquire out the cause.

Neither is it difficult to explain the same, so that the motion of the *Sun*, and the *Meridian* of the places of the Earth be well apprehended, and a certain *day* of the year be proposed: for it dependeth on the *Diurnal circumvolution* of the *Sun*, not from his proper *motion*, as some have thought, which we may begin from any *Circle*; but for our more easie understanding it is very convenient to begin from the *Meridies*, that the day may be the time from one *Meridies* to the following *Meridies*, or Noon; or whilst the *Sun* returneth from the *Semicircle* of one *Meridian*, to the same *Semicircle*.

Therefore, because that those who Sayl towards the East, or Rising, come to those places where the *Sun* first riseth and maketh his *Meridian*, than in the place from whence they departed; thence it cometh to pass, that the *Sun* being in the *Meridian* of the place to which they have arrived, they begin to reckon a new *day*. For Example: the second *day* of *January*, where in the place of their departure hitherto they have numbred the first *day* of *January*, (if that they set Sayl on the same,) and the difference shall be one or two *hours*. This anticipation daily increaseth until they come towards the East, so that it shall make the *hours* of half a day, when they come to the opposite *Semicircle* of the *Meridian*; for here they shall have the *Meridies* of a new *day*, when in the place of their setting forth it shall be the *Midnight* of the preceding *day*. And where they shall come to the *Meridian* 15 *degrees* more remote, being in that, they shall have the *Meridies* 13 *hours* sooner, than in the place of their setting forth: and when again they shall come to a *Meridian* more remote 15 *degrees*, there they shall have the *Meridies* 14 *hours* sooner, than in the place of their setting forth. And so moreover, as they shall come to the *Meridians* or *places* more remote 15 *degrees*, they shall have the *Meridies* 15, 16, 17 *hours* sooner, and shall begin to account a new *day* sooner, than in their place of their setting forth: so that when at length they shall have returned to the place, they shall then number the *Meridies* of a new *day* sooner by 24 *hours*, where in the place also the *Meridies* is, which yet may answer in number to the *Meridies* which the *Mariners* had the former day.

But it is contrary with those who Sayl towards the West, when they return to the place from whence they set forth; for by how much the more they recede from this place, by so much the more they shall have the *Sun* later in the *Meridies*, because they are in a more remote *Meridian*, and therefore do later begin the account of their new *day*, than in the place whence they set forth: So that this *Proposition* taketh away an whole *day* in the return.

Corollary 1. If that two at the same time set forth from any place of the *Earth*, the one towards the East, the other towards the West, and they shall return both together to the same place, the whole *Earth* being Sayled about: he that took his Journey towards the East shall reckon two *days* more, than he which took it towards the West. And if they have Sayled the *Earth* about twice, they shall reckon 4 *days* more; if thrice, 6 *days* more, &c. but the *days* of these are longer; of those, shorter. Corollaries.

Corollary 2. The same will happen, if that in any place of the *Earth* any two meet one the other; and from hence first, and then often afterwards, was this apparently discovered: for when *Ferdinando Magellanes* by a direct course into the West, had entred the *Indies* by the *Streights*, denominated from him, it was found out by the *Mariners*, which there met with other *Europeans*, brought towards the East by an ordinary Journey, that the *Kalendar*, or the Numeration of the *days*, differed an whole *day*. The same hath been observed by all, which have Sayled round the *Earth*, when they have come into the *Indies*.

Corollary 3. This also is the cause, that in two near places the account of a different day is observed, *viz.* in the *Philippine Isles*, and in the City of *Macoa* on the Coast of *China*, although they lie under the same *Meridian*; yet they reckon the days of the *Kalendar* sooner in *Macoa*, than in the *Philippine Isles*, and that by the anticipation of one *day*; so that it is *Sunday* in *Macoa*, when but *Saturday* in the *Philippine Isles*. The cause of this diversity is this, that the *Portugals* possessing the City of *Macoa* came thither from *Europe* towards the East, by a set course out of *India*; but the *Spaniards*, which possess the *Philippine Isles*, came thither from *Europe* towards the West, by a set course from *America*. Therefore it is inferred from the preceding *Corollary*, because here in *Macoa*, and the *Philippines*, they almost meet, or come into the same *Meridian*, that they should exceed by one *day* the days of the other.

The day in *Macoa*, not the same as in the *Philippine Isles*.

CHAP. XXX.

Of the various Rising, Setting, Altitude of the Sun, *and other Appearances in the divers parts of the Earth.*

Proposition I.

To place or hang a Terrestrial Globe, *so that when the Sun shineth, those parts of the Globe may be illuminated, which the Sun enlighteneth in the Earth at any time, and that it also may appear, unto what People the Sun riseth, and to whom it setteth; to whom it makes the* Meridies, *and to whom it is altogether absconded; to what place it is vertical: also to find the place of the Sun in the* Ecliptick, *and the day of the year; also the hour of the place.*

The motion of the *Sun* shewed by the Globe.

LET the place in which the *Globe* is placed be noted on the *Globe*, and brought to the *Meridian*, and let a mark be made with a *Chalk* on that *point* of the *Meridian*. Therefore if the *Globe* be to be hung by a *Cord*, the *Cord* must be tied to the point of the *Meridian*. But if that it must be placed firmly in any place, an *Iron pin* must be brought through the *Center* of the *Globe*, even to the opposite point; and this *Iron pin* must be closely fixed to the *Horizontal plain*, that it may remain immovable.

The *Globe* must be disposed according to the four *quarters* of the World, *viz.* that the North part of the *Globe* may regard the North part of the *Earth* or *Heaven*; which, the *Meridian line* being found, is easie to do by the *Mariners Compass*, or the *Magnetick Needle*. The *Globe* being thus placed, at every moment of the day, when the *Sun* shineth, on the *Globe* may be seen the part of the *Earth* illuminated, and the part not illuminated. Those places which lie in the middle *Semicircle* of the part illuminated, are those which will have the *Meridies* at that moment of time. To those which are seated in the *Oriental Semicircle*, dividing the illuminated part from the part not illuminated, the *Sun* setteth; but to those which are in the *Occidental Semicircle*, separating the illuminated part from the part not illuminated, the *Sun* riseth.

To find out the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*, let the *Needle* or *Spherical Gnomon* be moved hither and thither perpendicularly about the middle of the part illuminated, until it maketh no shadow, and let the *point* in the *Globe* be noted: for this being brought to the *Meridian*, here will shew the declination of the *Ecliptick point*, in which the *Sun* is at the time of the Observation; whence, according to the condition of the time, to wit, *Spring*, *Summer*, *Autumn*, or *Winter*, the place of the *Sun* shall be known, and thence the day of the year.

Also the place in the *Globe*, unto which the *Needle* being affixed gave no shadow, is that to which the *Sun* is vertical at that moment of time, and the *Parallel* passing through this place will exhibit all the places, in which the *Sun* will be vertical on that day.

More-

Moreover, to find the hour of the place in which the *Globe* is ſo placed or hung, let that place be brought to the *Meridian* to which the *Sun* is vertical, the *Index* to the 12*th* hour of the *horary Circle*; and let the *Globe* be turned round until our place, or that in which the *Globe* is ſeated, do come to the *Meridian*: the *Index* will ſhew the hour.

But becauſe the *Globe* cannot be turned round, when it is affixed by the *Iron Style* to the *Horizontal plain*, therefore it will be convenient that the *Quadrant* be tied to the *Pole*, or part of the *Circle* of the *Periphery* 113½: for here the *Arch* being brought to the place of the *Needle*, will ſhew the declination of the *Sun* from the *Æquator*, whence the place of the *Sun*, and the *day* of the year ſhall be found. The ſame *Arch* will ſhew the *degree* in the *Æquator*, from whence if that the *degrees* be numbred to the *Brazen Meridian*, and theſe *degrees* be changed into *hours*, or parts of hours, you ſhall have the *hour* of the place. If ſo be that the *Sun* be between the *Occident* and the *Brazen Meridian*, that is, of our place; but if that it be between the *Eaſt* and our *Meridian*, the hour found out muſt be ſubtracted from 12, and the remaining number will ſhew the hours from *Midnight*. Fifteen *Degrees* make an *Hour*.

If that ſuch a *Brazen Arch* be adjoyned to the Pole of the *Globe*, as I have deſcribed, 113½ *degrees*, it may be bored through from the end even to 47 *degrees*; that is, from the departure of the *Sun* from the *Æquator*, and a turning Plate be inſerted in it, which may bear the *perpendicular Style*: and ſo there will neither be need of a *Needle*, or of a *Spherical Gnomon*, and the operation will be leſs obnoxious to errour.

Propoſition II.

The Terreſtrial Globe *being ſo placed, as in the former Propoſition is declared, it will alſo ſhew, when the* Moon *ſhineth, to what People, at any moment of time in which it is above our Horizon, it is conſpicuous; to whom it ariſeth, to whom it ſetteth, and to whom it is vertical.*

Theſe are all maniſeſt from the preceeding *Propoſition*. See Propoſit. 1.

Propoſition III.

By how much the places of the Earth are remote from the Parallel of the Sun *on any day, by ſo much the* Sun *is elevated to a leſſer Altitude in the ſame hours above their Horizon.*

Let the places in the ſame *Meridian* be taken in the *Globe*, for theſe do reckon all the ſame *hours*, and that at once: then let a *Parallel* be deſcribed for any aſſumed day, and it will be manifeſt, that any point of this *Parallel* is farther diſtant from the more remote places, than from the places more near.

The *Sun* therefore being above, the points of this *Parallel* will be farther diſtant from the *Vertex* of the remoter places, than from the *Vertex* of thoſe that are nearer; and therefore he ſhall be leſs elevated over the *Horizon* of thoſe places, than of theſe.

Propoſition IV.

By how much the places of the Earth are more remote from the Æquator, *or more near the* Pole, *by ſo much the more the parts of the Horizon are diſtant, in which the* Sun *riſeth on the day of the Solſtice, and the day of the Winter; as alſo thoſe in which he ſetteth. The ſame is true concerning the* Moon *and all the* Planets.

Take what *places* you pleaſe of a diverſe diſtance from the *Æquator*, and let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of every one of them, and let the *points* be noted in the *Horizon*, in which the *Tropicks* of *Capricorn* and *Cancer* cut it. A compariſon being made, the truth of the *Propoſition* will appear: this is alſo ſhewed the ſame way, by how much the *places* are more remote from the *Æquator*, by ſo much the more the *Sun*, in his *Æquinoctial riſing*, is diſtant in the Eaſt on every *day* of the year. The *Aſtronomers* term it, the riſing *Amplitude*.

Propo-

Propoſition V.

Stars placed between the Parallel of any place (lying without the Æquator) *and the* Pole, *are leſs elevated above the Horizon of the places between this Parallel, and the other Pole of thoſe ſcituated there, than above the Horizon of the places ſcituated between this Parallel and the nearer Pole.*

Of the elevation of *Stars*, &c.

The *Parallel* of any *Star* may be deſigned on the *Terreſtrial Globe*, or a *point* only noted for a *Star*, and any place more remote from the *Pole* being aſſumed, deſigneth the *Parallel* of the place. Then taking another place ſcituated towards the other *Pole*, the ſtay of the *Star* above the Horizon of both places may be found, and the truth of the *Propoſition* will be manifeſt.

Propoſition VI.

In places ſcituate in and near the Æquator, *the* Sun *and* Stars *directly aſcend above the Horizon, even to the Meridian, and ſo deſcend again: but in places ſcituated above the* Æquator, *they obliquely aſcend and deſcend; and ſo much the more obliquely, by how much the place is more remote from the* Æquator.

Of the aſcenſion and deſcenſion of the *Sun* and *Stars*.

Let any *Parallel* of the *Sun* be deſcribed on the Globe, ſuch as ſome already are delineated on the Globe, *viz.* the *Æquator*, the *Tropicks*, and ſome Intermedial ones: then let the *Poles* be placed in the very *Horizon*, that it may be the *Horizon* of the places of the *Æquator*, and it will be evident that the *points* of the *Parallels* directly aſcend from the *Horizon* to the *Meridian*. Then let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of any other places, and it will appear that the *Parallels* are ſo much the more oblique to the *Horizon*, by how much the more the *Pole* is elevated; that is, by the *Wooden Horizon* becometh the *Horizon* of the places more remote from the *Æquator*, or nearer to the *Pole*.

Propoſition VII.

By how much the place is more remote from the Æquator, *by ſo much the more the Signs of the* Zodiack, *and the other Conſtellations, require the greater time to ariſe, and ſet; and they paſs through the* Meridians *of all places at an equal time.*

Let two *places* be taken on the Globe, unequally diſtant from the *Æquator*, and let the *Pole* be elevated, and obſerved ſeparately for each of them, how much time any Sign of the *Zodiack* requireth to aſcend above the *Horizon*; *viz.* the entrance of the Sign being brought to the *Oriental Horizon*, let the *Index* be placed at the 12*th* hour, and the Globe be turned round until the whole *Sign* be riſing: the *Index* will ſhew the *hours* elapſed in the ſpace whilſt the *Sign* aroſe; for by the compariſon of the time, the truth of the *Propoſition* will be manifeſt.

Propoſition VIII.

The day of the year being given, to find, or ſhew on the Globe thoſe places, in which the Sun ariſeth in any given quarter.

To find the riſing of the *Sun* in any quarter, by the *Globe*.

This *Problem*, and thoſe that follow, ſhould be propounded and reſolved concerning the *Earth* it ſelf, if that we would act according to Art: for theſe *affections* belong unto it; but they are propounded concerning the *Globe*, becauſe here it repreſenteth the *Earth*; although another method muſt be uſed in the *Earth*, or another conſtruction, which although it can only be comprehended by the mind, is ſufficient, that it may hinder in the practice by reaſon of the obſtacles.

This

This is the ſame with that *Problem*, The *day* and the *quarter* being given, in which the riſing of the *Sun* was obſerved, to find the *Latitude* of that place, or its *Parallel*, in any *point* of which it is manifeſt that we are placed. The Solution of which we have delivered in the 23 *Chapter*, *Propoſition* 11. See Chap. 23. Propoſit. 11.

Propoſition IX.

The day and the hour, or part of the hour being given, to ſhew the place on the Globe to which the Sun is then vertical.

Firſt let the place of the *Sun*, from the given day being found, be noted on the *Ecliptick* of the Globe, and that being brought to the *Meridian*, let a mark be made with a *Chalk* on the ſupereminent point; then let thoſe places be found, in whoſe *Meridian* the *Sun* was at the given moment of time, and let them be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*. Theſe being done, that place which is ſubject to the noted point of the *Meridian* is the place which is demanded, *viz.* that to which the *Sun* is vertical at the given moment of time.

Propoſition X.

The day and the hour being given, to ſhew all the places on the Globe, from whoſe Vertex the Sun is diſtant the given degrees at that hour; but the given degrees muſt not exceed a hundred and eighty. Or the day *and the* hour *being given, to ſhew on the Globe thoſe places, above whoſe Horizon the Sun hath the given Altitude, or the given depreſſion beneath it; but the Altitude given muſt not exceed* 90 *degrees, as likewiſe the depreſſion.* Further note.

Let the place be found on the Globe, to which the *Sun* is vertical at the hour given, and let this be brought to the *Meridian*, and let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the imminent point of the *Meridian*. Let the *degree* of diſtance from the *Vertex* given be noted, and the *Quadrant* be turned round, the *Globe* remaining immovable; all the places of the *Earth* through which the noted *degree* of the *Quadrant* paſſeth, are thoſe from whom the *Sun* hath the given diſtance, or above whoſe *Horizon* the *Sun* hath the given *Altitude*.

Propoſition XI.

At the given hour of the day, to ſhew on the Globe all plains unto which the Sun riſeth and ſetteth, and to which he is fixed at the Meridian; and all that are illuminated, and not illuminated.

Let the place be found in the Globe, to which the *Sun* at the time given is vertical; and let the place be brought to the *Meridian*, and the *Pole* elevated for the *Latitude* of that place: or let that place be placed in the vertex of the *Horizon*. So all thoſe places which are diſcovered under the *Semicircle* of the *Meridian* above the *Horizon*, ſhall have the *Meridies*; but thoſe places which are beheld in the *Oriental Semicircle* of the *Horizon*, are thoſe to which the *Sun* then ſetteth; but to thoſe which lie in the *Occidental Semicircle* of the *Horizon*, the *Sun* riſeth at the given time, and all the places which are above the *Horizon* are illuminated by the *Sun*: on the contrary, all the places ſcituated beneath the ſame, then want the preſence of the *Sun*. Further, concerning the riſing and ſetting of the *Sun*, found out by the Globe at any day, or hour of the day.

Note, that the *Problem* muſt be underſtood of the riſing and ſetting of the body of the *Center* of the *Sun*: for the body of the *Sun* illuſtrateth part of the *Earth* ſomewhat bigger than the *Hemiſphere*, which, how big it is, ſhall be diſcovered in the following *Propoſition*. Therefore we may ſhew the places to which the *Sun* riſeth or ſetteth, when we have *Noon* or *Midnight*: And contrariwiſe, thoſe in which he ſetteth, when he ariſeth to us, who then have *Midnight*, or *Mid-day*.

Pro-

Propoſition XII.

The Semidiameter of the Sun *and* Earth *being given, and the diſtance of the* Sun *from the* Earth *being known, to find out the part of the* Earth *which the* Sun *illuminateth.*

See Scheme. Let the *Semidiameter* of the *Earth* be A B, A C; A the *Center*; A B C D E the greateſt *circle* of the *Earth*; S the *Center* of the *Sun*; S L, S O the *Semidiameter* of the *Sun*; L B, O C the *rays* touching the Globe of the *Sun* and *Earth*: for theſe diſtinguiſh the part illuminated from the part not illuminated; therefore the Arch B D C repreſenteth the part of the *ſuperficies* of the *Earth* illuminated, and the *Arch* B E C the part not illuminated. Let the *Tangents* L B, O C be extended until they concur in R, and B N parallels to A S: therefore in the *Triangle* B N L, let N L be given; the exceſs S L above A B, and B N of equal diſtance to A S; the *Angle* B N L is direct, becauſe that B L toucheth the *Circle*. Wherefore in the *Triangle* B L N, let the *Angle* N B L be found according to this *Propoſition*; that as B N is to N L, ſo are the whole *ſigns* to the *Tangent* of the *Angle* N B L. Moreover the two *Angles* L N B, N B L are together equal to one *ſtreight* or 90 *degrees*, and B N L is equal to the *Angle* A S L, or B A R.

Therefore the Arch of the *Angle* N B L is equal to the Arch B M, by which P B is greater than 90 *degrees*, or than P M: ſo alſo the Arch P C.

If we take the *Semidiameter* of the *Sun*, according unto *Ptolomy*, of 5, *Semidiameters* of the *Earth*; but the diſtance A S, 1168 *Semidiameters*: theſe, I ſay, being laid down, the *Arch* M B will be found 13 *minutes*, in which the *Sun* illuſtrateth the *Earth* more than half M P Q.

Corollary. When therefore the *Center* of the *Sun* riſeth to ſome places, then his *limbus* or *edge* riſeth to the People which inhabit in the parallel of the *Horizon*, ſcituated 13 *minutes* beneath the *Horizon*; alſo after the ſame Mode to thoſe to whom he ſetteth. And when his *Center* ſetteth, then his *limbus* yet remaineth conſpicuous, until the *Center* ſetteth to the People, which are remote 13 *minutes* from our *Horizon*.

Propoſition XIII.

The height of a Mountain being given, to find how much ſooner the Sun *ſeemeth to riſe in the Vertex of the ſame, than at the foot or root of the Mountain; and how much later it ſetteth.*

See Chap. 9. Propoſit. 5. From the given Altitude, by the fifth *Propoſition* in the ninth *Chapter*, let the interval or *Arch* from which the *Vertex* of the *Mountain* may be diſcovered, or in the bound of which, a *line* ſo drawn from the *Vertex* of the Mountain, that it may be the *Tangent* of the *Earth*, refracteth the ſame: for this *line* ſheweth the firſt ray, which may come from a direct paſſage from the *Sun* to the *Vertex* of the Mountain. Moreover, the *point* of the *Earth* in which this is touched by the *line*, is the place to which the *Sun* ariſeth, when he beginneth to be ſeen on the *Vertex* of the Mountain, and the *Arch* interrupted between that point and the foot of the Mountain, is equal to that in which the *Sun* is depreſſed, as yet, beneath the *Horizon* of the foot of the Mountain, when he is apparent in the *Vertex*.

Therefore the *Problem* is reduced hither; The depreſſion of the *Sun* beneath the *Horizon* being given, to find the time which is ſpent whilſt the *Sun* moveth from the depreſſion to the *Horizon*; whence alſo it will be manifeſt, that this time is alſo diverſe in the divers days of the year. Therefore let the place of the root of the Mountain be noted on the Globe, and let the *Pole* be elevated for the *Latitude* of the ſame; let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*. The place of the *Sun* being found in the *Ecliptick* from any day taken, let it be noted; alſo the

the Point of the Ecliptick oppoſite to the place of the *Sun*. Then let this oppoſite Point be brought to the Occidental Horizon, and let the Index be placed at the hour 12. This being done, let the Degree of depreſſion before found be noted in the *Quadrant*, and the oppoſite Point be turned above the Horizon, until it hath an Altitude equal to the Arch of the depreſſion, (which will be diſcovered from the application of the *Quadrant*) ſo the place of the *Sun* beneath the Oriental Horizon, will have that Depreſſion. And the Index in the Horary Circle will ſhew the time intercepted between that depreſſion of him, and his emerſion above the Horizon.

But becauſe in this caſe we do almoſt work only by Minutes, therefore it is better to calculate it, than to ſearch after it on the Globe. Now you ſhall find it if that the Altitude of the Mountain be placed 3 *ſtadias*, or $\frac{1}{4}$ of a *German mile*, becauſe the Arch of the depreſſion is about three Degrees, and if the Latitude of the Foot of the Mountain be 38 Degrees, and the place of the *Sun* about the middle of *Leo*, the time in which the *Sun* is beheld, is ſooner in the *Vertex*, than at the Foot of the Mountain by 13 Minutes. Hence it is manifeſt, that that is not ſo probable which *Ariſtotle* relateth of the higheſt parts of *Caucaſus*, and *Pliny* of the top of *Mount Caſius*, that they before the riſing, and after the ſetting of the *Sun*, are illuſtrated with the *Sun* Beams, even to the third part of the night. Now how great an Altitude is required for this, ſhall be ſhewed in the following Propoſition.

The Mountains of *Caucaſus*, and *Caſius* according to *Ariſtotle*, and *Pliny*, are illuſtrated with the *Suns* rayes to the third part of the night.

Propoſition. XIV.

The time being given in which the Sun *is ſooner diſcerned on the Vertex of the Mountain, than at the foot of the ſame, to find the Altitude of the Mountain.*

Let the Pole be Elevated on the Globe, for the Latitude of the Root of the Mountain, and the Point being noted, which is oppoſed to the place of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*, let the Arch of the depreſſion of the *Sun* beneath the Horizon, for the given time, be found. Then from this Arch, as from an interval, from whence the *Vertex* of the Mountain is diſcovered, the Altitude of the Mountain muſt be ſearched after by the Fourth Propoſition of the Ninth Chapter.

Propoſition. XV.

The places of the Moon being given in the Zodiack, *together with its Latitude, to find out, or ſhew all thoſe Places on the Globe, to which the Moon is Vertical in the Circumrotation of that day.*

Let the place of the Moon taken from the *Ephemerides*, be noted in the Ecliptick, then let one end of the *Quadrant* be applyed to the Pole of the Ecliptick, the other to the Point noted in the Ecliptick, or to the place of the Moon, and let the Degrees of the Latitude of the Moon be accounted on the *Quadrant*, and let a mark be made at the term of the Numeration on the Globe; then this being brought to the Meridian, and a Chalk applyed, let a Parallel be deſcribed, which the Moon that day doth deſcribe by her Circumvolution; and all the places ſcituated in this Parallel, are thoſe demanded.

After the ſame Mode we act with the other Planets, if their Longitude and Latitude be given.

Propoſition XVI.

The place of the Moon *being given in the* Zodiack, *and its* Latitude, *and the day of the year, to find the hour, in which ſhe ariſeth in any place given, and in which ſhe ſetteth; alſo in which ſhe maketh midnight.*

Let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the place of the Earth given; let the place of the *Sun* found from the day of the year, be noted on the Ecliptick. Then let a point alſo be noted on the Globe for the place of the Moon, as we have ſhewed in the preceeding Propoſition. This being done, let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the Meridian, the Index to the 12*th* hour of the Circle, and let the Globe be turned round until the Moon ariſe, or be in the Meridian, or ſet. For the Index in the Circle will ſhew the hour of her riſing or ſetting, or being in the Meridian, or ſetting. After the ſame manner we muſt act with the other Planets.

See Propoſition 15.

Propoſition XVII.

To ſhew on the Globe all thoſe places, in which the Moon *ariſeth at the given hour, and in which ſhe is in the Meridian, and to which ſhe ſetteth, if that the Longitude and Latitude of the* Moon *be known.*

By the Globe are ſhewed all the places in which the Moon ariſeth, and ſetteth at any hour.

Let the place of the *Sun*, as alſo of the Moon, be noted on the Ecliptick, as aforeſaid, and the place of the *Sun* being brought to the Meridian, and the Index to the 12*th* hour of the Circle, let the Globe be turned until the place of the Moon come to the Meridian, and let the hours be obſerved on the Circle, which are noted, or let a mark be made on the Circle: for they ſhew how much later the Moon cometh to the Meridian, than the *Sun*. Moreover the place of the Moon being conſtituted in the Meridian: let the eminent point be noted in this; or let the Parallel of the Moon be deſcribed. This done, let the place of the *Sun* be brought to the Meridian, and the Index to the 12*th* hour. Let the Globe be turned until the hour be found, in which the Moon toucheth the Meridian of the place: Let the point alſo of the Meridian be noted, which hangeth over the place of the Moon. Moreover let the place whoſe hour is given, be brought to the Meridian, the Index to the hour given: let the Globe be turned until the Index ſhew the 12*th* hour of noon, or midnight; ſo the places are thoſe ſubject to the Semicircle of the Meridian, in which the *Sun* maketh the *Meridies* at the hour given. Let the Index be reduced to 12, and let the Globe be turned again until the Index come to the hour noted before in the Circle. In this ſcituation of the Globe, the place which is ſubject to the noted point of the Meridian, is that to which the *Sun* is then *Vertical*.

Therefore let this place be conſtituted in the Globe in the *Vertex* of the Horizon, all the places are thoſe ſubject to the Superiour Semicircle of the Meridian, to which the Moon is then in the Meridian: but thoſe places which are diſcerned in the Oriental Semicircle of the Horizon, are thoſe to which the Moon then ſetteth. Laſtly in thoſe places, which are diſcerned in the Occidental Semicircle of the Horizon, the Moon riſeth at the given moment of time. After the ſame Mode we act with *Saturn*, *Jupiter*, and the reſt of the *Planets*, if that their Longitude and Latitude be known,

Propoſition XVIII.

The day, or hour being given, in which the Ecliptick of the Moon *ſhall be, or hath been, to exhibit on the Globe all thoſe places which have ſeen it, and in that ſpecies, to whom the* Moon *ſhall be in the* Meridian, *to whom it ſhall ariſe, and to whom it ſhall ſet Eclipſed.*

This *Problem* little differeth from the precedent, but yet it hath a more eaſy Solution.

From the day given, let the place of the *Sun* be found, except it be already known, and let the Point oppoſite to it be noted on the Ecliptick of the Globe, for this is the place of the Moon.

Let the place be found in the Globe to which the *Sun* is Vertical at the hour, and let the *Antipodes* of this place be found according to the VI. *Propoſition* of the XXVIII. *Chapter*, for this ſhall be the place, unto which the Moon being Eclipſed, ſhall be Vertical. Let this place be conſtituted in the *Vertex* of the Horizon, the Pole being elevated or depreſſed for the Latitude of the place, ſo all the places of the Globe which are above the Horizon, may have ſeen that Eclipſe: and thoſe which lie under the *Brazen* Meridian, ſhall ſee it in the Meridian: thoſe which lie under the Oriental Semicircle, ſhall ſee it in the Weſt, or ſetting with the Eclipſe; but thoſe which lie in the Occidental Semicircle of the Horizon, ſhall ſee it in the Eaſt, or Noon to ariſe Eclipſed. See Propoſition 6. Chapter 28.

But ſeeing that an Eclipſe is not performed in one moment of an hour, but dureth for ſome hours, therefore it is wont to be divided into the Beginning, Middle, and End, and the Moments of the hours are wont to be noted, therefore the conſideration muſt be more eſpecially concerning the middle time of the Eclipſe. Moreover, ſeeing that the Moon is leſs than the Earth, it will illuſtrate a leſſer part than the *Hemiſphere* is; alſo it will be ſeen by the *Inhabitants* of a leſſer part, ſo that it will not be any more conſpicuous to thoſe which lie in the Oriental Semicircle of the Horizon: but to thoſe in the Occidental Semicircle it hath not yet appeared, but a certain Circle Parallel to the Horizon is to be ſeen, which terminateth the part illuſtrated. Now how much this part is diſtant from the *Hemiſphere*, or how great a portion it is of the Superficies of the Earth, ſhall be the enquiry of the following Propoſition.

Propoſition XIX.

The Semidiameter of the Moon, *and* Earth *being given, and the diſtance of them, to find out how long a portion of the* Earth *is illuſtrated by the* Moon *at the Full.* See Scheme.

This *Problem* muſt be ſolved by the ſame Mode that we have uſed in the Eleventh Propoſition. For let the *Center* of the Earth be S, the great Circle repreſenteth the Superficies, O F L H. The *Center* of the Moon A, the greateſt *Circle* C P B Q. Let the *Tangents* L B, O C, be drawn. For theſe are the ultimate rayes that can come from the Moon to the Earth, and therefore the Arch O H L, will denote the part of the Superficies of the Earth, which is illuſtrated by the Moon, and whoſe *Inhabitants* may ſee the Moon together, which by how much leſſer it is than the *Hemiſphere*, we ſhall know if we find the Angle H S L, or the Arch H L. Let B N be drawn from B, Parallel to A S, B A ſhall be equal to S N, and N L, the exceſs of the Semidiameter of the Earth S L, above the Semidiameter of the Moon A B, and B N is of an equal diſtance with A S: but the the Angle N L B is direct, or of 90 Degrees. Therefore in the *Triangle Streight Angle* N B L, we ſhall find the Angle N B L by this proportion. As N B is to N L, ſo are the whole Signs to the Signs of the Angle L B N, whoſe Arch is that in which H L differeth from the Arch 90, or from the *Quadrant* of the *Periphery* of the Earth, and ſo great an interval is the *Periphery* of the Earth diſtant from the greater *Circle*, terminating the part of the Earth illuminated by the Moon. Let us ſuppoſe the Semi- See Propoſition 11.

diameter of the Moon to contain four parts, of ſuch like the Semidiamiter of the Earth contains 15, or $\frac{4}{15}$ of the Semidiamiter of the Earth: now the greateſt diſtance of the Moon from the Earth in her Full, is 64 Semidiamiters of the Earth. Therefore N L ſhall be $\frac{4}{15}$, and the proportion ſhall be made thus: as 64 is to a $\frac{4}{15}$, ſo is 10000000 to 1145837, which is the Sign 39 Minutes. Therefore the Arch H L, is leſs than 90 Deg. 39 Minutes, and therefore 89 Deg. 21 Minutes.

Therefore in the place to which the Moon is Vertical conſtituted in the *Vertex* of the Horizon, the People to whom the Moon then riſeth and ſetteth, ſhall not be thoſe which are beheld in the very Horizon, but thoſe in the Parallel of the Horizon, diſtant from it 39 Minutes.

Propoſition XX.

The Declination of any Star being given, to exhibit all the places on the Terreſtrial Globe, *unto which that* Star *is Vertical in his Diurnal Circumvolution.*

Of the Declination of Stars.

Let the Degrees of the given Declination of the Æquator, be numbred on the *Brazen* Meridian, and in the term of the Numeration make a ſign with a Chalk, or let a Parallel be noted on the Globe by a Chalk applyed, and the Globe turned round, all the places ſcituated in this Parallel, are thoſe, which paſs through the noted Point of the Meridian, the *Vertex* of which that *Star* in every Diurnal Circumvolution ſhall poſſeſs for ſome moment of time.

Propoſition XXI.

The direct Aſcenſion of any Star *being given, and the hour of the given day being given, to ſhew all thoſe places on the* Terreſtrial Globe, *on whoſe Meridian the* Star *is at the given hour.*

Concerning the Aſcention of any Star.

Let the Degrees given of the right Aſcenſion of the *Star* be numbred in the Æquator, and let a mark be made with Chalk. Let alſo the place of the *Sun* found from the given day, be brought to the Meridian; and let the Degrees of the Æquator in the Meridian be noted. Let the Arch of the Æquator intercepted between theſe two noted Points be obſerved, or which is the ſame, let it be changed into hours, or ſcruples of hours: for they ſhew the time which intercedeth between the Appulſe of the *Sun*, and that *Star* at any Meridian. This done, let the places be found in whoſe Meridian the *Sun* is at the given hour, or ſcruple of an hour, and the Index being placed at 12, let the Globe be turned until the Index ſhew the hour before noted, or until the noted Degrees of the Æquator have paſſed the Meridian. In this ſcituation of the Globe all thoſe places which are diſcovered ſubject to the Meridian, are thoſe ſought for, *to wit*, thoſe in whoſe Meridian the *Star* is at the given time.

Propoſition XXII.

The right Declination, and Aſcenſion of a Star *being given, and any time of the day being given, to exhibit on the Globe firſt, that place to which the* Star *is then Vertical. Secondly, all thoſe places above whoſe* Horizons *the* Star *then ſhall be, and thoſe beneath whoſe* Horizons *the ſame ſhall then be: alſo thoſe, in whoſe* Meridian *it ſhall be at the* Meridies, *and in whoſe* Meridian *it ſhall be at midnight: alſo in all thoſe places, in which the* Star *ſhall then ariſe, and all thoſe in which it ſhall then ſet.*

From the direct Aſcenſion, let the places be found in whoſe Meridian the *Star* is at the time given, and thoſe may remain ſubject to the *Brazen* Meridian. Then let the Degrees of the given Declination from the Æquator, towards the Pole be numbred, and the Point of the Globe which is ſubject to the term of the Numeration be noted. For this is the place, unto which the *Star* ſhall be

Verti-

Vertical at the time: Let it be placed in the *Vertex* of the Horizon, the Pole being Elevated for Latitude, ſo thoſe places which are ſubject to the Superiour Semicircle of the Meridian ſhall have that *Star* at the given time in the Meridian of the *Meridies*. But thoſe places which are beheld in the Interiour Semicircle of the Meridian, ſhall have it in the Meridian of Midnight: and thoſe places which are beheld in the Oriental Semicircle of the Horizon, are thoſe to which the *Star* ſetteth at once at that time: but to thoſe which lie in the Occidental Semicircle of the Horizon, the *Star* then ariſeth together.

Propoſition XXIII.

To exhibit on the Terreſtrial Globe *all thoſe places, in which the* Sun, Moon, *and all the* Stars, *for ſo long time are obſcured beneath the* Horizon, *as they remain to us, or any other given place above the* Horizon.

Let our place, or any other given place be brought to the Meridian, and let the Parallel of the *Antæci* be found; all the places ſcituated in this Parallel, are thoſe ſought for, as may be ſhewed on the Globe, if that the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the place given, and depreſſed for the Latitude of the Parallel found.

Propoſition XXIV

To ſhew the Cauſe why the days ſooner augment and decreaſe about the Æquinoxes, *and more ſlowly about the* Solſtices, *where for many days there ſeemeth to be no encreaſe or decreaſe, and that except the* Æquator, *in all the places of the Earth, and ſo much the more, by how much they are more removed from the* Æquator.

Concerning the augmenting and decreaſing of the days about the *Æquinoxes* and *Solſtices*.

For *Example*, Let us take 30 days before the *Vernal Æquinox*, (from the 20 of *February*, to the 21 of *March*) and 30 days after the *Solſtice* of *Winter*, or the *Solſtice* of *Capricorn* (from the 21 of *December*, to the 21 of *January*); here the Cauſe muſt be ſhown, why the exceſs of the 21 of *March*, (or ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon) above the Longitude of the 20 of *February* be much greater, than the exceſs of the 21 of *January*, is above the 21 of *December*.

Let the place of the *Sun* for every one of thoſe 4 days be noted on the Ecliptick of the Globe, *to wit*, the firſt Degree of *Piſces*, of *Aries*, *Capricorn*, and *Aquarius*, and let the Parallels of the *Sun* be deſcribed, whereof two are extant in the Globe, *viz.* the Æquator, and the Tropick of *Capricorn*. Therefore it will be apparent, that the Æquator, or Parallel of the *Sun* in the 1 of *Aries* is abſent a far longer interval, from the Parallel of the *Sun* in the 1 of *Piſces*, than the Parallel of the *Sun* in the 1 of *Aquarius*, from the Parallel in the 1 of *Capricorn*. Thence it cometh to paſs that not much a bigger portion of the Parallel of the 1 of *Aquarius* is above the Horizon, than of the Parallel of the 1 of *Capricorn*, or of the Tropick of *Capricorn* it ſelf. Now theſe parts ſhew the ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon in thoſe daies, but the portion of the Æquator, or Parallel of the 1 of *Aries*, that is above the Horizon, is much bigger than the portion of the Parallel of the 1 of *Piſces*. Now becauſe theſe Arches being above the Horizon, denote the ſtay of the *Sun* above the Horizon, for this is the Longitude of the day, hence we collect the increaſe or decreaſe of the Declination of the *Sun* from the Æquator (or of the Points of the Ecliptick) to be the Cauſe of this unequal increaſe of the days, but in the places of the Æquator it ſelf, all days are equal, and therefore here is no increaſe or decreaſe: although the *Sun* ſeem to ſtand about the days of the *Solſtice*, that is a little changing the Meridian Altitude.

Now it is manifeſt, that the greater inequality of this encreaſe and decreaſe of the days is to be found, where the places are more remote from the Æquator, if that the Pole be Elevated for the diſtance of the divers places from the Æquator; and the Arches of the Parallels Elevated above the Horizon, be conſidered in both ſcituations.

Pro-

Propoſition XXV.

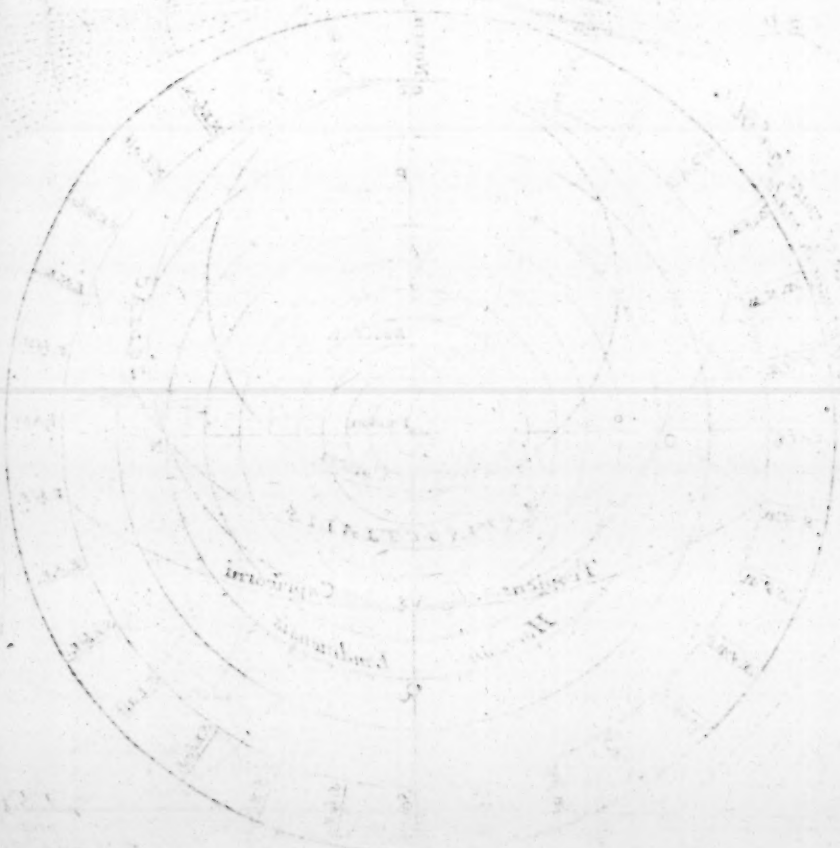
In the places of the Torrid Zone, *or thoſe ſcituated in the* Æquator, *or in the midſt of the* Torrid Zone, *the* Sun *much ſooner departeth from the* Vertex, *than in places near the Tropick of* Cancer, *or* Capricorn.

Of the departure of the Sun in places of the Torrid Zone.

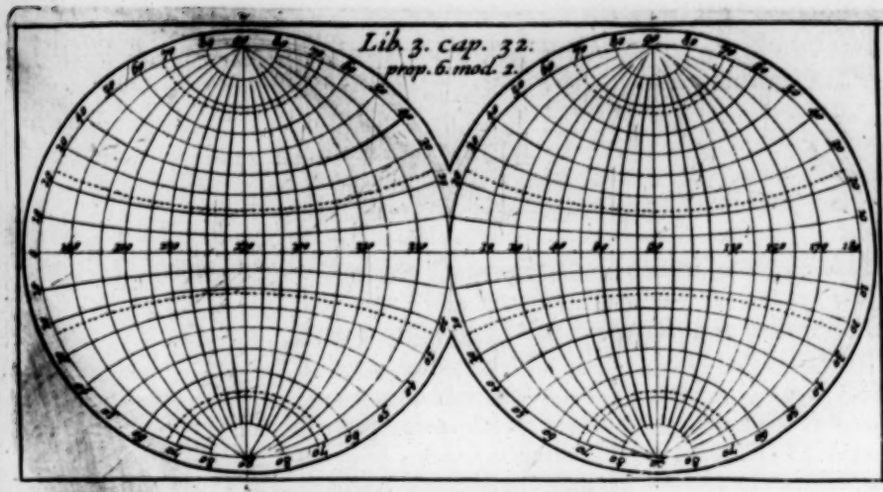
Let any Degree in the *Brazen* Meridian of the Globe be noted, for *Example*, the Fifth Degree from the Æquator, and another place in the Torrid Zone being taken, for *Example*, one whoſe Latitude is 18 Degrees. Let this be brought to the Meridian; make a ſign with a Chalk in this, and let 5 Degrees from this towards the Tropick be reckoned on the *Brazen* Meridian, and here again make a ſign with a Chalk. We muſt ſhew that the *Sun* in fewer days is removed from the *Vertex* of the places of the Æquator, 5 Degrees in the *Meridies*, than from the *Vertex* of another place ſo many Degrees.

Let the Globe be turned until ſome Point of the Ecliptick come under ſome noted Point of the Meridian near to the Æquator. And let the Degrees of the Ecliptick between the firſt of *Aries* and *Libra*, and between that Point and the Arches here to be noted. Then let the Globe be turned again, until ſome Point of the Ecliptick paſs through the Note made in the Meridian for the place, and let this Point of the Ecliptick be noted: then let the Globe be turned again until another Point of the Ecliptick paſs through by that Point, removed five Degrees which is noted, which muſt again be noted: and let the Arch between the two laſt Points of the Ecliptick be reckoned, which will be found to be much bigger, than that which was firſt noted; and thence the *Sun* ſhall ſtay in this Arch more days than in the former, and therefore he more ſlowly recedeth from the *Vertex* of the ſecond place, than from the *Vertex* of the place taken in the Æquator.

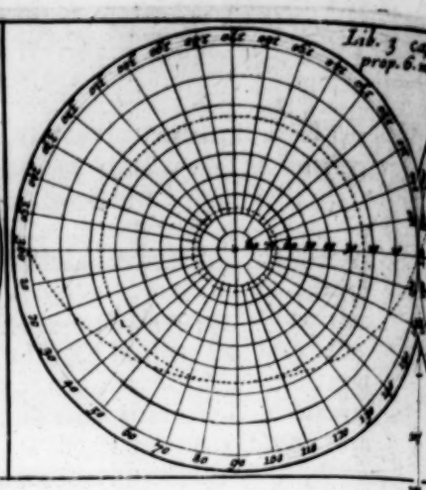
THE



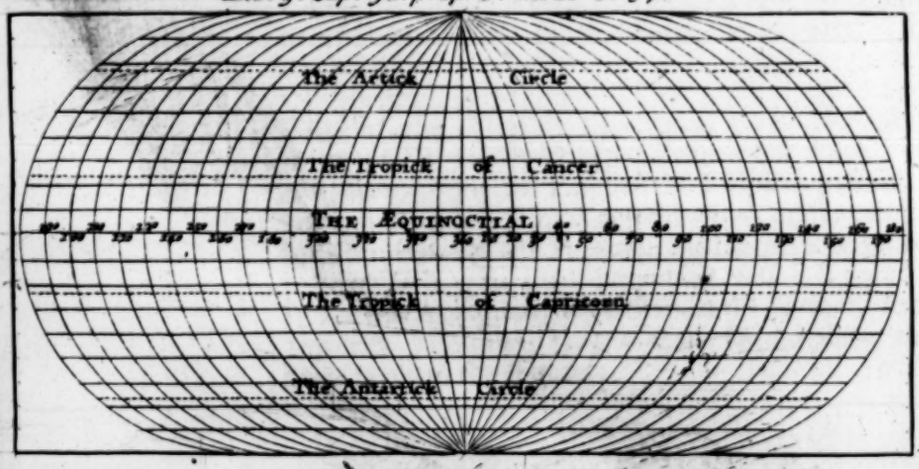
Lib. 3. cap. 32.
prop. 6. mod. 2.



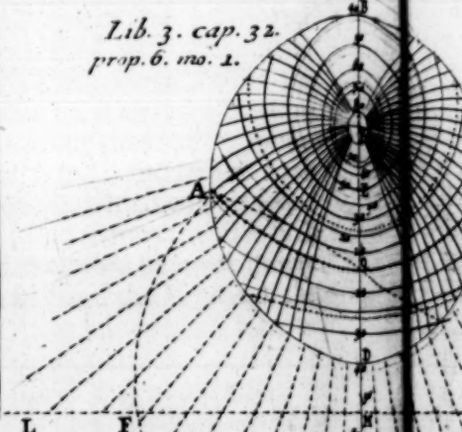
Lib. 3 cap. 3
prop. 6. mod

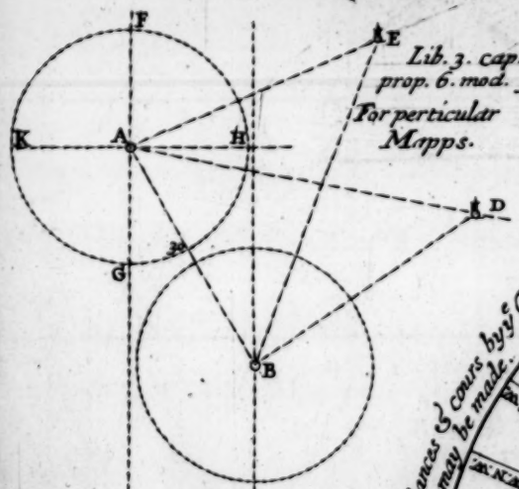


Lib. 3. cap. 32. prop. 6. modo 6. & 7.



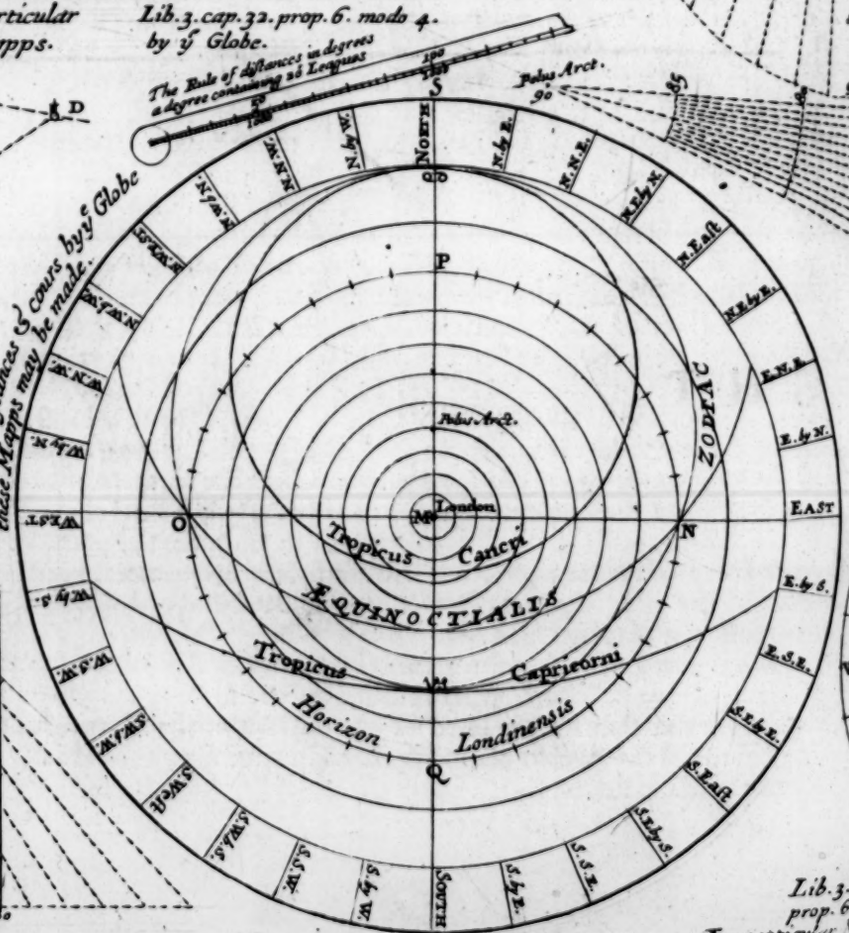
Lib. 3. cap. 32.
prop. 6. mo. 1.



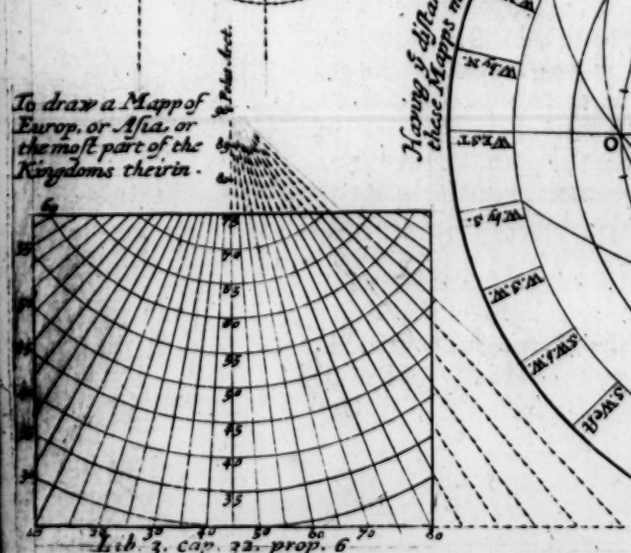


Lib. 3. cap. 32
prop. 6. mod. 3.
For perticular
Mapps.

Lib. 3. cap. 32. prop. 6. modo 4.
by ye Globe.

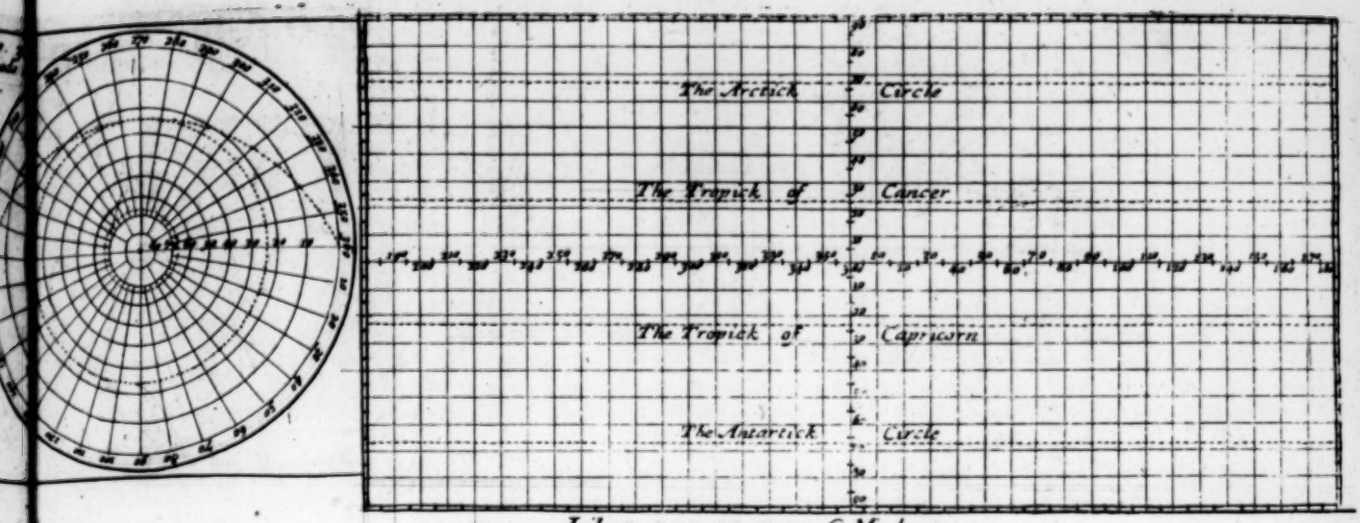


To draw a Mapp of
Europ. or Asia, or
the most part of the
Kingdoms therin.



Lib. 3. cap. 32. prop. 6

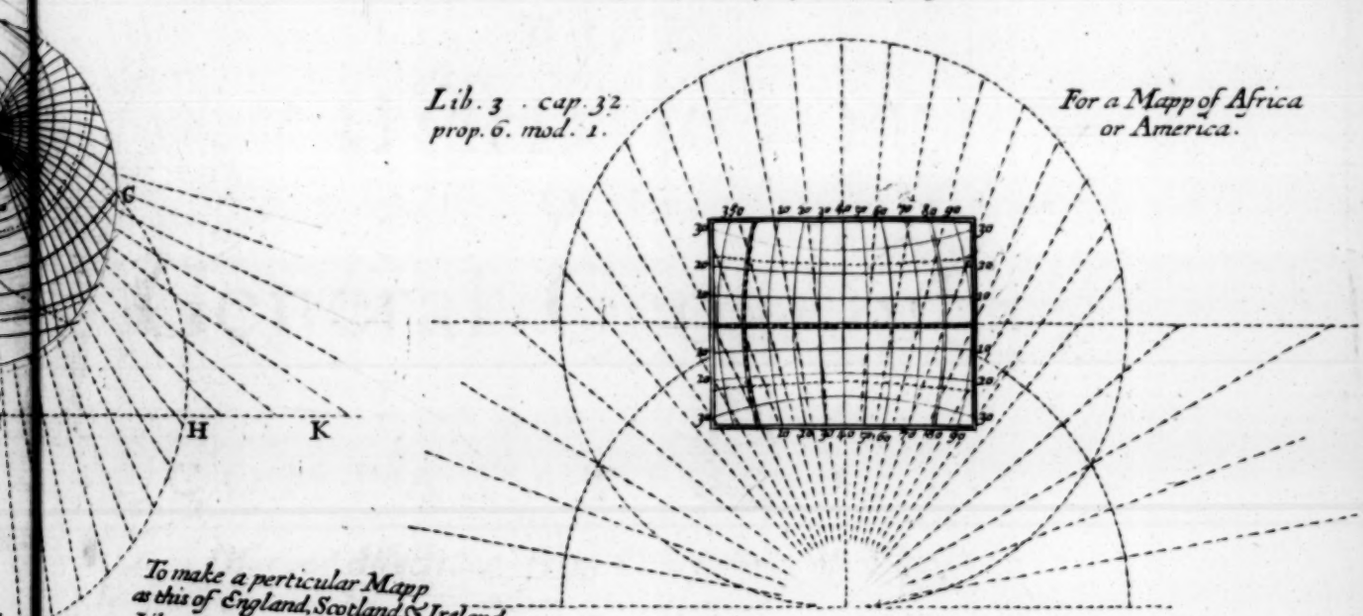
Lib. 3. cap. 3
prop. 6. mod.
For perticular Mapps
help of a Ter
all Gl



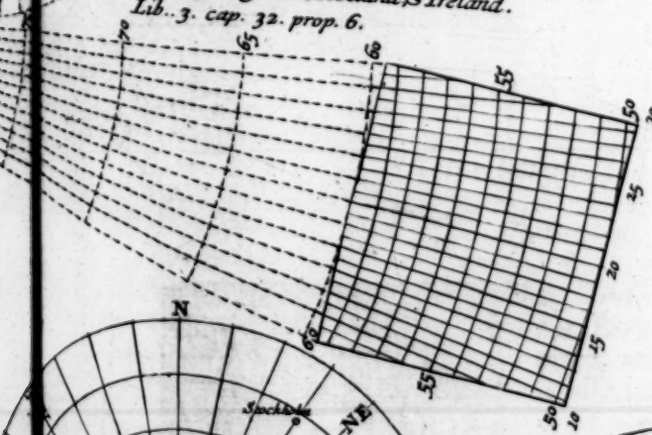
Lib. 3. cap. 32. prop. 6. Modo 3.

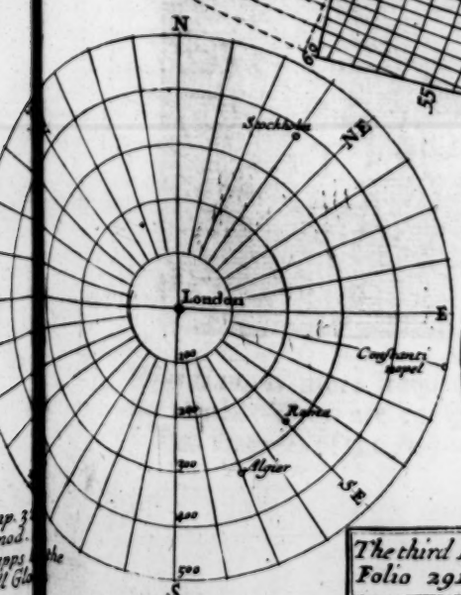
Lib. 3 . cap. 32
prop. 6. mod. 1.

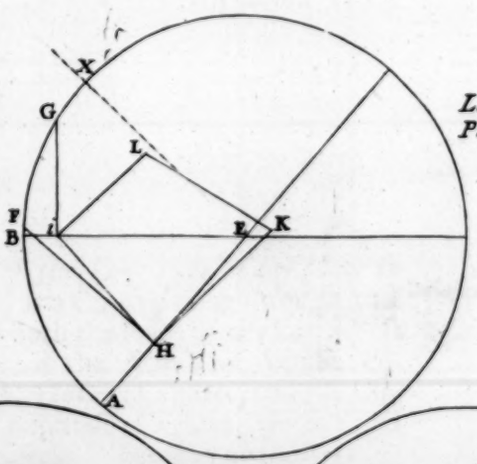
For a Mapp of Africa
or America.



To make a perticular Mapp
as this of England, Scotland & Ireland.
Lib. 3. cap. 32. prop. 6.

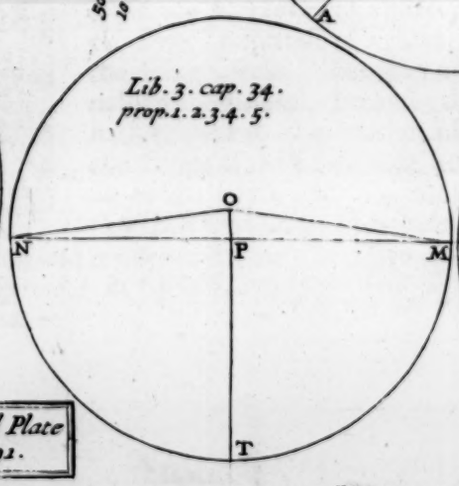




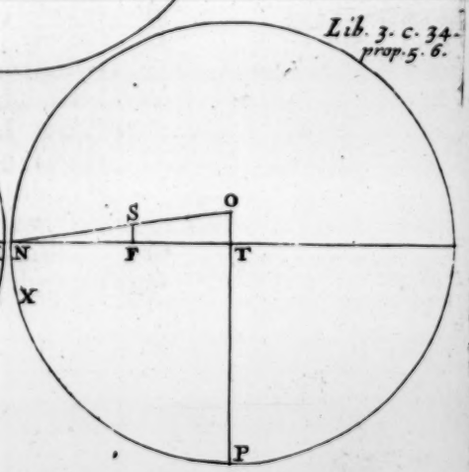


Lib. 3. cap. 33
Prop. 9. Num. 7.

Lib. 3. cap. 34.
prop. 1. 2. 3. 4. 5.



Lib. 3. c. 34.
prop. 5. 6.



The third Plate
Folio 291.

THE THIRD BOOK OF General Geography,

TO WIT, THE COMPARATIVE PART

Of the Affections from Comparing of Places.

CHAP. XXXI.

Of the Longitude of a place.

Definitions.

1. *THE Circle of the Longitude of any place in the Earth,* is a Circle passing through that place, and both the Poles of the Earth. It is also termed the *Meridian* Circle, because the *Meridian* of a place, and the Circle of the Longitude of a place, are one and the same Circle. But they are only rationally distinguished, because the *Meridian* hath respect to the Motion of the Stars; the Circle of the Longitude, to the extension of the Earth; having no respect to the *Celestial* Motions. But the use of the term *Meridian*, is more frequent and convenient, and therefore we shall also use the word. They are conspicuous in Globes, and Maps, passing through every Ten Degrees of the *Æquator*. Definitions.

2. The

2. The distance of a place from a certain Meridian is termed the Longitude of a place, or else it is the Arch of the Æquator, or Parallel intercepted between the Meridian of that place, and a certain other Meridian: This Meridian from which the Meridians of other places are reckoned, from West towards the East, is called the first Meridian. The Longitude of the Earth it self is termed its extension from West to East, conceived according to the Line of the Æquator. The first Meridian in the Maps, and Globes, is notable above the rest for Magnitude, and Colour, and it is apparent to the eyes.

3. The distance of one place from another, is a very short Line intercepted between those two places in the Superficies of the Earth.

4. Any Point in the Globe and Maps, is truly said to represent and exhibit any place of the Earth, if that it hath that Scituation and distance to the other points of the Maps, such as the place of the Earth, which it ought to represent, hath to the other places of the Earth, which are represented by the other Points of the Earth.

Proposition I.

Nature hath put no beginning or end to the dimension of the Earth, or of the extension from the West, to the East, or according to the Æquator, *but all and every one of the places may be taken for a beginning, and the first Meridian may be placed in them.*

No beginning or end of the Dimension of the Earth, &c.

For the better understanding of this, the matter must be more fully searched into, because that some, (I know not upon what account) suppose great mysteries to lie herein, that every Superficies, as well plane as crooked (as a Line by one, and a Body by three) is measured and terminated by two Dimensions, or extensions, as is evident from Principles of *Geometry*, and common use: of which extension one is termed the Longitude of the extension or figure, and the other the Latitude: and the one is conceived perpendicular to the other. Neither do these extensions differ in their nature, but that which we take for Longitude, may also be taken for Latitude, and so on the contrary: but yet for the most part, if these two extensions be unequal, we take the longest for Longitude, and the shortest for Latitude.

But in Ordinate Figures, as in the *Æquilateral Triangle*, a *Quadrate*, and the like, the two extensions are equal; neither is there any difference between Longitude and Latitude. For the Figure of the Superficies of the Earth is Spherical, and Latitude doth not truly differ from Longitude, which we so conceive in it for the more distinct cognition. Now those two extensions in the Spherical Superficies are commodiously so conceived (as in other crooked Superficies,) if that first the *Periphery* of the Semicircle be taken in it, drawn from one point to the opposite point, and this Line be made one extension of the Superficies, then for the other extension you shall take another *Periphery*, cutting the former *Periphery* in the middle at Right Angles (for so Longitude and Latitude are taken in all Figures) and this must be conceived to extend about the whole Superficies, until it return to it self, that so a crooked Superficies may be supposed to be extended into a plane. Because therefore the first assumed *Periphery*, or extension, is only the Semicircle, that shall be the Latitude of the Globe; the latter, or other extension shall be the Longitude of the Globe, because it is longer than the former extension, as returning into it self, and being the *Periphery* of the whole Circle. Others render another cause of the Appellation; *to wit*, that the lesser part of the Earth was known to the Ancients, from Pole to Pole; the greater from the East to the West.

Concerning the Latitude and Longitude of the Earth, and of places.

Moreover in the Superficies of the Globe, we may take any *Semiperiphery* for the extension of Latitude, and his perpendicular for the extension of Longitude, and therefore we may do the same also on the Superficies of the Earth: but because it is better for memory, if that the *Peripheries* be assumed, whose bounds, or else those *Peripheries* before the other *Peripheries*, which

which have somewhat peculiar in the Superficies, therefore in the Superficies of the Earth for the extention of Latitude, some one *Periphery* is deservedly taken, drawn amongst the Poles of the Earth, and because no other *Periphery* is perpendicular to this *Periphery*, which may pass together through its *Medium*, except the Line of the *Æquator*, therefore the *Æquator* it self must be taken for the extension of the Longitude of the Earth.

So I think it is clearly explained, for what reason the Latitude of the Earth between the Poles is measured for Longitude by the assumed Line of the *Æquator*. This Latitude and Longitude of the Earth must not be confounded with the Latitude and Longitude of places, or Points in the Earth, therefore they are expressed by the same terms, because the Latitude of places, or Points, is taken in the *Periphery* of the Latitude of the Earth it self, and is part of it: but the Longitude of places or Points is taken in the *Periphery* of the Longitude of the Earth, *viz.* in the *Æquator* it self, and its Parallels.

Yet this is an improper acceptation of the terms, because Latitude and Longitude properly (as hath been said) only agreeth to the Figures and Superficies: but a Point hath neither Latitude, nor Longitude; and therefore this different acceptation of the words, Latitude and Longitude, ought to be observed, because they are so frequently met with in the reading of *Geographers*, viz. the *use and acceptation otherwise* when we say the Latitude and Longitude of *France*, *Spain*, and the like. Because then the *words* are taken in their proper signification: for it is the Figure of *France*, or *Spain*, and so Longitude then signifieth the outmost or longest extension, but Latitude the shortest; which acceptation doth agree with that, wherein we said before that so much Latitude and so much Longitude must be assigned to the Superficies of the Earth. But the *signification* is otherwise, when we say, the Latitude or Longitude of this place, if by places we understand any Point, City, or Famous Place, because then, Latitude denoteth the distance of the place from the *Æquator*; and the Longitude its distance from a certain Meridian. And indeed in my Judgment, for the avoyding of confusion, it were better to abstain from the use of these *words*, Longitude and Latitude, and to use these in their stead, the distance from the *Æquator*, and the distance from the Meridian: but seeing that for so many Ages this hath been received, therefore it will be a hard matter to abolish it, wherefore in the following Discourse I shall also use the said terms, Latitude and Longitude.

The Authors Judgment about the words Latitude, and Longitude.

Moreover the Latitude of a place, as the Latitude of the whole Earth, hath some noted Points of the Earth for the beginning of the *Numeration*, *viz.* the Poles and the *Æquator*: but the Longitude of the Earth, because it is extended about the whole Earth, hath no certain beginning, or end, but the beginning and end is every where, because the *Periphery* is like to an infinite Line. Wherefore any Point of the *Æquator* may be taken for the beginning of the Longitude of the Earth, and the Meridian passing through that Point, for the first Meridian, from whence the Meridians of all the Points of the Earth are numbred, or the Longitude of them Calculated.

Now why we require these two distances in every Point of the Earth, *viz.* one from the *Æquator*, and the other from a certain Meridian, shall be shewed in the Third *Proposition*.

Proposition II.

To place and determinate the first Meridian, *and the beginning of the Numeration for the Longitude of the places in the Globe of the Earth.*

We have said in the preceeding *Proposition* that every Point of the *Æquator* may be taken for the beginning of the extension of the Earth according to Longitude, and that from its Meridian the Longitudes of places must be reckoned, but because we cannot take all at once, it is better to fix one beginning, or to choose some certain Point, (but that is left to the choice of persons). Therefore *Geographers* have taken a certain place in the Superficies of the Earth, through which the first Meridian shall be drawn, and should shew in the *Æquator*, where it cutteth it, this beginning of reckoning of the Longitude of places. But all have

See Proposition 1.

not taken the same place for the first Meridian, but divers. *Ptolomy* hath taken that near to the *Fortunate Islands*, which he removeth but only one *deg.* from the first, and hence towards the *Oriental quarter* through *Africa*, and *Asia*, he reckoneth the rest of the Meridians, and *Longitude* of places. For seeing it was less free to place a beginning, the Ancients chose rather to have an account of the places of the Earth, which they knew were inhabited, which portion doth not return into it self, as the superficies of the Earth, and therefore in that portion or part a beginning of *Longitude* and end may be assigned in another Point. Because therefore in the time of *Ptolomy* the *Fortunate Isles*, where the ultimate ones in the *Occidental Quarter* of all the Earth, or Lands then known: Therefore from that bound *Ptolomy* beginneth to reckon the *Longitude* of the Earth, and having gone forwards to the *Oriental Regions*, he maketh the end of his *Numeration* of the Meridians, in *Sina*, the ultimate Shoar of *Asia*.

The Longitude of places where begun by *Ptolomy*.

But in process of time many *Regions* of the Earth were found to be Inhabited towards the *Occid.* and *America* was discovered, then some *Geographers* promoted the beginning of *Numeration* of *Longitude* towards the *Occid.* For some made the first Meridian at the *Isle* of St. *Nicholas*, adjacent to *Cape Verd* in *Africa*; but *Hondius* chose the *Isle* of St. *James* in his *Maps*.

Some chose the Meridian of one of the *Islands* of the *Azores*, which is called *Del Corvo* for the first Meridian, because that in this *Isle*, and the adjoyning *Sea*, the *Magnetick Needle* is found to have no Declination from the Meridian Line, and that it sheweth the Northern and Southern *quarter*. *Mercator* hath observed the beginning also in his *Maps*.

The Longitude of places where begun by *Hondius*, *Mercator*, and others.

But seeing that there are other places in the Earth, where the *Magnetick Needle* doth the same, neither doth it do it in all the Meridian of this place, therefore other *Geographers* have not thought that Cause sufficient: and some have placed the first Meridian in the *Brazilian* Shore: the more Modern, especially the *Hollanders* having gone back to the *Fortunate*, or *Canary Isles*, have chose in one of them called *Teneriffe*, a Mountain which is thought to be the highest in the whole World, called *El pico de Teneriffe*, and from the Meridian of this Mountain, they judge the *Numeration* of the *Longitude* of places ought to be begun, because they think fit that a Famous and durable place for all Ages may be best chosen for this purpose, concerning which in Ages to come, Posterity should not easily doubt, and moreover that that assignation of *Ptolomy*, which hath been observed for so many Ages, should not be deserted on a trivial account. The *French* at this day, from the Year 1634, observe that for the first Meridian which passeth through the *Occidental* part of the *Isle* of *Fer*, one of the *Canary Isles*. Which beginning *Lewis* the XIII King of *France*, commanded his *Mariners* and *Geographers* to observe.

The Longitude by the *Hollanders* begun at *Teneriffe*.

The Longitude by the *French* begun at the Isle of *Fer*, in the *Canarits*.

Astronomers also take divers places for the first Meridian. For those who follow *Tycho*, are wont to place it at *Uranoburge*, scituate in an *Island* in the *Danish Sea*, and at this place to compute their *Celestial motions*, and thence to other places. Others make other beginnings as they follow this or that Author of the *Ephemerides*. For the Writers of *Ephemerides*, as also the *computers* of the *Planetary Tables*, are wont to calculate the *motions* and appearances of the *Planets*, to the Meridians of their own *Country*, as *Origanus* to *Frankford*, *Maginus* to *Venice*, (because that *Padua* is an Academy of the *Venetians*). *Ecstadius* to *Stetin*, *Lansbergius* to *Goesa* in *Zeland*, *Reinboldus* to *Regium* a *Mountain* of *Borussia*.

The Longitude likewise begun in sundry places by *Astronomers*.

But to speak freely what I think, all this dissent of Authours proceedeth from no sufficient Cause, so that those who first removed the *Ptolomaick-beginning* out of its place are blame worthy. But it is all one, whatsoever beginning of this account is taken in the Earth, whether the place be noted, or the *ultimate* to the *Occident*, or *Orient*, so that the scituation and distance of the other places be accurately known at it. Yet this variety of the beginning of the Meridians expresseth the reading of *Geographical Writers* with many confusions and difficulties. Yet because the knowledge of the Declination of the *Loadstone*, is of great utility, and that that Declination encreaseth

eth even to a certain *Meridian*, and then again decreaseth, I think it not altogether inconvenient for the observation of the Declination of the *Load stone*, and the more easy comparison of the increase or decrease of it, if that that be taken for the first *Meridian*, in which the *Magnetick Needle* maketh little or no Declination, so that such a *Meridian* might be given, *viz.* in all the places of which, or the most at least, the *Magnetick Needle* would do it.

But seeing that the *Hollanders* at this time take the Mountain of *Teneriffe*, for the beginning of their *Longitude*, and that they Sail at this day into all parts of the World, therefore it is convenient to acknowledge the same beginning with them for the better understanding of the *Diaries* that they are wont to publish.

Now you must know that the Reading of Authours, where mention is made of the *Longitude* of a Place, or of a certain numbred *Meridian*, that then you ought to consider, what beginning of *Longitude* that Author determineth, or through what place he bringeth his first *Meridian*, (*as you are to observe that the Maps which are used in the Second Part of this Book, being the* Geographical *Description of the parts and places of the Four Parts of the World, the Longitude I say of those places, are taken according to the* French *Account, beginning at the* Isle *of* Fer, *being one of the* Canary Isles, *they being Composed by* Monsieur Sanson, Geographer *to the King of* France, *and whose Method is not convenient to be allow'd*), for to that the *Longitude* of other places must be brought and inquired of.

Proposition III.

The Latitude and Longitude of any place, or the distance of any place from the Æquator, *or a certain* Meridian *being given, which is found in the Maps, or Globes, to exhibit the scituation and Point of that place on the Maps, or Globes.* Or thus, *If that we be in any place of the World* (*either at* Land *or* Sea) *which is unknown unto us, or whose scituation we are ignorant of, to the other parts of the Earth, so that if we can find the Latitude and Longitude of this place, thence to find out the scituation of this place in the Earth, and its distance from other places.*

This is that *Problem* for which a Method is sought so anxiously, and with so great industry, by which the *Longitude* of a place at any time in which we are in it may be found, and therefore although we should first treat of the invention of this *Longitude*, yet I thought it fitter to premise the *Problem* it self, for which that *Longitude* is sought for, and that for this reason, seeing that we must treat largely of this *Longitude*, least you should be cloyed, not knowing to what end so great a labour is undertaken, and so many various ways tryed.

The Longitude and Latitude of places, of great importance to Mariners to know.

For *Mariners* having Sailed far from the Shoar, and being in the *Ocean*, because they cannot accurately know the way of their Voyage made, by reason of the divers hindrances, and note it in their *Maps*, are often ignorant in what place of the Earth they are, what scituation this place hath to those places whither they go, or what places are to be gone to, if that they will avoid danger, and therefore also they are ignorant unto what *quarter* they must direct their course. Unto the knowledge of which there is no more ready a Method, than for to certainly find the *Longitude*, and *Latitude* of the place, that is, its distance from the *Æquator*, and some certain *Meridian* of the Earth. And *Mathematicians* have taught them, with no great difficulty by divers ways to find out the *Latitude* of a place in the day by the *Sun*, and in the night by the *Stars*. Such Modes we have shewed before, (for those who think to know it only by the help of the Compass, sufficiently discovered their ignorance;) from which *Latitude* being found, they know in what Parallel of the Earth they are, which indeed is no small part of the demand. But seeing that the Points of the Parallel are infinite, they do not yet know from the knowledge of this *Latitude* in what Point of the Parallel they are: this they would

tain, if that they knew in what Meridian they were, or how many *degrees* this Meridian is distant from some Meridian of other places. For this Meridian cutteth the Parallel before found, that Point is the place wherein they are. For so it is observed in all *Mathematical Disciplines*, that when it is demanded concerning the place of any Point, that for the most part is no otherwise found than by the Section of two *Lines*.

Therefore let the Latitude or Longitude of any place, or Point scituated in the Superficies of the Earth be known, the scituation of the place or Point will be found thus in the Globe.

Let the *deg.* of Latitude from the *Æquator* be numbred in the *Brazen* Meridian, and at the term of the *Numeration*, let the Parallel of the place, or Circle of Latitude, be described by a Chalk applyed. Thus it is certain from the found out Latitude, that we are in some Point of it, or that some Point of it is that which is sought for. And this Point moreover is known from the found out Longitude, for let the Meridian or place, from which that Longitude is reckoned be brought under the *Brazen* Meridian (if that the Meridian pass through the beginning of this *Numeration*, or if the first Meridian of the Globe be that beginning, then it is not necessary to bring it to the *Brazen* Meridian) and let the *deg.* of the known Longitude, be numbred in the *Æquator* for that Point, which is in the Meridian, towards the West, or East, as the Longitude is given. Let the term of the *Numeration* be brought to the *Brazen* Meridian (except some Meridian pass through it) so this Meridian shall represent the Meridian in which the Point sought, or place unknown is necessarily scituated. And the Parallel is before found, in which the same demanded Point hath been shown to be scituated. Wherefore the sought place is that Point where the found out Meridian, and the before found out Parallel mutually cut one another, *viz.* that Point of the Parallel which is discovered under the *Brazen* Meridian: The practice is easy after this Mode.

Let the *degrees* of the given Longitude be numbred in the *Æquator*, from that Point *which is the beginning of the given* Longitude: *Let the term of the* Numeration *be brought to the* Brazen Meridian, and let the Degrees of the Latitude *given be reckoned from the* Æquator *in the* Meridian. *The term of the* Numeration *is the* place *sought, or the term of the* Point, *in which the* place *unknown lyeth.*

Mariners make use of Maps or Charts consisting of streight Lines.

It is thus shewed on *Maps*, consisting of *streight Lines*, as all *Mariners Maps* are: the *degrees* of Latitude are reckoned in the *Lines* descending, or side *Lines*, and the Rule being applyed, the Parallel of the place is drawn, in which it is certain that the unknown place lyeth. Then in the *transverse lines* above and beneath, the Longitude is reckoned, and the Rule being applyed, the Meridian Line is drawn, where this cutteth the former, that is the Point of the place sought for. But more expeditiously thus: the Rule being applyed to the *degrees* of Longitude given in the *tranverse lines*, then one or other part is taken from the interval of the *Compass* in the *Lateral line*, which lyeth between the given *degree* of Latitude, and the upper or lower Point, and this interval or space of the *Compass* being fitted to the Rule, presently you have the place of the Point sought for in the *Map*. Therefore the scituation of this is beheld at once in all places; hence it is easy to gather unto what *quarter* the Ship must Sail, and direct her Course, if that they intend to arrive at this or that place.

Of Maps of Crooked Lines.

We act after the same Mode in *Maps* of *Crooked lines*, except only that we are forced to draw *Crooked lines* in *streight lines*. This is the principal use of the found out Latitude of the *Mariners Art*.

The second and greatest use, is the making of *Globes* and *Maps*, because after the same Mode in which we have shewed by Longitude, and Latitude known, all the places are made in the *Globes* and *Maps*, as shall be shewed in the following *Proposition*. For it would be impossible to make a *Terrestrial Globe*, except the Longitude of places had been found out and known. And thence it cometh to pass, that *Globes*, and *Maps*, may attribute many places to a false place, because their true Latitude was not known.

The

The third use of the known Latitude of places is also notable, *viz.* that by that we easily know the variety of times in divers places, and in what hour, or in what part of an hour every one of the *Celestial Phænomena*'s are beheld in divers Regions, of which I shall speak in the next *Proposition*.

The fourth use, is that from the difference of the Longitude of two places, and Latitude, the distance of places is found. Now we come to the Method of finding of it.

Proposition IV.

The Sun, Stars, *and all the Points conceived in the Heaven* (*as the Points of the* Æquator, *and* Parallels) *are every hour removed, or recede* 15 *degrees from the* Meridian *of any place, in one scruple of an honr* $\frac{1}{60}$ *they are removed* 15 *minutes, and so in* 4 *scruples of an hour they recede one degree*, viz. *the distance being taken in the* Parallel *of any* Star.

The *Sun*, *Stars*, and all the Points conceived in the Heavens, are every hour removed 15 degrees from the Meridian of any place.

An hour is the 24*th* part of time, in which the *Sun* being carried from the Meridian of any place, to the Occident through the lower Heaven, and the *Oriental* Horizon, returneth to the Meridian again, that is, he is circumvolved through an whole *Periphery*. Now a *Periphery* is accounted by 360, and if you divide 360 by 24, you shall find that 15 *degrees* do answer to one hour. Therefore the *Sun* in one hour is removed 15 *deg.* from the Meridian of any place, all the *Stars* also are found at the same time to be wheeled round with the *Sun*, through an whole *Periphery* to the Meridian. Wherefore they also depart from the Meridian every hour 15 *deg.* and in 4 scruples of an hour one *deg.*

This may be shewed or demonstrated on the Globe. For let any Point of the *Æquator* be noted, and that being brought to the Meridian, let the Index be placed at the 12*th* hour of the Circle. Then let the Globe be turned until the Index shew the first hour, and you shall find that the noted Point of the *Æquator*, hath departed 15 *deg.* from the Meridian, or as we commonly say, the Meridian hath passed 15 *deg.* of the *Æquator*: if you then again turn the Globe until the Index shew the 2*d*, 3*d*, or 4*th* hour, you shall find in every noted hour, that the Point hath departed from the Meridian 15 *degrees*. After the same Mode we shall find the same in any Parallel, which the *Sun* and *Stars* do describe by a Diurnal Motion without the *Æquator*.

Proposition V.

The given hours being given at one and the same time, or at one and the same Celestial appearance, as also the Horary *minutes of our place, and that of the other place; to find out how many degrees the* Meridian *of our place is distant from the* Meridian *of the other place, that is to find the Longitude of our place from that place.*

The solution is easy from what hath been said already, by reason that it hath been shewed, that if one place anticipateth one hour of the account of the other place, the Meridian of that is more *Oriental* than the Meridian of this, by 15 *degrees*; if two hours by 30 *degrees*; if three hours by 45 *degrees*.

Let therefore the difference of the given hours, be changed into the *degrees*, and Minutes of the *Æquator*, *viz.* reckoning for every hour 15 *degrees*; for $\frac{1}{4}$ of an hour, 3 *degrees*, 45 Minutes; for one scruple of an hour 1 *degree*. The found out *degrees* and Minutes, will shew the distance of the Meridians, *viz.* if that the hours of our place be more than the hours of the other place, our Meridian shall be situated towards the East from the other; if fewer, towards the West.

Pro-

Propoſition VI.

Again hours and ſcruples of hours of divers places being given at one and the ſame time; or at the time of one and the ſame Celeſtial appearance, and one place, or one Meridian *of one place being given in the Maps, or Globes, to exhibit alſo the* Meridian *or Longitude of another place on the Globe or Maps.*

Further concerning the Longitude of places.

Let the difference of hours, and ſcruples of hours be changed into the Degrees and Minutes of the *Æquator*. Then conſider, whether the hours of this place, whoſe Meridian is given on the Globe, and the Maps be fewer or more than that of the other place, whoſe Meridian is ſought for. If fewer, this other Meridian ſhall be ſcituated from the given Meridian, towards the Eaſt; if more towards the Weſt. Let it be brought to the *Brazen* Meridian (except ſome other Meridian paſs through it) and let the Degrees and Minutes found from the difference of the hours be numbred from the Point of the *Æquator*, together being in the Meridian, and that towards the Weſt, or Eaſt, as we collect the ſcituation of the other place (it is more eaſily done by the *Horary* Index applyed to 12, and the Globe being turned round until the Index ſhew the difference of the hours). Let the term of the account be noted with Chalk, and brought under the Meridian: ſo this *Brazen* Meridian ſhall be the Meridian ſought, and the Point of the *Æquator* ſhall ſhew its Longitude.

In Maps let the ſame Degrees and Minutes be numbred from the given Meridian in *tranverſe lines* above and below, and the Rule being applyed, let the *Line* be drawn (for in *right lined* Maps, as ſuch as thoſe of *Mariners*, is the chief of this *Problem*) this *Line* ſhall be the ſought for Meridian.

Propoſition. VII.

To find the Longitude of an unknown place, in which we are, or to find the diſtance of the Meridian *in which we are, from ſome known* Meridian, *or whoſe ſcituation is or may be expreſſed on the Maps, or Globes.*

Of the finding out of the Longitude of an unknown place in which we are.

This is that *Problem* whoſe ſolution *Seamen* ſo much expect from the *Mathematicians*, which would render the Art of Navigation almoſt perfect, and ſubject to no Errour, which hath exerciſed for this two Ages the wits of ſo many great perſons, for the reſolving of which, the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch*, have every one appointed a donative of 50000 *Florens* to him who ſhall exhibit a reſolution: the *Dutch* and *German Mariners* are wont ſometimes to expound the *Problem* according to the *Latine phraſe*: but ſometimes they uſe another, as if you ſhould ſay, to ſeek the *Oriental* and *Occidental quarter*, which *phraſe* is very void of the matter; ſo that it is manifeſt what a power the Vulgar have taken in introducing new phraſes, though very improper. For by this phraſe it cometh to paſs that perſons unskilful in *Geography*, and *Navigation*, are ignorant what the *Mariners* mean, when they ſpeak of finding out the Eaſt, and Weſt: for moſt think, that they ſeek what the words import, *viz.* the Eaſtern and Weſtern *quarter*, which yet is falſe and unworthy the demand. For they know theſe *quarters* when they are in any place of the *Sea*, by the benefit of the ſame *Magnetick Needle*, which ſheweth the North and South. Becauſe in the *Mariners Compaſs* all the *quarters* are noted, and without the *Compaſs* the *Plaga* of the North and South, being known, it is moſt eaſy to ſhew the *quarter* of the Eaſt, and Weſt; for the face being turned towards the North, the Eaſt is on the right hand, the Weſt on the left: on the contrary, the face being turned towards the South, the Eaſt is on the left hand, and the Weſt on the right. But this is not the demand, but the Longitude of the place is that required; that is, how much in the Arch of the *Æquator* the Meridian of this place is removed towards the Weſt, or Eaſt, from any certain Meridian. But why, may ſome ſay, do *Mariners* aſſume ſo

im-

improper a phraſe? The reaſon is, that the Vulgar do conceive almoſt all things confuſedly, and only ſuperficially, and from a ſmall ſimilitude with other things impoſe Names and *Phraſes*, as is manifeſt from the appellation of *America*, which they Vulgarly term the Weſt *Indies*, becauſe that after the diſcovery of *India*, (properly ſo called) that was alſo found. This might be inſtanced by many more Examples, and ſo it is with this *phraſe*, to ſeek the Eaſt and Weſt. But ſeeing that this *Problem* to find out the North and South, is reſolved by the *Magnetick Needle*, and alſo the *Problem* of finding out the Longitude of a place is of very great Moment, and Mariners deſire to have as eaſy a Method to know the ſame, as that of the Latitude of a place, and moreover that Longitude is reckoned from the Weſt, to the Eaſt in the *Æquator*; therefore by reaſon of this ſlight ſimilitude, and account, they have taken up this *phraſe*, to find the Eaſt and Weſt, when here no *quarter* is ſought for, but only the diſtance of the Meridians. This is convenient to explain, by reaſon that many were brought into an Error, and falſe Conception of the ſame, or at leaſt were ignorant, what was ſignifyed by the *phraſe*.

Longitude reckoned from the Weſt to the Eaſt in the *Æquator*.

It is eaſy as is ſhewed aforeſaid, from the difference of hours, to ſhew, or find out the Longitude of one place from another. Therefore in *Calendars*, and *Ephemerides*, (by the ſignal Benefit, and liberality of *Aſtronomy*) we have ſet down for every day and hour, all the *Phænomena* of any place, and the Motions of the *Planets*, as the beginning, the middle, the end of an *Eclipſe*; alſo the Conjunction of the Moon with other *Planets*, her entrance into the *Ecliptick*. Therefore being in the place of an unknown Longitude, if we enquire the hour in which we behold the ſame *Phænomena* in this place, we ſhall thence find the difference of our hour, from the hour of that place unto which the *Tables* are Calculated; and hence moreover the diſtance of the Meridian from the Meridian in which we are, or whoſe hours the *Table* ſheweth, and ſo we have the demanded Longitude of the place. Neither doth the difficulty conſiſt in the finding of the hour, and *Horary* ſcruples, for they are eaſily known from the *quarter* or *Altitude* of the *Sun* or *Stars*, but the difficulty is in the defect of ſuch *Celeſtial appearances*, which may be ſo obſerved.

Now although there be alſo other Modes, by which without the knowledge of the hours, and conſideration of the *Planetary motions*, the Longitude of a place may be inquired, yet they have no place here, by reaſon that they do not firſt ſhew the Longitude, but the place it ſelf, and require other things which are equally unknown in thoſe caſes with the Longitude, which Modes we ſhall explain in the following diſcourſe. But now we ſeek ſuch Modes, in which that Longitude of the place may be found, where the ſcituation of the place is unknown. All which Modes preſuppoſe a knowledge and compariſon of the time in which any appearance of the *Planetary motion* is beheld in divers places. But thoſe Motions are unfit for this buſineſs which are very ſlow, ſo that in many hours none, or little difference is found in the place of thoſe *Planets*. For Example, *Saturn* maketh his Progreſs in the *Ecliptick*, in the ſpace of one hour. Therefore although from the *Ephemerides* we may have the time, and the hour which is in that place when that *Saturn* is in the *Ecliptick*, yet becauſe that he moveth very ſlowly, thence it cometh to paſs, that if you obſerve, he ſeemeth to ſtay many hours in the ſame place, and therefore that Moment of the hour cannot be known in the place where we are, ſeeing that they ſtay in the very *minute*, and therefore they cannot alſo compare the hour of our place, with the hour of the place of the *Tables*.

So the *Sun* goeth forwards every hour in the *Ecliptick* about $2\frac{1}{2}$ firſt *minutes*, (becauſe in an whole day it goeth forwards about one *degree*) which Motion is over ſlow for this buſineſs, by reaſon that although obſervations may be very accurately made at the beginning and end of the hour, yet the ſame place of the *Sun* ſhall be found, and therefore the Error of two or three hours may eaſily happen. For you muſt know, that the Modes ought to be ſuch that in the very ſearch of the 15*th* part of an hour, an error may

The Motion of the *Sun* in the *Ecliptick*.

may be avoyded, that is, that that *Celeſtial Phænomenon*, which is made uſe of for the finding of the ſame, may ſenſibly be varied within two *ſcruples* of an hour; for if at or between two *ſcruples* of an hour, it remaineth altogether the ſame both as to ſenſe and diligent obſervation, we cannot be certain of that part of an hour, in which that happeneth truly in the Heaven, and if we err two *ſcruples* of an hour in the obſervation, then an errour of half a *degree* will ſlip into the *Longitude*; ſo that we will ſuppoſe that our Meridian in which we are, and note it in the *Maps*, and *Globes*, which is not the true one, but removed from the true one in the *Æquator* half a *deg*. Therefore they are ſuch *Phænomenons* of the *Planets*, which within two *ſcruples* of an hour, or elſe at one *ſcruple*, or if poſſible, at half a *ſcruple* may be varied. But of ſuch there are none but theſe. 1. The beginning of the *Eclipſe* of the Moon, the middle, and the end. 2. The *Longitude*, or place of the Moon in the *Zodiack*. 3. The *diſtance* of the Moon from the fixed *Stars*, or her appulſe towards them. 4. The *ingreſs* of the Moon into the *Ecliptick*, or into the Points of her Circle, where this cutteth the *Ecliptick*; And 5. The *Conjunction*, *Diſtance*, and *Eclipſes* of the *Jovial Planets*, *viz.* of thoſe Four *Planets* which are found in this our Age, to make a Circuit about *Jupiter*. Whence the *Copernican Hypotheſis* hath obtained a great deal of Confirmation.

The firſt Mode by the Eclipſe of the Moon.

Of the Eclipſe of the Moon. Firſt Mode.

This Mode is very accurate if that their could happen but *Eclipſes* every night. At the time wherein we behold the beginning or end of the *Lunary Eclipſe* by the help of the *Teleſcope*, then I ſay, let the *Altitude*, or *Plaga* of any fixed *Star* be obſerved, and alſo let the Elevation of the *Pole* be before found out, or let it together be ſought for from ſome *Star* in the Meridian. From the *Altitude* of the *Star*, the hour with the *ſcruples*, is accurately enough found, as we ſhall ſhew from *Aſtronomy*, and more eaſily without the invention of *Altitude*, if the *Star* be in the Meridian. Let this hour ſo found out with the *ſcruples*, be compared with the hour and *ſcruples* in which the *Ephemerides* exhibit the beginning of the *Eclipſe*, or the middle, (which hours reſpect the Meridian, unto which the *Ephimerides* are Calculated) for ſo the hour of two places is found at the ſame time, or at the ſame *Celeſtial appearance*, *viz.* the hour of our place, and of the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*: and the Meridian of the *Ephemerides* is known. Therefore we ſhall find the *Longitude* of our place from the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*, if we change the difference of the hours of both places into the *degrees* and Minutes of the *Æquator*, as we have ſaid in the V. *Propoſition*. And becauſe in *Maps* given, and in the *Globe*, the given Meridian of the *Ephemerides* is known, or may be ſhewed with little labour, therefore we muſt reckon the *degrees* found out from it in the *tranſverſe lines* of the *Maps*, towards the Weſt, or Eaſt, as the hour of our place, or of the place unknown ſhall be more, or fewer than the hours of the Meridian of the *Ephemerides* and the Meridian Line ſhall be brought through the term of the *Numeration*. That is the Meridian of the place in which we then are, or in which the obſervation of the *Ecliptick* was made.

The ſecond Mode by the place of the Moon in the Zodiack.

The ſecond Mode.

Although the preceeding Mode, by the *Eclipſe* of the Moon performing the buſineſs, be moſt accurate, yet becauſe thoſe *Eclipſes* are very rare, neither are all conſpicuous in all places, therefore this Mode doth not reſolve the buſineſs ſufficiently, neither can it help the *Mariners* in the wide *Ocean*, but it is more convenient to the conſtituting and finding out the hours of the *Terreſtrial places*, where *Mathematicians* are, or may go, and the *Longitudes* of almoſt all places which we know are found out by this Mode. For from the noted comparation of the time, in which the beginning, or middle of the *Eclipſe* was diſcovered, it is eaſy to find out the *Longitude* of one place from another, as I think is ſufficiently explained. But the uſe of *Mariners* requireth

reth a *Phænomenon* or appearance, *viz.* which may happen every night at the leaſt (if not in the days) becauſe it can happen in every night, ſo that they may be in an unknown place, as deceived by *Tempeſts*. But the more frequent *Phænomenon* is the place of the Moon in the *Zodiack*, but a very trobleſom obſervation is required by reaſon of twofold *Parallaxes*, ſo that you can hardly avoid a ſmall error, if at leaſt a great one of half, or an whole hour be ſhunned, whence a falſe Meridian is found removed from a true many miles; *viz.* a hundred and more. Yet you will be ſubject to the leſſer error, if that you expect the moment of the hour in which the Moon is in the Meridian: for then the place is accurately enough found after this Mode. When you have obſerved that the Moon is come into the Meridian of the place where you are, then you muſt preſently take the noted *Altitude* of ſome *Star*, and from this, and the Elevation of the Pole, you may enquire the hour: but it is better to do it by ſome *Star* then in the Meridian, as we ſhall hereafter ſhew. Moreover from the known hour is found what Point of the *Ecliptick*, or *Zodiack*, is then in the Meridian, or that poſſeſſeth the middle of Heaven (as *Aſtronomers* ſpeak) which alſo is eaſy as we ſhall ſhew anon. So at the hour of our place, or of the unknown place, we ſhall have the known place of the Moon in the *Zodiack*. Then from the *Tables* of the *Ephemerides* let the hour be found, which is in the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*, where the *Sun* is in the place of the *Zodiack*, which is taught in the Introduction of the *Ephemerides*, neither is it difficult. And ſo again we ſhall have the hours of two places at the ſame time, *viz.* of the place in which we are, whoſe *Longitude* is unknown, and of the place, unto whoſe Meridian the *Ephemerides* are Calculated, and whoſe ſcituation is in *Maps* and *Globes*. Wherefore from the difference of time the *Longitude* of our place ſought for ſhall be found, as is ſufficiently demonſtrated in the preceeding Mode.

It is preſuppoſed that the Elevation of the Pole is before found.

The third Mode, by the diſtance of the Moon *from ſome fixed* Star.

The third Mode of the Moon.

By reaſon that we cannot obſerve the Moon in the Meridian many nights, *viz.* when ſhe is not much removed from the *Sun*, after and before the New Moon, and therefore this appearance is not ſo frequent as the *Mariners* uſe requireth, Therefore ſome do conſider another *Phænomenon* in the *motion* of the Moon, which is more frequent, and from thence the Mode in finding out the *Longitude* is delivered, *viz.* the drawing near, and departing of the Moon from the fixed *Stars*; for from thence the true place of the Moon may be obſerved at the given moment of the obſervation. But the Calculation is ſo difficult by reaſon of the *Parallaxes*, and the ſolution of the *Oblique Spherical Triangles*, and other hazards, that it can neither ſerve *Mariners*, nor will I burthen you with its Precepts, but rather omit it. For it requireth a *Genius* moſt expert in Calculation.

The fourth Mode by the entrance of the Moon *into the Ecliptick.*

The fourth Mode of the Moon.

The *path* of the Moon cutteth the Ecliptick in two *points*, in which when it cometh by its own proper *motion*, ſhe is then in the Ecliptick, but at other times it is moved out of it by a great departure of 5 *degrees*. Therefore you muſt obſerve exactly the time in the place of the unknown *Longitude*, in which the Moon toucheth the Ecliptick. Moreover from the *Ephemerides*, let the hour be taken at the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*, in which that entrance is made. Then from the compariſon of our time, or of the place unknown, with the time of the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*, you have the difference of time, whence the *Longitude* of the place, which is ours may be found from the Meridian of the *Ephemerides*. But this Mode alſo by reaſon of the difficult practice is to be eſteemed uſeleſs. For the entrance of the Moon into the Ecliptick is difficult to be obſerved, and the Calculation is very intricate, and ſubject to error.

The fifth Mode by the Jovial Planets.

The fifth Mode by the Jovial Planets.

Many judge this *Phænomenon* to be prefered before the *Phænomenons* of the Moon in this affair, becauſe that theſe *Jovial* attendants are not ſubject to *Parallaxes*; and moreover in every ſcituation of *Jupiter* above the Horizon, afford a commodious obſervation. There are four *Planets*, the invention of the *Great Galilæus*, which move about *Jupiter*, as about the Center of their Lord, ſo ſmall that they cannot be diſcerned by a free ſight, but only by the help of a *Teleſcope*. Their Motion (*viz.* that proper to them, by which they move about *Jupiter*, for they have a Diurnal Motion common with all the *Stars*, (a Motion common in the Ecliptick with *Jupiter*, and the other *Planets*) is very ſwift. For he that is next to *Jupiter*, abſolveth his courſe in one day with 18 ½ hours; the ſecond in 3 days, with 13 ¼ hours; the third in 7 days, and 2 hours; the fourth and laſt in 16 days with 18 hours. The progreſs of their Motion muſt be Calculated at every hour, and therefore it is not found in the common *Ephemerides*; but you have their *Ephemerides* in other Books. Therefore if we deſire by the help of their Motions to find the Longitude of a place, we muſt make uſe of a moſt perfect *Aſtroſcope*, and in the night turning it to *Jupiter* (if he be above the Horizon of that place) to obſerve the Conjunction of theſe two *Planets*, or the Conjunction with *Jupiter*, or the like appearance, and at that moment of time to find alſo the hour of the place from the Meridian ſcituation or *Altitude* of any *Star*. Then the *Ephemerides* of theſe Companions of *Jupiter* muſt be conſulted, and the hour, and ſcruples of hours thence taken, in which ſuch a Conjunction is in the Meridian, unto which thoſe *Ephemerides* are computed. And ſo again we ſhall have the hour of the two places at the time of one and the ſame *Phænomenon*. Whence from the difference of the hours, if it be turned into *degrees*, we ſhall find the Longitude of our place from the Meridian of the *Ephemerides* which is known.

The ſixth Mode by an Automatical, *or moving* Dial, *or* Horologe.

The ſixth Mode by a moving Dial.

By reaſon that all the Modes in which by the *Celeſtial Phænomena* we have ſhewed to find the Longitude of places are in this reſpect defective, that they do not appear every night (for it is known concerning the Moon, as alſo with the attendants of *Jupiter*, that they riſe and ſet with the *Sun* near to *Jupiter*) and moreover that they have a great difficulty of obſerving in the Ships, joyned or accompanied with the flowing of waves; for this reaſon many leaving the appearances of the Moon, and the attendance of *Jupiter*, fly to the *Automatical Horologe*, and adviſe the *Mechanical Artificers*, ſo to endeavour to prepare a *Machine*, or *Horologe* as may be ſubject to no error, ſo that it may ſhew 24 hours at the ſame time, in which the *Sun* may be circumvolved, and may make one day, or 24 hours, and may neither *Anticipate* or poſtdate the time.

A moving Dial very uſeful for the finding the Longitudes of places.

If that ſuch an *Automaton* could be made, it would be very apt and afford a moſt facile invention of Longitude to Navigators. For before that they ſet Sail from any place, the hour of that place muſt be obſerved accurately at ſome time (which is no difficult matter) and the *Automaton* was to be diſpoſed at that hour, and ſo in every day it will ſhew the hours of this place, if that it be ſubject to no fault. When therefore that place being left, it came to another whoſe Longitude or diſtance of the Meridian, from the Meridian of the place of the departure, we deſire to know, nothing remaineth to be done, but that we ſhould obſerve in this place the hour from Heaven (which in the day time is done by the *Sun*, in the night by the *Stars* without much labour) of this place, and alſo looking on the *Automaton* what hour then is in the place, or Meridian whence we departed. So we ſhall have the hours of two places at the ſame moment of time. And therefore that difference of hours, if that it be changed into *degrees* and Minutes, as hath been

ſaid

ſaid already, it will ſhew the Longitude of this place, from the Meridian of our place whence we departed, and ſo the *degrees* in the Maps or Globes being numbred from this Meridian whence we departed, they will ſhew the Meridian where we are.

But notwithſtanding *Artiſts* have hitherto ſhewed great induſtry in the making of an *Automaton* of ſuch perfection, yet none hath been ſo happy to accompliſh the ſame. For both the condition of the matter whence they are made lacks ſuch a perfection, and the diverſity of the *Air* taketh away the perpetual equality of the *motion*. For when the *Air* is cold, it moves more ſlowly than when the *Air* is warm, ſo that the *Automaton* which the *Hollanders* placed in their Houſes, when they lived a whole Winter in *Nova Zembla*, ceaſed wholly from *motion*, although that they added more weight to it than was uſual. Now for the correcting this defect in theſe *Automatical Horologies*, or *Clocks*, they adviſe us every day to place the *Horologe* at the hour of that place in which, or unto which they then are come, but although this be done, yet a great error may creep into the invention of Longitude. The Automatical *Horologe* ſubject to Error.

For if on the ſecond day of our going forth, the Longitude of this place, or Meridian may be found out from the hours of the *Automaton*, compared with the hours of the place unto which we are come, and the hours of the *Automaton* do not altogether exactly agree with the hours of the place whence we ſet Sail, thence it will come to paſs that a defective Longitude may be taken, and a falſe Meridian noted in the Maps for the place of the Ship that day. In the following day, *viz.* on the third day, a falſe Longitude ſhall again be found, and that being numbred from the falſe Meridian of the preceding day, ſhall duplicate the error. On the fourth day again it ſhall be augmented, and the defect ſhall be triplicated. On the fifth day it ſhall be four times worſe, and ſo on. For Example, if that an *Horologe* in the ſpace of 24 hours prove defective in the *Celeſtial motion* and *revolution* for the 15*th* part of an hour, (which perfection our *Artificers* do ſeldom exceed) the Longitude found from it ſhall be greater or leſſer than an whole *degree* (for $\frac{1}{15}$ of an hour, maketh a *degree*) and ſo a falſe Meridian of this day ſhall be noted in the Maps, which is diſtant from the true a *degree*, or 15 Miles. And on the third day, by reaſon that the *Automaton* erreth again the 15*th* part of an hour, here again will be the defect of one *degree* of Longitude, and ſeeing that the noted Meridian of the former day is alſo abſent one *degree* from the Meridian, which is true, and from thence the Numeration is made for the Meridian of the third day, here now will be a Meridian removed two *degrees*, that is thirty Miles in the *Æquator*: on the fourth day three *degrees*, on the fifth day four *degrees*, that is ſixty Miles, ſo that at length the numerated Longitude, and the noted Meridian will be far from the Meridian inwhich the Ship then is. And this isthe Cauſe why this Mode is not perfect, and is therefore neglected by *Mariners*.

Lemma.

Becauſe that in all the preceeding Modes of finding out of a Longitude, the hour was to be ſought for at the time of obſervation, therefore we ſhall explain the ſame Mode from the Principles of *Aſtronomy*, by which it is done (for concerning the Elevation of the Pole, which alſo is required, we have ſpoken in the 23 *Chapter*). In the day time the *Sun* muſt be obſerved, in the night the moſt remarkable *Stars*. At both times it is beſt to expect the time in which the *Sun* or *Stars* are in the Meridian, and for the knowing the hours and *Horary* ſcruples of the other remaining part of time, a moſt exact *Automaton* muſt be uſed. For an *Automaton* will little err above the ſpace of half a day if it be exactly made, and ſo we ſhall have no need of the Elevation of the Pole in this caſe, which yet we ought to know by reaſon of the Parallel. See Chap. 23

Concerning the day therefore, the *Sun* being brought into the Meridian, we know the 12 hour to be in the place, and therefore the *Automaton* muſt be placed

ced at this very moment of time to shew the hours of the following time. But if the *Phænomenon* must be observed before the *Meridies*, let the *Automaton* be disposed at the very time of the observation, and then let the appulse of the *Sun* at the Meridian be observed, and then looking on the *Automaton* the hours may be known, which are elapsed from the time of the observation to the *Meridies*, or 12*th* hour, whence the hour of the observation shall be known.

But if when the *Sun* is without the Meridian, you desire to know the hour from the Heaven, let the *Altitude* of the *Sun* be taken at the time of the *Phænomenon*, or *appearance*. Then on the *Spherical Triangle*, from three given sides, which are the *Complement* of the Elevation of the Pole (or the distance of the place from the Pole) the *Complement* of the *Declination* of the *Sun* to that day, and the *Complement* of the observed *Altitude* of the *Sun*; from these three sides, I say, of the *Spherical Triangle*, let any *Angle* be found out: in this that must be found which is comprehended from the *Complements* of the *Declination* and Elevation of the Pole, or that which is opposed to the *Complement* of the *Altitude* of the *Sun*, which how it may be done, let those that are studious search from the Doctrine of *Trigonometry*. How the hour may be found by the Globe from the *Altitude* of the *Sun* at any time, we have shewed in the 29 *Chap.* and the 3*d. Prop.* which may satisfie most Students in *Geography*, when they do not so much as demand an exact part of an hour, but in *Navigation* it must be Calculated, except some, who resolve it by a *Catholick Planisphere*, but I fear over much defect in *Horary* scruples. In the night time the *Stars* must be applyed, as hath been said, and because, for the most part, one or other of them may be had in the Meridian; therefore there is no necessity to exhibit another without the Meridian, but it is best to Elect one in the Meridian, or to expect it at the time, in which some *Star* nigh to the Meridian cometh unto it. Then assume from the *Astronomical Tables*, the direct Ascension of that *Star*, and also the direct Ascension of the *Sun* of that Point of the Ecliptick, in which the *Sun* is on that day. And if the direct Ascension of the *Sun* shall be lesser, let it be substracted from the Ascension of the *Star*; if greater, let his *Complement* be taken at 360 *degrees*, and let this be added to the Ascension of the *Star*. Change the *degrees* thus taken into hours, and scruples of hours: these shall those demanded at the time of the observation.

See Chap. 29. Proposition 3.

Proposition VIII.

Other ways for the finding out of Longitude.

To shew other Modes of finding out of Longitude, which exhibit not primarily and properly the Longitude, but the very place of the Point (whose Longitude or Meridian is only demanded): yet it is commodious to use for the Constituting or examining of the Longitude of Terrestrial *places.*

The first Mode.

The distance and Latitude of two places being given, to find the Longitude of one place from the other; but in Maps which Mariners *use, and in Globes to find the Point of an unknown place, if that another place be given,* (for there is always one place known or given).

The first Mode.

If that by a *Trigonometrick Calculation*, you will find out the accurate *Longitude*, you must find the *Angle* on the *Spherical Triangle*, all whose sides are given, *viz.* the distance being turned into *degrees*, the *Complements* of *Latitude*, or distance of the places from the Pole: the computation must be made from the two sides of the comprehended *Angle*, which are the *Complements* of *Latitudes*, or which are the *Arches* intercepted between two places. The Method must be taken from *Spherical Trigonometry*.

But in Mariners Maps, *and the* Globe, *the unknown place of the Point is thus found from the given.*

In

In *Mariners Maps* the given distance is taken by the interval of the *Compass* from the opposite *scale*, and one *foot* being fixed on the given place, the other is turned round until it touch, or cut the Parallel of the other *Latitude*, which is that of the unknown place. The *Point* of the *Contact*, or *Section* is the place demanded or unknown. But other *Maps* are unfit for this purpose, neither do the *Mariners Charts* exhibit an accurate distance of places. Mariners Maps.

On the Globe, let the given distance be turned into *degrees* and Minutes, and let them be taken by the interval of the *Compass* on the *Equator*. Then let the *degree* of *Latitude* of the unknown place be noted, let one Foot of the *Compass* be placed on the given place, and let the Globe be turned until one extremity of the Foot touch the Point of the Globe subject to the noted Meridian *sign*: that shall be the place demanded. Or let the Parallel of the unknown place be described with Chalk, and then one Foot of the *Compass* being fixed on the given place, let the other be turned round until it cut that Parallel, or touch it. This Point of the *Section* is the place sought for, whose *Longitude* is then reckoned in the *Equator*.

The second Mode.

A Quarter being given, in which any place unknown (that is whose situation is unknown) doth lye from the noted place, or place given, and the Latitude of both places being given, to find the Longitude of the unknown place from the place known, and to exhibit the place on the Globe, and Mariners Chart.

By the given place, we understand here the *Angle* intercepted between the Meridian of either place, and the *Line* drawn from the one place to the other, which is more commodiously explained on the Globe, or by a *Diagram*. If therefore by *Calculation* you would find out the *Longitude* of one place from the other, the *Spherical Triangle* must be solved, in which there are two sides given, (*to wit*, the *Complements* of *Latitude* of both places) and the *Angle* adjacent to the given side of either. But the *Angle* comprehended from the two given sides is that demanded. For this will exhibit the sought for *Longitude*. The second Mode.

But in a Globe *and* Mariners Charts *it is not needful to find out* Longitude, *neither can it at the first be found out, but the place unknown is found from the given places.*

In the Globe: Let the place be brought to the Meridian, let the Pole be Elevated for its *Latitude*, and let the *Vertical Quadrant* be applyed to it: let the Parallel be drawn with Chalk at the *Latitude* of the other place unknown. Then let the extremity of the *Quadrant* be applyed to the given *Plaga* of the *Horizon*, *viz.* in which the other unknown place lyeth from the known. The Point of the Parallel where the *Quadrant* cutteth or toucheth it, is the place sought for, whose *Longitude* shall be reckoned in the *Equator*. Not needful to find out Longitude in a Globe, and in Mariners Charts.

In Mariners Charts: Let the Parallel be drawn to the *Latitude* of the unknown place, then from the given place let a *Line* be drawn for the given *quarter*, the Point where this cutteth the Parallel is the place sought. But if the *Loxodromick Plaga* be given, we should do otherwise, of which in the 39 *Chapter*.

The third Mode.

A Quarter being given, and the distance of one unknown place from the other, whose Latitude is given, to find out the Longitude of that place from this: but on the Globe and Maps if this place be given, to exhibit the scituation of that.

The third Mode.

If you desire to find it by *Calculation*, two *Angles* are given in the *Spherical Triangle* (the *Complement* of the *Latitude* of the place known, and the distance of the unknown place being turned into *degrees*) and the *Angle* comprehended from the *Plaga* given: from these three given, the opposite *Angle* to the distance must be sought for. For this will exhibit the *Longitude* of the other place from the known place.

But on the Globe, and *Mariners Charts*, the place is thus found: let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of the place given: let the *Quadrant* be applyed to the *Vertex*, and let the other extremity be applyed to the given *Plaga* of the *Horizon*. Then the distance given being turned into *degrees*, let it be reckoned on the *Quadrant* from the *Vertex*. The term of the *Numeration* shall be the place sought for on the Globe. But if that the *Longitude* be only sought for without the designation of the place, that is, if you are minded to resolve a *Spherical Triangle* by the Globe, it will be done after this Mode. We will give Examples in the 33 *Chapter*, which is also to be observed in the following *Chapters*. There also we will shew by one Example how such *Problems* may be resolved by the *Planisphere*. Concerning all these, also Tutors may instruct their Scholars from the Method of the *Logarithms*, if that they be studious in these matters. But *Mariners* use *Calculation*, or the *Plaine Sphere*. For the use of a Globe is not so commodious in a Ship.

See Chap. 33.

A Globe not commodious in a Ship.

In *Mariners Charts*, Let a Line be drawn from the given place for the given *quarter*, and by the interval of the *Compasses*, let it be taken on the Scale, the distance of the places being opposited, and one Foot being fixed on the place given, let the other Foot be placed in the Line drawn for the *Plaga* or *quarter*. This Point shall be the place sought for, but yet not exact, as we shall shew in the following *Chapter*.

The fourth Mode.

The distance of a place unknown, being given from two places known, to exhibit that and the known one in the Globe, and Maps; but to enquire its Longitude by Calculation.

The fourth Mode.

In *the Globe*: Let one distance by the interval of the *Compasses* (turned into *degrees*) be taken on the *Æquator*, and one Foot being fixed in the place from those given, whose distance was not taken; let an Arch be drawn on the Superficies of the Globe, by the other Foot, which hath the Chalk at its end.

After the same Mode, a distance being taken from any other place, let an Arch be described from this, as from a Center on the Superficies: the Point in which this Arch cutteth the former, is the place demanded.

In *Mariners Charts*, we must act after the same manner, but yet the distances given must not be changed into *degrees*, but must be taken on the opposite Scale. But if the place be somewhat more remote from the place given, an over great error may be committed, by reason that the *Charts* do not perform this accurately.

The invention of *Longitude* by *Calculation*, because it hath much difficulty, as the *Diagram* requireth; therefore I shall leave it to be taught by some Tutor, and not describe it in words.

The fifth Mode.

Two places in the Earth being given, and the Quarters in which ſome other unknown place is ſcituated at them, to find out this third place in the Earth, Maps, and Globe, and to enquire the Longitude of this place by Calculation.

The fifth Mode.

In the Globe, Let one of the given places be brought to the Meridian, and let the Pole be Elevated near its Latitude, let the *Quadrant* be applyed to the *Vertex*, and with the other end (in which *to wit*, at this noted place the third unknown place is put to lye) and at the *Margent* of the *Quadrant* by a pointed Chalk, let a ſmall *Periphery* be drawn. Then let the other given place be brought to the Meridian, and the Pole Elevated near to its *Latitude*, let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and the other extremity to the given *Plaga* of the *Horizon*, *to wit*, in which the third unknown place is placed to lie at this, ſame known place the Point, in which the *Margent* of the *Quadrant* cutteth the *Periphery* before drawn with Chalk, is the third place demanded.

On Maps it is thus done; Let a Line be drawn from one given place for the given *quarter* of the three places; after the ſame Mode let the Line of the *quarter* be drawn from the other given place. The Point in which theſe two Lines mutually cut one another is the place demanded.

After the ſame Mode we ſhould do on the Earth, if that we would Act ſcientifically: neither in Sciences do we value hinderances, and impediments, ſo that we may comprehend the Mode in our *mind*.

The *Calculation* in which our unknown Longitude of a place is found, from theſe given, we leave to the Inſtruction of a Tutor if that he hath apt and capable *Scholars*.

But more than enough hath been ſaid concerning the invention of Longitude, the ample uſe of which we have explained in the *2d Propoſition*.

Here ſhould be added a Table *of the* Longitude *and* Latitude *of the chief places of the* Earth, *which the* Author *hath Collected, and did here inſert; but being but ſhort, and having* Maps *of the ſeveral* Kingdoms *of the* World *in the other Part, or Volumn, to which the* Latitudes *and* Longitudes *are added, they are thought convenient to be omitted here, and referring the* Reader *to the particular* Maps, *by which you may eaſily find the* Latitude *and* Longitude *of any* place *deſired*.

The fixed *Stars* as to their Declination and Aſcenſion, of great uſe in *Geography*, and *Navigation*.

Moreover ſeeing that there is great uſe of Declination and Aſcenſion of the fixed *Stars*, both in *Geography* and *Navigation*, I ſhall here add a Catalogue of the *Stars* of the firſt *Magnitude*, with their *Declination* and *direct Aſcenſion* at the Year 1650. For it is known from *Aſtronomy*, that in progreſs of time, a change is made in theſe by reaſon of the proper *motion* of the *Stars* above the Poles of the *Ecliptick*. But in the uſe it is convenient to have ſuch a *Table* of all the *Stars*, becauſe we have not alwaies a conveniency of uſing the ſame *Stars*. But we only lay down theſe for Exerciſe, and for the trying the propoſed *Problems* in theſe. This buſineſs belongeth to *Aſtronomy*, but the uſe is notable both in other Sciences, and alſo in *Geography*.

Aſtronomy ſheweth how a Declination, and direct Aſcenſion may be found at every Year.

A TABLE of the DECLINATION

And right *Ascension* of the *Stars* for the Year 1650.

The Letter S, *sheweth the* Northern Declination, *and the Letter* A, *the* Southern.

The Names of the *Stars*.	Declination.			Right Ascension.	
Of the first Maginitude.	deg.	min.		deg.	min.
Oculus Tauri.	15	46	S	64	0
Regulus, or *Cor Leonis.*	13	39	S	147	27
Cauda Leonis.	16	32	S	172	59
Spica Virginis.	9	17	A	196	44
Cor Scorpii.	25	34	A	242	4
Lucida Aquarii.	31	24	A	339	28
Arcturus Bootis.	21	4	S	209	59
Lucida Lyræ.	38	30	S	206	17
Cauda Cygni.	44	3	S	307	23
Capella.	45	35	S	72	44
Pes Orionis Sinister.	8	38	A	74	29
Sirius, Canis Major.	16	13	A	97	26
Humerus Dexter Orionis.	7	18	A	84	7
Canis Minor.	6	6	S	110	17

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXII.

Of the mutual ſcituation of places, and compoſition of the Terreſtrial Globe *and* Maps.

Propoſition I.

A place being given in the Earth, to find the ſcituation of other places at that place.

Of finding of the ſcituation of places in the Earth, &c.

NOw the ſcituation of one place to the other is termed that *Plaga* in which this lyeth at, or an *Angle* of *poſition*, that is an *Angle*, which the Meridian of the given place maketh with a Line, or *Periphery* drawn from this place to the other. For *Example*, if we be in *Amſterdam*, and deſire to know in what ſcituation other places lie unto it, as *Rome*, *Leyden*, the *Hague*, or the like.

The firſt Mode.

The firſt Mode.

To thoſe places that a proſpect is granted from the place given, their ſcituation may exactly be obſerved to this place by *Inſtruments*. Let a *Geometrical Inſtrument* be placed in an high *Tower*, or the place of the given place, ſo that it may be Parallel to the *Horizon*, and the Meridian Line being found, let one *Rule* of the *Inſtrument* be applyed unto it; and the other having a *Perſpective* muſt be directed to the conſpicuous place. The *Arch* of the *Periphery* intercepted between the two *Rules* is the *Angle* of the poſition of the place obſerved at this place; and from thence his *quarter* ſhall be known.

So the ſcituation or *poſition* of all other vicine places ſhall be obſerved, then let us go to theſe places, and from them by the ſame *Mode* we ſhall again diſcover the ſcituation of other places: and then we may ſo act over the whole Superficies of the Earth, except that other ways were known, by which we might come more eaſily to the demanded place.

The ſecond Mode.

The ſecond Mode.

If that the propoſed places may be had on the Globe, let the place given be brought to the Meridian, and let the Pole be Elevated for its *Latitude*; let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and let it be applyed to one, and the other places, whoſe ſcituation we deſire to know at our place. The extremity of the *Quadrant* in the *Horizon*, will ſhew the *Angle* of *poſition*, and the *quarter* ſought for. And therefore we ſhall ſay, that *Rome*, *Conſtantinople*, lie from *Amſterdam* towards this or that found out *quarter*. Which that we may conceive in the *World*, we ought to know the Meridian Line, or *quarter* of the *North* and *South*, alſo the *Eaſt* and *Weſt Æquinoctial*, for from theſe being well conceived of, the intermedial *quarters* may eaſily be conceived. Here muſt be collected what hath been ſaid concerning *quarters* in the 20 *Chapter*. See Chap. 20.

The third Mode.

The third Mode.

From Maps of *Streight lines*, if that the places propounded be to be found in them, it is eaſy to diſcover the ſcituation of thoſe places to this by the eyes. For through the given place a right Meridian Line is conceived ſhewing the *North*, and *South*, and another Line tranſverſe, or ſhewing the Parallel of the place, which diſcovereth the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern quarter*. From theſe the intermedial *quarters* in which every place is beheld, are eaſily diſcovered, or elſe they are more accurately known by Lines drawn on the *Quadrant* of the *Periphery*, if that there be need of a more accurate knowledge. But yet this Method is not compleat except in particular Maps.

In Maps of *Crooked lines*, the *quarters* or ſcituations of places are not ſo accurately ſought as the other place.

The fourth Mode.

The fourth Mode. The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of two places beging given, the ſcituation of one to the other is exactly found by a *Trigonometrical Compute*, both that which is *Vulgar*, as that which is *Logorithmetical*, or by a *Catholick Planiſphere*, or alſo by the Globe. For let a *Spherical Triangle* be had, in which three things are given, *viz.* the *Complements* of the *Latitudes* of both places, and the *Angle* comprehended from theſe, which is known from the difference of *Longitude*. Now let the oppoſite *Angle*, or adjacent to either of the two ſides be ſought, for this will ſhew the *Angle* of *poſition* of one place to the other, and the very *quarter*. A *Diagram*, and the lively inſtructions of a Tutor, will make theſe more clear; and hence appeareth the uſe of the *Table* of *Longitude* and *Latitude* of places.

The fifth Mode.

The fifth Mode. From the given diſtance of a place from two places, or from the given diſtance and *Latitude*, his *quarter* or *ſcituation* to the other place is found out by the ſolution of the *Spherical Triangles*.

The ſixth Mode.

The ſixth Mode. The *Latitude* of two places being given, the diſtance of the *quarter* of one is found to the other by a threefold Method, as hath been ſaid. Other things given may be propounded by which we may find out the *quarter*.

Propoſition. II.

A place being given on the Earth or Globe, to exhibit all places which lie at the given place, in ſome one given quarter, or ſcituation.

Of the knowing the places in the North-Eaſt quarter from *Amſterdam*. For *Example*, we deſire to know all the places which lie in the *North-Eaſt quarter* from *Amſterdam*.

Let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of the given place, and let the place be brought to the Meridian; let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and let the other extremity be applyed to the given *quarter* of the Horizon. So we ſhall behold the half part of the places ſought for, *viz.* thoſe, which are adjacent in the Globe to the *Margin* of the *Quadrant*, the other half part is beneath the Horizon at the *point* oppoſite to the *Vertex*.

But the conſtruction is more eaſy for the Earth it ſelf: *to wit*, Let the *Periphery* of the great Circle be brought to the place given, which with the Meridian of that place may make the given *Angle* of the *Poſition*. All the places in the half *Periphery* are thoſe ſought for.

Propoſition III.

A place being given in the Earth, or on the Globe, to exhibit all thoſe places, at which the given place, hath ſome one given ſcituation or quarter.

Of the knowing the places which lie North-Weſt to *Amſterdam*. For *Example*, we deſire to know all the places, unto every one of which *Amſterdam* lyeth in the *North-Weſt quarter*.

But the *Problem* may with more delight be thus propounded; Any place, in the Earth, or on the Globe, being given, as in *Amſterdam*, to ſhew all thoſe places

places, from which whilſt we deſire to go to the given place *Amſterdam*, we muſt direct our Courſe from every one of the places to one and the ſame given *quarter*.

The preceeding *Problem* was locally plain, becauſe the place of the demanded *points*, was the *Periphery* of the *Circle*, which may be exhibited on a *plain*; and is always ſcituated in one *plain*. But the preſent *Problem* is ſolid, or rather doth belong to the Superficies. For the place of the demanded *points* in the Superficies of the Globe is not any *Periphery* of the *Circle* (except when the *quarter* given is *Northernly* or *Southernly*) but a certain peculiar crooked *ſolid line*, that is, which may not be on a *plain*, but a Crooked, *to wit*, a *Spherical* Superficies: yet neither is it a *Loxodromical line* (of which we ſhall ſpeak in a peculiar *Chapter*) but a Crooked *line* of its own kind terminated on both ſides. Now for the conceiving of this *line*, or the places themſelves on the Superficies of the Globe, let the given place be brought to the Meridian. Then if the *quarter* given be *Oriental*, it is certain that the demanded places are ſeated in the part of the Globe towards the Weſt removed from the Meridian of the given place (but it is otherwiſe if that the *quarter* given be *Occidental*) and if the *quarter* given be one of thoſe, which incline from the Eaſt, or Weſt, towards the North, the places demanded ſhall lie between the South, and the *primary Vertical* of the given place. But it is otherwiſe if the *quarter* given be one of thoſe, which incline from the Eaſt, or Weſt towards the South: if the given *quarter* be of the *Eaſtern* or *Weſtern Æquinoctial*, the place of the demanded places ſhall be ſome one Crooked *line*, beginning from the given place, and terminated in the *vicine Pole*, ſeated from the *Oriental* part of the Meridian, if the given *quarter* be of the Weſt, but from the *Occidental*, if that the given *quarter* be of the Eaſt, and muſt be conceived at this *line*: ſo the places muſt be ſought or exhibited from which *Amſterdam* lyeth towards the *Weſtern Æquinoctials*. Becauſe the *quarter* or *Vertical Quadrant* reſpecting the *Eaſtern*, or *Weſtern Æquinoctial*, falleth in with the *point* of the *Æquator*, which is 90 *deg.* abſent from the Meridian of every place. Therefore firſt let the *point* drawn from the given place, be conceived to be ſeated at the *Æquinoctial quarter*, or *point* of the *Æquator* in the *Horizon*, and therefore it is certain that all the places ſought, ought ſo to be ſeated from the *Oriental* part of the Meridian of *Amſterdam*, ſo that their *quarter*, or *primary Vertical Quadrant*, reſpecting the Weſt, muſt cut the *Quadrant* of the *Æquator* between the *points* in the *Occident*, and the Meridian. Therefore from every one of the *points* of this *Quadrant*, let the greateſt *Peripheries* be conceived paſſing through *Amſterdam*, and the Meridians drawn from theſe *points* as from the Poles, in which the firſt conceived *Peripheries* every one cut their Meridians, are thoſe demanded: they make ſuch a Crooked *line* as I have ſaid, which putteth it ſelf into the Pole, neither is it infinite. Hence the difference is manifeſt between the Crooked *line* and the *Loxodromick*. For this doth not ariſe in journeys inſtituted towards the *Eaſtern* or *Weſtern Æquinoctial*. All the kinds of this of which we now do ſpeak, are ſuch that are contained and run within the Pole, and the *Quadrants* of the 2 Merid. whoſe diſtance doth not exceed 90 *deg.*

But where any *quarter* is given intermedial between the *Cardines*, for *Example*, places are ſought from which *Amſterdam* lyeth towards the *South-Weſt*, or in the *quarter* removed 45 *deg.* from the Meridian of every place towards the Weſt from the South. Firſt therefore let another Meridian from the *Oriental* part of *Amſterdam* be imagined (for in this it is manifeſt, that the places ſought ought to be) which with *Amſterdam* maketh an *Angle* of 45 *deg.* or between which and that of *Amſterdam*, the intercepted *Arch* of the *Æquator* is 45 *deg.* This ſhall be the term of the places ſought for, neither beyond it can any place be found in any Meridian which doth ſatisfie. Let a perpendicular *Periphery* be ſuppoſed to be drawn from *Amſterdam* into this Meridian. Moreover becauſe the *quarter* given ſeemeth to incline towards the South from the Weſt, thence it is certain, that the places demanded ſhould be ſcituated in the ſpace of the *Triangle* whoſe ſides are now firſt drawn *Perpendicular*. Secondly, part of this Meridian is

intercepted between the drawn *Periphery* and the vicine Pole. Thirdly, part of the Meridian of *Amſterdam*, is between *Amſterdam*, and the adjacent Pole.

In this ſpace the *Crooked line*, all whoſe Points anſwer the demand, is ſeated, which creepeth forwards from *Amſterdam* with a crooked paſſage even to the Pole: For the Deſcription of it many Meridians are to be taken, from which the great *Periphery* drawn to *Amſterdam*, may make with the Meridian from whence it is drawn, an *Angle* of forty five *degrees* for our Example. So many *Points* of this *Crooked line* to be deſcribed ſhall be found.

We have treated fully of this *Crooked line* in our Book of *Crooked lines*, here we have only touched what is proper to *Geography*.

Propoſition IV.

The Latitude of one place being given, and the diſtance from the other place, and the quarter in which this other place is ſeated from it, to find the quarter of this other place in which the former place is ſeated at this other place.

It will be better underſtood by an Example. *Viz.* Let the *quarter* be given in which the City of *Hamburgh* is ſeated from *Amſterdam*: we ſeek the *quarter* in which *Amſterdam* is ſeated from *Hamburgh*. The vulgar opinion is that the contrary quarter is to be taken, which is falſe. And in this all *Mariner's Charts*, and all Right *lined Maps* do much err. The ſolution is eaſy by a *Trigonometrical Calculation*, or by the Globe, or by the *Plain Sphere*.

Propoſition V.

To make a Terreſtrial Globe.

Of the making a *Terreſtrial* Globe.

So the vulgar ſpeak very confuſedly by this *Problem*: but the diſtinct underſtanding of it is thus to be propounded in a *Mathematical* Style.

Any *Point* being given in the Superficies of any Globe, which is put to repreſent any place ſcituated in the Superficies of the Earth (or in the given half *Periphery* to find out any *lines* and *Points* in the Superficies of the ſame *Globe*, which are ſo mutually ſeated to the given Point and to themſelves, as the places and Lines in the Superficies of the Earth, which ought to be repreſented by them, are ſcituated to the place firſt taken, and mutual to themſelves.

The firſt Mode.

The firſt Mode of making *Terreſtrial* Globes.

The beſt, moſt eaſie and exacteſt method is that by which from the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of places in the Superficies of the Globe it ſelf, the places and Points ſought for, or repreſenting the parts of the Superficies of the Earth are conſigned, which although *Artificers* do not uſe in making of *Terreſtrial Globes* which are ſold in a great number, (becauſe that this may be done another way, where from the abundance of their Sale, the coſt and charge is ſufficiently payed, which is not of facility and leſſer expence for the making of one *Globe*, but moſt apt and prompt for the making of innumerable of the ſame *Magnitude*, and leſs expence, of which I ſhall ſpeak in the third place; yet the foundation of the conſtruction of it dependeth on this Deſcription conceived on the *Globe*: moreover where peculiar *Terreſtrial Globes* are to be made in *Braſs* of a notable *Magnitude*, and the places of the Earth are to be deſigned on its Superficies, as *Princes* that favour the *Mathematicks* are wont to have them, as for example, *Frederick Duke of Holſtein* hath ordered ſuch a *Globe* to be made, whoſe Cavity is to be ſo great, that one may commodiouſly ſet in it, and in the Superficies all the *fixed Stars* are to be painted in a golden

A great Globe a preparing for *Frederick* Duke of *Holſtein*.

golden colour, or little *Stars* made, are let in with a ſmall inſtrument, and the *Sun* moveable, and to be turned in the *Zodiack*; and with the addition of a ſmall inſtrument ſhall be wheeled round in 24 hours, ſo that the Spectator ſetting within its Cavity may ſee the *Stars* in one and another ſcituation, to ariſe, Aſcend to the *Meridies*, to ſet, even as we ſee the *Stars* to do in the Heaven. But the external Superficies to come to our purpoſe, ſhall exhibit all the places of the Earth, ſo that this Globe ſhall be both *Celeſtial* and *Terreſtrial*. But when I ſay ſuch places are to be *engraven*, or *pointed* on the Superficies of great Globes, *Artiſts* cannot uſe their Mode by applying of *Maps* made of *Paper*, neither would that be ſo convenient in ſo great and famous a Work. But now they muſt be engraven in the Globe, and the places be illuſtrated with *colours*, as alſo the *Peripheries*, the *Rivers*, and ſuch like as are found in the Earth. Now this is done thus, (uſing alſo at the ſame time a vulgar Globe, in which the Courſes of the *Rivers*, *Seas*, and the Earth are beheld.) Let a great *Periphery* of the Globe be deſcribed through the given *point*, (or the aſſumed *point* at your choice, if that be not given) in the Superficies, which *Periphery* we ſhall conſtitute for the Meridian of this place; then let an *Arch* be taken in this from that *point*, equal to the *Latitude* which that *point* is put to repreſent: and let the term be noted, and let another *Arch* equal to the *Complement* of the *Latitude*, or diſtance of the place from the Pole, be taken from the ſame *point*, or from another *point* in the ſame *Periphery*, the *term* of this *Arch* ſhall be the *point* which muſt repreſent the *Arctick* and *Antarctick* Pole of the Earth, becauſe it is ſo ſeated at the given *point*, as the Pole of the Earth which is put to be repreſented from the *point*. Therefore we call this *point* the Pole of the Globe, but the term of the *Arch* firſt noted ſheweth the *point* in which the *Æquator* cutteth the Meridian of the given place.

And therefore from the Pole of the Globe, let a great *Periphery* be drawn by the interval of the *Compaſſes* from that Pole to the Mentioned *term*, which ſhall be the Line of the *Æquator*, or the *Æquator* of the Globe.

Then let a Pole be taken in the Meridian oppoſite to the former, and let an *Iron Axis* be put through from one to the other through the Cavity and *Center* of the Globe, and let a *Brazen* Meridian be affixed in its extant parts, prepared by a diligent *Artiſt*, having every one of its *quarters* divided into *degrees*. Now theſe *points* muſt be applyed to the *Axis* where o, o, is, or where the *diviſion* of the *quarters* do end, ſo that the beginnings of the firſt *degrees* may exactly hang over the Line of the *Æquator*. Let the *Æquator* be accurately divided into *degrees*. Moreover if you will take the Meridian of the given place, or of ſome other place for the firſt, it is all one, but it is better to take that for the firſt, which the *Tables* of *Longitude* and *Latitude* which are to be uſed in the deſignation of places, do acknowledge for the firſt, or from whence they number the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the other places. And therefore if the place firſt given, is not that which the *Tables* acknowledge, let the *Longitude* of the firſt given place be taken from the *Table*, and let ſo many *degrees* be numbred from that *point* in the *Æquator*, where the Meridian of the firſt place cutteth it. The *term* of the *Numeration* ſhall be the *point* for the firſt Meridian of the *Tables*. Now unto what *quarter* the *Numeration* muſt be made is known, *viz.* towards the Weſt: but what part of the Globe is to be taken for the *Occidental quarter*, and what for the *Oriental quarter* from the Meridian of the firſt place, you ſhall thus know. So place the Globe that the *Semicircle* of the Meridian containg the firſt *point* may be uppermoſt, the other beneath, and regard the Globe, now the *Pole Arctick* ſhould be neareſt, the *Antarctick* more remote; if that the place given near the *Arctick Pole*, but if neat the *Antarctick*, then the *Antarctick* muſt be placed nearer us, ſo that *Hemiſphere* which is in our right hand muſt be taken for the *Occidental* places, and the other for the *Oriental*.

But

But in the *Section* of the first Meridian noted in the *Æquator*, let those numbers be ascribed to the *degrees* of the *Æquator* beginning from that *Section*, *viz.* 10, 20, 30, and so on. And then so must it be done in representing for any other place, let the *Longitude* be taken from the *Table* of that place, and reckoned in the *Æquator* from the first Meridian. Let the *term* of the *Numeration* be placed under the Meridian, and let the *degrees* of the *Latitude* of that place which there we have extracted from the *Table*, be numbred in this from the *Æquator*. The *point* of the Globe which is then subject to the *point* of the Meridian where the *Numeration* of the *Latitude* endeth, will represent that place of the Earth. And so we must do with all places, all *Inlets*, and *Fountains* of *Waters*. Their *appellations* must be engraven. So the *Problem* is satisfyed, for all the places shall so be seated in the Globe, as in the Earth it self.

Yet in the practice we must not so act at the first, because it is better to assume Pole, for the first *point*, or that which may represent the Pole: and in the making of the Globe, let the *Axis* be added, whose ends denote the Poles. And the first Meridian of the *Tables* must immediately be noted on the Globe, and then the other places, as I have said. But such great Globes are seldom made from *Tables*, but for the most part imitate other lesser Globes, from whence the *Latitudes* and *Longitudes*, and the tracts of *Rivers*, &c. are taken.

The second Mode.

The second Mode of the making of Globes.

This Mode is more apt to design some place, *viz.* one or two in the Globe from others given, than to be used for the making of an intire Globe: for it useth the *distances* of places. Let the greatest *Periphery*, or the *Arch* of the greatest *Periphery* be drawn through the Globe, and in this from the given *point*, let the *Arch* be taken, as much as the distance of the other place is from the place first given, the *term* of the *Arch* shall be other place. Then if you will design any third place, take by the interval of the *Compass* the distance of that third place, from the other two even now designed, and from these as from *Centers*, let the *Arches* be described by these intervals of the *Compass*: The *point*, in which these *Arches* mutually cut one another, is the *point* of the third place.

But as I have said that this *Mode* is not commodious for the intire designation of the Globe; but when we will design any place in the Globe now made, which is not yet in it, and desire to do it from the only noted distance of that place from the two others which are found in the Globe, because it is easy, and we have not time by reason of *Calculation*, to search the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of this third unknown place. For thus we shall easily find the scituation of this *point*, or place in the Globe, and also the *Longitude* and *Latitude*; then the *Problem* is this.

The distance of a place being given from two places that are found on the Globe, to design the scituation of that place on the Globe, whose distance is given, of which in the following *Chapter*.

The third Mode, the Vulgar one of Artificers.

The third Mode of making of Globes.

The third *Mode* of exhibiting and representing the Superficies and places of the Earth in the given Globe, is that which *Artificers* use in the making of all Globes both *Celestial* and *Terrestrial* (except those great ones of which I have now spoken) which have nothing of compendiousness, or commendation from the facility, if that the places of the Earth be but only to be represented from one Superficies of the Globe, but it is to be done on the Superficies of the Globes of the same *Magnitude*; this practice hath great Prerogative before the other: for the *Mode* is thus; the Superficies of the Globe and the Earth is conceived to be divided into twelve parts (or more if the Globe be to be made of a larger form) through the Meridians drawn from Pole to Pole, so that in any two Meridians, the 12*th* part of a Superficies is included from Pole to Pole.

Then

Then on a Plain let the like Figure be included in ſuch a part of the 12, in two *Arches*, which then in the Globe make the half *Periphery* of the Meridians. And in many Meridians drawn through every *degree* of the *Æquator*, and divided into *portions*, and *ſegments* of the *Parallels* affordeth a kind of *lettice work*: the *portion* of the *Æquator* is in the midſt: all the Meridians end in the Poles, then one Meridian being taken for the firſt, which the *Tables* of *Longitude* acknowledge; let the *degrees* be noted from it in the *Æquator*, the numbers being aſcribed, ſo that the *degrees* of *Longitude* of every place may be accounted. Then in every one of theſe places repreſenting the 12 parts of the Superficies of the Globe, let the places be noted for the places of the Earth, every one at his *degrees* of *Longitude* and *Latitude*, which are extracted from the *Table*, and the name is aſcribed to the *Table*, and the *tracts* of the *Rivers* and *Bays* drawn, as alſo of the *Lands*: theſe being thus deſcribed on *Paper*, or *Wood*, then make an inciſion, and engrave according to that exemplar in Plates of *Braſs*, which then is fit for the Printing Preſs. Which are afterwards applyed and joyned to the Superficies of the Globe, ſo that its ends may touch the *Axis* or Poles of the Globe; yet in many the *Papers* do not touch the Poles, but are ſo made only to touch the *Artick*, or *Antarctick Circles*: and peculiar *Papers* are taken for the *Polary Spaces*. For ſo they are more eaſily applyed, eſpecially in great ones ſo in the Superficies of this Globe all the places of the Earth are exhibited, to which is then added a *Braſs* Meridian and Horizon with a Foot, *Horary Circle*, and an *Index*.

There are two things in this deſcription which require a more full explication, all the reſt I ſuppoſe to be plain, and intelligible. The things worthy of note in this Mode.

Firſt, after what *Mode* theſe 12, or 24 parts are to be deſcribed, according to the *Example* of which the *engraving* in *Braſs* muſt be made.

Secondly, how plain *Paper* can be applyed to the Superficies of the Globe.

The firſt is thus done commodiouſly enough. For *Example*, let the 12 *portion* of the *Hemiſphere* from the Pole to the *Æquator*, be applyed to the Globe. Firſt, from the known *Diameter* of the Globe, let the quantity of the greateſt *Periphery* be found out according to the *proportion* of *Archimedes*, or the other *proportion* of the *Periphery* to the *Diameter*. For *Example*, let the *Diameter* of the Globe be two Foot, and let the *Longitude* of the Foot in the noted *Paper* be divided into 10 *digits*, and the 10 *digits*, into 10 *grains*, that there may be 100 parts in a Foot. Let it be done ſo that as 7, is to 22, ſo 200 is to 628 $\frac{4}{7}$ parts, or 6 $\frac{28}{100}$ Foot for the *Periphery*; the fourth part of this, that is the *Quadrant* of the *Periphery* ſhall be of 157 $\frac{1}{7}$ hundred, or 1 $\frac{57}{100}\frac{1}{77}$ Feet, and the 12*th* part of 52 $\frac{12}{21}$ hundreds, or $\frac{1}{2}$ a Foot, and 2 hundreds and $\frac{12}{21}$ of an hundred. Theſe being found, let a long Line of 52 $\frac{12}{21}$ hundreds be drawn on the *Paper*, (from the aſcribed Scale); from the middle of this Line let a long perpendicular of 157 $\frac{12}{21}$ hundreds be erected, which ſhall be the *Quadrant* (its extremity ſhall be the Pole) and may be divided into *degrees* (you have the *Longitude* of one *degree* if you divide 628 $\frac{4}{7}$ by 360). Then let a *Periphery* be deſcribed from the Pole through the beginning of every *degree*, or of every tenth, (they ſhall be *Parallels*) in theſe *Peripheries*; from both parts of the drawn perpendicular, let that part be cut off by the *Compaſs*, as much as is the $\frac{1}{24}$ of the *Periphery*. Now how great it is in the oppoſite Scale is known from the *proportion* of the *Parallels*, to the *Æquator*, which we have delivered in the end of the IV. *Chapter*. So the *points* being *ſigned* in every *Periphery* and *Arch* you pleaſe, a Line muſt be drawn through them, and part of the *Paper* perminated by theſe Lines, muſt be cut off. For this being applyed to the Globe will poſſeſs $\frac{1}{12}$ of the *Hemiſphere*. Now the application is eaſily performed, *viz.* if that the *portions* be ſmall, for in theſe the diſtance between ſtreight and Crooked, is little diſcovered, eſpecially of the Earth when the *Paper* hath firſt been wetted; ſo it is readily applyed. But the places in that *Paper* before they are applyed, are conſigned to their fit *degrees* of *Longitude*, and *Latitude*. See chap. 4.

Proposition VI.

To compose Geographical Maps.

Of the composing *Geographical* Maps.

We may thus propound the *Problem* in a *Mathematical Style*. *The ſcituation of an infinite* Plain, *or one to be produced at pleaſure being given, to repreſent in that the places of the* Superficies *of the* Earth, *according to the Rules of* Perſpective. Or thus more generally: *A* Point *being given on any* Plain, *which is put to repreſent any place of the* Superficies *of the* Earth, *to find on the ſame* Plain (*infinite*), *divers other* Points *and* Lines, *which as commodiouſly may be, may repreſent to the life the* places *and* Lines *of the* Superficies *of the* Earth, *or their* ſcituation *to the given* place, *or one to another*. So I think the ſence of the *Propoſition* will be better underſtood.

The knowledge of Perſpective neceſſary in *Geography*.

By reaſon that very few Students and favourers of *Geography* underſtand the Rules of *Perſpective*, neither can they attain to any diſtinct knowledge of the Conſtruction and nature of *Geographical* Maps, or judge of their commodity or defects, except they know the *Principles*, according unto which they are made. Therefore here a few things neceſſary in this *Doctrine* muſt be explained from the *Art* of *Perſpective*. Now that *Art*, as moſt know, is converſant in repreſenting all Objects, or Bodies on ſome *Table*, or *Plat-form*, as the parts of a Picture are ſo conformed, and ſeated one to the other, and ſo appear to our ſight (the eye being fixed to ſome certain place) as the parts of the body which it repreſenteth. This indeed is the end of the *Perſpective*. But the *Mode* by which they endeavour to obtain it, is this.

The Mode for the obtaining the Art of Perſpective.

Then they will repreſent a *point*, a Superficies, or any Body of what ſhape ſoever in a *Table*, Board, or Paper, (whether they behold it, or conceive the *Idea* in their fancy). 1. They Imagine it is diſcerned by the eye as in or from one Point, and they do aſſign a certain ſcituation or place to the eye whence the ſight may be made. 2. Then they conceive ſome one infinit *plain* (they term it a *Glaſs*, becauſe it is better for conception, if that the *plain* be underſtood to be pellucid) to be interpoſed in ſome certain ſcituation between the eye and the Object. Then 3. They conceive rayes or Lines to be drawn through that *plain* to the Eye from every *point* of the Object. They ſay that the *points* of this *plain* by which the rayes are ſo conceived to penetrate to the Eye, are the repreſentation of the *points* of the Object it ſelf, or the Shadow of it, as they term it, and theſe *points* being conjoyned by Lines, they determine the Figure which thence ariſeth, in the *Table* to be the repreſentation of the very Object of the Body, or Superficies in ſuch a ſcituation of the Eye, and this Figure of a Plain or *Table* remaining in its ſcituation, doth not otherwiſe appear to the Eye remaining in its ſcituation, then as if it beheld the very Object it ſelf (which yet the *Opticks* ſhew not to be altogether true in all reſpects, and it is eaſy to underſtand from the various *poſition* of an interpoſed Plain.) But by reaſon no better Method of repreſenting Bodies is yet found, therefore we muſt be content with this. For *Example*, let the Superficies of the Earth, and all its *Peripheries* and places be repreſented on a *Table*. And therefore in the firſt we conceive the Eye to be fixed or ſcituated as a *point* without the Earth in the *Air*. Then between the Eye and the Earth, a certain *Table* or *Glaſs* Plain to be extended, whoſe ſcituation although it may be taken at pleaſure, yet in practice it is ſo aſſumed, to a better and more ordinate Figure of an equal form, that it is perpendicular to the Line, which is drawn from the Eye to the *Center* of the Earth. Then we conceive Lines to be drawn, or Rayes to be emitted through the *Table* or *Glaſs* to the Eye from all *points* or places of the Superficies of the Earth (as from all the *points* of the *Æquator*, of the *Tropicks*, *Polary Circles*, alſo of the Meridians; as likewiſe from all Cities, Sources of Waters, and the like.) Every one of theſe Rayes ſhall pierce the *Table* in certain *points*. Theſe *points* therefore are the ſhadows, or repreſentations of the places of the Superficies of the Earth, and if thoſe *points* which

are

are made by the Rays emitted from some one *Periphery* (as from the *Æquator*, from one of the *Tropicks*, from a *Polary Circle*, or some other Meridian) be joyned by a drawn *line*, let it be either *streight* or Crooked, this shall be the representation or shadow of this *Periphery*, so we shall have all the *Circles*, and all the places of the Earth represented on a *Table*.

But because the Earth is round, therefore the whole Superficies of the Earth with all its places, cannot commodiously be represented on one *plain*, because they should make two places one and the same *point* on the *plain*, and those that are scituated beyond the *Hemisphere*, would be represented with a false face: therefore half the Superficies of the Earth must be represented on one *Table*, and the other half on the other. And so the Eye may be taken within the Earth it self, *viz.* when we take up one *Hemisphere* to be represented, the Eye is conceived to be placed in the other *Hemisphere*, and the *Table* between that and the *Hemisphere* to be represented. The same must be understood, if that only part of the Superficies, as *Europe*, *Asia*, *Spain*, must be represented on the *Table*, for then we may assume the place of the Eye in the very *Center* of the Earth, if we please.

The whole Superficies of the Earth being round, cannot be so well represented on a Plain, as otherwise it is.

From these I think the *Reader* may sufficiently understand the *nature* and *Mode* of this *Perspective Art*, by which the places of the Earth are represented on a *plain*. The other two are more fully to be explained, from those which we have spoken of in this Method. Because from thence dependeth the variety and diversity of *Geographical Tables*.

We have said that a *point* must be taken for the representation for the place of the Eye without the Object to be represented, as without the *Hemisphere* of the Earth, or without the Superficies of *Spain*, or *Europe*. And therefore because there is an infinite space about any Object, and on that account there are infinite *points*, in which the Eye may be put contemplating the Superficies of the Earth, (or *Europe*, or *Asia*,) if that a particular *Table* must be made, and if the Rays be drawn to divers *points* from the same *points* of the Object, or Superficies, which may penetrate the same *Table*, the penetration of the Rays is made in a very different place and scituation, and therefore very unlike Figures arise thence in the *Table*; thence it cometh to pass that according to the various scituation of the Eye (which we attribute to it without the Earth, or without that part which it ought to represent) there ariseth a various representation of that Superficies on the *Table*.

For as there existeth another sort of *Frontispiece* of the *walls* of an *house*, when the Eye may behold it from a scituation directly opposite; another from an oblique scituation; another from an upper place; another from a long place, and so changing according to the various scituation of the Eye (which *Tutors* may explain by *Diagrams*); so there ariseth a different position of the parts of the Earth to be represented on the *Table*, if that the Eye be so constituted, or conceived in the *Air* in such a scituation, that it may hang over the *Æquator* of the Earth; and otherwise, if that it be supposed to exist in the pretended *Axis* of the Earth, or in the *Semi-Axis* of the *Hemisphere*, and otherwise if it be conceived to be eminent over any other place of the Earth. Thence it cometh to pass that both the *Æquator*, and the Parallels, as well as the Meridians, obtain various representations, because the Rays drawn from them, existing in the Earth to the Eye perforate the *Tables* in divers *points*, endued with a various scituation, which the *Readers* may easily understand, if that they have the living information and direction of a *Tutor*.

The Direction of a *Tutor* very profitable.

The other, which I esteem fit for the Readers consideration *in this* Method *for his better* understanding, *is concerning the* cause *of the variety in the* Magnitude *of* Tables, *and* representations: for we can shew the same Superficies of the Earth, as also of all the Bodies of the *World*, as *Temples*, *Houses*, and the like, on a great or small *Table*. The Cause is twofold, first, by how much the Eye is placed more remote from the Earth, or any Object, by so much the representation receiveth the lesser *Magnitude*, *viz.* the scituation of the *Table* or *Glass* so remaining. 2. How much the *Table*, or *Glass* (in which the representation should be made by the perforation of the Rays) is nearer moved to the Eye, by

ſo much the repreſentation or projecture receiveth, the leſſer form; by how much the nearer to the Object, ſo much the greater.

But if the Eye may be removed in any kind from the Object, (the *Table* remaining) ſo that it be removed in the ſame Line with the *Center* of the Earth, or ſo that it remain in one Perpendicular Line, to the Superficies of the Earth, therefore the Figure of the projecture is not changed, but only the *Magnitude*, the *ſimilitude* remaineth. So alſo if that the *Table* be any ways moved to the Eye, or removed towards the Object, all the projectures do become of a divers *Magnitude*, yet they remain mutually alike, and repreſent all the places in a like ſcituation, ſo that the *Table* ſhall obſerve the Parallel ſcituated from the Eye in his *acceſs*, and *receſs*. But if the *Table* receiveth another *poſition*, and alſo if the Eye be not only removed, but alſo recedeth from that Perpendicular Line, then the like projectures ſhall not ariſe, and the places ſhall not have the like ſcituation on the Earth, but beſides a various *Magnitude*, there ſhall alſo be a notable *diſſimilitude* in the ſcituation of the places, one to the other.

But in the projectures of all Bodies, as alſo in the projecture of the Superficies of the Earth, it is ſo wont to happen, that we attribute ſuch a ſcituation to the *Table* or *Glaſs*, that it may touch the Body or Superficies in that Point to which the Line drawn is Perpendicular to the Superficies of the Body, or which is drawn from the Eye to the *Center* of the Earth: now to obtain the leſſer or greater projecture we remove the Point of the Eye more or leſs from the Earth. But then we conceive the Earth to be very ſmall.

This in general being explained concerning the projecture of the Earth, and the Original of *Geographical Maps*, we ſhall ſhew the Method of doing it: where firſt we ſhall ſhew whether theſe *Tables* ſhould be made according to the Rules of *Perſpective*, and whether all may be made according to them, for the end of theſe *Tables* or *Maps* is to the life, and exactly as may be to expreſs the ſcituation of the places in the Superficies of the Earth. Therefore it is demanded and that not unadviſedly, whether this may be done by another Method, which obſerveth not the Rules of *Perſpective*; for whether it be done according to the Rules of *Perſpective*, or contrary to them, ſo that it exactly repreſenteth the ſcituation of the places, the *Table* ſhall be accounted to be well done. To that I anſwer, that although certain *Tables* of ſome ſmall *Province* may be made, and are alſo made by another Method, *to wit*, by *Angles* of *poſition*, or alſo by *diſtances*, as we ſhall ſhew in the laſt place, yet in a great part of the Superficies of the Earth it cannot be performed by a more commodious Method, than by the Rules of *Perſpective*, although the true ſcituation of the places may not be repreſented in the *Tables* made according to theſe Rules.

Things to be known about the making of theſe Maps.

For we muſt know that in making of theſe Maps we muſt attend to a threefold end. 1. That all the places muſt have ſuch a ſcituation and *diſtance* to the chief *Circles* of the Earth, as the *Æquator*, the Parallels, the Meridians, as they have in the Earth it ſelf, ſo that from thoſe *Tables* the Parallels of every place, the *diſtance* from the *Æquator*, from the Pole, the *Zone*, the *Climate*, &c. may be beheld, becauſe that from thence many properties of the Regions and *Celeſtial appearances* do depend. 2. That the *Magnitudes* of every Region may have that proportion that they have in the Earth it ſelf. 3. That every place may have the ſame ſcituation to the other mutually which they have in the Earth it ſelf.

Of theſe three requiſites all Maps or *Tables* ought exactly to perform the firſt, and for the moſt part exactly do, becauſe they are made from the *Table* of *Latitude* and *Longitude* of places; neither do the Rules of *Perſpective* hinder the ſame. But for the ſecond, they cannot accurately perform the ſame if that the Rules of *Perſpective* be obſerved, becauſe the crooked paths of the Superficies being more remote from the Eye, makes the repreſentation leſſer in the *Glaſs* than thoſe parts ſubjected to the Eye: but yet that inequality is ſmall and becometh inſenſible, if that the Eye be conceived to be remote an infinite interval from the Earth. But the third requiſite can be performed by no larger *Tables*, ſuch are thoſe of the whole Earth, alſo thoſe of the *4 quar.* of the Earth and the greater *Provinces* although they may accompliſh it in the leſſer *Regions*, and the vulgar

ſuppoſe

ſuppoſe that it may be had in the larger Maps. But we ſhall more fully explicate this in the deſcription. Only this we ſhall here adviſe in general, that in all Maps which we have, or which are ſold by *Artificers*, *viz.* thoſe that are univerſal, that place muſt be taken for the *point*, which ſhall be directly ſubject to the Eye in the projecture; that place I ſay of the Earth which is ſeated in the middle of the *Table*, for here we muſt conceive the Eye to hang over. This hath place in many particular ones, yet not in all.

Moreover you may make the following Rules to be more plain, if that you make uſe of ſeveral Maps, which will the more illuſtrate and explain our Rules by the *Examples*. Maps neceſſary to be uſed.

The firſt eaſy Mode, the Eye being placed in the Axis.

In the firſt place, I exhibit this Method of painting the *Hemiſphere* of the Earth, which placeth the Eye in ſome Point of the *Axis* of the Earth. For *Example*, we would repreſent the *Arctick Hemiſphere* of the Earth, *to wit*, that which lyeth between the *Æquator* and the *Arctick Pole*, and the places contained it, that is a, *Geographical Map* muſt be made of the *Arctick* Globe. Therefore we ſhall conceive the Eye to be placed without this *Hemiſphere*, that it may hang over the middle Point of that *Hemiſphere*, *viz.* the *Pole Arctick*, that the Eye may be with the *Pole Arctick*, and the *Center* of the Earth in one *ſtreight line*, that is, that the Eye may be in the *Axis* of the Earth. And therefore it ſhall be either in the *Axis* from the part of the *Æquator* towards the *Antartick Pole*, or in the *Axis* extended from the part of the *Pole Arctick*. But it matters not in what part it be put. For the *Table* or *Glaſs* in which the repreſentation ought to be, let the place of the *Æquator* be taken, or ſome *Tangent* of the Earth in the *Pole Arctick*, if that the Eye be conceived to be placed from this part. But to avoid confuſion, and the better to expreſs our ſelves, let us ſuppoſe the Eye to be placed in the *Antarctick Pole*, the Plain of the *Æquator* to be the *Table*. Moreover we conceive Rayes to be emitted from all the places and *Peripheries* of the *Arctick Hemiſphere*, (whether it poſſeſs the *Antarctick*, or other Point of the *Axis*) which Rayes therefore ſhall penetrate the place of the *Æquator*. The Points in which the perforation is made, ſhall exhibit every place of that *Hemiſphere* of the Earth, and the points made from the perforating Rays, the *Peripheries* of the *Tropick*, if they be joyned, do exhibit the Lines which repreſent thoſe *Peripheries*. By this Method it cometh to paſs that the *Æquator* becometh the term of this projecture: the *Pole* of the Earth may be repreſented from the *Center* of this *Circle*, or of the *Æquator*: the Meridians make right Lines, all paſſing through the *Pole*, even to the *Æquator*, the Parallels of the *Æquator*, or the *Circles* of *Latitude*, the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, the *Arctick Pole*, and the like. Alſo by this projecture may be made theſe *Circles*, or *Peripheries*, whoſe *Center* is the ſame with that of the *Æquator*, *viz.* the Point, which repreſenteth the *Pole Arctick*. But the places of the Earth are repreſented every one in their *Peripheries* of *Latitude*, and the Meridian Line, *viz.* where the Meridian Line of the place cutteth the Parallel of the place, the Point of the Section is the repreſentation of the place. But all the other *Peripheries* and *Semiperipheries*, which may be conceived in that *Hemiſphere*, do not make in projecture *ſtreight lines*, or Circular, but *Eclipſes*: for *Example*, if we will repreſent the *Horizon* and *vertical Circles* of any place, all theſe in their projecture ſhall make *Ecliptick Arches*.

See Scheme. Of the Hemiſphere of the Earth which placeth the Eye in ſome Point of the *Axis* of the Earth.

We conceive the Earth to be of a ſmall Magnitude.

For the more eaſy imagination of projecture, by which *Circles* are repreſented in a *Table*, a radious *Cone* muſt be conceived, whoſe *Vertex* muſt be the Eye, let the *Circle* of the Earth to be repreſented be the *baſis*, let the *ſides* be the *rays* drawn from the *Periphery* to the Eye: moreover this *Cone* to be cut by the *Table*, and according to the various poſition, a various Line and Section to be made, which is the projecture of the aſſumed *Periphery* on the Earth. So alſo the *Ecliptick* it ſelf, whoſe half only is repreſented with the *Arctick Hemiſphere*, maketh a portion of the *Ecliptick*. But yet to ſpeak properly, the *Ecliptick* it ſelf is not repreſented, becauſe it cannot be conceived immutable on the Earth, but only in a certain ſcituation, or at a certain moment of the day, and his

interſection may be taken with the *Æquator* in any *point* of the *Æquator*, yet in all Maps by reaſon of its Commodity, the interſection of the firſt Meridian is aſſumed with the *Æquator*.

How Tables of the firſt ſort are to be deſcribed by practice.

So therefore we have diſtinctly explained the Original and Method of the firſt ſort of *Tables* or Maps, which have the Eye in the *Axis: now I ſhall ſhew how ſuch a Table is to be deſcribed in practice.* In any Plain or paper let the middle *point* P, be taken for the Pole, and from that as from a *Center*, let the great or ſmall *Periphery* be drawn (as we deſire to have our Maps great or ſmall) which we ſhall have for the *Æquator*. Theſe two may be taken at pleaſure, but the other *points* and *Peripheries* ſhall be found from them. Let the *Æquator* be divided into 360 *deg.* and *ſtreight lines* being drawn through the *Center* and the beginning of every *deg.* theſe ſhall be the Meridians, from which that which is drawn at the beginning of the firſt *degree* from theſe 360, ſhall be taken for the firſt, ſo the reſt of the *lines* ſhall ſhew the reſt of the Meridians and *Longitudes* of the Earth from the firſt Meridian. Now the Parallels of *Latitude* muſt be deſcribed. There are four *Quadrants*, or quarters of the *Æquator*, the firſt 0, 90: the ſecond 90, 108: the third 180, 270: and the fourth 270, 0. Let thoſe be noted for the more eaſy appellation with the letters A B, B C, C D, D A, and let one be taken from theſe, for *Example*, B C, from every one of whoſe *degrees* as alſo from the 20 *deg.* 30 *min.* and the 66 *deg.* 30 *min*, let occult *ſtreight lines* be drawn to the *point* D, (the term of the *Diameter* B D) or let the *Rule* be only applyed to D, and brought round through every *degree* of the *Quadrant* B C: and let the 23 *deg.* 30 *min.* and the 66 *deg.* 30 *min.* in which theſe *ſtreight lines* cut the *Semidiamiter* P C, be noted, and from P as from a *Center*, and the *Peripheries* be deſcribed through every *point* taken in P C. Theſe *Peripheries* ſhall be the Parallels of the *Latitudes* unto which in the firſt, and oppoſite Meridian, *viz.* A P, and C P, the numbers may be aſcribed from the *Æquator* towards P, *to wit*, 1, 2, 3, 4, even to 90, ſo that the *Latitude* of every one may be conſpicuous: but at the Parallel 23 *deg.* 30 *min.* the *Tropick* of *Cancer* ſhall be aſcribed; at the 66 *degree* 30 *min.* the *Arctick Circle*. In the *Praxis* neither all the Meridians, nor all the Parallels muſt be coloured, but only every tenth, the reſt muſt be repreſented with occult or obſcure *lines*.

After all the Meridians and Parallels are deſcribed, it is eaſy to note from the *Table* of *Longitude* and *Latitude* of places, the places of the Earth, *viz.* of its Superficies; let the *Longitude* of any place be accounted from the firſt aſſumed Meridian in the *Æquator*, ſo we fall into the Meridian of the place; then from the *Latitude* of the place we chooſe a Parallel of the ſame *Latitude*, and the *point* where the Meridian cutteth the Parallel is the *point*, which repreſenteth the aſſumed place of the Earth, whoſe appellation is to be aſcribed unto it, and ſo we ſhall act with the inſcription or projecture of any place to be taken, until the Maps, or *Tables* be finiſhed.]

Rules to be obſerved if the Semicircle of the Ecliptick be to be noted.

If the Semicircle alſo of the *Ecliptick* be to be noted in it, that muſt be done before the deſignation of the places. We have ſaid that the *Ecliptick* maketh the *Ecliptick line* in projecture, therefore its *points* through which that portion of the *Eclipſis* muſt be drawn, ought to be found. That is taken for the firſt *point*, or for the interſection of the *Ecliptick*, and the *Æquator*, in which the firſt Meridian cutteth the *Æquator*, which therefore is noted in the ſign of *Aries*. But the laſt *point* of this half *Eclipſis*, or the other interſection of the *Æquator*, and the *Ecliptick*, *viz.* the end of *Virgo* ſhall be in 180, the oppoſite *point* of the *Æquator*, the intermedial *point* is that in which the Meridian 90, cutteth the *Tropick* of *Cancer*. So we have gotten three *points*, through which the portion of the *Eclipſis* to be deſcribed paſſeth, (which is leſſer than the half *Eclipſis* (which are the *points* of the 1 *deg.* of *Aries*, *Cancer*, and *Libra*: for finding the other *points*, as the 1 *deg.* of *Taurus* and 15; the 1 *deg.* and the 15 *degrees* of *Gemini*; the 1 *deg.* of *Leo*; the 1 *deg.* of *Virgo*, the *Declinations* of theſe *points* muſt be taken from the *Table* and the right *Aſcenſion* which are here aſcribed.

Decli-

	Declination. deg.	min.	Right Aſcenſion. deg.	min.		
The 15 of *Aries* and *Virgo*	5	56	13	48	166	for the 15 *deg.* of *Virgo.*
The 1 of *Taurus* and *Virgo*	11	31	27	0	152	for the beginning of *Virg.*
The 15 *of Taurus* and *Leo*	16	24	42	0	187	for the 15 *deg.* of *Leo.*
The 1 of *Gemini* and *Leo*	20	13	57	0	122	for the beginning of *Leo*
The 15 *of Gemini* & *Cancer*	22	41	73	0	106	for the 15 *deg.* of *Cancer.*

Then where the Meridian 13 *deg.* or 4 *deg.* cutteth the Parallel 5 *deg.* or rather 6 *deg.* that *point* ſhall be the 15 *deg.* of *Aries*; alſo where the Meridian 27 cutteth the Parallel 11 ½, there ſhall be the 1 *deg.* of *Taurus*, ſo where the Meridian 42, the Parallel 16 *deg.* where the 15 *deg.* of *Taurus*, and where the Meridian 106 cutteth the Parallel 22 *deg.* 41 *min.* there ſhall be the 15 *deg.* of *Cancer*: where the Meridian 122 cutteth the Parallel 20, there ſhall be the beginning of *Leo*: and ſo the other Meridians 137, 152, 166, cut the Parallels 16, 11, 5, for the 15 *deg.* of *Leo* in the beginning of *Virgo*, and the 15 of *Virgo*. Theſe *points* being joyned by a Crooked Line, we ſhall have the portion of the *Eclipſis* for the *Semicircles* of the *Boreal Ecliptick*, whoſe *points* and *degrees* are eaſily noted in every *ſign*, if that you take *Declinations* for every one out of the *Tables*, and *Right Aſcenſions*, by that *Mode*, by which we have ſigned the *degree*, the 15 *deg.* of *Taurus*, the 1 *deg.* of *Gemini* and the like.

This being done, the Compoſition of this *Geographical Map* is finiſhed, which ſhall repreſent the half Superficies of the Earth, *to wit*, the part between the *Æquator*, and the *Pole Arctick*.

That this *Mode* is moſt eaſy and pleaſant will be manifeſt from the Deſcription, and the *Praxis* will ſhew it: now we ſhall ſpeak of its *uſe* and *inconveniences*: we have ſaid before that three things are required in a *Map*, or that they are made for a threefold end: The firſt of theſe, the *Maps* made by this Method do accurately enough diſcover, *viz.* the *Latitude* and *Longitude* of every place, becauſe they are made from a *Table* of *Latitudes* and *Longitudes*: alſo they ſhew the diſtance of places from the Courſe or way of the *Sun*, or *Zones*. The ſecond requiſite, *to wit*, the due proportion of the *Magnitude* of every *Region*; *Maps* of this ſort do not altogether perform, for *Regions*, by how much they are more near the *Æquator*, by ſo much the more they receive the greater place in this projecture, than they ought to have by their own proportion, But this difference is ſmall, by reaſon of the great diſtance of the Eye, and this defect is compenſated by that Commodity, that the places may the better be noted, by reaſon few *Regions* are inhabited about the *Pole*, but many towards the *Æquator*. But the third end, *viz.* the ſcituation of one place to another, and the diſtance of places cannot be performed by theſe *Tables*, becauſe the Lines, which note ſuch places in the *Maps*, have another ſcituation, and proportion, than in the Earth. But if you pleaſe to examine the ſcituation of one place, to the ſcituation of other places, and the riſing and ſtay of the *Sun* above the *Horizon* of the ſame, the *Horizon* of that place may be drawn in an *Ecliptical form* in this Method: Let 90 *degrees* on both ſides be reckoned in the *Æquator* from the Meridian of the given place, one of the terms of the *Numeration* ſhall one *point* of the Horizon to be drawn, *viz.* the *Oriental point*, in which the *Æquator* cutteth the *Horizon*. The other term again ſhall be the *point* of the *Horizon* for the

Æqui-

Maps are made for a threefold end.

Few Regions Inhabited about the *Pole*, but many towards the *Æquator*.

Æquinoctial ſetting. Moreover in the oppoſite *Quadrant* of the Meridian of the place, let ſo many Parallels be accounted from the Pole towards the *Æquator*, as the Parallel of the place is diſtant from the *Æquator*. The term of the Numeration ſhall ſhew the third Point of the Horizon, *viz.* the Northern *Cardo*, (we ſhall ſhew how to find the Point of the South *Cardo*, in that which we ſhall annex by and by; if a greater portion than that of the *Hemiſphere*, be to be repreſented on the Map, for it is not to be found in the *Hemiſphere*, only except the Horizon of the Pole, which is the very *Æquator*). So we ſhall have three or four chief Points, through which the Horizon ought to paſs. To find out the other Points, there is no more commodious way than by the benefit of the Globe, *viz.* let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of the place aſſumed; then in every Parallel let one Point be choſen, through which the firſt Meridian paſſeth, and let that be brought to the Meridian, which done, let the *degree* under the Meridian be noted, and ſo you muſt do in every Parallel. Theſe being noted, let ſo many *degrees* be reckoned on both ſides from every Parallel from the Meridian of the place given in the Map on the *Æquator*, *viz.* for 10*th*, 20*th*, 30*th*, and ſo on; and where the Meridians cut the convenient Parallels, they ſhall be the *points* demanded, *to wit*, through which the Horizon is to be drawn, and the ſcituation of the other places may be examined in ſome meaſure at that.

By this Method the whole Superficies of the Earth may almoſt be repreſented on one *Table*, if that either of the Poles, *viz.* the *Antarctick* be aſſumed for the Eye, if a *Table* or *Glaſs plain* be taken of any Parallel near the Pole, for inſtance, the *plain* of the *Arctick* Pole, and the *Antarctick Circle* on one *plain*, neither doth any thing elſe remain to be done, or added to the former conſtruction, but that the Meridian Lines ſhould be protracted, and the Parallels drawn from the other part of the *Æquator*. Then let the whole *Ecliptick* be drawn, and if you pleaſe, let the Horizon be compleated. But ſeeing that the *parts* and *degrees* ſcituated beyond the *Æquator*, towards the *Antarctick* Pole, by this Mode would become far greater, than the parts about, and in the *Æquator*, which is contrary to the truth of the matter, therefore it is better to make the projecture on two *Hemiſpheres*, that one may ſhew the *Arctick Orb*, the other the *Antarctick*.

Tables deſcribed according to this Method are very few: to general Maps of Right Lines, two other Maps very ſmall, deſcribed in this Method, are wont to be added, whereof one exhibiteth the Regions about the *Arctick Pole*, the other thoſe about the *Antarctick*, which the Reader may look upon for the better underſtanding of what hath been ſaid. But theſe are better learned from *practice* than from *precepts*.

The ſecond Mode, the Eye being placed in the plain of the Æquator.

The ſecond Mode. See Scheme.

The preceeding Mode of deſcribing of *Geographical* Maps doth neither fitly ſhew the *Magnitudes* and ſcituation of places, neither is commodious to deſcribe the *Hemiſphere* intercepted between the two Poles; and to repreſent all the places lying in the ſame Meridian: moreover it ſeemeth to be repugnant to our conception, that the Pole of the Earth ſhould fall into the *Center*, and therefore thoſe deſcribed *Tables* afford a more difficult imagination. Therefore another Method hath been found, which is ſomewhat more hard than the former, but more aptly repreſenteth the places of the Earth, and removeth the Pole from the *Æquator*.

For the conceiving of this Method, we muſt underſtand the Superficies of the Earth to be cut into two *Hemiſpheres* from the whole *Periphery* of the Meridian, and in two *Tables* we exhibit thoſe *Hemiſpheres*, one in one, the other in the gther. The Eye is placed in the Point of the *Æquator*, which is removed 90 *degrees* from the firſt Meridian: the *Table* or *Glaſs* in which this repreſentation ought to be made, is aſſumed; the place of the firſt Meridian and *Hemiſphere*, (which lyeth beneath that Plain in reſpect of the Eye) is taken to repreſent it on the Plain. In this form of projecture the *Semicircle* of the *Æquator* becometh

cometh a right Line, and that Meridian which is diſtant from the firſt 90 *degrees*, unto which the eye is conceived eminent, will alſo become the Right Line: all the other Meridians, and all the Parallels of the *Æquator*, become the *Arches* of the *Circles*, becauſe their *Cones* are cut from the Plain of the *Tables* by a ſubcontrary Section. The explication of which muſt be demanded from the *Conical Doctrine*, and may better be ſhewed than expreſſed. But the *Ecliptick* becometh a portion of the *Eclipſis* for the Cauſe alledged in the former Method.

This *Deſcription* is thus made: the *point* E, being taken for the *Center* in the *Table*, a great or ſmall *Periphery* of the *Circle* is deſcribed, A B C D, (as we deſire to have the *Table* great or ſmall). This repreſenteth the firſt Meridian, and its oppoſite, *viz.* the *Diameter* B D, being drawn, there ariſe two *Semiperipheries*, whereof one B A D, is the firſt Meridian, the other B C D, is the oppoſite, or of *Longitude* 180. This *Diameter* B D, repreſenteth the Meridian 90 *degrees* diſtant from the firſt, and his *point* D, is one Pole, *viz.* the *Arctick*, but the *point* D, is the Pole *Antarctick*: the *Diameter* A C, to B D, is the perpendicular Line of the *Æquator*. Let theſe *Quadrants* A B, B C, C D, D A, be divided every one into 90 *degrees*. Moreover we muſt do thus for the repreſentation of the Meridians, and Parallels, or for the finding out the *Arches* of the Meridians, and Parallels. Firſt, the Line of the *Æquator*, A C, muſt be divided into its *degrees*, *to wit*, 180, (becauſe it only ſheweth half the *Æquator*) or A E, E C into 90, after this Mode: from the *point* D, let the *Semiperipheries*, right Lines, A B C be drawn to every *degree*, or which is as well, let the Rule be applyed to the *point* D, and to every *degree* of the *Semiperiphery* A B C: theſe Lines ſhall cut the Line of the *Æquator* into 180 parts, which ſhall repreſent the *degrees*, which are the *degrees* of *Longitude*, and therefore the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, and the like, muſt be aſcribed, beginning from the firſt Meridian D A B. Through every one of theſe *points*, 1, 2, 3, and both the Poles B D, the *Arches* of the *Circles* muſt be deſcribed, which ſhall repreſent the Meridians. But how the *Periphery* muſt be deſcribed through theſe three given *points*, for *Example*, B, D, or B 2 D, and the like, is taught by *Geometry*, *viz.* you muſt find the *Centers* for every *Periphery* to be deſcribed, which *Centers* are placed in the very Line of the *Æquator*, as is the *Center* E, of the Meridian D A B. Thoſe *points* are found according to *Euclids* Method, *Propoſition* 1. *Lib.* 3. if the Lines B 1, B 2, B 3, &c. be doubly cut by the *perpendicular lines* (this is moſt eaſy by the application of the Rule): where theſe *perpendicular lines* fall into the protracted Line E C of the *Æquator*, if there be need, there are the *Centers* for the deſcribing of the *Arches*, B 1 D, B 2 D, &c. But the *Centers* of the *Arches* B 91 D, B 92 D, B 93 D, &c. fall into E A; if that need be to protract it. But the more eaſy invention in practice is, if that Right Lines be drawn from B, through every *degree* of the *Quadrants* B A, B C, even to the protended Line A C, which make theſe *points* a, b, c, d, e, and the like. So that 1 A, ſhall be the *Diameter* of the Meridian through which the 1 ought to paſs, and the 26 of that which paſſeth through the 2, and ſo the 3 c, 4 d, &c. if therefore 14, 26, 30, 4 d, &c. be biſſected, we have the *Center* of the Meridian to be deſcribed,

The deſcription Mathematically explained.

See *Euclids lib.* 3. Propoſition 1.

But the operation will be leſs obnoxious to error, and more eaſy (eſpecially in great Maps) by a *Canon* of *Tangents*, for ſo we ſhall have no need to draw Lines. For to divide E A, E C, E B, E D into *degrees*, we thus act: we divide E B, in the oppoſite ſcale into 10000 parts. Then from the *Canon* we take *Tangents* ½ *degree*, 1 *deg.* 1 ½ *deg.* 2, 2 ½, 3, 3 ½, 4, and the like; and we put every one of theſe *Tangents* taken from the oppoſite ſcale in E A, E C, E B, E D, from E; ſo two near *points* ſhall contain one *degree*, the aſcription muſt be made as before. Then at the *Centers* of every one of the Meridians to be found in E A, E C, the number muſt be taken from 90 *degrees* (or the very number from the *Complement* it ſelf) let the *Tangent* of the reſidue be taken from the *Canon*, and be placed from E, in E C, or E A. The term ſhall be the *Center* of the Meridian to be deſcribed through the aſſumed *degree*. So we muſt

must do with all the Meridians. Practice will ſhew this to be eaſy. The foundation of this latter operation for the finding out the *Centers*, is a *Trigonometrical Theorem*. The difference of the *Tangents* of two *Arches* together filling up the *Quadrant*, is double to the *Tangent* of the difference of the *Arches*. So therefore the Meridians are repreſented.

To draw the *Arches* of the Parallels, the Meridian D B, muſt be divided after the ſame manner into 180 *degrees*, as the *Quadrants* of the *Æquator* E A, E C, if that *occult lines* be drawn from C, to every *degree* of the *Periphery* D A B: but there is no need of this, when thoſe parts may be transferred from E A, into E B, the *points* or *degrees* from E, towards B, muſt be numbred from the *Æquator* to the Pole, 1, 2, 3, 4, and the like. So from E, towards the other Pole D.

Then through every one of theſe *points*, and *degrees* of the *Quadrants* of the like named number A B, C B, the *Arches* of the *Circles* muſt be deſcribed, *viz.* through the firſt *degrees*, then from the beginning of the third, and the like. And ſo from the other *quarters* of the *Æquator* towords D. So we obtain the Parallels of all *degrees*, and the *Polary Tropicks*, with their Meridians firſt found out.

A twofold Method for the deſigning the Ecliptick.

To deſign the *Ecliptick*, there is a twofold Method, for we either put the ſcituation of the *Ecliptick* on, or above the Earth, that his interſection with the *Æquator*, or the beginning of *Aries*, may hang over the place E, and in this ſcituation the projecture of the Semicircles of the *Ecliptick*, from the 1 *deg.* of *Cancer*, to the 1 of *Capricorn*, on the *Table* is a Right Line: *to wit*, let the 23 *deg.* 30 *min.* be numbred from A, towards B, and let the *Diameter* be drawn through E, from the term of the *Numeration*. This ſhall repreſent the Semicircle of the *Ecliptick* in that ſcituation. Which *line* ſhall be divided after the ſame Mode into *degrees*, as the *Semiquator* A C. For the *point* in the *Quadrant* B C, where the *Arctick Circle* falleth in, *viz.* 66½ of a *degree*, is that from whence if that *ſtreight lines* be drawn to every *degree* of the *Semiperiphery* F A D G, they ſhall cut E F into 90 *degrees*, and after the ſame Mode E G: to which the *numbers*, and *ſigns* of *Aries*, *Taurus*, *Gemini*, and ſo on, muſt be aſcribed.

If the ſcituation of the *Ecliptick* be put ſuch that his interſection and that of the *Æquator* may hang over the place A in the firſt Meridian, then his projecture ſhall become a portion of the *Eclipſis*; whoſe two *points* are A, C; the third, that in which the Meridian 90 cutteth the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; the other *points* ſhall be found by the ſame Mode, which we have explained in the firſt Mode, *viz.* if that we have the *Declinations* and Right *Aſcenſions* of the 15 *degree* of *Aries*, the 1 of *Taurus*, the 15 of *Taurus*, and the like; where the Parallels of every one of the *degrees* of the *Declinations* cut the Meridians taken for every Right *Aſcenſion*. Thoſe *points* of the Sections are the 15 of *Aries*, the 1 of *Taurus*, and ſo on through thoſe. Therefore if a Crooked *line* be drawn, we ſhall have the projecture of the *Ecliptick*, becauſe it ſo remaineth continued in two *Hemiſpheres*.

Moreover to the aſcribing of every one of theſe places in their *Tables*, *Longitudes*, and *Latitudes* muſt be excepted from the *Tables* of every place, and where the Parallel of *Latitude* of any place cutteth the Meridian of the *Longitude* of the ſame place, that *point* repreſenteth that place on the *Table*, whoſe appellation is to be aſcribed, and ſo all the places are to be deſigned.

After the ſame Method the whole Superficies of the Earth may be repreſented on one *Table*, if that the *plain* of the firſt Meridian be not taken for the *Glaſs*, but one Parallel to it, and that very near to the Eye: for ſo whole Parallels, and whoſe Meridians, or every continued Meridian may be deſcribed in their oppoſites. But thence there will ariſe a divers appearance from the true Superficies of the Earth, and therefore it is omitted by *Artificers*, who rather exhibit two *Hemiſpheres* on one Map. But it is uſeful that *practitioners* ſhould exerciſe themſelves in theſe. But then it will be more commodious to place the Eye in the firſt Meridian, ſo that B D may be the firſt; the *line*

of

of the *Æquator* ſhall not be A C, but another drawn from the *point* of the right *line* E D, which ſhall be divided into ſo many *degrees*, as are in the *Arch* taken away by the ſame Artifice.

The ſecond praiſe is, that it aptly exhibiteth the *Hemiſphere* intercepted between the Poles.

The third is, that it almoſt ſheweth the *Latitudes* and *Longitudes* of every place, and diſtance from the *Æquator*, and Pole, as they lie in the Earth.

The defects are, that firſt it hath unequal *degrees* of the *Æquator*, *viz.* in how much they are more near the firſt Meridian D A B, or the oppoſite B C D, by ſo much they are the greater, and therefore the equal Regions of the Earth in theſe *Tables*, are alſo made unequal, as in the preceding Mode (this defect may be in part corrected, if the Eye be removed far from the Earth): *viz.* the Regions about E are leſſer, about A C greater than they ought by proportion to be: after the ſame manner the Regions about the Pole B, D are made bigger than they ought. Secondly, the ſcituation of one place to another cannot be commodiouſly examined, neither thence can we find the diſtances of places. The defects.

The third, fourth, and fifth Mode of Right lined Maps.

There are ſold by *Artificers*, *Univerſal Geographical* Maps of Right *lines*; *viz.* in which both the *Circles* of *Longitude* (Meridians) and of *Latitude*, (Parallels) are deſigned by Right *lines*, which is impoſſible according to the Rules of *Perſpective*; neither can there be any ſcituation or poſition aſſigned to the Eye or *Glaſs*, that both the kinds of *Circles*, *viz.* *Latitude*, and *Longitude*, may become Right *lines*, but either of the *Circles* may be repreſented by Right *lines*. In the firſt Method, which we have explained of the Meridian or *Longitude* of *Circles*, Right *lines* are made according to *Perſpective*, and the *Circles* of *Latitude* become *Circles*, not Right *lines*: but in the fifth Method following, the *Circles* of *Latitude* become Right *lines*, but the Meridian *Circles*, crooked *Ellipſes*. In other Methods which are inſtituted according to the Rules of *Perſpective*, both kinds become Crooked *lines*, except yet in one Method, according unto which the Meridians become Right *lines*, but the *Circles* of *Latitude* become *Hyperboles*, *to wit*, if the Eye be placed in the *Center* of the Earth, and beholdeth the *Hemiſphere* from either part of the firſt Meridian; but the *Table*, or *Glaſs*, through which the aſpect is made, becometh the plain Parallel to the firſt Meridian. For ſo the Meridians ſhall become *ſtreight lines*, and the *Circles* of *Latitude* ſhall be *Hyperboles*. The diviſion of the *line* of the *Æquator*, and of the Meridians according unto this Method into *degrees* is eaſy: and thoſe who are delighted with the variety of theſe things may try this Mode with pleaſure: but by reaſon of the deſcription of *Hyperboles*, it is leſs fit for practice: therefore we ſhall ſay no more concerning it; thoſe who will attempt it, let them uſe a *Tutor*. Therefore Maps of Right *lines* are not made according to *Perſpective*, but contrary to the ſame, as hath been ſaid. They are found to be twofold, or of two ſorts. Some account both the Rules of *Latitude* and *Longitude* equal, ſuch as were made in times paſt: but others, as thoſe which are now made, have the Rules of *Longitude*, or of the *Æquator* equal (which is contrary to *Perſpective*) but not the *degrees* of *Latitude*, or of the Meridians. For they augment the *Magnitude* of theſe towards the Poles more and more, ſo that to 80 *degrees*, the *degree* is twice double more than to the *Æquator*, and then the *degrees* more near the Pole, may receive almoſt an infinite *Magnitude*, which cannot be expreſſed in any Map, which encreaſe is contrary to *Perſpective*, which only granteth a ſmall augmentation.

The 3*d*. 4*th*. 5*th*. Mode of Right lined Maps. See Scheme in Plate.

The Rules of *Perſpective* neceſſary to be underſtood.

The Inſtructions of a *Tutor* good.

Right lined Maps.

Right *lined* Maps of the firſt Mode are the moſt eaſy of all others. For A b, being taken for the *Longitude*, the Map is divided into 180, (for one *Hemiſphere*) equal parts, which ſhall be *degrees*; and the Meridians, *viz.* Right perpendicular *lines* are drawn through every *degree*, and in theſe parts equal to them are taken, which are taken in the *line* of the *Æquator*, and right *lines* Parallel to the *Æquator*, are drawn through every part (which denote the *deg.* of *Latitude*) theſe ſhall be the *Circles* of *Latitude*. Any places ſhall be ſigned, as in the former Mode, *viz.* where the Meridian of that place, and the *Circle* of *Latitude* meet.

The ſecond Mode of Right lined Maps.

Now the ſecond Mode of Maps of right *lines*, in the diviſion of the *Æquator* into equall *degrees*, differeth not from the former, and therefore the aſſumed A B, is divided into 180 equal parts (for either *Hemiſphere*) as in the former, and right perpendicular *lines* are drawn through every one of them which deſign the Meridians or *Circles* or *Circles* of *Longitude*. But they obſerve another Method to the deſigning the *Circles* of *Latitude*, or Parallels of the *Æquator*. For the Meridians are not divided into equal *degrees*, but into unequal, as aforeſaid, ſo that they encreaſe towards the Poles. The Cauſe is, becauſe other Maps do not ſhew the true *poſition* of one place to the other, or rather a Nautical *line*, from one place to another, neither admit the finding out the diſtance, but they determine theſe two may be obtained by Maps of this kind. For becauſe the Meridians are all drawn through the *degrees* of the *lines* of the *Æquator* equally diſtant one to another, thence it cometh to paſs that the places or *points* ſcituated in every Meridian, are ſo much the more removed above the true diſtance from the firſt Meridian, by how much they come nearer the Pole from the *Æquator*: *viz.* the diſtance in *Charts*, from the firſt Meridian, ſo much exceedeth the lawful diſtance, as the *Semidiameter*, or whole *ſinus*, exceedeth the *Sine* of the *Complement* of *Latitude* of any place, ſo one *degree* or more to the *Circle* of this *Latitude*. And therefore the *degrees* in theſe *Circles* ought to be exhibited leſſer than in the *Æquator*, and by ſo much the more leſſer, by how much thoſe *Circles* are more near the Poles. But in Maps of right *lines*, becauſe the Meridians are drawn equally diſtant, they do not become leſſer, but equal in all Parallels. How much therefore the *degrees* in every *Circle* of *Latitude*, are augmented above their due *Magnitude*, ſo much the *degrees* of *Latitude*, every one ought to increaſe in theſe Maps, above the *Magnitude* of one *degree* in the *Æquator*. That is done thus in this Method in deſigning the *Magnitude* in every *degree*: As the quantity of one *degree* in every Parallel is to the quantity of one *degree* in the *Æquator*, that is, as the *ſinus* of the *Complement* of any Parallel beginning that *degree*, is to the whole *Sine*, ſo is the *Magnitude* of the part in the *Æquator*, which deſigneth one *degree*, to the *Magnitude* of the part which ſhall denote this *degree* in the Meridian, from whoſe beginning that Parallel is drawn. But if you will act more exactly, the *ſinus* of the *Complement* of *Latitude* of any Parallel is not to be taken, but the *ſinus* of the *Complement* of *Latitude*, which beginneth the *degree*, is to be added to the *ſinus* of the *Complement* which terminateth that *degree*, and half of the aggregated *Complement* muſt be taken for the firſt term in the Rule of *proportion*.

Example.

If a term be to be deſigned in the firſt Meridian for the firſt *degree* of *Latitude* in the *Æquator*, let the *Magnitude* of one *degree* of the *Æquator*, be of ten particles taken in the oppoſite Scale, according to the firſt *Propoſition* his *Magnitude* ſhall become equal to the *deg.* of the *Æquator*: becauſe the *Æquator* is the Parallel which beginneth this *deg.* but according to the II. *Propoſition*, I take the *Sine* of the *Complement* 0 *degrees* of *Latitude*, which *Sinus* is 100000 (for the *Complement* is 90) and I add to the *Sine* of the *Complement* 1 *deg. viz.* to the *Sine* 89 *deg.* which is 99985, they become 199985,

See Prop. 1.

the

the half 99992. Therefore as 99992, is to 100000, so is 10 (the *Magnitude* of a *degree* in the *Æquator*, or an equal *degree*) to $10\frac{10}{100000}$ for the first *degree*. But because the increase above 10 *particles* is so small, that it cannot be noted in a Map ; therefore this *degree* becometh of 10 *particles*, *viz.* equal to a *degree* of the *Æquator*. But in progress made towards the Poles, the *degrees* more and more increase. For *Example* ; let the *Magnitude* of 66 *degrees* be designed, *viz.* which is between the term of 59 *degrees*, and the beginning of 61 *degrees*. According to the first *Proposition*, the time of the *Complement* of the 59 *degree* is 51503. Therefore as 51503 is to 100000, so is 10 to $19\frac{3}{4}$, *particles* must be taken for the Scale, of which a *degree* in the *Æquator* containeth 16.

According to the second *Proposition* thus we must do. The Sine of the *Complement* of the 59 *deg.* is 51503. The Sine of the *Complement* of the 60 *degree* is 50000, the half of the *Aggregate* is 50751. Therefore as 50751 is to 100000, so is 10 to $19\frac{3}{4}$. Which *Magnitude* is very little bigger than the former, neither is it worth the pains. Moreover when the *Magnitude* of the second *solitary degree* is found, it must be added to the *Magnitude* of the first *degree* : the *Aggregate* shall be the increasing *Latitude*, as much as is to be taken in the Meridian from the *Æquator*, for the term of the second *degree*. Then the found out *Magnitude* of the third *solitary degree*, must be added to the increasing *Latitude* of two *degrees* before laid down. So we shall have the *Magnitude* to be taken from the *Æquator* in the Meridian for the term of the third *degree*. And so you must do with the other *degrees*. Moreover that the labour may be more easy for the Studious, I have here set down a *Table* for the taking of the *terms* of every *degree* in the Meridian; I take such *particles* as one *degree* of the *Æquator* is put to have 100. See Proposition 2.

The TABLE.

The Table for the taking the terms of every degree in the Meridian.

grad.	term.	grad.	term.	grad.	term.
1	100	29	3032	57	6970
2	200	30	3147	58	7157
3	300	31	3263	59	7349
4	400½	32	3347	60	7546
5	500½	33	3499	61	7749
6	601	34	3617	62	7960
7	702	35	3740	63	8175
8	802	36	3863	64	8399
9	903	37	3988	65	8631
10	1005	38	4114	66	8872
11	1107	39	4241	67	9023
12	1209	40	4371	68	9384
13	1311	41	4502	69	9691
14	1414	42	4636	70	9943
15	1517	43	4772	71	10243
16	1621	44	4909	72	10558
17	1725	45	5053	73	10900
18	1830	46	5193	74	11243
19	1936	47	5338	75	11617
20	2042	48	5486	76	12017
21	2150	49	5637	77	12445
22	2256	50	5791	78	12908
23	2364	51	5981	79	13409
24	2473	52	6109	80	13960
25	2583	53	6274	81	14565
26	2694	54	6441	82	15243
27	2806	55	6611	83	16009
28	2918	56	6790		

The *degrees* of *Latitude* being so designed in the first Meridian, let Parallel *lines* be drawn through every one of them with the *Æquator*, which shall be the *Circles* of *Latitude*. And let the Inscription of every one of the places be in the *point*, where the *Circle* of *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the place do meet.

But the *Regions* about the *Poles* less aptly, and overmuch contrary to their natural disposition are exhibited in Maps of this kind, therefore the parts between the *Poles*, and the *Polary Circles* are wont to be adjoyned to the *universal Map*, in two peculiar little *Maps* made according to the first Mode.

The use of these Maps.

The use of these *Maps* is such. 1. The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of places is found, as in the preceeding. 2. The place A, being given from whence you Sail, and the place B, to which you Sail, the *quarter* is exhibited to which the Ship is to Steer her Course. For if a Parallel be drawn through A, and the Right *line* AB, the *Angle* which these two *lines* make shall shew

ſhew the *quarter*. *Mariners* uſe another Mode. 3. They would find the diſtance between two given places, if the interval of thoſe two places be taken with a *Compaſs*, and transferred to the divided Meridian, ſo that the *feet* of the *Compaſs* may be equally abſent from the Parallel, which is in the middle between theſe places. But theſe I think to be leſs exact.

The ſixth and ſeventh Mode.

Ptolomy in the latter part of his laſt *Chapter* of his firſt Book of *Geography* propoſeth another Mode, and teacheth by that to repreſent the part of the Earth then known: In this Method the *Æquator*, and *Circles* of *Latitude* become the *Arches* of the *Circles*: the Meridians become *Elliptical Arches*. The Eye is placed to hang over the Meridian, which is the midſt between the extremities of the Inhabited Earth: and in the middle place between the extream *degrees* of known *Latitude*. But by reaſon of the inconveniencies of deſcribing the *Ellipſis*, and becauſe it was deviſed by *Ptolomy* more to repreſent part of the Earth, *viz.* that which is inhabited, therefore it is not uſed by *Artificers*. To this that Mode is ſomething like, which exhibiteth *Circles* of *Latitude*, by Right *lines*: but the Meridians by the *ſemiſſis* of the *Ellipſis*, ſuch as the projecture is, if you conceive perpendicular *lines* to fall from every *point* of either *Hemiſphere* on the place of the firſt Meridian. But the Eye muſt be ſuppoſed to be removed by an infinite ſpace from the Earth, ſo that all the Rays from the places of the Earth being drawn to it, may be accounted for Parallels, and Perpendiculars to the *plain* of the firſt Meridian, as *Dialiſts* ſay, that all the Rays emitted from ſome *point* of the *Sun* to the Earth do ſo little bend, that they may be eſteemed for Parallels, and do make the ſame appearances in *ſhadows*. But it is not very difficult.

See *Ptolomy* in his latter *Chap.* of his firſt Book of *Geography*. See Scheme.

If therefore you intend to repreſent in this form the *Hemiſphere* of the Earth, take any *point* in the *plain* E, and from that as from a *Center* let the *Periphery* A B C D be deſcribed, let the *Quadrants* be A B, B C, C D, D A; let every one be divided into 90 *degrees*, beginning from A C, towards B and A, B A D, ſhall be the firſt Meridian, B C D the oppoſite, in the right *line* B D, the middle between theſe is the 90 from the firſt B A D. Let them be drawn to A C, which ſheweth the *Semiperiphery* of the *Æquator*; Right *lines* Parallel through every *degree* of the *Quadrants*, or *quarters*, they ſhew the Parallels of the *Æquator* or the *Circles* of *Latitude*, and the *Tropicks* and *Polary Circles* ſhall alſo be found out. The parts into which E B, E D is divided, through theſe that are drawn, are the Meridian *degrees* B D, which are noted, 1, 2, 3, and ſo on. The ſame are taken in the *Quadrant* E A, of the *Æquator*, and the *Quadrant* E C, and the number 1, 2, 3, are aſcribed, even to 180, beginning from the firſt *point*, or next to the Meridian B A D. So the parts A E C ſhew the *degrees*, into which the *Semiperiphery* of the *Æquator* is divided, through which the Poles B D, the *Semiellipſis* muſt be drawn for the Meridians. Becauſe through B D, is the greater *Axis* of *Ellipſis* which are to be drawn, but the *Semiſſis* E B, or E D: but the *Axis* of the leſſer *Semiſſis* is various in divers, *viz.* part of E A, intercepted between E, and the *degree* of *Longitude*, and therefore from thoſe given it is eaſy by an apt Inſtrument, to deſcribe theſe *Ellipſes*, which *Inſtrument* is vulgar at this day, neither is it difficult to make it. Yet the *points* of every one of the *Ellipſis* may be eaſily found, through which they muſt be drawn with a free hand: but it is better to delineate them with an *Inſtrument*.

The *Circles* of the *Latitude*, and the Meridians being ſo deſcribed, all the places in this Map are to be aſcribed at theſe *points*, in which the Meridian and *Circle* of *Latitude* do meet, and ſo the Map ſhall be finiſhed. The *Ecliptick* ſhall be repreſented by a *ſtreight line*, or by the *Ecliptick line*, by that Method which we have explained in Maps of the ſecond Mode, with little labour.

Maps

These Maps very useful.

Maps of this Method are able to perform, what the *Tables* of the preceeding Modes do, besides this they have this Commodity, that they apparently shew the decrease of the *Circles* of *Latitude* in *Magnitude* towards the *Poles*.

If the *division* HG, and HK, cannot be made through the stroaks of the Lines, by reason of the great distance of the Eye D, it will be easy by calculation to find out the Parallels for every *degree*, *viz.* according to this *proportion*: As the distance of the Eye taken from the *Center* of the Earth, with the *Sinus* of the *Complement* of the *Arch* of the *Æquator* to be represented, have themselves to the *Sinus* of the same *Arch*, so is the distance of the Eye from the *Table*, to part the Line HC, or HK, which shall only represent the *Arch* of the *Æquator*.

For *Example*, let us put the Eye D, to be removed from the *Center* of the Earth E, 200 *Semidiameters* of it: but the *Table* or *Glass* HK, 100 *Semidiameters*. Therefore DE, shall be 200, and DH 100, of such as EB, or EA, EC is 1. We shall find first the *Longitude* of GHK, which ought to represent the *Semiperiphery* of the *Æquator* ABC, in this distance of the Eye or *Glass*. And it shall be thus:

As DE, is to EA, so is DH, to HS, or HK.
200 100 1 to the *Semidiamiter* of the Earth ½.

From whence it is manifest HK, or HG, ought to be of half the *Longitude* of the *Semidiamiter* of the Earth, which in truth is over vast, when we can exhibit no such Line on any Plain. Therefore for the Earth it self, we conceive a little Earth, or *Globe Terrestrial*, lesser than usual, whose *Semidiameter* if that it be of 2 *foot*, HG, or HK, shall be of 1 *foot*, *viz.* if that the Eye be put 200 *foot* remote from the *Center* of that little Earth, but the *Glass* 100. But if you desire to know how much distance the Eye ought to be removed from the very Earth, that the *Semidiameter* of the *Æquator* EA, or EC, may make the projecture HC, of given *Magnitude*; for *Example* of 1 *foot*, (the *Semidiamiter* of the *Æquator*, that is the *Semissis* of the *Axis* of the Earth containeth 19598300) that may be found by this proportion (yet supposing the distance of the *Glass* from the Eye, *viz.* HD, 10000.)

As HG, to DH, so EA, to DE.

A *Holland* mile.

1 to 100000, so 19598300 to 1959830000000 *foot*, wherefore 18000 makes an *Holland mile*, a vast distance. But in practice we take not the Earth its self, but its type, or little Earth, from which it is not necessary to suppose the Eye removed by so great an interval, but the projecture therefore is not varied.

The eighth Mode in which any given place in the Earth receiveth the Center, or middle place of the Map.

If you please to have a Map, in which the scituation of all places to our place, or to any given place, as also the distance of them from our place, may be beheld and found out, a Method is discovered, by which the Superficies of the Earth is so represented, that any given place of it may possess the middle place, or *Center* of the *Map*: and the other places may lie about it as a *Center*. Such *Maps* those *people* affect, who are delighted with a vain opinion, that their *Country* is scituated in the middle of the whole Earth, as the *Chineses*, and likewise the *Jews* in times past.

The *Chineses* and ancient *Jews*, supposed their Countrey to be in the middle of the Earth.

But to describe such a *Map*, let us take *London* to possess the *Center* of the Map: we take his *Latitude*, or the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, to be the 51 ½ *degree*, the Eye is placed in the *point* opposite to the *Vertex*, or in the *Nadir* of the place: the *Table*, or *Glass* is the Plain of the *Horizon*, or another Parallel to it; if you please to represent a larger portion than the *Hemisphere*, which is more commodious in this Method, *to wit*, that the Plain at least may pass through the depressed *Pole*.

There-

Therefore in the Plain, let the *Center* E, be taken for *London*; and the deſcribed *Periphery* A B C D, which ſheweth the *Horizon*, muſt be divided into four *quarters*, and every one of theſe into 90 *degrres*: let the *Diameter* B D, be the Meridian *line*: B the *North Pole*: D the *South Diameter*. And the *line* of the riſing and ſetting *Æquinoctial*, ſheweth the *primary vertical*. A, the *Occident*, C, the *Oriental Cardo*, or ſheweth the place which is diſtant 90 *degrees* in the *primary vertical point*. All the *vertical points* are repreſented in *ſtreight lines*, drawn through the *Center* E, to every *degree* of the *Horizon*. But to ſhun confuſion it is better to omit them, and to adjoyn a *Circumductile Rule* to the *Paxil* affixed in E.

Then let B D be divided into 180 *degrees*, as in the former Mode, by drawing Right Lines from A, to every *degree* of the *Semiperiphery* B C D. That *point* in E B, which ſheweth the 52 *deg.* of the *Arch* B C, ſhall be the projecture of the *Arctick Pole*: Let the *point* in E D, be noted with the letter P, which repreſenteth the 52 *deg.* of the *Arch* D C, (by accounting from C, to D) ſhall be the projecture of the interſection of the *Æquator*, and the Meridian of *London*. Let the letter Q, be noted, and from that towards the letter P, let the numbers of the *degrees*, 1, 2, 3, &c. be aſcribed. Alſo from Q, towards D, and from B, towards P, *viz.* 52, 53, 54, 55, &c.

Then the *points* being taken from P, of the equal *degrees*, *viz.* 99 and 99, alſo 88, and 88; let theſe be deſcribed about theſe parts as the *Diameters* of the *Peripheries* of the *Circles*, which ſhall repreſent the Parallels or *Circles* of *Latitude*, and the *Tropicks*, and *Polary Circles* with the *Æquator*.

To deſcribe the Meridians, firſt, let a *Periphery* be deſcribed through the *points* A P C: that ſhall ſhew the Meridian, which is 90 *degrees* abſent from *London*. His *Center* ſhall be M, in B D, (protracted into the *point* N, which ſheweth the *Antarctick Pole*). Let P N, the *Diameter*, be drawn through M, Parallel to A C, which is F H; protracted from both parts in K, L. Moreover let the *Circle* P H N F, be divided into 360 *deg.* and Right *lines* from the *point* P, to every *deg.* (or only by application of the Rule) which ſhall cut the *line* K F H L. The *Circles* muſt be deſcribed through every *point* of the Section, and both the *Poles* P, N, as through three given *points* which ſhall repreſent all the Meridians: the *Centers* of the *Arches* to be deſcribed are ſeated in the ſame K L, *viz.* thoſe which are found by the former Section, but to be taken with this condition that the moſt remote *Center* at L, be choſen for the neareſt Meridian from B D N, towards A, and for the ſecond, the ſecond from this. For the deſcribing the Meridians.

The *Circles* of the *Latitudes*, and the Meridians being thus deſcribed, it is eaſy to inſcribe the places of the Earth on a Map, and the ſcituation of them all to *London*, will be conſpicuous. Moreover to affix the Rule to the place of *London*, the ſame parts ſhould be brought in, into which E B, was divided, and the number of *degrees* muſt be aſcribed; ſo the Rule being brought round unto every place, we ſhall preſently know, both how great an interval they lie from *Amſterdam*, and in what *quarter* they lie in reſpect of it. Now how by the benefit of the Globe ſuch a Map ſhould be made, we ſhall ſhew in the Fourth Mode of particular Maps.

The firſt Mode of Geographical particular Maps.

We have ſpoken of the making of *general* or *univerſal* Maps; now it is required that we ſhould teach the compoſition of *particular* or *ſpecial* Maps. The parts therefore of the Earth, which we would repreſent on the Map, are either great or ſmall. If great, as *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Europe*, *America*; it will be neceſſary to inſtitute a Declination according to the Modes explained for *General* Maps: but in divers parts ſundry ways are more commodious. *Africa*, and *America*, becauſe the *Æquator* palleth through them, are not commodiouſly exhibited by the firſt Mode, but moſt aptly by the ſecond, the Eye being placed in the Plain of the *Æquator* above the middle Meridian, between the extreams which ſhut up *Africa*, or *America*. Therefore in theſe Maps the Of particular or ſpecial Maps, as of *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Europe*, *America*.

Æqua-

Æquator is a right *line*, but the Parallels and the Meridians are the *Arches* of the Circles. But to represent *Asia*, and *Europe*, the first and sixth Mode are more commodious, but for the *Polary Lands*, or *Frigid Zones*, we have said that the first Mode is most apt in the explication of the same.

First, therefore a *streight line* must be drawn upon the Plain for the Meridian of the place, unto which we would have the Eye hang over, and that must be divided into *degrees*, according to the Method explained in the preceeding Modes, and which shall be *degrees* of *Latitude*, the number of which must be ascribed. Then from the *Table* must be extracted the *Latitude* of both Parallels, *viz.* that which terminateth the Region from both sides which representeth the Poles. The *degrees* of the *Latitude* of these must be noted in the right *line*, or the Meridian of the Eye, and through those *points streight* perpendicular *lines* must be drawn, which include the Map towards the *Northern* and *Southern quarter*. Then Parallels and Meridians must be drawn at every *degree*: and the places inscribed until the Map be perfected.

The second Mode of describing particular Maps.

The second Mode of particular Maps.

Artificers are wont to use another Method in Regions not so large, but only moderate or small. First, a tranverse *line* is drawn in the extremity of the *Table*, for the Circle of *Latitude*, in which the ends of the Regions respecting the *Æquator*, are to be drawn; in that so many parts are taken equally, through how many *deg.* of *Longitude* that Region is extended from that part. Then from the middle of this *line*, a perpendicular is drawn, which hath so many parts as there are *deg.* of *Longitude* between the bounds of that Region towards the *Æquator*, and the Pole. But how great these parts should be, is known from the proportion of the *deg.* of the first Circle, which is greatest to the *deg.* of Parallel, which is represented from the lower transverse *line*. Through the term of this perpendicular, another perpendicular, or Parallel to the inferiour *line*, is drawn, in which so many *deg.* of *Longitude* must be taken as are in the lower *line*, and equal to them of the lower *line*; if these *Latitudes* be not much distant from the *Æquator*, or mutual from themselves. But if the distance from the *Æquator* be great; or if the excess of the ultimate *Latitude* of the Region be great above that which is more near the *Æquator*, the parts to be taken in the transverse *line*, shall not be equal to the parts of the inferiour *line*, but they ought to be lesser according to proportion, which the *degrees* of this more remote Parallel hath to the *degrees* of the inferiour *line*, which proportion is known from the *Table* we have placed in the Fourth *Chapter*.

See Chap. IV.

After the parts are thus taken for the *deg.* of *Longitude* in the superiour and inferiour *line*, the right *lines* are to be drawn through the beginning and end of the parts of the same number: which right *lines* shall represent the Meridian *lines*. Then through every *deg.* of its perpendicular, which we have ordered to be erected from the middle *point* of the inferiour *line*, *lines* Parallel to that lower *line* must be drawn through the beginnings of every *degree* which shall shew the Parallels of *Latitude*. In the last place, places must be inscribed at the *points*, in which the Parallels of every place, and the Meridian of *Latitude* do meet. So a *Geographical* Map for a given Region shall be compleated.

The third Mode of describing particular Maps.

The third Mode of particular Maps, as *Provinces*, &c.

In representing the *Provinces* of a small tract, we use another Method, which we have explained before, *viz.* that the Maps may more accurately exhibit the scituation of one place to another, and the distance of places. The Method consisteth in this, that we may find the *Angles* of the position of one place to another by *Mathematical Instruments*, and then aptly transfer into the *Chart*. For *Example* sake, let there be Five places of any Region to be disposed in the *Table* according to its scituation and distance; we shall call those

Five

Five places A, B, C, D, E. First, we ſhall choſe from theſe that A, from which the reſt or moſt of them may conveniently be beheld; and an *Inſtrument* being applyed, we ſhall obſerve the *Angles* of *poſition* at every place, *viz.* the *Angles* between the Meridian *line* of the place in which we obſerve, and between the *quarters* of the other places B, C, D, E. Moreover in the *Chart* in which we will repreſent thoſe places, we may take the letter A, and cut the *Periphery* deſcribed from thence into *degrees*, (which is not neceſſary if we have a Semicircle divided, or ſome other *Geometrical Inſtrument* fit for that purpoſe;) we ſhall aſſume one *Diameter* for the Meridian *line* of the place A, *viz.* F A G: the other perpendicular to this H A K, will ſhew the *Æquinoctial riſing* in the extremity H, the ſetting K. F is the *Northern Cardo*, C, the *Southern*. Let the *Angle* of the poſition of the place B, to A, be obſerved of 30 *deg.* from the *South*, towards the *Eaſt*, we ſhall number in the *Quadrant* G H, ſo many *degrees*, and ſhall draw the *line* from A, through that *degree*. This ſhall repreſent the place B, from the place A. After the ſame Mode the *quarters* of the other place D E, muſt be noted on the *Chart*, if they be obſerved. Then another place is to be choſen from B, C, D, E, whoſe diſtance from A, is known, or found out; for *Example*, the place B, and in that the *Inſtruments*, being applyed, the *quarters* obſerved of the three other places C, D, E. This being done, we put in our *Table* the Scale of *miles*, or *Leagues*, which we take either greater or leſſer, as we deſire to have either a greater or leſſer Map, and in the Line of the *quarter* of the place B, we take from A, the noted diſtance, and there we mark the place B, and through B we ſhall draw the Line Parallel to F G, which ſhall repreſent the Meridian of the place B, and in the *Periphery* deſcribed about B, as about A, we ſhall draw Lines from B, which will denote the *quarters* of the places C, D, E, and where theſe Lines cut them which are drawn from A, the *points* of the Interſection ſhall be the places of the C, D, E, and we muſt do after the ſame Mode if that there ſhall be many places.

The fourth Mode which applyeth the Globe.

The fourth Mode by the help of the *Terreſtrial* Globe.

We may by the help of the *Terreſtrial Globe*, exhibit on a *plain* the ſituation and diſtance of places remote from one to another, and of divers *Kingdoms*; yea the whole Superficies of the Earth: ſo that any place given may ſeem to occupy the middle, as we have ſhewed in the ſixth Mode: ſo that this Mode may be reckoned to the Modes for *General* Maps: but it is better not to extend the Mode beyond the *Hemiſphere*. For diſtance I determine to ſet down before your Eyes on a *Chart*, the ſcituation of all the places to *London*, and their diſtance from this place. Firſt in the *Chart* let the middle *point* be taken for *London*, let the letter A, be noted, from that let the *Periphery* F H G K, be deſcribed. Let F G, be the Meridian Line, or the Line of the *North*, and *South*: let H K, be the Line of the *Eaſt*, and *Weſt*. F, may ſhew the *North*, G, the *South*, H, the *Eaſt*, and K, the *Weſt*. Let every one of the *Quadrants* be divided into 90 *degrees*.

Then in the Globe let *London* be brought to the *Brazen Meridian*, and let the *Pole* be Elevated according to the Latitude of *London*, let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and applyed to every place, whoſe ſcituation we would repreſent to *London* on the *Chart*. For *Example*, the beginning, middle, and end of *France*, ſo to the bounds of *Italy*, *Spain*, *Hungary*, *Sweden*, and the like; and let the *Angles* be noted which the *Quadrant* maketh with the Meridian in every application, that is the *Angles* of the Poſition of thoſe places to *London*: moreover the *degrees* of the *Quadrant* between *London* and every place, that is the diſtance of every one of them. This done, lay aſide the Globe, and on the *Chart*, let the Lines be drawn from A, for the *quarters* of every one of the places, *viz.* which may make ſuch *Angles* with the Meridian Line, as are noted before, and that between the Cardinal noted *points*. (How we may ſupercede this labour of drawing of Lines, we ſhall ſhew anon) In theſe Lines of the *quarters* the *points* muſt be found out for the places, by taking the diſtances from *London*,

which we may do by a double Method. For the places are either removed a little interval, which we will note, or by a large interval, but ſo it is beſt to make a ſmall Map; or the places are removed a great interval, and ſo you muſt form a Map of a greater bulk. In the two Caſes it is ſufficient to make a Scale of *degrees*, by dividing ſome Line into equal parts, every one of which may repreſent a *degree*. From this Scale we take the diſtances of every place before noted, with the interval of the *Compaſs*, and bring them into the Line of the quarter of every place. The *term* ſhall be noted with the *appellation* of the place. And ſo we ſhall note all the places in the *Table* about *London*.

A Scale of equal parts for Degrees not ſufficient for larger Maps, with remote Regions.

But if you muſt make a Map of a larger form, and the remote Regions muſt be noted, it is not ſufficient to take a Scale of equal parts for *degrees*, but the Line muſt be divided by another Mode, *viz.* according to the Rules of *Perſpective*; becauſe in this Mode we place the Eye beneath the *Horizon* of *London*, in the place of the *Antipodes*, and take the *Horizon* for the *Glaſs*. If we are minded to repreſent an *Hemiſphere*, or a part greater, leſſer than the *Hemiſphere*, then we take a Plain Parallel to the *Horizon*, which may be diſtant from it by ſo great an *Arch*, as is the part to be repreſented by the *Hemiſphere*. Therefore let the *Periphery* of the *Circle* be deſcribed in another *Chart*, M, the *Center*, N O, one *Diameter*, P Q, another perpendicular. Let the *Quadrant* P Q, be divided into 90 *degrees*, and let ſo many *degrees* be taken beneath Q, as much as the part beyond the *Hemiſphere* is to be repreſented, and through the term R, let it be drawn to Q M, Parallel at M O, *to wit*, R S.

Moreover from O, let right Lines be drawn to every *degree* of the *Quadrant* N Q, or N Q R, (if a greater portion than the *Hemiſphere* be to be exhibited) which divide the right Line M Q, or S R, into ſuch parts, which in projecture ſhall ſhew the *degrees*. Then let a Line be taken, how much we will have to be the diſtance of the moſt remote place from *London* in the *Table*, that is how much we will have to be half the *Table*. That Line ſhall be divided as M Q, or S K, was divided: and the parts ſhall be noted with numbers, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, *&c.* for *degrees*. The diſtances taken from this Scale for every place from *London*, if they be brought into the Lines of the *Quarters*, ſhall exhibit the *points* for the places, and the Map ſhall be made which we deſired.

In the practice we may ſuperſede from the pains of the Lines to be drawn from the *Quarters*, for it will be commodious to deſign a Scale of *degrees* in the *Rule*, whoſe beginning if it be applyed to *London*, and the *Rule* be brought round to the *degrees* of the *Periphery* for the *Quarters* of every place, the *point* may preſently be noted for any place, accounting the diſtance on the *Rule* from the beginning of the Scale. The practice will ſhew this Method eaſy.

The fifth Mode, concerning Sea Maps, or Charts.

The fifth Mode treating of Sea Maps, or *Charts*.

Sea Maps, or *Charts*, are of right *lines*, and have all their *Meridians* Parallel, otherwiſe than the ſecond Mode hath in the laſt member. They are twofold, as we have ſaid, that Univerſals are twofold in the fourth and fifth Mode of *univerſals*, *viz*, of equal *degrees* of *Latitude*, or *unequal degrees*. The conſtruction is the ſame with that of the *univerſals*, the difference is only that they repreſent part, and admit of divers *Nautick* or *Sea Compaſſes*. Of their uſe we ſhall ſpeak in the *Art* of *Navigation*. *Charts* become of equal *degrees*, if that part of the Earth a little varying in *Latitude*, be to be repreſented: ſuch are the *Charts* for the *Navigation* of the *Mediterranean*: they are made of unequal *degrees*, if that the *Latitude* be great.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the diſtance of Places.

Propoſition I.

Two Points, or Places being given on the Globe, to draw a line or Arch from one to the other, which may be part of the greateſt Periphery of the Globe, or to deſcribe on the Superficies a Periphery of the greateſt Circle, which may paſs through the two given Points.

Concerning the diſtances of places.

LEt us conceive two Right Lines drawn from one *point* to the other, and from both to the *Center* of the Globe, or Earth, which three Lines ſhall make a *Triangle*, and therefore they are on one Plain. This Plain protended may cut the Superficies of the Globe: the Section ſhall be the *Periphery* of the greater *Circle*, and the *Arch* intercepted between both places ſhall be that ſought for. Or let the interval of the *Quadrant* of the greateſt *Periphery* be taken with the *Compaſſes*, and one *foot* being fixed on one of the given places, let the *Arch* be deſcribed on the Superficies of the Globe: then the other *Arch*, the *foot* being fixed on the other given *point*, the *Cannon Section* of theſe two *Arches*, ſhall be the Pole of the *Periphery* to be deſcribed, or in which if one *foot* of the *Compaſs* be deſigned, and the *Periphery* deſcribed on the Superficies of the Globe, we ſhall have the *Arch* demanded intercepted between the two given places.

Propoſition II.

The diſtance of two places on the Superficies of the Earth is very ſhort, or the ſhorteſt way from one place to the other is only one (except the places of the Antipodes) viz. *the Arch of the greateſt Periphery, which is intercepted between thoſe two places.*

The ſhorteſt diſtance of two places, is a Right Line drawn from one Point to the other.

The ſhorteſt diſtance of theſe two *points*, is a Right Line drawn from one *point* to the other, as is manifeſt from the definition of *Archimedes*, and it is eaſy to deduct from other definitions. Alſo the ſhorteſt diſtance of two places exiſting in the Superficies of the Earth is a Right line, which is conceived to be drawn frome one place to the other; but ſeeing that the Superficies of the Earth is a crooked *Convex*, thence it cometh to paſs, that the Right Line which is truly the ſhorteſt diſtance of the two places, may fall between the Cavity of this Superficies. But we conſider only thoſe ways from one place to another, which are on the very Superficies of the Earth, and therefore Crooked Lines: wherefore we add in the *Propoſition* the ſhorteſt diſtance on the Superficies of the Earth. Between theſe ways, or intercepted Lines, there is one which is ſhorteſt of all, *viz.* the *Arch* of the greateſt *Periphery*, intercepted between any two *points* ſo drawn, as we have ſaid in the preceeding *Propoſition*. That therefore this *Arch*, or Crooked intercepted Line is ſhorter than all the other Crooked *Circular* intercepted Lines (of which there are infinite) is manifeſt from this *Geometrical Theorem*: if the *Arches* of two unequal *Peripheries* be taken, whoſe ſubtended Line is equal, or the ſame, the *Arch* of the greater *Periphery* ſhall be leſſer than the *Arch* of the leſſer *Periphery* of the Earth, except that *Arch* which is ſuppoſed to be of the greateſt *Periphery*. But that this *Arch* is alſo leſſer than the other Crooked not *Circular* ſolid Lines, (as the *Helices*) ſuch as may be infinitely ſuppoſed on the Superficies of the Earth intercepted between two places is ſhewed from others: for this *Theorem* doth not belong to *Geography* but to *Geometry*,

which alſo ſheweth only that one *Arch* of the greateſt *Periphery* may be drawn from one place to another, not many.

Propoſition III.

The diſtances of places are not changed.

Itinerary diſtances of places may be greater or leſſer.

The Itinerary diſtance of places may ſometimes be greater, and ſometimes leſſer: but the true and ſhorteſt *Geographical* diſtance remaineth the ſame, except you conceive the Superficies of the Earth to be rent or torn. But here we underſtand places to be the *points* of the Earth which are immovable, and therefore the Superficies intercepted between two places become higher, the diſtance of the places ſhall alſo be made greater; if more depreſſed, leſſer.

Propoſition IV.

No Maps of the Earth are diſtant a greater interval, than 2700 German *miles, whereof* 15 *are ſaid to be a degree.*

Fifteen *German* makes a *degree.*

Therefore becauſe the Superficies of the Earth is *Spherical*, the ſhorteſt *Arch* cannot fall between two *points* of it, which is greater than 180 *deg.* that is, than the *Semiperiphery* of the greateſt Circle. And 180 *deg.* makes 2700 *German* miles; wherefore no places are diſtant more than 2700 *German* miles. But the condition of an Itinerary diſtance is otherwiſe.

Propoſition V.

The diſtance of the Antipodes *is* 2700 German *miles, or* 180 *degrees.*

The diſtance of the *Antipodes.*

The ſhorteſt diſtance amongſt the *Antipodes* is not one, but infinite, and thoſe all equal, although to ſpeak properly, they cannot be called the ſhorteſt diſtances, but thoſe than which none are ſhorter.

The Circular diſtances amongſt the *Antipodes* are all greater *Peripheries*, no leſſer, of which between other places there are infinite, which are not oppoſed to the *Diameter.*

A *Periphery* paſſing through two places, alſo paſſeth through the *Antipodes* of theſe places.

The diſtance of any places of the two which belong to the *Antipodes* taken together, make 180 *degrees.* Therefore the diſtance of one place being known from the other, the diſtance alſo of that place ſhall be known from the place of the other of the *Antipodes.*

Theſe Five *Propoſitions* are of ſo manifeſt a truth, that any one weighing of them may eaſily diſcern, and underſtand them.

Propoſition. VI.

Any place being given on the Superficies of the Globe, *to exhibit all thoſe places which may have one and the ſame diſtance from that given place: but the given diſtance muſt not be greater than* 2700 German *miles.*

Let the given place be brought to the *Brazen* Meridian; let the Pole be Elevated according to to the *Latitude* of the place, let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertical point.* Moreover let the given diſtance be turned into *degrees*, which *degrees* muſt be numbred on the *Quadrant* from the *Vertical point.* Let the term of the Numeration be noted with Chalk: then let the *Quadrant* be brought round on the Superficies of the Globe: the noted *point* will ſhew all the places of the Earth, which have the given diſtance from the given place.

Or

Or let the *deg.* of the changed distance be taken on the *Æquator* by the interval of the *Compass*, and one Foot fixed on the given place, let the other be brought round. The places through which it passeth, are those all demanded.

But if the *deg.* arising from the changed distance are more than 90, that is than a *Quadrant*, let their *Complement* be taken at 180: and let the place of the *Antipodes* be brought to the Superiour Semicircle of the *Brazen* Meridian, let the Pole be Elevated for its *Latitude*, and the *Quadrant* affixed to the *Vertical point*, and let the *deg.* of the *Complement* be accounted on it, and let the term of the Numeration be noted with Chalk. If then the *Quadrant* be turned about, all the places demanded, which have the given distance from the given place, shall have the noted *point*. But if you will do the business with the *Compass*, use the Method of the *Chorographical* Maps.

The Latitude and Longitude of two places being given, to find their distance.

Proposition VII.

Of the Cause why the Itinerary distance is greater than the true, or short and Geographical.

1. The unpassable Woods which lie between some places. 2. High Mountains, and low Valleys. 3. Marishes and Water in general, if you mean *Land-Voyages*. 4. In *Sea Voyages* the procurrent Lands and Islands hinder the direct *Voyage*. 5. Peculiar Fluxes of the *Sea*. And 6. The Winds.

The reasons why the Itinerary distance is greater than the true, short, and *Geographical*.

But some may demand whether it be not possible that there may be places whose Itinerary distance is lesser, than the most short *Geographical*? To this I answer, although to Sense the Figure of the Earth be *Spherical*, yet I have shewed in the first Book, that this Figure is not altogether *Geometrical*, but is rendred unequal by many places Elevated and depressed. Therefore if we conceive a certain Superficies of the Earth, or the distance of the Superficies from the Center, for *Example*, the vulgar Semidiamiter of 860 miles, in respect of which places are to be taken Elevated, or depressed, this being supposed, I say, there may be two places so scituated, that the Itinerary distance may be lesser than the shorter *Geographical*, which is removed 860 miles from the *Center*, but the intermedial place must be more depressed.

Proposition VIII.

To find out the distance of two places given on the Globe, as also in Geographical Maps.

Let one of the given places be brought to the *Brazen* Meridian, let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and let it be applyed to the other given place: then let the *degrees* intercepted between the *Vertex* and this place be numbred: let these *degrees* be turned into miles, or another measure in which we would know the distance of those places; this shall be that demanded.

The finding out the distance of two places given on the Globe.

Or let the interval of two places be taken with the *Compasses*, and this being translated to the *Æquator*, let it be considered how many *degrees* it possesseth in this, for these are the distances of the places, which we must convert into miles, or some other measure.

But if that the distance be greater, than can be taken by the *Quadrant*, or *Compasses*, (*viz.* more than 90 *degrees*) the distance of one place from the *Antipodes* of the other, shall be lesser than 90 *degrees*. Let this be enquired after and taken from 180 *degrees*, the remaining *degrees* shall be the distance required.

In Universal Maps, as also in Particular of great parts, the distance of places cannot be exactly found: but in Particular *Chorographical* Maps, a Scale of *Leagues* or *miles* is usually added, by the assistance of which the distance of places contained in those Maps is known. For so if you take the interval of

two

two places, and transfer this into the Scale, you ſhall preſently know the diſtance of thoſe places.

But if the Map be of any greater *proportion*, this Method is defective, for no Map can be made by any Method, which exhibiteth the true diſtance of places: but ſuch an one may be made, which may ſhew the diſtance of one place from all the reſt, as we have ſaid in our Method of making Maps.

Propoſition IX.

The Latitude and Longitude of two places being given, to find their diſtance.

The Latitude and Longitude of two places being given, to find their diſtance.

The ſolution of this *Problem* is eaſy by the Globe and *Catholick Planiſphere*; it is difficult by *Calculation*, and *Trigonometrical Supputation*.

It is performed on the Globe after this Mode: let any Meridian be taken, and let the difference of the *Longitude* of places be numbred from it in the *Æquator*; let the term of the Numeration be brought under the *Brazen* Meridian, and let the *Latitude* of the other place be reckoned on this; let the *point* of the Globe, which is under the term of the Numeration be noted with Chalk: alſo in the firſt Meridian, let the *point* of *Latitude* be noted for the other place. Then let the interval be taken between the noted *points* with the *Compaſſes*, and let it be transferred either into the *Æquator*, or firſt Meridian: ſo we ſhall know the diſtance of places in *degrees*, and parts of *degrees*: which *degrees* muſt be turned into *miles*, or other meaſure which we would have; but if the interval be greater than can be conveniently taken with *Compaſſes*, we muſt do as in the VII *Propoſition*. But becauſe the *Planiſphere* is more apt for uſe, eſpecially by *Seamen*, and many love to ſolve *Problems* by it, and the uſe of this *Problem* is frequent, I ſhall alſo propound this Method by the *Planiſphere*.

See Propoſition 7.

There are two Caſes of this *Problem*, for either the given *Longitude* of the places is one and the ſame, or the difference of 180, *to wit*, if they lie in the ſame Meridian, or the *Longitude* is diverſe. If it be the ſame, there is no need of another Method, but that *difference* of *Latitude* may be turned into *miles*; *viz.* that every *Latitude* is the diſtance of places in *degrees*: but if the *Latitudes* be of divers *ſpecies*, *to wit*, one *North*, the other *South*, the *degrees* of *Latitudes* ſhall be added: if the difference be of 180 *degrees*, *viz.* if in divers Semicircles of the ſame *Circle* of *Longitude*, we muſt do after the ſame Mode, which is eaſy for any one to collect. But it is otherwiſe, if that the *Longitude* of the places be unequal, that is, if the places ſhall be ſcituated in divers Meridians, and without the *Æquator*.

Caſes which vary the ſolution of this *Problem*.

But it will be uſeful for the diſtinct underſtanding of the *Problem* to reckon the Caſes which vary the ſolution, and moſt of them have a moſt eaſy ſolution, as will be manifeſt by Examples, which the Studious ought to examine.

1. If the *Longitude* of the places be the ſame, and they be the ſame cognominated *Latitude*, in this Caſe the difference of *Latitude* is the very diſtance in *degrees*, which may be changed into *miles*, or other *meaſure*.

2. If the *Longitude* of places be the ſame, but the *Latitudes* be of a divers name, one *Northern*, the other *Southern*; in this Caſe, the *Latitudes* ſhall be added in one ſum, this ſhall ſhew the diſtance in *degrees*.

3. If the difference of *Longitudes* be of 180 *degrees*, and be of a like cognominated *Latitude*, the *Complements* of the *Latitudes* ſhall be taken at 90 *degrees*, or the diſtance of the places from the Poles, and they ſhall be added: the ſame will ſhew the diſtance in *degrees*.

4. If the difference of *Longitudes* be of 180 *degrees*, and the *Latitudes* be of a diverſe name, let the difference of *Latitudes* be taken, and ſubſtracted from 180 *degrees*, or the Semicircle. The remaining number ſhall exhibit the diſtance in *degrees*.

5. If

5. If both places ſhall be in the *Æquator*, the difference of *Longitude* is the very diſtance.

6. If the *Latitude* of places ſhall be one and the ſame, and not greater than 20 *degrees*, and the difference of *Longitude* ſmall, we muſt enter with that *Latitude*, the *Table* of *Magnitude* laid down in the IV. *Chapter*, and we muſt except the quantity of one *degree*. Then we ſhall take the difference of *Longitude*, and turn theſe *deg.* into the excepted Miles, or Meaſures.

7. But if the *Longitude* and *Latitude* be divers, or if the *Latitude* be the ſame, but yet greater than 20 *degrees*, and the difference of *Longitude* be ſome what greater, which is uſual in many *Examples*; in this caſe we muſt not uſe the ſame *compendiums*, but the ſolution is more difficult, and in this caſe the *Problem* is chiefly propounded. We have ſhewed the ſolution by the Globe; the Method by the *Planiſphere* is this: let the Rule of the *Planiſphere* be brought to the *Latitude* of one place, or to the *degree* of the Elevation of the Pole: then let the difference of *Longitudes* be numbred in the Meridians, beginning from the other part, and wherein the *point* may be obſerved, where this Meridian terminating the Numeration, cutteth the Parallel of the other place of *Latitude*. Let the end of the *Index* be placed above this *point*. This done, let the Rule be applyed to the Line of the *Æquator*. The number of the Parallels intercepted between the Pole and the *Index*, is the ſought for diſtance in the *degrees*.

Thus the *Problem* is ſolved by the *Planiſphere*. There is another Method found out by *Maurolicus*, which by the ſtroaks of the Lines on the *Circle*, teacheth by a pleaſant operation to exhibit the diſtance, from which lineary deſcription alſo is deduced a Mode, in which the *Problem* is ſolved by *Calculation*. Let a certain *Periphery* of the *Circle* be deſcribed in the *Center* E: one *Semidiamiter* B E: let the *Arch* B A, be taken equal to the difference of the *Longitudes* of the places (if the difference taken be greater than 180 *deg.* the *Complement* of this difference is at 360 *degrees*) and let the *Semidiameter* A E be drawn. Then let the *Arch* A F, (towards B) be taken equal to the *Latitude* of the place A, and from B, the *Arch* B C, equal to the *Latitude* of the place B: let G I, be let down perpendicular from G, on B E, and F H, from F, on A E. Let I H, be drawn, and above this the *points* I, and H, muſt be erected perpendicular, I L, equal to I G, and H K equal to H F (on the ſame quarter if the *Latitudes* of the places ſhall be Cognominal; but if they be of a divers Name, then I L, ſhall be drawn from one quarter to the right Line I H, and H K, from the other). This done, the right Line L K, ſhall be ſtretched to the demanded diſtance, or the *Arch* of it ſhall be ſubtended, which ſhall ſhew the diſtance of *degrees*. Therefore by the interval of the *Compaſs* K L, let the *Arch* B X, be taken: this ſhall repreſent the diſtance in *degrees*. The ſolution of the Problem.

This Mode of *Maurolicus* is taken from the ſolution of *Spherical Triangles*, neither will this lineary Method exhibit an accurate diſtance, although the practice be pleaſant and eaſy: but only the Method by Numbers, or the *Trigonometry* of *Spherical Triangles*, exhibiteth an accurate diſtance. For let there be had a *Spherical Triangle*, in which two ſides are given, *viz.* the diſtances of the places from the Poles (the *Complements* of *Latitude*) and the *Angle* contained whoſe meaſure is the difference of *Longitude*, the third ſide is demanded. For the finding of which although there are many Methods, yet the moſt general is this: Firſt, if that the *Latitudes* of places be Cognominal, let it be brought to paſs, that as the *Quadrant* of the whole *Sinus* is to the right *Angle*, contained under the *Sinus* of the diſtance of the places from the Pole, ſo is it towards the *Sinus* of the difference of the *Longitudes* (if it be greater than 180 *degrees*, let his *Complement* be taken at 360 *degrees*) to a certain fourth number. Then let the difference of *Latitudes* be taken, and the *Sinus* of this *Complement*. Moreover let the fourth number found out before be compared with this *Sinus*: if it becometh equal, the diſtance of the places ſhall be 90 *degrees*. If it be leſſer let it be ſubſtracted, and the reſidue ſhall be the *Sinus* of the *Arch*, whoſe *Complement* is the diſtance of the places. If the fourth be found greater than the ſaid *Sinus*, let this be ſubtracted from that, and the reſidue

fidue ſhall be the *Sinus* of the *Arch*, which being added to 90 *degrees*, will exhibit the diſtance ſought in *degrees*, which muſt be converted into an Itinerary diſtance.

2. If the Latitudes be of a divers name, *viz.* one *Northern*, the other *Southern*, let the place of the *Antipodes* be taken for either place of it, and the diſtance of it may be found from the other place according to the ſaid Method. For the Latitude of this ſhall be the ſame with that of that place, but of the ſame name with the other place: therefore in a *Spherical Triangle* there ſhall be two given *ſides*, and the *Angle* is the *Complement* of the difference of the Longitude of the places at 180 *degrees* (or an exceſs above 180; if this difference ſhall be greater than 180) therefore the diſtance between one place, and the *Antipodes* of the other place being found, you have alſo the diſtance of thoſe places. For this is the *Complement* of the former to 180 *degrees*, as hath been ſaid in the former *Propoſition*.

In places near, and not much diſtant from the *Æquator* (*viz.* not beyond 18 *degrees*) we uſe a more eaſy, though not an Apodictical Method, which ſhall exhibit a diſtance not much diverſe from the true, *viz.* we take the *Quadrant* of the difference of Longitude, and alſo of Latitude, we add the *Quadrants*, and from the Aggregate extract the *Quadrate Root*, this will ſhew the difference not much different from the true.

Or thus, act in a more certain Method, which may alſo be applyed to places beyond the 20 *degree* of Latitude: from the *Table* of the Quantity of the Parallels, except the proportion of the greater Parrallel of Latitude to the *Æquator*: and as the quantity of the *Æquator* is to the quantity of the Parallel, ſo is the difference of Longitude to the other, or to the difference of Longitude taken in the Parallel of a greater Latitude. Let this quantity be aſſumed for the difference of Latitude, and do as before.

Tables of *Logarithms* uſeful for the ſolution of this Problem.

The ſolution of this *Problem* is eaſy, if we apply *Tables* of *Logarithms*, and reſolve a *Triangle*, *Oblique Angle*, into two right *Angles*. So there will be need of no *Multiplication*, or *Diviſion*.

Propoſition X.

The Latitude of two places being given, and the Quarter in which one is ſcituated from the other, to find the diſtance.

This *Problem* is the ſame with the *Trigonometrical* abſtract: two ſides being given in a *Spherical Triangle*, and an *Angle*, which is oppoſite to one given ſide, to find a third ſide. For the two given ſides are in this *Geographical Problem*, the diſtances of theſe two places from the Pole, and the *Angles* oppoſite to either ſide is the *Angle* of *poſition*, or the *Angle* of one quarter of the place to the other, or the *Complement* of this *Angle* at 180 *degrees*.

The Solution of this *Problem* is thus performed by the Globe. Let the firſt Meridian be taken for the Meridian of the place, whoſe quarter is not given at the other: and in this Meridian let the *point* of Latitude be noted for this place. Then let the Pole be Elevated for the Latitude of the other place, and the *Quadrant* affixed to the *Vertex*, but let the other end be applyed to the quarter or *degree* of the Horizon, for the given quarter.

Then let the Globe be turned round, until the *point* noted in the firſt Meridian come to the *Quadrant*. So the *Arch* of the *Quadrant* intercepted between the *Vertex* and that *point*, is the demanded diſtance of the two places: you ſhall alſo have the difference of Longitude in the *Æquator*, *viz.* the *Arch* of the *Æquator* intercepted between the *Brazen*, and firſt Meridian.

Pro-

Proposition XI.

The Longitude of two places being given, the Latitude of one place, and the quarter in which this other place lyeth at this, to find out the distance.

Here we have again a *Spherical Triangle*, whose sides are the distances of the places from the Pole, and the mutual distance of the places themselves, in which one side is given, *viz.* the distance of one place from the Pole, and two *Angles* are given one, whose *measure* is the difference of *Longitude*, the other is known from the given quarter of the other place. From these three given the side is demanded, which is opposite to the *Angle* of the difference of *Longitude*, the solution may easily be performed by the Globe, and by the *Planisphere*, and very exactly by a *Logarithmetical Calculation*, as also by the common computation. We will only shew the Method which the Globe affordeth, although it be more easy by the *Planisphere*, but that which is done by the Globe representeth the *Triangle*.

The Method which the Globe affordeth herein.

Let the first Meridian be taken for the Meridian of the place whose *Latitude* is not given: and let the *degrees* of the difference of the *Longitude* of the places be accounted in the *Æquator*. Let the term be noted with Chalk, and brought to the *Brazen* Meridian: so this shall represent the Meridian of the other place: let the *degrees* of the given *Latitude* be reckoned on it, and the Globe remaining fixed let the Pole be Elevated for that *Latitude*; Let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and the other end to the given *quarter* of the *Horizon*. In this situation of the Globe the *point* in which the *Quadrant* cutteth the first Meridian, shall represent that other place, and the *Arch* of the *Quadrant*, which is intercepted between the *Vertex*, and the *point* is the distance demanded. Also by the same Method, the *Latitude* of this other place is had.

Proposition XII.

The distance of two places situated in the same Meridian, or of the same Longitude, being given in the quarters in which that third place lyeth from those two, to find the distance of this third place from both of them.

Here again we have a *Spherical Triangle*, whose three sides are the distance between those three places. And one place is given, *viz.* the distance of two places (which must be turned into *degrees*, except it be so given) and the two adjacent *Angles* are given, the two other sides are sought.

Leaving the Methods which perform it by Calculation, and the *Planisphere*, although they be more accurate, we shall only deliver that which solveth it by the Globe, and placeth it more before the Eyes.

Let the *degrees* of two places distant be taken on the *Brazen* Meridian where you please, and let the terms be noted: so that these may represent the places whose distance is given. Then let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of one of these terms, let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and applied to the given *quarter*, in which the other place is scituated as the place which is represented from that bound, and let the extension of the *Quadrant* be noted with Chalk on the Globe. Then let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of the other bound, and the *Quadrant* be affixed to that term, the other extremity to the other given *quarter*. The *point* in which the *Quadrant* shall cut the *Arch* marked with Chalk, shall represent the third place, whence it is easy to take the distance from these two terms.

CHAP. XXXIV.

Of the Visible, or Sensible Horizon.

A *Sensible Horizon*, is a *Periphery* on the Superficies of the Earth which boundeth the prospect of the Eye moved round about, or which terminateth part of the Superficies which the Eye moved about may see, or from whence the Rays may come to the Eye. His *Semidiameter* is termed the greatest *Arch* of the Earth intercepted between the Foot of the Spectator, and that *Periphery*, which therefore is perpendicular over it.

Proposition I.

The extension or Semidiameter of the sensible Horizon variously existeth both according to the divers Altitude of the Eye, as also from the diversity of the taken Semidiameter of the Earth.

A sensible Horizon what.

Let the greatest *Circle* of the Earth be MPNQ. Let T be the *Center*, TP the *Semidiameter*, PO the *Altitude* of the Eye: let O be the Eye. Let the *Tangents* ON, OM be drawn from O: and let us conceive the Ray NO to be as it were carried about on the Superficies of the Earth: and so to describe the *Periphery*: this shall be the sensible Horizon: his *Semidiameter* PN, PM; for the Rays NO, MO are the last, which from O can come to the Eye from the Superficies of the Earth, which we here suppose to be perfectly round.

And it is manifest, if we take the lesser, or greater *Altitude* than PO, that also the *Arch* PN shall be greater or lesser. After the same Mode if FP be made to be of more, or fewer *miles*, PN shall also be of more or fewer *miles*.

The opinions of the Antients concerning this Horizon.

These seem to be the Causes, that the Ancient *Authours* have followed divers opinions concerning this Horizon, or Extension of Sight. For *Macrobius* assigneth to it the *Semidiameter* PN of 180 *stadia's*, that is 22½ *miles*. *Eratosthenes* 350 *stadia's*, which makes 44 *miles*. *Albertus Magnus* 1000, which makes 125 *miles*. *Proclus* 2000 *stadia's*, that is 250 *miles*. Many assign 500 *stadia's*, that is 62½ *mile*. Yet I suppose the Causes of the diversity of these assignations, not only to be those of which I have spoken, but the divers assumed distance of the *stadia*, as shall be manifest from the following *Proposition*.

Proposition II.

The stature of a Man being given from the Foot to the Eye, and the Semidiameter of the Earth being given, to find out the Semidiameter of the sensible Horizon.

Let PO be the stature of a Man: O the Eye. TP is the *Semidiameter*. ON is the Rays touching the Superficies of the Earth, terminating the sensible Horizon, or the *Aspect*: therefore PN is the *Semidiameter*; the *Longitude* of this is demanded. Let PO be added, for *Example*, of Five Foot to TP the *Semediameter* 19598300: so you shall have TO, and in the *Triangle* NTO besides TO and TN, we know the *Angle* TNO to be right, or 90 *degrees*. Therefore NTO is found according to this proportion.

As

As TO is to TN, ſo is the whole *ſinus* to the *ſinus* of the *Angle* NOT, whoſe *Complement* at 90 *degrees* is the *Angle* NTO, or the *Arch* NP, which may be turned into *miles*.

Corollary. We therefore may thence know that if this, or that quantity of the *Semidiameter* TN, or TP be taken, and another *Altitude* of the Eye O, how great a variation there thence is of the ſenſible Horizon.

Propoſition III.

The Altitude of the Eye being given on a Tower, or Mountain, to find the diſtance of the laſt point, unto which the Eye extendeth it ſelf, or which the Eye can ſee.

Let PO be the given *Altitude* of the *Tower*, in which the Eye being placed beholdeth all round. Therefore in the *Triangle right Angle* NTO, the given have themſelves after the ſame Mode, as in the preceeding *Problem*. Therefore the *Angle* NTP and the *Arch* NP ſhall be found after the ſame Mode, which we have uſed in the ſolution of the former.

Propoſition. IV.

The Semidiameter of the ſenſible Horizon being given, or the greateſt diſtance from which the Eye is ſuppoſed to ſee, to find out the Altitude of the Eye.

This is the ſame with that *Problem*. The greateſt diſtance being given from which the *Vertex* of the Mountain is ſeen, to find the *Altitude* of the Mountain. Of the finding out the Altitude of the Eye.

In the *Triangle* NTO, let the right *Angle* TNO be given, and the *Angle* NTO is known from the *Semidiameter* of the ſenſible *Horizon* PN: moreover let the *Semidiameter* of the Earth TN be given. Therefore TO ſhall be found according to the proportion.

As the whole *ſinus* is to the *ſecant* of the *Angle* NTO, ſo is TN to TO. From which if you ſubſtract TP, the remaining number will ſhew the ſought for *Altitude* of the Eye.

Propoſition V.

The Altitude of the Eye being given, and of ſome erected ſeen Magnitude, as a Tower, the Maſt of a Ship, or an high Mountain; to find the diſtance of this from the Eye, that is the diſtance of the Ship.

For *Example*, in the *Diagram* in the preceeding *Propoſitions*, let PO be the *Altitude* of the Eye in the Ship, Tower, or Mountain. Let FS be the Maſt of another Ship; and let P be the *point*, and FS the Ship ſo ſeated, that in P the firſt top of the Maſt S may be ſeen. Therefore the *point* S ſhall be in the Line ON, which is the *Tangent* drawn from the Eye O: for whatſoever is ſeated beneath this ONX, that can ſend forth no direct Rays to the Eye O: but it muſt ſo draw near, that the *Vertex* or *point* may fall into the right Line OX. To find the diſtance of a Ship, &c. by the Eye.

Therefore the diſtance FP is ſought, *viz.* in which the firſt Ray from S may come to the Eye.

In the *Triangle* NOT the *Angle* NTO is found from the given NT, TO and from the right *Angle* TNO. And again in the *Triangle right Angle* NTS, NT, TS is given, and the right *Angle* SNT: the *Angle* NTS, ſhall be found out: and ſo the whole *Angle* OTS ſhall be had, whoſe *meaſure* is the *Arch* PS, the diſtance demanded.

Propoſition VI.

On the contrary, *if the Altitude of the Eye be given, and the diſtance, from which firſt the top of the approaching Maſt of the Ship or Tower may be ſeen, to find out the Altitude of the Tower, or Maſt of the Ship.*

In the *Diagram* of the former *Propoſition* in the *Triangle* N O T, from the given N T, T O, the *Arch* N P is found, which being ſubſtracted from the known *Arch* P F, (from the given diſtance turned into *minutes*) the *Arch* F N, or the *Angle* N T S is left. And in the *Triangle* N T S, the right *Angle* N T is given, and N is the right *Angle*; therefore the *Hypotenuſa* T S ſhall be found, from which if T F be taken, F S is left the demanded *Altitude* of the *Tower*, or *Maſt* of the *Ship*, or of any Mountain.

Propoſition VII.

The refraction of Rays in the Air, augmenteth the apparent Semidiameter of the ſenſible Horizon.

Of refraction of Rays in the Air.

For there is a divers refraction of the *Air* in divers places; but the thicker by how much it is nearer the Earth. Therefore although a Ray cannot come by a direct way to the Eye O, from the *point* ſcituated beyond N, for *Example* F, yet his Ray may be ſo broken in the *Air*, that the refract may be N O, or the *Tangent* of the Earth.

CHAP. XXXV.

Of the three parts of the Nautick *Art; and in ſpecial, of the firſt part,* viz. *the making or building of Ships.*

Propoſition I.

That is termed the Nautical *Art or Science, which teacheth how a Ship may moſt ſafely with the aſſiſtance of the winds, be ſailed from one place to another through the Sea.*

By the Winds Ships are carried from one place to another in the *Seas.*

BEcauſe in this *diſcipline* the places of the Earth are compared amongſt themſelves, or mutually to themſelves, and their reſpective ſcituation is examined, therefore deſervedly it is referred to the reſpective part of *Geography.*

Now I ſuppoſe that three parts may conveniently be conſtituted of this moſt Noble Art ſo much uſeful to human Society. 1. The *Art* of *building* of *Ships*, which alſo conſidereth the motion of the Ship in the *water*, or elſe preſuppoſeth it as known. 2. Concerning the lading of Ships. 3. The Direction, Gubernation or Sailing of a Ship, which is termed the *Art* of the *Maſter*, or *Pilot*, and in general the *Art* of *Navigation* by way of Excellency: unto which alſo the definition of the *Nautick Art* is moſt of all agreeable. And this part with greater right doth appertain unto *Geography* than the two former, which are more truly referred to the *Statickſ*, and *Mechanicks*: now the *Art* of *Sailing* doth wholly depend on *Geography.*

Propoſition II.

In the Fabricks of Ships theſe things following muſt be obſerved.

Things to be noted in the Fabricks of hips.

1. That the *matter* or *wood* be taken, which may endure very long in the *water*, of which *Vitruvius* and other Authors are to be conſulted. Hither alſo

also belongeth how the Woods are to be prepared, and their denſity to be augmented, the unuſeful moiſture to be conſumed with Fire, Pitched, and defended from corruption. This *Doctrine* muſt be taken from *Philoſophy*.

2. That ſuch a Figure or Shape be given to a *Ship* that is moſt apt for a quick motion, and may be moved by a ſmall power.

3. In this Fabrick, and in reference to the Figure, this muſt be obſerved, th at a Ship may with eaſe be defended againſt *ſtorms* and *tempeſts*; but of this I ſh all treat in the Second Part, where I ſhall ſpeak of the *lading* of Ships.

4. The *Magnitude* of Ships muſt be conſidered, where there is a great com- The Magni-
pariſon between the *Ancient* and *Moderns*. Some ſuppoſe that the Ship of tude of Ships.
Alexandria, made by *Archimedes* by the Command of *Hiero* King of *Sicily*, and preſented to *Ptolomy* King of *Ægypt*, was of 12000 *tuns*. The Ship of *Philopater* is delivered by *Calixenus* to have been in length 280 *Cubits*, in breadth 38, and in highth 48 *Cubits*. The greateſt Ships at this day are thoſe of the *Spaniards*, or *Portugals*; they call them *Caracaſts*. But of all Nations in *Chriſtendom*, the *Engliſh* may beſt brag of their gallant Ships for the ſervice of War.

5. There belongeth to the building of Ships, the knowledge of every part, as the *Keil*, the *Rudder*, *Ribs*, *Head*, *Stern*, *Maſts*, *Yards*, *Cables*, and *Anchors*, &c. of which not only the *matter*, *figure*, and *coherency*, but alſo the *Weight* and *Magnitude* are to be explained.

6. To the Fabrick of Ships belongeth the skill how to prevent a *breach*, *leak*, or other defects of Ships.

Thus much in brief of the Firſt Part of the *Nautick Art* of building of Ships.

CHAP. XXXVI.

Of the Lading of Ships, or the Second Part of the Nautick *Art.*

Propoſition I.

The burden to lade Ships withall is expreſſed by Laſts, and Tuns.

THe *Tun* of a Ship is ſuppoſed to be 2000 pounds weight, the *Laſts* twelve *Tuns*. Of the Lading of Ships.

Propoſition II.

The body or matter which is higher than water, is not mergent altogether in the water, but ſome part of it is above, but if it be of a greater weight than water, it will ſink to the bottom: if of the ſame weight, it keepeth the given place in the water.

Hitherto belongeth the various knowledge of the *weights* of *bodies*, as of *Lead*, *Gold*, *Iron*, *Wheat*, *Sand*, *Oyl*, *Wine*, the gravity of all which muſt be compared with *water*.

Corollary. From hence it is manifeſt, that the *weight* of the *matter* to lade the Ship with, taken with the burden of the Ship, ought to be leſſer than the burden or gravity of the *water*, whoſe *moles* is equal to the ſolidity or capacity of the whole Ship.

Propoſition III.

By how much the Figure of the Ship cometh to an Ordinate, that is to a Cubick equality of Longitude, Latitude, and Thickneſs; by ſo much the more it can ſuſtain the greater burden in the water.

The demonſtration muſt be ſought from the *Staticks*.

Pro-

Propoſition IV.

In the Lading of Ships reſpect muſt be had to two things, firſt, that there is not impoſed ſo great a burden, that its weight taken may be equal with the weight of the Ship, or greater than the Moles *of the water which is equal to the ſolidity of the Ship, but that it be leſſer, though not much. But if the matter to lade the Ship be ſo light, the burden muſt be augmented with Ballaſt. Secondly, the depth of the water muſt be conſidered, through which the Ship is to ſail.*

Ballaſts required in a Ship.

For although the gravity of the Water admitteth of this or that weight of the Ship or Lading, when this is leſſer than the equal gravity of the Ship is to the *moles* of the Water; yet if the Water hath leſſer profundity than the part of the Ship beneath the Superficies of the Water, the bottom will not grant a motion to the Ship, but detain it. This is the reaſon that *Spaniſh* Ships carry greater burden than *Dutch*, becauſe they have the *Sea* deeper on the Shore, and in the Harbours, as alſo greater Ships come to *Zeland*, than to *Holland*.

Spaniſh Ships carry greater burden than the *Dutch*.

Propoſition V.

If a Ship be ſo burdened, that its weight, or gravity, be almoſt equal to the weight or gravity of the Sea water, equal to the capacity of the Ship, yet it ſinketh not in the Sea, but when it ſhall be brought into any Rivers, it ſinketh to the bottom.

The reaſon is becauſe the Water of Rivers is lighter than the Water of the *Sea*. Therefore if the weight of the laden Ship be almoſt equal to the gravity of the Marine Water, therefore it ſhall be greater than the gravity of River Water, and ſo the Ship ſhall be ſunk in the River, or carried to the bottom. Many Ships for this reaſon have periſhed, which have been over laden by unskilful *Mariners*, or not unburdened in the Mouths of the Rivers. Now how much this gravity ſhould be, is known from the proportion of the *Sea* Water to River Water.

Propoſition VI.

Any body ſwiming on the water hath that weight that the watery Moles *hath, equal to the demergent part of this body.*

Corollary. The part of the Ship being given which is under Water, the weight of the whole burdened Ship may be found. For the gravity of the Water is known, or is eaſy to be found. For *Example*, one *Cubick foot* of Water is 70 *li.* and therefore if the part of the Ship under Water be 2000 *Cubick foot*, therefore the gravity of the Watery *Moles* which is equal to the part of the Ship under Water, ſhall be 140000 *li.* So much alſo ſhall be the weight of the Ship laded.

Propoſition VII.

A Ship is moſt commonly accounted commodiouſly to carry that quantity of burden whoſe gravity is equal to the gravity of half the Moles *of water, which the Ship can contain.*

For *Example*, if the Ship can carry 500000 *Tun* of Water (whereof every one is accounted at 2000*li. weight*) that is if it contain the Water of 1000000000 *li.* You may conveniently lade it with the burden of 250000 *Tuns*, 1000000000. In this ſenſe you muſt underſtand it, when they ſay that Ships are ſo many *Tuns*, or carry ſo many *Laſts*.

The *Spaniſh Carracts* carry 1200 *Laſts*: the greateſt *Holland Indian Ship* 800 *Laſts*.

Pro-

Propoſition VIII.

By how much the Weight of the Ship laded is greater, by ſo much the leſs it is toſſed with ſtorms, and tempeſts.

Ships of 2000 *Tuns* are not in danger of thoſe Tempeſts, which are vexatious to Ships of 300, or 500 *Tuns*. Much more might be ſaid, but this may ſuffice for *Elements*. A laded Ship is not ſo ſubject to be toſſed in Tempeſts as when not laden.

CHAP. XXXVII.

Of the third, and chief Part of the Nautick *Art*, viz. *the Art of Guiding, or Navigating of a Ship, and its ſubdiviſion of the Four Parts.*

Propoſition I.

That is termed the Art of Guiding or Navigating of a Ship, which teacheth unto what quarters a Ship is to be Guided in any ſcituation of it in the Sea, *that it may come to the purpoſed place without danger.*

I Make Four Parts of it.

1. *Special Geography*, that is the knowledge of a ſpace intercepted between two places, and the properties of the ſame. 2. The knowledge of the *quarters* in every place. 3. The cognition of the Line by which the Ship is to be brought from one place to the other; for there are between every two places infinite intercepted Lines; this part is termed *Hiſtriodromice*. 4. The knowledge of the ſcituation of every place, unto which by Sailing we arrive, or how theſe places are ſcituated unto that place, unto which the Ship is to be directed. Of the Guiding, or Steering of Ships.

This is the chief part of the *Art* of *Sailing*.

Propoſition II.

The cognition of the intermedial ſpace comprehendeth theſe things.

1. The ſcituations of the places, the *procurrences* of *Angles*, the bending of the Shores, the *aſpect* of *Promontories*, *Mountains*, *Bays*, the *depths* of *Waters*, the *ſight* of *Iſlands*, and *Coaſts* of *Lands*. All which are known from *Special Geography*; and *Nautical Maps*, but moſt eaſily, and with greateſt certainty from obſervation, and frequent Navigation through any tract of Land; which is the only Cauſe that ſome *Mariners* are more fit to guide a Ship to ſuch place, and others to another. Things obſerved from Special *Geography* and *Nautical* Maps.

2. The knowledge of the General and Special Winds, and thoſe that are peculiar unto any place, which is exceeding neceſſary in Navigations which are undertaken in the *Torrid Zone*, and adjacent places. For here a general Wind, and in many places *Anniverſary* Winds (which we have ſhewed to be called *Mouſſons*, Motions, in our XX. *Chapter*) do rule, which either promote or hinder Navigation. For the *Indian Sea* is Sailed by theſe *Anniverſary* Winds. Of theſe and alſo of *ſtorms* and *tempeſts* we have ſpoken in the XX. *Chapter*. See Chap. 20.

3. The Condition of the Motion of the *Seas* in every tract, alſo the *quarter* of it, into which *quarter* the *Sea* and *Waves* are born: for they carry the Ship with them. The diverſity of thoſe Motions in many places we have ſhewed in the XVII. *Chap*. See Chap. 17.

First of all there is required a knowledge of the Ship, and reflux of the *Sea*, and the time or hour of the increase and decrease at every day; the supputation of which is termed the reckoning of the Tides, for except a *Master* know this, the Ship is often much hazarded, when it is near Shores, or Sands, whereof most in the greatest increase of the Water, do not hinder the passage of the Ship, but most do in the decrease. So with a flux the Navigation is more facile to the Shore, and to the inlets of Rivers, and the contrary is discovered in the reflux. Of the supputation of this time we have spoken a little in the *Proposition* of the XVII. *Chapter*.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

Of the knowledge of places, viz. *the* North, South, East, *and* West, *and the intermedial quarters.*

Proposition I.

In every place to know the Plagas, viz. *the* North, South, East, *and* West, *and the intermedial quarters.*

The quarters very necessary to Navigation.

THe knowledge of this is the most necessary of all the *Problems* of the whole Art of Navigation, seeing that a Ship must be guided unto some *quarter*, which if unknown, there can be no direction, and the very defect of this knowledge alone hindred the Navigation of the Ancients: and in this is the chief difference between the Ancient and Modern Navigation. For the Ancients had not a Method by which at any time in the large *Ocean* they might know where was the *North*, where the *South*, and the other *quarters*. Therefore they could not, nor durst they commit themselves to the vast *Ocean*; but only coasted the Shores, so that they might know the *quarters* from other *signs*.

The Antients had a double Method of finding out the quarters.

The Ancients had a double Method, (which serveth also to the Modern Navigation) of finding out the *quarters* (now this *Problem* is the same with that to find out the Meridian Line, and the *North* and *South quarters*; for these being known, it is easy to know the rest.) First by the *Stars*, *viz.* in the *night*, the *Bear*, or the *Helice*, and *Polary Star* so called, in the extremity of the tail of the *Ursa Minor* (of great fame amongst the Ancients) which shewed the *North quarter*, whence all the rest are found; for the face being turned to the *North*, the *East* is at the right *hand*, and the *West* on the left, the Line of which *quarters* at Right *Angles* cutteth the Line of the *North* and *South*. And these *Cardinal quarters* being found, it is easy to find the intermedial *quarters*, unto which purpose, that there may be no need of a description, they had a *Circle* made with the *quarters*, whose *Northern* Line being placed above the *Northern* Line of any place, the other *quarters* at one sight are discovered. But in the day they sought out the *quarter* by the rising or setting of the *Sun*, as we have shewed in the XXVIII *Chapter*.

See Chap. 28.

2. The other Method of the Antients for the knowing of *quarters*, was the knowledge of the scituation or extension of the Shoars, and one *Promontory* to the other. For seeing the *quarter* of this extension was known to them either from the Maps, or from Observation, and Experience, they might in Navigation by seeing them know the other *quarters*. (For one *quarter* being known, all the rest are known) therefore the Ancients did not far depart from the Coasts, *viz.* that they might know the *quarter* by the benefit of the known *quarter* of the extension of Shoars. For they could not always use the Method of the *Stars*, and the rising and setting of the *Sun*.

3. The

3. The third Method of the *Ancients* of the knowledge of the quarters was the obſerved courſe of the *Ship*. For going from any place, and guiding the *Ship* to the known quarter, they were able from the mutation of the courſe of the *Ship* to know the quarters.

4. Hence it is manifeſt, that the chief cauſe of the dangerous and imperfect Navigation of the *Ancients*, was the ignorance of a Method, by which every where in the middle of the vaſt *Ocean* they might know the quarters, and ſo that quarter unto which the *Ship* was to be ſteered. For, as I have ſaid the Method by the *Stars*, and the riſing and ſetting *Sun*, cannot be applied on all days, and on the hours of every day : for the mark from the ſcituation of the Shoars faileth in the mid *Seas* in the night, neither is it ſafe enough in the day time.

The third Method from the obſerved courſe of the *Ship* hath not place when the *Ship* is toſſed by boyſterous *winds* and *tempeſts*, from one quarter to another. And in this caſually lyeth the chief difficulty. This I thought fit to admoniſh concerning the Modes of the *Ancients* for the finding out the Meridian Line and the *North* and *South*, by reaſon that the imperfection of theſe was the cauſe of the dangerous and ſmall Navigation of the *Ancients*, ſeeing that they were never able to commit themſelves to the vaſt *Ocean*, and therefore never knew thoſe Regions between which the *Ocean* is interpoſed (of which the chief is all *America*, never yet fully known.)

But at this day the Method of knowing the quarters in all places, and of finding out the Line of the *North* and *South*, is facile, by the benefit of the admirable propriety which the *Loadſtone* and all *Iron* touched by it hath been found to have. *Viz.* that all *Magneticks* not hindred by others in any place direct their *points* almoſt to the ſame quarters. For there are two oppoſite *points* in the *Loadſtone*, whereof one always and in all places turneth it ſelf to the *North*, or the adjacent quarter, the other to the *South*, and ſo alſo the other *points* of the *Magnes* reſpect the other quarters *viz.* every *point* its particular quarter : but all of them are not conſidered, but only thoſe two *points*, which as I have ſaid do convert themſelves to the *North* and *South*, which are termed the Poles of the *Magnes*, one *Northern*, the other *Southern*. And the ſame virtue (much to admiration) is communicated to the *Needle*, but by an inverted and contrary operation of nature. For the end of the *Lamine* or *Needle* which is touched at the *North* Pole of the *Magnes*, doth not convert it ſelf to the *North*, but to the *South*, and that end which is rubbed at the *South* Pole of the *Loadſtone*, turneth not to the *South* but to the *North*. Theſe *points* of the *Needle* are alſo termed the Poles. Although therefore the *Loadſtone* and the *Iron* touched by it have very many notable properties, yet all may be referred to two *ſpecies* or *heads* : one is, that virtue which doth extract the *Iron* : the other, by which in every place it directeth the two *points* of its Superficies to the *North* and *South*. The former faculty the *Ancients* were not ignorant of, but only this latter. The virtue of the *Loadſtone*.

Seeing therefore the *Magnes* hath this property, therefore by its help it is eaſy to find in any part of the Earth, or *Sea*, where the *North* or *South* is; whence all the other quarters are ſoon known. For if thoſe *points* of the *North* and *South* be noted in any *Loadſtone*, or the *North* and *South* Pole, and we have this *Magnes* in the *Ship*, where we are in the *Sea*, when we deſire to know the quarters, the *Loadſtone* being hung by a Cord that it may eaſily move it ſelf, will ſo direct its Poles to the quarter of the *North* and *South*, that it will ſhew the quarters demanded. But the *Magnetick Needle* is more eaſy for uſe, whoſe end is touched at the *South* Pole of the *Magnes*. For if that this *Needle* be placed in the middle upon a ſharp perpendicular *pin*, ſo that it can freely turn round, the *Needle* reſting will ſhew by one of its ends the *North* quarter, and by the other the *South*.

From what hath been ſaid, it is eaſy to make a *Nautical Inſtrument*.

Propoſition II.

To make a Mariners Compaſs.

Of the making the *Mariners Compaſs.*

Let the deſcribed Circle on any Paper be divided into 32 Quarters, or *degrees*, and let one of theſe *deg.* being taken for the North Quarter, be aſcribed with theſe appellations. *Viz.* with a peculiar Sign (the *Flower de Luce*) and the found out *points* for the other Quarters, *viz. South, Eaſt, Weſt, North-Eaſt, North-Weſt* (as we have propounded them in the *Diagram* in the XX *Chapter.*) *Mariners* term this *Chart* the *Roſe.*

Then let the *Magnetick Needle* be ſo affixed beneath the *Chart*, that the middle of the *Needle* may be beneath its Center, and the North Pole of the *Needle* may be ſubjected to the Line of the Paper unto which we aſcribe the Northern Quarter. Moreover the Paper being ſo made, with the *Needle* lying under, let it be put upon the *pointed pin*, that it may have a free Circumrotation. So the *Index* of the North, *viz.* the *Lilly*, in any place will ſhew the North Quarter, and the *Indexes* of the other Quarters after the ſame Mode will ſhew the other Quarters of the World. And this is the Fabrick of that *Inſtrument* which the *Seamen* term the *Compaſs*, by the help of which they commit themſelves to the vaſt *Ocean*, and ſeek the remoteſt parts of the World; ſteering the Ship unto that Quarter which the *Loadſtone* directeth unto. The conſtruction of this *Compaſs* is for the places in which the *Magnetical Needle* reſpecteth the Northern Quarter: for the other places ſee the VI. *Propoſition.*

See Prop. 6.

Propoſition III.

There are ſo many Quarters, as there are Points in the Periphery of every Horizon, *that is, they are infinite: now* Seamen *number* 16 *in their ſmall Navigations,* 32 *in thoſe that are Moderate; and* 64 *in the great Voyages through the vaſt Ocean.*

Concerning this *Propoſition* we have ſpoken in the XX. *Chapter*, from whence an accurate explication of it may be drawn. The *Portugals* call theſe Quarters *Rumbs*. The *Dutch, de Cours*, alſo *Een Streeck*, although they attribute theſe terms alſo to the *Loxodromical* part. But when they will denominate the intermedial Quarters, they do that by the diviſion of a ſpace lying between two Quarters.

Propoſition IV.

The Magnetical Needle (*as the Poles of the* Magnes *it ſelf*) *in very few places doth reſpect the very Quarter of the* North *and* South, *but in moſt places declineth a little from that towards the* Eaſt *or* Weſt, *and that in an equal declination, and therefore altogether ſheweth not the true Quarters. That declination is called* Chalybocliſis.

No Declination at one of the Iſles of *Azores.*

Yet at one of the Iſles of the *Azores* called *El Corvo*, there is no *declination*, but the *Needle* ſheweth the exact Northern *point.* The ſame is obſerved in ſome places of the ſame Meridian, but not in all parts of it. In places ſcituated from this *Iſland* towards the *Eaſt*, (even to the *Promontory* of the procurrent of *Africa*, called *Cabo das Angulhas*, not far from the *Promontory* of *Good Hope*) the *Needle* declineth from the *North* towards the *Eaſt* in an equal *declination*, even to the *Iſlands* of *Triſtan de Cunha*, and the *declination* augmenteth a part more remote by 70 *degrees*, ſo that it is there about 13 *degrees*, then again it decreaſeth to the places adjacent to the *Promontory de Agulhas*, where again there is no *declination.* From that place to-

towards the *Indies* the Declination of the *Needle* beginneth from the North towards the West at *Hamburgh*, the *Chalybocliſis* of 90 *degrees*. At *Amſterdam* at this time about five: for in time paſt it was greater.

Now obſervations teſtifie that this Declination doth not remain the ſame, but changeth in courſe of time. For at *London* in *Anno* 1580 it was obſerved 11 *degrees* 15 *minutes*, but in *Anno* 1622, it was 6 *degrees*, 13 *minutes*; and in *Anno* 1634, it was 4 *degrees*, 6 *minutes*. And the obſervations were performed not only by the new but old *Needles* alſo. At *Paris* in *Anno* 1640 the Declination was obſerved 3 *degrees*, which in *Anno* 1610 was found 8 *degrees*. The ſame was alſo obſerved in other places.

Propoſition V.

To find the Declination of the Magnetick *Needle from the true quarter of the* North *in any place.*

Let the Meridian Line be found from the Heaven, as we have ſhewed by divers ways in the XX. *Chapter*, and the Declination of the *Magnetical Needle* will ſoonbe diſcovered. But the following *Propoſition* will ſhew the more eaſy Method for the uſe of *Seamen*. The finding the Declination of the *Magnetick Needle*, &c.

Propoſition VI.

To explain the terms of Navigation, which are uſed in deſigning of this Declination, and the correction of the Mariners Compaſs, and the Modes which Sailors uſe to find out this Declination in the Sea,

In the compoſition of the *Compaſs* the defect of the Declination is amended or corrected. *viz.* the Declination of the *Needle* being known in the place, for which the Inſtrument is prepared, that *Needle* muſt not be affixed to the Line of the *Chart*, which hath the *Flower de Luce*, and ſhould be the Index of the *North*, but under that Line, which is removed ſo many *degrees* from the Line of the *North* as the Declination of the *Loadſtone* hath been found to have towards the Line of the *Eaſt*, or *Weſt*. For ſo the *Lilly*, and the Line of the *North*, will ſhew the true *North*, although the *Needle* may Decline. The Modes which Sailors uſe to find out the Declination at *Sea*.

But for the uſe of Navigation, becauſe in divers places there is a different Declination, the *Needle* ought to be fitted to the *Chart*, that that may be carried round, the *Needle* remaining immovable, and the Line of that *quarter* may be brought above the *Needle*, which the obſerved Declination ſhall ſhew. For ſo the ſame Inſtrument ſhall ſerve for all places.

Now for the finding out of the Declination of the *Magnetick Needle* from the true Line of the *North*, and *South*, thus many *Mariners* do Act. They obſerve the *quarter* of the *Compaſs* in which the *Sun* doth riſe; and the *quarter* of the *Weſt*, in which the *Sun* ſetteth, for although that then they are in another place, yet they are abſent a ſmall interval from the former in which the Declination is not varied.

If theſe *quarters* of the *Compaſs* are equally diſtant from the *quarter* of the *Compaſs* in the *North*, then it is a ſign that the *Needle* in that place hath no Declination, and ſo there is no need of Correction, but the *Needle* ought to remain under the Line of the *North*: but if the *quarter* of the Eaſtern *Sun* be further diſtant than the *quarter* of the Weſtern *Sun* from the *quarter* of the *North*, then it is a ſign that the *Needle* Declineth in that place from the true Line of the *North*, towardsthe *Weſt*: but laſtly, if the *quarter* of theEaſtern *Sun* be farther diſtant than the Weſtern *Sun* from the Northern *quarter* of the *Chart*, it is a ſign that the *Needle* declineth

towards the East. The quantity of the Declination is thus known: let the *Arches* intercepted between the *Northern quarter* of the *Compass*, and the *East* and *West quarters* of the *Sun*, be noted let the lesser *Arch* be deducted from the greater, the half of the residue is the Declination sought, and so many *degrees* the *North* Line of the *Chart* must be removed from the *Magnetical Needle*.

This Method hath two inconveniencies. 1. The *Sun* seemeth to arise when he is as yet 34 *minutes* beneath the Horizon, from which difference of the apparent and true rising, as also of the setting, an error redoundeth unto the quantity of the Declination, which although it be little in the places near the *Æquator*, yet in places somewhat remote from the *Æquator*, it may ascend unto two *degrees*. 2. The *Sun* oftentimes ariseth covered with Clouds, which are almost perpetual in the *Torrid Zone*.

Mariners use also sometimes another Method which is less subject to errour, *viz.* they observe the quarter of the *Compass*, in which the *Sun* is discovered any time after his rising, and at that time they observe the *Altitude* of the *Sun*. Then after noon they expect, or wait, untill they find the *Sun* to come unto the same *Altitude*; which being found, they observe the quarter of the *Compass* in which the *Sun* was then beheld: from these *quarters* or *Arches* intercepted between them and the *quarter* of the *North*, the Declination of the *Needle* is found, after the same Method that we have spoken of.

Sometimes *Mariners* skilful in *Trigonometry*, or by the help of an universal *Planisphere* use a third, or fourth Method. *Viz.* when that immediately by one observation the Declination of the *Needle* must be enquired, to know the *quarters*. For either they observe the *quarter* of the *Compass* in which the *Sun* riseth or setteth; or they observe the *quarter* in which they found the *Sun* at any observed *Altitude*. Then by a *Trigonometrical Calculation*, or a *Catholick Planisphere*, they find in what *quarter* the *Sun* truly sticketh at this time of the rising, or *Altitude*. The difference of this or that *quarter* observed on the *Compass*, is the very Declination of the *Needle*.

Proposition VII.

To shew those things, which withdraw the Magnetick *Needle from its natural scituation in any place, and therefore are the Causes that it sheweth not the quarters as it ought to do.*

Things which withdraw the *Magnetical Needle* from its natural scituation.

The chief are these. 1. The blunt extremity, or less sharpness of the *pin* on which the *Needle* is fixed. 2. Some matter in the hole that receiveth the *Needle*. 3. If the *Paper* or *Rose* lyeth beyond its *Horizontal* scituation. 4. Some admission of *Air*. 5. The vicinity of Iron: these hindrances of the true shewing must be avoided.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIX.

Of the Hiſtiodrome *or Line of the courſe of a Ship.*

THis is the moſt difficult part of all *Geography*, of which ſome Authors have written ſo obſcurely, and very many ſo falſely, that the *Readers* could gain nothing from their *writings* but a confuſed imagination, and never underſtand the matter it ſelf. But we will endeavour as much as is poſſible to give a clear and diſtinct explication, and there is required in the *Reader* an attentive conſideration.

The Line of the courſe of a Ship is the moſt difficult part of Geography.

Propoſition I.

If that any two places be ſcituated in one Meridian, or if that another place be ſcituated from ſome place towards the quarter of the North, *or* South, *that ſame place ſhall be ſcituated towards the ſame quarter of the* North, *or* South, *from all thoſe places or points, which are interpoſed between thoſe two places firſt aſſumed. One of the two places lying in the ſame Meridian, from another, and from all intermedial points, is ſcituated towards the ſame quarter of the* North, *or* South.

Of the ſcituation of two places in one Meridian.

The truth of the *Propoſition* is manifeſt if that it be rightly conceived. By places intercepted between two *points* or places, are underſtood all *points*, which are the intercepted *Arch* of the great Circle drawn through the two *points* firſt aſſumed; or the *points* of that *Arch* which ſheweth the ſhorteſt diſtance. Let that place at which the ſcituation of the other place is expended, be termed the firſt; and that other whoſe ſcituation is expended, be termed the ſecond. And for the more eaſy underſtanding, the firſt place is ſo to be conceived, that it may be in the ſame in the middle of the whole Earth, or in the middle of the circumjacent Regions, and by reaſon that it is ſcituated in the *Brazen Meridian* of the Globe, infinite *Verticals* are drawn through it by the circumjacent places to the *Horizon*, and ſo the ſcituation of all the reſt of the places is expended at it, or the diſtance from the Meridian of it, or of its *Angles* which they make *vertical* with the Meridian.

The Cauſe of the *Propoſition* is, becauſe that the *Angle* which the Meridian of the firſt place maketh with the *vertical* of the firſt place drawn through that ſecond place, denoteth the ſcituation of the ſecond to the firſt, or to the *quarter*. Now if we conceive all the *points* interpoſed between the two places aſſumed of one Meridian (for theſe are they of which the one towards the other lyeth towards the *quarter* of the *North*, or *South*) it is manifeſt, that the Meridian of every one of them is the ſame with the *vertical*, which is drawn through every one from or through either place aſſumed, that is, that there is no *Angle* between the Meridians and *verticals*. Wherefore the place aſſumed is ſcituated at every interpoſed *point* towards the *quarter* of the *North* and *South*.

Propoſition II.

If that any two places be aſſumed in the Æquator, *unto one of which, or the firſt, the ſcituation of the other or ſecond be to be examined, the ſecond ſcituated from the firſt in the chief quarter ſhall be the* Eaſt, *or* Weſt, *and the ſecond ſhall be ſcituated in the ſame Cardinal quarter, to all the places interpoſed: or, one place of two lying in the ſame* Æquator *from another, and from all intermedial points, is ſcituated to the ſame quarter of the* Eaſt *or* Weſt.

For the more eaſy underſtanding of this, let any place in the *Æquator* be taken, and ſo placed that the Wooden Horizon may become the Horizon of it, that

that is, that the Poles of the Earth may be in the Horizon it ſelf. Then let the ſecond place in the *Æquator* be taken, whoſe ſcituation or quarter we conſider at the firſt place. It is manifeſt that it is the chief quarter of the *Eaſt*, or *Weſt*. For the *Æquator* is *Vertical* to it, which is drawn from the firſt place through the ſecond perpendicular to the Horizon, and cutteth the Meridian Line at right *Angles*. The ſame is alſo true concerning all the interjected *points*, which if that they be brought to the *Braſs Meridian*, the Wooden Horizon ſhall be their Horizon, and the *Æquator* ſhall be the Prime *Vertical* of them, which cutteth the Meridian Line at right *Angles*, and paſſeth through the ſecond place. Therefore this ſecond place ſhall be ſcituated to all thoſe interjected *points* in one and the ſame *Cardinal* quarter of the *Eaſt*, or *Weſt*.

Propoſition III.

If that the ſecond place with the firſt be not ſcituated in one and the ſame Meridian, and both of them be not in the Æquator ; *the ſecond place ſhall not be ſcituated to the firſt, and to all interpoſed points in one and the ſame quarter, but in divers quarters at divers points.*

The knowledge of the Original of Lines which a Ship maketh, dependeth on this *Propoſition*.

From this *Propoſition* dependeth the knowledge of the Original of Lines which the Ship maketh, therefore the *Reader* muſt endeavour well to underſtand it.

Let any two places be taken in the Globe, which neither of them are in the *Æquator*, nor in one Meridian (for in theſe two kinds of ſcituation the quarter of the ſecond place is not varied at the intermedial places) for *Example*, Let *Amſterdam* be taken for the firſt place from whence the *Voyage* is to be begun, and *Fernambuck* in *Braſilia* for the ſecond, or unto which the *Voyage* is appointed. Let *Amſterdam* therefore be brought to the *Braſs* Meridian ; and let the Pole be Elevated for the *Latitude* of the ſame, (for ſo the Wooden Horizon repreſenteth the Horizon of the place), let the *Quadrant* be affixed to the *Vertex*, and let it be applyed to *Fernambuck*, it will ſhew the quarter in the Horizon in which *Fernambuck* lyeth from *Amſterdam*. And the *Arch* interjected between theſe two places exhibiteth on the Globe the intermedial *points*. It muſt therefore be ſhewed, that the quarters in which *Fernambuck* lyeth from every one of theſe *points*, are not the ſame, but all divers, or that from every one of thoſe intermedial places *Fernambuck* doth not lie towards one and the ſame quarter.

For the underſtanding of this we muſt repeat from the preceding Doctrine that the *Angle*, with the Meridian of this aſſumed place, maketh with the *Vertical* paſſing through the other place, ſheweth the quarter of another place from ſome one place aſſumed ; or the *Arch* of the Horizon intercepted between the Meridian and this *Vertical*, as the *Angle* ſheweth the quarter of *Fernambuck* from *Amſterdam*, which the *Quadrant* with the *Braſs* Meridian maketh (which is of *Amſterdam* it ſelf).

Therefore to prove the truth of this *Propoſition*, let what *points* you pleaſe be taken between *Amſterdam* and *Fernambuck* in the *Arch* ſubject to the *Quadrant*, and let the Meridians paſſing through by them be conceived. It is beſt to take thoſe *points*, through which on the Globe the Meridians paſs, (or the Circles of *Longitude*) becauſe therefore the *Quadrant* paſſeth through every one of theſe places, and *Fernambuck* it ſelf, it will repreſent the *Vertical* of every place, in which *Fernambuck* lyeth from them. Therefore the *Angles* which it maketh with the Meridians of each place, are the *Angles* of Poſition, and ſhew the quarters in which, or towards which *Fernambuck* lyeth from every intermedial place. Now theſe *Angles* are unequal, and of a different *Magnitude*, therefore the quarters alſo towards which *Fernambuck* lyeth from thoſe places are divers. Now that theſe *Angles* are unequal is manifeſt from the very ſight, or more evident if that by any interval of the *Compaſs* you draw an *Arch* from each *point*, and meaſure theſe *Arches* intercepted between each *Meridian* and the *Vertical* : or if that we have ready

by

by it ſelf a Crooked portion, which may be fitted to the Superficies of the Globe; or if that the places themſelves be brought to the *Brazen* Meridian, and the Pole be Elevated for their *Latitude*; let the *Quadrant* be applyed to the *Vertex*, and to *Fernambuck*, and in that ſcituation let the *degrees* of the *Arch* of the Horizon be reckoned.

Corollary. Therefore the *ſtreight lined* and *Sea Maps* are very defective, which do ſo repreſent the places, that if that any two places be taken, at one of which the ſcituation or quarter of the other be examined, this other doth ſeem to be in one and the ſame quarter from the intermedial places, which yet is falſe. The cauſe of the fault is, that they exhibit the Meridians Parallels, which yet do meet in the Poles: but *Seamen* regard not this fault, ſo that they do but relate the Courſe or quarter which they ought to have obſerved in Sailing from one place to another.

Streight lined and Sea Maps are defective.

Propoſition. IV.

If a Voyage be to be made, or that a Ship be to Sail from one place to another (which two places are not in one *Meridian*, or both of them in the *Æquator*) *by a moſt ſhort cut, or by this means, that it may never recede from the interpoſed Arch of the Vertical, in ſuch a Voyage the quarter is changed every moment, or the quarter becometh another and another, into which the Voyage is to be taken, or the Ship is to be Sailed.*

This *Propoſition* is manifeſt from the foregoing. For let the Voyage be taken from *Amſterdam* to *Fernambuck* by the neareſt way, that is, through the *Arch* of the *Quadrant* affixed at *Amſterdam*, and paſſing through by *Fernambuck*. Becauſe therefore every where in the whole Voyage, or in every *point* the Voyage is directed towards *Fernambuck*, and it is ſhewed in the precedent *Propoſition*, that the quarters are divers, towards which from thoſe middle *points Fernambuck* lyeth, therefore it is manifeſt, that the quarter becometh another and another in every moment, and in each *point*, into which the Ship is to Sail, or to be Sailed, that it may reſpect *Fernambuck*.

See Prop. 3.

But if that the places be ſcituated in one Meridian, or if that both be in the *Æquator*, the Caſe is otherwiſe. For in them the ſame quarter of the Voyage of the *North* or *South* remaineth: in theſe the Cardinal quarter of the *Eaſt* or *Weſt*.

Propoſition V.

A Voyage cannot be ſo undertaken, or a Ship ſo directed, that it may tend in each moment to other, and other quarters, but for ſome time at the leaſt whilſt it is moved, it tendeth to one and the ſame quarter in appearance. Therefore whilſt we are to Sail from one place to another, ſuch a way, or line of a way is moſt convenient, whoſe every two near points are ſcituated in one and the ſame quarter in ſhew, although that this way be not the ſhorteſt.

A Ship cannot tend from one quarter to another in a moment of time, but whilſt that it is moved, for ſome time at the leaſt it tendeth to it. Moreover it can by no means be done, that the *Seamen* ſhould know the quarters, unto which the Ship ſhould be Sailed, if that another quarter were ſo often to be aſſumed.

A Ship in a moment cannot move from one quarter to another.

Therefore it is evident, that that paſſage between two places is moſt commodious for Navigation, whoſe every two vicine *points* are ſcituated in one and the ſame quarter, ſo that the Ship may be continually directed unto one quarter, and to come by ſuch a direction to the place appointed. This being ſuppoſed, let us enquire, what way is thence for the Motion of the Ship. Which way indeed, if that the places be ſcituated in one Meridian, ſhall be part of the Meri-

Meridian it ſelf: if in the *Æquator*, that way ſhall be a portion of the *Æquator* it ſelf; if in one Parallel, it ſhall be a part of this Parallel; if in any other *Circle* beſides theſe, that way ſhall be another Line, not that *Circle*, as we ſhall ſhew in the following *Propoſitions*.

Propoſition VI.

If that a Voyage be appointed, or that a Ship be directed to the North *or* South *quarter*, (that is, if that the place from whence, and the place unto which, be in one *Meridian*), *the line of the Motion of the Ship it ſelf ſhall be a part of the Meridian.*

See Prop. 1. of this Chap.

It is proved from the firſt *Propoſition* of this *Chapter*. For the place required at all the intermedial places, that is at the *points* of the *Arch* of the *Meridian* is ſcituated in one and the ſame *quarter* of the *North* and *South*, as is there ſaid. And by the preceeding *Propoſition* ſuch a way is commodious for *Navigation* from place to place, whoſe every two vicine *points* are ſcituated in one and the ſame quarter. Wherefore ſeeing that the *Arch* of the *Meridian* is ſuch a *way*, that ſhall be the *way* or *line* of the Motion of the *Ship*, *viz.* which the *Ship* by its Motion deſcribeth, whilſt that it is continually directed or ſteered to the *North* or *South*.

Propoſition VII.

If that a Voyage be appointed from any place ſcituated in the Æquator *towards the* Eaſt, *or* Weſt *quarter, the line of the Motion is a portion of the* Æquator *it ſelf.*

See Chap. 2.

We have ſhewed in the Second *Propoſition*, that if two places be taken in the *Æquator*, the firſt, from whence, the ſecond unto which the *Voyage* is appointed, that the ſecond is ſcituated in one and the ſame *Eaſt* and *Weſt quarter* from all the interpoſed *points*, that is, from the *points* of the *Arch* of the *Æquator* it ſelf. Becauſe therefore the *Ship* is continually directed unto theſe *quarters*, the *Arch* of the *Æquator* interpoſed between theſe two places ſhall be the *way* of the Motion of the *Ship*. And becauſe that we ſuppoſed in the V. *Propoſition*, that ſuch a *way* between two places is to be choſen, and is commodious for *Navigation*, *viz.* whoſe every two vicine *points* are ſcituated in one and the ſame *quarter*, ſuch a portion of the *Æquator* ſhall be choſen for the *way* of the *Ship*.

Propoſition VIII.

If that a Voyage be undertaken from any place ſcituated without the Æquator, *towards the* Eaſt *or* Weſt *quarter, ſo that the Ship continually may be directed to either of theſe quarters, the circumference of the Vertical Circle ſhall not be the line of the Motion of the Ship, but the Parallel of the* Æquator, viz. *of the Circle of the Latitude of the place, from which the Voyage is appointed.*

For becauſe that a *Ship*, whilſt it tendeth from one *Meridian* to another, is ſuppoſed to have reſpect to the ſame *quarter*, it will not remain in the *Vertical*, but preſently into another *point* of the vicine *Meridian*, *viz.* which is a *point* of the *Parallel* of the *Æquator*, or of the *Circle* of the *Latitude* of the place whence the departure was made. For every *point* of this *Circle* is ſuch, that the *Tangent lines* of this *Circle* being brought unto them may reſpect the *quarter* of the *Eaſt* and *Weſt* of each of theſe *points*. Furthermore the *Keel* of the *Ship*, becauſe that it is continually ſuppoſed to be directed towards theſe *quarters*, always ſhall touch this Parallel in any *point*. Or by reaſon that any two *points* of this Parallel are ſuch, that one is ſcituated from the other towards

one

one and the same *quarter* of the *East*, and *West*, and the Ship is supposed continually to be directed unto this *quarter*, neither is there any other Line on the Globe, whose *points* are so directed; therefore it followeth, that the way of the Motion of the Ship is this Parallel of the *Latitude* of the place.

Corollary. From the Three preceeding *Propositions* we collect, that if a Voyage be undertaken from any place, or that the Ship be continually directed towards any *Cardinal point*, that the way of the Ship is Circular. The way of a Ship is circular.

Proposition IX.

If that a Voyage be appointed from one place to another scituated in the same Parallel, or Circle of Latitude, *the way of the Ship shall be a portion of that Parallel, although this be not the shortest way.*

For that *line* is chosen for the *Navigation* of the Ship, by which we arrive at the place appointed, by directing the Ship continually unto one and the same *quarter*. And any two of the *points* of the Parallel of the Circle are such. Whererefore the portion of the Parallel shall be the way of the Motion of the Ship.

Corollary. There is therefore a threefold scituation of places, from one of which to the other, when a Voyage is undertaken, the way of the *Navigation* is the *Periphery* of the Circle. 1. If that both places be in one *Meridian*. 2. If that both be in the *Æquator*. And 3. If that both be in one Parallel or Circle of Latitude. In the two former kinds of scituation the way or *line* of *Navigation* is the same with the distance or shortest *way*: but in the third scituation the *line* of the *Navigation* is divers from the shortest *way*. For this is the *Arch* of the greatest Circle interjected between two places. In any other scituation of places the *way* of the *Navigation* cannot be the *Periphery* of the Circle, as we shall shew in the following *Proposition*. A threefold scituation of places.

Proposition X.

If that a Voyage be undertaken from any place, towards any quarter not Cardinal, so that the Ship may be continually directed to that quarter, the Motion of the Ship is not Circular, but a crooked line, and incompassing the Earth with infinit bendings and windings.

Let us conceive a Ship to Sail from some place, when she hath arrived to the vicine *Meridian point*, it is directed towards the *point* of the following, or neareſt *Meridian*, which is scituated in the same *quarter* unto the first *point*, in which this is first to the first place, and so moreover in the following *Meridians*. Now these *points* of all the *Meridians* do not make the *Periphery* of the Circle, but a solid crooked *Helicoides*. A distinct explication of this matter is more easily shewed on the Globe, than by many words.

Loxodromy, is a way or *line* of Motion which the Ship maketh whilst it moveth from one place continually towards one *quarter* not *Cardinal*. A definition of the word *Loxodromy*.

This is the *Nominal definition*: but the *Essential definition* of this *line*, that is the knowledge of the Nature and Properties of it, is most difficult, for neither is it an *Helix* as many think, neither doth it depend on any property of the *Loadstone*, who say that it hath its existency thence, because the Ship followeth the conduct of the *Loadstone*, neither is it composed of the *minute particles* of many *Peripheries*, as *Nonnius* saith (which is manifest from the very Parallel Circles, which are made from the same Motion of the Ship as of *Loxodromy*) neither is the *Explication* of *Snellius* plain, who saith that *Loxodromy* is an *Helicoidical line* in the Superficies of the *Terrestrial* Globe, which a right *line* touching about every where with the *Meridians* in total by contact it comprehendeth those *points* equal *Angles* to those drawn out, for

Snellius doth not explain how such a *Tangent* ought to be conceived, or how to be drawn: and to speak properly, Loxdromy hath not *right lines Tangent*, because it is a *solid line* when that *Tangents* are drawn to plain *lines* to a curvature: for in *solid lines* infinite *Tangents* may be brought to any *points*. Moreover that definition may agree also to other draughts of *lines* when unto any *point* of such a *Meridian*, such a *Tangent*, and Crooked *line* may be conceived to be drawn from the vicine *Meridian*.

Also our *definition* may be thus proposed: Loxodromy *is a* crooked line *encompassing the* Earth *with many windings, every* point *of which lyeth from all its other* points *in appearance in one and the same* quarter; *or in which if that two* points *be taken, one* point *lyeth from another, and all the intermedial* points *in one* quarter; *or from any* point *of which if that* circular Arches *be drawn unto all the rest of the* points, *these* Arches *make equal* Angles *with the* Meridian, *which passeth through all these several* points. *This* definition *is essential.*

Proposition XI.

If that a Voyage be undertaken from one place to another, which is not scituated with the former in the same Meridian, or Æquator, nor Parallel, and in the whole Voyage the Ship be directed unto that quarter, in which the place designed is scituated from the place of the departure, you shall never by this Voyage come to the place designed, but continually the Ship shall be removed more and more from it.

A notable property in Navigation.

This notable property of *Navigation* seemed Miraculous to *Mariners* when that it was first observed, which happened in the time of *Petrus Nonnius* the *Portuguez Mathematician*, who wrote two Books of this Subject; after him many *Mathematicians* laboured in the explication of this *matter*, or Crooked *line*: and lastly, *Mariners* found it necessary for the *Nautick* use, and thence *Tables* were made.

The cause thereof.

But the Cause of this *Phænomenon* is, that the Ship being continually directed unto that *quarter* in which the second place from the first is scituated, it remaineth not in the *Periphery* intercepted between these places, but whilst that it cometh to one *point*, because here is a new Horizon, and another *quarter* the extension of the assumed Course, and this is continually done in the following *points*, thence existeth the Crooked *Helicoidical line*, in which whilst that the Ship is moved in some places, it is more and more removed from the determined place, and else where it approacheth more near.

Proposition XII.

1. *When a Voyage is to be undertaken from one place towards another scituated in the same Meridian, or towards the quarter of the* North *or* South, *the Ship is continually to be directed to this quarter of the* North *or* South, *or a Meridian is to be chosen for the way of the Ship, and it will arrive at the other place.*

Observations about Voyages.

2. When a *Voyage* is to be undertaken from one place to another, and both are in the *Æquator*, the Ship shall be guided into that *quarter*, in which the other place lyeth from the first, that is to the *quarter* of the *East* or *West*, or the *line* of the *Æquator* is to be taken for the *way* of the Ship.

3. When a *Voyage* is to be undertaken from one place to another, and that they are both scituated in one Parallel of the *Æquator*, the Ship is not to be guided unto that *quarter*, in which this other place from the first lyeth, or which is extended from the first to the other, for the Ship would never arrive at the other place, but would go with infinite windings about the Earth towards the Poles: but the Course must be made into the *quarter* of the *East* or *West*, for whilst that the Ship tendeth unto that, it describeth by its Motion the Parallels of the *Æquator*, and so arriveth at the other place.

4. When

4. When a *Voyage* is to be made from one place to another which are neither in one *Meridian*, neither both in the *Æquator*, nor in one Parallel of the *Æquator*, the *Ship* muſt not be guided unto that *quarter*, in which the other place from the firſt lyeth, for it would never arrive to the other place, but the Motion of the *Ship* would deſcribe the *Loxodrome*, which would not paſs through another place: but the courſe muſt be directed unto that *quarter*, into which whilſt that the *Ship* moveth, it deſcribeth the *Loxodrome* which paſſeth through another place into that *quarter*, whoſe *Angle* with the *Meridian* is equal to the inclination of the *Loxodrome*, which paſſeth through thoſe two places.

All theſe follow from the preceeding *Propoſitions*.

Propoſition XIII.

Infinite Loxodromes *may proceed, or be conceived from any place of the Earth as there are infinite Verticals, but yet there are only* 28 *reckoned about every place*, viz. 7 *in the Quadrant between the Meridian of the place, and the Parallel of the place, ſo that they divide that right Angle into* 8 *equal parts, and the* 2 *vicine are diſtant an equal Angle. Yet the Parallel it ſelf is termed an eighth* Loxodrome.

Of the number of *Loxodromes*.

But they are called by the ſame Names by which the Winds, or *quarters* are named. On the Globe they are beheld to proceed and turn round about the *Earth* from the *Center* of the *Compaſſes*, or alſo from other *points* of the *Meridian*.

But in *Nautick* uſe the intermedial *Loxodromes* are denominated by a diſtance from the adjacent *Loxodromes*, for *Example*, in a third part, a fourth part more *North*, more *Eaſt*.

Propoſition XIV.

A Loxodrome *intercepted between two places is almoſt, or according to the ſenſe, equal to the* Hypotenuſa *of a right lined plain Triangle, whoſe one* Cathetus *is of an equal diſtance of* Latitude *of thoſe two places, the other* Cathetus *is of an equal difference of* Longitude *of the places taken in the Parallel, which is in the middle between the Parallel of thoſe two places.*

What *Triangles* are termed *Loxodromes*.

Such *Triangles* are termed *Loxodromical*. But places very near are to be taken for an accurate *Calculation*, that a ſmall portion may be interpoſed, *viz.* places whoſe difference of *Latitude* is only of one ſcruple.

Propoſition XV.

The parts of the Loxodrome *intercepted between Parallels diſtant by an equal interval are equal.*

Therefore many ſmall *Loxodromical Triangles*, are conceived in each *Loxodrome*, of which if that the *Loxodrome* of one be ſupputed, you have the quantity of the *Loxodrome* from one place into another, whoſe *Latitude* is known.

Propoſition XVI.

The Latitude *and difference of* Longitude *of two places being given, to find out the* Loxodrome, *by which you may Sail from one place to another. Or two places being given on the Globe, or in a Map, to find out the quarter, unto which the Ship is to Sail, or to be brought from one place to the other.*

The chief Problem in the Art of Navigation, to which all the reſt are referred.

This is the chief, or rather the only *Problem* of the whole *Art* of *Navigation*, unto which all the reſt are referred. If that there be no difference of *Latitude*, the *Loxodrome* ſhall not be the way of the *Ship*, but the Para-

lel of thoſe places which yet is commonly termed the eighth *Loxodrome*, becauſe after the ſame Mode as the other *Loxodromes*, it is generated by the Motion of the *Ship* which is directed to the *Eaſtern* or *Weſtern* chief *quarter*. If that therefore there be no difference of *Latitude*, they ſay that the eighth *Loxodrome* ought to be taken, and the *Ship* muſt be ſteered to the chief *Oriental* or *Occidental quarter* in the whole *Navigation*. For although it be not directed to the appointed place, yet by this falſe direction the *Ship* ſhall be brought to the place.

If that that there be no difference of *Longitude*, the *way* of the *Ship* ſhall not be *Loxodromical*, but a part of the *Meridian* in which both the places lie, and the *quarter* of the *North* or *South*, is taken for the direction of the *Ship*.

But if the places given be of a different *Latitude* and *Longitude*, and that you are minded to work by the Globe, let the given *Latitude* be noted on the *Brazen Meridian*, and if the Parallel of one *Latitude* have in it the *Center* of any *Compaſs*, or from whence the *Loxodromical lines* were drawn, let this be brought on the Globe to the *Meridian* under the noted *degree* of *Latitude*: then let the Globe be turned round, until ſo many *degrees* of the *Æquator* paſs through the *Meridian*, as there are *degrees* in the difference of *Longitude*; and then let it be obſerved whether any point of the *Loxodrome* brought from the *Center* be under the noted *point* of the *Meridian*. That is the *Loxodrome* ſought, and it ſheweth unto what *quarter* the *Ship* is to be directed that it may arrive from the given place unto the place given: if that there be no *point* of the *Loxodrome* under the noted *point* of the *Meridian*, the *Loxodrome* intermedial between thoſe two near to that *point* muſt be taken.

But if that the *Center* of any *Compaſs* be to be found in neither Parallel of the *Latitude* from which the *Loxodromes* were drawn, let ſome *Loxodrome* be choſen, which may appear near to that demanded, and let it be brought to one *point* of the noted *Latitude*, or of the *Meridian*, and let the Globe be turned as before, until that the difference of *Longitude* paſs through the *Meridian*. This being done, if that any *point* of the aſſumed *Loxodrome* be under either noted *point* of the *Meridian*, the taken *Loxodrome* ſhall be that which is demanded. If that ſuch a *point* be not found, another *Loxodrome* muſt be taken, and you muſt do as before, until ſuch an one be found; any *point* of which being found, let it be removed under the other noted *point* of the *Meridian*, or at leaſt no long interval from it, and the *Loxodrome* ſhall be denominated from thoſe nigh it, amongſt which it is to be conceived as the midſt.

Of Sea-Charts. In *Sea Charts* it is performed after this Mode, as the *quarter* of one place is found from another, which Method in Maps of equal *degrees* of *Latitude*, is faulty, but in Maps of unequal *degrees* of *Latitude* it accurately enough diſcovereth the *Loxodrome* or *quarter* unto which the *Ship* is to be Sailed.

Alſo *Mariners* have another Method eaſy enough, in which by the ſolution of a *plain right angled Triangle* the *Loxodrome* of *Navigation* is found: but to that Method they uſe a *Table*, which they call a *Table* of encreaſing *Latitude*, of which we have ſpoken in the the XXXII. *Chapter*.

See Chap. 32.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

Of the chief Problem of the Art of Navigation, viz. of finding out a place in the Maps unto which, the Voyage being performed, we arrive at a certain time, or of finding out the Longitude and Latitude of this place.

Propoſition I.

The quarter cannot be known, unto which the Ship is to be Sailed, that it may come unto the appointed place, except that the place be known in which the Ship was at that time.

WE have ſaid in the former *Chapter* that this is the chief *Problem* of the *Mariners Art* concerning the finding out of the *quarter*, unto which the Ship is to be directed, but that cannot be found, except that the place be known, whence the Ship is to be directed. Therefore the ſolution of the *Problem* for finding out the place is neceſſary.

Propoſition II.

To find the place in the Maps at which the Ship arriveth or toucheth at any time.

The finding the place in Maps, at which the Ship at any time arriveth.

This is that work which the *Dutch* call *Het beſteck in de pas-kaert.* They note with a Pin every day on the Map the place unto which they ſuppoſe the Ship to have touched, that by this means they may diſcover in what place they are, and unto what *quarter* the Ship is to be Sailed. They uſe a threefold Method in this affair, as they ſuppoſe this or that to be more rightly obſerved.

1. The *Rhumbe* being obſerved in which the Ship was directed from the place of the firſt day, or from the place given on the Map, or the *Rhumbe* in which the Ship was moved, and the quantity in the interim of the *Voyage* made, being obſerved: theſe two things being known, the place of the Ship is found thus on the Map: Let the *Rule* or *Compaſs* be taken, and one *Shank* of it be applied to the place of the former day, or from whence the Ship departed, let the other *Shank* be applied to the *vicine line* which repreſenteth the obſerved *quarter* or *courſe:* let the *point* of the *Shank* be noted with Chalk, which is imminent over the place of the departure. Then by the interval of the *Compaſs* let the miles of the performed *Voyage* be taken from the oppoſite Scale, and let one *foot* of the *Compaſs* be put upon the place of the departure, but let the *Rule* be moved on the *line* of the *quarter* until the other *foot* of the *Compaſs* touch the noted *point* of the *Rule.* The place of the Map that is ſubject to that *point* in that ſcituation of the *Rule*, is that demanded, *viz.* in which the Ship then is.

Pilots without a Rule, with two pair of *Compaſſes* perform the Problem.

But if that you determine to find out more accurately the *point* on the Map by *Calculation*, or the place of the Ship it ſelf, the *Problem* ſhall be this: The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of one place being given, and the *quarter* being given in which they Sailed unto the other place, with the *Voyage* performed, to find out the *Latitude* and *Longitude* of the other place. For theſe being found, you may more accurately note the place of the Ship on the Map.

2. The *quarter* being obſerved, in one known place to another unknown, and the *Latitude* of this other, or *Elevation* of this Pole being obſerved, to find the ſcituation of this other place on the Map.

Let

Let one *ſhank* of the *Rule* be applied to the *quarter* obſerved near the place, and let the other *ſhank* be placed on the place known (or whence the *Voyage* is begun) and make there on the *ſhank* a mark with a Chalk. Then let the *ſhank* applied to the *quarter* be moved, until the other noted *point* of the *ſhank* applied to the *quarter* fall in on the Parallel of the obſerved *Latitude*. For the *point* of the falling in, is the place ſought, *viz.* the place of the *Ship*. But if that there be no Parallel of *Latitude* obſerved on the Map, let the *degrees* intercepted between this *Latitude* and the *vicine* Parallel be taken by the interval of the *Compaſs* on the *lateral line*. And let the *Rule* in the *line* of the *quarter*, and one Foot of the *Compaſs* be moved together in this Parallel, until the other Foot of the *Compaſs* and the noted *ſhank* do meet, the *point* of the meeting ſheweth the place of the *Ship*. *Seamen* uſe two pair of *Compaſſes*.

If that you will determine more accurately by the Calculation of the place demanded on the Map or *Earth* it ſelf, the *Problem* is this: The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of one place being given, and the *quarter* in which the *Navigation* is appointed to another place, and the *Latitude* of this place given, to find his *Longitude*: for the *Latitude* and *Longitude* given is the place it ſelf.

3. The quantity of the *Voyage* performed from one known place to another unknown being obſerved, and the *Latitude* of this other being obſerved, to find this other on the Maps.

Let the quantity of the *Voyage* performed be taken by the interval of the *Compaſs* from the oppoſite Scale. Then if a Parallel through the *degree* of *Latitude* be obſerved on the Map, let one Foot of the *Compaſs* be placed on the noted place, the other Foot on this Parallel. This *point* ſhall be the place demanded. But if the Parallel paſs not through the *degree* of *Latitude*, let one *ſhank* of the *Rule* be applied to the *vicine* Parallel; on the other *ſhank* let the *degree* of *Latitude* be noted, and let the *Rule* be moved until the other Foot of the *Compaſs* toucheth the noted *point* of the *Rule*. The place of the Map ſubject to the *point* in this ſituation ſhall be the ſought for place of the *Ship*.

If that a more accurate invention is required by *Calculation*, the *Problem* ſhall be this: The *Latitude* and *Longitude* of one place being given, and the diſtance of the other on the *line* of *Navigation*, and the *Latitude* of this, to find out the *Latitude* of this other. For this being known, when the *Latitude* is obſerved, you have the ſituation of the place it ſelf on the Maps, or *Earth*.

The *4th* or *5th* Method alſo of finding out of this place is alſo given, *viz.* in which the *Longitude* of the other or ſought for place is ſuppoſed to be obſerved, but the *Latitude* is unknown. But becauſe that very ſeldom the *Longitude* can be obſerved on the *Sea*; therefore this Method is omitted as unuſeful. He that deſireth more concerning this Method let him Read *Snellius*, *Stevens*, *Metius*, and others, that have treated at large of it.

See *Snellius*, *Stevens*, and *Metius*.

Propoſition III.

To conjecture unto what quarter the Ship is moved, and in what Rhombe, *although the ſigns be fallacious.*

In the ſolution of the former *Propoſition* for the finding out the place of a *Ship*, thoſe things as noted were taken and obſerved. 1. The *quarter* unto which the *Ship* is moved, and the *Rhombe*, in which. 2. The *way* made. 3. The *Latitude* of the place unto which it hath arrived. Now therefore we muſt ſhew how theſe three may be obſerved on the *Sea*, that they may be uſed for the finding out of the place. For if that theſe be not rightly known, or obſerved, the true place ſhall neither be found or diſcovered. Firſt therefore let us ſee concerning the *quarter* of the courſe of the *Ship* and the *Rhombe*.

The

The *Pilots* know the *quarter* from the *Compaſs*, or *Loadſtone*. For what *quarter*, or *Rhombe* of the *Compaſs* agreeth with the Line of the conceived Longitude of the *Ship*, the ſame is put into the *quarter* of the *Ship* to be moved, and to deſcribe its *Rhombe*. For they ſeldom uſe the *ſigns* taken from the *quarter* of the apparent riſing and ſetting of the *Sun* which they compute. The Pilots know the quarter from the *Compaſs* or *Loadſtone*.

Theſe *ſigns* may be corrupted by divers Cauſes, ſo that they may deceive in ſhewing the *Rhombe* or *quarter*. 1. If that the Declination of the *Magnetick Needle* be uncertain in that place, and therefore the *quarters* of the *Compaſs* do not ſhew the true *quarters*. 2. If that the *Sea* in that place hath a flux to a certain place, for it will carry the *Ship* from the true *Rhombe*, although the *Ship* be directed unto the ſame *quarter*, the fluxes, and refluxes are the frequent cauſe of this error. And in many places of the *Torrid Zone* a general Motion is of force, and in many places a ſtated and fixed Motion from ſtated *winds*. 3. *Winds*, eſpecially *ſtorms* remove the *Ship* from the *Rhombe* of their Voyage, although they ply in the ſame *quarter*. 4. The fluxes of the *Sea* which are carried towards other *quarters*, and carry the *Ship* with it. 5. The *Rudder* or *Helme* cannot be moved by him that ſteereth unto any *quarter* as it ought to be, the *waves* of the *Sea* obſtructing of it. All theſe hinder the *Ship* to be moved in the ſame *Rhombe*, whoſe *quarters* are ſhewed by the *Compaſs*. But how much it is drawn aſide muſt be learned by conjecture from the vehemency of the Flood, and of its *quarter*, and the like: but the Method is very imperfect.

Propoſition IV.

To caſt up the Voyage made upon the Rhombe, *to meaſure it at the given time from the given place.*

Pilots conjecture the ſame. 1. When they obſerve or know by experience what courſe a *Ship* is wont to make with ſuch a Wind. 2. If that they have Sailed in the ſame Meridian or vicine Line with any Wind, and have obſerved the Latitude of the place in the beginning of the Motion, and the Latitude of the place in the following time. For the difference of Latitude turned into *miles* ſheweth the courſe made for ſo long a ſpace of time, and ſuch a Wind. Whence for the time given and ſuch a Wind continuing, the courſe made is collected. 3. With more induſtry they meaſure the courſe performed by a *Boat* and *ſtring*; one end of which is faſtened to the *Boat*, and the other with the Globe is in the *Ship*, for the *Ship* remaining immovable, Sailing is permitted to the *Boat* untill it be removed 10 or 12 *Orgyas* of the ſtring, and the time elapſed between is obſerved. And from this for any time of the performed courſe of the *Ship* is found out. The caſting up the Voyage made upon the *Rhombe*, &c.

The *ſigns* of the performed Sailing of the Ship are corrupted, and rendred uncertain by divers ways; yea are uncertain of themſelves, ſeeing they are mere conjectures. 1. Oftentimes the Ship maketh leſſer or greater way than the conjecture affordeth, *viz.* becauſe in many places of the *Sea* the flux is unto a certain *quarter*, or the *Billows* are rould unto a certain *quarter*. If therefore the Ship be directed into the ſame *quarter*, the way made will be greater than the conjecture maketh it; but if into a contrary, it will be leſſer. 2. Becauſe the Ship is carried by other Cauſes into other *quarters*, and ſo by windings arriveth at another place. 3. The *winds* are variouſly changed. 4. By how much a Ship hath the greater *Altitude*, by ſo much its Motion ſeemeth more ſlow, though it be not ſo.

Propoſition V.

To obſerve the Latitude *of a place unto which a Ship is arrived.*

The *Seamen* obſerve it by the *Sun* in the day time, and by the *Stars* in the night, as we have ſhewed in the XXIII. *Chapter*, they uſe Three *Inſtruments*, the *Aſtrolabe*, the *Radius*, and the *Triangle*. See Chap. 23.

Pro-

Propoſition VI.

From whence it is manifeſt that the Methods uſed by Seamen *to find the places on the Maps unto which they have arrived, are fallacious, becauſe that they can neither be certain of the* Rhombe *or quarter of the way, or of the quantity of the way made, or of the obſerved* Latitude *of the place: yet the obſervation of the* Latitude *of the place unto which they are arrived, becauſe that it is not leſs ſubject to error, eſpecially the Air and* Sea *being tranquillous, may be exempted from this fallacy.*

But from that alone the place it ſelf is not found on the Map or Earth, but a ſecond is required, *viz.* either a diſtance from another place given, or a *Rhombe* by which they Sail from the given place to that, or laſtly, the Longitude of that place from this. We have ſaid that the obſervation of the way made, or diſtance, is uncertain, as alſo that of the *Rhombs*. Therefore they return back to find out the Longitude of the place. For the Latitude and Longitude of the place being known, the place it ſelf is found on the Maps, and determined on the Globe of the Earth.

Whence it is evident that the *Art* of *Navigation* requireth the ſolution of this *Problem* to the making up of its perfection: *viz.* to find out the Longitude of the place where we are at any time, and on any day. The prize is propounded, let him win who can.

A

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE WORLD,

Taken from the

WORKS

Of the Famous

Monſieur SANSON,

Late Geographer to the preſent *French* King.

To which are Added,

About an hundred GEOGRAPHICAL and HYDROGRAPHICAL TABLES, of the Kingdoms, Countreys, and Iſles in the World, with their Chief Cities and Sea-Ports; drawn from the MAPS of the ſaid Monſieur *Sanſon*, and according to the Method of the ſaid Deſcription.

Illuſtrated with MAPS.

The Second Part.

By *RICHARD BLOME.*

Printed in the Year, 1680.

A

GEOGRAPHICAL DESCRIPTION OF THE WORLD,

Taken from the

WORKS

Of the Famous

Monſieur SANSON,

Late Geographer to the preſent French King.

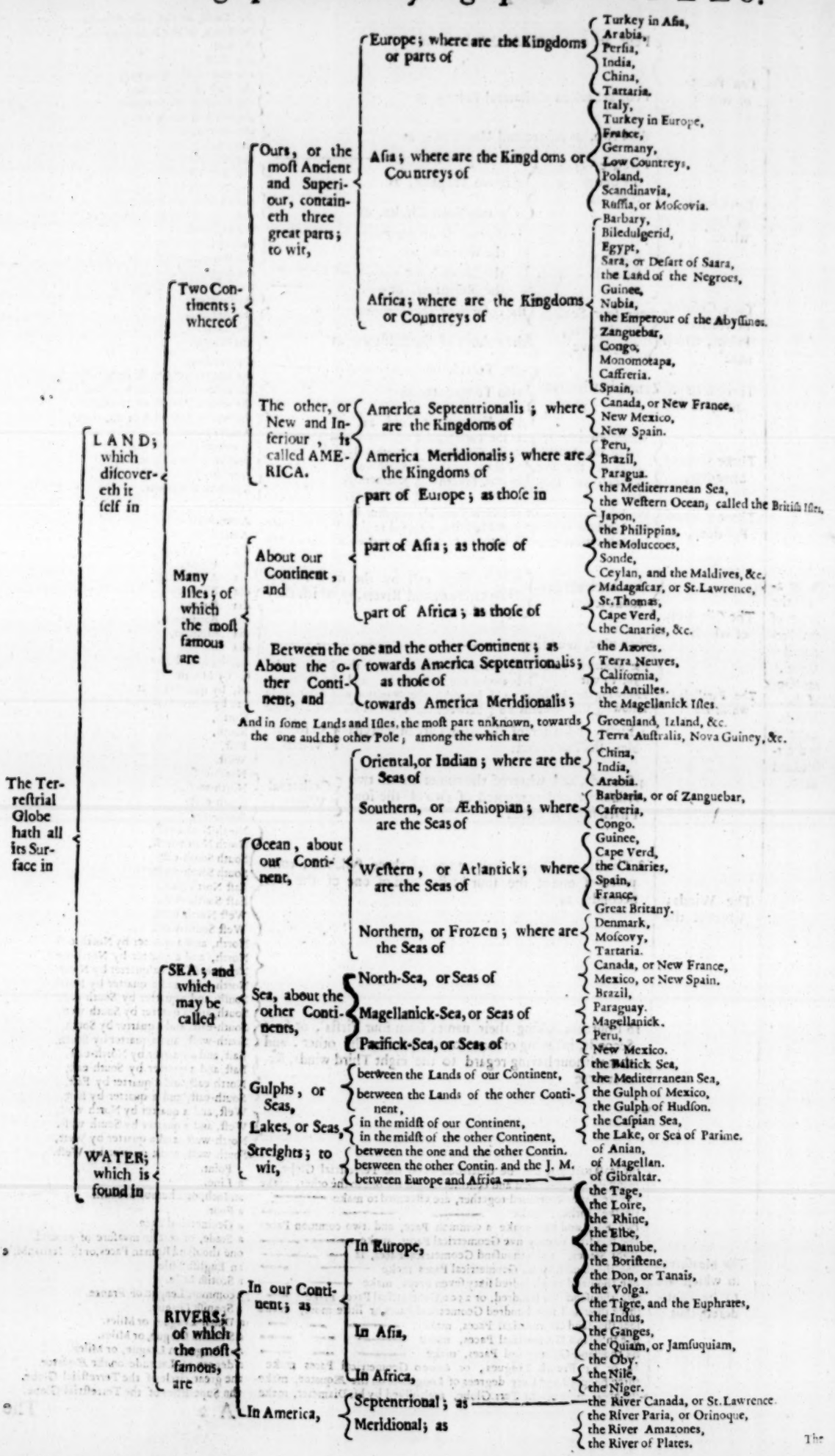
To which are Added,

About an Hundred GEOGRAPHICAL and HYDROGRAPHICAL TABLES, of the Kingdoms, Countries, Iſles in the World, with their chief Cities and Rivers; drawn from the MAPS of the ſaid Monſieur SANSON, and according to the Method of the ſaid Deſcription.

Bibliotheca Lindesiana

Of, or above the Surface of the Terreſtrial Globe, and Maps of the World, ought to be underſtood and noted,

- Ten Points; of which
  - Four are called Cardinal Points, as
    - the North, or the Pole Artick.
    - the South, or the Pole Antartick.
    - the Eaſt.
    - the Weſt.
  - Four are called Collateral Points, as
    - the Eaſt of the Summer,
    - the Eaſt of the Winter,
    - the Weſt of the Summer,
    - the Weſt of the Winter.
  - And two, as Above and Under us; as
    - the Zenith,
    - the Nadir.
- Ten Circles, or Lines, of which
  - Five are Parallels, the one to the other, as
    - the Æquinoctial, or
    - the two Tropicks, as
    - The two Polar Circles, as
    - the Æquator.
    - the Tropick of Cancer,
    - the Tropick of Capricorn.
    - the circle of the Pole Artick.
    - the circle of the Pole Antartick.
  - Five others are different the one from the others, as
    - in the middle of the Zodiack, as
    - the Horizon, as
    - the Parallels, or
    - the Meridians, or
    - the Ecliptick.
    - the Horizon rational,
    - the Horizon ſenſible, or viſible.
    - the degrees of Latitude.
    - the degrees of Longitude.
- Two Colures, in which are 4 Points, which note our four Seaſons of the year, to wit, above
  - the colures of the Æquinoxes, as
    - the Spring,
    - the Autumn.
  - the colures of the Solſtices, as
    - the Summer,
    - the Winter.
- Three ſorts of Zones, in which are five, to wit
  - one Torrid, or
    - the Parching.
  - two Temperate, as
    - the temperate Artick, or Northernly,
    - the temperate Antartick, or Southernly.
  - two Frozen, or Cold, as
    - the frozen Artick, or Northernly.
    - the frozen Antartick or Southernly.
- Three ſorts of Shadows, which diverſly receive the Inhabitants of the five Zones, for they are
  - in the Torrid Zone
    - Amphiſciens.
  - in the Temperate Zones
    - Northernly,
      - Northern Heteroſciens,
    - Southernly,
      - Southern Heteroſciens.
  - in the Frozen Zones
    - Northernly,
      - Northern Periſciens,
    - Southernly,
      - Southern Periſciens.
- Three ſorts of Poſitions, as
  - the Inhabitants about the ſame Parallel, oppoſite in Meridian, are
    - Periœciens.
  - the Inhabitants about one Meridian, oppoſed in their Parallels, are
    - Antœciens.
  - the Inhabitants oppoſed both in Meridians, and in Parallels, are
    - Antipodes.
- The Climates; of which
  - the Ancients firſt made ſeven which they call by the moſt famous Places, Seas, and Rivers, by which they paſſed; as
    - dia (that is, through) Meroes,
    - dia Sienes,
    - dia Alexandrias,
    - dia Rhodou,
    - dia Pontou,
    - dia Boriſthenou,
  - then nine, in adding
    - dia Ripheon,
    - dia Danids.
- The Parallels; which are
  - the Moderns made 30, to wit
    - between the Æquator and the Polar circle
      - 24, by half hours,
    - between the Polar circle, and the Pole
      - 6, by Months.
  - following the Ancients 14,
    - between the Æquator and Polar circle
      - 48, by quarters of hours.
  - following the Moderns 60
    - between the Polar circle and the Pole
      - 12, by fourteen days.
- The Winds; whereof the
  - 4 Firſts, and whereof the names are Monoſyllables, ſhall be called Cardinal Winds, as
    - North,
    - South,
    - Eaſt,
    - Weſt.
  - 4 Seconds, and whereof the names are of two ſyllables, and compoſed of two of the four Firſts, ſhall be called Collateral Winds, as
    - North-eaſt,
    - North-weſt,
    - South-eaſt,
    - South-weſt.
  - 8 Thirds; and have their names of three ſyllables, compoſed of one of the four Firſts, and of one of the four Seconds, as
    - North North-eaſt,
    - North North-weſt,
    - South South-eaſt,
    - South South-weſt,
    - Eaſt North-eaſt,
    - Eaſt South-weſt,
    - Weſt North-weſt,
    - Weſt South-weſt.
  - 16 Fourths; taking their names from four Firſts, or four Seconds, in ſaying of one fourth part by the other, and that without having regard to the eight Third winds, &c. as it were
    - North, and a quarter by North-eaſt,
    - North, and a quarter by North-weſt,
    - North-eaſt, and a quarter by North,
    - North-weſt, and a quarter by North.
    - South, and a quarter by South-eaſt.
    - South, and a quarter by South-weſt.
    - South-eaſt, and a quarter by South,
    - South-weſt, and a quarter by South.
    - Eaſt, and a quarter by North-eaſt,
    - Eaſt, and a quarter by South-eaſt,
    - North-eaſt, and a quarter by Eaſt,
    - South-eaſt, and a quarter by Eaſt.
    - Weſt, and a quarter by North-weſt,
    - Weſt, and a quarter by South weſt.
    - North-weſt, and a quarter by Weſt,
    - South-weſt, and a quarter by Weſt.
- The Meaſures; in which are to be conſidered, that
  - the leaſt part that can be deſcribed upon the Terreſtrial Globe, is a Point.
  - many Points, deſcribed and continued right the one to the other, make a Line.
  - twelve Lines continued together, are eſteemed to make an Inch, or Thumbs breadth.
  - twelve Inches, make a Foot.
  - two Foot and half make a common Pace, and two common Paces a Geometrical Pace.
  - one hundred twenty five Geometrical Paces, make a Stade, or certain meaſure of ground.
  - eight Stades, or one thouſand Geometrical Paces, is one thouſand Roman Paces, or the Italian Mile
  - one thouſand fifty ſix Geometrical Paces make an Engliſh Mile.
  - one thouſand two hundred ſixty ſeven Paces make a Scotiſh Mile.
  - two thouſand four hundred, or 2500 Geometrical Paces make a common League of France.
  - three thouſand four hundred Geometrical Paces, or little more, make a Spaniſh League.
  - four thouſand Geometrical Paces, make a Dutch League, or Miles.
  - five thouſand Geometrical Paces, make a Swediſh League, or Miles.
  - ſix thouſand Geometrical Paces, make an Hungarian League, or Miles.
  - 24 or 25 French Leagues, or 60000 Geometrical Paces make a degree of Latitude on the Æquator.
  - three hundred and ſixty degrees of Longitude on the Æquator, make the great circle of the Terreſtrial Globe.
  - the great circle of the Terr. Globe, multiplyed by his Diameter, make the Superficies of the Terreſtrial Globe.


The Terrestrial Globe hath all its Surface in
LAND; which discovereth it self in
Two Continents; whereof
Ours, or the most Ancient and Superiour, containeth three great parts; to wit,
Europe; where are the Kingdoms or parts of
Turkey in Asia,
Arabia,
Persia,
India,
China,
Tartaria.
Asia; where are the Kingdoms or Countreys of
Italy,
Turkey in Europe,
France,
Germany,
Low Countreys,
Poland,
Scandinavia,
Russia, or Moscovia.
Africa; where are the Kingdoms or Countreys of
Barbary,
Biledulgerid,
Egypt,
Sara, or Desart of Saara,
the Land of the Negroes,
Guinee,
Nubia,
the Emperour of the Abyssines.
Zanguebar,
Congo,
Monomotapa,
Caffreria.
Spain,
The other, or New and Inferiour, is called AMERICA.
America Septentrionalis; where are the Kingdoms of
Canada, or New France,
New Mexico,
New Spain.
America Meridionalis; where are the Kingdoms of
Peru,
Brazil,
Paragua.
Many Isles; of which the most famous are
About our Continent, and
part of Europe; as those in
the Mediterranean Sea,
the Western Ocean, called the British Isles.
part of Asia; as those of
Japon,
the Philippins,
the Moluccoes,
Sonde,
Ceylan, and the Maldives, &c.
part of Africa; as those of
Madagascar, or St. Lawrence,
St. Thomas,
Cape Verd,
the Canaries, &c.
About the other Continent, and
Between the one and the other Continent; as
the Azores.
towards America Septentrionalis; as those of
Terra Neuves,
California,
the Antilles.
towards America Meridionalis;
the Magellanick Isles.
And in some Lands and Isles, the most part unknown, towards the one and the other Pole, among the which are
Groenland, Izland, &c.
Terra Australis, Nova Guiney, &c.
SEA; and which may be called
Ocean, about our Continent,
Oriental, or Indian; where are the Seas of
China,
India,
Arabia.
Southern, or Æthiopian; where are the Seas of
Barbaria, or of Zanguebar,
Cafreria,
Congo.
Western, or Atlantick; where are the Seas of
Guinee,
Cape Verd,
the Canaries,
Spain,
France,
Great Britany.
Northern, or Frozen; where are the Seas of
Denmark,
Moscovy,
Tartaria.
Sea, about the other Continents,
North-Sea, or Seas of
Canada, or New France,
Mexico, or New Spain.
Magellanick-Sea, or Seas of
Brazil,
Paraguay.
Pacifick-Sea, or Seas of
Magellanick.
Peru,
New Mexico.
WATER; which is found in
Gulphs, or Seas,
between the Lands of our Continent,
the Baltick Sea,
the Mediterranean Sea,
between the Lands of the other Continent,
the Gulph of Mexico,
the Gulph of Hudson.
Lakes, or Seas,
in the midst of our Continent,
the Caspian Sea,
in the midst of the other Continent,
the Lake, or Sea of Parime.
Streights; to wit,
between the one and the other Contin.
of Anian,
between the other Contin. and the J. M.
of Magellan.
between Europe and Africa
of Gibraltar.
RIVERS; of which the most famous, are
In our Continent; as
In Europe,
the Tage,
the Loire,
the Rhine,
the Elbe,
the Danube,
the Boristene,
the Don, or Tanais,
the Volga.
In Asia,
the Tigre, and the Euphrates,
the Indus,
the Ganges,
the Quiam, or Jamsuquiam,
the Oby.
In Africa,
the Nile,
the Niger.
In America,
Septentrional; as
the River Canada, or St. Lawrence.
Meridional; as
the River Paria, or Orinoque,
the River Amazones,
the River of Plates.

The

The Water in the ſurface of the Terreſtrial Globe, is for the moſt part in

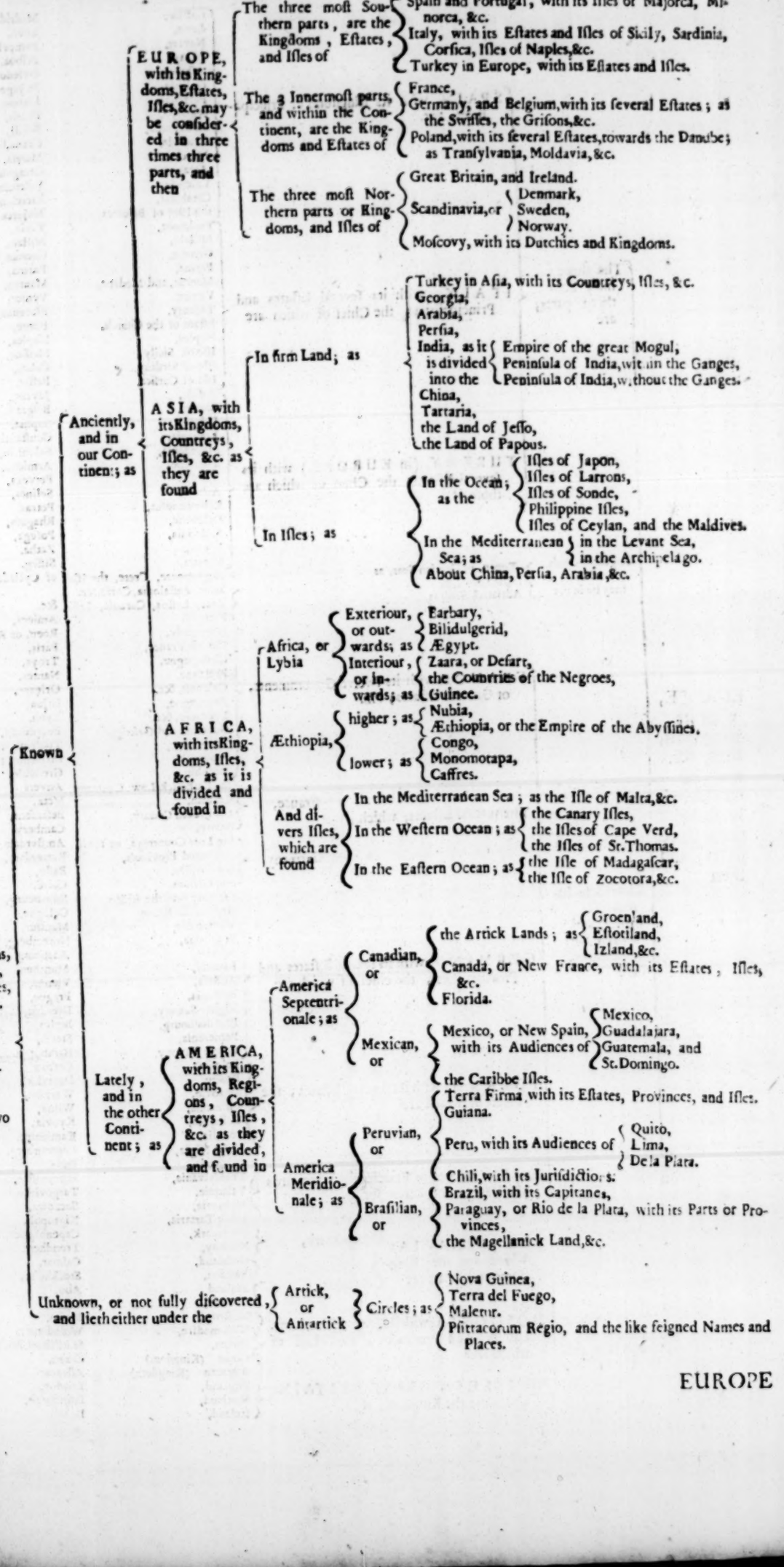
- **Seas; and which may be called**
  - **Ocean, and about our Continent, to wit, the**
    - **Indian, or Eaſtern, where are the**
      - Sea of China,
      - Indian Sea,
      - Arabian Sea.
    - **Æthiopian, or Southern, wherein are the**
      - Sea of Barbary, or of Zanguebar,
      - Sea of Caffreria,
      - Sea of Congo.
    - **Weſtern, or Atlantick; where are the**
      - Sea of Guinee,
      - Sea of Cape Verd,
      - Sea of the Canaries, or Gulph of Yeguas,
      - Sea of Spain,
      - Sea of France,
      - Sea of Great Britain.
    - **Northern Frozen, or Scythick; where are the**
      - Sea of Denmark, or Mourmanskoi-More,
      - Sea of Moſcovy, or Petzorke-More,
      - Sea of Tartreria, or Niaren-More.
  - **Sea, and about the other Continent, to wit, the**
    - **North, or**
      - Sea of Canada, or New France,
      - Sea of Mexico, or New Spain,
      - Sea of Brazil, or North-Sea.
    - **Magellanick, or**
      - Sea of Paraguay,
      - Magellanick Sea,
      - Sea of Chili.
    - **South, or Pacifick; or**
      - Sea of Peru, or South-Sea,
      - Sea of California, or New Mexico.
  - **Between the one and the other Continent, and towards the Artick Pole, are**
    - the Archipelague of St. Lazare,
    - the Sea of Groenland,
- **Gulphs; among which**
  - **there, where the Ocean waſheth them, and**
    - **About our Continent, are theſe Gulphs and Seas, as the**
      - Gulph of Nanquin,
      - Gulph of Cochinchina,
      - Gulph of Sian, or Cambogue,
      - Gulph of Bengala,
      - Gulph of Ormus, and Balſora,
      - Gulph of the Red-Sea, or Sea of Mecca,
      - Gulph of Æthiopia, or St. Thomas,
      - Sea of Guaſcagne,
      - White-Sea, or Bella-more.
  - **there, where the Mediterranean Sea entreth, and**
    - **within our Continent, are theſe Gulphs and Seas, as the**
      - Gulph of Lyon,
      - Gulph of Venice,
      - Archipelague, or White-Sea,
      - Sea of Marmora,
      - Black Sea, or Sea of Majeure,
      - Levant Sea.
  - **there, where the Baltick Sea entreth, and**
    - Gulph of Bolnia,
    - Gulph of Findland,
    - Gulph of Rhiga,
    - Gulph of Dantzick,
    - Gulph of Lubeck.
  - **there, where the Sea waſheth them, and**
    - **About the other Continent, are the**
      - Gulph of Hudſon,
      - Gulph of St. Lawrence,
      - Gulph of Mexico,
      - Gulph of Honduras,
      - Gulph of Panama.
- **Streights; among which**
  - **there, where the Ocean and the Sea waſheth, and**
    - **About the other Continent, are theſe Streights, Seas, &c. as the**
      - Streight of Anian,
      - Sea of Vermejo,
      - Streight of Magellan,
      - Channel of Bahama,
      - Streight of Hudſon,
      - Streight of Davis.
    - **About our Continent, are the**
      - Streight of Naſſau, or Vaygatz,
      - Pas, or Streight of Calais,
      - Streight of Bebelmandel,
      - Streight of Mocandan,
      - Streight of Manar,
      - Streight of Malacca,
      - Streight of Sonde.
  - **there, where the Baltick Sea is, and**
    - **In our Continent, are the**
      - Streight of Sound,
      - Streight of Belt.
  - **there, where the Mediterranean Sea is, and**
    - **In our Continent, are the**
      - Streight of Gibraltar,
      - Faro, or Haven of Meſſina,
      - Euripe, or tourn paſſage of Negroponte,
      - Streight of Gallipoli, or the Dardanelles,
      - Str. of Conſtantinople, or Channel of the Black Sea,
      - Streight of Caffa, or Volpero.
- **Lakes; and which may be called**
  - **Seas; as**
    - **In our Continent, the**
      - Sea of Bachu, or Sala,
      - Sea of Zabaque, or Tana.
    - **In the other Continent, the**
      - Lake or Sea of Parime.
  - **Lakes; as**
    - **In Europe, the**
      - Lake of Earne,
      - Lake of Werner,
      - Lake of Ladoga,
      - Lake of Geneve,
      - Lake of Conſtance,
      - Lake of Balaton,
      - Lake of Majeur.
    - **In Aſia, the**
      - Lake of Sodom, or the Dead-Sea,
      - Lake of Aſtamar, or Vaſtan,
      - Lake of Burgian,
      - Lake of Kithay,
      - Lake of Chiamay,
      - Lake of Cincui-Hay.
    - **In Africa, the**
      - Lake of Zaire, and Zambere,
      - Lake of Zaffian,
      - Lake of Niger,
      - Lake of Bouchaira.
    - **In America**
      - **Septentrional, the**
        - great Lake of Canada,
        - Lake of Mechoacan,
        - Lake of Chapala,
        - Lake of Mexico,
        - Lake of Nicaragua.
      - **Meridional, the**
        - Lake of Maracaybo,
        - Lake of Titicaca,
        - Lake of Eupana, or de los Xarajes.

The

The most famous RIVERS

- In our Continent, and its Isles, are, to wit in
  - EUROPE, and in the Kingdoms, Countreys or Regions of
    - Spain; as: the Douro, the Tagus, the Guadiana, the Guadalquivir, the Ebro, or Iberus.
    - Italy; as: the Tiber, the Arno, the Po.
    - Turkey in Europe; as: the Danube, or Donaw, the Drin, the Orfee, or Alfea, the Vardar, the Marize.
    - France; as: the Loire, the Garone, the Rhofne, the Seyne.
    - Low-Countreys; as: the Efcault, the Meufe.
    - Germany; as: the Rhine, the Weſer, the Elbe, the Oder.
    - Poland; as: the Weiſſer, or Viſtule, the Niemen, the Duna, or Dzwina, the Nieſter, the Nieper, or Boriſtene.
    - Sweden; as: the Torne.
    - Moſcovia; as: the Wolga, the Dwine, the Don, or Tana.
    - England; as: the Thames, the Severn, the Trent.
    - Scotland; as: the Tay.
    - Ireland; as: the Shennon.
  - ASIA, and in the Kingdoms, Countreys, or Regions of
    - Turkey, in Aſia, as: the Euphrates, the Pactolus, the Tygris, the Acheron, the Jordaine, the Orontes, the Lali, the Chryſorhous.
    - Georgia; as: the Araxes, and the Farza.
    - Arabia; as: the Caybar, and the Aſtan.
    - Perſia; as: the Tiritiri, the Gehun, the Bendimir, and the Toſtar.
    - India; as: the Indus, the Tapta, the Ganges, the Gemeni, the Mecon, and the Pegu.
    - China; as: the Quiam, or Jamſoquiam.
    - Tartaria; as: the Oby, the Gehan, the Tartar, the Paliſanga, the Jeniſcey, the Albiamu, the Cheſel, and the Jaick.
  - AFRICA, and in the Kingdoms, Countreys, or Regions of
    - Morocco; as: the Tenfift, and the Sus.
    - Fez; as: the Ommiraby, Suba, the Mullulus, and the Cherſer.
    - Barbary; as: the Mulvia, the Maber, the Magrada, the Capes, the Rio Major, the Chol, the Suffegmarus, the Maſurius, the Teffiſus, and the Mina.
    - Ægypt; as: the Nile.
    - Billidulgerid; as: the Suz, the Buzedora, the Darha, and the Albus.
    - Zaara; as: the Ghir, and the Equeſtris.
    - the Negroes; as, the Niger, which is divided in: the Senega, the Gambia, the Rio Grande, and the Cano.
    - Higher Æthiopia; as: the Quilmanci, Nubia, the Zaire, and the Marabus.
    - Lower Æthiopia; as, the Zambere, divided in: the Curama, the Barame, the Spiritu Sancto, the Rio dos Infantos.
- In the other Continent, or in
  - AMERICA Septentrionale and in the Kingdoms, Countreys, &c. of
    - Canada, or New France; as thoſe of: Canada, or St. Lawrence, Toppahanock, Penobſcot, Pautunxat, Nanſamud, Cheſapeac, or Pouhatan, May, la Trinite, Apamatuck, Pamanuc, and Patawomeck.
    - Florida; as thoſe of: Rio de Flores: Rio de Spirito Santo, Rio de Neives, and Rio grande.
    - Mexico, or New Spain; as thoſe of: Spiritu Sancto towards the Eaſt, Spiritu Sancto towards the Weſt, Panuco, Guaxacoalco, Baranja, Zacatula, Deſaguadero of Nicaragua.
  - AMERICA Meridionale, and in the Kingdoms, Countreys, &c. of
    - Terra Firma, Guiana, and Peru; as thoſe of: Darien, Vizpoco, St. Martha, Cayanna, Corritine, Brebice, Orinoque, Apuruvaca, Eſſequebe, Madelaine, Deſaguadero of Peru.
    - Brazil; as thoſe of: Orethane, or the Amazons, Maragnon, or Miari, Taboucorou, Rio Janiero, Rio grande, or Potengi, Rio Real, Parayba.
    - Paraguay; as thoſe of: Paraguay, or de la Plata.

All


All the Kingdoms, Regions, Countries, Isles, &c. in the World, may be comprehended under these two Heads, viz.
Known
Anciently, and in our Continent; as
EUROPE, with its Kingdoms, Estates, Isles, &c. may be considered in three times three parts, and then
The three most Southern parts, are the Kingdoms, Estates, and Isles of
Spain and Portugal, with its Isles of Majorca, Minorca, &c.
Italy, with its Estates and Isles of Sicily, Sardinia, Corsica, Isles of Naples, &c.
Turkey in Europe, with its Estates and Isles.
The 3 Innermost parts, and within the Continent, are the Kingdoms and Estates of
France,
Germany, and Belgium, with its several Estates; as the Swisses, the Grisons, &c.
Poland, with its several Estates, towards the Danube; as Transylvania, Moldavia, &c.
The three most Northern parts or Kingdoms, and Isles of
Great Britain, and Ireland.
Scandinavia, or Denmark, Sweden, Norway.
Moscovy, with its Dutchies and Kingdoms.
ASIA, with its Kingdoms, Countreys, Isles, &c. as they are found
In firm Land; as
Turkey in Asia, with its Countreys, Isles, &c.
Georgia,
Arabia,
Persia,
India, as it is divided into the
Empire of the great Mogul,
Peninsula of India, within the Ganges,
Peninsula of India, without the Ganges.
China,
Tartaria,
the Land of Jesso,
the Land of Papous.
In Isles; as
In the Ocean; as the
Isles of Japon,
Isles of Larrons,
Isles of Sonde,
Philippine Isles,
Isles of Ceylan, and the Maldives.
In the Mediterranean Sea; as
in the Levant Sea,
in the Archipelago.
About China, Persia, Arabia, &c.
AFRICA, with its Kingdoms, Isles, &c. as it is divided and found in
Africa, or Lybia
Exteriour, or outwards; as
Barbary,
Bilidulgerid,
Ægypt.
Interiour, or inwards; as
Zaara, or Defart,
the Countries of the Negroes,
Guinee.
Æthiopia,
higher; as
Nubia,
Æthiopia, or the Empire of the Abyssines.
lower; as
Congo,
Monomotapa,
Caffres.
And divers Isles, which are found
In the Mediterranean Sea; as the Isle of Malta, &c.
In the Western Ocean; as
the Canary Isles,
the Isles of Cape Verd,
the Isles of St. Thomas.
In the Eastern Ocean; as
the Isle of Madagascar,
the Isle of Zocotora, &c.
Lately, and in the other Continent; as
AMERICA, with its Kingdoms, Regions, Countreys, Isles, &c. as they are divided, and found in
America Septentrionale; as
Canadian, or
the Artick Lands; as
Groen'land,
Estotiland,
Izland, &c.
Canada, or New France, with its Estates, Isles, &c.
Florida.
Mexican, or
Mexico, or New Spain, with its Audiences of
Mexico,
Guadalajara,
Guatemala, and
St. Domingo.
the Caribbe Isles.
America Meridionale; as
Peruvian, or
Terra Firma, with its Estates, Provinces, and Isles.
Guiana.
Peru, with its Audiences of
Quito,
Lima,
De la Plata.
Chili, with its Jurisdictions.
Brasilian, or
Brazil, with its Capitanes,
Paraguay, or Rio de la Plata, with its Parts or Provinces,
the Magellanick Land, &c.
Unknown, or not fully discovered, and lieth either under the
Artick, or Antartick
Circles; as
Nova Guinea,
Terra del Fuego,
Malemir.
Pfittacorum Regio, and the like feigned Names and Places.

EUROPE

EUROPE, with its Kingdoms, Isles, &c. may be considered in three times three parts; and then

The three most Southern parts, are

- SPAIN, with its Kingdoms or Principalities, viz.
  - Castile, Madrid,
  - Leon, Leon,
  - Navarr, Pampelona,
  - Biscay, Bilboa,
  - Asturie, Oviedo,
  - Gallicia, St. Jago de Compostella,
  - Portugal, Lisbon,
  - Algarve, Pharo,
  - Andalousia, Sevill,
  - Granada, Granada,
  - Murcia, Murcia,
  - Arragon, Caragosa,
  - Valencia, Valencia,
  - Catalonia, Barcelona,
  - the Isles of Baleares, Majorca.
- ITALY, with its several Estates and Principalities; the Chief of which are
  - Piedmont, Turin,
  - Millain, Millain,
  - Genoua, Genoua,
  - Parma, Parma,
  - Mantua, and Modena, Mantua,
  - Venice, Venice,
  - Toscany, Florence,
  - Estate of the Church, Rome,
  - Naples, Naples,
  - Isle of Sicily, Messina,
  - Isle of Sardiny, Calari,
  - Isle of Corsica, Bastia.
- TURKEY (in EUROPE,) with its several Estates; the Chief of which are those of
  - Bosnie, Jaycza,
  - Servie, Belgrad,
  - Bulgarie, Sophia,
  - Romania, Constantinople,
  - Macedonia, Salonichi,
  - Thessalie, Armicho,
  - Epire, Perveza,
  - Achaia, Selines,
  - Peloponnesus, Petras,
  - Dalmacie, Rhagusa,
  - Sclavonia, Posega,
  - Illyris, Zatha,
  - Croatia, Sisseg.

Together with several Isles, as they lie in the

- Ægean, or Grecian Seas, as — Negroponte, Crete, the Isles of Cyclades, &c.
- Ionian Seas, as — Zant, Zeffalonia, Corfu, &c.
- Adriatick Seas, as — Zara, Lesina, Curzola, Lissa, &c.

The three Innermost parts, and within the Continent, are

- FRANCE, with its twelve Governments, or General Estates; viz.
  - Picardy, Amiens,
  - Normandy, Roen, or Roven,
  - Isle of France, Paris,
  - Champagne, Troys,
  - Brelagne, Nantes,
  - Orlenois, &c. Orleans,
  - Bourgogne, Dijon,
  - Lyonnois, &c. Lyon,
  - Guyenne and Gascogne, Bourdeaux,
  - Languedoc, Toulouse,
  - Provence, Marseille,
  - Dauphin, Grenoble.
- The several Estates, which lie between
  - France,
    - the Catholick Low Countrey, Anvers,
    - Lorrain, Metz,
    - the French County, Besanson,
    - Savoy, Cambery.
  - Germany,
    - the Low Countreys, or the United Provinces, Amsterdam, Rotterdam,
    - the Swisses, Basle,
    - the Grisons, Coire.
- GERMANY, with its several Estates and Principalities; the chief of which are
  - On this side the Rhir, Strasbourg,
  - Beyond the Rhine, Cologne,
  - Westphalia, Munster,
  - Franconia, Noremberg,
  - Sovabe, Ausbourg,
  - Bavaria, Munchen,
  - Austria, Vienna,
  - Bohemia, Prague,
  - Higher Saxony, Dresden,
  - Brandenbourg, Berlin,
  - Pomerania, Stetin,
  - Lower Saxony, Hamburgh.
- POLAND, with its several Estates; the chief of which are
  - Polonia, Cracow,
  - Prussie, Dantzick,
  - Mazovie, Warzaw,
  - Lithuania, Wilna,
  - Volhynia, Kyovia,
  - Podolia, Kamieniec,
  - Russia Nigra, Loewenberg.
- And some Estates or Principalities, towards the Danube and Black-Sea, as
  - Hungaria, Buda,
  - Transylvania, Hermenstat,
  - Valaquie, Targovisko,
  - Moldavia, Soczowa,
  - Little Tartaria, Nigropoli.

The three most Northern parts, Kingdoms and Isles, are

- SCANDINAVIA; where are the Kingdoms and Estates of
  - Danemark,
    - Danemark, Capenhaguen,
    - Norway, Trondhem.
  - Sweden,
    - Gothland, Calmar,
    - Sweden, Stockholm,
    - Finland, Abo,
    - Livonie, Riga.
- MOSCOVIA, with its several Kingdoms, Dutches and Provinces; the chief of which are
  - Moscovy, Mosco,
  - Wolomodire, Wolodomer,
  - Dwine, St. Michael Archangel,
  - Cazan (Kingdom) Cazan,
  - Astracan (Kingdom) Astracan.
- The ISLES of GREAT BRITAIN; where are the Kingdoms of
  - England, London,
  - Scotland, Edinburgh,
  - Ireland, Dublin.

A MAPP of EUROPE

Designed by Mounsieur Sanson, Geographer to the French King, and Rendred into English and Illustrated by Ric: Blome. By his Majtys Especiall Command.

London Printed for Rich Blome

HONI SOIT QUI MAL Y PENSE

SEPTENTRIONAL OCEAN

OCCIDENTAL SEA

SEA OF DENMARK

ARTICK CIRCLE

Isles of Fero

Schettland Isle

Orcades Isles

ISLES OF BRITANNIE or BRITISH SEA

IRELAND

THE FRENCH SEA

THE BRITANNIE OCEAN

MEDITERRANEAN SEA

ATLANTICK OCEAN

CANARIE SEA

PARTE OF AFRICA

Minorca I

Majorca I

Cattadella

Ivica I

Streams Ness

Langa Ness

Hecla Ness

Hory Ness

Rockre Ness

Lisborn

C S Vincent

Straights of Gibralter

Cape Cantin

Cape of Guer

Morocco

Isle of Madera

Port Sainct

I. Palma

I. Gomer

Isle of Teri

I Tenerisse

I Forteuen tura

Las Salvages

Graciosa

I Lancelotta

Tripoli

Tunis

Capsa

Algiers

Bona

Bugia

Tenes

Tremisen

Fez

Mequinez

Tarudant

Salle

Sallee

Tangier

Ceuta

Malaga

Granada

Cadiz

Seville

Lisbon

Oporto

Barcelona

Valentia

Carthage

Bizerta

Malta

Sicily

Corsica

Sardinia

Naples

Rome

Venice

Genoa

Marseilles

Toulon

Bayonne

Bordeaux

Rochel

Nantes

Brest

Dunkirk

Calais

Dover

London

Yarmouth

Hull

Newcastel

Edenburgh

Aberdene

Dublin

Kinsale

Waterford

Limerick

Galloway

Cornwall

Plymouth

Portsmouth

Southampton

Bristol

Exceter

Canterbury

Winchester

Oxford

Cambridge

Norwich

Lincoln

York

Durham

Carlile

Chester

Derby

Nottingham

Leicester

Warwick

Worcester

Gloucester

Hereford

Shrewsbury

Stafford

Coventry

Northampton

Buckingham

Reading

Salisbury

Dorchester

Hartford

Colchester

Ipswich

Yarmouth

Lynn

Boston

Grantham

Lincoln

Doncaster

Pontefract

Leeds

Wakefield

Halifax

Manchester

Liverpool

Preston

Lancaster

Kendal

Appleby

Penrith

Carlisle

Berwick

Dunbar

Haddington

Edenburgh

Stirling

Perth

Dundee

Montrose

Aberdene

Elgin

Inverness

Cromarty

Dornoch

Caithness

Orkney

Shetland

Wick

Thurso

Tain

Ross

Skye

Mull

Islay

Jura

Arran

Bute

Cantire

Glasgow

Paisley

Ayr

Dumfries

Annan

Jedburgh

Kelso

Hawick

Selkirk

Peebles

Lanark

Linlithgow

Falkland

Cupar

St Andrews

Montrose

Brechin

Forfar

Arbroath

Aberbrothock

Dundee

Perth

Stirling

Dumbarton

Inverary

Oban

Tobermory

Portree

Stornoway

Lewis

Harris

North Uist

South Uist

Barra

Benbecula

Rum

Eigg

Canna

Muck

Coll

Tiree

Gometra

Ulva

Staffa

Iona

Colonsay

Jura

Islay

Gigha

Sanda

Ailsa Craig

Pladda

Holy Island

Lamlash

Brodick

Rothesay

Campbeltown

Port Ellen

Bowmore

Port Askaig

Craignish

Kilmartin

Kilmichael

Kilmory

Lochgilphead

Tarbert

Kintyre

Mull of Kintyre

Ballycastle

Coleraine

Londonderry

Lough Foyle

Lough Swilly

Donegal

Sligo

Ballyshannon

Lough Erne

Enniskillen

Cavan

Longford

Athlone

Galway

Clifden

Roundstone

Connemara

Lough Corrib

Lough Mask

Westport

Clew Bay

Achill Island

Blacksod Bay

Belmullet

Killala

Ballina

Sligo

Boyle

Roscommon

Tuam

Castlebar

Ballinrobe

Cong

Lough Conn

Lough Cullin

Ballymote

Tobercurry

Collooney

Dromore

Manorhamilton

Carrick on Shannon

Mohill

Lough Ree

Athlone

Ballinasloe

Loughrea

Gort

Ennis

Kilrush

Kilkee

Loop Head

Tarbert

Listowel

Tralee

Dingle

Dingle Bay

Valentia

Kenmare

Bantry

Bantry Bay

Glengarriff

Castletownbere

Dursey Island

Mizen Head

Skibbereen

Baltimore

Clonakilty

Kinsale

Cork

Youghal

Lismore

Dungarvan

Tramore

Waterford

New Ross

Wexford

Gorey

Arklow

Wicklow

Bray

Dublin

Howth

Malahide

Drogheda

Dundalk

Carlingford

Newry

Armagh

Monaghan

Cavan

Kells

Navan

Trim

Mullingar

Tullamore

Birr

Roscrea

Nenagh

Thurles

Cashel

Clonmel

Carrick on Suir

Kilkenny

Callan

Carlow

Athy

Naas

Maynooth

Kildare

Edenderry

Philipstown

Daingean

Portarlington

Mountmellick

Abbeyleix

Ballinakill

Ballyragget

Castlecomer

Leighlinbridge

Tullow

Baltinglass

Blessington

Tallaght

Swords

Lusk

Balbriggan

Skerries

Rush

Malahide

Howth

Dublin

Kingstown

Dalkey

Bray

Greystones

Delgany

Newtownmountkennedy

Wicklow

Rathdrum

Avoca

Arklow

Gorey

Enniscorthy

Wexford

Ferns

Bunclody

Carlow

Tullow

Hacketstown

Rathvilly

Baltinglass

Blessington

Naas

Kilcullen

Kildare

Monasterevin

Kilcock

Maynooth

Celbridge

Lucan

Clondalkin

Rathcoole

Newcastle

Saggart

Tallaght

Dublin

Swords

Malahide

Howth

Lusk

Rush

Skerries

Balbriggan

Drogheda

Ardee

Dundalk

Carlingford

Newry

Armagh

Monaghan

Clones

Cavan

Kells

Navan

Trim

Athboy

Mullingar

Castlepollard

Multyfarnham

Kilbeggan

Tullamore

Clara

Ferbane

Banagher

Birr

Parsonstown

Roscrea

Templemore

Thurles

Holycross

Cashel

Golden

Tipperary

Clonmel

Carrick on Suir

Kilkenny

Callan

Thomastown

Inistioge

Graiguenamanagh

New Ross

Waterford

Dungarvan

Lismore

Youghal

Cork

Kinsale

Clonakilty

Skibbereen

Baltimore

Mizen Head

Dursey Island

Castletownbere

Bantry

Bantry Bay

Glengarriff

Kenmare

Valentia

Dingle

Dingle Bay

Tralee

Listowel

Ballybunion

Tarbert

Kilrush

Kilkee

Loop Head

Ennis

Gort

Kinvara

Galway

Oranmore

SEA OF MOSCOV
LAPPONS
RUSSIA
FINLAND
NOVOGORD
LITVA
POLAND
WOLOG
OUSTIOUGA
DWINA
BLACK SEA
SEA OF I Cefalonia I Zante
SICILE
Isle of Creta or Candia
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
KINGDOM OF BARCA

TENTRIONAL OCE

ARTICK CIRCLE

OCCIDENTAL

SEA OF DENMARK

Isles of Fero

Schettland Isle

Orcades Isles

West Ilands or BRITISH ISLES

Hecla Ness

Horn Ness

Langa Ness

Hery Ness

Pikneshap

Kirkebar

Shalholt

Grimsey

Aberdons

Dunkeld

Perth

Edenburg

Newcastel

Carlile

Lancaster

Chester

Dublin

Kilkenny

Limerick

Dungarvan

Pembroke

Bristol

Exceter

Plymouth

London

Cambridge

Norwich

Colchester

Canterbury

Winchester

Amsterdam

Groningen

Bremen

Hamburg

Lubeck

Dantzick

Elbing

Konigsberg

Memel

Riga

Revel

Narva

Petersburg

Ladoga L.

Wiborg

Stockholm

Upsal

Calmer

Bergen

Soyde

Drontheim

Hamar

Lodose

Tonsberg

Gothenburg

Elsinore

Copenhagen

Malmoy

Ystad

Carlscrona

Calmar

Gothland

Dantzick

Stettin

Rostock

Lubeck

Hamburg

Bremen

Amsterdam

Groningen

Emden

Embden

Munster

Osnaburg

Paderborn

Cologne

Liege

Namur

Antwerp

Ghent

Bruges

Calais

Dover

Rye

Portsmouth

Southampton

Exeter

Plymouth

Falmouth

Milford

Pembroke

Caermarthen

Aberystwith

Chester

Lancaster

Carlile

Newcastel

Durham

Berwick

Edenburg

Perth

Dundee

Aberdeen

Inverness

Dunbar

Jedburg

Dumfries

Glasgow

Stirling

Dunkeld

Perth

Aberdeen

Inverness

Orkney

Shetland

Faro

Iceland

Greenland

Davis Straits

Hudsons Straits

Labrador

Newfoundland

Nova Scotia

New England

New York

Virginia

Florida

Bahama Islands

Jamaica

Hispaniola

Cuba

Porto Rico

Barbadoes

Martinico

Guadaloupe

Antigua

Nevis

St Christophers

Dominica

St Lucia

St Vincent

Grenada

Tobago

Trinidad

Curaçao

Aruba

Margarita

Cumana

Caracas

Coro

Maracaibo

Rio de la Hacha

Carthagena

Porto Bello

Panama

Nombre de Dios

Portobello

Chagres

Cruces

Gulf of Mexico

Vera Cruz

Mexico

Acapulco

Guatimala

Nicaragua

Costa Rica

Veragua

Darien

Cape Horn

Magellan Straits

Terra del Fuego

Falkland Islands

Rio de la Plata

Buenos Ayres

Paraguay

Peru

Lima

Callao

Arica

Potosi

Cusco

Quito

Popayan

Santa Fe

Rio Grande

Rio de la Magdalena

Rio Negro

Rio Orinoco

Rio Amazones

Rio de la Plata

Brasil

Rio de Janeiro

St Vincent

Rio Janeiro

Bahia de Todos Santos

Pernambuco

Rio Grande

Maranham

Cape de Verd Islands

Canary Islands

Madeira

Azores

Cape de Verd

Cape Blanco

Cape Bojador

Cape Nun

Cape Non

Cape Bona

Cape Blanco

Cape Verd

Cape Mesurado

Cape Palmas

Cape Three Points

Cape Lopez

Cape Negro

Cape Lopez Gonsalvo

Cape Catherine

Cape St Paul

Cape St Thomas

Cape Formosa

SEA OF MOSCOV
AN
PATARIE
RUSSIA
BLACK SEA
ASIA
TURCOMANIA
ARABIA
DESART
ARABIA
EGYPT
RED SEA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
LEVANT SEA
Isle of Creta or Candia
KINGDOM OF BULGARIA
KINGDOM OF BARCA
Francis Lambe Sculp

PATARTE
LUCO
MORIA
CALAMI
KINGDOM OF BULGARIA
VACHI
Bulgar
Carawool
Samara
Saratoff
Polog
Tobolsky
Pascharti
Sagalin
Lopin
Cazan
Albuga
Marmorro
Salaboda
Ribena
Laissero
Teluss
Belay
Orsef
Kialtwa
Gailorcha
Fossa
Chemper
Giustuski
Tesma
Tara
Narim
Mangaz
Solfcigorod
Canigoscia
Curtur
Oby R.
Volchi Perm
Oorsoff
Aosa
Arlatur
Carawool
Samara
Polog Carowcol
70
65
60
55

EUROPE.

EUROPE is one of the three parts of our Continent, of which *Asia* makes the most Eastern, *Africa* the most Southern, and *Europe* in regard of them is between North and West.

It is for the most part bounded by the *Ocean* and the *Mediterranean Sea*; that which we call the *Septentrional*, or *Frozen Ocean*, on the North; and the *Occidental*, or *Atlantick Ocean*, on the West: The *Mediterranean Sea* (which is but an Arm of the *Ocean*) lies on its South, and separates it from *Africa*; but from *Asia*, it is separated towards the East by divers *Seas*, which fall into the *Mediterranean*, by several *Streights* between these *Seas*, to wit, the *Archipelago*, the Sea of *Marmara*, the *Black Sea*, and the Sea of *Zabaque*. Between the *Archipelago* and the *Marmara*, is the Streight of *Gallipoli*, or the *Dardanelles* of old *Hellespontus*; between the *Marmara* and the *Black Sea*, is the Streight of *Constantinople*, or the *Channel* of the *Black Sea*; and between the *Black Sea* and the Sea of *Zabaque*, is the Streight of *Caffa*, or *Vospero*. Then the Rivers of *Don*, *Wolga*, and *Oby*, compleat the division of *Europe* from *Asia*, by drawing a line from the one to the other. Its Bounds.

The scituation of *Europe* is between the 35 and 72 *degrees* of *Latitude*; and between the 10 and 100 of *Longitude*, though it fill not all this space; and it is almost all in the *Temperate Zone*, no part in the *Torrid*; but some under or near the *Frozen Zone*. Scituation.

But the *Ocean*, together with the divers *Seas* which encompass and divide the parts of *Europe*, have given so great an advantage to its People, that they are long since become the most expert in the World in *Navigation*, all *Arts* and *Sciences*, and in *Arms* and *Military Discipline*.

We will consider *Europe* in Nine (or three times three) principal parts: And of these, the first three shall be *Spain*, *Italy*, and the Estates of *Turkey* in *Europe*; and these possess the Southern part of *Europe*: the second three parts shall be *France*, *Germany* and *Poland*, and these take up the middle part of *Europe*; and the third shall be *Scandinavia*, where are the Estates of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, *Russia Alba*, or *Muscovia*, and the Isles of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*; and these are most Northward. As to the several small Isles, I shall comprehend them under one and the other of these 3 parts, and that according to their scituation or vicinity unto them. Its Division.

Besides these 9 parts, there will remain some Estates and Lands between *France*, *Germany*, and *Italy*; likewise between *Germany*, *Poland*, *Turkey* and *Moscovia*; and some in *Turkey*, which shall be described as occasion presents.

But before we proceed to the Parts, let us consider that there are 3 principal *Tongues*, and as many principal *Religions* in *Europe*, *viz.* the *Latin*, which extends it self into *Italy*, *France*, and *Spain*, though in divers *Idioms*: the *Teutonick* into *Germany*, the *British Isles*, and *Scandinavia*: the *Sclavonian* into *Poland*, *Moscovy*, in good part of *Turkey*, *Bohemia*, &c. though still in several *Idioms* and *Dialects*. The other *Tongues* are much less general, as the *Greek*, *Albanian*, *Hungarian*, and the *Tartaresque* in the Eastern parts; and lastly, the *Basque*, *Welsh*, *Irish* and *Laplandish*, in the most Western and Northern parts. The Languages or Speeches.

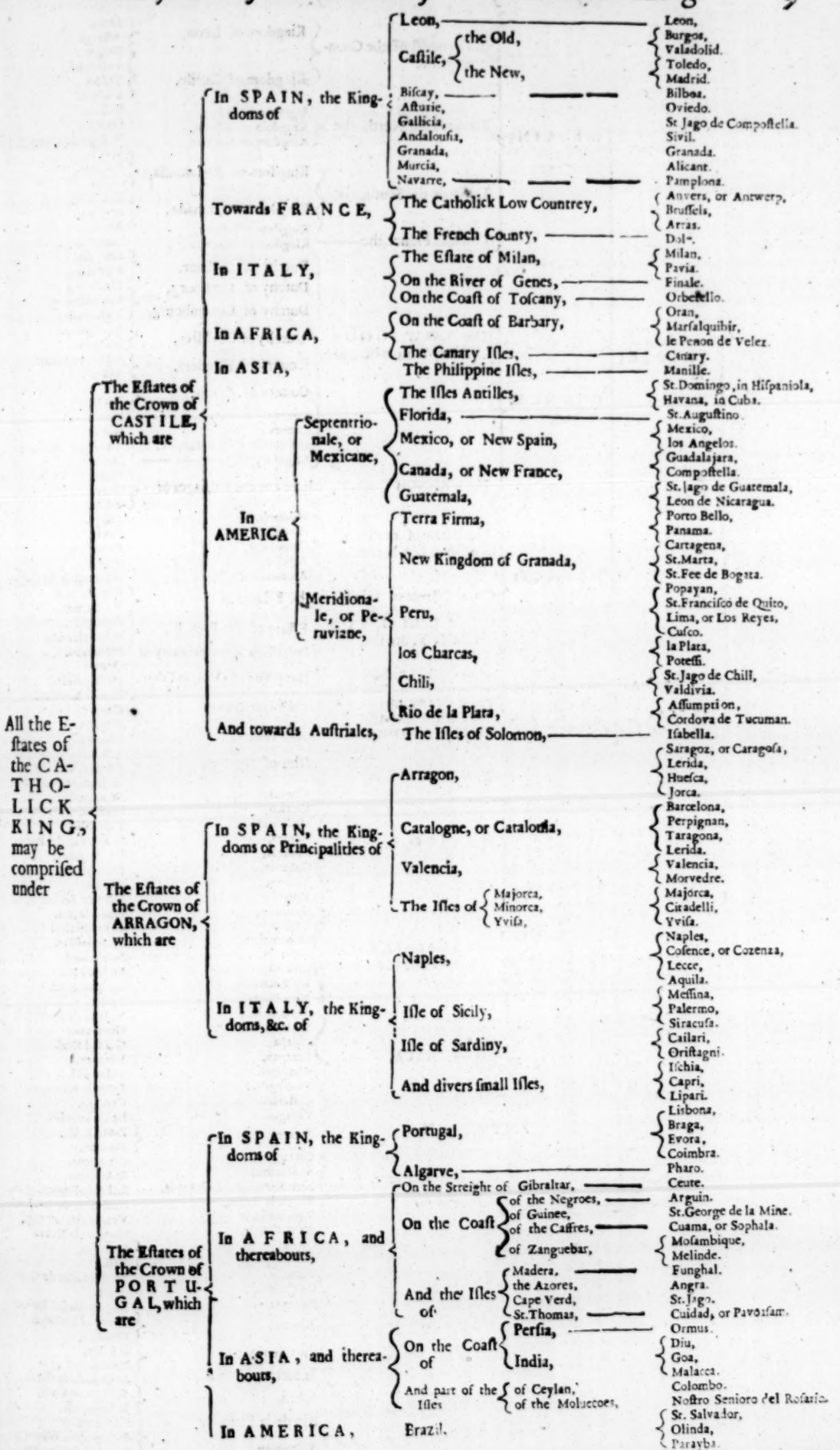
The *Religions* are the *Protestant*, which hath spread it self where the *Teutonick Tongue* is spoken; the *Roman Catholick* is almost every where with the *Latin*; *Schism*, alone and every where amongst the People speaking *Sclavonian* and *Greek*; the *Mahumetan Religion* is among the Natural *Turks* of *Europe*. Religions.

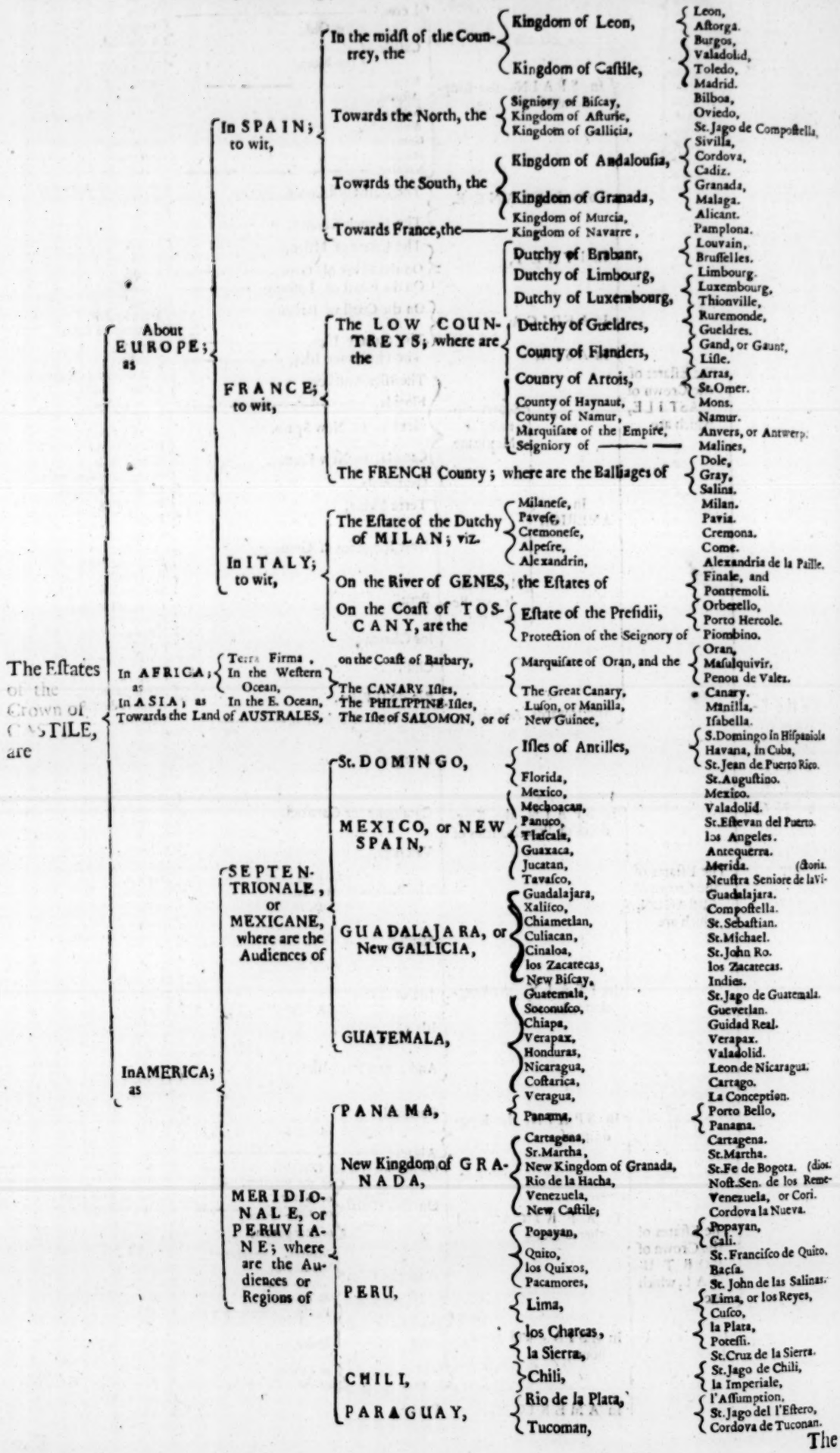
But to proceed to its Parts.

SPAIN, with its fourteen Kingdoms or Principalities, whereof

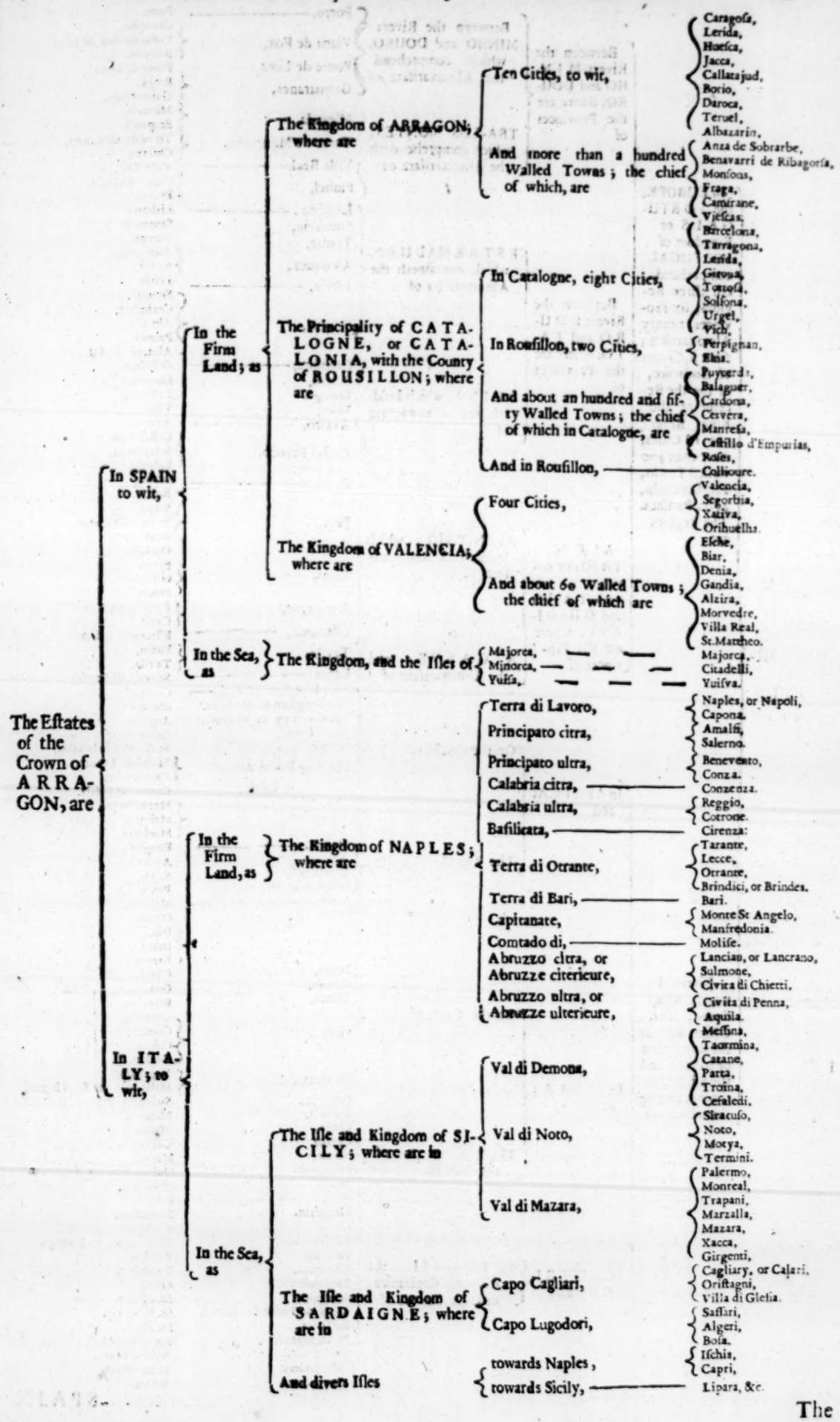
- Two are in the midst of the Country, to wit,
  - LEON,
    - Beyond the River Douro, or Dovere,
      - Leon,
      - Avilez,
      - Aftorga,
      - Placentia.
    - On this side the Douro,
      - Salamanca,
      - Cuidád Rodrigo.
  - CASTILE,
    - The Old,
      - Burgos,
      - Valadolid,
      - Numantia,
      - Segovia,
      - Calahorra,
      - Soria,
      - Oſma,
      - Siguenca,
      - Avila,
      - Placentia,
      - Coria.
    - The New,
      - Toledo,
      - Madrid,
      - Alcantara,
      - Alcala de Henores,
      - Cuenca,
      - Guadalaſara,
      - Cuidád Real,
      - Merida,
      - Badajox.
- Three are towards the North; as
  - NAVARRE, which hath the Merindades of
    - Pamplona,
    - Viana,
    - Eſtella,
    - Tudela,
    - Olite,
    - Sangueſa.
  - BISCAY, where are
    - Biſcay,
      - Bilboa,
      - St. Andero.
    - Guipuſcoa,
      - St. Sebaſtiano,
      - Andero,
      - Victoria,
      - Toloſetta.
  - ASTURIE, or Oviedo,
    - Oviedo,
    - Santillano:
    - St. Jago de Compoſtella,
    - Bajona,
    - Coronna,
    - Mondonnedo,
    - Lugo,
    - Tuy.
- Three are towards the West, viz.
  - GALLICIA,
  - The Kingdom of PORTUGAL,
    - Between the River Minho, and the Douro,
      - Braga,
      - Miranda,
      - Porto,
      - Braganſa.
    - Between the Douro, and the Tajo, or Tagus,
      - Lisbona,
      - Santara,
      - Sintra,
      - Lamego,
      - Guarda,
      - Coimbra.
    - Alen Tajo, or between the Tajo, and the Guadiana,
      - Evora,
      - Portalegre,
      - Leirla,
      - Beja.
  - ALGARVE,
    - Pharo,
    - Tavila,
    - Silves,
    - Lagos.
- Three are towards the South, to wit,
  - ANDALOUSIA, and ESTREMADURA,
    - Sevill,
    - Cordova,
    - Marchena,
    - Medina Sidonia,
    - Xeres de la Frontera,
    - Cadiz.
  - GRANADA,
    - Granada,
    - Malaga,
    - Almeria.
  - MURCIA,
    - Alicant,
    - Carthagena,
    - Murcia.
- Three are towards the East, viz.
  - ARRAGON,
    - Caragoſa, or Saragoz,
    - Lerida,
    - Hueſca,
    - Moſons,
    - Jacca,
    - Borio,
    - Calatajud,
    - Daroca.
  - CATALOGNE, or CATALONIA,
    - Rouſillon,
      - Perpignan,
      - Elna.
    - Catalogne,
      - Barcelona,
      - Girona,
      - Taragona,
      - Torroſa,
      - Lerida, and Solſona.
  - VALENCE, or VALENCIA,
    - Valencia.
    - Morvedre,
    - Segobre, or Segorbia,
    - Xativa.
- Together with the Iſles of Baleares, or
  - MAJORCA, —— Majorca, Palomera.
  - MINORCA, —— Citadelli, and Mahon.
  - YVISA, —— Yviſa, and Magno.

All

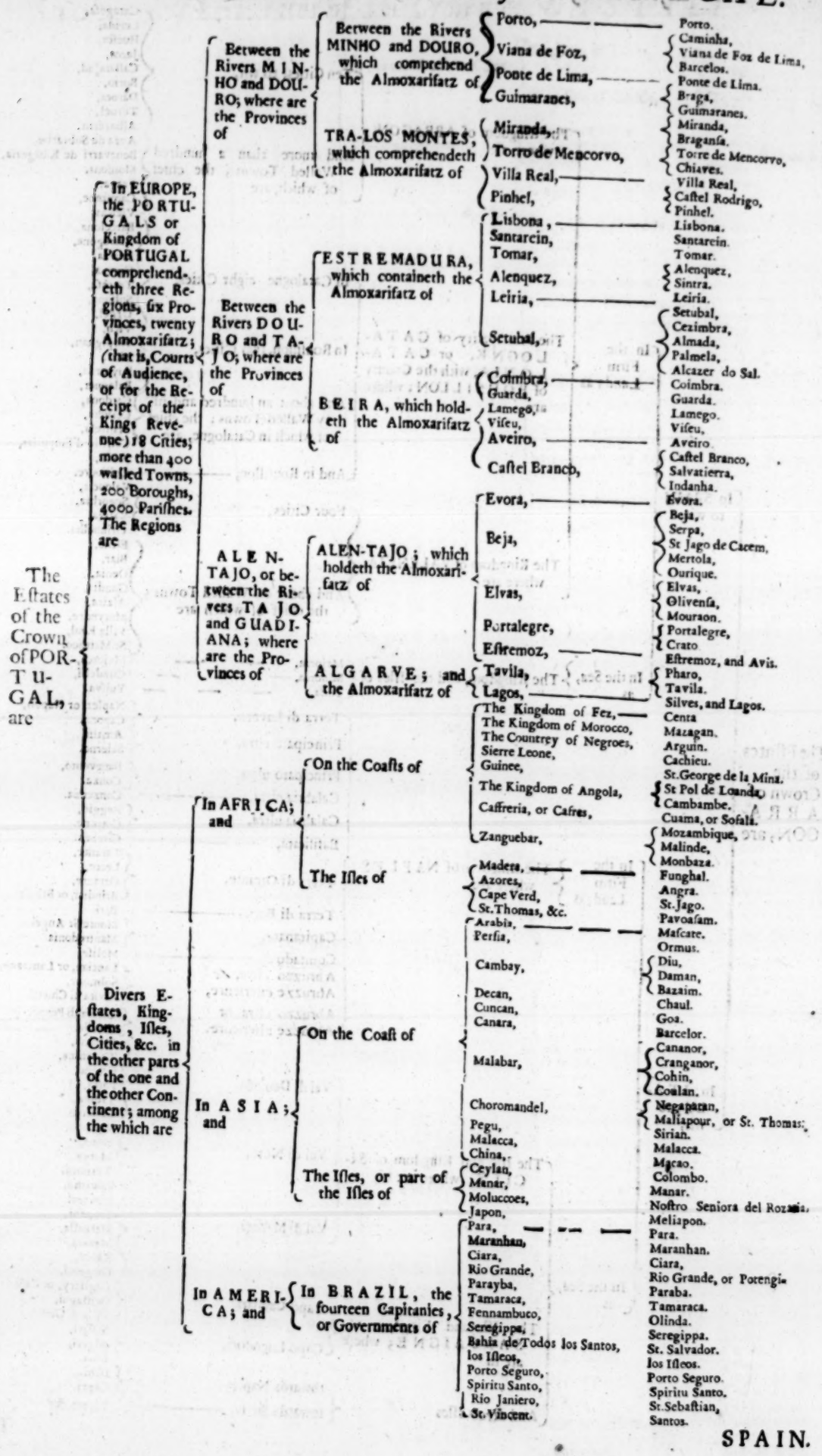

All the Eſtates of the CATHOLICK KING, may be compriſed under
The Eſtates of the Crown of CASTILE, which are
In SPAIN, the Kingdoms of
Leon,
Caſtile, the Old, the New,
Biſcay,
Aſturie,
Gallicia,
Andaloufia,
Granada,
Murcia,
Navarre,
Leon,
Burgos, Valadolid.
Toledo, Madrid.
Bilboa.
Oviedo.
St Jago de Compoſtella.
Sivil.
Granada.
Alicant.
Pamplona.
Towards FRANCE,
The Catholick Low Countrey,
The French County,
Anvers, or Antwerp, Bruſſels, Arras.
Dole.
In ITALY,
The Eſtate of Milan,
On the River of Genes,
On the Coaſt of Toſcany,
Milan, Pavia.
Finale.
Orbetello.
In AFRICA,
On the Coaſt of Barbary,
The Canary Iſles,
Oran, Marſalquibir, le Penon de Velez.
Canary.
In ASIA,
The Philippine Iſles,
Manille.
In AMERICA
Septentrionale, or Mexicane,
Meridionale, or Peruviane,
The Iſles Antilles,
Florida,
Mexico, or New Spain,
Canada, or New France,
Guatemala,
Terra Firma,
New Kingdom of Granada,
Peru,
los Charcas,
Chili,
Rio de la Plata,
St. Domingo, in Hiſpaniola, Havana, in Cuba.
St. Auguſtino.
Mexico, los Angelos.
Guadalajara, Compoſtella.
St. Jago de Guatemala, Leon de Nicaragua.
Porto Bello, Panama.
Cartagena, St. Marta, St. Fee de Bogata.
Popayan, St. Franciſco de Quito, Lima, or Los Reyes, Cuſco.
la Plata, Poteſſi.
St. Jago de Chili, Valdivia.
Aſſumption, Cordova de Tucuman.
And towards Auſtriales,
The Iſles of Solomon,
Iſabella.
The Eſtates of the Crown of ARRAGON, which are
In SPAIN, the Kingdoms or Principalities of
Arragon,
Catalogne, or Catalonia,
Valencia,
The Iſles of Majorca, Minorca, Yviſa,
Saragoz, or Caragoſa, Lerida, Hueſca, Jorca.
Barcelona, Perpignan, Taragona, Lerida.
Valencia, Morvedre.
Majorca, Citadelli, Yviſa.
In ITALY, the Kingdoms, &c. of
Naples,
Iſle of Sicily,
Iſle of Sardiny,
And divers ſmall Iſles,
Naples, Coſence, or Cozenza, Lecce, Aquila.
Meſſina, Palermo, Siracuſa.
Cailari, Oriſtagni.
Iſchia, Capri, Lipari.
The Eſtates of the Crown of PORTUGAL, which are
In SPAIN, the Kingdoms of
Portugal,
Algarve,
Lisbona, Braga, Evora, Coimbra.
Pharo.
In AFRICA, and thereabouts,
On the Streight of Gibraltar,
On the Coaſt of the Negroes, of Guinee, of the Caffres, of Zanguebar,
And the Iſles of Madera, the Azores, Cape Verd, St. Thomas,
Ceute.
Arguin.
St. George de la Mine.
Cuama, or Sophala.
Moſambique, Melinde.
Funghal.
Angra.
St. Jago.
Cuidad, or Pavoiſam.
In ASIA, and thereabouts,
On the Coaſt of Perſia, India,
And part of the Iſles of Ceylan, of the Moluccoes,
Ormus.
Diu, Goa, Malacca.
Colombo.
Noſtro Senioro del Roſario.
In AMERICA,
Brazil.
St. Salvador, Olinda, Parayba.


The Eſtates of the Crown of CASTILE, are
About EUROPE; as
In SPAIN; to wit,
In the midſt of the Country, the
Kingdom of Leon,
Leon,
Aſtorga.
Kingdom of Caſtile,
Burgos,
Valadolid,
Toledo,
Madrid.
Towards the North, the
Signiory of Biſcay,
Kingdom of Aſturie,
Kingdom of Gallicia,
Bilboa,
Oviedo,
St. Jago de Compoſtella.
Towards the South, the
Kingdom of Andaloufia,
Siviſa,
Cordova,
Cadiz.
Kingdom of Granada,
Granada,
Malaga.
Towards France, the
Kingdom of Murcia,
Alicant.
Kingdom of Navarre,
Pamplona.
FRANCE; to wit,
The LOW COUNTREYS; where are the
Dutchy of Brabant,
Louvain,
Bruſſelles.
Dutchy of Limbourg,
Limbourg.
Dutchy of Luxembourg,
Luxembourg,
Thionville,
Dutchy of Gueldres,
Ruremonde,
Gueldres.
County of Flanders,
Gand, or Gaunt,
Liſle.
County of Artois,
Arras,
St. Omer.
County of Haynaut,
Mons.
County of Namur,
Namur.
Marquiſate of the Empire,
Anvers, or Antwerp.
Seigniory of
Malines,
The FRENCH County; where are the Balliages of
Dole,
Gray,
Salins.
In ITALY; to wit,
The Eſtate of the Dutchy of MILAN; viz.
Milaneſe,
Pavieſe,
Cremoneſe,
Alpeſre,
Alexandrin,
Milan.
Pavia.
Cremona.
Come.
Alexandria de la Paille.
On the River of GENES, the Eſtates of
Finale, and
Pontremoli.
On the Coaſt of TOSCANY, are the
Eſtate of the Preſidii,
Orbetello,
Porto Hercole.
Protection of the Seignory of
Piombino.
In AFRICA; as
Terra Firma, on the Coaſt of Barbary,
Marquiſate of Oran, and the
Oran,
Maſulquivir,
Penou de Valez.
In the Weſtern Ocean,
The CANARY Iſles,
The Great Canary,
Canary.
In ASIA; as Towards the Land of AUSTRALES,
In the E. Ocean,
The PHILIPPINE Iſles,
Luſon, or Manilla,
Manilla.
The Iſle of SALOMON, or of
New Guinee,
Iſabella.
InAMERICA; as
SEPTENTRIONALE, or MEXICANE, where are the Audiences of
St. DOMINGO,
Iſles of Antilles,
S. Domingo in Hiſpaniola
Havana, in Cuba,
St. Jean de Puerto Rico.
Florida,
St. Auguſtino.
MEXICO, or NEW SPAIN,
Mexico,
Mexico.
Mechoacan,
Valadolid.
Panuco,
St. Eſtevan del Puerto.
Tlaſcala,
los Angeles.
Guaxaca,
Antequerra.
Jucatan,
Merida.
Tavaſco,
Neuſtra Seniore de la Victoria.
GUADALAJARA, or New GALLICIA,
Guadalajara,
Guadalajara.
Xaliſco,
Compoſtella.
Chiametlan,
St. Sebaſtian.
Culiacan,
St. Michael.
Cinaloa,
St. John Ro.
los Zacatecas,
los Zacatecas.
New Biſcay,
Indies.
GUATEMALA,
Guatemala,
St. Jago de Guatemala.
Soconuſco,
Gueverlan.
Chiapa,
Guidad Real.
Verapax,
Verapax.
Honduras,
Valadolid.
Nicaragua,
Leon de Nicaragua.
Coſtarica,
Cartago.
Veragua,
La Conception.
MERIDIONALE, or PERUVIANE; where are the Audiences or Regions of
PANAMA,
Panama,
Porto Bello,
Panama.
New Kingdom of GRANADA,
Cartagena,
Cartagena.
Sr. Martha,
St. Martha.
New Kingdom of Granada,
St. Fe de Bogota.
Rio de la Hacha,
Noſt. Sen. de los Remedios.
Venezuela,
Venezuela, or Cori.
New Caſtile,
Cordova la Nueva.
PERU,
Popayan,
Popayan,
Cali.
Quito,
St. Franciſco de Quito.
los Quixos,
Baeſa.
Pacamores,
St. John de las Salinas.
Lima,
Lima, or los Reyes,
Cuſco,
la Plata,
Poteſſi.
St. Cruz de la Sierra.
CHILI,
los Charcas,
la Sierra,
Chili,
St. Jago de Chili,
la Imperiale,
l'Aſſumption,
St. Jago del l'Eſtero,
Cordova de Tuconan.
PARAGUAY,
Rio de la Plata,
Tucoman,

The

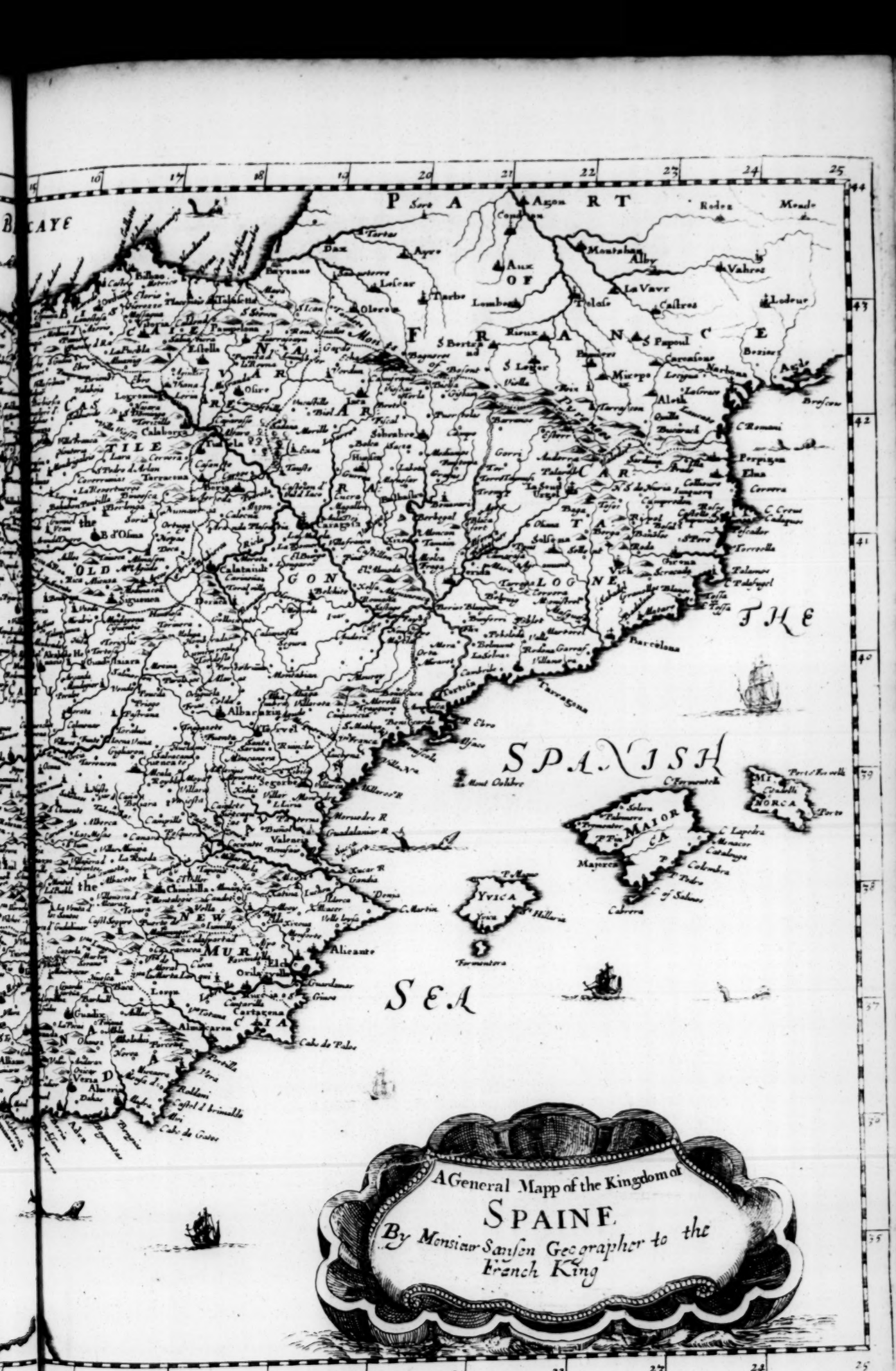

The Eſtates of the Crown of ARRAGON, are
In SPAIN to wit,
In the Firm Land; as
The Kingdom of ARRAGON; where are
Ten Cities, to wit,
Caragoſa,
Lerida,
Huesca,
Jacca,
Callatajud,
Borio,
Daroca,
Teruel,
Albazarin,
And more than a hundred Walled Towns; the chief of which, are
Anza de Sobrarbe,
Benavarri de Ribagorſa,
Monſons,
Fraga,
Camirane,
Vieſcas,
The Principality of CATALOGNE, or CATALONIA, with the County of ROUSILLON; where are
In Catalogne, eight Cities,
Barcelona,
Tarragona,
Lerida,
Girona,
Tortoſa,
Solſona,
Urgel,
Vich,
In Rouſillon, two Cities,
Perpignan,
Elna.
And about an hundred and fifty Walled Towns; the chief of which in Catalogne, are
Puycerda,
Balaguer,
Cardona,
Cervera,
Manreſa,
Caſtillo d'Empurias,
Roſes,
And in Rouſillon,
Collioure.
The Kingdom of VALENCIA; where are
Four Cities,
Valencia,
Segorbia,
Xativa,
Orihuelha.
And about 60 Walled Towns; the chief of which are
Elche,
Biar,
Denia,
Gandia,
Alzira,
Morvedre,
Villa Real,
St. Matheo.
In the Sea, as
The Kingdom, and the Iſles of
Majorca,
Minorca,
Yuiſa,
Majorca,
Citadelli,
Yuiſva.
In ITALY; to wit,
In the Firm Land, as
The Kingdom of NAPLES; where are
Terra di Lavoro,
Naples, or Napoli,
Principato citra,
Capona.
Amalfi,
Salerno.
Principato ultra,
Benevento,
Conza.
Calabria citra,
Conzenza.
Calabria ultra,
Reggio,
Cotrone.
Baſilicata,
Cirenza:
Terra di Otrante,
Tarante,
Lecce,
Otrante,
Brindici, or Brindes.
Terra di Bari,
Bari.
Capitanate,
Monte St. Angelo,
Manfredonia.
Comtado di,
Moliſe.
Abruzzo citra, or Abruzze citerieure,
Lancian, or Lancrano,
Sulmone,
Civita di Chietti.
Abruzzo ultra, or Abruzze ulterieure,
Civita di Penna,
Aquila.
In the Sea, as
The Iſle and Kingdom of SICILY; where are in
Val di Demona,
Meſſina,
Taormina,
Catane,
Parta,
Troina,
Cefaledi.
Val di Noto,
Siracuſo,
Noto,
Moxya,
Termini.
Val di Mazara,
Palermo,
Monreal,
Trapani,
Marzalla,
Mazara,
Xacca,
Girgenti,
The Iſle and Kingdom of SARDAIGNE; where are in
Capo Cagliari,
Cagliary, or Calari,
Oriſtagni,
Villa di Gleſia.
Capo Lugodori,
Saſſari,
Algeri,
Boſa.
And divers Iſles
towards Naples,
towards Sicily,
Iſchia,
Capri,
Lipara, &c.

The


The Estates of the Crown of PORTUGAL, are
In EUROPE, the PORTUGALS or Kingdom of PORTUGAL comprehendeth three Regions, six Provinces, twenty Almoxarifatz; (that is, Courts of Audience, or for the Receipt of the Kings Revenue) 18 Cities; more than 400 walled Towns, 200 Boroughs, 4000 Parishes. The Regions are
Between the Rivers MINHO and DOURO; where are the Provinces of
Berween the Rivers MINHO and DOURO, which comprehend the Almoxarifatz of
Porto,
Viana de Foz,
Ponte de Lima,
Guimaranes,
Porto.
Caminha,
Viana de Foz de Lima,
Barcelos.
Ponte de Lima.
Braga,
Guimaranes.
TRA-LOS MONTES, which comprehendeth the Almoxarifatz of
Miranda,
Torro de Mencorvo,
Villa Real,
Pinhel,
Miranda,
Braganſa.
Torre de Mencorvo,
Chiaves.
Villa Real,
Caſtel Rodrigo,
Pinhel.
Between the Rivers DOURO and TAJO; where are the Provinces of
ESTREMADURA, which containeth the Almoxarifatz of
Lisbona,
Santarcin,
Tomar,
Alenquez,
Leiria,
Setubal,
Lisbona.
Santarein.
Tomar.
Alenquez,
Sintra.
Leiria.
Setubal,
Cezimbra,
Almada,
Palmela,
Alcazer do Sal.
BEIRA, which holdeth the Almoxarifatz of
Coimbra,
Guarda,
Lamego,
Viſeu,
Aveiro,
Caſtel Branco,
Coimbra.
Guarda.
Lamego.
Viſeu.
Aveiro.
Caſtel Branco,
Salvatierra,
Indanha.
ALENTAJO, or between the Rivers TAJO and GUADIANA; where are the Provinces of
ALEN-TAJO; which holdeth the Almoxarifatz of
Evora,
Beja,
Elvas,
Portalegre,
Eſtremoz,
Evora.
Beja,
Serpa,
St Jago de Cacem,
Mertola,
Ourique.
Elvas,
Olivenſa,
Mouraon.
Portalegre,
Crato
Eſtremoz, and Avis.
ALGARVE; and the Almoxarifatz of
Tavila,
Lagos,
Pharo,
Tavila.
Silves, and Lagos.
Divers Eſtates, Kingdoms, Iſles, Cities, &c. in the other parts of the one and the other Continent; among the which are
In AFRICA; and
On the Coaſts of
The Kingdom of Fez,
The Kingdom of Morocco,
The Country of Negroes,
Sierre Leone,
Guinee,
The Kingdom of Angola,
Caffreria, or Cafres,
Zanguebar,
Centa
Mazagan.
Arguin.
Cachieu.
St. George de la Mina.
St Pol de Louanda,
Cambambe.
Cuama, or Sofala.
Mozambique,
Malinde,
Monbaza.
The Iſles of
Madera,
Azores,
Cape Verd,
St. Thomas, &c.
Funghal.
Angra.
St. Jago.
Pavoaſam.
In ASIA; and
On the Coaſt of
Arabia,
Perſia,
Cambay,
Decan,
Cuncan,
Canara,
Malabar,
Choromandel,
Pegu,
Malacca,
China,
Maſcate.
Ormus.
Diu,
Daman,
Bazaim.
Chaul.
Goa.
Barcelor.
Cananor,
Cranganor,
Cohin,
Coulan.
Negapatan,
Maliapour, or St. Thomas;
Sirian.
Malacca.
Macao.
Colombo.
Manar.
Noſtro Seniora del Rozaria.
Meliapon.
The Iſles, or part of the Iſles of
Ceylan,
Manar,
Moluccoes,
Japon,
In AMERICA; and
In BRAZIL, the fourteen Capitanies, or Governments of
Para,
Maranhan,
Ciara,
Rio Grande,
Parayba,
Tamaraca,
Fennambuco,
Seregippa,
Bahia de Todos los Santos,
los Iſleos,
Porto Seguro,
Spiritu Santo,
Rio Janiero,
St. Vincent.
Para.
Maranhan.
Ciara,
Rio Grande, or Potengi.
Paraba.
Tamaraca.
Olinda.
Seregippa.
St. Salvador.
los Iſleos.
Porto Seguro.
Spiritu Santo.
St. Sebaſtian,
Santos.

SPAIN.

The Bay of B
To the R.t Worshipfull
Sr Henry Hunlock of
Wingerworth in
Derbyshire Bar.t
This Mapp is
humbly DD by
R.B
The Streights of Gibralter
PART
OF
AFRICA
A Scale of Geometricall miles
A Scale of Spanish leagues
A Scale of French leagues
Francis Lamb Sculp.


A General Mapp of the Kingdom of
SPAINE.
By Monsieur Sanson Geographer to the
French King
SPANISH
SEA
THE
PYRENEES
MAIOR
YVICA
NORCA
Majorca
Barcelona
Tarragona
Alicante
Cabo de Palos
Cabo de Gates
Cabrera
Formentera
Ebro
Xucar R.
Segura R.
Guadalaviar R.
Mercadere R.
Villaroel R.
Minat Ochobre
Cabo de Salines
C. Formentin
C. Laprara
C. Colombra
C. Pedro
C. Romani
C. Creus
Port Vendres
Perpignan
Elna
Collioure
Cerbera
Torroella
Palamos
Tosa
Rosas
Roses
Agde
Narbona
Leucate
Aleth
Carcassone
Mirepoi
Pamiers
Foix
Tarascon
Bezies
Montpellier
Montauban
Alby
Vabres
Castres
Ledeur
Tolose
La Vaur
Auxerre
Lombez
Tarbe
Oleron
Dax
Tartas
Agen
Condom
Bayonne
Bilbao
Castro
Laredo
Santander
Oviedo
Leon
Zamora
Salamanca
Ciudad Rodrigo
Almeida
Coimbra
Aveiro
Porto
Braga
Viana
Valladolid
Toro
Zamora
Simancas
Tordesillas
Medina del Campo
Olmedo
Segovia
Madrid
Escurial
Guadalajara
Toledo
Aranjuez
Ocaña
Cuenca
Chinchilla
Villena
Elche
Orihuela
Murcia
Lorca
Cartagena
Almeria
Velez Malaga
Malaga
Antequera
Granada
Baza
Guadix
Alcala la Real
Jaen
Ubeda
Baeza
Andujar
Cordova
Carmona
Ecija
Seville
Xeres
Cadiz
Gibraltar
Tarifa
Algezira
Ronda
Estepa
Osuna
Arcos
Medina Sidonia
Tarifa
Tangier
Ceuta
Tetuan
Alcazar
Fez
Mequinez
Salee
Larache
Arzilla
Tanger
Gomera
Ferro
Palma
Majorca
Yvica
Formentera
Minorca
Port Mahon
Alcudia
Sobrarbe
Ribagorza
Pallas
Urgel
Cardona
Berga
Vich
Gerona
Besalu
Olot
Ampurias
Rosas
Figueras
Castellon de Ampurias
Perelada
Roussillon
Collioure
Port Vendres
Cerbera
Torroella
Palamos
Tosa
Rosas
Roses
Agde
Narbona
Leucate
Aleth
Carcassone
Mirepoi
Pamiers
Foix
Tarascon
Bezies
Montpellier
Montauban
Alby
Vabres
Castres
Ledeur
Tolose
La Vaur
Auxerre
Lombez
Tarbe
Oleron
Dax
Tartas
Agen
Condom
Bayonne
Bilbao
Castro
Laredo
Santander
Oviedo
Leon
Zamora
Salamanca
Ciudad Rodrigo
Almeida
Coimbra
Aveiro
Porto
Braga
Viana
Valladolid
Toro
Zamora
Simancas
Tordesillas
Medina del Campo
Olmedo
Segovia
Madrid
Escurial
Guadalajara
Toledo
Aranjuez
Ocaña
Cuenca
Chinchilla
Villena
Elche
Orihuela
Murcia
Lorca
Cartagena
Almeria
Velez Malaga
Malaga
Antequera
Granada
Baza
Guadix
Alcala la Real
Jaen
Ubeda
Baeza
Andujar
Cordova
Carmona
Ecija
Seville
Xeres
Cadiz
Gibraltar
Tarifa
Algezira
Ronda
Estepa
Osuna
Arcos
Medina Sidonia
Tarifa
Tangier
Ceuta
Tetuan
Alcazar
Fez
Mequinez
Salee
Larache
Arzilla
Tanger
Gomera
Ferro
Palma
Majorca
Yvica
Formentera
Minorca
Port Mahon
Alcudia
Sobrarbe
Ribagorza
Pallas
Urgel
Cardona
Berga
Vich
Gerona
Besalu
Olot
Ampurias
Rosas
Figueras
Castellon de Ampurias
Perelada
Roussillon
OLD CASTILE
NEW CASTILE
MURCIA
ARAGON
CATALONIA
NAVARRE
GUIENNE
GASCONY
BISCAY
the Mediterranean Sea
the Bay of Biscay
the Streights
the Ocean
10
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
44
43
42
41
40
39
38
37
36
35

SPAIN.

THE Kingdom of *SPAIN* is almoſt quite encompaſſed with the *Ocean* and *Mediterranean Sea*; and the *Pyrenean* Mountains ſeperate it from *France*. Theſe Mountains are that *Iſthmus* or neck of Land, that uniteth *Spain* to the Continent, and ſerveth as a defence and bound for this Kingdom and *France*; and the Inhabitants that here reſide, are a ſort of rude and Barbarous people.

Spain taken conjoyntly with *Portugal* (which though a particular Kingdom, hath been always taken as a Member thereof) extends it ſelf from the 35*th degree* of *Latitude* unto almoſt the 44*th*; and from the 9*th degree* of *Longitude* to the 24*th*.

Scituation. It is ſeated in the moſt Southernly part of the North *Temperate Zone*, the longeſt Summers-day making 15 *hours*. It is a Country not over fertil in *Corn* or *Cattel*, which doth occaſion the People to order their Diet accordingly, their chief food being *Sallets* and *Fruits*, the product of the Earth, ſo that with a ſmall piece of *fleſh*, they will make two or three Diſhes; and above all their *Oleums* are eſteemed as an excellent diſh. But in recompence of the defect of Corn and Cattel, the Country produceth divers rich Commodities; as *Wines*, *Oils*, ſeveral *Mettals*, *Rice*, *Cork*, *Soda Barrellia*, *Shumack*, *Soap*, *Anchoves*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *Woad*, *Coriander*, *Saffron*, *Anniſeeds*, *Raiſins*, *Almonds*, *Oranges*, *Lemmons*, *Liquorice*, *Wool*, *Lamb-skins*, *raw Silk*, *&c.* Its Commodities.

Spain received its firſt People from *Celtes*, whence came the name of *Celtiberi*; then the *Phœnicians* and *Carthaginians* poſſeſſed the moſt Southern parts neareſt to *Africa*, and endeavoured to make themſelves Maſters of all the Country. The *Romans* drove them out, and poſſeſt it wholly, and in the declenſion of their Empire, the *Goths*, *Vandals*, *Sueves*, *Alains* and *Silinges* ſetled here, and parted it amongſt them. The *Goths* in the end remained ſole Maſters, till ſuch times as the *Moors* vanquiſhed them, and forced them to retire to the Mountains of *Leon*, the *Aſturias*, and *Gallicia*. The People now inhabiting in *Spain* are of a ſwarthy complexion, black hair'd, and of a good proportion; they are very ſtately in all their Actions, of a Majeſtick gate, in their carriages are very grave and ſerious; to their King are very obedient, true and loving; in Adverſity, patient; they are much addicted to Women; are great braggers, and exceeding proud, though ſcarce Maſters of a ſingle *Ryal*. In matters of Religion, they are *Roman Catholicks*, in which they are very devout, not admitting the publick exerciſe of any other Religion throughout the Kingdom. The ſeveral Inhabitants.

Spain is divided into fourteen Kingdoms or Principalities, which are ſet down in the *Geographical Table* of the ſaid Kingdom; and to theſe fourteen Principalities, we may add the Iſles of *Baleares*, ſeated in the *Mediterranean Sea*, which comprehendeth *Majorca*, *Minorca*, and *Tviſa*: and all theſe Kingdoms have formerly been reduced into three *Eſtates*, which they call, *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and *Portugal*. But to proceed to its ſeveral parts.

LEON,

Kingdom of *Leon.*

LEON, called by ſome the Kingdom of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Leon*, by ſome called *Legio*, as ſuppoſed that the eleventh *Legion* quartered here, which was called *Legio Germanica*: 2. *Avilez*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar: 3. *Salamanca*, of note for having the moſt famous Academy of all *Spain*: 4. *Aſtorga*; and 5. *Placentia*.

Kingdom of *Caſtile.*

CASTILE, ſevered into the Old and the New, or firſt and laſt gained or conquered from the *Moors*. The Old *Caſtile* is ſeated Northwards of the New, and hath for its chief places, 1. *Burgos*, famous, as contending with *Toledo* for the primacy of all *Spain*: 2. *Valladolid*, a neat and fair City and a Univerſity, honoured with the Birth-place of King *Philip* the *Second*, who erected a Colledge for the *Engliſh Papiſtical Fugitives*. 3. *Numantia*, famous for defending it ſelf againſt the *Romans* for fourteen years, and at laſt left *Scipio* nothing elſe, but a pile of Aſhes for his Triumph, and 4. *Segovia*, a place of note for Clothing, here made. The New *Caſtile* boaſts of *Madrid* for its chief place, though but a Village, but is the greateſt in all the World, and may compare with many Cities in *Europe*; and its Territory, although neither pleaſant nor abundant, yet is made both, by the reſidence of the Kings of *Spain*. 2. *Toledo*, ſeated on the *Tagus*, and almoſt in the heart of all *Spain*; a fair City, beautified with ſtately Edifices; its Walls are ſtrong, whereon are placed about fifty Towrs of Stone: It is honoured with a Univerſity, famous for the ſtudy of the *Civil* and *Canon Laws*. 3. *Alcantara*, of note for its Order of *Knights*, ſo called. 4. *Alcala de Henares*, dignified with an Univerſity: And 5. *Cuenca*, ſeated at the Spring-head of the *Xucar*, nigh to which is the ſtately Palace of the *Eſcurial* or St. *Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the *Second*; a place of ſuch magnificence, that neither times paſt came near it, nor preſent, doth equal it. In this large and ſtately ſtructure are Eleven ſeveral *Quadrangles*, every one incloiſtred, all expreſſing a *Peruvian Treaſure* to have been ſpent in the building them, and is of ſuch beauty and magnificence, that a voyage to *Spain* were not loſt to ſee it.

Kingdom of *Navar.*

NAVAR, for Antiquity may claim the ſecond place of all the fourteen Kingdoms: It hath for its Eaſtern bounds the *Pyrenean Mountains*. Its chief places are, 1. *Pamplona*, a place more famous for her *Fortification*, than her *Negotiation*: 2. *Viana*, once the Title of the Prince of *Navar*, near which *Cæſar Borgio* was ſlain by an *Ambuſh*; 3. *Eſtella*; 4. *Tudela*; 5. *Olite*; and 6. *Sangueſſa*; all good Cities. This Country was one of the firſt, that with ſucceſs oppoſed the *Moors*.

Seignory of *Biſcay.*

BISCAY, by reaſon of its Mountainous and Woody ſcituation, is the only Countrey of all *Spain*, that remained unconquered by the *Moors*; and for its many *Iron-Mines*, is called the *Armory* of *Spain*. The chief places are, 1. *Bilboa*, a Town of grat Trade, Riches, and much frequented by Merchants, ſeated two miles diſtant from the Ocean, and aboundeth in *Wines*, *Cattle*, and the beſt Blades, known by the name of *Bilboa-Blades*. 2. St. *Sebaſtian*, another noted Town for Traffick: 3. *Andero*; all Sea-port Towns; 4. *Victoria*; and 5. *Toloſetta*; Cities of ſome account.

Kingdom of *Aſturie.*

ASTURIE, or *Oviedo*, hath for its chief place, *Oviedo*; which gave name to the Territory, which conjoyns with that of *Leon*.

Kingdom of *Gallicia.*

GALLICIA, a Mountainous Countrey, like *Aſturie*; hath for its chief places, 1. St. *Jago de Compoſtella*, or St. *Jago*, in honour of St. *James*, who here lieth interr'd; it is honoured with the See of an *Archbiſhoprick*, and an *Univerſity*; and in one of the Churches are kept the Relicks of St. *James*, which are much reverenced: 2. *Bajona*, ſeated at the Mouth of the River *Minius*: 3. *Coronna*, not far from the Promontory of *Nerius*: 4. *Mondonnedo*; 5. *Lugo*; and 6. *Tuy*, ſeated on the River *Minho*.

The

The Kingdom of PORTUGAL.

This Kingdom of *Portugal*, as united with that of *Algarve*, and divided from the Dominions of *Caſtile*, contains the Kingdoms of *Portugal* and *Algarve*. It enjoyeth a ſweet and healthful Air; for moſt part is hilly, and not very grateful to the Husbandman; but that defect is recompenced by their abundance of *Wine*, *Oil*, *Fruits*, *Hony*, *Fiſh*, *White Marble*, *Salt*, *Allom*, &c. which are the product of the Country. Its Commodities.

This Kingdom is about 320 Miles in length, and about 120 in breadth, in which compaſs are ſaid to be about 1460 *Pariſhes*, and many *Nunneries* and *Religious Houſes*. Its *Fruits* are excellent, by reaſon of which here are abundance of *Confectioners*: It is well watered with *Rivers*, having near 200 great and ſmall, the chief of which is the *Tagus*. Extent. Number of Pariſhes.

The People are eſteemed more honeſt, plain, and of a ſimpler behaviour than the reſt of *Spain*, and more devout in matters of Religion. Its People.

The chief Places in thir Kingdom are 1. *Lisbona*, ſaid to be built by *Ulyſſes* in his ten years Travels, ſeated on the *Tagus* convenient for Navigation, and of a great reſort and trade; it is in compaſs about ſeven miles, in which may be numbred about twenty thouſand well built Houſes, and hath thirty and odd *Pariſh Churches*; and on its Walls are about ſixty *Turrets* and *Towers*, which renders a pleaſing ſhew to the Beholders; towards the Continent, it is ſeated on five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River *Duero*, whoſe entrance is defended by a *Caſtle*: and this City being the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, is the reſidence of the Kings of *Portugal*, and the See of an *Archbiſhop*. 2. *Braga*, once the chief of the Kingdom, now dignified with the See of an *Archbiſhop*. 3. *Miranda*, ſeated on the *Duero*, an *Epiſcopal See*. 4. *Santaren*, ſeated on the *Tagus*. 5. *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of high Mountains; which for the pleaſure of the Woods here adjacent, as alſo for the refreſhings which come from the Sea, is the uſual retirement of the Kings of *Portugal* in the heat of Summer. 6. *Coimbra*, ſeated on the River *Mondego*, of a pleaſant ſcituation, being amongſt *Vineyards* and Woods of *Olives*, dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, and a famous *Univerſity*. 7. *Porto*, ſeated at the mouth of the *Duero*, now called *Portuport*, a Town of good Trade, and affords an excellent ſtrong Wine. 8. *Braganſa*; 9. *Lamego*; 10. *Guarda*; 11. *Evora*; 11. *Portalegre*; and 13. *Leiria*.

South of *Portugal* is *ALGARVE*, which was united by the Marriage of *Alphonſo*, the Third of *Portugal*, who had it in Dowry with his wife *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Alphonſo* the Fourth of *Caſtile*, and Tenth of *Leon*. Its chief places are, 1. *Pharo*, a *Port-Town* towards the Streights of *Gibraltar* and *Silvis*, anciently the Seat of its Kings within Land. The utmoſt end of this Country, is called the *Cape* of St. *Vincent*, becauſe the Bones of St. *Vincent*, which the *Chriſtians* kept ſacred, were by the *Saracens* (the then Maſters of the Country) burnt and ſcattered about the Earth.

This Kingdom of *Portugal* is much coveted by the King of *Spain*, who eſteems it the chiefeſt *Pearl* of his Cabinet, and as the chiefeſt *Flower* in his Garland; and which to regain, he hath oft times waged War againſt them, but to no purpoſe.

ANDALOUSIA, the moſt rich and fruitful Country in all *Spain*, and well watered with *Rivers*: It hath on the Eaſt and South, *Granada* and the *Sea*, and adding the Country of *Eſtremadura*, it reacheth Northwards to the *Caſtiles*. The chief Places are, *Sevilla*, or *Sevil*, the moſt beautiful of all this Continent: It is in compaſs ſix Miles, and environed with ſtately Walls, and adorned with no leſs magnificent Buildings, as *Palaces*, *Churches*, and *Monaſteries*. It is ſevered in two parts by the River *Betis*, which are Kingdom of *Andaloſia*.

joyned together by a ſtately *Bridge*. From this place the *Spaniards* ſet forth their *Weſt-India Fleet*, and do hither return to unlade; and the Trade of this City is of that greatneſs that ſome have dared to ſay, that the *Cuſtoms* are worth to the King of *Spain* the yearly Revenue of about half a Million of *Gold*; and indeed this City, and *Lisbon* in *Portugal*, may be ſaid to be the chief Cities for Trade in this Continent; this for the *Weſt-Indies*, and *Lisbon* for the *Eaſt*. It is dignified with a flouriſhing *Univerſity*, and the *See* of an *Archbiſhop*, whoſe Revenue is ſaid to be 100000 *Crowns* yearly, and is eſteemed the next to him of *Toledo*. In this City are ſaid to be kept 30000 *Genets* for the ſervice of the King of *Spain*, which are ready upon all occaſions. And here reſteth the body of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, famous for his *Navigations* and *diſcoveries* of the *New World*. 2. *Cordova*, once the Royal Seat of the *Mooriſh Kings*; from hence cometh that excellent *Cordovant-Leather*. Not far from this City was fought that famous Battle between *Cæſar* and the Sons of *Pompey*, where *Cæſar* gained the day, and made an end of the Civil Wars. 3. *Marchena*, famous for its *Genets*. 4. *Medina Sidonia*, whoſe *Duke* was General of the *Invincible Armado*, in *Anno* 1588. 5. *Xeres de la Fontera*, a Sea-port Town, from whence comes our *Sherry Sack*: and 6. *Cadiz*, ſeated in an Iſle below *Sevil*, a Colony of the *Carthagenians*.

Country of Eſtremadura. *ESTREMADURA*, whis is part of *Andalouſia*, hath for its Chief places, 1. *Merida*, built and made a Colony by *Auguſtus*; and 2. *Guadalcanal*, famous for its Mines of *Silver*.

Kingdom of Granada. *GRANADA*, bounded on the South with the *Mediterranean Sea*: Its Chief places are *Granada*, a ſtately City, where is yet to be ſeen the Palace of the *Mooriſh Kings*, indented with *Moſaical work*, and guilt; its Buildings are of *Freeſtone*, fenced about with a ſtrong Wall, on which are 130 *Turrets*. It is an Inland Town, yet famous for being the reſidence of the *Parliament*, and Court of *Juſtice* for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valadolid* is for the North. 2. *Malaga*, a famous *Sea-port Town* ſeated on the *Mediterranean*, abounding in *Raiſins*, and a rich Wine called *Malaga Sack*. 3. *Almeria*, ſeated on the *Sea-ſhoar*.

This Country was the laſt that the *Moors* were expelled out of, which may be attributed to its barrenneſs, and being ſo Mountainous.

Kingdom of Murcia. *MURCIA*, bounded on the Eaſt with the *Mediterranean Sea*, a fertile Country, and well ſtored with *Fruits*: Its Chief places are, 1. *Alicant*, ſeated on the *Mediterranean*, where it enjoyeth a commodious road for *Shipping*, is a place well frequented, enjoyeth a good Trade, and affordeth for *Merchandize* great quantities of excellent *Wines*, and ſeveral good *Commodities*. 2. *Cartagena*, ſeated alſo on the *Mediterranean Sea*, built by *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, at preſent one of the moſt famous Havens in *Spain*: and 3. *Murcia*, which takes its name from the *Country*, a City of good account.

Kingdom of Navarre. *ARRAGON*, divided in the midſt by the River *Iberus*; the Chief places are, 1. *Caragoſa*, or *Saragoz*, ſeated on the *Iberus* or *Ebro*, anciently called *Cæſar Auguſtus*, by whom it was firſt founded: It is a famous *Univerſity*, and once the Seat of the *Mooriſh Kings*. 1. *Lerida*, ſeated on the River *Cinga*, which hath its Spring-head in the *Pyrenæan Hills*; it is an *Univerſity*. 3. *Hueſca*, alſo an *Univerſity*. 4. *Moſons*, which gives entertainment to the King of *Spain* every third year, at which time the People of *Arragon*, *Kalentia*, and *Catalonia*, make the King a Preſent of 600000 *Crowns*; and this is all the *Taxes* or *Moneys* they pay to the King for three years. 5. *Jacca*; 6. *Borio*; 7. *Calajud*; and 8. *Daroca*.

CATA-

CATALONIA, near the *Pyrenæan* Mountains on the North; Its chief places are, 1. *Barcelona*, ſeated on the *Mediterranean ſhoar*, a place of good ſtrength and Antiquity, being built out of the ruins of *Rubicata*, an old Colony of the *Africans*, and now dignified with the Seat of the Vicegerent. 2. *Girona*, ſeated on the River *Bætulus*, the ancient Seat of the *Arragon* Princes. Kingdom of *Catalonia*.

VALENCE, or *VALENCIA*, encompaſſed with *Murcia*, *Caſtile*, *Arragon*, and the *Sea*. Its chief places are, 1. *Valencia*, ſcituate near the mouth of the River *Guadalangar*, and about two miles from the *Sea*, where there is an open, but ill commodious road for *Ships*, called *la Greno*; yet, as being the chief City in the Country, enjoyeth a good Trade. Here is an Univerſity in which St. *Dominic*, the Inſtitutor of the *Dominican Order*, ſtudied: 2. *Morvedre*; 3. *Segobre*; and 4. *Zativa*. Kingdom of *Valence*.

The BALEARE ISLES.

The *Iſlands* of the *Baleares*, or Kingdom of *Majorca*, comprehend that of *Majorca* and *Minorca*, both ſeated in the *Mediterranean Sea*.

MAJORCA, about ſixty miles from *Spain*; It is about 300 miles in circuit, and hath for its chief places, *Majorca*, where there is a Univerſity; and *Palomera*, which gave birth to *Raymundus Lullius*. Iſland of *Majorca*.

MINORCA, diſtant from *Majorca* nine miles, and is about half the extent of *Majorca*. Its chief place is *Citadelli*, and its chief Port, *Mahon*, which is very large and commodious. Theſe *Iſles* are indifferent fertil in *Corn*, *Wine*, and *Oil*, which are three good Commodities. Iſle of *Minorca*.

Nigh to theſe *Iſles* are two other ſmall ones;

IVISA, or *Ebuiſa*, of about 150 miles in circuit, whoſe chief place is ſo called, and its Port is *Magno*. The chief Commodity which it affordeth is *Salt*, of which here is made a great quantity. And about ten miles from this *Iſle* is the other, called *PORMENTERA*, which is about fifty miles in circuit. The People are excellent Swimmers, as well the *Women* as the *Men*. Iſle of *Iviſa*. Iſle of *Formentera*.

The *Air* of the whole Country of *Spain* is generally good and healthful, and the Soil fertil enough, were it well cultivated; but the thinneſs of its *Inhabitants* ſince their ſetling in *America*, is the chief cauſe thereof.

The whole Country is *Catholick*; It hath 11 *Archbiſhops*, 56 *Biſhops*, 20 or 25000 *Pariſhes*, and abundance of very rich *Abbeys* and *Monaſteries*.

In *Spain* are five great *Rivers*, *viz.* the *Douro*; the *Tagus*, or *Tago*; the *Guadiana*; the *Guadalquiver*; and the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*. The *Douro* is eſteemed for force, the *Tagus* for its renown, the *Guadalquiver* for its riches, the *Ebro* for its name, and the *Guadiana*, not having wherewith to anſwer the others (for ſhame) hides it ſelf under ground. Chief Rivers in *Spain*.

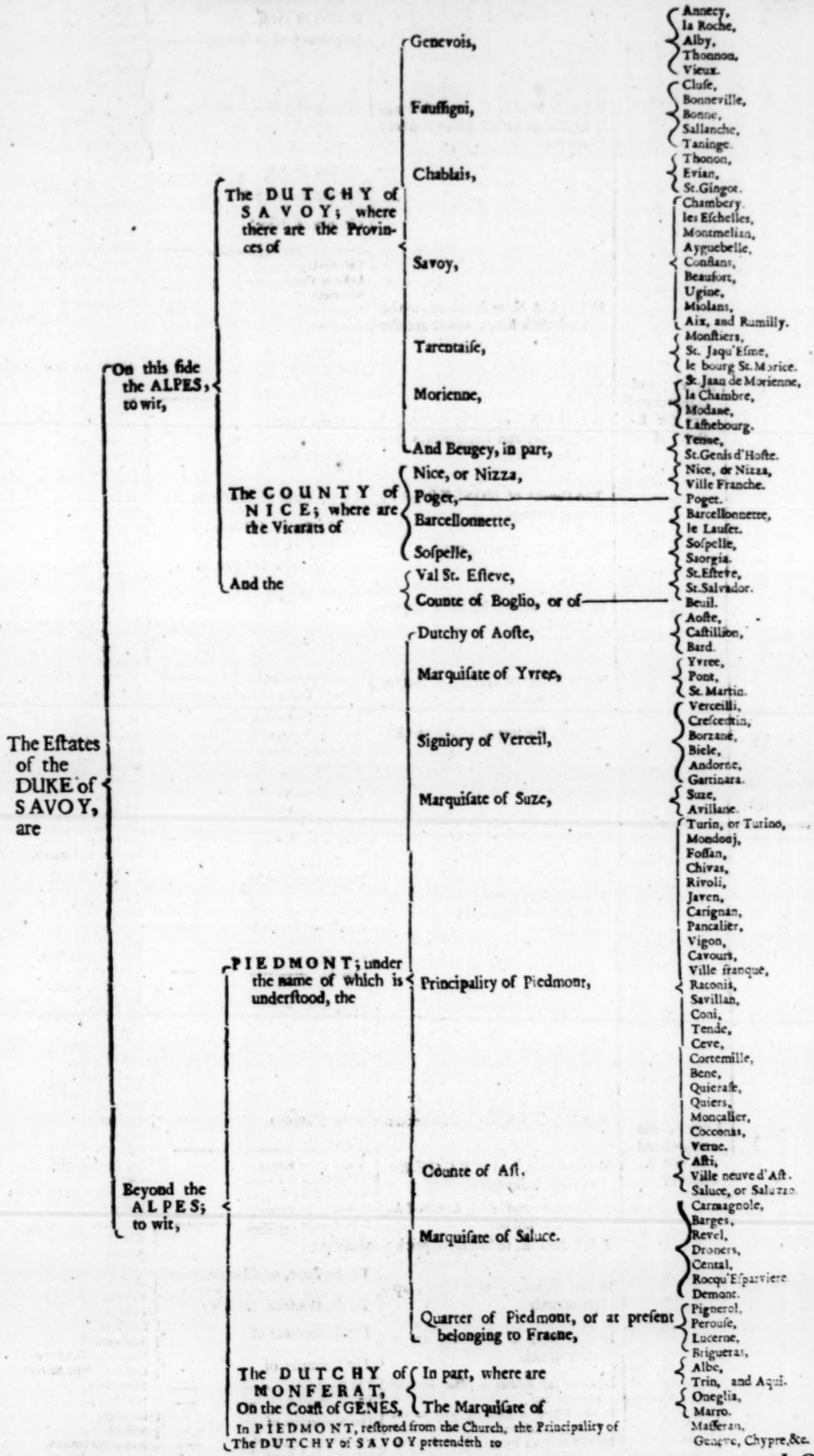
The chief *Hills* in *Spain*, are *Seir Morena*, being a chain of *Hills*, declining from the midſt of *Spain* towards the Streights of *Gibraltar*; and upon theſe Hills it was, that *Cervantes*, the Wit of *Spain*, made the Scene of the many Warlike exploits, atchieved by the flower of Knight Errantry, *Don Quixot de la Manche*. 2. *Inbalda*, or *Idubalda*, which extends it ſelf from the *Pyreniæ* towards *Portugal*: And 3. *Seira Nevada*, which from Eaſt to Weſt croſſes *Granada*, and are very high Hills. Chief Hills in *Spain*.

ITALY ought to be considered in three or four principal Parts, which shall be those of

- LOMBARDY, which may be divided into the
  - Higher; where are the Estates of
    - PIEDMONT, which belongs to the Dutchy of SAVOY, and comprehends the
      - Dutchy of Aost, — Aoste.
      - Signieury of Verceil, — Vercelli.
      - Principality of Piedmont, — Turin.
      - County of Ast, — Asti.
      - Marquisate of Saluce, — Saluzzo.
      - County of Nice, — Nizza, or Nice.
    - MILLAIN, which comprehendeth the
      - Dutchy of Millan, — Milan.
      - Lake of Como, — Como.
      - Lodesan, — Lodi.
      - Cremonese, — Cremona.
      - Pavese, — Pavia.
      - Tortonese, — Tortona.
      - Alexandrin, — Alexandria.
      - Laumelline, — Valenca.
      - Novarese, — Novara.
    - GENES, or GENOA, which is divided in
      - The Eastern River, — Genoa, Sarzana.
      - The Western River, — Savona, Arbengue, Vintimiglia.
    - MONTFERRAT,
      - To the Duke of Mantoua, — Alba.
      - To the Duke of Savoy, — Trin.
  - Lower; where are the Estates of
    - The REPUBLICK of VENICE, which possesseth the Provinces or Parts of
      - Bergamase, — Bergame.
      - Cremase, — Crema.
      - Bressan, — Brescello.
      - Veronois, — Verona.
      - Vicentin, or Vicentinois, — Vizenzo.
      - Padouan, — Padoua.
      - Polesine de Rovigo, — Rovigo.
      - Coast of Trevisane, — Trevigi.
      - Feltrin, — Feltri.
      - Bellunois, — Bellune.
      - Cadorin, — Cadore.
      - Friouli, — Cuidad de Austria, Aquileja, Palma la Nova.
      - Istria, — Cabo d'Istria.
      - Dogado, or Dutchy of — Venice.
    - MANTOA, — Dukedom of Mantoua. — Mantoua.
    - PARMA, and PLACENZA, — Dukedom of Parma. — Parma. / Dukedom of Placenza. — Placenza.
    - MODENA, and REGGE, — Dukedom of Modena. — Modena. / Dukedom of Regge. — Regio, or Regge.
    - TRENT, — Bishoprick and County of — Trent.
  - In the one and the other Lombardy, are divers small Estates, among the which is — Mirandola.
- ITALY, particularly so called; where are
  - The Estates of the CHURCH,
    - Towards the Gulph of Venice; as
      - Dukedom of Ferrarese, — Ferrara.
      - Bolognois, — Bologna.
      - Romandiola, — Ravenna.
      - Dutchy of Urbin, — Urbin.
      - Coast of Ancone, — Ancona.
    - Towards the Tyrrhenian Sea; as
      - County of — Citti di Castello.
      - Perusin, — Perugia.
      - Ombria, or the Dutchy of — Spoleto.
      - Orvietin, — Orvieto.
      - Terre Sabine, — Narvi.
      - St. Peters Patrimony, — Veij.
      - Campagna di Roma, — Rome, or Roma.
  - Among the Estates of the Church, are
    - Dutchy of Castro, — Castro.
    - Republick of — St. Marino.
  - The Estates of TOSCANY,
    - To the Great DUKE of TOSCANY,
      - Florence, — Florence.
      - Sanese, or Siennois, — Siena.
      - Pisan, — Pisa, Livourne, or Ligorne.
    - To divers Princes; as the
      - Republick of — Lucque.
      - Principality of — Alassa.
      - Signieury of — Piombine.
      - Isle of Elbe, — Cosmopoli.
- The Kingdom of NAPLES, sometime divided in
  - TERRA di LAVARO.
  - CALABRIA. But at present into twelve Provinces; whereof are
    - Six towards the Tyrrhenean Sea, to wit,
      - Terra di Lavora, — Naples, Cajeta.
      - Principato citra, or Interiour, — Amalfi, Salerno.
      - Principato ultra, or Exteriour, — Benevento, Conza.
      - Calabria citra, — Cosenza.
      - Calabria ultra, — Regium.
      - Basilicate, — Cirenza.
  - PUGIA.
    - Six towards the Gulph of Venice, to wit,
      - Terra di Otranto, — Otranto, Brundusium, Gallipoli, Brindici.
      - Terra di Bari, — Bari.
      - Capitanate, or Pugi, — Manfredonia, Mont St. Angelo.
      - County of — Molise.
      - Abruzzo citra, or Interiour — Lanciano, Sulmona, Civita di Chietti.
      - Abruzzo ultra, or Exteriour, — Civita di Penna, Aquila.
  - ABRUZZO.
- And to which, for the fourth part, may be added,
  - The Isles and Kingdoms of
    - SICILE, or SICILY, — Messina, Palermo, Siracusa, Montreale, and Catalia.
    - SARDAGNE, or SARDINIA, — Cagliari, Bosa, and Sassari.
    - CORCE, or CORSICA, — Bastia, Mariana, and Calvi.

Together with several small Isles, as those of Naples, Liguria, &c. some of which are taken notice of in the Descriptional part.

The


The Eſtates of the DUKE of SAVOY, are
On this ſide the ALPES, to wit,
The DUTCHY of SAVOY; where there are the Provinces of
Genevois
Annecy, la Roche, Alby, Thonnon, Vieux.
Fauſſigni
Cluſe, Bonneville, Bonne, Sallanche, Taninge.
Chablais
Thonon, Evian, St. Gingot.
Savoy
Chambery, les Eſchelles, Montmelian, Ayguebelle, Conflans, Beaufort, Ugine, Miolans, Aix, and Ramilly.
Tarentaiſe
Monſtiers, St. Jaqu'Eſme, le bourg St. Morice.
Morienne
St. Jaan de Morienne, la Chambre, Modane, Lafhebourg.
And Beugey, in part
Yenne, St. Genis d'Hoſte.
The COUNTY of NICE; where are the Vicariats of
Nice, or Nizza
Nice, or Nizza, Ville Franche.
Poget
Poget.
Barcellonnette
Barcellonnette, le Lauſet.
Soſpelle
Soſpelle, Saorgia.
And the
Val St. Eſteve
St. Eſteve, St. Salvador.
Counte of Boglio, or of
Beuil.
Beyond the ALPES; to wit,
Dutchy of Aoſte
Aoſte, Caſtillion, Bard.
Marquiſate of Yvree
Yvree, Pont, St. Martin.
Signiory of Verceil
Verceilli, Creſcentin, Borzane, Biele, Andorne, Gartinara.
Marquiſate of Suze
Suze, Avillane.
PIEDMONT; under the name of which is underſtood, the
Principality of Piedmont
Turin, or Turino, Mondouj, Foſſan, Chivas, Rivoli, Javen, Carignan, Pancalier, Vigon, Cavours, Ville franque, Raconis, Savillan, Coni, Tende, Ceve, Cortemille, Bene, Quieraſc, Quiers, Moncalier, Cocconas, Verne.
Counte of Aſt
Aſti, Ville neuve d'Aſt. Saluce, or Saluzzo.
Marquiſate of Saluce
Carmagnole, Barges, Revel, Droners, Cental, Rocqu'Eſparviere. Demont.
Quarter of Piedmont, or at preſent belonging to Fraene
Pignerol, Perouſe, Lucerne, Brigueras,
The DUTCHY of MONFERAT, On the Coaſt of GENES, In PIEDMONT, reſtored from the Church, the Principality of The DUTCHY of SAVOY pretendeth to
In part, where are
Albe, Trin, and Aqui.
The Marquiſate of
Oneglia, Marro.
Maſſeran, Geneve, Chypre, &c.

LOM-

LOMBARDY, which may be divided into the

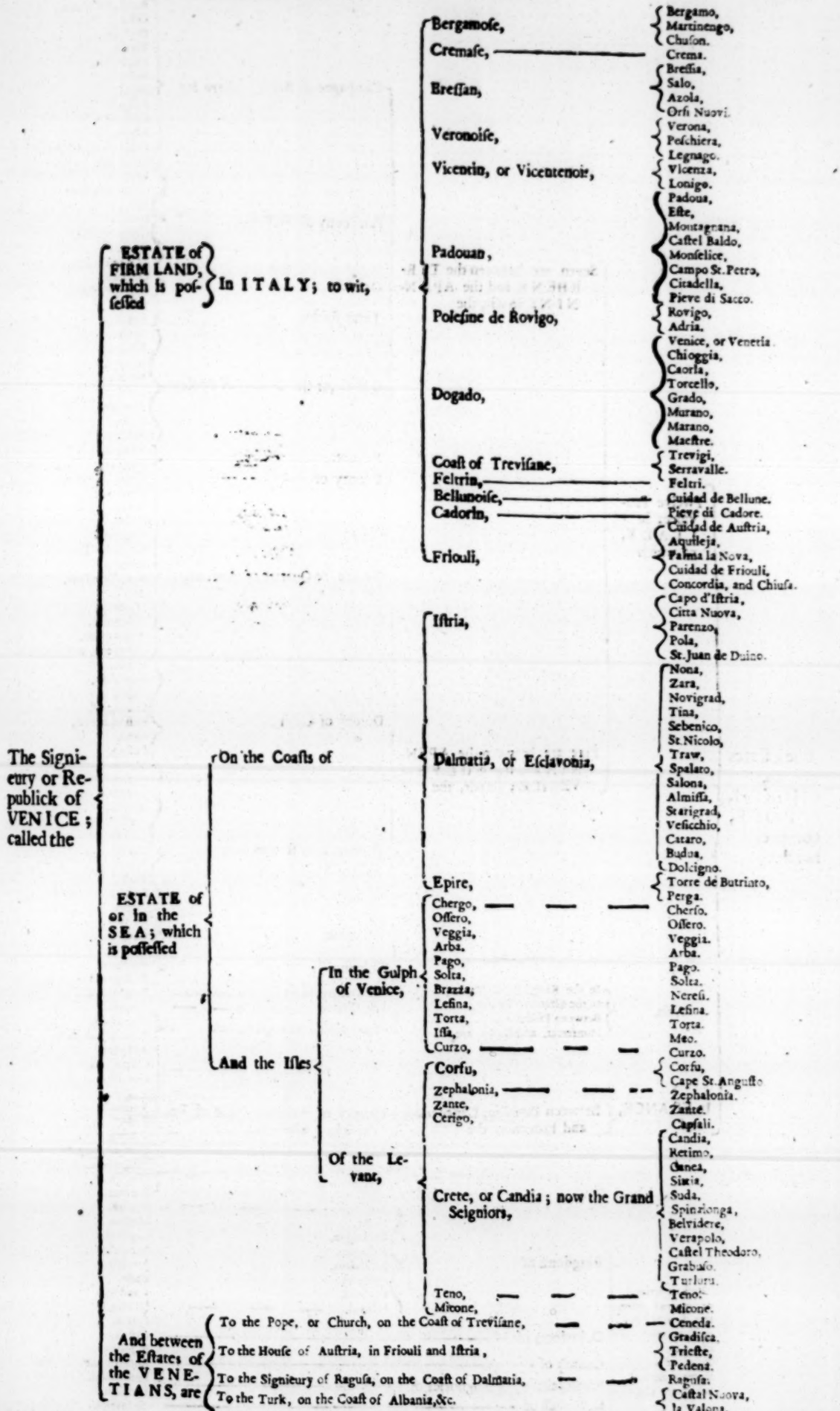
Higher, and comprehendeth the Estates of

- PIEDMONT, as it belongs to the Duke of Savoy; where are the
  - Dutchy of Aost, — Aoste, Ivree.
  - Seignieury of Verceili, — Verceili.
  - Principality of Piedmont, — Turin, Fossan, Mondevi, or Mondoui, Suze, Savillan, Coni, Quierasc, Quiers.
  - County of Ast, — Asti.
  - Marquisate of Saluce, — Saluce, or Saluzzo, Carmagnole.
  - County of Nice, — Nizza, or Nice, Barcelonnette.
- MILLAN, as it belongs to the Catholick King; where are the
  - Dutchy of Millan — Millain.
  - Val de Ugogne — Domo d'Ossula.
  - Lake of Como — Como.
  - Novarese — Novare.
  - Vigevanase — Vigevan.
  - Lodesan — Lodi.
  - Pavese — Pavia.
  - Laumelline — Valenca.
  - Alexandrin — Alexandria de la Paille.
  - Tortonese — Tortona.
  - Cremonese — Cremona.
- GENES, or GENOA, a Seignieury and Republick; which is divided into
  - Eastern River — Genoa, or Genes, Sarzana.
  - Western River — Vintimiglia, Arbengue, Savona.
- The Dutchy of MONFERRAT; as it belongs
  - To the Duke of Mantoua — Alba, Aqui.
  - To the Duke of Savoy — Trin, Casan.
- In Piedmont appertaineth
  - To the French — Pignerol.
  - To its peculiar Prince — Masseran.
- In the Estate of Millain, appertaineth
  - To the Swisses — Lugan, Locarne, Bellinzone.
  - To the Grisons — Churcoire, Chiavenna, Sondrio, Bormio.
- In the Estate of Genes, or Genoa, appertaineth
  - To his peculiar Prince — Monaco, or Mourgues.
  - To the Duke of Savoy — Oneglia.
  - To the Catholick King — Finale, Pontremoli.
  - To the Pope, or Church — Montaldo, &c.
- Between Piedmont, Monferrat, &c.

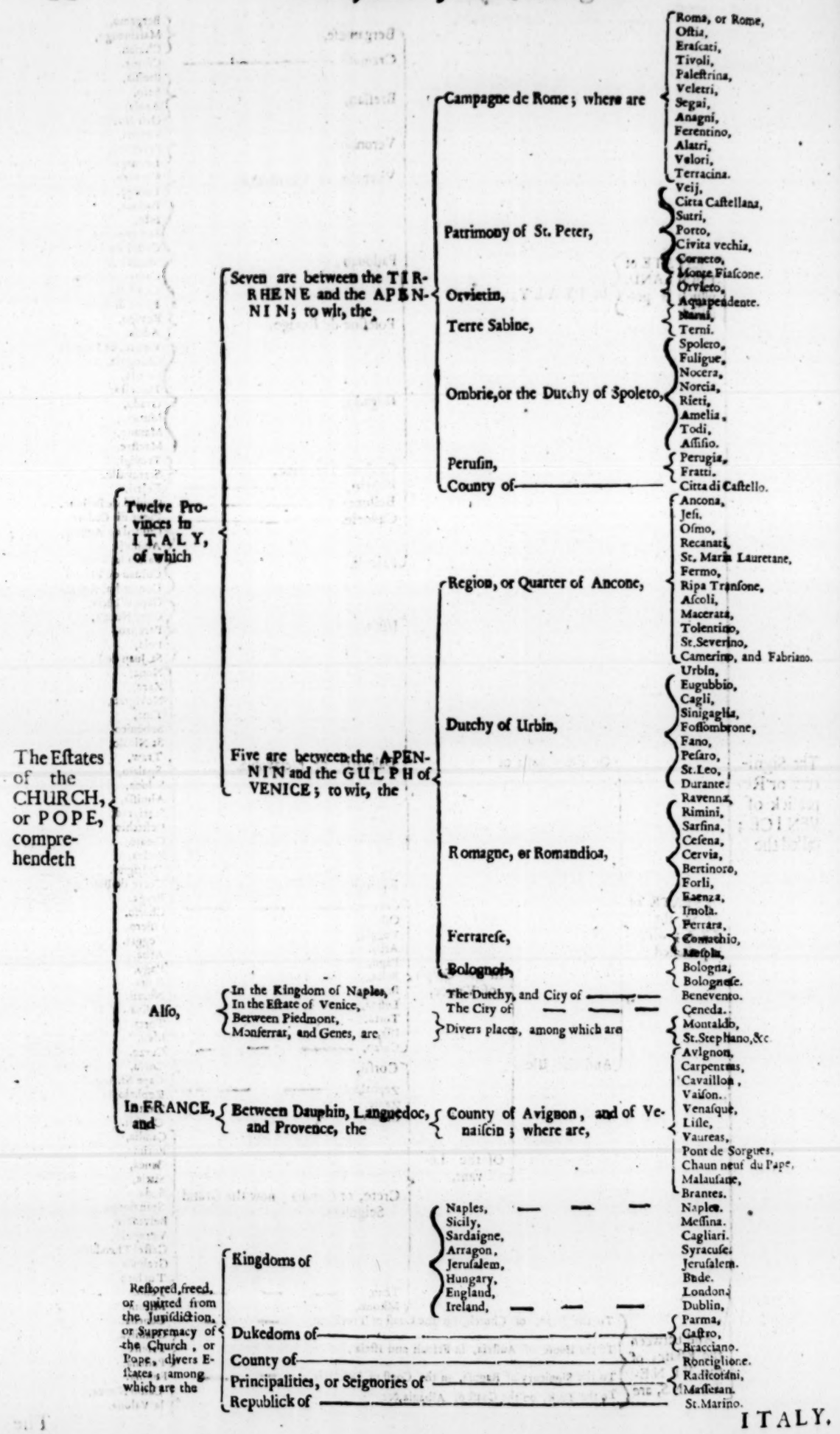
Lower, and comprehendeth the Estates of

- The Seignieury and Republick of VENICE; where are
  - Bergamese — Bergame.
  - Cremase — Crema.
  - Bressan — Bressia.
  - Veronois, or Veronese — Verona.
  - Vicentin, or Vicentinois — Vicenza.
  - Padouan — Padoua.
  - Polesine de Rovigo — Rovigo.
  - Dogado, or Duchy — Venice, or Venetia, Chiogia, Caorla, Torcello, Muran.
  - Coast of Trevisane — Trevigi.
  - Feltrin — Feltri.
  - Bellunois — Cuidad de Bellune.
  - Cadorin — Pie di Cadore.
  - Friouli — Cuidad de Austria, Aquileja, Cuidad de Friouli, Concordia, Palma la Nova.
  - Istria — Cabo d'Istria, Citta Nuova, Parenzo, and Pola.
- MANTOUA, to his Dukedom that of Mantoua — Mantoua, Viadana, Goito.
- MODENE, and REGGE, &c. to their Dukedoms,
  - Dukedom of Modene — Modene.
  - Dukedom of Regge — Regio, or Regge.
  - Principality of Carpi — Carpi.
  - Seignieury of Carfagnan — Castelnove de Carfagnan.
- PARMA and PLACENZA, to their Dukedoms
  - Dukedom of Parma — Parma.
  - Dukedom of Placenza — Placenza.
- TRENTE, to his Bishoprick; where are — Trent, Bolzan, Ceneda.
- In the Seignieury of Venice, appertaineth
  - To the Pope, or Church — Gorice.
  - To the House of Austria — Trieste, Pedena.
- In the Estate of Mantoua, are to their Lords
  - The Dukedoms of — Guastalle, Sabionete.
  - The Counties of — Bozolo, or St. Martin, Castillon della Stivere.
- Between the Estates of Mantoua and Modene, are
  - The Dutchy of — Mirandola.
  - The County of — Novelcare.
- In the Estate of Modene, and to the Duke of Modene, are
  - The Seignieuries of — Correge, Saffuol.
- In the Estates of Parma, to their particular Princes, are
  - The Estates of Palavicin — Bourg St. Domino.
  - The Estate of Landi — Bourg val di Taro.

The


The Signiory or Republick of VENICE; called the
ESTATE of FIRM LAND, which is possessed In ITALY; to wit,
Bergamose, Bergamo, Martinengo, Chusan.
Cremase, Crema.
Bressan, Bressia, Salo, Azola, Orsi Nuovi.
Veronoise, Verona, Peschiera, Legnago.
Vicentin, or Vicentenoir, Vicenza, Lonigo.
Padouan, Padoua, Este, Montagnana, Castel Baldo, Monselice, Campo St. Petro, Citadella, Pieve di Sacco.
Polesine de Rovigo, Rovigo, Adria.
Dogado, Venice, or Venetia, Chioggia, Caorla, Torcello, Grado, Murano, Marano, Maestre.
Coast of Trevisane, Trevigi, Serravalle.
Feltrin, Feltri.
Bellunoise, Cuidad de Bellune.
Cadorin, Pieve di Cadore.
Friouli, Cuidad de Austria, Aquileja, Palma la Nova, Cuidad de Friouli, Concordia, and Chiusa.
ESTATE of or in the SEA; which is possessed
On the Coasts of
Istria, Capo d'Istria, Citta Nuova, Parenzo, Pola, St. Juan de Duino.
Dalmatia, or Esclavonia, Nona, Zara, Novigrad, Tina, Sebenico, St. Nicolo, Traw, Spalato, Salona, Almissa, Starigrad, Vesicchio, Cataro, Budua, Dolcigno.
Epire, Torre de Butrinto, Perga.
And the Isles
In the Gulph of Venice, Chergo, Ossero, Veggia, Arba, Pago, Solta, Brazza, Lesina, Torta, Issa, Curzo. Cherso, Ossero, Veggia, Arba, Pago, Solta, Nereti, Lesina, Torta, Meo, Curzo.
Of the Levant, Corfu, Zephalonia, Zante, Cerigo. Corfu, Cape St. Angusto, Zephalonia, Zante, Capsali.
Crete, or Candia; now the Grand Seignors, Candia, Retimo, Canea, Sitia, Suda, Spinzionga, Belvidere, Verapolo, Castel Theodoro, Grabuso, Turluru.
Teno, Micone. Teno, Micone.
And between the Estates of the VENETIANS, are
To the Pope, or Church, on the Coast of Trevisane, Ceneda.
To the House of Austria, in Friouli and Istria, Gradisca, Trieste, Pedena.
To the Signiory of Ragusa, on the Coast of Dalmatia, Ragusa.
To the Turk, on the Coast of Albania, &c. Castal Nuova, la Valona.

The

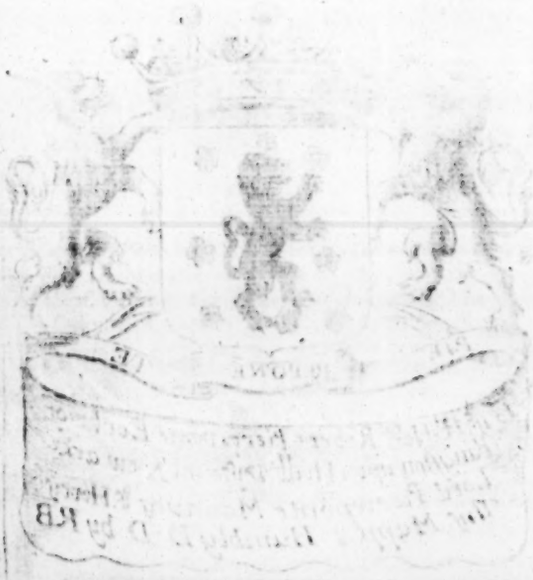

The Eſtates of the CHURCH, or POPE, comprehendeth
Twelve Provinces in ITALY, of which
Seven are between the TIRRHENE and the APENNIN; to wit, the
Campagne de Rome; where are
Roma, or Rome,
Oſtia,
Eraſcati,
Tivoli,
Paleſtrina,
Veletri,
Segai,
Anagni,
Ferentino,
Alatri,
Velori,
Terracina.
Patrimony of St. Peter,
Veij,
Citta Caſtellana,
Sutri,
Porto,
Civita vechia,
Corneto,
Monte Fiaſcone.
Orvietin,
Orvieto,
Aquapendente.
Terre Sabine,
Narni,
Terni.
Ombrie, or the Dutchy of Spoleto,
Spoleto,
Fuligne,
Nocera,
Norcia,
Rieti,
Amelia,
Todi,
Aſſiſio.
Perusin,
Perugia,
Fratti.
County of
Citta di Caſtello.
Five are between the APENNIN and the GULPH of VENICE; to wit, the
Region, or Quarter of Ancone,
Ancona,
Jeſi,
Oſmo,
Recanati,
St. Maria Lauretane,
Fermo,
Ripa Tranſone,
Aſcoli,
Macerata,
Tolentino,
St. Severino,
Camerino, and Fabriano.
Dutchy of Urbin,
Urbin,
Eugubbio,
Cagli,
Sinigaglia,
Foſſombrone,
Fano,
Peſaro,
St. Leo,
Durante.
Romagne, or Romandiola,
Ravenna,
Rimini,
Sarſina,
Ceſena,
Cervia,
Bertinoro,
Forli,
Faenza,
Imola.
Ferrareſe,
Ferrara,
Comachio,
Meſola.
Bolognois,
Bologna,
Bolognese.
Also,
In the Kingdom of Naples,
In the Eſtate of Venice,
Between Piedmont,
Monferrat, and Genes, are
The Dutchy, and City of
Benevento.
The City of
Ceneda.
Divers places, among which are
Montaldo,
St. Stephano, &c.
In FRANCE, and
Between Dauphin, Languedoc, and Provence, the
County of Avignon, and of Venaiſcin; where are,
Avignon,
Carpentras,
Cavaillon,
Vaiſon.
Venaſque,
Liſle,
Vaureas,
Pont de Sorgues,
Chaun neuf du Pape,
Malauſane,
Brantes.
Reſtored, freed, or quitted from the Juriſdiction, or Supremacy of the Church, or Pope, divers Eſtates; among which are the
Kingdoms of
Naples,
Sicily,
Sardaigne,
Arragon,
Jeruſalem,
Hungary,
England,
Ireland,
Naples.
Meſſina.
Cagliari.
Syracuſe.
Jeruſalem.
Buda.
London.
Dublin.
Dukedoms of
Parma,
Caſtro,
Bracciano.
County of
Rontiglione.
Principalities, or Seignories of
Radicofani,
Maſſesan.
Republick of
St. Marino.

ITALY.

PART OF FRANCE
SWITZERLAND
Venice
LIGUSTICK SEA
PART OF
SEA OF TOSCANY
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
AFRICANE SEA
PART OF AFRICA
Isle of Grimault
Isle of Levant
Cape Corse
I. of Elbe
Gulph of Genoa
Gulph of Venice
Cape of Bonifacio
Cape di Sarda
C. Bona
A Mapp of
ITALY
Whose cheifo Estates & Isles are y
Dukedome of Toscania The Republique
of Venice, the Estates of y Church, The Kin
dome of Naples, The Isles of Sicile, Sarda
igne, Corsica, &c. In which said parts
are included seuerall other Estates &
Provinces of less note.

PIE REPONE TE

To the R.t Hon.ble Robert Pierrepont Earle of Kingston upon Hull Viscount Newarke Lord Pierrepont Maunvey & Herrys This Mapp is Humbly D·D by RB



ITALY.

ITALY lies in the midſt of the three moſt *Southern* parts of *Europe*; It is formed like a *Boot*, and waſhed on all ſides by the *Sea*, *viz.* by the *Adriatick*, or Gulph of *Venice*, behind; by the *Tyrrhenian* before, and by the *Ionian* at the foot: only the top of the *Boot* is contiguous to *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alpes*.

The extent of the *Roman* Empire, before *Conſtantine* Ruled, and the diviſion thereof, was accounted to be about 3000 Miles in length, to wit, from the River *Euphrates* Eaſtward, to the *Iriſh Ocean* Weſtward; and in breadth, from Mount *Atlas* Southward, to the *Danube* Northward, about 2000; which large extent was the cauſe of its ruine and declenſion. Extent of the *Roman* Empire.

The Ancient *Romans* were a gallant People, of a ſound Judgment, and a ready Wit, well skilled in *Arts* and *Sciences*; very covetous of glory; of great Valour, as by their ſubduing the chief part of the *World*, who, contrary to the cuſtom of *Invaders*, to ſack and ruine Countries, they taught the People *Manners*, *Literature*, *&c.* The *Romans* were the firſt that wore the *Purple Robe*, and the beginners of *Triumphs*: they had excellent and ſtately *Theaters*, and it was held no diſreputation to be an *Actor*. The Ancient *Romans*.

This Country is ſo exceedingly furniſhed with whatſoever may be found uſeful for Man, and the Soil ſo rich and fertile in *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Rice*, *&c.* in ſome places having three Harveſts in one year, that it is eſteemed the *Garden of the World*. The chief Commodities for *Merchandize* that this Country yieldeth, are *Silks*, both raw and wrought into ſeveral fabricks, as *Sattins*, *Taffities*, *Pluſhes*, *Velvets*, *Cloth of Gold* and *Silver*, *Damasks*, *Grograms*, *Raſhes*, *Fuſtians*, *Glaſſes*, *Alom*, *Armour*, excellent *Wines*, *Oils*, *Saffron*, *Anniſeeds*, *Argal*, *Brimſtone*, ſeveral *Metals*, *Olives*, *Almonds*, *Galls*, *Kids-skins*, *Lute-ſtrings*, *Quickſilver*, *Aloes*, *Gold*, *Thread*, *Anchoves*, ſeveral *Drugs*, *&c.* Its fertility and Commodities.

The *Italians* are very ingenious, reſpective, and grave; exceeding malicious, if affronted; much addicted to *Women*, which are here allowed the liberty to make uſe of their own. They are generally very jealous of their *Wives*, ſo that they are denied the liberty of the Streets, or the common view or ſociety of men. The *Women* are generally handſom, witty, and of a ſeeming modeſt behaviour; it is obſerved of them, that they are *Saints in the Church*, *Angels in the Streets*, *Magpies at the Door*, *Syrens in the Windows*, and *Goats in the Gardens*. Their *Language* is very eloquent. The People of *Italy*.

Italy may be conſidered in three principal Parts, *viz.* *Lombardy*; *Italy*, particularly ſo called; and *Naples*: to which, for a fourth may be added the neighbouring *Iſles*, in which ſaid parts are divers *Eſtates* and *Dukedoms*; all which are at large ſet down in the *Geographical Tables*: and of theſe parts in order. Its chief parts.

LOMBARDY.

Parts of *Lombardy*.

Lombardy is divided into the Higher and Lower; in the Higher are the Eſtates of *Piedmont*, which belongs to the Duke of *Savoy*; of *Millan*, which belongs to the *Catholick King*; of the Commonwealth of *Genes*, or *Genoa*; and of *Montferrat*, which belongs to the Duke of *Mantoua*; yet the Duke of *Savoy* hath ſome part thereof. And in the Lower *Lombardy* are the Eſtates of *Venice*, of *Mantoua*, *Parma*, and *Modena*, which have their Dukes; and of *Trent*, which hath its Biſhop. And in the one and the other *Lombardy*, are ſeveral ſmall Eſtates, amongſt which is that of *Mirandola*.

The Eſtates of *PIEDMONT*, waſhed by the *Mediterranean Sea*, is exceeding fertil, though inferiour to other parts of *Lombardy*: It is divided betwixt the Dukes of *Savoy* and *Mantoua*, the River *Tener* ſeparating their poſſeſſions. It is very populous, numbring about 160 walled *Cities* and *Towns*,

Chief places.

of which the chief is *Turin*, which is the *Palace* and *Court* of the Duke of *Savoy*; it is alſo dignified with the See of an *Archbiſhop* and an *Univerſity*, where the famous *Eraſmus* proceeded Dr. of Divinity. 2. *Aoſte*, or *Avoſt*, ſeated on the Northern limits of the Country. 3. *Vercelli*, a Town of great ſtrength, bordering on *Millan*, to which it did once belong. 4. *Saluzzo*, a Marquiſate and Biſhops See. 5. *Nizza*, or *Nice*, a Sea-port Town, and ſerveth for *Turin*: and 6. *Aſti*.

And ſince we have before omitted it, before we paſs further let us repaſs the *Alpes*, and ſpeak of the Territories of this Duke on this ſide, which is the Country of *Savoy*, from whence he bears his *Title*.

Country of *Savoy*.

SAVOY, adjoyning to *Piedmont*, is a Country very Mountainous and full of narrow paſſages, and conſequently not very fertil. Its chief City is *Chambery*, or *Cambreria*, the reſidence of the Duke, when he is in theſe parts, ſeated in a pleaſant Valley, amongſt Mountains, which are well ſtored with beautiful Houſes, belonging to the *Gentry* of theſe parts; and next *Turante*, which commands the paſſage into *Italy*. Its other places of account, are *Thonon*, *Cluſe*, *Beaufort*, *Ugine*, *Montiers*, *Tenne*, *Modane*, &c.

The Dutchy of *MILLAN* is rich in Natures giſts, being ſeated in the beſt part of *Lombardy*, affording great plenty of *Grains*, *Wines*, *Oils*, and *Silks*, and is ſaid to have the beſt *Rice* in the World. It hath for its chief places,

Chief places.

1. *Millan*, which notwithſtanding its often ſpoils, is ſaid to be the greateſt City of all *Lombardy*. It is ſeated in a wide Plain, wherein are no leſs pleaſant than profitable *Meadows* and *Rivers*; it is ſtrongly fortified with a *Wall*, and a ſpacious and almoſt impregnable *Caſtle*, beſides its *Fortifications*; it is beautified with many ſplendid Ornaments, the chief of which are its *Univerſity*; its *Hoſpital*, liberally endowed, ſeated in an Iſle almoſt two miles in compaſs, and capable to give entertainment to about 4000 Sick perſons. Its *Schools*, *Nunneries*, and *Churches*, which amount in all to 238; moſt of which are ſtately ſtructures, and beautified with curious *Paintings*, *Images* of the *Saints*, *Sepulchres*, and ſeveral Religious *Antiquities*. The whole City is about ſeven miles in circuit, is exceeding populous, very rich, and of a great Commerce, affording ſundry good Commodities. 2. *Pavia*, ſeated on the River *Ticinus* honoured with a famous *Univerſity*, of note for the Battel, in which *Francis* the firſt of *France* was taken Priſoner by the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, who for his ranſom was forced to releaſe all his Title and intereſt to the Kingdom of *Naples*, and this Dutchy of *Millan*. 3. *Cremona*, ſeated on the banks of the *Poe*, firſt built in the beginning of the *Punick War*. It is a place of good account, hath a conſiderable *Trade*, beautified with well built *Houſes*, with the convenience of curious *Gardens*, and hath large and well ordered *Streets*.

Streets. It is of moſt note for its high *Tower* and *Cathedral Church*, where are to be ſeen many Relicks of *Saints*, and curious *Pictures*. 4. *Como*, ſeated on a Lake ſo called, which is about fifty miles in circuit, on which the *Citizens* uſe to recreate themſelves in *Boats*; It is a City of good Antiquity, and here it was that both the *Plinys* were born. 5. *Alexandria*, which from a poor *Village* (through the often ruins of *Millan*,) is now become a fair, ſtrong, and flouriſhing *Town*. 6. *Lodi*; 7. *Tortona*; 8. *Valenca*; and 9. *Novara*.

The State of *GENES*, or *GENOUA*, once very large, but at preſent poſſeſſeth only *Liguria* in the Continent, and the Iſle of *Corſica*, of which we ſhall ſpeak in place more convenient. The People are much addicted to *Traffick* and *Uſury*, and here the *Women* are allowed the liberty of the *Streets*, as alſo to accompany or diſcourſe with Men, which is forbidden them in other parts. Its chief places are, 1. *Genoua*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, at the foot of high *Mountains* between two Rivers, built by *Janus*, the firſt Inhabiter of *Italy*; it is (as alſo its whole State) governed in form of a Republick. The *City* for its ſtately Buildings, makes it to be termed by the *Italians*, *Genoua la Superba*, having beautiful *Palaces*, with delightful *Gardens*; its *Strada Nova* being a ſpacious, long, and ſtrait *Street*, on each ſide imbelliſhed with ſtately *Palaces*, which for the moſt part are ſupported by vaſt Pillars of *Marble*, not to be parallel'd in the World; amongſt which may be reckoned the *Jeſuits Colledge*, than which nothing can be more polite. The *Palace* of the Prince *d'Orta*, with its famous *Bird-cage*, deſerves a particular mention; nor is its new *Mould* to be forgotten, which hath made the *Port* twice as capacious, and much ſafer than before. The *City* is in circuit about eight miles, defended beſides its *Walls*, by a ſtrong and fair *Caſtle*; it is exceeding populous and rich, its Inhabitants being obſerved to be the greateſt *Uſurers* and *Money-mongers* in the World, which is a great obſtruction to its Trade. 2. *Savona*, of note for the interview between *Ferdinand* of *Spain*, and *Lewis* the 12*th* of *France*, *Anno* 1507. 3. *Sarzana*; 4. *Arbengue*; and 5. *Vintimiglia*. State of *Genoua*.

The Eſtate or Country of *MONTFERAT* doth in part belong to the Duke of *Mantoua*, and the reſt to the Duke of *Savoy*; a Mountainous Country, but of a fertil Soyl. It is encompaſſed with the *Appenine Hills*, *Millain*, and *Piedmont*: the River *Tenarus* parts the poſſeſſions of the Duke of *Mantoua* from that of *Savoy*; its chief places are, 1. *Alba*, where *Pertinax* the *Roman* Emperour was born; 2. *St. Vas*, built by the firſt Duke of *Mantoua*; 3. *Caſal*; and 4. *Trin*, fair Cities, with ſome others. Eſtate of *Montferat*.

In the *Lower LOMBARDY* we have placed the Eſtates of *Venice*, *Mantoua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Placenza*, and *Trent*; of which in order.

The Eſtates of the Duke of *VENICE* may be divided into ſeveral *Parts* or *Provinces*, as they lye on firm Land and on the Sea, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Tables* of *Italy*; the chief of which I ſhall here only name, as I have occaſion to treat of the Cities; 1. *Trevigi*, ſeated in the Province of *Marche Treviſane*, a City of ſome account, as commodious for an Inland *Trade*. 2. *Breſſia*, ſeated in the Province of *Breſſan*, eſteemed the ſecond City for largeneſs and beauty in all *Lombardy*; it is more famous in her *Archbiſhop*, who is Earl, Marqueſs, and Duke, than in any matter of trade. 3. *Breſcello*, in the Province of *Breſſan*, famous for the death of *Otho*, the *Roman* Emperour. 4. *Eſte*, in the Province of *Padouan*, from whence came the late Dukes of *Ferrara*: 5. *Crema*, in the Province of *Cremaſe*, ſeated on the River *Serio*, and in a very fertil Soyl; a beautiful and rich City, adorned with ſtately Edifices; and about two Furlongs from the City, towards the Caſtle, is a ſtately Temple, called *Sancta Maria del la Cruce*, a ſtructure of great beauty, and richly adorned with *Pictures*, &c. a place much frequented for Devotion ſake: this City may be termed a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Millanois*, upon which it borders. 6. *Vicenzo*, in the Province of *Vicentin*, ſeated at the bottom of a Hill which commands the City, being well watered with Eſtates of *Venice*.

Rivers, which uniting themſelves not far diſtant from the City, form a Navigable River, capable to receive *Veſſels* of a conſiderable burthen, which paſſing by *Padua* falls into the Sea by *Venice*. It is about four miles in circuit, beautified with ſtately *Palaces*, *Temples*, and Publick buildings; it is very populous, and inhabited by *Nobility* and *Gentry*, who contrary to the cuſtom of the *Italians*, delight to *Travel*; here is a famous *Theater*, capable to receive five thouſand People, whoſe Stage is ſo repreſented by Proſpective, that it ſeems a ſtately City, being modelled by the famous Architect, *Andreo Paladio*: then its *Piazza*, a ſpacious and beautiful place. 7. *Verona*, in the Province of *Veronou*, a fair, large and beautiful City, ſeated on the *Atheſis*, a place of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, and boaſteth chiefly of its yet ſtanding *Amphitheater*, capable to receive about 80000 Perſons. 8. *Padua*, in the Province of *Padouan*, ſeated in the midſt of a ſpacious Plain, about 20 miles diſtant from the Sea; It is a place of good ſtrength, being incloſed with double *Walls* and deep *Ditches*, beſides its *Bulwarks* and *Fortifications*; it was built by *Antenor*, Brother to *Priam* King of *Troy*, whoſe Tomb is here yet to be ſeen; to this City do belong ſeven *Gates*, ſeveral *Stone-Bridges*, and five ſpacious *Piazza's*; it is every where beautified with many ſplendid *Edifices*, as well private as publick; alſo its *Churches* are no leſs beautiful and rich, of which the *Domo* or *Cathedral* is chief; its *Hall* of Juſtice is a ſpacious and ſtately ſtructure, near to which are the *Schools* for Learning: but this City is now moſt famous for its *Univerſity* of *Phyſicians*. 9. *Bergamo*, in *Bergamaſſe*, adjoyning to *Cremaſe*: 10. *Feltri*, in *Feltrin*, towards the Biſhoprick of *Trent*; and 11. *Rovigo*, in the *Poleſine* of *Rovigo*, far engaged towards the *Eſtates of the Church*. And theſe Provinces may properly be comprehended under one part, to wit, *Marche Treviſane*. The chief *Rivers* in this Country are *Addua*, *Atheſis*, *Breuta*, and *Olius*.

Eſtates of *Frioli*.

The ſecond part in this Eſtate of *Venice*, is *FRIOLANI*, encompaſſed with *Hiſtria*, the *Alpes*, *Trevigiana*, and the *Adriatick Sea*. Its chief places are, 1. *Aquilegia*, ſeated on the *Natiſco*, a place not very well inhabited: 2. *Cuidad de Auſtria*, built by *Julius Cæſar*: 3. *Palma la Nova*, the beſt fortified place in all *Italy*; and 4. *Tergeſtum*, or *Treiſt*, ſeated nigh the *Sea-ſhoar*. The chief Rivers are *Natiſco*, *Riſanus*, and *Lizonſus*.

The third and laſt part of this Eſtate ſhall be *ISTRIA*, of an unhealthful Air. Its chief places are, 1. *Cabo d'Iſtria*; 2. *Polo*; 3. *Cita Nuova*; and 4. *Parenzo*: But to proceed to *Venice*, the principal City of this Republick.

City of *Venice*.

The City of *VENICE* is ſeated at the bottom of the *Adriatick Sea*, or *Gulph* of *Venice*, built on 72 *Iſlands*, being diſtant from the main Land five miles, and defended from the fury of the Sea by a Bank of ſixty miles in length, through which, in ſeven places there are paſſages broken for ſmall *Veſſels*, ſave only at *Malamocco*, and the Caſtle of *Leo*, which are ſtrongly fortified; it is about eight miles in circuit, having for the conveniency of the Inhabitants about 4000 *Bridges*, amongſt which that of *Rialto* is the chief, built over the *Grand Canal*, which for length, breadth and height, may compare with any in the World; and for the paſſage of *People* to and fro, here are ſaid to be employed about 10 or 12000 *Gondelos*; all its *Buildings* are fair and beautiful; here are 200 particular places built of *Marble*, adorned with *Columns*, *Statues*, and *Pictures* of great value, erected by the *Senators*, which for their Grandure are fit to lodge and entertain any Prince in *Chriſtendom*, moſt of which are ſeated on the *Grand Canal*. Alſo the Royal and proud Palace of the Duke deſerves a particular deſcription, which for its largneſs, beauty and riches, as well in its fabrick without, as in its *Pictures* and *Statues* within, exceeds all others: then the *Tribunals* or *Courts* of *Juſtice*, the *Senate-houſe*, or great *Hall*. Its *Arſenal* or *Magazine* of War being about two miles in circuit, encompaſſed with high *Walls*, and the *Sea* having but one place or Gate for entrance, and only one Channel for *Ships* to paſs in and out at; and here is kept

kept always in readineſs about two hundred *Gallies*, with all things fit for a Voyage or fight; alſo here are kept a thouſand Coats of Plate, garniſhed with *Gold* and covered with *Velvet*: but above all, its Church of St. *Mark*, which for its exteriour and interiour beauty, and richneſs of its Ornaments, have deſervedly made this City famous; and in this Church, according to report, lyeth the body of St. *Mark*, the Patron of this City, which was brought hither from *Alexandria*. In this City are ſeventeen rich *Hoſpitals*, 56 *Tribunals*, 67 *Pariſh Churches*, 26 *Monaſteries* of *Nuns*, 54 *Convents* of *Fryars*, 18 *Chappels*, and ſix *Free-Schools* for the increaſe of Learning. Its *Piazza*, or broad place of St. *Mark*, adorned with ſumptuous *Fabricks*, *Statues*, &c. is a place much frequented by the *Gentry*. This City is the only place where *Policy*, *Warfare*, and *Merchandize* have embraced one another; the *Gentry* are here held in ſuch eſteem, that it is held for the greateſt honour they can beſtow upon the beſt deſerver, to make him a *Gentleman* of this City, and from them the *Senatours* are choſen; and out of them the *Duke*, who in a manner is only titular, not having the Regal power, his Salary which is paid him out of the Common Treaſury, is forty thouſand *Ducats* yearly.

In this Eſtate are two *Patriarchs*, and 34 *Biſhops*.

The Dukedom of *MANTOUA*, ſeated Northwards of the Eſtates of *Venice*: Its chief City is ſo called, a place of good ſtrength, encompaſſed on the ſides with Water about a quarter of a mile broad, and on the other ſide with a *Wall*; it is ſeated on a River, which emptieth it ſelf into the *Po*. In this City *Virgil*, that famous *Poet*, was born. Dukedom of *Mantoua*.

The Dukedom of *MODENA*, formerly joyned to that of *Mantoua*, hath for its chief City, *Modena*, famous for the Battle between *Anthony* and *Auguſtus*, where *Hirtius* and *Panſa*, the two *Conſuls*, were ſlain, and *Anthony* loſt the day. This place is the reſidence of its *Dukes*, as *Mantoua* is of hers. Dukedom of *Modena*.

The Dukedom of *PARMA* and *PLACENTIA*, Northwards of *Mantoua*, hath for its chief place *Parma*, ſeated in a fruitful Plain five miles from the *Appennines*. It is about four miles in circuit, adorned with many rich and ſtately *Structures*, is very populous, and well inhabited by *Gentry*, who are much addicted to *Learning* and *Arms*: it hath a fair and ſpacious *Campagnia*, which feeds abundance of *Sheep*; and here the Duke hath his *Palace*, which is a place of great delight and ſtate. This Country boaſts of its *Parmaſan-Cheeſe*, ſo much eſteemed by ſome. The chief place of *Placenza* is ſo called; it is ſeated on the *Po*, commodious for *Traffick*, and famous for its *Fairs* in *Exchanges* here quarterly kept, which are much reſorted unto: it is about five miles in compaſs, a place of good ſtrength and beauty, being adorned with many fair and rich *Structures* and *Churches*. Dukedoms of *Parma*, and *Placentia*.

The *Biſhoprick* of *TRENT*, whoſe chief City bears its names; it is ſeated in a Plain, and ſurrounded with *Mountains* of an exceſſive height, being always covered with *Snow*, by reaſon of which it is more fit for *Wines* than *Corn*. The *City* is not large, but indifferent ſtrong; its *Houſes* are fair and ſtately, its *Streets* large, its *Churches* beautiful and richly adorned, and its Royal *Palace* ſumptuous and ſtately. This City is famous for the general Council there held, for the eſtabliſhment of the *Roman Catholick Religion*. Biſhoprick of *Trent*.

ITALY, particularly ſo called.

The ſecond part of *Italy*, according to our method, will contain the *Eſtates* of the *CHURCH* and *TOSCANE*, which may again be ſubdivided into others, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Tables*, of which in order.

Territory of *Ferraresse.* The Territory of *FERRARESSE*, about 160 miles in length, and 50 in breadth, had once Dukes of its own, but now belongs to the *Pope*; its chief place is *Ferrara*, ſo called from the *Iron-Mines* about it; it is ſeated on the *Po*, which ſerves as a Rampire to defend it on the one ſide, as doth a ſtrong *Wall*, well fortified with a ſpacious *Mote*, on the other ſide; it is about five miles in compaſs, beautifully built, and adorned with ſuperb *Edifices*, and is accounted one of the pleaſanteſt Cities in *Italy*, having in the midſt thereof a ſpacious *Green*, into which doth open about 20 *Streets*, moſt of which are about half a mile in length, and ſo even and uniform, that from thence the utmoſt ends of each may be eaſily diſcovered: It is well inhabited, rich, and dignified with an *Univerſity*.

Province of *Bolognois.* The Province of *BOLOGNOIS*, Eaſtwards of *Modena*, hath for its chief place *Bologna*, once the head of 12 Cities; it is ſeated on the River *Apoſa*, and in a large and fertil Territory for *Corn*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, and *Olives*; it is about five miles in circuit, and begirt with a *Wall*. This City is adorned with many fair and proud Buildings, in which they obſerve a uniformity, amongſt which is the *Pope's Palace* for his retirement, which for grandure and ſtatelyneſs is fit to give entertainment to any Prince in *Chriſtendom*. It is dignified with the chief *Univerſity* of *Italy*, famous for the ſtudy of the *Civil Law*; it is proudly built, having ſpacious *Courts*.

Province of *Romandiola.* *ROMANDIOLA*, or *ROMAGNE*, Eaſtwards of *Bologneſe*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Ravenna*, ſeated on the *Adriatick*, and once a place of good account, having one of the faireſt *Havens* in the World, which is now choaked up. This City was the ſeat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his Succeſſors, then of the *Gothiſh Kings*, and laſtly of its *Patriarch*; but now, as its *Haven* is choaked up, ſo is the Land covered with water, which makes it become uſeleſs. 2. *Rimini*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Rubicon*. 3. *Cervia*, ſeated on the *Adriatick Sea*, a place where ſo great quantity of *Salt* is made, that the *Popes* part is valued yearly at 60000 *Crowns*, and 4. *Faenza*.

Dukedom of *Urbin.* The *Dutchy* or *Dukedom* of *URBIN*, not long ſince fallen to the *Holy Seat*, it lying in the midſt of his Territories. Its chief places are, 1. *Urbin*, ſeated at the bottom of the *Appennine*, formed like a *Miter*: 2. *Belfort*, ſeated in the Midland: 3. *Fano*, a Sea-port Town to *Urbin*, where the *Engliſh* do enjoy many Immunities; and 4. *Piſaro*, a Maritim Town, enjoying a good *Haven*.

Province of *Marca Ancona.* The Province of *MARCA ANCONA*, bounded with the *Adriatick*, *Naples*, the *Appennine* and *Romagne*; it takes its name from *Ancona*, its chief City ſeated on the Hill *Cimmerius*, which likes a Promontory ſhoots it ſelf into the *Sea*, having the beſt *Haven* in *Italy*, towards the *Adriatick Sea*, the entrance into which is ſhut up by two Chains, the better to ſecure the *Port*. It is a City of good ſtrength, being encompaſſed with *Walls* and *Bulwarks*; its *Houſes* are fair, and its *Inhabitants* rich. 2. *Loretto*, famous for the Church of the *Virgin Mary*, which, as 'tis ſaid was brought from *Paleſtine* in the Air by *Angels* for the Sins of the People, and is now a ſtately Structure, and richly adorned with the Preſents dedicated to the *Virgin Mary*, and is much reſorted

reſorted unto by Pilgrims. 3. *Marcerata*, the Seat of the *Governours* of this Province; and here is a *Colledge* of *Lawyers* for the hearing and determining of cauſes. 4. *Adria*, which gave name to the adjoyning *Sea*: 5. *Aſcoli* the *Fair*: and 6. *Fermo* the *Strong*.

The Province or part of *PERUSIN* is Weſtwards of *Ombriæ*, its chief place is *Perugia*, where *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the Brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *Anthony* the *Triumvir*, which ſaid place at the Siege became alſo obedient unto him; and nigh to this City is *Lago de Perugia*, of about thirty miles in circuit, near whoſe Banks, *Hannibal* ſlew *Flaminius* 15000 of his *Romans*: here is alſo *Lacus Vademonius*, where *Dolabella* vanquiſhed ſuch of the *Gauls* as had eſcaped the Sword of *Camillus*. Province of Perugia.

The *Dutchy* of *SPOLETO*, anciently called *Ombria*, as ſcituate under the *Appennine Hills*; hath for its chief places, 1. *Spoleto*, of great antiquity, where are yet remaining ſtately *Aqueducts*, the *Temple* of *Concord*, &c. 2. *Aſſiſio*, famous for little, but being the Birth-place of St. *Francis*. 3 *Fuligne*; 4. *Todi*; 5. *Amelia*; and 6. *Rieti*. Dutchy of Spolet.

The Land of *SABINE*, Southwards of *Spoleto*, hath for its chief place *Narvy*, which is of ſome Account. Land of Sabine.

The Province of *ORIETIN*, Weſtwards of *Spoleto*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it amazes thoſe that look into the adjacent Valleys; and 2. *Aquapendente*. Province of Orietin.

The part or Province called *St. PETERS Patrimony*, contains alſo all *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*, and part of *Ituria*; it is waſhed with the *Tyrrhenian Sea*; and in this part are the Mountains called *Gallicanum*, in which *Hannibal* frighted that noble Captain *Fab. Maximus* with a Stratagem, which was by having 2000 *Oxen*, which carried fire on their *Horns*, by which means he paſſed over the Mountains. Its chief places are, 1. *Oſtria*, ſeated at the Mouth of the *Tiber*, but its *Haven* is ſtopped up; it is honoured with the See of a *Biſhop*, whoſe place is to conſecrate the *Popes*. 2. *Adrea*, to which the *Romans* fled, after the *Gauls* had taken *Rome*. 3. *Veij*, a City of good antiquity, wealth, and largeneſs. 4. *Alba*, once the Seat of the *Silvian Kings*, and of good fame and beauty, but ſuffered much in the *Wars* by the hand of *Tullus Hoſtilius*. 5. *Antium*, a place of great delight, to which the *Roman Emperours* uſed to retire for recreation. 6. *Civita Vechia*, a Maritim Town, abounding in great plenty of *Alom*. 7. *Viterbo*; 8. *Porto*; 9. *Corneto*; 10. *Veroli*; 11. *Paleſtrina*; and 12. *Trivoli*, all places of ſome account; but above all *Rome*, ſeated in the Territory of *Campagna di Roma*, once the Miſtreſs of the World, famous for her noble *Warriers*, who were ſo exact in their *Martial Diſcipline*, for their *Triumphs* and *Antiquities*, and for being the place where the *Spoyls* and *Trophies* of all *Europe*, and a great part of *Aſia*, were laid up; in brief, it was a place ſufficiently memorized by the ancient and renowned *Hiſtorians*. This *City*, when in its priſtine ſplendor, was ſaid to be 50 miles in compaſs, whoſe *Walls* were beautified with about 750 *Towrs*, and ſaid to contain about 463000 fighting men, that is, free *Citizens*, ſuch as were inrolled, beſides *Servants*, *Women*, and *Children*; but this City hath ſeveral times felt the joſtlings of ill fortune, ſo that as to its preſent ſtate it hath not the moiety of its priſtine beauty and ſplendour, ſcarce containing 11 miles in circuit, being almoſt Orbicular, in which ſpace there is about one third part waſt ground; yet it is a place of great ſplendor, beautified with many Princely *Palaces*, and ſufficiently famous for being the Seat of the *Pope*, which makes it to be exceeding populous, being thought to contain about 200000 *Inhabitants*, beſides an exceeding great confluence of Strangers which hither come, ſome for devotion, and others to pleaſe their fancies with its *Antiquities* and *Curioſities*; and of the *Inhabitants*, two thirds may be reckoned for *Clergy-men* and *Curteſans*, the later of which St. Peters Patrimony. The City of Rome.

which is esteemed to amount to about 40000, who pay 30000 *Duccats* yearly Tribute to the *Pope*, for which two *Gallies* are maintained and furnished for the service in *Civita Vechia*. This City is seated on the Banks of the *Tiber*, upon *Campus Martius*; it is built upon ten Hills, on which are fair Structures, as on the top of the *Vatican* Hill, is seated the proud Palace of the *Popes*, large enough to give entertainment to three *Princes* at one time. It is beautified and enriched with excellent *paintings* and *curiosities*; and here are the Gardens called *Belvidere*, famous for its rare *Plants*, delightful *Walks*, curious *Statues*, &c. and on this Hill is the Church of St. *Peter*, being the most splendid and famous in all *Rome*, being adorned with rich *Paintings*, *Tombs*, &c. with divers choice Curiosities, as the *Spear* that pierced our *Saviours side*, and the head of St. *Andrew*. In this City are about 300 *Churches*, *Monasteries* for *Nuns*, *Religious Houses*, and *Convents*; here are many *Hospitals* for the relief of the Distressed, likewise several gallant *Libraries*, as the *Vatican*, the *Jesuits Colledge*, &c. And here the *Pope* liveth in more grandure than any Prince in *Christendom*, and the *Cardinals* have their *Palaces* richly adorned, and dwell in good state.

TOSCANY.

Dukedom of *Toscany.*

The Dukedom of *FLORENCE* containeth the greatest part of *Toscany*, to which doth belong those of *Sanese* and *Pisan*, and which I shall include under the Dukedom of *Florence*. It is separated from *Genoa* by the River *Magra*, and the strong Town of *Sarazana*, belonging to the *Genouese*. Its People, even the Duke himself, are generally addicted to *Traffick*, by reason of which it is a Country very rich.

Florence.

Amongst the Cities in this Territory is *Florence*, seated in a no less fruitful than pleasant Plain, near the confluence of the Rivers *Arno* and *Chiane*, about six miles in compass; and by reason of being the residence of the Duke, is very populous and rich, where he hath a stately and magnificent *Palace*, richly adorned; and to make it a perfect place of pleasure, its *Courts* are fair, and its *Gardens* spacious and delightful, having therein excellent *Fountains*, *Groves*, *Labyrinths* and *Walks*, besides a place where all sorts of wild *Beasts* are kept. Besides this *Palace*, here are several fair and superb *Edifices*, being a place so extraordinary beautiful, that *Charles* the Arch-Duke used to say, *It was fit to be seen only on Holy-days*. Here are 44 *Parish Churches*, about 50 *Nunneries*, 14 *Fryeries*, 12 *Priorates*, and about 30 *Hospitals*. This City was built by *Sylla*, that bloody Dictator, and was made a Colony by the *Triumviri*; It was razed by the *Lombards*, re-edified by *Charles* the Great, bought its Liberty of *Rodolphus*, and now continues subject to the *Medices*, Dukes of *Florence*. This City enjoys a great Trade, by reason of the Priviledges and kind entertainment which they find; all sorts of Merchandize being here landed free from all *Imposts*, *Duties* and *Customs*, an advantage not found in many places. 2. *Pisa*, seated at the entrance of the River *Arno* into the Sea; It was once a very large City, and had great Territories, *Corsica*, *Sardinia*, and *Baleares*, having been under its subjection, being very rich and powerful both by *Land* and *Sea*; but the many shocks of Ill-fortune have reduced it within one half of its Ancient limits; yet its many good Buildings shew its ancient splendor. 3. *Sienna*, in *Sanase*, built by *Brennus* the *Gaul*, an Inland-City, seated in a large, pleasant and fertil Territory, adorned with beautiful Buildings both publick and private. 4. *Pistoya*, a City, though small, yet rich and well built, famous for its beginning that bloody faction of the *Neri* and *Bianchi*, as of the *Guelfes* and *Ghibillines*: And 5. *Ligorne*, seated at the mouth of the *Arno*, a fair and beautiful City, being accounted the strongest, and one of the principal Towns of Trade in the *Mediterranean Seas*. This City, not many years past, was purchased by the *Florentines* of the *Genois*, for 120000 *Duckets*; before which it was a place of no great note, nor beauty, being a reception for *Thieves*, *Murtherers*, *Pirates*, and all

all ſorts of Religions, or rather Irreligious people; but now it is well inhabited and reſorted unto by *Merchants*, abounding in ſeveral rich Commodities.

The *Commonwealth* of *LUCQUE*, the *Signiory* of *PIOMBINE*, the *Iſle* of *ELBE*, and the *Principality* of *MASSA*, make up the reſt of *Toſcany*. This laſt is but ſmall in circuit, but yeilds abundance of *white Marble*, and is beautified with the Cities of *Maſſa* and *Carrara*; the laſt oftner the reſidence of the *Prince*, the former ſtrengthned with a ſtately *Caſtle*; both beautified with excellent *Marble Statues*. Commonwealth of *Lucque*, &c.

LUCQUE comprehends the Territory and Town of *Lucca*, which is ſeated on the River *Serchius* in a Plain, about three miles in circuit; a place of good beauty, being repleniſhed with many fair *Edifices* and ſtately *Churches*, amongſt which that of St. *Martin* is the chief; and the Walls are ſo adorned with *Trees*, that at a diſtance it ſeems a City in a *Wood*. It is of note for being the meeting place of *Pompey*, *Cæſar*, and *Craſſus*, all three famous Commanders, where they conſulted and joyned into a Confederacy for the enlarging their Poſſeſſions, and gaining more honour.

Next the *Iſle* of *ELBE*, ſeated nigh the ſhoar, and oppoſite to the Iſle of *Corſica*: Its chief places are, 1. *Coſmopoli*, and 2. *Porto Longone*. And oppoſite to this Iſle on the *Toſcane ſhoar*, is the ſmall *Signiory* of *PIOMBINE*. Iſle of Elbe.

Kingdom of NAPLES.

The third and laſt part of *Italy* in general, we have comprehended under the Kingdom of *NAPLES*, which by ſome have been divided into 6 parts, viz. *Terra di Lavoro*, *Calabria Superiour*, and *Inferiour*, *Abruzzo*, *Pugia*, or *Capitanata*, and *Terra di Otranto*. It is encloſed on all parts with the Sea, except towards the *Lands of the Church*; it is every where very fertil, and by ſome accounted the richeſt in all *Italy*, abounding in excellent *Wines*, *Silks*, both raw, and wrought into many Fabricks; in *Oils*, *Saffron*, *Almonds*, *Anniſeeds*, *Argal*, *Brimſtone*, Mines of ſeveral *Metals*, &c. It is well water'd with *Rivers* and *freſh Streams*, affords plenty of *Cattel*, *Fowls*, and *Grains*; and is throughout repleniſhed with fair, pleaſant, and beautiful *Cities* and *Towns*. Its parts are: Kingdom of *Naples*.

1. *TERRA DI LAVORO*, in which part is ſeated *Naples*, the Metropolitan City in this Kingdom, and one of the faireſt of *Europe*, called by the *Italians*, *Napoli la Gentile*, as being inhabited by ſo many *Nobles* and *Gentlemen*. It is ſeated on the *Mediterranean ſhoar*, amongſt pleaſant *Hills* and fruitful *Fields*, a City of great antiquity, being ſaid to be built by *Hercules*; it is about 7 miles in compaſs, fortified with 4 ſtrong *Caſtles*, a ſtrong *Wall*, with *Towrs*, *Ditches*, &c. ſo that it is in a manner impregnable; it is beautified with many ſuperb *Structures* and magnificent *Churches*, *Monaſteries*, *Colledges*, *Courts*, and *Palaces* of *Princes* and *Nobles*, adjoyning to pleaſant and delightful *Gardens*: its *Port* and *Haven* is commodious and good, where are kept ſtore of *Gallies*. This place of late years hath been famous for its ſtrange Rebellion under *Maſſanello*, a poor Fiſher-man; here is an *Hoſpital*, endowed with 60000 Crowns yearly, for the maintenance of the ſick, maimed and impotent People. The ſecond City is *Cajeta*, commodiouſly ſeated on the *Sea-ſhoar*, a place of good ſtrength. 3. *Potzol*, a fair and beautiful *City*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, enjoying a commodious *Port*. 4. *Capua*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Vulternus*; a place of great antiquity, and once very beautiful. 5. *Nola*, where *Hannibal* received an overthrow by *Marcellus*: and 6. *Euma*, once a fair and beautiful City, but now nothing but a heap of Ruins, nigh to which is the Lake *Avernus*, much famous amongſt the *Poets*, whoſe unwholſom ſulphureous ſlink ſo infecteth the Air, that Birds flying over it loſe their lives; and hereabouts (according to fiction,) the *Poets* deſcend into *Hell*, and here *Æneas* went down into Hell to talk with his Father.

Part of *Calabria Superiour.*

2. *CALABRIA Superiour*, hath for its chief places 1. *Tarentum*, built by the *Lacedemonians*, and is the Birth-place of *Architas* the Philosopher. 2. *Cotrone*, whose Inhabitants were noted for their activity in the *Olympick Games*. 3. *Sybaris*, built and peopled by the *Grecians* after the destruction of *Troy*. 4. *Amycle*, formerly peopled by the *Pythagoreans*: and 5. *Cosenza*, a fair City, being the chief of these parts.

Part of *Calabria Inferiour.*

3. *CALABRIA Inferiour*, whose chief parts are, 1. *Peste*, or *Pessidonia*, where *Roses* grow thrice a year. 2. *Regio Rhezo*, or *Rhegium*, so called, because that here it is thought that *Sicily* was by the Sea broken from *Italy*. 3. *Salernum*, famous for the study of *Physick*: and 4. *Nicotera*, seated on the Sea-shoar.

Part of *Abruzzo.*

4. *ABRUZZO* hath for its chief places, 1. *Aquila*, seated near the *Appennine*. 2. *Aquino*, the Birth-place of that famous School Divine *Thomas Aquinas*. 3. *Sulmona*, the Birth-place of *Ovid* the famous *Poet*. 4. *Benevento*, once called *Maleventum*: and 5. *Molise*, which some esteem to be the chief of the County.

Part of *Puglia.*

5. *PUGLIA*, whose chief places are, 1. *Manfredonia*, dignified with the Seat of an *Archbishop*. 2. *Cannæ*, famous for the signal Victory gained by *Hannibal* against the *Roman Consuls* and the *Romans*, of whom were slain about 42700, 3. *Barletta*, a strong Fortress. 4. *Venusia*, the Birth-place of *Horace*. 5. *Arpinum*, the Birth-place of *Tully*: and 6. *Mont St. Angelo*, a fair City, not far from *Manfredonia*.

Part of *Terra di Otranto.*

6. *TERRA DI OTRANTO* hath for its chief places, 1. *Otranto*, the taking of which by *Mahomet* the Great, put all *Italy* into such a fright, that *Rome* was almost left without *Inhabitants*, and was not fully inhabited until the expulsion of the *Turks* the next year. 2. *Brundusium*, boasting in its *Haven*, which is esteemed not inferiour to any in *Christendom*. 3. *Gallipoli*, a place of some Traffick, affording abundance of *Oyls* and *Cattle*. 4. *Leccie*; 5. *Tarantum*; and 6. *Brindici*; all places of good account.

In this Kingdom are 20 *Archbishops*, 127 *Bishops*, 13 *Princes*, 24 *Dukes*, 25 *Marquesses*, and 90 *Earls*. But let us proceed to the *Italian Isles*, and first with *Sicily*.

The ITALIAN ISLES.

SICILY.

Island of *Sicily.*

The *Island* of *SICILY* is the greatest neighbouring Isle to *Italy*, from which it is divided by a small Channel running between *Messina* and *Regio*, now called the *Phare* of *Messina*, and higher in this passage were the *Scylla* and *Charybdis* of the Ancients. This Isle was once called *Trinacria*, from its being Triangular, and abating 3 *Promontories* at each corner into the Sea, to wit, *Cape de Faro*, regarding *Italy*; *Cape Passaro*, regarding *Morea*; and *Cape Boij*, or *Cape Coco*, facing the Promontory *Mercurio*, of *Africa*. This Isle is termed the Queen of the *Mediterranean Isles*, not only for its greatness, being in compass about 700 miles; but for her other excellencies and admirable fertility, yielding all things necessary for the use of man; it chiefly abounds in *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Sugars*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Salt*, *Saffron*, *Minerals*, *Alom*, *Agats*, *Coral*, *Emeralds*, and *Silk* in great plenty, both raw and wrought, and such abundance of all sorts of *Grains*, that it was called the *Granary* of the *Roman Empire*, and is now found to furnish *Malta*, the adjacent Isles, *Spain*, and some part of *Italy* with her superfluities. Here are many *Baths* of different natures, which are found good for several Infirmities. The chief *Hills* in this Isle are Mount *Hybla*, famous for its *Bees* and *Honey*, and Mount *Ætna*, for its sending forth flames of *fire*, which in the year 1669 made such an eruption, that it destroyed

divers

divers Towns; and for its height, whose top is exalted ten miles above its Basis, and is a good Land-mark to *Saylers*. This *Island* was first inhabited by a race of huge *Giants*, much spoken of by *Homer*, who called them the *Lestrigones*; and the *Cyclopes* of which last was *Polyphemus*, so famoused for the entertainment of *Ulysses* and his Fellows. This *Isle* is divided into 3 *Provinces* or *Valleys*.

1. *VALLI DE NOTO*, which is the South-east part, hath for its chief places, 1. *Siracusa*, once the Metropolis of the whole *Isle*, strongly fenced about with a *Wall*, and other *Fortifications*, being a Garrison of *Spaniards*. Its Buildings are fair, and shew something of its Antiquity; it hath two *Havens*, one towards the South, and the other towards the North-sides of the City. 2. *Leontium*, seated Northwards of *Siracusa*, with which it had divers times struglings for Priority: And 3. *Enna*, a Midland Town or City. Its Parts and chief Places.

2. *VALLI DE MAZORA* containeth all the West part of the *Isle*; its chief places are, 1. *Moreal*, or *Montreal*, famous for its *Archbishops See* and *Church*. 2. *Girgenti*, the Seat of the Tyrant *Phalaris*, who afflicted *Perillus* in the *Brazen Bull*: and 3. *Palermo*, once a Colony of the *Phœnicians*, and now the chief City in the *Isle*, being the Seat of the *Spanish Viceroy*. It is beautified with magnificent *Palaces* and *Temples*, curious Buildings, and fair Streets, famous for being the Birth-place of so many brave Men, as was *Siracusa*.

3. *VALLI DE DEMONA*, possessing the North-east part of the *Isle*, and boasteth of its chief Town *Messina*, seated opposite to *Rhegium* in *Naples*, a place of great strength, as well by Nature as Art, haying before it the Sea, where they have a no less famous and commodious, than a strong *Haven*, and behind it are high Hills. It is the See of an *Archbishop*, beautified with fair and stately *Edifices*; and here the *Vice-Roy* hath a magnificent Palace adjoyning to the *Arsenal*, where their *Gallies*, &c. are kept; and here *Venus*, *Neptune*, *Castor*, and *Pollux* had their Temples, from whose ruins are now erected *Christian Churches*. The *Gentry* and *Citizens* here live in great delight and pleasure; this City is the chiefest place of Traffick in the *Isle*, being very well frequented by Merchants and Strangers. Its other places are *Malaso*, seated on the North Promontory; then *Erix*, where *Venus* was worshipped; next *Catania*, where there is a Colledge for the studying the *Sciences*, but chiefly for the *Civil* and *Canon Laws*; and lastly *Nicosia*, a Midland Town.

SARDINIA.

The *Island* of *SARDINIA*, or *SARDAGNE*, is seated not far from *Sicily*; it is in length about 150 miles, and 90 in breadth; not so fertil as *Sicily*, yet it abounds in *Corn* and *Cattle*, but is deficient in *Oil*, and other Commodities. It is now subject to the *Spaniard*, and is divided into two parts, *viz. Cape Logodori*, and *Cape Cagliari*; Its chief places are, 1. *Cagliari*, seated opposite to *Africa*, having a commodious Haven, which makes it to be well frequented by Merchants. The City is adorned with goodly Buildings, fair *Temples*, and magnificent *Turrets*, being the Seat of the *Spanish Vice-Roy*, as also the See of an *Archbishop*. 2. *Bosa*, likewise the *See* of an *Archbishop*. 3. *Oristagni*, and 4. *Sassary*, both places of good account. Isle of Sardinia.

Its People are of a mean Stature, are very great Hunters, great Pains-takers, no lovers of the *Spaniards*, not much addicted to Learning, and in matters of Religion not over strict.

CORSICA.

Isle of *Corsica.* The *Isle* of *CORSICA*, seated in the *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to *Genoa*, is about 100 miles in length, and 50 in breadth; the Soil, by reason of the Mountains, is not very fertil in *Grain*, but aboundeth in excellent *Wines*; it yieldeth likewise *Oils*, *Figs*, *Raisons*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *Alom*, *Box-wood*, and *Iron-Mines*; its *Dogs* and *Horses* are esteemed excellent. The chief places are, 1. *Bastia*, seated on the North-east part, hath a commodious Haven, and strong Garrison, dignified with the residence of the *Genouese* Governour, under whose command the *Island* is. 2. *Mariana*; 3. *Calvi*; 4. *Porto-Vechio*; 5. *Adiazzo*; and 6. *Bonifacio*. The People are for the most part poor, head-strong, churlish, and not addicted to Literature.

The *Vulcanian* Isles. Besides this *Island* there are abundance of others, though of no great account, and far lesser; as the *VULCANIAN Isles*, lying on the Coast of *Sicily*, being 11 in number; the chief of which is *Lipara*, from whence the rest take their names, being about 10 miles in circuit; then *Stromboli* and *Vulcania* send forth a constant Smoak.

Isles of *Naples.* The *Isles* of *NAPLES* are 18 in number, the chief of which are *Ischia*, *Capreæ*, the retirement of *Tyberius*; and *Ænaria*.

Ligurian Isles. The chief of the *LIGURIAN Isles* is *Elba*, famous for its two Ports *Porto Ferraro*, and *Porto Longone*; Its chief places are, 1. *Cosmopolis*, built by *Cosmo di Medices*; 2. *Gallinaria*; 3. *Giglio*; and 4. *Monte Christo*, which is but a Rock.

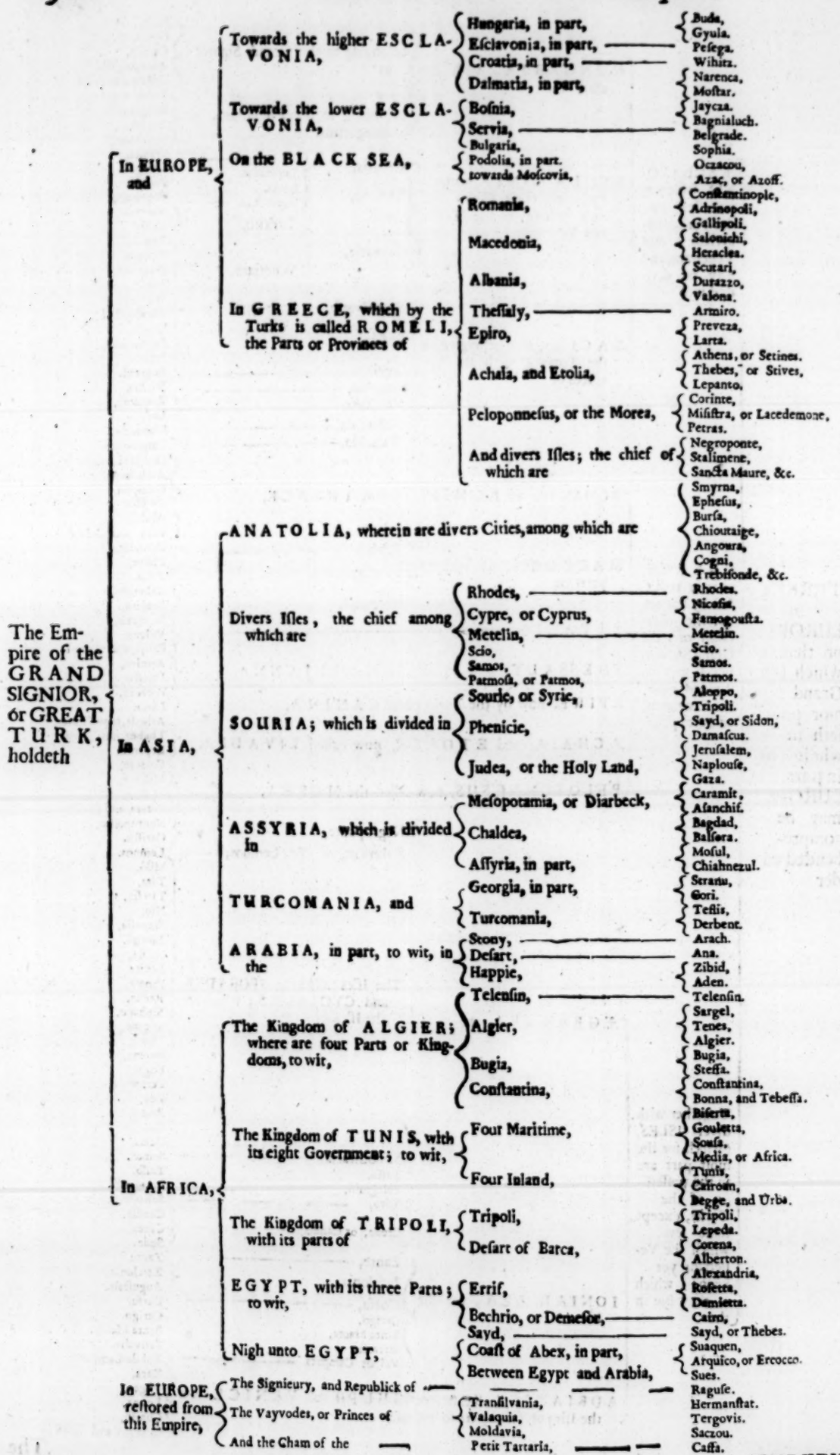
Other Estates. There are yet in *Lombardy* many little Estates, as of *Mirandola*, *Guastella*, *Sabionetta*, &c. about *Mantoua*, of *Pallaviano*, and *Landa*, &c. amongst the Estates of *Parma* and *Placenza*, of *Manaco*; on the Coast of *Genoa*, of *Masseran* in *Piedmont*. The Count of *Pitiglian*, and the Marquess of *Malispine* in *Toscany*; all which Princes, though holding from under the protection of others, have Sovereign Rights.

Italy, with its *Isles*, extends it self from about the 36*th degree* of *Latitude* unto the 46*th*, which are 250 Leagues from South to North, and from the 36*th degree* of *Longitude* to near the 48*th*, which are as much or little more from West to East; but its form scarce fills the third part of what is contained in these *degrees*.

In *Italy*, I make little Account of other *Rivers*, than that of the *Arno*, *Tiber*, and *Po*; the two first descend from the *Appennine*, the last from the *Alpes*.

- **TURKEY in EUROPE; or that which the Grand Signior poſſeſſeth in whole (or in part) in EUROPE; may be comprehended under**
  - **ESCLAVONIA, which is poſſeſſed by the Turk, Hungarians, and Venetians, and may be divided into**
    - **HUNGARIA, with its chief Cities**
      - belonging to the Grand Signior; as
        - Buda,
        - Gyula,
        - Caniſſa,
        - Alba Regalis,
        - Quinque Eccleſiæ.
      - belonging to the Emperour, or Hungarians,
        - Presboerg,
        - Strigonium,
        - Zegith,
        - Newhauſel.
    - **ESCLAVONIA, with its Parts and chief Places, as they belong to the Turks and Venetians,**
      - Croatia,
        - Turks, — Wihitz.
        - Venetians, — Siſſeg.
      - Eſclavia,
        - Turks, — Poſega.
        - Venetians, — Copranitz.
      - Dalmatia,
        - Turkiſh,
          - Narenza,
          - Moſtar.
        - Venetians,
          - Raguſa,
          - Spalato,
          - Sebenico,
          - Zara.
    - **DACIA, (now belonging to the Turks) with its Provinces of**
      - Tranſilvania,
        - Waradin,
        - Hermenſtad.
      - Boſnia,
        - Saraih,
        - Bagnialuch,
        - Jaycza.
      - Servia, — Belgrad.
      - Bulgaria, — Sophia.
      - Moldavia,
        - Zuccania,
        - Lazy.
      - Beſſarabia, — Khermen.
      - Walachia, — Targoviſko.
  - **GREECE, as it is poſſeſſed by (or under the ſubjection of) the Grand Signior; which may be divided into the Provinces, or Parts of**
    - **ROMANIA, or ROMELI, of old, THRACE,**
      - Conſtantinople,
      - Andrinopoli,
      - Gallipoli,
      - Caridia,
      - Abdera,
      - Pera, and Galata.
    - **MACEDONIA, with its parts of**
      - Jamboli, — Heraclea.
      - Camenolitaria,
        - Pidna,
        - Pella.
      - Migdonia,
        - Salonichi,
        - Stagira,
    - **ALBANIA,**
      - Durazzo,
      - Valona,
      - Croja, and Sittari.
    - **THESSALY, now by the Turks called JANNA,**
      - Armiro,
      - Lariſſa.
    - **EPIRE, now by the Turks called CANINA,**
      - Preveza,
      - Larta.
    - **ACHAIA, and ETOLIA, now called LIVADIA,**
      - Athens, now Sitines,
      - Thebes, now Stives,
      - Lepanto.
    - **PELOPONNESUS, now called the MOREA,**
      - Corinto,
      - Miſiſtra,
      - Modon,
      - Petras, and Coron.
  - **Together with divers ISLES, (which for the moſt part are in the poſſeſſion of the Turks, except ſome few, which the Venetians yet keep;) which as they lye in the**
    - **ÆGEAN SEA, are**
      - Negroponte,
        - Negroponte,
        - Cariſto.
      - Stalimene, of Old, Lemnos, — Lemnos.
      - The Iſles called the SPORADES, and CYCLADES; which are the Iſles of
        - Milo,
        - Tira,
        - Tireſio,
        - Nio,
        - Stapalia,
        - Morgo,
        - Nicſia,
        - Levita,
        - Zinara,
        - Raclia,
        - Siphano,
        - Micone,
        - Teno,
        - Helena,
        - Engia,
        - Fermenia,
        - Zea,
        - Andri,
        - Coos,
        - Delos.
      - Samothracia, — Samos.
      - Taſſo, — Taſſo.
      - Pelagniſi, — Pelagniſi.
      - Sciro, — Sciro.
      - Creba, or Candia,
        - Candia,
        - Canea,
        - Suda.
    - **IONIAN SEA, are the Iſles of**
      - Zante, — Zante.
      - Zefalonia,
        - Zefalonia,
        - Auguſtali.
      - Corfu, — Corfu.
      - Cerigo, — Cerigo.
      - Santa Maura, — Santa Maura.
      - Strivalis, — Strivalis.
      - Val de Campara, — Val de Campara.
    - **ADRIATICK SEA, or GULPH of VENICE, are the Iſles of (if any are ſo called,)**
      - Zara,
      - Vegea,
      - Leuna,
      - Cherſo,
      - Curzolo, and Grifſa.

The


The Empire of the GRAND SIGNIOR, or GREAT TURK, holdeth
In EUROPE, and
Towards the higher ESCLAVONIA,
Hungaria, in part, — Buda, Gyula.
Esclavonia, in part, — Pesega.
Croatia, in part, — Wihitz.
Dalmatia, in part, — Narenca, Mostar.
Towards the lower ESCLAVONIA,
Bosnia, — Jaycza.
Servia, — Bagnialuch.
Bulgaria, — Belgrade.
On the BLACK SEA, — Sophia.
Podolia, in part. towards Moscovia, — Oczacou, Azac, or Azoff.
In GREECE, which by the Turks is called ROMELI, the Parts or Provinces of
Romania, — Constantinople, Adrianopoli, Gallipoli.
Macedonia, — Salonichi, Heraclea.
Albania, — Scutari, Durazzo, Valona.
Thessaly, — Armiro.
Epiro, — Preveza, Larta.
Achaia, and Etolia, — Athens, or Setines. Thebes, or Stives, Lepanto.
Peloponnesus, or the Morea, — Corinte, Misistra, or Lacedemone, Petras.
And divers Isles; the chief of which are — Negroponte, Stalimene, Sancta Maure, &c.
In ASIA,
ANATOLIA, wherein are divers Cities, among which are — Smyrna, Ephesus, Bursa, Chioutaige, Angoura, Cogni, Trebisonde, &c.
Divers Isles, the chief among which are
Rhodes, — Rhodes.
Cypre, or Cyprus, — Nicosia, Famogousta.
Metelin, — Metelin.
Scio, — Scio.
Samos, — Samos.
Patmos, or Patmos, — Patmos.
SOURIA; which is divided in
Souria, or Syria, — Aleppo, Tripoli.
Phenicie, — Sayd, or Sidon, Damascus.
Judea, or the Holy Land, — Jerusalem, Naplouse, Gaza.
ASSYRIA, which is divided in
Mesopotamia, or Diarbeck, — Caramit, Asanchif.
Chaldea, — Bagdad, Balsora.
Assyria, in part, — Mosul, Chiahnezul.
TURCOMANIA, and
Georgia, in part, — Serana, Gori.
Turcomania, — Tessis, Derbent.
ARABIA, in part, to wit, in the
Stony, — Arach.
Desart, — Ana.
Happie, — Zibid, Aden.
In AFRICA,
The Kingdom of ALGIER; where are four Parts or Kingdoms, to wit,
Telensin, — Telensin.
Algier, — Sargel, Tenes, Algier.
Bugia, — Bugia, Steffa.
Constantina, — Constantina, Bonna, and Tebessa.
The Kingdom of TUNIS, with its eight Government; to wit,
Four Maritime, — Biserta, Gouletta, Sousa, Media, or Africa.
Four Inland, — Tunis, Cairoan, Begge, and Urba.
The Kingdom of TRIPOLI, with its parts of
Tripoli, — Tripoli, Lepeda.
Desart of Barca, — Corena, Alberton.
EGYPT, with its three Parts; to wit,
Errif, — Alexandria, Rosetta, Damietta.
Bechrio, or Demesor, — Cairo,
Sayd, — Sayd, or Thebes.
Nigh unto EGYPT,
Coast of Abex, in part, — Suaquen, Arquico, or Ercocco.
Between Egypt and Arabia, — Sues.
In EUROPE, restored from this Empire,
The Signieury, and Republick of — Ragusa.
The Vayvodes, or Princes of
Transilvania, — Hermanstat.
Valaquia, — Tergovis.
Moldavia, — Saczou.
And the Cham of the — Petit Tartaria, — Caffa.

TURKEY

A MAPP of
Designed by Mon^sr Sanson

THE ESTATES of the TU
Geographer to the French Ki

ISH EMPIRE in ASIA, and EUROPE

Turkey in Europe.

THE Eſtate or Empire of the *Sultan*, or the *Ottomans*, whom we call the *Grand SIGNIOR*, or *Great TURK*, is part in *Europe*, part in *Aſia*, and part in *Africa*; the greateſt part is in *Aſia*, and the leaſt in *Europe*; and yet this is not the leaſt conſiderable, ſince the *Grand Signior* makes here his reſidence, and hath from hence his beſt Forces. That which he holds in *Europe* extends it ſelf from the 35*th degree* of *Latitude* to the 45*th*, and ſometimes near the 47*th*, which are 250 or 300 *French Leagues*; and from the 40*th* of *Longitude* unto, or beyond the 56*th*, which are likewiſe 300 *Leagues*.

This part of the Eſtate of the *Turks*, which we call *TURKET in EUROPE*, may be divided into two principal Regions, *viz. Sclavonia*, or *Eſclavonia*, and *Greece*. *ESCLAVONIA*, which ſhall be along the *Danube* from *Germany* unto the *Black Sea*, and is bounded on one ſide with the *Danube*, and on the other with the Mountain *Marinai*: and under the name of *Eſclavonia* may be underſtood *Hungaria*, eſpecially ſo much as the *Turk* is Maſter of; the particular *Eſclavonia*, with the Provinces of *Croacia*, *Eſclavia* and *Dalmatia*, of which parts the *Grand Signior* holds but one part; then the Kingdom of *Dacia*. The other Region, which I call *GREECE*, ſhall reach from the Mountain *Marinai*, a great way into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and advancing towards the South, in which are ſeveral *Provinces*, which we ſhall treat of. Diviſion of *Turkey*.

HUNGARIA.

The Kingdom of *HUNGARIA* taken entirely, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Tranſilvania* and *Walachia*, on the South with *Sclavonia*, on the Weſt with *Auſtria*, and on the North with *Poland*. It is in part poſſeſſed by the *Chriſtians*, and in part by the *Turks*. Kingdom of *Hungaria* deſcribed.

This Kingdom is of an exceeding fertil Soyl, yielding *Corn* thrice a year, and feeding ſuch abundance of *Cattle*, that it ſupplied *Germany*, *Sclavonia*, and other adjacent parts, with about 100000 *Oxen* yearly; they have *Deer*, *Pullain*, *Pheſants*, *Partridges*, and all ſorts of *Fowl* in ſuch plenty, that they are free for any one that will take them; and their Rivers are found to afford excellent *Fiſh*. It alſo aboundeth in ſeveral good Commodities, as *Hides*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Copper*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *Fiſh*, *&c.* Its fertility. Its Commodities.

The People are of a rude behaviour, not addicting themſelves to Literature, nor *Mechanical Trades*. They uſe the *Scythian Language*; they are well proportionate, ſtrong, and very valiant. The *Females* are denied the Eſtates of their Parents, neither have they any thing in Marriage; and until Men and Women are marryed, they are not allowed the uſe of Beds to lye upon. Its Inhabitants.

This Kingdom now ſtands divided between the *Grand Signior* and the *Hungarians*. The *Turks* have here four *Beglerbies*, to wit, of *Buda*, of *Caniſa*, of *Agrica*, and of *Temiſwar*; the chief Cities which they poſſeſs, are *Buda*, ſeated on the *Danube*, once the Metropolis of the Kingdom, and Royal Its diviſion.

Seat

Seat of the Kings of *Hungaria*; it was taken by *Solyman* in 1536. Next *Guyula*, a ſtrong Town on the Confines of *Tranſilvania*, which was betrayed by the Governour to *Solyman* in hopes of a great Reward, which proved inſucceſsful unto him to the loſs of his life: then *Alba Regalis*, which by the *Germans* is called *Wiſenburgh*; alſo *Quinque Eccleſiæ*, taken in the ſame year with *Alba Regalis*: And theſe are the ſtrong places, and of good account with them. The chief places in the *Emperours* or *Hungarians* poſſeſſions, are *Presburg*, ſeated on the edge of *Auſtria*, and ſince the *Turks* became Maſters of *Buda*, this hath been the Metropolis of *Hungaria*: next, *Strigonium*, or *Gran*, once taken by the *Turks*, but regained; alſo *Zegith*, taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in *Anno* 1566, who there ended his days: then *Newhauſel*, which hath ſeveral times withſtood the fury of the *Turks*. The other Towns in the *Hungarians* poſſeſſion, were (if not are) *Komara*, in the Iſle of *Schut*; then *Bars*, *Novigrad*, *Vizzegrad*, *Papa*, *Sarwar*, and *Owar*.

The chief Order of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, is that of the *Dragon*, inſtituted by *Sigiſmund* King of *Hungaria*, and *Emperour*.

ESCLAVONIA.

Bounds of *Eſclavonia*.

ESCLAVONIA hath for its Eaſtern bounds the River *Drinus*, and a line drawn thence to the Sea; for its Southern bounds the *Adriatick Sea*; for its Weſtern, part of *Italy*; and for its Northern, *Hungaria*. The whole length of this Country is about 480 miles, and its breadth about 120; it is ſcituate under the *6th* and *7th Climats*, the longeſt day making 15 hours and a half.

Its diviſion.

This Country is divided into the Provinces of *Croacia*, *Dalmatia*, and the particular *Eſclavonia*, and are partly poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*, and partly by the *Turks*.

Its fertility.

The Country is obſerved to be more fit for grazing and feeding of *Cattle*, than for *Tillage*, for the *Sheep* and other Cattle bring forth their young twice a year, and their *Sheep* are ſhorn four times a year; likewiſe their chief Commodities are *Horſes*, for Service; *Cattle*, which yields them abundance of *Hides*, *Tallow*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, and *Wool*, of which they make *Cloth*. Here are alſo ſome Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, which are in the *Turks* poſſeſſion.

In *Eſclavonia*, the chief places in the *Turks* poſſeſſion are *Poſega*, a place of good account, and *Barra*: and in the *Venetians* poſſeſſion is *Copranitz*, a fair, ſtrong, and good City.

Province of *Croacia*.

The Province of *CROACIA* is in a manner wholly poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*, the *Turks* only poſſeſſing the ſtrong Town of *Wihitz*: the chief places poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*, are 1. *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſaken*, famous for its reſiſting the *Turks* in 1592, a fair and ſtrong City. 2. *Gardiskia*, ſeated on the *Savus*. 3. *Novigrod*, alſo ſeated on the *Savus*: and 4. *Bruman*.

Province of *Dalmatia*.

The Province of *DALMATIA*, whoſe Southern parts are waſhed with the *Adriatick Sea*, is divided betwixt the *Venetians*, who hold the greateſt part, and the *Turks*; whoſe chief places are, 1. *Marenza*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar; 2. *Moſtar*, an Inland Town towards *Boſnia*; 3. *Stagno*, and 4. *Sibioncello*, both Maritim Towns; and nigh unto which is the Iſle of *MELEDA*, which alſo belongs to the *Grand Signior*. The chief Towns in the poſſeſſion of the *Venetians*, are 1. *Rhaguſa*, ſeated on the *Adriatick Sea*, a City of great Traffick and Riches, being a Commonwealth of it ſelf. 2. *Spalato*, a Maritim Town on the *Adriatick*, and in a moſt pleaſant Valley on the South ſide of great Mountains; and in the *Wall* towards the Sea, is to be ſeen a great remainder of a *Gallery* in *Diocleſians Palace*. This Town is kept by the *Venetians* as their only *Emporium*, plyed ſucceſſively with two *Gallies*, which carry between this place and *Venice* ſuch Merchandize as are Tranſported into *Turkey*, or from thence brought in. 3. *Zara*, a ſtrong Fortreſs, ſeated on the

the *Adriatick* within the Gulph, which, by reason of its commodious ſituation, is moſt apt to command the whole *Adriatick*; and is ſtrongly fortified and well Mann'd. In this City is a Temple of St. *John de Malvatia*, which was built by a company of *Sea-men*, who being in a great and dangerous Tempeſt, made a Vow, that if they eſcaped they would conſecrate a Temple to the ſaid St. *John*; and being ſaved, they Landed here, and performed their Vows. 4. *Sebenico*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, having large Territories. 5. *Nona*; and 6. *Traw*.

DACIA.

The Kingdom of *DACIA* is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Euxine Seas*, on the Weſt with *Hungaria*, and on the North with the *Carpathian* Mountains. The Country throughout is very fertil, affording for Merchandize, *Oxen*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Tallow*, *Hides*, *Horn*, *Wax*, and excellent Warlike *Horſes*, whoſe Manes are ſaid to hang down to their feet; their *Fruits* are good, and in great plenty, and the Earth is inriched with Mines of ſeveral *Metals*. It is ſeated in the Northern *Temperate Zone*, between the 7*th* and 10*th Climates*, which makes the longeſt day to be 17 hours. Its Bounds. Commodities.

The People are well made and proportionate; they are head-ſtrong, reſolute in their Opinions, and of no ready wit; they uſe the *Sclavonian* Language, they are *Chriſtians*, and follow the *Greek* Church. Its People.

The Kingdom at preſent is divided into ſeveral Provinces, as in the *Geographical Table* of *Turkey in Europe*, is ſet down; all which are ſubject to the *Grand Signior*.

The Province of *TRANSILVANIA* hath for its chief places, 1. *Waradine*, far engaged towards the Weſt, and it is a frontier Town to *Hungaria*, and of ſome account and ſtrength. 2. *Hermenſted*, more towards *Moldavia*. 3. *Weiſenburg*; 4. *Burges*; 5. and *Hanyad*. Province of *Tranſilvania*.

The Province of *BOSNIA* hath for its chief places, 1. *Saraih*, the Metropolitan City, ſeated in a fruitful Valley, which on the North and South ſides are immured with ridges of pleaſant Hills, of an eaſie aſcent. This City is ſaid to contain about 80 *Meſcheetoes*, and about 20000 *Houſes*, which for the moſt part are but meanly built. 2. *Bagnialuch*, once the reſidence of the *Boſnian* Kings; and 3. *Jayeza*, the uſual Sepulchre of thoſe Kings. Province of *Boſnia*.

The Province of *SERVIA*, whoſe chief Cities are, 1. *Belgrade*, once the *Bulwark* of *Chriſtendom*, valiantly reſiſting the power of *Amurath* the 6*th*, and *Mahomet* the Great; but yielded to *Solyman*, *Anno* 1520. when this whole Country became a *Turkiſh Province*. 2. *Stonebourgh*, once the Seat of its *Deſpot*; and 3. *Simandria*. Province of *Servia*.

The Province of *BULGARIA* hath for its chief places, 1. *Sofia*, the Seat of the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, under whom are 21 *Sangiacs*, ſeated almoſt in the midſt of a long and fruitful Valley, beautified with many fair *Hanes* and *Baths*, the chief of which hath hot *Fountains*. Its *Colledge* is magnificent, and its *Meſcheetoes* are many and beautiful, eſpecially that in the midſt of the City, which is the largeſt; and here the doors of the houſes of the *Chriſtians* and *Jews* are not above 3 foot high, which is ſo made to keep out the *Turkiſh* Horſes, who would elſe in their Travels make them ſerve inſtead of *Stables*: ſo great is the ſlavery that they live under. 2. *Oeſco*; 3. *Novi*; 4. *Duroſtoro*; and 5. *Deſtor*; all which are ſeated on the *Danube*. 6. *Proſtavia*, ſeated at the mouth of one of the branches of the *Danube* at its fall into the *Euxine Sea*. 7. *Calatra*; and 8. *Varna*, both ſeated on the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*. Province of *Bulgaria*.

The Province of *MOLDAVIA*, whoſe chief places are, 1. *Zuccania*, once the Seat of the *Vaivod*. 2. *Sotzowa*; and 3. *Lazy*, both good Cities. Province of *Moldavia*.

Country of Beſſarabia.

To the Province of *Moldavia* doth belong the ſmall Country of *BESSARABIA*, which lieth between *Podolia* and *Bulgaria*, and is commodiouſly ſeated on the *Black Sea*. Its chief places are *Kherman*, or *Moncaſtro*, the Seat of the *Turkiſh Sargiack*, ſeated on the River *Tyras*, not far from its influx into the Sea; and 2. *Kabia*, alſo ſeated on the *Euxine Sea*.

Province of *Walachia*.

The Province of *WALACHIA*, being divided from *Bulgaria* by the *Danube*, and is eſteemed the richeſt Province in all *Dacia*. Its chief places are, 1. *Targoviſco*, the Seat of the *Vajuods*; 2. *Domboviza*; and 3. *Brailonum*.

GREECE.

The Parts of *Greece*.

The reſt of *Turkey* in *Europe* may be comprehended under the name of *GREECE*, which is divided into ſeveral parts, to wit, *Romania*, which anſwers to the ancient *Thrace*; *Macedonia*, whoſe divers parts have received divers names, as that of *Jamboli*, of *Camenolitaria*, of *Migdonia*, or particular *Macedonia*, *Albania*, and *Theſſaly*, which is now called *Junna*; *Epirus*, now *Canina*; *Achaia* and *Ætolia*, now *Livadia*; and *Peloponneſus*, now the *Morea*.

Its Bounds.

GREECE, eſteemed the Mother of *Arts* and *Sciences*, hath for its Eaſtern bounds the *Ægean* Sea, the *Helleſpont*, *Propontis*, and *Thracian Boſphorus*; and for its Weſtern, the *Adriatick* Sea and *Italy*. It is ſeated in the *Northern Temperate Zone* under the *5th* and *6th Climates*, the longeſt day being 15 hours.

Its fertility, and Commodities.

The *Soil* without doubt is very rich and fruitful, and would be very profitable to the *Husbandman* if pains were taken in tilling it; but the *Great Turk* ſeizing on their Eſtates, when and as often as he pleaſeth, makes them careleſs to cultivate it; yet here are found ſeveral good *Commodities*, which are tranſported to other places, as *Wines*, *Oils*, *Silk*, both raw, and wrought into ſeveral *Manufactures*, as *Velvets*, *Damasks*, &c. alſo *Grograms*, *Brimſtone*, *Copper*, *Vitriol*, *Cottons*, *Sopes*, *Carpets*, *Cute*, *Currants*, *Cumin-ſeed*, *Anniſeeds*, &c.

The Ancient and preſent *Greeks*.

The *Grecians*, though a ſcattered People, ſince the *Turks* became Maſters of their Country, yet ſtill retain their *Name*, *Religion*, *Cuſtoms*, and *Language*, as indeed they do in all other places where they live. They were once a Nation ſo excellent, that their Precepts and Examples do yet remain, as approved *Canons* to direct the mind to Vertue; they were Lovers of freedom, every way noble; in matters of *Government* famous, in *Arms* glorious, in *Arts* admirable, and to whom the reſt of the World were held *Barbarians*; but ſince they became under the *Turkiſh* yoke (for the generality) their Spirits are ſo low, that their *knowledge* is turned into *ignorance*, their *liberty* into contented *ſlavery*, their *Vertues* into *Vices*, and their *induſtry* in Arts and Sciences into *idleneſs*. They are much addicted to *drink* and *dancing*, for which they had the name of *Merry Greeks*; they are of a good proportion, and of a ſwarthy complexion; their *Women* are well favoured, brown, and exceſſively amorous; in matters of *Habit* they differ little from thoſe amongſt whom they live. The *Chriſtian Faith* was here eſtabliſhed by *Timothy*, to whom St. *Paul* wrote two *Epiſtles*. The Fathers which this Church moſt adhereth unto are *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and the two *Gregories*; and the Church is governed by *Patriarchs*, one of *Conſtantinople*, another of *Alexandria*, another of *Jeruſalem*, and another of *Antioch*, freely exerciſing their Religion, which differeth much from the Church of *Rome*, as I ſhall in place elſewhere take notice of, and have every where their *Temples* and *Monaſteries*. If a *Patriarch* die, another is elected by the Synod of *Biſhops*.

This Country hath bred ſeveral famous Men, as *Alexander* the Subverter of the *Perſian Monarchy*, *Xenophon*, *Plutarch*, *Herodotus*, and *Thucydides*, famous *Hiſtoriographers*; *Epaminondas*, *Pyrrhus*, *Miltiades*, and *Ariſtides*, Captains; *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Socrates*, and *Theophraſtus*, Divine Philoſophers; *Demoſthenes*, *Æſchines*, and *Iſocrates*, eloquent Oratours; with ſeveral others, too tedious to name; but to proceed to the *Provinces*. Famous Men here bred.

ROMANIA, particularly ſo called, a Country of it ſelf, neither of a rich Soyl, nor pleaſant Air, more inclining to cold than heat; yet by reaſon of the famous Cities of *Conſtantinople*, *Adrianople*, and others here ſeated, renders it the chief, and beſt inhabited of all *Greece*. Its chief places are *Adrianople*, ſo called by the Emperour *Hadrian*, who repaired it; it was added to the Kingdom of the *Turks* by *Bajazet*, *Anno* 1362, and continued the Seat of their Kings till *Mahomet* the Great took *Conſtantinople* from *Conſtantine Palæologus*, the laſt of the Eaſtern Emperours, about 90 years after. *Blunt* in his Voyage to the *Levant*, in his deſcription of this City ſaith, That it is ſeated on three low *Hills*, of which that in the midſt is the largeſt and faireſt, on the top of which is a ſtately and magnificent *Moſque*, and in the *Churchyard* are about 30 or 40 Cocks under a ſtately *Fountain*, for People to waſh before Divine Service; as alſo at the bottom of this Building, on the North and South ſides, are 20 *Conduits* with *Cocks*, and on the Eaſt ſide are the *Prieſts* Lodgings and Gardens; and round the *Church-yard* are *Baths*, *Cloyſters*, and a *Colledge* for the *Prieſts*, with other uſeful Offices, all covered with Lead. In this City are ſeveral *Beſeſtines*, or *Exchanges*, ſome of good account, as likewiſe many fair *Hanes*. To this City are four ſtately and lofty *Bridges* of *Freeſtone*, which make a pleaſant ſhew, and is a fair, large, and well compoſed City. 2. *Gallipoli*, ſeated near the *Helleſpont*, but within the Sea of *Marinora*. This was the firſt City that the *Turks* poſſeſſed in *Europe*, it being ſurprized by *Solyman*, Son to *Orchanes*, in *Anno* 1358. Here the *Beglerbegh* of the Sea hath his reſidence. A little below *Gallipoli* is the ſtreighteſt paſſage of the *Helleſpont*, a place formerly famous for *Xerxes* his *Bridge*, but eſpecially for the two Caſtles of *Seſto*, on the *European* ſide; and *Abydo*, oppoſite to it on the *Aſian ſhoar*, of note for the Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*; which Caſtles are now called the *Dardanelli*, and command the paſſage, and are the ſecurity or Bulwark of *Conſtantinople* on this, as thoſe on the *Thracian Boſphorus* are on the other. 3. *Caridia*, ſeated on the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Lemnos*, as alſo to *Troas* in *Aſia*, and therefore now called *St. George's Arm.* 4. *Abdera*, the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who ſpent his time in Laughing. 5. *Pera*, a Town of the *Genoueſes*, oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*. 6. *Galata*, alſo oppoſite to *Conſtantinople*, from which it is parted by a River, wherein is found a good Harbour for *Shipping*; and here all the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, as *Engliſh*, *French*, *Dutch*, and *Venetian* Merchants have their common reſidence, intermixed with *Jews*, *Grecians*, *Armenians*, and ſome few *Turks*: And laſtly, *Conſtantinople*, the now Metropolitan City of all *Greece*, the Seat of the *Grand Signior*, and formerly of the Emperours of the Eaſt; firſt built by *Pauſanias* a *Lacedemonian* Captain, about 660 years before the Birth of *Chriſt*. It is a City very commodiouſly ſeated for an Univerſal *Empire*, overlooking *Europe* and *Aſia*, commanding the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, the *Helleſpont*, and Sea of *Marinara* or *Propontis*; on the upper part of which, and near the *Thracian Boſphorus*, it is ſeated, where it hath a *Haven* ſo deep and capacious, that the *Turks* for its excellency call it the *Port of the World*, ſo that for *ſtrength*, *plenty*, and *commodity*, no place can compare to it. This City is in form Triangular; its *Walls* are compoſed of *Stone* and *Brick*, equally intermixed, to which it hath 24 *Gates* for entrance, whereof 5 regard the Land, and 19 the Water, being about 16 miles in compaſs; and ſuppoſed, with *Pera* and *Galata* adjoyning to it, and *Scutari* on the *Aſian* ſide, to contain about 700000 living Souls, good part of which are *Chriſtians* and *Jews*; and it would be far more populous, were it not for the *Plague*, which like a *Tertian Ague* here reigneth every third year, and Province of *Romania*.

ſometimes oftner. This City is adorned with many magnificent Buildings, both publick and private, as alſo with curious *Statues*, and other ſuch like Ornaments, which were brought out of *Rome*, and other parts. There is no City in the World makes ſo ſtately a ſhew, if beheld from the Sea, or adjoyning Mountains, as this doth, whoſe lofty and beautiful *Cypreſs Trees* are ſo intermixed with the Buildings, that it ſeemeth to repreſent a *City* in a *Wood*, whoſe ſeven aſpiring Heads (for on ſo many *Hills* it is ſeated,) are moſt of them crowned with magnificent *Moſques*, all of white *Marble*; in form round, and coupled above, being finiſhed at the top with guilded *Spires*, ſome having two, ſome four, and ſome ſix adjoyning *Turrets*, of a great height, and very ſlender: ſo that there is no City in the World hath a more promiſing Object, and being entred, ſo much deceiveth the expectation, having many vacant places, ſeveral rows of Buildings, conſiſting only of *Shops*, the Houſes not fair, lofty, nor uniform; the Streets exceeding narrow and ill contrived; yet here are many ſtately Houſes, where the Great perſons reſide; alſo many *Canns* for Merchants, and abundance of *Moſques*, amongſt which that of *Sancta Sophia* is the chief, once a *Chriſtian Temple*. To every one of the principal *Moſques* doth belong publick *Bagnio's*, *Hoſpitals* with Lodgings, *Santons*, and *Eccleſiaſtical Perſons*, which are endowed with competent Revenues: the inferiour *Moſques* for the moſt part are built ſquare, many of them *Pent-houſes*, with open *Galleries*, where on extraordinary times they pray. The number of *Moſques* of all ſorts, including *Scutara*, *Para*, *Galata*, and the Buildings that border the *Boſphorus*, are ſaid to be about 8000. This Temple of *St. Sophia* is almoſt every *Friday*, (which is their *Sabbath*) viſited by the *Grand Signior*, by reaſon of its being ſo near his *Seraglio*, which is divided from the reſt of the City by a lofty *Wall*, containing in circuit about three miles, wherein are ſtately Groves of *Cypreſſes* intermixed with delightful *Gardens*, artificial *Fountains*, variety of *Fruits*, and curious *Plains*. The Buildings are low, but rich and ſtately, with ſeveral fair Courts one within another; and to the South-ſide doth joyn the *Grand Signiors Palace*, in which are alſo ſeveral large Courts, and ſtately Structures. On the left hand of one of the Courts the *Divano* is kept, where the *Baſſa's* of the Port adminiſter Juſtice; out of the ſecond Court is a paſſage into a third, into which *Chriſtians* are not permitted entrance, but upon great favour: on the North-ſide ſtands the *Grand Signiors Cabinet*, in form of a ſtately *Summer-houſe*, having a private paſſage from his *Seraglio*; and from this place he takes *Barge* to delight himſelf on the Water. Not far from the *Palace* is a ſpacious place, encompaſſed with Houſes, called the *Hippodrom* by the Ancients, and by the *Turks*, *Almidan*; where every *Friday* the *Spachies* of the Court play at *Giocho di Canni*, that is, they are mounted on Horſes, and ride after one another, throwing Darts at each other, which they endeavour to avoid by their haſty turning.

The *Black Sea* is diſtant from *Conſtantinople* about 15 miles; it is much troubled with *Ice* in the Winter, neither is it ſo Salt as other *Seas*: and here the *Turks* forbid Traffick to Forreigners, there being no paſſage into it but by Rivers; neither this paſſage of the *Boſphorus* hath been always, but forced by violence of Streams that fell into the over-charged *Euxine*; where it ruſheth into the *Boſphorus* there are two Rocks, formerly called *Cyanæ* and *Symplegades*, ſo near, that at a diſtance they ſeem but one. Here upon the top of a Rock, encompaſſed with the Sea, ſtands a Pillar of white Marble called *Pompeys Pillar*; the *Boſphorus* is in length about 20 miles, but very narrow, the broadeſt place not exceeding a mile.

The Diſpoſitions, Manners, &c. of the *Turks*.

Before I paſs to the other Province in *Greece*, a word or two as to the *Manners*, *Diſpoſitions*, *Religions*, &c. of the *Turks*. They are for the moſt part of a good complexion, full-bodied, proportionable, and of good ſtatures; they keep the hair of their Heads ſhaved, only a lock on the hinder part; but their Beards they wear at full length, which with them is a ſign of Gravity and freedom, they not allowing their *Slaves* to wear Beards; they are ſubtle, and of a quick wit, are generally very courteous to Strangers, but bear an inveterate

inveterate hatred againſt *Chriſtians*; they are exceeding jealous of their Wives, denying them the liberty of the *Streets*, or going to their *Moſques*; their Salutations are with an inclination of the head and body, laying their hands on their boſoms; they uſe much Perfumes in their Garments, and all of them affect cleanlineſs ſo religiouſly, that beſides cuſtomary Lotions, and daily frequenting *Baths*, they never ſo much as make water, but they waſh their *hands* and *privities*, at which buſineſs they couch to the Earth, fearing their *Garments* ſhould be defiled with any of their Excrements, which is held a pollution and hindrance to the acceptation of Prayer; and if they *bath* not twice or thrice a week, they are eſteemed Naſty: they uſe not much exerciſe, loving a Sedentary life, but delight in riding; yet generally they have ſome Trade, which they imploy part of the day in, even the *Grand Signior*.

Their *Food* is groſs, refuſing all dainties for a piece of fat *Mutton*, which they boil in *Rice*; and with *Peaſe*, *Rice*, and *Mutton*, they make *Pottage*; they abſtain from *Blood*, *Hogs-fleſh*, and things *ſtrangled*, neither care they for *Fiſh* or *Fowl*, which are here numerous and ſo gentle, that they will ſuffer themſelves to be taken: they have neither *Tables* nor *Stools*, but ſit upon the *Floor* (which is covered with *Tapeſtry*, or the like) croſs-legg'd; their Diſhes are made with feet, and their Spoons have long handles like Ladles. Their common drink is *Water*, alſo *Sherbet*, *Uſaph*, but above all *Coffee*, which is held in great eſteem. As to their *Sciences* and *Trades*, they are not over ingenious, nor knowing, contenting themſelves with ſuch as are neceſſary for them. By their *Law* they are exhorted to marry for the propagation of their *Religion*, every man being allowed four *Wives*, which muſt be of the *Turkiſh* Religion, beſides as many *Concubines* (which are *Slaves*, and of any *Religion*) as he is able to keep; they buy their Wives of their *Parents*, recording the Contract; and in their *Nuptial Rites* they obſerve many *Ceremonies*, ſome of which I ſhall take notice of. The day before the *Marriage* is ſpent in *Feaſting*, the Man his Friends, and the Woman hers, who at night bath and anoint her, and ſo depart till the next Morning, and then ſhe is dreſt in her beſt Apparel; all things being ready, the Relations and Friends of the *Bridegroom*, who are all mounted on Horſe-back, ride two by two to the *Brides* to conduct her to the *Bridegrooms*, who is alſo ready mounted and richly habited, according to his quality, to receive his never ſeen wife, who (after the *Nuptial Ceremonies* are performed) is conducted to the *Bride-Chamber*, where ſhe is undreſt and made ready for his enjoyment; the reſt of the day is ſpent in feaſting and merriment. By the Law, he is obliged to ſhew equal reſpect to all his *Wives*, and to give them due benevolence alike, and upon failure they may juſtly complain to the *Cadi*, who will grant her a Divorce; but the *Women* are little better treated than *Slaves*, giving their *Huſbands* reſpect and reverence due to a Maſter, not ſitting at meat with him, nor medling with Houſhold affairs, nothing being required, but to pleaſe their Husbands, to live peaceably together, and to nurſe their *Children*. Their Food.

Their *Religion* is contained in their *Alcoran*, made by *Mahomet* their Prophet; it is written in *Arabick* Rhime, and forbid by him to be written or read in any other *Language*; which ſaid Book is ſo reverenced by them, that it is not touched with unwaſhed hands; they call it the *Book of Glory*, and *Guide to Paradice*: They believe in *God*, and hold *Jeſus Chriſt* for a greater Prophet than *Moſes*, but *Mahomet* for the greateſt; they deny the *Divinity* of Chriſt, yet confeſs him to be the Son of the *Virgin Mary*; that he was conceived by the ſmell of a *Roſe*, which the Angel *Gabriel* brought her, and that ſhe bore him at her *Breaſts*; that he was free from the Temptations of the *Devil* and Original ſin: he is called in the *Alcoran*, the Word and Breath of God, ſaid to raiſe up the *dead*, to give ſight to the *blind*, to cure the *lame*, to give ſpeech to the *dumb*, to know the ſecrets of *hearts*, and that by his *Vertues* his *Diſciples* wrought *Miracles*, and that he ſhall return to Judgment about 40 years before the end of the World to judge, ſave, and condemn *Chriſtians*, as *Mahomet* ſhall do them. By Their Religion.

The *Alcoran* now printed in *Engliſh*.

their

their *Law* they are obliged to pray ſeven times a day; their Sabbath is on *Friday*, which they ſtrictly obſerve, and are very devout at their worſhip; and at the doors of the *Moſques* they put off their Shoes, as a place too holy to defile with dirty Shoes; and the *Women* are not permitted to come into their *Moſques*, but have apartments for themſelves. They obſerve two Solemn times in the year, which are both *Lents*, one is called *Ramdan*, which continueth a Month, and the other *Byram*, which laſteth three days. They admit of no Hell for any, but thoſe who believe not *Mahomet*; but allow of a *Purgatory*, which holds but till *Dooms-day*, where in their *Graves* (which they ſay is the place of *Purgatory*) they are inflicted with pain by a bad *Angel*, whoſe fury is leſſened by a good one, according to the life the party led when living; and at the day of *Doom*, *Moſes*, *Chriſt*, and *Mahomet*, ſhall bring their ſeveral Followers to Judgment, and intercede for them; and that *Cain*, the firſt Murtherer, ſhall be the Leader of the *Damned*; and all ſhall receive the reward due unto them, the Juſt into *Paradice*, and the Damned into *Hell*, where they ſhall be tormented for ever; yet they hold a diſtinction amongſt the Damned, for thoſe that have committed no great *ſins* ſhall go into *Purgatory*, from whence they ſhall ſhortly be delivered. *Paradice*, according to *Mahomets* deſcription, is a place of all delight, where they ſhall have ſtately Palaces richly furniſhed, *Chriſtalline Rivers*, *Fields* and *Trees* alwaies in their verdure, whoſe *Fruits* ſhall be delightful to the taſt, and their ſhape pleaſing to the eye; under whoſe fragrant ſhades they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous and handſom *Virgins*; not ſuch as have lived in the World, but on purpoſe created for them, whoſe loſt *Virginities* ſhall daily be reſtored to them, and that they ſhall ever continue young, the Men at the Age of 30, and the Women at 15; and that Boys of Divine features ſhall adminiſter to them, and ſet before them all varieties of curious Meats.

Their Juſtice. Their *Juſtice* is grounded on their *Alcoran*, in which they obſerve this Rule, *To do as they would be done unto.* Their *Judges* for the moſt part are always *Eccleſiaſtical Perſons*, amongſt which there are many Orders, of which the chief is the *Mufty*, who decides great Caſes, and to him lie *Appeals*, and his Decrees the *Grand Turk* will not queſtion: then the *Cady*, who hath over him the *Moulacady*, or *Lord Chief Juſtice.* All the *Judges*, except the *Mufty*, are limited to ſet Precincts, and if they are found corrupt, are ſeverely puniſhed; the execution of their Juſtice is very ſevere and cruel, and very ſpeedy; and if the buſineſs be matter of *fact*, upon the leaſt complaint the *Parties* and *Witneſſes* are brought before the *Judge*, and according to evidence and Juſtice, gives his Sentence, which in few hours is executed; and a Falſe-witneſs, if convicted, ſuffers the ſame puniſhment as the accuſed ſhould have done, if found guilty.

Their Forces. The *Great Turk* is very powerful in his *Forces*; his *Infantry* are of two ſorts, the one raiſed out of *Towns* and *Cities*, and the other is the *Janizaries*, in which he puts the greateſt confidence. Their *Cavalry* are alſo of two ſorts, one the *Spahyglans*, from whom are choſen the Troops which guard the *Grand Signiors perſon*, and the other the *Spahy-Tymariots*, which are ſuch as hold Land free from all Duties, in lieu of which they are obliged to furniſh him with 2, 3, 4, 5, 10, or more or leſs Men and Horſes at their own charge, as occaſion requires, according to the quantity of Land they hold; and beſides theſe there are other ſorts of Horſemen, who are *Volontiers*; ſome ſerving for devotion to gain *Paradice* by dying for *Mahomets* Cauſe, others ſerving for the gains of the booty and ſpoils of the Countries, and others to merit a *Timar*; and all are very expert in *Military affairs.* As for their *Sea Forces* they are but ſmall, as not much minding it, moſt of them being *Gallies*; yet are they often found troubleſom to *Chriſtians.*

Their Funerals. Concerning their *Funerals*, ſo ſoon as Life is departed ſeveral of their *Prieſts* are ſent for, who after they have performed certain *Ceremonies*, and deſired *God* to have mercy on their *Soul*, they waſh the *Corps*, and wrap it in Linnen, but not tie it neither at *head* nor *feet*, then lay it on a *Bier*, ſetting a *Turbant* at the upper end, and ſo carry it to the Grave; which for the poorer

ſort

ſort are uſually made by *Highway-ſides* and in *Fields*, having two ſtones of white Marble, one at the head and the other at the feet, with an Inſcription concerning the deceaſed; but the better ſort have *Sepulchres* in their *Gardens*. As they are thus carried to their Graves, ſome of the *Dervices* go before with lighted *Tapers*, then follow the *Prieſts* ſinging, and after them their *Relations* and *Friends*: their *Graves* are boarded on the ſides and bottom inſtead of a *Coffin*, and being laid in, are covered with another board to hinder the Earth from falling, but high enough that one may kneel; for they hold that two terrible and black *Angels*, which they call *Gudequir* and *Mongir*, do immediately come to the *Grave* and unite the Soul to the Body, demanding how he hath lived; and if he gives them ſatisfaction they depart, and two white *Angels* come and protect him unto the day of Judgment, one ſitting at his head, and the other at his feet; but if he can give no good account of his life, then the terrible black *Angels* grievouſly torment him until the day of *Doom*. A *Purgatory* is ſo obnoxious unto them, that in their *Mattins* they beſeech God to free them from the examination of thoſe terrible black *Angels*, as alſo from the puniſhment of the Grave, and their evil Journey. But to proceed to the other Provinces in *Greece*.

Province of *Macedonia.*

The Province of *MACEDONIA* is at preſent ſevered into three parts, *viz.* into the Territory of *Jamboli* towards the North, whoſe chief places are *Heraclea*, *Bylazora*, *Joro*, and *Sydero-Caſpæ*, famous for its rich Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*. The ſecond part is *Camenolitaria*, being its Southern parts, and on the borders of *Theſſaly*; its chief places are, 1. *Pidna*, ſeated on the influx of the River *Alaicmon*, which Town was beſieged and took by *Caſſander*, in which Siege he took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Hercules* the Heir of *Alexander* the Great; all which he put to death. 2. *Pella*, ſeated on the ſame ſhoar, the Birth-place of the ſaid *Alexander*. 3. *Ediſſa*, and 4. *Scydra*, both Midland Cities. The third part is called *Migdonia*, or the particular *Macedonia*, lying in the midſt of the Province; its chief places are 1. *Salonichi*, anciently called *Theſſalonica*; to the People of which City St. *Paul* wrote two of his *Epiſtles*; it is ſeated on the *Egean* Sea, is very populous, inhabited with *Chriſtians*, *Turks*, and *Jews*; but chiefly with the laſt, who are here more numerous than in any other part of *Turkey*, and is a place of great Commerce, and is the faireſt and richeſt City in all *Macedonia*. 2. *Stagira*, the Birth-place of *Ariſtotle*; 3. *Pallene*, ſacred to the *Muſes*; and 4. *Neopolis*, on the confines of *Romania*.

Province of *Albania.*

The Province of *ALBANIA* lieth on the *Adriatick* Sea, famous for being the Country of that eminent and brave Souldier *George Caſtriot*, called by the *Turks Scanderbeg*; its chief places are 1. *Durazzo*, a place of great ſtrength. 2. *Valona*, a good City ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, oppoſite to *Otranto* in *Naples*. 3. *Croja*, under whoſe Walls *Amurath* the Second, that damned wretch, finiſhed his wicked life. 4. *Scutari*, or *Scodra*, famous for its reſiſting the *Turks*: and 5. *Belgrado*; and 6. *Albanopoli*.

Province of *Theſſaly.*

The Province of *THESSALY*, now called *JANNA*, is a Country no leſs fertil than pleaſant; it lieth South of *Macedonia*, and is famous firſt for the Hill *Olympus*, which for its height, is by the *Poets* taken for Heaven; then for its pleaſant Vale of *Tempe*, called the *Garden* of the *Muſes*: and thirdly, for the *Pharſalian* Fields, where the Empire of the World was diſputed in two great Battles; the one betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, and the other between *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the one ſide, and *Anthony* and *Auguſtus* on the other. The chief places in this Province are, 1. *Armiro*, now the Seat of a *Turkiſh Sangiac*. 2. *Lariſſa*, ſeated on a fair River, which at a ſmall diſtance falls into the Gulph of *Salonichi*. 3. *Tricca*, and *Pharſalis*.

The

Province of Epire.

The Province of *EPIRE*, now called *CANINA*, is very Mountainous, hath for its chief places (poſſeſſed by the *Turks*) *Pravezza* and *Larta*, both Sea-Towns; and the chief places in the *Venetians* poſſeſſions, are *Torre de Butrinto* and *Perga*, both Sea-Towns and places of good account; oppoſite and nigh to which is the Iſle of *Corfou*. In this Province is Mount *Pindus*, ſacred to *Apollo* and the *Muſes*; and here are alſo the *Acrocerauneau* Hills, ſo called for their being ſo ſubject to *Thunder-claps*.

Mount Pindus.

Province of Achaia.

The Province of *ACHAIA*, now called *LIVADIA*, waſhed on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea; it is divided into theſe parts, *viz.* *Ætolia*, *Attica*, *Bæotia*, *Locris*, *Megaris*, *Doris*, and *Phocis*, in which parts are ſeveral good Cities and Towns; amongſt which are 1. *Athens*, now *Sitines*, more famous for its Antiquity than any thing elſe, being now ſcarce any other than a *Fiſhers Town*; but formerly a large, rich and ſtately City, the Nurſery of Learning, and a place from whence all *Arts* and *Sciences* ſpread themſelves all over *Europe*. 2. *Thebes*, now *Stives*, ſeated on the River *Cephiſus*, famous for the Wars here made between *Polynices*, and *Eteocles*, Sons to Prince *Oedipus*; it was ſack'd by the *Macedons*, after which it was re-edified by *Caſſander*, but of no account nor beauty to what it was formerly. Next to this City are the Streights not above 25 foot broad. 3. *Lepanto*, chief of *Ætolia*, ſeated in the bottom of a Gulph ſo called, and where *Auguſtus* and *Anthony* ſought for the Empire of the World; and where more lately was that ſignal Battle between the confederate *Chriſtians* and the *Turks*. This City enjoyeth a good Trade, and affordeth ſeveral good Commodities, as *Silk*, *Oils*, *Cottons*, *Galls*, *Anniſeeds*, *Wax*, *Hony*, *Currans*, *Wines*, &c. 4. *Marathon*, of note for the Victory of *Miltiades*, gained againſt the powerful Army of *Darius*, which conſiſted of 100000 Foot, and 10000 Horſe. 5. *Megara*, where *Euclid* taught *Geometry*. 6. *Platea*, nigh to which was fought an exceeding great Battle between the *Grecians* and the *Perſians*. 7. *Delphos*, famous for the Temple of *Apollo*, which was deſtroyed by the *Phocians*, who took from it 60 Tuns of *Gold*. 8. *Sparta*, formerly of great Account; and 9. *Micenæ*, famous for the Temple of *Juno*, as alſo for the habitation of *Agamemnon*. Nigh to this City was the Lake of *Lerno*, where *Hercules* ſlew the *Lernian* Seven-headed *Hydra*. In this Province is the famous Temple of *Æſculapius*; where is alſo the Mount *Helicon* and *Parnaſſus*, much famouſed by the *Poets*; and here are alſo thoſe pleaſant *Arcadian Plains*, and the places where the *Olympian Games* were ſolemnized, with ſeveral other memorable places of Antiquity.

Peloponneſus, or the Morea.

PELOPONNESUS, now called *MOREA*, is a *Peninſula* bounded with the Sea, except where it joyneth to *Achaia* by an *Iſthmus* of about ſix miles in breadth; the whole *Peninſula* is about 600 miles in compaſs, and contained once many flouriſhing Provinces, as *ARCADIA*, *ARGORIS*, *ACHAIA PROPRIA*, *ELIS*, *LACONIA*, and *MESSENIA*; but at preſent it is one ſole *Turkiſh* Province. The People were accounted the chief of all the *Grecians*, and gave Rules to the reſt as ſubordinate unto them. The chief places are, 1. *Corinte*, ſeated at the foot of the *Acrocorinthian* Hills, hard by the Fountain *Pyrene*; a ſmall Town, and of little note to what it was, being out of the ruins of the ancient and famous *Corinth*; which was a place of great ſtrength and power. 2. *Miſiſtra*, once of good account: 3. *Thalana*, nigh unto which is Mount *Tenarus*, from whence *Hercules* drew *Cerberus*; as alſo the Lake *Lerna*, where the ſaid *Hercules* ſlew the Monſter *Hydra*. 4. *Selaſſia*, where *Antigonus* vanquiſhed *Cleomenus*. 5. *Nemæa*, where *Hercules* ſlew the *Lions*: 6. *Olympia*, very famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympicus*, which was 60 Cubits high, and of a proportionate thickneſs, being made of *Gold* and *Ivory*; and in honour to this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick Games* inſtituted by *Hercules*, and performed on the Plains of this City. 7. *Megalopolis*, the Birth-place of that eminent Hiſtorian *Polybius*. 8. *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, which conſiſted of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horſe routed the Army of the *Athenians* and *Spartans*, which

conſiſted

conſiſted of 2000 Horſe, and 25000 Foot, where that gallant Leader *Epaminondas* received his deaths wound. 9. *Lacedemon*, 10. *Argos*, 11. *Thebes*, now ruinated; but the chief places for Traffick now remaining, are 12. *Modon*, 13. *Petras*, and 14. *Coron*, all three Cities ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, ſubject to the ſame Cuſtoms, and found to afford divers good Commodities, the product of *Turkey*.

The ISLES ſeated in the GRECIAN *or* ÆGEAN, IONIAN *and* ADRIATICK *Seas.*

IN theſe *Seas* there are ſeveral *Iſles*, many of which are of good note, and well frequented by *Merchants*; moſt of which are in part, if not altogether in the poſſeſſion of the *Grand Signior*; yet the *Venetians* are not quite expunged. But the *Turk* hath divided all or moſt of them into eight *Beglerbyats*, and 60 and odd *Sangiacats*, that is, into general and particular Governments.

The ÆGEAN *or* GRECIAN *ISLES.*

The chief of the *Ægean Iſles* are 1. *NEGROPONTE*, in the power of the *Turks*, in circuit 365 miles; Its chief places are 1. *Negroponte*, ſeated in a Gulph ſo called; 2. *Cariſto*, and *Dion*, a Sea-port Town. Iſle of *Negroponte.*

2. *STALIMENE*, of old *LEMNOS*, about 100 miles in circuit, well peopled by *Grecians*, except three Towns which the *Turks* keep ſtrongly fortified to keep them in awe. Its chief Town is *Lemnos*, or *Mirina*, but of no great note. Here is a Sovereign *Mineral* againſt infection, called *Terra Sigillata*; the Earth thereof is made into ſmall Pellets, and ſealed with the *Turks* Stamp, and ſo diſperſed and ſold to Merchants for an excellent Antidote. Iſle of *Stalimene.*

3. The *SPORADES* and *CYCLADES* are a great body of ſeveral ſmall *Iſles* diſperſed about this *Sea* or *Archipelago*, and lie ſo thick, that they oft-times become dangerous to *Sea-men*, eſpecially in Storms. The chief of theſe Iſles are, 1. *Milo*, ſo called for its abounding in *Hony*; it is about 60 miles in compaſs, very fertil, and affordeth ſtore of *Grain* and *Oil*, but no *Wine*: its chief place is ſo called. 2. *Tira*, 3. *Tireſio*, 4. *Nio*, 5. *Stapalia*, about 50 miles in circuit, whoſe chief place is ſo called. 6. *Morgo*, 7. *Nicſia*, about 75 miles in compaſs. 8. *Livila*, 9. *Zinara*, 10. *Raclia*, 11. *Siphano*, 12. *Micone*, 13. *Teno*, 14. *Helena*, 15. *Engia*, in a Gulph ſo called; all ſmall Iſles. 16. *Fermènia*, about 60 miles in circuit. 17. *Zea*, about 50 miles in compaſs. 18. *Andri*, about 80 miles in compaſs, not far from *Negroponte*, and is found to afford the ſame Commodities; its chief place bears the ſame name. 19. *Coos*, more towards *Aſia minor*, whoſe chief Town is ſo called, and is inhabited by *Turks*, but the reſt by *Grecians*. In this Iſle was born *Apelles*, that famous *Painter*; as alſo *Hippocrates*, that revived Phyſick when it was loſt; and here *Æſculapius* had his *Temples* and *Altars*, where he was worſhipped. 20. *Delos*, famous for the *Temple* of *Apollo*, as alſo for a Cuſtom here uſed, not to permit the birth of Children, nor dying of People, being ſent to *Rhena*, an Iſle not far diſtant. 21. *Namſio*, 22. *Policandro*, 23. *Pira*, 24. *Chiero*, 25. *Pergolo*, 26. *Serphino*, 27. *Pario*, 28. *Sirna*, and 29. *Sidrille*; all ſmall Iſles of little note. Iſles of *Sporades* and *Cycladès.*

4. *CANDIA*, or *CRETA*, (now in the *Turks* poſſeſſion) an Iſle ſeated in the Mouth of the *Ægean Sea*, in compaſs about 590 miles, of a fertil Soil, and affordeth to Merchants ſeveral good Commodities; but *Corn* is not over plentiful, which defect is ſupplied from *Peloponneſus*. It is very Iſle of *Candia.*

very populous, and hath many good Towns; the chief of which are 1. *Candia*, the Bulwark of *Chriſtendom*, till lately gained from the *Venetians*; in which Siege it was ruinated, being before a good City. 2. *Sudi*, a Maritim Town, enjoying a commodious Haven, which by the *Turks* is well fortified and defended by two *Caſtles*. 3. *Canea*, and 4. *Sittia*. In this Iſle lived *Strabo*, that famous *Coſmographer*.

Iſle of *Samothracia*.

5. *SAMOTHRACIA*, a ſmall Iſle, of note for being the Birth-place of *Samo*, one of the *Sybils*; and *Pythagoras*, that Divine *Philoſopher*.

Iſles of *Sciro*, *Schiati*, &c.

6. In the *Ægean Iſles*, or *Archipelago*, are theſe Iſles, 1. *SCIRO*, Northwards of *Negroponte*, from which it is not far diſtant. 2. *SCHIATI*; 3. *PELAGMISI*, towards the Gulph of *Salonichi*. 4. *TASSO*, a ſmall Iſle, ſeated in the entrance of the Gulph of *Conteſſa* in *Macedonia*: and 6. *LENIBRO*, alſo a ſmall Iſle, not far from *Lemnos*.

The IONIAN *ISLES*.

Iſle of *Zante*.

The principal of the *IONIAN Iſles*, are 1. *ZANTE*, about 50 miles in circuit, and about 7 Leagues from *Peloponneſus*, under the obedience of the *Venetians*; it is wonderful fruitful in *Oils* and *Wines*, but eſpecially in *Currants*. The chief City bears the name of the Iſle, a place not very large nor beautiful, but fortified with a ſtrong *Caſtle*, which commandeth not only the *Town* and *Harbour*, but a good part round about it. The Iſle is much troubled with *Earthquakes*, in regard of which they build their Houſes very low.

Iſle of *Zephalonia*.

2. *ZEPHALONIA*, about 120 miles in compaſs, of a fertil Soil, and affords the ſame Commodities as *Zante*; but the *Currants* are ſmaller, and not ſo good. Its chief place bears the name of the Iſle. 2. *Auguſtali*, 3. *Guiſcardo*, and 4. *Noſſo*.

Iſle of *Corfu*.

3. *CORFU*, about 50 miles in length, and 24 in breadth, ſeated 12 miles from *Epirus*, and very convenient for the *Venetians*, who are the Maſters of it, being in the Center of their Maritim Territories. It is fruitful in *Oil*, *Hony*, *Wax*, and ſome other Commodities; its chief City is ſo called, and is now reputed to be one of the Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom*, and the Key of the *Venetian* State, being held impregnable, oft-times having reſiſted the fury of the *Turks*. It is ſeated at the foot of a Mountain, on the Summit of which are built two ſtrong *Caſtles*, ſeated on high Rocks, which are as ſtrongly fortified; the other place of note are *Caſtello*, *St. Angelo*, and *Pagiopoli*.

Iſle of *Cerigo*.

4. *CERIGO*, 60 miles in compaſs, about five miles from *Cape Malo* in the *Morea*. It is defended by Rocks, which in themſelves are inacceſſible, out of which the Inhabitants take abundance of *Marble*: it hath many Havens, but none commodious for Shipping. Its chief Town bears the ſame name, where was formerly a Temple dedicated to *Venus*, out of which *Helena* the wife of *Menelaus* was raviſhed, and ſtoln by *Paris*.

Iſle of St. *Maura*.

5. *SAINT MAURA*, where ſtood a Temple dedicated to *Apollo*, where Mad-brain'd and unfortunate Lovers were cured of their phrenzies, by caſting themſelves head-long into the Sea. Its chief place bears the name of the Iſle, and is inhabited by *Jews* that were driven out of *Spain*; and this of all the *Ionian* Iſles is under the *Turks* obedience.

6. *STRI-*

6. *STRIVALIS*, ſeated oppoſite to *Meſſina*, two ſmall Iſles of no great account, inhabited by ſome few *Greek Colonies*, or *Fryars*, who never go out of the Iſles; neither do they permit Women amongſt them, but as they die, have a new ſupply; they live by their labour, their diet is on *Herbs*, *Roots*, *Oil*, *Olives*, and the like. *Fleſh* they are denied, but may eat *Fiſh* ſometimes. Iſles of Strivalis.

7. *VAL DE CAMPARA*, about 56 miles in compaſs, Northwards of *Zephalonia*, famous for the Birth place of *Ulyſſes*. This Iſle affordeth thoſe Commodities that are found in *Zant*, and the *Currants* are the beſt and faireſt, but in leſs quantities. Iſle of *Val de campara*.

The ADRIATICK *ISLES.*

The *Adriatick Sea* is in length 700 miles, and about 140 in breadth; the *Venetians* are Maſters of them, to whom the Duke is eſpouſed every *Aſcenſion day* by caſting in of a Ring; a Ceremony performed with great ſtate. The *Adriatick* Iſles.

The *Iſlands* ſeated in this *Sea* are not many, and thoſe that be are neither great nor famous; the chief of which are *ZARA*, a ſmall Iſle, but the chieſeſt for Traffick, having divers good Harbours. It is fruitful in *Wines*, *Grains*, *Cattle*, and ſome *Oils*. 2. *VEGEA*, fertil in *Wine* and *Pulſe*, about 10 Leagues in compaſs. 3. *LESINA*, about 50 Leagues in compaſs, being the largeſt of all the *Adriatick Iſles*, very fertil throughout; its chief Town being ſo called, a place though unwalled, yet of good ſtrength, by reaſon of its ſtrong Fortreſs. 4. *CHERSO*, well ſtored with Cattle. 5. *CURZOLO*, a fair, fruitful, and populous Iſle, whoſe chief place is ſo called. 6. *GRISSA*, about 100 miles in circuit, an Iſle rich in *Salt-pits*. 7. *ABSIRTIDES*; 8. *LISSA*; 9. *ARBE*; and 10. *BRAZZIA*, with ſome others of no great note. Iſles of *Zara*, *Vegia*, &c.

The chief Rivers in *Turkey* in *Europe* are the *Drin*, the *Alſea*, the *Penea*, the *Wardar*, the *Mariza*, and the *Don*, or *Danube*, which of all others is the ſtrongeſt and moſt conſiderable; the others being, for the moſt part, only famous in Antiquity.

The Kingdom of FRANCE, with its Estates and Provinces, as they are divided into twelve General Governments, or 3 times 4, according to their scituation, to wit,

Four on this side the LOIRE, whose Provinces, Parts, and chief places are

- PICARDY,
  - Higher; as
    - True Picardy — Amiens.
    - Vermandois — St. Quintin.
  - Lower; as
    - Ponthieu — Abbeville.
    - Boulenois — Calais.
    - Vexin — Roven, or Roan.
- NORMANDY,
  - Higher; as
    - Caux — Havre de Grace.
    - Normandy — Lisieux.
  - Lower; as
    - Auge — Caen, Alenson.
    - Bessin — Bayeux.
    - Coutantin — Coutance.
- The ISLE of FRANCE; where are
  - Isle of France — Paris.
  - Beauvaisis — Beauvais.
  - Valois — Senlis.
  - Soissonnois — Soissons.
  - Brie — Meaux.
- CHAMPAIGNE; where are
  - Remois — Reims.
  - Champaigne — Troyes, Chaloons.
  - Bassigny — Langres.
  - Senonois — Sens.

Four upon and about the LOIRE; whose Provinces, Parts, and chief places, are

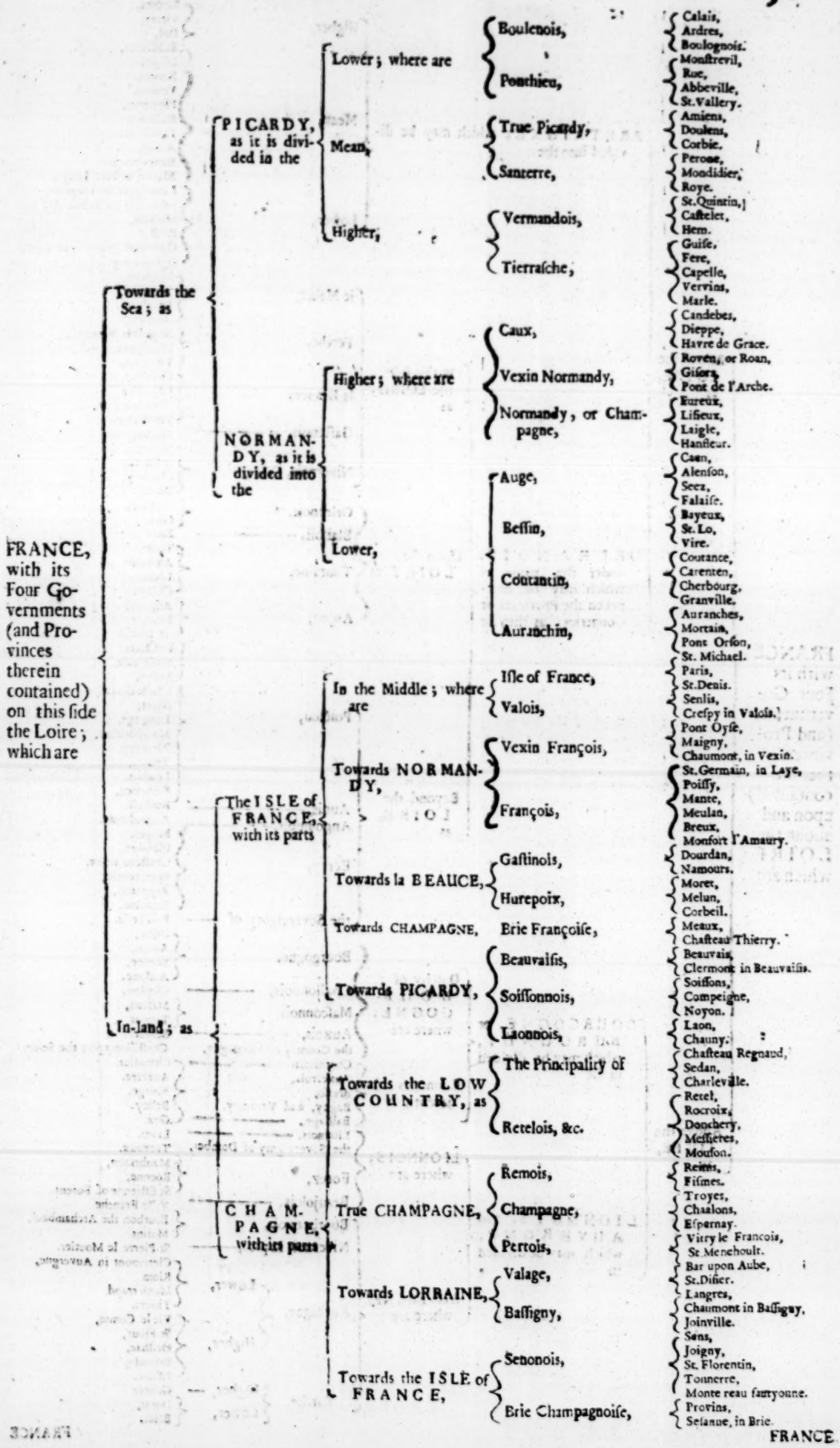
- BRETAIGNE,
  - Higher — Rennes, St. Maloes.
  - Mean — Nantes, Vennes.
  - Lower — Morlaix, Brest.
- ORLEANOIS,
  - On this side the LOIRE,
    - le Maine — le Main.
    - Perche — Mortaigne.
    - Beauce — Chartes.
  - Upon the LOIRE,
    - Nivernois — Nevers.
    - Orleanois — Orleans.
    - Blaisois — Blois.
    - Touraine — Tours.
    - Anjou — Angiers.
  - Beyond the LOIRE,
    - Poictou — Poictiers.
    - Aunis — Rochell.
    - Angoumois — Angoulesme.
    - Berry — Burges.
- BOURGOGNE, or BURGUNDY,
  - Bourgogne — Bourgogne — Dijon, Autun, Beaune.
  - Countries adjacent,
    - Challonnois — Challon.
    - Auxerrois — Auxerre.
    - Bresse — Bourg.
- LIONNOIS, and AUVERGNE,
  - Lionnois,
    - Lionnois — Lions.
    - Forez — Monbrizon.
    - Bourbonnois — Moulins.
  - Auvergne,
    - Auvergne — Clermont.
    - la Marche — Gueret.

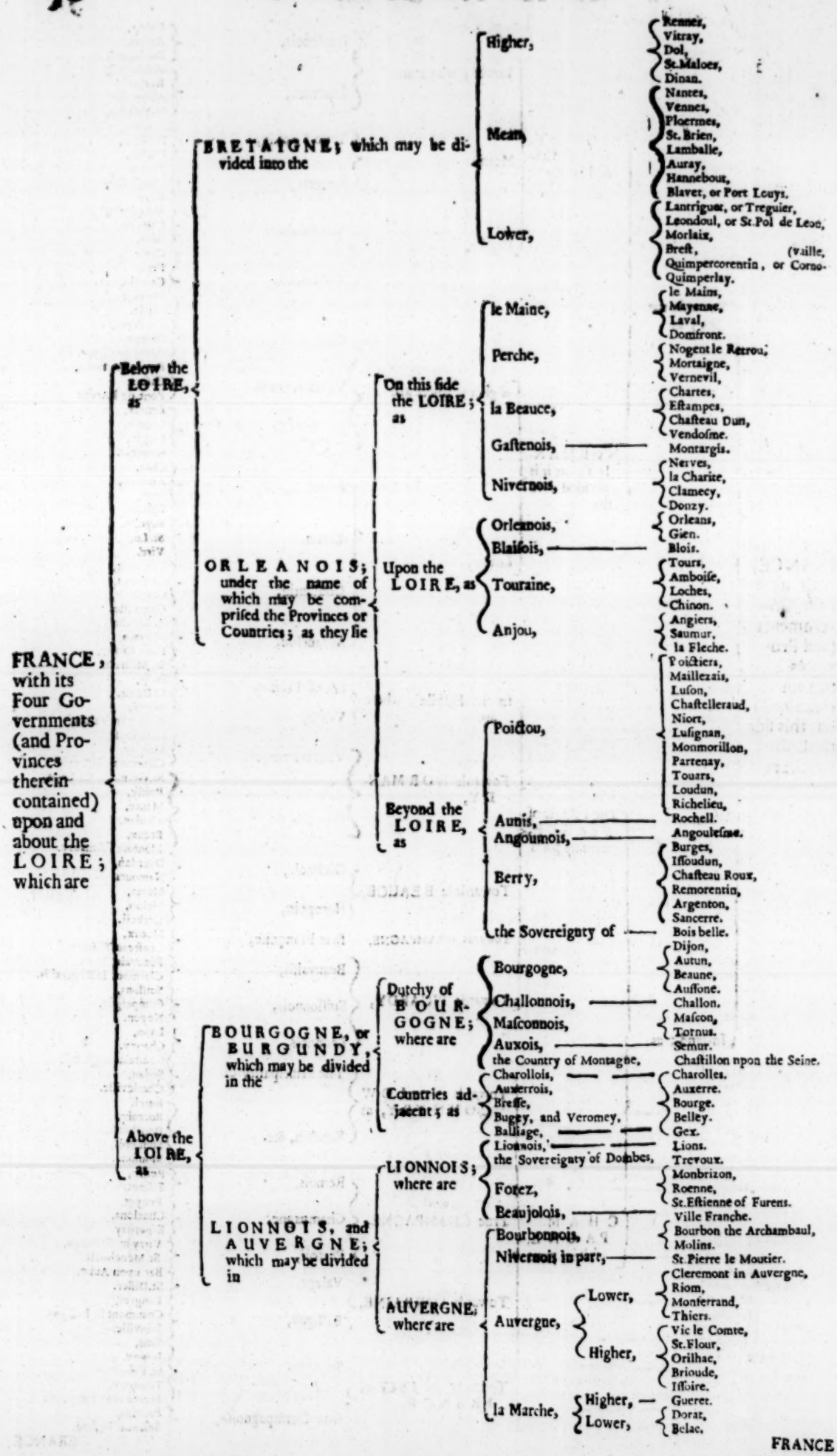
Four beyond the LOIRE; whose Provinces, Parts, and chief places are

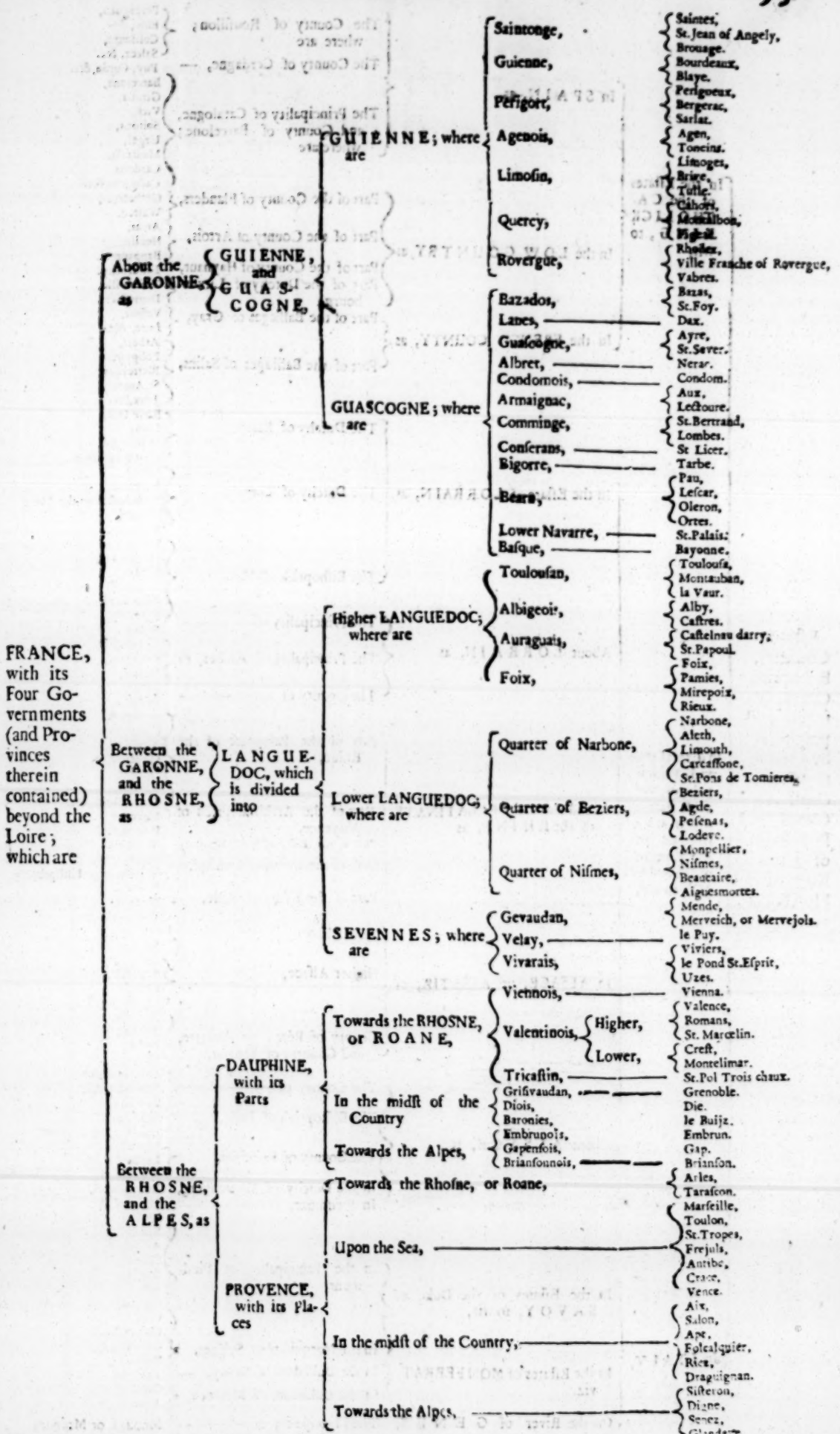
- GUIENNE, and GUASCOGNE,
  - Guienne — Bourdeaux.
    - Saintonge — Saintes.
    - Piregort — Perigueux.
    - Limosin — Limoges.
    - Rovergue — Rodez.
    - Quercy — Cahors.
    - Agenois — Agen.
  - Guascogne,
    - Bazadois — Bazas, Nerac.
    - Albret — Condom.
    - Condomois — Aux.
    - Armaignac — Aire.
    - Guascogne — Dax.
    - les Landes — Bayonne.
    - Basque — St. Palais.
    - Lower Navarre — Pau, Lescar.
    - Bearn — Tarbe.
    - Bigorre — St Bertrand.
    - Comminges — Thoulouse.
- LANGUEDOC,
  - Higher,
    - Toulousan — Carcassone.
    - Carcassez — Foix.
    - Foix — Alby.
    - Albigeois — Narbone.
  - Lower,
    - Narbone — Beziers.
    - Beziers — Montpelier, Nismes.
    - Nismes — Mende.
  - The Sevennes,
    - Givaudan — le Puy.
    - Velay — Viviers.
    - Vivarais.
- DAUPHINE,
  - Lower — Vienne, Valence.
  - Higher — Grenoble, Embrun.
  - Part of Piedmont — Pignerol.
- PROVENCE — Aix, Arles, Marseille, Forcalquier, Tolon, or Tholon.

To which at present may be added

- LORRAINE; where are
  - Barrois — Bar-le-Duc, St. Michael.
  - Lorraine — Metz, Toul, Verdun, and Nancy.
- And divers small Estates and Principalities
  - Between Dauphin and Provence, the Country of — Avignon.
  - In the Country of Avignon — Orange.
  - In Bresse — the Principality of the Sovereignty of Dombes — Trevoux.
  - Towards the Low Country,
    - the Principality of — Sedan.
    - the Principality of Arches — Charleville.


FRANCE, with its Four Governments (and Provinces therein contained) on this side the Loire; which are
Towards the Sea; as
PICARDY, as it is divided in the
Lower; where are
Boulenois
Calais, Ardres, Boulognois.
Ponthieu
Monſtrevil, Rue, Abbeville, St. Vallery.
Mean,
True Picardy
Amiens, Doulens, Corbie.
Santerre
Perone, Mondidier, Roye.
Higher,
Vermandois
St. Quintin, Caſtelet, Hem.
Tierraſche
Guiſe, Fere, Capelle, Vervins, Marle.
NORMANDY, as it is divided into the
Higher; where are
Caux
Candebec, Dieppe, Havre de Grace.
Vexin Normandy
Roven, or Roan, Giſors, Pont de l'Arche.
Normandy, or Champagne
Eureux, Liſieux, Laigle, Honfleur.
Lower,
Auge
Caen, Alenſon, Seez, Falaiſe.
Beſſin
Bayeux, St. Lo, Vire.
Coutantin
Coutance, Carenten, Cherbourg, Granville.
Auranchin
Auranches, Mortain, Pont Orſon, St. Michael.
In-land; as
The ISLE of FRANCE, with its parts
In the Middle; where are
Iſle of France
Paris, St. Denis.
Valois
Senlis, Creſpy in Valois.
Towards NORMANDY,
Vexin François
Pont Oyſe, Maigny, Chaumont, in Vexin.
François
St. Germain, in Laye, Poiſſy, Mante, Meulan, Breux, Monfort l'Amaury.
Towards la BEAUCE,
Gaſtinois
Dourdan, Namours.
Hurepoix
Moret, Melun, Corbeil.
Towards CHAMPAGNE,
Brie Françoiſe
Meaux, Chaſteau Thierry.
Towards PICARDY,
Beauvaiſis
Beauvais, Clermont in Beauvaiſis.
Soiſſonnois
Soiſſons, Compeigne, Noyon.
Laonnois
Laon, Chauny.
CHAMPAGNE, with its parts
Towards the LOW COUNTRY, as
The Principality of
Chaſteau Regnaud, Sedan, Charleville.
Retelois, &c.
Retel, Rocroix, Donchery, Meſſieres, Mouſon.
True CHAMPAGNE,
Remois
Reims, Fiſmes.
Champagne
Troyes, Chaalons, Eſpernay.
Pertois
Vitry le Francois, St. Menehoult.
Towards LORRAINE,
Valage
Bar upon Aube, St. Dizier.
Baſſigny
Langres, Chaumont in Baſſigny, Joinville.
Towards the ISLE of FRANCE,
Senonois
Sens, Joigny, St. Florentin, Tonnerre, Monte reau faultyonne.
Brie Champagnoiſe
Provins, Sefanne, in Brie.

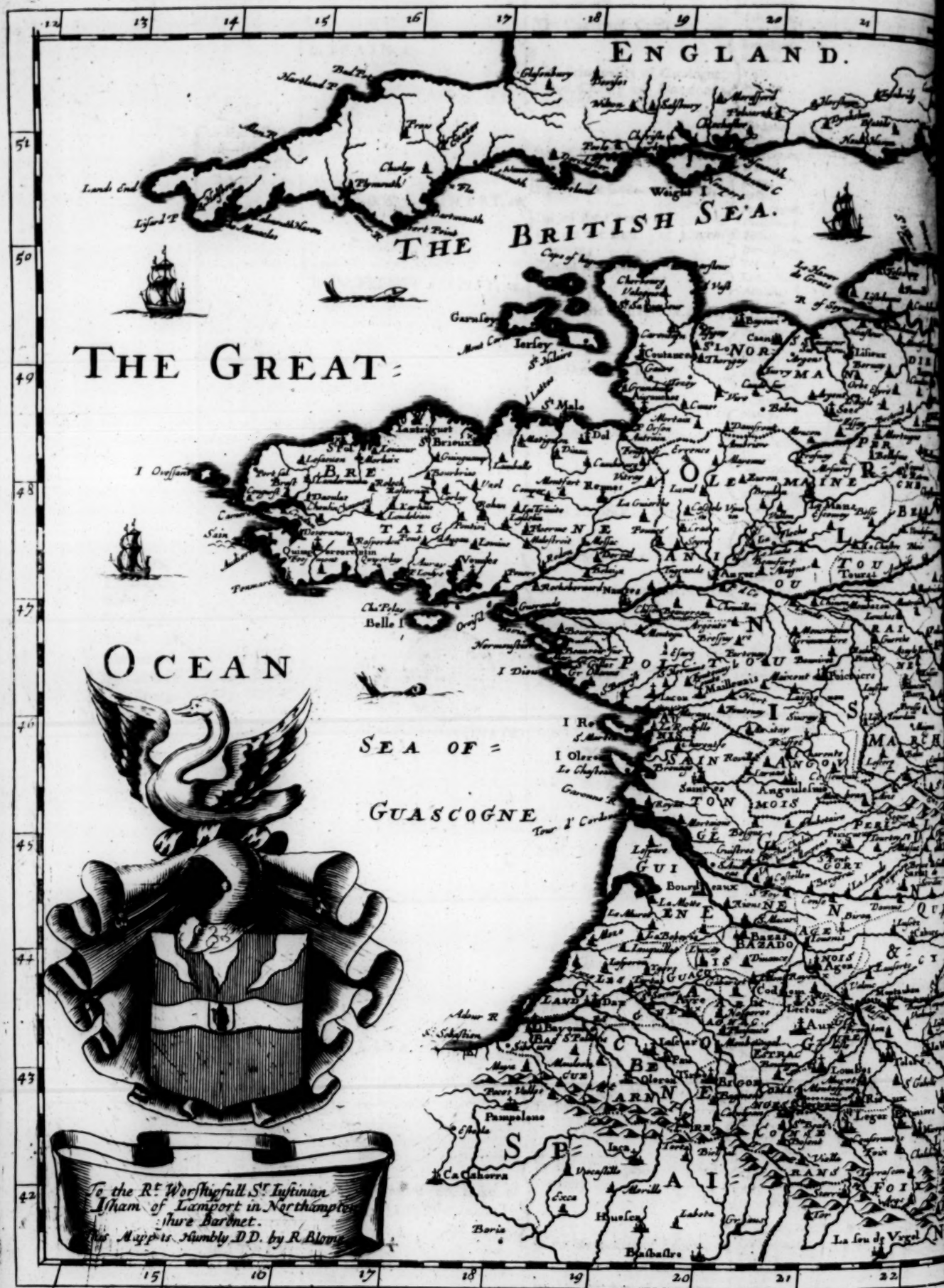

FRANCE, with its Four Governments (and Provinces therein contained) upon and about the LOIRE; which are
Below the LOIRE, as
BRETAIGNE; which may be divided into the
Higher,
Rennes,
Vitray,
Dol,
St. Maloes,
Dinan.
Mean,
Nantes,
Vennes,
Ploermes,
St. Brien,
Lamballe,
Auray,
Hannebout,
Blavet, or Port Louys.
Lower,
Lantriguer, or Treguier,
Leondoul, or St. Pol de Leon,
Morlaix,
Breft,
Quimpercorentin, or Cornouaille,
Quimperlay.
ORLEANOIS; under the name of which may be comprised the Provinces or Countries; as they lie
On this side the LOIRE; as
le Maine,
le Mans,
Mayenne,
Laval,
Domfront.
Perche,
Nogent le Retrou,
Mortaigne,
Vernevil,
la Beauce,
Chartes,
Eftampes,
Chafteau Dun,
Vendofme.
Gaftenois,
Montargis.
Nivernois,
Nerves,
la Charite,
Clamecy,
Donzy.
Upon the LOIRE, as
Orleanois,
Orleans,
Gien.
Blaifois,
Blois.
Touraine,
Tours,
Amboife,
Loches,
Chinon.
Anjou,
Angiers,
Saumur,
la Fleche.
Beyond the LOIRE, as
Poictou,
Poictiers,
Maillezais,
Luſon,
Chaſtelleraud,
Niort,
Luſignan,
Monmorillon,
Partenay,
Touars,
Loudun,
Richelieu,
Aunis,
Rochell.
Angoumois,
Angoulefme.
Berry,
Burges,
Iſſoudun,
Chafteau Roux,
Remorentin,
Argenton,
Sancerre.
the Sovereignty of
Bois belle.
Above the LOIRE, as
BOURGOGNE, or BURGUNDY, which may be divided in the
Dutchy of BOURGOGNE; where are
Bourgogne,
Dijon,
Autun,
Beaune,
Auſſone.
Challonnois,
Challon.
Maſconnois,
Maſcon,
Tornus.
Auxois,
Semur.
the Country of Montagne,
Chaſtillon upon the Seine.
Countries adjacent; as
Charollois,
Charolles.
Auxerrois,
Auxerre.
Breſſe,
Bourge.
Bugey, and Veromey,
Belley.
Balliage,
Gex.
LIONNOIS, and AUVERGNE; which may be divided in
LIONNOIS; where are
Lionnois,
Lions.
the Sovereignty of Dombes,
Trevoux.
Forez,
Monbrizon,
Roenne,
St. Eſtienne of Furens.
Beaujolois,
Ville Franche.
AUVERGNE; where are
Bourbonnois,
Bourbon the Archambaul,
Molins.
Nivernois in part,
St. Pierre le Moutier.
Auvergne,
Lower,
Cleremont in Auvergne,
Riom,
Monferrand,
Thiers.
Higher,
Vic le Comte,
St. Flour,
Orilhac,
Brioude,
Iſſoire.
la Marche,
Higher,
Gueret.
Lower,
Dorat,
Belac.


FRANCE, with its Four Governments (and Provinces therein contained) beyond the Loire; which are
About the GARONNE, as
GUIENNE, and GUASCOGNE,
GUIENNE; where are
Saintonge, Saintes, St. Jean of Angely, Brouage.
Guienne, Bourdeaux, Blaye.
Perigort, Perigoeux, Bergerac, Sarlat.
Agenois, Agen, Toncins.
Limoſin, Limoges, Brive, Tuſſe.
Quercy, Cahors, Montalbon, Figeac.
Rovergue, Rhodez, Ville Franche of Rovergue, Vabres.
GUASCOGNE; where are
Bazadois, Bazas, St. Foy.
Lanes, Dax.
Guaſcogne, Ayre, St. Sever.
Albret, Nerac.
Condomois, Condom.
Armaignac, Aux, Lectoure.
Comminge, St. Bertrand, Lombes.
Conſerans, St Licer.
Bigorre, Tarbe.
Beara, Pau, Leſcar, Oleron, Ortes.
Lower Navarre, St. Palais:
Baſque, Bayonne.
Between the GARONNE, and the RHOSNE, as
LANGUEDOC, which is divided into
Higher LANGUEDOC; where are
Toulouſan, Toulouſa, Montauban, la Vaur.
Albigeois, Alby, Caſtres.
Auraguais, Caſtelnau darry, St. Papoul.
Foix, Foix, Pamies, Mirepoix, Rieux.
Lower LANGUEDOC; where are
Quarter of Narbone, Narbone, Aleth, Limouth, Carcaſſone, St. Pons de Tomieres.
Quarter of Beziers, Beziers, Agde, Peſenas, Lodeve.
Quarter of Niſmes, Monpellier, Niſmes, Beaucaire, Aiguesmortes.
SEVENNES; where are
Gevaudan, Mende, Merveich, or Mervejols.
Velay, le Puy.
Vivarais, Viviers, le Pond St. Eſprit, Uzes.
Between the RHOSNE, and the ALPES, as
DAUPHINE, with its Parts
Towards the RHOSNE, or ROANE,
Viennois, Vienna.
Valentinois, Higher, Valence, Romans, St. Marcellin.
Lower, Creſt, Montelimar.
Tricaſtin, St. Pol Trois chaux.
In the midſt of the Country
Griſivaudan, Grenoble.
Diois, Die.
Baronies, le Buiſs.
Towards the Alpes,
Embrunois, Embrun.
Gapenſois, Gap.
Brianſonnois, Brianſon.
PROVENCE, with its Places
Towards the Rhoſne, or Roane, Arles, Taraſcon.
Upon the Sea, Marſeille, Toulon, St. Tropes, Frejuls, Antibe, Craſe, Vence.
In the midſt of the Country, Aix, Salon, Apt, Folcalquier, Riez, Draguignan.
Towards the Alpes, Siſteron, Digne, Senez, Glandeve.

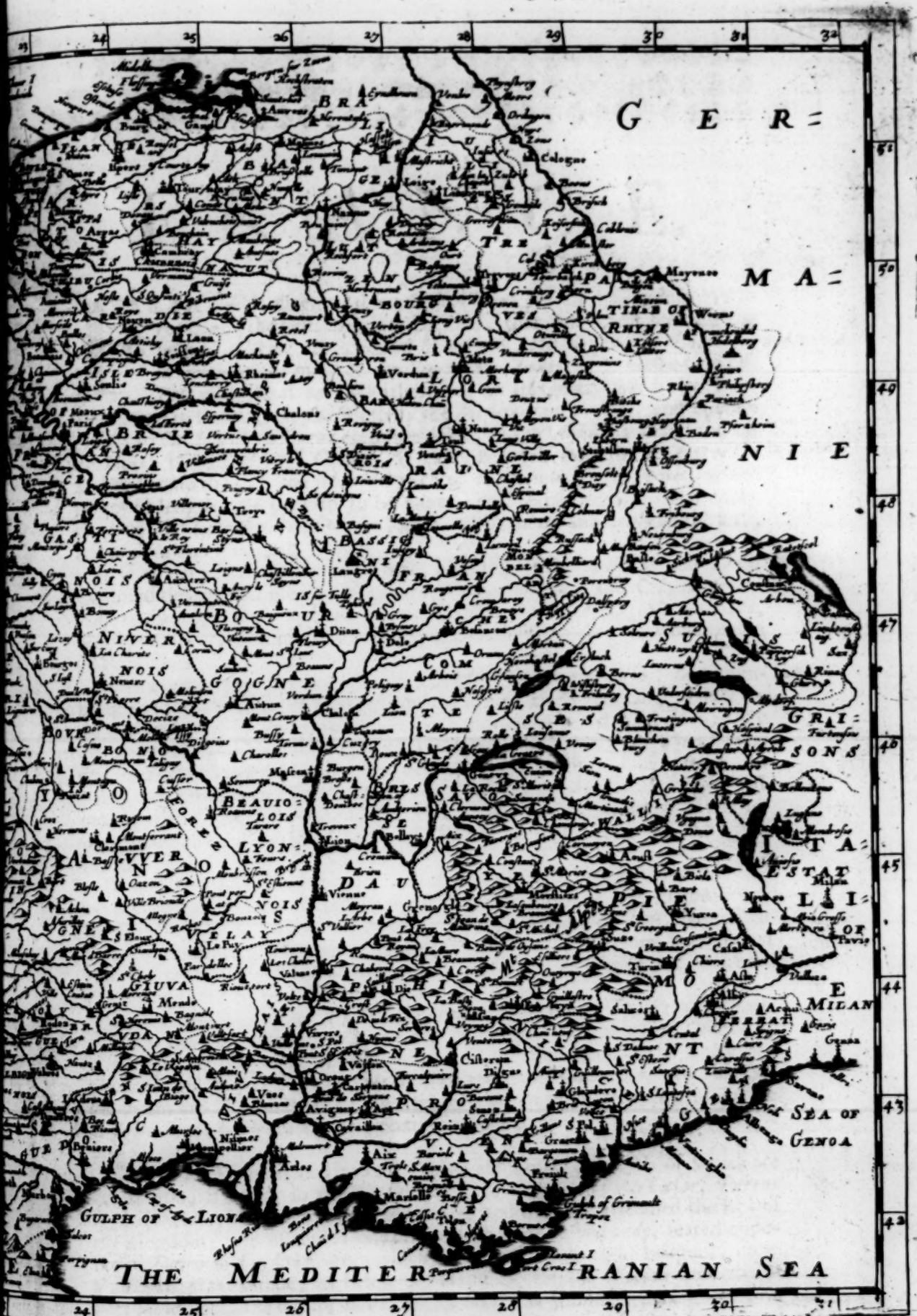
Eſtates,

Estates, Counties, Bishopricks, Cities, &c. taken and purchased by (and in the Protection, Guard, and Possession of) the King of FRANCE, *viz.*

- In the Estates of the CATHOLICK KING, to wit,
  - In SPAIN, as
    - The County of Roussillon; where are — Perpignan, Elne, Collioure, Salces, &c.
    - The County of Cerdagne, — Puy, Cerda, &c.
    - The Principality of Catalogne, and County of Barcelone; where are — Barcelona, Girona, Vich, Solsona, Urgel, Manresa, Cardona, Cadegues, &c.
  - In the LOW COUNTRY, as
    - Part of the County of Flanders, — Gravelines, Watten.
    - Part of the County of Artois, — Arras, Hesdin, Bappaumes.
    - Part of the County of Haynaut, — Landrochy.
    - Part of the Dutchy of Luxembourg, — Thionville, Damvillers.
  - In the FRENCH COUNTY, as
    - Part of the Balliages of Gray, — Vesoul, Lure, &c.
    - Part of the Balliages of Salins, — Arbois, Poligny, Bletterans, St. Amour, Joux, &c.
- In divers Lands and Principalities, the most part of which are esteemed in the Empire of GERMANY, to wit,
  - In the Estate of LORRAIN, as
    - The Dutchy of Barrois, — Barle Duc, Ligny, St. Michael, Pont a Mousson.
    - The Dutchy of Lorrain, — Nancy, Mirecourt, Newchastel on the Meuse, Dieuze, Sirke, &c.
    - The Bishoprick of Metz, — Vic, Moyen-Vic, Marsal, St Avold, Alberstrof, Espernay.
  - About LORRAIN, as
    - The Principality of ——— Sedan.
    - The Principality of Arches, or Charleville — Charleville, Clermont, Stenay, Jametz.
    - The County of ——— Biche.
  - In and about the PALATINATE of the RHINE, as
    - Part of the Palatinate of the Rhine, — Bacharach, Creutznach, Altzheim, Oppenheim, Neustat, Landau, Germesheim, &c.
    - Part of the Archbishoprick of Mayence, — Mayence, Bingen, &c.
    - Part of the Bishoprick of Wormes, — Wormes.
    - Part of the Bishoprick of Spire, — Spire, Udenheim, or Philipsbourg.
    - Part of the Estate of Bade, — Baden, Durlach, Pfortzheim, &c.
  - In ALSACE, or ALSATIA, as
    - Low Alsace, — Haguenau, Saverne, &c.
    - Higher Alsace, — Colmar, Schlestat, Brisach, Newbourg, &c.
    - County of Pfirt, or Ferrette, and Country of Sungou, — Ferrette, Tannes, Befort, Blome, Landseron, &c.
  - About ALSACE, as
    - The County of ——— Monbeliard, &c.
    - The Bishoprick of Basle, — Porentru, St. Urfane, Dalsperg, or Delmont, &c.
    - The County of Reinfield, — Reinfield, Lanstenbourg, Waldshout.
    - In the Dutchy of Wirtenberg, — Hohen-Wiel,
    - In Piedmont, ——— Pignerol, &c.
- In ITALY,
  - In the Estates of the Duke of SAVOY, to wit,
    - In the Principality of Piedmont, — Turin, Suze, Avigliane, Chivas, Santja, Ast, Quierasco, Coni, Caours, &c.
    - In the Marquisate of Saluces, — Carmagnole, Demont.
  - In the Estates of MONFERRAT, viz.
    - In the Dukedom of Savoy, — Trin, &c.
    - In the Dukedom of Mantoua, — Casal, Aqui.
  - On the River of GENES, The Principality of ——— Monaco, or Morgues.



A GENERALL MAPP of the KINGDOM of FRANCE. Designed


GER=
MA=
NIE
THE MEDITERRANIAN SEA
GULPH OF LION
Sea of Genoa
Rhine
Rhone
Loire
Seine
Paris
Lyon
Avignon
Milan
Genoa
Marseilles
Arles
Aix
Toulon
Nice
Geneva
Dijon
Orleans
Chalons
Troyes
Auxerre
Autun
Nevers
Bourges
Limoges
Clermont
Montpellier
Nismes
Grenoble
Turin
Savoy
Piedmont
Languedoc
Provence
Dauphine
Burgundy
Champagne
Lorraine
Alsace
Switzerland
Italy
Cologne
Mayence
Worms
Spires
Strasburg
Frankfort
Treves
Metz
Verdun
Toul
Nancy
Basil
Constance
Milan
Pavia
Cremona
Mantua
Verona
Venice
Padua
Vicenza
Bergamo
Brescia
Trent
Inspruck
Ulm
Augsburg
Munich
Ratisbon
Passau
Vienna
Prague
Dresden
Leipsic
Magdeburg
Hamburg
Lubeck
Bremen
Embden
Groningen
Amsterdam
Utrecht
Rotterdam
Dort
Leyden
Haerlem
Middleburg
Flushing
Antwerp
Brussels
Mons
Namur
Liege
Maestricht
Ghent
Bruges
Ostend
Dunkirk
Calais
Boulogne
Abbeville
Amiens
Arras
Lisle
Tournay
Douay
Cambray
Rheims
Soissons
Chalons
Troyes
Sens
Auxerre
Nevers
Moulins
Bourges
Orleans
Blois
Tours
Poitiers
Angoulesme
Limoges
Perigueux
Bordeaux
Rochelle
Nantes
Rennes
Caen
Rouen
Dieppe
Havre de Grace
Harfleur
Honfleur
Caudebec
Evreux
Dreux
Chartres
Versailles
Meaux
Provins
Fontainebleau
Montargis
Gien
Sancerre
Briare
Auxerre
Avallon
Semur
Beaune
Chalons
Macon
Tournus
Bourg
Lyon
Vienne
Valence
Montelimart
Orange
Carpentras
Cavaillon
Avignon
Tarascon
Arles
Nismes
Montpellier
Frontignan
Agde
Beziers
Narbonne
Perpignan
Salces
Leucate
Cape of the Lion
Gulph of Grimaud
Toulon
Frejus
Antibes
Nice
Villa Franca
Monaco
Ventimiglia
Oneglia
Savona
Genoa
Rapallo
Sestri
Chiavari
Spezia
Carrara
Massa
Lucca
Pisa
Leghorn
Florence
Pistoia
Prato
Arezzo
Cortona
Siena
Montepulciano
Orvieto
Viterbo
Rome
Civita Vecchia
Tivoli
Frascati
Albano
Velletri
Terracina
Gaeta
Capua
Naples
Aversa
Salerno
Amalfi
Sorrento
Castellamare
Puzzuoli
Baiae
Cumae
Ischia
Procida
Capri
Mount Vesuvius
Mount Gargano
Manfredonia
Barletta
Bari
Monopoli
Brundusium
Otranto
Cape Otranto
Tarentum
Gulph of Tarentum
Cape Spartivento
Reggio
Messina
Faro
Cape Pelorus
Lipari Islands
Stromboli
Vulcano
Lipari
Salina
Panaria
Alicudi
Filicudi
Ustica
Trapani
Marsala
Cape Lilybaeum
Mazara
Sciacca
Girgenti
Cape Bon
Cape Carthage
Tunis
Goletta
Biserta
Utica
Carthage
Porto Farina
Porto Ferino
Cape Zibeb
Cape Blanco
Bona
Hippo
Cape Rosa
Cape Negro
Bizerta
Cape Serrat
Tabarca
Cape Tabarca
Algiers
Cape Matifou
Cape Caxine
Cape Metafuz
Cape Tenes
Cape Ivi
Cape Figalo
Cape Figuier
Oran
Cape Falcon
Cape Tres Forcas
Mellila
Cape de Gat
Almeria
Cape Palos
Carthagena
Cape de la Nao
Alicant
Cape Martin
Denia
Cape St. Antonio
Valencia
Cape Cullera
Murviedro
Sagunto
Peniscola
Cape Oropesa
Tortosa
Cape Tortosa
Tarragona
Cape Salou
Barcelona
Cape Creux
Rosas
Cape Rosas
Port Vendres
Collioure
Perpignan
Salces
Narbonne
Beziers
Agde
Frontignan
Montpellier
Nismes
Arles
Avignon
Carpentras
Orange
Montelimart
Valence
Vienne
Lyon
Tournus
Macon
Bourg
Chalons
Auxonne
Dijon
Beaune
Semur
Auxerre
Avallon
Sancerre
Briare
Gien
Montargis
Fontainebleau
Provins
Meaux
Versailles
Chartres
Dreux
Evreux
Caudebec
Honfleur
Harfleur
Havre de Grace
Dieppe
Rouen
Caen
Rennes
Nantes
Rochelle
Angoulesme
Perigueux
Bordeaux
Poitiers
Tours
Blois
Orleans
Bourges
Moulins
Nevers
Auxerre
Troyes
Sens

FRANCE.

FRANCE is esteemed the most fertil and powerful Kingdom in *Europe*, and the best, next to *England*, that can subsist without the help of others. It is seated about the 45*th degrees* of *Latitude*, which is in the midst of the *Temperate Zone*. It is washed on the East with the *Rhine*, together with an imaginary line drawn from *Strasburgh* to *Calais*; on the South by the *Mediterranean Seas*, and opens a passage to the *Northern Ocean*; on the West by the *Aquitain Sea*; and on the North by the *British Ocean*. It extends it self from the 42 *degrees* of *Latitude* unto the 51, and from the 15*th* of *Longitude* to the 29*th*, which makes its length and breadth to be above 200 *French Leagues*. It is contiguous to the *Low Countries* on the North, to *Germany* and *Italy* on the East, and to *Spain* on the South. Its Situation. Its Bounds.

It is of an extraordinary fertil Soil, affording three excellent and useful Commodities in great plenty, *viz. Corn*, *Wine*, and *Salt*; also *Oil*, *Almonds*, *Paper*, *Canvass*, *Linnen*, both fine and course, *Oade*, *Corral*, *Skins*, *Nuts*, *Stuffs*, and several Manufactures, Toies, and Curiosities. It is very plentiful in all Provisions. Its Soil and Commodities.

It is exceeding populous and crouded with *Towns* and *Cities*, once numbring 100000 *Parishes*, which are now reduced to a less number. The *People* are well proportionate, and indifferent handsom, especially the *Men*; they are of a ready and Mercurial wit, of a courteous Behaviour, of a hot Brain, and soon moved to Broils; they are very active, and given to Exercises; in weighty Affairs, both *Civil* and *Martial*, they are not over subtle, their first attempt being like *thunder*, and their end like *smoak*. In matters of Religion they generally follow the Church of *Rome*, in which they are not over strict. Its People.

It would be too tedious to observe all the different *Orders* and *Governments* in this Kingdom; we will content our selves to say, that in the Assemblies of the General Estates, where the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, and *third Estate*, have their Seats, it is divided into twelve several Governments, of which four are on this side, or if you please, Northwards of the *Loire*; four upon and about the *Loire*, and four beyond the South of the *Loire*.

The four on this side are *Picardy*, *Normandy*, the Isle of *France*, and *Champaigne*; the four about the *Loire* are *Bretaigne*, *Orleance*, or *Orlenois*, *Bourgogne*, or *Burgundy*, and *Lionois*; and the four beyond the *Loire* are *Guienne* and *Gascoigne*, *Languedoc*, *Dauphin*, and *Provence*. In each Government are several Parts or Countries, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Tables* of the Kingdom, of which in order.

PICARDY is divided into the Higher and Lower, in both of which are divers good Towns; in the Lower are 1. *Calais*, called by *Cæsar*, *Portus Iccius*, held by the *English* near 200 years, and was then esteemed the Key of the Kingdom; it is esteemed one of the best Ports in *Picardy*, seated opposite to *Dover* in *England*, from which it is distant about eight Leagues, once a place of great Trade, as being the Staple of *English Wools*; now only of note for its being the receipt of Passengers from this Kingdom to *England*, to Goverment of *Picardy*.

and ſro. 2. *Bulloigne*, a ſtrong Frontier Town, towards the Sea. 3. *Abbeville*, alſo a ſtrong Frontier Town. In the higher *Picardy* are, 1. *Amiens*, a Frontier City towards *Flanders*, well fortified, and famous for the ſudden loſs, and as ſudden and brave regaining it by *Henry* the *Fourth*. 2. *St. Quintin*, a ſtrong Frontier Town.

Dukedom of *Normandy*.

NORMANDY, well watered with *Rivers*, amongſt which are the *Seine*, *Anon*, and *Orne*. It is well garniſhed with *Cities* and *Towns*, many of which are commodiouſly ſeated for Trade, by reaſon of their vicinity to the *Britiſh Ocean*; the chief of which are, 1. *Roan*, its Metropolis, ſeated in the higher *Normandy*, on the banks of the *Seine*, over which there is a famous Bridge of *Boats*. Here is held one of the *Parliaments* of *France*, and it is a place of as great Trade as any in *France*, being one of the three principal *Towns*, where *Exchanges* are uſed. Here the *Engliſh* have a publick Hall allowed them for the ſale of *Engliſh Woolen-cloth*, to which place at certain days they are conſtrained to expoſe them to ſale. 2. *Havre de Grace*, or *New Haven*, the ſtrongeſt place in all *Normandy*. 3. *Dieppe*, alſo a City of ſome Trade, being a common Landing-place for the *Engliſh* in their paſſage into *France*. 4. *Caen*, famous for its long reſiſtance of *Henry* the Fifth of *England*. 5. *Falais*, once a ſtrong Town: here it was that Duke *Robert* paſſing through ſaw ſome Maids a dancing, amongſt which was one *Arlet*, a *Skinners* Daughter, who ſo nimbly footed it, that his deſires were to enjoy her, thinking ſhe would be as active in the Bed; whereupon he ſent for her, and obtained his deſires; in which ſhe ſo pleaſed him, that he begat on her *William* the Baſtard King of *England*, in ſpight to whom, and diſgrace to his Mother, the *Engliſh* call Whores, *Harlots*. 6. *Charenton*, famous for the Preaching of that eminent Divine *Peter du Moulin*: and 7. *Conſtance*.

Iſle of *France*.

The *Iſle* of *FRANCE*, made ſo by the circlings and confluences of the *Seine* and other little *Brooks*: It lieth in the heart of all *France*, where we ſhall find not only its particular glory, but that of all the Kingdom, to wit,

City of *Paris*.

Paris, which for its *Riches*, *Power* and *number* of Inhabitants, may juſtly contend with any in *Europe*. It is about 12 miles in circuit, if all the *Suburbs* are reckoned, and in form rather round than oval; ſeated on the *Seine*, and in a Soil ſo fertil, that not many Cities know ſo great plenty. It is of no great ſtrength, nor of much conſequence in matter of Trade, only contenting themſelves with enough to ſerve the Inhabitants and Court; yet in matter of *Coin* it giveth rule to all Cities in *France*, and is another of the three Cities where *Exchanges* are placed; a convenience for the *Nobility*, *Gentry*, and *Courtiers*, as alſo for *Strangers*. The chief ornaments of it are the Palace of the *Louvre*, ſo much famouſed abroad; beſides ſo many *Palaces* of the Nobility, amongſt the reſt that of *Luxembourgh*, its *Palace-Royal*, its Church of *Noſtre Dame*, its *Univerſity*, formed by *Charlemain* in *Anno* 800, eſteemed the firſt in *Europe*, containing 55 *Colledges*, and particularly the Colledge of the *Sorbona*; alſo the Halls of *Juſtice*, or Courts of *Parliament*, being as our Courts of *Judicature*, are all remarkable. Next to this City may be reckoned, 1. *St. Dennis*, about three miles from *Paris*, famous for the Sepulchres of the *French* Kings. 2. *Pont-oyſe*; 3. *Meaux*; 4. *Beauvais*, and 5. *Soiſſons*. In this Province is the beautiful Houſe and Foreſt of *Fontaine Bleau*, built by *Henry* the Fourth, eſteemed not only one of the faireſt Palaces in all *France*, but of *Chriſtendom*; here is alſo ſeated the Royal Manſion of St. *Germains* and *Boys de Vincennes*, where the puiſſant *Henry* the Fifth finiſhed his days. In this Province is the Dukedom of *Valois*, whoſe chief places are *Luzarch* and *Sen-lis*: This Country abounds in *Vineyards*, which yields the ſharp Wine called *Vin de Paris*.

Province of *Champaign*.

CHAMPAIGNE, ſo called from being a Champain Country; its chief places are, 1. *Rheims*, famous for being the place where the Kings of *France* are uſually Crowned, and anointed with an Oil here kept, which they ſay came

came down from Heaven, and never decreaſeth; and here is a Colledge for *Engliſh Jeſuits*. 2. *Chaaloons*, 3. *Langres*, 4. *Sens*, and 5. *Troyes*, all places of ſome account.

BRETAIGNE, or *Britanny*, whoſe chief Port-Towns are *Breſt*, *Blavet*, and St. *Malos*; and within Land the Cities of 1. *Nantes*, ſeated on the *Loire*. 2. *Rennes*, where the Parliament for this Province is held. 3. *Vennes*, ſeated on the South-Sea. 4. *Breine*; and 5. *Morlaix*, of note for its great ſtore of Paper ſo called. Province of Britany.

Under the Government of *ORLEANS*, or *ORLEANOIS*, we comprehend divers *Provinces* on this ſide, upon, and beyond the *Loire*, *viz.*

MAINE, whoſe chief places are, 1. *Maine*, ſeated on the River *Magenue*, which diſchargeth it ſelf into the *Loire*: 2. *Mayenne*, 3. *Laval*, and 4. *Domfront*. Province of Maine.

PERCHE, on the borders of *Normandy*, hath for its chief places *Nogent le Retrou*, *Mortaigne*, and *Vernevil*; which by ſome are eſteemed in *Normandy*. Province of Perche.

LA BEAUCE hath for its principal places, 1. *Chartes*, ſeated on the *Loire*, a fair and pleaſant City, dignified with an *Univerſity* for the ſtudy of the Civil Laws. 2. *Eſtampes*, 3. *Chaſteau Dun*, and 4. *Vendoſme*. Province of la Beauce.

GASTENOIS hath for its principal place *Montargis*. Province of Gaſtenois.

NIVERNOIS, or *BURBON*, well watered by the *Loire* and *Allier*; its chief places are, 1. *Nerves*, of ſome account for its pretty *Glaſs-works*, and is dignified with an ancient Dukedom. 2. *La Charite*, 3. *Clamecy*, and 4. *Donzy*. Province of Nivernois.

ORLEANOIS, whoſe chief City is *Orleans*, from whence the Government or Province took its name; a City, if *Paris* excepted, may contend with any in *France*, having once been the Seat of a King of its own. Its pleaſant ſcituation on the *Loire* makes it extream delightful, and although of no conſiderable Trade, yet is a great Thorough-fair for ſuch Commodities as paſs to *Lions*, and other places in the heart of the Kingdom. Province of Orleanois.

BLASOIS hath for its chief place *Blois*, where, by the command of *Henry* the Third, the Duke of *Guiſe*, the firſt ſtirrer up of the Civil Wars in *France*, as alſo the great contriver and promoter of the grievous Maſſacre at *Paris*, was ſlain in the *Senate-houſe*. Province of Blaſois.

TOURAINE hath for its chief places, 1. *Tours*, where the *Proteſtants* firſt began, and from one of whoſe Gates (called *Hugo's-Gate*) they were called *Hugonots*. Nigh to this place it was that *Charles Martel*, Father of King *Pepin*, diſcomfited an Army of about 400000 *Saracens*, and ſlew of them about 370000. 2. *Amboiſe*, 3. *Loches*, and 4. *Chinon*. Province of Touraine.

ANJOU, adjoyning to *Maine*, a ſmall Province, but exceeding fertil, and affords the beſt *Wines* in *France*. Its chief places are 1. *Angiers*, dignified with an *Univerſity*. 2. *Saumur*, a Town delightfully ſeated on the *Loire*, and dignified with the only *Proteſtant Univerſity* in *France*: and 3. *la Fleche*. Province of Anjou.

POICTOU, a large and populous Province, numbring about 1200 *Pariſhes*, and dignified with three *Biſhopricks*; its principal places are 1. *Poictiers*, ſeated on the River *Clavius*, famous for the ſtudy of the *Civil Laws*, and in greatneſs eſteemed next to *Paris*; but of ſmall account as to matter of Trade. 2. *Maillezais*, 3. *Luſon*, 4. *Chaſtelleroud*, 5. *Niort*, 6. *Luſignan*, and 7. *Touars*. This Country is very fertil, eſpecially in good *Vineyards*; and in theſe Fields were fought that memorable Battle, between *John* of *France* and *Edward* the *Black Prince*, who contrary to all expectation gained the day. Province of Poictou.

AUNIS, South of *Poictou*, hath for its chief City *Rochel*, commodiouſly ſeated on the *Aquitain* Ocean, by reaſon of which it enjoyeth a great Trade; it is a place of great ſtrength, as may appear by the reſiſtance the *Proteſtants* there inhabiting, made againſt the powerful Army of the *French* King. Province of Aunis.

Province of *Angoumois.* *ANGOUMOIS*, South of *Guienne*, hath for its chief place *Angouleſme.*

Province of *Berry.* *BERRY*, very fertil and hath rich Paſtures, on which are fed abundance of *Sheep*, of whoſe *Wool* the Inhabitants make ſtore of *Cloth.* Its chief places are 1. *Burges*, dignified with a flouriſhing *Univerſity*; 2. *Iſſoudun*, 3. *Chaſteau Roux*, 4. *Argentum*, and 5. *Sancerre.*

Province or Dutchy of *Burgundy.* *BOURGOGNE*, or *BURGUNDY*, which is ſubdivided into ſeveral leſs parts, hath for its chief places 1. *Dijon*, built by the Emperour *Aurelian*, proud in her *Parliament*, and for giving birth to St. *Bernard.* 2. *Autun*, once the chief City in the Province, and dignified with an *Epiſcopal See.* 3. *Beaune*, famous for its ſtately *Hoſpital*, equalizing many Princes Palaces; and theſe places are in *Bourgogne*, particularly ſo called. 4. *Challon*, in *Challonnois*, belonging to the Houſe of *Orange.* 5. *Maſcon*, in *Maſconnois*, where the *Devil* made his viſits and diſputes to a *Miniſter*, which ſtory is ſufficiently known, being at large treated of in a Book entituled the *Devil* of *Maſcon.* 6. *Semur*, in *Auxois*; and 7. *Chaſtillon* on the *Seine*, in the Country of *Montagne.*

Several ſmall Countries. Adjacent to this Province of *Burgundy* are the Countries of *Charollois*, *Auxerrois*, *Breſſe*, *Balliage*, *Beugey*, and *Veromey.* The chief place of *CHAROLLOIS*, is *Chorolles*; of *AUXERROIS*, *Auxerre*; of *BRESSE*, *Bourge*, a Town ſo well built and ſo ſtrongly fortified, that it is eſteemed impregnable; of *BALLIAGE*, which bordereth upon the *Swiſſes* and *Savoy*, *Gex*, which is not far diſtant from *Geneve*; and of *BUGET* and *VEROMAY*, bordering upon *Dolphin* and *Savoy*; *Belly*, which is a place of ſome account.

Province of *Lionnois.* *LIONNOIS* hath for its chief places, 1. *Lions*, ſeated upon the conjunction of the *Roane* with the *Soane*, by ſome eſteemed the ſecond City of *France*, a famous ancient Mart Town, and the See of an *Archbiſhop*, who is Primate of all *France.* 2. *Treveux*, in the Sovereignty of *Dombes*; *Mombrizon*, in the County of *Forez*; and 4. *Ville Franche*, in the Country of *Beaujolois.*

Province of *Auvergne.* *AUVERGNE* hath for its chief places, 1. *Bourbon* the *Archambaul*; 2. *Molins*, ſeated on the *Elaver*, of note for their neat Caſes of *Knives* and *Sciſſers*, both in the part or Country of *Bourbonnois.* 3. St. *Pierre le Montier*, in *Nivernois*: 4. *Cleremont*, the Seat of *Vercingetorix*, who ſo bravely oppoſed *Cæſar*; 5. *Riom*, 6. *Monferrand*, 7. *Vic le Comte*, and 8. *St. Flour*, all in *Auvergne*, particularly ſo called. 9. *Gueret*, and 10. *Dorat*, in the Part of *La Marche.*

Government of *Guienne* and *Gaſcogne.* In the Government of *Guyenne* and *Gaſcogne* are ſeveral *Provinces* and *Countries*, in which are ſeated many good *Towns* and *Cities.*

In *GUIENNE* are 1. the Province of *Saintonge*, whoſe chief place is *Sainctes.* 2. *Guienne*, which hath for its principal City *Bourdeaux*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Gerende*, famous for being the Birth-place of King *Richard* the Second, at preſent honoured with an *Univerſity* and a *Parliament.* It is a place of a very great Trade, and plentifully furniſhed with divers good Commodities, eſpecially *Wines* and *Paper.* 3. *Perigort*, hath for its chief place *Perigueux*, ſeated on the Banks of *Ila*; 4. *Agenois*, whoſe chief place is *Agen*; 5. *Limoſin* hath for its chief places *Limoges* and *Brive*; 6. *Quercy*, in which are ſeated *Cahors*, a rich and beautiful City, built on the aſcent of a Hill; and *Montalbon*, ſcituate on the *Garond*, a place of good ſtrength; and 7. *Rovergue*, whoſe chief places are *Rodez* and *Vabres.*

Provinces in *Gaſcogne.* In *GASCOGNE* are alſo divers Provinces, which with its chief places are taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of the four Governments beyond the *Loire*, beginning with *Guienne* and *Gaſcogne.*

Province of *Languedoc.* *LANGUEDOC* may be divided into three quarters, in which are ſeveral parts. In the higher *Languedoc* are the Cities of *Toulouſa*, in *Toulouſan*, a fair large City, though of no continuance, and is a place of a conſiderable Inland-

Inland-trade. 2. *Alby*, in *Albigeois*; 3. *Caſtellau darry*, in *Auraguais*; and 4. *Foix*, in *Foix*. In the lower *Languedoc* are 1. *Narbone*, the firſt Colony planted by the *Romans* next to *Carthage*, out of *Italy*; 2. *Aleth*, 3. *Limouth*, all in *Narbone*; 4. *Beziers*, 5. *Agde*, and 6. *Pemenas*, in the quarter of *Beziers*, 7. *Montpellier*, eſteemed the healthfulleſt place for a pure Air in all *France*; 8. *Niſmes*, and 9. *Beaucaire*; all in the quarter of *Niſmes*. In the other part called *Sevennes* are, 1. *Mende*; in the quarter of *Gevaudan*; 2. *Le Puy*, in *Velay*; 3. *Viviers*, and 4. *Uzes*, in the part of *Vivarais*.

Province of Dauphine.

The Province of *DAULPHINE* is watered with the *Roane* and other Rivers, and honoured with the title of the Princes of *France*. It may be divided into three great parts, which are ſubdivided into others, *viz.* in the part or quarter towards the *Roane* are the Parts and Cities of *Vienne* in *Viennois*, of ſome eſteem for its excellent *Sword-blades* here made; 2. *Valence*, a fine City watered with the *Roane*; 3. *Romans*, 4. *St. Marcellin*, 5. *Creſt*, and 6. *Montelimar*; all in the higher and lower *Valentinois*; and *St. Pol Trois Chaux*, in the part of *Tricaſtin*. In the quarter in the midſt of the Province are 1. *Grenoble*, in *Griſvauden*; 2. *Die*, in *Diois*; and 3. *le Bujiz*, in *Baronies*: And in the quarter towards the *Alpes*, 1. *Embrun*, in *Embrunois*, 2. *Gap*, in *Gapenſois*, and 3. *Brianſon*, in *Brianſonnois*.

Province of Provence.

PROVENCE, waſhed by the *Mediterranean Sea*, hath for its chief places towards the *Roane*, *Arles*, a Town well fortified by *Henry* the Fourth; and *Taraſcon*. Upon the Sea, 1. *Marſeille*, once a Colony of the *Phœnicians*, commodiouſly ſeated on the *Mediterranean ſhoar*, enjoying an excellent Haven and Road for Shipping, which renders it a place of a conſiderable Trade, and is well frequented by Merchants. 2. *Thollon*, the beſt Sea-port Town on the *Mediterranean* in all *France*, having a capacious and ſafe Haven, and is well reſorted unto by Merchants. 3. *St. Tropes*; 4. *Grace*, and 5. *Vence*. In the midſt of the Province are 1. *Aix*, honoured with a *Parliament*; 2. *Salon*, 3. *Apt*, and 4. *Riez*: And towards the *Alpes* are *Siſteron*, *Digne*, *Senez*, *Glandeeve*, &c.

To the Province of *PROVENCE* doth belong the Country of *Avignon*, and the Principality of *Orange*: In *Avignon* are many walled *Towns* and ſome *Cities*, the chief of which is *Avignon*, a fair City ſeated on the *Roane*, famous for being the ancient Seat of the *Popes*, till removed to *Rome*. This City is worthy of obſervation, in that here is ſaid to be 7 *Pariſh Churches*, 7 *Monaſteries*, 7 *Nunneries*, 7 *Inns*, 7 *Palaces*, and 7 *Gates* to its *Walls*; as alſo for being made a *Univerſity*.

Principality of Orange.

In *ORANGE* are ſeveral good *Towns* and *Cities*, the chief of which is *Orange*, ſeated on the *Meine*, of note for the wonderful and excellent Antiquities that are here to be ſeen; and this Country belongs to the Prince of *Orange*.

To the twelve Governments we ought to add *LORRAINE*, where are the Cities of *St. Michael*, *Metz*, *Toul*, *Verdun*, and *Nancy*: alſo part of *Artois*; of *Haynault* and *Luxembourg*, where are the Cities of *Arras*, *Aveſnes*, *Moutmedy*, &c. Likewiſe the Principalities of *Sedan* and *Arches*, whoſe chief place is *Charleville*; alſo *Rouſillon*, on the Coaſt of *Spain*, whoſe chief places are *Perpignan*, *Elne*, *Collioure*, *Salces*, &c. *Alſatia*, on the ſide of *Germany*, and the Principality of *Breſs*, belonging to *Mademoiſelle d'Orleance*; but being to treat of theſe places in *Germany*, and elſewhere, I ſhall omit the deſcription of them here.

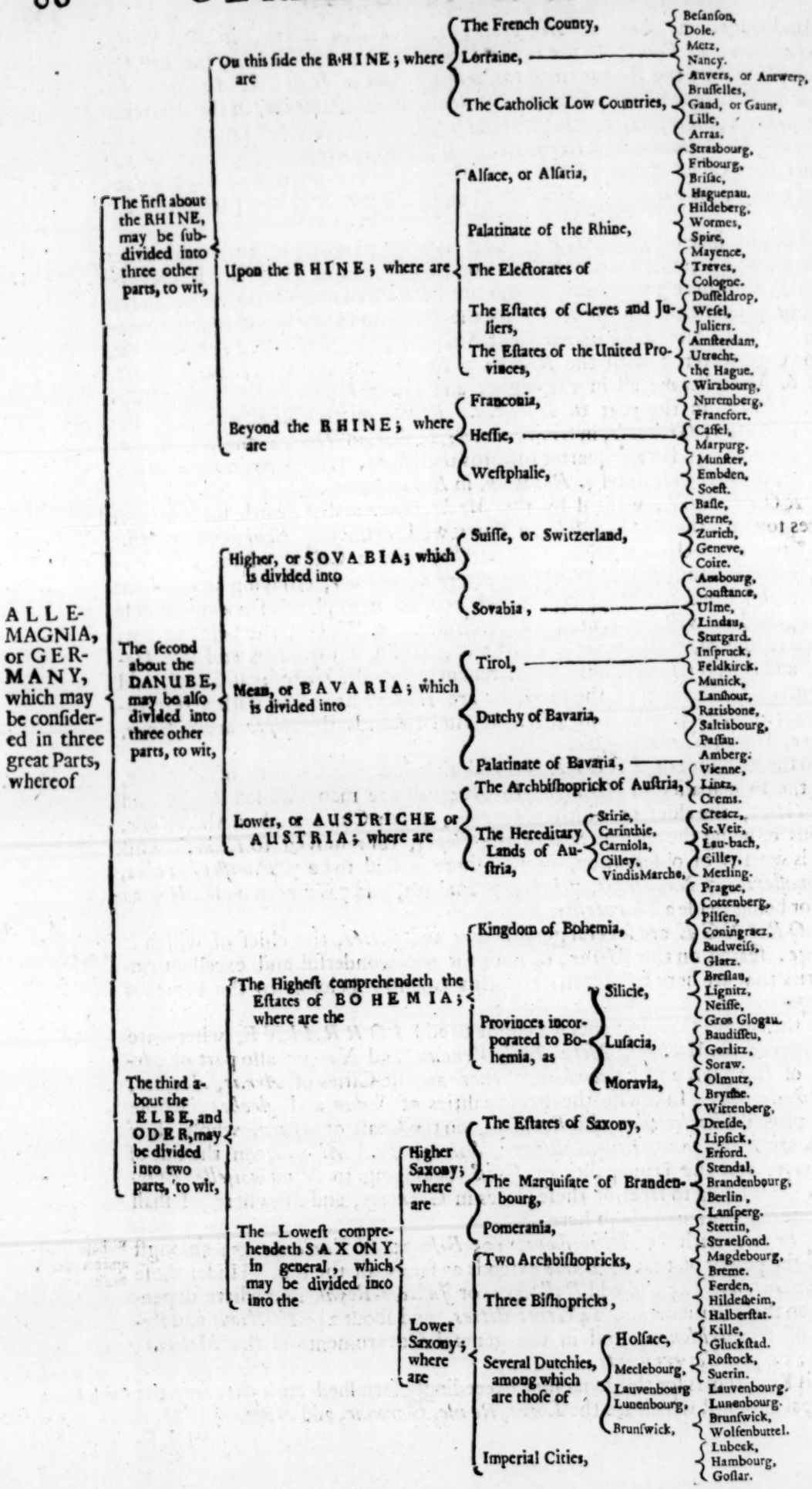
Biſhops, Parliaments, &c. in France.

All *France* hath 15 *Archbiſhops*, 105 *Biſhops*, 10 *Parliaments*; amongſt which the power of that of *Paris* extends as far as all the reſt. Under theſe *Parliaments* are 105 and odd *Balliages*, or *Juſtices-Royal*, immediate dependants on theſe Parliaments, 24 *Generalities*, and about 250 *Elections* and Receipts of *Royal-Money*: And in the general Governments of the *Militia*, about 2 or 300 *Governments*.

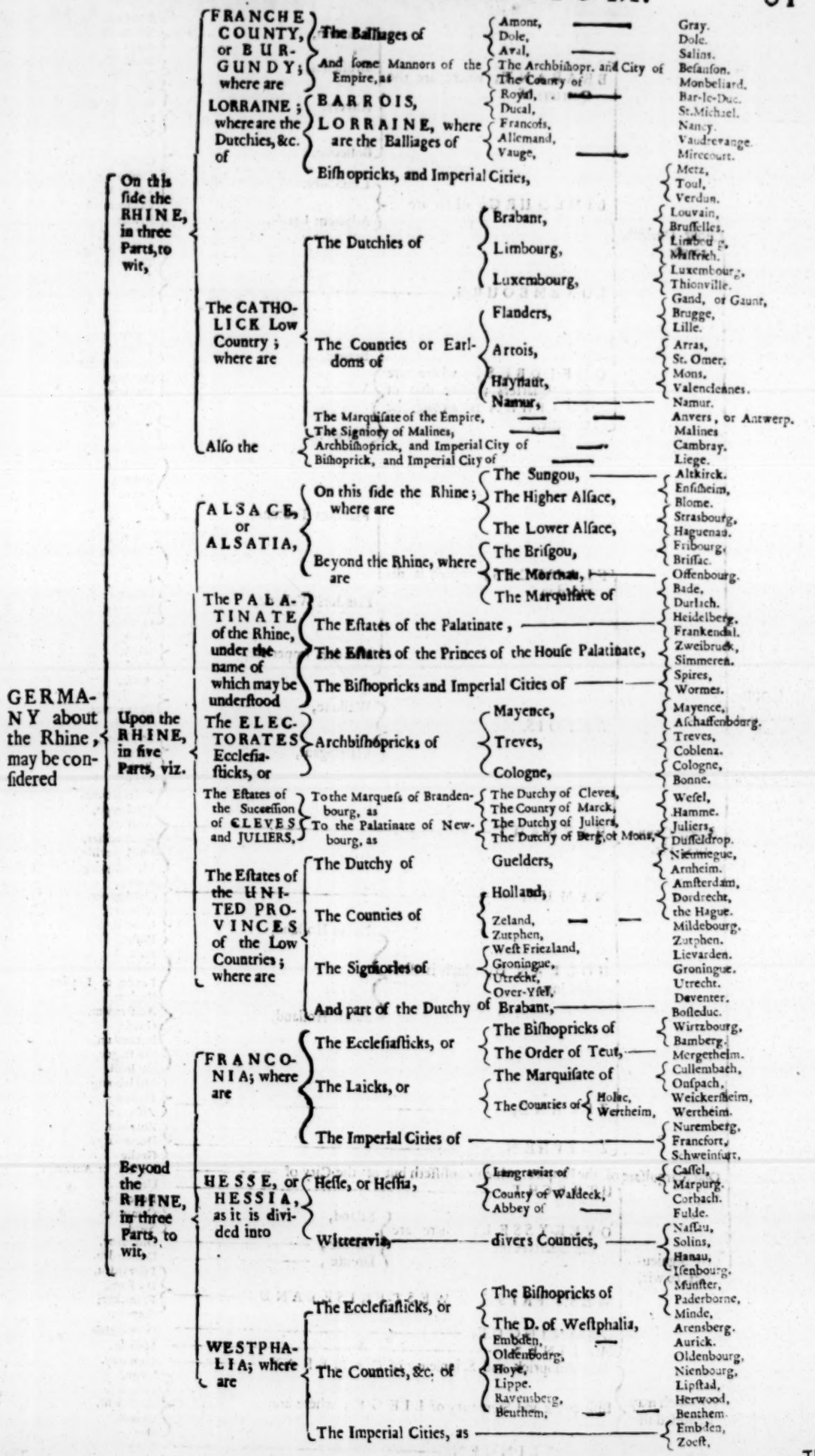
Chief Rivers.

This Kingdom is for the generality exceedingly furniſhed with *Rivers*, the principal amongſt which are the *Loire*, *Roane*, *Garonne*, and *Seine*.

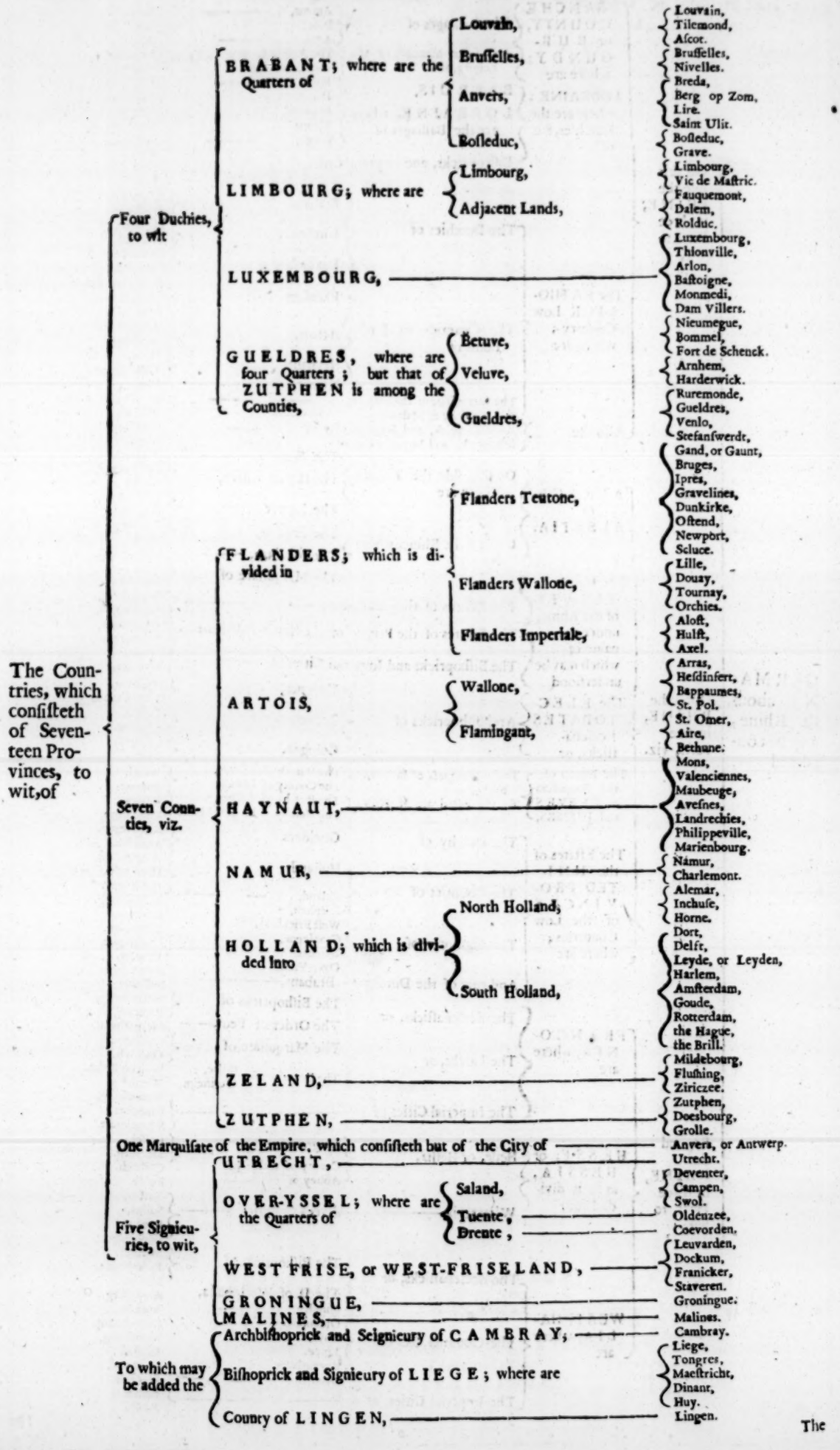
ALLE-


ALLEMAGNIA, or GERMANY, which may be considered in three great Parts, whereof
The first about the RHINE, may be subdivided into three other parts, to wit,
On this side the RHINE; where are
The French County,
Besanson,
Dole.
Lorraine,
Metz,
Nancy.
The Catholick Low Countries,
Anvers, or Antwerp,
Brusselles,
Gand, or Gaunt,
Lille,
Arras.
Upon the RHINE; where are
Alsace, or Alsatia,
Strasbourg,
Fribourg,
Brisac,
Haguenau.
Palatinate of the Rhine,
Hildeberg,
Wormes,
Spire,
The Electorates of
Mayence,
Treves,
Cologne.
The Estates of Cleves and Juliers,
Dusseldrop,
Wesel,
Juliers.
The Estates of the United Provinces,
Amsterdam,
Utrecht,
the Hague.
Beyond the RHINE; where are
Franconia,
Wirtzbourg,
Nuremberg,
Francfort.
Hessie,
Cassel,
Marpurg.
Westphalie,
Munster,
Embden,
Soest.
The second about the DANUBE, may be also divided into three other parts, to wit,
Higher, or SOVABIA; which is divided into
Suisse, or Switzerland,
Basle,
Berne,
Zurich,
Geneve,
Coire.
Sovabia,
Ambourg,
Constance,
Ulme,
Lindau,
Stutgard.
Mean, or BAVARIA; which is divided into
Tirol,
Inspruck,
Feldkirck.
Dutchy of Bavaria,
Munick,
Lanshout,
Ratisbone,
Saltisbourg,
Passau.
Palatinate of Bavaria,
Amberg.
Lower, or AUSTRICHE or AUSTRIA; where are
The Archbishoprick of Austria,
Vienne,
Lintz,
Crems.
The Hereditary Lands of Austria,
Stirie,
Carinthie,
Carniola,
Cilley,
Vindis Marche,
Creacz,
St. Veit,
Lau-bach,
Cilley,
Metling.
The third about the ELBE, and ODER, may be divided into two parts, to wit,
The Highest comprehendeth the Estates of BOHEMIA; where are the
Kingdom of Bohemia,
Prague,
Cottenberg,
Pilsen,
Coningracz,
Budweiss,
Glatz.
Provinces incorporated to Bohemia, as
Silicie,
Breslau,
Lignitz,
Neisse,
Gros Glogau.
Lusacia,
Baudissen,
Gorlitz,
Soraw.
Moravia,
Olmutz,
Brynne.
The Lowest comprehendeth SAXONY in general, which may be divided into the
Higher Saxony; where are
The Estates of Saxony,
Wittenberg,
Dresde,
Lipsick,
Erford.
The Marquisate of Brandenbourg,
Stendal,
Brandenbourg,
Berlin,
Lansperg.
Pomerania,
Stettin,
Straelsond.
Lower Saxony; where are
Two Archbishopricks,
Magdebourg,
Breme.
Three Bishopricks,
Verden,
Hildesheim,
Halberstat.
Several Dutchies, among which are those of
Holsace,
Kille,
Gluckstad.
Meclebourg,
Rostock,
Suerin.
Lauvenbourg
Lunenbourg,
Lauvenbourg.
Lunenbourg.
Brunswick,
Brunswick,
Wolfenbuttel.
Imperial Cities,
Lubeck,
Hambourg,
Goslar.

GER-


GERMANY about the Rhine, may be considered
On this side the RHINE, in three Parts, to wit,
FRANCHE COUNTY, or BURGUNDY; where are
The Balliages of
Amont, Gray.
Dole, Dole.
Aval, Salins.
And some Manners of the Empire, as
The Archbishopr. and City of Besanson.
The County of Monbeliard.
LORRAINE; where are the Dutchies, &c. of
BARROIS, Royal, Bar-le-Duc.
Ducal, St. Michael.
LORRAINE, where are the Balliages of
Francois, Nancy.
Allemand, Vaudrevange.
Vauge, Mirecourt.
Bishopricks, and Imperial Cities,
Metz, Toul, Verdun.
The CATHOLICK Low Country; where are
The Dutchies of
Brabant, Louvain, Brusselles.
Limbourg, Limbourg, Maestrich.
Luxembourg, Luxembourg, Thionville.
The Counties or Earldoms of
Flanders, Gand, or Gaunt, Brugge, Lille.
Artois, Arras, St. Omer.
Haynaut, Mons, Valenciennes.
Namur, Namur.
The Marquisate of the Empire, Anvers, or Antwerp.
The Signiory of Malines, Malines
Also the
Archbishoprick, and Imperial City of Cambray.
Bishoprick, and Imperial City of Liege.
Upon the RHINE, in five Parts, viz.
ALSACE, or ALSATIA,
On this side the Rhine; where are
The Sungou, Altkirck.
The Higher Alsace, Ensisheim, Blome.
The Lower Alsace, Strasbourg, Haguenau.
Beyond the Rhine, where are
The Brisgou, Fribourg, Brisac.
The Mortnau, Offenbourg.
The Marquisate of Bade, Durlich.
The PALATINATE of the Rhine, under the name of which may be understood
The Estates of the Palatinate, Heidelberg, Frankendal.
The Estates of the Princes of the House Palatinate, Zweibruck, Simmeren.
The Bishopricks and Imperial Cities of Spires, Wormes.
The ELECTORATES Ecclesiasticks, or
Archbishopricks of
Mayence, Mayence, Aschaffenbourg.
Treves, Treves, Coblenz.
Cologne, Cologne, Bonne.
The Estates of the Succession of CLEVES and JULIERS,
To the Marquess of Brandenbourg, as
The Dutchy of Cleves, Wesel, Hamme.
The County of Marck, Juliers,
To the Palatinate of Newbourg, as
The Dutchy of Juliers, Dusseldrop.
The Dutchy of Berg, or Mons,
The Estates of the UNITED PROVINCES of the Low Countries; where are
The Dutchy of Guelders, Nieumegue, Arnheim.
The Counties of
Holland, Amsterdam, Dordrecht, the Hague.
Zeland, Mildebourg.
Zutphen, Zutphen.
The Signiories of
West Friezland, Lievarden.
Groningue, Groningue.
Utrecht, Utrecht.
Over-Yssel, Deventer.
And part of the Dutchy of Brabant, Bosleduc.
Beyond the RHINE, in three Parts, to wit,
FRANCONIA; where are
The Ecclesiasticks, or
The Bishopricks of
Wirtzbourg, Bamberg.
The Order of Teut, Mergetheim.
The Laicks, or
The Marquisate of Cullembath, Onspach.
The Counties of
Holac, Weickersheim,
Wertheim, Wertheim.
The Imperial Cities of
Nuremberg, Francfort, Schweinfurt.
HESSE, or HESSIA, as it is divided into
Hesse, or Hessia,
Langraviat of Cassel, Marpurg.
County of Waldeck, Corbach.
Abbey of Fulde.
Witteravia, divers Counties,
Nassau, Solins, Hanau, Isenbourg.
WESTPHALIA; where are
The Ecclesiasticks, or
The Bishopricks of
Munster, Paderborne, Minde, Arensberg.
The D. of Westphalia,
The Counties, &c. of
Embden, Aurick.
Oldenbourg, Oldenbourg, Nienbourg.
Hoye, Lipstad.
Lippe. Herwood.
Ravensberg, Benthem.
Beurhem,
The Imperial Cities, as
Embden, Zoest,

The

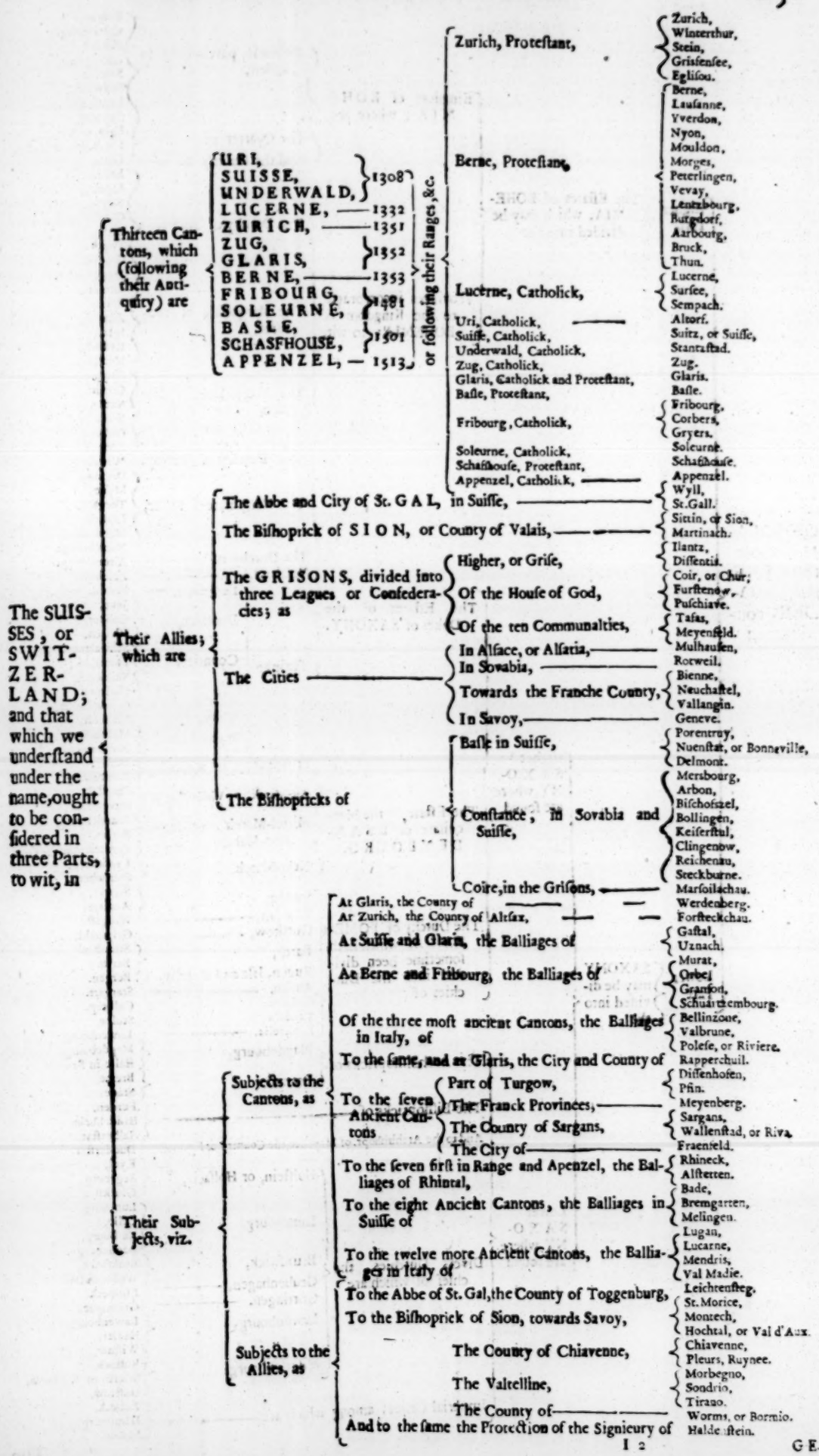

The Countries, which consisteth of Seventeen Provinces, to wit, of
Four Duchies, to wit
BRABANT; where are the Quarters of
Louvain,
Louvain, Tilemond, Ascot.
Bruſſelles,
Bruſſelles, Nivelles.
Anvers,
Breda, Berg op Zom, Lire, Saint Ulit.
Bosleduc,
Bosleduc, Grave.
LIMBOURG; where are
Limbourg,
Limbourg, Vic de Maſtric.
Adjacent Lands,
Fauquemont, Dalem, Rolduc.
LUXEMBOURG,
Luxembourg, Thionville, Arlon, Baſtoigne, Monmedi, Dam Villers.
GUELDRES, where are four Quarters; but that of ZUTPHEN is among the Counties,
Betuve,
Nieumegue, Bommel, Fort de Schenck.
Veluve,
Arnhem, Harderwick.
Gueldres,
Ruremonde, Gueldres, Venlo, Steſanſwerdt.
Seven Counties, viz.
FLANDERS; which is divided in
Flanders Teutone,
Gand, or Gaunt, Bruges, Ipres, Gravelines, Dunkirke, Oſtend, Newport, Scluce.
Flanders Wallone,
Lille, Douay, Tournay, Orchies.
Flanders Imperiale,
Aloſt, Hulſt, Axel.
ARTOIS,
Wallone,
Arras, Heſdinfert, Bappaumes, St. Pol.
Flamingant,
St. Omer, Aire, Bethune.
HAYNAUT,
Mons, Valenciennes, Maubeuge, Aveſnes, Landrechies, Philippeville, Marienbourg.
NAMUR,
Namur, Charlemont.
HOLLAND; which is divided into
North Holland,
Alemar, Inchuſe, Horne.
South Holland,
Dort, Delft, Leyde, or Leyden, Harlem, Amſterdam, Goude, Rotterdam, the Hague, the Brill.
ZELAND,
Mildebourg, Fluſhing, Ziriczee.
ZUTPHEN,
Zutphen, Doesbourg, Grolle.
One Marquiſate of the Empire, which consisteth but of the City of
Anvers, or Antwerp.
Five Signieuries, to wit,
UTRECHT,
Utrecht.
OVER-YSSEL; where are the Quarters of
Saland,
Deventer, Campen, Swol.
Tuente,
Oldenzee,
Brente,
Coevorden.
WEST FRISE, or WEST-FRISELAND,
Leuvarden, Dockum, Franicker, Staveren.
GRONINGUE,
Groningue.
MALINES,
Malines.
To which may be added the
Archbiſhoprick and Seigneury of CAMBRAY,
Cambray.
Biſhoprick and Signieury of LIEGE; where are
Liege, Tongres, Maeſtricht, Dinant, Huy.
County of LINGEN,
Lingen.

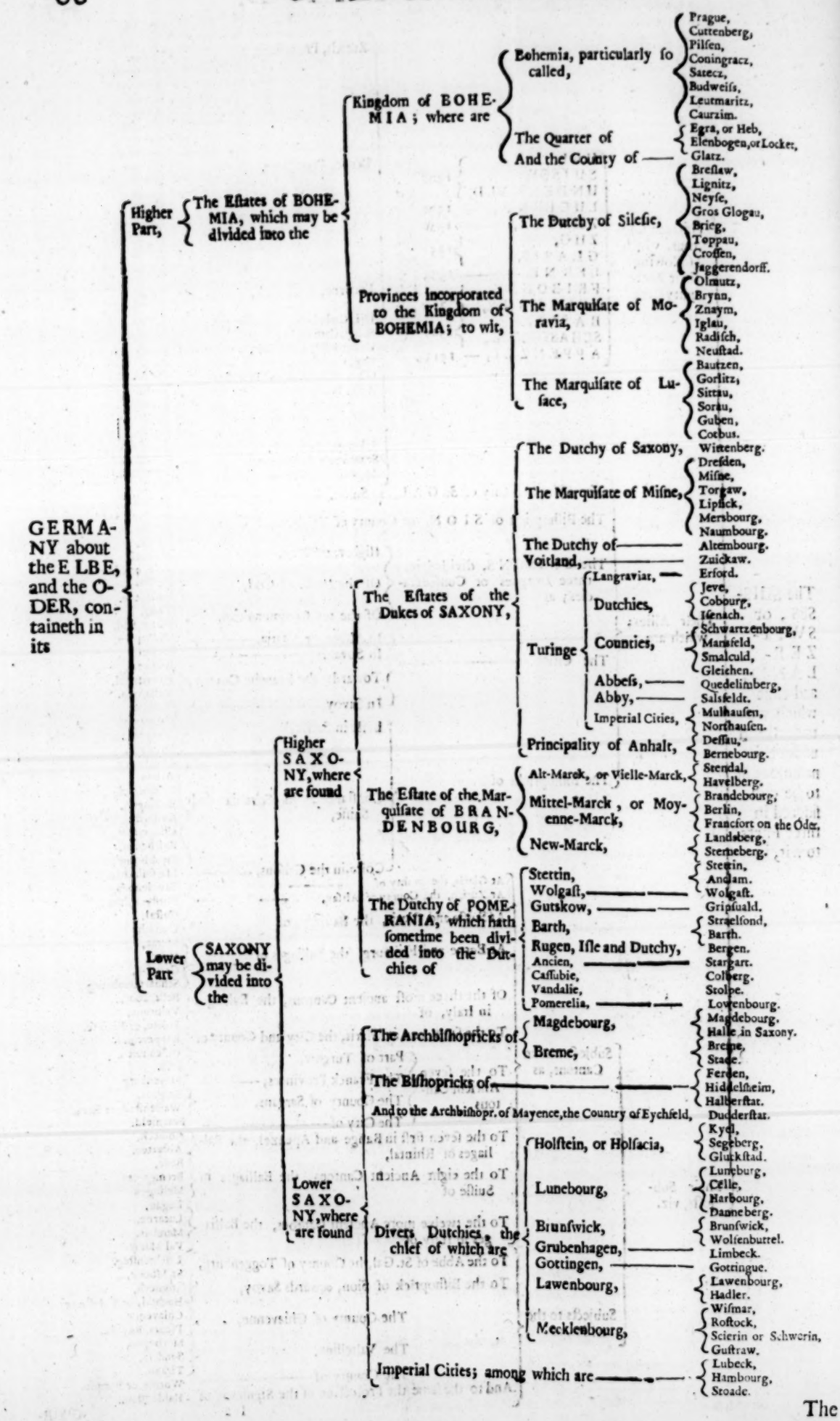
The

- The ESTATES, or UNITED PROVINCES of the LOW COUNTRIES, poſſeſſed
  - In EUROPE,
    - The moſt Northern part of the LOW COUNTRIES, where are eight Provinces, or Parts; to wit the
      - Dutchy of —— GUELDERS,
        - Quarter of Betuve,
          - Nieumegue,
          - Bommel,
          - Fort de Schenck.
        - Quarter of Veluve,
          - Arnhem,
          - Harderwick.
      - Counties of
        - HOLLAND,
          - North Holland,
            - Alcmar,
            - Horne,
            - Inchuſe.
          - South Holland,
            - Dordrecht,
            - Harlem,
            - Delft,
            - Leyde, or Leyden,
            - Amſterdam,
            - Goude,
            - Rotterdam,
            - the Hague,
            - the Briil,
            - Gorckum,
            - St. Guitremberg.
        - ZELAND,
          - Mildebourg,
          - Ziriczee,
          - Fleſſing,
          - Tolen.
        - ZUTPHEN,
          - Zutphen,
          - Doesbourg,
          - Grolle.
        - UTRECHT, —— Utrecht.
      - Signieuries of
        - OVER-YSSEL,
          - Deventer,
          - Campen,
          - Swol,
          - Cowerden.
        - WEST FRISE,
          - Lieuvarden,
          - Harlingen,
          - Franicker,
          - Dockum,
          - Staveren.
        - GRONINGUE, — Groningue.
    - And in the Neighbouring Eſtates of the LOW COUNTRIES
      - Part of the Dutchy of CLEVES,
        - Weſel,
        - Rees,
        - Emmerick,
        - Goch,
        - Gennep.
      - Part of the Eſtate of COLOGNE,
        - Rhinsberg.
        - Orſoy.
      - And in the County of EMBDEN, —— Roeroort.
    - And in the moſt Southern part of the LOW COUNTRY,
      - Part of the Dutchy of BRABANT,
        - Boſſedue,
        - Breda,
        - Berg op Zom,
        - Willemſtad,
        - Steenberg,
        - Lillo.
      - Part of the Dutchy of LIMBOURG, —— Maeſtricht.
      - Part of the County of FLANDERS,
        - Eſcluſe,
        - Ardenbourg,
        - Middelbourg,
        - Tiendi-k,
        - Biervlier,
        - Ter-Neuſe,
        - Philippine,
        - Patience,
        - Lifkenſhoeck.
  - In AFRICA, or AFRIQUE,
    - AFRICA, or LYBIA, Upon the Coaſt, or near
      - The Country of the NEGROS,
        - Arguin,
        - Goeree,
        - St. George de la Mine,
        - Fort of Naſſau.
      - GUINEE,
    - ÆTHIOPIA, The Iſles of
      - St. THOMAS, —— Cuidad de Pavoaſan,
      - LOANDA, St. Pol de Loanda.
  - In ASIA,
    - And in the East INDIES, On the Coaſts of
      - COROMANDEL,
        - Gueldres.
      - SIAM, —— Malaca.
    - And in the East INDIAN ISLES,
      - On the Coaſts of
        - Iſle of CEYLAN,
          - Colombo.
        - Iſle of JAVA, —— Jacatra, or Batavia.
      - Part of the MOLUCQUES; to wit, in
        - TERNATE,
          - Talouque,
          - Maylaye,
          - Tacomma.
        - MOTIR, —— Naſſau.
        - MAQUIAM,
          - Taffaſon,
          - Naffaguia, or Maurice,
          - Tabillola, or Telebola.
        - BACHIAN,
          - Labolia,
          - Gamineduore.
      - About the MOLUCQUES; to wit, in
        - GILOLO, —— Zabou.
        - AMBOYNE,
          - Coubella,
          - Lovio,
          - Hitton,
          - Amboyne.
        - NERA, } Iſle of Banda,
          - Naſſau,
          - Belgique,
          - Revenge.
        - POLEWAY, }
      - Between CHINA and JAPON, HERMOSO, —— Zeland.
  - In AMERICA, or AMERIQUE MERIDIONALE;
    - Part of BRAZILE; where are the Capitanies of
      - FERNAMBUCO, —— Olinde.
      - TAMRACA, Tamaraca.
      - PARAYBA, Parayba.
      - RIO GRANDE, Potengi.
      - CIARA, Ciara.
      - MARAGNAN, —— Maragnan.
    - And near the Coaſt of — VENEZUELA, the Iſle of Curacao.

- GERMANY about the Danube, may be conſidered in three Parts, viz.
  - Higher, or SOVABIA, which is ſubdivided into two parts, to wit,
    - SOVABE, or SOVABIA; where are
      - The Biſhopricks of
        - Ausbourg, — Diſſengen, Fueſſen.
        - Conſtance, — Mersbourg.
        - Coire, — Marſoila.
      - The Dutchy of — Wirtenberg, — Stutgard, Tubingue.
      - The Marquiſate of — Burgau, — Guntzbourg.
      - Part of the Marquiſate of — Baden Durlach, — Baden.
      - Thirteen Counties, among the which are
        - Furſtenberg, — Meskirak.
        - Hohenberg, — Ebingen.
        - Rhinfeld, — Rhinfenden, Lauffenbourg.
      - Divers Baronies, &c. — The Barony of — Waldbourg.
      - Thirty five Cities of the EMPIRE; among the which
        - Beyond the Danube, are — Ausbourg, Conſtance, Lindau, Uberlingue, Memmingue, Kempten, Ravensbourg.
        - On this ſide the Danube, are — Ulme, Norlingue, Drinckeſpuhel, Awlen, Halle, Hailbron, Eſlingue, Guemunde.
    - SWISSES, or SWITZERLAND; under the name of which is underſtood
      - Thirteen Cantons, whereof — The principal Cities are — Baſle, Berne, Zurich, Lucerne, Soleurne, Fribourg, Schasſhouſe.
      - Twelve or Thirteen Allies; among the which are
        - The Abby and City of — St. Gall.
        - The Biſhoprick of — Sion.
        - The Griſons, — Coire.
        - The Biſhoprick of — Porentruy.
        - The Cities of — Geneve, Mulhauſen, Newchaſtel, Rotweil.
      - Twenty, or Twenty five Subjects; among the which are
        - The County of — Chiavenne.
        - The Val Teline, — Sondrio, Worms, or Bormio.
        - The Balliages and Cities of — Lugan, Bellinzone, Bade, Frawenfeld.
  - Mean, or BAVARIA, which is divided into three parts, and where are
    - The Eſtates of the Dukedom of TIROL; which comprehendeth
      - The County of Tirol; where are — Inſpruck, Tirol, Cufſtaine.
      - Towards the Lake of Conſtance, the Countries of — Feldkirch, Bregaz.
      - The Protection of the Biſhopricks of — Trente, Brixen.
    - The Eſtates of the Dutchy of BAVARIA; where are compriſed
      - The Dutchy of Bavaria,
        - Higher, — Munick, Landſperg,
        - Lower, — Landſhout, Straubing.
      - Between the Eccleſiaſticks,
        - The Archbiſhoprick of — Saltzbourg.
        - The Biſhopricks of — Paſſau, Ratisbone, Briſſingue.
        - The Provoſt of — Berchtogade.
      - Between the Laicks,
        - The Palatinate of — Newbourg.
        - The County of — Hag.
      - Cities of the Emperour — Ratisbone, Ingolſtat, Dona-wert.
    - The Eſtates of the Palatinate of BAVARIA; which are
      - In the Country of the Palatinate of Bavaria, — Amberg.
      - To the Princes of the Houſe Palatine, — Sultzbach.
      - In the Palatinate of Newbourg, — Burglenfelt.
      - To the Biſhoprick of Aichſtet, — Aichſtet.
      - In the Langrave of Leuchtenberg, — Pfreint.
  - Lower, or AUSTRICHE, or AUSTRIA; which is divided into two parts, to wit,
    - Archbiſhoprick of AUSTRIA,
      - Higher, — Lintz, Ens, or Ems, Wells, Freyſtat.
      - Mean, — Crems, Horne, Stain.
      - Lower, — Vienne, Newſtat, Bade.
    - And the Hereditary Eſtates of AUSTRIA; to wit,
      - The Dutchy of Stirie,
        - Higher, — Pruck.
        - Lower, — Graecz, Pettau.
      - The Dutchy of Carnithie,
        - Higher, — Villach, Gurcz.
        - Mean, — St. Veit.
        - Lower, — Lavemunde.
      - The Dutchy of Carniole,
        - Higher, or Seiche, — Gorice, Gradiſque, Czirknicz.
        - Lower, — Laubach.
      - The County of Cilley, — Cilley.
      - The Windiſhmarch, or Marquiſate of Vindes, — Metling, Rudolfswerd.

The


The SUISSES, or SWITZERLAND; and that which we understand under the name, ought to be considered in three Parts, to wit, in
Thirteen Cantons, which (following their Antiquity) are
URI, SUISSE, UNDERWALD, 1308
LUCERNE, 1332
ZURICH, 1351
ZUG, GLARIS, 1352
BERNE, 1353
FRIBOURG, SOLEURNE, 1481
BASLE, SCHASFHOUSE, 1501
APPENZEL, 1513
or following their Ranges, &c.
Zurich, Proteſtant,
Zurich, Winterthur, Stein, Griſenſee, Egliſou.
Berne, Proteſtant,
Berne, Lauſanne, Yverdon, Nyon, Mouldon, Morges, Peterlingen, Vevay, Lentzbourg, Burgdorf, Aarbourg, Bruck, Thun.
Lucerne, Catholick,
Lucerne, Surſee, Sempach.
Uri, Catholick,
Altorf.
Suiſſe, Catholick,
Suitz, or Suiſſe,
Underwald, Catholick,
Stantzſtad.
Zug, Catholick,
Zug.
Glaris, Catholick and Proteſtant,
Glaris.
Baſle, Proteſtant,
Baſle.
Fribourg, Catholick,
Fribourg, Corbers, Gryers.
Soleurne, Catholick,
Soleurne.
Schaſſhouſe, Proteſtant,
Schaſſhauſe.
Appenzel, Catholick,
Appenzel.
Their Allies; which are
The Abbe and City of St. GAL, in Suiſſe,
Wyll, St. Gall.
The Biſhoprick of SION, or County of Valais,
Sittin, or Sion, Martinach.
The GRISONS, divided into three Leagues or Confederacies; as
Higher, or Griſe,
Ilantz, Diſſentis.
Of the Houſe of God,
Coir, or Chur, Furſtenaw, Puſchiave.
Of the ten Communalties,
Tafas, Meyenfeld.
The Cities
In Alſace, or Alſatia,
Mulhauſen.
In Sovabia,
Rotweil.
Towards the Franche County,
Bienne, Neuchaſtel, Vallangin.
In Savoy,
Geneve.
The Biſhopricks of
Baſle in Suiſſe,
Porentruy, Nuenſtat, or Bonneville, Delmont.
Conſtance, in Sovabia and Suiſſe,
Mersbourg, Arbon, Biſchofszel, Bollingen, Keiſerſtul, Clingenow, Reichenau, Steckburne.
Coire, in the Griſons,
Marſoilachau.
Their Subjects, viz.
At Glaris, the County of
Werdenberg.
At Zurich, the County of Altſax,
Forſteckchau.
At Suiſſe and Glaris, the Balliages of
Gaſtal, Uznach.
At Berne and Fribourg, the Balliages of
Murat, Orbe, Granſon, Schuartzembourg.
Of the three moſt ancient Cantons, the Balliages in Italy, of
Bellinzone, Valbrune, Poleſe, or Riviere.
To the ſame, and to Glaris, the City and County of
Rapperchuil.
Subjects to the Cantons, as
To the ſeven Ancient Cantons
Part of Turgow,
Diſſenhofen, Pfin.
The Franck Provinces,
Meyenberg.
The County of Sargans,
Sargans, Wallenſtad, or Riva.
The City of
Fraenfeld.
To the ſeven firſt in Range and Apenzel, the Balliages of Rhintal,
Rhineck, Alſtetten.
To the eight Ancient Cantons, the Balliages in Suiſſe of
Bade, Bremgarten, Melingen.
To the twelve more Ancient Cantons, the Balliages in Italy of
Lugan, Lucarne, Mendris, Val Madie.
Subjects to the Allies, as
To the Abbe of St. Gal, the County of Toggenburg,
Leichtenſteg.
To the Biſhoprick of Sion, towards Savoy,
St. Morice, Montech, Hochtal, or Val d'Aux.
The County of Chiavenne,
Chiavenne, Pleurs, Ruynee.
The Valtelline,
Morbegno, Sondrio, Tirano.
The County of
Worms, or Bormio.
And to the ſame the Protection of the Signiory of
Haldenſtein.


GERMANY about the ELBE, and the ODER, containeth in its
Higher Part,
The Eſtates of BOHEMIA, which may be divided into the
Kingdom of BOHEMIA; where are
Bohemia, particularly ſo called,
Prague,
Cuttenberg,
Pilſen,
Coningracz,
Satecz,
Budweiſs,
Leutmaritz,
Caurzim.
The Quarter of
And the County of
Egra, or Heb,
Elenbogen, or Locket,
Glatz.
Provinces incorporated to the Kingdom of BOHEMIA; to wit,
The Dutchy of Sileſie,
Breſlaw,
Lignitz,
Neyſe,
Gros Glogau,
Brieg,
Toppau,
Croſſen,
Jaggerendorff.
The Marquiſate of Moravia,
Olmutz,
Brynn,
Znaym,
Iglau,
Radiſch,
Neuſtad.
The Marquiſate of Luſace,
Bautzen,
Gorlitz,
Sittau,
Sorau,
Guben,
Cotbus.
Lower Part
SAXONY may be divided into the
Higher SAXONY, where are found
The Eſtates of the Dukes of SAXONY,
The Dutchy of Saxony,
Wittenberg.
The Marquiſate of Miſne,
Dreſden,
Miſne,
Torgaw,
Lipſick,
Mersbourg,
Naumbourg.
The Dutchy of Voitland,
Altembourg.
Zuickaw.
Turinge
Langraviat,
Erford.
Dutchies,
Jeve,
Cobourg,
Ienach.
Counties,
Schwartzenbourg,
Mansfeld,
Smalculd,
Gleichen.
Abbeſs,
Quedelimberg,
Abby,
Salsfeldt.
Imperial Cities,
Mulhauſen,
Northauſen.
Principality of Anhalt,
Deſſau,
Bernebourg.
The Eſtate of the Marquiſate of BRANDENBOURG,
Alt-Marck, or Vielle-Marck,
Stendal,
Havelberg.
Mittel-Marck, or Moyenne-Marck,
Brandebourg,
Berlin,
Francfort on the Oder.
New-Marck,
Landsberg,
Stemeberg.
The Dutchy of POMERANIA, which hath ſometime been divided into the Dutchies of
Stettin,
Wolgaſt,
Gutskow,
Barth,
Rugen, Iſle and Dutchy,
Ancien,
Caſſubie,
Vandalie,
Pomerelia,
Stettin,
Anclam.
Wolgaſt.
Gripſuald.
Straelſond,
Barth.
Bergen.
Stargart.
Colberg.
Stolpe.
Lowenbourg.
The Archbiſhopricks of
Magdebourg,
Breme,
Magdebourg.
Halle in Saxony.
Breme,
Stade.
The Biſhopricks of
Ferden,
Hiddelſheim,
Halberſtat.
And to the Archbiſhopr. of Mayence, the Country of Eychfeld,
Dudderſtat.
Lower SAXONY, where are found
Divers Dutchies, the chief of which are
Holſtein, or Holſacia,
Kyel,
Segeberg,
Glucksſtad.
Lunebourg,
Lunebourg,
Celle,
Harbourg,
Danneberg.
Brunſwick,
Brunſwick,
Wolfenbuttel.
Grubenhagen,
Limbeck.
Gottingen,
Gottingue.
Lawenbourg,
Lawenbourg,
Hadler.
Mecklenbourg,
Wiſmar,
Roſtock,
Scierin or Schwerin,
Guſtraw.
Imperial Cities; among which are
Lubeck,
Hambourg,
Stoade.

The

- The Eſtates of the Crown of BOHEMIA are
  - The Kingdom of BOHEMIA, under which ought to be underſtood
    - BOHEMIA, as it is divided into Fifteen Provinces, where are Forty and three Royal Cities, to wit, in the Provinces of
      - Pregensko; where is — Prague.
      - Caurzimsko; where are — Caurzim, Coln, Bohmiſh-Broda.
      - Hradecsko, — Kralow-Hradecz, Jaromirz, Bydchaff, Trantnow, Krabedur. — G. Kinigingretz. — G. Konighoff.
      - Chrudimsko, — Chrudim, Bamberg, Hohemauth, Policzka. — G. Paumberg.
      - Craſlawsko, — Hora, Czaſlaw. — G. Cuttemberg.
      - Brechynsko, — Budiejowize, Tabor, Pelhrzimow, Teyn ſuv Wultaw. — G. Budweiſs.
      - Wltawsko, — Sedlezany.
      - Podbredsko, — Beraun. — G. Bern.
      - Prachensko, — Piſeck, Suſchitz, Wodnany, Prachatitz.
      - Pilſensko, — Pilſen, Klataw, Strzibro, Domazliez, Rockiſſan. — G. Meiſs. — G. Taus.
      - ziatecsko, — Ziatecz, Moſt, Launy, Cadan, Commota. — G. Satz. — G. Bruck.
      - Rakownicsko, — Rakonick.
      - Slansko, — Slaneywreh, Welwary. — G. Schlan.
      - Litomierziesko, — Litomierz, Auski, Melnick. — Leitomeritz.
      - Boleſlawsko, — Nymburg, Boleſlaw. — G. Jung Bunzel.
    - And the Quarters of
      - Hebsko, — Heb. — G. Egra.
      - Lokensko, — Loket. — G. Elnbogen.
      - Glatzko, — Glatz.
  - The Provinces incorporated to the Kingdom of BOHEMIA, to wit,
    - The Dutchy of SILESIA, as it is divided into Three Dutchies, Fifteen Principalities, and Four Baronies; viz.
      - Gros Glogaw, Dutchy, — Gros Glogaw, Sprottaw, Freyſtadt.
      - Croſſen, Dutchy, — Croſſen.
      - Slagan, Dutchy, — Sagan.
      - Jawer, Principality, — Jawer, Lemberg, Buntſlaw, Hirſchberg.
      - Lignitz, Princip. — Lignitz, Goldberg.
      - Wohlaw, Princ. — Wohlaw.
      - Olſze, Principality, — Olſze.
      - Bernſtadt, Principality, — Bernſtadt.
      - Breſlaw Princ. — Breſlaw, Namſlaw.
      - Schweidnitz, Principality, — Schweidnitz.
      - Brieg, Princ. — Brieg, Olaw.
      - Monſterberg, Princ. — Monſterberg.
      - Neiſs, or Grotkaw, Princ. — Neiſs, Grotkaw, Zuckmantel.
      - Oppelen, Princ. — Oppelen, Newſtadt, Klein Glogaw.
      - Ratibor, Principality, — Ratibor.
      - Jegerndorff, Princ. — Jegerndorff, or Carnow, Lubſchitz.
      - Troppaw, Princ. — Troppaw.
      - Teſchen, Principality, — Teſchen.
      - Among the Baronies are — Wartenberg, Pleſs.
    - The Marquiſate of MORAVIA, as it may be divided into the Dutchies of — Olmutz, Brinn, Znaim. — Their Cities are — Olmutz, Brinn, Znaim, Iglaw, Hardiſch, Newſtadt, Kremſir, Krumlow, Meſeritz, Niclasburg, Polna, Weiskirch.
    - The Marquiſate of LUSACE, or LUSATIA, now engaged to the Duke of Saxony, is divided into the
      - Higher Luſatia, — Baudiſſen, or Partzen, Gorlitz, Sittaw, Lawben, Camentz, Liebaw.
      - Lower Luſatia, — Sonaw, Guben, Cotbus.

The

The House of AUSTRICHE, or AUSTRIA, in divers Branches and Titles, possessed and lying within and near GERMANY, to wit,

- **AUSTRICHE, or AUSTRIA**; under the name of which may be understood,
  - The Archbishoprick of Austriche — Vienna, Crems, Lintz.
  - The Dutchy of
    - Stirie — Grecz, Pruck.
    - Carinthie — St. Veit, Lavemunde, Grucz, or Strasburg.
    - Carniole — Laubach.
  - The County of
    - Cilley — Cilley.
    - The Marquisate of Vinde, or Vindismarch — Metlin'
  - And towards Italy,
    - the County of Gorice — Gorice, Gradisque.
    - and part of Istrie — Trieste, Pedena.
- **The Kingdom of HUNGARIE, or HONGRIE**, in part; where are
  - In the higher — Hungarie — Presbourg, or Poson, Sopron. or Oedenbourg, Raab, or Javarin, Comore, Fileck, Cassau, Tokay, Varadin.
  - In the higher — Esclavione — Zagrab, or Agram, Copronitza.
  - In the higher — Croacie — Sisseg.
  - And in the — Morlaquie — Seng, or Senia, St. Veit am Flaum.
- **The Kingdom of BOHEMIA, and the Estates incorporated to Bohemia**; to wit,
  - The Kingdom of — Bohemia — Prague, Cutzenberg, Pilsen, Conigratz, Budweis.
  - The Dutchy of — Silesie — Breslau, Lignitz, Neisse, Gros Glogau.
  - The Marquisates of
    - Lusacia — Baudissen, Gorlitz, Sittau, Sorau.
    - Moravia — Olmutz, Brinne, Znaym.
  - The County of — Glatz — Glatz.
  - The Signieury of — Egra — Egra, or Heb.
- **TIROL**; under the name of which are
  - The Counties of
    - Tirol — Inspruck, Hall, Custain.
    - Veldkirck, or — Feldkirck.
    - Bregentz — Bregentz.
  - The Protection of the Bishopricks of — Trente, Brixen.
- In **SOVABIA**, the
  - Marquisate of Burgau — Burgau, Guntzbourg.
  - County of Hohenberg — Rotenbourg, Ehingen, Horb.
  - City of — Yillengen, Stockach.
  - Lantgraviat of Nellenbourg
- In **SUISSE, or SWITZERLAND**, the
  - County of Rhinfelden — Rhinfelden, Lauffenbourg.
  - City of — Waldshout.
  - County of Hapsburg, or — Habsbourg.
  - Protection of the Cities of — Constance, Celle.
- Within or near the Grisons — Castelz, Pludentz.
- In **ALSATIA, or ALSACE**, the
  - County of Pfirt, or Ferrette — Altkirck.
  - Part of Sungou — Tannes, Befort.
  - Langraviat of the higher Alsatia — Ensisheim, Keisersperg, Heiligen Creutz.
  - Part of Brisgou — Fribourg, in Brisgou, Brisac, Newenbourg.
- The Palatinate of the **RHINE** in part, where are many Cities, among the which — Oppenheim, Franckendal.
- **BOURGOGNE** in part, to wit, the County of Bourgogne; where are — Dole, Gray, Salins.
- The Catholick **LOW COUNTRY**, for the most part; where are
  - The Dutchies of
    - And the Charollois, in part — Charolles.
    - Brabant, Limbourg — Louvain, Brusselles, Limbourg.
    - Luxembourg, Guelderland, in part — Luxembourg, Thionville, Ruremonde.
  - The Counties of
    - Flanders — Gand, or Gaunt, Lille.
    - Artois — Arras, St. Omer.
    - Hainault — Mons, Valenciennes.
    - Namur — Namur.
  - The Marquisate of the Empire, where is — Anvers, or Antwerp.
- And near the **LOW COUNTRY**,
  - The Signieury of Malines — Malines.
  - The Archbishoprick and Signieury of Cambray — Cambray.
  - The County of Linghen — Linghen.

GER-

THE GERMAIN
OCEAN
THE
UNITED
PROVINCES
THE
CATHOLIQUE
LOW
COUNTRIES
PART
OF
FRANCE
THE ESTATES
OF
CLEVES
JULIERS
&
BERGUE
PALATINATE
OF
RHINE
ALSACE
SWITZERLAND
PART
OF
ITALY
FRANCONIA
SAXONIA
BAVARIA
TYROL
BRANDENBURG
HESSIA
WESTPHALIA

SIC DONEC
To ye R.t Hon.ble John Egerton Earle of Bridgewater Vist. Brackley Bar.t of Ellesmere &c. Lieutenant Buckingham Shire &c. one of ye Lds of his Ma.ty most Hon.ble Privy Councell &c.
This Mapp is Humbly Dedicated by R. B.
A GENERALL MAPP OF THE EMPIRE OF GERMANY.
with its severall Estates. Designed by Monsieur Sanson. Geographer to the French King &c.
BALTICK SEA
PART of
POLAND
SILESIA
MORAVIA
HUNGARIA
AUSTRIA
STIRIE
CARNIOLE
CROATIE
ESCLAVONIE
PART OF TRANCILVANIA
THE ADRIATIQUE SEA
Belgrad

GERMANY
AND
BELGIUM;
Or, THE
Low Countries.

GERMANY is in the midſt of thoſe three parts which we have placed in the middle of *Europe*, and extends it ſelf from 45½ unto 54½ *degrees* of *Latitude*, and from the 28*th* unto the 41 of *Longitude*. This poſition ſhews, that it lies in the middle of the *Temperate Zone*. Its Bounds, Latitude and Longitude.

This *Germany* may be conſidered in three great parts, of which each may be ſubdivided into three others. We will call the great parts, *Germany* about the *Rhine*, *Germany* about the *Danube*, and *Germany* about the *Elbe* and the *Oder*; all which, with its leſſer parts are taken notice of in the *Geographical Tables* of *Germany*, according to which method we will proceed; and then the firſt will be the *Franche County*, or *BURGUNDY*, which is bounded with *Breſs*, *Switzerland*, *Lorraine*, and *Champaine*. Its ancient Inhabitants were the *Hedui*, who firſt called *Julius Cæſar* into *France*, and its People are at preſent eſteemed warlike, marching under the Colours of divers Princes, and are known by the name of *Walloons*. It is a Country ſo fertil, that it hath been called the *Flower* of *France*, within whoſe bounds ſome do eſteem it. It hath for its chief places 1. *Beſanſon*, the Metropolis of *Burgundy*, ſeated on the banks of the *Doux*, a City of good ſtrength and beauty, and made an *Univerſity* by the commands of *Charles* the Fifth, and Pope *Julio* the Third. 2. *Dole*, in the Balliage of *Dole*, a Town of great ſtrength, riches and beauty, famous for its Colledge of *Jeſuites*: 3. *Gray*, in the Balliage of *Amont*; and 4. *Salius*, in the Balliage of *Aval*, of ſome account for its rich *Salt Fountain*. Beſides theſe places in *Burgundy* are numbred 20 walled *Towns*, and about 160 *Lordſhips*.

LORRAINE, bordering on *Burgundy*, famous for having had for its Duke, *Godfrey*, Sirnamed *Bulloigne*, the Recoverer of the *Holy Land* from the *Turks*; its *Dukes* now enjoy little elſe ſave the Title, the Country being ſeized by the *French*. It is of a fertil Soil, affording plenty of *Corn* and *Wine*, and hath ſtore of *Salt*. Its chief places are 1. *Nancy*, in the Balliage of *Francois*, once dignified with the Seat of the Duke; 2. *Vandrevange*; 3. *Mirecourt*; 4. *Vancoleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan de Pucelle*; 5. *Pont-a-Maſon*, ſo named by reaſon of its Bridge over the *Moſa*; 6. *Metz*, and 7. *Toul*. Province of Lorrain.

Between

Country of *Barrois.*

Between this Province and *Champaine* lieth the Country of *BARROIS*, and belongeth to *Lorrain*, whence the eldeſt Sons of theſe Dukes were ſtyled Princes of *Barri*. Its chief places are *Bar-le-Duc*, and *St. Michael.*

The ſeveral parts of the *Catholick Low Countries.*

The *Catholick LOW COUNTRIES* may be contained under the Dukedoms of *Brabant*, *Limbourg*, and *Luxembourg*; the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *Haynaut*, and *Namur*; the Marquiſate of the *Empire*; the Signiory of *Malines*, *&c.* The whole Country is exceeding fertil, yet found not very advantagious to the *Spaniards*, who are Maſters of it.

Dukedom of *Brabant.*

BRABANT, for the moſt part of an ungrateful Soil, yet well inhabited and ſtored with walled *Towns* and *Villages*; the chief amongſt which are 1. *Lovaine*, a fair and large City, being about four miles in circuit within its *Walls*, and ſix without, wherein are many delightful *Gardens* and *Meadows*, and is of note for its *Univerſity*, where there is a Seminary for *Engliſh Jeſuits*. 2. *Bruſſels*, a City for its fairneſs and elegancy of its Buildings (its extent being as large as *Lovaine*) giveth place to few in the *Netherlands*. It is at preſent the reſidence of the *Spaniſh* Governour for the *Low Countries*; and 3. *Breda*, once the Seat of the Prince of *Orange*, till taken by the *Spaniards.*

City of *Antwerp.*

To the Dukedom of *Brabant* doth belong the *Marquiſate* of the *EMPIRE*, whoſe chief place is *Anvers*, or *Antwerp*, ſeated on the *Schelde*, out of which it hath eight Channels cut, the biggeſt of which are capable to receive about 100 great Ships, which doth much facilitate its Trade; it is a fair and large City, being about ſeven or eight miles in circuit within its *Walls*, which are ſtrong, high, and broad enough for *Coaches* to paſs, on which the *Nobility* and *Gentry* commonly uſe to recreate themſelves. In this City are abundance of *Painters* and *Gravers*, whoſe work is well received abroad. To this Dukedom doth alſo belong the Signiory of *Malines*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name: likewiſe the Archbiſhoprick and Imperial City of *Cambria*, of good account; and the Biſhoprick and Imperial City of *Liege*, ſeated on the *Meuſe*, a Town of good beauty, being ſo filled with fair *Abbies* and *Monaſteries*, that it is called the *Paradice* of the *Prieſts.*

Dutchy of *Limbourg.*

LIMBOURG hath many good Towns, the chief of which are 1. *Limbourg*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Weſer*, and giveth name to the Dutchy. 2. *Maſtrich*, a place of great ſtrength, being held almoſt impregnable, yet was gained lately by the *French*; but through the aſſiſtance of the *Engliſh*, under the command of his Grace, *James* Duke of *Monmouth.* 3. *Dalen*, fortified with a Caſtle, &c.

Dukedom of *Luxembourg.*

LUXEMBOURG, Northwards of *Lorrain*, ſaid to contain about 1000 *Villages*, and 23 walled *Towns*, the chief of which are 1. *Luxembourg*, ſeated on the *Elze.* 2. *Thionville*, which, with the other places, ſuffered much in the time of the Wars betwixt *France* and *Spain.*

Forreſt of *Ardenna.*

In this Province is the famous Forreſt of *Ardenna*, once about 500 miles in compaſs, now ſcarce 90; and in it, or on its edges, is the no leſs famous Waters of the *Spaw*, ſo much frequented by the *Europeans* in and about the Month of *July*, being found exceeding good for ſeveral Diſeaſes in the body Man.

The *Spaw.*

FLANDERS.

FLANDERS should be the moſt famous of all theſe Countries, ſince it communicates its name to them all; it is divided into *Tutone*, *Wallone*, and *Imperiale*. The chief Cities and places in this Earldom are 1. *Ghent*, whoſe Walls are ſeven miles in compaſs, and was once of great beauty; but now through the Seditiouſneſs of its Inhabitants it is much ruinated, a good part of it being waſt-ground; it is watered by the Rivers *Scheld* and *Ley*, which run through the City and make 26 *Iſlands*, which are conjoyned by 98 *Bridges*. This place is particularly famous for being the Birth-place of *John of Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*. 2. *Bruges*, ſeated on a large and deep Channel of the Sea, from which it is diſtant about three Leagues; once a famous *Mart Town*, but now of ſmall account as to matters of Traffick. 3. *Ipres*, ſeated on a River ſo called, a Town of great ſtrength. 4. *Graveling*, or *Gravelines*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, a place of good ſtrength; and 5. *Liſle*, of ſome account. The four principal Ports in *Flanders* are, 1. *Dunkirk*, now in the poſſeſſion of the *French*, a place of good ſtrength, eſpecially of late, when the *Engliſh* were Maſters of it; nigh to which is the impregnable Fort of *Mardike*, alſo ſo made by the *Engliſh*. The Inhabitants of this Town are found very troubleſom on the Seas, to thoſe that are their Enemies. 2. *Oſtend*, an exceeding ſtrong place, as is manifeſt by its holding out a Siege of three years, three months, three weeks, and odd days, againſt the Arch-Duke; nigh to which was fought that bloody Battel in 1660, between the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, and the *States*, where (by the valour of the *Engliſh*) the Victory was gained: and 3. *Sluce*, ſeated at the Mouth of the Channel of *Bruges*, where it enjoys a fair and commodious Haven, capable to receive about 500 Sail of good *Ships*; now ſubject to the *States* of *Holland*. Earldom of *Flanders* deſcribed.

Throughout all *Flanders* are a great many *Religious-houſes*, and *Nunneries*, which are filled with vertuous *Gentlewomen* (for the moſt part, *Maidens*) who live a Religious life, and at ſpare times makes curious Works, which are diſpoſed of by the Lady *Abbeſs*.

The Earldom of *ARTOIS*, North of *Flanders*, is divided into *Wallone* and *Flamingat*, and ſaid to contain about 750 *Villages*, and 12 *walled Towns*; the chief among which are 1. *Arras*, where the *Tapeſtry Hangings*, and *Cloths* of *Arras* were firſt invented and made. 2. *Heſdinfert*, a very ſtrong Frontier Town towards *Picardy*; 3. *Bappaumes*, 4. *St. Omer*, and 5. *Aire*. Earldom of *Artois*.

The Earldom of *HAYNAULT*, Weſt of *Flanders*, is ſaid to number about 900 *Villages*, and 24 *Towns*; the chief amongſt which are 1. *Mons*, an ancient and ſtrong Town; 2. *Valenciennes*, ſo ſeated on the *Scheld* that it cannot be beſieged, except with three Armies at one time. 3. *Maubeuge*; 4. *Aveſnes*, about which are digged excellent white *Stones* for building; 5. *Landrechies*, and 6. *Philippeville*. Earldom of *Haynault*.

The Earldom of *NAMUR*, North of *Brabant*, hath about 180 *Villages*, and 4 *walled Towns*, viz. *Namur*, *Charlemont*, *Bovines*, and *Valencourt*. This Country is very fertil in *Grains*, hath ſtore of Mines of *Jaſper*, all ſorts of *Marble*, and abundance of *Iron*. Earldom of *Namur*.

Under the ſubdiviſion of the Provinces upon the *Rhine*, may be comprehended *Alſatia*, the *Palatinate* of the *Rhine*, the *Archbiſhopricks* and *Electorates* on the *Rhine*, the Eſtates of the Succeſſion of *Cleves* and *Julier*, and the *United Provinces* of the *Low Countries*, &c.

ALSATIA, Weſtwards of *Lorrain*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Straſbourg*, formerly *Argentina*, becauſe here the *Romans* received the Tribute of the Conquered Nations, ſeated in Lower *Alſatia* near the *Rhine*, from which there is a Channel cut for the conveyance of Commodities. This City is about 7 miles in circuit, is a good place of ſtrength, and famous for its many Rareties; as its admirable *Clock*, a deſcription of which I ſhall here ſet down, which was given me by an Ingenious perſon, who took this particular account thereof. Province of *Alſatia*.

The Deſcription of the Clock and Clockhouſe at Strasburgh, *and of many notable and ſtrange things in and about the ſame.*

FOR the curiouſneſs of the Work it ſelf I cannot ſet it forth, neither can any man take pleaſure of the Workmanſhip, but ſuch as ſee it. In the whole work there are Nine things to be conſidered, which aſcend up one above another, as the deſcription ſheweth, whereof eight are in the Wall; the ninth, (and that the moſt wonderful) ſtandeth on the ground, three foot or ſuch a matter from the Ground and Wall, and that is a great Globe of the *Heavens* perfectly deſcribed, in which are three Motions; one of the whole Globe, which betokeneth the whole Heavens, and moveth about from the Eaſt to the Weſt in four and twenty hours: the ſecond is of the Sun, which runneth through the *Signs* there deſcribed, (by that Artificial motion it hath) once every year: the third is of the *Moon*, which runneth her courſe in 28 days. So that in this Globe you may view (as if you had the *Heavens* in your hand) the Motions of the whole Heavens, the motion of the *Sun* and *Moon*, every Minute of an hour, the riſing and falling of every *Star* (among which *Stars* are the Makers of this work *Daſſipodius* and *Wolkinſtenius*) deſcribed, yea better than in the true *Heavens*, becauſe here the *Sun* darkneth them not by day, nor the *Moon* by night. The Inſtruments of theſe Motions are hid in the Body of a *Pelican*, which is portraied under the Globe. The *Pole* lifted up to the Elevation of *Strasburgh*, and noted by a fair Star made in *Braſs:* the *Zenith* is declared by an Angel placed in the midſt of the *Meridian*. The ſecond thing to be obſerved (which is the firſt on the Wall) are two great Circles one within another, the one eight foot, the other nine foot broad, the uttermoſt moveth from the North to the South once in a year, and hath two *Angels*, the one on the North-ſide, which pointeth every day in the Week, the other on the South-ſide, which pointeth what day ſhall be one half year after. The Inner circle moveth from South to North once in a hundred years, and hath many things deſcribed about it; as the Year of the World, the Year of our Lord, the circle of the *Sun*, the proceſſions of the *Æquinoctials*, with the change of the *Solſtitial* points, which things fall out by the motion which is called *Trepidationis:* the Leap-year, the Movable Feaſts, and the Dominical Letter, or Golden Number, as it turneth every year. There is an immovable *Index*, which incloſeth for every year all theſe things within it; the lower part of which *Index* is joyned to another round Circle, which is immovable, wherein the Province of *Alſatia* is fairly deſcribed, and the City of *Straſburgh*. On both ſides of theſe Circles on the Wall, the Eclipſes of the *Sun* and *Moon* are, which are to come for many years, even ſo many years as the Wall might orderly contain. The third thing which is to be ſeen, a little above this, is a weekly motion of the *Planets* as they name the day, as on Sunday the *Sun* is drawn about in his Charriot; accordingly as the day is ſpent, and ſo drawn into another place, ſo that before he be full in, you ſhall have Monday, that is, the *Moon* clean forth, and the Horſes of *Mars*'s Charriot putting forth their heads; and ſo it is for every day in the week: On this ſide there are nothing but dumb Pictures to garniſh the Wall. The fourth thing, which is next above this, is a Dial for the Minutes of hours, ſo that you ſhall ſee every Minute paſs. Two beautiful Pictures of two Children are joyned to either ſide of this; he which is on the North-ſide hath a Scepter in his hands, and when the Clock ſtriketh, he telleth orderly every ſtroke. He on the South-ſide hath a fine *Hour-glaſs* in his hand, which runneth juſt with the Clock; and when the Clock hath ſtricken, he turneth his *Hour-glaſs*, which is run forth, and holdeth it running. The firſt thing which is next above the Minute-Dial, is the Dial for the hour, containing the half parts alſo: the uttermoſt circumference containeth the hours, but within it is made a curious and perfect *Aſtrolabe*, whereby is ſhewed the motion of every Planet, his aſpect, and in what *Sign*, what *degree*, and what *hour* every one is in every hour

hour of the day; the oppoſition likewiſe of the *Sun* and *Moon*, and the Head and Tail of the *Dragon*. And becauſe the Night darkneth not the *Sun*, nor the Day the *Moon*, or other Planets, therefore their Courſes are here exactly ſeen at all times. The ſixth thing, which is next unto this, is a Circle wherein the two Signs of the *Moon*, riſing and falling, at two ſeveral hollow places it is ſeen at what ſtate ſhe is, and her Age is declared by an *Index*, which is wholly turned about once every Month. The ſeventh thing, which is about this, are four little Bells, whereon the Quarters of the hour are ſtrucken; at the Firſt quarter cometh forth a little Boy, and ſtriketh the firſt Bell with an Apple, and ſo goeth and ſtayeth at the fourth Bell until the next Quarter; then cometh a luſty Youth, and he with a Dart ſtriketh two Bells, and ſucceedeth into the place of the Child; at the Third cometh forth a man in Arms, with a War-Mace in his hand, and ſtriking three Bells he ſucceedeth into the place of the young Man; at the Fourth quarter cometh forth an Old man with a Staff, having a Crook at the end, and he with much ado, becauſe he is Old, ſtriketh the four Bells, and ſtandeth at the Fourth quarter until the next Quarter; forthwith to ſtrike the Clock cometh Death: in the Room above this, for this is the eight thing, (and this underſtand, that at every Quarter cometh he forth, thinking to catch each of thoſe former Ages away with him;) but at a contrary ſide, in the ſame Room where he is, cometh Chriſt forth, and driveth him in: but when the laſt Quarter is heard, Chriſt giveth him leave to go to the Bell which is in the midſt, and ſo ſtriketh he with his Bone according to the number of the hours, and there he ſtandeth at the Bell, as the Old man doth at his quarter Bell, until the next Quarter, and then go they in both toget[illegible] ninth and laſt thing in this right Line, is the Town at the top of the [illegible]rein is a noble pleaſant Chime, which goeth at three, ſeven, [illegible] [illegible]e Clock, every time a diverſe Tune to one of the *Pſa*[illegible]*imas*, *Eaſter*, and *Whitſontide*, a Thankſgiving unto Chriſt: and whe[illegible]s Chime hath done (the *Cock*, which ſtandeth on the top of the Town, on the North-ſide of the main Work,) having ſtretched out his Neck, ſhaken his Comb, and clapped his Wings twice, Croweth then twice; and this verily he doth ſo ſhrill and naturally, as it would make any man to wonder; and if they liſt, which attend the Clock, they make him to Crow more times. In this Town whereon this Cock ſtandeth, are conveyed all the Inſtruments of thoſe motions which are in the foreſaid deſcribed things.

The other places of note in this Lower *Alſatia*, are 2. *Alikirck*, in the part of *Sungou*; 3. *Enſiſheim*, in higher *Alſatia*; 4. *Frisbourg*, in *Briſgou*; 6. *Offenbourg*, in *Mortnau*; and 7. *Bade*, in the Marquiſate.

The *PALATINATE of the RHINE*, which is divided or ſevered into the Eſtates of the *Palatinate*, the Eſtates of the Princes of the Houſe *Palatine*, and the Biſhopricks and Imperial Cities of *Spires* and *Wormes*. The chief places are *Heidelberg*, ſeated in a Plain, but environed on three ſides with high Mountains, and the other regards the *Rhine*, from which it is diſtant about a mile; it is dignified with the Seat of the *Palſgraves*, as alſo with an *Univerſity*. 2. *Spires*, ſeated in a Plain about half a mile from the *Rhine*, a City of more Antiquity than Beauty and Trade, being of note for the *Imperial Chamber* here continually kept. 3. *Wormes*, a City alſo of good Antiquity for the many *Imperial Parliaments* here formerly held; and 4. *Frankendal*, a new, fair, ſtrong and beautiful City, about which grow great plenty of *Rheniſh Wines*. Palatinate of the *Rhine*.

The *Electorates* and *Archbiſhopricks* on the *Rhine*, are thoſe of *MAYENCE*, whoſe chief places are *Mayence* and *Aſchaffenbourg*; of *TREVES*, whoſe chief places are *Treves* and *Coblentz*; and of *COLOGNE*, whoſe principal places are *Cologne* and *Bonne*. Electorates of *Mayence, Treves*, and *Cologne*.

The Eſtates of the Succeſſion of *CLEAVELAND* contain the Dutchies of *Cleves*, of *Julier*, and of *Berge*. The Dutchy of *Cleves* and County of *Marke*, is in the Marquiſate of *Brandenburgh*, and hath for its chief places *Weſel* and *Hamme*, in the County of *Marks*. *Cleveland*. Dutchy of *Cleves*.

Dutchy of *Juliers.*

The Dutchy of *JULIERS* hath for its chief places *Aken*, where the *Emperour*, after his Election, is inveſted with the *Silver Crown* of *Germany*; this place is of great eſteem for its *holy Relicks*; and 2. *Juliers.*

The Dutchy of *BERGE*, or *MONTE*, hath for its chief places *Duſſeldrop*, *Hattingen*, and *Arusberg.*

The UNITED PROVINCES.

UNder the name of the *United Provinces* of the *LOW COUNTRIES*, or *NETHERLANDS*, are contained the Dutchy of *Guelders*, the Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Zutphen*, and the Lordſhips of *Utrecht*, *Overyſſel*, *Groningue*, and *Malines.*

Dutchy of *Guilderland.*

The Dutchy of *GUELDERS*, or *GUELDERLAND*, Weſtwards of *Brabant*, is divided into the Quarters of *Betuve*, *Veluve*, and *Guelders*, particularly ſo called; wherein are the Towns of 1. *Nieumegue*, once a Free City, ſeated on the branch of the *Rhine* called *Whael*, and made one of the *Imperial Seats* in theſe parts by *Charles* the Great; the other two being *Thionvil* and *Aken.* 2. *Arnhem*, the uſual reſidence of the Dukes of *Guelders*; 3. *Ruremond*, ſo called from the River *Ruer* and *Monde*; 4. *Harderwick*, from a Village made a walled Town by *Otho* the third Earl; 5. *Guelders*; 6. *Venlo*; and 7. *Bommel.*

Earldom of *Holland.*

The Earldom of *HOLLAND* hath on the [illegible] *Seas*, from which no part is above three hours diſtance; [illegible] to be about 400 *Villages*, and 23 *Towns*; the chief [illegible] which of late, by the addition of the new to the old [illegible] and beautiful City, being the moſt rich and powerful of all [illegible] *Netherlands*; famous for its great Trade to the utmoſt parts of the World, and [illegible] famous for its toleration of all *Religions:* It is ſeated on the *Tay*, whi[illegible]arge, but calm Sea, floweth on the North-ſide; and the River *A*[illegible]ng its courſe from the South, through three Lakes entreth the City, [illegible] through it, and falleth into the *Tay.* This City may be ſaid to be [illegible]teſt *Haven Town* in the VVorld, where there are commonly to be ſeen [illegible] 1000 Sail of *Ships* to ride; and by reaſon of its vaſt Trade to Foreign [illegible] to have great plenty of all known Commodities, as being [illegible]*s* to moſt places of Traffick. 2. *Rotterdam*, famous for giving Birth to *Erasmus*; 3. *Delft*, inhabited moſt by *Brewers* and their Relations; 4. [illegible] where Printing was firſt invented, and the firſt Book that ever [illegible] was *Tully's Offices*; 5. *Leyden*, dignified with a famous *Univer*[illegible] own conſiſteth of 41 *Iſlands*, the paſſage from one to the other being [illegible]*ts* and *Bridges*, there being about 40 of *Wood* and 110 of *Stone.* 6. *Do*[illegible] here, in *Anno* 1618. was held a National Synod againſt the *Arminians*; 7. *Brille*; 8. *Alemar*; 9. *Incluſe*; and 10 the *Hague*, a Village, but the largeſt in the VVorld, equalizing many fair Cities, numbring about 2000 Houſes, and is very populous; it is adorned with the Palaces of the *States General*, who have here their Aſſemblies.

It will not be improper to ſpeak of the power of theſe *States* by Se[illegible]ich is ſo great, that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friezland*, they are able to [illegible]on to Sea about 2500 Sail of *Ships* for burthen and war. Nor can it be forgot how *Margaret*, Siſter to *Floris* the Fourth, Earl of *Holland*, had at one Birth (being 42 years of Age) 365 *Children*, which were all Chriſtned in two Baſons in the Church of *Laſdunen*, by *Guido* Biſhop of *Utrecht*, who named the Males all *Johns*, and the Females *Elizabeths*; and the *Baſons* are yet to be ſeen in the ſaid Church.

A ſtrange Birth of 365 Children.

The

The Earldom of *ZELAND*, *quaſi*, *Sea* and *Land*, conſiſting of ſeven *Iſlands*, the remainder of fifteen, which the *Seas* are ſaid to have ſwallowed up, in which were abundance of good *Towns* and *Villages*. The ſeven *Iſles* yet remaing are 1. *Walcheren*, whoſe principal Towns are *Middlebourg*, once enjoying a good Trade, by the reſidence of the *Engliſh* Merchant-Adventurers; and *Fluſhing*, the firſt Town that the *States* took from the *Spaniards*; being now a place of good ſtrength, and held to be the Key of the *Netherlands*. The ſecond Iſle is *South-Beverland*, whoſe chief Town is *Tergowſe*: The third *Schoven*, where are *Sirexee* and *Brevers Haven*: The fourth *Tolen*, whoſe principal place is *Tertolen*: the other three *Iſlands* are *North-Beverland*, *Duveland*, and *Wolferdike*. This Country is deſtitute of *Freſh-water* and *Wood*, but in recompence is very fertil in *Grains*. *Zeland.*

The Earldom of *ZUTPHEN*, whoſe chief places are *Zutphen*, ſeated on the *Iſſel*, a place of great ſtrength. Earldom of *Zutphen.*

The Barony of *UTRECHT*, North of *Holland*, hath 70 *Villages*, and 5 walled *Towns*; the chief of which are 1. *Utrecht*, a City commodiouſly ſeated for paſſage by *Boats* to divers other *Towns*, which, with the benefit of the common *Ferries*, one may go in a day from hence to any of the 59 walled *Towns*, equally diſtant from it; and to Dinner to any of the 26 *Towns*, and return at Night. 2. *Rhenen*, 3. *Amsford*, 4. *Wicket*, and 5. *Montfort*. Barony of *Utrecht.*

The Barony of *OVERYSSEL*, bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalia*; its chief places are *Deventer*, and *Swoll*, in the quarter of *Saland*: *Oldenzee*, in the quarter of *Tuente*; and *Goevorden*, in the quarter of *Drente*. Barony of *Overyſſel.*

The Barony of *WEST-FRIEZLAND* is bounded on the VVeſt and North with the Sea, is ſaid to number 340 *Villages* and 10 *Towns*, the chief of which are 1. *Lowarden*, where there is held the *Common Council* for the Province; 2. *Harlingen*, a Maritim Town; 3. *Franicker*, of late made a Univerſity; and 4. *Dockum*. *Weſtfrizland.*

The Barony of *GRONINGUE* is a Town in *Weſt-Friezland*, having under its Juriſdiction 145 *Villages*, of which the chief are *Groningue*, *Old Haven*, and *Keykerke*. *Groningu.*

Under the name of *Germany* beyond the *Rhine*, we comprehend *Francovia*, *Heſſia*, and *Weſtphalia*.

The Province of *FRANCONIA* is divided into three parts, *viz.* into *Eccleſiaſticks* or *Biſhopricks*, *Laicks* and *Imperial Cities*: the *Biſhopricks* are thoſe of *Writzberg*, *Bamberg*, and *Mergetheim*, Cites of good account; the *Laicks* are the Marquiſates of *Cullembach* and *Onſpach*, and the Counties of *Holac*, whoſe chief place is *Weickerſheim*; and *Wertheim*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name: and the *Imperial Cities* are 1. *Nuremberg*, ſeated in a barren Soil; yet by reaſon of the Induſtry of its *Inhabitants* is a place of good Riches, and well frequented by *Merchants* for their *Wares*, known by the name of *Nuremberg-Wares*. 2. *Francfort*, ſeated on the *Mœne*, which ſevereth it into two parts, but joyned together by a fair Bridge. It is encompaſſed with a ſtrong double *Wall*; it is a Free City of the *Empire*, and famous for the two *Fairs* or *Marts* for *Books* here annually held; the one in *Lent*, and the other in *September*: and 3. *Schweinfurt*. Province of *Franconia.*

The *Lantgravedom* of *HASSIA*, Eaſtwards of *Saxony*; its chief places are 1. *Caſſel*, a City ſeated in a fertil Soil, yet of no great beauty; 2. *Marpurg*, an *Univerſity*, and the Seat of the Second Houſe of the *Lantgraves*; and 3. *Dormeſtad*, the Seat and Inheritance of the youngeſt Houſe of the *Lantgraves*. Lantgravedom of *Haſſia.*

To this Province doth belong the Country of *WALDECK*, whoſe Earls are ſubject to the *Lantgraves*; its chief place is *Corbach*. Likewiſe to this Province belongeth *WETTERAVIA*, whoſe chief places are *Naſſau*, *Solins*, *Hanau*, and *Iſenbourg*.

The

Province of Weſtphalia. The Province of *WESTPHALIA* is divided into three parts, to wit, *Eccleſiaſticks*, *Counties*, and *Imperial Cities*. This Province was the ancient habitation of the *Saxons*; the Soil is very fertil, wonderfully ſtored with *Acorns*, which makes their *Swines-fleſh* excellent, and ſo much eſteemed. The chief places in the *Eccleſiaſticks* are thoſe of *Paderborne*, *Minde*, and *Arenſberg*; alſo the Biſhopricks of *Collen*, *Munſter*, and *Triers*. The Biſhoprick of *COLLEN* taketh up a great part of *Weſtphalia*, and hath for its chief place *Collen*, a City well ſtored with *Schools* for the education of Youth; and here (according to Report) were interr'd the Bodies of the three *Wiſe-men* which came from the Eaſt to worſhip our *Saviour*, vulgarly called the three Kings of *Collen*. The Biſhoprick of *MUNSTER* hath its chief place ſo called, ſeated on the River *Ems*, where there is a Monaſtery ſo called, built by *Charles* the Great; 2. *Warendrop*, and 3. *Herwerden*. The Biſhoprick of *TRIERS* hath for its chief places 1. *Triers*, an ancient City, ſeated on the *Moſelle*; 2. *Bopport*, ſeated on the ſaid River, and 3. *Engers*.

Biſhoprick of Collen, &c.

The Counties belonging to Weſtphalia. The Counties belonging to the Province of *Weſtphalia*, are 1. *EMBDEN*, whoſe chief place is *Aurick*; 2. *OLDENBOURG*, whoſe chief place is ſo called; 3. *HOYE*, which hath for its chief place *Nienbourg*; 4. *LIPPE*, whoſe chief place is *Lipſtad*; 5. *RAVENSBERG*, whoſe chief place is *Herword*; and 6. *BENTHEM*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name.

Imperial Cities. And laſtly, the *Imperial Cities* are thoſe of *Embden*, ſeated low, and therefore no good VVinter City; but in the Summer is very pleaſant: and *Zoeſt*, of ſome account.

We have already ſubdivided *Germany* about the *Danube*; it parts, as they are ſet down in the *Geographical Table* of *Germany* about the *Danube*, are as followeth.

Province of Sovabia, with its Parts. The Province of *SOVABIA* is divided into ſeveral parts and Biſhopricks, *viz.* the Biſhoprick of *AUSBOURG*, whoſe chief places are *Dillengen* and *Fueſſen*. The Biſhoprick of *CONSTANCE*, whoſe chief place is *Mersbourg*. The Biſhoprick of *COIRE*, whoſe chief place is *Marſoila*. The Dutchy of *WIRTENBERG*, whoſe chief places are *Stutgard*, dignified with the Seat and reſidence of the *Duke*; and *Tubingue*, of note for being a Univerſity, both *Imperial Cities*. The Marquiſate of *BURGAU*, which hath for its chief place *Guntzbourg*. Part of the Marquiſate of *BADENDURLACK* hath for its principal place *Baden*, ſeated on the *Rhine*, and honoured with the reſidence of the Marqueſs for the Winter Seaſon, as *Milberg* is for the Summer. The County of *FURSTENBERG* hath for its chief place *Meskirch*. The County of *HOHENBERG*, whoſe chief place is *Ehingen*. The County of *RHINFELD*, hath for its chief places *Rhinfelden* and *Lauffenbourg*. The Barony of *WALDBOURG*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name. The Marquiſate of *ANSPACH*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name. The Biſhoprick of *WEIRTSBERG*, whoſe chief place bears the ſame name. The Biſhoprick of *MENTZ*, whoſe chief place is ſo called, ſeated on the *Mæne*; this Biſhop is the chief *Elector* of *Germany*. The Biſhoprick of *BAMBERG* hath for its chief places *Bamberg*, ſeated on the *Mæne*; and *Fochiam*, where (as 'tis ſaid) *Pontius Pilate* was born.

Imperial Cities. Beſides theſe Parts or Countries there are ſeveral *IMPERIAL CITIES*, as they lye on this ſide, and beyond the *Rhine*; as 1. *Ausbourg*, ſeated on the *Leith*, in a fruitful Plain for *Corn* and *Paſtures*, Northwards of the *Alpes*, from which it is not far diſtant; it is a Free City of the *Empire*, governed by a Senate of *Citizens*, and is a place of beauty and good ſtrength. 2. *Conſtance*, 3. *Uberlingue*, with twelve others, as are mentioned in the *Geographical Table* of *Germany*, about the *Danube*.

The

The Province of *SWITZERLAND*, the *SWISSES*, or *HELVETIA*, South of *Italy* and *Savoy*, is divided into 13 *Cantons*; and Confederates with them are 12 or 13 *Allies*, and 20 or 25 *Subjects*; all which, with the names of the several *Cantons*, &c. are set down in the *Geographical Table* of *Switzerland*. The whole Country is in length 240 miles, and about 180 in breadth; it is exceeding populous, and the Men being good Souldiers and addicting themselves to the Wars, serve under the Colours of any Prince that hireth them. This Country is said to lie the highest of any in *Europe*, as sending forth four *Rivers*, which run through its quarters, *viz.* the *Rhine*, *Danube*, the *Po*, and the *Roanus*. But to proceed to its chief places in the *Cantons*, and then with those Confederate with them; and 1. *Basle*, seated on the *Rhine*, which separates it into the greater and lesser *Basle*, once an *Imperial City*, but now joyned to the *Cantons*; it is of note for its University, for the notable Council here held, and for the Sepulchers of *Erasmus*, *Hottoman*, *Clareanus*, and *Pontanus*. 2. *Zurich*, seated on the Lake *Zurisca*, which separates it into two parts, but joyned together with three fair Bridges, that in the midst serving for a Meeting-place for Merchants. 3. *Lucerne*, seated on the banks of a great Lake so called; 4. *Steine*; 5. *Berne*, 6. *Soleurne*, 7. *Fribourg*, and 8. *Schaffhouse*. *Switzerland*, and its parts.

Amongst the Confederates with the *Switzers*, the chief are the *Commonwealth* of *GENEVA*, whose Territories (though not above eight miles in circuit, and and the City not above two miles in circuit) is said to contain about 16 or 17000 Souls; it is seated on the Lake *Lemanus*, through which the River *Rhosne* takes its course, which divides the City in two parts; it is a fair City, well fortified, and wholly in the possession of the *Protestants*, and since the Reformation is become a flourishing University. The Government of this *Estate* is by a *Common-Council*, consisting of 200, the four chief amongst them are called *Syndiques*. The Magistrates of this City allow of all Civil Recreations on *Sundays*; to their Ministers they allow no *Tithes*, but give them yearly Stipends. Commonwealth of *Geneva*.

The *GRISSONS* hath for its chief place *Coire*: also *SANGAL*; and the Territory of *VALLAIS*, or *Valesia*, seated wholly amongst the *Alpes*; a Country of no great bigness, consisting in craggy Rocks and impassible Hills, yet intermixed with delightful and rich Vallies. Its chief places are *Sittin*, or *Sion*, the only walled Town in the Country, and is a place of great strength, as well by Nature as Art, being seated on a high and steep Hill. 2. *Martinach*, of note for its Antiquity; and 3. *Augaunum*, or *St. Maurice*, esteemed the Key of the Country, especially in the Winter, the *Ice* stopping all other entrances; here being a Bridge over the *Rhine* for that purpose, which is strongly built, and as well fortified and guarded for fear of a Surprizal. Besides these several other Places, Bishopricks and Cities, which are their *Allies* and *Subjects*, which I have observed in the *Geographical Table* of *Switzerland*. The *Grissons*, *Sangal*, *Vallais*.

The Province of *BAVARIA* is divided into the Dukedom of *Tirol*, the Dutchy of *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Bavaria*. Province of *Bavaria*, with its parts.

The Estates of the Dukedom of *TIROL* is about 70 miles in length, and as much in breadth; it hath for its chief places 1. *Inspruck*, seated on the *Oenus*. 2. *Trent*, a Bishoprick, seated on the River *Adesis*, famous for the *General Council* there held by Pope *Paul* the Third, against the Doctrines of *Luther* and *Calvin*, which continued off and on for the space of 18 years. 3. *Tirol*, and 4. *Feldkirch*. The Soil of this Country is very fertil, and in many places hath store of *Silver-Mines*, which are found profitable to the *Arch-Dukes*. Dukedom of *Tirol*.

The Dutchy of *BAVARIA* hath for its chief places, 1. *Munick*, seated on the *Aser*, dignified with the residence of the Duke. 2. *Saltzbourg*, seated on the River *Saltzech*, a City honoured with a Bishoprick; and here lieth interr'd the Body of *Paracelsus*. 3. *Passau*, famous for the often meeting here of the *German* Princes. 4. *Ratisbone*, seated on the *Danow*, of note for the interview Dutchy of *Bavaria*.

interview here made between the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, and *Maurice* Duke of *Saxony*. 5. *Frisingue*, seated on the ascent of a Hill, and not far from the River *Mosacus*; and 6. *Ingulstad*, seated on the *Danube*, and dignified with an University.

Palatinate of *Bavaria*.

The Palatinate of *BAVARIA* hath for its chief places 1. *Amberg*, seated amongst *Silver-Mines*. 2. *Newbourg*, usually the portion of some of the younger *Palatines*. 3. *Castel*, where the *Palatinates* of the *Rhine*, when they sojourn in this Country, use to keep their Court. 4. *Sultzbach*, 5. *Burglenfelt*, 6. *Aichstet*, and 7. *Pfreimt*.

Dukedom of *Austria*, with its parts.

The Arch-Dukedom of *AUSTRIA* is seated on both sides of the *Danube*, and hath united to it, as Hereditary possessions of that House, the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Stirie*, *Carinthie*, *Carniole*; the County of *Cilley*, and the Marquisate of *Windischmarch*.

Austria.

The particular Dukedom or Province of *AUSTRIA* is separate from *Hungaria* on the East by the *Leite*; its chief places are 1. *Vienna*, seated on the *Danube*, at present the Seat of the *German* Emperours, as being the Metropolitan, fairest, and most beautiful City in all *Germany*, being adorned with many magnificent *Temples* and stately *Monasteries*; but above all, with a most sumptuous and Princely *Palace*, where the Emperour keeps his Court. It is esteemed the Bulwark of the Country against the *Turks*, being of note for the repulse they gave the *Turks* in *Anno* 1526, when besieged by about 200000, under the conduct of *Solyman* the Magnificent, and were thence repulsed with the loss of about 80000 Men. 2. *Ems*, so called from the River on which it is seated; 3. *Wells*; 4. *Crems*, seated on the *Danube*; 5. *Home*, 6. *Newstat*, and 7. *Bade*.

Dukedom of *Stirie*.

The Dukedom of *STIRIE* is contiguous to *Austria* on the South; hath for its chief places *Greez*, *Pruck*, and *Pettau*.

Dukedom of *Carinthie*, &c.

The Dukedom of *CARINTHIE* is South of the *Alpes*, and hath for its chief places 1. *St. Veit*, the Metropolitan City of this Country; 2. *Lavemunde*, and 3. *Grucz*.

The Dukedom of *CARNIOLE*, adjoyning on *Italy* Westwards, hath for its chief places *Laubach*, *Gorice*, *Gradisque*, and *Czirknitz*.

The County of *CILLEY*, whose chief place bears the same name.

The Marquisate of *WINDISCHMARCH*, which hath for its chief places *Metling*, and *Radolfswred*.

Germany about the *Elbe* and *Oder*, contains *Bohemia*, and the Higher and Lower *Saxony*: To *Bohemia* are incorporated the Dukedom of *Silesia*, and the Marquisates of *Moravia* and *Lusatia*.

BOHEMIA.

Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

THe Kingdom of *BOHEMIA* is encompassed with the *Hercynian Forests*, which for a long time was a fence against the *Romans*; it hath on the East, *Moravia* and *Silesia*; on the South, *Austria*; on the West, *Bavaria*; and on the North, *Lusatia*. The whole Kingdom contains 550 miles in circuit; in which are said to be 780 *Cities*, *walled Towns*, and *Castles*, and about 32000 *Villages*. Its Inhabitants are much addicted to *Drunkenness* and *Gluttony*; but the *Nobility* and *Gentry* (for the most part) are of another temper. The Soil of the Kingdom is extreamly fertil, and enriched with Mines of all sorts of Metal, except *Gold*. It is severed into 15 *Provinces*, and hath for its chief places, 1. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom, and seated in the midst, and on the River *Mulda*. This City consisteth of four several Towns, and every one of them have their peculiar *Magistrates*, *Laws*, and *Customs*; to wit, the Old *Prague*, beautified with a famous *Senate-house*, a large *Market-house*, and several fair Structures: then the New *Prague*, separate

ſeparate from the Old by a deep and broad Ditch; alſo the little Town, ſo called, which is divided from the Old *Prague* by the *Mulda*, to which it is joyned by a fair Bridge. In this City is the Hill *Rachine*, on the ſides of which are many beautiful Houſes inhabited by the *Nobility*; and on the ſummit thereof is a magnificent *Palace*, and is the reſidence of the *Bohemian* Kings, and later Emperours: the fourth and laſt part is the Town of the *Jews*, as by them inhabited, where they have five *Synagogues*, and live according to their own Laws. 2. *Coln*, 3. *Jaromirz*, 4. *Churdin*, 5. *Hora*, 6. *Tabor*, 7. *Piſen*, 8. *Ziatecz*, 9. *Rakonick*, 10. *Melnisk*, and 11. *Nimburg*; all places of good account.

The Provinces Incorporate to *Bohemia*, are the Dutchy of *Sileſia*, the Marquiſates of *Moravia* and *Luſatia*.

SILESIA is Eaſtwards of *Bohemia*, and is ſevered into two equal parts by the River *Oder*, which hath here its beginning; it is divided into three *Dutchies*, fifteen *Principalities*, and four *Baronies*, whoſe names (with their chief places) I have taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of *Bohemia*. Its chief places are 1. *Breſlaw*, ſo called from a Duke of this Province, who built it: In the year 1341 it was totally burnt, but ſince the rebuilding is become one of the neateſt Towns in this part. 2. *Gros-glogaw*, 3. *Jawer*, 4. *Lignitz*, 5. *Breſlaw*, 6. *Breig*, 7. *Monſterberg*, 8. *Neiß*, 9. *Oppelen*, 10. *Ratibor*, 11. *Troppaw*, and 12. *Wartenberg*. Dutchy of *Sileſia*.

The Marquiſate of *MORAVIA*, Weſt of *Bohemia*, is eſteemed the moſt fertil Country for Corn in *Germany*, abounding alſo in *Myrrhe* and *Frankinſence*, not growing on Trees, but out of the ground: It is ſevered into three parts, *viz.* *Olmutz*, *Brinn*, and *Znaim*; and hath for its chief places 1. *Brinn*, dignified with the Seat of the Marquiſs. 2. *Olmutz*, ſeated on the *Morava*, from whence the Country takes its name, and is dignified with an *Univerſity*. 3. *Iglaw*, 4. *Znaim*, 5. *Kremſir*, 6. *Krumlow*, and 7. *Polna*; all places of good account. Marquiſate of *Moravia*.

The Marquiſate of *LUSASIA*, South of *Bohemia*, is divided into the Higher and Lower *Luſatia*; a Country, though but little, yet able to Arm 20000 foot. It hath for its chief places, 1. *Baudiſſen*, 2. *Gorlitz*, 3. *Sittaw*, 4. *Spraw*, and 5. *Guben*. Marquiſate of *Luſatia*.

The County of *Glatzko*, and the Signiory of *Egra*, belong likewiſe to the Kingdom of *Bohemia*.

SAXONY.

THE Lower part of *Germany*, about the *Elbe* and *Oder*, is taken up by *Saxony*, which is divided into the Higher and Lower; in the higher are the Eſtates of the Dukes of *Saxony*, the Eſtates of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, and the Dutchy of *Pomerania*. In the Lower *Saxony* are ſeveral *Archbiſhopricks*, *Biſhopricks*, *Dutchies*, and *Imperial Cities*; which I have taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of *Germany* about the *Elbe* and the *Oder*. *Saxony*, with its parts.

The *Higher SAXONY* for the moſt part belongs to the Duke and Elector of *Saxony*: It is bounded on the Eaſt with *Luſatia* and *Brandenburgh*, on the South with *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia* and *Franconia*, and on the North with Lower *Saxony* and *Brandenburgh*. It is divided into the Dutchy of *Saxony*, the Marquiſate of *Miſne*, the Dutchy of *Voitland*, *Turinge*, with its ſeveral parts, and the Principality of *Anhalt*. The chief places in the Dutchy of *Saxony* are 1. *Wittenberg*, ſeated on a plain and Sandy barren ground, once dignified with the Seats of the Dukes of *Saxony*, famous for the Sepulchers of *Luther* and *Melancthon*; it is dignified with an *Univerſity*, and of this Town there is a common Proverb, *That a man ſhall meet nothing but Schollers, Whores, and Swine*, which laſt is their food: and 2. *Worlets*, ſeated on the *Albis*. Higher *Saxony*, and its parts.

Province of *Misne.* The Province of *MISNE* hath for its chief places 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Albis*, the residence of the Duke, and Prince Elector of *Saxony*; it is a place of great strength, having on its Walls and Bulwarks 150 Peeces of Ordnance, being the *Dukes* Magazin for Arms and Men, where, upon a days warning, he can make ready 30000 Horse and Foot. 2. *Lipsick*, seated in a fruitful Plain for *Corn*, a fair Town, graced with large Streets, and beautified with many lofty Buildings of *Freestone*, and is of some account for its University for the study of *Philosophy:* and it is observed, that these *Philosophers*, amongst other Secrets in nature, find *Beer* so good, that the Duke gains by the Custom thereof, drunk by them and the Inhabitants, who follow their steps, about 20000 *l. per annum* sterling.

Dutchy of *Voitland.* The Dutchy of *VOITLAND* is of no large extent, and of as little note; its chief places are *Altembourg* and *Zuickaw.*

Province of *Turingt.* The Province of *TURINGE*, about 120 miles in length and breadth, is divided into several parts, and hath for its chief places 1. *Erdford*, a fair and large City; 2. *Jeve*, an University of *Physitians*; 3. *Smalcald*, famous for the *Lutheran* League here made, in *Anno* 1530, by the *German* Princes, which in a short time was propogated over all *Christendom.* 4. *Cobourg*, 5. *Quedelimberg*, 6. *Salsfeldt*, 7. *Mulhausen*, and 8. *Northausen*; which two last are *Imperial Cities.*

Anhalt. The Principality of *ANHALT* hath for its chief places *Dessau* and *Bernebourg.*

Marquisate of *Brandenbourg.* The Marquisate of *BRANDENBOURG*, East of *Poland*, is in compass about 520 miles, is separated into the parts of *Altmark*, *Mittle*, *Mittlemarck*, *Marche* and *Newmarck*; its chief places are 1. *Havelberg*, scituate on the River *Havel*, the Seat of a Bishop. 2. *Brandenbourg*, which communicates its name to the Country. 3. *Berlin*, seated on the River *Spre*, the ordinary residence of the Marquis. 3. *Francfort*, seated on the *Oder*, to distinguish it from the other on the *Meine*, and in a fertil Soil for *Corn* and *Wine*; it is dignified with an *University* and a great *Mart Town*, but not comparable to the other *Francfort*, and 5. *Landsberg.*

Province of *Pomerania.* The Province of *POMERANIA*, South of *Brandenbourg*, is divided into nine Dutchies, whose names are set down in the *Geographical Table.* Its chief places are 1. *Stettin*, the residence of the Prince, which from a poor *Fisher Town* is now become the chief of the Country. 2. *Walgast*, once a famous *Mart Town*, where the *Russians*, *Vandals*, *Danes*, and *Saxons*, had their particular Streets of abode for Trade; but now it is lost, and from thence removed to *Lubeck.* 3. *Gripsvald*, an Universty; 4. *Straelsond*, 5. *Bergen*, 6. *Stargart*, 7. *Colberg*, 8. *Stolpe*, and 9. *Lowenbourg.* That part of the Country about *Stettin* belongs to the *Swede*, and that towards *Colberg* to the Marquisate of *Brandenbourg.*

Lower *Saxony*, with its parts. The *Lower SAXONY* is divided into the *Archbishopricks*, *Bishopricks*, divers *Dutchies*, with some *Imperial Cities*, the names of all which are set down in the *Geographical Table* of *Saxony.* In this Lower *Saxony* are divers good Towns and Cities, the chief of which are 1. *Magdebourg*, a City which gives name to its Territory. 2. *Breme*, which also gives name to its Territory or Archbishoprick, is one of the *Hans-Towns*, so called from the freedom of Traffick here used; it is commodiously seated on the *Visurge*, which runneth through the City, and at five miles distance falleth into the Sea. 3. *Ferden*, 4. *Hiddelshein*, 5. *Halberstat*; which three last are all Cities which give name to their Territories or Bishopricks. The several Dutchies are *HOLSTEIN*, or *HOLSATIA*, where are the Cities of *Kyell*, *Segelberg*, and *Gluckstad.*

Dutchy of *Lunebourg.* The Dutchy of *LUNEBOURG* hath for its chief places 1. *Lunebourg*, said to be so called from the *Moon*, which the ancient Inhabitants worshipped; it is an *Imperial* and *Free City*, of good strength, being well fortified with thick Mud-walls and deep Ditches, and its Buildings are fair; a place well known for its *salt Fountain* here found, over which is built a spacious

ſpacious Houſe containing 52 Rooms, in every one of which are placed eight Chaldrons of *Lead*, in each of which are boiled a Tun of *Salt* every day; the profit of which is divided into three parts, one to the *Duke*, another to the *City*, and the other to the *Monaſtery* and ſome adjoyning *Earldoms:* And 2. *Celle*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunebourg*.

The Dutchy of *BRUNSWICK* hath for its chief places 1. *Brunſwick*, ſeated in a fertil Soil for *Corn*, a free *Imperial City*, ſtrongly fenced about with Walls, beſides the River of *Ancor*, which encompaſſeth it; this place is famous for its *Mum*, which the Inhabitants are ſo much addicted unto, that they commonly ſpend the Forenoons about their Affairs, and the Afternoons in good Fellowſhip. 2. *Wolfenbutten*, the Seat of the Dukes of *Brunſwick*. Dutchy of Brunſwick &c.

The Dutchy of *GRUBENHAGEN*, whoſe chief place is *Limbeck*.

The Dutchy of *GOTTINGEN*, whoſe chief place is *Gottingue*.

The Dutchy of *LAWENBOURG*, whoſe chief places are *Lawenbourg* and *Hadler*.

The Dutchy of *MECKLENBOURG*, Weſt of *Pomerania*, hath for its chief places 1. *Wiſmar*, ſo named from *Wiſamarus*, a King of the *Vandals*, Father of *Rhadaguſe*, who, with *Alarick* the *Goth*, ſacked *Rome*. 2. *Roſtock*, an Univerſity; and 3. *Scierin*.

Amongſt the *Imperial Free Cities*, or *Hans-Towns*, which are about 72, moſt of which are ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, or navigable Rivers, enjoying large Immunities, and able to put to Sea about 100 Sail of *Ships*; theſe following are of moſt note, 1. *Lubeck*, ſeated on the *Trane*, which on the North-ſide divides *Germany* from *Denmark*, and on a ſpacious Hill, on the top whereof is a beautiful *Church*, from whence lead Streets to all the Gates of the City, beſides which there are nine other *Churches*; it is encompaſſed with a double Wall, one of *Brick*, and the other of *Earth*, and in ſome parts deep *Ditches*, where Ships of about 1000 Tuns are brought up to Winter from *Tremuren*, its Maritim-Port, ſeated on the *Baltick Sea*, from which it is about a miles diſtance. The Buildings of this City are of *Brick*, and very beautiful, to which they have many pleaſant *Gardens*; and the Inhabitants are to be commended for their civility to Strangers, as alſo for their ſtrictneſs in the execution of their Juſtice. 2. *Hambourg*, ſeated on a large and Sandy plain, and on the banks of the *Albis*, where it divides *Germany* from *Denmark*; it is a ſtrong City, encompaſſed with a deep *Ditch*, and on the Eaſt and North-ſides with a double *Ditch* and *Wall*, and hath ſix Gates for entrance, the Haven being ſhut up with *Iron-Chains* and ſtrictly guarded: It is adorned with many fair buildings, as the *Senate-houſe*, the *Exchange*, &c. hath nine *Churches* for Divine Worſhip, and its private Houſes are for the moſt part neatly built; it is very populous, well Inhabited, and frequented by Merchants, eſpecially by the *Engliſh*, who have here a Factory for Woolen-Cloth. In this City there hath been obſerved to be 777 *Brewers*, 40 *Bakers*, one *Lawyer*, and one *Phyſitian*; the reaſon of this great diſproportion (as one wittily obſerved) was, that a Cup of *Nimis* is the beſt Vomiting potion, and their Controverſies were ſooner compoſed over a Pot of Drink, than by order of Law. 3. *Stoad*, commodiouſly ſeated for Traffick on the *Elve*, about five miles diſtance from *Hambourg*, once a place of a better Trade than now it is. Theſe Cities are called *Free*, from their great Prerogatives in coyning Money, and ruling by their own Laws; and *Imperial*, as knowing no Lord or Protector, but the *Emperour*, to whom they pay two Thirds of ſuch Contributions as are aſſeſſed in the Aſſemblies.

Germany is a ſpacious Country, and very populous; the People are of a ſtrong Conſtitution and good Complexion, are very ingenious and ſtout, much given to drink, but of a generous diſpoſition: the Poorer ſort great Pains-takers, and the Nobles (which are many, for the Title of the Father deſcends to all their Children) are either good *Scholars* or ſtout *Souldiers*, ſo that a Son of a Duke is a Duke; a thing which the *Italians* hold ſo vain and fooliſh, that in deriſion they ſay, That the Dukes and Earls of *Germany*, the

Dons of *Spain*, the Nobility of *Hungaria*, the Bishops of *Italy*, the Lairds of *Scotland*, the Monsieurs of *France*, and the younger Brethren of *England*, make a poor Company.

There are so many inferiour, (yet free) *Princes* in this Country, that in a days Journey a Traveller may meet with many *Laws*, and as many sorts of *Coin*, every Prince making use of his own *Laws* and *Coins*, whose Laws the *Emperours* are sworn to keep; which made one say, that the *Emperour* is *King of Kings*, the King of *Spain King of Men*, and the King of *France King of Asses*, as bearing his heavy Taxes.

The fertility and Commodities of *Germany*.

The Country is generally fertil and temperate, being scituate under the *Temperate Zone*. Here are many Mines of *Silver* and other Inferiour *Mettals*; it hath store of *Corn* and *Wine*, which they transport to forreign Countries, as likewise *Linnen*, *Laces*, *Woollen*, and divers Manufactures, also *Quicksilver*, *Alom*, *Arms* of all sorts, and other *Iron-works*; and its *Ponds*, *Lakes*, and *Rivers* are well stored with *Fish*.

Its chief Rivers.

The chief Rivers of *Germany* are, the *Rhine*, the *Weser*, the *Elbe*, and the *Oder*; for the *Danube* having but a small course in this *Country*, shall be elsewhere spoken of.

The Commodities and Trade of *Belgium*.

That part which we call *BELGIUM*, or the *Low Countries*, is of a large extent, seated in the *North Temperate Zone*, under the 8 and 9*th Climates*, the longest day being 17 *hours*; the *Air* by reason of the industry of the Inhabitants in draining the *Marishes*, and turning the standing-Waters into running-Streams, is now very healthful, as being purged from those gross Vapours which did thence arise: the Country lieth exceeding low, and therefore subject to Inundations. The Commodities that these Countries yield, are, *Linnens*, *Yarn*, *Thread*, *Sayes*, *Silks*, *Velvets*, *Tapestries*, *Pictures*, *Prints*, *Blades*, *Sope*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Fish*, *Pots*, *Bottles*, *Ropes*, *Cables*, *Armour*, several Manufactures, &c. besides the Commodities of *India*, *Persia*, *China*, *Turkey*, and other parts, which are here had in great plenty, by reason of the vast Trade they drive in all parts.

The

- The Eſtates of the Crown of POLAND, are
  - POLAND; under the name of which is comprized,
    - The Kingdom of POLAND, as it is divided into the
      - Higher, or Little POLAND; where are the Palatinates of
        - Cracou, with its Caſtlewicks of: Cracou, Vounicz, Sandecz, Biecz.
        - Sandomirie, with its Caſtlewicks of: Sandomirz, Viſlicz, Radom, Zawichoſt, Zarnaw, Malogocz, Czeſchow.
        - Lublin, with its Caſtle — Lublin.
      - Lower, or Great POLAND; where are the Palatinates of
        - Poſna, where are the Caſtlewicks of: Poſna, Meſeritz, Ragozno, Sremck, Brzeſti, Crimn, Sandock.
        - Kalisch, with its Caſtlewicks of: Kaliſch, Kamin, Gneſna, Landa, Nackel, Biechow.
        - Sirad, with its Caſtlewicks of: Sirad, Wielun, Rozpirz.
        - Lencini, with its Caſtlewicks of: Lencici, Breſſini, Inowlocz.
        - Dobrzin, with its Caſtlewicks of: Dobrzin, Rippin, Stonck.
        - Ploczk, with its Caſtlewicks of: Ploczk, Raſuntz, Sceps.
        - Rava, with its Caſtlewicks of: Rava, Sochaczow, Goſtiny, Cowal.
    - Divers Dutchies, with their Caſtlewicks, to wit
      - RUSSIA NOIRE, which is eſteemed in the Higher Poland; where are the Palatinates of
        - Leowenborg, or Leopolis, with its Caſtlewicks of: Leowenborg, Halicz, Drzemiſl, Zamoſcie.
        - Belz, with its Caſtlewicks of: Belz, Chelm.
      - CUJAVIA, which is eſteemed in the Lower Poland; where are the Palatinates of
        - Brzeſti, with its Caſtlewicks of: Brzeſti, Kruſnick, Cowal.
        - Uladiſlau, with its Caſtlewicks of: Uladiſlau, Bidgoſt.
      - MAZOVIA, alſo eſteemed in the Lower Poland; where are the Palatinates of
        - Czersk, with its Caſtlewicks of: Warzaw, Liw, Czersk, Wiſſegrod, Zakrotzim, Ciechanow, Wiſna.
    - PRUSSIA, or PRUSSE; as it is divided in POLAQUIE,
      - PRUSSIA ROYALE; where are the Palatinates of: Dantzick, Elbing, Marienburg, Culm, with its Caſtlewicks of: Dantzick, Elbing, Marienburg, Culm.
      - PRUSSIA DUCALE, with its Palatinate and Caſtlewick of Koningsberg, with its Palatinate of Bielsk, with its Caſtlewick of —— Bielsk.
  - And divers other Eſtates, Dutchies, &c. united, or ſubject to the Crown of POLAND, viz.
    - Dutchy of LITHUANIA, under the name of which are compriſed, LITHUANIA; where are the Palatinates of
      - Wilna, with its Caſtlewicks of: Wilna, Oſmiana, Wilkomirs.
      - Braſlaw, with its Caſtlewicks, of: Braſlaw, Miadzial.
      - Troki, with its Caſtlewicks, of: Troki, Kowno, Grodno, Lida.
      - Minsk, with its Caſtlewicks of: Minsk, Boriſſow, Robaczow, Rzeczica, Mary.
      - Minsk, with its Caſtlewicks of: Mſciſlaw, Mohilow, Orſſa.
      - Novogrodeck, with its Caſtlewicks of: Novogrodeck, Slonim, Woskowiska.
      - Poloſczk, with its Caſtlew. of Poloſczk.
      - Vitepsk, with its Caſtlew. of Vitepsk.
      - POLESIE; where is —— Breſſiici, with its Caſtlew. of Breſſici.
      - SAMOGITIE, with its Palatinate and Caſtlewick of Roſienie.
    - Dutchy of VOLHYNIE, as it is divided in the
      - Higher VOLHYNIE, with its Palatinate of: Luſuc, with its Caſtlewicks of: Luſuc, Wolodomiers, Krzemienec.
      - Lower VOLHYNIE, with its Palatinate of: Kiovia, with its Caſtlewicks of: Kiovia, Owrucze, Zitomirz.
    - PODOLIE, with its Palat. of the Part of MOSCOVIA, where are
      - Higher PODOLIE, as: Kamieniec, with its Caſtlew. of Kamieniec.
      - Lower PODOLIE, as: Braclaw, with its Caſtlewick of Braclaw.
      - The Dutchies of: Smolensko, with its Caſtlew. of Smolensko. Novogrodeck, with its Caſt. of Novogrodeck.

POLAND.

Poland, and its parts.

THE Eſtates of the Crown of *Poland* ought to be conſidered in two ſorts, the one called the *Eſtates* of *POLAND*, and the other of *LITHUANIA*; theſe two having heretofore had their *Kings* and *Dukes* apart, and not having been united till within about 270 years. The *Eſtates* of *Poland* ſhall be, *Poland*, which we will divide into the Higher and Lower, or Leſſer and Greater; and into the Dutchies of *Ruſſia Noire*, *Cajavia*, *Mazovia*, and *Pruſſia*. The *Eſtates* of *Lithuania* may be divided into *Lithuania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, &c. all Dutchies; but *Lithuania* much the greater; wherefore he who poſſeſſeth them is entituled the Great Duke of *Lithuania*.

Its extent.

All theſe Eſtates of *Poland* and *Lithuania* taken together, extend from about the 48*th degree* of *Latitude* unto the 57*th*, which are about 225 *French* Leagues; and from the 38*th* of *Longitude* unto the 61, and have near as much Continent again as *France*. They are bounded on the Eaſt for the moſt part by *Moſcovy*, and part of the *Petit Tartars*; on the South the Mountains of *Caprack* and the River *Neiſter* divide them from *Hungaria*, *Tranſilvania*, and *Moldavia*; on the Weſt by *Germany*, and toucht in part on the *Baltick* Sea; and on the North they are bounded part by *Livonia*, and *Moſcovy*.

Bounds.

Ancient Inhabitants.

The Ancient name of *Poland* was *Sauromatia*, from its Inhabitants the *Sauromatæ*; afterwards by *Lechius*, the firſt Duke hereof, in *Anno* 550, it was called *Poland*, which ſignifies a *plain Country*, as generally it is. It was made a Kingdom by the Emperour *Otho* the Third, *Anno* 1000, *Boleſlaus* being Duke, and hath ever had its *Dukes* and *Kings* elected by the States; who, by reaſon of their vicinity to the *Turks*, generally chuſe a *Warriour*.

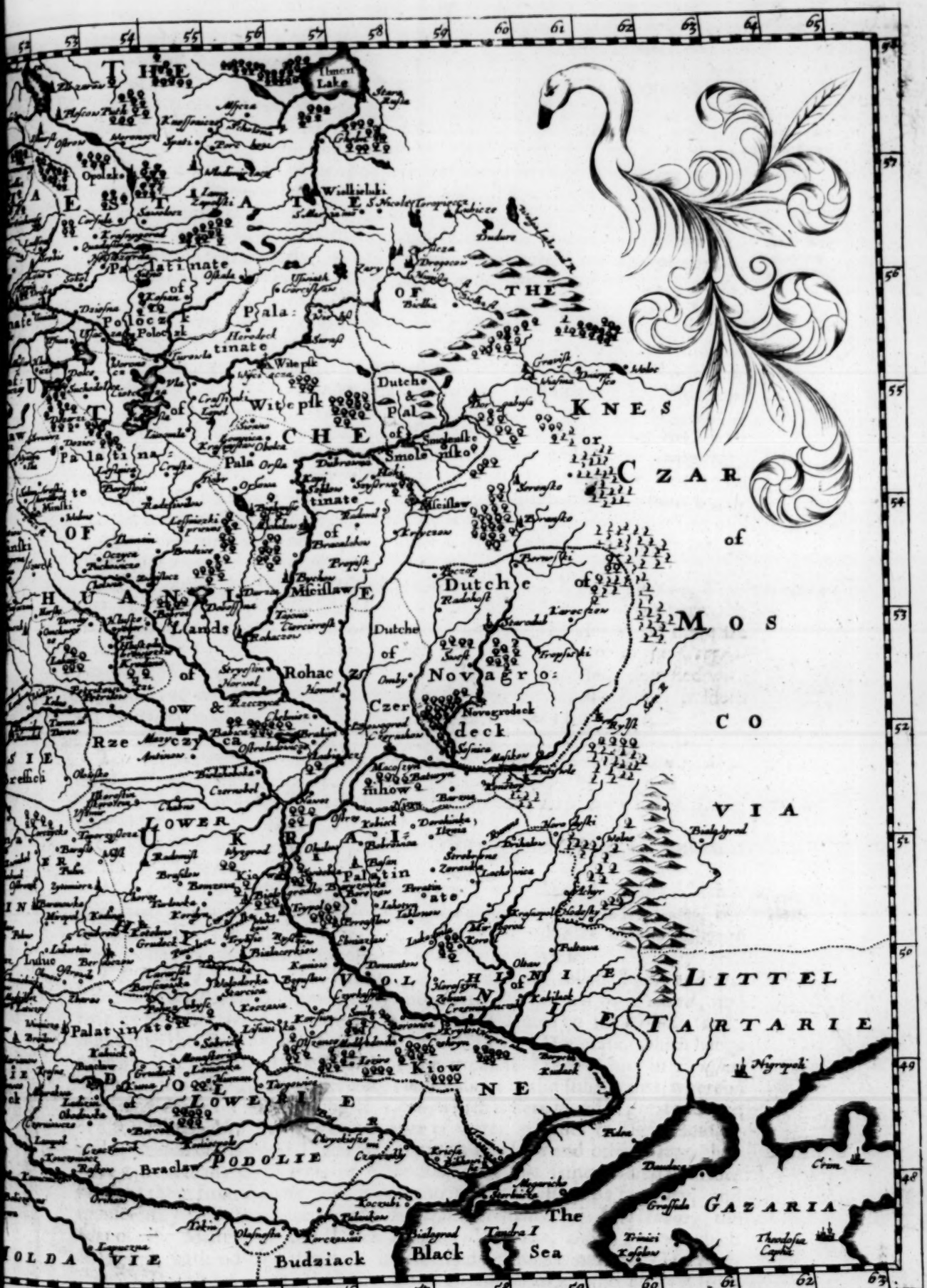
Fertility, Commodities, &c.

The Country is plain, well clothed with *Firs* and other *Timber-Trees*; the *Air* is ſo cold, that they have neither *Wine* nor *Grapes*, inſtead of which, having ſtore of *Barly*, they make uſe of the Old drink of *England*, viz. *Ale*. The Country is well furniſhed with *Grains* and *Fruits*, but they are but lean; their chief Commodities are rich *Furs*, *Horſes*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *Bow-ſtaves*, *Buff-hides*, *Ambergreeſe*, *Flax*, *Linnen-cloth*, *Maſts*, *Cordage*, *Boards*, *Wainſcot*, *Timber*, *Rozin*, *Tar*, and *Pith* of both kinds, *Match*, *Iron*, *Stock-fiſh*, *Salt* digged out of the Earth, *Pot-aſhes*, *Rye* in great plenty, for which it hath made *Dantzick* famous. It is well furniſhed with *Fleſh*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*; and towards the *Carpatian* Mountains of *Hungaria* are found Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, as alſo *Iron* and *Brimſtone*.

Its People.

The People are ingenious, and much addicted to Languages, eſpecially *Latin*; there being ſcarce a man, though of a mean condition, but underſtands it: according to their abilities, they are more inclined to prodigality than penuriouſneſs; as for the *Gentry*, they are free, but the *Peſants* are no better than Slaves, being under ſubjection to their Lords. They are eſteemed good *Souldiers*, are proud, much given to coſtly Apparel and delicious Diet; they uſe the *Sclavonian* Language: in matters of *Religion* they are ſaid to embrace all, ſo they have any thing of *Chriſtianity* in them; ſome following the Reformed Churches, ſome embracing the Doctrine of *Calvin*, others of *Luther*, and ſome of *Auguſtine*, *Bohemian* and *Helvetian* Confeſſions, and others

To the R. Worshipfull Sr Robert Clayton
of the Citty of London Kt and Alderman
and Late Mayr ther of Anno 1680.
This Mapp is DD by RB
THE BALTICK SEA
Gulph of Riga
The Gulph of Dantzick
Kingdom of Prussia
Duchie of Pomerania
Palatinate of Troki
Palatinate of Lublin
Palatinate of Chelm
Palatinate of Lemburg
Palatinate of Podolia
Palatinate of Bielsk
Palatinate of Nova
Palatinate of Lencici
Palatinate of Sirat
Palatinate of Crakow
Palatinate of Sandomir
Palatinate of Posnania
Palatinate of Kalish
Palatinate of Brestlici
Palatinate of Volhynia
Palatinate of Podolia
Palatinate of Latin
Palatinate of Samogitia
Palatinate of Livonia
Palatinate of Polesia
Palatinate of Kiovia
Palatinate of Mozovia
Palatinate of Warsovia
Palatinate of Rava
Palatinate of Czersk
Palatinate of Dobrzin
Palatinate of Inowlodislaw
Palatinate of Gnesna
Palatinate of Pila
Palatinate of Culm
Palatinate of Pomerania
Palatinate of Marienburg
Palatinate of Pomerelia
Palatinate of Belz
Palatinate of Kiovia
Palatinate of Braclaw
Palatinate of Podolia
Palatinate of Kamenec
Palatinate of Russia
Palatinate of Halicz
Palatinate of Zarnowia
Palatinate of Zator
Palatinate of Siradia
Palatinate of Cracow
Palatinate of Lancicia
Palatinate of Kalisia
Palatinate of Posnania
Palatinate of Gnesna
Palatinate of Inowlodislaw
Palatinate of Dobrzin
Palatinate of Rava
Palatinate of Czersk
Palatinate of Warsovia
Palatinate of Mozovia
Palatinate of Bielsk
Palatinate of Troki
Palatinate of Latin
Palatinate of Podolia
Palatinate of Volhynia
Palatinate of Brestlici
Palatinate of Kiovia
Palatinate of Polesia
Palatinate of Livonia
Palatinate of Samogitia
Palatinate of Nova
Palatinate of Lublin
Palatinate of Chelm
Palatinate of Lemburg
Palatinate of Belz



D withits Palatinates the DUTCHES of RUSSIA NOIRE, CUJAVIA MOZOVIA PRUSSIA

others are of the Church of *Rome*, which doth occaſion the Saying, *That he that hath loſt his Religion, let him ſeek it at* Poland. Written Laws they have but few, if any, *Cuſtom* and *Temporary Edicts* being the Rule both for their Government and Obedience.

The Revenue of the King is not great for ſo large a Country, and that which is, he receiveth from them quarterly, the Kingdom being divided into four Parts, every one of which keepeth the *King* and *Court* a quarter; which Revenue is not certain, but more or leſs according to his occaſions, by War, Marriage of his Daughters, or the like. The Revenue of the *King*.

The Kingdom is divided throughout into *Palatinates* and *Caſtlewicks*. *Poland*, taken particularly, is divided into the Higher and Lower; in the Higher are the *Palatinates* of *Cracou*, *Sandomirz*, and *Lublin*. Places of moſt note in theſe parts are 1. *Cracou*, or *Cracovia*, ſeated in a Plain, and on the Banks of the *Viſtula*, dignified with the reſidence of the King: It is in form round, the Houſes fair and lofty, and built of *Freeſtone*; in the midſt of the City is a large Quadrangle *Market-houſe*, where is ſeated the *Cathedral Church*, and the *Senate-houſe* for the Citizens, about which are ſeveral Shops for Merchants. The City is encompaſſed with two ſtrong *Stone* Walls, and a dry Ditch; on the Eaſt-ſide of the City is the Kings *Caſtle*, being fair, well built, and pleaſantly ſeated on a Hill, as alſo the *Kings* and *Queens* Lodgings; on the Weſt is a *Chappel* where the Kings are interr'd, and on the North-ſide Lodgings for Entertainment and Feaſting; the South-ſide being without Buildings: but as to matters of *Trade*, this City is of ſmall account. *Poland*, with its parts and chief places.

Alſo *Sandomirz* and *Lublin*, both chief Cities of their *Palatinates*, are in the higher *Polonia*, or *Poland*.

In the Lower *Poland* are the *Palatinates* of *Poſna*, *Kaliſch*, *Sirad*, *Lencini*, *Dobrzin*, *Ploczk*, and *Rava*; whoſe chief Cities or places bear the ſame name, and are the reſidence of their *Palatines*. Beſides which there are ſeveral other Towns of good note, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of the Kingdom, and in chief *Poſna* and *Gneſna*, dignified with the See of an *Archbiſhop*, who during the *Interregnum* of the King, holdeth the Supream Authority in the Kingdom, and ſummoneth the *Diets*. Lower Poland.

To *Poland* doth alſo belong the Dutchies of *Ruſſia*, *Noire*, *Cujavia*, *Mazovia*, *Pruſſia*, and *Polaquie*.

RUSSIA NOIRE hath for its chief places *Loewenberg* and *Belz*, both chief of their *Palatinates*. *Ruſſia Noire*.

CUJAVIA hath for its principal places *Brzeſti* and *Uladiſlau*, both chief of their *Caſtelwicks*. *Cujavia*.

MAZOVIA hath only one *Palatinate*, viz. *Czersk*, under which is compriſed ſeveral *Cities* and *Caſtlewicks*, the chief of which is *Warzaw*, one of the faireſt in the Kingdom, it oft-times being the reſidence of the Kings of *Poland*, a place noted for its excellent *Metheglin* here made. *Mazovia*, with its places.

PRUSSIA is conſidered in two parts, which are called *Royale* and *Ducale*: *Pruſſia Royale* is immediately ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*, and hath its *Palatinates* in the Cities of 1. *Dantzick*, ſeated on the *Viſtula*, at its influx into the *Baltick Sea*, and at the foot of a great Mountain, which hangs over it; it is the faireſt, beſt, and of the greateſt Trade of any in *Pruſſia*. Through this City runs a River very commodious to the Inhabitants, whereon are many *Mills* for the grinding of Corn, which is here found in great plenty; as alſo a *Water-Mill*, for the conveyance of water in Pipes to their Houſes; and by reaſon of its great Trade for *Corn* with *England* and other parts, they have a great many *Granaries* or *Store-houſes* for the ſame, which is hither brought them from *Poland*. 2. *Elbin*, though but ſmall, yet a fair City, and indifferently well frequented by the *Engliſh* Merchants. 3. *Marienburg*, the Seat of the Maſters of the *Dutch* Knights; 4. *Culne*, and 5. *Thorn*, which though it hath no *Palatinate*, is eſteemed by many next to *Dantzick*. *Pruſſia Ducale* belongs to the Marqueſs of *Brandenbourg*, who holds it from the Crown of *Poland*. It hath only one *Palatinate* at *Koningsberg*, ſeated Pruſſia.

on

on an Inlet of the *Baltick Sea*, and waſhed with the River *Pegel*; it is a fair City, a famous Mart, and a good Univerſity, and before its Coaſt is gathered great quantity of *Ambergriece*. This *Ambergriece* is the juyce of a Stone growing like *Coral* on a Rock in the North-Sea, continually covered with Water; and in the Months of *September* and *December*, by the violence of the Sea, is rent from the Rocks and caſt into the Havens of the Neighbouring Countries.

Polaquit. *POLAQUIE* is a ſmall Province between the Eſtates of *Poland* and *Lithuania*, and ſeems to have belonged to *Mozavia*; *Bielsk* is the Seat of its *Palatinate*. And hitherto we have treated of the Eſtates of *Poland*, almoſt all on the *Viſtula*, or the Rivers that fall into it, on which are ſeated the three faireſt Cities of theſe Quarters, *viz. Cracow*, towards its Spring; *Warſaw*, towards the middle of its courſe; and *Dantzick*, towards its principal Mouth falling into the Sea.

Eſtates of *Lithuania.* The Eſtates of *LITHUANIA* are Eaſt of *Poland*, and about the River *Neiper*; they are divided into the *Palatinates* of *Wilna*, *Braſlaw*, *Troki*, *Minsk*, *Novogrodeck*, *Poloſczk*, and *Vitepk*. Its chief places are *Wilna*, an *Univerſity*, and the *Premier Palatinate*; the other principal places bear the name of its *Palatinate*, and are of ſome account.

Poliſi. *Samogitit.* The Quarter of *POLESIE* hath for its chief place *Breſſiſi*. *SAMOGITIE* hath no *Palatinate*, and hath for its chief place *Roſienie*, whoſe Houſes are built with Mud and Straw walls.

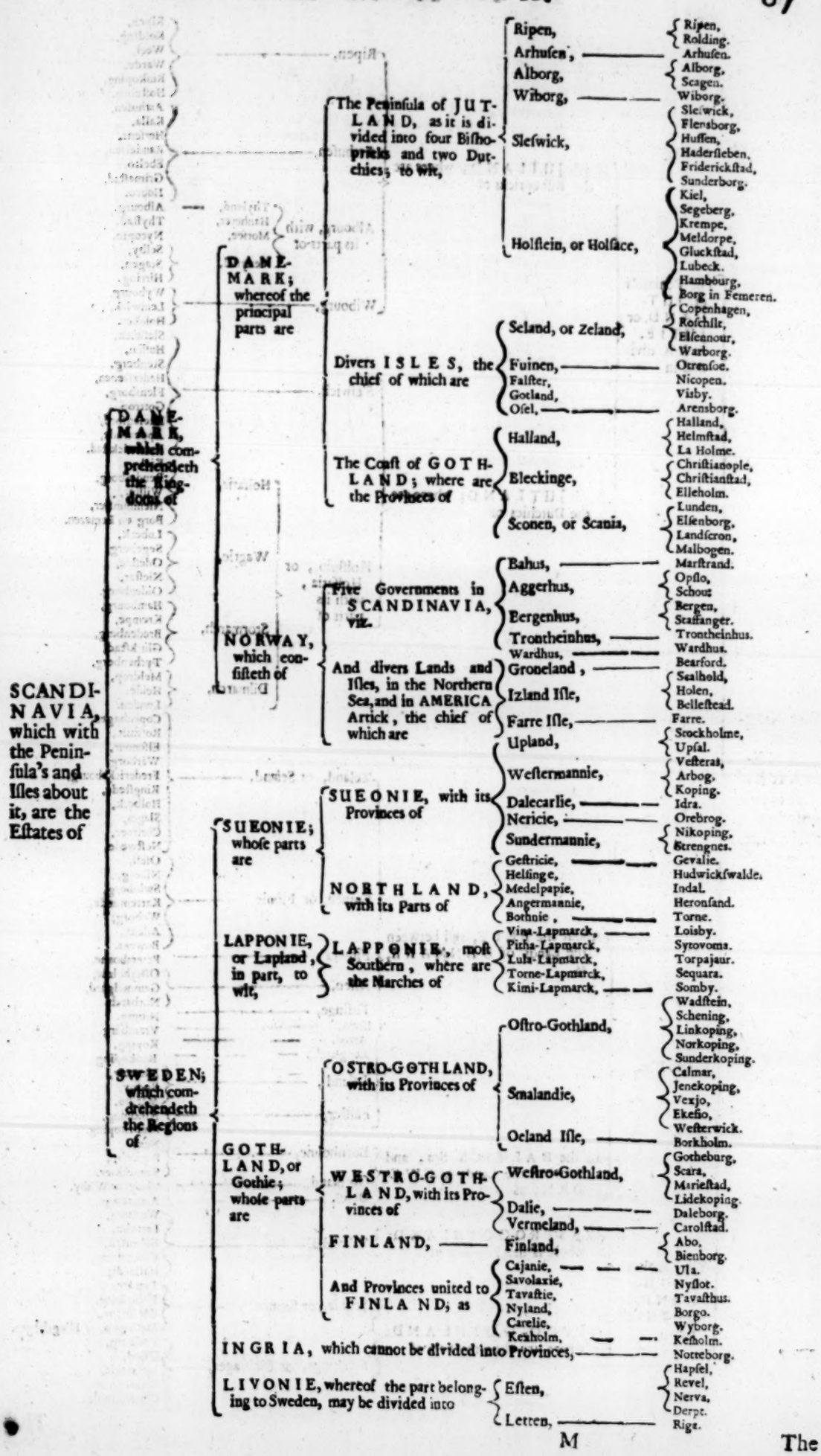
Volhynit. The Dutchy of *VOLHYNIE* is divided into the Higher and Lower, and hath the *Palatinates* of *Luſuc* and *Kiovia*; its chief places bear the names of their *Palatinates*.

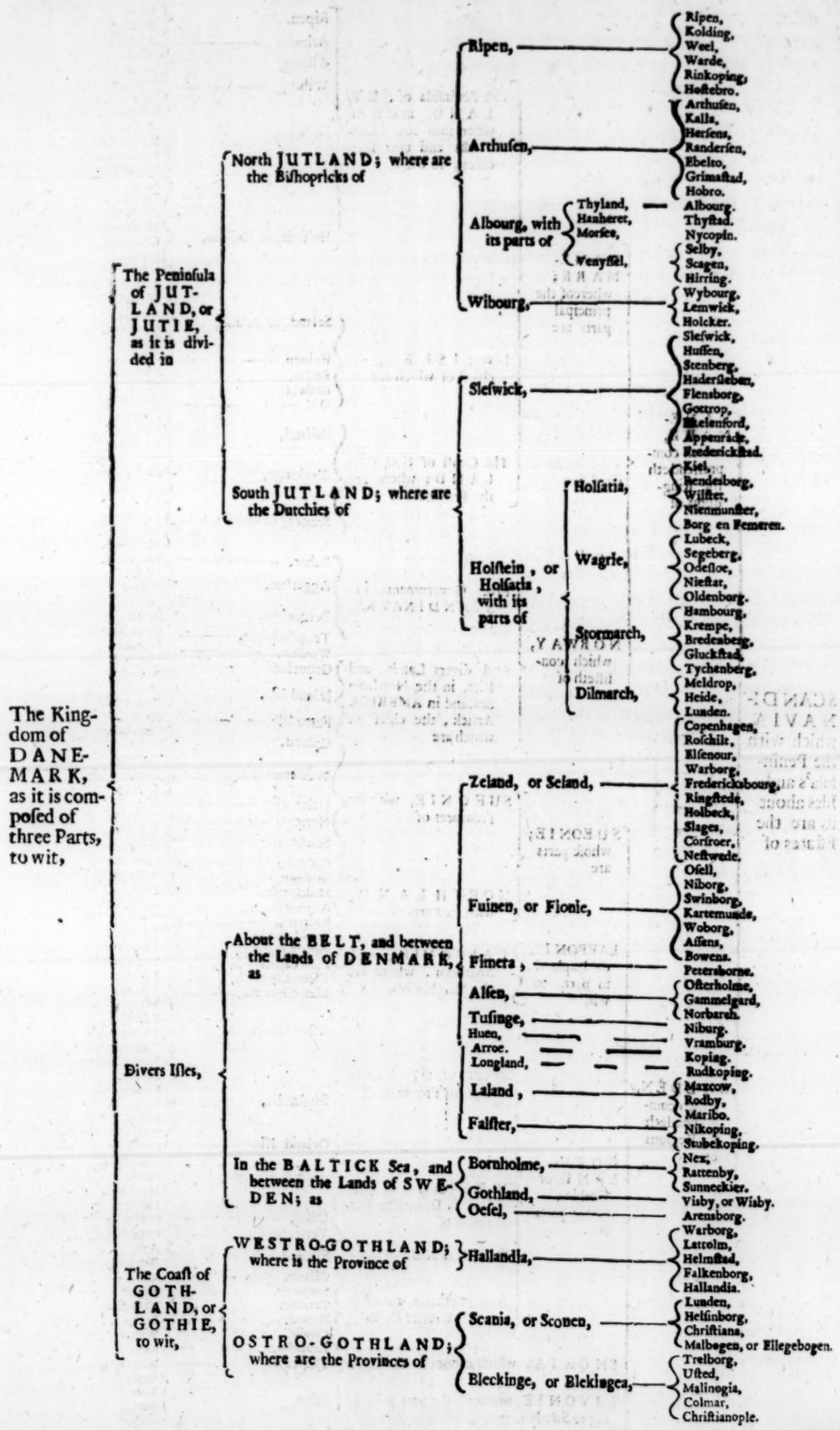
Podolie. The Dutchy of *PODOLIE* is alſo divided into the Higher and Lower, and hath the *Palatinates* of *Kamieniec* and *Bracław*, whoſe chief places bear the ſame name.

The *Turks* and *Swedes* poſſeſſors of ſome parts of *Poland.* The *Turks* are poſſeſſed of *Oczacow* in the Lower *Podolia*, and on the *Black Sea*; likewiſe of *Daſſau* in the Lower *Volhynia*, and on the *Boryſthenes*. The *Swedes* have likewiſe, within theſe few years, taken all *Livonia*; the Dutchy of *Curland*, wherein is the City of *Mittau* remaining only of that Province under the protection of the Crown of *Poland*; and moreover the *Vayvode* of *Moldavia*, and ſometimes likewiſe he of *Valachia* renders ſome Duties to *Poland*. In *Lithuania* are divers Dukedoms, as of *Slusk*, *Neſwies*, *Birga*, *&c.* whoſe Princes are powerful and have great Priviledges. The Dukedoms of *Smolensko* and *Novogrodeck*, which are of a great extent, and run all along the Coaſt of *Lithuania*, towards *Moſcovia*, belong at preſent to the Crown of *Poland*, although part of *Moſcovy*.

The principal Rivers in *Poland* are the *Viſtula*, the *Niemen*, the *Dovine*, the *Neiper* or *Boryſthenes*, and the *Neyſter*; moſt of which are very conſiderable for largeneſs, fairneſs, and ſwiftneſs of Stream.

SCANDI-


SCANDINAVIA, which with the Peninsula's and Isles about it, are the Estates of
DANEMARK, which comprehendeth the Kingdoms of
DANEMARK; whereof the principal parts are
The Peninsula of JUTLAND, as it is divided into four Bishopricks and two Dutchies; to wit,
Ripen,
Ripen,
Rolding.
Arhusen,
Arhusen.
Alborg,
Alborg,
Scagen.
Wiborg,
Wiborg.
Sleswick,
Sleswick,
Flensborg,
Huffen,
Hadersleben,
Friderickstad,
Sunderborg.
Holstein, or Holface,
Kiel,
Segeberg,
Krempe,
Meldorpe,
Gluckstad,
Lubeck.
Hambourg,
Borg in Femeren.
Divers ISLES, the chief of which are
Seland, or Zeland,
Copenhagen,
Roschild,
Elseanour,
Warborg.
Fuinen,
Otrensoe.
Falster,
Nicopen.
Gotland,
Visby.
Osel,
Arensborg.
The Coast of GOTHLAND; where are the Provinces of
Halland,
Halland,
Helmstad,
La Holme.
Bleckinge,
Christianople,
Christianstad,
Elleholm.
Sconen, or Scania,
Lunden,
Elsenborg,
Landscron,
Malbogen.
NORWAY, which consisteth of
Five Governments in SCANDINAVIA, viz.
Bahus,
Marstrand.
Aggerhus,
Opslo,
Schout
Bergenhus,
Bergen,
Scatfanger.
Trontheinhus,
Trontheinhus.
Wardhus,
Wardhus.
And divers Lands and Isles, in the Northern Sea, and in AMERICA Artick, the chief of which are
Groneland,
Bearford.
Izland Isle,
Sealhold,
Holen,
Bellestead.
Farre Isle,
Farre.
SUEONIE; whose parts are
SUEONIE, with its Provinces of
Upland,
Stockholme,
Upsal.
Westermannie,
Vesteras,
Arbog.
Koping.
Dalecarlie,
Idra.
Nericie,
Orebrog.
Sundermannie,
Nikoping,
Strengnes.
NORTHLAND, with its Parts of
Gestricie,
Gevalie.
Helsinge,
Hudwickswalde.
Medelpapie,
Indal.
Angermannie,
Heronsand.
Bothnie,
Torne.
LAPPONIE, or Lapland, in part, to wit,
LAPPONIE, most Southern, where are the Marches of
Vina-Lapmarck,
Loisby.
Pitha-Lapmarck,
Sytovoma.
Lula-Lapmarck,
Torpajaur.
Torne-Lapmarck,
Sequara.
Kimi-Lapmarck,
Somby.
SWEDEN; which comprehendeth the Regions of
OSTRO-GOTHLAND, with its Provinces of
Ostro-Gothland,
Wadstein,
Schening,
Linkoping,
Norkoping,
Sunderkoping.
Smalandie,
Calmar,
Jenekoping,
Vexjo,
Ekesio,
Westerwick.
Oeland Isle,
Borkholm.
GOTHLAND, or Gothie; whose parts are
WESTRO-GOTHLAND, with its Provinces of
Westro-Gothland,
Gotheburg,
Scara,
Marieftad,
Lidekoping.
Dalie,
Daleborg.
Vermeland,
Carolstad.
FINLAND,
Finland,
Abo,
Bienborg.
And Provinces united to FINLAND; as
Cajanie,
Ula.
Savolaxie,
Nyslot.
Tavastie,
Tavasthus.
Nyland,
Borgo.
Carelie,
Wyborg.
Kexholm,
Kesholm.
INGRIA, which cannot be divided into Provinces,
Notteborg.
LIVONIE, whereof the part belonging to Sweden, may be divided into
Esten,
Hapsel,
Revel,
Nerva,
Derpt.
Letten,
Rigs.


The Kingdom of DANEMARK, as it is composed of three Parts, to wit,
The Peninsula of JUTLAND, or JUTIE, as it is divided in
North JUTLAND; where are the Bishopricks of
Ripen,
Ripen, Kolding, Weel, Warde, Rinkoping, Hoftebro.
Arthusen,
Arthusen, Kalls, Hersens, Randersen, Ebelto, Grimastad, Hobro.
Albourg, with its parts of
Thyland, Hanheret, Morsee,
Albourg. Thystad. Nycopin.
Vensyssel,
Selby, Scagen, Hirring.
Wibourg,
Wybourg, Lemwick, Holcker.
South JUTLAND; where are the Dutchies of
Slefwick,
Slefwick, Huffen, Steenberg, Haderfleben, Flensborg, Gottrop, Melenford, Appenrade, Frederickstad.
Holstein, or Holsatia, with its parts of
Holsatia,
Kiel, Rendesborg, Wilster, Niemmunster, Borg en Femeren.
Wagrie,
Lubeck, Segeberg, Odesloe, Nieftat, Oldenborg.
Stormarch,
Hambourg, Krempe, Bredenberg, Gluckstad, Tychenberg.
Dilmarch,
Meldrop, Heide, Lunden.
Divers Isles,
Zeland, or Seland,
Copenhagen, Roschilt, Elsenour, Warborg, Frederickabourg, Ringstede, Holbeck, Slages, Corsroer, Neftwede.
Fuinen, or Fionie,
Osell, Niborg, Swinborg, Kartemunde, Woborg, Assens, Bowens.
About the BELT, and between the Lands of DENMARK, as
Fimera,
Petersborne.
Alsen,
Ofterholme, Gammelgard, Norbarh.
Tusinge,
Niburg.
Huen,
Vramburg.
Arroe.
Kopiag.
Longland,
Rudkoping.
Laland,
Maxcow, Rodby, Maribo.
Falster,
Nikoping, Stubekoping.
In the BALTICK Sea, and between the Lands of SWEDEN; as
Bornholme,
Nex, Rattenby, Sunneckier.
Gothland,
Visby, or Wisby.
Oesel,
Arensborg.
The Coast of GOTHLAND, or GOTHIE, to wit,
WESTRO-GOTHLAND; where is the Province of
Hallandia,
Warborg, Lattolm, Helmstad, Falkenborg, Hallandia.
OSTRO-GOTHLAND; where are the Provinces of
Scania, or Sconen,
Lunden, Helsinborg, Christiana, Malbogen, or Ellegebogen.
Bleckinge, or Blekingea,
Trelborg, Usted, Malinogia, Colmar, Christianople.

The

The Eſtates of the Crown of SWEDEN, are compoſed of ſix different Regions, to wit,

- SWEDEN, particularly ſo called, whoſe parts are
  - SUEONIE; where are the Provinces of
    - Upland, — Stockholm, Upſal, Enkoping, Sigtun, Oregrand.
    - Weſtmannie, — Weſteras, or Aroſis, Arbog, Koping.
    - Dalecarlie, — Idra.
    - Nericie, — Orebrog.
    - Sudermannie, — Nikoping, Strengnes, Tleg, Tonilia, Treſa.
  - NORLAND; where are the Provinces of
    - Gefricie, — Gevalia.
    - Helſinge, — Hudwickſwalde.
    - Medelpadie, — Indal.
    - Angermannie, — Hernoſand.
    - Pothnie, — Torne.
- LAPLAND, in part, to wit,
  - LAPPONIE SUEDOISIE, or LAPLAND; where are the Parts of
    - Vina-Lapmarck, — Loisby, Semiſerſi.
    - Pita-Lapmarck, — Sytovoma, Lochtary, Arnyeſay.
    - Lula-Lapmarck, — Torpahaur, Sirckduche, Jokomuka.
    - Torne-Lapmarck, — Sequara, Tinquara, Pederjerſi, Kittilaby, Sodenkyle.
    - Kimi-Lapmarck, — Somby, Kimiby, Kolajerfui, Kithyerfui, Marnſelkeby.
- GOTHLAND, with its two parts,
  - OSTRO-GOTHLAND, or Gothie Orientale, with its Provinces of
    - Oſtro-Gothland, — Wadſtein, Schening, Linkoping, Norkoping, Sunderkoping.
    - Smalandie, — Calmar, Jonckoping, Vexjo, Ekeho, Weſtervick.
    - Oelald, — Borcholm.
  - WESTRO-GOTHLAND, or Gothie Occidentale, with its Provinces of
    - Weſtro-Gothland, — Godeburg, or Lodoſia, Scara, Marieſtad, Lidekoping, Falekoping, Skedul, Hio, Bogefund, Brerta, Lundos.
    - Dalie, — Daleborg.
    - Vermeland, — Carolſtad.
- FINLAND, which may be divided in
  - FINLAND,
    - South Finland, — Abo, Raſeborg,
    - North Finland, — Bierneborg, Raumo, Nyſtadh, Nadhendal.
    - Aland Iſles, — Caſtelholm.
  - Provinces united to FINLAND, as thoſe of
    - Cajanie, — Ula, Waſſa, or Muſtaſar, Cajaneborg, Ulaborg.
    - Savolax, — Nyſlot, or New Caſtrum.
    - Tavaſte, — Tavaſthus.
    - Nyland, — Borgo, Helſingfors.
    - Careſie, — Wiburg.
    - Kexholm, — Kexholm, or Barelogorod.
- INGRIA, which is not ſubdivided into Provinces, — Noteburg, or Oreſcu, Juanogorod, Caporia, Jamagorod.
- LIVONIA, in part; as
  - ESTEN, or ESTONIE; where are the parts of
    - Eſten, — Febin.
    - Vickeland, — Pernaje, Habſel.
    - Harneland, — Revel.
    - Wireland, — Wieſenburg, Tolsburg.
    - Alantack, — Nerva.
    - Jervenland, — Nyſlot, Witrenſtein.
    - Kikeland, — Derpt.
  - (The reſt belongeth to the Crown of POLAND.)
  - LETTEN, with its parts and places, as they lie
    - Towards the Weſt, — Riga, Segenwold, Wenden, Walmer.
    - Towards the South, — Koekenhaus, Creutzburg, Dunburg
    - Towards the Eaſt, — Maryenburg.

SCANDINAVIA,

Wherein are the ESTATES of

DENMARK

AND

SWEDEN.

The extent, bounds, &c. of *Scandinavia.*

SCANDIA, or *SCANDINAVIA*, is only a *Peninſula*, which extends it ſelf from the 56*th degree* of *Latitude*, unto or beyond the 71, which are near 400 Leagues from North to South; and from the 26*th degree* of *Longitude* unto the 45*th* on the *Baltick* Sea, and on the *Ocean* unto the 53; but this Maſs of Land cannot have in its greateſt breath above 150 Leagues, finiſhing in two points towards South and North.

Its ſcituation, &c.

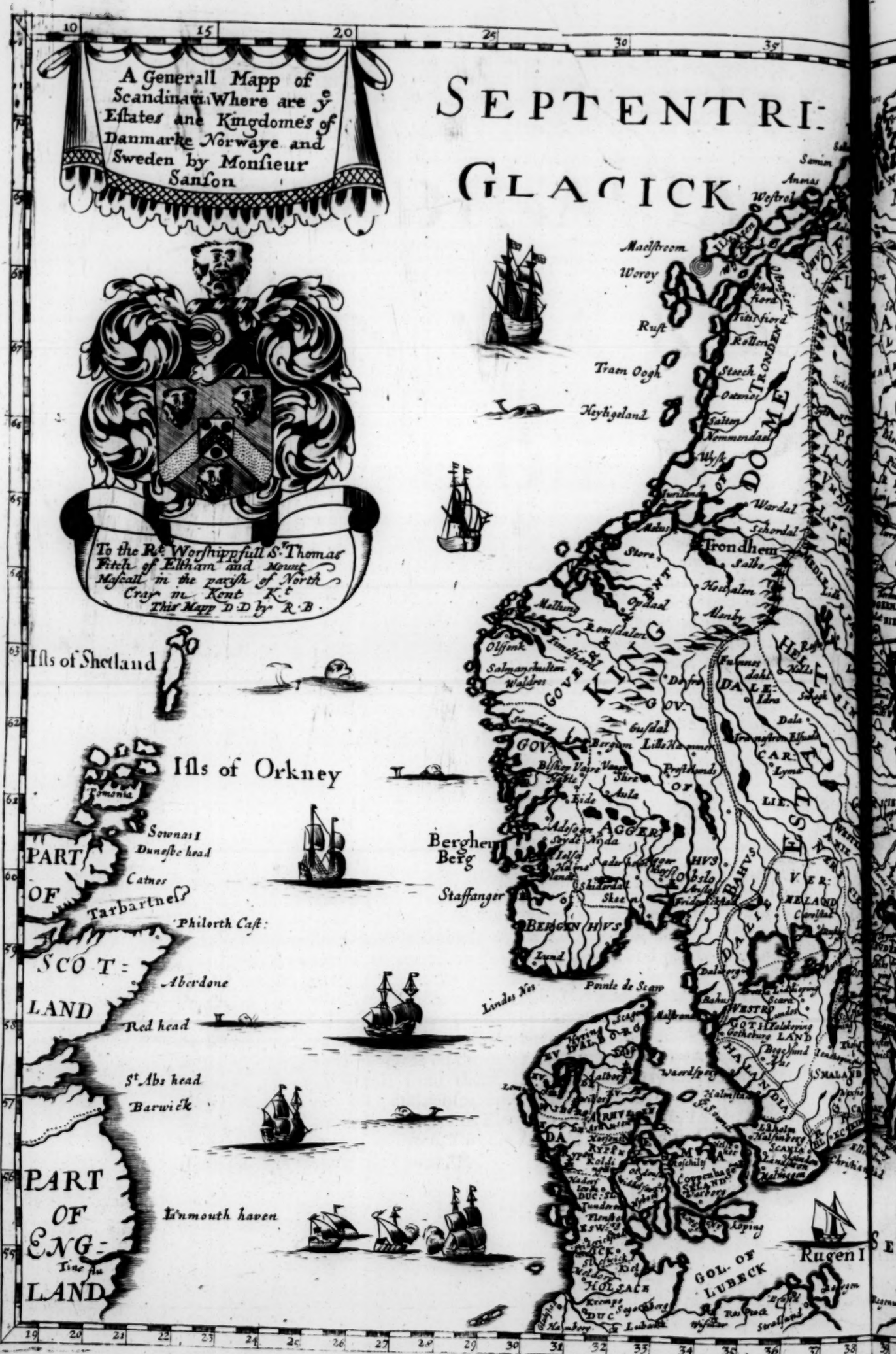
It is bounded on the North and Weſt by the *Northern Ocean*, and on the South and Eaſt by the *Baltick Sea*; a continual Chain of Mountains dividing it into two almoſt equal parts, of which one is on the *Baltick Sea*, and the other on the *Ocean*; this poſſeſſed by the King of *Denmark*, the other by the King of *Sweden*.

DENMARK.

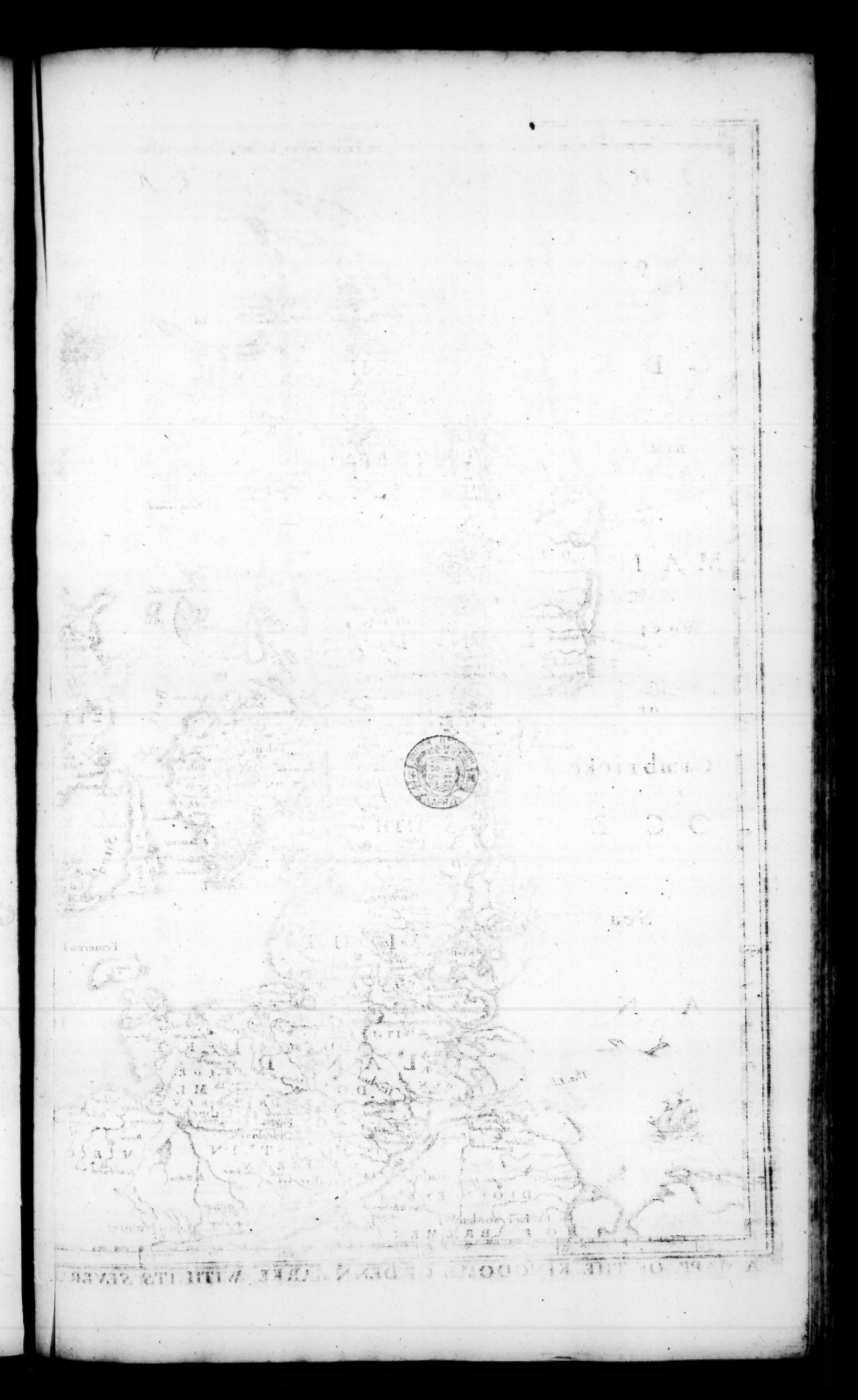
Its Commodities.

THe Eſtates of *DENMARK* contain two Kingdoms, to wit, *DENMARK* and *NORWAY*. *Denmark* is between the *Ocean* and the *Baltick Sea*, compoſed of a *Peninſula* contiguous to *Germany*, and of a Coaſt contiguous to *Sweden*; and of divers *Iſles* which are between the *Peninſula* and *Coaſt*; ſome likewiſe in the middle of the *Baltick Sea*, and near *Livonia*. It is ſcituate partly in the *Northern Temperate Zone*, and partly within the *Artick Circle*, extending from the 55*th degree* of *Longitude*, or the middle Parallel of the 10*th Clime*, where it joyneth to *Germany* as far as 71 *degrees*, where it is bounded by the *Frozen Ocean*, the longeſt day in the moſt Southern parts being 17¼ hours; but in the moſt Northern parts they have no Night for almoſt three Months: whereas on the other ſide, when the *Sun* is in the other *Tropick*; and moſt remote from them, they have no Day for the like time. This Country is very cold, and conſequently not over fertil, nor affording good *Fruits*. The Commodities that this Kingdom affords are *Fiſh*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, Furniture for *Shipping*, as *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Cordage*, *Maſts*, &c. alſo *Furr*, *Boards*, *Wainſcot*, ſeveral ſorts of *Armour*, &c.

The


A Generall Mapp of Scandinavia Where are ye Estates ane Kingdomes of Danmarke Norwaye and Sweden by Monsieur Sanson
SEPTENTRI:
GLACICK
To the Rt Worshippfull S: Thomas Fitch of Eltham and Mount Mascall in the parish of North Cray in Kent Kt This Mapp D D by R. B.
Isls of Shetland
Isls of Orkney
PART OF SCOT: LAND
PART OF ENG: LAND
Berghen
Berg
Staffanger
Trondhem
Aberdone
Red head
Barwick
Philorth Cast:
Tarbartnes
Catnes
Dunesbe head
Sownais
St Abs head
Tinmouth haven
Pointe de Scaw
Lindas Nes
Rugen I
GOL. OF LUBECK
Maelstroom
Worey
Rust
Traen Oogh
Heyligeland
Westrol
Anmas
Samin
DOMEN
GOVERNMENT
KING
DANIA
SCANIA
HALLANDIA
SMALAND
GOTHLAND
HOLSACE
DUC: SLESW:
DUC: LUNEB:

ONAL or
OCEAN
NORWAY
LAPONS
DANICA
WARDHVS
MORMA
LAPONS
TERSKOY
MOSCOVITES
LEPORIE
LEPORIE
LEPORIE
LAMOREI
MARKKOY
WHITE SEA
OF OLD
GRANDUICUS SINUS
TORNEA
LAPLAND
KIMI
KIMI
KAIANIA
OSTROBOTHNIA
FINLAND
THE GULPH of BOTHNIE
NYLAND
CARELIA
HOLME
LAXIE
Ladoga or
Ladesko
ozero
Onega
ozero
INGRIE
ESTEN
LIVONIA
LETTENIE
GULPH of FIN LAND
G. of RIGA
THE BALTIQUE SEA
Aland I
Dagho I
Oesel I
Gotland
Isle
Oeland I
KINGDOME OF POLAND
GOL OF DANTZICK
COVIE
NOVOGRO
DECK
Nevell
Vla
Surs
Susia
Orsa
Wilna
Miadzial
Birze
Braslaw
Opolko
Ostroco
Star a Russa
Pleskon
Novgorod
Wliki
Koporia
Soritz
Iuanegorod
Iamagorod
Tolsburg
Narva
Rigen
Rigen
Rigen



A MAPP OF THE KINGDOME OF DENNMARKE, WITH ITS SEVERALL

ILL DIOCESES OR PROVINCES, DESIGNED BY MONSIEUR SANSON,

The Inhabitants for the moſt part are of a good *ſtature* and *complexion*, very healthful, ingenious, and of a ready wit, very punctual in performing their *Promiſes*, proud and high conceited of their own worth, lovers of Learning, as may appear by thoſe Famous men it hath bred, *viz. Tycho Brahe*, the great Mathematician; *John Cluverus*, the renowned Philoſopher and Phyſitian; *Godfrey Gottricus*, that ſtout Warriour, who not only ſetled the Government of this Kingdom, but alſo ſhook the Realm of *France*; likewiſe *Waldemare*, *Chriſtiern* the Second and Fourth; *Canutus* and *Sueno*, which two laſt were the Conquerors of *England*. They are great puniſhers of Offenders, eſpecially *Theft* and *Piracy*; their *Women* are of a comly grace, very fair, and as fruitful in Children; diſcreet and ſober. Its Inhabitants.

The *Peninſula* called *JUITLAND*, once *Cimbrica Cherſoneſus*, from the *Cimbrians* its ancient Inhabitants: It is divided into North and South *Juitland*. *Juitland.*

North JUITLAND is ſevered into the Biſhopricks of *Ripen*, *Arthuſen*, *Albourg*, and *Wibourg*.

RIPEN contains 30 *Prefectures* or *Herets*, (as they term them) 7 *Cities* or *walled Towns*, and 10 *Caſtles*. Its chief places are 1. *Ripen*, ſeated near the *German Ocean*, the chief place of the *Dioceſs*, and dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*: 2. *Kolding*, ſeated on a Creek of the *Baltick Sea*; 3. *Weel*, 4. *Warde*, &c. Dioceſs of *Ripen.*

ARTHUSEN containeth 31 *Prefectures*, 7 *Cities* or *walled Towns*, and 5 *Caſtles*. Its chief places are 1. *Arthuſen*, ſeated on the *Baltick Sea*, having a commodious and well frequented *Port*, and dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*. 2. *Kalla*, a ſtrong place, ſeated in a large Bay, reaching two *Dutch* miles to the high Hill of *Elemanberg*; oppoſite to which lie the Iſles of *Hilgones*, *Tuen*, *Samſoe*, *Hiarneo*, and *Hiolm*, &c. 3. *Horſens*, 4. *Randerſen*, 5. *Ebelto*, and 6. *Hobro*. Dioceſs of *Arthuſen.*

ALBOURG, which is divided into four parts, *viz. Thyland*, whoſe chief Town is *Albourg*, ſeated on the Bay of *Limford*, which, opening into the *Baltick Sea*, extendeth it ſelf through the main Land, almoſt to the *German Ocean*. 2. *Hanehert*, on the North-weſt of *Limford* Bay, containeth 4 *Prefectures*, and hath for its chief place *Thyſtad*. 3. *Morſee*, lying on the *Ocean*, contains 3 *Prefectures*, the Iſle of *Ageroe*, the Town of *Nicopin*, and the Caſtle of *Lunſtead*: and 4. *Venſyſſel*, according to *Mercator*, *Vandalorum ſedes*, or the Seat of the *Vandals*, contains 6 *Prefectures*, 3 *Towns*, and 1 *Caſtle*, viz. *Selby*, *Cagen*, and *Hirring*. Dioceſs of *Albourg.*

WIBOURG contains 16 *Prefectures*, the Iſles of *Egholm*, *Hanſholm*, *Bodum*, *Idgen*, *Ciſland*, and *Oſtholm*; alſo it hath 3 *Caſtles*, and as many *Cities* or *walled Towns*; *viz.* 1. *Wibourg*, dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, and the *Courts* of *Judicatrue* for both the *Juitlands*. The point of *Scagen*, or *Scean*, ends this *Peninſula* towards the North. 2. *Lemwick*, and 3. *Holcker*. Dioceſs of *Wibourg.*

South JUITLAND is divided into the Dukedoms of *Sleſwick* and *Holſtein*.

SLESWICK, a Country for the moſt part level, enriched with fertil Fields both for *Corn* and *Paſturage*; it is very well provided with good Bays on the *Baltick*, which are found commodious for Merchants. The chief places in this Dukedom are, 1. *Sleſwick*, ſeated on the *Slea*, which falls into the *Baltick*, where it hath a commodious and well frequented Haven; it is a fair Town, the chief of the Dukedom, and honoured with an *Epiſcopal See*. 2. *Huſſen*, ſeated on the *German Ocean*: 3. *Sternberg*, the ordinary reſidence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*; 4. *Haderſleben*, ſeated on a navigable In-let of the *Baltick*, and fortified with a ſtrong and fair *Caſtle*: 5. *Flensborg*, ſeated on the *Baltick* amongſt high Mountains, having a Port ſo commodious and deep, that Ships do lade and unlade cloſe to their Houſes: and 6. *Gottrop*, where there is a ſtrong Fort belonging to the Duke of *Sleſwick*, ſeated at the end of a large Bay of the *Baltick*, or note for the *Cuſtom-houſe* or *Tole-booth* there, erected for Cattle, ſent out of theſe parts into *Germany*. *Sleſwick.*

Dukedom of *Holſtein.*

HOLSTEIN, or *HOLSATIA*, a woody, low and Marſhy Country; is ſevered into the Parts of *Holſatia* eſpecially ſo called, *Wagrie*, *Stormarch*, and *Dilmarch*.

HOLSTEIN, or *HOLSATIA*, hath for its chief places 1. *Kiel*, ſeated on a navigable Arm of the *Baltick*, where it hath a large Haven, being a Town of a good Trade. 2. *Rendesborg*, ſaid to be the ſtrongeſt Town in all the Province; 3. *Wilſted*, and 4. *Nienmunſter*.

WAGRIE hath for its chief places, 1. *Lubeck*, an Imperial and free City, enjoying the priviledges of a *Hans-Town*; it is pleaſantly ſeated on the confluence of the *Billew*, and on the North-banks of the *Trane*, ſevering it from *Germany*, and empty themſelves into the *Baltick*, being capable to receive *Ships* of a great burthen, which they lade and unlade at *Tremuren*, the Maritim Port, at about a miles diſtance; it is built on all ſides upon a riſing Hill, on the Summit whereof is placed a fair and beautiful Church called St. *Maries*, being the Cathedral, from whence, on an eaſie deſcent, there are Streets which lead to all the Gates of the City, which afford a fair proſpect to the Eye; beſides which, it is adorned with 9 other *Churches*, one of which being a decayed Monaſtery, is converted to an *Armory* to keep their Ammunition for War. It is about 6 miles in compaſs, encircling within its *Walls* divers fair and uniform Streets, beautified with good *Brick-buildings*, is very populous, and well inhabited by *Citizens* and *Merchants*, who drive a conſiderable Trade on the *Baltick Seas*. But this City, as alſo *Hamburgh*, is eſteemed rather part of *Lower Saxony* in *Germany*, where I have alſo treated of them. 2. *Segeberg*, 3. *Odeſloe*, 4. *Nieſtad*, and 5. *Oldenborg*.

STORMARCH hath for its chief places, 1. *Hambourg*, an ancient City built by the *Saxons*, ſince made an *Imperial City*, enjoying the Priviledges of a *Hans-Town*, ſeated on the North-banks of the *Albis*, which divides it from *Germany*, of which it is reckoned a part or member, and there treated of in the deſcription of the Lower *Saxony*, to which I refer the Reader. 2. *Krempe*, ſeated on a River of the ſame name, which emptieth it ſelf into the *Store*; a ſtrong and well fortified Town, being reckoned for one of the Keys of the Kingdom. 3. *Bredenberg*, a Town of great ſtrength, belonging to the *Rantzoves*: 4. *Gluckſtade*, ſeated on a Bay or Creek of the *German Ocean*, and therefore well fortified, to command the paſſage up the *Elbe*: and 5. *Tychenberg*, ſeated on the *Elbe*, being ſo well fortified, that it is now held the ſtrongeſt Town in this Kingdom.

DILMARCH or *DITMARCH*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Meldrop*, ſeated on the Sea; a place of ſome account, and the chief of the Province. 2. *Heide*, and 3. *Lunden*, a Haven Town, ſeated on the *Eider*, which riſing in this *Peninſula*, here emptieth it ſelf into the *Ocean*.

The BALTICK ISLES.

THeſe *Iſlands* which are between *Juitland* and the Coaſt, and farther in the *Baltick Sea*, are in number 35, and are ſo called, as being diſperſed in theſe Seas. The *Baltick Sea* begins at the narrow paſſage called the *Sound*, and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Poland*, *Germany*, and *Sweden*, extendeth to *Livonia* and *Lithuania*. The reaſon (according to the Opinion of many) why this Sea, which is ſo large, doth neither ebb nor flow, may be as well from its Northern ſcituation, whereby the *Celeſtial* influences have the leſs predominancy, as alſo from the narrowneſs of the Streight, which receiveth the Ocean. The chief of theſe *Iſles* I have ſet down in the *Geographical Table* of this Kingdom, of which a word or two, and firſt with *Zeland*.

ZELAND,

ZELAND, anciently *Codanonia*, from the *Codani* its Inhabitants; the Isle is very fertil, the greatest and of most importance of any in the *Baltick*, to the King of *Denmark*, as lying not above three miles from the main Land of *Scandia*, which narrow Streight is called the *Sound*, through which all Ships must pass that have any Trade into the *Baltick*, all paying to the said King a certain Toll, according to the bigness or Bills of Lading, by which ariseth a great Revenue unto him; and for the security of this passage there are built two exceeding strong *Castles*, the one in this Isle, called *Cronenberg*, and the other in *Scandia*, called *Hilsemberg*, of which more anon. In this Isle are 7 strong *Castles*, and 13 *Cities* or *walled Towns*; the chief of which are 1. *Copenhagen*, or *Hassen*, the chief of the Isle, seated near the Sea, having a commodious Port; it is built orbicular, of a good strength, being defended by a powerful *Castle*; its Houses are but meanly built, yet it hath a spacious *Market-place*, and is dignified with the residence of the King for the Winter season; whose *Palace* is built of *Freestone* quadrangular, but of no great splendor, as also with the only *University* in the Kingdom. 2. *Elsenour*, seated on the Sea side; of it self but a poor *Village*, were it not for the great resort of Sea-men in their passage through the *Sound* into the *Baltick*, this being the place where they pay their Toll; and in this *Village* is the stately and well fortified Castle of *Cronenburg*, built in the very Ocean, and bravely resisting the fury of its Waves; now the ordinary residence of the King, being a pleasant prospect into the Sea; on the South-side of this *Castle* is a large and commodious Road for Shipping. 3. *Roschilt*, once a rich City, now only famous for being the Sepulchre of the *Danish* Kings, where, in the *Cathedral* Church, they have their *Tombs*; it is also dignified with the See of a Bishop. 4. *Fredericksbourg*, a Fortress built in a pleasant Plain, often visited by the King in his retirement, where he hath a delightful House seated in a Park. 5. *Warborg*, 6. *Ringstede*, 7. *Holbeck*, 8. *Slages*, &c. *Zeland.*

FUINEN, or *FIONIE*, seated betwixt *Zeland* and *Juitland*, and almost joyning to the Main-land; it is of a fertil Soil, and pleasant scituation, being in length about 12 *Dutch* miles, and 4 in breadth. Its chief places are 1. *Osel*, or *Ottonium*, so called from *Otho* the Great, who founded here an *Episcopal See*, seated in the midst of the Isle, from which the other Towns are of an equal distance, which renders it very commodious for Traffick; it is not large, having but two *Churches*, and its Buildings are neat and ornamental enough. 2. *Niborg*, 3. *Swinborg*, 4. *Kartemunde*, 5. *Woborg*, and 6. *Ascens*; all, or most of them seated on some convenient *Creek* or *Haven*. *Fuinen.*

FIMERA, a very fertil and well peopled Isle; and here it was that *Tycho Brache*, the famous Mathematician, built an Artificial *Tower*, in which are (or were) many rare *Mathematical Instruments*; its chief place is *Petersborne*, of some importance to the King of *Denmark*. *Fimera.*

ALSEN, a small Isle appertaining to the Dukedom of *Sleswick*; is very populous, contains 13 *Parishes*, and 4 *Towns*, viz. *Osterholme*, *Gammelgard*, *Norbarch*, and *Sunderburg*; dignified with the residence of the Duke of *Sleswick*. *Alsen.*

TUSINGE, a very small Isle, and of no great account by reason of its dangerous scituation; its chief place is *Niburg*. *Tusinge.*

ARROE, a small Isle belonging to the Duke of *Sleswick*; it contains three Towns, the chief of which is *Koping*, fortified with a Castle so called. *Arroe.*

LONGLAND, an indifferent long Isle, but not very broad; its chief place is *Rudkoping*, of some account. *Longland.*

LALAND, not far distant from *Zeland*, abounds in *Corn* and *Chesnuts*, fraighting therewith many Vessels yearly; it is very populous for the bigness, contains 3 Towns, *viz. Maxcow*, *Rodby*, and *Maribo*; besides a great many *Villages* and some *Castles*. *Laland.*

FALSTER, a small Isle, fertil in *Corn*, seated near to *Laland*; its chief places are *Nikoping*, of a pleasant scituation; and *Stubekoping*. *Falster.*

In

In the *Baltick*, and between the Lands of *Sweden*, are alſo ſeveral *Iſles*; the chief amongſt which are *BORNHOLME*, ſeated not far from *Gothland*, an Iſle very fertil, feeding abundance of Cattle: It hath many good Towns and Villages, the chief of which are, *Nex*, *Rottonby*, and *Suomneckier*.

Bornholm.

GOTHLAND, an indifferent large Iſle, in form round and narrow, now in the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*: It yields *white Marble*, excellent for building; the City of *Wisby*, ſeated in the midſt of the Iſle, was once ſo famous for Traffick, that it gave Maritim Laws to the *Baltick Sea*.

Gothland.

That which the King of *Denmark* poſſeſſes, as particularly belonging to that Crown, on the Coaſt of *Scandinavia*, is part of the ancient *Gothland*; the moſt Southern of which that we are now treating of, is divided into *Weſtro-Gothland* and *Oſtro-Gothland*; which are again ſubdivided into the Province of *Hallandia*, which takes up *Weſtro-Gothland*; and into the Provinces of *Scania* and *Blecking*, which takes up *Oſtro-Gothland*; and firſt of *Hallandia*.

HALLANDIA, now in the poſſeſſion of the *Swedes*; this Country or Province for fertility of Soil, ſweetneſs of Air, ſtore of *Fiſh*, plenty of *Lead* and *Braſs Mines*, and thickneſs of *Towns* and *Villages*, which are well inhabited, is not inferiour to any. Its chief places are 1. *Warborg*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, and defended by a ſtrong Caſtle, built on the ſummit of a Hill, ſo that it hath a great command over the Country. 2. *Laholm*, 3. *Helmſtad*, 4. *Falkenborg*, and 5. *Hallandia*, or *Katterop*.

Hallandia.

SCANIA, or *SCONEN*, hath on the North *Hallandia*, and on all other parts the Sea; alſo now in the *Swedes* poſſeſſion: It is about 70 miles long, and 48 broad; the pleaſanteſt Country in all *Denmark*, moſt abundant in *Fruits*, and richeſt in *Merchandize*, and on the Sea-ſide are ſometimes ſuch great ſholes of *Herrings*, that they are found troubleſom to Veſſels. Its chief places are 2. *Lunden*, an Inland City, dignified with the ſole or Metropolitan Archbiſhop of *Denmark*; the chiefeſt beauty in this City is the *Cathedral Church*, a magnificent Structure, beautified with excellent pieces of Art, the chief whereof are the *Clock* and the *Dial*: the *Clock* being ſo compoſed by Artificial *Engines*, that whenſoever it ſtriketh, two Horſemen give one another as many blows as the Clock ſtriketh times: alſo upon the opening of a Door there is repreſented a Theatre, where the *Virgin Mary* is ſeated on a Throne with *Chriſt* in her Arms, to whom the three *Kings*, with their ſeveral Trains, come in order, and with reverence preſent their Gifts to her, during which time two *Trumpeters* continually ſound. And next the *Dial*, where the *year*, *month*, *week*, *day*, and *hour* of the day throughout the year, as alſo the motions of the *Sun* and *Moon* through each degree of the *Zodiack*; the moveable and fixed *Feaſts*, &c. are to be diſtinctly ſeen, being neatly ſet forth in variety of delightful Colours. 2. *Helſinborg*, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and one of the Forts defending the *Sound*: 3. *Chriſtiana*, a place of great ſtrength; and 4. *Malbogen*, a Port-Town, oppoſite to *Copenhagen*.

Scania.

BLECKLINGE, alſo belonging to the *Swedes*, hath on the Eaſt and South the *Baltick Sea*: It is a Mountainous and barren Country, and hath for its chief places 1. *Malinogia*, the Birth-place of the famous Mathematician *Gaſpar Bartholinus*, who was ſaid to be the inventer and maker of the aforeſaid Clock and Dial. 2. *Golmar*, an important Fortreſs againſt the *Swedes*, until they gained the Province.

Blecklinge.

The Soil of *Denmark* is naturally better for *Paſture* than *Tillage*, and feeds ſuch multitude of *Oxen*, that at leaſt 50000 are ſaid to be yearly ſent hence to *Germany*. Their other Commodities are *Fiſh*, *Tallow*, *Furniture* for Shipping, *Armour*, *Ox-hides*, *Buck-skins*, *Wainſcot*, *Fir-wood*, *Furrs*, *Pipe-ſtaves*, *Copper*, *Wheat*, *Rye*, &c.

NORWAY.

THe Country of *NORWAT* is bounded on the North with *Lippia*, on the East with the *Dofrine* Mountains, which divide it from *Sweden*, and on all other ſides with the *Sea*; on which, with a diſproportionate breadth, it ſtretches its Coaſts for 1300 miles in length. The Country is extreamly cold, being partly under the *Frozen Zone*, and partly ſo near it, that it all ſuffers under the inclemency of bitter Colds. It is for the moſt part Mountainous, full of vaſt *Woods*, and of a Soil ſo barren and ungrateful to the Husbandman, affording ſo little *Corn*, that on many places the people live on dried *Fiſh* inſtead of *Bread*, (known to us by the name of *Stock-fiſh*;) but the richer ſort of people buy *Corn* of ſuch Merchants as come to Trade with them. The principal Commodities that this Country affordeth, is great plenty of *Firrs*, *Deal-boards*, *Timber*, *Tar*, *Maſts*, and Furniture for *Shipping*, alſo *Stock-fiſh*, *Train-oyle*, rich *Furrs*, *Copper*, *Pipe-ſtaves*, *&c.* which the Inhabitants exchange for *Corn*, *Cloths*, *Kerſies*, *Lead*, *Tinn*, *Stockings*, *&c.* Its ſcituation, temperature, fertility, Commodities, &c.

The Country is exceedingly annoyed with certain ſmall Beaſts about the bigneſs of a *Mouſe*, by them called *Lemmers*, which at a certain time are ſo innumerable, that like *Locuſts* they devour all the verdure of the Earth, and at a certain time die in heaps, which proves very noiſom to the people, infecting the Air; and the Sea is as bad troubled with *Whales*. The Inhabitants are ſaid to be juſt Dealers, puniſhers of *Theft*, and other Vices, and were accounted formerly great Warriors.

This Kingdom is divided into five Governments, which take their names from the places where the Governours reſide; in all which the *Towns* are exceeding thin, and the *Houſes* as poor. The five Parts are as followeth. *Norway* divided into five Governments, *viz.*

BAHUS, belonging to the *Swedes*, is the moſt Southward; the chief places are *Bahus*, the reſidence of the Governour, to which are ſubject the Towns of *Congel*, ſeated on the Sea, and of ſome Trade; and *Marſtrand*, ſeated in a *Demi-Iſland*, of note for the great quantity of *Herrings* here caught. *Bahus.*

AGGERHUS, mounting towards the North, whoſe chief place or Caſtle is ſo called, to which theſe Towns following are ſubject, 1. *Opſlow*, or *Asloja*, dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, as alſo with the Courts of Judicature. 2. *Schou*, of good account for its *Copper* and *Iron-Mines*: and 3. *Frederickſtad*. *Aggerhus.*

BERGENHUS, or *BERGEN*, whoſe chief place is ſo called, dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, and the reſidence of the Governour, once a famous City of Trade, and one of the ancient Mart-Towns of *Europe*; yet ſtill, by reaſon of its ſcituation at the bottom of a deep Arm of the Ocean, called (by them) *Carmefunt*, where it hath a commodious Port; is well frequented by Merchants, who bring them *Corn*, *Bread*, *Wine*, *Beer*, *Aqua-vitæ*, and the like Commodities, to ſupply their wants; and in exchange take *Stock-fiſh*, *Furs*, *Deals*, *Firrs*, *Cordage*, *Pitch*, *Maſts*, *&c.* *Bergenhus.*

TRONTHEINHUS, or *TRONDENHUS*, whoſe chief place and *Caſtle*, where the Governour reſideth is ſo called; it is dignified with the Metropolitan *Archbiſhoprick* of all *Norway*, once a fair City, as being the Seat of their Kings, till the *Danes* became Maſters of this Country, who have reduced this City to a ſmall Town. *Trontheinhus.*

WARDHUS, ſeated beyond *Cape Nort*, which is the moſt Northern point of *Europe*. Its chief place and Caſtle, where the Governour reſideth, except during the abſence of the *Sun*, which is for about three Months in the year, is ſo called. This Town is ſerviceable to the King, becauſe it was the *Lappians*, their Neighbours, as alſo commandeth the Natives; and profitable, becauſe all the *Ships* going to *Moſcovy*, muſt of neceſſity touch here. *Wardhus.*

To the *Norwegian* King do belong divers *Lands* and *Isles* in the Northern Sea,, and in *America Artick*; the chief of which are *Groenland*, *Izland*, *Farre*, *&c.* which I shall treat of in the Description of *America.*

SWEDEN.

THe Estates of the *Swede* are all on the *Baltick Sea*, and take up all those Regions which are on the West, East, and North of this Sea, and is Southwards of *Poland*, *Germany*, and *Denmark.*

The Bounds of *Sweden*, with its parts.

The Estates of the *Swede* are bounded on the West and North by the Estates of *Denmark*, on the East by those of *Moscovy*, and on the South by the *Black Sea*, *Poland*, and *Denmark*; they comprehend six principal Regions, *viz. Sweden*, *Lapland*, *Gothland*, *Finland*, *Ingra*, and *Livonie.*

Sweden.

SWEDEN, particularly so called, is divided into the parts of *Sueonie* and *Norland*, in both which are several *Provinces*, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of *Sweden:* It is bounded on the East with *Sinus Bodicus*, on the West the *Dofrine Hills*, and on the South *Gothland.* The Country is very fruitful and delicious, unless in some places, occasioned by the craggines of the Mountains, the great *Marishes* yet undrain'd, and the vast *Woods* yet standing. The places of most note in this part are 1. *Stockholm*, seated in a watry *Marish*, in part upon the Lake *Meller*, and in part on the East Sea, out of which the great Trade for *Shipping* to this City doth come, its Port being capacious and safe; which is defended by two powerful *Forts*, as also the City by an impregnable *Castle*, well furnished with Ammunition. This City being the residence of the King, as the *Metropolitan City*, (whose *Palace* is more renowned for its Antiquity than Magnificence) makes it to be a place of a considerable Trade, and well frequented. 2. *Upsal*, seated not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, dignified with a See of an *Archbishop*, as also with an *University*, and beautified with a *Cathedral Church*, no less large than fair, formerly the Burial place of the *Swedish* Kings. 3. *Nikoping*, a Maritim Town, of good strength. 4. *Copondel*, famous for its abundance of *Brass.* 5. *Westeras*, or *Arbsia*, of note for its rich Mines of *Silver*, which are exceeding profitable to the King. 6. *Hadwickswalde*, seated on the Sea or Gulph of *Botnie.* 7. *Orebrog*, 8. *Gevald*, 9. *Indal*, 10. *Hernosand*, and 11. *Torne.*

Lapland.

LAPLAND is the most Northern part of *Scandinavia*; the People are barbarous, rude, void of *Arts* or *Letters*, great *Idolaters*, *Sorcerers*, and *Witches*, for which the place is famous, or rather infamous: of stature they are low, but strong and active, expert in the Bow, with which they kill their *wild Beasts* in hunting, eating the Flesh, and clothing themselves with the Skins, which they tie about them to preserve them from the pinching Cold.

Lapland is divided into five parts, *viz. Vina-Lapmarck*, *Pita-Lapmarck*, *Luna-Lapmark*, *Torne-Lapmarck*, and *Kimi-Lapmarck*; and these parts are but thinly beset with Towns, contenting themselves with *Sheds* and *Cabins*, which they remove from place to place as occasion serveth. Its chief places I have set down in the *Geographical Table* of *Sweden.*

Gothland.

GOTHLAND is divided into *Ostro-Gothland* and *Westro-Gothland*, that is, the Land of the Eastern and Western *Goths*; and these two parts are subdivided into several Provinces, *viz. Ostro-Gothland*, *Smalandie*, and *Oelald*, in the first part; and *Westro-Gothland*, *Dalie*, and *Vermeland* in the other part. This is the richest and best Province of the North, and very fertil in *Corn* and *Cattle*; in it is the famous Lake *Wenir*, or *Werett*, which receiving 24 Rivers, disburthens it self at one Mouth, and with such noise and fury, that it beareth the name of the *Devils-head.* The places of most note in *Ostro-Gothland* are

are 1. *Wadſtein*, ſeated on a Lake; 2. *Calmar*, on the confines of *Denmark*, ſeated on the *Baltick Sea*, a large City, enjoying a good Trade, having a commodious Port, defended by a ſtrong and beautiful Caſtle. 3. *Linkoping*, and 4. *Vexio*, both *Epiſcopal Sees*. 5. *Weſterwick*, commodiouſly ſeated on the *Baltick Sea*. In *Weſtro-Gothland* are the places of 1. *Gotheburg*, or *Leduſia*, a Town of great Trade by reaſon of its fair and commodious Haven. 2. *Scara*, an Epiſcopal See; 3. *Daleburg*, a fair Town, well fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle; and 4. *Carolſtad*.

FINLAND hath on the Eaſt *Sinus Finicus*, on the South the *Baltick Sea*, on the Weſt *Sinus Bodicus*, and on the North *Bodinus*. The Inhabitants (according to *Tacitus*) are very barbarous and poor, being deſtitute of *Arms* (except *Bow* and *Arrows*) *Horſe*, and *Houſhold-goods*, contenting themſelves with *Herbs* for their food, the Skins of *Beaſts* for their clothing, and the *Ground* for their Bed; yet it is ſaid to be very populous in Towns and Families; the chief amongſt which are 1. *Abo*, ſeated at the bottom of the Bay of *Finland*, which ſeparates this Province from *Livonia*, dignified with the See of a Biſhop. 2. *Bienborg*, 3. *Raumo*, 4. *Hadhendal*, and 5. *Caſtleholm*, in the Iſle of *Aland*. Finland.

Provinces united to *Finland*, are 1. *CAJANIE*, whoſe chief places are *Ula*, *Waſſa*, and *Cajaneborg*. 2. *SAVOLAX*, whoſe chief place is *Niſlot*. 3. *TAVASTE*, which hath for its chief place *Tavaſthus*. 4. *NTLAND*, whoſe chief places are *Borgo*, a place of great ſtrength, near to which (within the confines of *Moſcovy*) are the two ſtrong Frontier Towns of *Viburg* and *Rivallia*, the keeping of which ſtands the King of *Sweden* in 100000 Dollars yearly. 5. *CARELIE* hath for its chief place *Wiburg*: and 6. *KEXHOLME*, whoſe principal place bears the ſame name. United Provinces to Finland.

Other Lands adjacent to *Finland*, are *Bodia* and *Scrickfinnia*.

BODIA hath on the South *Finland*, a Country not over fertil in *Grain* or *Fruits*; but in recompence hath great variety of *wild Beaſts*, which affords great ſtore of rich *Furrs*. Its chief places are *Virtis*, *Viſta*, and *Helſinga*, honoured with the Title of a Dukedom. Lands adjacent to Finland.

SCRICKFINNIA hath on the South *Bodia*, and thence ſtretcheth it ſelf between *Lapland* and the *Frozen Ocean*; a Country miſerably cold; they have no uſe of *Mony*, but pay their Tribute to the King of *Sweden* in *Skins* and *Furrs*, of which they have great plenty, which they take in hunting. *Towns* here are very thin, if any, and thoſe that are be on the Sea-ſhoar, and very poor, the Natives contenting themſelves with *Cabbins* and *Sheds*.

INGRIA, a ſmall Province bordering upon *Livonia*, at the bottom of the Gulph of *Finland*, not many years taken from the *Knez*, or great Dukes of *Moſco*, by the Kings of *Sweden*; who have likewiſe robbed *Germany* of the beſt part of *Pomerania*, and *Denmark* of the Provinces of *Schoven*, *Scania*, *Hallandia*, *Blekingea*, *Bahus*, *Gothland*, *Oeſilia*, *Heroedalia*, and *Jemptia*. Province of Ingria.

LIVONIA, bounded on the Eaſt with *Moſcovy*, and on the Weſt with the *Baltick Sea*; a Country extreamly Mountainous and Fenny, but yet ſo fertil, that it ſupplies with *Corn* the defects of other Countries. It is ſevered into the parts of *ESTEN* and *LETTEN*, and theſe again into ſeveral other leſſer parts, which are ſet down in the *Geographical Table*. Its chief places are *Felin*, *Pernajo*, *Revel*, *Wieſenburg*, *Nerva*, *Wittenſtein*, and *Derpt*, a Town of good Trade. In the part of *LETTEN*, towards the Weſt, are *Riga*, the See of an *Archbiſhoprick*, and is a place of a good Trade; *Segenwold*, *Wenden*, and *Walmer*. Towards the South are the Towns of *Koekenhaus* and *Creutzburg*; and towards the Eaſt the Town of *Marienburg*: All theſe Towns in the part of *Letten* are ſubject to the Crown of *Poland*.

In *Scandinavia*, or the Eſtates of *Denmark* and *Sweden*, are many *Rivers*, amongſt which, ſome are large, but not famous: The *Lakes* and *Gulphs*, which are in great number, obſcure the *Rivers*, and make the commerce only on the Coaſt. The Rivers of *Uma*, *Pitha*, *Lula*, *Torne*, and *Kimi*, give their names to the Marſhes of *Laponia*, ſubject to the King of *Sweden*. Lakes and Rivers.

Mountains. The principal Mountains in *Scandinavia* are the *Dofrine Hills*, which is a vast and continual ridge of Mountains, which divide *Sweden* from *Denmark*.

The Soil. The Soil of *Sweden* is so fruitful in many places, that it is a hard matter to see a *Beggar*, and the *Air* so pure and healthful, that it is ordinary to see men

Commodities. of 130 or 140 years of Age. The Country abounds in Mines of *Copper*, *Lead*, *Brass*, and *Iron*; also hath store of *Ox-hides*, *Goats* and *Buck-skins*, *Tallow*, *Tarrs*, rich *Furrs*, *Alom*, *Hony*, *Malt*, *Barly*, *Wheat*, *Furrs*, &c.

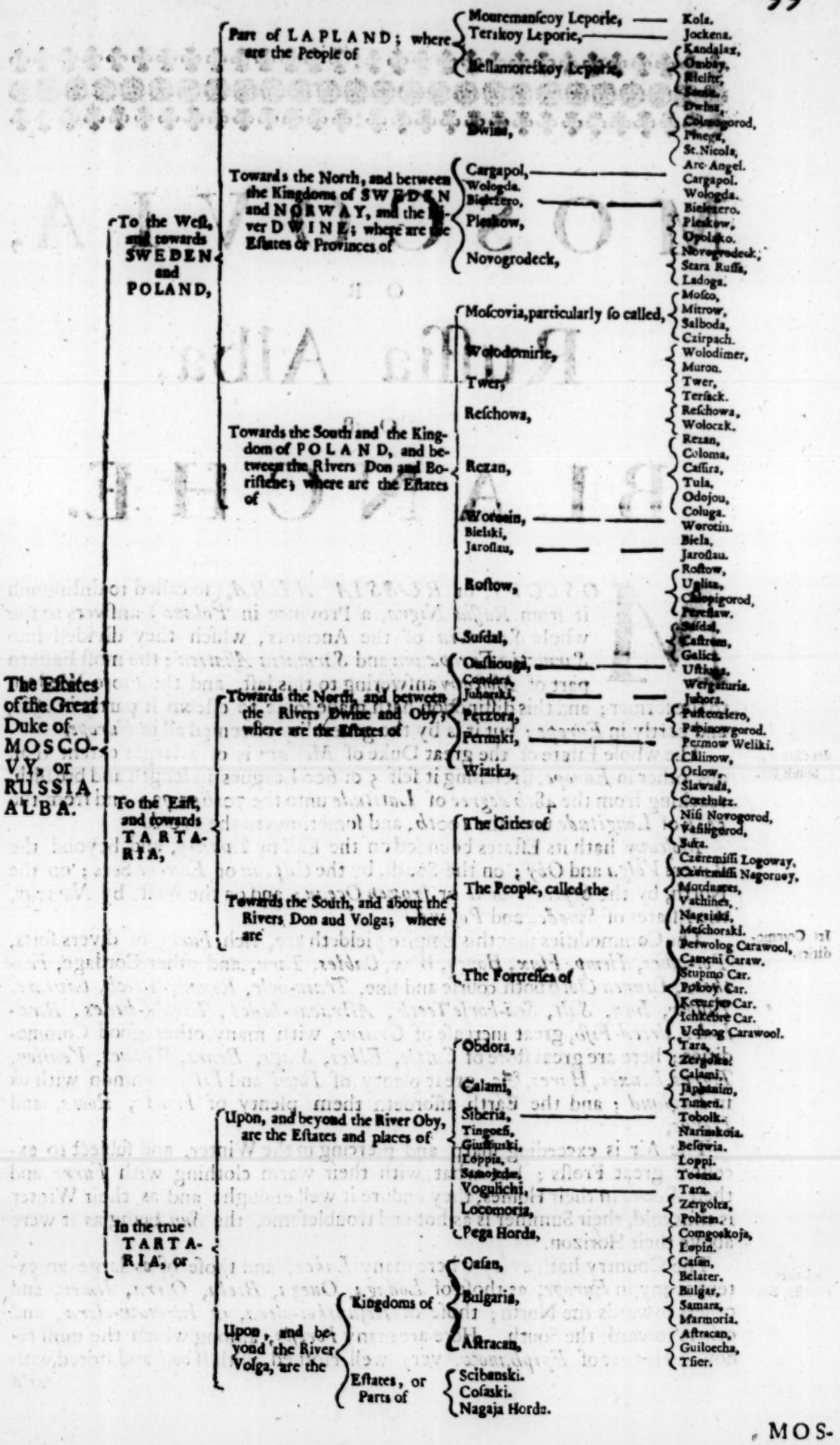
Its People. The People are naturally strong, active, stout Souldiers, industrious, laborious and ingenious, especially in *Mechanical Arts*, very courteous to Strangers, &c. The *Women* are said to be discreet and modest. The Christian Faith was first planted amongst them by *Ansgarius*, Archbishop of *Breme*, the general Apostle of the North.

Revenue of the King. The Revenue of the Crown of *Swedeland* must needs be great, there being three ways allowed him for the receiving it, *viz.* the Tenths out of all increase of Commodities, as well those of the growth as otherwise. Also by *Customs* upon all Goods exported and imported; and also the Revenue of the *Church*, which was seized on and incorporated to the Crown by *Gustavus Ericus*, out of which there is yet an allowance to the *Bishops* and *Clergy*. And besides these ways, he hath power of imposing *Taxes* in time of War, according to the emergency of the occasion.

In his Forces by *Land* or *Sea* he is very powerful, being able to put out to Sea about 100 Sail of *Ships*, and into the Field about 30 or 40000 Foot and Horse.

As to the deciding of Controversies, &c. every Territory hath its *Viscount*, every Province its *Lamen*, and every Parish its *Lawsman* or *Consul*; and there lieth an Appeal from the *Consul* to the *Viscount*, and from the *Viscount* to the *Lamen*; from whom also Appeals lie to the *Courts*, and from the *Council* of Estate to the *King*, who alone decides the same.

The


The Estates of the Great Duke of MOSCOVY, or RUSSIA ALBA.
To the West, and towards SWEDEN and POLAND,
Part of LAPLAND; where are the People of
Mouremanscoy Leporie,
Terskoy Leporie,
Bellamoreskoy Leporie,
Kola.
Jockena.
Kandalax,
Onbey,
Rielitz,
Sonia.
Dwina,
Dwina,
Colmogorod,
Pinega,
St. Nicola,
Arc-Angel.
Towards the North, and between the Kingdoms of SWEDEN and NORWAY, and the River DWINE; where are the Estates or Provinces of
Cargapol,
Wologda.
Bielzero.
Pleskow,
Novogrodeck,
Cargapol.
Wologda.
Bielzero.
Pleskow,
Opolsko.
Novogrodeck,
Stara Russa,
Ladoga.
Towards the South and the Kingdom of POLAND, and between the Rivers Don and Boristhe; where are the Estates of
Moscovia, particularly so called,
Wolodomirie,
Twer,
Reschowa,
Rezan,
Woresin,
Bielski,
Jaroslau,
Roslow,
Susdal,
Mosco,
Mitrow,
Salboda,
Czirpach.
Wolodimer,
Muron.
Twer,
Terssack.
Reschowa,
Woloczk.
Rezan,
Coloma,
Cassira,
Tula,
Odojou,
Coluga.
Worotin.
Biela,
Jaroslau.
Roslow,
Uglitz,
Chlopigorod,
Pereslaw.
Susdal,
Castrum,
Galick.
To the East, and towards TARTARIA,
Towards the North, and between the Rivers Dwina and Oby; where are the Estates of
Ostiouga,
Condora,
Juhorski,
Petzora,
Permski,
Wiatka,
Uftiuga,
Wergaturia.
Juhora.
Pustozierо,
Papinowgorod.
Permow Weliki.
Cilinow,
Orlow,
Slawada,
Corelnitz.
Towards the South, and about the Rivers Don and Volga; where are
The Cities of
The People, called the
The Fortresses of
Nisi Novogorod,
Vasiligorod,
Sura.
Czeremissi Logoway,
Czeremissi Nagorney,
Mordanes,
Vathines,
Nagaiski,
Meschoraki.
Berwolog Carawool,
Cameni Caraw.
Scupino Car.
Pokoy Car.
Kerezjo Car.
Ichkebre Car.
Uchtog Carawool.
In the true TARTARIA, or
Upon, and beyond the River Oby, are the Estates and places of
Obdora,
Calami,
Siberia,
Tingoesi,
Giuffuski,
Loppia,
Samojedes,
Vogulichi,
Locomoria,
Pega Hords,
Tara,
Zergolia.
Calami,
Japtanim,
Tumeti.
Tobolk.
Narimskoia.
Beseowia.
Loppi.
Tooma.
Tara.
Zergolia,
Pobesa.
Composkoja,
Lopin.
Upon, and beyond the River Volga, are the
Kingdoms of
Estates, or Parts of
Casan,
Bulgaria,
Astracan,
Scibanski.
Cosaski.
Nagaja Horda.
Casan,
Belater.
Bulgar,
Samara,
Marmoria.
Astracan,
Guiloecha,
Tsier.

MOS-

MOSCOVIA,

OR

Ruſſia Alba,

OR

BLANCHE.

MOSCOVY, or *RUSSIA ALBA*, (ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Ruſſia Nigra*, a Province in *Poland*) anſwers to the whole *Sarmatia* of the Ancients, which they divided into *Sarmatia Europæana* and *Sarmatia Aſiatica*; the moſt Eaſtern part of *Moſcovy* anſwering to this laſt, and the more Weſtern to the former; and this diſtinction hath made ſome to eſteem it partly in *Aſia*, and partly in *Europe*; but it is by the generality eſteemed all in *Europe*.

Its extent, bounds, &c. The whole Eſtate of the great Duke of *Moſcovy* is of a larger extent than any other in *Europe*, ſtretching it ſelf 5 or 600 Leagues in length and breadth, reaching from the 48*th degree* of *Latitude* unto the 70*th* or 72; and from the 50*th* of *Longitude* unto the 100*th*, and ſometimes to the 110*th*.

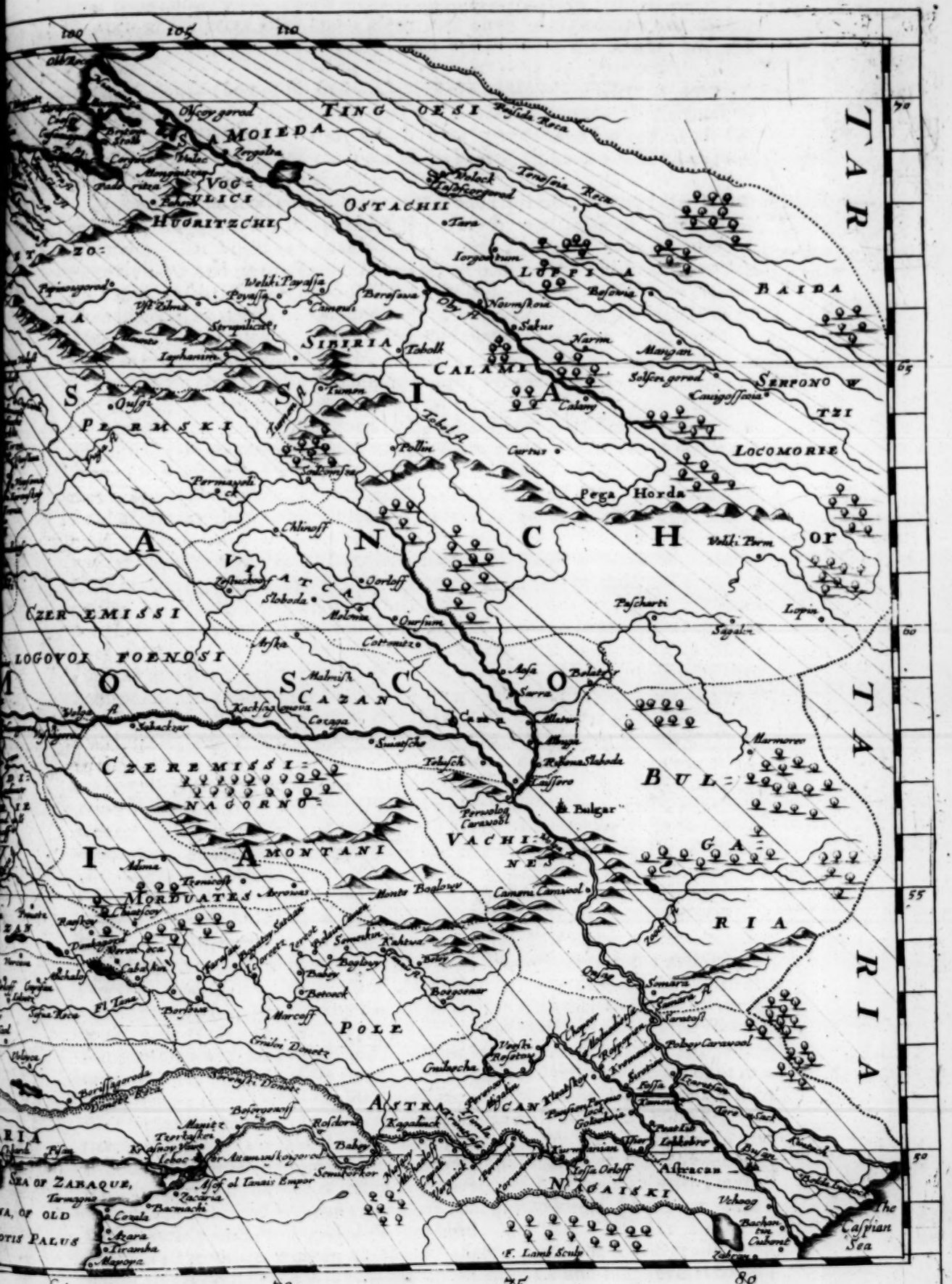
Moſcovy hath its Eſtates bounded on the Eaſt by *Tartary*, and beyond the Rivers *Volga* and *Oby*; on the South, by the *Caſpian* or *Euxine* Seas; on the North, by the *Septentrional* or *frozen Ocean*; and on the Weſt, by *Norway*, the Eſtates of *Sweden* and *Poland*.

Its Commodities. The Commodities that this Empire yieldeth are, rich *Furrs* of divers ſorts, *Pot-aſhes*, *Hemp*, *Flax*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Cables*, *Tarn*, and other Cordage, *Feathers*, *Linnen Cloth* both courſe and fine, *Train-oyle*, *Rozin*, *Pitch*, *Caviare*, *Tallow*, *Iron*, *Salt*, *Sea-horſe Teeth*, *Aſtracan-hides*, *Tann'd-hides*, *Raw-hides*, *dried-Fiſh*, great increaſe of *Grains*, with many other good Commodities; here are great ſtore of *Cattle*, *Elkes*, *Stags*, *Bears*, *Wolves*, *Veniſon*, *Tigres*, *Linxes*, *Hares*, &c. great plenty of *Fowl* and *Fiſh*, common with us in *England*; and the Earth affordeth them plenty of *Fruits*, *Roots*, and *Herbs*.

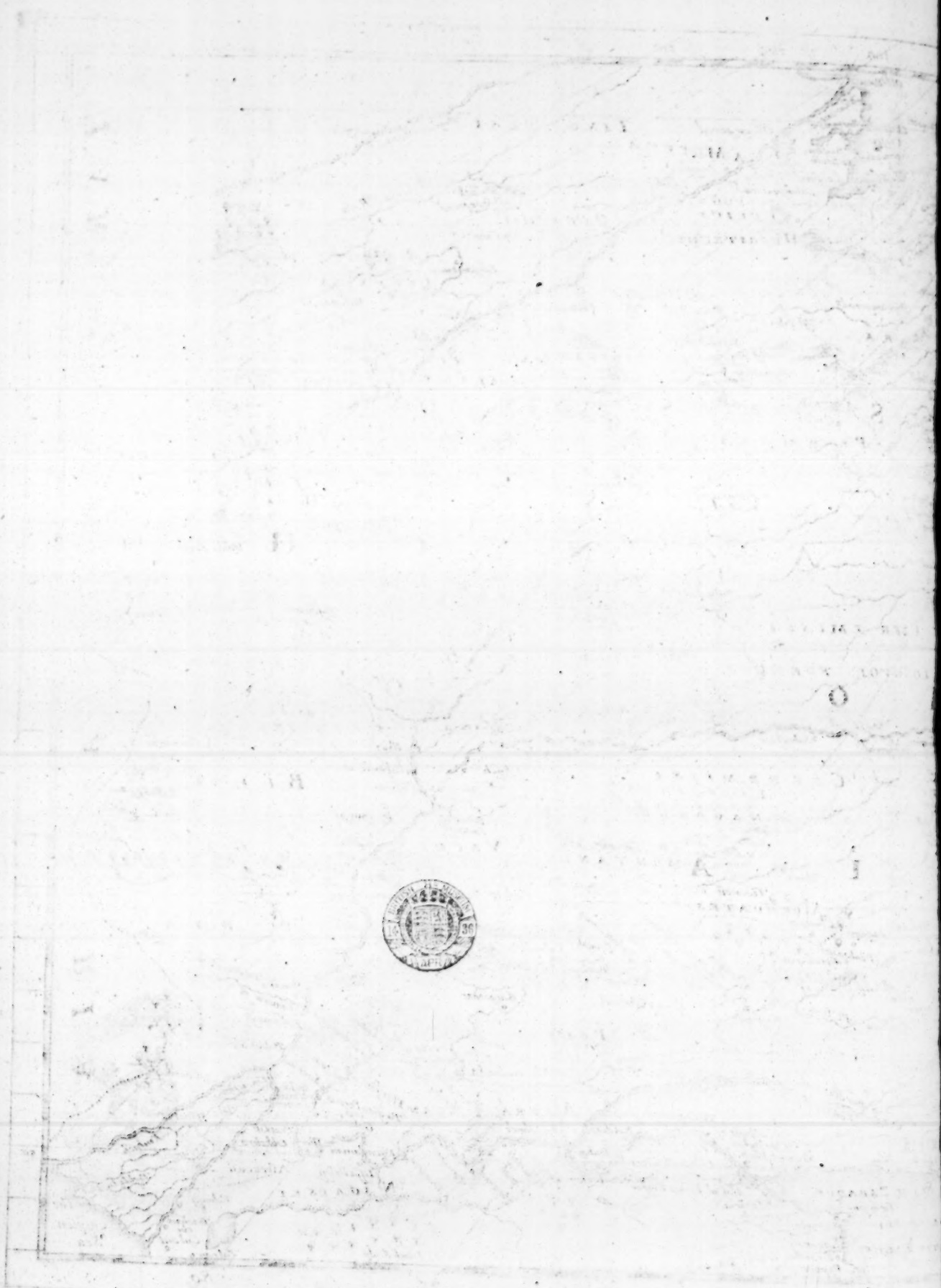
The Air is exceeding ſharp and piercing in the Winter, and ſubject to exceſſive great Froſts; but what with their warm clothing with *Furrs* and their *Stoves* in their Houſes, they endure it well enough: and as their Winter is thus cold, their Summer is as hot and troubleſome, the *Sun* being as it were above their Horizon.

Its Lakes, Foreſts, &c. The Country hath every where many *Lakes*, and thoſe of as large an extent as any in *Europe*, as thoſe of *Lodaga*, *Ouega*, *Biela*, *Oſera*, *Ilmen*, and others towards the North; thoſe of *Reſanskoi-oſera*, of *Iwanow-oſera*, and others towards the South. Here are many *Foreſts*, among which the moſt renowned is that of *Epiphanow*, very well clothed with *Wood* and ſtored with *wild*

A MAPP OF THE ESTATES, OF THE GREAT DUKE OF R
Sanson. Geographer to the French King.



OF RUSSIA BLANCH OR MOSCOVIA, Designed by Mount



wild Beasts and *Fowl*. *Mountains* here are but few, except those of *Roglowi*, between the Rivers *Tana* and *Volga*; and those of *Camenopoij* or *Stolp*, that is, the *Pillars* of the World, which are between the *Dwine* and the *Oby*.

This Country (according to some) is called the *Mother* of *Rivers*, amongst which the *Volga*, the *Don* or *Tana*, and the *Dovine* or *Dwine*, are the most famous; and especially the *Volga*, which is the greatest and noblest in all *Europe*, both for its course and the force of its Water, running 7 or 800 Leagues, and receives abundance of other Rivers. Rivers.

Moscovy for the most part is ill Inhabited, and especially towards the North and East; these quarters being cold, full of *Forests*, and some of their People *Idolaters*: that which is towards *Sweden* and *Poland* is more frequented, more civiliz'd, and its *Cities* and *Towns* better built: that which lieth towards the South, and in all likelyhood should be the best, is partly *Mahometan*, and often infected by the *Petit Tartars*. But a word or two of its People about *Mosco*, which by reason of its being the residence of the Great *Duke*, are supposed to be the most civiliz'd and ingenious. *Moscovy* ill inhabited.

The People are naturally ingenious enough, yet they addict themselves neither to Arts or Sciences, but chiefly to Traffick and Husbandry, in which they are very subtle; they are observed to be great Liars, perfidious, treacherous, distrustful, crafty, revengeful, quarrelsom, proud, much addicted to Women and strong Drink, but *Tobacco* is forbidden amongst them. Their Houses are but mean, and as ill furnished, contenting themselves to lie on *Matts* or *Straw*, instead of *Beds*; they are gross feeders, yet have wherewithal to feed deliciously. Its People. Their habit (which they seldom or never change) is much the same with the ancient *Greeks*, wearing long Robes of *Cloth*, *Sattin*, *Silk*, *Cloth of Gold* or *Silver*, which is beset with *Pearls*, according to the quality of the person, by which, together with their attendance, they are known; and under these Robes they wear close *Coats* and *Drawers*, begirting themselves with *Swashes*; on their feet they wear *Buskins*, and on their heads, *Caps* (instead of *Hats*) adorned with *Pearl* and *precious Stones*, which in their Salutations they move not, only bow their bodies. They are for the most part fat and corpulent, esteeming great Bellies, and long and great Beards, for a comliness; the Women, though indifferent handsom, yet make use of Paint. Their Habit. In the performance of their *Nuptial Rites* they use many Ceremonies, which are largely treated of by *Adam Olearius*, in his Book entituled the *Ambassadours* Travels into *Moscovy* and *Persia*, whose description I shall make use of, wherein he saith, That young Men and Maids being debarr'd the Society of each other, Maidens not being allowed the freedom of the Streets, or society with Men; it happens that no Marriages are made but by the consent of the Parents; and the bargain being agreed on by them, the Wedding-day is appointed, the Night before which the young Man makes his never yet seen Bride a Present, according to their Qualities. He saith further, that there are two Women appointed by them, who are to take order for the making the *Nuptial Bed*, &c. which is made upon about 40 sheaves of *Rye*, which are encompassed with a great many Barrels of *Wheat* and other Grains. All things being made ready, the *Bridegroom* late in the Evening goes to the *Brides*, accompanied with his Friends and Relations, together with the Priest who is to marry them, riding before them; and being received in, are brought to a Table where three Dishes of Meat are brought, but none eats thereof; then after some Ceremonies, the *Bride* is brought in richly clad in a fitting dress for that Solemnity by the said Women, who places her by the *Bridegroom*; and to prevent their seeing one another, besides the Vail over the *Brides* face, they are parted by a piece of crimson *Taffety*, which is held by two Youths: which done, the said Woman ties up her Hair in two knots, paints her, puts a Crown neatly made and gilded on her head, and habits her like a married Woman; the other Woman chosen by them paints the *Bridegroom*, and whilst this is doing, the Women get up on Benches and sing several Songs; then after several ridiculous Ceremonies they go to the Church, and before Their Ceremonies in Marriage.

the

the Prieſt gives them the *Benediction*, he carries them to the Offering, which conſiſts of *fryed Meats*, *Fiſh*, and *Paſtry*: the *Benediction* is given by holding *Images* over their heads, and the Prieſt taking the *Bridegroom* by the right hand, and the *Bride* by the left, and asks them three times, if they will love one another as Man and Wife ought, and whether it be by their conſent; to which both anſwer, *Yes*: then all the People joyn hands and dance, whilſt they and the Prieſt ſing the 128 *Pſalm*, which ended, he puts a Garland of *Rue* about their heads, ſaying, *Increaſe and multiply*; and then conſummating the Marriage, ſaith, *Whom God hath joyned together, let no man ſeparate*; which being pronounced, ſeveral *Wax-Candles* are lighted, and the Prieſt is preſented with a Glaſs of *Claret*, and being pledg'd by the Married couple, he throws down the Glaſs, and he and the Bride tread it under their feet, ſaying, *May they thus fall at our feet, and be trodden to pieces, who ſhall endeavour to ſow diſcontent betwixt us.* Then after ſeveral other Ceremonies, the *Bride* is put in a Sledge and drawn to the *Bridegrooms* houſe, where the Wedding is kept, and he following her on Horſeback; and as ſoon as they are come, the ſaid Woman conducts the *Bride* to her Chamber, undreſſes her, and lays her in Bed, during which time the *Bridegroom* and his Friends are ſeated at a Table well furniſhed with Meat; the *Bride* being laid in her Bed, the Woman fetches the *Bridegroom* from the Table, who is accompanied with about eight young Men, bearing in their hands lighted *Torches* to conduct him to the Chamber, which being entred, they put them in the ſaid Barrels of Corn, and void the Room, being each of them preſented with two *Martins Skins*; the *Bride* perceiving him coming, gets out of the Bed, putting a Gown about her, and receives him very ſubmiſſively; and this is the firſt time he hath the ſight of her face: then they ſit down at Table, and having eaten go to Bed, all quitting the Room; and at the Door is placed one of the Old Servants, who is to demand, if the buſineſs is done; and when he ſaith, it is, the *Timbrels*, *Trumpets*, &c. play, till ſuch time as the Stoves are made ready, where they bath themſelves, but apart, and the two next days are ſpent in *dancing*, *entertainments*, and *diverſions*; but for *Citizens* and Perſons of a meaner Degree, leſs Ceremonies are uſed, and with leſſer ſtate and coſt. The Wedding being paſt, the *Bride* betakes her ſelf to a retir'd condition, being not much permitted the liberty of the Streets, nor do their Husbands, eſpecially the Richer ſort, care they ſhould be brought to Houſwifry, ſo that they beſtow their time in Idleneſs, and playing with their Maids; and, as ſome ſay, they are not well contented unleſs their Husbands gives them beating, being like *Spaniels*, the more they are beaten the better they love. *Divorcements* are frequent amongſt them, for when they have a deſire to part, they accuſe her of *Adultery*, or want of *Devotion*, by ſuborning of falſe Witneſſes, by which they are contented, without anſwering for themſelves.

Their Religion.

Their *Religion* is the ſame with the *Greek Church*, of which they are a Member, but full of Superſtition, as conſidering the *Virgin Mary*, the *Evangeliſts*, *Apoſtles*, with abundance of other *Saints*, not only as ſimple Interceſſors, but alſo Co-operators and Cauſes of their Salvation, giving to their *Saints* and *Images* the ſame honour as is due only to God. They differ from the *Romiſh* and Reformed Churches in ſeveral points, as 1. Forbidding extream *Unction*, *Confirmation*, and fourth *Marriages*. 2. Denying the *Holy Ghoſt* to proceed from the *Father* and the *Son*. 3. Denying *Purgatory*, but allow praying for the Dead. 4. They hold it unlawful to faſt on *Saturdays*. 5. They reject graven or carved *Images*, but allow of the painted. 6. They obſerve four *Lents* every year. 7. Communicating in both kinds, but mixing warm Water with the *Wine*, and uſing leavened *Bread*, which they diſtribute both together with a Spoon. 8. They admit Children of ſeven years of Age to come to the *Sacrament*. 9. They admit of none to Orders, but ſuch as are married, and forbidding the ſame to thoſe that are in actual Orders. And 10. Believing that Holy men (before the Reſurrection) enjoy not the preſence of *God*; and for theſe and the like Tenents, there is a great feud and hatred between them and the *Papiſts*.

The

The *Moscovites* suffer all Nations to live amongst them in quietness, and give toleration to all Religions, except the *Jews* and *Papists*, whom they will not permit amongst them.

They are great observers of *Festival-days*, of which they have abundance; all which are not observed, except by the *Priests*; but their great *Festival-days* are strictly observed, as also *Sundays*, on which they go thrice a day to their Devotions: Their Service consisteth in reading of *Chapters* and *Psalms*, saying, or rather singing of certain Prayers, St. *Athanasius*'s *Creed*, together with a Homily out of St. *Chrysostom*; they are such great Adorers of the *Cross*, that they will undertake no business, neither eat or drink before they have made the sign of the *Cross*; also they are as great worshippers of painted *Images*, there being scarce a Family without them; and also have them placed about the *walls* of their *Churches*, directing their Prayers to them; and these *Images* are adorned with *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*; and if it happen that any person is Excommunicated, both He and his Images are not allowed the liberty of the *Churches*, which are esteemed Sacred places by them, and are built round, and vaulted like a *Dove-house* in imitation of *Heaven*. Their Devotion is performed standing or kneeling, having no Seats in their *Churches*; and in their *Communions* they hold *Transubstantiation*. They are strict observers of *Fasts*, of which they have a great many, besides every *Wednesday* and *Friday*, on which they will not eat any kind of *Flesh*, nor that which comes from it. Ceremonies observed by them. Their Fasts.

In their *Funerals* they also observe several Ceremonies. As soon as the sick person is deceased, they send for all his *Relations* and *Friends* near at hand, who stand by him lamenting his loss in a howling tone, demanding why he would die? whether he wanted any thing? whether his Wife was constant to him? or the like ridiculous Questions. Also they send to the *Priest* a Present of *Aqua-vitæ*, *Hydromel* and *Beer*, that he may pray for the Soul of the deceased. Their Lamentations being ended, they wash the Body of the deceased, put a clean *Shift* and *Shroud* about him, as also a pair of new *Buskins* on his feet, and so lay him in the *Coffin* and carry him to *Church*, the *Priest* going first, who carrieth the Image of his *Saint*; and being come to the *Grave* the *Coffin* is uncovered, and whilst the *Priest* says certain Prayers, the said *Image* is held over the *Corps*, and the Wife, Relation and Friends kiss him, and take their last farewel in grievous Lamentations; then the *Priest* puts betwixt his fingers a piece of Paper, which is a Pass directed to St. *Peter*, signed by the *Patriarch* or the *Metropolitan* of the place, wherein is declared what he is, how he lived in obedience to the *Church*, &c. as also a penny in his Mouth; after which the *Coffin* is covered and the *Corps* interr'd with his face to the East: then the People doing their devotions to the *Images*, return to the House of the deceased, where they dine and comfort up the Widow. Their usual time of Mourning is forty days, in which time they make three Feasts for the Friends of the deceased. Their Funerals.

They hold *Baptism* of great importance, insomuch that they Baptize their Children so soon as born; and if it happen that through weakness the Child cannot be brought to the Church, then it is baptized at home; and in this they observe several Ceremonies. And the *Child* being baptized, the *Priest* assigns it a particular *Saint*, the Image of which he delivers to the Godfather, charging him to instruct the Child to have a devotion to his Saint. Baptism.

Their *Ecclesiastical Government* consists of a *Patriarch*, which is the Head of the Church, and as it were *Pope*, who hath under him several *Metropolitans*, *Archbishops*, *Bishops*, *Arch-Deacons*, *Proto-Popes*, and *Priests*. Ecclesiastical Government.

The Grand Duke of *Moscovy* is absolute Lord both of the Lives and Estates of his Subjects, whom he treats little better than Slaves, his chiefest aim being for what he can get, more than the good and welfare of his People, being not subject to *Laws*, but makes what seemeth good unto him, which, though never so tyrannical, are strictly obeyed; yet he will seem to take advice of his *Knez* and *Bojares*, who are as his *Privy Council*. His *Revenues* and *Riches* cannot but be great from the several ways from which he raiseth it, as by ille-

gal *Taxes*, *Customes*, his *Lands*, and what he taketh from his Subjects at pleasure. He is apparelled like a *King* and a *Bishop*, wearing with the Royal Robes a *Miter* and a *Crosiers-Staff*, and observeth a great deal of state and grandure.

The Estates of *MOSCOVY* comprehend 3 *Kingdoms*, about 30 *Dutchies* or *Provinces*, and about 20 *People* or *Nations*, who live by *hoords* or *Communalties*, all which I have taken notice of in the *Geographical Table* of *Moscovy*. The Country is not so populous as spacious, nor very well frequented by Strangers, so that I cannot give so good account thereof, as otherwise I would, of which in order.

Province of *Dwina.* *DWINA*, a Province of a large extent, but very barren, hath for its chief places *Dwina*, seated on the River so called, which falls into the Northern Ocean; and on the Mouth of the said River, on the Sea-shoar is seated the City of St. *Michael* (commonly called *Arch-Angel*) a place of note for its great Trade, and much resorted unto by the *English*.

Pleskow. *PLESKOW*, a large Province, whose chief place is so called, being large and fair, and the only *walled City* in the Empire; a place of great strength, very populous, and dignified with an *Episcopal See*.

Novogrodick. *NOVOGRODECK*, very Northernly seated, a Province also of a large extent, whose chief place is so called, seated on the River *Naf*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, a City which for fairness and largness, might once compare with any in *Russia*, being formerly one of the Mart-Towns of *Europe*, which is now removed to St. *Nicholas*, a Port-Town, more convenient for the *Moscovian* Trade.

CARGAPOL, *WOLOGDA*, and *BIELEZERO*, whose chief places bear their names, are *Provinces* of this Dukedom.

Province of *Moscovia.* *MOSCOVIA* is one of the largest Provinces in all *Russia*, and seated in the midst of this large Estate, so called from *Mosco* its Metropolitan City, seated on a River so called, dignified with the *Imperial Seat*, as also with the See of the *Patriarch*. This City, before its firing by the *Tartars*, was 9 or 10 miles in circuit, but now not above half the compass; it is very populous, and hath for Divine worship 16 *Churches*, of which about half are made of *Wood* and *Dirt*, as are most of the Houses. The *Palace* of the Great *Duke* is seated in the heart of the City, a large Structure, well fortified with 17 *Turrets* and 3 great *Bulwarks*, which are always guarded with about 25000 *Souldiers*, which, with two *Castles* seated in the outward parts of this City, is its only defence, being without a *Wall* or *Ditch*.

Wolodimire. *WOLODOMIRE* is a Dutchy very fertil in *Corn*, its chief City being so called, once dignified with the residence of the Great *Duke* till removed to *Mosco*, from which it is distant 36 Leagues, now dignified with an *Episcopal See*.

Twer. *TWER* is a fair, fertil and populous Province, washed by the *Volga*; its chief place is so called, dignified with the See of a *Bishop*, which for beauty and largness may compare with *Mosco*, from which it is distant about 140 miles.

Reschowa. Bielski. *RESCHOWA*, a Dutchy, which takes its name from its chief City; as doth the Dutchy of *BIELSKI*, from *Biela*.

Rezan. *REZAN* is a Dutchy so fertil that its fellow cannot be found in all these parts, yielding *Corn* to admiration; its chief City also bears the same name, which is seated on the River *Occa*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*.

WORO-

WOROTIN, a Province alſo, ſo called from its chief City, ſeated on the ſaid River *Occa*, and defended by a ſtrong *Caſtle*. *Worotin.*

PERMSKI, a Province of a large extent; its chief City is ſo called, ſeated on the River *Viſchora*. *Permski.*

WIATKA, a barren and woody Country, and much peſter'd with the Incurſions of the *Crim Tartars*; its chief place being ſo called. *Wiatka.*

PETZORA is a Province fenced on all ſides by lofty *Mountains* and *Rocks*; its chief place takes the name of the Province, ſeated on a River ſo called near its fall into the Sea, and on theſe *Mountains* are found excellent *Hawks* and *Sables*, which bring ſome profit to the Inhabitants. *Petzora.*

INHORSKI, *CONDORA*, *OUSTIOUGA*, *SUSDAL*, *ROSTHOW*, and *JAROSLAU*, are Provinces of this Dukedom. Other Provinces.

Towards the South, and about the *Don* and the *Volga*, are ſeveral Cities, People, and Fortreſſes, as are mentioned in the *Geographical Table*; as are ſeveral Provinces or Eſtates upon and beyond the River *Oby*. *Caſan.*

Beſides theſe Provinces, the Grand Duke holds at preſent towards *Aſia*, the Kingdoms of *Caſan*, *Bulgaria*, and *Aſtracan*.

CASAN is a Kingdom in *Tartaria Deſerta*, whoſe chief place is ſo called, ſeated on the *Volga*; now dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*, is in the Kingdom of *BULGARIA*, whoſe chief place is ſo called. *Bulgaria.*

ASTRACAN lieth on the *Volga*, whoſe chief place is ſo called, enjoyeth a good Trade, eſpecially by the *Armenians*, by reaſon of its commodious ſcituation, on the branches of the *Volga*, about 20 *Italian* miles from the *Caſpian Sea*. *Aſtracan.*

- The ISLES of GREAT BRITAIN, with the Territories thereto belonging, are those of
  - GREAT BRITAIN; where are at this day two Kingdoms and one Principality, to wit,
    - The Kingdom of ENGLAND, which according to the SAXON HEPTARCHY, hath had Seven Kingdoms, viz.
      - Kingdom of KENT: Canterbury, Rochester.
      - Kingdom of SOUTH SAXONS: Southwark, Chichester, Winchelsey.
      - Kingdom of EAST ANGLES: Norwich, Ipswich, Cambridge, Ely.
      - Kingdom of EAST SAXONS: Colchester, London.
      - Kingdom of WEST SAXONS: Exeter, Briſtol, Bath, Salisbury, Southampton, Dorchester.
      - Kingdom of NORTHUMBERS: York, Lancaſter, Durham, Carliſle, Berwick.
      - Kingdom of MERCIA: Leiceſter, Lincoln, Nottingham, Darby, Oxford, Glouceſter, Worceſter, Lechfield, Cheſter, Hereford.
    - The Principality of WALES, as it was divided into
      - SOUTH WALES: Brecknock, Cardigan, Carliſle, Monmouth.
      - NORTH WALES: Flint, Denbigh, Carnarvan, Montgomery.
    - The Kingdom of SCOTLAND, which hath once had the Kingdoms of the
      - SCOTS, beyond the Tay: Cromartly, Elgin, Aberdane, Perch, Dunkeldon.
      - PICTS, on this ſide the Tay: Dunſtaffnage, Dunkirton, St. Andrews, Dunblain, Sterling, Edinburgh, Glaſco.
  - IRELAND, or The Kingdom of IRELAND, with its Provinces, which were formerly ſo many Kingdoms, viz.
    - ULSTER: Donegal, Dungannon, Armagh, Tredagh.
    - MUNSTER: Caſſile, Lymerick, Kinſale, Corke, Waterford.
    - CONNAUGHT: Slego, Galloway, Roſecomen, Letrim.
    - LEINSTER: Molingar, Trymm, Dublin, Kildare, Kilkenny.
  - And a great many ſmall ISLES, to wit, thoſe
    - About SCOTLAND: The Orcades — Kirkwall; The Iſles of Shetland — Burgh; The Weſtern Iſles — Colmkill.
    - About ENGLAND: The Sorlings — St. Mary; The Iſle of Man — Ruſhin; The Iſle of Wight — Newport; The Iſle of Jarſey — St. Hillary; The Iſle of Garnſey — St. Peters.
  - In AFRICA, in the Kingdom of — Fez — Tangier.

Beſides the ſeveral Factories belonging to the Royal Company, from Sally in South-Barbary to Cape Bonna Eſperanza; as at Gambo, Rio, Nuno, Rio Grande, Siera, Liona, Serbro, Ceſtos, Achin, Anta, Comenda, Cape, Corſo, Acara, Cormentine, Ardra, Benin, Callabar, &c. In the Eaſt Indies, in ASIA, the ſeveral Factories belonging to the Eaſt-India Company; as Surat, Bambay, Curwar, Baticale, Calicut, Fort St. George, Pentapoli, Muſulipatan, Bellifar, Ougely.

- In the Weſt Indies, or North AMERICA,
  - On the Continent: New England — Boſton; New York — New York; New Jerſey; Mary-Land; Virginia — James Town; Carolina — Charles Town.
  - The ISLES of: Newfound-Land; the Bahama Iſles; Bermudes — St. Georges; Jamaica — Port Royal; Barbados — St. Michaels; St. Chriſtophers — Baſſe Terre; Nieves — Bath-bay; Monſerat; Antego; Anguilla; St. Vincent; St. Dominica; Barbada.

The

The Kingdom of ENGLAND may be divided into

ENGLAND, particularly so call'd, in which if Monmouthshire were included, there would be 40 Shires; and which, according to the SAXONS Heptarchy, are thus divided, and that as they regard the 4 Quarters, and then

The Nine towards the East and South, and which made the Kingdoms of

- KENT, where is only Kent, — Canterbury, Rochester, Dover, Sandwich.
- SOUTH SAXONS, which contained the Regni, are the Counties of
  - Surrey, — Southwark, Kingstone.
  - Sussex, — Chichester, Winchelsey, Lewes.
- EAST ANGLES, which contained the Iceni, are the Counties of
  - Norfolk, — Norwich, Yarmouth.
  - Suffolk, — Ipswich, St. Edmonds-Bury.
  - Cambridgshire, — Cambridge, Ely.
- EAST SAXONS, which contained the Trinobantes, are the Counties of
  - Essex, — Colchester, Harwich.
  - Middlesex, — London, Westminster.
  - Hartfordshire, — Hartford, St. Albons.

The Seven regarding the West, and which have made the Kingdom of the

- WEST SAXONS, are the
  - Dammonii, or Counties of
    - Cornwal, — Launston, Padstow.
    - Devonshire, — Exeter, Plimouth, Dartmouth.
  - Belgæ, or Counties of
    - Somersetshire, — Bristol, Bath, Wells, Bridgwater.
    - Wiltshire, — Salisbury, Malsbury.
    - Hantshire, — Southampton, Wincheſter.
  - Durotriges, or Counties of
    - Dorsetshire, — Dorchester, Weymouth.
    - Berkshire, — Windsor, Redding.

The Six towards the North, and which have made the Kingdoms of the

- NORTHUMBERS, are the Counties of
  - Yorkshire, — York, Hull, Richmond.
  - Lancashire, — Lancaster, Lirpool.
  - Durham, — Durham.
  - Cumberland, — Carlisle, Perith.
  - Westmerland, — Kendale, Apleby.
  - Northumberland, — Barwick, Newcastle.

The Seventeen in the middle of the Country, and which have made the Kingdom of

- MERCIA, are the
  - Iceny, or County of
    - Huntingtonshire, — Huntington, St. Ives.
  - Canlejulani, or Counties of
    - Buckinghamshire, — Buckingham.
    - Bedfordshire, — Bedford.
    - Rutlandshire, — Upingham.
  - Coritani, or Counties of
    - Northamptonshire, — Northampton, Peterborough.
    - Leicestershire, — Leicester, Harborow.
    - Lincolnshire, — Lincoln, Boston.
    - Nottinghamshire, — Nottingham.
    - Derbyshire, — Derby, Chesterfield.
  - Dobuni, or Counties of
    - Oxfordshire, — Oxford, Henley.
    - Glocestershire, — Glocester.
    - Worcestershire, — Worcester.
  - Cornavii, or Counties of
    - Warwickshire, — Warwick, Coventry.
    - Staffordshire, — Stafford, Litchfield.
    - Cheshire, — Chester, Nantwich.
    - Shropshire, — Shrewsbury, Bridgnorth.
    - Herefordshire, — Hereford.

The Principality of WALES, where are 12 or 13 Counties, and all towards the West of England, and whereof

Six towards the North, and which have made the Kingdom of

- NORTH WALES, as the Counties of
  - Flintshire, — Flint, St. Asaph.
  - Denbighshire, — Denbigh.
  - Carnarvanshire, — Carnarvan.
  - Isle of Anglesey, — Bewmorris.
  - Merionethshire, — Harlech.
  - Montgomeryshire, — Montgomery.

Seven towards the South, and which have made the Kingdom of

- SOUTH WALES, as the Counties of
  - Radnorshire, — Radnor.
  - Brecknockshire, — Brecknock.
  - Cardiganshire, — Cardigan.
  - Pembrockshire, — Pembroke.
  - Carmardenshire — Carmarden.
  - Glamorganshire, — Cardiff, Landaff.
  - Monmouthshire, — Monmouth.

In divers Isles,

- In the Great Ocean, to the West of Cornwal, as the SORLINGS, — St. Mary.
- In the Irish Ocean, to the South of Scotland, as the Isle of MAN, — Ruffin.
- In the Narrow passage near Hantshire, as the Isle of WIGHT, — Newport.
- In the Narrow passage near France, as the Isles of
  - JARSEY, — St Hillary.
  - GARNSEY, — St. Peters.

The

The Kingdom of KENT, (wherein is only the County of Kent) may be divided into

- The Lath of SUTTON, which again is subdivided into the Hundreds of
  - Black-heath — Grenwich, Deptford, Wolledge, Eltham.
  - Little and Leſnes — Eryth, Plampſted.
  - Bromley and Beckenham — Bromley, Beckenham.
  - Rokeſley — St. Mary Cray, Orpinton.
  - Axtan — Dartford, Wimbleton, Greenhith.
  - Godsheath — Sevenoke, Otford.
  - Weſtram — Weſtram, Braſted.
  - Somerden — Speldherſt.
- The Lath of AYLFORD; where are the Hundreds of
  - Watlington — Pepenbury, Capell.
  - Little Barnefeld — Brenchely.
  - Twyford — Yalding.
  - Lowy of Tunbridge — Tunbridge.
  - Little Field — Royden.
  - Wrotham — Wrotham, Staanſted.
  - Larkfeld — Malling, Aylesford.
  - Maidſtone — Maidſtone, E. Farly.
  - Eyhorne — Lenham, Stockberry.
  - Gittingham and Chetham — Rochester, Cherham.
  - Shamell — Cobham.
  - Tottingtrough — Gravesend.
  - Hoo — St. Maries, St. James.
- The Lath of SCRAY; in which are the Hundreds of
  - Milton — Milton, Queenborow, Sittingborn.
  - Tenham — Tenham, Dodington.
  - Feverham — Feverham.
  - Bocton, under Bleane — Bocton, Under Bleane, God Marſhal.
  - Felborough — Wye.
  - Wye — Kenington.
  - Kircholt, Barony — Aſhford.
  - Chart — Pluckley, Egerton.
  - Catehill — Apledore, Orlaſton.
  - Blackborne — Byddenden.
  - Barkley — Cranbrook, Staplehurſt.
  - Cranbrook — Goodherſt, Marden.
  - Marden — Bedgbury.
  - Fincocks — Flimwell.
  - Great Barnfeld — Sandherſt.
  - Selbrightenden — Rolvenden.
  - Rolvenden — Tenderden.
  - Tenderden — Seone.
  - Oxney — Brookland.
  - Aloesbridge — Lyde.
  - Langport — Snargate.
  - St. Martin — Ham.
  - Ham — New-Church, Bonington.
  - New-Church — Romney, Hyth.
  - Worth — Alington.
  - Screate — Braborne.
  - Byrcholt Franchis — Stowting.
  - Stowting — Saltwood.
  - Heane — Eltham.
  - Lovingbergh — Folkſton.
  - Falkſton — Dover, E. Langden.
- The Lath of St. AUGUSTINE; in which are the Hundreds of
  - Bewsbrough — Sandown, Deal.
  - Corniloo — Sandwich, Barfrayſton.
  - Eaſtry — Ruynes.
  - Wingham — Barnhamdown.
  - Kinghamford — Canterbury, Patrickſporne.
  - Bredg and Petham — VVickham.
  - Downhamford — St. Stephens, Harbledown.
  - Weſtgate — VVhiteſtable, Seaſalter.
  - Whiteſtable — Reculver, Hearne.
  - Bleangate — Elmeſton.
  - Breſton — St. Johns, St. Nicholas, Mynſter.
  - Kingſloe, which is the Iſle of Thanet

The

The Kingdom of the SOUTH-SAXONS, which contained the Regni; and now the Counties of

- SURREY, which is divided into the Hundreds of
  - Brixton,
    - Southwark,
    - Notheriff,
    - Lambeth,
    - Bateríey,
    - Putney,
    - Wandeſworth,
    - Clapham.
  - Kingſton,
    - Kingſton,
    - Richmond,
    - Mortlack.
  - Croydon,
    - Croydon,
    - Caſhalton,
    - Cheame,
    - Carſhalton.
  - Tanridge,
    - Bletchingligh,
    - Burſtow.
  - Reygate,
    - Reygate,
    - Horley.
  - Copthorne and Effingham,
    - Ewell,
    - Banſted,
    - Ebeſham.
  - Darking,
    - Darking,
    - Newdigate,
    - Charlewood.
  - Emley,
    - Cobham,
    - Waybridge,
    - Walton.
  - Chertſey,
    - Chertſey,
    - Egham,
    - Frimley.
  - Woking,
    - Guilford,
    - Otkham,
    - Woking.
  - Farnham,
    - Farnham,
    - Puttenham,
    - Peperharo.
  - Godalming,
    - Godalming,
    - Witley.
  - Blackheath and Wotton,
    - Albury,
    - Cranley,
    - Dunsfold.
- SUSSEX, which is divided into the Rapes of
  - Chicester,
    - Chicheſter,
    - Mydhurſt,
    - Rogat,
    - Binderton,
    - Eaſtbourne,
    - Chydham,
    - Thorney,
    - Emley,
    - Weſt Wittering,
    - Selſey.
  - Arundell,
    - Petworth,
    - Arundell,
    - Storington,
    - Hampton,
    - Fering,
    - Barpham,
    - Barham,
    - Billingſhurſt,
    - Rudgwick.
  - Bramber,
    - Horſham,
    - Shoram,
    - Steening,
    - Tarring,
    - Shipley,
    - Etchingfold,
    - Ruſper.
  - Lewes,
    - Lewes,
    - Cuxfield,
    - Brighthemſton,
    - Myching,
    - Offord,
    - Stamner,
    - Porſtad,
    - Wivelsfeld,
    - Balcombe,
    - Crawley.
  - Pevenſey,
    - Eaſt Grinſted,
    - Buckhurſt,
    - Eaſt-Bourn,
    - Mayfield,
    - Fletching,
    - Haylſham,
    - Biſhopſton,
    - Haſt Deane,
    - Pemſey.
  - Haſtings,
    - Winchelſey,
    - Rye,
    - Haſtings,
    - Battle,
    - Wartling,
    - Warbleton,
    - Euwood,
    - Burwaſh,
    - Flimwell,
    - Nordiam.

The

The Kingdom of the EAST ANGLES, which contained the Iceni, or Counties of

NORFOLK, as it is divided into the Hundreds of

East Flegg,	Yarmouth.
West Flegg,	Winterton.
Happinge,	Hicklinge.
Tunſtead,	North Walſham, Worſtead.
North Orpinham,	Cromere, Sheringham.
Holt,	Holt, Clay.
Greenhaw,	Walſingham, Wells.
Gallowe,	Burnham-Market.
Smithdon,	Soetham, Tichwell.
Febridge,	Linn, Caſtleriſing.
Brothercroſs,	Fawkenham, Baſham.
Laundiche,	Erxham.
Haynford,	Repenham.
South Orpingham,	Caſton, Aleſham.
Taverham,	Spikesworth.
Blofelde,	Burlingham, Tunſtall.
Clavering and Loddon,	Wheataker.
Humllarde,	Norwich, Higham.
Henſted,	Caſtor.
Forehoce,	Windham, Hingham.
Mitford,	Eaſt Derenham.
Wayland,	Watton.
South Greenhowe,	Swaffam.
Clacklowſe,	Downham, Southrey.
Febridge in Merſhland,	Clenchwarton, Outwell.
Grimſhoo,	Hockhold.
Shoreham,	Buckenham, Thetford.
Giltcroſs,	Herlinge.
Dis,	Diſſe.
Depwade,	Moulton.
Eriſham,	Harlefton.

SUFFOLK, where are the Hundreds of

Mutford,	Keſſland.
Blithing,	Sowould, Dunwich, Haleſworth.
Lothingland,	Leyſtoft.
Wagford,	Beckles, Bungey.
Hoxon,	Wiagfeld.
Plumesgate,	Saxmundham, Alderburgh, Otford.
Looes,	Framlingham.
Treadling,	Debenham.
Harteſmere,	Aye, Mendelſham, Baddeſdale.
Blackborne,	Theſworth, Ewſton.
Lackford,	Brandon, Mildnall, New-Market.
Risbridge,	Haverill, Clare.
Thingoe,	Bury.
Theedwaſtrie,	Wulpett.
Baber,	Neyland, Lavenham, Sudbury.
Cosford,	Bilſton, Hadley.
Stow,	Stow.
Boſmere,	Ipſwich, Needham.
Carleford,	Ruſhmere.
Wilforde,	Woodbridge.
Colnes,	Felixton.
Sampford,	Harkſted, and Stretford.

CAMBRIDGE-SHIRE, with its Hundreds of

Chilford,	Lynton.
VVitlesford,	Sawſted.
Triplowe,	Hawkeſton.
Arningford,	Royſton.
VVetherlee,	Barington.
Stow,	Caxton, and Gamlingay.
Papworth,	Cunnyngton, and Papworth.
North Stow,	Longſtanton.
Cheſterton,	Cheſterton.
Flendiſh,	Cambridge.
Radeſley,	VVillingham.
Cheveley,	Ditton.
Stane,	Botſham.
VVichford,	Reche, and Merſh.
Staplehow,	Sotham.
Ely,	Ely, and Littleport.
VVisbich,	VVisbich.

The

The Kingdom of the EAST SAXONS, which contained the Trinobantes, or Counties of

ESSEX, in which are the Hundreds of

- Becontree, — Barkin.
- Havering Liberty, — Rumford.
- Chaford, — Brentwood.
- Barnstable, — Horden, Billerekey.
- Rochford, — Rayleigh, Foulnels.
- Dengye, — Maldon, St. Peters Chappel.
- Chelmesford, — Chelmesford, Ingerstone.
- Onger, — High Onger.
- Waltham, — Waltham Abby, Epping-street.
- Harlow, — Harfield.
- Dunmow, — Dunmow, Thaxted.
- Clavering, — Clavering.
- Utlisford, — Walden, Audley-End.
- Freshwell, — Hempsted.
- Hingkford, — Bayntre, Halsted, Hemingham Castle.
- Witham, — Easterford, Witham.
- Thurstable, — Totham, Tolesbury.
- Lexden, — Colchester, Copshall.
- Winstred, — Verley, Marsey.
- Tenderidge, — Harwich, Manytree, Horsey-Isle.

MIDDLESEX, which is divided into the Hundreds of

- Osleston, — London, Westminster, Chelsey, Kensington, Fulham, Hamersmith, Chesewick, Acton, Hamsted, Highgate, Finchley, Newington, Hackney, Islington.
- Edmonton, — Tottenham, Edmonton, Hadley, South Myms.
- Goare, — Hendon, Edgware, Harrow-hill.
- Elthorne, — Brentford, Uxbridge, Hillington, Hounslow, Ryslipe, Hayes, Harlington.
- Istleworth, — Istleworth, Twittenham, Hounslow, Heston.
- Spetthorne, — Stanes, Stanwell, Bedfont, Sunbury, Hampton Court.

HARTFORDSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Hartford, — Hartford, Hodsdon.
- Caisho, — St. Albans, Watford, Rickmansworth, Barnet, Totteridge.
- Dacorum, — Hemsted, Berkamsted, Tringe.
- Hitching, — Hitching, Kempton.
- Broadwater, — Baldock, Hatfield, Stevenedge, Walkorn.
- Odsey, — Royston, Wallington.
- Edwinstree, — Barkway, Buntingford, Hadham.
- Braghing, — Ware, Puckeridge, Bishops Stratford, Sabsworth.

Part of the Kingdom of the WEST SAXONS, which contained the

- DAMONII, or Counties of,
  - CORNWAL, with its Hundreds of
    - Penwith, — Penſans, St. Ives, Market Jew
    - Kerrier, — Penryn, Helſton.
    - Powder, — Truro, Grampond, Foy.
    - Pider, — St. Colombe, Padſtow.
    - Trigg, — Bodman.
    - Weſt, — Weſtloe, Liskerd, Liſthyel.
    - Eaſt, — Launſton, Saltaſh, St. Germain.
    - Leſnewth, — Boſcaſtle, Cameliford.
    - Stratton, — Stratton.
  - DEVONSHIRE, which may be conſidered as it is divided into the Hundreds of
    - Roborough, — Plimouth.
    - Taveſtock, — Taveſtock.
    - Lyſton, — Lyſton, Okehampton.
    - Black Torrington, — Houlſworthy, Hatherlay.
    - Hartland, — Horton.
    - Shebbeare, — Bediford.
    - Fremington, — Torrington.
    - Banton, — Ilfarcomb, Barnſtable, Combmerton.
    - Sherwell, — Sherwel.
    - South Moulton, — Moulton.
    - Witheridge, — Chimligh.
    - Bampton, — Bampton.
    - Tiverton, — Tiverton.
    - Halberton, — Halberton.
    - Hayrudge, — Columbton, Bradmuch.
    - Hemyocke, — Hemyocke.
    - Axmiſter, — Axmilter, Huniton.
    - Cullington, — Culliton.
    - St. Mary Otery, — Otre.
    - Eaſt Budleigh, — Sidmouth.
    - Clifton, — Broadclift.
    - Weſt Budley, — Cadbury.
    - Crediton, — Crediton.
    - North Tanton, — Bow, Burrington.
    - Winckley, — VVinckley.
    - Wonford, — Exeter, Chegford.
    - Exminſter, — Chidlay.
    - Tinbridge, — Morton, Aſhburnton.
    - Heytor, — Newton Buſſel.
    - Colridge, — Dartmouth, Tornes.
    - Stanborough, — Kingsbridge, Dodbrook.
    - Armington, — Modberry.
    - Plympton, — Plymptou,
- DUROTRIGES, or County of
  - DORCESTERSHIRE, with its ſeveral Hundreds in each diviſion,
    - Bridport diviſion,
      - Whitechurch, — Lime, VVitchurch.
      - Beamiſter, — Beamiſter.
      - Redhaave, — Moſterne.
      - Eggarton, — Frampton.
      - Goderthorne, — Birdport.
    - Dorceſter diviſion,
      - George, — Dorcheſter.
      - Tollerford, — Everſhot.
      - Puddleton, — Piddlechinton.
      - Colliford, — VVeymouth, Cheſelton.
      - Ugſcombe, — Abbotsbury.
    - Sherburn diviſion
      - Sherborn, — Sherborn.
      - Redlane, — Sturmiſter.
      - Newton, — Tudborne.
      - Brownſel, — Lydlinch.
      - Yeatmiſter, — Yeatminſter.
      - Tottomb, — Cerne Abby.
      - Buckland, — Buckland.
      - Whiteway, — Middleton.
    - Shafton diviſion
      - Badbury, — Winbornmiſter.
      - Cogdeane, — Poole.
      - Hanly, — Hanly.
      - Cranborne, — Cranborne.
      - Knowlton, — Knowlton.
      - Upwimborne, — Shaftesbury.
    - Blanford diviſion
      - Pimperne, — Blandford.
      - Ruſhmore, — Wareham, Lulworth.
      - Barrow, — Whitlovington.
      - Coombeditch, — Bloxworth.
      - Beer, — Beer.
      - Winfrith, — Morton.
      - Rowbarrow, — Coyſe.
      - Haſler, — Aren.
- ATTREBATI, or County of
  - BERKSHIRE, with its Hundreds of
    - Faringdon, — Faringdon.
    - Shirvenham, — Shirvenham.
    - Lamborne, — Langborne.
    - Kantbury, — Hungerford.
    - Faircroſs, — Newbury.
    - Compton, — Eaſt Ilſey.
    - Wanting, — Wantage.
    - Ganfeld, — Puſay.
    - Oke, — Marcham.
    - Hormer, — Abbington.
    - Morton, — Wallingford.
    - Theate, — Inglefeld.
    - Reading, — Reading.
    - Charlton, — Barkham.
    - Sonning, — Okingham.
    - Wargrove, — Wargrove.
    - Bernerſh, — Remneham.
    - Bray, — Maidenhead.
    - Ripplemore, — Windſor.
    - Cookeham, — Binfeld.

Part

Part of the Kingdom of the WEST-SAXONS, which contained the BELGÆ, or Counties of

SOMERSETSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Chewe, — Briſtol.
- Portbury, — Clevedon.
- Hartcliff, and Bedminſter, — Barton.
- Wibertoke, — Axbridge.
- Chewton, — Penſford.
- Keynſham, — Caneſham.
- Bathfrom, — Bath.
- Wellow, — Phillips Norton.
- Frome, — Frowmſelwood.
- Kilmerſdon, — Stokeland.
- Bruton, — Bruton.
- Wells, and Welford, — Wells.
- Bempſton, — Marck.
- Brent, — Wrinton.
- North-Petherton, — Bridgwater, and Hugtſpil.
- Whitleigh, — Weſton.
- Glaſton, — Glaſtonbury.
- Whitſtone, — Shepton-Mallet.
- Norton Feris, — Wincaunton.
- Horethorne, — Herſington.
- Catſeſaſhe, — South Barrow, and Queens Camel.
- Somerton, — Somerton, and North Curry.
- Pitney, — Langport.
- Martock, — Martock, and Ilcheſter.
- Stone, — Evyll.
- Barwick, — Barwick.
- Coker, — Hardington.
- Houndsborough, — Weſt Chenock.
- Tintenhull, — South Petherton.
- Crewkerne, — Crewkerne.
- South Petherton, — South Petherton.
- Kingſbury, — Chard.
- Abdick, — Beacham, and Ilmiſter.
- Taunton, — Taunton.
- North Curry, — Wiveſcombe.
- Anderfield, — Brumfield.
- Canaington, — Stokeland Marſh.
- Willyton, and Fremanour, — Watcher, and Dulverton.
- Carhampton, — Dunſter, and Mynehead.
- Milverton, — Wellington, and Milverton.
- Bulſton, — Curryvivel.

WILTSHIRE; in which are the Hundreds of

- Malmesbury, — Malmesbury.
- Highworth, — Highworth, and Crekelade.
- Ramsbury, — Auburne.
- Kingsbridge, — Watton Baſſet, and Auburne.
- Selkley, — Marlborough.
- Calne, — Calne.
- Potterne, and Cannings, — Alington.
- Damerham, North, — Chriſt Malford.
- Chippenham, — Caſtlecombe, and Chipnam.
- Bradford, — Bradford.
- Melkesham, — Trubridge.
- Whorwelsdown, — North Bradley.
- Weſtbury, — Weſtbury.
- Swanborne, — Eaſt Lavington, and the Devizes.
- Kingſwarton, — Barbich.
- Elſtube, and Everly, — Everly.
- Amesbury, — Amesbury.
- Alderbury, — Winterſlow.
- Fruſtfield, — Stonley.
- Downton, — Downton.
- Underditch, — Saliſbury.
- Branch, and Dole, — Wilford.
- Harsbury, — Harsbury.
- Warminſter, — Warmiſter
- Damerham, — Munkſton Deverel.
- Mere, — Mere, and Hindon.
- Dauworth, — Swallowcliff.
- Chalke, — Norrinton.

HANTSHIRE; which may be conſidered as it is divided into the Hundreds of

- Cawden, and Cadworth, — Wilton.
- Chriſtchurch, — Chriſtchurch.
- Ringwood, — Ringwood.
- Fordingbridge, — Fordingbridge.
- New Foreſt, — Lymington.
- Redbridge, — Rumſey.
- Kingſunborne, — Rumſey, and Stokebridge.
- Budleſgate, — Crawley.
- Bartonſtacy, — Bartonſtacy.
- Hornor, — Tuſtan.
- Thornegate, — Boſſington.
- Andover, — Andover.
- Paſtrow, — Husborntar.
- Evinger, — Aſhmanſworth, and Whitechurch.
- Kingscleere, — Kingscleere.
- Holihort, — Silcheſter.
- Chuteley, — Wiſherborne.
- Baſingſtoke, — Baſingſtoke.
- Overton, — Overton.
- Micheldever, — Micheldever.
- Buntesborow, — Swarwatton.
- Barmanſpit, — Bradley.
- Odiham, — Odiham.
- Crundal, — Fernborow.
- Alton, — Alton.
- Selborne, — Hawkley.
- Sutton, — Alresford.
- Fawley, — Wincheſter.
- Eaſtermean, — Froxfield.
- Meanſtoke, — Meneſtock.
- Waltham, — Southampton, and Buſhwaltham.
- Mansbridge, — Hound.
- Titchfield, — Farnham.
- Portſdown, — Portſmouth.
- Finchdean, — Petersfield.
- Boſmere, — Southwood.

The Kingdom of the NORTHUMBERS, which contained the Brigantes, or Counties of

YORKSHIRE, with its several Hundreds, as they may be considered in the

West Riding,
- Staneliffe — Settle, Skipton.
- Claro — Rippon, Borough-bridge, Ripley, Knaresburgh.
- Anſly — Burſhopthrop.
- Barkſton — Sherborne, Selby, and Tadcaſter.
- Skirack — Ledes, Otley.
- Morley and Agbrigg — Halyfax, Bradforth, Wakefield.
- Oſgodcroſs — Pontefract, Snathe.
- Strafforth — Doncaſter, Rotheram, Sheaffeld, Bautre, and Tickhill.
- Staincroſs — Barneſley.

North Riding,
- Gillingweſt — Richmond.
- Hangweſt — Midlam.
- Hangcaſt — Maſham, Bedall.
- Gillingcaſt — Langton great.
- Halikeld — Tanfield.
- Bulmar — York.
- Burford — Thruske.
- Allerton — Alverton.
- Langbargh and Whitby-ſtrand — Yarum, Stokesley, Gisburgh, Whitbye.
- Pickering — Scarbrough, Pickering.
- Rydale — Malton, Hovingham, Helmeley, Kirby-moreſide.

East Riding,
- Buckcroſs — Setterington.
- Dickering — Bridlington, Kilham, Flamborough-head.
- Holderneſs — Headen, Sprunhead.
- Hunſley — Hull, Beverley.
- Bainton — Bainton.
- Harthill — Pocklington.
- Wilton — Wilton.
- Holme — Wighton.
- Ouſe and Darwent — Stillingfleet.
- Howdenſher — Howden.

LANCASHIRE, where are the Hundreds of
- Loynſedale — Lancaſter, and Hornby, Ulverton, and Dalton, Hawkshead, Sunderland-point.
- Amoundernes — Garſtrange, Kirkham, Preſton.
- Blackborne — Blackborne, and Haſtingde, Colne, Bruntley, and Cletherow.
- Layland — Wigan, and Eccleſton.
- Salford — Manchester, and Rochdale, Bolton, and Bury.
- West Darby — Ormiskirke, Lerpoole, Warrington.

The Biſhoprick of DURHAM (as yet not divided into Hundreds,) whoſe chief places are — Durham, Hartpoole, Biſhops-Aukland, Darlington, Stayndrop, Bernard-Caſtle, Derwenfore-haven, Sunderland, Stockton.

CUMBERLAND, (as yet not ſevered into Hundreds) hath for its principal places, — Carliſle, Penreth, Brampton, Wigton, Wetheral, Ireby, Abby, Holme, Keſwick, Kirkſwald, Cockermouth, Irton, Werkington, Bottle, Egremond, Whitehaven, Ravenglaſs, and Blennerhaſſet.

WESTMORELAND, (alſo as yet not divided into Hundreds) whoſe chief places are — Apleby, Burgh, Kirby-Stephens, Orton, Kirby-Landall, Burton, Kendal, and Amblefide.

NORTHUMBERLAND, (as yet alſo not ſevered into Hundreds) hath for its noted places — Newcaſtle, Tinmouth-haven, and Caſtle, Hexham, Morpeth, Alnewick, Barwick, Woller, Holy Iſland, Cocket Iſland.

Part of the Kingdom of the MERCIA, which contained the

ICENI, or County of

HUNTINGTONSHIRE, with its Hundreds of

- Norman-croſs, —— Yaxley, and Ramſey.
- Huntington, —— Huntington, and St. Ives.
- Leightenſtone, —— Kimbolton.
- Toſland, —— St. Neats, and Godmanchester.

CATEJULARI, or Counties of

BUCKINGHAMSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Stoke, —— Colbroke, and Eaton.
- Burnham, —— Beconfield, High-Wickham, and Amersham.
- Desburrow, —— Marlow.
- Aleſbury, —— Aleſbury, and Wendover.
- Aſhenden, —— Aſhenden.
- Buckingham, —— Buckingham.
- Cotſlow, —— Winſlow, and Ivingo.
- Newport, —— Newport, Stony-Stratford, and Oulney.

BEDFORDSHIRE; in which are the Hundreds of

- Stodden, —— Ryſeley.
- Wylly, —— Bedford.
- Barford, —— Barford.
- Biggleſwad, —— Biggleſwade, and Porton.
- Wixamtree, —— Cardington.
- Redbornſtock, —— Ampthill.
- Flitt, —— Luton.
- Clifton, —— Shelford.
- Manſhead, —— Woburne, Tuddington, Leighton, and Dunſtable.

RUTLANDSHIRE, with its Hundreds of

- Alſtoe, —— Burley.
- East —— Caſterton.
- Martinſley, —— Barroughdon.
- Wrangedyke, —— Uppingham.
- Oukhamſook, —— Oakham.

NORTHAMPTONSHIRE, which may be conſidered as it is divided into the Hundreds of

- Nafſaburgh, —— Peterborough.
- Willbrooke, —— Naſſington.
- Corby, —— Rockingham.
- Polbrook, —— Oundle.
- Navisford, —— Thrapſton.
- Huxloe, —— Kettering.
- Orlingsbury, —— Walgrave.
- Rothwell, —— Rothwel.
- Guilsborow, —— Lilborn.
- Fauſley, —— Daventrey.
- Newbottlegrove, —— Newbottle.
- Shephoe, —— Northampton.
- Hampfordſhoe, —— Wellingboroc.
- Highamferyes, —— Higham-Ferrers.
- Cleley, —— Graſton.
- Towceſter, —— Towceſter.
- Wimerſley, —— Wotton.
- Norton, —— Blakeſly.
- Warden, —— Edgcote.
- [illegible] —— Brackley.

LEICESTERSHIRE, with its Hundreds of

- West Goſcote, —— Aſhby de la Zouch, Montſorel, & Loughborow.
- East Goſcote, —— Leiceſter.
- Framland, —— Melton Moubray, and Waltham on the Would.
- Gartery, —— Hallaton, Harburgh, and Billeſden.
- Guthlaxton, —— Lutterworth, and Bennones.
- Sparkinhoe, —— Boſworth, and Hickley.

CORITANI, or Counties of

LINCOLNSHIRE, as it is divided into the parts of

Lindſey, with its Hundreds of

- Manbie, —— Burton, and Kirton.
- Yarburgh, —— Barton, Glamfordbridge, and Limberg.
- Brodley, —— Grimsby, and Thongcaſter.
- Ludbrough, —— Cawthorp.
- Walchcroſt, —— Binbrook.
- Aſlacoe, —— Biſhops-Norton.
- Corringham, —— Gainesburgh.
- Well, —— Brampton.
- Lawris, —— Lincoln.
- Waggoe, —— Kande.
- Gartre, —— Horncaſtle, and Market-Stanton.
- Louthask —— Saltsſlet, Louthe, and Market-Roſen.
- Calceworth, —— Alford.
- Candleſhoe, —— Waynfleet, and Burgh.
- Hill, —— Barrington.
- Bullingbrook, —— Bullingbrook, and Spilby.
- Horncaſtle, —— Horncaſtle.

Keſteven, where are the Hundreds of

- Lango, —— Blackney.
- Bothby, —— North Hickham.
- Loveden, —— Beckingham.
- Flaxwel, —— Sleford.
- Aſhwardhurn, —— Howel.
- Wivebridge, —— Ancaſter.
- Grantham, —— Grantham, and Belvoir Caſtle.
- Aveland, —— Folkingham, and Bourn.
- Beltiſloe, —— Corbye.

Holland, with its Hundreds

- Neſs, —— Market-Deping, and Stamford.
- Billowe, —— Spalding, Holbeck, and Crowland.
- Kirton, —— Dunington, and Kirton.
- Skirkeck, —— Boſton.

NOTTINGHAMSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Northclay, —— Redford.
- Baſſetlaw, —— Worksop, and Blyth.
- Southclay, —— Darlington.
- Thurgarton, —— Nottingham, and Southwell.
- Newwark, —— Newwark.
- Bingham, —— Bingham.
- Ruſhclyfe, —— Codlingſtock.
- Broxtow, —— Maunsfeld.

DARBYSHIRE, with its Hundreds of

- Highpeake, —— Tideſwal, Bakewel, and Chaple in the Frith
- Scarſdale, —— Chesterfeld, Alfreton, and Bolſover.
- Wookſworth, —— Wirkeſworth, and Aſhborne.
- Appletree, —— Sherley.
- Morleſton, —— Darby.
- Reppington, —— Newton Sony.

Part

Part of the Kingdom of MERCIA, which contained the

DOBIMI, or Counties of

OXFORDSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of:

- Banbury, — Banbury.
- Bloxam, — Milcombe, and Hooknorton.
- Chadlington, — Chippingnorton.
- Wotton, — Oxford, Woodstock, and Deddington.
- Ploughley, — Burcester.
- Bullington, — Cuddesden.
- Bampton, — Burford, Witney, and Bampton.
- Dorchester, — Dorchester.
- Tame, — Tame.
- Lewknor, — Emington.
- Pirton, — Watlington.
- Ewelme, — Warborg.
- Binfield, — Henley.

GLOUCESTERSHIRE; which may be considered as it is divided into the Hundreds of

- Kyftgate, — Winchcombe, and Camden.
- Tewksbury, — Tewksbury.
- Botlos, — Newnham, and Newent.
- Westminster, — Apperley.
- St. Briavels, — Dean Magna.
- Westbury, — Westbury.
- Blideslow, — Blakney, or Blakley.
- Cleve, — Cleve.
- Tibolston, — Beckford.
- Chettenham, — Chettenham.
- Kingsbarton, — Sherenton.
- Dudstone, — Gloucester.
- Rapisgate, — Elston.
- Bradly, — Lech.
- Slaughter, — Stow on the Would.
- Britlesbarrow, — Lechlade.
- Crotherne, — Cirencester.
- Biesley, — Stroud, and Panswick.
- Whitstone, — Leonard, and Stanley.
- Longtree, — Minchinhampton, and Tetbury.
- Grombaldash, — Chipping-sodsbury, Marsfeld, and Horton.
- Wotton, — Dursley, and Wotton Undercedge.
- Glocester, — Sutton.
- Berkley, — Barkley.
- Thornbury, — Thornbury, and Faithfield.
- Swinshed & Langley, — Littleton.
- Henbury, — Compton Grenuyld.
- Barton, — Bristol.
- Pocklechurch, — Pucklechurch.

WORCESTERSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Halfeshire, — Sturbridge, and Kiderminster. Droitwich, and Bromesgrove.
- Dodingtre, — Bewdly, and Tenbury.
- Worcester, — Worcester.
- Upton, — Upton.
- Pershor, — Pershore.
- Oswalderstow, — Throgmorton.
- Blakenhurst, — Evesholme.

WARWICKSHIRE; with its Hundreds of

- Hemlingford, — Solihul, Bermicham, Polesworth, Tamworth, Colchil, Suttoncofeld, Atherton, and Nun-Eaton.
- Coventry, — Coventry.
- Knightlow, — Rugby, and Southam.
- Kyneton, — Warwick, Kyneton, and Shipton.
- Barlichway, — Bitford, Stretford on the Avon, Aulcester, and Henley in Arden.

STAFFORDSHIRE; with its Hundreds of

- Totmonsloe, — Leeke, Chedle, Uttoxater, and Pagits Bromley.
- Dyrehil, — Stafford, Newcastle, Eccleshal, and Stow.
- Cudleston, — Brewood, Ridley, and Penkrich.
- Seisdon, — Wolverhampton. (Tamworth.
- Offelow, — Lichfield, Burton on Trent, Walsal, and Legrange.

CORNAVII, or Counties of

CHESHIRE; where are the Hundreds of

- Wyrehal, — Edesbury, Frodesham, and Tarvin.
- Broxton, — Chester, and Malpas.
- Nantwich, — Nantwich.
- Northwich, — Northwitch, Middlewich, Sambach, and Congleton.
- Macclesfield, — Macklesfield, and Stopford.
- Bucklow, — Knottesford, and Altringham.

SHROPSHIRE; which may be considered as it is divided into the Hundreds of

- North-Bradford, — Whitechurch, Draton, Prees, and Wem.
- Pimhill, — Elsmere.
- Oswestre, — Oswestre.
- Ford, — Strettons.
- Chirbury, — Chirbury.
- Purslow, — Bishops-Castle, and Shipton.
- Clunn, — Bettus.
- Munslow, — Didlesbury.
- Overs, — Ludlow.
- Stottesden, — Bridgnorth, and Clebury.
- Shrewsbury, — Shrewsbury.
- Wenlock, — Wenlock.
- Condover, — Stapleton.
- Bridford, — Newport, and Wellington.
- Brimstry, — Bonyngal.

HEREFORDSHIRE; in which are the Hundreds of

- Wigmore, — Kyneton.
- Hunlington, — Huntington.
- Ewiaslacy, — Hardwick.
- Webstre, — Madley.
- Wormelow, — Great Birch.
- Greytree, — Ros.
- Radlow, — Lidbury.
- Grimsworth, — Hereford.
- Broxash, — Bramyeard.
- Wolsey, — Lemster.
- Stretford, — Pembridge, and Webley.

WALES,

WALES, which may be considered as it is divided into

NORTH WALES; where are the Counties of

- FLINTSHIRE, as yet not divided into Hundreds; it hath for its chief places: St. Asaph, Flint, Cajervis.
- DENBIGHSHIRE, as yet also not divided into Hundreds, hath for its chief places: Denbigh, Llanroft, Ruthin, Wrexham.
- CAERNARVANSHIRE, also as yet not severed into Hundreds, whose chief places are: Carnarvan, Bangor, Aberconwey, Newin, Pulhely, and Krekyth, Bardesey Island.
- ISLE of ANGLESEY, with its Hundreds of:
  - Tallibollion, — Holyhead.
  - Llyfon, — Llandrogarn.
  - Tyndaythwy, — Bewmaris.
  - Twrkelyn, — Llandourodok.
  - Meney, — Newburgh,
  - Maltraeth, — Aberfraw.
- MERIONETHSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of:
  - Ardydwy, — Harlech.
  - Talibout, — Dolgelhe.
  - Yftymanale, — Aberdowye.
  - Mowthy, — Maynloyd.
  - Penlyn, — Bala.
  - Ydeirmon, — Corwen.
- MONTGOMERYSHIRE; in which are the Hundreds of:
  - Mechavy, — Llanvilling.
  - Yftrondmarchel, — Montgomery, Welshpoole.
  - Kery, — Kery.
  - Kidriorn, — Newtown.
  - Kare Kynion, — Llandaguan.
  - Kyfy Log, — Machenlet.
  - Yrroftly, — Llanidios.

SOUTH WALES; in which are the Counties of

- RADNORSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of:
  - Rayadergowy, — Rayadergowy.
  - Knighton, — Knighton.
  - Kevenlice, — Llanbadern.
  - Radnor, — New Radnor, Preftaine.
  - Painscaftle, — Llanhedder.
  - Collowini, — Dyffart.
- BRECKNOCKSHIRE, with its Hundreds of:
  - Bealt, — Bealt.
  - Talgarth, — Hay.
  - Merthye, — Merterkynok.
  - Dyvynock, — Divynock.
  - Penkelly, — Brecknock.
  - Crickhole, — Crecowell.
- CARDIGANSHIRE, with its Hundreds of:
  - Tredvoir, — Cardigan, Cardigan Island.
  - Moythen, — Llanbeder.
  - Pennarth, — Tregaron.
  - Llanylar, — Llanrufted.
  - Llanbadarn, — Aberyfthwyth.
- PEMBROOKSHIRE, which is divided into the Hundreds of:
  - Kemes, — Newport.
  - Kilgarvan, — Kilgarvan.
  - Dewyfland, — St. Davids, Ramfey Island, the Bifhop and his Clerks.
  - Dungledy, — Lanheden, Wifton.
  - Rowfe, — Haverford, weft, Rofemarket, Scaline Island, Stockholme Ifle.
  - Nerberth, — Tenby and Narberth.
  - Caftle Martin, — Pembroke, Caldey Island.
- CAERMARDENSHIRE; where are the Hundreds of:
  - Derllys, — Kancharne.
  - Elluet, — Caermarden, and Newcaftle.
  - Kidwellye, — Kidwyly, Llanneithye.
  - Perue, — Llanymdofry, Llangadok.
  - Cayo, — Llandilouawre.
  - Cathinok, — Abergerlech.
- GLAMORGANSHIRE; in which are the Hundreds of:
  - Weft Gowre, — Swanfey and Penrife, Mumbles point, Pennarth point, Oxwich point, Wormshead point.
  - Llangevelach, — Llanfamled.
  - Neath, — Aberavon, and Neeth.
  - Newcaftle, — Bridgend.
  - Ogmore, — Ogmore Caftle, Naft point.
  - Cowbridge, — Cowbridge.
  - Denispowis, — Porkerry Caftle, Barry Island, Sylye Ifle.
  - Cardiff, — Cardiff, Landaff.
  - Caerfily, — Caerphilly.
  - Lantriffent, — Lantriffent.
- MONMOUTHSHIRE, (now an Englifh County,) where are the Hundreds of:
  - Bergaveny, — Abergavenney.
  - Skenfrith, — Mounmoth.
  - Ragland, — Ragland.
  - Caldicot, — Chepftow, Goldcliffe,
  - Uske, — Uske, Carlion.
  - Wenlooge, — Newport.

ENG.

ENGLAND.

Small Isles belonging to *Great Britain.*

THE Kingdom of *England*, with that of *Scotland*, forms an Island, which bears the name of *Great Britain*; unto which belongeth a vast number of lesser *Isles*, which may be considered under four heads or sorts, *viz.* the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, the *Sorlings*, and the Isles of *Scilly*, with those of the *Sporades*. All which said *Isles*, with that of *Ireland*, are situate between the 9*th* and the 23*th degrees* of *Longitude*, and the 50*th* and 59*th* of *Latitude*.

England is divided from *Scotland* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, a line being drawn from the one to the other; and on all other sides it is begirt with the Sea.

Its extent and division.

The extent and form of these *Isles*, with their situation to each other, doth appear in the *Map*, to which I refer the Reader.

But 'tis probable that some may judge the *Maps* false, for that the true *Geographical* distances of places are lesser than the *Itinerary*. But these Reasons are sufficient to satisfie any to the contrary, 1. the unpassable *Woods*, which lie between places; 2. the high *Mountains* and low *Vallies*; 3. the *Marishes* or *Boggs*; 4. the *Rivers* or *Ponds*; and 5. the *Parks*, or other enclosures, which cause the Traveller to leave his direct line and go about.

It may be divided into two (though unequal) parts, to wit, *England* and *Wales*, separated each from other by the *Severn* and a line drawn to the *Wye*; but the more certain division was by a huge Ditch (which beginning at the Influx of the *Wye* into the *Severn*, reached to *Chester*, where the *Dee* disburthens its self into the *Sea*) 80 miles in length, made by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, and called *Claudh Offa*.

This Kingdom of *England* is severed into 52 *Shires* or *Counties*, of which 12 make the Principality of *Wales*; and these Counties are subdivided into *Hundreds*, *Wapentakes*, or *Wards*; and those again into *Parishes*, which comprehend *Boroughs*, *Villages*, *Hamlets*, *Endships*, or *Tithings*.

Its division according to the Circuits of the Judges.

England is also divided into six parts, for the Circuits of the 12 *Itinerary Judges*, two of which twice every year are alotted for each Circuit, in the chief Town or Towns of each County in the said Circuit, to sit and hear Causes, and to administer Justice for the ease of the Subject; and according to this division, one Circuit doth contain the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerset*, *Devon*, *Cornwall*, *Dorset*, and *Hantshire*. Another, those of *Berks*, *Oxford*, *Glocester*, *Monmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worcester*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*. Another, those of *Kent*, *Surry*, *Sussex*, and *Hartford*. Another, those of *Bedford*, *Bucks*, *Cambridge*, *Huntington*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*. Another, those of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leicester*, and *Warwick*. And another, those of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Westmoreland*, and *Lancaster*. The two remaining Counties, *viz. Middlesex* and *Cheshire* being exempted, the one for its vicinity to *London*, and the other as having its peculiar *Judges* for the administration of Justice.

Its division according to the Spiritual Jurisdiction.

For *Spiritual* or *Ecclesiastical Jurisdiction*, this Kingdom is divided into two Archbishopricks, *viz. Canterbury* and *York*, under which are 25 Bishops; of which 22 belong to that of *Canterbury*, who is Primate and Metropolitan of all *England*, and but 3 to that of *York*. Now what these *Bishopricks* are, this following Table will declare unto you.

A Catalogue of the Archbiſhopricks and Biſhopricks of England *and* Wales; *together with what Counties are under their Juriſdictions, and what Pariſhes and Impropriations are in each Dioceſs.*

Archbiſhopricks and Biſhopricks,	Counties under each of their Juriſdictions.	Pariſhes in each Dioceſs,	Impropriations in each Dioceſs,
Canterbury hath	*Canterbury*, and part of *Kent*,	257	140
York hath	*Yorkſhire* and *Nottinghamſhire*,	581	336
London hath	*Eſſex*, *Middleſex*, and part of *Hartfordſhire*,	623	189
Durham hath	*Durham* and *Northumberland*,	135	87
Worceſter hath	*Worceſterſhire*, and part of *Warwickſhire*,	241	76
Wincheſter hath	*Hantſhire*, *Surrey*, Iſles of *Wight*, *Garnſey* and *Jerſey*,	362	131
Bath & *Wells* hath	*Somerſetſhire*,	388	160
Oxford hath	*Oxfordſhire*,	195	88
Bangor hath	*Carnarvanſhire*, *Angleſey*, *Merionethſhire*, and part of *Denbighſhire*,	107	36
Rocheſter hath	part of *Kent*,	98	36
Ely hath	*Cambridgſhire*,	141	75
Chicheſter hath	*Suſſex*, and part of *Hartfordſhire*,	250	112
Saliſbury hath	*Wiltſhire* and *Berkſhire*,	248	109
Lincoln hath	*Lincolnſhire*, *Leiceſterſhire*, *Bedfordſhire*, *Huntingtonſhire*, *Buckinghamſhire*, and part of *Hartfordſhire*,	1255	577
St. Aſaph hath	part of *Flintſhire*, and part of *Denbighſhire*,	121	19
St. Davids hath	*Pembrookſhire* and *Carmarthenſhire*,	308	120
Peterborough hath	*Northamptonſhire* and *Rutlandſhire*,	293	91
Landaff hath	*Glamorganſhire*, *Monmouthſhire*, *Brecknockſhire*, and part of *Radnorſhire*,	177	98
Carliſle hath	part of *Cumberland*, and part of *Weſtmerland*,	92	18
Exeter hath	*Devonſhire*, *Exeter* City, and *Cornwall*,	604	239
Cheſter hath	*Cheſhire*, *Richmondſhire*, *Lancaſhire*, part of *Cumberland*, *Weſtmoreland*, *Flintſhire*, and part of *Denbighſhire*,	256	101
Briſtol hath	*Dorſetſhire*, and the City of *Briſtol*,	236	64
Norwich hath	*Norfolk* and *Suffolk*,	1121	385
Glouceſter hath	*Gloceſterſhire*,	267	125
Hereford hath	*Herefordſhire*, part of *Shropſhire*, *Worceſterſhire* in part, and part of *Radnorſhire*,	313	166
Coventry and *Lichfield* hath	*Staffordſhire*, *Derbyſhire*, *Warwickſhire*, and part of *Shropſhire*	557	250
	Beſides peculiar to the Dioceſs of *Canterbury*,	57	14

To theſe may be added the Biſhoprick of *Sodor* in the Iſle of *Man*, under the Archbiſhoprick of *York*, but hath no place or Vote in *Parliament*.

Its fertility and commodities.

ENGLAND is a Kingdom bleſt with a ſweet and temperate Air, and for the generality of a fertil Soil, and very grateful to the Husbandman, abounding in all things neceſſary for the uſe of Man, both for Food and Rayment, as *Corn, Cattle, Fowl, Fiſh, Fruit, Roots*, &c. In the bowels of the got elſe-Earth are ſtore of excellent Mines of *Lead, Tin, Iron, Copper, Black-Lead*, not where in *Europe, Coal*, and ſome of *Silver*. It alſo produceth *Hops, Linnen-Cloth, Tallow, Hides, Leather, Calves-skins, Lamb-skins, Sheep-skins, Cony-skins*, and ſome *Furrs*; alſo *Wax, Stockings, Hats, Saffron, Hony, Madder, Butter, Cheeſe, Herrings, Pilchers*, and *Barrel-Cod*; but above all, *Wool*, of which is made great abundance of excellent *Cloth, Serges, Bays, Kerſeys, Worſteds*, and the like Manufactures, which find great vent in Forreign parts; and for Building it affordeth all Materials.

The Weights.

The *Weights* currant in this Kingdom are of two ſorts, *viz. Troy* and *Averdupois*. Of *Troy* 24 grains make a penny-weight, 20 penny-weight an ounce, and 12 ounces a pound, from which pound *wet Meaſures* are derived, a pint making a pound: and by this weight, *Gold, Silver, Silk, Pearl, Precious Stones, Bread*, &c. are weighed. By the *Averdupois* is weighed *Butter, Cheeſe, Fleſh, Tin, Iron, Fruits*, and generally all garbled and ponderous Commodities; and this weight is reduced into ſeveral denominations, as *Tuns, Hundreds, Quarters, Pounds, Ounces*, and *Drams*; where note, that 16 drams make an ounce, 16 ounces a pound, 28 pound a quarter, 4 quarters a hundred, and 20 hundred a Tun.

The Meaſures.

The *Meaſures* are three, *viz.* dry, liquid, and long; the *Dry* are thoſe in which all ſorts of dry Commodities are meaſured, and conſiſteth alſo of ſeveral denominations, as a pint, quart, gallon or half-peck, peck and buſhel, which containeth 64 pints, or 32 quarts, which is 8 gallons: alſo 8 Buſhels make a Quarter, 9 Buſhels a Fat of *Coals*, which is a quarter of a Chaldron, 5 Quarters a Wey, 10 Quarters a Laſt, and 20 Laſts a Combe.

Liquid Meaſures are thoſe in which liquid ſubſtances are meaſured, of which a Gill is the leaſt, next a quarter, half-pint, pint, quart, pottle, and gallon, which is 4 quarts. 8 Gallons make a Firkin of *Ale*, and 9 a Firkin of *Beer*; 2 Firkins a Kilderkin, 2 Kilderkins a Barrel, which is 36 gallons; 42 Gallons a Tierce, 63 Gallons a Hogſhead; 2 Hogſheads a Butt or Pipe, and 2 Buts a Tun. But note that the *Wine Meaſures* are of leſs content than the *Ale*, for 4 Gallons *Ale-meaſure* make 5 *Wine-meaſure*.

Long Meaſures are thoſe by which *Cloth, Stone, Glaſs, Land*, &c. is meaſured, of which an Inch, which is eſteemed the length of 3 *Barly* corns (though divided into leſs denominations, as half a quarter of an Inch) is the leaſt; and 12 Inches make a Foot, 3 Foot a Yard, which is divided into 16 parts or Nails; 3 Foot 9 Inches is an Ell, 6 Foot a Fathom, $5\frac{1}{2}$ yards, or $16\frac{1}{2}$ foot is a Rod, Perch, or Pole, 40 Rods a Furlong, 8 Furlongs an *Engliſh* Mile, which is 320 Poles, or 1760 Yards, or 1056 Paces, at 5 foot to the Pace.

Of Weights, Meaſurrs, &c. uſed in particular Commodities, viz.

The weight and meaſure of particular commodities.

A Fodder of *Lead* is $19\frac{1}{2}$ Hundred, a Load is 36 Formels or 175 Stone, and a Stone is $5\frac{1}{8}$ pound.

A Fagot of *Steel* is 120 pound, and a Barrel of *Gad-Steel* is 180 pound.

A Stone of *Glaſs* is 5 pound, and 24 Stone is a Seam.

A Laſt of *Herrings* is 12 Barrels, every Barrel 12 hundred, and every Hundred 120 *Herrings*.

A Laſt of *Powder* is 24 Firkins, every Firking weighing 100 pound neat, and the empty Firkin 12 pound.

A Load of *Timber*, is 50 foot of ſquare Timber.

A Stack of *Wood* is $3\frac{1}{2}$ foot in height, and 12 in length.

A Fagot of *Wood* ought to be 3 foot in length, and 14 inches about, beſides the Band.

Billets

Billets ought to be 3 foot and 4 inches in length, and the ſingle *Billet* muſt be 7½ inches about; the *Caſt-Billet* 10 inches, and the two *Caſt-Billets* 14 inches about. *Billets* of a Caſt muſt be nicked within 4 inches of the end, and *Billets* of 2 Caſts within 6 inches of the middle.

A full Sack of *Coals* is 3 Buſhels.

Ten Hides make a Dicker, and 20 Dickers a Laſt of *Leather*.

A Rowl of *Parchment* is 5 dozen.

Twenty Quires of *Paper* is a Ream, and 10 Reams a Bail.

A *Lath* muſt be 5 foot long, 2 inches broad, and half an inch thick.

A *Plain-Tile* muſt be 10½ inches in length, 6½ in breadth, and half an inch thick.

Roof-Tiles muſt be 13 inches in length, with a good and equal proportion of breadth and thickneſs.

Pan, or *Paving-Tiles*, muſt be 10 inches ſquare, and 1¼ inch thick.

A *Brick* muſt be 9 inches long, 4 broad, and 2 inches thick.

Nails are ſold by the 1000, and 120 to the hundred.

A Truſs of *Hay* is to weigh 56 pound, and 36 Truſſes make a Load.

A Truſs of *Straw* ſhould weigh 36 pound, and 36 Truſſes make a Load.

Courts of Judicature.

As concerning the Courts of *Juſtice* of this Kingdom, they may be conſidered under three ſorts, to wit, *Eccleſiaſtical*, *Temporal*, and one mixt of both; and under theſe three ſorts are comprehended all the Courts of *Judicature*. For *Eccleſiaſtical* Affairs, are the Synod or Convocation of the *Clergy*, and the *Provincial Synod*, which is kept in both Provinces of *Canterbury* and *York*, *viz.* the Courts of *Arches*, the Courts of *Audience*, the Courts of *Faculties*, the *Prerogative Court*, and the Court of *Peculiars*. The Courts for *Temporal* Affairs are of two kinds, *viz.* for *Law* and *Equity*: for *Law*, thoſe of the *Kings Bench*, *Common Pleas*, *Exchequer*, *Aſſizes*, Court of *Admiralty*, *Dutchy Court*, &c. And for *Equity*, thoſe of the *Chancery*, *Exchequer*, *Requeſts*, &c. And beſides theſe Courts, there are ſeveral other Inferiour Courts held in particular Liberties for the Inhabitants thereof. And all theſe Courts have their peculiar Judges and other ſub-Officers.

Precedency.

As concerning Precedency, all Nobles of each degree take place according to their Seniority of *Creation*, and not of *years*, unleſs deſcended of the *Blood Royal*, and then they take place of all others of that degree. Yet there are ſome that by their great Offices or Places at *Court*, or ſetting at the Helm of State, have precedency; as the *Lord Chancellor* or *Lord Keeper*, *Lord Preſident* of his Majeſties Council, *Lord Privy Seal*, *Lord high Chamberlain*, the *Earl Marſhal*, the *Lord Chamberlain*, the *Maſter of the Horſe*, &c.

Precedency may be thus obſerved; The *King*, who is the fountain of Honour; the *Prince* of *England*, who is eldeſt Son to the King, and is born Duke of *Cornwal*, and about the age of 17 years is uſually created *Prince* of *Wales*: *Princes* of the *Blood Royal*, who are the Sons, Brothers, Uncles, and Nephews of the *King*. The *Archbiſhop* of *Canterbury*, the *Lord Chancellor* or *Lord Keeper*; the *Archbiſhop* of *York*, *Lord Treaſurer* of *England*, *Lord Preſident* of the *Privy Council*, *Lord Privy Seal*, *Dukes*, *Marqueſſes*; *Dukes* eldeſt Sons, *Earls*, *Marqueſſes* eldeſt Sons, *Dukes* younger Sons, *Viſcounts*, *Earls* eldeſt Sons, *Marqueſſes* younger Sons, *Biſhops*, *Barons*, *Viſcounts* eldeſt Sons, *Earls* younger Sons, *Barons* eldeſt Sons, *Privy Counſellors* that are not Noblemen, Judges, *Viſcounts* younger Sons, *Barons* younger Sons, *Knights* of the *Garter* (if not otherwiſe dignified, as is rarely found,) *Knights Bannerets*, *Baronets*, *Knights* of the *Bath*, *Knights Batchelors*, *Colonels*, *Sergeants* at *Law*, *Maſters* of *Chancery*, and *Doctors* and *Eſquires*; and thoſe may be comprehended under five ſeveral heads, 1. *Eſquires* unto the Kings Body; 2. the deſcendants by the Male-line from a *Peer* of the Realm; 3. the eldeſt Sons of *Knights* of the *Garter*, *Baronets*, *Knights* of the *Bath*, and *Knights Batchelors*; 4. the two *Eſquires* attending on the *Knights* of the *Bath* at their *Knighting*; and 5. Officiary Eſquires, as *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, *Barreſters* at *Law*, *Lieutenant Colonels*, *Majors*, and *Captains*; and laſtly, *Gentlemen*.

At a *Marſhal Court* held at *White-Hall* the 18*th* of *March*, *An. Dom.* 1615. it was declared and concluded on, that there are two degrees that eſtabliſh and ſettle the Title of an *Eſquire* by birth; the one, the younger Sons of *Peers* of the Realm, which do inveſt into the Heirs-males deſcended from them the Name and Title of *Eſquires*; the other, the lineal Heir-male of a *Knights* Houſe: and theſe may juſtly aſſume and challenge the Title of *Eſquire* by birth; ſo that in all reaſon, the younger Sons of *Peers* are more worthy than *Knights*: ſo the ſetling of a Title proceeding from them, is more worthy and eminent than that derived from *Knights*.

The Dominions of *England*.

The Dominions of the King of *England* are very large, for beſides that of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, there are divers ſmall *Iſles* ſcituate nigh unto them, and do belong to one or the other; as the Iſles of *ORKNEY*, or *ORCADES*, in number 32, ſeated againſt the North-cape of *Scotland*. The Iſles of *SHETLAND*, alſo under the *Scotiſh* Dominions; the *HEBRIDES*, in number 44, ſeated Weſtwards of *Scotland*; the *SORLINGS*, ſeated in the Weſtrn-cape of *Cornwall*; the *SPORADES*, being ſeveral Iſles diſperſed about the *Britiſh Seas*, amongſt which theſe following are the chief: *MAN*, ſcituate between *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*; *JERSEY* and *GARNSEY* on the *French* Coaſt; *WIGHT*, part of *Hantſhire*; *PORTLAND*, part of *Dorſetſhire*; *STEEPHOLMS* and *FLATHOM*, in *Somerſetſhire*; *AIBBRE*, in *Cheſhire*; *DENNY*, in *Monmouthſhire*; *CODLEY*, in *Pembrokeſhire*; *ANGLESEY*, which is one of the *Welſh* Counties; *SHEPPEY*, in *Kent*; *NORTHEY*, *OSEY*, and *HORSEY*, in *Eſſex*; *FERNE*, *GOCKET*, and *HOLY Iſle*, in *Northumberland*; with ſeveral other ſmall *Iſles* not worth the naming, as indeed many of theſe are. Then in *Africa*, as *TANGIER*, *GUINEY*, &c. In the *Eaſt Indies* ſeveral places, though belonging to the *Eaſt India Company* of *London*; and in *America* large Dominions, as *NEW ENGLAND*, *NEW YORK*, *MARY LAND*, *VIRGINIA*, *CAROLINA*, all which are on the Continent; alſo divers *Iſles*, ſome of which are very conſiderable, as *JAMAICA*, *BARBADOS*, *BERMUDOS*, *ANTEGO*, *NEW FOUNDLAND*, &c. all which ſhall be treated of as they come in order; but firſt of the *Engliſh* Counties.

County of *Barkſhire* deſcribed.

BARKSHIRE, well clothed with Wood and watered with Rivers, is bleſt with a ſweet Air, hath a rich Soil fit both for *Corn* and *Paſturage*, (eſpecially in the Vale of *Whitehorſe*;) and generally the whole County, for profit and pleaſure, yieldeth to few Shires in *England*. The principal Commodity that this Shire produceth is *Cloth*, which finds great vent: and amongſt the Rivers that water the County, the *Iſis*, the *Oke*, and the *Kenet* (which affords excellent *Trouts*) are the chief.

It is ſevered into 20 Hundreds, in which are 140 Pariſhes, and hath 12 Market Towns.

Reading.

Reading, pleaſantly ſeated near the *Thames*, and on the *Kenet*, which is navigable for Barges to *London*, which adds much to its Trade, which is conſiderable, eſpecially for *Cloth* and *Mault*; 'tis a large Town, containing three Pariſh Churches, is beautified with well built Houſes, hath fair Streets, is well inhabited and hath a very conſiderable Market for Grains, *Malt*, *Hops*, and moſt Country commodities, on *Saturdays*. 'Tis a Town *Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, and as many *Burgeſſes* with ſub-Officers, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. 'Twas formerly beautified with a fair and rich Monaſtery, and a ſtrong Caſtle built by King *Henry* the Firſt, where (in the Collegiate Church of the *Abby*) himſelf and Queen, with *Maud* their Daughter, were interr'd; both which now lie in their ruins.

Windſor.

New Windſor, pleaſantly ſeated near the banks of the *Thames*, and adjoyning to a *Park* and *Foreſt* well ſtored with Game; 'tis a fair, large, well frequented

quented and inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and other ſub-Officers, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a very good Market for Proviſions on *Saturdays*. This Town is of great note for its ſtately *Caſtle* and *Royal Palace* of his Majeſty, ſeated on a great eminency, wherein is a *Chappel* for Devotion, a *Colledge* for Learning, and an *Alms-houſe* for decayed Gentlemen, called the *poor Knights of Windſor*; and famous is this *Caſtle*, not only for giving birth to ſo many of our Kings and Princes, but for being the place where the ceremony of the *Knights* of the *Garter* is ſolemnized on St. *Georges* day.

Nigh unto *New Windſor* is *Old Windſor*, a Town of greater antiquity, though not of ſo much ſplendor.

Newbury, well ſeated on the *Kennet*, and in a Champain Plain, a large, well inhabited and frequented *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen* and *Burgeſſes*; beautified with a ſpacious Market-place and well built Market-houſe, ſufficiently ſerved with *Corn*, *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and *Fowl*, on *Thurſdays*. This Town had its riſe out of the ancient *Spinæ*, now a ſmall Village near adjoyning, and called *Speenhamland*, and is of note for its *Jack of Newbury*, who got ſo great an eſtate by *Clothing*, which this Town at preſent is very conſiderable for. *Newbury.*

Wallingford, a Town of great antiquity, and in times paſt very ſtrong and large, containing four Pariſh Churches within its Walls, which took up a mile in circuit. 'Tis at preſent a large *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen* and ſub-Officers, enjoyeth large Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. 'Tis commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*: its *Market-houſe* or *Guild-hall*, with a *Free-School* lately erected, is a fine pile of building, where the *Major* and *Juſtices* keep their Courts. It enjoyeth a good Trade for *Mault* and *Corn*, which is tranſported in *Barges* to *London*; and its Markets, which are on *Tueſdays*, and *Fridays*, which is the chiefeſt, is very conſiderable for Grain and Proviſions. *Wallingford.*

Abington, the Shire-Town, ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*, over which it hath a Bridge; a Town of good antiquity and note in former time for its rich Abby. 'Tis at preſent well inhabited, frequented and traded unto, eſpecially for its *Mault*; is governed by a *Major*, enjoyeth ſeveral Priviledges, ſendeth a *Burgeſs* to Parliament, and hath two Markets weekly on *Mondays* and *Fridays*, which are well ſerved with *Corn*, *Mault*, and *Proviſions*. *Abington.*

This County is adorned with many fair and ſtately Buildings, hath been ſtrengthned with 6 *Caſtles*, and graced with three of his *Majeſties Houſes*. In this Shire is the Vale of *White-horſe*, one of the fruitfulleſt Vales in *England*.

BEDFORD, a County for the generality of a fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage; the North and North-eaſt parts being of a deep Clay, the South a Chiltern, and the midſt a Sandy-ridge of Hills well clothed with Wood. 'Tis a Country well inhabited and full of Gentry, which is occaſioned through its vicinity to the Counties of *Lincoln* and *Huntington*, which in ſome places are troubled with unhealthful Fogs. The chief Rivers that water it, are the *Owſe* and the *Iwell*. County of *Bedford* deſcribed.

This County is ſevered into 9 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 116 *Towns*, beſides 59 *Endſhips*; and of theſe Towns 10 have the conveniency of *Markets*.

Bedford, the Shire-Town, pleaſantly ſeated in a rich Soil and on the *Owſe*, which divideth it in the midſt, but joyned together by a fair *Stone-bridge*, which for the prevention of paſſage hath two *Gate-houſes*; it was formerly ſtrengthned with a *Caſtle*, but in its place is now a *Bowling-green*, much reſorted unto by the Gentry. The Town is large, numbring 5 *Pariſh Churches*, is well inhabited, and its Markets (which are on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*) are well reſorted unto; that on *Tueſdays* being conſiderable for living Cattle, and that on *Saturdays* as great for Corn and Proviſions. For Civil Magiſtrates, it *Bedford.*

is

is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Bayliffs*, 2 *Chamberlains*, a *Recorder*, and other ſub-Officers; enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament.

Dunſtable. *Dunſtable*, ſeated on a Hill in a dry Chalky-ground; yet by reaſon of a large Pond of ſtanding-water in every one of the 4 Streets of the Town, the Inhabitants find no want. 'Tis a place of great antiquity, and was of note in the time of the *Romans*, as appears by the *Coins* in the adjacent fields, oft digged up, which the Inhabitants call *Madning-money*; and is at preſent of ſome note for the great abundance of *Larks* here caught. It took the name of *Dunſtable* from one *Dun*, a notorious Robber, that uſed to peſter theſe parts. The Town is fair, well inhabited, full of *Inns*, as ſeated on the high Road, and its Market, which is on *Wedneſdays*, is very conſiderable for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*.

Bigleſwade. *Bigleſwade*, ſeated on the *Ivell*, which falleth into the *Owſe*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, and on the Road from *London* to *York*, which hath occaſioned it to be well provided with *Inns* for the reception of Paſſengers, and its Market on *Tueſdays* is at preſent very conſiderable for *Grain*, *Cattle*, *Milch-kine*, and *Proviſions*.

At *Sande* and *Cheſterfield*, near adjoyning, now a *Warren*, ſtood the famous City of *Salena* of the *Romans*; which, by the ruins of its Walls (in many places yet to be ſeen) makes it to have been of a large extent.

Buckinghamſhire deſcrib'd. *BUCKINGHAM*, a County for the generality of a fertil Soil; it is divided into two parts; that towards the South and Eaſt (which riſeth up into Hills, which are ſufficiently clothed with *Wood*) is called the *Chilterne*; the other, lying Northwards, (bein plain) is called the *Vale*, and is the moſt fruitful for Tillage and Paſturage, feeding great abundance of *Sheep* and *Cattle*. It is well watered with the *Owſe*, and the *Thames*. The ancient Inhabitants were the *Catejulanii*, who yielded themſelves to *Cæſar*, and upon the *Saxons* ſubduing the *Romans*, it became part of the Kingdom of the *Mercians*.

This County is ſevered into 8 *Hundreds*, in which are 185 *Pariſh Towns*, of which 13 have the conveniency of *Markets*.

Buckingham. *Buckingham*, well ſeated on the *Owſe*, which almoſt encircles it, over which it hath 3 fair *Stone-bridges*, and in a low fruitful ground. 'Twas once a Town of good ſtrength, and of ſome note for its ſtately *Prebend-houſe*, and its *Chappel* of St. *John Baptiſt*, founded by *Tho. Becket*; now made uſe of for a *Free-School*. It is at preſent a fair and well inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Bayliff*, 12 principal *Burgeſſes*, a *Steward*, &c. is dignified with the title of an *Earldom*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is well ſerved with all manner of *Fleſh*, *Corn*, and other Proviſions.

Stony-Stratford. *Stony-Stratford*, ſeated on the *Owſe*, a Town of great antiquity, being the *Romans Lactoradum*, and built upon the ancient *Cauſway* called *Watling-ſtreet*, and is at preſent of a good largneſs, containing 2 *Pariſh Churches*, is well accommodated with *Inns*, and hath a conſiderable Market for *Corn*, *Fleſh*, and ſome *Fiſh*, on *Fridays*.

Ailesbury. *Ailesbury*, ſeated on a branch of the *Tame*, and in a fertil *Vale*, ſo called, which feeds ſtore of *Sheep*. It is a fair and well inhabited *Borough-Town*, electing *Parliament men*, is honoured with the Title of an *Earldom*, is the uſual place where the *Aſſizes* for the County are held, having in the midſt of the Town a fair *Shire-hall*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is very well ſerved with *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*.

High Wickham. *High Wickham*, well ſeated in a rich Soil, a *Major* Town, which for largeneſs and fair buildings, is not inferiour to any in the County, of note for its *black Bone-Lace* here made, and its Markets on *Fridays* is very great for *Corn*, *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and all Proviſions.

CAM-

CAMBRIDGESHIRE, a County of a different Soil, the Southern part being Champain and indifferent fertil, bearing excellent *Corn* and *Barley*, of which the Inhabitants make abundance of *Mault*: and here is gathered good ſtore of *Saffron*, the deareſt commodity that *England* produceth. And the Northern part (called the Iſle of *Ely*, as made ſo by the *Owſe* and its branches) is *Fenniſh*, and not ſo pleaſant and wholſom to live in as the Southern; but is recompenced with rich *Paſtures*, which feed abundance of Cattle, which are very profitable to the Inhabitants, and affords alſo great plenty of *Fiſh* and *Fowl*. *Cambridgeſhire deſcribed.*

This County is ſevered into 17 *Hundreds*, of which 14 are in the Southern part, and 3 in the Northern, called the Iſle of *Ely*; in which ſaid Hundreds are 163 *Pariſhes*, and forthe accommodation of its Inhabitants is traded unto by 8 *Market Towns*.

Cambridge, ſeated in an Air ſomewhat unhealthful, occaſioned through the Fenny-grounds near adjoyning, and on the River *Cam* or *Grant*, (navigable for *Barges*) which ſeparates it into two (but unequal) parts, which are joyned together by a Bridge. 'Tis a place of great antiquity, being ſaid to derive its name from *Cantabar*, a *Spaniard*, who about 375 years before the Incarnation of Chriſt had there ſetled the *Muſes Seat*; but more certain it is, that *Sigilbert* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *Eaſt Saxons* eſtabliſhed here ſeveral Schools; and of no leſs fame for its Univerſity or Seminary of true Learning, which is its chieſeſt ornament, being adorned with 16 *Colledges* and *Halls*, many of which are ſuperb Buildings; and by reaſon of theſe *Seminaries* it is a place of a large extent, numbring 14 *Pariſh Churches*, is beautified with well built Houſes, its Streets are paved and well ordered, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Market on *Saturdays* is ſufficiently furniſhed with Proviſions, which are had at eaſie rates. It is a *Town Corporate*, endowed with ample Immunities, and ſendeth 4 *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, *viz.* two for the *Univerſity*, and two for the *Town*. *Cambridge.*

Nigh unto *Cambridge* Southwards, are *Gogmagog-Hills*, which are of a great eminency, and yet retain the remembrance of the *Daniſh* Station; and of theſe Hills the Country people tell fine ſtories.

Ely, ſeated in a fenny and wateriſh place, and on the banks of the *Owſe*, which rendreth it very unhealthful; it is a City of more antiquity than beauty, being but meanly built, nor overmuch frequented or inhabited, and would be far leſs, were it not for being the See of a Biſhop, whoſe Palace is ſo ruinous, that it is uninhabitable; but its *Cathedral* or *Minſter* is a loſty ſtructure, and beautified with a ſtately Lanthorn of curious Architecture. It is a City that enjoyeth ample Immunities, for in the Iſle of *Ely* the Biſhop hath all the rights of a *Count Palatine*, and beareth chief ſway therein, appointing a *Judge* for the hearing of Cauſes within the ſaid Iſle; he alſo holdeth Aſſizes, Goal-delivery, and Quarter-Seſſions of the Peace, and hath his chief Bayliff and other Officers; and although the City is but meanly inhabited, yet its Market on *Saturdays* is well ſerved with Proviſions. *Ely.*

New-Market, ſeated part in this County and part in *Suffolk*, and in a large and pleaſant *Heath*, ſo called; a place of ſome largneſs, containing two *Pariſh Churches*, and is well inhabited and much reſorted unto by the *Gentry*, by reaſon of its commodious ſcituation for *Horſe-races* and *Hunting*, being both Recreations that his Majeſty taketh ſo great delight in, that he hath there his *Palace* for his reception; which adds no ſmall advantage to the Town, often honouring it with his Royal preſence. Its Market is on *Tueſdays*, which is not very conſiderable by reaſon of its vicinity to *Bury* and *Cambridge*. *New-Market.*

Caxton, ſeated in the Clay, and on the North-road; a ſmall Town, and hath a little Market on *Tueſdays*. *Caxton.*

Royſton, ſeated on the high Road to *Huntington* in a bottom amongſt Hills, and part in this County and part in *Hartfordſhire*; It is a large, well inhabited Town, and hath a conſiderable Market on *Wedneſdays* for Proviſions, eſpecially for *Mault*, here, and in parts adjacent, made in great quantities. *Royſton.*

CHES-

Cheſhire deſcribed.

CHESHIRE, a *County Palatine*, of a rich and fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, feeding abundance of *Cattle*, and affording plenty of *Corn*, *Fiſh*, (eſpecially *Salmon*) *Fowl*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, and *Salt*, which is their ſtaple commodity, and here had in great plenty: and out of the Rocks and Quarries, broad *Slates* and fair *Stones* for building are dug; as are *Mill-ſtones* out of *Moucop-Hill*. It is well furniſhed with Timber and Fuel from its *Woods* and *Foreſts* of *Delamer* and *Maxfield*; is plentifully watered with *Rivers*, *Meers*, and *Pools*, hath ſeveral *Heaths* and *Moſſes*. The ancient People were the *Cornavii* of *Ptolomy*, and afterwards became part of the Kingdom of the *Mercians*.

In this County are ſeated 86 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides 38 *Chappels* of *Eaſe*, and hath Traffick with 13 *Market Towns*.

Cheſter.

Cheſter, or *Weſt-Cheſter*, a City of great antiquity, ſaid to be raiſed from the Fort of *Oſtorius*, Lieutenant of *Britain*, for *Claudius* the Emperour, and of a pleaſant ſcituation on the *Dee*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, ſuſtained by eight Arches, at each end of which is a Gate; but the Channel is now ſo choaked up with *Sand*, that it is ſcarce navigable for ſmall Veſſels, ſo that all *Ships* now come to a place called *New-Key*, about 6 miles diſtant. Its form is *Quadrangular*, and taketh up about two miles in circuit within its Wall, on which are 7 Watch-Towers, and which gives entrance by 4 Gates and 3 Poſterns, and of theſe Gates the *Eaſt-Gate* is eſteemed one of the ſtatelieſt Gates in *England*. For its further defence it hath a large *Caſtle*, ſeated on a Rocky Hill, where the *Shire Hall* is (which ſomething reſembleth that of *Weſtminſter*) where all matters concerning the *County Palatine* are tried by their peculiar Officers. The City is large, numbring 10 *Pariſh Churches* beſide its *Minſter* or *Cathedral*, a large ſtructure, adjoyning to which is the *Biſhops Palace*; it is beautified with divers fair Buildings, both publick and private, is graced with large and well ordered *Streets*, is well frequented and inhabited by *Gentry* and *Tradeſmen*, and the more for being the place where the *Courts Palatine* and *Aſſizes* are kept, as alſo for being the uſual place of taking Shipping for *Ireland*, with which it hath a great intercourſe, and hath a conſiderable Trade. It is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Sheriffs*, 24 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder* and *Sub-Officers*, enjoyeth ample Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, which no other Town in the County doth. It is well ſerved with Proviſions, for beſides its Shambles, it hath two conſiderable Markets weekly, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*.

Not far from this City is the Foreſt of *Delamer*, where *Ædelſted* the *Mercian Lady* built a ſmall City, long ſince reduced to ruins; which place is now called *The Chamber in the Foreſt*.

Nantwich.

Nantwich, ſeated on the *Wever*, the largeſt and beſt built Town next to *Cheſter*, in the County, and is graced with a goodly ſpacious *Church*. It is a place well inhabited and frequented, chiefly occaſioned for its *Salt-pits* or *Salt-wich*, for the making of *white Salt*, here had in great plenty; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is ſufficiently provided with all Proviſions and neceſſaries, eſpecially *Corn* and *Cattle*.

Malpas.

Malpas, ſcituate on a great eminency, and on the River *Dee*, a fair Town, containing 3 Streets, which are paved and well ordered; it hath an *Hoſpital* and *Grammar School*, and its Market on *Mondays* is of good account.

Middlewich.

Middlewich, ſeated between *Nantwich* and *Northwich*, a large Town, containing ſeveral *Streets* and *Lanes*, its chief place being called the *Kings-Mexon*. The Town is of note for its *Salt-pits*, and making of *Salt*, and hath a good Market for Proviſions on *Saturdays*.

Maxfield.

Maxfield, or *Macclesfield*, ſeated near a Foreſt ſo called; a very fair and large Town, graced with a goodly *Church*, which hath a high *Spire Steeple*, adjoyning to which is a *Colledge*. The Inhabitants drive a great Trade in making of *Buttons*, and its Market, which is on *Mondays*, is well ſerved with Corn, Proviſions, &c.

CORNWAL, encompaſſed on all parts, except on the Eaſt (by *Devonſhire*) with the *Sea*, which thruſts forth its ſeveral Arms, and receives thoſe many Rivers, which plentifully water the County; as the *Foy*, *Newton*, *Dranes*, *Lo*, *Fala*, *Seaton*, *Loo*, *Liner*, *Tavy*, and *Tamer*. It is of a ſharp, but healthful Air, generally very Hilly, conſiſting ordinarily of *Rocks* and *Shelves*, but cruſted over with a ſhallow Earth, and more inclined to ſterility than fertility; but the parts towards the *Sea*, and the encloſures about the *Towns*, through the induſtry of the Husbandman are more fertil, bearing good crops, and feeding ſtore of Cattle. *Cornwal* deſcribed.

It affordeth great ſtore of game both for the *Hawk* and *Hound*; and its *Seas* and *Rivers*, plenty of ſeveral ſorts of *Fiſh* and *Fowl*, as well thoſe common to other Counties, as appropriate to themſelves. In the bowels of the Earth are Quarries of ſundry ſorts of uſeful *Stones* and *Slates* for building; alſo *Copper*, precious Stones, called *Corniſh Diamonds*, but chiefly *Tin*, which is here found in great plenty to the great inrichment of the Inhabitants, who, as to their Names and Language hold great affinity with the *Welſh*.

The ancient Inhabitants were known to the *Romans* by the name of the *Danmonii's*, and became afterwards part of the Kingdom of the *Weſt Saxons*.

This County is ſevered into 9 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 161 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath intercourſe of Traffick with 23 *Market Towns*.

Launſton, ſeated on an eminency, and on a branch of the *Tamer*, a large *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and his Brethren, and amongſt other Immunities electeth *Parliament men*; 'tis a place well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and the more as being the place where the *Aſſizes* are held; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is well ſerved with Proviſions. Adjoyning to this Town is an ancient *Caſtle*, ſeated on a great eminency, and encompaſſed at the top with a treble Wall, where there was a Colledge of *Canons* and *Secular Prieſts*. The lower part now compriſeth a decayed *Chappel*, a large *Hall*, and a place made uſe of for the Common Goal. *Launſton*.

Liskerd, a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 8 *Magiſtrates*, a *Recorder*, and other *ſub-Officers*, electeth *Parliament men*, hath an eminent Free *School*, and is a large, well inhabited and frequented Town, whoſe Market on *Saturdays* is well ſerved with *Corn* and all ſorts of Proviſions, and the Inhabitants drive a conſiderable trade for *Yarn* every Market-day. *Liskerd*.

Bodman, ſeated in a bottom between two high Hills, which render it not very healthful, eſpecially to new Comers; it is large, an indifferent well built and inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a great Market on *Saturdays* for Corn and Proviſions. *Bodman*.

Liſthyel, or *Liſtwithiel*, ſeated on the *Foy*, not far from its fall into *Foy-haven*, which formerly brought up Veſſels to the Town; but its Channel being choaked up (by reaſon of the *Tin-Mines*) is a great obſtruction to its Trade. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and his Brethren, electeth *Parliament men*, hath its part in the coynage of the *Tin*; (but the Goal for the whole *Stannery*, and the keeping of the *Courts* is only here kept) and hath a ſmall Market on *Fridays*. *Liſthyel*.

Foy, ſo called from its Haven, or Arm of the Sea on which it is ſeated, being ſtrongly fortified at the entrance of the Haven with *Block-houſes*, and in times paſt was a place very conſiderable for Shipping and Traffick; its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Foy*.

Weſt-Looe, ſeated on a navigable Creek, over which it hath a fair Bridge, which leadeth to *Eaſt-Looe*, more commodiouſly ſeated, where there is an indifferent good Market on *Saturdays*. They are both *Towns Corporate*, and ſend *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. The chief benefit ariſing to the Inhabitants of theſe Towns, is their *Fiſhing*. *Weſt-Looe*.

Saltaſh, ſeated on the deſcent of a ſteep Hill, a pretty large *Town Corporate*, conſiſting of 3 Streets, is governed by a *Major*, and 9 *Aldermen*, enjoyeth large Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. Its Market is on *Saturdays*, *Saltaſh*.

which of late is much decaied to what it was; yet its Inhabitants gain well by their *Mault* and good *Beer*.

Not far from this Town is *Trematon Caſtle*, once a place of great note, in which is kept the *Trematon Court*, wherein all Cauſes within the ſaid Fee are tried; as alſo the Priſon.

Padſtow. *Padſtow*, a Sea-Port Town, of ſome Trade by reaſon of its commodious ſcituation with *Ireland*, and were its Haven ſecure, it would be of greater account. It is a *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, and hath a good Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*.

Falmouth. *Falmouth*, at preſent a very large and well inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and ſub-Officers, enjoyeth a good Trade, is well reſorted unto by *Shipping*, where there is a Key intended ſhortly to be built, and hath a very conſiderable Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Thurſdays*. The *Haven* whereon this Town is ſeated, and beareth its name, is very commodious for *Ships*, and ſo capacious that 100 Sail of *Ships* may ſafely ride at Anchor. And this Haven, with thoſe of *Milford* and *Plimouth*, are the chiefeſt in the Kingdom. On the Weſt ſide and at the very entrance of this Haven is *Pendennis Caſtle*, ſeated on a Hill ſo called; and on the other ſide, (but of a lower ſcituation) is St. *Moze* or *Maudit*, both which are a great ſecurity to the Coaſt and Haven.

Truro. *Truro*, ſeated on a branch of *Falmouth-haven*, at preſent the head Town in the County, being a fair, large, well inhabited and traded *Borough Town*, priviledged with a *Majoralty*, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, hath the coynage of the *Tin*, is a place where the Weſtern Seſſions are held, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are well ſerved with Proviſions, &c.

Penrin. *Penrin*, ſeated alſo on a Creek of *Falmouth-haven*, a very conſiderable *Town Corporate*, electing *Parliament men*, and hath weekly 3 Markets, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays* and *Saturdays* for Corn, and on *Saturdays* for Proviſions.

Helſton. *Helſton*, ſeated on the *Lowe*, between which and the *Sea* there is a great breach or bar of Sand. It is a well inhabited and frequented *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, electeth *Parliament men*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is well ſerved with Proviſions, and the two Markets before *Chriſtmas* are ſo great, that they may be reckoned as Fairs.

Near this Town is *Godolphin-Hill*, well known for its rich *Tin Mines*.

Penzance. *Penzance*, ſeated on *Monts-bay*, and in an Inlet thereof; a very good traded Town, and hath a conſiderable Market for all Proviſions, eſpecially *Fiſh*, on *Thurſdays*.

St. Ives. *St. Ives*, or *St. Ithes*, ſeated on an open Bay ſo called, chiefly frequented by *Fiſhermen*, for the taking of *Pilchards* and other Fiſh, which are here plentifully caught. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, a *Juſtice*, and 12 *Aldermen*, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath 2 Markets weekly, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*.

It is obſerved that Men live here to a very great Age, and are ſtronger, hardy, and addicted to wreſtling, pitching the Bar, and other boyſterous ſports, more than any other *Engliſh men*.

By *Helford* is a great Rock lying upon the ground, the top whereof is hollow and filled with water, which ebbs and flows as the Sea doth. There is a very great Rock in this Shire called *Mainamber*, which reſts upon other ſmaller Rocks, which with the puſh of a finger may be moved; but cannot be moved out of its place by all the Art men can uſe.

County of *Cumberland* deſcribed. *CUMBERLAND*, a County far engaged Northwards, is very Mountainous, and much inclined to ſterility, yet not without many fertil Valleys, both for Tillage and Paſturage. It hath an Air very ſharp, and would be more, were it not for the high Hills that break off the Northern and Weſtern Storms. In the bowels of the Earth are rich Mines of *Copper* in great plenty; alſo thoſe of *Iron*, *Lead*, *Black-lead*, *Coal*, and ſome of *Silver*: and the *Sea*, and large *Lakes* and *Meers*, plentifully furniſh the Inhabitants with *Fiſh* and *Fowl*.

And

And beſides theſe Commodities this County produceth ſeveral Manufactures, amongſt which, heretofore *Fuſtians* and now *Linnen-cloth* and courſe *Broad-cloths* in great plenty. The Mountains of moſt note are *Black-koum*, *Hard-knot*, *Wrey-noſe*, *Skiddow*, and *Croſsfell*, &c. It is well watered with *Rivers*, and hath many *Lakes* and *Meers*.

This Shire of all others in *England* ſheweth the moſt *Roman* Antiquities, for being in the utmoſt limits of their poſſeſſions it was always ſecured by their Garriſons, and defended by that admirable Wall called the *Picts Wall*, which ran from Sea to Sea about 100 miles, and was 8 foot broad and 12 foot high, and having at every 1000 paces a Watch-Tower erected, in which Souldiers were kept; and on this Wall grows the *Vulnerary Plant*. And being thus in the confines of *Scotland*, it was exceedingly ſtrengthned with *Caſtles*, having about 25 publick ones, beſides the Houſes of the *Nobility* and *Gentry*, which were generally built Caſtle-wiſe.

It is ſevered into 5 *Waads*, in which are 58 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides divers *Chappels* of *Eaſe*, and hath 15 *Market Towns*.

Carliſle, a City of great antiquity, and no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated at the influx or meeting of ſeveral Rivers, *viz.* the *Eden*, *Cauda*, and *Petterill*, which on all parts, except the South, encompaſs it; and for its further defence, it is fortified with a ſtrong and large *Caſtle* and *Cittadel*, and fenced about with a ſtrong Wall, firſt built by *Egfrid* King of *Northumberland*, which was defaced by the *Danes*, and again rebuilt by King *Rufus*. Its Houſes are fair and well built, is beautified with a *Cathedral Church* of curious workmanſhip, it enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, 2 *Bailiffs*, and other ſub-Officers. It is a place well inhabited, and traded unto chiefly for *Fuſtians*; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very conſiderable for *Corn*, *Wool*, *Proviſions*, and ſeveral Country Commodities. *Carliſle.*

Cockermouth, ſeated between the *Derwent* and the *Coker*, which almoſt encompaſs it, over which are two fair *Stone-Bridges*, and between two Hills, upon one of which ſtandeth the *Church*, a fair building, and upon the other a ſpacious and ſtately *Caſtle*. It is a well inhabited *Borough Town*, graced with fair Buildings, enjoyeth a good Trade, eſpecially for courſe *Broad-cloths* here made, hath the election of *Parliament men*, and its Market, which is on *Mondays*, is eſteemed the beſt in the County for Corn, next to *Perith*. Here is a Cuſtom at their Fairs, holden at *Whitſontide* and *Martlemaſs* for the hiring of Servants, to which end all ſuch that want Servants, or Services, do hither come; the like is obſerved at *Perith*, and moſt of the Market-Towns in the County. *Cockermouth.*

Whithaven, ſeated on a Creek of the *Sea*, indifferent commodious for *Shipping*, which makes it to be well inhabited and frequented by Tradeſmen, eſpecially by Fiſhermen, and thoſe that are related to Sea-Affairs, who drive a good Trade to *Ireland*, *Scotland*, *Cheſter*, *Briſtol*, and other parts, having a *Cuſtom-houſe* and ſeveral *Veſſels* belonging to the Town, whoſe chief Trade is for *Salt* and *Coals*, here plentifully digged up. Its Market is kept *Thurſdays*. *Whithaven.*

Ravenglaſs, a well built Maritim Town, couched betwixt the Rivers *Irt*, *Eſk*, and *Mite*, with which the Sea doth encompaſs 3 parts of it, and is a good road for *Shipping*, which makes it to be a place of ſome Trade, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*. *Ravenglaſs.*

Keſwick, ſeated in a Valley, hemmed in with Hills and the Mountains called *Derwent Fells*, wherein are good *Copper-Mines*; and not far from the Town is dug up *Black-Lead*, or *Wadd*, in great plenty. The Town was formerly of greater account than now it is, when the Mineral-men had here their *Smelting-houſes*, being at preſent not very conſiderable. It hath a Market on *Saturdays*, chiefly for *Meal*, *Fleſh*, *Butter*, and *Cheeſe*. *Keſwick.*

Perith, ſeated on a Hill called *Perith Fell*, and near the Rivers *Eimont* and *Lowther*; a large, well built and inhabited Town, eſteemed the ſecond in the County, although neither a *Borough* nor *Town Corporate*; it is adorned with *Perith.*

a fair Church and a large Market-place, which every *Tueſday* is very much reſorted unto, being conſiderable for *Corn*, *living Cattle*, divers Commodities and all ſorts of Proviſions in great plenty.

Derbyſhire deſcribed.

DERBYSHIRE, a Midland County, but inclined towards the North, which makes it to be of a ſharp Air, eſpecially upon the *Peak* Mountains. The Soil is generally fertil, chiefly the South and Eaſt parts, which for the moſt part are encloſed and improved, yielding good *Corn* and *Graſs*, and hath alſo ſtore of *Coal* and *Iron-ſtone*. The North and Weſt parts are very *hilly* and *ſtony*, and not ſo fertil, except in *Lead-Oar*, in which it much abounds, yet not without ſome rich *Valleys*; and on the *Hills* are bred good (though not large) *Sheep* in great abundance. For *Fuel*, it is not beholding to *Wood*, having ſuch great plenty of *Coal*, that it ſupplies the defects of divers neighbouring Counties.

It is well watered with Rivers, *viz.* the *Trent*, *Derwent*, *Dove*, and *Wye*, which are the chief, and are paſſed over by about 21 *Stone-bridges*, ſome of which are of conſiderable note; as *Burton* over the *Trent*, ſuſtained by 35 large *Stone-Arches*; *Swarkeſton-bridge* over the ſame River, reputed near a mile long, but much of it is rather a Cauſway than a Bridge; *Monks-bridge* over the *Dove*, and St. *Marys-bridge*, at *Derby*, over the *Derwent*, which River ſevereth the County into Eaſt and Weſt, and it is obſerved that on the Eaſt-ſide *Coal* is generally dug, and on the Weſt, *Lead*.

The Inhabitants were the *Coritani* of the *Romans*, and was afterwards part of the Kingdom of the *Mercians*.

It is ſevered into 6 *Hundreds*, and contains 106 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides ſeveral *Chappels of Eaſe*, and is traded unto by 9 *Market Towns*.

Derby.

Derby, well ſeated on the *Derwent*, over which it hath a goodly *Stone-bridge*; a Town of good Antiquity, and is at preſent a very large, populous, well frequented and rich *Borough Town*, numbring 5 *Pariſh Churches*, of which *All-Saints*, which is the chief, is a curious ſtructure, and beautified within with ſeveral Monuments. It is a *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, is honoured with the Title of an *Earldom*, enjoyeth ample Immunities, is governed by a *Major*, 9 *Aldermen*, 14 *Brethren*, 14 *Common-Council*, a *Recorder*, *Town-Clerk*, &c. is well traded unto, eſpecially for *Barley*, which they make into *Mault*, which finds good vent, and its Market, which is on *Fridays*, is very conſiderable for *Cattle*, *Corn*, and all ſorts of Proviſions, beſides a ſmall Market on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*. Here is lately built a fair *Hall* of *Free-ſtone* at the Counties charge, where the *Aſſizes* are conſtantly kept.

Cheſterfield.

Cheſterfield, pleaſantly ſeated between two ſmall Rivers, and in a good Soil, a *Borough Town* of great antiquity, is dignified with an *Earldom*, enjoyeth large Immunities, is governed by a *Major*, 6 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder*, 6 *Brethren*, 12 *Counſellors*, &c. and hath weekly two Markets on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very conſiderable for *Corn*, *Lead*, and moſt Country Commodities.

Wicksworth.

Wickſworth, ſeated in a Valley, a pretty large and populous Town, beautified with a fair *Church*, hath a *Free-School* and *Alms-houſes*, and its Market on *Tueſdays* is well ſerved with Proviſions and *Apples*, eſpecially for *Lead*, where the Merchants have their meetings for the Sale thereof.

Bakewell.

Bakewell, ſeated amongſt *Hills* and on the banks of the *Wye*, an indifferent large Town, and hath a good Market on *Mondays* for *Lead* and Proviſions.

In the *Peak Foreſt* is a Well that ebbs and flows 4 times in one hour, keeping its exact Tides.

At *Buxton*, out of a Rock, in 24 foot compaſs, 9 Springs ariſe, of which 8 are warm and one cold; and the Waters are found very good to bath in, and for the Stomach.

And in this County is *Eldenhole*, being a Cave worthy of note.

DEVONSHIRE, of a ſharp and healthful Air, very hilly and generally of an ungrateful Soil, without great pains and charges in manuring it; yet is it not without many fertil Valleys, and its ſterility is recompenced by the rich Mines of *Tin* and *Lead*, as alſo by the great plenty of *Herrings*, *Pilchers*, and other Fiſh, taken on its *Sea-Coaſt*, from which the Inhabitants reap good profit; which, with its *Clothings*, *Saerges* and *Bone-lace*, are the chief Commodities of the County. *Devonſhire described.*

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Danmonii*, and was afterwards part of the Kingdom of the *Weſt-Saxons*.

It is very well watered with freſh Streams, as the *Ex*, *Tamar*, *Tave*, *Tawe*, *Pline*, *Dart*, *Turridge*, *Tinge*, *Plime*, *Culme*, and *Ottery*, which are found very advantagious to the Inhabitants.

It is divided into 33 *Hundreds*, in which are 394 *Pariſhes*, and for the accommodation of its Inhabitants, hath about 30 *Market Towns*.

Exeter, a fair, ſweet and well compacted City, of great Antiquity, and no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the top of an eaſie Aſcent, and on the *Ex* (whence it took its name) over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*. 'Tis a place of a good largeneſs, containing within its Wall and Ditches, about a mile and half in circuit, in which and in its Suburbs (which are large) are numbred 15 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral* or *Minſter*, founded by King *Æthelſtan*, a fair and beautiful ſtructure. It enjoyeth a conſiderable Trade, being much inhabited and reſorted unto by Merchants and Tradeſmen, having ſeveral *Ships* and *Veſſels* belonging unto them, and is in a flouriſhing condition, enjoying ample Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is honoured with the Title of an *Earldom*, is governed by a *Major*, 24 *Aldermen* or *Brethren*, a *Recorder* and other ſub-Officers, and hath two very conſiderable Markets weekly, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays* and *Fridays* for Proviſions, and *Searges* in great abundance. *Exeter.*

Plymouth, ſeated on the *Plime*, and near the *Tamer*, at both their Influxes into the *Sea*, which from a poor Fiſhing-Village is become a very fair, large, well inhabited and frequented Town, reſembling rather a City than a Town, although it hath but two *Pariſh Churches*; 'tis a place of great importance by reaſon of its commodious Haven and excellent Port, which doth occaſion it to be ſo well reſorted unto by moſt Ships both outward and inward bound, and is of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being defended by a ſtrong Fort, a Cittadel, and other Fortifications. It is a *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, and *Common Council*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, enjoyeth a great Trade for moſt Commodities, and its Markets on *Mondays* and *Thurſdays* are extraordinary well ſerved with all ſorts of Proviſions, as alſo have living Cattle. *Plymouth.*

Dertmouth, ſeated on the *Dert*, near its fall into the Sea, where it hath a commodious Haven; a large, well inhabited, frequented and traded Port-Town, containing 3 *Pariſh Churches*, and its Market on *Fridays* is very well ſerved with Proviſions. 'Tis an ancient *Town Corporate*, is governed by a *Major* and his *Brethren*, and amongſt its Immunities ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. *Dertmouth.*

Totnes, ſeated on the *Dert*, and on the deſcent of a Hill; a Town of great antiquity, and of greater account than now it is; yet doth it retain ſeveral of its Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and is governed by a *Major* and his *Brethren*. The Town is large and hath a very great Market on *Saturdays* for all live Cattle, *Corn*, *Mault*, and Proviſions both *Fleſh* and *Fiſh*. *Totnes.*

Aſhburton, ſeated in a rich Soil under the *Moor*; a large *Borough Town*, compoſed of ſeveral Streets, is beautified with a fair *Church*, electeth *Parliament men*, and hath a very good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, and *Proviſions* on *Saturdays*. *Aſhburton.*

Okehampton, ſeated betwixt the River *Okement* and a branch thereof; a *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Major*, *Burgeſſes*, *Recorder*, and ſub-Officers, and hath a very good Market for *Corn*, *Proviſions* and *Yarn*, on *Saturdays*. *Okehampton.*

Bediford,

Bidiford. *Bediford*, commodiously seated for the reception of Vessels on the *Towridge*, over which it hath a large *Stone-bridge* of Arched-work; consisting of 24 *Peers*. 'Tis a large, well inhabited and traded Town, and its Market on *Tuesdays* is well served with Corn and Provisions.

Barnstable. *Barnstable*, commodiously seated on the *Tawe*, over which it hath a large *Stone-bridge*: 'Tis a fine *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, is a place of some Trade, and hath a considerable Market on *Fridays* for Cattle, Corn, and Provisions.

South-Moulton. *South-Moulton*, seated on the *Moul*, which falleth into the *Tawe*, a pretty good Town, and hath a considerable Market on *Saturdays* for Corn and Provisions.

Tiverton. *Tiverton*, seated on the *Ex*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, where the *Leman* falleth in. It is a large *Town Corporate*, electing *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Burgesses*, and other sub-Officers; is a place of good account for its Clothings here made, and hath a Market on *Tuesdays*, which is very well served with Provisions, &c.

Crediton. *Crediton*, seated betwixt two Hills, and in a rich Soil, once the See of a Bishop, till removed to *Exeter*. It is a place of a pretty largeness, being composed of two Towns, the one called *East Town* and the other *West*, is beautified with a very fair Church built *Cathedral-wise*, to which belongeth a *Free School*, which hath 12 Governours; it is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade for its *Searges* here made, and its Markets on *Saturdays*, for Corn and Provisions, is esteemed one of the best in the County.

Dorsetshire described. *DORSETSHIRE*, of a healthful Air and fruitful Soil; the Northern part (which is severed from the South almost by a continual ridge of high Hills) is somewhat flat, abounding with rich Pastures, and is well watered with fresh Streams, which hath induced many of the Gentry to settle here, although the Winter season is very dirty and troublesom to the Traveller; which inconvenience the South part is freed from, as consisting of Hills and Downs, which are overspread with flocks of *Sheep*; yet it is not without divers Valleys, in which (for the most part) the Towns and Gentlemens-Houses are seated.

It is well watered with Rivers, the chief of which are the *Frome* and the *Stower*, which, with the *Sea*, do plentifully furnish the Inhabitants with *Fish* and *Fowl*.

The chief Commodities that this County produceth are *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Corn*, *Wool*, of which the Clothiers make *Kersies*; *Wood*, *Hemp*, *Tobacco-clay*, *Free-Stones*, &c. And for the better support of their Traffick, they have several good Haven-Towns, as *Lime*, *Weymouth*, *Pool*, &c.

Its Inhabitants, known to the *Romans*, were the *Durotriges*; and when the *Saxons* became Masters of the Island, it became part of the Kingdom of the *West Saxons*.

It is divided into 5 *Divisions*, and those into 29 *Hundreds*, in which are seated 248 *Parish Churches*, and for accommodation of its Inhabitants, hath Traffick with 18 or 19 *Market Towns*.

Dorchester. *Dorchester*, a Town of great antiquity, and well known to the *Romans*, where they had their station; it is pleasantly seated on the South-side of the *Frome*, and on the *Roman* Causway called *Foss-way*, at present the chief in the County (though not so large as in former time, as appears by the circuit of its then Walls, first thrown down by the *Danes*) being neatly compacted with well built Houses, hath 3 fair Streets and as many *Parish Churches*, hath an eminent *Free School* and an *Alms-house*. 'Tis a *Town Corporate*, governed by 2 *Bayliffs*, 8 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder*, and other sub-Officers, electeth *Parliament men*, and giveth title to the Right Honourable *Pierrepont*, Marques of *Dorchester*, &c. Its Inhabitants gain well by *Clothing* and other Merchandize, and its Market on *Saturdays* is very considerable for *Corn*, *Flesh*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, and Country Commodities, usually sold in great Markets.

Weymouth,

Weymouth, ſeated on the *Wey* at its influx into the Sea, oppoſite to which, on the other ſide of the River, ſtandeth *Melcombe*, or *Melcomb-Regis*, but joyned together by a fair *Timber-bridge*; which Towns are now incorporated into one body, and governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, and other ſub Officers; yet each of them ſtill ſend 2 *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. *Weymouth* at preſent hath but one chief Street, which for a good ſpace lieth open to the Sea, and on the bank thereof riſeth a Hill of ſuch ſteepneſs, that the Inhabitants are forced to climb up to their Chappel by 60 ſteps of Stone, from whence there is a fair proſpect of the Town and Haven, which lieth under it. *Melcombe*, as ſeated on a flat, much ſurpaſſeth *Weymouth* for conveniency of ſcituation, affording room for Buildings, hath a good Market-place, good Streets and Yards for their Merchandize, which hath invited moſt of the Merchants to reſide here; and theſe Towns thus united gain well by Traffick into *Newfoundland*, *France*, and elſewhere; and their Markets, which are on *Tueſdays* and *Fridays*, are well provided with all neceſſaries and proviſions. *Weymouth.*

Not far from *Weymouth* is the Iſle of *Portland*, or rather a *Peninſula*, ſo made by the *Beech*, which runneth from *Abbotsbury*. It is a place of great ſtrength, as well by nature as art, being encompaſſed with inacceſſible Rocks, except at the place of Landing, where there is a ſtrong Caſtle called *Portland Caſtle*; and almoſt oppoſite to it on the Land-ſide towards *Weymouth* is another called *Sandfoot Caſtle*, which two command all the Ships that paſs into the Road. The whole Iſle, when got to the top of theſe craggy Rocks, ſheweth it ſelf in a flat, and is in compaſs about 7 miles. The ground is very good for Corn, and indifferent for Paſturage; it affordeth excellent Quarries of *Free-ſtone* for building, but is exceeding deſtitute of *Wood* and other Fuel. On the South-ſide ſtandeth the only Church in the Iſle, which is waſhed by the Sea-waves. And here *Portland-race* ſheweth it ſelf. *Portland Iſle.*

Lime, or *Lime-Regis*, of great antiquity, ſeated on the banks of the Sea, a well known Haven, *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and other ſub-Officers, enjoyeth divers Immunities, and electeth *Parliament men*. The Town is large and built on both ſides of the River *Lime*, but joyned together by a Bridge. It enjoyeth a good trade, and its Markets are well frequented. *Lime.*

Cerne-Abbas, once famous for its rich and [illegible]r Abby near adjoyning; it is ſeated in a dry bottom, watered with a fine Rivulet, and in a Champain Country, affording great delight for the *Hawk* and *Hound*. The Town is but mean, yet hath it an eminent Market for *Corn*, *Sheep*, *Cattle*, &c. on *Wedneſdays*. *Cerne-Abbas.*

Sherborne, of good antiquity and fame, being formerly the See of a Biſhop; it is well ſeated and watered, and for largeneſs, fair Buildings, frequency of Inhabitants, and quick Markets, which are on *Thurſdays* and *Saturdays*, for *Corn*, *Fleſh*, *Sheep*, *Cattle*, and moſt Country Commodities, gives place to few or none in theſe parts. *Sherborne.*

Shaftsbury, or *Shafton*, ſeated on a great eminency, and very deſtitute of Water, which for ordinary uſes is brought on Horſes backs from the foot of the Hill. It once contained (when in its glory) 10 *Pariſh Churches*, which at preſent are reduced to 3, and is a fair, large, well built, inhabited and frequented Thoroughfare, *Borough* and *Major Town*, governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, &c. electeth *Parliament men*, is honoured with the title of an *Earldom*, and hath a very conſiderable Market on *Saturdays* for *Corn*, *Fleſh*, *Cattle*, and moſt Commodities. *Shaftsbury.*

Blandford, a fair, large and well compacted Town, ſeated on the *Stower*, over which it hath a Bridge which leadeth to St. *Mary Blanford*. It is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and the rather as being neighboured by ſo many Gentry, and its Market on *Saturdays* is well provided with all things neceſſary, but chiefly with *Corn*, *Sheep* and *Cattle*. *Blandford.*

Pool, encloſed on all parts with the *Sea*, except on the North, where it admits entrance only by one Gate. A Town by reaſon of its commodious Haven, from a ſmall Village is become a very large *Town Corporate*, governed *Pool.*

by

by a *Major* and other ſub-Officers, electeth *Parliament men*, and hath two Markets weekly on *Mondays* and *Thurſdays*, which are indifferent well ſerved. In the Haven (contrary to all Ports in *England*) the Sea ebbs and flows four times in 24 hours.

Worham. *Worham*, eſteemed the ancienteſt *Borough Town* in the County, ſeated between the *Frome* and the *Biddle*, at their falling into *Luckford Lake*, where it had a good Harbour for Ships, and was a very conſiderable large place, containing ſeveral Churches, which are now reduced to 3; and its Haven being choaked up, doth much eclipſe its Trade. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, &c. ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath an indifferent good Market on *Saturdays*.

Lulworth Caſtle. *Lulworth-Caſtle*, the Seat of *Hum. Weld* Eſquire, eſteemed one of the beſt Houſes in the County, as well for beauty and largeneſs, as for a pleaſant ſituation and proſpect into the Sea.

Purbeck Iſle. The Iſle of *Purbeck*, or rather the *Peninſula*, ſo called, hath veins of *Marble* running under the Earth. It is about 10 miles in length and 5 in breadth; in which tract are ſeated divers Towns, amongſt which is *Corfe-Caſtle*, ſeated on a River, and in a barren Soil, between two Hills, upon one of which ſtandeth the Caſtle. It is an ancient *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major* and *Barons*, enjoyeth ample Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, and hath a ſmall Market on *Thurſdays*.

County of *Durham* deſcribed. *DURHAM*, a Biſhoprick and County Palatine, of a ſharp and piercing Air, but through the plentifulneſs of *Sea-Coal* the Cold is not ſo offenſive unto the Inhabitants. It is of a different Soil, the Eaſtern part being Champain, the Southern moſt fertil and well inhabited, and the Weſtern, hilly, barren, and thin of Woods and Towns, but is recompenced by the ſtore of *Coals*, *Lead*, and *Iron-Mines*.

The ancient Inhabitants known to *Ptolomy* were the *Brigantes*, and in the time of the *Saxons* became part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbers*.

This County was formerly called St. *Cuthberts Patrimony*, from one St. *Cuthbert*, who was Canoniz'd a Saint, and was born in this County.

It is divided into 4 Wards, *viz.* thoſe of *Cheſter*, *Darweton*, *Eaſington*, and *Stockton*, in which are numbred 118 *Pariſhes*, and is traded unto by ſix Market Towns.

Durham. *Durham*, a City of good Antiquity, dignified with the See of a Biſhop, and ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. It is no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on an eaſie Aſcent, and almoſt encompaſſed by the River *Weare*, over which it hath two large and ſpacious *Stone-bridges*, which give entrance into it, which, with its Wall and ſpacious Caſtle, make it to be a place of good ſtrength. This City is fair and neatly compacted, containing 6 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides its Abby or Cathedral, dedicated to St. *Cuthbert*, a large ſtructure with a lofty Tower in the midſt, and two Spires at the Weſt-end, adjoyning to which are the Houſes for the *Dean* and *Prebends*. It is beautified with fair Buildings, hath well ordered Streets, a ſpacious Market-place, which is well reſorted unto every *Saturday*, is much inhabited and frequented by the Gentry of theſe parts, enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Shop-keepers are well furniſhed with Commodities.

Hartley-pool. *Hartley-pool*, commodiouſly ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, (which encompaſſeth it, except towards the Weſt) and ſurrounded with Rocks and Hills. 'Tis an ancient *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and ſub-Officers, is indifferent large, but poor, and its Market at preſent diſuſed; and were it not for its Harbour, which is good, it would be leſs frequented.

Biſhops-Aukland. *Biſhops-Aukland*, well ſeated on the ſide of a Hill, and between the River *Weare* and the Rivulet *Gaunleſs*; of chief note for its Caſtle, which is the *Biſhops Palace* for the Summer ſeaſon, now beautifully repaired. Its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is indifferently well provided with Corn and Proviſions.

Dar-

Darlington, ſeated in a flat and on the *Skerne*, which falleth into the *Tees*; a Town of a good largeneſs, conſiſting of ſeveral Streets, hath a ſpacious Market-place, and its Market on *Mondays* is very conſiderable, and well furniſhed with *Corn*, *Cattle*, and all ſorts of Proviſions. *Darlington.*

At *Oxenhall*, near *Darlington*, are 3 deep Pits, called by the Inhabitants *Hell-Kettles*, which are ſaid to be made by an Earthquake.

Stockton, ſeated on the *Tees* near its fall into the Sea; a place of great trade for vending and exporting of *Corn* and *Butter* to *London*, and other parts. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and ſub-Officers, is well inhabited, and by reaſon of its commodious Port it enjoyeth a good Trade. *Stockton.*

ESSEX, a County of a large extent, and very populous; is well watered with Rivers, beſides the Sea, which ſendeth forth ſeveral of her branches, as the *Stower*, *Blackwater*, (where thoſe excellent *Oyſters*, called *Walfleet*, are caught) *Crouch*, *Ley*, &c. The Soil may be eſteemed fertil, though in ſome places it is ſandy and barren; it is well clothed with *Wood*, hath variety of *Parks*, great plenty of *Fiſh* and *Fowl*; nor is there any want of other Proviſions: And for its Commodities affordeth *Cloths*, *Stuffs*, *Hops*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Gunpowder*, *Oyſters* and *Saffron*. County of *Eſſex* deſcribed.

It is ſevered into *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 415 *Pariſh Churches*, and for the conveniency of its Inhabitants hath 21 Market Towns.

Colcheſter, a place of great antiquity, ſaid to be built by *Collus* the *Britiſh* Prince *An. Dom.* 124. and in former times of no leſs fame than largeneſs, numbring 15 *Pariſh Churches*, many of which are now reduced to ruin, with abundance of its Houſes. It is no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the *Colne*, which after about ſix miles courſe loſeth it ſelf in the Sea. It is governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, 12 *Aldermen*, who are clothed in Scarlet, a *Recorder*, with other ſub-Officers; it enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well ſerved with Proviſions, and its Inhabitants (many of which are *Dutch*, and have their Church for divine Worſhip) drive a good trade for *Sayes*, *Baies*, and other Draperies here made. It is alſo of ſome note for the great quantities of excellent *Oyſters* here taken. This place gave birth to *Lucius*, *Helena*, and *Conſtantine* the firſt Chriſtian King, Empreſs, and Emperour in the World. *Colcheſter.*

Harwich, a Haven, Sea-port, and *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, is of great great ſtrength as well by nature as art. The Town is not large, but is well inhabited and frequented by thoſe that have relation to Sea-Affairs; and the rather, by reaſon of its ſafe and commodious Haven, harbour for Ships and Veſſels to Anchor in, it being oft-times the ſtation of the *Navy Royal*, which (and for being the ready paſſage to *Holland*, where the *Packet-boats* are kept for that purpoſe) doth occaſion it to enjoy a good Trade; yet its Market on *Tueſdays* is not very conſiderable. *Harwich.*

About 4 miles Northwards from *Harwich* is *Horſey Iſle*; and about 2 miles further is the *Neſs*, a Promontory well known to Sea-men.

Maldon, a Town of great antiquity and repute in the time of the *Romans*, (as *Cambden* noteth) and was the Seat of *Cunobelin*, King of the *Trinobantes*. It is well ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, about 6 or 7 miles from the Main, before which lie ſmall Iſles called *Northey* and *Oſey*; the Town is large, having one Street about a mile in length, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good trade, occaſioned by reaſon of the commodiouſneſs of its Haven; amongſt its Immunities electeth *Parliament men*, is governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, 6 *Aldermen*, 18 *Brethren*, a *Recorder*, *High-Steward*, &c. and hath a very conſiderable Market on *Saturdays* for *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, and other Proviſions. *Maldon.*

Walden, or *Saffron-Walden*, ſeated on an Aſcent amongſt pleaſant Fields of *Saffron*; a large, fair, well inhabited and frequented *Town Corporate*, enjoying ſeveral Immunities, is governed by a *Treaſurer*, 2 *Chamberlains*, and the *Commonalty*, and hath a very conſiderable Market on *Saturdays*, for Corn and all ſorts of Proviſions. *Walden.*

Audley-end. Near unto this Town is that ſtately Houſe *Audley-end*, built by the Right Honourable *Tho. Howard*, Earl of *Suffolk*, then *Lord High Treaſurer* of *England*, which ſaid Houſe now belongeth to his Majeſty.

Chelmesford. *Chelmesford*, ſeated in the Road and between two Rivers, over which are Bridges for conveniency of paſſage. It is a fair, large and well frequented Town, where the *Aſſizes* are uſually kept, and hath a very great Market for Corn, Proviſions, &c. on *Fridays*.

Raleigh. *Raleigh*, a place of great antiquity, though not of largeneſs, and its Market which is on *Saturdays* is but ſmall.

Not far from this Town are the Iſles of *Wallop* and *Fowlneſs*, that is, the Promontory of *Fowls*, which hath a Church in it. Alſo *Canvey Iſle*, of a rich Soil, and feedeth good ſtore of *Sheep*.

Brentwood. *Brentwood*, ſeated on a Hill, and on the high Road; a place of good Antiquity, is well inhabited, and its Market on *Thurſdays* is well ſerved with Proviſions.

Rumford. *Rumford*, a large thoroughfare, well frequented and inhabited Town, ſeated in the Liberty of *Haverill*, which enjoyeth large Immunities, being an ancient retiring place of the Kings. This Town of *Rumford* is of note for its great Market on *Tueſdays* for living Cattle; but for Corn and Proviſions, which it is plentifully ſerved with, it hath a Market on *Wedneſdays*.

Waltham. *Waltham*, or *Waltham-Abby*, ſeated on the River *Leg*, where it formeth ſeveral *Eights*, or ſmall *Iſles*, and in a large Foreſt ſo called, well ſtored with *Deer* and other Game. It is a Town of ſome note, and hath a Market on *Tueſdays*.

Glouceſterſhire deſcribed. *GLOUCESTERSHIRE*, a County of a healthful Air and fertil Soil both for *Corn* and *Paſturage*, yielding plenty of Corn, and feeding abundance of Cattle and great flocks of Sheep (eſpecially about *Coteſwold*) whoſe Wool is much eſteemed for its fineneſs.

The part lying Eaſtwards, called *Coteſwold*, riſeth up with Hills, and is for grazing; the middle part (which is watered with the *Severne*) lieth low, and maketh a moſt fertil Plain; and the Weſtern part, beyond the *Severne*, is overſpread with Wood and called *Dean Foreſt*, which affordeth excellent *Timber Trees* for the building of Ships, and great ſtore of *Coal* and *Iron-Mines*, where there are divers *Furnaces* and *Forges* for working the ſame. This Foreſt is of a large extent, being about 20 miles in length and 10 in breadth; within which tract of ground are numbred 3 *Hundreds*, 23 *Pariſh Churches*, 1 *Caſtle*, 1 *Abby*, 3 *Market Towns*, and 1 *Major Town*; and the *Common* thereof (beſides the *Purlieus* and *Abby-woods*) is ſaid to contain 32000 Acres of Ground.

The chief Commodities that this County produceth, are *Corn*, *Wool*, *Cloth*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Wood* and *Timber*; alſo *Fruits* here had in ſuch great plenty, that the Highways and Lanes are beſet with *Apple*, *Pear*, and *Plumb-trees*, which grow naturally without ingrafting.

It is well watered with Rivers, amongſt which are the *Iſis*, *Strowd*, *Churne*, *Avon*, *Wye*, and *Severne*, which for broadneſs of Channel, ſwiftneſs of Stream, and plenty of *Salmon* and other excellent Fiſh, comes little ſhort of any River in *England*.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Dobuni*, and in the time of the *Saxons* it became part of the Kingdom of the *Mercians*.

This County is divided into 30 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 280 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 25 *Market Towns*.

Briſtol. *Briſtol*, ſeated between the *Avon* and the *Froom*, which after a ſmall courſe fall into the *Severne*; the *Avon* dividing it into two parts, as the *Thames* doth *London* and *Southwark*, and are ſo joyned by a fair *Stone-bridge*, on which are alſo ſtately Houſes. The greateſt part of this City is in this County, and the leaſt in *Somerſetſhire*, but it will owe ſubjection to neither, being an entire County incorporate of it ſelf, enjoying large Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by its peculiar Magiſtrates, as a *Major*, *Court* of *Alder-*

Aldermen, 2 *Sheriffs*, and other ſub-Officers, and is dignified with the See of a *Biſhop* and the title of an *Earldom*, now inveſted in the perſon of the Right Honourable *George Digby*, Earl of *Briſtol*, &c. It is a City of a ſweet and delightful ſcituation, and of far more beauty than antiquity, being adorned with many fair and well built Edifices; and its Streets ſo neatly ordered, by reaſon of the *Avon* that runneth through it, together with the common *Sinks* and *Sewers* under ground, that no filth is to be ſeen to annoy its Inhabitants. It is a City of a large extent, numbring 18 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*, a fair ſtructure. It is begirt with a Wall, and further defended with Fortifications; its Port is good, and commodious for *Ships* of a conſiderable burthen, which doth occaſion it to be a place of a very conſiderable Trade, and to be well inhabited, and frequented by *Merchants* and *Tradeſmen*, inſomuch that next after *London* it may juſtly claim priority of all others in *England*; and for the accommodation of its Inhabitants, beſides its *Shambles*, its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are plentifully ſerved with all ſorts of Proviſions. It is of note for its *Briſtol-Stones*, taken out of St. *Vincents-Rock* near adjoyning.

Glouceſter, a City of good antiquity, and pleaſantly ſeated on an eaſie Aſcent, and on the banks of the *Severne*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*. 'Tis a City not very large, yet hath it for Divine worſhip 12 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides its *Abby* or *Cathedral*, dedicated to St. *Peter*, a fair and beautiful building, conſiſting of a continued *Window-work*, and hath large Cloyſters and an excellent Whiſpering-place. It is alſo beautified with a handſom *Colledge*, and many neat Buildings, being a place well inhabited and frequented, enjoying a good Trade; and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are well furniſhed with all Proviſions, and very great for *Corn* and *Cattle*. This City is the See of a *Biſhop*, to which belongs a *Dean* and 6 *Prebends*; 'tis a County within it ſelf, enjoyeth large Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Sheriffs*, 12 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder*, with other ſub-Officers. *Glouceſter.*

Circeſter, or *Cirenceſter*, ſeated on the *Churn*, over which it hath a Bridge, and in the *Woulds* very commodious for Mills. 'Twas a City once large, and of great account in the time of the *Romans*; at preſent it is a good *Borough Town*, enjoying large Priviledges, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath weekly two conſiderable Markets, on *Mondays* chiefly for *Corn*, and on *Fridays* for *Wool*, *Yarn*, and Proviſions. *Circeſter.*

Tewksbury, commodiouſly ſeated on and between 3 Rivers, the *Severne*, *Avon*, and *Swilyat*, over which are as many Bridges; a fair, large, well inhabited and frequented *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, electing *Parliament men*; of good account for making of *Woollen-cloth*, and for the beſt *Muſtard* in *England*, and hath a very good Market on *Saturdays* for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and Proviſions. *Tewksbury.*

Stroud, ſeated on a River ſo called, over which it hath a Bridge, and on the banks of the ſaid River are placed abundance of *Fulling-Mills*. It is a well built Town, which is of chief note for making and dying of *Cloths*, and eſpecially for good *Scarlets*; and hath a good Market on *Fridays* for Proviſions and *Yarn*. *Stroud.*

Tedbury, an indifferent good Town, beautified with a fair *Market-houſe*; and its Market on *Wedneſdays*, for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Cheeſe*, *Mault*, *Yarn*, *Wool*, *Proviſions*, and other Country Commodities, is eſteemed one of the beſt in theſe parts. *Tedbury.*

Barkley, a place of good antiquity, honoured with a *Barony*, and gives title to the Right Honourable Lord *Berkley*, &c. It is ſeated on a branch of the *Severne*, and hath an indifferent Market on *Tueſdays*. *Barkley.*

Durſley, ſeated on or near a branch of the *Severne*; a good Town, much inhabited by *Clothiers*, and hath a ſmall Market on *Thurſdays*. *Durſley.*

Chipping-Sodbury, ſeated in a bottom of the Downs, and in the Road; an indifferent good *Borough Town*, which hath a very great Market for *Cheeſe* on *Thurſdays*, and is alſo well ſerved with *Corn* and *Proviſions*. *Chipping-Sodbury.*

Hantſhire deſcribed.

HANTSHIRE, of a fertil Soil for *Corn*, hath rich *Paſtures*, which feed ſtore of *Cattle*, is well clothed with *Wood*, affordeth plenty of *Iron*, which is here wrought from the Mines; alſo excellent *Hony*, and of their *Wool* they make abundance of *Cloths* and *Kerſies*.

Its Southern parts are waſhed with the *Sea*, and by reaſon of its ſeveral good Ports and Havens it is well reſorted and traded unto, affording moſt *Tranſmarine Commodities*,

The ancient Inhabitants known to the *Romans*, were the *Segontians* in the North part, and the *Belgæ* and the *Regni* in the South.

In this County is *New-Foreſt*, about 30 miles in compaſs, and a place which affordeth great variety of Game; within this tract of ground was formerly 36 *Pariſh Churches*, which with the Houſes thereto belonging were pulled down by command of *William* the *Conquerour*, that it might be a place for *wild Beaſts* to harbour in.

It is ſevered into 40 *Hundreds*, wherein are ſeated 253 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 18 *Market Towns*, beſides thoſe in the Iſle of *Wight*, being part of this County, which I ſhall anon treat of.

Winchester.

Wincheſter, a City of great antiquity, and famous in the time of the *Romans*, *Saxons*, and *Normans*, it being the Sepulchre of divers of their *Kings* and *Queens*, and was of note in the time of the *Romans* for making the rich Embroideries for their *Emperours*. It is a place pleaſantly ſeated in a Valley betwixt Hills, and on the banks of a delightful River, which after about 10 miles courſe falleth into an Arm of the *Sea*, on which *Southampton* is ſeated. It is a fair City of about a mile and a half in circuit within its Walls, which gives entrance unto its Suburbs by 4 Gates; for Divine worſhip it hath five *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*, dedicated to the *Holy Trinity*, a large and beautiful ſtructure. It is garniſhed with good Buildings, amongſt which are the *Biſhops Palace*, the *Prebends houſes*, and the *Town-Hall*, where the *Aſſizes* and *Seſſions* for the County are kept. It is a place well inhabited and frequented, and its Markets, which are on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, are well provided with all ſorts of Proviſions, eſpecially that on *Saturdays*. It enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to *Parliament*. Without the City, in the Suburbs, is a fair *Colledge* bearing the name of the City, having a *Warden*, *Maſters*, and an *Uſher*, and is endowed with a liberal Maintenance.

Near unto this City, pleaſantly ſeated on a fair River, is St. *Croſſes Hoſpital* for the relief of 12 Poor men called *Brothers*, having a *Maſter*, *Steward*, and ſub-Officers; and according to the Inſtitution of the Houſe, *Bread* and *Drink* is given to all Travellers that will require the ſame.

Southampton.

Southampton, commodiouſly ſeated on an Arm of the *Sea*, capable to receive Ships of a conſiderable burthen to its *Keys*, which are fair, and very convenient for the lading and unlading of Goods, by reaſon of which it is a place well inhabited by *Merchants* and *Shopkeepers*, who drive a good Trade. It is a large Town, numbring 5 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Hoſpital*, called *Gods-houſe*. It is garniſhed with well built Houſes, and is fenced about with a double Ditch and Walls, which gives entrance by 7 Gates. It is a Town and County of it ſelf, governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, and *Burgeſſes*, enjoyeth large Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is dignified with the title of an *Earldom*, and its Markets on *Tueſdays* and *Thurſdays* are not very great, except for Proviſions.

Portſmouth.

Portſmouth, at preſent one of the beſt Garriſons and Sea-port Towns in *England*, by reaſon of its commodious ſcituation, which makes it to be exceedingly reſorted unto by *Shipping*, and is one of the uſual ſtations for the *Navy Royal*, where his Majeſty hath his *Store-houſes* and *Docks* for the building and equipping his *Ships*, which adds no ſmall benefit to the Town, which is large, well built, very populous, enjoyeth a good Trade, is well provided with all neceſſaries, and its Markets on *Thurſdays* and *Saturdays* are very conſiderable for Proviſions. This Town is ſeated in the Iſle of *Porſey*, ſo made by the Sea and its two Arms, which are joyned by a River. It is a

Town

Town Corporate, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament; and being a place of ſuch concernment, is exceedingly fortified with two *Caſtles* and other Fortifications. Here they make *Salt* of the *Salt-water*.

Baſingſtoke, ſeated on the Road, a great thorough-fare Town for the Weſtern partt. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 7 *Aldermen*, as many *Burgeſſes*, a *high Steward*, a *Recorder*, &c. and the Market on *Wedneſdays* is very good for Corn, eſpecially *Barley*. *Baſingſtoke.*

Silcheſter, a place of great antiquity, and of a large extent, ſaid to be the ancient City *Vindonum*, built by *Conſtantius* Son of *Conſtantine* the Great, and before it was deſtroyed by the *Danes*, was of a large extent. Here the warlike *Arthur* was Crowned. *Silcheſter.*

The Iſle of *WIGHT*, part of *Hantſhire*, of which it may ſeem to be a part; for from *Hurſt* Caſtle, which is ſeated on a Languet of Land which runneth forth into the *Sea*; it is not above a mile to the Weſtern part of this Iſle, and from *Portſmouth* not above ſix. And its Southern part lieth oppoſite to *France*, from which it is diſtant about 35 Leagues. Iſle of *wight.*

The form of this Iſle is long, being about 20 miles in length, and where broadeſt 12, and hath about 60 miles of Sea-Coaſt.

It is bleſt with a healthful Air, and is of a fertil Soil both for *Corn* and *Paſture*, and hath plenty of *Conies*, *Hares*, *Partridges*, *Sea-fowl*, and other Game; and for excellent *Fiſh* may compare with any Country whatſoever; nor is it wanting in any thing either for pleaſure or profit, except *Wood*, and that they are ſupplied with from *Hantſhire*.

It is a place of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art; for beſides its *Caſtles*, *Block-houſes*, *Forts*, and *Militia*; it is fenced about with a ridge of craggy *Rocks* and *Cliffs*, with dangerous *Banks*; amongſt which thoſe of moſt note to Sea-men are the *Needles*, *Shigles*, *Brambles*, the *Mixon*, &c. It is very populous, and garniſhed with 36 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath for its chief places,

Newport, a large, populous and well frequented *Major Town*, which hath the election of *Parliament men*, is dignified with the title of an *Earldom*, and at preſent the only *Market Town* in the Iſle, which is here kept on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, both very conſiderable for *Proviſions*, *Corn*, *Cattle*, and other Commodities. It is ſeated within 4 miles of the *Sea*, and on a navigable *Creek* for ſmall Veſſels to the *Key*, which doth much facilitate its Trade. *Newport.*

Yarmouth, a fair *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, and had formerly a Market; is beautified with well built Houſes, which for the moſt part are of *Free-ſtone* and covered with *Slate*. Its ſcituation is in the Weſtern part of the Iſle on the *Sea-ſhoar*, with which and its Arms it is now encompaſſed, and hath 3 ſtrong Fortifications raiſed with a Draw-Bridge, and the Weſt end is defended by a powerful *Caſtle* on the Key. *Yarmouth.*

The *Cows*, ſeated at the entring in of the *Creek* that goeth to *Newport*; a place very eminent for the harbouring of Ships.

About this *Iſle* are ſeveral other ſmall ones, or rather *Rocks*, as thoſe called the *Black-Rock*, the *Mixon*, the *Don*, *Moſs*, *Challorne*, *Goſs*, *Warden*, *Atherfield*, and *Chalk-Rocks*; and on the North part, between it and *Portſmouth*, as dangerous Sands, as the *Brambles*, the *Horſe*, and *Nomans Lands*.

HARTFORDSHIRE, bleſt with a wholſom Air, and for the generality is of an indifferent fertil Soil for Grain, affording good ſtore of *Wheat* and *Barley*, of which they make *Mault*, eſpecially in the Vale of *Ringtail* or *Ringdale*, and hath plenty of *Meadows* and *Paſtures*, which feed ſtore of *Cattle*; but of its own nature it is apt to bear *Wood* and *Copſes*. It is well ſtored with *Parks*, and hath many pleaſant and ancient Seats of Gentry, commonly called *Beryes*, that is, *Mannor-Houſes*, *Court-Houſes* or *Halls*. *Hartfordſhire* deſcribed.

It is well watered with Rivers, the chief amongſt which are the *Lea*, *Stower*, *Stratford*, *Redburne*, *Flamſted*, *Colne*, &c.

The

The ancient Inhabitants known to the *Romans*, were the *Trinobantes* and the *Cattieuchlanians*, and became afterwards part of the East *Saxons*.

It is ſevered into 8 *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 120 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides 15 *Chappels* of *Eaſe*, and is traded unto by 18 *Market Towns*, moſt of which are of good account.

Hartford. *Hartford*, ſeated on the *Lea*, ſaid to be formerly navigable, once a place of a larger extent, and of more beauty, ſtrength and eſteem than now it is; yet is it the Shire Town, where the County Goal is kept, and as a *Borough Town* electeth *Parliament men.* It is governed by a *Major*, 9 *Burgeſſes*, 16 *Aſſiſtants*, a *high Steward*, who is always a Noble-man, a *Steward* of the Court of *Records* and other ſub-Officers, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well frequented and ſerved with Commodities.

St. Albans. St. *Albans*, ſeated on the *Colne*, a Town of great antiquity, being raiſed from the ruins of that famous City *Verulam*, ſo ſplendid in the time of the *Romans*, as may appear by the *Pillars*, *Pavements*, *Arched-Vaults*, *Idols*, and *Coins* oft digged up; at which time it enjoyed ample Priviledges and Immunities, many of which it yet keepeth, being dignified with the Title of an *Earldom*, and as a *Borough Town* electeth *Parliament men.* For its chief Magiſtrates hath a *Major*, 10 *Aldermen*, a *Steward* and *Chamberlain.* It is a fair, large, well inhabited and frequented thorough-fare Town, divided into four Wards; for Divine worſhip hath 3 *Pariſh Churches*, in one of which was (if not is) a *Font* of ſolid Braſs brought out of *Scotland*, which was there made uſe of for the baptizing the *Scottiſh* Kings Children, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well ſerved with Commodities, &c.

Barnet. *Barnet*, or *high Barnet*, a large, dry and pleaſant Town, highly ſeated, and on the Road, a place of ſome account for its *Medicinal-waters*, as alſo for its Swine-Market on *Mondays*, which makes it to be well frequented, and to be well accommodated with Inns. Here was fought a bloody Battle between the Competitors of the Houſes of *York* and *Lancaſter* on *Eaſter-day*, in which *Edward* the Fourth became Victor.

Watford. *Watford*, ſeated on the *Colne*; a large and well inhabited Town, whole Market on *Tueſdays* is well frequented, affording all neceſſaries, eſpecially Corn in great plenty.

Not far from *Watford* is *Langley* Abby, where was born *Nicholas*, Surnamed *Break-Spear*, who was afterwards Biſhop of *Rome*, and called Pope *Hadrian* the 4th. He taught the *Norwegians* the Chriſtian Faith: he was of ſo proud a Spirit, that he had his Stirup held by *Frederick* the *Roman* Emperour.

Berkhamſted. *Berkhamſted* hath a fair *Free School*, and a pretty good Market on *Mondays*, chiefly for *Mault*. And here it was that the *Engliſh Nobles* met in Council for the ſhaking off the *Normans* Yoke.

Hatfield. *Hatfield*, a place of great delight and recreation, by reaſon of its *Parks* and other places of pleaſure, once dignified with a *Royal-houſe* of the Kings, which now belongeth to the Earl of *Saliſbury*; it hath a Market on *Thurſdays*.

Ware. *Ware*, a large, well frequented and inhabited thorough-fare Town, ſeated on the *Lea*, hath a Market on *Tueſdays*, which is well provided with Commodities; a place well known to many for its great *Bed*.

Stratford. *Stratford*, or *Biſhops-Stratford*, ſeated on the ſide of a Hill; a very large, fair, and well inhabited and frequented Market Town, full of *Inns* for the giving entertainment to Strangers, and its Market on *Thurſdays* is very well reſorted unto, and provided with Proviſions and moſt Country Commodities. Here are the ruins of a *Caſtle*, raiſed on an artificial Mount, within which is a deep and dark Dungeon called the *Convicts Priſon*, by which it may be ſuppoſed that ſome great Priviledges did belong unto it.

Baldock. *Baldock*; a conſiderable large Town, ſeated between the Hills in a *Chalky* Soil fit for Corn, of chief note for its many *Maulſters*; yet its Market on *Thurſdays* is but ſmall.

Royſton,

Royſton, a famous *Market Town*, which is kept on *Wedneſdays* for *Corn* and *Mault* here made, being ſeated in a fat Soil, and between Hills in a bottom. The Town is large, well inhabited and full of *Inns*, part being in this County and part in *Cambridgeſhire*. *Royſton.*

HEREFORDSHIRE, a County every where exceeding fertil, having great plenty of Grains and rich Paſtures, which feed ſtore of Cattle, eſpecially *Sheep*, whoſe *Wool* is much eſteemed for its fineſs; and for *Wheat*, *Wool* and *Water* it yieldeth to no County in *England*. It is well clothed with *Wood*, and watered with *Rivers*, the chief amongſt which are the *Wye*, *Munow*, *Wades*, *Doive*, *Lugg*, *Froom*, &c. *Herefordſhire* deſcribed.

All *Fruits* here grow in great plenty, and of their *Apples* they make ſuch abundance of *Sider*, that beſides what they uſe themſelves (it being their general drink) of late years it is become a conſiderable Commodity, eſpecially that which is called *Red-ſtreak*.

Its ancient Inhabitants were the *Silures*, a ſtout and warlike People, who ſorely perplexed the *Romans* for 9 years ſpace, through the valour and noble exploits of their Commander *Caractacus*, and became afterwards part of the Kingdom of the *Mercians*.

It is divided into 11 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 176 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath Traffick with 8 *Market Towns*.

Hereford, a City of great antiquity, and raiſed out of the ancient *Arconium*, now called *Kencheſter*, about 3 miles diſtant; a place of good account in the time of the *Romans*, and ſo continued until it was ſhaken to pieces by a violent *Earthquake*. It is no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated amongſt delightful *Meadows* and rich *Corn-fields*, and almoſt encompaſſed with *Rivers*, to wit the *Wye* and two others, over which are two Bridges. It is of a large place, beautified with good Buildings both publick and private, amongſt which are the *Biſhops Palace*, the *Colledge*, the *Cathedral*, the *Prebends houſes*, and *Hoſpital*, and numbreth 6 *Pariſh Churches*, (two of which in the late Troubles were demoliſhed) beſides its *Cathedral*, to which belongeth a *Biſhop*, *Dean*, *Chancellor*, 6 *Canons*, 27 *Prebends*, with a *Chanter*, *Treaſurer*, 12 *Vicars Choral*, beſides *Deacons*, *Queriſters*, and other Attendants. This City enjoyeth large Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 6 *Aldermen*, a *Common Council*, *Recorder*, and other ſub-Officers, and is very well ſerved with Commodities, having weekly 3 Markets on *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays* and *Saturdays*, which are of conſiderable account; that on *Fridays* for *Cattle*, *Sheep*, and *Hogs*, and the other for *Grain* and all ſorts of *Proviſions*, beſides *Gloves* here made and ſold in great quantities. *Hereford.*

Near to this City is *Gilden Vale*, ſo called from the fertility of the Soil and pleaſant ſcituation.

Roſs, ſeated in a fertil Soil on the banks of the *Wye*; a fair *Borough Town*, which hath a very great Market on *Thurſdays* for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*, being much reſorted unto by the Inhabitants of *Glouceſterſhire* and *Monmouthſhire*. *Roſs.*

Lidbury, near adjoyning to *Malvern Hills*; a fine well built Town, ſeated in a rich Clayey-ground, much inhabited by *Clothiers*, who drive a good Trade, and its Market on *Tueſdays* is well ſerved with, *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*. *Lidbury.*

Lemſter, a large, ancient and pleaſant Town, ſeated in a rich Soil and on the *Lugg*, which runneth through it, over which are ſeveral Bridges. It is governed by a *Bayliff*, a *Recorder*, *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, and 24 of the *Chamber* or *Common Council*; it ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a very good Market on *Fridays* for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Proviſions*, *Hops* and *Wool*, for which this Town is of note, it being called *Lemſter-Ore*. *Lemſter.*

Kyneton, alſo ſeated on the *Arrow*; a pretty large and well built Town, whoſe Inhabitants drive a good Trade for *narrow Cloths*. Its Market on *Wedneſdays* for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Proviſions*, and ſeveral Country Commodities, is eſteemed the beſt in the County. *Kyneton.*

County of Huntington described.

HUNTINGTONSHIRE, a County for the generality of a fertil Soil both for Corn and Tillage, garniſhed with delightful Hills, and towards the Eaſt; where it joyneth on the *Fens*; it hath rich Paſturage, which feed ſtore of Cattle. It is well watered with *Rivers*, the chief amongſt which is the *Ouſe*, which divideth it ſelf into ſeveral ſtreams.

It is ſevered into 4 *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 79 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 5 *Market Towns*.

Huntington.

Huntington, pleaſantly ſeated on a riſing Aſcent, and on the North-banks of the *Owſe*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, which leadeth to *Godmanchester* on the other ſide of the *Owſe*; a very large County and ancient *Borough Town*, ſeated in a rich Soil, and well inhabited by *Yeomen* and *Farmers*. It is a Town of great antiquity, was once very populous, numbring no leſs than 15 *Pariſh Churches*, which are now reduced to 4, and enjoyed great Immunities, and had a Mint for Coynage. At preſent it is dignified with the title of an *Earldom*, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, (of which the *Major* is one) and *Burgeſſes*; is well inhabited and frequented, and the rather as being a thorough-fare Town from *London*, *Cambridge*, and other Southern parts of *England*, into the North and into *Scotland*; and alſo for being the place where the *Aſſizes* are kept for the County; and its Market on *Saturdays* is very well ſerved with *Proviſions*.

St. Ives.

St. Ives, ſo called from one *Ivo* a *Perſian* Biſhop, who 'tis ſaid about the year 600 travelled through *England* preaching the Goſpel, and here ended his days, and his Body was from hence removed to *Ramſey Abbey*; a fair, large and ancient Town, ſeated on the *Owſe*, over which it hath a very good *Stone-bridge*, hath a Market on *Mondays*, which is well ſerved with Proviſions, and is of chief note for living Cattel.

St. Neots.

St. Neots (ſo called from *Neotus*, a Monk of *Glaſtenbury*;) a large and well built Town, beautified with a neat Church, is commodiouſly ſeated on the *Owſe*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, which leadeth to *Bedfordſhire*. Its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is well ſerved with Proviſions, and through the commodiouſneſs of the *Owſe* the Neighbouring Towns are from hence furniſhed with *Coals*.

Ramſey.

Ramſey, ſeated in the *Fenny* part amongſt rich grounds both for Tillage and Paſturage, and near the Meers of *Ramſey* and *Whitleſey*, which with the *Rivers* that plentifully water it, afford excellent *Fiſh* and *wild Fowl* in great plenty. It is a good Country Town, which was held in great eſteem for its rich *Abby* ſo called, and its Market on *Wedneſdays* is well frequented.

County of Kent described.

KENT, a County of a large extent, and although very hilly, for the generality is of a rich and fertil Soil both for Corn and Paſture, and is well ſtored with *Cattle*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, and *Fruits*.

The Air is temperate and good, except in the *Weald* and *Marſhes*, which are Aguiſh. It is well watered with *Rivers*, many of which are Navigable; as the *Thames*, which waſhes its Northern parts; the *Medway*, which in a manner divideth the Shire in the midſt, and is the ſtation for his Majeſties *Navy Royal* (which ſaid River loſeth it ſelf under ground, and riſeth again near *Cox-heath*) beſides 10 others of conſiderable account, which opening with ſeveral Creeks and Havens, are found commodious for *Ships* to ride in, of which four bear the name of *Cinque Ports*, viz. *Dover*, *Sandwich*, *Rumney*, and *Hith*; and on the banks of theſe Rivers, which are croſſed by divers *Bridges*, are ſeated ſeveral good Towns.

This County boaſteth it ſelf for being the firſt Kingdom of the *Heptarchy*; of having a particular King to it ſelf; that it was never ſubdued, but yielded upon Articles to the *Normans*, and to keep their ancient Cuſtoms; That their *Kings* and *Commons*, amongſt all the *Saxons*, were the firſt Chriſtians.

This

This County is enriched with two Cities and *Episcopal Sees*, is strengthned with several *Castles*, is graced with 4 of the *Kings Palaces*, beautified with many splendid Buildings; well replenished with Gentry, sufficiently stored with safe Roads and secure Harbours for *Ships*; plentifully garnished with good Towns, is a place of a considerable Trade, affording *Corn* and other Grains, *Cloth* and several *Draperies*, *Fullers-Earth*, *Madder*, *Flax*, *Iron*, *Wood*, Fruits, both *Apples* and *Cherries*, in great plenty; and by reason of its vicinity to *France* is well known and frequented by Strangers.

As to its division, it hath 14 *Bailywicks*, 17 *Franchises* and *Liberties*, which have Courts of *Record* to hold plea of all Actions real, personal, and mixt, and 14 *Corporations*; for the names of all which see the Volume of *Britannia*, *pag.* 122. lately published by me.

It is severed into 5 *Laths* and 64 *Hundreds*, in which said *Hundreds* are numbred 400 and odd *Parishes*, and hath intercourse of Traffick with 28 *Market Towns*.

The *Lath* of *Sutton*, or *SUTTON* at *Hone*, is severed into 8 *Hundreds*, hath two divisions of *Justices* of the *Peace*, and for its chief places hath, Lath of *Sutton* with its chief places.

Sevenoke, a Town of good resort, so called from its Founder *Will. Sevenoke*, Lord *Major* of *London*, *Anno* 1418. who erected a *Free School* and an *Hospital*; hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well served with *Corn* and *Provisions*. *Sevenoke.*

Dartford, seated on the *Darent*, not far from its influx into the *Thames*, and on the high Road from *London* to *Canterbury*; 'tis a good large Town, full of *Inns* and Houses of Entertainment, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well stored with *Corn* and *Provisions*, and is much frequented by *Corn-Chandlers* and *Meal-men*. *Dartford.*

Greenwich, a large, well built and very pleasant Town, seated on the Bank of the *Thames*, being much inhabited and frequented by Gentry, and enobled with a once stately *Palace* of the Kings, out of the Ruins of which is now erecting a curious Pile of Buildings; and adjoyning to this *Palace* is a small, but pleasant *Park*, which affords a delectable prospect. And here it was that Queen *Elizabeth*, with divers other Princes, were born. *Greenwich.*

Adjoyning to *Greenwich* is *Black-heath*, a place of note in former times for Military Affairs; and it is supposed, that here might be dug excellent *Sea-Coals*, but is not encouraged for fear of hindring the *Newcastle-Trade*.

Eltham, seated on the South-side of *Shooters-Hill* amongst Woods; a well built Town, neatly scituated, well inhabited by *Gentry*, and was once honoured with a *Palace* of his Majesty, said to be built by *Anthony Beck*, *Patriarch* of *Jerusalem*, who gave it to Queen *Elianor*, wife to King *Edward* the First. *Eltham.*

The *Lath* of *AYLESFORD* is of a large extent, reaching from North to South, is severed into 15 *Hundreds*, is divided into 3 divisions of the *Justices* of the *Peace*, and hath for its chief places *Aylesford* Lath described.

Rochester, an ancient City, and once larger than now it is, being at present but small, having but one principal Street, which is of a good length, and for the most part inhabited by *Tradesmen* and *Inn-keepers*, and graced with well built Houses; besides its *Cathedral*, built by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, dedicated to St. *Andrew*, a fair structure, to which belongeth a *Deanary* and 6 *Prebendaries*. It is a City no less pleasantly than commodiously seated on the banks of the *Medway*, over which it hath a stately *Stone-bridge*, sustained by divers Arches, which leadeth unto *Stroud*, a good, fair and well inhabited thorough-fare Town from *London* to *Canterbury*, (as is *Rochester*). This City enjoyeth several Immunities, is dignified with the Title of an *Earldom*, governed by a *Major*, Court of *Aldermen*, with other sub-Officers, hath the election of *Parliament men*, is well resorted unto, and its Market on *Friday* is well served with Provisions. *Rochester.*

Adjoyning to this City is *Chetham*, alſo ſeated on the banks of the *Medway*; a long thorough-fare Town, which is chiefly inhabited by *Sea-men*, and thoſe that have alliance thereunto, and the more as being the ſtation of the *Navy-Royal*, and where there is a ſtately *Dock* for the building and equipping of his *Majeſties Ships*.

Graveſ-end. *Graves-end*, ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*; a place of great reſort, as being the common Landing-place for Strangers and Sea-men in their paſſages to *London*; as likewiſe the accuſtomary place for the taking of *Shipping*, and the ready Road to *France*, which doth occaſion it to be well furniſhed with *Inns*, *Taverns*, and Houſes of entertainment, and its Market on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* to be well provided with Victuals; yet all things here want for no price. And here is ſeated one of the *Block-houſes*, the other being oppoſite unto it in the County of *Eſſex*; which ſaid *Blockhouſes* are for the ſecuring the paſſage of the *Thames* up to *London*.

Maidſtone. *Maidſtone*, ſeated on the *Medway*, (over which it hath a fair Bridge) which, with the branch it ſendeth forth, ſevereth the Town. It is a large, fair, ſweet, populous, and well built and frequented *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, enjoyeth ſeveral Priviledges, and as the *Shire-Town* here is one of the Priſons for the County, and where they keep their *Seſſions* and *Aſſizes*. Its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is very conſiderable and well provided with Corn and all ſorts of Proviſions.

Tunbridge. *Tunbridge*, ſeated on a branch of the *Medway*, over which it hath a Bridge, and is ſaid to take its name from its many Bridges. It is a well frequented Market Town, which is on *Fridays* for Corn and Proviſions, and is of chief note for its healthful and Medicinal Waters near adjoyning, which are much viſited by the Gentry in the Summer ſeaſon.

Lath of *Scray* deſcribed. The Lath of *Scray* taketh up the mid-part of the County, is divided into 16 *Hundreds*, hath two diviſions of *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, and hath for its chief places,

Feverſham. *Feverſham*, not far from the Iſle of *Shippey*, ſo made by the *Medway*, which with the *Sea* encircleth it; out of which ſaid River there cometh a Creek up to the Town, by reaſon of which it is well frequented by *Hoyes* and ſuch like ſmall Veſſels, which here drive a good Trade, it being the principal Port-Town for all this part of *Kent*. The Town is large, well built, and inhabited by *Tradeſmen*, *Inn-keepers* and *Victualers*; and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are well ſerved with Proviſions.

Near this Town are very deep Pits, which are narrow at the mouth and broad below, with *Chalk Pillars* as it were to ſupport them, and have partitions or rooms within them.

Queenborough. *Queenborough*, ſeated in the Iſle of *Shippey* (which is about 21 miles in circuit, and of an exceeding fertil Soil, feeding great flocks of *Sheep*, from whence 'tis ſaid to take its name;) a *Borough Town* of great antiquity, but is very ſmall and mean. For the defence of the paſſage up the River of *Thames* here was a very ſtrong Caſtle, now reduced to ruin; but of late his preſent Majeſty hath cauſed a powerful Fort to be raiſed at *Shyreneſs*, the better to ſecure the paſſage up the *Medway* to *Gellingham* and *Chetham*, where the *Navy Royal* rideth. In the Iſle of *Shippey* there are no *Moles*, and if any be carried thither, they are ſaid to die.

Aſhford. *Aſhford*, not far from the *Stower*, hath a well frequented Market on *Saturdays*; and in this Town is kept a Court of *Record* upon every *Tueſday* three weeks for Actions, wherein the debt or damages do not exceed 20 Marks.

Lath of *Shepway.* The Lath of *SHEPWAT* is ſevered into 13 *Hundreds*, hath one diviſion of *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, and for its chief places hath,

Hyth. *Hyth*, once a place of good note and largeneſs, as being one of the *Cinque-Ports*, but now not much frequented, by reaſon of the *Seas* forſaking it, and its Haven being choaked up; yet doth it ſtill retain its priviledges as other *Cinque-port Towns*, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is indifferently well furniſhed with Proviſions; and here are yet two *Hoſpitals*, which are both under the government of the *Major* and *Jurats* of the Town.

Rumney,

Rumney, another of the *Cinque-Port Towns*, ſeated in a Marſh ſo called, of about 14 miles in length and 8 in breadth; now more famous for the fertility of the Marſh in graſing of Cattle than for the goodneſs of the place, by reaſon of the *Seas* leaving it; and for its unwholſom Air, the Town being not large nor the Buildings good, yet is it the chiefeſt *Market Town* in the Marſh, which every *Thurſday* is indifferently well ſerved with Proviſions; yet doth it ſtill enjoy the priviledges of other *Cinque-port Towns*. *Rumney.*

The *Lath* of *St. AUGUSTINE* is waſhed on the North and Eaſt with the *Sea*; it is ſevered into 12 *Hundreds*, hath one diviſion of *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, and for its chief places hath, Lath of St. *Auguſtine.*

Canterbury, a City of great antiquity, being ſaid to be built 900 years before the birth of Chriſt, and in former time was held in great fame and much reſorted unto, and the more for being the Burial-place of St. *Thomas Becket* there ſlain, a perſon ſo greatly reverenced by the *Romaniſts*. This City is encompaſſed with a *Mote* and *Wall*, on which are (or were) ſeveral *Cittadels* or *Watch-Towers*, without which are its Suburbs, in which and within the City are numbred 14 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*, a large and ſuperb ſtructure, not inferiour to St. *Pauls* at *London*, when in its priſtine grandure and ſplendour, having two lofty Towers, which much add to the proſpect of the City, and within its bounds or limits are ſeveral fair Edifices belonging to the *Dean* and *Prebends*, as alſo a Free School called the *Kings School*. It is a City graced with divers good Buildings and a fair *Market-houſe*, over which are Rooms made uſe of by the *Major* and *Aldermen* for the publick concerns of the City. It is dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, who is Primate of all *England*; is governed by a *Major* and *Court* of *Aldermen*, and hath a *Recorder* and other ſub-Officers. It enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, is well inhabited and traded unto for its *Stuffs* made by *Walloons* there inhabiting, and is well provided with Proviſions; for beſides its Shambles it hath weekly two Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which is the moſt conſiderable. *Canterbury.*

Dover, commodiouſly ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, which together with its ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art (being loftily ſcituated between high Cliffs, commanding both Sea and Country adjacent, and defended by a ſtrong Caſtle and other Fortifications;) as alſo the commodiouſneſs of its Haven, for being one of the *Cinque-port Towns*; and for its ſhort and ready paſſage into *France* (being about 21 miles) makes it a place of conſiderable note. It alſo enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are well frequented and furniſhed with Proviſions. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and other Officers, enjoyeth ample Immunities, and was of a larger extent than now it is, having formerly 7 *Pariſh Churches*, which are reduced to 2. Its Caſtle (built by *Julius Cæſar*) is eſteemed a place of great importance to the Nation, and is ſtrongly guarded. At the weſt part of the *Peer* is a Fort called *Archliff-Fort*; and in the Cliff under the *Caſtle* is a Fort called *Motes Bulwark*: and at the other ſide of the Caſtle-hill is a *Tower* or *Light-houſe*, made uſe of for direction of Ships, called *Breden-ſtone*, and by ſome, the *Devils drop of Mortar*. *Dover.*

Along the Shoar, going towards *Sandwich*, are St. *Margarets-bay*, *Kingsdown*, *Walmer* Caſtle, *Deal* Caſtle, and *Sandown* Caſtle.

Sandwich, another of the *Cinque-port Towns*, being incorporated, and amongſt its Immunities electeth *Burgeſſes*. It is a place of good ſtrength both by Nature and Art, but by reaſon of the ill-commodiouſneſs of the Harbour is not well frequented; yet hath it weekly 2 Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*. *Sandwich.*

The Iſle of *THANET* doth here preſent it ſelf, which is about 9 miles long, and about the ſame breadth where broadeſt. It is very populous and plentifully ſtored with Proviſions, eſpecially Corn, and hath in it ſeveral Towns, whoſe names appear in the Map. Iſle of *Thanet.*

County of *Lancaſter* deſcribed.

The County Palatine of *LANCASTER*, for the generality of an unfertil Soil as to the *Mooriſh* part; yet not without a ſufficiency of *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, *Coals*, *Flax*, &c. The Eaſtern part is very Mountainous, and full of ſtony, barren and craggy Hills, being the habitation of *Foxes*, *Conies*, and ſome *Otters*; but where the ground is plain and Champain it is very grateful to the Husbandman, except ſome moiſt and unwholſom places, which they call *Moſſes*, which are not unlike *Iriſh-bogs*, from which the Inhabitants are ſupplied with *Turf* for Fuel; and throughout the County there is great ſtore of goodly Cattle, which are there ſold at eaſie rates.

The *Air* of this County is ſharp and ſerene, but very healthful to the Inhabitants.

It is very well watered with Rivers, amongſt which are the *Merſey*, *Irwel*, *Roch*, *Irke*, *Dugleſs*, *Tarrow*, *Ribel*, *Derwent*, *Codar*, *Lune*, *Brochwyre*, *Keere*, *Kent*, *Dudden*, &c. with the *Sea*, which watereth its Weſtern parts, together with the *Meers*; it aboundeth in *Fiſh* and *Fowl*.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Brigantes*; and when the *Saxons* became Maſters of the Iſle, it was part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbers*.

Although there are but 61 *Pariſhes* in the County, yet it is very populous, the Pariſhes being large, containing within them ſeveral *Chappels* of *Eaſe*, which may be reckoned as Pariſhes in other Counties. And amongſt theſe Pariſhes there are 27 *Market Towns*, many of which are large, well frequented and traded unto.

Lancaſter.

Lancaſter, a place of good antiquity, pleaſantly ſeated on the River *Lune*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge* ſuſtained by 5 Arches. It is at preſent indifferent large, containing (though but one *Pariſh Church*, which is large and fair,) yet ſeveral well ordered Streets, and graced with good Buildings; the chief amongſt which are its *Church*, *Bridge*, *Market-houſe* or *Town-hall*, where the *Major* and his *Brethren* keep their Courts, and *Caſtle*, ſeated on the top of the Hill, now made uſe of as a Priſon for the County, and where the *Aſſizes* are kept: And although the *Shire Town*, yet it is not much frequented nor inhabited by Tradeſmen, but chiefly by Husbandmen, as lying in a good Soil; but its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is well ſerved with *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*, eſpecially *Fiſh*, and chiefly with *Salmon*. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 2 *Bailiffs*, 6 *Brethren*, 24 *Burgeſſes*, 2 *Chamberlains*, a *Recorder*, &c. and amongſt its Immunities electeth *Parliament men*.

Manchеſter.

Manchеſter, ſeated betwixt the *Irke* and *Irwel*, and upon a ſtony Hill; a Town of great antiquity, being the Fort and ſtation of the *Romans*, and at preſent is large, beautified with fair Buildings, (the chief amongſt which are its *Colledge*, *Market-place*, and *Collegiate-Church*, which is very ornamental) is well inhabited, much reſorted unto, and enjoyeth a conſiderable trade for moſt Commodities, but chiefly for its *Linnen* and *Woollen-Cloths*; alſo for its *Cottons*, known by the name of *Manchеſter Cottons*, which are held in great eſteem; and its Market on *Saturdays* is very conſiderable for the above-ſaid Commodities, as alſo for Proviſions.

Oppoſite to *Manchеſter*, on the other ſide of the River, is *Salford*, a pretty large Town, with a *Chappel* of *Eaſe*.

Warington.

Warington, ſeated on the *Merſey*, over which it hath a curious *Stone-bridge*, which leadeth to *Cheſhire*. It is a fine large Town, much reſorted unto by *Welſhmen*; is of note for its *Lampries*, and hath a conſiderable Market for *Linnen-Cloth*, *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fiſh* and *Proviſions*, on *Wedneſdays*.

Lerpool.

Lerpool, or *Leverpool*, commodiouſly ſeated on the Eaſt-ſide of the goodly River *Mercy*, where it affords a bold and ſafe harbour for *Ships*, which hath much advanced its Trade, being inhabited by divers wealthy Merchants and Tradeſmen, whoſe Traffick (eſpecially into the *Weſt Indies*) makes it famous; its ſcituation affording in greater plenty and at reaſonabler rates than moſt parts of *England*, ſuch exported Commodities proper for the *Weſt Indies*, as likewiſe a quicker return for ſuch imported Commodities, by reaſon of the *Sugar-Bakers* and great Manufactures of *Cotton* in the adjacent parts; this

Town

Town having intercourse of Traffick with *Ireland*, and divers considerable Countries in *England*. The chief Commodities that this Town affordeth, are *Corn*, *Butter*, *Cheese*, *Beef*, *Pit-Coal*, *White Salt* from *Cheshire*, *Silver* and *Gold Watches*, *Lead*, *Saddles*, *Shoes*, *Bees-Wax*, all sorts of *Nails* and *Iron Tools*; and for *Flesh*, *Fish*, *Fowl*, and all sorts of Provisions, its Market on *Saturdays* is sufficiently well provided with. It is an ancient *Borough* and *Corporation*, sending two Representatives to Parliament; 'tis governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, *Aldermen*, *Recorder*, *Town-Clerk*, and *Common-Council*, consisting of 40 *Burgesses*. It is of late, at the great charge and industry of the Family of the *Moors* of *Bank-hall*, beautified with many goodly Buildings, to the great enlargement of the Town, there being Streets that entirely bear their name.

Wigan, seated on the *Douglass*; a large and well built *Town Corporate*, is governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, and *Burgesses*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, enjoyeth a good Trade, hath two Markets weekly on *Mondays* and *Fridays* for *Meal* and *Provisions*, is much inhabited by *Brasiers*, *Pewterers*, *Dyers*, *Weavers* of *Rugs*, *Coverlids*, and *Ticking* for *Bedding*, and is of note for its Fuel called *Cannal*, being the choicest Coal in *England*. *Wigan.*

Preston, a large, fair, well built and inhabited, and frequented *Borough Town*, where the *Courts* of *Chancery* and *Offices* of *Justice* for the County are held: It hath the election of *Parliament men*, and is governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, *Burgesses*, *Recorder*, and other sub-Officers. It is seated on the *Ribble*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, and for the accommodation of its Inhabitants hath weekly 3 Markets, *viz.* on *Wednesdays*, *Fridays*, and *Saturdays*, which is the chief, and very considerable for Corn, living Cattle, Provisions, and several other Commodities in great plenty. *Preston.*

Cartmel, seated near the Sea, and amongst the Hills called *Cartmel-Fells*. It is beautified with a very fair Church built *Cathedral-wise* in form of a Cross, and hath a very good Market on *Mondays* for *Corn*, *Sheep* and *Fish*. *Cartmel.*

Dalton, seated in a Champain Country in the lower *Furness*. Here is an ancient *Castle*, now belonging to his Grace *Christopher* Duke of *Albemarle*, wherein is kept the *Records* and *Prisoners* for Debt for the Liberty of *Furness*. It hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is very well served with *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fish* and *Fowl*. *Dalton.*

LEICESTERSHIRE, a Champain Country, and but thinly clothed with *Wood*, which defect is supplied by the great plenty of *Pit-Coal*, digged up in the Northern parts, which is called the *Would*, and although barren breedeth store of Cattle. Its South-west and North-east parts are of a good Soil for Tillage and Pasturage; and its South-east part is exceeding fertil, having rich Pastures, and produceth all sorts of Grain, especially *Pease* and *Beans*. County of *Leicester* described.

It is well watered with Rivers, as the *Stour* or *Sour*, *Trent*, *Wreke*, *Weeland*, *Sence*, *Eye*, &c.

It is severed into 6 Hundreds; for Divine worship hath about 200 *Parish Churches*, and is traded unto by 12 *Market Towns*.

Leicester, delightfully seated in a healthful Air, rich Soil, and on the Banks of the *Stour*, over which it hath two Bridges. It is a place of more antiquity than beauty, being said to be built by King *Leir*, and called *Caer-Lerion*, wherein Authors say he placed a *High-Priest* to serve in the Temple of *Janus*, which he caused to be built, and wherein he was buried. This Town was also had in great request in the time of the *Romans*; also *Ethelred*, King of the *Mercians*, erected here an *Episcopal See*, which he soon translated elsewhere to its great impoverishment; but the noble Lady *Edelsted* not only repaired it, but also encompassed it with a strong Wall, and much added to its Riches, so that it soon became a place of a great Trade; which glory and riches it lost by the Spoils it sustained by *Rob. Bossu*, the Crouch-back Earl of this Shire. As to its present state, it is a *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, and sub-Officers, is dignified with the title of an Earldom, *Leicester.*

is

is well inhabited, hath indifferent good Buildings, ſendeth two Repreſentatives to Parliament, containeth 3 *Pariſh Churches*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is well ſerved with Corn, Proviſions, and Country commodities.

From this Town *Crouch-back Richard* ſet forth with great ſtrength and pomp to *Redmore*, near *Boſworth*, where, on the 22 of *Auguſt* 1485, in a bloody Battle there fought (for the deciding the differences betwixt the Houſes of *York* and *Lancaſter*) he was ſlain, yielding both himſelf and the victory to *Henry* of *Richmond*, who was proclaimed King in the field; and the next day the body of the ſaid *Richard* was diſgracefully brought back torn, and naked, and as meanly buried in the *Gray-Friars* of *Leiceſter* in a Stone-cheſt, which now is made uſe of in an *Inn* for a Drinking-trough for *Horſes*.

Loughborough. *Loughborough*, delightfully ſeated on the banks of the *Sour*, over which it hath a Bridge, amongſt fertil Meadows and near *Charwood Forreſt*: It is a handſom Town, beautified with fair Buildings and a large Church, and hath a very conſiderable Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, and *Proviſions*, on *Thurſdays*.

Melton-Mowbray. *Melton-Mowbray*, well ſeated in a fertil Soil and on the banks of the *Eye*, which almoſt encircleth it, over which are two fair Stone-bridges. It is an indifferent large and well built Town, and hath a very conſiderable Market on *Tueſdays* for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Hogs*, *Sheep*, *Proviſions*, &c.

Lutterworth. *Lutterworth*, ſeated on the *Swift*, and in a good Soil; an indifferent Country Town, beautified with a large and fair Church, which hath a lofty ſpired Steeple; and its Market on *Thurſdays* is well ſerved with Corn and Country commodities. Near this Town is a Spring ſo cold, that in a ſhort time it turns *Straws* and ſmall *Sticks* into *Stone*.

County of *Lincoln* deſcribed. *LINCOLNSHIRE*, a County of a large extent, and doth divide its form, bounds and diviſion into *Hundreds*.

The Soil is of a different temperature, the Weſtern and Northern parts being very pleaſant and grateful to the Husbandman both for *Corn* and rich *Paſtures*, which feed great ſtore of *Cattle*; and the Eaſtern and Southern parts are fenny, barren, and unfit for Corn; but in recompence hath great plenty of *Fiſh* and *Fowl*. The Air upon the South and Eaſt parts is thick and foggy, occaſioned through the Fenny grounds; but the other parts good and healthful. It is well watered with Rivers, as the *Humber*, *Trent*, *Idell*, *Dane*, *Waſh*, *Witham*, *Welland*, &c. which loſe themſelves in the Sea.

The chief Commodities that this County produceth, are *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, *Flax*, *Wool*, *Alablaſter*, &c.

This County is ſevered into 3 principal Diviſions or Parts, *viz. Lindſey*, *Holland*, and *Keſteven*, which are divided into 30 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 631 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 31 *Market Towns*.

Lincoln. *Lincoln*, a City of great antiquity, and hath been far more magnificent and ſpacious than now it is, whoſe ruinous places doth witneſs the ſame, being ſaid to have had 50 *Churches*, which now are reduced to 15, beſides its *Cathedral* or *Minſter*, ſaid to be one of the fineſt, loftieſt, and ſtatelieſt ſtructures in *England*. This City in the time of the *Britains* was of great ſtrength and fame, containing 1070 *Manſions*, and 900 *Burgeſſes*, with 12 *Lage-men*, having *Sac* and *Soc*; and in the time of the *Normans* it was eſteemed one of the beſt peopled Cities in the Iſle, and enjoyed a great Trade both by *Sea* and *Land*; inſomuch that King *Edward* the Third ordained here his Staple for the Mart of *Wools*, *Leather*, and *Lead*. But its priſtine glory has been much eclipſed by the ſeveral ſhocks of ill Fortune it hath met with; nevertheleſs it is a place well inhabited and frequented, enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Markets on *Fridays* is well ſerved with Proviſions, and its Shops furniſhed with Commodities. It is pleaſantly ſeated on the ſide of a Hill, and on the River *Witham*, which divideth it ſelf into ſeveral ſtreams and waters in the lower part of the City, over which are divers Bridges for the accommodation of the Inhabitants in their paſſage to and fro. It is dignified with an

Epiſcopal

Episcopal See, where the *Bishop* hath his Palace, and whose Diocess is the greatest of any in *England*, numbring within its Jurisdiction 1255 *Parishes*, of which 577 are *Impropriations*. The civil Government of this City is committed to the care of a *Major*, 2 *Sheriffs*, 12 *Aldermen*, who are clothed in *Scarlet*, besides a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, 4 *Chamberlains*, a *Sword-bearer*, 4 *Serjeants* at *Mace*, &c. It enjoyeth ample Immunities, sendeth two Representatives to Parliament, and is a County within it self, whose Liberties extends about 20 miles in compass, and is called the County and City of *Lincoln*.

The Isle of *Axholme*, made so by the Rivers *Trent*, *Dun*, *Idel*, and others. It is a large tract of ground, in which are seated several Towns: the flat and lowet part of the Isle towards the Rivers is Moorish, and yieldeth a sweet Shrub, called by the Inhabitants *Gall*. In this part have been great and tall *Fir-trees* digged up. And the middle part (which is a rising ground) is fertil, and produceth great store of *Flax*. Isle of Axholme.

Barton, seated on the *Humber*, where there is a considerable Ferry into *Yorkshire*, which doth much advantage the Town, which is large and stragling, yet hath but an indifferent Market on *Saturdays*. Barton.

Grimsby Magna, seated near the *Humber*, or rather the *Sea*, and in a flat and Marshy rich ground. This Town was formerly very large, having two *Parish Churches*, enjoyed a good Trade; but its Harbour (which was then commodious) being choaked up, hath much eclipsed its trade and grandure, having now but one *Church*, which for largeness giveth place to few *Cathedrals*. Here was formerly a *Castle*, an *Abby*, a *Nunnery*, 2 *Priories*, and 2 *Chantries*, which time hath reduced to ruins, and in their places are erected Houses. It is a *Town Corporate*, enjoyeth several Immunities, hath the benefit of a *Port Town*, and keepeth Courts for trial of *Causes* and *Felons*, sendeth *Burgesses* to Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder*, 2 *Justices* of the *Peace*, 2 *Town Clerks*, 2 *Chamberlains*, and other sub-Officers, and hath a good Market for Provisions on *Wednesdays*. Grimsby-Magna.

Thong-Caster, or *Caster*, a well compacted Town, which hath a very considerable Market on *Saturdays*, chiefly for *Swine*, *Sheep* and *Cattle*. This Town is of note for its ancient Castle so called, said to be built by *Hengist* the *Saxon*, who had a grant from *Vortiger* for so much ground as an *Ox-hide* would compass, which he cut into small Thongs, so that it encompassed a tract of ground, on which he built the Castle, and there seated and defended himself. Thong-Caster.

Lowth, a large, well built and inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Warden* and 7 *Assistants*, and hath weekly two Markets, on *Saturdays* and and *Wednesdays*, which is the chief, and is very considerable for *Cattle*, *Horses*, *Swine*, *Corn*, and all sorts of *Provisions*. Lowth.

Stamford, seated on the *Weland*, which being now made navigable is no small advantage to the Town and Country adjacent, its Inhabitants driving a considerable Trade, especially for *Mault* and *Free-stone*. It is a Town of good antiquity, from whence the *Roman High-street* leaded to the North, and in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third here was a *Colledge* for the Professors of the Arts and Sciences, who thence removed to *Brazen-Nose* Colledge in *Oxford*. It is a large, well inhabited and frequented Town containing several Streets, hath 6 *Parish Churches*, is beautified with fair Buildings, is begirt with a Wall, and hath weekly 2 Markets, on *Mondays*, which is but small; and on *Fridays*, which is well furnished with *Corn*, *Cattle*, and all sorts of Provision in great plenty. Stamford.

Grantham, seated on the *Witham*; a *Borough Town*, of good account and well inhabited; is governed by an *Alderman* and 12 *Justices* of the *Peace*, and hath the election of *Parliament men*. The Town is beautified with a fair *Church*, which hath an exceeding lofty *Spire-Steeple*; and its Market on *Saturdays* is very considerable, and well served with *Corn*, *Mault*, *Sheep*, and all sorts of Provisions. Grantham.

Boſton. *Boſton*, a fair, large *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, of good antiquity, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, and is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, *Burgeſſes*, a *Recorder*, &c. It is commodiouſly ſeated on both ſides the *Witham*, over which it hath a fair Woodden-bridge, and being near its influx into the *Sea*, is a place of conſiderable account, is well frequented and inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are very great, eſpecially for Proviſions both *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and *Fowl*. Its Market-place is fair and ſpacious, as alſo its Church, whoſe *Lanthorn* or *Tower* ſerves as a Landmark to Sailers.

Kirton. *Kirton*, ſeated on a Sandy-ground, and ſo called from its Church; a fair ſtructure built of *Free-ſtone* Cathedral-wiſe in form of a Croſs with a broad Steeple in the middle. This whole Townſhip is very large being divided into 4 *Hamlets* or *Vintins*, *viz. Kirton-Willington*, *Kirton-Meers*, *Kirton-Skeldike*, and *Kirton-Holme*; and had formerly a Market, which is now diſuſed.

Crowland. *Crowland*, or *Croyland*, a Town of good account amongſt the *Fenny-people*; but much greater in times paſt for its famous *Abby*, founded by *Æthelbald* King of the *Mercians* in *Anno* 716. It is ſeated very low and dirty, and ſo ſhut up that there is no acceſs to it but by the North and Eaſt-ſides, and that by narrow Cawſwaies not admitting of *Carts*, inſomuch that the Inhabitants have a Proverb, *That all the Carts that come to* Crowland *are ſhod with Silver*. And the ſcituation is much like to *Venice* in *Italy*, the Streets being ſevered from each other by *Dikes* or *Water-courſes*, on the banks of which are ſet *Willow-trees*. The chief Riches here gained is by *Fiſh* and *Fowl*, which are taken in great plenty; and here is a ſmall Market.

Spalding. *Spalding*, a pretty fair Town, ſeated very wateriſh and by a navigable River, which doth occaſion it to have a very good Trade, having ſeveral *Veſſels* and *Barges* belonging to them; and here is every *Tueſday* a very good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſion*.

Dunington. *Dunington*, ſeated in a flat, like *Spalding*; an indifferent Town, but hath a very conſiderable Market on *Saturdays* for Proviſions, and *Hemp* in great abundance.

County of *Middleſex* deſcribed. *MIDDLESEX*, a County of a ſmall extent, but every where garniſhed with Towns and fair buildings, which are the habitations of the Nobility, Gentry, and Citizens of *London*. It is bleſt with a ſweet and wholſom Air, and for fertility of Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, may compare with any ſhire in *England*, eſpecially for its bigneſs.

It is ſevered into 6 *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 73 *Pariſh Churches*, (beſides thoſe of *London*, and its ſeveral *Chapels* of *Eaſe*) and is traded unto by 4 *Market Towns*, beſides the Markets in *London*.

As to the deſcription of the Towns in this County, I ſhall treat of thoſe of moſt note, and conclude with *London*, the Metropolis of the whole Kingdom; and firſt with *Uxbridge*.

Uxbridge. *Uxbridge*, ſeated on the high Road from *London* to *Oxford*; a large, well inhabited and frequented Town, well accommodated with *Inns*, is governed by two *Bailiffs*, 2 *Conſtables*, and 4 *Headboroughs*, and hath a Market on *Thurſdays*, which is well ſerved with *Corn* and *Proviſions*.

Hampton. *Hampton*, ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*, of chief note for its Palace of the King called *Hampton-Court* (delightfully ſeated by two *Parks*) firſt built by *Cardinal Woolſey*, and afterwards much enlarged by King *Henry* the Eighth, containing now within it ſeveral large Inner-Courts, which are incloſed with fair Buildings, in one of which is a ſtately Fountain.

Iſtleworth. *Iſtleworth*, or *Thiſtleworth*, a fair large and pleaſant Town, ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*, well inhabited by Gentry and the Citizens of *London*; as are *Twittenham*, *Teddington*, *Chiſwick*, *Hamerſmith*, *Fulham*, and *Chelſey*, Towns all ſeated on the banks of the *Thames*.

Nigh

Nigh unto *Thiſtleworth* is *Sion-houſe*, a large Structure, now belonging to the Counteſs of *Northumberland*, but in times paſt was a Monaſtery, erected by King *Henry* the Fifth to the honour of our *Saviour*, the *Virgin Mary*, and *Bridget* of *Sion*, for Religious Virgins, where he appointed ſo many Nuns, Prieſts, and Lay-Brethren, as in number did equal our *Saviour* his *Apoſtles* and *Diſciples*; and on the other ſide of the *Thames* oppoſite unto it he erected another for *Carthuſian Monks*, named *Jeſus* of *Bethlehem*. *Sion-Houſe.*

Brentford, containing the Old and the New, both ſeated on the Weſtern Road, which doth occaſion it to be ſo well accommodated with *Inns*. In New *Brentford* is kept the Market, which every *Tueſday* is very well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions, which are much bought up by the *Londoners*. *Brentford.*

Kenſington, a thorough-fare Town, well inhabited by Gentry and Perſons of Honour; as are *Hampſted*, *Highgate*, *Hornſey*, *Tottenham-Highcroſs*, *Muſwel-Hill*, *Edmonton*, &c. Towns near adjacent to *London*. *Kenſington.*

London, the epitomy and glory of the Kingdom, was the Seat of the *Britiſh* Empire, as now the Royal-Chamber of our Kings; a City of great antiquity, ſaid to be built by *Brute* the *Trojan*; but all agree it was re-edified by King *Lud* in *Anno Mundi* 5131, who called it *Luddestown*. It is ſeated in a healthful Air, and no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly on the banks of the *Thames*, which ſevereth it into two (but unequal) parts, which are joyned together by a ſtately *Stone-bridge*, ſo covered with Houſes that it ſeemeth rather a Street than a Bridge. *London.*

This City is begirt with a Wall, firſt built by *Conſtantine* the Great, at the ſuit of his Mother *Helena*, and hath for entrance 7 principal Gates; but now as contemning bondage it hath enlarged it ſelf on all ſides with ſpacious Suburbs, inſomuch that ſhe hath joyned her ſelf to the City of *Weſtminſter*, which name is now ſwallowed up, all paſſing under the general name of *London*.

The City of *Weſtminſter*, according to Mr. *Norden* in his deſcription of *Middleſex*, was in time paſt called *Thorney*, or *Dorney*, and was an Iſle encompaſſed with the *Thames*; which divided it ſelf, and one branch paſſed between *Chairin-Croſs* and *Kingſtreet* through St. *James*'s, including *Tut-hill*, which ſaid Iſle was ſo called, as being overgrown with *Briars* and *Thorns*; but in the time of King *Lucius* it is ſaid to be cleanſed, and the foundation of the great Temple of St. *Peters* was laid, which was raiſed out of the ruins of a former, dedicated to *Apollo*, where the *Trinobantes*, or *Troinovantes*, did ſacrifice *Bulls*, *Bullocks*, *Stags*, and ſuch like Beaſts, to *Diana Tauropolia*, whom the *Gentiles* called the *Queen of Heaven*.

This City or part of *London* is the nobleſt (though not the longeſt) being taken up by the King, the Nobility, Gentry, and ſuch as have their dependancy on the *Court* or *Law*, being ſufficiently graced with fair and beautiful Edifices; as 1. The Palaces of his Majeſty *Whitehall* and St. *James*'s, to which is joyned a ſmall, but delightful Park, wherein is a *Pall-Mall*, ſaid to be the beſt in *Chriſtendom*. 2. The *Courts* of *Judicature* and *Houſes* of *Parliament*, now all known by the general name of *Weſtminſter-hall*, and was anciently the Palace of the Kings of *England*. 3. Its Collegiate-Church of *Weſtminſter*, which was formerly the Temple of St. *Peter*, and now renowned for its Chapel built by King *Henry* the Seventh, being beautified with the Tombs of the *Kings* and *Queens*, and many of the *Nobility* of *England*; nor is it leſs famous for the Inauguration of our *Kings* and *Queens*. 4. The Palace of her Majeſty, *Somerſet-houſe*; and, 5. The Houſes of the *Nobility*. And thus much for the City of *Weſtminſter*.

The Eaſtern part, or Suburbs of *London* beyond the *Tower*, is taken up by thoſe that have relation to the Sea; and the whole City thus taken is now of a great extent, being in length from *Black-wall* in the Eaſt to *Tuttle-fields* in the Weſt, about ſix miles; in breadth 1, 2, and in ſome places 3 miles, and is ſaid to make in circuit about 14 or 15 miles, in which extent are numbred about 500 Streets and Lanes, and contains (according to computation) about 75000 Houſes; and by the great number of Houſes the Inhabitants may be

gueſt at, which without doubt are very numerous; and if we conſider its great Trade and Commerce with other Nations, its *Riches*, *Juriſdiction*, *bounds*, and *populouſneſs*; its good Government, the ingenuity of its Inhabitants in *Letters*, *Arts*, and *Manufactures*, &c. it may deſervedly be numbred with any City of the higheſt rank in the World.

The Buildings of note belonging to this City, are its *Inns* of *Court* and *Chancery*. *Guildhall*, a ſtately Structure, where the Courts of *Judicature* are held, and where the *Lord Major*, *Aldermen*, and *Common Council* meet, for the negotiating the Affairs of the City. The *Royal Exchange*, built quadrangular, now ſaid to be the beſt in the known World. The *Tower*, a place of large extent, well furniſhed with a Magazin or Arſenal of warlike Munition both for Sea and Land-ſervice, and doth contain (according to obſervation) a *Kings Palace*, a *Priſon*, an *Armory*, a *Mint*, a *Wardrobe*, and an *Artillery*, each having their peculiar Officers; and for Buildings reſembleth a Town, having a *Parochial Church*, exempted from the Juriſdiction of the Archbiſhop. *Greſham Colledge*, given to the City by Sir *Tho. Greſham*, with the allowance of liberal Salaries to profeſſors of ſeveral *Arts* and *Sciences*, to read Lectures for the advancement of Learning amongſt the Citizens. The *Colledge* of *Heralds*, called the *Heralds Office*, where the Records for the Arms, Deſcents, and Pedigrees of the *Nobility* and *Gentry* are kept. *Doctors Commons*, which is taken up by the *Civilians*. The *Colledge* of *Phyſitians*. The *Halls* of the ſeveral Incorporated Companies. The Houſes of *Correction*, amongſt which that of moſt note is *Bridewell*, a large Building. The *Hoſpitals*, viz. St. *Bartholomews*, *Chriſt-Church*, and the *Charter-houſe* (or *Suttons Hoſpital*) being the nobleſt Hoſpital in the Kingdom, in which are well maintained 80 *Old men*, and 40 *Boys*. The *Seſſions Houſe*, for the trial of Malefactors; and laſtly, its *Churches* and *Free Schools*.

This City within the Walls and Freedom is divided into 26 *Wards*, and the Government thereof committed to the care of ſo many *Aldermen*, each having the overſeeing of his ſeveral Ward; and beſides theſe *Aldermen* there are 2 *Sheriffs*, which are yearly choſen, as alſo a *Lord Major*, who is the principal Magiſtrate.

To the making a compleat City there are ſeveral principal parts or helps required for the ſupportation thereof, and without which it cannot well ſtand; to wit, *Husbandry* and *Artificers*, for the providing Food and Rayment for its Inhabitants; *Arms* and *Ammunition*, for its defence; the *Prieſthood*, for Divine worſhip; *Judges*, *Councellors*, &c. for the adminiſtration of Juſtice; and *Traffick*, for the bringing in of Riches: In all which this City in a liberal meaſure is bleſt with.

County of *Monmouth.*

MONMOUTHSHIRE. This County (formerly part of *Wales*) is bleſt with a healthful Air, and although very *hilly* and *woody*, yet is exceeding fertil, (eſpecially the Eaſtern parts, which are not ſo hilly as the Weſtern) the Hills feeding abundance of *Cattle* and *Sheep*, and the Valleys bearing great crops of *Corn* and *Graſs*; and the rather for its being watered with ſo many freſh Streams; the chief of which are the *Uske*, *Wye*, *Munow*, *Ebunith*, *Scoway*, and the *Rumney*, which fall into the *Severn Sea*.

It is divided into *Hundreds*, in which Tract are ſeated 127 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 7 *Market Towns*.

Monmouth.

Monmouth, no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Wye* and *Munow*, which doth almoſt encircle it, over each of which is a Bridge. In the midſt of the Town, near the Market-place, ſtandeth a (once ſtately, but now ruinous) Caſtle. It is a fair, large, well built, and inhabited and frequented Town, enjoying large Immunities, and ſendeth a *Burgeſs* to Parliament. It is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Bailiffs*, 15 *Common Councellors*, a *Town Clerk*, and other ſub-Officers; and hath a conſiderable Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*.

Chepſtow.

Chepſtow, ſeated on the ſide of a Hill which is waſhed with the *Wye*, near its fall into the *Severn*; a Town formerly very famous, and of great reſort, being

being ſaid to be raiſed out of the ruins of *Venta Silurum*, the chief City of the *Silures*. It is a large, well built, inhabited and frequented Town, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is very good for Corn and Proviſions, and very conſiderable for *Swine*.

Carlion, or *Caerleon*, an ancient and flouriſhing City of the *Romans*, which is evidenced by the ruins of its ſtately Buildings; as *Palaces*, *Temples*, and *Theaters*, encloſed within fair Walls, the *Water-pipes*, *Vaults*, *Hot-houſes*, and *Roman Coins* oft digged up. And here the Noble *Arthur* kept his Court; and here was a famous Colledge for 200 Students in *Aſtronomy*, and other the liberal Arts and Sciences. This Town (which is indifferent large) is commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Uske*, over which it hath a large wooden Bridge; yet its Houſes for the generality are built of Stone, and its Market (which is but indifferent) is on *Thurſdays*. *Carlion.*

Uske, ſeated on a River ſo called; a large Town, beautified with well built Stone-houſes, and hath a very good Market on *Mondays* and *Fridays*. *Uske.*

Abergavenny, ſeated at the meeting of the *Uske* and the *Keveny*, once a place of great ſtrength: It is a large Town, hath well-built Houſes, enjoyeth a good Trade for *Flanels* and *Straw-Hats*, here made in great plenty; and its Market, which is on *Tueſdays*, is very conſiderable for Cattle, Proviſions, &c. *Abergavenny.*

The County of *NORFOLK* is of a different Soil, but may be compriſed under two heads, to wit, *Champain* and *Wood-land*; yet notwithſtanding about the Towns it is of a *Claiey*, *Chalkey*, and fat Earth, and not without Wood. That which is compriſed under the head of *Champain* is along the Sea-Coaſts, and from *Thetford* to *Burnham*, and ſo Weſtwards, and affords great plenty of Corn; and on the Heaths great flocks of *Sheep* are fed. The Wood-land part is chiefly for graſing; yet not without Corn ground. County of Norfolk.

The ancient Inhabitants known to the *Romans* were the *Iceni*, and afterwards became part of the Kingdom of the *Angles*.

The Commodities that this Country plentifully affordeth, are *Worſteds*, *Stockings*. *Norwich Stuffs*, and *Herrings*.

The chief Rivers that water this County are the *Owſe*, *Waveny*, *Yare*, and the *Thryne*. It is generally well inhabited with *Gentry*, is very populous and full of *Towns* and *Villages*, numbring 660 *Pariſh Churches*, which are the moſt of any County in *England*; and is traded unto by 27 Market Towns.

Norwich, a City of great antiquity, and formerly of as great ſplendor when the Seat of the *Eaſt Angles*; ſince which it hath undergone ſeveral calamities by *Fire*, *Sword*, and *Peſtilence*; and notwithſtanding all its ſhocks of Ill fortune, it is at preſent a fair, large, and populous City, and enjoyeth a great Trade, eſpecially for their *Stockings*, *Stuffs*, and *Manufactures* here made. It is commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Yare*, which ſevereth it; but is joyned together by ſeveral Bridges, and in a pleaſant Valley. It is about a mile and half in length, and almoſt of the like breadth, and is encompaſſed with a Wall (except on the ſide ſeated on the River,) and hath 12 Gates for entrance, and for Divine worſhip 32 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides *Chapels*. Its chief buildings are the *Cathedral*, the *Biſhops Palace*, the *Palace* of the Duke of *Norfolk*, the *Market-houſe*, the *Croſs*, and the Houſe of *Correction*, made of *Free-ſtone*. Here is an *Hoſpital* where 100 poor Men and Women are maintained. This City may not improperly be called an *Orchard in a City*, or a *City in an Orchard*, by reaſon of the pleaſant intermixture of the Houſes with Trees. It was firſt governed by 4 *Bailiffs*; but in the Reign of *Henry* the Fourth it was incorporated into a *Majoralty*, and made a County, whoſe limits extend to *Eaton-Bridge*. It enjoys ſeveral Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and is the See of a Biſhop. Its Markets on *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays*, and *Saturdays*, are very great, and well ſtored with *Corn*, *living Cattle*, *Leather*, *Yarn*, *Worſteds*, and all ſorts of Proviſions. Norwich.

Lynn. *Lynn*, or *Lynn Regis*, ſeated almoſt at the influx of the *Owſe* into the *Waſhes*; a fair, large, and well-built *Borough Town*, numbring 3 *Pariſh Churches*, of good antiquity, enjoying ample Immunities, which were granted them for their good ſervice againſt the outlawed *Barons* in the Iſle of *Ely*. It is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, hath a *Recorder*, *Sword-Bearer*, and other ſub-Officers, ſendeth its Repreſentatives to Parliament; for its defence, is encompaſſed about with a *Wall* and a deep *Trench*; is well watered, having 2 *Rivulets* which run through the Streets, which are paſſed over by 15 *Bridges*. It is well inhabited by *Merchants* and *Tradeſmen*, having a commodious Haven; and its Markets on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays* are well ſerved with Commodities and Proviſions.

Yarmouth. *Yarmouth*, ſeated on the *Yare*, at its influx into the Sea. It is a place of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being eſteemed the Key of this Coaſt. The Town is large, yet hath but one Church, but that is ſo large that it ſerveth for two Miniſters. Its Buildings are good; it is a place of a great reſort, is well inhabited and traded unto, and the more as being the ready paſſage to *Holland* for the Packet-Boat, and other Veſſels. About this Coaſt great abundance of *Herrings* are caught in *September*, and as great quantities of *Mackerels* in the Summer ſeaſon. It is a *Town Corporate*, having for its chief Magiſtrates 2 *Bailiffs*; it enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, and ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. Its Market is on *Saturdays*, which is very great for Corn, Fiſh, and Proviſions.

Windham. *Windham*, ſeated in a dirty bottom, hath an indifferent good Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Fridays*; but chiefly for *Stockings*, *Wooden-Spoons*, *Tapps*, and *Spindles*, which are here made and ſold by the Inhabitants in great abundance.

Swaſham. *Swaſham*, ſeated on a Hill; a large and well built Town, full of *Inns*, and well inhabited by Shopkeepers, who drive a good trade. Its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions, being eſteemed one of the beſt Market Towns in the County.

North Walſham. *North Walſham*, ſeated in a level, not far from the Sea; a fine Market Town, which on *Thurſdays* is well provided with *Corn*, *Fleſh*, and other Commodities.

County of *Northampton* deſcribed. *NORTHAMPTON*, an Inland County, of a fat and rich Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, every way recompencing the Husbandmans pains and induſtry, both for its excellent Grain, and for feeding and breeding of ſtore of *Sheep*, *Horſes*, and *Cattle*, inſomuch that here is obſerved to be leſs waſt ground than in any County in the Kingdom.

It is bleſt with a healthful Air; it is very populous and full of Gentry, inſomuch that in many places 20 or 30 *Steeples* preſent themſelves to view at one time.

It is well watered with Rivers and freſh Streams; as the *Welland*, the *Nen* or *Aufonia*, the *Owſe*, *Charwel*, &c.

This County is ſevered into 20 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 326 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 11 *Market Towns*.

Northampton. *Northampton*, delightfully ſeated on the banks of the *Nyne*, which waſheth its South and Weſt parts, over which it hath two Bridges. It is a Town of good antiquity, and once very large; but this, as all other places in the Kingdom, felt the ſore hand of the *Dane*, with other Calamities, and lately it was laid in its Aſhes by a mercileſs Fire; but is again almoſt rebuilt, and will be of better luſtre than before. Its extent is large, numbring 4 *Pariſh Churches* within its Walls, which were of great ſtrength before their demoliſhment. On the Weſtern ſide of the Town, on an Eminency, is mounted a large *Caſtle*, but ſo ruinous that it ſeemeth ready to fall. It is a *Town Corporate*, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Bailiffs*, 12 *Magiſtrates*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, with other ſub-Officers. It enjoyeth a very conſiderable Trade, is very well inhabited, being the place where the *Aſſizes* are kept, and the general place for the *Juſtices* of the *Peace* to meet

meet for the County; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very great for *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Provisions*, *Leather*, *Shoes*, and several Country Commodities.

Peterburgh, seated on the River *Ausona*, or *Nen*, (which is navigable for *Barges*, over which it hath a Bridge which leadeth to *Huntingtonshire*,) and in a Marshy ground. It is a City of great antiquity, and was of good account in the time of the *Saxons*; for it is said that *Wolpher*, King of the *Mercians*, for the expiating his crime in the cruel murthering his Sons *Wolphald* and *Rufin* for embracing the Christian Religion (to which he was some years after converted himself) in *Anno* 633. finished a most stately Monastery, and dedicated it to St. *Peter*, from which the City took its name, being before called *Madeshamstede*. It is at present a City of no great extent, having but one *Parish Church* besides its Cathedral, raised out of the Monastery; a stately structure, where lieth the Bodies of two unfortunate Queens, *Katherin* of *Spain*, and *Mary* of *Scots*. This City enjoyeth several Immunities, sends *Burgesses* to Parliament, is honoured with the Title of an *Earldom* and the Seat of a *Bishop*, as also of a *Dean*, who keepeth his Court for the hearing of Causes. Its Streets of late are indifferent well ordered, its Houses well built, and hath a spacious Market-place, well resorted unto on *Saturdays*. *Peterburgh.*

Not far from this City, Westwards, was seated the ancient City *Durobrivae*, called by the *English Saxons*, *Normancheſter*.

Oundle, pleasantly seated on the banks of the *Nen*, over which it hath two good Bridges; a well built uniform Town, beautified with a fair Church, and a Free School; hath a very great Market for *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Flesh* and *Fowl* on *Saturdays*. *Oundle.*

Higham-Ferrers, scituated on an Ascent, and on the banks of the *Nen*; an ancient *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 7 *Aldermen*, 13 Capital *Burgesses*, a *Steward*, *&c.* is graced with a fair *Colledge*, hath a *Free School* for the education of Youth, and an *Alms-house* for the relief of poor People; and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is well resorted unto. *Higham Ferrers.*

Wellingborow, seated also on the *Nen*; a large and well inhabited Town, of some note for its Springs of *Medicinal-water*, not far distant from the Town. It is beautified with a fair *Church*, and a *Free School*; is a large and well inhabited Town, and hath a Market on *Wednesdays*, which is well served with Corn and Provisions. *Wellingborow.*

Daventry, seated on the side of *Borow-hill*; a good Town, governed by a *Bailiff*, *Aldermen*, a *Steward*, and 12 *Freemen*, and hath a Market on *Wednesdays*, which is well provided with *Horses*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Corn*, and *Provisions*. *Daventry.*

Not far from this Town is *Wedon*, which was a Station of the *Romans*, and where there was a *Monastery* founded by the holy Virgin *St. Werberg*, Daughter of King *Wolpher*, who had here his Royal Seat.

Brackley, seated on a bank of the *Owse*, and on the edge of the County towards *Buckinghamshire*; an ancient and large *Town Corporate*, containing two *Parish Churches*, had formerly a *Colledge*, now made use of for a *Free School*; is governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, sendeth *Burgesses* to Parliament, and hath a small Market on *Wednesdays*; which in former time was considerable, being the staple Town in the County for *Wool*. *Brackley.*

NORTHUMBERLAND, a County of a sharp and piercing Air, and much troubled with pinching *Frosts*, boisterous *Winds*, and deep *Snows*, which would be more troublesom to its Inhabitants, were it not for the great abundance of *Sea-Coal* here had in great plenty. County of *Northumberland.*

It is a County, for the most part, of an ungrateful Soil, being very rough, hilly, and very hard to be manured; but the parts towards the *Sea*, by the industry of the Husbandman in manuring it with the *Sea-weed*, are indifferent fertil.

It is

It is well watered with *Rivers*, which (with the *Sea*) afford to the Inhabitants great plenty of *Fiſh* and *Fowl*.

In this County are numbred 46 *Pariſh Churches*, many of which are very large, having their *Chapels* of *Eaſe*, and is ſevered into 6 *Wards*; and for the accommodation of the Inhabitants is traded unto by 6 *Market Towns*.

The Inhabitants that poſſeſt this County before the *Romans*, were the *Ottadini*, and being brought to the Juriſdiction of the *Engliſh Saxons* by *Oſca* Brother to *Hengiſt*, and by his Son *Jebuſa*, had firſt official Governours under the fealty to the Kings of *Kent:* After that, when the Kingdom of the *Berenicii* was erected, that which reached from the *Scotiſh Frith* to the *Tees* (being the beſt part) was ſubject to the Kings of *Northumberland*, who having finiſhed their period, that which lay beyond the *Tweed* paſſed for *Scotland*; then was it yielded up to *Egbert* King of the *Weſt Saxons*, who laid it to his own Territory: and ſoon after the expulſion of the *Danes* it was governed by *Earls*.

This County ſheweth abundance of Antiquities, not only along the *Picts Wall*, which runneth by its Southern part, but elſewhere; amongſt which theſe following are worthy of note: *Readſquire*, a ſteep Mountain, was oft-times the place of Conference for the *Eaſt Marſhes*. The *Hermitage*, not far from *Wakeworth*, by the Water; a Chapel cut out of a Rock, without *Beams*, *Rafters*, or any piece of Timber, and the *Altar* was alſo hewed out of the ſame Rock; and this was the place of devotion for a *Hermit*, who lived in a *Cell* within the Rock. *Riſingham*, ſeated on the River *Rhead*, a place of great Antiquity, which ('tis ſaid) *God-Magon* for ſometime defended againſt a certain *Soldan*, or *Heatheniſh Prince*. Through the *Picts Wall* runneth the *Tyne*, which watereth two *Dales*, each having their Hills ſo boggy, with ſtanding Water on the top, that no Horſe-man is able to ride through them; and yet in many places are great heaps of Stones (called *Laws*) ſuppoſed to be caſt up in memory of ſome perſons there ſlain.

The chief places are,

Newcaſtle. *Newcaſtle*, ſcituate on an Eminence, and on the North banks of the *Tyne*, over which it hath a fair Bridge. This Town before the *Conqueſt* was called *Monk-cheſter*, as being in the poſſeſſion of *Monks*, which name was changed to *Newcaſtle* by *Robert*, Son to *William* the *Conquerour*, from a *Caſtle* there built by him. It is a Town and County of it ſelf, being incorporated and governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, a *Recorder*, and other ſub-Officers; and amongſt its Immunities ſends its Repreſentatives to Parliament; 'tis a place of good largeneſs, numbring 4 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides one in *Gates-head*; it is beautified with good Buildings, and by reaſon of its deep and ſecure Haven is much inhabited and frequented by *Merchants* and *Tradeſmen*, having ſeveral Veſſels belonging to the Town, but is of chief note for its *Coal* trade. It is a place of great ſtrength, for beſides its *Caſtle*, now ſomething ruinous, it is begirt with a ſtrong Wall, on which are many Turrets, and hath for entrance 7 Gates. Here are weekly two Markets, on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are both very conſiderable for all ſorts of Proviſions.

Morpeth. *Morpeth*, ſcituate on the *Wensbeck*; a very fine incorporated Town, governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. It is ſtrengthned with a *Caſtle*, and hath a Market on *Wedneſdays*, which is eſteemed the beſt in the County for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*.

Barwick. *Barwick*, commodiouſly ſeated betwixt *England* and *Scotland*, but on the North or *Scotiſh* ſide of the *Tweed*, over which it hath a ſtately Bridge, ſuſtained by 14 or 15 Arches, being a Town and County of it ſelf. It is a place of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being almoſt encompaſſed with the *Sea* and the *Tweed*, and ſtrongly fenced about with *Walls*, a *Caſtle*, and other Fortifications, as being a place of ſuch great importance to *England*. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, and *Burgeſſes*, and hath the election of *Parliament men*. It is large and populous; its Houſes well built, enjoyeth a good Trade, eſpecially for *Salmon* and *Corn*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is very conſiderable.

Along

Along the Coaſt of this County are the Iſles of *Cockes*, *Fern*, and *Holy Iſle*, which are ſmall Iſles of a barren and ungrateful Soil, and but thinly inhabited.

County of Nottingham.

NOTTINGHAM, a County bleſt with a wholſom Air; its Soil is different, the South-eaſt part, which is watered with the *Trent* and other freſh Streams, is moſt fertil and apt for *Corn* and *Graſs*, and is called the *Clay part*; and the Weſtern part, wherein is the Foreſt of *Shirwood*, a large tract of ground, which is well clothed with Wood, and provided with Game; and this part, from the temperature of the Earth, is called the *Sandy part*.

This County produceth a Stone ſofter than *Alablaſter*, but being burnt maketh a Plaiſter harder than that of *Paris*, with which they floor their upper Rooms.

The form of this Shire is oval, doubling in length twice its breadth. It is ſevered into 8 *Hundreds* or *Wapontacks*, in which are numbred 168 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath intercourſe of traffick with 9 *Market Towns*.

Nottingham.

Nottingham, commodiouſly ſeated on an Eminence and on the banks of the *Leane*, which at a ſmall diſtance loſeth it ſelf in the *Trent*, over each of which Rivers there is a fair *Stone-bridge*, beſides two others over two Ponds, called the *Cheney Bridges*. It is a large Town, numbring 3 *Pariſh Churches*, is repleniſhed with well built Houſes, its Streets are fair, and graced with a ſpacious Market-place; on the Weſt ſide of the Town is the *Caſtle*, which (before its defacement in the late Wars) was a place of great ſtrength and importance. It is a Town of good antiquity, and amongſt its places of remark here are many ſtrange *Vaults* hewed out of the Rocks, eſpecially under the *Caſtle*, which are deſcended by divers ſteps, and have their ſeveral Rooms and Stairs artificially made; alſo in the Hill are Houſes, with *Rooms*, *Chimneys*, *winding Stairs*, and *Windows*, wrought out of the ſolid Rock. This Town enjoys ſeveral Immunities, electeth *Burgeſſes* for Parliament, is governed by a *Major*, 6 *Aldermen*, 2 *Sheriffs*, a *Town Clerk*, and other ſub-Officers; it enjoyeth a good Trade, is well inhabited and frequented, and hath weekly 3 Markets, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays*, and *Saturdays*, which is very conſiderable for *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Proviſions*.

Newark.

Newark, ſcituate on the high Road to *York*, and on the *Trent*, over which it hath a Bridge. It is a good large *Town Corporate*, governed by an *Alderman* and 12 *Aſſiſtants*, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and hath a conſiderable Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and Proviſions on *Wedneſdays*.

Mansfield.

Mansfield, ſcituate in the Foreſt of *Sherwood*; a well inhabited, well built, and large Town, enjoying a good Trade for *Mault*, and hath a very conſiderable Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Mault*, *Swine*, and Proviſions on *Thurſdays*.

Redford.

Redford, ſcituate on the River *Idel*; an ancient *Town Corporate*, which electeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, 6 *Aldermen*, and a *Steward*, and hath a great Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*.

County of Oxford deſcribed.

The County of *OXFORD* is bleſt with a delectable Air, which doth occaſion it to be much inhabited by *Gentry*; and the rather, as being of a fertil Soil for *Corn* and *Fruits*, well ſtored with *Cattle*, and interlaced with pleaſant Hills, wherein (and in the Downs) are found variety of Game. It is well watered with Rivers, as the *Owſe*, or *Iſis*, the *Tame*, *Cherwel*, *Windruſh*, and *Ebenlode*.

It is divided into 14 *Hundreds*, in which tract is ſeated 280 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 12 *Market Towns*, and graced with a beautiful and ſtately City.

Oxford.

Oxford, the Seat of the *Muſes*, exceeding all Univerſities in the World, except her Siſter *Cambridge*. It is a place of great antiquity, ſaid to be conſecrated unto Learning in the time of the Old *Britains*; and was much cheriſhed and countenanced by King *Elfred*, who ſent thither his Son *Ethelward*

on

on purpoſe to invite the young Nobles to ſtudy the *Arts* and *Sciences*. It is a City commodiouſly ſeated both for pleaſure and profit between the *Iſis* and the *Charwel*, which encompaſſeth three parts of the City, over which for the convenience of paſſage it hath ſeveral Bridges. The City is large, numbring 14 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*, a large Structure, and is at preſent a fair and ſtately City, adorned with well-built Houſes, and beautified with divers curious Structures, as the *Kings Palace*, now the *Mannor Houſe*, the 16 *Colledges*, 8 *Halls*, the *Schools*, wherein is a ſtately *Library*, and *Theater* newly erected. It enjoyeth ample Immunities, keepeth *Courts* for all Actions without limitation of ſome; hath the election of 4 *Burgeſſes*, 2 for the Univerſity, and 2 for the City. It is a place very populous, and well reſorted unto, hath weekly two Markets, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which is the chief, and very conſiderable for Proviſions and all ſorts of Grain, eſpecially *Barly*; and alſo enjoys a great trade for *Mault*.

Burford. *Burford*, ſcituate on an Aſcent near the Downs, and on the River *Windruſh*, which ſpringeth out of the *Cotſwold*; a large and fair *Town Corporate*, governed by two *Bailiffs*, and other ſub-Officers, and hath a well frequented Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions* on *Saturdays*; and is of chief note for *Saddles* here made.

Woodſtock. *Woodſtock*, a well compacted *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major*, 4 *Aldermen*, *&c.* enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath an indifferent good Market on *Tueſdays*. It is delightfully ſeated, and of ſome note for its large *Park*, wherein was *Woodſtock-Bower*, built by King *Henry* the firſt, and where he kept his Miſtreſs, the beautiful *Roſamond Clifford*, which was here poyſoned by his enraged Queen *Elianor*.

Banbury. *Banbury*, ſeated on the *Cherwel*, and in a Flat; a pretty large, wealthy and beautiful *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, *&c.* ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament; hath a very conſiderable Market for *Cattle*, *Sheep*, and *Proviſions* on *Thurſdays*, and is of ſome note for its *Cakes* and *Cheeſe*.

Tame. *Tame*, pleaſantly ſeated on the River ſo called, which (with its branches) doth almoſt encompaſs it, and over which it hath a Bridge which leadeth into *Buckinghamſhire*. It is a large Town, having one ſpacious Street, in the midſt of which is the Market-place; and its Market, which is on *Tueſdays*, is well reſorted unto by *Graſiers* and *Butchers*, from *London* and other parts, it being very conſiderable for *Cattle*.

Henley. *Henley*, or *Henley upon Thames*, as being thereon ſeated, over which it hath a fair Bridge; a large *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Warden* for its chief Magiſtrate, enjoyeth a conſiderable trade for *Maulting*, and much inhabited by *Bargmen* and *Watermen*, who are employed for the carrying of *Mault*, *Wood*, *&c.* to *London*; and in return, bring ſuch commodities as they and the Neighbourhood have occaſion of. Its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is very conſiderable for Corn, eſpecially *Barly*, there being oft-times about 300 Cart-loads ſold in one day.

County of *Rutland* deſcribed. *RUTLAND*, the ſmalleſt County in the Kingdom, making in circumference not above 40 miles; and although for quantity the leaſt, yet for quality may be compared with the beſt, being of a very fertil Soil both for tillage and paſturage, eſpecially about the Vale of *Catmoſe*. It is well clothed with *Wood*, watered with freſh *Streams*, is bleſt with a ſweet *Air*, and hath more *Parks* (conſidering its extent) than any County in *England*.

This County is ſevered into five *Hundreds*, in which are 48 *Pariſhes*, and hath two *Market Towns*; *viz.*

Oakham. *Oakham*, ſcituate in the rich and pleaſant Valley of *Catmoſe*; and although not large, yet is the *Shire Town*, where the *Aſſizes* and *Seſſions* are held; its Buildings are indifferent good, eſpecially its *Church*, *Free School*, and *Hoſpital*; here is an old decayed *Caſtle*, which is now made uſe of for the *Aſſizes*. It hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is indifferently well ſerved with Proviſions.

Upingham,

Upingham, highly ſeated; a neat compacted and well built Town, hath the accommodation of a *Free School*, and an *Hoſpital*; and its Market, which is on *Wedneſdays*, is well reſorted unto, and ſerved with living Cattle, Corn, and Proviſions. *Upingham.*

SHROP-SHIRE, being a frontier County to *Wales*, is well repleniſhed with *Towns* and *Caſtles*, the better to over-awe the *Welſhmen* in the bordering *Marches*: and divers Noblemen in this tract were called *Barons* of the *March*, and enjoyed in their Territories certain Priviledges, and held *Courts* for the adminiſtring of Juſtice. County of *Salop* deſcribed.

This County is of a fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, abounding in *Wheat* and *Barly*, is well clothed with *Wood*, feedeth good ſtore of *Cattle*, and in the bowels of the Earth are Mines of *Iron* and *Pit-Coal*. It is well watered with Rivers, as the *Tern*, *Clun*, *Rea*, *Teame*, *Roden*, and *Severn*, being the chief, which in a crooked paſſage ſevereth the Shire in the midſt. It is very Hilly and Mountainous, eſpecially towards the Southern and Weſtern parts.

In this County are 170 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath for its Towns of chief note,

Shrewsbury, raiſed out of the ancient *Uriconium*, the Seat of the Princes of *Powis*, until forced thence by the *Saxons*. It is pleaſantly ſeated on an eaſie Aſcent, and on the banks of the *Severn*, which almoſt encompaſſes it. It is a place which for largeneſs, numbring 5 *Pariſh Churches* beſides a *Chapel*, neatneſs of Buildings, both publick and private, largeneſs and variety of Streets, and populouſneſs, may be ſet down in the rank of Cities. It is a Town of good ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being fenced about with a ſtrong *Wall*, defended by a *Caſtle*, *Bulwarks*, and other Fortifications. It is a place of a great reſort, and well inhabited both by *Engliſh* and *Welſh*, and enjoyeth a great Trade for *Cloths*, *Cottons*, *Frizes*, and ſeveral other commodities; this place being the common Mart between *England* and Middle *Wales*. The Town enjoys large Immunities, keepeth Courts, ſendeth its Repreſentatives to Parliament, hath a large *Free School*, is governed by a *Major*, 24 *Aldermen*, 48 *Common Council-men*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, with other ſub Officers; and hath weekly 3 Markets, on *Wedneſdays* for Proviſions, on *Thurſdays* for *Cottons*, &c. here ſold in great abundance, and thence ſent to *London*; and on *Saturdays* for Cattle, and all ſorts of Proviſions in great plenty. *Shrewsbury.*

Oſweſtre, ſo called from *Oſwald* King of the *Northumbers*, who was here ſlain in a Battel, and cruelly torn in pieces by *Penda* the Pagan *Mercian* Prince. It is a Town *Corporated*, governed by two *Bailiffs* and *Burgeſſes*; and before the Mart for *Welſh Cottons* was hence removed to *Shrewsbury*, was of greater account than now it is; yet is it of ſome trade for *Flannels*, and its Market, which is on *Mondays*, is well reſorted unto, and furniſhed with Cattle and Proviſions. *Oſweſtre.*

Wenlock Magna, ſeated in the road from *Worceſter* to *Shrewsbury*; a *Town Corporate*, governed by *Bailiffs* and *Burgeſſes*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, is of ſome note for its *Lime* and *Tobacco-pipes*, here made in great plenty; and hath a very good Market on *Mondays* for Corn and Proviſions. *Wenlock Magna*

Bridgnorth, a large *Town Corporate*, governed by 2 *Bailiffs* and *Burgeſſes*, and hath the election of *Parliament men*. It is ſeated on the *Severn*, over which is a fair *Stone-bridge*, is well inhabited, containeth 2 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath a good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*. *Bridgnorth.*

Ludlow, ſeated on the *Temd*, a Town more fair than ancient, being beautified with divers good Buildings, amongſt which is the *Palace* of the Preſident of the *Marches*. It is a large *Town Corporate*, governed by *Bailiffs* and *Burgeſſes*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, and hath a very great Market for Corn, Cattle, and Proviſions on *Mondays*. The Town is ſtrong, being defended by a *Wall* and *Caſtle*, is very populous and well inhabited, and is of *Ludlow.*

chief note, for being the place where the Courts for the *Marches* of *Wales* are kept, for the eaſment of the *Welſh* and Neighbouring Inhabitants; and here Prince *Arthur* kept his Court.

County of *Somerſet* deſcribed.

SOMERSET, a large and wealthy County, and of a rich and fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage; yet not without Stony-hills. It is exceeding populous, and well frequented, occaſioned through its commodious Havens and Sea-port Towns, and is every where well watered with Rivers; as the *Severn*, *Avon*, *Parret*, *Frome*, *Brue*, *Ivel*, &c. which with the *Sea* plentifully ſerveth the Inhabitants with excellent *Fiſh*. As to the bounds, extent, and diviſion of the Shire into *Hundreds*, ſee the Table.

This County hath been the Theater of divers bloody Battles; for inſtance, at *Pen*, near *Cadbury*, *Edmond*, ſurnamed *Iron-ſides*, gave the *Danes* a notable foyl in his purſuit of *Canutus* the then Uſurper of the *Engliſh Crown*. Not far from *Bridgwater*, *Ealſtan* Biſhop of *Sherbourn*, gave a great overthrow to the *Daniſh* Camp. At *Cadbury* King *Arthur* obtained a great and memorable Victory againſt the *Engliſh Saxons:* And near this place *Keniwalſh*, a *Weſt Saxon*, obtained the like Victory againſt the *Britains*, to their ever after dread of the *Engliſh Saxons*. And not far from *Banes-down* King *Elfred* gave the *Danes* ſuch an overthrow, that conſtrained them to a ſubmiſſion, and cauſed *Godrus* their King to be baptized, and was his Godfather.

In this County are numbred 385 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath intercourſe of Traffick with 30 *Market Towns*.

Briſtol, a City part in this County, and the greateſt part being in *Glouceſterſhire*, it is there treated of, and therefore omitted here.

Bath. *Bath*, ſeated on the *Avon*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, and in a low and ſmall Plain, which is encircled with Hills, out of which iſſue forth ſeveral Springs, which pay their Tribute to this City. It is a City of great Antiquity, as doth appear by the many *Roman Inſcriptions* and *Images* commonly found in the Walls which encompaſs it; and where the *Abby* ſtandeth was a Temple conſecrated to *Minerva*, the Goddeſs of *Fountains* and *Baths*. It is a fair and neat City, repleniſhed with well-built Houſes, for Divine worſhip hath at preſent but one *Pariſh Church* beſides its *Abby* or *Cathedral*, a ſuperb Building. It is governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, *Common Council*, with other ſub-Officers, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſendeth its Repreſentatives to Parliament, and hath two Markets weekly, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions; it enjoys a good trade for its *Clothing* here made, and is a place well inhabited and reſorted unto, and the rather for its *Medicinal Baths*, for the curing of ſeveral diſeaſes in the body of Man. Of theſe *Baths* there are four, and the Water, as to heat, is of a different temperature: The *Croſs-Bath*, which is of a temperate heat, is encloſed with a *Wall*, and about the ſides are placed 12 Seats of *Stone*. The ſecond is of a much hotter temperature, and therefore called the *Hot-Bath:* Adjoyning to theſe *Baths* is a *Spittle-houſe*, for the relief of poor diſeaſed people. The third and fourth (as joyned together) are the greateſt and beſt, being ſeated near the Abby, and called the *King* and *Queens Baths*; they are encloſed with Walls, and have 32 Seats made of Arched-work, and ſo ordered that Men and Women ſit apart.

Wells. *Wells*, ſeated at the foot of a Hill, ſo called from the *Springs* and *Wells* there ſpringing up; a ſmall City, but well inhabited, and of a good account, being dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, under whoſe Juriſdiction is that of *Bath*. It is garniſhed with fair and ſtately Buildings, both publick and private, as its *Cathedral*, dedicated to *St. Andrew*, a beautiful Pile of building; the *Biſhops-Palace*, adjoyning to the *Cathedral*, built Caſtle-wiſe; then the *Prebendaries Houſes*, and the *Market-houſe*, ſuſtained by Pillars. It is governed by a *Major*, 7 *Maſters*, 16 *Burgeſſes*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, &c. enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath weekly 2 Markets, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are well ſerved with Proviſions.

Penſford,

Pensford, seated on the River *Chue*, near its falling into the *Avon*; a Town of good account, and much inhabited by *Hatters* and *Bakers*. It hath a Market on *Tuesdays*, which is well served with Corn and Provisions. *Pensford.*

Glassenbury, seated near the *Tor*; a good Town and hath a Market on *Tuesdays*, which is well served with *Corn*, *Fowl*, *Fish*, and other Provisions. This place is of note for its once famous and stately Abby of *Glassenbury*, where (as 'tis reported) the Body of *Joseph* of *Arimathea*, whom *Philip* the Apostle of the *Gauls* sent into *Britain* to preach the Gospel of Christ, lieth interr'd; and here King *Inas* built a fair and stately Church, and in the Church-yard was the Sepulchre of King *Arthur*. *Glassenbury.*

Near adjoyning, on a high and steep Hill is placed a Tower, now called *Glassenbury-Tor*, which commandeth a great prospect round about, and serveth as a *Land-mark* to Sea-men; and on the top thereof the last *Abbot* was hanged by command of King *Henry* the Eighth.

Bruton, seated on the River *Brew*; a well built and inhabited Town, of a good trade for *Clothing*, *Searges*, and *Maulting*, and hath a very great Market for Provisions, &c. on *Saturdays*. The Town is graced with a very beautiful *Church*, hath a *Free School*, founded by King *Edward* the Sixth, and a most goodly *Alms-house*, that hath rather the resemblance of a *Colledge* than an *Hospital*. *Bruton.*

Evill, or *Yeovell*, a *Borough Town*, governed by a *Port-Reve*, and keepeth Courts for the trial of Actions. It is seated on a River so called, and hath a very considerable Market on *Fridays* for *Corn*, *Cheese*, *Hemp*, *Flax*, and *Provisions* in great plenty, taking its rise from the decay of *Ilchester*, near adjoyning. *Evill.*

Ilchester, a Town of great antiquity, and in former times of as great strength; for at the coming of the *Normans* it was so populous that it had in it 107 *Burgesses*, and numbred 16 *Parish Churches*; but at present it hath but two *Churches*. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Bailiff* and 12 *Burgesses*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, is the place where the *County Goal* is kept, and hath a pretty good Market on *Wednesdays*. *Ilchester.*

Taunton, pleasantly seated on the *Tone*, which is navigable for *Barges* within three miles of the Town, where it hath a fine Bridge. It is a very fine, neat, and well-built Town, graced with spacious Streets, containeth 2 *Parish Churches*; is well inhabited both by *Gentry* and *Tradesmen*, especially *Clothiers*, who drive a considerable Trade for *Searges* and *Clothing*; being esteemed the best Town in the County; and its Markets, on *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays*, are very great, and well provided with *Corn*, *Flesh*, *Fish*, and *Fowl*. It was formerly a *Major Town*, but at present a *Bailiwick*. *Taunton.*

Bridgwater, seated on a navigable River, over which it hath a fine *Stone-bridge*. It is a large, well frequented and inhabited *Borough Town*, hath the election of *Parliament men*; is governed by a *Major*, and other sub-Officers; was formerly a place of good account, having a *Castle* and an *Abby*. Its Market is on *Thursdays*, which is well served with *Corn* and *Provisions*, and in the Summer season with *Cattle*. *Bridgwater.*

Mynehead, seated on the Sea-shoar; a *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, hath a very good harbour for Ships of a considerable burthen to ride in, and is a place of some Trade, especially into *Ireland*; yet its Market is but small. *Mynehead.*

The County of *STAFFORD*, seated much about the midst of *England*; of a healthful Air, and different Soil, the Southern parts being generally barren, as *sandy*, *gravelly*, or *heathy*, except on the banks of the Rivers; yet by the Husbandmans pains in manuring it, it beareth good Corn; and the Northern parts are *hilly*, and full of great *Heaths* and *Moors*, and is made use of for feeding of *Cattle*: And although an Inland County, yet by reason of the many *Rivers* and *Brooks* it is plentifully furnished with excellent Fish. To speak of the Country in general, there are more *Heaths*, *Moors*, and *waste Ground*, than in any County in *England*, as to its bigness, insomuch that County of Stafford.

you may go the whole length of the County and ſee little but *Heaths* and *Moors*; but theſe are not without profit, as breeding ſtore of *Sheep*, *Conies*, and *Deer*, as well as pleaſure for the Gentleman, both for the *Hawk*, *Gun*, and *Hound*; and for *Parks* and *Warrens* few Counties doth exceed it. The Commodities that this Shire affordeth to others, are *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Horſes*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Wool*, *Bacon*, *Iron*, *Iron-ware*, chiefly *Nails*, *Alablaſter*, &c.

The number of *Pariſhes* are 130, and hath 18 *Market Towns*, many of which are of conſiderable account.

Litchfield. *Litchfield*, a City and County of it ſelf, ſeated in a pleaſant Champain Country, divided from the *Cathedral* and *Cloſe*, but joyned together by two *Bridges* and *Cawſeys*. It is a City of great antiquity, formerly called *Licidfeld*, that is, *the Field of dead Bodies*, which name it had from the great number of *Chriſtians* there ſlain in the *Diocleſian Perſecution:* and here *Oſwin*, King of the *Northumbers*, having vanquiſhed the *Pagan Mercians*, erected a *Church*, and made it the Epiſcopal See of *Duina* the Biſhop, which afterwards was made an *Archiepiſcopal Pale* by Pope *Hadrian*, in the Reign of King *Offa*, which dignity expired with his life. This City is well built, is indifferent large, containing 3 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*, a beautiful and curious Structure, adjoyning to which is the *Biſhops Palace*, and the *Prebends-houſes:* the Streets are paved and well ordered, and is a place much frequented by *Gentry*. It is governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, a *Sheriff*, (which are elected out of 24 *Burgeſſes*) a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, with ſub-Officers; and amongſt its Immunities ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. Its Markets are on *Tueſdays* and *Fridays*, which are plentifully ſerved with Corn and Proviſions.

Stafford. *Stafford*, well ſeated on the River *Sowe* amongſt rich Meadows; a fair Town, indifferent large, containing 2 *Pariſh Churches*, hath a *Free School*, and a fine ſquare *Market-place*, in which the *Shire-Hall* is kept for the *Aſſizes* and *Seſſions* of the County; the Streets are paved and well ordered, and its Houſes well built; it is governed by a *Major* and *Burgeſſes*, hath a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, and 2 *Serjeants* at *Mace*. The Town enjoys large Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is well inhabited and frequented, and its Markets, which is on *Saturdays*, is well ſerved with *Corn*, *Fleſh*, and other Proviſions.

New-Caſtle. *New-Caſtle under Line*, ſeated on a little Rivulet; a large *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Bailiffs*, and *Burgeſſes*, hath a Court of *Record*, to hold plea in all *Perſonal Actions* under 40 *l.* and amongſt its Immunities ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. It hath a great Market on *Mondays* for Cattle, ſome *Horſes* and *Sheep*, with plenty of Proviſions; and after *Low-Monday*, a Market (or rather a Fair) every Fortnight for ſome time.

Uttoxater. *Uttoxater*, pleaſantly ſeated near the Banks of the *Dove* amongſt excellent Paſturage. The Town is not very well built, but pretty large, hath a well built *Market-place*; and its Market, which is on *Wedneſdays*, is ſaid to be one of the greateſt in theſe parts of *England* for *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Swine*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Corn*, and all Proviſions.

Tamworth. *Tamworth*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Tame*, which divides the Town, one part being in this County and the other in *Warwickſhire*. The Town at preſent is of good account (though not of that ſplendor as in former times) being incorporated, governed by *Bailiffs*, a *high Steward*, *under-Steward*, *Recorder*, and other ſub-Officers, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, which is indifferent good for Corn and Proviſions, and in the Spring time for *Cattle* and *Sheep*.

Walſall. *Walſall*, ſeated on the top of a Hill; a well-built *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, and other ſub-Officers, hath a Court of *Record*, enjoyeth a good Trade for divers Manufactures made of *Iron*, as *Nails*, *Bridle-bits*, *Stirrups*, *Spurs*, and alſo *Bellows*, here made in great plenty; yet its Market, which is on *Tueſdays*, is not very great.

Wolver-

Wolverhampton, pleasantly seated on a Hill, beautified with reasonable well built Houses, and its Streets handsomly paved; is much frequented by *Gentry*, hath a neat *Collegiate Church*, and its Market, which is on *Wednesdays*, is very considerable for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Provisions*, being esteemed the second *Market Town* in the County. *Wolverhampton.*

SUFFOLK, a County of a various Soil, and consequently hath sundry growths and Manufactures; the Eastern parts all along the Coasts, and for 5 or 6 miles Inland are generally very bleak, but healthy, *sandy*, full of small *Hills* and *Springs*, and employed in Tillage for *Rye*, *Peas*, *Brank*, *Hemp*, and for *Sheep-walks*. The more Inland part, commonly called *High-Suffolk*, or the *Wood-lands*, is pretty level, close and dirty, and is made use of chiefly for *Dayries*, driving a great trade for their *Butter* and *Cheese*; and the parts about *Bury* are Champain, and affordeth great store of grain of all sorts. County of *Suffolk* described.

It is a County of a large extent, is well stored with *Parks*, watered with fresh Streams, and blest with a most healthful and sweet Air, which makes it to be so well inhabited by *Gentry*, and is traded unto by 27 *Market Towns*, and numbreth 575 *Parish Churches*.

Ipswich, seated by the Banks of the *Orwell*, near the place where its fresh Water and salt meet, which (with the Tide) gives it the conveniency of a *Key*. 'Tis a place of great antiquity, and was once fenced about with a Wall or Rampier, which was thrown down by the *Danes*. It is at present a place of a large extent, numbring 12 *Parish Churches* besides St. *Georges Chapel*; and for its abundance of Streets, which are clean and neatly ordered, its populousness and good trade that its Inhabitants drive both by Sea and Land, it may be ranged in the number of Cities. It is a *Town Corporate*, well Priviledged, sends *Burgesses* to Parliament, and is governed by 2 *Bailiffs* chosen out of 12 *Port-men*, and 24 *Common Council*, also a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, and other sub-Officers. It is well served with Provisions, for besides its Shambles here are weekly 3 Markets, *viz.* on *Wednesdays* and *Fridays*, for *Fish* and *Butter*, and on *Saturdays* for Provisions of all sorts in great plenty. And this Town gave birth to *Cardinal Wolsey*, who here began a magnificent *Colledge*, which still bears his name. *Ipswich.*

Bury, or *St. Edmonds-Bury*, so called from King *Edmond* the Martyr, here interr'd, who was shot to death at *Hoxon* by the *Danes*, for not renouncing the *Christian Faith*. This Town is very pleasantly seated, and in an Air so healthful, that makes it to be much inhabited and frequented by *Gentry*. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by an *Alderman* for its chief Magistrate, besides a *Recorder*, and other sub-Officers, and sends its Representatives to Parliament. It is of a large extent, yet consisteth but of two *Parish Churches*, hath well built Houses; its *Market-hill*, *Fair-sted*, and *Corn-Cross*, are spacious and handsom, but its Streets are ill paved, chiefly occasioned by the heavy Carriages which come to its Markets on *Wednesdays*, which are much resorted unto, being the chief Market Town in the County for Grain, and is also well furnished with fresh *Fish*, *Pigeons*, wild *Fowl*, and most sorts of Provisions. This Town was famous for its *Abby*, which for fairness and Prerogatives exceeded all others in *England*. Here is kept the *Quarter Sessions* for the liberty of *St. Edmond*; and in the *Abby-yard* stands the *Shire-house*, where the *Assizes* are ordinarily held for the County. *Bury.*

New-Market, composed of a well built Street; a great thorough-fare Town, full of *Inns*; it consists of two *Parish Churches*, the one in this County and the other in *Cambridgeshire*; but its *Market-place* and *Street* is wholly in *Suffolk*. Its Market is on *Tuesdays*, which is well frequented and served with *Fish*, *wild Fowl*, and other Provisions; and by reason of the situation of the Town near the spacious *Heath*, which bears its name, so commodious for *Horse-races*, and in a part of the Country so fit for *Field-sports*, it is much resorted unto by his Majesty, where he hath his *Palace*, and the *Nobility* and *Gentry*. *Newmarket.*

Mildenhall,

Mildenhall. *Mildenhall*, ſeated on a branch of the *Owſe*; a large *Market Town*, graced with a fair *Church*, with a tall *Steeple*, and very populous, having diſtant Streets called *Rows* (as *Beck-row*, *How-row*, &c.) to the *Fenward* belonging to it, as big as ſome little Towns. It hath a well frequented Market (eſpecially for *Fiſh* and *wild Fowl*) on *Fridays*.

Sudbury. *Sudbury*, ſeated on the *Stower*, over which it hath a fair Bridge leading into *Eſſex*; an ancient, good large Town, containing 3 *Pariſh Churches*, and by reaſon of its trade of *Clothing* is well frequented. It is a *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, and is governed by a *Major*, 7 *Aldermen*, 24 *Burgeſſes*, and other ſub-Officers. Its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is well reſorted unto.

Hadleigh. *Hadleigh*, a large *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, *Council*, &c. hath the accommodation of two Markets weekly, *viz.* on *Mondays*, very conſiderable for all Proviſions, eſpecially *Meat*; and a ſmaller on *Saturdays*. It is graced with a ſumptuous *Church*, was a place of great Trade in former times for *Clothings*; but at preſent hath loſt much of its trade for *Turky-ware*, as alſo for *Bays* and *Says*.

Stow-Markt. *Stow-Market*, ſeated in the center of the County, and between the branches of the *Gypp* or *Orwell*; a large and beautiful Town, graced with a ſpacious *Church*, on whoſe Steeple is a lofty *Pinacle*, not eaſie to be parallel'd. It hath a Market on *Thurſdays*, which is well ſerved with *Proviſions* and *Retail-wares*; and the grand Trade of the Town is now in *Tammeys*, and other *Norwich-Stuffs*, being the only Town in the County conſiderable for that employment.

Woodbridge. *Woodbridge*, a large Town, watered with ſeveral freſh Springs, having a pleaſant proſpect down the *Channel*, chiefly at High-water, being about 6 miles from the Main; a Town of good Traffick by *Sea* and *Land*; it is well enough built, excepting the lowneſs of the oldeſt Houſes, and part of the Streets are well paved; it hath a fair *Church*, in which are ſeveral Monuments. Its Market, which is on *Wedneſdays*, is of conſiderable reſort, and well traded unto for its Commodities, *viz. Pouldavis*, *Sack-cloth*, *Plank*, *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, but chiefly for its *Hemp*. As to its *Sea-trade*, they have ſeveral Veſſels both great and ſmall, which are imployed by them, and have here 4 or 5 Docks for the building of *Ships*.

Aldborough. *Aldborough*, a *Coaſt Town*, pleaſantly ſeated in a *Dale*; a large, long, and plain built Town, compoſed of two or three Streets of low Houſes, all in a row. At a ſmall diſtance from this Town is *Slaughden*, where they have a commodious Key, with *Ware-houſes*, or *Fiſh-houſes*, the only employment of the Town being for *Fiſh*, having great conveniences for drying their *North-Sea Fiſh*; in which Fiſhing-trade, with a little in the Coal-trade, they employ ſeveral Veſſels; but not ſo many as formerly. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by two *Bailiffs*, 10 *Capital Burgeſſes*, with 24 Inferiour, enjoyeth ancient Priviledges, and ſends its Repreſentatives to Parliament. For their defence *Sea-wards*, they have about 20 great Guns planted. Its Market is on *Saturdays*, which is but ſmall.

Dunwich. *Dunwich*, an ancient *Town Corporate*, ſending *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and is governed by two *Bailiffs*, and other ſub-Officers, and hath a ſmall Market on *Saturdays*. It is a Town of great antiquity, being in the year 640 made an *Epiſcopal See* by *Felix* the *Burgundian*, in the reign of *William* the *Conquerour*; it contained 236 *Burgeſſes*, had a *Mint*, and its Inhabitants were rich; but through the removal of its *Epiſcopal See*, and the encroachment of the *Sea*, which hath ſwallowed up a great part of it, and decay of its Shipping and Trade; it is rather the Remains of a Town, than one.

Bungay. *Bungay*, ſufficiently watered by the *Waveney*, which ſevereth it from *Norfolk*. It is a good large Town, containing two *Pariſh Churches*, one of which is fair; and between both, in the midſt of the Town, is to be ſeen the Ruins of a famous *Nunnery*. Its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is great, and well reſorted unto, eſpecially by thoſe of *Norfolk*.

Beckley,

Beckley, ſeated alſo on the *Waveney*; a very large Town, having a conſiderable, much frequented, and well ſerved Market on *Saturdays*, and hath a Paſſage-trade by Water to *Yarmouth*; the Town is but plain built, having ſeveral Thatched Houſes, but graced with a fair *Church*, and a bulky tall *Steeple*, on a Hill. *Beckley.*

SURRET, a County of a different Soil, not over fertil, (eſpecially in the midſt,) yet the parts near the *Thames*, which is plain and Champain, is grateful to the Husbandman; and the parts called *Holmeſdale*, by reaſon of the aſpiring *Hills*, *Rivers*, *Parks*, *Meadows*, *Groves*, and *Fields*, is a place of great delight. The Air is very healthful. It is garniſhed with the Seats of ſeveral Gentlemen, and is better ſtored with *Game* than *Grain*. County of *Surry* deſcribed.

Here are ſeated 140 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath the accommodation of 9 *Market Towns*.

Southwark, or the *Borough* of *Southwark*, on the South-ſide of the *Thames* oppoſite to the City of *London*, to which it is joyned by a ſtately *Stone-bridge*, and is a member thereof, being annexed by King *Edward* the Sixth; but doth ſtill enjoy ſeveral of its ancient Priviledges, as electing *Burgeſſes*, holding of *Courts* within themſelves, &c. It is a place, which for largeneſs of good Buildings, and quantities of Inhabitants, may be ranged with Cities; enjoying a good Trade, and is well reſorted unto. *Southwark.*

Croydon, ſeated low, near the Spring-head of the River *Wandle*, and in a manner begirt with aſpiring Hills, which for the moſt part are well clothed with *Wood*, of which great ſtore of *Charcoal* is made, for which this place is of note. It is a large Town, dignified with the Seat of the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*, is beautified with a large and fair *Church*, hath an *Hoſpital* for the relief of Poor people, and a *Free-School* for the Education of Youth. The Town is large, its Houſes well built, and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is conſiderable, and well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Croydon.*

From this Town to *Farnham* runneth the Downs, called *Banſtead-Downs*, which affordeth great diverſion for *Hawking*, *Hunting*, and *Horſe-Races*.

Kingſton, a large and ancient *Town Corporate*, enjoying large Immunities, and is of chief note for being the place where (upon a Stage in the open Market-place) ſtood the Chair of Majeſty, where *Æthelſtan*, *Ethelred*, and *Edwin*, were Crowned Kings, and received their *Imperial Scepters*, from whence 'tis ſaid the Town took its name, being before called *Moreford*. It is pleaſantly ſeated on the Banks of the *Thames*, over which it hath a fair Bridge which leadeth to *Kingſtonwick* in *Middleſex*, about a mile from *Hampton-Court*, the *Palace* of his Majeſty. Its Houſes are well built, and hath ſeveral *Inns* and *Taverns*; it is the uſual place for the *Aſſizes*, and its Market on *Saturdays* is very conſiderable for Corn and Proviſions. *Kingſton.*

Reygate, ſeated in the Vale of *Homesdale*, of note for its bloody Battles here fought againſt the *Danes*, in which they were vanquiſhed; and alſo for its ancient, but ruinated *Caſtle*, where (in the midſt of a large Court) there is a Vault of a great depth and length, at the end of which is a ſpacious Room, where (according to report) the *Barons* met in Council, in their War againſt King *John*. Here is *Fullers-Earth* dug up in great plenty. It is a large *Borough Town*, which ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a very conſiderable Market on *Tueſdays*, being well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Reygate.*

Not far from this Town are *Blechingley* and *Gatton*, two ancient *Borough Towns*, which electeth *Parliament men*, once places of good account, eſpecially *Gatton*.

Guilford, no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Wey*, which is navigable for *Barges*, very commodious to the Inhabitants for the conveyance of their Goods by water to *London*. It is an ancient *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major*, and other ſub-Officers, hath the election of *Parliament men*, and was a place of a larger extent when the *Engliſh-Saxon* Kings had their Palace here, than now it is; yet is it a fair, neat, well built, and large *Guilford.*

large Town, containing three *Pariſh Churches*, one of which is a fair Structure. It is a place well inhabited and frequented, where the *Aſſizes* are oft kept; and as ſeated on a High-road, is well furniſhed with *Inns* and *Taverns* for the reception of Travellers; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is of good Account, and well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions.

Farnham. *Farnham*, ſaid to be ſo called from the great ſtore of *Fern* here growing. It is a good Town, ſeated on the River *Wey*, of note for being the place where King *Elfred* (with a ſmall Power) ſubdued the *Danes* with a great ſlaughter; and for its ſpacious *Caſtle*, highly ſeated. It hath a great Market on *Saturdays* for all Proviſions, but chiefly *Oats* and *Barley*.

County of *Suſſex* deſcribed. *SUSSEX*, a large County, in form long and narrow, which, with its extent, bounds, diviſion into *Rapes*, ſcituation, &c. may appear by the *Table*. The *Air*, though clouded with Miſts and thick Vapours, which ariſe from the *Sea*, yet is it good and healthful. It is well watered with Rivers, which fall into the *Sea*, which waſheth its Southern parts; and although its *Sea-Coaſt* is of ſo large an extent, yet it is but thin of Harbours, and thoſe not very good, being dangerous for entrance by reaſon of its *Rocks* and *Shelves*.

The Soil is fertil: the Sea-Coaſt called the *Downs* is hilly, but very pleaſant, and feedeth good ſtore of Cattle. The North-part is overſhadowed with *Woods* and *Groves*, where (in times paſt) was that famous Wood *Andradſ-wald*, being about 120 miles in length, and 20 in breadth; and in theſe parts are many *Iron-Mines*.

The Commodities that this County affordeth, are *Iron* unwrought, and wrought into *Guns*, &c. *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Sheep*, *Wool*, and *Wood*.

This County is ſevered into 6 *Rapes*, all which traverſe the *Shire*, and have each of them their particular *River*, *Foreſt*, and *Caſtle*; and in theſe *Rapes* are 65 *Hundreds*, in which are numbred 312 *Pariſh Churches*; and is traded unto by 16 *Market Towns*.

In *Chicheſter Rape* are 7 *Hundreds*, and its chief places are,

Chicheſter. *Chicheſter*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Levant*, which at a ſmall diſtance falleth into the *Sea*. It is an indifferent large City, containing 5 or 6 *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Cathedral*; it is graced with good Buildings and ſpacious Streets, eſpecially the 4 which lead from the 4 Gates of its Wall, and croſs one another at the *Market-place*, which is a fair *Stone-Building*, ſuſtained with *Stone-Pillars*. It is dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, and Seat of a Biſhop. It is a City endowed with many Priviledges, electeth *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, *Recorder*, with ſub-Officers; is a place of pretty good Trade, and its Markets, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, are well provided with *Corn*, *Cattle*, and all ſorts of Proviſions, both *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and *Fowl*.

Nigh unto this City is *Selſey-Iſle*, or rather a *Peninſula*, as being almoſt encompaſſed with the *Sea* and its Arms and Branches, at preſent of chief note for its *Cockles* and *Lobſters*, here taken in great plenty; but in former time was of note for its City ſo called, now devoured by the *Sea*, where there was an *Epiſcopal See*, which afterwards was removed to *Chicheſter*.

Arundel. *Arundel*, pleaſantly ſeated near a Foreſt ſo called, and on the Banks of the *Arum*, over which it hath a Bridge. It is an ancient *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major*, and ſub-Officers, and amongſt its Immunities ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament; it was once of note for its ancient and ſtrong *Caſtle*, which flouriſhed in the time of the *Saxon* Empire. The Town is indifferent large, and its Houſes well built, and hath a Market.

Horſham. *Horſham*, ſeated near St. *Leonards Foreſt*, ſaid to be ſo called from *Horſa*, Brother to *Hengiſt*, who were the firſt Leaders of the *Engliſh Saxons* into this Iſle. It is a large *Borough Town*, governed by *Bailiffs*, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is the place where the *County Goal* is kept, as alſo the *Aſſizes*; and hath a very great Market on *Saturdays* for Corn and all ſorts of Proviſions, eſpecially *Fowl*, which is bought up by *London* Haglers.

New

New Shorham, ſeated on an Arm of the *Sea*, which renders it to be a place of ſome Trade, and would be more, had it but a good harbour for Ships. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Conſtable* and *Burgeſſes*, electeth *Parliament men*, but hath not the benefit of a Market. *Shorham.*

Lewes, ſcituate on the banks of the *Arun*; a Town of good antiquity, where King *Athelſtan* appointed the Mintage of his Money. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by 2 *Conſtables*, enjoys ſeveral Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, and hath a very good Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*. This Town for fairneſs of Buildings and Streets, populouſneſs of Inhabitants, both of *Gentry* and *Tradeſmen*, and largeneſs, numbring 6 *Pariſh Churches*, and having large *Suburbs*, may be eſteemed one of the beſt Towns in the County. *Lewes.*

At the entrance of the River *Arun* into the Sea, is *New-haven*, of late made a pretty ſecure Harbour for Ships, which hither put in in Foul weather, which theſe *Seas* are ſubject unto.

Eaſt-Grinſted, ſeated on an Eminence; a ſmall *Borough Town* on the confines of the County towards *Surrey*, is graced with a fair *Church*, hath the election of *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Bailiff* and *Burgeſſes*, is the place where the *Aſſizes* are often held, and hath a good Market on *Thurſdays*. *Grinſted.*

Winchelſey, of good antiquity, and once of far greater account than now it is, and that occaſioned by the *Seas* unkindneſs in forſaking it; yet doth it ſtill enjoy its Priviledges, as keeping of *Courts*, in being a Member of one of the *Cinque-Ports*, in ſending *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and by being governed by a *Major*, (who is Lord of *Tarmouth* for the *Fiſhing-Trade*) and *Jurats*. The Town is ſeated on a Rock or ſandy Cliff, and on an Inlet of the *Sea*, where it makes 4 *Cataracts*, and were its Haven not choaked up it would be a place of Trade. It was formerly a large Town, numbring 18 *Pariſh Churches*, which are all reduced to ruin except one, and its Buildings alſo waſted and ruinous for want of Inhabitants, ſo that its Market is now diſuſed. *Winchelſey.*

Rye, one of the *Cinque-Port Towns*, which began to flouriſh upon the decay of *Winchelſey*, being walled about (where the Cliffs defend it not) in the Reign of King *Edward* the Third. It is at preſent a fair and well-built Town, with paved Streets; is well inhabited and frequented, chiefly by *Fiſher-men*, being of note for its excellent *Herrings* here taken, and for being the ready Port-Town to *Normandy*. It is governed by a *Major* and *Jurats*, hath a commodious Haven, and hath weekly 2 Markets, *viz.* on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Rye.*

Haſtings, of good antiquity, being Incorporated, governed by a *Major* and *Jurats*, is one of the *Cinque-Ports*, enjoys large Immunities, and is of note for being the place where *William* the *Conquerour* ſet up his Fortreſs at his Landing at *Balver-hith*, not far diſtant, where he cauſed his Fleet to be burnt. It is a large Town, containing 2 *Pariſh Churches*, chiefly compoſed of as many Streets, in each of which there being a *Church*, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are well reſorted unto, and ſerved with Corn and Proviſions, eſpecially *Fiſh*, which is here had in great plenty. As to the ſcituation of this Town, it is couched between a high Cliff Sea-wards, and as high a Hill Land-wards. *Haſtings.*

The County of *WARWICK*, ſeated (as it were) in the midſt or heart of the Kingdom, and participates with her in the beſt, both for richneſs of Soil, pureneſs of Air, and pleaſure to its Inhabitants. County of *Warwick* deſcribed.

It may be divided into two parts, the one called *Feldon*, and the other *Woodland*, and theſe are in a manner ſeparated by the River *Avon*, which in a crooked paſſage runneth through the County. That called *Feldon* is more Champain, affording rich Meadows, feeding ſtore of Cattle, and is exceeding grateful to the Husbandman in their Crops of Corn: That called *Woodland*, of old *Arden*, took its name from the great plenty of Wood, which is now much waſted by the *Iron-works*, and this part is more ungrateful to the Husbandman.

It is ſevered into 5 *Hundreds* (in which are numbred 158 *Pariſh Churches*) and is traded unto by 17 *Market Towns*.

Coventry. *Coventry*, well ſeated for an Inland City, being eſteemed the chief place of Trade in theſe parts; a place very well inhabited and frequented, and the more for the great quantities of *Cloaths* here made and vended. It is a fair, neat, and large City, containing 3 *Pariſh Churches*, of which that of St. *Michael* and the *Holy Trinity*, are loftily built, and is beautified with good Buildings and well ordered Streets, and its *Croſs* (now lately repaired) is compoſed of curious work, and delightful to behold. Here it was that *Godiva*, wife to *Leofrick*, Earl of the *Mercians*, for the purchaſing the Citizens freedom, and to be eaſed from thoſe heavy Taxes which he impoſed upon them for ſome Offence, about Noon-day rode naked through the chief Streets of the City. It is a place which enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, being a County incorporate of it ſelf, having within its Liberties ſeveral Towns; is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Sheriffs*, and other ſub-Officers; keepeth *Courts* for the hearing of Cauſes and trial of Felons, having a Goal for Offenders, and ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament. It is a place well ſerved with Commodities, and its Market on *Fridays*, is very great for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Proviſions*, &c.

Warwick. *Warwick*, a Town of great antiquity, ſaid to be built by *Gurgunſtus* almoſt 400 years before the birth of Chriſt; and in the time of the *Romans* it was in a very flouriſhing condition, large and populous, where they kept a Garriſon, which was a Band of *Dalmatian* Horſemen. It is at preſent a Town of good account, ſeated on a ſteep Rock, and waſhed on the River *Avon*, over which it hath a ſtrong and well-built *Stone-Bridge*. It is indifferent large, containing 2 *Pariſh Churches* (beſides ſeveral demoliſhed;) its Houſes are well built, its Streets well-ordered and large, hath a ſtately *Market-houſe*, enjoyeth a good Trade, chiefly for *Mault*, and is the place where the *Aſſizes* and general *Seſſions* for the County are kept. It is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Brethren*, 24 *Burgeſſes*, a *Recorder*, with ſub-Officers. Amongſt its Immunities electeth *Parliament men*; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very great for Corn and Proviſions.

Near unto this Town is *Guy-Cliff*, moſt pleaſantly ſeated amongſt *Groves* and freſh *Streams*, where *Guy* of *Warwick* is ſaid to have built a *Chapel*; and after he had left off his exploits, here led an *Hermetical* life, and was here interr'd.

Stratford. *Stratford*, ſeated on the *Avon*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, ſuſtained by 14 Arches. It is a good large Town, having for Divine worſhip two *Churches*, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a conſiderable Trade for *Mault* here made, and hath a Market on *Thurſdays*, which is very well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions.

Bromicham. *Bromicham*, ſeated very dry on the ſide of a Hill; it is a large and well built Town, very populous, much reſorted unto, and enjoyeth a very great trade for *Iron* and *Steel* Wares and Tools here made; alſo for *Saddles* and *Bridles*, which find good vent at *London*, *Ireland*, and other parts; and its Market is on *Thurſdays*, which is very conſiderable for living *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Mault*, and *Proviſions*, beſides the Manufactures of the Town.

At *Newenham-Regis* is a Spring, whoſe Water (if drunk with *Salt*) looſneth; and if with *Sugar*, bindeth the Body; and is ſaid to be very Sovereign againſt *Ulcers*, *Impoſthumes*, and the *Gout*.

County of *Weſtmoreland* deſcribed. The County of *WESTMORELAND*, ſo called, as lying amongſt *Moors*, and high *Hills* or *Fells*, generally of a barren Soil, and very Mountainous, but not without many fruitful Valleys both for Tillage and Paſturage; and is well watered with freſh Streams.

Here are ſeveral *Meers* and *Lakes*, as *Winder-Meer*, which is the greateſt ſtanding water in *England*; *Rydale-water*, *Eſter-water*, *Greſmere-water*, *Kent-Meer*, *Ulles-water*, *Brother-water*, *Hawſe-water*, and others.

This

This County is divided or ſevered into two *Baronies*, *viz. Kendale Barony*, which is divided into the Wards of *Kendale* and *Lonſdale*; and the other *Barony*, called the *Barony* of *Weſtmoreland*, is divided into *Eaſt-Ward* and *Weſt-Ward*; and of theſe in order.

Kirby-Lonſdale, or the *Church-Town* in *Lonſdale*, ſeated on the *Lon*, over which it hath a large *Stone-bridge*, and in a rich Vale. It is a large and well built Town, beautified with a fair *Church*; a well inhabited and frequented Town both to *Church* and *Market*, eſteemed the greateſt in the County next to *Kendale*; and its Market on *Thurſdays* is well ſerved with Proviſions, and traded unto for *Cloth*. *Kirby-Lonſdale.*

Kendale, or *Kirby-Kendale*; a very fair, large, well-built, inhabited and frequented *Borough*, and *Market Town*, which for good Buildings, largeneſs, neatneſs, and good Manufactures is the chief in the County. It is a place of a conſiderable Trade, the people much addicting themſelves to Traffick, not only in their old Manufacture of *Cotton* and courſe *Woollen Cloth*; but of late in *Druggets*, *Serges*, *Hats*, *Worſted-Stockings*, &c. to the much enriching the Town and adjacent parts. It is moſt pleaſantly ſeated in a Valley, ſo called, amongſt Hills, and on the River *Can* or *Kent*, over which it hath two fair *Stone-bridges*, beſides one of *Wood*, which leadeth to the *Caſtle*, now ruinous. The Town is built in form of a *Croſs*, and is beautified with a fair and large *Church*, ſuſtained by five rows of *Pillars*, with ſeveral Apartments; near unto which is a *Free-School*, well endowed; and to this *Church* belongeth 12 *Chapels* of *Eaſe*. As to the Government of this Town, it is committed to the care of a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, 20 *Common Council-men*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, and two *Attorneys*, who attend their *Seſſions* and *Courts* of *Record*. Here are belonging to this Town 7 Companies, *viz. Mercers*, *Shearmen*, *Cordwainers*, *Tanners*, *Glovers*, *Taylors*, and *Pewterers*, each having their *Hall* or place of meeting; and for the accommodation of its Inhabitants hath a very great Market for *Corn*, living *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*, on *Saturdays*. *Kendale.*

Apleby, of note for its ſcituation and antiquity, being for the moſt part encircled with the River *Eden*; but ſo ſlenderly peopled with idle Inhabitants, and the Buildings ſo mean, although of late much amended, that were it not for the *Aſſizes* and *Seſſions* here held, it would be little better than a Village. It is a very ancient *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, and 12 *Aldermen*, with ſub-Officers, enjoys large Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and is diſcharged from paying Toll in all places, except *London* and *York*. Here is an *Hoſpital* or *Alms-houſe* erected, and liberally endowed by the Lady *Clifford* for the relief of 13 decaied Widows, who are called the *Mother* and her 12 *Siſters*. The Market is here kept on *Saturdays*, which is well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Apleby.*

Kirby-Stevens, beautified with a fair Church, ſeated near the Hills towards *Yorkſhire*. It is a good and well known Town, which of late is much improved by the trade of making *Stockings*, and hath a good Market on *Fridays*. *Kirby-Stephens.*

At *Stainmore*, a great Hill, is a *Croſs* ſaid to be erected upon a Peace concluded between *William* the *Conquerour* and *Malcolme* King of the *Scots*, and that by the ſaid Place each Kingdom ſhould know their limits; and on this *Stone-Croſs* which is called *Ree-Croſs*, that is, the *Croſs of Kings*, was engraven the Arms of the Kings, on the South-ſide thoſe of *England*, and on the North thoſe of *Scotland*. *Ree-Croſs.*

WILT-SHIRE, an Inland County, no leſs fertil than delightful. Its Northern parts hath delectable Hills, well clothed with Woods and watered with freſh Streams, amongſt which is the *Iſis*, which ſoon becometh the chief of the Kingdom. Its Southern parts are more even, and exceeding fertil in *Corn* and *Graſs*, feeding great flocks of *Sheep*; and are alſo well watered with the *Avon*, *Willy*, and *Alder*; and the midſt of the County is plain and level, bearing the name of *Salisbury-Plain*, which is a large tract of ground which feedeth good flocks of *Sheep*. County of *Wilts.*

In the midſt of this County is a *Dike* called *Wanſdike*, which runneth many miles in length, and is a place of ſome wonder, being ſaid to be made for the dividing the Kingdom of the *Mercians* from that of the *Weſt-Saxons*; this being the place where they fought for the enlargement of their Dominions. And here it was that *Ina* the *Weſt-Saxon* joyned Battle with *Ceolred* the *Mercian*, whence both of them quitted the Field with equal loſs.

This County is divided into 29 *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 304 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath for the accommodation of the Inhabitants 20 *Market Towns*.

Salisbury. *Salisbury*, a City of great antiquity, being the Seat of the *Romans*. It is commonly called *New-Sarum*, as raiſed out of the Old, which was ſeated on a great Eminence, being deſigned for Strength and War; yet honoured with an *Epiſcopal See*, and a fair *Cathedral*. This City of *New Sarum* is pleaſantly ſeated on a River, whoſe Streams commodiouſly water its Streets, which are large and ſpacious. It is beautified with fair Buildings, and its *Minſter* or *Cathedral* is a ſtately Structure, having as many Doors for entrance as Months in the year, as many Windows as Weeks, and as many Pillars (great and ſmall) as Days in the year; and its *Spire* proudly ſheweth it ſelf from a great diſtance; near unto which is the *Biſhops Palace*: then its *Town-Hall*, ſeated in a ſpacious *Market-place*, is a fair Building. This City (amongſt its Immunities) ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is a place well inhabited and frequented, enjoyeth a good Trade, and its Markets, which are on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, are very conſiderable for Corn and Proviſions; and for living Cattle on *Tueſdays*.

This City is encompaſſed with open *Fields* and *Plains*, where (at about 6 miles diſtance) is that wonderful piece of work called *Stone-Henge*, compoſed of great and unwrought Stones, ſome being 28 foot high, and 7 broad, and ſo laid thwart one another that it is wonderful to behold. And theſe *Stones* are ſaid to be thus raiſed by the *Britains*, as a Monumental Sepulchre of the Vertue and Manhood of *Ambroſius Aurelianus*, who took upon him the Imperial *Purple-Robe* of *Britain* in the declenſion of the *Roman* Empire, ſuccoured his languiſhing Country, and by the aid of that warlike *Arthur* repreſſed the furious rage of the Enemy, vanquiſhing powerful Armies, and in the end, in the laſt Battel fought on this Plain, loſt his life.

Wilton. *Wilton*, well watered with the *Willey* and another River; a Town in former time of ſuch great note that it was the chief in the County, and was dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, had a Monaſtery and enjoyed great Immunities; but at preſent it is become a ſmall, mean *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, is the place where the *Knights* of the Shire are choſen, where the *Sheriff* keeps his Monthly *County-Courts*; yet hath but a ſmall Market on *Fridays*.

Devizes. *Devizes*, ſeated near *Blackmere-Foreſt*; a Town of greater note and ſtrength in former times than at preſent, being defended by a powerful *Caſtle*; yet is it a large Town, being well inhabited and traded unto for divers Commodities, eſpecially for *Mault*; It hath the election of *Parliament men*, and its Market, which is on *Thurſdays*, is very conſiderable for *Horſes*, *Cattle* of all ſorts, *Corn*, *Proviſions*, and divers other Country-commodities.

Chipnam. *Chipnam*, ſeated on the *Avon*, a *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, and hath a noted Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*.

Marlborough. *Marlborough*, ſeated on the *Kenet* near *Savernake-Foreſt* and *Aldburn-Chaſe*, and in a *Chalky Soil*, a Town of great note in former times, where there was a Parliament held, and a Law made for the ſuppreſſing of all Tumults called the Statute of *Marlborough*. And here was once a ſtrong *Caſtle* belonging to *John* Sirnamed *Sans Terre*, who was after King of *England*. It is at preſent a good, large, and well built *Borough Town*, electing *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Major* and *Burgeſſes*, and hath a very conſiderable Market for *Corn*, *Mault*, *Proviſions*, *Butter*, and eſpecially *Cheeſe* on *Saturdays*.

Not far from this place are divers Stones, ſome of a vaſt bigneſs pitched up an end.

Swindon,

Swindon, ſeated near a rich Vale, and on the Summit of a Hill; a Town of no largeneſs, but its Houſes are generally well built of Stone, and hath a conſiderable Market for fat Cattle on *Mondays*. *Swindon.*

Malmesbury, pleaſantly ſeated on the Banks of the *Avon*, which almoſt encircleth it, over which it hath 6 Bridges. It is a Town of great antiquity, where *Maidulph* an *Iriſh-Scot*, a man of great Holineſs and Learning, under a Hill in a ſolitary Grove built a *Cell* or little *Monaſtery*, and lived an *Heremitical* life, and where his Succeſſor *Adelma* built a fair *Monaſtery*. It is at preſent a good *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, and hath a good Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Saturdays*. *Malmsbury.*

The County of *WORCESTER* is of a fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, bearing good Crops of *Corn*, and feeding ſtore of Cattle. It is interlaced with aſpiring Hills, well clothed with Wood, as the *Malvern*, *Bredon*, *Woodbery*, *Aberleg*, &c. and through its Valleys run thoſe many Rivers, which ſo plentifully water the County, as the *Severn*, *Avon*, *Salwarp*, &c. County of *Worceſter.*

This Shire hath ſuch great abundance of *Fruits*, that even the *Hedg-rows* and *High-ways* are beſet therewith, whoſe Fruits are free to all Paſſengers; and here *Sider* and *Perry* is had in as great plenty, as *Beer* at *London*. Here are many *Salt-Pits* or *Wiches*, which afford a moſt excellent high prized *Salt* for the *Gentries* Table, which for fineneſs, whiteneſs, and hardneſs, imitateth *Loaf-Sugar*.

This County is ſevered into 5 *Hundreds*, in which are ſeated 152 *Pariſhes*, and is traded unto by 11 *Market Towns*.

Worceſter, no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-Bridge*, with a *Tower* upon it. It is a City of great antiquity, ſaid to be built by the *Romans*, the better to ſecure themſelves from the *Britains*, who were Maſters of all beyond the *Severn*, and was held in good repute in the time of the *Danes* and *Saxons*; and although it hath received ſo many ſhocks of ill fortune by Fire and Sword, yet is it a place of good largeneſs, numbring 9 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides St. *Michaels* and its *Cathedral*, a ſtately Structure, in whoſe *Quire* are ſeveral graceful Tombs. This City enjoyeth ample Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, is dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*, is governed by a *Major*, *Sheriff*, 6 *Aldermen*, 24 principal *Citizens*, with 48 leſs, called *Common-Council-men*, 2 *Chamberlains*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, with ſub-Officers; is graced with good Buildings and well ordered Streets, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, eſpecially for *Clothings*, here made in great quantities, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays*, *Fridays*, and *Saturdays*, are very conſiderable, eſpecially that on *Saturdays* for *living Cattle*, *Corn*, *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and all *Proviſions*, which are here had at eaſie rates. *Worceſter.*

Eveſholme, ſeated on a Hill, ariſing from the River *Avon*, which almoſt encompaſſeth it, where it hath a *Stone-bridge*. This Town was of note for its *Abby*, founded by *Edwin*, by the helping-hand of King *Kenred*, Son of *Wolpher* King of the *Mercians*. It is at preſent a large and well-built *Mayor-Town*, eſteemed the beſt in the County, next to *Worceſter*, containing two or three *Pariſhes*, ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is well inhabited and frequented, enjoyeth a good Trade, principally for *Stockings*; and its Market, which is on *Mondays*, is very conſiderable for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Proviſions*, and *Stockings*. This Town gives name to a Vale near adjoyning, which for fertility of Soil may deſervedly be called the *Granary* of theſe parts. *Eveſholme.*

Droitwich, ſeated on the River *Salwarp*; a pretty good *Bailiwick-Town*, but its Market (which is on *Fridays*) is but ſmall. This Town is of great note for its *Salt-Pits* or *Wiches*, having three *Fountains* that afford great plenty of Water for the making of *Salt*, which is excellent white and good, for which here is drove a good Trade. *Droitwich.*

Sturbridge,

Sturbridge. *Sturbridge*, ſeated on a Flat, and on the *Stower*, over which it hath a Bridge; it is a good and well-built Town, hath the accommodation of a good *Free-School*, with a *Library*, and its Market on *Fridays* is well furniſhed with *Corn*, *Proviſions*, and *Swine*.

Kidderminſter. *Kidderminſter*, ſeated under a Hill, and on the *Severn*, where the *Stower* loſeth it ſelf, dividing the Town in twain; an ancient *Bailiwick-Town*, beautified with a fair *Church*, hath well-built Houſes, is well inhabited, and much traded unto for its Stuffs called *Kidderminſter-Stuffs*, and its Market, which is on *Thurſdays*, is conſiderable for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Proviſions*, and ſeveral Country-commodities.

Bewdley. *Bewdley*, a *Bailiwick-Town*, which ſends *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, and near the Foreſt of *Wire*, which in former time was a place of great delight, and much reſorted unto. It is a neat and well-built Town, enjoyeth a good Trade for *Mault*, *Leather*, and *Caps*, called *Bewdley-Caps*, here made, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*, chiefly conſiderable for *Barly*.

County of York deſcrib'd. *YORK-SHIRE*, the largeſt County in *England*, being above 300 miles in compaſs; and although thus ſpacious, for the generality is indifferent fertil, yielding good plenty of *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*; for if one part is *ſtony*, *ſandy*, and *barren*, other parts make amends: and although there are great ſtore of *Heaths* and *Moors*, which are barren ground, yet are they profitable to the Inhabitants for the feeding of Cattle.

In this County the *Romans* had ſeveral Stations; and here were abundance of *Abbeys*, *Monaſteries*, and *Religious Houſes*, many of which were of great note, eminency, and wealth.

The chief Manufactures of this Shire, are *Stockings*, *Alum*, *Jett*, *Lime*, *Knives*, *Pins*, &c. but above all *Cloth* in great plenty.

It is ſevered into three diſtinct parts, and called the *North-Riding*, the *Eaſt-Riding*, and the *Weſt-Riding*; which ſaid Ridings or Parts are ſubdivided into 26 *Wapontacks*, or *Hundreds*, *viz.* the *North* into Eleven, the *Eaſt* into Six, and the *Weſt* into Nine; and in all theſe *Wapontacks* are numbred 563 *Pariſh Churches*, beſides abundance of *Chapels* of *Eaſe*, by reaſon of the largeneſs of the *Pariſhes*, many of the *Chapels* being as large as Pariſhes in other parts of *England*.

The *North-Riding* of *Yorkſhire* may not improperly be divided into *Richmondſhire*; *Cleaveland*, a fertil part; *North-Allerton*, and *Blackmore*, very Mountainous, Craggy, and Mooriſh. The chief places in this Riding are,

City of York. *York*, which next to *London* claimeth the Priority of all others in the Kingdom; a place of great antiquity and fame, having its riſe from the *Romans*, who had it in ſuch great eſteem, that *Severus* their Emperour had here his *Palace*, and here ended his days, and had thoſe Funeral Rites ſolemnized on his Corps according to their cuſtom. And here *Fl. Valerius Conſtantius*, ſurnamed *Chlorus*, bid adue to the World, and in his room his Son *Conſtantine* was here proclaimed *Emperour*. Nor did this City thus flouriſh only in the time of the *Romans*, but was of great repute in all ſucceeding Ages, and hath in all the revolutions and changes under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, preſerved its ancient luſtre, and is at preſent a fair, large, and beautiful City, adorned with many ſplendid Buildings, both publick and private, is very populous, much reſorted unto, and well inhabited by *Gentry* and wealthy *Tradeſmen*, and numbreth about 30 *Pariſh Churches* and *Chapels*, beſides its *Cathedral* or *Minſter*, a moſt ſtately Structure dedicated to St. *Peter*. Amongſt its publick Buildings of note theſe may be taken notice of; The *Biſhops-Palace*, its *Chapter-Houſe*, a curious piece of *Architecture*; the *Princes-Houſe*, called the *Manour*; and the Courts of *Judicature*, held for the Neighbouring *Marches*, according to that of *Ludlow*. It is a City and County within it ſelf, enjoyeth large Immunities, ſendeth *Burgeſſes* to Parliament, is governed by a *Lord Major*, 12 *Aldermen* clad in Scarlet, 2 *Sheriffs*, 12 *Common Council*, 8 *Cham-*

8 *Chamberlains*, a *Recorder*, *Town Clerk*, *Sword-Bearer*, and *Common Serjeant*, with other ſub-Officers. It is a place of great ſtrength, being well fortified, and encloſed with a ſtrong Wall, on which are many *Turrets* or *Watch-houſes*, and hath for entrance 4 *Gates* and 5 *Poſterns*. Its ſcituation is no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the *Owſe*, which ſevereth it in two parts, but joyned together by a fair *Stone-bridge*; and to conclude, its Markets on *Thurſdays* and *Saturdays* are very conſiderable, and well ſerved with *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, &c. as are its *Shambles* on the Week-days with Proviſions.

Malton, or *New-Malton*, ſeated on the *Derwent*, over which it hath a good *Stone-bridge*. It is compoſed of two Towns, the *New* and the *Old Malton*, and both containing 3 *Pariſh Churches*; it is a place well inhabited, and accommodated with good *Inns*, hath weekly two Markets, on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, which is one of the beſt in the County for *Horſes*, *living Cattle*, *Proviſions*, and moſt Country-commodities, eſpecially *Utenſils* for Husbandry; and as a *Borough Town* (which is but meanly built) electeth *Parliament men*. *Malton.*

Pickering, or the *Honour* of *Pickering*, a pretty good Town, belonging to the Dutchy of *Lancaſter*, hath a famous Old *Caſtle* (now ruinous) in which they keep their *Courts* for the hearing of Cauſes under 40 *s.* in the ſaid *Honour*, which includeth ſeveral *Villages*, which (as it were) encompaſs it, ſo that the adjacent Country is called *Pickering-Lith*, the *Foreſt* of *Pickering*, and the *Liberty* of *Pickering*. Its Market, which is on *Mondays*, is well ſerved with Corn and Proviſions. *Pickering.*

Scarborough, a place of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being ſeated on a ſteep Rock, with ſuch craggy Cliffs, that it is almoſt inacceſſible, and beareth ſo into the Sea; that it is waſhed on all parts, except on the Weſt, where it yieldeth acceſs by a ſtrait *paſſage*, *Cliff*, or *Gullet*, where it hath a ſtrong Wall. On the top of this Rock is a very fair, green, and large *Plain*, containing about 60 Acres of ground, and hath a little *Well* of Freſh-water ſpringing out of the Rock; and for its further defence hath a ſtrong *Caſtle*, now made uſe of by his Majeſty for a *Garriſon*. This Town is not very large, but well built and inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, having a commodious Key, with ſeveral Veſſels belonging to it, which are employed by them; and during the *Herring-ſeaſon* for the *Fiſhing Trade*, they being plentifully taken on this Coaſt. This place is of note for its famous *Spaw*, much reſorted unto, as well by *Foreigners* as the *Engliſh*. It is a *Town Corporate*, electing *Parliament men*, is governed by two *Bailiffs*, and a *Common Council*; and hath two Markets weekly, on *Thurſdays*, which is of good account, and on *Saturdays*, which is but ſmall. *Scarborough.*

Not far from this Town is *Robinhoods-Bay*, ſo called from *Robinhood*, that noted Robber in the Reign of King *Richard* the Firſt; and here is found *Jett*, or *black-Amber*,

Whitby, well ſeated on the River *Eſk*, at its influx into the *Sea*, over which it hath a Bridge. It is a well built Town, enjoyeth a conſiderable Trade, (eſpecially for *Alum* and *Butter*, called *Whitby-Butter*) there belonging to it about 100 Sail of Veſſels, having a *Cuſtom*, and would be more conſiderable were its *Peer* finiſhed; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very great, and well ſerved with *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, *Fowl*, &c. *Whitby.*

On this Coaſt is ſeated *Skeningrave*; a ſmall Town, but well frequented by *Fiſhermen*: And near unto *Hunt-Cliff*, not far from the Shoar, at a Low-water, appear Rocks, about which the *Seal-fiſh* come in great Sholes, and lie ſleeping and Sunning themſelves in fair and warm weather; and (according to obſervation) whilſt theſe Fiſh do thus ſleep, there is one of them which watcheth as a *Sentinel*, and when any danger approacheth, they are awaked by its flinging it ſelf into the *Sea*, and making a noiſe, and ſo eſcape. *Skeningrave.*

North-Allerton, ſeated near the *Swale*; a large *Borough Town*, which electeth *Parliament men*, and hath a great Market on *Wedneſdays*, for *Horſes*, *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Proviſions*, and is a Town of a good Trade. *North-Allerton.*

The

Richmondshire. The other part of this Riding beareth the name of *Richmondſhire*, ſo called from a *Caſtle* there ſeated. It lieth very high, and is Mountainous and Rocky; hath good Mines of *Lead*, *Copper*, and *Pit-Coal*; is interlaced with fertil Valleys. It containeth within its Juriſdiction 5 *Wapontacks*, and hath for its chief places,

Richmond. *Richmond*, ſeated on the Northern Banks of the *Swale*, over which it hath a *Stone-bridge*. It is a large *Town Corporate*, containeth 2 *Pariſh Churches*, is begirt with a *Wall*, which hath 3 *Gates* for entrance, which leadeth into ſo many Suburbs; is fortified with a ſtrong *Caſtle*, highly ſeated on a *Rock*; is graced with well-built Houſes, many of which are of *Free-ſtone*, and its Streets are paved and well ordered. Its *Market-place*, which is well reſorted unto, and plentifully furniſhed with *Cattle* and *Proviſions*, on *Saturdays*, is very ſpacious. It is well inhabited by *Gentry* and *Tradeſmen*, and enjoyeth a very good Trade for *Stockings* and *Woollen Knit-Caps* for *Sea-men*. It is governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, with ſub-Officers, enjoyeth large Immunities, and hath a Court of *Record* for all Actions, without limitation of ſome for the ſaid liberty.

The Eaſt parts of this Riding, lying on or near the *Sea-ſhoar* and the Banks of the *Derwent*, are of a good Soil and fertil; but the midſt, called the *Wold*, is very hilly and barren. Its chief places are,

Hull. *Hull*, or *Kingſton upon Hull*, commodiouſly ſeated on the Mouth of the River *Hull*, at its influx into the *Humber*; a Town of no great antiquity, taking its riſe from King *Edward* the Firſt, where he made a *Haven* and a *Free-Burgh*, and granted to its Inhabitants (who were Free *Burgeſſes*) ample Immunities. It is at preſent a very large *Borough* and *Town Corporate* (though containing but 2 *Pariſh Churches*) graced with fair Buildings, and well ordered Streets, which are ſufficiently furniſhed with *Shop-keepers*, one of which reſembleth *Thames-ſtreet*, near the *Bridge* in *London*, where *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Cordage*, *Sails*, and other neceſſaries for *Ships* are ſold, and to which the *Ships* and *Veſſels* come to lade and unlade their Goods, having a *Cuſtom-Houſe* and *Key*; and the commodiouſneſs of the Town for *Shipping*, makes it to be a place well inhabited, and much reſorted unto by *Merchants*; this Town being inferiour for Trade to none in *England*, next to *London* and *Briſtol*. It is a place of exceeding great ſtrength, being able to bid defiance both to a *Navy* and a *Land-Army*, and that by reaſon of its ſtrong *Block-houſes*, *Caſtles*, *VValls*, *Forts*, *Trenches*; and the Inhabitants and Souldiers within it, being a conſiderable *Garriſon* of his Majeſties. It is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, a *Common Council*, and other ſub-Officers; amongſt its Priviledges, gives Vote in Parliament by its Repreſentatives. It is very well ſerved with Proviſions, as well in its Shambles as in its Market, which is on *Saturday*.

In theſe *Seas* are taken abundance of *Herrings*, to the great profit of the Inhabitants.

Barlington. *Bridlington*, or *Barlington*, a Sea-Port Town, ſeated on a Creek near *Flamborough-head* (a place well known to *Sea-men*) and hath a ſafe Road for *Ships* to ride in, and a very commodious Key for *Ships* to lade and unlade at, by reaſon of which it enjoyeth a good Trade; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is well ſerved with *Proviſions*, &c.

Beverley. *Beverley*, ſeated on the River *Hull*, which gives paſſage into the *Humber* for *Boats* and *Barges*, for the conveyance of their Goods to and fro. It is a large and well-built *Borough* and *Town Corporate*, containing two *Pariſh Churches* beſides its *Minſter*; it enjoyeth large Immunities, electeth *Parliament men*, is governed by a *Major*, 12 *Aldermen*, with ſub-Officers; is a place well inhabited by *Gentry* and *Tradeſmen*; and its Markets, which are on *Thurſdays* and *Saturdays*, are well ſerved with Proviſions.

Howden. *Howden*, ſeated near the Rivers *Owſe* and *Derwent*; a good large Town, which gives name to a ſmall Territory called *Howdenſhir*, and hath a very great Market for *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Proviſions*, on *Saturdays*.

The

The West Riding is the largest of the three, is every where well watered with *Rivers*, and replenished with good *Towns*; the chief amongst which are,

Halifax, seated in a barren Soil, and on a steep descent of an Hill; a place of note, as well for being the Birth-place of *Johannes de Sacro Bosco*, the Inventer of the Sphere, as for its strict Law in the sudden beheading of such as are taken in the act of Theft. As for the largeness of the Parish, it containeth 11 *Chapels* of *Ease*, of which two are *Parish Chapels*; is very well inhabited, and driveth a great Trade for *Cloth* and other Manufactures. It is a very good Town, graced with *Stone-built Houses*, and well-ordered and paved *Streets*, and hath a considerable Market for Corn and Provisions on *Thursdays*. *Halifax.*

Sheafield, seated on the *Don* or *Dune*; a place of chief note for the great quantity of *Smiths* there inhabiting (by reason of the many *Iron-Mines* in these parts) who drive a good Trade for all sorts of *Edge-Tools*, and other things of *Iron*, especially *Knives*, which bear the name of *Sheafield-Blades*. The Town is large, its Houses built of *Stone*, and hath a great Market on *Tuesdays* for several Commodities, especially *Corn*, which is much bought up for the supply of some parts of *Darbyshire*, *Nottinghamshire*, and the West of *Yorkshire*. *Sheafield.*

Rotheram, seated on the *Don*, over which it hath a fine *Stone-bridge*; a well built Town, with *Stone-houses*, and hath a very great Market for Cattle and Provisions on *Mondays*. *Rotheram.*

Tickhill, yet retaineth something of its ancient *Castle* and *Fortifications*, demolished in the late Wars. It hath a distinct Liberty, called the *Honour of Tickhill*, being part of the Dutchy of *Lancaster*, and hath a Market on *Saturdays*. *Tickhill.*

Doncaster, seated on the *Done*, and on the great Road to *London*; an ancient Town, of good Antiquity, once defended by a *Castle*, now reduced to ruins; and in *Anno* 759 this Town suffered much, great part (with its *Cittadel*) being consumed with Fire; but was rebuilt with a fair *Church*, erected in the place where the *Cittadel* stood. It is a large, well-built and inhabited *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, enjoyeth a good Trade, especially for *Stockings*, *Knit-Waistcoats*, *Petticoats*, and *Gloves*, and hath a very good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Provisions*, on *Saturdays*. *Doncaster.*

Selby, honoured in giving birth to King *Henry* the First, seated on the *Owse*, which gives passage for small Vessels to *York*, which doth occasion it to be a Town of some Trade, and hath a good Market for Provisions and Merchandize on *Mondays*. *Selby.*

Ponfract, very delightfully seated in a dry tract of ground; a neat *Town Corporate*, beautified with good Buildings, was once strengthned with a strong and stately *Castle*, which was demolished in the late Wars. It is governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, sends *Burgesses* to Parliament, and hath a very great Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Provisions*, and divers Country-commodities, on *Saturdays*. *Ponfract.*

Wakefield, seated in a large *Lordship* so called, having its Steward. It is a large Town, of good antiquity, beautified with well built *Stone-houses*; it is a place well known for its *Clothing* here made, and hath a great Market on *Thursdays* and *Fridays* for *Cloth*, *Corn*, *Provisions*, and divers Country-commodities. *Wakefield.*

Leeds, seated on the *Are*; an ancient Town, where the Kings had formerly their *Royal Palace*; and here *Oswy*, King of the *Northumbers*, put to flight *Penda* the *Mercian*. It is a large and well built *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, with sub-Officers, electeth *Parliament men*, is very well inhabited, especially by wealthy *Clothiers*, who drive a great Trade for their Cloth; and hath two considerable Markets, on *Tuesdays* and *Saturdays*, which are well traded unto for *Corn*, *Provisions*, *Woollen-Cloth*, and divers good Commodities. *Leds.*

Knaresbrough. *Knaresbrough*, delightfully ſeated on the *Nid*, and on a ragged rough Rock, on which is ſeated a Caſtle. It is a well-built *Town Corporate*, electing *Parliament men*, and hath a good Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Wedneſdays*.

Nigh unto this place, in a Mooriſh boggy-ground, ariſeth a Spring of *Vitriol-line* taſt and odour; and not far off is alſo a *Sulphur-Well*, which is good for ſeveral Diſeaſes; here is alſo a droping *petrefying-Well*, which turns, *Wood*, *Moſs*, &c. into *Stone*.

Rippon. *Rippon*, ſeated between the *Yore* and a Branch thereof, over which are two Bridges. It is a place of good antiquity, and of much fame for its *Religious Houſes*, but eſpecially for its ſtately Monaſtery, built by *Wilfrid* Archbiſhop of *York*. It is at preſent a large and well-built *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major* and *Aldermen*, hath the election of *Parliament men*; the Town is well inhabited by Gentry, and its Market, which is on *Thurſdays*, is very great for *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Proviſions*, and chiefly for *Wool*, which is much bought up by the Cloathiers of *Leeds*. This Town is beautified with a very fine *Cathedral Church* with a lofty Spire-Steeple; and in this Church was *St. Winfrids Needle*, a place famous in our Fore-fathers days, being a narrow Hole in the cloſe Vaulted-room under ground; in which place (as 'tis reported, but not Recorded for Truth) *Womens* Honeſty was uſed to be tried; for, according to the ſtory, thoſe that were Chaſt could eaſily paſs through, but the kind-hearted Souls were (by an unknown means) held faſt, and could not paſs through.

WALES.

WALES.

THE Iſland of great *Britain*, in ancient time, was ſevered into three Parts; the firſt, faireſt, and greateſt, contained all within the *French Seas*, the Rivers of *Severn*, *Dee*, and *Humber*, and was called *Lhoyger*, which name in *Welſh* it ſtill retaineth; and in *Engliſh*, *England*. The ſecond took up all the Land Northwards, from the *Humber* to the *Orkney* Iſles, and was called *Mare Caledonium*, or *Deucaledonium*, and now *Scotland*: And the third lying between the *Iriſh Seas*, the Rivers of *Severn* and *Dee*, was anciently called *Cambria*, and now *Wales*; to which the *Britains* being outed of their Country, were forced to retire, and there fortified themſelves.

The Bounds. This Country of *Wales* is bounded on all ſides by the *Sea*, except towards *England*, from which it is ſevered by the River *Dee*, and a Line drawn to the River *Wye*; but anciently it was extended to the River *Severn* Eaſtward, for *Offa* King of the *Mercians* forced them to quit the Plain Countries beyond that River (which now is called the *Marches* of *Wales*,) and to betake themſelves to the *Mountains*, which he cauſed to be ſeparated from *England* by a great Ditch, called *Offa's Dike*; in *Welſh*, *Claudh Offa*; in many places yet to be ſeen; which *Dike* beginneth at the influx of the *Wye* into the *Severn*, and reacheth unto *Cheſter*, which is about 84 miles, where the *Dee* disburthens it ſelf into the *Sea*. And over this *Dike* (by a Law made by *Harald*) no *Welſhman* was permitted to paſs with a Weapon, upon pain of loſing his Right hand.

Very Mountainous and Barren. The whole Country is *Mountainous* and *Barren*, yet affordeth ſeveral good Commodities, and is not without many fertil Valleys, which bear good *Corn*, and breed great abundance of ſmall *Cattle*, with which they furniſh *England*, as alſo with *Butter*, *Cheeſe*, *Woollen-Cloths*, called *Welſh-Frizes*, *Cottons*, *Bays*, *Herrings*, both White and Red, *Calve-skins*, *Hides*, *Hony*, *Wax*, *&c.* and the Country is well ſtored with Quarries of *Free-ſtone* for building, and *Mill-ſtones*; as alſo hath Mines of *Lead*, *Lead-Oar*, *Coals*, and ſome of *Silver* and *Tin*. And theſe Commodities are generally brought to *Shrewsbury*, *Oſweſtre*, *Briſtol*, *Worceſter*, and other adjacent parts, and thence diſperſed into *England*.

Its Ancient diviſion. About the year of Chriſt 870, *Rodericus Magnus*, King of *Wales*, divided this Country into three *Regions*, *Territories*, or *Talaiths*, which were ſo many Kingdoms, to wit, *Gwineth*, *Venedotia*, or *North-Wales*; and this part he gave to *Anarawd*, his eldeſt Son; *Dehenbarth*, or *South-Wales*, which he gave to *Cadelh*, his ſecond Son; and *Powis*, or *Powis-Land*, which he gave to *Mervin*, his third Son: and in each of theſe three Kingdoms he appointed a *Royal Palace*, as at *Aberffraw*, in the Iſle of *Angleſey*, for *North-Wales*; at *Dyneſar*, or *Dynevowr-Caſtle*, not far from *Carmarthen*, for *South-Wales*; and at *Matravan*, in *Montgomery-ſhire*, for *Powis-Land*.

Preſent diviſion. But at preſent, according to Act of Parliament, made in the Reign of King *Henry* the Eighth, it is ſevered into two Parts, to wit, *North-Wales* and *South-Wales*, both which have as it were devoured all *Powis-Land*; and in each of theſe parts there are 6 Counties; in the North, thoſe of *Angleſey*, *Caernarvon*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Merioneth*, and *Montgomery*; and in the South, thoſe of *Brecknock*, *Cardigan*, *Carmarden*, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, and *Radnor*.

Again, *Wales* (like unto *England*) is divided into four Circuits for the Administration of Justice; and then the first shall contain the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; the second, those of *Brecknock*, *Glamorgan*, and *Radnor*; the third, those of *Cardigan*, *Carmarden*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth, those of *Angleſey*, *Caernarvon*, and *Merioneth*.

But to proceed to the deſcription of theſe Counties, and firſt of *North-Wales*.

NORTH-WALES.

Iſle of *Angleſey*.

THe Iſland of *ANGLESET* is ſevered from *Caernarvon-ſhire* by a narrow Streight of the River *Menai*, and on all other parts it is waſhed with the *Iriſh Seas*. It was the ancient Seat of the *Druids*, and brought with no ſmall difficulty under the *Roman Scepter* by *Julius Agricola*. It is ſo fertil, and abounding in all things, as *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*, that the *Welſh* term it the *Mother of Wales*, ſupplying its defects; although for ſight it ſeemeth dry, ſtony, and hilly. It produceth a ſort of Stones called *Molares*, very fit and good for *Mill-ſtones*, and *Grind-ſtones*.

In this Iſle were formerly ſeated 360 *Towns* and *Villages*, but at preſent but 74, and hath intercourſe of Traffick with two *Market Towns*, and hath ſeveral good *Ports* and *Harbours*, as alſo divers *Ferries*, for the conveyance of Paſſengers to and fro. Its chief places are,

Beau-Moriſh.

Beau-Moriſh, ſeated on a Mooriſh-ground, but commandeth a fair proſpect into the *Sea*, where it hath a very good Harbour for *Ships*. It was built by King *Edward* the Firſt, the better to ſecure his Conqueſt, who fortified it with a powerful *Caſtle*, now in good repair. It is a pretty good handſom *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Major*, *Recorder*, 2 *Bailiffs*, who are *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, and 21 *Common Council*, called *Burgeſſes*. It is the chief *Shire-Town*, where the *Aſſizes* and *Seſſions* are held, ſends a *Burgeſs* to Parliament, is indifferently well inhabited and frequented, as being the uſual place for the reception of Paſſengers from *London* to *Ireland*, before their taking Shipping at *Holyhead*. It hath weekly two Markets, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are indifferent good.

Newburgh.

Newburgh, ſeated near *Brant* River, where it formeth a *Bay*, and falleth into *Menai* River; a ſmall *Borough Town*, governed by a *Major*, 2 *Bailiffs*, and a *Recorder*, and hath a Market on *Tueſdays*.

County of *Caernarvon* deſcribed.

The County of *CAERNARVON*, before *Wales* was divided into *Shires*, bore the name of *Snowden-Foreſt* from the principal Hill therein ſeated, which is of a very great height and extent, and affordeth excellent ſweet *Mutton*; on the top of this Hill floateth a *Meer*, and maketh a River, and falleth into the *Sea* at *Traithe-Mawr*. It is a County of a ſharp Air, very Mountainous; yet not unfertil, and feedeth good Herds of Cattle.

In this County are ſeated 68 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath ſix *Market Towns*:.

Caernarvon.

Caernarvon, commodiouſly ſeated on the *Sea-ſhoar*, where it hath an excellent proſpect into the Iſle of *Angleſey*. It was a place of good account, where the Princes of *Wales* had their *Exchequer* and *Chancery* for *North-Wales*; and is a place of great ſtrength as well by Nature as Art, being encompaſſed on all parts (except towards the Eaſt) with the *Sea* and two *Rivers*, and had a ſtrong *Caſtle*, where, in a *Tower* thereof called *Eagle-Tower*, *Edward* the Second, the firſt Prince of *Wales* was born. It is a place of no great extent, having but one *Pariſh Church*; its Houſes and Streets are well built and ordered, is well inhabited, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſends a *Burgeſs* to Parliament, is governed by the *Conſtable* of the *Caſtle*, who is ever *Major*, and hath for his aſſiſtance an *Alderman*, 2 *Bailiffs*, a *Town-Clerk*, with Sub-Officers; and its Market on *Saturdays*, is very good for Corn and Proviſions.

Bangor,

Bangor, lowly ſeated on the *Sea-ſhoar*; a Town in Ancient time ſo large, that it was called *Bangor the Great*, and was defended by a powerful *Caſtle*, which long ſince was laid level to the ground. It is at preſent but a ſmall City, or rather a Town, yet dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*; its *Cathedral* is large and well built, its Houſes indifferent good, is pretty well inhabited, is governed by the *Biſhops-Steward*, who keepeth *Court-Leets* and *Courts-Baron* for the *Biſhop*; and hath an indifferent good Market on *Wedneſdays*. Bangor.

Nigh unto *Bangor* is *Penmaen-maur*, that is, the *Great Stony-head*, being an exceeding high and ſteep Rock, which at High-Sea ſo hangeth over, that it affordeth a very narrow and dangerous paſſage; but having paſſed this, and *Penmaen-bychan*, that is, the *Leſſer Stony-head*, the Country openeth it ſelf in a broad Plain as far as the River *Conwey*. Penmaen-maur.

Aberconwey, ſeated at the Mouth of the *Conwey*, raiſed out of the Ruins of the ancient *Canonium* of *Antonine*, being ſtrongly fenced both with *Walls* and a *Caſtle*. It is a pretty good Town, governed by an *Alderman* and 2 *Bailiffs*, which for largeneſs and good Buildings, doth rather deſerve the name of a City than a Town, eſpecially were it thicker inhabited, and better reſorted unto; yet its Market, which is on *Fridays*, is well ſerved with Proviſions and ſeveral Country-commodities. Aberconwey.

Pulhely, ſeated on the *Sea-ſhoar*, and between two *Rivers*; a pretty large and indifferent well-built *Bailiwick Town*, which hath a good Market on *Wedneſdays* for Corn and Proviſions, and enjoyeth a good Trade by *Sea*. Pulhely.

DENBIGH-SHIRE, a Country very Hilly, ſeveral of which are of ſo great a height, that they retain *Snow*, and the tops thereof in the *Summer* ſeaſon are the Country-mans *Morning-Almanack*, to denote a fair day by the riſing of certain Vapours. County of Denbigh deſcribed.

It is of a different Soil; the Weſtern part being *Heathy*, is much inclined to ſterility, and but thinly inhabited, except the part which lieth towards the *Sea*; the Eaſtern (beyond the Valley) is much more barren; and the middle, where it lieth flat, is a pleaſant and fertil Vale, and well inhabited with *Gentry*.

Here are ſeated 57 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by four *Market Towns*.

Denbigh, ſeated on the hanging of a Rocky-Hill, and on a branch of the *Cluyd*; once a place of good ſtrength, when fortified with a ſtrong Wall, and an impregnable Caſtle. The Town is indifferent large, well built, inhabited by *Glovers* and *Tanners*, enjoyeth a good Trade, by ſome eſteemed the beſt Town in *North-Wales*; is governed by 2 *Aldermen*, 2 *Bailiffs*, and 25 *Capital Burgeſſes*, with ſub-Officers; electeth a *Parliament man*, and hath a good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*, on *Wedneſdays*. Denbigh.

Ruthin, ſeated on the *Cluyd*, which waſheth a rich Vale, of note for its once large and fair *Caſtle*. It is a large, well inhabited and frequented *Town Corporate*, governed by 2 *Aldermen* and *Burgeſſes*, hath a large *Hoſpital*, and a *Free School*, governed by a *Warden*; and hath a very conſiderable Market for Corn and Proviſions on *Mondays*, which is eſteemed the beſt in the Vale. Ruthin.

Wrexham, ſeated in a good Soil, affordeth plenty of *Lead*, and on a ſmall River which falleth into the *Dee*. It is an indifferent large, well-built and inhabited Town, graced with a fair *Church*, whoſe *Steeple* is not inferiour to any in *England*; and hath two Markets weekly, *viz.* on *Mondays*, which is but ſmall, and on *Thurſdays*, which is very great for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*. Wrexham.

In this County is *Llanſainan*, ſeated on the River *Aled*; a ſmall Town, but of note for its Cave made in the ſide of a *Rock* or *Stony-hill*, wherein are 24 *Seats*, ſome bigger and ſome leſſer, known by the name of *Arthur's Round-Table*; a place much frequented by *Shepheards* and *Heardſmen*. Llanſainan.

The

Flintſhire deſcribed.

The County of *FLINT* is not over Mountainous; and thoſe that are being interlaced with fertil Valleys, affordeth plenty of Corn and Paſturage; it hath great abundance of *Hony*, but is very defective of *Wood* and *Fruits*. It is indifferently well watered, hath ſeveral ſafe Harbours for *Ships* to Ride and Anchor in; and this part of the County hath plenty of Mines of *Pit-Coal*, and the adjacent Mountains have ſtore of *Lead-Oar*.

St. Winfrids-Well.

This Shire is famous for *St. Winfrids-Well*, not far from *Cajervis*, in *Engliſh*, *Holy-Well*; a place of great note, and much reſorted unto, as well by thoſe to Bath in, as being eſteemed very good for ſeveral Diſeaſes; as by *Pilgrims*, out of their devotion in memory of that Chriſtian Virgin *Winfrid*, who was there raviſhed by a young *Lord* or *Prince* of the Country, and to ſtop her Acclamations, cruelly ſlew her and cut off her Head; out of which place (according to Report) did immediately guſh forth a *Spring*, which is of ſo rapid a Stream, that at a ſmall diſtance it is able to drive a Mill. Over the Head of this *Spring* or *Well* there now ſtandeth a *Chapel* built of *Free-ſtone*, of curious workmanſhip; and in the *Chancel*, on the *Glaſs-window* is lively pourtraied the Hiſtory of *St. Winfrid*; of her life, and how her Head was cut off, and ſet on again by St. *Beuno*. In the Well there groweth *Moſs*, of a moſt ſweet and pleaſant ſmell, which is ſaid to be *St. Winfrids-hair*.

Here are ſeated 28 *Pariſhes*, and hath two *Market Towns*.

Flint.

Flint, well ſeated on the *Dee*, of chief note for its now old and ruinous *Caſtle*; and although the *Shire-Town* is but ſmall, and hath no Market; but as a *Borough-Town*, electeth *Parliament man*.

St. Aſaph.

St. Aſaph, ſeated on the *Elwy*, where it receiveth the *Cluyd*, over each of which there is a Bridge; a place of more fame for its antiquity, than largeneſs or beauty, being an ancient *Epiſcopal See*, founded by *Kentigerne*, a *Scot*, Biſhop of *Glaſco*, in *Anno* 560, of which about 300 that were unlearned, employed their times in Husbandry within the limits of the ſaid *Monaſtery*, and the reſt to a Holy life. By this it may be judged their Bounds were exceeding large; and upon his return into *Scotland*, he ordained *Aſaph* (a godly man) to be his Succeſſor, from whom the Town or City took its name, which at preſent is not large, nor its Buildings very good, chiefly glorying in its *Cathedral*. It hath a ſmall Market on *Saturdays*.

County of *Merioneth* deſcribed.

The County of *MERIONETH* is exceeding Mountainous and Rocky, very unpleaſant, and for the generality much inclined to ſterility, bearing but thin Crops of *Corn*; yet is found to feed good flocks of *Sheep*, and Herds of *Cattle*, from which the Inhabitants draw their chief Maintenance. It is obſerved, that theſe Mountains are of ſo great an height, that in many places two men may ſtand and diſcourſe together, each upon a ſeveral Mountain, but muſt travel ſome miles before they can come to meet. It is well watered with *Rivers*, and is well provided with red *Deer*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*; and as this County is thus Mountainous and barren, ſo is it as thinly inhabited, numbring but 37 *Pariſhes*, and thoſe but ordinary, and hath but three *Market Towns*.

Harlech.

Harlech, ſeated on a Rock on the *Sea-ſhoar*; a ſmall *Borough Town*, which is but thinly inhabited, nor its Houſes over well built, although the chief of the County. It is governed by a *Major* for its chief Magiſtrate, ſends a *Burgeſs* to Parliament, and hath a mean Market. This Town was once of a greater account for its ſtrong and beautiful *Caſtle*, highly ſeated, commanding both Sea and Country adjoyning; but was reduced to Ruins in the late unhappy Wars by the *Parliamenteers*, this being a Garriſon of the Kings.

Bala.

Bala, ſeated near *Pimble-Meer*, which is of a large extent, through which the *Dee* is ſaid to run, but not to mingle with its water, which is proved for that the *Salmons*, plentifully taken in the *Dee*, are not found in this *Meer*; and likewiſe the Fiſh called *Gwyniaid*, much like unto *Whitings*, which is in as great plenty taken in this *Meer*, are never found in the *Dee*. This Town is Incorporated, enjoyeth ſome Immunities, is governed by *Bailiffs*, hath an indifferent Market on *Saturdays*; but the Town is mean and ſmall.

MONI-

MONTGOMERY-SHIRE, very Hilly and Mountainous, but interlaced with fertil Valleys both for Tillage and Pasturage, and was in ancient time of note for its good breed of *Horses*. County of *Montgomery* described.

Here are seated 47 *Parish Churches*, and is traded unto by 6 *Market Towns*.

Montgomery, the Shire-Town, so called from *Roger de Montgomery*, Earl of *Shrewsbury*, the first builder thereof. It is well seated amongst rich grounds, and on an easie Ascent of a Hill; a place once fortified with a powerful *Castle*, and fenced about with a *Wall*, which was dismantled in the late Wars. It is an indifferent large *Town Corporate*, governed by *Bailiffs*, sends a *Burgess* to Parliament, and its Market, which is on *Thursdays*, is well resorted unto, and hath a good Shambles. *Montgomery.*

Welch-Pool, seated on the *Severn*, and in a rich Vale; the greatest and best built *Town Corporate* in the County, governed by *Bailiffs*, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a very good Trade for *English* Commodities from *Bristol*, and its Market on *Mondays* is very considerable for *Cattle*, *Provisions*, and *Flannels*. Its Castle, called *Powis-Castle* (which within the compass of its Wall containeth two Castles,) is of late a large and stately Pile of Building. *Welch-Pool.*

Llanvilling, scituate in a Flat amongst the Hills, and between the *Cain* and the *Ebir*; it is a good Town, and hath a considerable Market for *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Wool*, and *Provisions*, on *Thursdays*. *Llanvilling.*

Within three miles of this Town is *Matravan-Castle*, sometimes the Royal Seat of the Princes of *Powis-Land*.

SOUTH-WALES.

PEMBROKE-SHIRE, called in *Welsh*, *Brechinean*, is said to take its name from one *Brechanius* a Prince, who had a great Off-spring of 24 *Daughters*, and all Saints. It is a County for the generality very Mountainous, some of which are exceeding high, especially *Monuchdenny-Hill*, not far from *Brecknock*, which exalteth it self above the Clouds; and although thus Hilly, yet is not without many large and fertil Plains and Valleys, both for *Corn* and feeding of *Cattle*; and the more by reason of the Rivers, *Uske* and *Wye*, which receive those many Streams that so plentifully water the County, and afford to the Inhabitants great abundance of Fish, especially *Salmon* and *Trouts*, in the *Wye*. County of *Pembroke* described.

Here are seated 61 *Parish Churches*, and 4 *Market Towns*.

Brecknock, seated at the meeting of the Rivers *Hodney* and *Uske*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*. It is a place of good antiquity, and at present a very large *Bailiwick Town*, containing 3 *Parish Churches*, one of which is a *Collegiate Church*; its Houses are well built, was once strengthned with a stately *Castle*, as also with a strong *Wall*, which gave entrance by 3 *Gates*. It is governed by 2 *Bailiffs*, 15 *Aldermen*, 2 *Chamberlains*, a *Town Clerk*, &c. amongst its Immunities sends a *Burgess* to Parliament; is a place well inhabited, and the rather as being the Shire-Town where the *Assizes* are held. It enjoyeth a good Trade for *Clothing*, and hath weekly two Markets, on *Wednesdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very well served with *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Provisions*. *Brecknock.*

About two miles from this Town is a large *Meer* or *Pool* some miles in compass, called *Brecknock-Meer*, where in former times stood a fair City, which was swallowed up by an *Earthquake*.

Hay, seated between the *Wye* and the *Dulas*; a Town of good note in the time of the *Romans*, being then fortified with a Castle and a Wall. It is at present a good Town, and hath a very great Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Provisions*, on *Mondays*. *Hay.*

Bealt, pleasantly seated amongst the Woods, and on the Banks of the *Wye*, over which it hath a very large *Wooden-Bridge*, which leads into *Radnorshire*; at present a pretty small Town, enjoying a considerable Trade for *Stockings*, and *Bealt.*

and hath weekly two very good Markets, on *Mondays* for Cattle, and on *Saturdays* for Corn and Proviſions.

County of *Cardigan.* *CARDIGAN*, a County of a different Soil, and ill clothed with Wood; the Southern and Weſtern parts being plain and very fertil (yet not without ſome Hills,) and its Eaſtern and Northern parts are Mountainous, and not ſo fertil, amongſt which is the *Plinillimon-Hill*, a Mountain of a very great extent and height.

Here are numbred 64 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath 4 *Market Towns*.

Cardigan. *Cardigan*, formerly ſtrengthned with a Wall, and a fair and ſpacious Caſtle, built on the ſide of the *Tywye* upon a Rock, long ſince brought to ruin. It is a Town no leſs pleaſantly than commodiouſly ſeated on the ſaid River *Tywye*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, ſuſtained by ſeveral Arches, and is of no great diſtance from its influx into the *Sea*; and being the Shire-Town where the *Aſſizes* are held, and the *County-Gaol* kept; is well inhabited and frequented, being a large Town, though containing but one *Church*, which is a fair Structure, and is graced with a well built *Shire-Hall*, with ſeveral good Buildings; and as a *Town Corporate*, is governed by a *Major*, *Aldermen*, *Common Council*, with ſub-Officers; enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, electeth a *Parliament man*, and hath an indifferent good Market on *Saturdays*.

Llanbeder. *Llanbeder*, ſeated on the *Tywye*, over which is a Bridge which leadeth into *Caermarden-ſhire*; an indifferent good Town, governed by a *Port-Reive* and *Steward*, and hath a Market on *Tueſdays*, which is well reſorted unto for Grain and Proviſions, and from the latter end of *April* to the beginning of *July*, is very great for *Sheep*, *Heifers*, *Cows* and *Calves*.

Aberyſtwy. *Aberyſtwy*, ſeated on a Riſing-ground, and on the Banks of the *Ridall*, near its influx into the Sea; a Town once ſtrengthned with a *Wall* and *Caſtle*, now ruinated. It is a long and ill-built Town, governed by a *Major*, with ſub-Officers, hath a very great Market for *Corn*, *Wool*, *Cheeſe*, and *Proviſions*, on *Mondays*, and is a place much reſorted unto by reaſon of its *Fiſhing-trade*, and would be more were its Inhabitants induſtrious.

Near unto this Town is *Lhan-Badernvaur*; a well-built Town, graced with a fair *Church*, which was formerly an *Epiſcopal See*, and is now the *Pariſh Church* of *Aberyſtwy*.

County of *Caermarden.* *CAERMARDEN-SHIRE* is generally of a fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, as not being ſo Mountainous as its Neighbouring Counties, and is well watered with Rivers, as the *Towye*, *Tavy*, *Lough*, or *Taff*, which (with others) diſcharge themſelves into the Sea, plentifully ſerving the Inhabitants with *Fiſh* and *Fowl*; and in many places are dug *Pit-Coal*.

Here are ſeated 87 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 8 *Market Towns*.

Caermarden. *Caermarden*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Towy*, over which it hath a fair *Stone-bridge*, and is navigable for ſmall Veſſels, having a good *Key* for the lading and unlading of their Merchandizes. It is a place well inhabited and traded unto, and as a *Town Corporate* is governed by a *Major*, 2 *Sheriffs*, elected out of 16 *Burgeſſes* or *Aldermen*, all clad in Scarlet, with other ſub-Officers. Amongſt its Immunities electeth a *Parliament man*, keepeth Courts for the trial of Cauſes, is the place where the *Aſſizes* are held, and hath weekly two Markets, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very great for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and Proviſions, both *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, and *Fowl*, in great plenty. This Town glorieth in giving birth to *Merlyn*, that famous *Britiſh* Prophet, or South-ſayer.

Llangharn. *Llancharn*, or *Llangharne*, ſeated on the *Towye*, near its influx into the *Sea*; a well-built Town, of ſome Trade, having ſeveral Veſſels belonging to it, and its Market, which is on *Fridays*, is very good for Corn and Proviſions.

Near unto this Town is a *Wich*, or *Salt-work*, where good quantity of *Salt* made.

Llanelly,

Llanelly, ſeated on a Creek of the Sea; a pretty good Town, which is well traded unto for *Sea-Coal*, and hath a Market on *Thurſdays*, of good account for all ſorts of *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Proviſions*. *Llanelly.*

Llandilovawre, ſeated on the *Towy*, over which it hath a fair Bridge; a pretty good Town, having two Markets weekly, on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, for *Cattle*, *Corn*, and *Proviſions*; and the Pariſh to which this Town belongeth is about 13 miles in length, and 7 or 8 in breadth. *Llandilovawre*

Llanymdofry, ſeated amongſt Rivers; a pretty fair *Bailiwick* and *Town Corporate*, and hath two very great Markets weekly, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, for Proviſions, and the greateſt in the County for *Cattle* and *Sheep*. *Llanymdofry.*

The County of *GLAMORGAN* is of a temperate and healthful Air, and of a different Soil and Scituation, the Northern parts being extreamly Mountainous, full of thick Woods, very barren, and thinly inhabited; yet are found to feed good Herds of Cattle, and to ſend forth ſeveral freſh Streams, the chief amongſt which are the *Tavye*, *Taff*, *Ogmore*, *Rumney*, *Elay*, *Nid* or *Neath*, &c. and the Southern part, which is waſhed by the *Severn Sea*, and receiveth the ſaid Rivers, is more upon a level, is very fertil both for *Corn* and feeding of great quantities of *Sheep* and *Cattle*, is well inhabited, and thick beſet with Towns and Houſes of the Gentry. County of *Glamorgan* deſcribed.

This County numbreth 118 *Pariſh Churches*, and hath the accommodation of 8 *Market Towns*.

Cardiff, the faireſt Town in all South *Wales*, well ſeated on the River *Tave*, or *Taff*, over which it hath a fair *Bridge*, to which Veſſels of ſmall burthen do come to lade or unlade their goods; and in a rich and fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage. It is a large and well built Town, with good ordered and clean Streets, containing within its Walls two Pariſhes, but hath but one Church; without the *Eaſt-Gate* is a large Suburb called *Crockerton*, without the *North-Gate* ſtands the *White-Friers*, and without the *Weſt-Gate* a ſmall Suburb adjoyning to the *Black-Friers*, and in this part is ſeated the *Caſtle*, which is a ſtrong, ſpacious, and ſtately Building. It is a *Town Corporate*, governed by a *Conſtable*, 12 *Aldermen*, as many Capital *Burgeſſes*, a *Steward*, *Town-Clerk*, with ſub-Officers, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, electeth a *Parliament man*, is the place where the Aſſizes are kept; is well frequented and traded unto, its Inhabitants having a great intercourſe of Traffick with *Briſtol*, and its Markets on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays* are very good, eſpecially that on *Saturdays*, which is the beſt in the County, and very conſiderable for *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Swine*, *Sheep*, and all ſorts of Proviſions in great plenty, and at eaſie rates. *Cardiff.*

Llandaff, a City ſeated on the *Taff*, but of a ſmall extent, ſcarce comparable to an indifferent Town, having not ſo much as a Market kept, which is occaſioned by its vicinity to *Cardiff*. Its *Cathedral* is a ſpacious and ſuperb Structure, and near adjoyning are the Ruins of an Old *Caſtle*, which was the ancient Palace of the Biſhops. *Llandaff.*

Neath, ſeated on a River ſo called, over which it hath a Bridge, to which ſmall Veſſels come for the lading of *Coals* here had in great plenty to the profit of its Inhabitants. It is a Town of great antiquity, and of a good extent, yet is it indifferent large, is governed by a *Port-Reve*, and hath a good Market for Proviſions. *Neath.*

Swanſey, commodiouſly ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, an ancient *Port-Reve Town*, which is large and well built, which for Riches and Trade is eſteemed the chief in the County, and that by reaſon of their *Coal-Pits*, and the great induſtry of its Inhabitants. It hath weekly two Markets, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very well frequented and traded unto, affording great plenty of Commodities and Proviſions. *Swanſey.*

County of Pembroke described.

PEMBROKE-SHIRE, is of fertil Soil both for Tillage and Paſturage, is well ſtored with Cattle, and repleniſhed with Rivers, which (with the Sea) plentifully ſerveth the Inhabitants with *Fiſh* and *Fowl*, and in the bowels of the Earth are plenty of *Pit-Coal*.

It is well inhabited and garniſhed with Towns, numbring 145 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto by 8 *Market Towns*.

Pembrook.

Pembrook, the chief Shire-Town, ſeated on the Eaſtern and innermoſt Creek of *Milford-Haven*, over which it hath two fair Bridges for the conveniency of paſſage. It is a place of good account, well frequented and inhabited by Gentlemen and Tradeſmen, is much reſorted unto by Shipping, by reaſon of which they have a *Cuſtom-houſe*. It is a place of good ſtrength, being fortified with a Wall, on which are ſeveral Towers, having three Gates for entrance, and alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on a Rock. It is a large *Town Corporate* containing two *Pariſh Churches*, is graced with well built Houſes, is governed by a *Major*, with other ſub-Officers, enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, ſendeth a *Burgeſs* to Parliament; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very good, and well ſerved with Proviſions, &c.

Milford-Haven.

This *Milford-Haven* is eſteemed the beſt in all *England*, not only for its largeneſs, being capacious enough to give entertainment to about 1000 Sail of *Ships* at one time, and to ride ſecure at a good diſtance one from the other; but alſo for its variety of deep and ſafe Creeks and nooked Bays for *Ships* to harbour in, having within it 13 *Roads*, 16 *Creeks*, and 5 *Bays*, all which are known by their ſeveral names.

St. Davids.

St. Davids, ſeated within a mile of the Sea in a barren Soil, and very deſtitute of Wood. It was once a City of good account, but at preſent is very ſmall, but thinly inhabited, and its Market diſuſed; yet is it the See of a *Biſhop*, and its *Cathedral* kept in good order, but the *Biſhops Palace* is much ruinated.

Near unto St. *Davids* is a Promontory called *St. Davids Land* or *Head*, from whence in a clear day *Ireland* may be ſeen; and on the Rocks in theſe parts the *Falcons* have their *Airies* and breed. Alſo here is *Whiteſand-Bay*, and at the extream point of the Promontory *Ramſey Iſle* ſheweth it ſelf, nigh to which are ſeveral ſmall ones, which together bear the name of the *Biſhop* and his *Clerks*.

Haverford-weſt.

Haverford-Weſt, a Town and County of it ſelf, commodiouſly ſeated on the ſide of a Hill, and on a Creek of *Milford-Haven*, over which it hath a good *Stone-Bridge* which leadeth to *Prendergaſt*, where there is a Church. It is a very large and fair *Town Corporate*, containing three *Pariſh Churches*, is beautified with good Houſes, is well inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, having ſeveral Veſſels belonging to the Town; is the place where the *Aſſizes* are held, and the *County Gaol* kept, and hath weekly two Markets on *Tueſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very great for Cattle and Proviſions. It is governed by a *Major*, a *Sheriff*, and *Common Council*, with *Juſtices* of the *Peace*; it enjoyeth ſeveral Immunities, keeping Courts, and ſending a *Burgeſs* to Parliament; and near to this Town divers Gentlemen have their Seats.

Tenby.

Tenby, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, where it hath a commodious *Haven* or *Road* for Ships, being formerly much frequented, eſpecially by *Fiſhermen*, having a good *Key*, enjoyeth a conſiderable Trade, and its Inhabitants were wealthy; but the Spoils it ſuffered in the late Wars hath much impoveriſhed it, notwithſtanding it keeps its two Markets weekly, on *Wedneſdays* and *Saturdays*, which are very well reſorted unto for *Corn*, *Proviſions*, and *Fiſh*.

Newport.

Newport, ſeated near the Sea-ſhoar, and on the foot of a high Hill; a large, but ill built and inhabited Town, governed by a *Port-Reeve* and a *Bailiff*, and hath a good Market for *Corn*, *Cattle*, and *Proviſions*; and here is a *Wear* for Fiſhing.

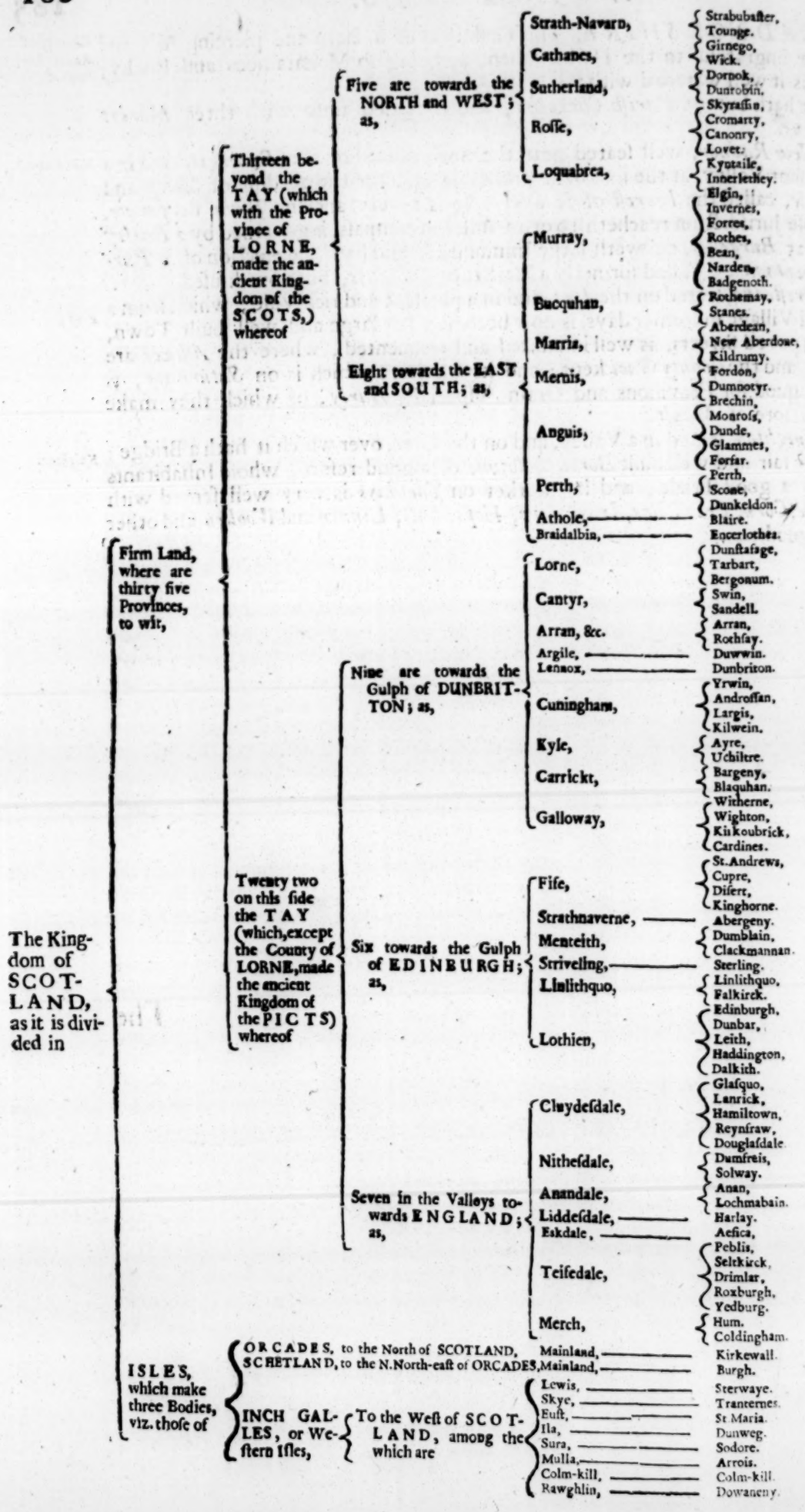
RADNOR-SHIRE. This County is of a ſharp and piercing Air, and very ungrateful to the Husbandman, as being ſo Mountainous and Rocky; yet is it well watered with Rivers. County of *Radnor* deſcribed.

It hath but 52 *Pariſh Churches*, and is traded unto with three *Market Towns*.

New Radnor, well ſeated near the Spring-head of the *Somergil*, and in a pleaſant Valley, at the foot of a profitable Hill for the feeding of *Sheep* and *Cattle*, called the *Forreſt* of *Radnor*. It is a very ancient *Town Corporate*, whoſe Juriſdiction reacheth 10 or 12 miles in compaſs, is governed by a *Bailiff* and 25 *Burgeſſes*, enjoyeth large Immunities, and hath the election of a *Parliament man*. It had formerly a Market on *Tueſdays*, but now diſuſed. *New Radnor.*

Preſtaine, ſeated on the *Lug*, and in a pleaſant and rich Vale, which from a ſmall Village in former days, is now become a fair large and well built Town, with paved Streets, is well inhabited and frequented, where the *Aſſizes* are held, and the *County Gaol* kept; and its Market, which is on *Saturdays*, is very good for Proviſions and Grain, eſpecially *Barly*, of which they make good ſtore of *Mault*. *Preſtaine.*

Knighton, ſeated in a Valley, and on the *Teme*, over which it hath a Bridge; a very fair and well built *Borough Town*, of a good reſort, whoſe Inhabitants enjoy a good Trade, and its Market on *Tueſdays* is very well ſerved with *Cattle*, *Corn*, *Proviſions*, *Iron-ware*, *Hops*, *Salt*, *Linnen* and *Woollen*, and other Commodities. *Knighton.*


The Kingdom of SCOTLAND, as it is divided in
Firm Land, where are thirty five Provinces, to wit,
Thirteen beyond the TAY (which with the Province of LORNE, made the ancient Kingdom of the SCOTS,) whereof
Five are towards the NORTH and WEST; as,
Strath-Navarn, Strabubaſter, Tounge.
Cathanes, Girnego, Wick.
Sutherland, Dornok, Dunrobin.
Roſſe, Skyraſſin, Cromarty, Canonry, Lovet.
Loquabrea, Kyntaile, Innerlethey.
Eight towards the EAST and SOUTH; as,
Murray, Elgin, Invernes, Forres, Rothes, Bean, Narden, Badgenoth.
Bucquhan, Rothemay, Stanes.
Marria, Aberdean, New Aberdone, Kildrumy.
Mernis, Fordon, Dumnotyr.
Anguis, Brechin, Monroſs, Dunde, Glammes, Forfar.
Perth, Perth, Scone, Dunkeldon.
Athole, Blaire.
Braidalbin, Encerlothea.
Twenty two on this ſide the TAY (which, except the County of LORNE, made the ancient Kingdom of the PICTS) whereof
Six towards the Gulph of EDINBURGH; as,
Lorne, Dunſtafage, Tarbart, Bergonum.
Cantyr, Swin, Sandell.
Arran, &c. Arran, Rothſay.
Argile, Duwrwin.
Nine are towards the Gulph of DUNBRITTON; as,
Lennox, Dunbriton.
Cuningham, Yrwin, Androſſan, Largis, Kilwein.
Kyle, Ayre, Uchiltre.
Carrickt, Bargeny, Blaquhan.
Galloway, Witherne, Wighton, Kirkoubrick, Cardines.
Fife, St. Andrews, Cupre, Diſert, Kinghorne.
Strathnaverne, Abergeny.
Menteith, Dumblain, Clackmannan.
Striveling, Sterling.
Linlithquo, Linlithquo, Falkirck.
Lothien, Edinburgh, Dunbar, Leith, Haddington, Dalkith.
Seven in the Valleys towards ENGLAND; as,
Clwydeſdale, Glaſquo, Lanrick, Hamiltown, Reynſraw, Douglaſdale.
Nitheſdale, Dumfreis, Solway.
Anandale, Anan, Lochmabain.
Liddeſdale, Harlay.
Eskdale, Aeſica.
Teiſedale, Peblis, Seltkirck, Drimlar, Roxburgh, Yedburg.
Merch, Hum. Coldingham.
ISLES, which make three Bodies, viz. thoſe of
ORCADES, to the North of SCOTLAND, Mainland, Kirkewall.
SCHETLAND, to the N. North-eaſt of ORCADES, Mainland, Burgh.
INCH GALLES, or Weſtern Iſles,
To the Weſt of SCOTLAND, among the which are
Lewis, Sterwaye.
Skye, Tranternes.
Euſt, St Maria.
Ila, Dunweg.
Sura, Sodore.
Mulla, Arrois.
Colm-kill, Colm-kill.
Rawghlin, Downaney.

The

The Kingdom and Isle of IRELAND, hath formerly been divided into four Kingdoms, which are at this day as many Provinces, which are subdivided into Counties, and thus scituated, viz.

- Towards the NORTH, the Province of ULSTER; where are the Counties of
  - Dunagall, or Tyrconnell — Donegal, Derry, or London Derry, Calebeck, Tirconnel.
  - Upper Tyroen — Strebane.
  - Lower Tyroen — Dungannon.
  - Colrane — Colrane.
  - Antrim — Knoektergus, Antrim.
  - Downe — Downe, Newry, Strangford, Arglass.
  - Louth — Trodaugh, Dundalke, Carlingford, Ardeth.
  - Armagh — Armagh, Mountnorris.
  - Monaghan — Clogher, Churchland.
  - Cavan — Cavan, Kilmore.
  - Fermanagh — Baltarbet.
- Towards the SOUTH, the Province of MOUNSTER; where are the Counties of
  - Tipperary, or Holy-Cross — Cassile, Holy-Cross, Clomel, Caryck, Emeley.
  - Lymerick — Lymerick, Kilmalock.
  - Kerry — Dingle, Ardart, Trayley.
  - Desmond — Donekyran, Downbay.
  - Corke — Corke, Kinsale, Ross, Yoghall, Cloney.
  - Waterford — Waterford, Dungarvan, Ardmor, Lismore.
- Towards the WEST, the Province of CONNAUGHT; where are the Counties of
  - Majo — Killaloy, Refraine.
  - Slego — Slego, Dundroes, Dunbrayle.
  - Galloway — Galloway, Kilmaculo, Clonford, Kingstown.
  - Clare, or Twomond — Clare, Kylaloe, Kilferagog, Toam.
  - Rosecoman — Rosecoman, Atlon, Omacoghlan, Elphin.
  - Letrym — Letrym, Mewkerke, Achonry.
- Towards the EAST, the Province of LEINSTER; where are the Counties of
  - Dublin — Dublin, Newcastle, Houth, Malcheal, Wicklo, Glandelour, Malehid.
  - East Meath — Trim, Aboy, Slane, Galtre.
  - West Meath — Molingar, Delvin, Kelskery.
  - Longford — Longford, Ardragh.
  - Kildare — Kildare, Mainoth, Athie, Carbre.
  - Kings County — Philipstown, Lee.
  - Queens County — Queenstown, Rheban.
  - Caterlough — Caterlaugh, Carickbrak, Areklo.
  - Wexford — Wexford, Ross, Ternes, Enifcort.
  - Kilkenny — Kilkenny, Thomas Town, Callan.

SCOT-

SCOTLAND.

Its ſcituation.

THE Kingdom of *SCOTLAND* maketh the Northern part of *Great Britain*, and is divided from *England* by the Rivers *Tweed* and *Solway*, together with the *Cheviot-Hills*. A Country formerly inhabited by the *Picts*, who were divided into two Nations, *viz.* the *Dicalidonii* and the *Vecturiones*; but when the *Scots* became the chief Rulers (as Mr. *Cambden* noteth) it was ſhared into ſeven Parts, and amongſt as many Princes. The firſt contained *Enegus* and and *Maern*; the ſecond, *Atheold* and *Goverin*; the third, *Stradeern*, with *Meneted*; the fourth, *Forthever*; the fifth, *Mar*, with *Buchen*; the ſixth, *Muref* and *Roß*; and the ſeventh, *Cathanes*, which *Mound* a Mountain in the midſt divideth, running on forward from the Weſt Sea to the Eaſt.

Ancient Inhabitants.

Ancient diviſion.

It was alſo (according to the relation of *Andrew* Biſhop of *Cathanes*) ſevered into ſeven Territories, which Mr. *Cambden* alſo taketh notice of, as followeth. The firſt, from *Frith* or *Scotwade* to the River *Tae*; the ſecond to *Hilef*, according as the Sea fetcheth a compaſs to the Mountain *Athran* in the North-eaſt part of *Strivelin*; the third, from *Hilef* to *Dee*; the fourth, from *Dee* to the River *Spe*; the fifth, from the *Spe* to the Mountain *Brunalban*; the ſixth, *Mures* and *Roß*; and the Seventh, the Kingdom of *Argathel*, which is the Border of the *Scots*.

Modern diviſion, and its Inhabitants.

But the Kingdom at preſent, according to the habitation of the People, may be divided into *Highland-men* and *Lowland-men*; or into the Northern and Southern parts. The People of the former live either on the Weſtern Coaſt, and are very rude, having much of the nature, diſpoſition, ſpeech, and habit of the *Tories* or *wild Iriſh*, or in the out Iſles, and are utterly Barbarous. The *Lowlanders*, as bordering on *England*, have much of the diſpoſition, civility, language, and habit of the *Engliſh*, and are ſuppoſed to be deſcended from the *Saxons*; which is confirmed by the *Highlanders*, who are the true *Scoti*, and are ſuppoſed to deſcend from the *Scythians*, who with the *Getes* infeſting *Ireland*, left their Iſſue behind them.

Its extent.

This Kingdom is very ſpacious, extending it ſelf from North to South about 250 miles in length; and in breadth, where broadeſt, about 150; but contracting it ſelf narrower and narrower as it approaches its extream Northern limits, as doth appear by the Map.

Its name.

It is ſaid to have been called *Scotia* from *Scoti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a People of *Germany*, over whoſe Northern limits the name *Scythia* did extend; although there be many that will have it to be ſo called from *Scota*, Daughter to an *Egyptian Pharaoh*.

Its fertility and commodities.

Although this Kingdom is leſs fertil than *England*, and its Fruits not ſo plentiful, nor ſo pleaſing to the palate, (occaſioned through the coldneſs of the Clime,) yet is it found to have great plenty of Cattle, though but ſmall; and for *Fiſh* and *Fowl* an innumerable quantity, amongſt which is a Fowl called the *Soland-Geeſe*, which in many places are taken in very great plenty, and are found very profitable to the Inhabitants, not only for their Fleſh to eat, but for their Feathers and Oil. Their chief Commodities are *Courſe Cloths*, *Freezes*, *Lead-Oar*, *Feathers*, *Sea-Coal*, *Alum*, *Iron*, *Salt*, *Salt-Peter*, *Linnen-Cloth*, *Train-Oil*, *Hops*, *Wood*, *Alablaſter*, ſome *Hides* and *Tallow*, &c.

The

The Inhabitants (eſpecially thoſe Southernly) are of a good feature, ſtrong of body, very hardy, couragious, and fit for Martial affairs; and their *Nobility* and *Gentry*, which are of ſeveral degrees, as *Dukes*, *Marqueſſes*, *Earls*, *Viſcounts*, *Barons*, *Knights*, *Eſquires*, and *Gentlemen*, are generally very ingenuous, and accompliſhed men in all civil knowledge. Its Inhabitants.

This Kingdom, like unto *England*, conſiſteth of a *King*, *Nobility*, *Gentry*, and *Commons*; and theſe with the *Lords Spiritual*, aſſemble together in Parliament, as often as they are called together by Writ from the King: And by reaſon of his Majeſties reſidence in *England*, ſo that he is not here at their *Seſſions* of *Parliament*, he conſtituteth and ſendeth one to act as his *Vice-Roy*, who is commonly called *Lord Commiſſioner*; and ſuch at preſent is the Right Noble *John*, Duke of *Lotherdale*, &c. Nobility and Gentry of *Scotland*. Their Seſſions of Parliament.

Amongſt the things worthy of note in this Kingdom for Antiquity, famous was that Fortification drawn from *Abercorne* upon *Edenborough Frith* unto *Alcluyd*, now called *Dunbritton*, opening upon the Weſt Sea, where (as *Speed* noteth) *Julius Agricola* ſet the limits of the *Roman* Empire, paſt which, according to *Tacitus*, there were no other bounds of *Britain* to be ſought for. And here the ſecond Legion of *Auguſta*, and the twentieth of *Victrix*, built a part of the Wall; as alſo an ancient coped Monument of an high and round compaſs, which according to the opinions of ſome, was a Temple conſecrated to the God *Terminus*; but others there be that will have it to be a Trophy raiſed by *Carauſius*, who fortified this Wall with ſeven Caſtles. Things worthy of note.

Here began that Wood *Caledonia*, which name *Tacitus* attributeth to all that Tract of ground which lieth Northward beyond *Grahames Dike*, or the *Wall* of *Antonius Pius*, which *Ptolomy* divideth into ſeveral Nations, as the *Caledonii*, *Vacomagi*, *Epidii*, &c. who are all known to the *Romans* by the general name of the *Picts*, from their painting themſelves. This *Wood* or *Forreſt* was very ſpacious, and over-ſhadowed with Thickets and tall over-ſpreading Trees, which rendred it impaſſable, and was divided by *Grampe-Hill*, now called *Grantzbain*, that is, the crooked bending Mountain. *Solinus* is of opinion that *Ulyſſes* was in *Caledonia*, and to confirm his belief therein, he ſaith, there was a *Votive Altar* with an Inſcription in Greek Letters. *Plutarch* ſaith, that *Bears* were brought out of *Britain* to *Rome*; but for more truth it may be ſaid, that here were bred the wild *white Bulls*, a Beaſt of nature fierce and cruel, whoſe thick and curled manes reſembled the *Lions*. In the days of *Severus Argetecox*, a petty Prince reigned over this Tract of Ground, whoſe Wife being reproachfully called by *Julia* the Empreſs, an *Adultereſs*, boldly made this Anſwer, *We* Britiſh *Dames have to do with the beſt of men, but you* Roman *Ladies ſecretly commit the ſame with every baſe and lewd Companion*. *Caledonian* Wood. *Cambden*, p. 32.

In this Kingdom are two famous Loughs, *Neſſa* and *Lomund*, the former never Friezeth though in the extreameſt cold weather; and the waters of the latter, moſt raging in the calmeſt and faireſt weather; and herein is an Iſland, that the Wind forceth or moveth to and fro. Two famous Loughs.

In the Rivers *Dee* and *Done*, beſides the great abundance of *Salmons*, is taken a *Shell-fiſh*, called the *Horſe-muskle*, wherein *Pearls* are engendred, which are very good in many *Phyſical Medicines*, and ſome of them not much inferiour to the *Oriental Pearl*.

As to their Courts of *Judicature* they are peculiar to themſelves, and are ſeveral. The chief amongſt which is the *High Court* of *Parliament*, conſiſting of *Lords* and *Commons*, hath the ſame Authority as that of *England*, and is alſo ſummoned by Writ from his Majeſty at his pleaſure, as occaſion requireth. Courts of Judicature. Court of Parliament.

The ſecond Court is the *Seſſions*, or *Colledge* of *Juſtice*, conſiſting of a *Preſident*, 14 *Senators*, 7 of the *Clergy*, and as many of the *Laity* (unto whom was afterwards adjoyned the *Chancellor*, who is the chief, and 5 other *Senators*) beſides 3 principal *Scribes* or *Clerks*, and as many *Advocates* as the *Senators* ſee convenient: And this was thus conſtituted by King *James* the Fifth in *Anno* 1532, after the form of the Parliament at *Paris*. Theſe ſit and adminiſter Colledge of Juſtice.

adminiſter Juſtice with equity and reaſon, and not according to the rigour of the Law, every day (except *Sundays* and *Mondays*) from the firſt of *Novemb.* to the 15 of *March*; and from *Trinity Sunday* to the firſt Calends of *Auguſt*; and all the time between (as being either Seed-time or Harveſt) is vacation. They give judgment according to the *Parliament Statutes*, and *Municipal Laws*; and where they are defective, they have recourſe to the Imperial *Civil Law*.

Other Courts. There are likewiſe in every Shire or County *inferiour Civil Judicatories* or *Courts* kept, wherein the *Sheriff* of the Shire, or his *Deputy*, decideth the Controverſies and Law-ſuits of the Inhabitants; from which there are oft-times Appeals to the Seſſions or Colledge of Juſtice. And theſe *Sheriffs* are for the moſt part Hereditary.

Beſides theſe Courts, there are other Judicatories, which they call *Commiſſariots*, the higheſt whereof is kept at *Edenburgh*; and theſe have to do with Eccleſiaſtical affairs, as, *Wills* and *Teſtaments*, *Divorcements*, *Tithes*, &c.

In criminal Cauſes, the Kings *Chief Juſtice* holdeth his Court at *Edenburgh*.

Likewiſe the *Sheriffs* in their Territories, and the *Magiſtrates* in ſome Boroughs may ſit in Judgment of *Manſlaughter*, in caſe the *Manſlayer* be taken within 24 hours after the fact committed, and being found guilty by a Jury, may be put to death; but if the ſaid limited time is paſt, the matter is referred, and put over to the Kings Juſtice, or his Deputies.

There are alſo *Civil Courts* in every Regality holden by their *Bailiffs*.

Eccleſiaſtical Government. This Kingdom, as to Eccleſiaſtical Government, is divided into two *Archbiſhopricks*, *viz.* of St. *Andrews* (the Primate of *Scotland*) and of *Glaſco*; and under theſe are ſeveral *Suffragan-Biſhops*, *viz.* under him of St. *Andrews*, thoſe of *Dunkeld*, *Aberdon*, *Murray*, *Dunblan*, *Berchin*, *Roſs*, *Cathanes*, and *Orkney*: And under him of *Glaſco*, thoſe of *Galloway*, *Argile* or *Liſmore*, and the Iſles.

Ancient Inhabitants of *Scotland*. The ancient People of this Kingdom were, 1. The *Gadeni*, who poſſeſſed the Counties of *Lothien*, *Merches*, and *Teſidale* or *Tivedale*. 2. The *Selgovæ*, or Counties *Liddiſdale*, *Euſedale*, *Eskedale*, *Annadale*, and *Nidtheſdale*. 3. The *Novantes*, or Shires of *Galloway*, *Carrickt*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, and *Arran*. 4. The *Damnii*, or Counties of *Cludeſdale*, *Striveling*, *Lennox*, *Menteith*, and *Fife*. 5. The *Caldedonii*, or Shires of *Stratherne*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Lorne*, *Albany* or *Bruidalbin*, *Perch*, *Athol*, and *Anguis*. 6. The *Vermines*, or Counties of *Mernis* and *Marr*. 7. The *Talgali*, or County of *Buquhan*. 8. The *Vacomagi*, or Counties of *Murray* and *Loquabrea*. 9. The *Cantæ*, or Shires of *Roſs* and *Sutherland*. 10. The *Catini*, or County of *Cathanes*: And 11. the *Cornubii*, or County of *Strathnaverne*.

Scotland divided into Sheriffdoms. Theſe parts are again (according to their *Civil Government*) divided into *Sheriffdoms*, *Stewarties*, and *Bailiffwicks*; *viz.* the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Edenburgh*, *Lynlythio*, *Selkirk*, *Roxburgh*, *Peblis*, *Berwick*, *Lanarke*, *Renfrew*, *Dunfreis*, *Wighton*, *Aire*, *Bute*, *Argile*, *Tarbet*, *Dunbarton*, *Perch*, *Clackmannan*, *Kinros*, *Fife*, *Kincardin*, *Forfair*, *Aberdene*, *Bamff*, *Elgin*, *Forres*, *Narne*, *Innerneſs*, *Cromartie*, *Orknay*, and *Shetland*.

Stewarties. The *Stewarties* of *Menteith*, *Kircudbricht*, *Stratherne*, and *Annandale*.

Bailywicks. The Bailiwicks of *Kile*, *Carrickt*, and *Cunningham*.

Its further diviſion. Again, *Scotland* (according to the ſcituation of its Parts, Provinces, or Counties) may be divided into two parts, to wit, Southwards, and on this ſide the *Tay*, which made the ancient Kingdom of the *Picts*, (ſo called, for that they painted their Bodies like the ancient *Britains*, from whom they are ſaid to deſcend, which is the more confirmed, for that the Northern *Britains*, converted to the Faith by St. *Colombe*, were called *Britain Picts*.) And Eaſtwards, Northwards, and beyond the *Tay*, which made the ancient Kingdom of the *Scots*; beſides abundance of *Iſles* diſperſed in its Northern and Weſtern Seas, the chief of which ſhall be treated of.

The

The Counties comprehended in the South-part, are *Lothien*, *Merche*, *Teiſidale* or *Tivedale*, *Eskdale*, *Euskdale*, *Liddeſdale*, *Annadale*, *Nydtheſdale*, *Galloway*, *Carrickt*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Cludeſdale*, *Lennox*, *Striveling*, *Menteith*, *Fife*, *Stratherne*, *Argile*, *Lorne*, *Cantyre*, and *Arran*. And theſe in the North part are, *Albany* or *Badalbin*, *Perch*, *Athol*, *Anguis*, *Mernis*, *Buquthan*, *Marr*, *Muray*, *Loquabrea*, *Roß*, *Sutherland*, *Strathnaverne*, and *Cathanes*. And of theſe in order. Its Counties.

The County of *Lothien*, in former times by the *Picts* called *Pictland*, ſhooteth it ſelf forth from *Merche* unto the *Sea*; a Country very Hilly, and but thinly clothed with Wood: but for the fertility of its Earth, and the civility of its Inhabitants, is deſervedly eſteemed the flower of all *Scotland*. The chief places are, Its name and fertility.

Edenburgh, or *Edenborow*, of old, *Caſtrum Alatum*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom. Its ſcituation is high, in a wholſom Air, and rich Soil; and by reaſon of its commodious Haven (called *Leth-Haven*, not above a mile diſtant) it is a place of good Trade, and well reſorted unto by Shipping. This City chiefly conſiſteth of one Street, which runneth about a mile in length, which receiveth divers petty Streets and Lanes, ſo that its circuit may be about three miles, which is ſtrongly begirt with a Wall; and at the Weſt-end of the City, on the top of a Rock, is ſeated a fair and powerful *Caſtle*, with many *Towers*, which commands the City, and is eſteemed in a manner impregnable. It belonged once to the *Engliſh*, till in *Anno* 960. the *Scots* took it from them, when oppreſſed by the *Daniſh* Tyranies. It is well watered with clear *Springs* and *Fountains*, is adorned with many fair *Edifices*, as well publick as private, the principal amongſt which is the *Kings Palace*, a fair Structure; and its private Houſes are generally fair, lofty, built of *Free-ſtone*, and ſo well inhabited, that ſeveral Families have their abodes under one Roof. It is alſo dignified with the *Courts* of *Judicature*, *High Courts* of *Parliament*, and with an *Univerſity*. And being the Scale of Trade for the Kingdom, it will be neceſſary to give an account of their *Coins*, *Weights*, and *Meaſures*. As to their *Coins*, note that 13⅓ *d. ſterling*, makes a Mark *Scotch*; 6⅔ *d. ſterling*, a *Scotch* Noble; and 20 *d. ſterling*, a *Scotch* Pound. Their *Weight* uſed in Merchandizes, is the *Pound* of 16 *Ounces*, 100 of which make their *Quintal* or C, which is found to make at *London* 108 *l. Averdupois*. Their *Meaſures* for length is the *Ell*, and is about 4 *per Cent.* greater than the *Engliſh* Ell. Their *Liquid Meaſures* are ſuch as in *England*, but of a double content, a Pint being an *Engliſh* Quart, and ſo anſwerable. Their *Dry Meaſures* are alſo the ſame with thoſe of *England*, but alſo bigger. Its chief places. *Edenburgh*. Their Coins, Weights, and Meaſures.

Athelſtanford, ſo called from *Athelſtane*, a chief Commander of the *Engliſh*, which was there ſlain with moſt of his Men, about the year 815. *Athelſtanford*.

Haddington, ſeated in a wide and broad Plain; a place of good account, and which the *Engliſh* fortified with a deep and large Ditch, and other Fortifications. *Haddington*.

Dunbar, ſcituate on the Sea-ſhoar, once defended by a ſtrong *Caſtle*, which was the Seat of the Earls of *Merch*; a place which hath oft-times been taken by the *Engliſh*, and as often retaken by the *Scots*, which was the cauſe of its demoliſhment; ſince which it is honoured with the Title of an *Earldom*. *Dunbar*.

North-Barwick, ſeated on *Edenbrough-Frith*, a place in former Ages famous for its Houſe of *Religious Virgins*. *North-Barwick*.

Not far from this place, and near the Shoar, lieth a ſmall *Iſle* called *Baſs-Iſland*; which ſeemeth to be a high craggy Rock, and to be almoſt cut through by the undermining *Sea-waves*. It hath a *Fountain* of *Water*, and freſh *Paſtures*; and above all is remarkable for the exceeding great abundance of thoſe *Geeſe* called *Scouts* and *Soland-Geeſe*, which here frequent and breed, which (as I before noted) is very profitable to the Inhabitants in theſe parts. *Baſs-Iſland*.

Lyth, hath a moſt commodious Haven, being the preſent Port to *Edenburgh*. *Lyth*.

Abercorne, ſeated on the *Forth* or *Frith*, in former time of note for its famous *Monaſtery*; as at preſent for giving Title of an Earldom unto the Duke of *Hamilton*. *Abercorn*.

Linquo. *Linquo*, or *Linlithquo*, ſaid to be the ancient City of *Lindum*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*; a place once beautified with a Houſe of the Kings, and a fair Church.

County of *Merch* deſcribed. *MERCH*, a County ſo called, as being a *Mareh*; it is wholly on the *German Ocean*, was of great note for its *Earls* thereof; and hath for its chief places,

Cadingham. *Coldingham*, called by *Bede* the City *Coldana*; a place of great antiquity and note for its chaſt *Nuns*; for it is ſaid, that they (together with *Ebba* their *Prioreſs*) cut off their own *Noſes* and *Lips* to render themſelves deformed, that the *Danes* might not deflour them; but this ſo exaſperated them, that they not only burnt their Monaſtery, but them therein.

Faſt-Caſtle. Not far from *Coldingham* is *Faſt-Caſtle*; and here the Sea thruſteth it ſelf forth into a Promontory called *St. Abbs-head*.

Kelſo. *Kelſo*, formerly famous for its *Monaſtery*, which (with thirteen others) King *David* the Firſt raiſed from the ground, for the advancement of Gods glory.

Its chief places. *TEIFIDALE*, that is, the *Vale by the River Teiſie* or *Teviat*, adjoyning to *England*; a craggy hilly Country. Its chief places are,

Roxburg. *Roxburg*, which gives name to a Territory adjoyning, ſeated between the Rivers *Tweed* and *Teiſie*, once a place of great ſtrength, being defended by a *Caſtle* and towred Fortifications; and here it was that King *James* the Second of *Scotland*, was unfortunately ſlain by the breaking of a *Cannon* at the Siege.

Jedburgh. *Jedburgh*, a well frequented and inhabited *Borough-Town*, ſeated near the confluence of the Rivers *Teviat* and *Jed*.

Peblis. *Peblis*, ſeated on the *Tweed*, and a branch thereof; a *Market-Town* of ſome account.

Merlos. *Merlos*, ſeated alſo on the *Tweed*, formerly of note for its ancient Monaſtery of cloiſtered *Monks*, that gave themſelves to Prayer, and to get their livings by their handy labour; and this place holy King *David* reſtored, and repleniſhed with *Ciſtertian Monks*.

Eſkdale. *ESKDALE*, a ſmall Territory, ſo called from a River which paſſeth through it; its chief place was,

Æſica. *Æſica*, that ancient City, wherein the Tribune of the firſt Band of the *Aſtures* kept *Watch* and *Ward* againſt the Northern Enemies.

Euskdale. *EUSKDALE*, another ſmall Territory, which takes its name from the River that watereth it.

Liddisdale. *LIDDISDALE*, alſo another ſmall Territory, which receiveth its name from the River that paſſeth through it. Its chief places are,

Brankenſey, &c. *Brankenſey*, *Harlay*, and *Armetage*.

ANNADALE, that is, the *Vale by the River Annan*. Its chief places are,

Annadale. *Annadale*, ſeated at the Mouth of the River *Annan*. And

Lough-Maban. *Lough-Maban*, a Town of good ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art; nigh unto which is a ſtrong *Caſtle*.

Of a fertil Soil. *NITHESDALE*, or *NIDDESDALE*, a County ſo named from the River *Nid*, which watereth it; a County of a fertil Soil, which beareth good Corn, hath rich Meadows and Paſtures; and in the *Solway*, which watereth its Southern part, are taken great ſtore of excellent *Salmons*, which the Inhabitants (for their Recreation) oft-times hunt on Horſe-back with *Spears*. Its chief places are,

Dunfreys. *Dunfreys*, ſeated between two Hills, and on the River *Nid*, near its influx into the *Solway*, once ſtrengthned with a *Caſtle*; a Town of good account for making of *Woollen-Cloths*; but more remarkable for the Murther of *John Cummin*, a man of great eminency amongſt the *Scotch*, who was ſlain by *Robert Brus* in the Church, out of fear leſt he ſhould fore-cloſe his way to the Kingdom.

Solway. Nigh unto this Town is *Solway*, a ſmall place, which ſeemeth to retain ſomething of the old name of *Selgovæ*.

Caer-

Caer-Laverock, ſeated at the Mouth of the *Nid*, in former time of ſo great ſtrength, that (for a good while) it ſtoutly reſiſted the power of King *Edward* the Firſt, who beſieged it. *Caer-Laverock.*

Corda, alſo a flouriſhing Town in former Ages. *Corda.*

GALLOWAY, a County ſo called of the *Iriſh*, who once here inhabited, in former times had *Princes* and *Lords* over it. It is a Country much inclined to Hills, which renders it more fit for Graſing than Tillage, breeding abundance of ſmall and well limbed *Nags*, which for their nimbleneſs and hardineſs are eſteemed excellent for a Traveller: And the Sea, by which it is waſhed, together with its *Bays*, *Creeks*, *Meers*, and *Loughs*, affords the Inhabitants ſtore of excellent Fiſh. Its chief places are,

Kircoubright, the moſt commodious Port-Town on this Coaſt; and the ſecond *Stewarty* of *Scotland*. *Kircoubright.*

Cardines, a place or Fort of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, being ſeated on a craggy high Rock, by the River *Fleet*, and fenced about with ſtrong Walls. *Cardines.*

Wigton, ſeated on a Bay of the Sea, between the Rivers *Cre* and *Bladno*; a good Haven-Town. *Wigton.*

Not far from this Town, and on the Sea-ſhoar, *Ptolomy* placed the ancient City *Leucopibia*, which is now called *Wytherne*; and here it is ſaid, *Ninia*, or *Ninian*, a holy *Britain*, who firſt inſtructed the *South-Pitts* in the Chriſtian Faith, in the Reign of the Emperour *Theodoſius* the younger, had his Seat, and built a *Church* to the honour of St. *Martin*. *Leucopibia.*

CARRICT, a County that hath rich Paſtures, and is well furniſhed with all neceſſaries both by Land and Sea, where it beareth the name of *Dunbritain-Frith*; a large and capacious Bay, which with its *Rivers* and *Loughs*, affords its Inhabitants plenty of Fiſh. Its chief places are,

Barganie, a place of great antiquity. *Arduntoun* and *Coſregall*. *Barganie.* *Arduntoun.* *Coſregal.*

KYLE, a fertil County, and well inhabited; and hath for its chief places, *Aire*, ſeated on a River ſo called, where it looſeth it ſelf into the *Frith*; a place of ſome account, being a *Sheriffdom*: And *Uchiltre*. *Aire.* *Uchiltre.*

CUNNINGHAM, alſo waſhed with *Dunbritain-Frith*; a County no leſs commodious and fertil, than pleaſant, being plentifully watered. Its chief places are,

Irwin, a *Borough-Town*, ſeated on a River ſo called, at its influx into the *Frith*, where it hath a Haven, though now choaked up. *Irwin.*

Largis, where *Alexander* the Third deſtroyed abundance of the *Norwegians*: And *Androſan*. *Largis.* *Androſan.*

CLUDESDALE, a County ſo called from the River *Cluid*, that watereth it. Its chief places are,

Glaſco, pleaſantly ſcituate on the River *Cluyd*, over which it hath a fair Bridge ſuſtained by eight Arches. It is a City of good account, well frequented and inhabited, enjoyeth a good Trade, and is dignified with the See of an *Archbiſhop*, as alſo with an *Univerſity*. *Glaſco.*

Douglaſs, ſeated on a River, and in a Vale ſo called. *Douglaſs.*

Lanrick, the Hereditary Sheriffdom of the *Hamiltons*, who take their name from *Hamilton-Caſtle*, ſeated on the fruitful Bank of the *Cluid*. *Lanrick.* *Hamilton.*

Reinfraw, which gives name to a *Barony*. *Reinfraw.*

Paſlay, in former times a famous Monaſtery, founded by *Alexander* the Second, High Steward of *Scotland*, which for a ſtately *Church*, with rich Furniture, was inferiour to few. *Paſlay.*

LENNOX, a County very Hilly, and well watered with Rivers, amongſt which is the *Cluid*, and the large Lough *Lomond*, about 20 miles in length, and in breadth, where broadeſt, about 8, in which are many ſmall Iſles, amongſt which ſome are ſaid to float about; a place noted for great plenty of Fiſh, eſpecially for a Fiſh called a *Polloc*, found no where elſe: This County is honoured in giving Title to the Right Noble the Duke of *Richmond* and *Lennox*, &c. Its chief places are, *Lomond Lough.*

Dunbritton. *Dunbritton*, that is, the *Britains Town*, for that the *Britains* held it longeſt againſt the *Scots*, *Picts*, and *Saxons*; being the ſtrongeſt place in all the Kingdom, as well by Nature as Art, being loſtily ſeated on a rough, craggy, and two-headed Rock, at the meeting of the Rivers near the large Lough *Lomond*, and in a green Plain; in one of the tops is, or was placed a *Watch-Tower*, and on the other ſeveral Fortifications or Bulwarks; on the Eaſt-ſide it hath a boggy Flat, which at every Tide is covered with water, and on the South it hath the River *Cluid*.

Alcluyd. *Alcluyd*, an ancient City, by ſome ſaid to be the ſame *Dunbritton*.

Of a fertil Soil. *STRIVELING*, or *STIRLING*, a County of a fertil Soil, and well inhabited; and here is that narrow Land or Streight by which *Edenburgh-Frith* and *Dunbrith-Frith* (thruſting themſelves far into the Land, out of the Eaſt and Weſt Seas) are ſeparated from meeting together; which ſpace was fortified with Garriſons between, by *Julius Agricola*, ſo that all the part on this ſide was in the poſſeſſion of the *Romans*, and their Enemies were forced to retire themſelves into the more Northern and Hilly part of the Kingdom; but this laſted not long, for *Agricola* being called home, the *Caledonian Britains* forced the *Romans* back as far as the River *Tine*: and when *Hadrian* arrived in *Britain*, about 40 years after, inſtead of going farther, he gave command that the God *Terminus* (which uſed not to give ground to any) ſhould be withdrawn back; and that a Wall of *Turffs* (commonly now called *Grahams-Dike*) ſhould be made between the Rivers *Tine* and *Eske* Southward, on this ſide *Edenburgh-Frith*, for about 100 miles, which proved ſucceſsful unto them. And along this Wall hath been oft-times found ſeveral Inſcriptions, and pieces of *Romiſh* Antiquities. And of remark was that ancient round building, 24 Cubits high, and 13 broad, open at the top, and framed of rough and unpoliſhed Stones, without any Cement, Lime, and Mortar: ſome call this the Temple of the God *Terminus*, others, *Arthur's Oven*, and others, *Julius Hoff*, as ſuppoſing it to be raiſed by *Julius Cæſar*; but *Cambden* would rather believe it to be built by *Julius Agricola*, who fortified theſe parts, had not *Ninius* ſaid, it was built by *Carauſius*, as a Triumphal Arch in memory of ſome Victory. The chief places in this County are,

Stirling. *Stirling*, *Striveling*, or *Stirling-Borough*, a place of good ſtrength, and fortified with a powerful Caſtle, high mounted on the brow of a ſteep Rock; a place dignified with the birth of King *James* the Sixth of *Scotland*, and Firſt of *England*, who afterwards cauſed it to be beautified with new Buildings.

Falkirke, &c. *Falkirke*, *Cumirnald*, and *Torwood*.

MENTEITH, a County ſo called from the River *Teith*: Its chief places are,

Dunblain. Clackmannan. *Dunblain*, ſeated on the River *Teith*, being the See of a Biſhop; and *Clackmannan*.

Of a very fertil Soil. *FIFE*, a fertil County in Corn and Paſturage, hath *Pit-Coal*, and the *Sea* with its two Arms, *Forth* and *Tau*, which almoſt encompaſs it, affordeth ſtore of *Oyſters* and other Fiſh. Its chief places are,

St. Andrews. *St. Andrews*, of old, *Regimund*, that is, *St. Regulus Mount*, which *Ung* or *Oeng*, King of the *Picts*, gave to *God* and *St. Andrew*, that it ſhould be the chief and Mother Church of the *Picts* Kingdom. It is a City pleaſantly ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar near *Fif-neſs*, is fortified with a fair and ſtrong Caſtle, is dignified with an *Archiepiſcopal See*, which is Primate of all *Scotland*; and is alſo honoured by being the Seat of the *Muſes*.

Diſert. *Diſert*, ſeated on the riſing of a Hill, and in an open Heath ſo called, where there is a large place called the *Cole-plot*, that affordeth good ſtore of *Bitumen*.

Dunfirmling. *Dunfirmling*, a famous Monaſtery in old time, and of note as well for its Building, and being the Burial-place of King *Malcomb* the Third, as for giving Title to the Earl of *Dunfirmling*.

Falkland. *Falkland*, well, and pleaſantly ſeated for Hunting, for which purpoſe the Kings have had here their Retiring-houſe.

Cupre. *Cupre*, a *Borough-Town*, of ſome note.

STRA-

STRATHERNE, that is, the *Vale along the River Ern*, hath for its chief places,

Abergenny, once a City of good account, being the Royal Seat of the *Picts* Kings, which (as 'tis said) *Nectane* their King dedicated to *God* and *St. Bridget*, with a Tract of ground thereto belonging. *Abergenny.*

Drimein-Caſtle, well ſeated on the River *Ern*. *Drimein.*

Tulibardin-Caſtle, ſcituate alſo on the ſame River. *Tulibardin.*

ARGILE, a County well furniſhed with *Pools*, in which, together with the Sea, and its many Arms which it ſendeth forth, are taken great plenty of good Fiſh; and in its Mountains are bred a kind of *wild Deer*. Places of good account are none in this County.

LORNE, a Country of an apt Soil for bearing of *Barley*, is well watered, being divided by the large Lough or Lake called *Leane*. Its chief places are,

Dunſtafage, ſeated near the ſaid Lake, once dignified with a Houſe of the Kings. *Dunſtafage.*

Tarbat, where King *James* the Fourth ordained a *Juſtice* and a *Sheriff*, to adminiſter Juſtice to the Inhabitants of the out-Iſles: and *Bergonum*. *Tarbat.* *Bergonum.*

CANTTRE, that is, the *Lands-head*, as thruſting it ſelf forth with a long and tapered *Promontory*, which *Ptolomy* called the *Promontory Epidiorum*; between the extream point of which and *Marlock*, or *Tor-Bay* in *Ireland*, there are ſcarce 13 miles. Its chief places are *Killtan* and *Sandell*. This County ſeated near *Ireland.* *Killtan.* *Sandell.*

ARRAN, a ſmall County and Iſle near unto *Cantire*, hath for its chief places *Arran* and *Rothſay*. Iſle of *Arran.*

ALBAINE, or *BRAID-ALBIN*, whoſe Inhabitants are called the *Highlanders*; a kind of rude and warlike People, and much of the nature of the *Iriſh* in habit and diſpoſition. Its chief places are *Innerlothea* and *Foyre*. The Highlanders.

PERCH, a large and fertil County, hath for its chief places,

Perch, or *St. John's Town*, a place of good account, and once larger than now it is, being built by King *William*; it is pleaſantly ſeated between two Greens, and on the River *Tau*, which is navigable for *Barges*. *Perch.*

Dunkelden, dignified by King *David* with an *Epiſcopal See*, ſuppoſed to be a Town of the *Caledonians*. *Dunkelden.*

Alſo on the *Tau* ſtood the little City of *Berch*, which was waſhed away by the overflowings of the ſaid River, together with many of its Inhabitants, amongſt which was an Infant-Child of the Kings in its Cradle. *Berch.*

Scone, ſeated on the farther ſide of the *Tau*, dignified with an Inauguration of the *Scotch* Kings before their Union to *England*, *Weſtminſter* now being the place; and where the Chair, in which the Kings were then Crowned, is, which is at preſent made uſe of upon the like occaſion. *Scone.*

ATHOL, an indifferent fertil County, and well clothed with Wood, where is that large and overſhadowed Wood *Caladonia*, already treated of; a Country ſaid to be infamous for *Witches*. Its chief place is *Blaire*. *Caladonia Wood.*

ANGUIS, a fertil County both for Corn and rich Paſtures, is well watered with ſeveral Rivers, which loſe themſelves in the Sea, which ſerveth for its Eaſtern bounds: It is interlaced with *Hills* and *Foreſts*, and garniſhed with divers *Forts* and *Caſtles*. Its chief places are, Very fertil and well watered.

Dundee, ſeated on the Mouth of the River *Tay*; a noted and well reſorted Town for Trade, by reaſon of its commodious Port for Ships. *Dundee.*

Brechin, ſcituate on the River *South-Eske*, near its fall into the Sea, and dignified by King *David* the Firſt with an *Epiſcopal See*. Nigh unto this Town is *Red-head*, a place not unknown to Seamen. *Brechin.*

Montroſs, of old *Celurca*, of ſome account for being honoured with the Title of an Earldom. *Montroſs.*

Arbroth, ſeated near the Sea; a Town endowed with large Revenues, and by King *William* dedicated to a Religious uſe, in honour of *Thomas* of *Canterbury*. *Arbroth.*

MERNIS,

Very fertil. *MERNIS*, or *MERNIA*, a ſmall, but plain and fertil Champain Country, which ſhooteth it ſelf forth on the *German Ocean*: Its chief places are,

Dunnotyr. *Dunnotyr*, defended by a ſtrong Caſtle, ſeated on an high and inacceſſible Rock, near the Sea.

Fordon. *Fordon*, ſeated alſo not far from the Sea.

BUQUIHAN, waſhed with the Sea, whoſe Waves did here caſt up a mighty Maſs of *Amber* of an ineſtimable value; it hath good Paſtures, moſt fit to feed *Sheep*, whoſe *Wool* is excellent; and its Rivers breed ſtore of *Salmons*, which are had at ſuch eaſie rates, that it is ſcarce worth the trouble of taking them. Its chief places are *Rotheniay* and *Stanes*.

Adjoyning to this Country lieth *Boena* and *Bamff*, a ſmall *Sheriffdom*; alſo *Ajuza*, a little Territory of no great note.

Marr. *MARR*, a long and narrow County, ſomewhat inclined to Mountains, but well watered with the *Done* or *Dee*, well ſtored with *Salmons*, and other Fiſh. Its chief places are,

Aberdene. *Aberdene*, ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar, at the Mouth of the *Done*, dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, hath an *Hoſpital*, alſo a *Free-Grammar-School*, and is of note for taking of *Salmons*: and *Kildrumy*.

Kildrumy.

Murray. *MURRAY*, a pleaſant and fertil County, and the rather as watered with the *Spey*, *Findorne*, and the River and Lake *Neſſa*, which reacheth about 23 miles in length, the water whereof is obſerved to be ſo warm, that it never is found to freez; and this Lake is its Northern limits, as the *Spey* is its Eaſtern; all which empty themſelves in the Sea, where it formeth a Bay. Its chief places are,

Invernes. *Invernes*, *Bean-Caſtle*, which *Ptolomy* thinks to be *Banatia*; and here in *Anno* 1460. a Marble-Veſſel artificially engraven, full of *Roman* Coins, was found.

Narden. *Narden*, or *Narne*, an hereditary *Sheriffdom*; and here ſtood within a by-land a ſtrong Fortreſs of a great height, which was kept by the *Danes* againſt the *Scots*.

Innerlothea. *Innernes*, and *Innerlothea*, in former times two eminent Fortifications. Alſo

Elgin. *Elgin* and *Rothes*, places honoured with the Titles of *Earldoms*.

Rothes.

LOQUABREA, a County well ſtored with *Rivers* and *Lakes*, which empty themſelves into the Sea; it hath alſo good Paſtures, yet is it very Mountainous, and well clothed with Wood, and in the bowels of the Earth are Mines of *Iron*. Its chief place is,

Iron-Mines.

Innerlothey. *Innerlothey*, once of good account, being well frequented and traded unto; but through the Pyracies and Wars of the *Danes* and *Norwegians*, who razed it, it hath now ſcarce any Remain left.

Its fertility. *ROSS*, a large, Mountainous, and Woody County, which reacheth from one Sea to the other; hath great plenty of *Stags*, *Deer*, *Wild-fowl*, and *Fiſh*. Its chief places are,

Cromarty. *Cromarty*, or the *Haven of Safety*, as having ſo ſecure and capacious an Harbour for Ships. *Neſs-mouth* and *Lovet*.

Niſs-mouth.

Lovet.

Ardmanoch. In this County is the Territory of *Ardmanoch*, very Mountainous, from which the ſecond Sons of the Kings of *Scotland* bear their Title.

SUTHERLAND, regarding the Sea, is well watered with Rivers, beſides the large Lough or Lake *Shyn*, almoſt in the midſt of the Country; Weſtwards of which are great ſtore of Hills, from which is dug excellent *white Marble*, very good for curious Works. It is a Country more fit for breeding of Cattle, than for Tillage; and hath for its chief places *Dunrobin* and *Dorno*.

Dunrobin.

Dorno.

Very cold and barren. *STRATHNAVERNE*, a County far engaged Northwards, which with *Cathanes* have the utmoſt Northern Coaſt of all *Britain*, which muſt occaſion it to be of a very cold temperature; it is very much inclined to ſterility, is Mountainous, and but ill inhabited. Its chief places are *Strabubaſter* and *Tounge*.

Strabubaſter.

Tounge.

CATHA-

CATHANES, a County waſhed with the *Eaſtern Ocean*, where it formeth ſeveral Creeks, and is well watered with Rivers, which afford good ſtore of Fiſh, from which, and by the graſing and feeding of Cattle, the Inhabitants get the greateſt part of their livelyhood. Its chief places are,

Dornock, a mean place, yet the See of a Biſhop. *Dornock.*

Catnes, a Maritim Town, dignified with an *Earldom*. Nigh unto this Town Southwards is *Neſs-head*, and Northwards *Dunesbe-head*, both Maritim places: and *Girnego*. *Catnes.* *Girnego.*

In this Tract are three Promontories, to wit, *Urdehead*, of old *Berubium*; *Dunsby* or *Dunſcanby*, of old *Virvedrum*; and *Howbum*, of old *Orcas*. Three Mountains.

There are ſeveral *Iſles* diſperſed about this Kingdom of *Scotland*, as the *Orcades*, *Shetland*, and *Hebrides*, which may properly be ſaid to belong thereunto; but as to the deſcription thereof, they ſhall be treated of amongſt the other ſmall Iſles belonging in general to great *Britain*, after we have treated of the Kingdom of *Ireland*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND, environed on all ſides by the *Sea*, and next to *Great Britain* may claim priority of all others in *Europe*: It is a Country generally of a fertil Soil, and plentifully ſtored with *Cattle*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*; but is Mountainous, Woody, Wateriſh, and full of unprofitable *Loughs* or *Bogs*, which oft-times prove dangerous (eſpecially to New-comers) and occaſion *Rheums* and *Fluxes*, for the cure of which they drink a ſort of hot Water, called *Uskebah*. Its ſcituation. Fertility.

It is bleſt with a mild and healthful Air, its Summer being not ſo hot, nor its Winter ſo cold as in *England*, but more inclined to ſoggy Miſts and Rains, which makes it more unfit for Tillage than Paſturage, the Clime being not very favourable for ripening of *Corn* or *Fruits*, but beareth ſuch great abundance of long and ſweet Graſs, that the Cattle (which are the Inhabitants chiefeſt wealth) are ſoon fat, and fit for ſlaughter therewith: And it is further obſerved, That the Air is ſo pure, that it neither breedeth nor ſuffereth any venemous *Beaſt*, *Serpent*, or *Inſect*, being brought out of other Countries, long to retain their life. Its Air and Temperature.

Many have been the Names (according to Tradition) that this Iſland hath been known by; *Orphæus*, *Ariſtotle*, and *Claudian*, named it *Jerna*: *Juvenal* and *Mela*, *Iverna*, or *Hibernia*; *Diodorus Siculus*, *Iris*; *Euſtachius*, *Oyernia* and *Bernia*; the *Britains*, *Iuerdon*; the Natives, *Eryn*; and the *Engliſh*, *Ireland*. Its Names.

Some there be that will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Hyberno tempore*, that is, from its *Winter ſeaſon*; others, from *Hiberus* a *Spaniard*; and others, from the ancient River *Iberus*; whilſt ſome ſtrive to have it ſo called from the *Iriſh* word *Hiere*, which ſignifieth *Weſt*, or *Weſtern Coaſt*, whence *Eryn* may ſeem to fetch its derivation. *Feſtus Avienus* calleth this Iſland, *Sacram Inſulam*, the *Holy Iſland*; for that the People are ſoon drawn thereunto, witneſs the many *Saints* that it hath produced. Why ſo called.

If you will take for truth what the *Iriſh* Hiſtorians report, this Iſland hath been exceeding long inhabited; for, according to *Cambden*, 'tis ſaid that it was poſſeſſed by *Cæſarea*, Niece to *Noah*, before the Floud; that *Bartholanus* a *Scythian* arrived here near 300 years before the Deluge; that many years after *Nemethus*, with his four Sons, arrived here, but was ſoon forced hence by the Giant-like ſort of People of the *Nimrods* Race here inhabiting; that after this *Ireland* long ago inhabited.

this the Five *Grecians* ſeized this Iſland; and that ſoon after (being about the time of the *Iſraelites* departure out of *Ægypt*) *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, Daughter to *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*, landed here, and called the Iſland *Scotia*, from his Wifes name. And further, the *Britiſh* Hiſtory ſaith, that ſome Ages after *Hiberius*, *Hermion*, *Euer*, and *Erimon*, Sons of *Mileſius* King of *Spain*, by permiſſion of *Gurguntius* the *Britiſh* King, here planted Colonies after that the Country had been waſted by a Peſtilence, and from the eldeſt Son was called *Hibernia*. Nor is it much to be doubted, but that the *Britains* ſetled themſelves here, ſeeing there is ſo great affinity betwixt them and the *Iriſh* in their natures, diſpoſitions, and ſpeech.

Its Extent, Scituation. This Iſland contains in length about 240 miles, and in breadth about 120; 'tis ſcituate under the 10*th* and 12*th Climates*, the longeſt day making about 16 hours. It is a near Neighbour to *Scotland*, from which it is ſeparated by an *Iſthmus* of about ſeven miles; but *England* far more remote, being from *Dublin*, its Metropolitan City, to *Holy-land* in the Iſle of *Angleſey* (the uſual place for taking of Landing) about 50.

Its ſtrength. It is an Iſland of great ſtrength, as well by Nature as Art, by reaſon of its ſcituation in ſuch Tempeſtuous and dangerous Seas, and the ſeveral Fortifications and Caſtles that the *Engliſh* have built ſince they became Maſters thereof.

Its chief Rivers. It is a Country well watered, having ſeveral great Rivers, the chief amongſt which are thoſe of *Shannon*, being about 60 miles navigable, and after its courſe of about 200 miles, looſeth it ſelf into the Weſtern Ocean. *Liff*, *Showre*, *Awidaff*, *Slanie*, *Sione*, &c. And beſides theſe Rivers there are ſeveral *Lakes* or *Loughs*, amongſt which that of moſt note is *Lough-Erne*, about 30 miles in length, and 15 in breadth, in which are ſeveral ſmall *Iſles*.

Its Commodities. The Commodities that this Iſland affordeth, are, great abundance of *Cattle*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, *Cheeſe*, *Wool*, of which they make *courſe-Cloth*, *Freezes*, *Rugs*, *Mantles*, &c. alſo *Furs*, *Pipe-ſtaves*, *Salt*, *Hemp*, *Linnen-Cloth*, *Hony*, and *Wax*; and its Seas likewiſe afford great plenty of *Cod-fiſh*, *Herrings*, *Pilchards*, *Oyſters*, &c.

Its Inhabitants. Its Native Inhabitants were extreamly rude and barbarous; they made uſe of Women in common, without any difference of other mens Wives; they were very bold, couragious, and greedy of honour, conſtant in love, impatient of Injuries, of an eaſie belief, much addicted to phantaſtical conceits, as holding it ominous to give their Neighbours Fire on a *May-day*, with many the like Fooleries; they are much inclined to ſuperſtitious Idolatry, as worſhipping the *Moon*, after her change; about their Childrens Necks they hung the beginning of St. *Johns* Goſpel, a piece of *Wolves-skin*, or a crooked Nail of a *Horſe-ſhoe*, which they thought preſerved them from danger; the Hoofs of dead *Horſes* they held Sacred; with many ſuch like ridiculous Fancies. They accounted *Eaſe* and *Idleneſs* their greateſt Liberty and Riches, not coveting Worldly poſſeſſions, contenting themſelves with mean Cottages, Hovels, or Cabins; nor were they profuſe in their Apparel or Diet, being well ſatisfied if they had wherewith to keep them warm, and to fill their Bellies, their chief food being *Herbs*, *Roots*, *Butter*, *Milk*, *Oatmeal*, and the like. For their dying, they hired Women to Mourn, who expoſtulated *why they would die*, telling them, that *they had ſuch and ſuch things*; and the Corps were accompanied to the Grave with howlings, clapping of hands, and ſuch like ſorrowful actions. But many of theſe ridiculous and abſurd Cuſtoms, ſince the *Engliſh* are ſetled amongſt them, are forgotten.

The Chriſtian Faith firſt planted by St. *Patrick*. The *Chriſtian Faith* was here firſt planted by St. *Patrick*; this *Patrick* (according to Writers) was the Son of *Calphurus*, by St. *Martins* Siſter, and born at *Glaſco* in *Scotland*, who in his Youth was taken Captive by the *Iriſh* Pirates, and ſold for ſix years as a Slave in the meaneſt condition to *Macbuain*; yet in this dejected condition he much deſired the Converſion of this Nation, from their extream Idolatrous ways to the true ſerving of the living God, inſomuch that he dreamed, that *the unborn Babes cried unto him for Baptiſm*; and being at length redeemed from his bondage, by a piece of Gold, which he found

found in the Field, (that was rooted up by ſome *Swine*) he left the Iſle; but ſtill having his thoughts on theſe People, in his Aged years he again returned, (and in better ſtate than before) preached the Goſpel, converted the People, became Biſhop of *Armagh*; and when dead, was received or canonized as their *Saint*.

The *Engliſh* become Maſters of *Ireland*.

Theſe *Iriſh*, having civil diſſentions amongſt them, prompted the *Engliſh* in the Reign of K. *Henry* the Second, to attempt the Conqueſt of this Kingdom, who in *Anno Dom.* 1172. landed his Army there, and obtained the Regal Dominion thereof, which being paſſed over unto him by their Nobles and Commonalty, their Charter ſo ſigned, was tranſmitted to *Rome*, and was confirmed by a Patent of Pope *Hadrian*, by a Ring delivered unto him in token of his inveſture; and was farther confirmed by the Authority of certain *Provincial Synods*: and ever ſince that time it hath remained in the poſſeſſions of the Kings of *England*.

The Temporal Government of *Ireland*.

The *Temporal Government*, ſince the *Engliſh* became Maſters thereof, hath moſt commonly been, by one Supream Officer, ſent over by the Kings of *England*, and called *Lord Deputy*, or *Lord Lieutenant*, who for Majeſty, State, and Power, is not inferiour to any *Vice-Roy* in Chriſtendom; living in great grandure, and having ample and Royal Power and Authority granted unto him; and as Aſſiſtant unto him in ſo weighty a concern, he hath his *Privy Council*, being a ſelect number of honourable and prudent perſons choſen out of the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, and *Capital Officers* of State: for their Degrees of Honour, and Offices of State, they are the ſame with thoſe of *England*, already treated of. The preſent *Lord Lieutenant* is the Right Noble his Excellency *Arthur Capell*, Earl of *Eſſex*, Viſcount *Maldon*, Baron *Capell* of *Hadham*, &c.

Its Laws and Courts of Judicature.

The *Laws* of this Kingdom have correſpondency with thoſe of *England*, and have likewiſe there ſeveral *Courts* of *Judicature*; as the *Chancery*, *Common-Pleas*, *Kings-Bench*, *Exchequer*, &c. but above all the High Court of *Parliament*. There are likewiſe in each County *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, for the quiet governing and well ordering the Inhabitants, as in *England*.

The Archbiſhops and Biſhops.

As to the *Eccleſiaſtical Government* of this Kingdom, it is committed to the care of four *Archbiſhops*, under whom are divers *Suffragan Biſhops*, whoſe names are as followeth. Under the Archbiſhop of *Armagh*, who is Primate of *Ireland*, are the Biſhops of *Meath*, or *Elnamirand*, *Conuer*, *Rathluc*, *Dune*, or *Dundalethglas*, *Ardachad*, *Derry*, *Dal-Liquir*, *Chlocor*, or *Lugundum*, and *Rathbot*. Under the Archbiſhop of *Dublin*, thoſe of *Ferne*, *Lechlin*, *Glendalach*, *Oſſery*, and *Kildare*. Under the Archbiſhop of *Caſſile*, thoſe of *Limrick*, *Waterford*, *Corke*, *Laonie*, or *Kendalnan*, *Cellumabrath*, *Liſmore*, *Ardefret*, the Iſle of *Gathay*, *Clon*, *De Roſalither*, *Melite*, or *Emilech*, and *Roſſi* or *Roſcree*. And under the Archbiſhop of *Tuam*, thoſe of *Elphin*, *Conany*, *Clonfred*, *Enachdun*, *Achad*, *Duac*, or *Killmacduoc*, *Mage*, *Killmunduach*, *Cellaiar*, *Roſcomon*, and *Lade*, or *Killaleth*.

According to the *Temporal Government* of this Kingdom, it is ſevered into four Provinces, to wit, *Leimſter*, *Ulſter*, *Connaugh*, and *Mounſter*, which are again ſubdivided into ſeveral Counties, which comprehend ſeveral *Baronies*, in which are ſeated ſeveral *Towns*: And of theſe Provinces in order.

LEIMSTER.

Its fertility.

THis Part of *Ireland* (for the generality) is of a fertil Soil, affording great plenty of *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*, enjoyeth a wholſom and temperate Air, is well watered with Rivers, the chief amongſt which are the *Shour*, *Neor*, and *Barræo*, which have their riſe out of that great Mountain called by *Giraldus*, *Bladinæ Montes*: It is very well inhabited, as well by the Gentry as the Commonalty, and the rather by reaſon of *Dublin*, the Metropolitan City of this Kingdom therein ſeated. Its form may be ſaid to be triangular, for from South-eaſt to the Weſt-point, is above 80 miles; from

Its Rivers.

thence to the North-west, about 70; and her East-Coast, about 18; the circumference making about 270 miles. And for its bounds, it hath on the West the Province of *Connaugh*; on the North, that of *Leimster*; and on the East and South, the *Sea* which regards *England*, from which (that is, from *Holy-head* in the Isle of *Anglesey*) it is distant about 50 miles: a *Sea* very dangerous for Saylers, by reason of the *Flats* and *Shallows* that lie over against *Holy-point*, which are called the *Grounds*. And as to its division, it is severed into ten Counties, to wit, *Dublin*, *East-Meath*, *West-Meath*, *Longford*, *Kildare*, *Kings County*, *Queens County*, *Caterlough*, *Weixford*, and *Kilkenny*; all which are again subdivided into several *Baronies*; and of these Counties in order.

County of *Dublin* described.

DUBLIN, or *Divelin*, a fertil County for *Corn* and *Cattle*, but ill provided with *Wood*, which defect is supplied by *Peat* or *Turff*, dug up in the clammy places, as also by *Sea-Coal* brought from *England*. It is severed into seven *Baronies*, viz. *New-Castle*, *Upper-Cross*, *Rath-down*, *Castle-knock*, *Coolock*, *Balrudery*, and *Nether-Cross*; and by reason of its City *Dublin*, the Metropolis of *Ireland*, is very well furnished with Towns, and inhabited by Gentry. Its chief places are,

Dublin.

Dublin, the capital City in the Island, by *Ptolomy* called *Eblana*, by the Latinists, *Dublinium*, and *Dublinia*; by the West-*Britains*, *Dinas Dulin*; and by the *Irish*, *Balacleigh*, that is, *the Town upon Hurdles*, by reason that when it began to be first built (the ground being wet and mooriſh) the Foundation of its Houses were laid upon *Hurdles*. It is a City of great Antiquity, and said to be built by *Harold* the first King of *Norway*, who brought most of the Kingdom under his obedience, though not without great Spoils; and after the Conquest of the *English*, was Peopled by a Colony of *Bristol-men*. It is no less pleasantly than commodiously seated on the River *Liffie*, (which after a small course emptieth it self into a capacious Bay of the Sea, where it hath a good Haven) and a fair prospect; and on the South it hath delightful Hills, which, with the several *Parks* here adjacent afford great Recreation to the Gentry. It is a City dignified and enriched with the residence of the Lord *Lieutenant*, as also with the See of an *Archbishop*, with an *University*, and the Courts of *Judicature*, by reason of which it is a place of good Traffick, being well inhabited and frequented by *Nobility* and *Gentry*, as also by abundance of wealthy *Merchants* and *Shop-keepers*. It is beautified with many fair Buildings, both publik and private, the principal amongst which are the Lord *Lieutenants Palace*, a stately Structure, built by order of King *Henry* the Second, in the East-Suburbs; then the *Cathedral Church*, dedicated to St. *Patrick*, consisting of a *Dean*, *Chanter*, *Chancellor*, *Treasurer*, two *Arch-Deacons*, and twenty *Prebendaries*: Nigh unto which is the *Archbishops Palace*, both which are without the City in the Suburbs called St. *Patricks*: Then the *Collegiate Church* consecrated to the *Holy Trinity*, commonly called *Christ-Church*, seated in the midst of the City, which Queen *Elizabeth* dignified with the Priviledges of an *University*; and not far from this is the *Town-Hall*, called *Toles-tale*, a fair Stone-building of a quadrangular form; and here the *Lord Major*, *Sheriffs*, *Aldermen*, and other the Magistrates of the City assemble together for the management and consulting on the publick Concerns of the City; as, to hear Causes, hold Sessions, &c. Then a beautiful *Colledge*, with several other fair Edifices. It is at present a City of a large Extent to what it formerly was, and doth daily increase in its Buildings, especially in its Suburbs, which is severed from the City by a *Wall*, which gives entrance by six *Gates*. As touching the Trade of this Kingdom, I shall include it under this City, as being the chief place of Traffick. The Commodities exported are the product of the Country already treated of; and those imported are all sorts of *English* Commodities, especially *Apparel*, *Silks*, *Stuffs*, &c. also *Wines*, *Oils*, and several other Commodities. Their *Coins*, as being under the Jurisdiction of *England*, have correspondency therewith, and are here currant, as also those of *Spain*; and an *Irish* Pound, which consisteth of 20 *s.* is but 15 *s.* *sterling*, which makes their Shilling but 9 *d.* *sterling*. And as to their *Weights* and *Measures*, they are the same with those of *England*, where see further.

Wickle,

Wickle, ſeated on the *Sea*, where over the narrow Haven there ſtandeth a Rock, encloſed with a ſtrong *Wall* inſtead of a *Caſtle*, and ſerveth for a place of defence. *Wickle.*

New-Caſtle, a Town which regardeth the *Sea*, where there are Shelves of *Sand* (which they call the *Grounds*) reaching a great length, between which and the Shoar is ſaid to be about ſeven Fathom water. *Newcaſtle.*

Houth, ſeated on the River *Liffy*, at its fall into the Sea, which almoſt encloſeth it. *Houth.*

Malcheal, alſo ſeated on the Sea, nigh unto which is a ſmall Iſle called *Lambey*. *Malcheal.*

EAST-MEATH, a County watered with the noble River *Boyn*, which cutteth the Country into two parts, and after it hath received the Waters of *Lough-Ranmore*, diſchargeth it ſelf into the Sea. It is ſevered into twelve *Baronies*, viz. *Moyſenragh*, *Dunboyne*, *Ratoth*, *Duleeke*, *Kells*, *Morgallon*, *Skreen*, *Navan*, *Lune*, *Slane*, *Foore*, and *Decce*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Eaſt-Meath* deſcribed.

Trim, ſeated on the River *Boyne*, a Town of good account and Trade. *Trim.*

Aboy, a well inhabited and frequented Town. *Aboy.*

Navan, *Drodagh*, and *Slane*, which alſo hath a Barony. *Navan.* *Drodagh.* *Slane.*

WEST-MEATH, ſo called as lying Weſtwards, as the other is for lying Eaſtwards. It is divided into twelve *Baronies*, viz. *Farbill*, *Moyeaſhell*, *Clunlonan*, *Brawney*, *Moygoiſh*, *Delvin*, *Corkery*, *Demyſoore*, *Maberedernon*, *Rathconrath*, *Kilkenny-weſt*, and *Fartullagh*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Weſt-Meath* deſcribed.

Molingar, the chief Shire-Town, as being commodiouſly ſeated in the midſt of the County. *Molingar.*

Delvin, ſeated on the Summit of a Hill, a Town dignified with a *Barony*: And *Kelskery*. *Delvin.* *Kelskery.*

LONGFORD, a County almoſt encompaſſed with Lakes and Rivers; amongſt which is the *Shannon*, the nobleſt River in the Kingdom. It is ſevered into ſix *Baronies*, viz. *Ardagh*, *Granard*, *Moydow*, *Longford*, *Rathline*, and *Abbyſhrewle*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Longford* deſcribed.

Longford, which gives name to the County, ſeated on the Lake *Eske*, or rather on the *Shannon*. *Ardragh*, another good Town. *Longford.* *Ardragh.*

KILDARE, a rich and fertil County, ſevered into ten *Baronies*, viz. *Salt*, *Naſs*, *Ikeathy*, or *Oughtereney*, *Claine*, *Connel Magna*, *Carbury*, *Ophaly*, *Noragh* and *Rabane*, *Kilkullen* half, *Kilcah* and *Moon*: Whoſe chief places are, County of *Kildare* deſcribed.

Kildare, a fair Inland Town, being well frequented, defended by a *Caſtle*, and dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*: A place much celebrated in the Infancy of the *Iriſh* Church for its St. *Brigid* an holy Virgin, who was the Diſciple of St. *Patrick*. *Kildare.*

Mainoth, defended by a *Caſtle*, and is a place of good account, and well frequented. *Mainoth.*

Naas and *Athie*, ſeated on the River *Barrow*, both Towns of ſome account. *Naas.* *Athie.*

KINGS COUNTY, ſo called in honour to *Philip* King of *Spain*, Husband to *Mary* Queen of *England*. It is divided into ten *Baronies*, viz. *Cooles-Town*, *Philips-Town*, *Marrius-Town*, *Ballicowen*, *Kilcourſey*, *Balliboy*, *Clonliske*, *Garricaſtle*, *Ballibritt*, and *Fercale*: And hath for its chief places, *Kings County* deſcribed.

Philips-Town, or *Kings-Town*. *Philips-Town.*

QUEENS COUNTY, full of Boggs and Woods, is divided into eight *Baronies*, viz. *Balliadams*, *Upper-Oſſery*, *Portnehinch*, *Tenehinch*, *Cullinagh*, *Mary-burrough*, *Slewmargigh*, and *Stradbally*: And hath for its chief places, *Queens-Town* deſcribed.

Queens-Town, a place of good account, and is the chief in the County. *Queens-Town.*

Reban, once a City, but at preſent of ſmall note. *Reban.*

County of Caterlough described.

CATERLOUGH, a fertil County, and well clothed with *Wood*. It is severed into five *Baronies*, viz. *Ravilly*, *Caterlough*, *Forth*, *Idronye*, and St. *Mullin* in part: And hath for its chief places,

Caterlough. *Caterlough*, seated on the River *Barrow*, of good account and strength.

Leighlin. *Leighlin*, also seated on the *Barrow*, once dignified with an *Episcopal See*.

Tullo. *Tullo*, seated on the River *Slane*.

Carickbrak, Areklo. *Carickbrak* and *Areklo*, which two last are seated on the Sea.

County of Wexford described.

WEXFORD, or *WEISFORD*, washed by the Sea; a County in former time (according to *Ptolomy*) possessed by the *Menapians*, a sort of People which came out of *Low-Germany*. It is divided into eight *Baronies*, *viz. Gory*, *Scarwalsh*, *Ballagheene*, *Bantry*, *Shellmaleere*, *Forth*, *Bargy*, and *Sheelburne*. And hath for its chief places,

Wexford. *Wexford*, supposed to be the ancient City *Menapa*, scituate at the Mouth of the River *Slane*, where it hath a good Haven; a fair Town, and of note for being the first Town that imbraced a Colony of *English*, as also for its *Herring-fishing*; which makes it to be well inhabited and frequented.

Ross. *Ross*, seated on the River *Barrow*, which after a small course falleth into a Bay or Arm of the Sea.

Ternes. *Ternes*, scituate on the *Slane*, dignified with the See of a *Bishop*, and was in former time fortified with a *Castle*.

Enniscort. *Enniscort*, a *Borough* and *Town Corporate*.

County of Kilkenny described.

KILKENNY, a very fertil County, well graced with Towns, is divided into ten *Baronies*, viz. *Gowran*, *Fassaghdining*, *Kilkenny*, *Cranagh*, *Galmey*, *Callen*, *Iverke*, *Sheelelogher*, *Kells*, *Knocktopher*, *Ida-Igrin*, and *Ibercon*. And hath for its chief places,

Kilkenny. *Kilkenny*, seated on the River *Nur*, which traverseth the County; a fair and wealthy *Borough-Town*, far exceeding all other Mid-land *Borough-Towns* in the Kingdom. It is divided into the *English* and the *Irish* Town, that part belonging to the *English* being fenced on the West-side by a *Wall*, and defended by a *Castle*; and that part which belongeth to the *Irish*, (being as it were the *Suburbs*) is of the greatest Antiquity, having in it the *Canicks Church*, and is honoured with the See of the Bishop of *Ossery*.

Thomas Town. *Thomas Town*, seated beneath the River *Nur*, a small *walled Town*.

Callan. *Callan*, seated on a River so called, a *Borough* and *Town Corporate*.

Religious Houses. Amongst the places in this Province set apart for Divine Worship, these following were of great note, *viz.* the stately *Abbey* called *Thomas Court* at *Dublin*, built by King *Henry* the Second, in expiation of the Murther of *Thomas* Archbishop of *Canterbury*; the *Monasteries* of St. *Maries*, of *Oustmanby* and *Tintern*; and the *Abbey* founded by *William Marshall* Earl of *Pembroke*, to the praise of God, for his safe delivery out of a desperate Storm and Shipwrack, which he was in.

ULSTER.

ULSTER.

THis Province is of a large Extent, and of a different Soil, ſome places being very fertil, and others as barren, which would be otherwiſe if it were well manured; but generally it is inclined to fertility: It hath many thick and ſhady *Woods*, as alſo divers large *Lakes*, in which are ſeveral ſmall *Iſles*; which ſaid *Lakes* or *Loughs*, as alſo the *Rivers* which water the Province, plentifully furniſh the Inhabitants with *Salmons*, and other good Fiſh: and for *Fleſh*, *Fowl*, and *Corn*, they have more than they can well ſpend. This Province by the *Welſh-Britains* is called *Ultw*, and by the *Iriſh*, *Cui Guilly*. Its temperature of Soil. Its Lakes and Rivers. Its Name.

It is bounded on the South with the Provinces of *Leimſter* and *Connaugh*, and on all other parts is waſhed with the Sea, which receiveth the Waters of thoſe many *Loughs* or *Lakes*, many of which are of a large extent, and have within them ſeveral ſmall *Iſles*, the names of ſome are as followeth, *Lough-Neaugh*, *Lough-Foylle*, *Lough-Swillie*, *Lough-Earne*, and *Lough-Cone*. Its Bounds.

It is of a large Extent, reaching from *Black-Abbey* in the Eaſt to *Calebegh-Point* in the Weſt, about 130 miles; and from *Coldagh-Haven* in the North to *Kilmore* in the South, about 100; and in circumference about 420 miles. Its Extent.

This Province is divided into Ten Counties, *viz. Tir-conell* or *Dunagall*, *Tyroen*, *Colrane*, *Antrim*, *Downe*, *Louth*, *Armagh*, *Monoghan*, *Cavan*, and *Fermanagh*; all which are again ſevered into divers *Baronies*: And of theſe Counties in order. Diviſion.

TIR-CONEL, or *DUNAGAL*, a Champain Country, and well watered with *Rivers* and *Loughs*, which diſcharge themſelves into the Sea, which waſheth its Southern, Weſtern, and Northern parts, and affords to the Inhabitants great plenty of *Fiſh* and *River-Fowl*. It is divided into five *Baronies*, *viz. Tirhugh*, *Boylagh*, *Kilmacreanan*, *Raphoe*, and *Eniſhowen*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Tir-conel* deſcribed.

Derry, or *London-Derry*, a Colony of the Citizens of *London*; a fair and well built Town, where ſometime ſtood a flouriſhing Monaſtery. *Derry.*

Dunegall, which gives name to the County, ſeated on a Bay of the Sea, where it hath a good Haven, and between the Mouth of *Lough-Earne* and *Balewilly-Bay*. *Dunegall.*

Calebeck, ſcituate on the Sea, where it hath a commodious *Haven*, and *Robogh*. *Calibeck.*

Along the Coaſt of this County are ſeated ſeveral ſmall *Iſles*, viz. *Torr-Iſle*, the *Iſles* of *Cladagh*, *North-Aran*, *&c.* alſo the *Promontories* of *Fair-foreland*, *Rams-head*, and *St. Hellens-head*: And in this County is *St. Patricks Purgatory*, a Vault or narrow Cave in the ground, of which ſtrange Fancies are believed by the ſimple ſort of the *Iriſh*. Several Iſles and Promontories along the Coaſt. *St. Patricks Purgatory.*

TYROEN, a large, rough, and rugged, yet fertil County, which is divided by the Mountains of *Sliew-Gallen* into the Upper and the Lower, in both which are three Baronies, *viz. Omagh*, *Strabane*, and *Dungannon*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Tyroen* deſcribed.

Cloghar, dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*. *Cloghar.*

Dungannon, the ancient reſidence of the *O-neals*. *Dungannon.*

Strebane, and *Charlemont*. In this County is the large Lake *Neaugh*, well ſtored with Fiſh, in which are ſeveral ſmall *Iſles*; the chief amongſt which are *Enis-Garden*, and *Sidney-Iſle*. *Strebane.* *Charlemont.*

COLERANE, a ſmall County, ſeated in the moſt Northern part of the Province, and waſhed with the Sea, as alſo with the large Lake *Foylle*, adjoyning to the Sea on its Weſtern part, and watered with the River *Band* on its Eaſtern, which carrieth a proud ſtream into the Sea from the Lake *Neaugh*, which breedeth great ſtore of excellent *Salmons*. The chief places in this County are, County of *Colrane* deſcribed.

Colerane,

Colerane. Banchor, Kilrough.

Colerane, which gives name to the County, ſeated on the River *Band*. *Banchor*, and *Kilrough*.

County of Antrim deſcribed.

ANTRIM, the neareſt County to *Scotland*, from which it is not far diſtant, being almoſt encircled with Waters, having on the Weſt the River *Band*, on the South the large Lough *Neaugh* and *Knockvergus-Bay*, and on all other parts the *Sea*, where along the Shoar are ſeveral very ſmall *Iſles*, except it be one, to wit, the *Raglins*, which is indifferent large. This County is ſevered into eight *Baronies*, viz. *Toome*, *Antrim*, *Killconway*, *Maſſereene*, *Bellfaſt*, *Dunluce*, *Glenarne*, and *Carie*: And hath for its chief places,

Knock-fergus.

Knock-fergus, by the *Iriſh*, *Carick-vergus*, that is, the Rock of *Fergus*, ſeated on a large Bay ſo called, where it hath a commodious Port. It is a place of good ſtrength, is well inhabited, and better frequented than other places on this Coaſt; and at the Mouth of this Bay lie ſeveral Iſles. Not far from this place once ſtood the famous Monaſtery of *Magio*, ſo much commended by *Bede*.

Antrim. Glaſtalagne.

Antrim, ſeated on a ſmall River, at its influx into the Lake *Neaugh*.

Glaſtalagne, ſcituate on the *Band*.

County of Down deſcribed.

DOWNE, a large and fertil County, waſhed on the Eaſt with the *Sea*, where it thruſteth it ſelf forth with a large Creek or Arm into the Lough *Cone*, which extendeth it ſelf in length many miles, and formeth two By-lands; That Southwards called *Lecall*, which is exceeding fertil, and whoſe extream point is called St. *Johns Foreland*; and That Northwards called *Ardes*: It is ſevered into five *Baronies*, viz. *Kinalearty*, *Lower Evagh*, *Ards*, *Upper Evagh*, and *Lecale*: And hath for its chief places,

Downe.

Downe, of old *Dunum*, ſeated in the part called *Lecall*, near the Lough *Cone*; a Town of good Antiquity, and dignified with an *Epiſcopal See*, as alſo with the Tombs of St. *Patrick*, St. *Bridget*, and St. *Columbe*.

Newry. Stranford.

Newry, ſeated on a River which falleth into *Carlingford-haven*.

Stranford, ſeated on the large River *Coyn*, or rather an Arm of the Sea, where it hath a ſafe Harbour.

Arglas. Conner. Kilwarny.

Arglas, where (as 'tis ſaid) St. *Patrick* founded a Church.

Conner, or *Conereth*; an Epiſcopal See.

Kilwarny, much anoyed with Bogs, and full of ſhady Woods.

County of Louth deſcribed.

LOUTH, a County of a fertil Soil, very grateful to the Husbandman, and is waſhed on the Eaſt with the *Sea*. It is divided into four *Baronies*, viz. *Lough*, *Dundalke*, *Ferrard*, and *Atherdee*: And hath for its chief places,

Tredaugh.

Tredaugh, or *Droughdagh*, ſeated near the Mouth of the *Boyne*, which divideth it, but joyned together by a Bridge; and by reaſon of its commodious Haven it is a good Town, being well inhabited and frequented, nigh unto which ſtood *Mellifont Abbey*, founded by *Donald* a K. of *Uriel*.

Dundalke.

Dundalke, ſeated on the *Sea*, where it hath a commodious Haven, and in former times was ſtrengthned with a *Caſtle*, which with the *Town* was burnt by *Edward Brus*, Brother to the King of *Scots*, who proclaimed himſelf King of *Ireland*; but for this good act, was ſoon after (with above 8000 of his Men) ſlain; not far diſtant.

Carlingford.

Carlingford, another good and well frequented *Port-Town*.

Lough. Ardeth.

Lough, a fair Town, conveniently ſeated on the River *Warren*.

Ardeth, a good Inland dry Town.

County of Armagh deſcribed.

ARMAGH, a County of an exceeding fertil Soil, and not inferiour to any in the Kingdom. It is ſevered into five *Baronies*, viz. *Fowes*, *Orrior*, *Tawrane*, *Onelan*, and *Armagh*: And hath for its chief places,

Armagh.

Armagh, ſeated on (or near) the River *Kaiſin*, an ancient (but ruinated) City, yet dignified with the See of an *Archbiſhop*, who is Primate of all *Ireland*; which name it is ſaid to receive from Queen *Armacha*; and is ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Dearmach*. And here (according to St. *Bernard*) St. *Patrick* the Apoſtle of the *Iriſh* ruled, during his life, and when he departed this World, was here Interr'd, in honour of whom it was a place greatly reverenced.

Not

Not far from *Armagh* is *Owen Maugh*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Ulster*; and on the River *Blackwater* are two Forts, one which beareth the same name, and the other called *Fort Charles*. *Owen-Maugh.*

Mount Norris, another Fort: And *Dornous*. *Mount Norris, Dornous.*

MONOGHAN, a County very hilly, and well clothed with *Wood*, is severed into four *Baronies*, viz. *Monoghan*, *Trough*, *Bartrey*, and *Cremorne*: And hath for its chief places, County of *Monoghan* described.

Clogher, seated on the River *Blackwater*. *Clogher.*

Monoghan, a large Fort; *Churchland*, and *Lisbanahan*. *Monoghan.*

CAVAN, a small County, and of less account, yet is divided into seven *Baronies*, viz. *Clonehy*, *Tullogbgarvy*, *Casterahan*, *Clonmoghan*, *Tullabagh*, *Tullabonoho*, and *Loughtee*. And hath for its chief places, County of *Cavan* described.

Cavan, and *Kilmore*, the one seated on the Lake *Cane*, the other on the Lake *Nivity*, both which are joyned to the Lake *Earne*, by the River *Blackwater*. *Cavan*, and *Kilmore.*

FERMANAGH, a County well clothed with *Wood*, and very boggy in the midst, having several *Lakes* or *Loughs*, the chief amongst which is that of *Earne*, which is the largest and most famous in all the Kingdom, having therein seated divers small Isles; and in this *Lough* are such great store of *Salmons*, *Trouts*, and other Fish, that they are oft-times found troublesom to the Fishermen, by breaking their Nets. This County is severed into three *Baronies*, viz. *Magherestrephana*, *Maghereboy*, and *Clanawly*. And hath for its chief places, County of *Fermanagh* described.

Bal-Tarbet, seated on the same Lake. *Bal-tarbet.*

Inis Killing, the principal Fort in this Tract, which in *Anno* 1593. was defended by the Rebels, but taken from them by the valiant Captain *Dowdall*: and near unto this place is a great downfal of water, called the *Salmon-leap*. *Inis Killing.*

CONNAUGH.

THis Province, called by the *Irish Conaughty*, is full of *Woods* and *Bogs*, yet not unfertil, nor wanting in Provisions. In this Province, at *Knocktoe*, that is, the *Hill of Axes*, the greatest rabble of Rebels that ever were seen together in the Kingdom, were gathered together, and commanded by *William Burk O-Brien*, *O-Carrol*, and *Mac-nemare*, grand Rebels in that time, but were discomfited by the noble Valour of *Girald Fitz-Girald*, Earl of *Kildare*, and his party. And about the Year 1316. upon the occasion of two *Princes* or *Lords* falling at odds, there were said to be slain on both sides about 4000 Men, and so great misery came amongst them through Famine, (being forced to eat one another) and other calamities; that of about 10000 there were left alive not above 300. Full of Bogs, and Woods.

This Province hath for its Eastern Bounds, *Leimster*; for its Southern, *Monster*; for its Northern, *Ulster*; and for its Western, the *Sea*, where it hath many commodious *Bays*, *Creeks*, and Navigable *Rivers*. Its Bounds.

Its Extent from *Tromer* in the East to *Barrag-Bay* in the West (being the breadth) is about 80 miles; and from the River *Shennon* in the South to *Eniskelling* in the North (being the length) is about 120; and in circumference about 400 miles; and for its division is parted into six Counties, viz. *Mayo*, *Slego*, *Galloway*, *Clare* or *Twomond*, and *Letrym*; all which are subdivided into several *Baronies*, as hereafter shall be named: And of these in order. Its Extent.

MAYO, a pleasant and fertil County, stored with *Cattle*, *Deer*, *Hawks*, and *Hony*, and well watered with the two large Loughs of *Meske*, and *Garogh*, in which are several Isles, which with the *Rivers* that fall into the *Sea*, where are seated several Isles; the Inhabitants are plentifully supplied with *Fish* and *Fowl*. It is severed into nine *Baronies*, viz. *Tirrawly*, *Eris*, *Gallin*, *Coragh*, *Burishoole*, *Muriske*, *Kilmaine*, *Clonmoris*, and *Castello*; And hath for its chief places, County of *Mayo* described.

Killaloy,

Killaloy. *Killaloy*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, which formerly was at *Mayo*, where (according to *Bede*) there was a Monastery for 30 *English men*, built by an *Irish Bishop*; and was in a flourishing condition in the Reign of King *John*.

Rifraint. Stackby. *Refraine* and *Stackby*, both seated on the Sea-shoar.

County of Slego described. *SLEGO*, a County full of rich Pastures, which breed and fatten store of Cattle, and is well watered with the *Sea*, and the Lough *Earne* already treated of. It is divided into six *Baronies*; viz. *Carbury*, *Corran*, *Leny*, *Tirrarill*, *Tirreragh*, and *Coolavin*. And hath for its chief places,

Slego. *Slego*, seated on a Bay of the Sea so called, where it hath a commodious Road for Ships, and is defended by a *Castle*.

Dundroes. Dunbroyle. *Dundroes* and *Dunbroyle*, both Maritim-Towns.

County of Galloway described. *GALLOWAY*, a large and fertil County both for Tillage and Pasturage, whose Western part is washed with the Sea, which thrusteth forth several Arms, and hath lying on its Shoars divers Isles, of which the three largest (which bear the name of *Aran*) are *Great-Island*, *Ifor-Island*, *Small-Island*, all seated in the Mouth of *Galloway-Bay*. It is separated into fifteen *Baronies*, viz. *Moycullin*, *Ballinananen*, *Clare*, *Downamore*, *Bealamo*, *Killehane*, *Kilcouel*, *Clanemacfonene*, *Longford*, *Tiaquin*, *Athenry*, *Dunkillin*, *Kilcartan*, *Lough-Reagh*, and *Letrim*. And hath for its chief places,

Galloway. *Galloway*, a fair, large, and strong City, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, and is commodiously seated for Traffick on a spacious Bay of the Sea so called, by reason whereof it is well inhabited, frequented, and enjoyeth a good Trade. Nigh unto this City is the Lough *Carble* or *Carbles*, about 20 miles in length, and 3 or 4 in breadth, in which are abundance of small Isles.

Inis-Ceath. *Inis-Ceath*, a place in times past well known for its *Monastery*.

Inis-Bovind. *Inis-Bovind*, which *Bede* calleth *White-Castle-Isle*.

Aterith. Clan-Ricard. Kilmaculo and Clonfert. *Aterith*, or *Athenry*, once a place of good strength. *Clan-Ricard*, *Kilmaculo*, and *Clonfert*.

County of Clare described. *CLARE*, or *TWOMOND*, a County shooting it self far into the Sea towards the West, with a tapred *Promontory*, which with the River *Shannon*, and the Lough *Derg* (both full of small Isles) doth almost encompass it. It is a Country well provided of all things necessary for the sustenance of Man, is severed into nine *Baronies*, viz. *Burrins*, *Corcomroe*, *Ibrickam*, *Inchiquin*, *Islands*, *Clanderlagh*, *Moyfertagh*, *Bounraty*, and *Tullogh*. And hath for its chief places,

Clare. *Clare*, seated on a Creek which floweth out of the *Shannon*.

Kylaloe. *Kylaloe*, seated on the *Shannon* near the Lough *Derg*, dignified with an *Episcopal See*.

Kilsennerag. Bunraty. *Kilsennerag* and *Bounraty*, not far from the *Shannon*; a Town of some account.

County of Roscomon described. *ROSCOMON*, a long but narrow County, of a very fertil Soil, and breedeth store of *Cattle*; but Northwards, where the *Curlew Mountains* are, it is inclined to sterility. It is divided into seven *Baronies*, viz. *Roscomon*, *Boyle*, *Bealanioo*, East and West *Ballintuber*, *Athlone*, and *Moycarne*. And hath for its chief places,

Roscomon. *Roscomon*, seated near the Lough *Ree*, once a place of good account and strength.

Elphen. *Elphen*, honoured with the See of a *Bishop*.

Athlone. *Athlone*, scituate on the Lough *Ree*, defended by a *Castle*, and beautified with a fair *Stone-Bridge*. And under the *Curlew-Hills* in former time was a famous *Abby*, together with the *Abby* of *Beatitude*.

County of Letrim described. *LETRIM*, a hilly County, yet very fit for grasing of *Cattle*, which are here in great abundance. It is severed into five *Baronies*, viz. *Letrim*, *Drumaheire*, *Rosdogher*, *Carrigallin*, and *Moyhill*. And hath for its principal places,

Letrim. Menkerk. *Letrim*, seated in a fertil Soil, near the Lough *Alyne*; and *Menkerk*.

MUN-

MUNSTER.

THis Province in *Iriſh* called *Mown*, and in Latin, *Momonia*, is Mountainous, Woody, and of a different Soil, but for the generality very fertil, and abounding in *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*; and the rather as being ſo well watered with *Rivers* and *Bays*, which loſe themſelves in the Sea, which almoſt encompaſſeth it, except towards the Eaſt and North, where it butteth upon the Provinces of *Leimſter* and *Connaugh*; which ſaid Bays afford good Harbours for Shipping, the chief amongſt which being thoſe of *Bautre*, *Mare*, *Dingle*, and *Sennon*: And along the Shoar are ſeated abundance of ſmall Iſles. Its Commodities.

It is of a large extent, being from *Waterford-Haven* in the Eaſt to *Feriter-Haven* in the Weſt, about 100 miles; and from *Baltimore-Bay* in the South to *Galloway-Bay* in the North, about 90; and in circumference, tracing its many *Promontories* and *Indents*, above 500 miles. Extent.

And as to its *Temporal Government*, it is at preſent ſevered into ſix Counties, *viz. Limerick*, *Tipperary*, or *Holy-Croſs*, *Kerry*, *Cork*, *Deſmond*, and *Waterford*; all which are ſubdivided into ſeveral *Baronies*, as ſhall be treated of as they come in order; and firſt with *Limerick*. Diviſion.

LIMERICK, a fertil and well inhabited County, is ſevered into eleven *Baronies*, viz. *Abbey-Outheney-boy*, *Limerick-Liberty*, *Clan-Williams*, *Small-County*, *Coſhma*, *Coſhlea*, *Killmalock*, *Poblebria*, *Kenry*, *Cuonagh*, and *Connelloe*. And hath for its chief places, County of *Limerick* deſcribed.

Limerick, in *Iriſh*, *Loumeagh*, the chief City in the Province, ſeated in an Iſle, ſo made by the River *Shennon*, which after 60 miles courſe loſeth it ſelf in the Sea; and by reaſon of its commodious ſcituation, the River being Navigable to the very City, makes it to be a place well inhabited and frequented, is graced with good built Houſes, beautified with a *Cathedral Church*, and a fair *Stone-Bridge*, is honoured with the See of a *Biſhop*, and is ſtrongly fortified with a *Caſtle*, and begirt with a *Wall*. *Limerick*.

Kill-Mallo, a well inhabited Town, which is alſo begirt with a *Wall*. *Killmallo*.

Adare, ſeated on the *Shennon*, once a Town of good account: And *Clan-William*. *Adare*.

TIPPERARY, or *HOLY-CROSS*, more fertil in its Southern parts than elſewhere, is divided into twelve *Baronies*, viz. *Slevardagh* and *Compſey*, *Kilnemana*, *Ikerin*, *Iffa* and *Offa*, *Iliogurty*, *Middle-third*, *Owney* and *Arra*, *Clan-Williams*, *Ileagh*, *Kilnelougurty*, *Upper-Ormond* and *Lower-Ormond*; and hath for its principal places, County of *Tipperary*, or *Holy-Croſs* deſcribed.

Caſſile, ſeated on the *Showr*, and dignified with an *Archiepiſcopal See*, by *Eugenius* the Third, Biſhop of *Rome*. *Caſſile*.

Holy-Croſs, ſeated on the River *Showr* or *Swire*, once a place of good account and note for its famous *Abby*, which was well frequented by *Pilgrims*, and other devout perſons, who came to ſee and worſhip a piece (as was generally ſuppoſed) of the *Holy-Croſs*, from whence the Country adjoyning is generally called County of the *Holy-Croſs* of *Tipperary*. *Holy-Croſs*.

Emeley, dignified with the See of a *Biſhop*; once a place of good account, and well inhabited and frequented. *Emeley*.

Clomel, ſeated on the River *Showr*, a well frequented Town. *Clomel*.

Carick-Mac-Griffin, ſcituate on a Rock. *Thurles* and *Tipperary*. *Carick-Mac-Griffin*. *Thurles*, and *Tipperary*.

The North part of this County (which is very hilly, and not over fertil) beareth the name of *Ormond*, and is honoured in giving Title to his Grace *James Butler*, Duke, Marqueſs, and Earl of *Ormond*, Earl of *Brecknock* and *Oſſery*; Viſcount *Thurles*, Baron of *Arklow* and *Lanthony*, Lord Steward of his Majeſties Houſhold, Knight of the Garter, and one of the Lords of his Majeſties moſt Honourable Privy Council, &c.

County of *Kerry* described.

KERRY, a County watered with the Sea, where it thrusteth forth a large Bay called *Dingley-Bay*, and hath on its Shoar divers small Isles. It is very Mountainous and Woody, but interlaced with fertil Valleys. 'Tis divided into eight *Baronies*, viz. *Glaneroughty*, *Iveragh*, *Dunkerone*, *Moygunnyhy*, *Trughanackme*, *Corkaguiny*, *Iraghticonnor*, and *Clanmorris*; And hath for its chief places,

Dingle. *Dingle*, which hath a commodious Port, on the other side of which is *Smerwick-Sound*, a good Road for Ships.

Ardart. *Ardart*, a place of mean account, although the See of a Bishop; and

Traley. *Traley*.

County of *Desmond* described.

DESMOND, a Mountainous County, and well washed with the Sea, which thrusteth forth its Arms a good way into the Land, and forms three Promontories, *viz.* first that of *Eragh*, lying between *Baltimore* and *Bantre*, a Bay sufficiently well known for the great store of *Herrings* here taken. Secondly, that of *Beare*, being enclosed between the Bays of *Maire* and *Dingle*. It hath for its chief places,

Donekyran. *Donekyran*, defended by a Castle: *Ardes*, and

Ardes. *Downbay*.

Downbay.

County of *Corke* described.

CORKE, a large County, lying on the Sea, where it hath good Roads and Ports for Ships. It is severed into fifteen *Baronies*, viz. *Duhallo*, *Condons* and *Clangibon*, *Orrery* and *Kilmore*, *Fermoy*, *Imokillire*, *Barrimore*, *Corke*, *Coursey*, *Kinsale*, *Barriroe*, *Ibawne*, *Beare* and *Bantry*, *Musbery*, *Carbury*, and *Barrets*. And hath for its chief places,

Corke. *Corke*, the chief City in the Province, dignified with the See of a *Bishop*, commodiously seated on a Bay of the Sea, where it hath a good *Haven*, by reason of which it is a place well inhabited, and frequented by *Merchants* and *Tradesmen*, who drive a good Trade; and is a place of some strength, being begirted with a *Wall*, besides a *River*, over which it hath a Bridge.

Kinsale. *Kinsale*, seated at the Mouth of the River *Bany*, where it hath a good Port, and is a place well fortified.

Ross. *Ross*, seated on the *Sea-shoar*; once of good account, when it had a good Road and Port, which now is barred up.

Yoghall. *Yoghall*, fortified with a *Wall*, and scituate on the River *Broadwater*, at its influx into the Sea, where it hath a good *Haven*, which makes it to be well inhabited, and to enjoy some Trade.

County of *Waterford* described.

WATERFORD, a pleasant and fertil County, washed with the Sea, is divided into seven *Baronies*, viz. *Deeceis*, *Gualtier*, *Coshmore* and *Coshbride*, *Middle-third*, *Upper-third*, *Glambery*, and *Waterford-Liberty*. And hath for its chief places,

Waterford. *Waterford*, by the *Britains* and *Irish* called *Porthlargy*, said to be built by certain Pirates of *Norway*, seated on the River *Showr*, on which it hath a commodious and capacious Port, where about a 1000 Sail of Ships may safely ride at Anchor: It is a fair and well inhabited City, enjoyeth a good Trade, is dignified with the See of a Bishop, and is esteemed the second place of note in the whole Kingdom.

Dungarvan. *Dungarvan*, a well fortified Town on the Sea-shoar, where it hath a good Road for Ships, which makes it to be of some account.

Ardmort. *Ardmore*, also seated on the Sea-shoar.

Lismore. *Lismore*, a place of some note.

Divers small Isles in the *British Sea*.

And thus much for the Description of *Ireland*, besides which, and *Great Britain*, there are a vast number of lesser Isles, which may be comprehended under the denomination of the *British Isles*, and may be considered under four sorts or heads; *viz.* the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, the *Sorlinges*, and the Isles of *Scilly*, with those of the *Sporades*: And of these in order.

THE

THe *ORCADES*, or ISLES of *ORKNEY*, are in number 32, and scituate against the Northern Cape of *Scotland*, from which it is separated by a narrow Streight. In *Solinus* his time they were uninhabited, and overgrown with sledgy or rushy Weeds, and at present they are not overcrowded with People, as not being very commodious to dwell in, being very cold, destitute of *Woods*, and unfit to bear *Wheat*, so that instead of Bread-corn they make use of dried *Stock-fish*, which they beat to powder. And these *Isles*, according to *Tacitus*, are said to be first discovered by *Julius Agricola*, when he sailed round *Britain* with his Fleet, at which time he brought them under his subjection: After that, according to *Nimnius*, *Otta*, and *Ebissus*, *Saxons* (who served under the *Britains*) sailed about the *Picts* Country with 40 Sail of *Cyules*, that is, *Flyboats*, or *roaving Pinnaces*, and sorely wasted these *Isles*: Soon after this they fell into the hands of the *Norwegians*, who kept the possession thereof until the Year 1266, at which time the *Scots* waging War with them, *Magnius*, the Fourth of that name (then King of *Norway*) was constrained to surrender them up again upon composition unto *Alexander* the Third, King of the *Scots*, which was afterwards confirmed by King *Haquin*: And in *Anno* 1498, *Christian* the First, King of *Norway* and *Denmark*, upon the Marriage of his Daughter to *James* the Third, King of the *Scots*, renounced all his Right for himself and his Successors thereunto. *Isles of Orkney, when first discovered, and how subdued.*

And the People that inhabit these *Isles*, as well in Language as Behaviour, resemble much of the *wild Irish*, and are called *Redshanks*, a sort of People utterly rude and barbarous. The chief of these *Isles* are as followeth: *Its People.*

POMONIA, by *Solinus* called *Pomona Diutina*, and by the Inhabitants *Mainland*, for that it is far larger than all the rest, being about 26 miles in length, and 6 in breadth; an Isle well stored with *Lead* and *Tin*, is indifferently inhabited, and hath for its chief Town, *Pomonia.*

Kirke-wale, a large Town, dignified with an *Episcopal See*, is fortified with two *Castles*; and for Divine Worship hath 12 *Churches*, one of which, to wit its *Cathedral*, is a fair Structure. *Kirkwale.*

HOY, indifferent large, having several Towns; *Souna*, *Flotta*, *South-Ranals*, *Burra*, *Siapins*, *Eglis*, *Roous*, *Wester*, *Papa*, *Fara*, *Hesh*, or *Eda*, *Streoms*, *Sand-Isle*, and *North-Ranals*, with divers others of less note, and not worth the naming. *Hoy*, with other Isles.

The ISLES of *SHETLAND*, by some (though falsly) esteemed the *Thule* of the Ancients, and by the Commentator upon *Horace*, the *Fortunate* Island, where (according to the fabulous Opinion of *Tzetzes*) the Souls of good men are Ferried over into those *Elysian Fields*, which are always clothed in their Summer-Livery; but the mistake is very gross, for on the contrary, this Isle lying in the Latitude of 63 *degrees*, is extreamly Cold, and the greatest part of the Year pestered with *Ice* and *Snow*; and the more, as lying on every side open to the bitter Storms of the Northern Ocean. *Shetland Isles.*

The *HEBRIDES*, *HEBUDES*, or Western Isles, as seated Westwards of *Scotland*, are about 44 in number, and for the generality are plentifully provided with *Corn*, *Woods*, *Sheep*, *Salmons*, *Herrings*, and other *Fish*, as also with *Fowl*, *Deer*, and *Conies*. And for the People (according to *Solinus*) they are said to be uncivil, ignorant of Religion, Arts, and Literature, contenting themselves in a mean condition, for Food, Rayment, or Habitation; and all these *Isles* were anciently ruled by a King of their own, which was not by succession, but election; and to that end their Kings were prohibited to marry, but were permitted to enjoy other mens Wives, which he fancied, when, and as long as he pleased. And 'tis said, that in the other part of *Scotland* (according to ancient Custom) the Virginity of all Newmarried Wives were the Landlords due, until such time that King *Malcolme* made a Law, that half a Mark should be paid for redemption. It seemeth *Maiden-heads* in these parts were then of no great value, for a *Mark Scotch* is little above a *Shilling English*. The chief of these Isles are, Isle of *Hebrides* described.

Lewis-Isle. *LEWIS*, or *LEVISA*, the largest of all these Isles, being about 60 miles in length and 30 in breadth; an Isle full of steep, craggy, and stony Hills, not over-thronged with Inhabitants, but hath several small Towns.

Skye-Isle. *SKYE*, adjoyning to the Sea-Coast of *Scotland*, almost as large as *Lewis*, hath several Inlets of the Sea, is Hilly and Barren: And hath for its chief places,

Tranterniſca. *Tanterneſca*, seated on the Sea-shoar, before which lieth a small Isle.

Dunbegan. *Dunbegan*, seated on a Creek or Arm of the Sea, and *Dunskaca*.

Dunskaca. *Euſt-Isle.* *EUST*, an Isle (or rather Isles) of a long, but narrow extent, in which are seated several small Towns. And near unto the Southern part of this Isle lie several small ones, the chief amongst which is *Barray*.

Mula-Isle. *MULA*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maleos*, about 28 miles long, and 20 broad, is seated near unto the County of *Lorne* in *Scotland*, from which it is severed by an Arm of the Sea, where are such abundance of small Isles, that the passage is almost choaked up. It is an Isle (as all the rest) hilly, and not over fertil, but affords good store of *Fish* and *Fowl*, and hath Mines of *Lead* and *Tin*. Its chief places are,

Arroiſca. *Arroiſca*, scituate on the Sea-shoar, which regardeth the County of *Laquebra* in *Scotland*.

Dovert-Castle. *Dovert-Castle*, also scituate towards the Coast of *Scotland* Eastwards.

Ila-Isle. *ILA*, of old *EPIDIUM*, of about 24 miles in length, and 16 in breadth, almost divided into two parts by Inlets of the Sea. It is plentifully stored with *Cattle* and Herds of *Red-Deer*, and its Land, which is of a Champain and fertil Soil, beareth good *Corn*, and participating something with the quality of *Ireland*, from which it is not far distant. In this Isle are seated several Towns, amongst which are *Gwelcoul*, *Kylmany*, and *Dunweg*.

Sura-Isle. *SURA*, a small Isle, lying between *Ila* and *Scotland*, where, at *Sodore*, formerly the Seat of a Bishop, who had Jurisdiction over all these Isles, stood a *Monastery* famous for the Tombs of the *Scotish Kings*, and the frequent recourse of Holy men thereunto; amongst whom *Columbe*, the Apostle of the *Picts*, was of chief note, and from whose *Cell* the Isle is also called *Columb-Kill*.

Arran-Isle. *ARRAN*, which *Antonius* calleth *Glotta*, is an Isle seated in the *Dunbritain-Frith*, between the Counties of *Cantyr*, *Argile*, *Kyle*, and *Galloway*. It hath for its chief places,

Arran, Brydyk. Glenkill. *Arran*, seated on a Bay of the Sea. *Brydyk*, and *Glenkill*.

All the rest of the *Isles*, comprehended under the name of the *Hebrides*, are very small and inconsiderable, being either stony, very barren, or else inaccessible, by reason of the craggy Clifts; wherefore I shall omit the naming of them.

The Isles of *Scilly.* The ISLES of *SCILLY*, by the *Dutch* called the *Sorlings*, and by the ancient *Greeks* the *Hesperides* and *Cassiterides*, are scituate against the most Western Cape of *Cornwall*, from which they are about 24 miles distant, and are about 145 in number; all being plentifully stored with *Coneys*, *Cranes*, *Herons*, and other *wild Fowl*, which breed in the craggy Cliffs and Hills, and some of them fertil in Grain. Amongst these Isles, these following are of chief note:

Scilly. *SCILLY*, which communicates its name to the rest of the Isles; *Armagh*, *Agnes*, *Sampson*, *Brefar*, *Rusco*, *St. Hellens*, *St. Martins*, *Arthur*, and *St. Maries*, the largest and most fertil of all both for *Corn* and *Pastures*, is about eight miles in circuit; is strengthned with a *Castle*, called *Stella Maria*, built by Queen *Elizabeth*; and hath a large and commodious Harbour for Ships.

Under the Name of the *SPORADES*, may be comprehended several ISLES, which are dispersed about the *British Seas*. And first the Isle of *Man*.

MAN,

MAN, an Island scituate in that part of the *British Ocean*, which is called *St. Georges Channel*, and lieth between the Kingdoms of *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*, to wit, South of *Scotland*, West of *England*, and East of *Ireland*; from all which it is not so far distant, but that in a clear day, on the top of *Sceaful-Hill* (which is in the midst of the Isle) all the three Kingdoms may easily be seen. Isle of *Man*. Its scituation.

This *Isle* by *Ptolomy* was called *Moneda*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; by the *Britains*, *Menow*; by the *English*, *Man*; and by the Inhabitants, *Maninge*. Its Names.

The Air is sharp, but healthful, and subject to high Winds; yet the Frosts are short, and the Snow lieth not long in the Valleys. The Soil is reasonable fruitful (yet very Mountainous) affording good store of *Wheat* and other Grain, especially *Oats*, of which the Inhabitants make their Bread; and its Pastures feed good Flocks of *Sheep*, and Herds of *Cattle*, which for smallness resemble those of the ancient *Irish* breed. Here are great store of *Fowl* of sundry sorts, especially in the Isle of *Calf*, a very small spot, seated in the South-part towards *Anglesey*, where there are also abundance of *Puffines*, a certain *Sea-Fowl* that breeds in *Cony-holes*, and are chiefly useful for their *Feathers*, and the Oil made of them; yet their Flesh, if pickled or salted, comes little short of *Anchova's*, by reason of their Fish-like tast. Here are also *Red-Deer*, abundance of *Coneys*, and in its fresh-water Rivers and Sea-Coast, are taken store of *Fish*. Its Air, temperature, and fertility. Isle of *Calf*.

It produceth *Hemp* and *Flax* in great plenty; also *Wool*, *Hides*, *Tallow*, *Goats-skins*, *Lead-Oar*, *Herrings* in small quantities, and *Corn*, when they are assured that there is enough to serve themselves.

The Inhabitants do not much addict themselves to Traffick, only contenting themselves in way of Barter for such Necessaries as they have most occasion for, as *Iron*, *Salt*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, and the like; and for support of this their small Trade, they make choice of certain Merchants, which are chosen by the Inhabitants at the *Tinewald-Court*, and accordingly are sworn by the *Deemsters* or *Judges* to deal uprightly, and for the profit of the Inhabitants. And these Merchants are the only persons that do negotiate with such as bring Commodities unto them in way of Barter; and what Bargains the said Merchants make, the Inhabitants are obliged to stand unto; and the said Commodities so taken in Truck, are equally distributed to every one according to the Goods he parted with. Its Trade and Commodities.

The form of this *Isle* is long and narrow, being about 30 miles in length, and about 9 in breadth, where broadest. Its Form.

It is very destitute of *Wood*, which makes the Inhabitants use *Turff* and *Peat* for their Firing.

It is generally an High-land on the Sea-Coast, and guarded with Rocks, at a farther distance than the *Low-water-mark*.

The Inhabitants were anciently the *Hebrides* or *Highlanders*, which is apparent by their Language; and before Christianity had footing here, were very rude and barbarous; but at present they are a civil and laborious People, no ways voluptuous in their Diet, nor costly in their Apparels or Habitations; they are very Religious, and neglect not the Church, yet (as all People) they are inclined to *Venery*; Contentions and Strifes they are not much addicted unto, living in Amity together; and for Recreation, they are so much addicted to the musick of the *Violin*, that there is scarce any Family but is provided therewith. Its Inhabitants.

As to the Government for Spiritual Affairs, it hath a *Bishop*, who at present is the Right Reverend Dr. *Henry Bridgman*, and is called Lord Bishop of *Sodore*; and for Temporal Affairs, a *Lieutenant*, or *Governour*, with two *Deemsters* or *Judges*, a *Controller*, a *Clerk* of the *Rolls*, a *Receiver*, a *Water-Bailiff*, an *Attorney-General*, and other Officers. And to their further assistance (as occasion requireth for the deciding of Controversies, &c.) are usually called the 24 *Keys* of the Isle, especially once every year, to wit, upon *Midsomer-day* at *St. Johns Chapel* to the *Tinewild-Court*, where (upon a Hill adjoyning to the said *Chapel*) the Inhabitants of the Isle, being there assembled, hear the Laws The Government.

and

and Ordinances agreed upon before in the *Chapel*, which is performed with no small ceremony and pomp, especially if the Lord of the Isle be present, who is seated on a Chair of State, with a Canopy over his head, and attended by his Barons, *viz.* the *Bishop*, the *Deemsters*, the *Gentry*, and the *Yeomanry*. The present Lord of the Isle (who is called *King* in *Man*) is the Right Honourable *Charles Stanley*, Earl of *Darby*, Baron *Strange* of *Knocking* and *Mohan*, &c. a Dignity hereditary to him and his Heirs.

Good Orders observed in their Law.

The Inhabitants have a great happiness above those of *England*, in that they are freed from necessary and chargeable Suits, and heavy Fees of the *Lawyers*; for here no *Judge* or *Clerks* take any thing for drawing up Orders, or making up Processes, all Controversies being ended by the *Deemsters* without Writings, or matter of Charge; and for the deciding the same they have their several Courts, kept at certain times of the year for the Inhabitants of such a *sheading* or division of the *Isle*, where they have particular Officers, which do observe good Rules and Orders.

The People do here observe two very good Customs; the one, in not permitting the Poor to get their living by Begging; and the other, that when the Women go abroad, they begirt themselves with their *Winding-sheet*, to put them in mind of their Mortality.

This *Isle* is severed into two parts, *viz.* South and North, whereof the Inhabitants of the one have affinity with the *Scots*, and the other with the *Irish*. And in these parts are numbred 17 *Parishes*, and many *Villages*; is defended by two *Castles*, and for intercourse of Traffick hath five *Market-Towns*. Its chief places are,

Its chief places.

Douglas, the best Peopled Town, and of the greatest resort by reason of its commodious Haven, unto which the *French* and others come to Traffick with them for their Commodities, as aforesaid; and for the security of the Harbour here is a *Block-house*.

Douglas.

Russin, or *Castle-Town*, where (within a small Isle) Pope *Gregory* the Fourteenth instituted an *Episcopal See*: It is fortified with a strong *Castle*, but of no great importance, as to the security of the place, by reason of its distance from the rocky and shallow Harbour.

Russin.

Laxi-Town, seated on a Bay so called.

Laxi-Town.

Ramsey, scituate on the Sea, where it hath a Haven, which for defence hath some *Guns* mounted thereon.

Ramsey.

Peel, or *Peel-Castle*, seated in St. *Patricks-Isle*, a place of great strength towards the Sea, and defended by a *Castle*, being a *Market-Town*, as are the former. Amongst its other places are these following; *Balacuri*, honoured with the Palace of the Bishop, *Kirk-Androw*, *Kirk-Patriark*, *Kirk-Balalough*, *Kirk-Mighill*, *Kirk-Lennon*, *Kirk-Brodon*, *Kirk-Santon*, and *Kirk-Christ*.

Peel.

The Isle of *Jersey* described.

JERSEY, seated near the Coast of *Normandy* in *France*, and opposite to *Hantshire* in *England*, of which it is a part; it is a place of good strength, as well by Nature as Art, as being fenced about with Shelves and Rocks, and defended by several *Castles*. It is an Isle of a fertil Soil, and the more by reason of their rich manuring it, bearing good crops of *Corn*, and other Grain, and breeding store of *Cattle*, especially good Flocks of *Sheep*, whose *Wool* is fine, of which they make *Jersey-Stockings* in great plenty. It is ill clothed with *Wood*, instead of which they use for Fuel a kind of *Sea-weed*, which they call *Vraic*, which plentifully groweth on the Rocks, and in the craggy *Islands*, and this being dried, they burn, and with the Ashes they manure the Land: Nor are they permitted to gather it, but in the *Spring* and *Summer-season*, and then upon certain days, according to the appointment of the Magistrates.

Its extent.

This Isle containeth in length, from *Mount-Orguil-Castle* in the East to *Sentwon-pool* in the West, about 10 miles; and in breadth, from *Dubon-point* in the South to *Plymouth-Bay* in the North, about 6; and in circumference about 38 miles.

It is

It is blest with a sweet, temperate, and wholsom Air, not being subject to any disease, except Agues in *September*. It is well watered with fresh Streams, and hath great plenty of Fruit: and the Inhabitants, who are much of the nature of the *French*, in their Language, Manners, &c. live very happily, enjoy the fruits of their labour, addicting themselves to Fishing, but principally to the Manufacture of *Stockings*, which finds good vent in *England*, and elsewhere. Its Air and temperature.

The Government of this Isle is as followeth; *viz.* a *Governour* or *Captain* is sent over by the King of *England*, who appointed Sub-Officers, as a *Bailiff*, who together with twelve *Jurates*, or sworn *Assistants*, which are elected out of the 12 Parishes, by the choice of the Inhabitants, sit and administer Justice in *Civil Causes*; but in *Criminal matters*, he sitteth with seven of them; and in *Causes* of *Conscience*, which are to be decided by reason and equity, with only three. Government.

This Isle is every where furnished with commodious *Creeks* and *Havens*, and is garnished with twelve *Parishes*, besides several *Villages*. Its chief places are, Its chief places.

St. Hillares, so called from St. *Hillary* Bishop of *Poictiers*, who was hither banished, and here interr'd: a Town seated on the Sea-shoar, nigh unto which is a small *Isle* so called, which is fortified with a Garrison; and this Town is the principal in the *Isle* for its *Market*, *Commerce*, plenty of *Inhabitants*, and for being the place where the Courts of *Judicature* are kept. *St. Hillarii.*

St. Albans, seated not far from the Sea, where it hath a a Haven; as also a small *Isle* so called. *St. Albans.*

St. Clement, seated on an Arm of the Sea; not far from which is the *Castle* of *Mount-Orguil*, seated on a steep Rock on the Eastern-shoar; nigh unto which is a place called the *Rock*, and another called *St. Katharines-point*: also these Towns, *Trinity*, *St. Johns*, *St. Lawrence*, *St. Brelade*, *St. Peters*, *St. Owen*, *St. Maries*, and *Greve de Leke*; not far from which on the North-shoar, is seated the strong Castle of *Groness*. *St. Clements.* *Mount-Orguil.*

GARNSEY, seated about 15 miles North-west from *Jersey*, and on the same Coast; an *Isle* not so large, nor altogether so fertil as *Jersey*, by reason the Inhabitants do not addict themselves so much to cultivating and manuring it, as they do to Traffick, for which this is more eminent; yet doth it in a liberal manner answer the Husbandmans labour, bringing forth good increase, and breeding good store of Cattle. This *Isle* is seated very high, having many steep Rocks, amongst which is found a hard and sharp Stone called *Emeril*, which is used by *Lapidaries*, for the cleansing, cutting, and burnishing their *precious Stones*; as also by *Glasiers*, for the cutting their Glass. And for many reasons this *Isle* may be preferred before *Jersey*, as for its greater strength, more commodious *Havens*, which are better resorted unto by *Merchants*, and for that it suffereth neither *Toad*, *Snake*, *Adder*, or any other venemous Creature to live, which the other doth. The Isles of *Garnsey* described.

The Government of this Isle, as also the People, as to their Language, Customs, &c. are much the same as in *Jersey*. Its Government.

In this Isle are numbred ten *Parish Churches*, besides *Villages*; the chief amongst which are, Chief places.

St. Peters, a Town not very large, but well inhabited and repleniished with Merchants. It is a place of good strength; for the entry of the Haven, which is Rocky, is fortified on both sides with *Castles*, as also by *Block-houses*, of which that on the right hand called *Cornet*, is seated on a high Rock, which at every High-water is encompassed with the Sea; and here resideth the *Governour*, as also (for the generality) the *Souldiers*, which are kept for the security of the Isle; and is well provided with all sorts of Ammunition for War, if occasion should so happen. Its other places are, *Tortuville*, *St. Saviours*, *St. Andrews*, *Trinity*, *St. Martins*, *St. Maries*, *St. Sampsons*, and *St. Michaels*. On the West part of the Isle, near the Sea, is a Lake of about a mile and an half in compass, which is well repleniished with Fish, especially *Carps*. *St. Peters.* Other places.

This

This Island, as also that of *Jersey*, with several other small ones on the Coast of *Normandy* and *Britain*, are under the Dioceſs of *Winchester*; amongſt which Iſles are thoſe of *Serke*, encompaſſed with ſteep Rocks. And *Jethew*, which ſerveth as a Park for the Governour of *Garnſey*, to feed *Cattle*, to keep *Deer*, *Coneys*, and *Pheſants*, and was formerly a ſolitary place of *Regular Canons*, and after for the *Franciſcan Friars*.

Serk-Iſle.

Jethew-Iſle.

Iſle of Wight. ISLE of *WIGHT*, oppoſite to *Hantſhire*, of which it is a part, already treated of in the deſcription of the ſaid County.

Portland-Iſle. *PORTLAND*, a ſmall Iſle, adjoyning to the County of *Dorſet*, of which it is alſo a part, and already there treated of.

And beſides theſe *Iſles*, there are divers others which may not ſo properly be ranged under theſe four heads aforeſaid; and ſuch are thoſe of

Londay-Iſle. *Londay*, ſeated over againſt *Devonſhire*, about two miles in length, and as much in breadth, very fertil and ſtrong, whoſe chief place beareth the ſame name. Alſo *Chaldey* and *Dennoy*, all in the *Severn Sea*.

Chaldey and Dennoy-Iſles.

Iſles of Sheppey and Thanet. Alſo the *Iſles* of *SHEPPY* and *THANET*, in (and near) *Kent*, already taken notice of; and laſtly thoſe of *FARN*, *COCKET*, and *HOLT-ISLAND*, on the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, likewiſe there treated of.

Thus having given a Deſcription of *EUROPE*, we ſhall in the next place take a View of *ASIA*.

ASIA,

- **ASIA, as it is divided into**
  - **Firm Land; whereof the principal Parts are,**
    - **TURKEY in ASIA, which comprehendeth the parts and chief places of**
      - Anatolia, — Smyrna, Epheſus, Lamptaco, Burſa, Scutari, Tripoli.
      - Sourie, — Aleppo, Tripoli, Damaſcus, Sayd.
      - Diarbeck, — Caraemit, Achanchive, Samoſat.
      - Turcomanie, — Erzerum, Cars, Majaierequin.
    - **GEORGIE; which comprehendeth the parts and chief places of**
      - Mingrelie, — Fazze, Savatopoli.
      - Gurgiſtan, — Cori.
      - Zuirie, — Chipeche, Strana.
      - Little Turcomanie, — Derbent.
    - **ARABIA; with its parts and chief places of**
      - Arabia the Stony, — Buſſores, Moab.
      - Arabia the Deſert, — Anna.
      - Arabia the Happy, — Medina, Mecca, Aden.
    - **PERSIA; with its chief Provinces and places of**
      - Servan, — Tauris.
      - Gilan, — Gilan.
      - Gorgian, — Gorgian.
      - Churdiſtan, — Choy.
      - Ayrack, — Hiſpahan, Casbin.
      - Chorazan, — Kayen.
      - Chuſiſtan, — Souſter.
      - Fars, — Chiraez.
      - Kherman, — Giroft.
      - Sableſtan, — Zarans.
    - **INDIA, as it is divided into the**
      - **Empire of the GREAT MOGOL; wherein are comprehended divers Kingdoms, the chief of which are**
        - Attock, — Attock.
        - Calul, — Cabul.
        - Lahor, — Lahor.
        - Delly, — Delly.
        - Agra, — Agra.
        - Malway, — Rantipore.
        - Guzurate, or Cambaya, — Surat, Cambaya.
        - Bengala, — Bengala.
        - Decan, — Goa.
      - **Peninſula of INDIA without the Ganges, with its ſeveral Kingdoms, &c. the chief of which are,**
        - Golconda, — Golconda.
        - Biſnagar, — Biſnagar, Harſingue.
        - Malabar, — Calicut.
      - **Peninſula of INDIA within the Ganges; with its Kingdoms and chief places of**
        - Pegu, — Pegu, Boldia.
        - Siam, — Bancock.
        - Malacca, — Malacca.
        - Cochinchina, — Pulocacein.
        - Tunquin, — Keccio.
    - **CHINA; with its chief Provinces and Cities of**
      - Pequin, — Pequin.
      - Nanquin, — Nanquin.
      - Sciantou, — Xanton.
      - Quicheu, — Quicheo.
      - Canton, — Canton.
      - Chequian, — Chequian.
    - **TARTARIA; with its five Parts, and chief places of**
      - Tartaria Deſerta, — Cumbalich.
      - Usbeck, — Jarcham.
      - Turcheſtan, — Chialis.
      - Cathay, — Cambalu.
      - True Tartaria, — Tartar.
  - **ISLES, to wit,**
    - **In the Ocean; as the**
      - **Iſles of JAPON; as**
        - Niphon, — Meaco.
        - Xicoco, — Santuqui.
        - Ximo, — Bango.
      - **PHILLIPPINE Iſles; as**
        - Luſon, — Luſon.
        - Mindanao, — Mindanao.
      - **Iſles of MOLUCCOS; as**
        - Moluques, — Gamma.
        - Celebes, — Celebes.
        - Gilolo, — Gilolo.
      - **Iſles of SONDE; as**
        - Sumatra, — Achem, Aru.
        - Borneo, — Borneo.
        - Java, — Bantam, Jacatra.
      - **Iſles of LARRONS, or THEVES,** — Deſerte.
      - **Iſles of CEYLAN,** — Colombo.
      - **Iſles of the MALDIVES,** — Tilla don Matis.
    - **In the Mediterranean Sea; as**
      - **In the LEVANT Sea; as**
        - Cyprus, — Famagouſte.
        - Rhodes, — Rhodes.
        - Scarpanto, — Scarpanto.
      - **In the ARCHIPELAGO; as**
        - Scio, — Scio.
        - Tenedo, — Metelin.
        - Samo, — Samo.
        - Nicaria, — Nicaria.
        - Lango, — Lango.
        - Stampalia, — Stampalia.

ASIA.

ASIA is one of the Tripartite diviſion of our Continent; and if we conſider the advantages which the Author of Nature hath given it, if the Actions which have paſſed in it both before and after the *Flood*; that the firſt Monarchies, and all Religions have here had their beginnings; that the chief Myſteries (both of the Old and New Law) have there been laid open; we may be induced to prefer it before all other parts, either of the one or other Continent.

Aſia the firſt place of Monarchies, of all Religions, &c.

And as of the two Continents ours is much the greater, the more noble, and moſt conſiderable; ſo is *Aſia* among the three parts of our Continent, the Greateſt, the moſt Oriental, the moſt Temperate, and the Richeſt.

Its Extent from Weſt to Eaſt is from the *55th Meridian* or *degree* of *Longitude* unto the 180, containing 125 *degrees* of *Longitude*, which are about 2500 of our common *Leagues*; and from South to North from the *Equator* to the 72 *Parallel* or *degree* of *Latitude*, which is 72 *degrees* of *Latitude*, and makes about 1800 of our *Leagues*. In this length and breadth we do not comprehend the *Iſlands* which belong to *Aſia*, which are as great, as rich, and poſſibly as numerous, as all the reſt of the Univerſe.

Its length and breadth.

Its Scituation.

Its Scituation, for the moſt part, is between the Circular Tropick of *Cancer*, and the Circle of the *Artick Pole* ſcarce extending it ſelf beyond this, but ſurpaſſing the other in divers of its Iſles, which it expands under the *Equator*: ſo that almoſt all *Aſia* is ſcituate in the *Temperate Zone*; what it hath under the *Torrid*, being either *Peninſula's* or *Iſles*, which the *Waters* and *Sea* may eaſily refreſh.

Aſia the richeſt of all the four Parts.

ASIA being the greateſt, the beſt, and moſt temperate part of our Continent, it muſt by conſequence be the richeſt; which not only appears in the goodneſs and excellencies of its *Grains*, *Vines*, *Fruits*, *Herbs*, &c. but likewiſe in its great quantities of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Precious Stones*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, and other Commodities and Rarities, which it ſends forth and communicates to other parts, and particularly to *Europe*.

Amongſt the three diviſions of our Continent, *Aſia* is that which hath the faireſt advantage for its greatneſs, and for its ſcituation; being that Country which ſaw the Creation of the firſt *Man*, the making of the firſt *Woman*; which fed the firſt *Patriarks*, gave a place to the *Terreſtrial Paradiſe*; that which received the *Ark* of *Noah* after the Flood; which was the Portion of *Sem*, the eldeſt Son of *Noah*, which built the *Tower* of *Babel*, which furniſhed the reſt of the World with Inhabitants; which eſtabliſhed the Monarchies of the *Aſſyrians*, *Medes*, *Babylonians*, and *Perſians*; which formed the

Arts

A Generall MAPP of ASIA

Designed by MOUNSIER SANSON Geographer to the FRENCH KING & Rendred into English, & Illustrated by RIC: BLOME. By his MAJ^tis Especial Command

LONDON
Printed for Ric: Blome
1669

PART OF EUROPE

PART OF AFRICA

PART OF WEST INDIA

SEPTENTRIONAL

SEA of MOSCOVIA

SWEDEN

POLAND

TARTARIA

THE CASPIAN SEA

BLACK SEA

TURKEY

TURCOMANIA

ARABIA

PERSIA

INDIA

PENINSULA of INDIA

GANGETICA

SEA of ABEX

SEA of ARABIA

SEA of ZANGUEBER

Æquator or Æquinoctial Line

Madagascar I. or S^t Laurence

Francis Lamb Sculp

AL OCEAN

SEA of TARTARIA

Arctick Circle

Bargu

Ciorza

Sumon

Cataorra

Colmack

Barscol

Carh

Cavona

Mongul

Caracorum

TARTARIA

Naiman

Molair

Iecmongul

Tenduc

Ung

Motrick

Desart of Belgian

Belgian

Serguth

Chinchintalas

Ergimul

TURCHESTAN

Tanguth

Egrigaia

Taimfu

Desart of Lop

Lop

Scian

Gor

Kandahar

Pitan

Iamba

Patna

Udesa

Delli

Bakar

Sual

Agra

San

Meval

Gualeor

Patan

Prurop

Gulph of Bengala

Arra

Pegu

Tunquin

Yumn

Gol

Orixa

Colocuta

SULA

With out the GES

PENINSULA of INDIA

I. of Ceylon

Andaman

I. of Nicobar

Sambilan

GANGES

ISLES

Borneo

I. of Nassau

Pulo Timoa

Malaca

Sumatra

OF SONDA

Java

Streights of Sunda

Desart of

CHINA

Honan

Quan

Huquang

Cheu

Layes

Gne

Ca

Su

Yunnan

Gulph of Cochin China

Chiampa

Cambaya

Cam

boge

Sian

Pahang

Johor

Aceh

Pedir

Pacem

Tenasserim

Ligor

Queda

Patane

Pentam

Salangor

Rio Timoa

Borneo

Succadana

Cirimon

Grissee

Bandan

Java

Carimon

Tabon

Cardana

Batavia

Bantam

Sunda

Timor

Solor

Lantor

Pulo Condor

Cambodia

Tipra

Arracan

Cassimere

Cassimere

Kabares

Naugracut

Siba

Gor

Saxechan

Caracorum

Tangut

Lop

Desart of

Ormus

Persia

Mecca

Arabia

Aden

Abyssines

Nubia

Zanguebar

Monomotapa

Mozambique

Sofala

Melinde

Quiloa

Mombaza

Magadoxo

Barbora

Cape of Good Hope

Terra Australis

Streights of Magellan

Terra del Fuego

Tartar Pr

Anian

Naiman

Ann

Stingui

Desart of Obscurial

Desart of Belgian

Lake of Anian

Mongul

Caracorum

Tenduc

Mongul

Cataorra

Barscol

Carh

Cavona

Colmack

Ciorza

Bargu

Sumon

Arctick Circle

SEA of TARTARIA

AL OCEAN

125 130 135 140 145 150 155

SEPTENTRIO

SEA of MOSCOVIA

THE CASPIAN SEA

PERSIA

ARABIAN SEA

DESERTA

TARTARIA

INDIA

Æquinoctial Line

Francis Lamb Sculp

L OCEAN

SEA of TARTARIA

Arctick Circle

Bargu

Ciorza

Sumon

Barrcol

Carh

gul

Cavona

Mongul

TARTARIA

Tenduc

Molair

Iecmongul

Naiman

Ann

ibi

Motrick

Ung

Stingiu

Desert of Belgian

Belgian

CATHAIA

Serguth

Chinchint alas

Ergmu

TURCHESTAN

Tanguth

Egrigaia

Tainfu

Desert of

Lop

Scian

ton

Gor

Kanduana

Siba

Pitan

Scianton

Corey

Timoc

Udes

sa

Patna

Iamba

Honan

CHI

Nan

quin

Delli

Bakar

Sual

Huq

Agra

San

Mevat

Gualeor

Prurop

Gol

Gulph of Bengala

Pegu

Tun

quin

Yumm

an

Golph of Cochin China

Layes

Quinsan

Canton

Fiquie

Chinam

quan

Cheu

Cio

ca

ne

SULA

With out the

PENIN

INDIA

Cam

boge

Gulph of Sian

SULA of

Witbin the

OF

GANGES

ISLES

Borneo I

DIVES

Sambilon

I of Nicubar

Pointe of Achem

Sillongor

Pahang

Malaca

Sincapura

Bantam

Succadana

OF

SONDA

Iava I.

Celebes

OR MO

Land of Papous

LUCQUES

Bottom

Gilolo

ISLES

A

Tropick of Caneer

CHINA

OCEAN

PHILIP

PINE

ISLES

Isles of Larrons

danao

Corea

Iapan I.

Xicoco

IAPAN

TALL

EAST

SEA of

ISLES of

EN

YEDSO

C Eroen

C Canael

Salvo

Staten Land

Amsterdam

Desertes

Terra del Espirito Santo

Nova Guinea

Nova Britannia

Nova Hibernia

Nova Zelandia

Terra Australis

Magellanica

Terra del Fuego

Straits of Magellan

Le Maire

Cape Horn

Cape Blanco

Cape Virgins

Cape Corrientes

Cape Frio

Cape Bona Esperanza

Cape de Verd

Cape Comorin

Cape Rasalgate

Cape Negrais

Cape Romania

Cape Liampo

Cape Pulo Condor

Cape Cambodia

Cape Varella

Cape Padaran

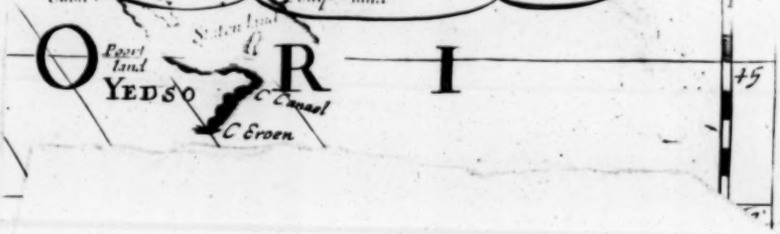
Cape Cambir

Cape Romania

Cape Sambir

Cape Calamba

To
The R.t Noble Christopher Duke of Albemarle. Earle of Torrington, Baron Monk of Potheridge, Beauchamp and Teys, K.t of y. most noble order of y Garter, Lord Leivtenant of Devon-shire & Essex, Captaine of his Ma.tys Guards of Horse, one of y Gentlemen of his Bed-Chamber, & one of y Lords of his most Hon.ble Privy Councell &c.
This Mapp is most humbly D.D
by R. B.



Asia th
place o
narchie
Religio

Its len
breadt

Its Sci

Asia th
est of
four Pa

Arts and *Sciences*, *Letters* and *Laws*; which first and after the Law of Nature received *Paganism*, *Judaism*, *Christianity*, and *Mahumetanism*; which saw the Birth, Life, Death, and Resurrection of the *Saviour* of the World: And therefore for all these Reasons we ought to esteem *Asia* much above either *Africa* or *Europe*. But let us proceed to its Name, Bounds, and Divisions.

The Name of *ASIA* is derived diversly by sundry Authors, but whether it took its name from a *Virgin-Woman*, or a *Philosopher*; whether from some *City*, *Country*, or *Marish*, or from whatever it were, most certain it is, that that Name was first known to the *Greeks*, on that Coast opposite to them towards the East; afterwards it was given to that Region which extends to the *Euphrates*, and which is called *Asia Minor*, and was communicated to all the most Oriental Regions of our Continent. Its Name.

Its Bounds are towards the North, with the *Northern frozen*, or *Scythian Ocean*, to wit, that which washes *Tartary*; on the East and South with the *Oriental* or *Indian Ocean*, the Parts of which are the Seas of *China*, *India*, and *Arabia*. Towards the West, *Asia* is separated from *Africa* by the *Red-Sea*, from the Streight of *Babel-Mandel* unto the *Isthmus* of *Suez*; and from *Europe*, by the *Archipelago*, by the Sea of *Marmora*, and by the *Black-Sea*; drawing a Line cross all these Seas, and passing by the Streight of *Galipoli*, or the *Dardanelles*; by the Streight of *Constantinople*, or Channel of the *Black-Sea*, by the Streight of *Caffa* or *Vospero*; the Line continuing by the Sea of *Zabaque*, and by the Rivers of *Don* or *Tana*, of *Volga* and of *Oby*, where they are joyned the neerest one to another. Its Bounds.

Asia may be divided into firm Land, and Islands; the *firm Land* comprehends the Kingdoms of *Turkey* in *Asia*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, *India*, *China*, and *Tartary*: We will follow this order, and then end with the *Isles*. Its division.

TURKY in ASIA, or that which the Grand Signior doth poſſeſs in whole, or in part, in ASIA; wherein are ſeveral Regions, Countries, Iſles, &c. may be conſidered as they lie

- Weſternly, and towards EUROPE; as, — ANATOLIA, or ASIA MINOR, wherein are comprised ſeveral Provinces; all which are at preſent by the Grand Signior included under four Beglerbeglies, that is, Lord Lieutenants; to wit, thoſe of
  - Anatolia, particularly ſo called: Smyrna, Epheſus, Pergama, Troya, Burſa, Comana, Chalcedoine, Scutari, Sinopi, Caſtele, Angouri, Sardis, Philadelphia.
  - Caramania: Archalich, Side, Nigdia, Tarſus, Satalia, Antiochia.
  - Tocat: Amaſia, Tocat, Trebiſonde, Caſſaria, Caraſſar, Maraſt, Arſingan, Sukas.
  - Aladuli: Vardar, Adana, Maaraz, Manbeg.
- South-weſternly; as, — Divers ISLES, as they lie in the ARCHIPELAGO, MEDITERRANEAN, and ÆGEAN Seas; the chief of which are,
  - Cyprus: Nicoſia, Paphos, Salamis, Amathus, Arſinoe, Famaguſta.
  - Rhodes: Rhodes.
  - Metelin, of old, Lesbos: Metelino, Medina.
  - Samos: Samo.
  - Tenedos: Tenedos.
  - Scarpante: Scarpante.
  - Lero: Lero.
  - Negropont: Colchis.
  - Coos: Coos.
  - Lero: Lero.
  - Pathmos: Pathmos.
  - Scio, or Chios: Scio.
  - Icaria, of old, Icarus: Nicaria.
- Southernly, and regarding Arabia and the Mediterranean Sea; as, — SOURIA, or SYRIA; with its parts of
  - Syria Propria: Aleppo, Aman, Zeugma, Antioch, Samoſat, Hemz, or Emſa, Hierapolis, Alexandretta.
  - Phœnicia: Tripoli, Sayd, or Sidon, Tyre, or Sor, Damaſcus, Acre.
  - Paleſtine, formerly Judea, Canaan, or the Holy-Land: Jeruſalem, Samaria, Naplouſe, Gaza, Joppa, or Juffa.
- Southernly, and towards Arabia Deſerta; as, — ASSYRIA, now DIARBECK; with its parts of
  - Chaldea, or Babylonia, now Yerack: Bagded, or Babylon, Balſera, Couſa, Orchoe, Sipparum.
  - Meſopotamia, or the particular Diarbeck: Orpha, Caraemid, Merdin, Aſanchif, Carra, Sumiſcaſack, Virta.
  - Aſſyria, now Arzerum: Moſul, of old, Ninive, Schiarazur.
- Eaſternly, and regarding Perſia; as, — TURCOMANIA; with its parts of
  - Turcomans: Erzerum, Cars.
  - Curdes: Schildir, Bitlis.
  - Georgiens: Derbent, Tiflis.
- North-Eaſternly, and towards the Caſpian Sea; as, — GEORGIA; with its parts of
  - Avogaſia: St. Sophia.
  - Mingrelie: Phazza, Savatopoli.
  - Gurgiſtan: Cori, Baſſachiuch.
  - Quiria: Zitrach, Stranu, Chipicha.
- Northernly, and towards Moſcovy; as, — COMANIA: Aſof, Maurolaco, Serent.

Turky in Asia.

UNDER the name of *TURKY* in *ASIA* we understand not all which the Great *Turk* possesses, but only certain Regions which he alone possesses, or if there be any Estates intermixed, they are inconsiderable. And in this *Turky* we shall find *Anatolia*, which the Ancients called *Asia Minor*; the greater *Souria*, which the Ancients called *Syria* the Great; *Turcomania*, by the Ancients called *Armenia* the Great; then *Diarbeck*, which answers to *Mesopotamia*, and to divers parts of *Assyria*; and the *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia* of the Ancients.

ANATOLIA is that great *Peninsula*, which is washed on the North by the *Black-Sea*, *Mare Major*, or *Euxine Sea*; and on the South by that part of the *Mediterranean* which we call the *Levant Sea*; which extends Westward to the *Archipelago* or *Ægean Sea*, and thence to the *Euphrates*, which bounds it on the East.

The Parts of *Asia Minor*, or *Anatolia*.

The Ancients divided this Great *Asia Minor* into many lesser Regions; of which the principal are, *viz. Pontus*, *Bithynia*, Little *Asia Minor*; into *Lycia*, *Galatia*, *Pamphilia*, *Cappadocia*, *Cilicia*, *Caria*, *Ionia*, *Æolis*, *Lydia*, *Phrygia* Major and Minor, *Paphlagonia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pysidia*, *Armenia Minor*, *Mysia*, the Isle of *Rhodes*, &c.

But at present the *Turks* do in general call this Great *Asia Minor*, *Anatolia*, which signifies *Orient*: That part of *Anatolia*, which is most exposed to the North, to wit, *Pontus*, *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*, by the appellation of *Rumla*: The more Meridional parts they call *Cottomandia*, which are *Lycia*, *Pamphilia*, and *Cilicia*: The Little *Asia Minor*, which is on the *Archipelago*, hath no other name than that of *Anatolia*.

The *Turks* division of *Anatolia*.

But all these Names are little known amongst them, much less those which are attributed to the lesser parts of *Anatolia*. The *Turks* divide it into four *Beglerbeglies*, which are as our *Lord Lieutenancies*; under which are 35 or 34 *Sangiacats*, which are as our particular Governments.

The *Beglerbeglies* are of *Anatolia*, of *Caramania*, of *Toccat*, and of *Aladuli*: The two first compose all the Western part of *Anatolia*; the two last all the Eastern part. The *Beglerby* of *Anatolia*, hath under him eleven or twelve *Sangiacks*. The *Beglerby* of *Caramania* hath only seven or eight; he of *Toccat* likewise seven or eight; and he of *Aladuli*, five or six.

The Cities where the *Beglerbies* keep their residence, are *Cuitage* or *Cutage*, formerly *Cotyæum*, for him of *Anatolia*; *Cogna*, once *Iconium*; others put *Cæsaria*, once *Cæsaria penes Anazarbum*, for him of *Caramania*; *Amasia*, which keeps its ancient name; and sometimes *Trebizonde*, formerly *Trapezus*, for him of *Toccat*; and *Maraz*, for him of *Aladuli*. But to proceed to the Provinces of *Anatolia*.

The Province of Pontus described.

PONTUS is a Country of a large extent, and taketh up all the length of *Anatolia*, and was by the *Romans* anciently separated into four parts; *viz. Polemoniacus*, *Pontus Galaticus*, *Pontus Cappadocius*, and *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* especially so called.

POLEMONIACUS hath for its chief places, *Nixaria*, formerly *Neo-Cæsarea*, which is the Metropolis; *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*, *Barbanissa*, and lastly *Sebastia*, so called in honour of *Augustus*, whom

whom the *Greeks* called *Sebaſtos*; a place for ſtrength very conſiderable, and contended againſt *Tamerlane*; which was no ſooner taken by him, but (to ſatisfie his Revenge) he cauſed moſt cruelly to be buried alive in great Pits about 12000 Men, Women, and Children. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow. This *Mithridates* was a great and eminent King of *Pontus*, who for 40 years withſtood the *Romans*; not more excellent in War, than in Learning and Memory, who ſpake 22 ſeveral Languages, who invented that Counter-poyſon, from him named *Mithridate*; who at laſt, by the Rebellion of his Son, and the Valour of L. *Sylla*, *Lucullus* and *Pompey*, was vanquiſhed; where *Pompey*, upon a ſmall Iſland at the entrance of the *Euxine Sea*, erected a Pillar, which at this day bears his name, and is by the Inhabitants ſhewed to Strangers, as a memorial of his Victories in theſe parts.

Here *Mithridates* had his overthrow.

In this part of *Pontus*, on the riſe and fall of the River *Thermodon*, and on the Banks thereof, the *Amazons*, a ſort of Warlike-Women were here ſaid to reſide, ſo called, either becauſe they uſed to cut off their right Breaſts, which otherwiſe would be an impediment to their ſhooting, or becauſe they uſed to live together. They were at firſt *Scythians*, and accompanied their Husbands to theſe parts, about the time of the *Scythians* firſt coming into *Aſia*, in the time of *Seſoſtris* King of *Egypt*. Theſe People held a great hand over the *Themiſcyrin*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them, and at laſt by Treachery were murthered; but their Wives being grievouſly angred (as well through Grief and Fear, as Exile and Widdow-hood) ſet upon the Conquerors, under the conduct of *Lempado* and *Marpeſia*; who not only overthrew them, but alſo much added to the largeneſs of their Dominions, and for a conſiderable time continued in great reputation. The Names of the chiefeſt of the *Amazon Queens* were, *Lampedo*, *Marpeſia*, *Ortera*, *Antiopa*, and *Pentheſilea*, who with a Troop of gallant *Virago's* came to the Aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: who at laſt was ſlain by *Pyrrhus*, Son to *Achilles*. Theſe *Amazons*, in matters of Copulation, uſed to go to their neighbouring Men thrice in a year; and if it happened that they brought forth Males, they ſent them to their Fathers; but if Females, then they kept them, and brought them up in the Diſcipline of War and Courage.

A ſhort account of the *Amazonian* Women, who here inhabited.

Chief places in *Pontus Galaticus*.

PONTUS GALATICUS is Eaſtward of *Pontus*; its chiefeſt Cities are, *viz.* 1. *Amaſia*, remarkable for the Martyrdom of *St. Theodorus*, alſo being the Birth-place of *Strabo* the famous *Geographer*, and in theſe latter times for being the reſidence of the eldeſt Sons of the *Grand Signior*, ſent hither as ſoon as circumciſed, who are not to return till the death of their Father. It is a great City, about 4 days Journey from the *Black-Sea*. 2. *Themiſcyra*, now *Favagoria*, ſeated on a large Plain near the Sea. 3. *Diopolis*, remarkable for the great Overthrow *Lucullus* gave to *Mithridates*. 4. *Sinope*, of note for being the Birth and Sepulchre of *Mithridates*. 5. *Caſtamona*, the chief City of the *Iſfendiars*, which for ſtrength and ſcituation, is by them preferred before *Sinope*.

Chief places in *Pontus Capadocius*.

PONTUS CAPADOCIUS hath for its chief places, *viz.* 1. *Geraſus*, from whence *Cherries* were firſt brought into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, after he had finiſhed his War with *Mithridates*. 2. *Pharnacia*, built by *Pharnaces* a King of *Pontus*. 3. *Trebezond*, the Metropolis of the *Comneni*, famous for the Trade of Fiſh, caught by the People on the *Euxine-ſhoars*, here ſalted, and then tranſported in great quantities to *Conſtantinople*, *Caffa*, and elſewhere. In this City did anciently reſide the Deputies of the *Grecian Emperours*, for the ſecurity of the Out-parts againſt the Incurſions of the *Perſians*; and now is the place of ſuch Gallies, as by the *Grand Signior* are appointed for the ſcouring and ſecuring their Trade on the Coaſts of the *Euxine Sea*.

The chief places of *Metapontus*.

METAPONTUS, whoſe chief places were, 1. *Flaviopolis*, ſo called in honour to *Flavius Veſpaſianus*. 2. *Claudiopolis*, in honour to *Claudius*, Emperour of *Rome*. 3. *Juliopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family; all which are Mid-land Towns. 4. *Dioſpolis*, of great reſort, on the *Euxine Sea*, ſo named from a Temple conſecrated to *Jupiter*. 5. *Heraclia*, a Colony of the

Phocians,

Phocians, remarkable for being the Seat of a Branch of the *Imperial Family* of the *Comneni*. But above all is *Tocat*, a good fair City, built at the foot of a very high Mountain, ſpreading it ſelf round about a great Rock that is in the midſt of the Town, on the top of which is ſeated a *Caſtle*, with a good *Garriſon*. It is well inhabited by *Armenians*, *Greeks*, *Jews*, and *Turks*, who have the command thereof; its Houſes are well built, but its Streets are narrow, and amongſt its *Moſques* there is one very ſtately. Here the *Chriſtians* have 12 *Churches*, hath an *Archbiſhop*, under whom are 7 *Suffragans*. Here are two *Monaſteries* for Men, and two for Women; the greateſt part of the *Chriſtians* are Tradeſmen, and generally *Smiths*: this is the only place in all *Aſia*, where plenty of *Saffron* groweth. This City is one of the moſt remarkable Thoroughfares in the Eaſt, where are continually lodged the *Caravans* from *Perſia*, *Diarbeck*, *Conſtantinople*, *Smyrna*, *Synopus*, and other places; and here the *Caravans* turn off as they are variouſly bound. Here are excellent *Fruits* and *Wine*, and Proviſions are had at eaſie rates.

The Province of *Bithynia* bounded.

BITHYNIA hath on the North the *Euxine Sea*; a place famouſed for the Victory of *Alexander* againſt the *Perſians*; then for Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* overthrew *Mithridates*; and *Tamberlain* with 800000 *Tartars*, encountred *Bajazet* with 500000, where 20000 loſt their lives, and *Bajazet* in the pride of his heart being taken, and penn'd up in an *Iron-Cage*, beat out his own Brains againſt the Bars. Its chief places are, 1. *Nice*, where the firſt *General Council* was held by the appointment of *Conſtantine* the Great, for the expelling of the *Arian Hereſie*. 2. *Chalcedon*, where the *4th General Council* was, to repel the *Neſtorian Hereſie*. 3. *Scutari*, oppoſite to the Haven of *Conſtantinople*, in which place the *Perſians* received their Tribute from the other Cities of theſe Parts; and laſtly, 4. *Burſa*, once the Seat of the *Ottaman* Kings in *Aſia*, till they gained *Adrianople* in *Europe*, by *Mahomet* the Firſt; now inhabited by *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Greeks*; by ſome accounted as fair, rich, and populous as *Conſtantinople*, and enjoys a great Trade. It is ſeated on the Foot of Mount *Olympus* for its defence, and is adorned with fair *Moſques*, and many *Tombs* of the *Ottoman* Princes.

Chief places in *Bithynia*.

The Province of *Lycia* bounded, and its Cities deſcribed.

LYCIA hath for its Southern bounds the *Mediterranean Sea*, and is environed on 3 ſides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which makes it very ſtrong: It was formerly exceeding populous, containing about 60 Cities; the greateſt part whereof remained in St. *Pauls* time, but now are reduced to ruins. The chiefeſt of which were, 1. *Mira*, the chief City of this Province. 2. *Patera*, adorned with a fair Haven, and Temples; one of which was dedicated to *Apollo*, having therein an *Oracle*, and for Wealth and Credit ſuitable to that at *Delphos*. 3. *Telmeſus*, whoſe Inhabitants are famous for interpreting of Dreams.

The Province of *Galatia* bounded, and its chief places treated of.

GALATIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cappadocia*. Towns of note; *viz.* 1. *Augoura*, ſeated on the River *Sangar*, 16 days Journey from *Conſtantinople*, famous for the *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, and is one of the greateſt and richeſt places of this quarter, furniſhing *Turky* with a great number of *Chamlets* and *Mohairs*. 2. *Tavium*, where there was a *Brazen Statue* of *Jupiter*, in whoſe *Temple* there was a priviledged Sanctuary. To this Province St. *Paul* did dedicate one of his Epiſtles.

The Province of *Pamphylia*, and its chief places.

PAMPHYLIA hath for its Southern bounds the *Mediterranean Sea*. The principal Cities are, 1. *Satalia*, (founded by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, King of *Egypt*,) is the ſtrongeſt, and beſt for Traffick of all its Coaſts, communicating its name to the neighbouring Gulph, called *Golfo di Satalia*, and to the moſt Oriental part of the *Mediterranean Sea*; famous for the rich *Tapeſtries* that are here made. 2. *Side*, famous in the time of the *Gentiles* for a Temple of *Pallas*. 3. *Perge*, renowned in Old time for the Temple of *Diana*, and for the Annual Feaſts there held in honour of her; and yet more famous for St. *Pauls* Preaching here. 4. *Aſpendus*, and Inland Town, ſtrongly ſcituate, once the Metropolis of the Province, famous of old for its *Muſicians*. Theſe Provinces were converted to Chriſtianity by the Apoſtles, St. *Paul* (who Journied through moſt Cities in theſe quarters,) St. *Peter*, and St. *John*, as doth appear

appear by Holy Scripture. The Country for the moſt part is very Mountainous, which proceed from Mount *Taurus*, as branches thereof: Here are abundance of *Goats*, of whoſe Hair are made great quantities of *Grograins* and *Chamlets*, which for fineneſs are not inferiour to *Silk*, with which it ſerves other Countries, being its chief Commodity; but nearer the Sea it is more fruitful, being well watered and planted, more populous and pleaſant.

The Province of *Cappadocia* bounded.

CAPPADOCIA hath for its chief places, 1. *Mazaca*, enlarged and beautified by *Tiberius* the Emperour; and in honour to *Auguſtus Cæſar*, by him called *Cæſarea*, being the Metropolitan City of *Cappadocia*, as alſo the Epiſcopal See of St. *Baſil*. 2. *Nyſſa*, the See of *Gregory*, Surnamed *Nyſſenus*, and Brother to *Baſil*. 3. *Nazianzum*, alſo the Epiſcopal See of another *Gregory*, Surnamed *Nazianzenus*, which 3 for their admirable abilities in all kind of Learning, and for their Piety, are not to be parallel'd. 4. *Comana*, remarkable of old for its Temple conſecrated to *Bellona*, whoſe Prieſts, and other inferiour Officers of both Sexes, in the time of *Strabo* amounted to about 6000. 5. *Erzirum*, ſcituate in the Confines of *Armenia Major*, which is the Rendezvous for the *Turkiſh* Army, when they have any deſign againſt *Perſia*; at which place they are likewiſe disbanded and ſent home, being a Frontier Town. It is ſeated at the end of a large Plain, circled with Mountains; its Houſes are not very well built, but hath ſeveral great *Inns* for entertainment of Paſſengers, as at *Tocat*; and it is obſervable, that *Barly* after 40 days, and *Wheat* after 60, is fit to cut: And, 6. *Pterium*, memorable for the great Battel fought between *Cræſus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Perſia*; in which *Cræſus* loſt not only the Field, but alſo his Kingdom. The Country is very rich in Mines of *Silver*, *Iron*, *Braſs*, and *Alum*; hath great plenty of *Wine*, and ſeveral ſorts of Fruits; alſo *Cryſtal*, *Jaſper*, and the *Onyx-ſtone*: But the greateſt Wealth which they have is their Horſes. The People of this Country were anciently very Vicious, and prone to all kinds of Wickedneſs; but ſince Chriſtianity was received amongſt them, their former Vices are now changed to Vertues.

The Province of *Cilicia*, and its chief places.

CILICIA hath on the South the *Mediterranean Sea*. Places of note here found are, *viz.* 1. *Tarſis*, pleaſantly ſeated, famous for the Birth-place of St. *Paul*; 2. *Anchiala*, on the Sea-ſide; both which, with ſome others, were built in one day by *Sardanapalus* King of *Aſſyria*. 3. *Epiphania*, the Birth-place of *George* the *Arian*, Biſhop of *Alexandria*. 4. *Adena*, ſeated in a fruitful Soil, abounding in *Corn* and *Wine*, defended by a ſtrong *Caſtle*. 5. *Alexandria*, built by *Alexander* the Great; and to diſtinguiſh it from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, was named *Alexandretta*, but now *Scanderone*; a famous Haven-Town, ſerving for the Scale to *Aleppo*, which is diſtant from it about 100 *Engliſh* miles, to which all Shipping, either out of the *Ocean* or *Mediterranean*, come to lade and unlade their Goods, which are hence tranſported by *Camels* to *Aleppo*; and here the *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Venetians*, have their *Vice-Conſuls* to protect their Goods and Ships. 6. *Amavarza*, a City in the time of *Strabo*, of great antiquity. 7. *Nicopolis*, founded by *Alexander* in memory of his great Victory: And 8. *Iſſus*, ſeated on a large Bay, famous for the Battel here fought between *Alexander* (with an inconſiderable Army of *Macedonians*) and *Darius*, and his vaſt Army, which conſiſted of about 600000 *Aſſyrians*; whereof about 160000 of the *Perſians* were ſlain, and about 40000 taken Priſoners; in which Battel, the Wives and Daughters of *Darius* were taken, *Alexander* not loſing above 200 of his Men.

On the Right-hand of *Cilicia* is *Iſauria*, which may bear the name of a Province: It is fruitful in *Vines*, and ſeveral ſorts of *Fruits*, having a rich Soil. The chief Cities are, 1. *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperour brought a *Roman* Colony: And, 2. *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*.

The Province of *Caria* bounded, and its chief places deſcribed.

CARIA hath for its Southern bounds the *Carpathian Sea*. Its chief places are, 1. *Miletus*, not far from the Hill *Latmus*, the Birth-place of *Thales*, one of the 7 Wiſe-men of *Greece*; to this place St. *Paul* called together the Biſhops of *Epheſus* and other of the adjoyning Cities. 2. *Mindus*, which being but a ſmall City, and its Gates ſo big, made *Diogenes* the *Cynick* to cry out, to have

have them ſhut their Gates, leſt the City ſhould run out at them. 3. *Milaſa*, famous in old time for two Temples dedicated to *Jupiter*: And 4. *Borgylia*, where *Diana* alſo had a Temple.

In this Country is the Hill *Latmus*, which was the retiring place of *Endymion*, who by the ſtudy of *Aſtronomy* did there find out the Changes and Courſes of the *Moon*, by the *Poets* feigned to be her Favourite; others there be who would have it, that in a Cave under this Hill *Jupiter* hid him, and caſting him in a deep ſleep, deſcended ſometimes to kiſs him.

IONIA, bounded on the Weſt with the *Ægean Sea*. Places of note in this Country are, 1. *Epheſus*, famous for many things; as, *Firſt*, for being the Burial-place of St. *John* the *Evangeliſt*, who (as ſome ſay) went here alive into the Grave. *Secondly*, for the Temple of *Diana*, which for its Greatneſs, Furniture, and ſtately Workmanſhip, was accounted one of the Wonders of the World. *Thirdly*, for St. *Pauls* directing an *Epiſtle* to the Inhabitants thereof. *Fourthly*, for being the *Epiſcopal See* of *Timothy* the *Evangeliſt*, firſt Biſhop hereof: And, *Fifthly*, for its *Eccleſiaſtical Council* here; but now much ruined from its ancient beauty, it being now reduced to a ſmall *Village*. 2. *Smyrna*, which is now the only City of Trade in theſe parts; famous for being one of the 7 *Churches* of *Aſia*, to which St. *John* dedicated his *Revelation*, being one of thoſe 7 *Cities* that ſtrove for the Birth of *Homer*, where (in a Cave hard by) he is ſaid to have writ his *Poems*: But now violated by the *Mahometans*, her Beauty is turned into Deformity, her Religion into Impiety, and her knowledge into Barbariſm. This City is ſeated on the bottom of a Bay or Gulph, called the Gulph of *Smyrna*, where the *Engliſh*, *French*, and *Venetians* keep *Conſuls* to protect their Merchants, and keep up their Trade, it being under the Juriſdiction of the *Grand Signior*. 3. *Colophon*, another of thoſe Cities which ſtrove for the Birth of *Homer*: Here the People are ſo well skill'd in Horſemanſhip, that whoſe ſide ſoever they took in War, were ſure to gain the Victory. 4. *Erythra*, the habitation of one of the *Sibyls*, from whence called *Sibylla Erythræa*. 5. *Ipſus*, remarkable for the great Battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chief Commanders, wherein *Antigonus* loſt both the day, and his life. 6. *Lebedus*, of note in ancient times for thoſe *Plays* here yearly held in honour to *Bacchus*. 7. *Priene*, the Birth-place of *Bias*, one of the 7 Wiſe-men of *Greece*: And, 8. *Clazomene*, ſeated on a ſmall *Ilet* near the ſhoar, beautified with a Temple dedicated to *Apollo*.

The Province of *Ionia* bounded, with its chiefeſt places.

ÆOLIS, North of *Ionia*, hath for its chief places, 1. *Cuma*, the habitation of *Sibylla*, Surnamed *Cumana*. 2. *Elæa*, on the Mouth of *Caicus*, being the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 3. *Myrina*, which in honour to *Auguſtus* is called *Sebaſtopolis*. 4. *Pitane*, not far from the *Ægean Sea*; and here they had an art in making *Bricks* that would ſwim above water.

The Province of *Æolis*, and its chief places.

LYDIA: Its chief Cities are, 1. *Sardis*, in which was one of the 7 *Churches* in *Aſia*, being the Royal Seat of *Cræſus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*, until it was ſubdued by the *Perſians*; and, 2. *Philadelphia*, on the Banks of the River *Cayſtrus*. Its People are ſaid to be the firſt Inventers of *Dice*, *Cheſs*, and other ſuch Games; as alſo the firſt *Huckſters*, *Pedlers*, and the firſt *Coyners* of *Mony*. The Country by reaſon of the great plenty of gallant Rivers renders it very fruitful and pleaſant, being enriched with Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, as alſo *precious Stones*.

The Province of *Lydia*, and its chief places.

PHRYGIA MAJOR, bounded on the Eaſt with *Galatia*. The chief places are, 1. *Gordion*, the Seat of *Gordius*, which from the *Plough-tail* was taken and choſen King of this Kingdom, who tied ſuch a Knot, (called the *Gordian-knot*) which *Alexander* the Great cut in pieces, when he could not unty it. 2. *Midium*, the Seat of *Midas*, Son to this *Gordius*; who covetouſly petitioned *Bacchus*, that whatſoever he touched ſhould be turned into *Gold*; which was granted, but ſoon was forced to loſe the benefit of it, elſe he would have been ſtarved, his *Victuals* turning into *Gold*: and falling into a ſecond overſight in Judgment, in preferring *Pan*'s *Pipe* before *Apollo*'s *Harp*, he for his ſmall Judgment in Muſick, was rewarded with a comly pair of *Aſſes-ears*.

The Province of *Phrygia Major* bounded, and its chief places.

3. *Colossi*, to whom St. *Paul* writ one of his Epistles. 4. *Pessinus*, where the goddess *Cybele* was worshipped, being called *Dea Pessinuncia*. This City is placed in the Borders of *Galatia*. The Country is very rich, pleasant, and well watered with *Rivers*, the People being anciently more Superstitious than in any other place of *Asia*, as is manifest by the Rites used in their Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and other of their goddesses, being accounted such as use Divination. They are a People which much delight in Effeminacy. Here Reigned *Tantalus*, who wanting wisdom to make use of his great Riches, is by the *Poets* feigned to stand in *Hell* up to the chin in water, under a Tree whose Fruit doth touch his Lips, but yet cannot reach them.

The Province of *Phrygia Minor* bounded, with its chief places.

PHRYGIA MINOR, bounded on the South with the *Ægean Sea*. Places of most note, *viz.* 1. *Dardanum*, or *Dardania*, being the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*. 2. *Troy*, seated on the Banks of the River *Scamander*, famous for having sustained a Ten years Siege against the *Greeks*; in which time the *Trojans* lost 860000 Men, and the *Grecians* 666000 Men, being then so famous a City, that it might be counted the glory of the East, from whence all Nations desire to derive their beginning; but now remaining nothing but Ruins. Four miles from which there was another City, built by *Lysimachus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, which from other Cities there adjoyning was peopled; by him called *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandria*, or *New Troy*, in honour of *Alexander* the Great, who begun the Work, which though not so great, rich, and famous as the first, yet was the Metropolis of the Province; but now by the *Turks* quite ruinated, by their carrying the Stones and Pillars to *Constantinople*, for the beautifying of their *Bashaws* Houses. 3. *Sigæum*, the Port-Town to *Troy*. 4. *Assus*, called by *Pliny*, *Apollonia*, in which place the Earth will consume the Bodies of the Dead in 40 days. 5. *Lyrnessus*, opposite to the Isle of *Lesbos*, destroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the beginning of the *Trojan* War.

The Province of *Paphlagonia*, and its Cities.

PAPHLAGONIA hath for its chief Cities, 1. *Gangra*, remarkable for a *Council* there held in the Primitive times, called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2. *Pompeiopolis*, so called by *Pompey* the Great: And, 3. *Coniata*, or *Conica*, fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was Master of this Country.

The Province of *Lycaonia*, and its chief places.

LYCAONIA, bounded on the East with *Armenia Minor*. The most eminent places in this Country are, 1. *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the Regal Seat of the *Aladine* Kings; a place of great strength, whose scituation is in the Mountains, advantagious for defence and safety. 2. *Lystra*, famous for the Birth-place of *Timothy*, and where *Paul* and *Barnabas* having healed a Cripple, were adored for *Mercury* and *Jupiter*: And, 3. *Derbe*, where the said Apostle preached.

The Province of *Pisidia*, and its chief places.

PISIDIA hath for its chief places, 1. *Seleucia*, built by *Seleucus*. 2. *Sagalassa*, scituate in the most fruitful part of this Country. 3. *Selge*, a Colony of the *Lacedemonians*: And, 4. *Termessus*, strongly seated. This Country was famous for the Battel fought betwixt *Cyrus* and *Artaxerxes*; where *Cyrus* lost his life, and the Victory; out of which *Xenophon* made that notable Retreat with his *Grecians*, in the despight of 20000 Men, which pursued him.

Armenia Minor, and its Cities.

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the East with the *Euphrates*, which separates it from *Armenia Major*. Cities of note, *viz.* 1. *Meteline*, the Metropolitan City, now called *Suur*, abounding in great quantities of *Wine* and *Oil*. 2. *Nicopolis*, built by *Pompey* in remembrance of a Victory he there obtained against the Forces of *Tygranes*, King of *Syria*. 3. *Garnasa*, a strong Town. 4. *Oromandus*; and, 5. *Arabyssus*, remarkable for the exile of St. *Chrysostom*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, confined here by the malice of the Empress *Eudoxia*. This Country, as to its fertility, pleasantness, &c. is the same as *Cappadocia* afore-mentioned.

The Province of *Mysia*, and its chief places.

MYSIA hath for its chief places, 1. *Cyzicus*, seated in the *Propontis*, in an Island of the same name, but so near the Continent, that it is joyned to it by two Bridges. The Metropolis of the *Consular Hellespont*, a place of great strength and beauty, whose *Walls*, *Bulwarks*, *Towers*, and *Haven*, were made of Marble. 3. *Adramyttium* where *Paul* took Shipping to go to *Rome*:

And,

And, 4. *Pergamus*, ſeated in a goodly Plain, on the Banks of the River *Caicus*; a place of great ſtrength, beautified with a Library of about 200000 Volumes or Manuſcripts, all writ in *Parchment*; famous alſo for thoſe coſtly Hangings known to us by *Tapeſtry*. Here was one of the 7 *Churches* of *Aſia*, to which St. *John* writ his *Revelation*; and laſtly, famous for the Birth-place of *Galen*, the eminent Phyſician, who lived to the Age of 140 years in good health.

The *Mountains* and *Rivers* in *Anatolia* may have ſomewhat in particular obſerved of them. Mount *Taurus* begins between *Lyſia* and *Caria*, and extends it ſelf all the length of *Aſia*, being a continual Ridge of Hills, running through *Aſia* from Weſt to Eaſt; which for its length, height, and the branches it caſts forth on one ſide and the other, the greateſt and moſt famous Mountain in the World. On Mount *Ida*, the *Trojan Paris* judged of the Beauty of *Juno*, *Pallas*, and *Venus*, and giving the *Golden Apple* to the laſt, drew on himſelf and his Friends the enmity of the other two. On the Mountain *Tmole* in *Lydia*, *Midas*, having eſteemed *Pan*'s Pipe to be more pleaſant than the Harp of *Apollo*, was by him pulled by the Ears, not to make them greater, but ſo hard as gave occaſion to the *Poets* to jeer him, and ſay, that he had *Aſſes* Ears. This Mountain is very fruitful, eſpecially in *Vines* and *Saffron*. On *Cragus* was feigned to be the Monſter *Chimera*, which *Bellerophon* made tractable. On *Latmus* in *Caria* paſſed the Loves of the *Moon*, and *Endymion*, &c. Mountains in *Anatolia*, worthy of note.

Amongſt the Rivers, *Pactolus* hath rouled down ſo much *Gold* in its Streams, ſince *Midas* waſhed there, that the Riches of *Cræſus*, and others, are come from thence. The *Granick* was witneſs of the Victory of *Alexander* the Great, againſt the *Satrapes* of *Darius*; but *Alexander* waſhing himſelf in the cold waters of *Cidnus*, had near loſt his life. The River *Acheron*, and the Lake *Acheruſia*, near *Heraclia* in *Bithynia*, are eſteemed to reach to Hell; and that this way *Hercules* brought up the Villain *Cerberus*. *Halys* (at preſent *Lali*) ſerved for the bounds and limits between the Kingdom of *Cræſus* and the Empire of the *Perſians*; but it proved fatal to *Cræſus*, &c. Rivers.

There are many other things obſervable about, and within the leſſer *Aſia*. The *Boſphorus* of *Thrace*, or Channel of the *Black-Sea*, or Streight of *Conſtantinople*, is ſo narrow, that *Darius Hyſtaſpes* built a Bridge over it, and paſſed with his Troops over it from *Aſia* into *Europe*, to make War againſt the *Scythians*. *Xerxes*, the Son of *Darius*, did as much over the *Helleſpont* or Streight of *Gallipoli*, or the *Dardanelles*, which we call the *Caſtles* of *Seſtos* and *Abydos*, which are ſeated three Leagues above the entrance, and at the narroweſt place of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite each to other: Formerly famous for the unfortunate Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, drowned in the mercileſs Surges. Here alſo *Xerxes*, whoſe populous Army drank Rivers dry, and made Mountains circumnavigable, is ſaid to have paſſed over into *Greece* on a Bridge of *Boats*. *Seſtos* is ſtrongly ſeated on the ſide of a Mountain, deſcending to the Sea on the *European* ſhoar; *Abydos*, on a low Level on the *Aſian* ſhoar. The *Amaniden* Streights, or Paſſes of Mount *Aman*, between *Cilicia* and *Syria*, are eaſie to keep; the Way for about 2500 Paces, being between Rocks and Crags; the Feet of which are waſhed with many ſtreams which fall off from the Mountains. Here it was that *Alexander* the Great vanquiſhed *Darius*. Things worthy of note in *Aſia* Minor.

The ISLANDS *about* ASIA MINOR.

THE ISLANDS about *ASIA MINOR* have been very remarkable to Antiquity, though not ſo at preſent: They are almoſt in the *Archipelago*; ſome in the *Mediterranean Sea*, almoſt none in the *Black Sea*; yet at the entrance into that Sea, and near the *Boſphorus* of *Thrace*, are 1. The two Iſlands called *CYANEES*, ſo near the one to the other, that the Ancients would make us believe they joyned. 2. *METELIN*, of old *LESBOS*, famous for the City *Meteline*, which for its greatneſs and excellency of its *Wines*, gives name to the Iſland. In this place was born *Sappho*, Iſlands. 1. Cyanees. 2. Lesbos.

the Inventreſs of the *Sapphick Verſe*: *Pittacus* one of the Sages of *Greece*;
3. Scio. and *Arion*, the *Dolphin Harper*. 3. *SCIO*, or *CHIOS*, diſtant from the *Ionian* ſhoar four Leagues, being in compaſs about 126 miles; remarkable for the Church of its Convent of *Niomene*, one of the faireſt in the World. It affordeth excellent Fruits in great plenty, but of moſt note for its *Maſtick*, not
4 Icaria. found elſewhere; it is now under the power of the *Grand Signior*. 4. *ICARIA*, now called *Niceria*, in compaſs 12 Leagues; here *Icarus* ſuffered Ship-
5. Pathmos. wreck; abounding in *Corn* and *Paſturage*. 5. *PATHMOS*, in compaſs about ten Leagues; Mountainous, but reaſonably fruitful, eſpecially in Grain. Here it was that St. *John* being baniſhed by *Domitian*, writ his Revelation to
6. Parmacuſa. the Churches of *Aſia*. 6. *PARMACUSA*, near *Miletum*, where *Cæſar*
7. Claros. was taken by them. 7. *CLAROS* or *CASAMO*, about 13 Leagues in compaſs, very Mountainous, but hath good Harbours; in former times ſacred to *Apollo*; abounding in great plenty of *Aloes*, where they are gathered and
8. Lero. tranſported to other Countries. 8. *LERO*, noted alſo for *Aloes*. 9. *COOS*,
9. Coos. ſeated in the bottom of the *Ægean Sea*, furniſhed with ſweet and pleaſant Streams, which refreſh this Iſland, and makes it very fruitful; it is in compaſs 23 Leagues, having its chief place ſo called, fortified with a ſtrong Tower, now a Garriſon of the *Turks*. This Iſland is remarkable for being the Birth-place of ſo many famous men, eſpecially *Hippocrates*, the Revivor of *Phyſick*, when almoſt decayed, unto the ancient practice of *Æſculapius*, unto whom this Iſland was conſecrated, having therein a Temple, made rich with the Offerings of thoſe that had been ſick, whoſe Cures were there Regiſtred; and
10. Scarpante. *Apelles* the famous Painter. 10. *Scarpante*, ſtored with the beſt *Coral* in the
11. Nicoſia. World. 11. *NICOSIA*, which was the Seat of the Kings of the Family of *Luſigna*, and the See of an *Archbiſhop*, and Peopled with 40000 Families.
12. Farmacuſa. 12. *FARMACUSA*, ſcituate on the Sea, much ſtronger than *Nicoſia*.
13. Bapho. 13. *BAPHO*, of old *Paphus*, famous for its Temple, dedicated to *Venus*, Mount *Olympus*, now St. *Michaels* Mount, ſtands in the middle of this Iſland.
14. Negroponte. 14. *NEGRO-PONTE*, where the Sea ebbs and flows ſeven times a day; which becauſe *Ariſtotle* could not unriddle, he here drowned himſelf; the
15. Samos. chief City is *Colchis*. 15. *SAMOS*, about 30 Leagues in compaſs, ſtrongly ſeated almoſt on all ſides with Rocks, having a fair Haven, fertil in Fruits, eſpecially in *Oil* and *Olives*; the Iſland much infected with Pirates. This is the only place in the World for *Spunges*, under whoſe Rocks they grow in the Sea; for the getting of which they have People which from their Infancy are bred up with *dry Biſket*, and other extenuating diet, to make them lean; then taking a *Spunge* wet in *Oil*, they hold it part in their Mouths and part without, and ſo they dive down into the Sea to get it; thoſe that have been
16. Tenedos. uſed to this trade, can abide under water almoſt an hour together. 16. *TENEDOS*, ſcituate at the Mouth of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite to *Troy*, remarkable for the concealing the *Grecian* Navy, which proved the final deſtruction
17. Rhodes. of *Troy*. 17. *RHODES*, ſcituate in the *Carpathian* or *Rhodian Sea*, being in compaſs 46 Leagues; a place of great ſtrength, its Soil fertil, its Air temperate, plentiful in all things, as well for delight as profit, full of excellent Paſtures, adorned with pleaſant Trees, whoſe Leaves are all the year long in their verdure. In this Iſland the *Sun* is ſo powerful and conſtant, as it was anciently dedicated to *Phœbus*. This Iſland, as *Sandys* in his Book of Travels noteth, was held Sacred to the *Sun*, to whom they erected that vaſt *Coloſſus* of Braſs, which may well be accounted one of the Seven Wonders of the World: He
The Coloſſus. ſaith, this *Coloſſus* was in height 70 Cubits; every Finger as big as an ordinary Statue, and the Thumb too great to be fathomed. It was 12 years a making, the bigneſs was ſuch, that being erected at the entrance of the Port, Ships paſt between its Legs; but in 66 years, by an Earthquake it was thrown down and broken in pieces: And beſides the Maſs of Stones contained therein, 900 *Camels* were laden with the *Braſs*, which was uſed about it. This City bearing the name of the Iſland, is ſeated 4 miles from the ancient City, famous of old for their Government, their expert Navigations, and ſince for the abode of the Knights of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, now in the hands of the *Turk*. This City and Iſland

of

of *Rhodes*, as indeed *Tenedos*, *Samos*, and the reſt of the Iſles in this Sea, are of little or no Trade; yet they are found to produce ſeveral good Commodities: And, 18. *CYPRUS*, which amongſt all is the greateſt, being in circuit about 183 Leagues diſtant from the *Cilician* ſhoar, about 20 Leagues it ſtretcheth it ſelf from Eaſt to Weſt, in form of a *Fleece*, and thruſting forth a great many Promontories. This Iſland, during the Empire of the *Perſians* and *Macedonians*, was accounted for Nine Kingdoms, moſt of them bearing the names of their principal Towns; but by *Ptolomy* divided into theſe 4 Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Lapethia*, 2. *Paphia*, 3. *Salamine*, and 4. *Amathuſia*. Places of moſt note are, 1. *Nicoſia*, the Metropolis of the Iſland, being a walled City, in form round, five miles in compaſs, adorned with ſtately Buildings, reſembling ſome Cities in *Florence*, as well for its beauty and pleaſant ſcituation, as for its plentifulneſs in People. 2. *Tremitus*, the Birth-place of *Spiridon*, a famous Biſhop of the Primitive times. 3. *Paphos*, ſeated near the Sea, built by *Paphos*, Son of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phœnicia* and *Cyprus*, where ſtands *Pygmalions* Statue; which (as the *Poets* feign) was by the power of *Venus* turned into a Woman; where ſhe had her ſo much celebrated *Temple*, and where her Votaries of both Sexes in their natural nakedneſs, did perform her Sacrifices. 4. *Salamis*, once the Metropolitan City in the Iſland, but now turned to Ruins; in which there was a famous *Temple* conſecrated unto *Jupiter*. 5. *Aphrodiſium*, ſo named from *Venus*, where ſhe had another Temple. 6. *Famaguſta*, though but ſmall, yet one of the chiefeſt in this Iſland, ſtrongly ſeated. 7. *Arſinoe*, famous for the Groves of *Jupiter*. 8. *Amathus*, renowned for the Annual Sacrifices made unto *Adonis*, the darling of *Venus*, where ſhe had another Temple. 9. *Epiſcopia*, where *Apollo* had both a *Temple* and a *Grove*. This *Temple* was held ſo Sacred, that thoſe which touched it were thrown into the Sea.

18. *Cyprus.*

Provinces in *Cyprus.*

This Iſland is ſeated under the Fourth *Climate*, which makes the longeſt day to be but 14 hours and a half. It is exceeding rich and fertil, abounding in *Corn*, *Wine*, *Oil*, *Silks*, *Cotton*, *Turpentine*, *Wool*, *Hony*, *Salt*, *Verdigreace*, *Alum*, *Storax*, *Colloquintida*, *Laudanum*: All ſorts of *Metals*, *&c.*

The ſcituation, fertility, and Commodities of *Cyprus.*

To this Iſle, as to all other parts of *Turky*, no *Engliſh* are ſuffered to Trade, except thoſe of the Company of *Levant* Merchants; where they have a Factory, and a Conſul, who is generally elected by the ſaid *Levant* Company, and eſtabliſhed by the Ambaſſador. The People are very civil to Strangers, delighting in Hoſpitality, alſo addicting themſelves to War, being ſtrong and active; and the Women were in former times given to unchaſtity, by reaſon of their ſo great adoration of their goddeſs *Venus*, it being the cuſtom of theſe Women to proſtitute themſelves on the Shoars to Paſſers by; where their Virgins would do the ſame. But upon their receiving of Chriſtianity, by the Preachings of St. *Paul* and *Barnabas*, being the Birth-place of the latter, this (with other of their uncivil and barbarous Cuſtoms) were laid aſide.

The People of *Cyprus.*

This *ANATOLIA*, or *ASIA MINOR*, which I have hitherto treated of, is ſeated (for the moſt part) all in a healthful and temperate Air; the Soil being generally fruitful, once very populous, and repleniſhed with many fair and goodly Cities, now lamenting the loſs of about 4000, ſome of which by *Earthquakes*, but moſt by the Wars the *Turks* brought againſt them. The Commodities or Merchandizes which it abounds with, and communicates to other Nations, are chiefly excellent *Wines*, *Goats-hair*, *Camels-hair*, *Grograin Yarn*, *Silk*, *Cotton Wool*, *Cotton Yarn*, *Cloth* of a courſe make, *Coral*, *Gauls*, though not ſo good as thoſe of *Syria*, *Grograins*, *Chamlets*, *Mohairs*, *Turky-Carpets*, *Spunges*, *Turpentine* the beſt in the World; *Maſtick*, with ſome other Commodities of leſs note which the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Venetians*, and *Dutch* fetch from hence; but chiefly from *Smyrna*, it being the chief Town of Trade, being a flouriſhing Factory, where thoſe Nations (as hath been ſaid before) keep their Conſuls.

Commodities in *Aſia Minor.*

SOCH

SOURIA, or *SYRIA.*

Its Bounds.

SOURIA, formerly *SYRIA* the Great, and at preſent *Soriſtan* with the Eaſtern People, is near hand that which the *Romans* called their Dioceſs of the Eaſt, as may ſeem by our now calling it the *Levant*. It extends from the *Mediterranean Sea*, which waſhes its Weſtern Coaſt, to the *Euphrates*, which on the Eaſt divides it from *Diarbeck*; and from Mount *Aman*, or *Monte-Negro*, which bounds it on the North, and ſeparates it from *Cilicia* unto *Arabia* and *Egypt*, which border on its Southern parts.

Its Parts, or Diviſion by the *Turks*.

The Ancients have divided it into three principal Parts: the particular *Syria*, called *Syria Propria*, which (as the greateſt and beſt) held the name of all *Phœnicia*, and *Judæa* or *Paleſtine:* This laſt ſtretcheth more towards the South, *Syria* towards the North, and *Phœnicia* remaineth in the middle; and all are along the *Mediterranean Sea*, from *Anatolia* into *Egypt*; the particular *Syria* alone touches the *Euphrates*, the reſt upon *Arabia*. At preſent the *Turks* divide all *Syria* into two *Beglerbeglies*, *Aleppo*, and *Damaſcus*; ſome make a third of *Tripoli* of *Syria:* and give to this laſt five *Sangiacats*, nine or ten to *Damaſcus*, and ſeven to *Aleppo*; which in all are 16 or 20 *Sangiacats*, whoſe Names and Scituations are for the moſt part unknown; we will content our ſelves to ſpeak ſomething of the *Cities*, which have been, or which yet are, the principal of all theſe Quarters, beginning with thoſe of *Syria*.

SYRIA PROPRIA.

Syria Propria, its bounds, fertility, and people.

SYRIA PROPRIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, and on the Weſt with the *Mediterranean Sea*. It is very fertil, affording plenty of excellent *Fruits*, *Cotton-Wool*, *Sheep*, which have Tails that weigh about 30 pounds, with ſeveral other good Commodities. The People were formerly very induſtrious, but much addicted to Gluttony, as did appear by their often and great Feaſting; they were ſubtle in their dealings, much given to Superſtition, being worſhippers of the goddeſs *Fortune*, and other of their *Syrian* goddeſſes, much addicted to Plays and Paſtimes, and given to Scoffing and Laughter.

Its chief places.

The chief Places in this Country are, 1. *Antioch*, or *Antiochia*, once the Metropolis of *Syria*, once ſo fair, that it held the third or fourth degree amongſt the beſt Cities of the *Roman* Empire. Its Walls are yet ſtanding, and the moſt beautiful that Eye ever beheld; within it is nothing but Ruins. Its ſcituation is on the River *Orontes*, ſo called; at preſent *Aſſi*, or *Haſer*, four Leagues from the *Mediterranean* ſhoar; a place of great ſtrength, having for its Fortification an encloſure of two ſtrong Walls, on which for their further defence were erected about 460 Towers, together with a ſtrong Caſtle. The City before its Ruins being adorned with ſtately *Palaces*, *Temples*, *&c.* fit for ſo great a City, being formerly the Seat of ſome of the *Roman* Emperours, and of the chief Officers of their Empire in the *Orient*. It was the firſt Seat of a Patriarch, that St. *Peter* eſtabliſhed, and which held in the Infancy of the Church, 1. The Dioceſſes of *Thrace*, *Aſia*, *Pontus*, and the Eaſt. 2. *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*, ſo named from *Daphne*, one of the Miſtreſſes of *Apollo*, who was here worſhipped, famous for having here his *Oracle* and *Grove*, which was about 10 miles in compaſs, all encompaſſed with *Cypreſſes* and other Trees, ſo tall and cloſe together, that the Beams of the *Sun* could not dart through, though in his greateſt power; watered with pleaſant Streams, beautified with Fountains, and enriched with abundance of Trees, which yield variety of excellent Fruits, as well for taſt as tincture; for its Temples dedicated to *Apollo*; for its *Sanctuary* or *Aſyle*, and for the place where *Daphne* was changed into a *Laurel*, that it hath been compared with the

the Valley of *Tempe* in *Theſſaly*. 3. *Aleppo*, built upon four Hills, at preſent is the greateſt and principal Town of all *Syria*, and one of the moſt famous of the Eaſt, being the ancient *Hierapolis*, having large Suburbs, which are for the moſt part taken up by *Chriſtians*. It is ſeated between the *Euphrates* and the *Mediterranean Sea*, and in that place where that *Sea* and the *Euphrates* make the neareſt conjunction, which makes it capable of the beſt and greateſt commerce of the World, to wit, of all the *Levant*, with the Weſt, by the paſſage of the Gulph of *Ormus* and *Balſora*, which brings Commodities up the *Euphrates*, juſt againſt the City of *Aleppo*; from whence the *Caravans* bring them by Land to *Aleppo*, and carry them from thence to *Alexandretta* or *Scanderoon*, ſcituate on the *Mediterranean Sea*; and thence into the parts of *Aſia*, *Africa*, and *Europe*, which border upon the *Mediterranean*, and farther into that Ocean. This City is the ordinary reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*, who commands all the Country from *Alexandretta* to the *Euphrates*. 4. *Aman*, or *Ama*, ſeated between *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, in the midſt of a great Plain, encompaſſed on all ſides with very pleaſant Hills, abounding in *Grains*, *Wines*, with abundance of Orchards, ſtored with varieties of *Fruits* and *Palm-Trees*. It is almoſt encompaſſed with the River *Orontes*, and with a great Lake; the Gardens are watered with many Channels, drawn from the Rivers; there are very excellent Paſtures, ſo that *Seleucus Nicanor* there fed 500 *Elephants*, 30000 *Horſes*, and a great part of his Militia. And to this day this City is the beſt peopled of all *Syria*, next to *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*. 5. *Emſa*, or *Hemz*, ſeated in the ſpacious and fruitful Plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant Streams, which, for its Scituation, is almoſt the ſame with that of *Aman*; and becauſe the *Arabes* call it *Hamſi*, and that name comes ſomewhat neat to *Hus*, ſome Authors will have it to be the Country of the Patient *Job*. 6. *Aradus*, ſeated in a Rocky Iſland of a mile in compaſs, juſt oppoſite to the Mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, which from the Continent is diſtant not above a League. 7. *Seleucus*, ſo called from him, as being the Founder of it, who was eſteemed the greateſt Builder in the World, founding 9 Cities of this Name, 16 in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, ſix bearing the name of his Mother *Laodice*, and three in remembrance of his firſt Wife *Apamia*; beſides ſeveral others worthy of note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either repaired, beautified, or built by him. 8. *Laodicea*, built by *Seleucus* (as aforeſaid) abounding in excellent *Wine*, and choice *Fruits*. 9. *Lariſſa*, now *Laris*, ſeated four Leagues Southwards of *Laodicea*, much noted in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 10. *Hierapolis*, a City of great note in Ancient times for their Idolatry, in adoring and worſhipping the *Syrian* goddeſs. The Temple was built by *Stratonice*, wife to *Seleucus*, in the midſt of the City, encompaſſed with a double Wall about 300 Fathom in height, the Roof thereof in-laid with *Gold*, and built with ſuch ſweet Wood, that the Cloaths of thoſe which came thither were as it were perfumed. Without the Temple were places for the keeping of their *Oxen*, and other of their Beaſts for Sacrifice; as alſo a Lake of about 200 Fathom in depth, for the preſervation of their ſacred Fiſhes. The Prieſts, beſides other ſubſervient Miniſters, which here attended, were about 300 in number. 11. *Zeugma*, ſeated on the Banks of the *Euphrates*. Here it was that *Alexander* the Great, with his Army, paſſed over on a Bridge of Boats. 12. *Heraclea*, nigh to which *Minerva* had a Temple, where, for a Sacrifice, they uſed once a year to offer a Virgin, which afterwards was changed to a *Hart*. 13. *Samoſat*, ſeated near the Banks of the *Euphrates*, over which there was a Bridge which ſerved for a paſſage to *Meſopotamia*. In this City was born *Paulus Samoſatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, who, for his teaching that our Saviour was not the Son of God, was (in a Council here held) condemned of Hereſie. 14. *Palmyre*, at preſent *Faid*, ſeated in a Deſart and Sandy Plain, was built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderneſs*, where one their Kings *Odenat*, and his wife *Zenobia*, have been well known for their Victories, divers times gained againſt the *Parthians*; and for endeavouring to gain the Empire of the Eaſt. 15. *Reſapha*, a Town of great note in the Holy Scripture: And, 16. *Adida*, memorable for the Victory that *Aretas*, K. of *Arabia*, obtained againſt *Alexander*, K. of *Jewry*.

PHOE-

PHOENICIA.

Phœnicia bounded, and its Cities, &c. described.

PHOENICIA hath for its Eastern and Southern Bounds, *Palestine*; for its Western, the *Mediterranean Sea*; and for its Northern, *Syria Propria*. This Country was adorned with several great and beautiful Cities, though of no great extent: For the most part seated on the Sea-shoar, which makes it much frequented by Merchants, there being several good Commodities found therein, as *Corn*, *Oil*, *Hony*, excellent *Balm*, &c. The People were here held to be very ingenious and active. Places of most note are, 1. *Tyre*, at present *Sor* or *Sour*, seated in a Plain so advantagious, (that is, on a Rock almost quite encompassed with the Sea) that it oft disputed the Priority with *Sidon*, and in the end gained it. *Nebuchadonozor* ruined it after a Siege of 14 years; then *Alexander* the Great, after a Siege of 7 or 8 months. It was many times restored to its power and splendor, by means of its *Purple*, and of its Trade: and when it was in its glory, it might be said, That if only its scituation were considered, it was a *Fortress*; if its Traffick, a *Mart*; if its Magnificence, a *Royal-Court*; and if its Riches, the *Treasure* of the Universe. The Cities of *Carthage*, *Utica*, *Leptis*, and others in *Africa*, and of *Cadiz* in *Spain*, without the *Streights* were its Colonies. And some have adventured to say, *America* was peopled by them. Its Haven is likewise the best of all *Phœnicia*, and the *Levant*. 2. *Sidon*, at present *Sayd*, and sometimes *Sayette*, hath been much esteemed in the Ancientest of times: It was built, or at least took its name from *Sidon*, the eldest Son of the Children of *Canaan*, scituate upon a Rock along the Coast of the Sea, and with a fair Port. The Neighbouring Champain is very fertil, and watered with divers Streams which descend from *Libanus*, with which they watered and enriched their pleasant Orchards. It hath been very famous for Arts and Sciences, and particularly for being the first Authors of *Arithmetick* and *Astronomy*; The first Inventers of *Letters*; the first Navigators and Builders of *Ships*; the first Inventers of *Glasses*; and the first that exercised *Arms*. From hence it was that *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Workmen, both for *Stone* and *Timber*, which were employed in the building of the *Temple*. It hath Peopled divers Colonies; among others, *Thebes* in *Bœotia*. The *Persians* were the first that ruin'd it, after them others, and at last the *Turks*; who at present are Masters of it, as also of *Tyre*. The present *Sidon* is built somewhat West of the Old; but of small note in respect to the splendor of the Old, yet still hath some Trade. The chief Commodities being *Corn*, *Galls*, *Wools*, *Cottons*, *Cotton-Yarn*, *white Silk*, and *Wax*. 3. *Damascus*, called by those of the Country *Scham*; seated in a very fruitful Plain, and begirt about with curious and odoriferous Gardens and Orchards, which abound in all sorts of pleasant and delightful Fruits: watered with the River *Chrysorrhous*, which sendeth forth many Rivulets; by which the whole City is so well furnished, that not only most Houses have their Fountains; but also their Gardens and Orchards receive the benefit of the cool Streams, which gently glide through them: The whole Country round about being enriched with plenty of excellent *Vines*, which beareth *Grapes* all the year long; as also great plenty of *Wheat*. A place so surfeiting of Delights, that the vile Impostor *Mahomet* would never enter into it, lest by the ravishing Pleasures of this place, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make this his Paradise. This City is famous, first, for her Founders, who were *Abrahams* Servants; next for the Temple of *Zacharias*, which was garnished with 40 stately *Porches*, and adorned with about 9000 *Lanthorns* of *Gold* and *Silver*: and last of all, for the Conversion of St. *Paul*, who here first preached the Gospel; for which he was forced to make his escape out of the House, being let down the Walls in a *Basket*. *Josephus* believeth that it was built by *Us*, the Son of *Abraham*, Grandchild to *Noah*: However it were, after *Tyre* and *Sidon* began to decay, this began to be in some repute, and hath been esteemed

The fertility of the Country.

the

the chief City of *Phœnicia*, and ſometimes of all *Syria*. It is beyond Mount *Libanus*, in reſpect to *Tyre* and *Sidon*; ſeated in a Soil ſo fertil and delightful, by reaſon of the Rivers and Fountains, that in Holy Scripture it is called a *famous City*, a *City of Joy*, a *Houſe of Delight* and *Pleaſure*; and ſome Authors call it *the Paradiſe of the World*. Yet hath it felt very great changes, as well as *Tyre* and *Sidon*: It hath been taken, retaken, ruined, and re-eſtabliſhed divers times, by the *Aſſyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Perſians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Parthians*, *Saracens*, *Tartars*, by the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, and in fine, by the *Turks*, in whoſe hands it is at preſent, very flouriſhing and rich. The Houſes of private perſons are not ſo fair without as within; the publick Buildings are very beautiful; the *Caſtle* is in the middle of the City, built by a *Florentine*. 4. *Serepta*, ſeated on the Sea-Coaſt betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*, memorable in Holy Scripture for the Prophet *Elijah*, in raiſing from death the poor Widows Son. Here is found excellent *Wines*, accounted as good as thoſe of *Greece*. 5. *Acre*, of old *Acon*, and *Ptolemais*, is bounded with the Sea on two ſides; the third is joyned to a Plain of the Continent. The City is very ſtrong, being walled with a double Wall, fortified throughout on the out-ſide with Towers and Bulwarks, and in the middle of the City a ſtrong *Caſtle*, on the top of which there was every Night ſet Lights, which ſerved to direct *Ships* at Sea to their Port. The Plain is fertil and well watered with Streams, which deſcend from the Neighbouring Mountains. The *Chriſtians* took, loſt, and retook this place divers times, when they made War into the *Holy Land*; in which, none more famous than *Richard* the Firſt, and *Edward* the Firſt, both Kings of *England*. The ſame did likewiſe the *Saracens*; the *Soldans* of *Egypt* ruined it, and after re-built it; and at preſent it remains in the hands of the *Turks*. 6. *Tripoli* of *Syria*, (for diſtinction from *Tripoli* of *Barbary*) ſeated in a rich Plain, is at this day by ſome eſteemed the Metropolis of *Phœnicia*, though it hath three times more Ruins than whole Houſes; and ſeated about two miles from the Sea, but not above half a mile from its Haven, which formerly ſerved for a Port to *Aleppo*, but ſince removed to *Alexandretta* or *Scanderone*: But yet a place of ſome ſmall Trade, affording *Corn*, *Cotton-Wool*, *Yarn*, *Silk*, ſome *Drugs*, *Pot-Aſhes*, and other Commodities. The Buildings are generally low, and the Streets narrow, excepting thoſe which lead towards *Aleppo*, which are fair and broad; having many pleaſant Gardens, which are watered with delightful Streams, in which Gardens they keep great quantities of *Silk-Worms*. The Soil is excellent good, if it were well tilled; but the Air is unhealthful. 7. *Biblus*, now *Gibbeleth*, was the habitation of *Ciniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, Mother to the fair *Adonis*; from whence the neighbouring River took its name, remarkable in the infancy of *Chriſtianity*, for being the See of a *Biſhop*; but now by the *Turks* made deſolate. And, 8. *Barutt*, or *Beryte*, a place formerly of great Trade, but now of great concourſe, and much frequented by Merchants, and others; it being the Road for all thoſe *Caravans* that travel from *Aleppo*, *Damaſcus*, and *Jeruſalem*; to *Cairo*, and *Mecca*. It is ſubject to the *Grand Signior*. Near to this Town is that noted Valley, where (as ſome Authors ſay) St. *George* by killing the *Dragon*, which had his abode in a Cave here, redeemed the Kings Daughter, which was to be delivered to his fury.

PALESTINE.

PALESTINE, formerly called *Judæa*, *Canaan*, or the *Holy Land*, is bounded on the Eaſt with Mount *Hermon*, ſo much ſpoken of in Holy Scripture; on the South, with part of *Arabia Petræa*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean Sea*, and part of *Phœnicia*; and on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*, which ſeparates it from *Syria* and the reſt of *Phœnicia*. Its ſcituation is between the Third and Fourth *Climates*, which makes the longeſt day to be 14 hours and a quarter. So populous, that before the coming in of the *Iſraelites*, they had 30 Kings; and afterwards *David* numbred 1300000 *Paleſtine* bounded.

Fighting men, beſides thoſe of the Tribe of *Benjamin* and *Levi*. This laſt and moſt Meridional part of *Syria*, which we call *Paleſtine*, firſt received the name of the Land of *Canaan*, becauſe the Children of *Canaan* firſt ſeiſed it, and parted it amongſt them; when God had promiſed it to *Abraham* and his Poſterity, it was called the *Land* of *Promiſe*; but when it fell into the hands of the *Hebrews*, after their return from *Egypt*, and that they had divided it by Tribes, it took the name of the *Land of the Hebrews*, under which it was governed by *Prophets*, *Judges*, and *Kings*; but under theſe Kings it was ſoon divided into two Realms, which they called *Judah* and *Iſrael*. Under the *Romans* it was only known by the name of *Judea*, or *Paleſtine*; of *Judea*, becauſe that the Tribe of *Judah* was always the moſt powerful of the Twelve; and the Kingdom of *Judah* the moſt noble, and preſerved it ſelf longer than that of *Iſrael*: of *Paleſtina*, becauſe the *Philiſtines*, which poſſeſſed a part of the Maritim Coaſt of *Judea*, were powerful, and very well known to Strangers. After the death of our Saviour *Jeſus Chriſt*, all this Country was called the *Holy Land*. The People which anciently poſſeſt this Country were the *Jews*, being of a middle ſtature, ſtrong of body, of a black complexion, goggle-ey'd, a ſubtle and ingenious people, and ſuch as will live in any place, much given to Traffick, Uſury, and Brokage; not lending without Pledges, and taking the forfeitures of them. Their Law or Religion was given them by God the Father, which, with the ſeveral Ceremonies and Rites, &c. preſcribed to them, may be found in the five firſt Books of *Moſes*; their *Synagogues* are neither fair within nor without, ſave only adorned with a Curtain at the upper end, together with ſeveral Lamps, and in the midſt is placed a Scaffold in form of a Reading-Desk, for their Prieſt which readeth their Law, and ſings their Liturgy; they read in a ſtrange tone, and ſing as bad: during the time of their Service, their heads are veiled with Linnen fringed with Knots, anſwerable to the number of their Laws, and obſerving a continual motion of their body to and fro, and often jumping up, which they account for great zeal in their devotion; they obſerve much reverence to all the names of God, but eſpecially to *Jehovah*, inſomuch that they do never uſe it in vain talk. Their ancient Language was *Hebrew*; they keep their Sabbath on *Saturday*, in which they are very ſtrict; they marry their Daughters at the Age of 12 years, as not affecting a ſingle life. This Country is ſo fertil in all things, that it was termed a *Land flowing with Milk and Hony*; adorned with pleaſant Mountains and luxurious Valleys, enriched with pleaſant Streams, and where the Inhabitants are neither ſcorched with Heats, nor pinched with Colds. To ſpeak of all the memorable tranſactions that have happen'd in this Country would require a Volume by it ſelf; I ſhall only run over ſome of the chief, and then proceed to the deſcription of ſome of the Cities and Places of moſt note that are found therein. It is famous for bringing our Saviour *Jeſus Chriſt* into the World, where he wrought ſo many Miracles; but infamous for their horrid action of crucifying him, the Lord of Life. Here it was that the Lord appeared to *Jacob*; here, out of the Plains of *Moab*, the Ark was built of *Sittim* Wood; here, on Mount *Tabor*, Chriſt was transfigured; on Mount *Moriah*, *Iſaac* was to be ſacrificed; on Mount *Sion* was the Tower of *David*; on Mount *Calvary*, as ſome aver, was the Burial-place of *Adam*, our Forefather. Here, over the Brook *Kedron*, *David* paſſed in his flight from *Abſalom*; over which our *Saviour*, when he went to his Paſſion, paſſed: Here runneth the River of *Jordan*, ſufficiently famous; nigh to which ſtood the Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrha*: Here, at a place called *Endor*, *Saul* conſulted with a Witch; near to *Sichem*, *Jacob* had his Wells: Here, at *Aſhdod*, in the Temple of *Dagon*, the Ark of the Lord was brought, when taken; upon the entrance of which their Idol fell down: Here, at *Hebron*, is the Plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham*, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited by God from Heaven in the likeneſs of a Man; this City he bought for a Burial-place, for him and his Poſterity, where *Sarah* his Wife was firſt interr'd: And on Mount *Seir* was the habitation of *Eſau*, after his departure from *Canaan*. I ſhall ceaſe to trouble the Reader with the mentioning of many more remarkable Paſſages which were here tranſacted, but

A deſcription of the *Jews*, and their Religion.

The fertility of the Country.

Memorable Tranſactions in this Country.

but only refer them to the Books of the Old and New Teſtament, where they ſhall find them recorded; alſo great ſatisfaction may be received from *Joſephus*, a Book of good repute.

This Country is at preſent poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, as Maſters of it, but inhabited by *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Turks*, *Jews*, nay, I may ſay with People of all Nations and Religions; But ſetting aſide matters of Hiſtory, let us proceed to ſay ſomething of the principal places found herein, and firſt with *Jeruſalem*.

Jeruſalem is ſo well known in the Holy Scriptures, that we muſt confeſs it hath been not only one of the greateſt, but one of the faireſt Cities in the World, being called the *City of the Lord*. Its *Kings*, *High-Prieſts*, *Temple*, and *Royal Palaces*, have made it famous even amongſt the remoteſt people; Its circuit was once 50 Furlongs, which are only 6250 Geometrical Paces, but ſo well builded, that it was capable of the receiving of 150000 Families. Its *Temple* and *Palaces*, eſpecially thoſe of *Solomon*, were the faireſt, greateſt, and moſt magnificent which ever eye beheld: Its *Gates*, *Walls*, *Towers*, *Ditches*, cut out of the Rock; and its ſcituation in the Mountains made it ſeem impregnable. This City, once ſacred and glorious, elected by God for his Seat, placing it in the midſt of Nations, like a Diadem, crowning the head of the Mountains, the Theater of *Myſteries* and *Miracles*, was once the glory of the World; but its Pride, and other horrid Sins in the end loſt it divers times. *Nebuchadonozor* was the firſt that ruin'd it; *Pompey* contented himſelf to diſmantle it of its Walls, and to fill up the Ditches; *Veſpaſian* and *Titus Cæſar* utterly razed it, and deſtroyed in the place 1100000 People that were aſſembled to the *Paſs-over*; *Adrian* ruined likewiſe ſome Towers and Walls, which had been left to lodge the *Roman* Garriſon; and after cauſed a new City to be built, partly on its ancient Ruins, and partly without them. But with the divers changes it hath ſince fallen under, its beauty and magnificence is quite decayed: Yet is it not ſo loſt, but that there are ſeveral Places yet remaining worthy of note, together with ſeveral others that were ſince built; as on Mount *Calvary*, where *Chriſt* the *Saviour of the World* was Crucified, there is a rich, magnificent and large Temple, built by the vertuous *Helena*, Daughter to *Coilus*, a *Britiſh* King, and Mother to *Conſtantine* the Great, which not only poſſeſſeth the Mount, but alſo all the Garden below, where his Sepulchre was; and in this Temple there are ſeveral rich Structures, as one where *Chriſt* was impriſoned before his *Crucifixion*, another where *Chriſt* was nailed to the *Croſs*, another where he was *Crucified*; alſo one where the *Sepulchre* was, the *Altar* of the *Holy Croſs*, the *Altar* of the *Scourging*, the *Chapel* of the *Apparition*, the *Chapel* of the *Angels*, the *Chapel* of the diviſion of his *Garments*, the *Chapel* of St. *Helena*, who built this Temple, the *Chapel* of St. *John*, the *Sepulchre* of *Joſeph* of *Arimathea* under ground; together with ſeveral others, too long to recite. To this place there is a great reſort, as well of *Proteſtants* as *Papiſts*, though for ſundry ends, which brings a great Revenue; none being permitted to enter without paying ſome Mony, which the *Jews* here inhabiting do Farm of the *Grand Signior* at a large yearly Revenue, and ſo become Maſters thereof, making a great profit by ſhewing them to Strangers, which come hither from all Nations. Several other places are yet remaining, as the *Caſtle* of the *Piſans*, the *Monaſtery* of the *Franciſcans*, the *Church* of St. *James*; the *Church* of St. *Mark*, where once ſtood his Houſe; a *Moſque*, where ſtood the Houſe of *Zebedæus*; a *Chapel*, where ſtood the Houſe of St. *Thomas*; the *Church* of the *Angels*, where the *Palace* of *Annas* the *High-Prieſt* ſtood; the Church of St. *Saviour*, where the Palace of *Caiphas* ſtood; the *Court* of *Solomons* Temple, yet remaining; but in the room of the *Temple* a *Moſque*.

Jeruſalem ; its chief Places.

Near about *Jeruſalem* there are ſeveral places of note yet remaining, as in the way between *Jeruſalem* and the City of *Bethlem*, there are the Ruins of *Davids Tower*, the *Tower* of *Simeon*, *Bathſheba's Fountain*, the *Ciſtern* of *Saget*, the *Monaſtery* of *Elias*, *Jacobs Houſe*, the *Sepulchre* of *Rachel*, the *Ciſtern* of *David*, the *Houſe* of *Joſeph*, the *Monaſtery* of *Bethlem*, the *Mo-*

naſtery of the *Holy Croſs*. And at *Bethlehem*, over the place where *Chriſt* was born, the vertuous *Helena* erected alſo another fair and goodly *Temple*, which is poſſeſt by the *Franciſcans* of *Jeruſalem*, being called by the name of *St. Maries* of *Bethlehem*. Nigh to *Jeruſalem* is the Deſart of St. *John Baptiſt*, where is yet the Ruins of a *Monaſtery* over his *Cave*, and the *Fountain*; as alſo the *Mountains* of *Judah*, where is the *Church* of *St. John Baptiſt*, the *Fountain*, and the *Houſe* of *Elizabeth*, alſo the *Sepulchre* of *Zachary*, a part of the *Pillar* of *Abſalon*, and the *Cave* of *St. James*. At *Bethania*, two miles from *Jeruſalem*, is the *Houſe* of *Simon* the *Leper*, the *Houſe* of *Lazarus*, as alſo his *Sepulchre*, where is the Mount of *Olives*, where is the *Sepulchre* of the *Virgin Mary*, where *Chriſt* was often, and from whence he aſcended up into Heaven.

Joppa, or *Jaffa*, ſerves for a Port to *Jeruſalem*, from which it is 10 miles diſtant; and it was thither that the *Wood* and *Stones*, taken from Mount *Libanus*, and deſtined to the building of the Temple of *Solomon*, were brought by Water, and from thence by Land to *Jeruſalem*. This is the Port where *Jonah* embarked to flie from the face of the Lord. From this Hiſtory the Heathens made the Fable of *Andromeda*, and pretended to ſhew in the Rock, which is before the Port, the marks of the Irons, to which *Andromeda* was chained, and expoſed to the *Sea-Monſter*.

After *Jeruſalem* there reſts yet *Gaza*, now *Gazere*, greater and better inhabited than *Jeruſalem*. 1. *Jericho*, ſeated on the River *Jordan*, about 30 miles diſtant from *Jeruſalem*. a City once of great fame, being in the time of *Chriſtianity* an *Epiſcopal See*; alſo noted for her beautiful *Palms*, but eſpecially for her *Balſamum*; but now turned to Ruins, in the place whereof ſtands a few poor Cottages, inhabited by the *Arabians*. 2. *Samaria*, once the Seat of the Kings of *Iſrael*, hath now nothing left but the Ruins of ſome proud Buildings. And, 3. *Sichem*, now *Naplouſe*, hath ſome *Samaritans*, and remains the Capital of that Quarter, and the beſt inhabited, but with many Ruins; and to ſpeak truth, there is now ſcarce any place of mark in all the *Holy Land*; whereas under the *Cananites*, under the *Hebrews*, under the *Jews*, there were ſo many *People*, ſo many *Kings*, ſo many *Cities*, ſo rich, and ſo powerful, that throughout the whole Continent of the Earth there was no Country might compare with it. *Jeruſalem* is at preſent governed by a *Baſſa*, and *Naplouſe* by another, which obey the *Beglerby* of *Damaſcus*.

DIARBECK.

Diarbeck, and its Parts.

DIARBECK, taken particularly, anſwers only to *Meſopotamia*, which is but part of the ancient *Aſſyria*; taken in general, it anſwers to the three parts of that *Aſſyria*, of which the particular *Aſſyria* is now called *Arzerum*, *Meſopotamia*, *Diarbeck*, and *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*, or *Terack*. The firſt is the moſt *Oriental*, and almoſt all beyond the *Tygris*; the ſecond the moſt *Occidental*, and is between the *Euphrates* and the *Tygris*; the third the moſt *Meridional*, and lies on both ſides the *Tygris*.

Its fertility and People.

This Country of *Chaldea*, now *Terack*, is for the moſt part exceeding fruitful, yielding ordinarily 200 fold, the blades of their *Wheat* and *Barly* being about four fingers broad, having yearly two Harveſts. The People anciently were much given to *Divinations*, *South-ſayings*, and *Idolatry*. Places of moſt note are, 1. *Babylon*, formerly *Babel*, the ancienteſt City in the World, ſeated on the Bank of the *Euphrates*, firſt built by *Nimrod*, and much enlarged and beautified by *Nebuchadnezzar*; ſo that it was accounted one of the nine Wonders of the World. This City was ſo vaſt, that its Walls ſtretcht in circumference 365 Furlongs, in height 66 Yards, and in breadth 25, ſcituate on both ſides of the *Euphrates*, which alſo ran through the City, emptying it ſelf into divers *Rivolets*; over this River *Euphrates* there was a ſtately Bridge, at each end of which there was a ſumptuos *Palace*, beautified alſo with the

Its chief places.

Temple

Temple of the Idol *Bell*; the whole City being adorned with fair Buildings, ſtately *Palaces*, and *Temples*, with a number of fair and large Streets, famous for its Tower of *Babel*, which exalted it ſelf 5164 Paces in height, which is ſomething above 5 miles, having its baſis or circumference equal to its height. A City once eſteemed the Miſtreſs of the World, and ſo rich, that it is ſaid, that *Alexander* at his taking it found treaſured up 200000 Talents of *Gold*, (a Talent of our Money being eſteemed at 4500 Pounds) a vaſt Treaſure; but the ſins of the People drew the wrath of God upon it; and by reaſon of its Invaſions by the *Medes*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*, who ſubdued it, ſo ruined, that it ſoon loſt its priſtine glory and magnificence, being reduced to Ruins; out of which was raiſed a new City called *Bagdad*, ſo named from its many *Gardens* therein contained, but not to compare to the old *Babylon*, neither in largeneſs nor glory, being not above 7 miles in compaſs, but yet remains to this day a place of great Trade; between which and *Aleppo* are found many *Caravans* to travel with many thouſand *Camels* laden with rich Commodities brought from *India*, and elſewhere, abounding with the ſame Commodities as *Aleppo* doth. At this place they make uſe alſo of *Pigeons*, as they do at *Alexandretta* and *Aleppo*, which ſerve inſtead of *Poſts*, which, when occaſion ſerveth, as upon the arrival of *Ships*, *Caravans*, or the like, they take theſe *Pigeons* and tie an Advertiſement (which they write in a little piece of Paper) about their Necks, which done, they carry the *Pigeon* to a high place, and toſs it up, and immediately it flieth to the other place to which it is deſigned, which gives notice to them. The Palaces in this City moſt worthy of note are, the *Moſque*, a large and rich Structure, built of *Free-ſtone*, reſembling *Marble*, in form orbicular; then the *Sultans Palace* adjoyning to the *Buzzar*, or great Market-place, is a rich, large, but low Fabrick; next the *Bridge*, whoſe paſſage is over Boats, which are chained together, which, upon occaſion may be ſeparated, having reſemblance to that of *Roan* in *Normandy*; and laſtly, its *Coho-houſes*, which are Houſes of Good-fellowſhip, being in the nature of *Coffee-houſes* with us, which in this place are many, to which a great reſort of People cometh to ſip *Coffee*, which by them is highly eſteemed, as indeed by moſt People in theſe Regions. 3. *Balſera*, the Port-Town to *Bagdad*, ſeated near the place where *Tygris* loſes it ſelf in the *Perſian Gulph*; which is likewiſe called the *Gulph* of *Balſora* and *Ormus*. This City is ſaid to have 10000 *Houſes*, and anſwers to the ancient *Teredon*. 4. *Couſa*, was ſometime the Seat of the *Califfs*, and near it was *Ali* interr'd; whence it hath likewiſe been called *Maſad-Ali*, or *Merat-Ali*, the Houſe of *Ali*; and there is always a Horſe kept ready to mount *Mahomet Mahadin*, the Son of *Almanſor*, the Son of *Ocem*, the Son of *Ali*, when he ſhall come to convert the whole World to the Law of *Mahomet*; for this Converſion is to begin at *Couſa*: but they hitherto have had, and may for the future have time enough to curry their Horſe, expecting the coming of their *Cavalier*. 5. *Orchoe*, now ſo called, is the *Urchoa* of *Ptolomy*, and *Ur*, the place of *Abrahams* Nativity. 6. *Borſippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, famous for the great Victory which *Cyrus*, the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, here obtained againſt *Nabonius* King of *Babylon*. 7. *Cteſiphon*, ſeated on the *Tygris*; And, 8. *Sipparum*, noted for the great Trench made near it, which was made to receive the overflowings of the *Euphrates*, which was in compaſs 160 miles, and in depth 20 Fathoms, which was made to preſerve the City of *Babylon* from overflowings.

Babylon, now called *Bagdad*.

Bagdad and *Balſera* have each their *Beglerbies*, and many *Sangiacs*; but to ſpeak truth, ſometime the *Turk*, ſometime the *Perſian* poſſeſſes theſe Quarters; the laſt took *Bagdad* in the year 1624, which the *Turks* regained in 1638. Fame now ſpeaks it the *Perſians*.

MESO-

MESOPOTAMIA.

Meſopotamia bounded, and its fertility.

MESOPOTAMIA, bounded on the Weſt with the *Euphrates*. The Southern part of this Country is very barren and full of *Deſarts*, ſcarce affording any Herbage, nor hardly ſo much as Trees. But as this part is ſo much deficient, that towards the North hath as great plenty, which makes amends, abounding with great ſtore of *Corn* and *Wine*, together with all ſuch neceſſaries as are required for the life of man. Places of moſt note are, 1. *Rohai*, or *Orpha*, which is the ancient *Edeſſe*, being 10 miles in circuit, ſcituate on the River *Scirtas*, which paſſes through the midſt of it, not far from the *Euphrates* into which it falls. 2. *Caraemid*, anciently *Amida*, ſeated near the *Tygris*, encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall, a Frontier Town of great ſtrength, being much deſired by the *Perſians*; now the chief Seat of the *Baſſa*, which governs this Country for the *Turk*, where the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Chriſtians* alſo had his reſidence. 3. *Merdin*, not above 4 or 5 miles in circuit, but is very ſtrongly ſeated on a high Mountain, and having a *Caſtle* of about a mile in circumference; not far from which, in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, is the *Patriarchal See* of the *Jacobite Sectaries*. 4. *Aſanchif*, eſteemed the Metropolis of the Country, yet not being of above 4 or 5 miles compaſs, but hath four great Suburbs well filled with Inhabitants. 5. *Carra*, where *Craſſus* and the *Romans* were defeated, is now called *Herren*, or *Harran*, the City to which *Abraham* did remove when he went towards *Canaan*; remarkable in former times for its famous Temple, dedicated to the *Moon*, which was here worſhipped under both Sexes. 6. *Samiſcaſack*, not far from *Edeſſe*, hath its Caſtle ſeated very advantagiouſly. The Caſtle of *Corna*, that is pointed, is one of the moſt important places the *Turks* poſſeſs in all theſe quarters, being built above the place where the *Tygris* and *Euphrates* meet, to keep in awe both theſe Rivers: And, 7. *Virta*, by ſome Authors ſuppoſed to have been built by *Alexander* the Great, encompaſſed with Walls, and fortified with Towers and Bulwarks, that it was in a manner impregnable.

Its chief Places.

ASSYRIA.

Aſſyria bounded.

ASSYRIA, particularly ſo called, hath for its Weſtern limits *Meſopotamia*, and is called at this day, *Arzerum*. A Country very fruitful, ſeated in a Plain, and watered with ſeveral good Rivers; the People were anciently much addicted to Marſhal-affairs, yet very demure in their Habit and Behaviour, not going out of their Doors without firſt being perfumed, adorned with *Rings* on their Fingers, and a *Scepter* in their Hands; they were much given to *Bathing*, and eſpecially after Copulation. In their *Nuptial Ceremonies*, they never ſee the Woman until they are married; but when they hear a good Report of a Maiden, being ſuch as liketh them, they go to her Parents, and with them agree; which done, on an appointed time they meet in the Church, in ſuch a part of it as is deſigned for that uſe, where there is a Partition with a Hole in it: on one ſide the *Bridegroom* and his Friends ſtand, and on the other the *Bride* and her Friends; then the *Caſſiſſe* or *Prieſt* bids the *Bridegroom* put his hand through the Hole, and take his *Bride* by the hand; which no ſooner done, but her Mother, or ſome other of her Friends, being prepared with a ſharp Inſtrument, pricks his hand all over; and if he doth not pull away his hand when he is ſo pain'd, but ſtill holds her ſo faſt that ſhe cries, they hold it a ſign that he will love her; and if he lets her go, a ſign of no great love.

Its People, and their Cuſtoms, &c.

Chief places in *Aſſyria*.

Places of moſt note: 1. *Ninive*, firſt built by *Nimrod*, and afterwards ſo enlarged by ſeveral ſucceeding Kings, that it became at laſt to exceed *Babylon*, as well in largeneſs as otherwiſe; its Walls being in circuit 60 miles, being about

33 yards

33 yards in height, and 24 in breadth; and on whose Walls there was (for further strength) 1500 *Turrets*, or *Towers*, which made it to be thought impregble. To this City the Lord sent *Jonah* the Prophet, to Preach Repentance to them; but afterwards for their Sins, it was destroyed by *Astyages* King of the *Medes*, out of whose Ruins the City, 2. *Mosul* was raised, which at present is the chief City of *Assyria*, seated on the *Tygris*, most eminent for being the residence of the *Nestorian* Patriarch, where are founded 15 *Christian Churches*. It is enclosed within a Wall, and is the residence of a *Bashaw*; a place much ruined, but of note for the great concourse of Merchants, this being a thoroughfare City. 3. *Scherehezull*, or *Schiahrazur*, is very near to *Persia*, and is the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerby*, or *Bassa*, who hath 10000 *Timariots* under his command, for the defence and security of this Country. It is near to, if not the same as *Arbela*, renowned for the Victory of *Alexander* the great against *Darius*, and is said to retain its ancient name, and to be an Archbishoprick of the *Jacobites*. 4. *Geguamela*, noted for the last and greatest Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, King of *Persia*, in which *Alexander* gained the Victory. 5. *Calach*, built by *Nimrod*, being one of the Cities to which *Salmanassar* transplanted the *Ten Tribes*. 6. *Arbela*, seated on the Banks of the River *Caprus*, by some supposed to be the place where *Noah's Ark* was framed: And 7. *Sittace*, pleasantly seated in a fruitful Soil.

TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA, or *ARMENIA MAJOR*, touches the *Caspian Sea* between *Georgia* and *Servan*; and on the *Black Sea*, between *Anatolia* and *Georgia*, it extends from East to West little less than 200 Leagues, and from South to North, 150 answering to the great *Armenia* of the Ancients. *Turcomania* bounded.

Some divide it only into two sorts of People, the *Turcomans* and the *Curdes*; I would add at least the *Armenians* and the *Georgians*, these possessing a great part of the Country as well as the others, who are the natural and most ancient Inhabitants: for the *Turcomans* are esteemed to descend from *Turquestan* in *Tartary*, from whence come the *Turks*, and to whom they are most resembling; the *Curdes* descend from the ancient people of *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea* or *Babylonia*; the most Easternly of these three parts being yet called by the *Turks* and by the *Persians*, *Curdistan*, or the Country of the *Curdes*: and the *Georgians* descend from *Georgia*, which is above, and contiguous to our *Turcomania*. Its People.

Of these four sorts of People, the *Armenians* are the most industrious and civil, addicting themselves to Merchandize, as appears by their Manufactures, especially in their rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, *watered Chamlets*, &c. with which they drive a trade; being also proper Personages and good Archers. The *Turcomans* apply themselves to the Field, and to look after their Flocks: the *Curdes* are almost ever on Horse-back, having much of the *Arabick* Nature: the *Georgians* are the most docil, and the most peaceable. The *Turcomans* and the *Curdes* are *Mahometans*; the *Georgians* and *Armenians*, the greatest part *Christians*. And the *Armenian* Tongue is one of the most general in all *Asia*; extending it self likewise other where, and having *Armenian* Patriarchs and Bishops, not only in *Armenia*, but likewise in *Anatolia*, *Persia*, the *Holy Land*, *Egypt*, *Russia*, and *Polonia*.

Amongst the Ceremonies observed by the *Armenians*, I shall take notice of some few, as I find them in the Travels of *Tavernier*. They are very costly in adorning their *Churches*, especially the *Choir* and the *Altar*; at the ceremony of the *Mass* they light abundance of *Tapers*, and after the *Gospel* is read, several of the *Noviciates*, some having Bells fixed to long Sticks, and others having *Copper-plates* hung about with Bells, shaking and striking them one against another, together with the *Ecclesiasticks* and *Laity*, who sing, and make an indifferent harmony; during which the *Archbishop* and *Bishops* performs

forms ſeveral Ceremonies, and ſays certain Prayers; which being done, having the *Chalice* in his hand, and the *Bread* upon it, he turns towards the People, who immediately proſtrate themſelves on the ground, beating their Breaſts, and kiſſing the Earth, whilſt the Archbiſhop pronounceth theſe words, *This is the Lord, who gave his Body and Blood for you:* then he turns towards the Altar, and eats the *Bread* dipt in *Wine*, (for they never drink the *Wine*;) then he turns again to the People with the *Chalice* in his hand, and they that will receive, taking the *Bread* from the Archbiſhop; and this *Bread* is conſecrated the day before. That which is obſervable amongſt them, they give the Communion to Children of 2 or 3 Months old; and they never adminiſter the Sacrament all the time of their *Lent*. They have four Feaſts in the year beſides their *Lent*, at which times they obſerve the ſame Ceremonies as at *Lent*, eating no *Fleſh*, *Fiſh*, *Butter*, *Eggs*, or *Oil* for 8 days; the Feaſts are *Chriſtmas*, the *Aſcenſion*, the *Annunciation*, and *St. Georges*.

When a man deſigns his Son for the Prieſthood, he brings him to the Prieſt, who puts the *Cope* about his Shoulders, open on both ſides; after which he takes him home, and keeps him till the age of ſaying *Maſs*, which is 18 years; then he goes into the Church, out of which he is not allowed to depart for a year, during which time he is employed in the ſervice of the Church. And the Prieſt that is married after he hath ſaid *Maſs*, muſt be 5 days before he returns home to eat, drink, or lie with his Wife.

They generally Baptize their Children on *Sundays*, which is performed by putting it naked into the Water, then gives it to the Godfather, anoints it in ſeveral places in form of the *Croſs* with holy Oil, and pronounceth theſe words, *I baptize thee in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghoſt*; and ſayeth ſeveral Prayers ſuitable to the occaſion.

See *Tavernier*, fol. 173.

In their *Marriages* the Ceremonies are too many here to repeat: I ſhall take notice of ſome few. They are permitted to marry at 3 or 4 years of age; the agreement is made betwixt the Mothers, or for want of them, by the Females next of kin; which agreement the Father ſtands unto, and after a Ring is preſented to the intended Bride, the Contract ſtands. The *Bridegroom* and *Bride* never ſeeth one another till after the Nuptial Ceremonies are ended, both riding to the Church with their faces Vailed, the *Bridegrooms* is a *Carnation Tiffany*, or elſe *Gold* and *Silver* Net-work, and the *Bride* with a large white Veil, which covereth her body; thus Riding, they are attended by their Relations and Friends with *Tapers* in their hands, alſo the *Drums*, *Trumpets*, and other Muſical Inſtruments wait on them to the Church-door: being entred and advanced near the *Altar*, they lean Forehead to Forehead, then the Prieſt lays the Bible on their Heads (inſtead of a Desk) and ſo pronounceth the Ceremony, which is much like ours; after the *Benediction* they hear *Maſs*, and ſo return to the Houſe of the *Bride*. At their Feaſting the Men ſit by themſelves, and the Women by their ſelves; the Man goeth to Bed firſt, and the Woman pulleth off his Breeches, but putteth not off her Veil till Candles be put out; and at all times of the year the Woman riſeth firſt, ſo that the poor *Bridegroom* knoweth not whether he hath met with a Beauty, or a courſe and ill-favoured piece of fleſh; but be ſhe what ſhe will, he muſt keep her.

About their Dead; the Body is waſhed, wherein is put ſome Holy-water, then it is dreſt with a clean white Shirt, a pair of Breeches, a Waiſt-coat, and a Bonnet; then it is put in a Linnen-Sack, and ſewed up; then it is carried to the Church, accompanied with the Friends and Relations of the deceaſed, who carry in their hands *Tapers*, and being come to the *Altar*, after ſome Prayers are ſaid, they leave the Corps there all Night; the next Morning the Biſhop or Prieſt, attended as before, ſays *Maſs*; ſeveral Prayers being ſaid, and Dirges ſung, the Corps is puts in the Grave, and the Biſhop caſts 3 handfuls of Earth in, one after another, ſaying, *From earth thou cameſt, to earth thou ſhalt return, and ſtay there till our Lord comes*; then the Grave is filled up, and the Relations and Friends that will, go back to the Houſe of the Deceaſed, where a Collation is prepared. Theſe, with many other Ceremonies, are performed by them.

The

The Air is healthful, though its temperament be cold, becauſe of the Mountains and Hills, which overſpread the Country; but intermixt with fertil and and delightful Valleys, the Soil producing more Grain and Fruits than Vines; It yields *Bolearmoniack*, *Honey*, and, towards *Servan*, *Silk*, together with ſome Mines of *Silver*. The Paſtures are every where excellent, and particularly for *Horſes*, of which they make great account; for when *Armenia* was ſubject to the ancient Kings of *Perſia*, it furniſhed them yearly with 20000 *Horſes*. At preſent the *Turk* poſſeſſes the greateſt part of the Country, and keeps ſtill, or did not long ſince, *Beglerbies* at *Erzerum*, *Cars*, *Revan*, *Van*, *Schildar*, *Tefflis*, and *Derbent*; beſides which there are many Cities of conſiderable note, ſome of which the *Perſians* hold. Its Air, and fertility and trade.

1. *Erzerum*, on the *Euphrates*, near the *black Sea*, on which, and not far from *Erzerum*, is *Trebiſonde*, which facilitates a great trade between the Eaſt, Weſt, and North; for coming from the *Indian* Ocean by the Gulph of *Ormus*, and ſo up the *Euphrates*, they may receive paſſing by what comes from the Weſt to *Aleppo*, and carry it unto *Erzerum*; from whence, to *Trebiſonde* by land, is not above 25 or 30 Leagues. 2. *Cars*, *Chars*, or likewiſe *Chiſſery*, is four or five days Journy from *Erzerum* towards the Eaſt, on the River *Euphrates*; it hath been taken and retaken divers times by the *Turks* and *Perſians*. The ſame may be ſaid of *Revan*, *Schilder*, and *Van*: this laſt is not great, but well Walled, and with greater Ditches, and hath a Caſtle whoſe ſcituation is ſuch, as renders it almoſt inacceſſible. 3. *Tefflis* is likewiſe in ſome eſteem at preſent, but much more formerly under the name of *Artaxata*, which *Artaxias*, Father of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, cauſed to be builded and fortified at the perſwaſion of *Hannibal*. 4. *Derbent*, of great antiquity, being ſuppoſed to have its foundation laid by *Alexander* the Great; who alſo erected that no leſs great than ſtrong Caſtle, which is called *Kaſtow*, adjoyning to the ſaid City, which is the greateſt and moſt ordinary paſſage between *Turcomania*, *Perſia*, and other Southern Provinces of *Aſia*, to *Zuive*, the Kingdom of *Aſtracan*, and other more Northern Eſtates of *Europe* and *Aſia*. Its ſcituation is upon the utmoſt Mountains, which regard the *Tabereſtan*, or the *Caſpian* Sea: and all is ſo well fortified, that the *Turks* have took occaſion to call the place *Demir*, or *Temir Capi*, or the Port of *Iron*: and the name of *Derbent* ſignifies a *Streight Port*; and in all likelyhood theſe are the *Caſpiæ Portæ*, ſo famous among the Ancients; becauſe that in the *black Sea*, and the Sea of *Tabareſtan*, which is about 3 or 400 thouſand Paces: It is all high, Mountainous, and hard to be paſſed; and if there be any paſſages, they are infamous for Robberies and Incurſions, which the Inhabitants of the Countries, or the Princes which poſſeſs them, make. This City is a place of great ſtrength, being invironed with two ſtrong Walls, and fortified with *Towers* and *Iron-gates*, being accounted the Key or Inlet to *Perſia*, now in the hands of the *Grand Signior*. 5. *Bitlis*, and *Manuſcute*, belong to the *Curdes*, who have here many and divers Lords, better affected to the *Perſians* than the *Turks*, and yet when the *Turks* have eſtabliſhed Governours in theſe quarters, they have choſen them out of the principal of the Country, who have not ceaſed to take part in all occaſions rather with the *Perſians* than the *Turks*. *Bitlis* is between two Mountains, watered with a River, which receives many fair Fountains. The Houſes are built with Stones, which is rare in that Country; others being of nothing but *Wood* and *Earth*. The Caſtle is ſeated advantagiouſly, but I believe this place is not now in the hands of the *Turks*; and to ſpeak truth, we have at preſent little knowledge of any thing concerning theſe quarters. Its chief Places.

ARMENIA was much better known, and more famous in Ancient time than at preſent, under the name of *Turcomania*. Its Bounds are very advantagious, being quite encompaſſed with high Mountains, large Rivers, and waſhed by divers Seas, and ſeated Northwards of the *Caſpian* Mountains, which divides it from *Media*, now called *Servan*. The Bounds of *Armenia*.

This Country is well repleniſhed with *Mountains*, *Vallies*, *Rivers*, and *Lakes*. The Mountain *Anti-Taurus* divides it Eaſt and Weſt, almoſt from one The Mountains of *Armenia*.

extremity to the other; whose most Easterly point is called *Abus*; from whence the *Euphrates*, *Tigris*, and *Araxes* take some of their Streams. The *Gordian* Mountains pour forth the greatest supplies to *Tigris*; and the *Pariardes* increase most the Streams of *Euphrates*, *Araxes*, and *Farza*.

Chief Rivers in *Armenia*.

Farza turns his course towards the North, and after having passed *Colchida*, and pressed through 100 or 120 *Bridges*, falls into the *Euxine Sea*. *Araxes* turns towards the East, watering the fairest and richest Plains of *Armenia*; and falls into the *Caspian Sea* between *Media* and *Albania*. Both the one and the other *Euphrates* descend towards the West; but approaching the *Euxine Sea*, it turns again towards the South, and reunites its two Channels into one, traverses the *Anti-Taurus* and *Taurus*, divides *Armenia* and *Mesopotamia* from *Asia Minor*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*; descends into *Chaldea*, where it waters the ancient *Babylon*, and loses it self in the *Tigris*. This last descends from Mount *Abus*, and the *Georgian* Mountains, falls into divers Lakes, loses it self and rises divers times out of the Earth; cuts the Mountain *Niphates*, separates *Mesopotamia* from *Assyria*, washes *Ninive*, *Seleucia*, *Ctesiphon*; receives all the branches of the *Euphrates*, and discharges it self in the *Persian* Gulph.

Lakes of most note in *Armenia*.

The greatest *Lakes* of *Armenia* are, *Thospitis*, *Areessa*, and *Lychintes*; this last is towards the *Araxes* and the *Caspian Sea*: *Areessa* is the same that *Pliny* and *Solinus* call *Arethusa*. *Thospitis*, according to *Ptolomy*, is another Lake the *Tigris* likewise crosses; after which it loses it self the second time. The first hath its Water so, as it will take spots out of Cloaths, but is not good to drink.

Kings of eminent note in *Armenia*.

Among the Kings of *Armenia*, which made themselves most known to the *Romans* or *Parthians*; *Tigranes*, Son-in-law to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, hath been the most famous. This *Tigranes*, after having been an Hostage in the hands of the *Parthians*, regained his Estates by their means, in recompence of which he gave them 70 Valleys, on the confines of *Media* and *Assyria*; but after he knew and had gathered together his Powers, he retook all those Vallies, beat the *Parthians* out of them, pillaged *Assyria* as far as *Ninive* and *Arbela*, subjected to himself a part of *Media*; and afterwards all *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Cilicia*. But whilst he believed himself above Fortune, *Mithridates* his Father-in-law was divers times defeated, and driven from his Realm of *Pontus* by *Lucullus* and the *Romans*, and retiring himself into *Armenia* to his Son-in-law, his refusal to abandon or deliver him into the hands of *Lucullus*, drew the *Romans* into *Armenia*, where *Lucullus* several times defeated *Tigranes*, took *Tigranocerta*, where was his Regal Diadem, and likewise in a great Set-Battel, where *Tigranes* had 150000 Foot, and 1000 or 1200 Horse, slew 100000 Foot, and the greatest part of his Cavalry, constraining him to yield to the *Romans* the Provinces of *Cilicia*, *Syria*, *Phœnicia*, and *Mesopotamia*, and content himself with *Armenia* only; but for the present let us lay aside History.

The division of *Armenia*, according to *Ptolomy*.

Ptolomy divided *Armenia* into four principal Parts, and allotted to the first 7 Regions or Provinces, 6 to the second, 3 to the third, and 4 to the fourth: placing in the first part 30 Cities, 27 in the second, 12 in the third, and 18 in the fourth; which are in all 4 *Parts*, 20 *Regions* or *Provinces*, and 87 *Cities*. *Pliny* accounts 120 *Strategies* in *Armenia*, which are the Governments or particular Jurisdictions of every Province; six for each, and one as much as the other. *Armenia* is not only known in prophane History, but likewise in Holy Writ. After the Deluge, the Holy Scripture makes mention, that the *Ark* of *Noah* rested upon the Mountains of *Armenia*: to say precisely at present which they were (there being so many in *Armenia*) Authors cannot agree. We only conjecture, that they must be either *Abus*, which ends the *Anti-Taurus*, or the *Pariardes*, or the *Gordons*, which are the highest in all *Armenia*; and from whence the *Euphrates*, the *Tigris*, the *Phazza* or *Phasis*, and *Araxes* descend.

Now *Euphrates* is called *Frat* or *Forat*, the *Tigris*, *Diglath* or *Digelath*; these two names, *Frat* and *Diglath*, are found among the four Rivers, which *Moses* saith came forth from the *Terrestrial Paradise*: We must therefore seek this *Paradise* not far from hence; the difficulty is to find the other two Rivers, *Phison*, and *Gihon*.

Almost

Almoſt all Authors conclude the *Nile* for *Gehon*, and the *Ganges* for *Phiſon*; but as the Bible deſcribes theſe Rivers to us, they muſt deſcend from the ſame place; which the *Tigris*, the *Euphrates*, the *Nile*, and the *Ganges* cannot do. The *Tigris* and the *Euphrates* have ſome Springs, which are not far diſtant the one from the other; but thoſe of *Ganges* are more than 200 Leagues, and thoſe of the *Nile* more than 1500 Leagues from thoſe of the *Tigris* or *Euphrates*; and moreover thoſe of *Nile* and of *Ganges*, are more than 2000 Leagues one from the other. The Terreſtrial Paradiſe in Armenia.

Phaſis hath its heads in the ſame Mountain with the *Euphrates*, and may therefore better anſwer to *Phiſon* then can the *Ganges*. The *Araxes* hath its Springs in the ſame Mountains with the *Phaſis* and *Euphrates*, and ſo may better anſwer to the *Gehon* than the *Nile*; for as for the *Gehon*, or *Jehun*, which we now know it anſwers to the *Oxus* of the Ancients; which runs between *Bactriana* and *Sogdiana*, and diſcharges itſelf into the *Caſpian Sea*; but it hath its Springs in Mount *Caucaſus* in *India*, a little on this ſide the Springs of the *Indus*, which are likewiſe 8 or 900 Leagues from thoſe of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*.

Since then the *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Phazza*, and *Araxes*, have here their Springs, we may judge that the *Terreſtrial Paradiſe* was in theſe Mountains. The Holy Scripture ſaith, that it had in the midſt of it a Fountain, from whence iſſued a River alone, which divides itſelf into four others, which it names *Phiſon*, *Gehon*, *Diglath*, and *Frath*. It is to be believed, that this Fountain was in the midſt of the World, to the end the Rivers might have a courſe almoſt equal to water all parts of the World. It muſt likewiſe be concluded, that this *Fountain* muſt be in ſome high part of the World, to the end that Rivers might have an equal fall. The Mountains of *Armenia* are directly in the middle of our Continent; which may eaſily be proved by caſting the eye upon the whole Continent: they are likewiſe the higheſt in the World, ſince they were firſt diſcovered after the Deluge, and thoſe on which the *Ark* of *Noah* reſted; and the modern names of the Rivers not being very different from the ancients, at leaſt the three or four; I am bold to ſay, that if there yet remains any marks by which we may diſcover the place where the *Terreſtrial Paradiſe* hath been, it is rather in theſe quarters than any other.

GEORGIA.

ABove *Turcomania*, and between the *Black Sea* and the *Caſpian*, as far as Mount *Caucaſus*, lies *GEORGIA*; which is divided into three or four parts, *Mingrelia*, *Avogaſia*, *Gurgiſton*, and *Quiria*: *Avogaſia* is ſometimes comprehended under the name of *Mingrelia*; and on the other ſide a part of the ancient *Armenia* paſſeth likewiſe under the general name of *Georgia*: *Mingrelia* and *Avogaſia* together, are the ſame with *Colchis* of the Ancients, or little more: *Gurgiſton*, to the ancient *Iberia*, and ſometimes likewiſe to that part of *Armenia*, which falls under the general name of *Georgia*: *Quiria* anſwers to the ancient *Albania*. *Georgia*, and its parts.

The *Georgians* are docil, peaceable, lovers of Chriſtianity, much addicted to drinking, and the ſtronger the Drink the better acceptable: At Feaſts the *Women* never eat with the *Men*. They are great lovers of *Onions* and *Herbs*, are much addicted to Trade, are great Travellers, are very expert at the *Bow* and *Arrow*, and are eſteemed the beſt Souldiers in all *Aſia*.

The Cities of *Phans*, or *Phazza*, and *Savatopoli*, are the moſt famous of *Mingrelia*, and formerly of *Colchis*. *Savatopoli*, once *Sebaſtopolis*, and before that *Dioſcurias* had the confluence of 300 different Nations, and different Tongues, which came hither from the North, in way of Traffick. *Phazza*, anciently *Phaſis*, on the River of the ſame name, was the abode of *Æetes*, who kept the *Golden Fleece*, which the *Argonauts* took away, after having vanquiſhed all thoſe difficulties which preſented themſelves to their hindrance. Its chief places.

Of the Golden Fleece.

I believe that this *Golden Fleece* was no other thing, than a Trade of *Wool*, *Skins*, and *Furrs*, which all the Northern People brought to *Phasis*, which *Jason* and the *Greeks*, among all the People of *Europe* were the first Discoverers of: And because there was great profit, and many hazards and dangers in the first Navigations, it was feigned that the *Fleece* was of *Gold*, and that it was guarded by furious Bulls, Men well armed, and a horrible and affrightful Dragon. It may be added, That *Jason* with the *Golden Fleece* brought *Medea* with him, which after caused so many displeasures in his Family; that is, that Riches having introduced some Luxury among the *Greeks*, their *Women* became more proud and troublesom.

Places in Georgia.

Cori and *Bassachiuch* are the best Cities of *Gurgistan*: *Tefflis* and *Derbent* the fairest of that part of *Armenia*, which passes under the name of *Georgia*; *Bassachiuch* may answer to the ancient *Artamista*; *Cori* to *Harmastis*, or *Armactia*; *Tefflis* to *Artaxata*; and *Derbent* to *Caspiæ Portæ*: *Bassachiuch* and *Cori*, with some other places of *Gurgistan*, have their Princes, of which there are many throughout *Georgia*; *Cori* is most advanced towards the Sea, and *Bassachiuch* more engaged with the Mountains. *Tefflis* and *Derbent* are in the hands of the *Turks*, as we have said in *Turcomania*.

Country of *Quiria*, its Provinces, and the chief Places.

QUIRIA extends it self from the particular *Georgia*, which lies on the West and South unto Mount *Caucasus*, which bounds it on the North side. Some Authors divide it into two, others into three Provinces; of which the chief Cities are *Stranu*, *Zitrach*, and *Chipicha*; instead of *Stranu*: others put *Zambanach*; and instead of *Zitrach*, *Gorgora*; possibly these names are not different but to divers People, though they be the same places. However it be, *Stranu*, or *Zambanach*, answer to the ancient *Albana*, Metropolis of *Albania*; *Zitrach*, or *Gorgora*, answers to the ancient *Getara*, which the *Greek* Text in *Ptolomy* writes *Gagara*, and both the places are on the Sea: they have been, and may possibly yet be, rich and Merchandizing. *Chipicha* is farther up in the Land, and was the ancient *Chabala*.

COMMANIA.

Commania, and its bounds.

ABove *Georgia* lies *COMMANIA*, little known by the Ancients, and less at present; Mount *Caucasus* bounds it on the South, and separates it from *Georgia*; the River *Don* or *Tana* is its Northern limits, and parts it from *Muscovia*; the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and the Sea of *Zabaque* or *Tana*, doth wash it on the West, and divides it from the *petty Tartars*: the *Caspian* Sea, or the Sea of *Tabereстan* lies to the Eastward of it, and gives it Traffick and Communication with *Persia* and *Tartaria*.

Its length and breadth.

This Region may have 300 Leagues of length from the Streight of *Vospero* unto the River *Volga*, which are its extream bounds from East to West, and about 100 from North to South.

Its People.

The People pass all under the general name of *Circasses*, which the *Polonians* call *Peint Zeorstki*, that is, the Inhabitants of the *five Mountains*. They are free, having some Chiefs or Governours, and living very near after the manner of *Switzers* in *Europe*, hiring themselves to War, sometimes to the *Turks*, their Neighbours, on the *Black Sea*; sometimes to the *Tartars* or *Moscovites*, which are next them on the Sea of *Zabaque* and River *Don*; and sometimes likewise to the *Soldan* of *Persia*, who is their Neighbour on the *Caspian* Sea. They have been *Christians* of the *Greek* Churches, but with many Superstitions; at present, for want of Teachers, many let themselves fall to *Mahumetism*, others to *Idolatry*. They are warlike, nor care they for fortifying their Towns, confiding in their Arms, and in the scituation of their Country. At their *Funerals*, the Relations and Friends of the Deceased scarifie their Flesh, prostrating themselves on the ground, and tear their Hair. If a man have no Children by his Wife, he may take others to raise up Issue; and Women are allowed their Gallants, and the more she hath, the more she is respected; which proceeds from her handsomness,

handſomneſs, Beauties being admired by them; and this is no diſgrace to her Husband, as amongſt us: and if the Man or Woman cannot agree, they are parted. The People for the generality are of an excellent Complexion, eſpecially the Women. All the Country People are ſlaves to the Lord of the Village where they live, and are employed to till his ground, and other ſervices.

Its ancient People the Amazons.

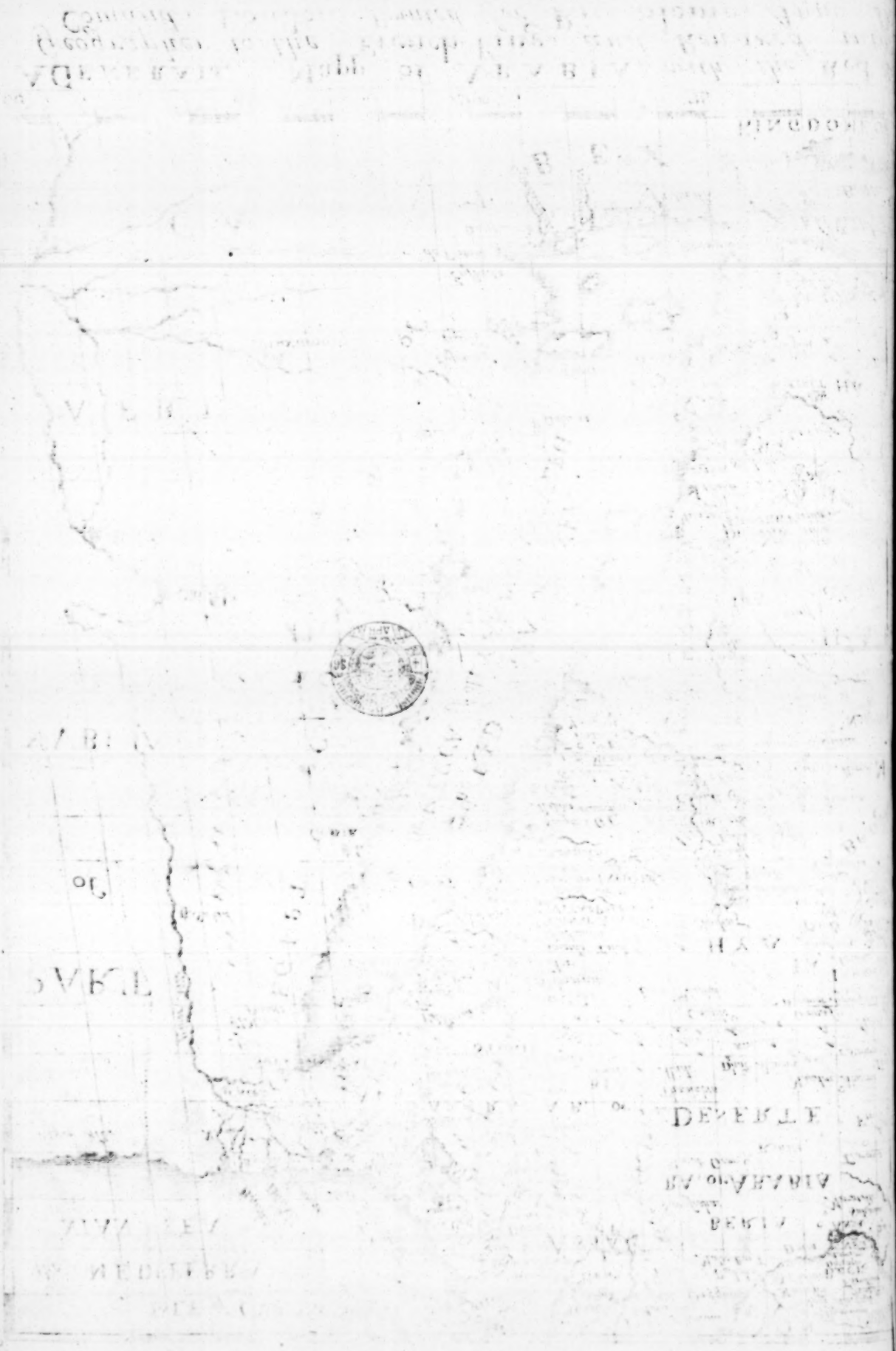
But the People of theſe Quarters have been much more famous formerly, under the name of *Amazons*; for this was their true and natural Country, from whence they came, and made their incurſions into divers parts of *Europe* and *Aſia*. They had Soveraignty in *Colchida*, in *Albania*, in *Cappadocia*,, in *Aſia* the Leſſer, *in Cilicia* in *Syria*; and did in divers places build many fair Cities, as *Themiſcyra* in *Cappadocia*, and on the *Euxine Sea*; *Mirlea* in *Bithynia*, and on the *Propontick*, *Pytane*, *Myrina*, and *Cuma* on the Coaſt of *Æolia*; likewiſe *Epheſus*, *Smyrna*, and *Pyrene*: On the Coaſt of *Ionia*, (theſe two Quarters, *Æolia* and *Ionia*, being on the *Ægean Sea*,) *Mitelene* in the Iſle of *Lesbos*, and *Paphos* in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, who made themſelves known in thoſe Wars they ſuſtained againſt *Hercules*, near *Themiſcyra*; againſt *Theſeus*, near *Athens*, whither they carried the War againſt the *Greeks*, before *Troy*, whither they went in favour of *Hector*, againſt the *Perſians*, and other People, in divers occaſions. Some of them made their abode at *Themiſcyra*, others at *Alope*, which was afterwards called *Epheſus*; and others at *Zeleja*, not far from *Troy*.

To conclude, the Ancients have ſpoken ſo many wonders of them, that the leaſt of them have paſſed for Fables. It may be believed, that ſome Eſtates in theſe Quarters being fallen under the Government of *Women*, their Huſbands being deceaſed, and their Children young, or for ſome other reaſon, theſe *Women* adminiſtred the publick Affairs with ſo much conduct and generoſity, both in Policy and War, that they excelled the greateſt part of Men; from whence the *Greeks*, according to their ordinary cuſtom, took occaſion to ſpeak things not only beyond the Truth, but all that came nigh to Truth. And ſo much for *Turky* in *Aſia*.

A R A-

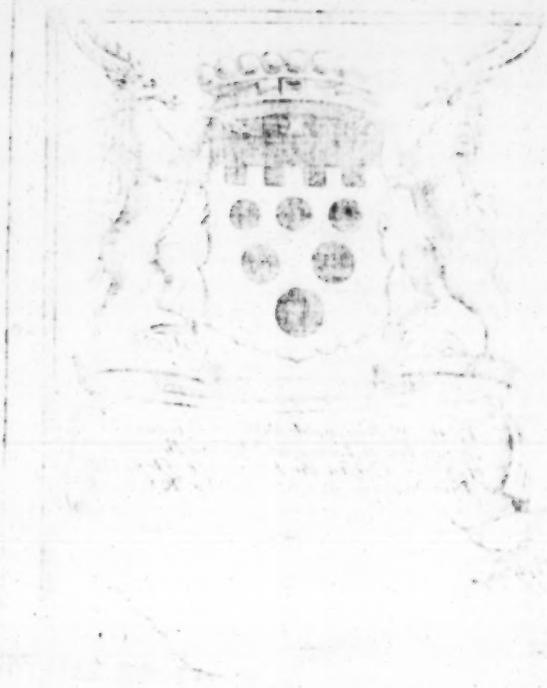
ARABIA, which may be considered in

- LAND, with its three Parts, as they lie
  - Between the RED-SEA, and Gulph of BALSERA and ORMUS; as, } HYAMAN, GEMEN, or ARABIA the HAPPY.
    - Medina,
    - Chaibar,
    - Algiar,
    - Egra,
    - Sogiar,
    - Mecca,
    - Zideh,
    - Nejeran,
    - Dhafar,
    - Magna,
    - Zafer,
    - Cubiu,
    - Gilan,
    - Zibicha,
    - Sanaa,
    - Mechaf Adierda,
    - Aden,
    - Abin,
    - Odeidat,
    - Laghir,
    - Almanzaraia,
    - Saada,
    - Farchen,
    - Abiza,
    - Caxem,
    - Gabir,
    - Dolfar,
    - Peleder,
    - Nejbanaxa,
    - Guebelhaman,
    - Alabili,
    - Calhat,
    - Cor,
    - Tybi,
    - Dryme,
    - Curiat,
    - Sriaheira,
    - Cueva,
    - Ceriph,
    - Hor,
    - Calahate,
    - Mascaten,
    - Sohar,
    - Orfadan,
    - Doba,
    - Mocandon,
    - Minhar,
    - Masfa,
    - Syr, or Sour,
    - Mascalar,
    - Jemen,
    - Zirisidin,
    - Lalach,
    - Elcarif,
    - Bahar,
    - Ahso,
    - Manabon,
    - Fararan,
    - Jamama,
    - Borani.
  - Near PALESTINE, or the HOLY LAND; as, } BARRAAB, or ARABIA the STONY,
    - Madian,
    - Medava,
    - Sur,
    - Thara,
    - Herat, of old Petra,
    - Moab,
    - Busserеth,
    - St. Catherine.
  - Near CHALDEA, and the EUPHRATES; as, } BERIARA, or ARABIA the DESART,
    - Anna,
    - Mexat-Ali,
    - Mexat Ocem,
    - Sumiscasac,
    - Sukana,
    - Faraa,
    - Kadhema,
    - Anna,
    - Abadon,
    - Tangia,
    - Thaalabia,
    - Remala,
    - Maaden Alnocra.
- ISLES adjacent, as they lie
  - In the PERSIAN GULPH, or GULPH of BALSORA, and ORMUS; as,
    - Baharem, ——— Manama.
    - Ouiximi.
    - Cori.
    - Tome.
    - Andrani.
    - Quaro.
  - In the SOUTHERN OCEAN; as,
    - Mazira, ——— Mazira.
    - Curia.
    - Muria.
  - In the RED-SEA, or Sea of MECCA; as,
    - Tincce.
    - Camaran, ——— Camaran.
    - Decor.
    - Zaiban.
    - Turach.
    - Muchi.
    - Monte Marzoan.
    - Genaman.
    - Chifale.
    - Cajas.



A GENERALL Mapp of ARABIA, with the Red Sea
Geographer to the French King, and Rendred into
Comand; London Printed for Ric: Blome, Anno Do

THE
EMPIRE
OF
PERSIA
To the Rt Honorable William Viscount Brouncker of Lyons, and Baron Brouncker of Newcastle in the Kingdome of Ireland This Mapp is humbly DD by R.B.
GVLPH of PERSIA
GVLPH
of
ORMUS
THE
ARABIAN, SEA
Part of the
ORIENTAL, or INDIAN
OCEAN
ARABIA
OMAN
Sohar
MASCATE
ORMUS
Curiate
Muscat
Tybi
SEGER
GUEBELHAMAN
Cape Farthak
Cape Guardafuy
Tallara
Masculina
Zocotora
Mare
Nigra
Aden
Mocha
Gomeron
Comorou
Queixome
Lamon
Malcadir
Tibiste
Laram
Barra
Brica
Gerun
Tables
Queibi
Ormigus
Nabon
Volama
Raha
Dolq
Oseyran
Calato
Curiate
Curiate
Appola
Carrit
Dessuq
Mayta
Mogister
Cassimet
Syr
Tybi
Dagrun
Majeos
Isle
Harrique
Cape Jasques
Cape Calajate
Cape Mussendom
Cape Mussendom
Isle
Cape Jasques
Cape Calajate
Cape Mussendom
Cape Mussendom
Isle
Harrique



ARABIA.

ARABIA hath for its Eaſtern Limits, the *Perſian* Gulph and *Chaldea*; for its Southern, the *Ocean*; for its Weſtern, the *Red Sea* and ſome part of *Egypt*; and for its Northern Limits, the River *Euphrates*, together with ſome part of *Paleſtine*. *Arabia*'s its Bounds.

Arabia, hath been well known both to the Ancients, and at preſent. They commonly divided it into three parts: *Baraab*, or *Arabia* the Stony, which lies near the *Holy Land*; *Berjara*, or *Arabia* the Deſart, near to *Chaldea* and the *Euphrates*; *Hyaman*, or *Gemen*, or *Arabia* the Happy, which advances it ſelf between the *Red-Sea*, which ſeparates it from *Africa* and the Gulph of *Ormus*, which divides it from *Perſia*, into the *Indian Ocean*. And this part is the greateſt, the richeſt, and beſt inhabited of all. Its Parts.

Arabia the Stony hath for its chief places, 1. *Petra*, now called *Herat*, which ſignifies a Rock, whereon it was built with an advantagious ſcituation; a place of great ſtrength, and much noted as well in prophane Hiſtory as Holy Writ. 2. *Boſtra*, now called *Buſeſereth*, rebuilt after its former Ruins by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; a City of great Antiquity, and memorable for being the Birth-place of *Philip*, one of *Alexanders* Succeſſors, who was the firſt of the *Romans* Emperours which embraced Chriſtianity. 3. *Medava*, now *Moab*, according to the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint*; and being ſo, the name may be taken from *Moab*, Son of *Lots* eldeſt Daughter, from whence the *Moabites* deſcended, of whom mention is made in the Old Teſtament. 4. *Berenice*, ſo named from an *Ægyptian* Queen, but better known by the name of *Eſion-Geber*; here it was that the Children of *Iſrael* did encamp; where alſo thoſe Ships employed by *Solomon* to *Ophir*, did make their ordinary Harbour. 5. *Sur*, one of the chief Cities of the *Amalekites*, giving name to a Wilderneſs there adjacent, remarkable for the great Victory which *Saul* gave the *Amalekites*, where alſo the Children of *Iſrael* firſt encamped after their paſſage through the *Red Sea*. 6. *Thara*, where *Korah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, were puniſhed: And, 7. *Madian*, ſeated towards the *Red Sea*, being the City of *Jethro*, whoſe Daughter *Zipporah*, *Moſes* took to wife. *Arabia* the Stony, and its chief places.

Beſides theſe Cities there are ſome others, yet the Country is for the moſt part Deſart, and is the ſame where the Children of *Iſrael* wandred 40 years; there, where then inhabited the *Moabites*, *Amalekites*, *Midianites*, *Idumæans*, and others; there, where are the Mountains of *Sinai* and *Horeb*. The *Iſraelites* being in theſe Deſarts, lay a whole year near this Mountain, and during that time *Moſes* received from God the *Decalogue*, dedicated the *Tabernacle*, ordained a *High Prieſt*, *Prieſts* and *Levites*, and eſtabliſhed *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Political Laws*. There is at preſent a Monaſtery of St. *Katherine*, built by *Juſtinian*,; and all ſorts of *Pilgrims* are received by the *Caloyers*, that is, *Religious Greeks* which inhabit there. The *Burning Buſh*, in which God appeared to *Moſes*, was near Mount *Horeb*. The *Rock* which *Moſes* ſtruck to have Water, was of this Mount; and likewiſe on this Mountain it was that *Moſes* beſought God for the *Iſraelites* againſt the *Amalekites*: alſo Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumea*, where *Aaron* died. Remarkable things here tranſacted.

On the Coaſt of the *Red Sea* is the Caſtle *Tor*, a Borough or Walled Town, and a Port very famous, where it is believed, that the *Iſraelites* having paſſed the *Red Sea*, entred the Deſarts this way: And it is likewiſe a great Paſſage, where the *Caravans* ſtop at their return from *Mecca*.

Arabia

Arabia the Desart described.

ARABIA the Desart, so called by reason of the vast Sandy Desarts, and the uninhabitableness thereof, scarce affording either food for Man or Beast; so that those which travel this Country are forced to carry with them their Provision, and guide themselves to the place design'd by the help of *Stars*, as they do at Sea; and are forced to go in great Companies or *Caravans*, for fear of being robbed and rifled by the *wild Arabs* (who here inhabit in Tents, which they remove as occasion serveth from place to place, either for fresh Pasture, or otherwise,) and yet much travelled by Merchants, who Trade into *Babylonia*, *Egypt*, and elsewhere. Some Authors have observed in the course of their Trade, that the *Sandy Desarts* are their *Seas*, the *wild Arabs* their *Pirates*, and their *Camels* their *Ships*; each *Camel* carrying 600 or 1000 pound weight.

Its People.

The People are much addicted to Theft, by which they get their chief living, being stout and warlike Men, and not Tilling the Earth, and planting *Fruits*, *Plants*, or the like; their chief food being *Venison*, *Milk*, *Fowls*, and *Herbs*. They go half naked; their Wives they hire for what time they please, who in way of a Portion bring a *Tent* and a *Spear* to their Husbands. Both Sexes are much given to Carnal lusts, and when Women are delivered of a Child, they leave it without troubling themselves with it.

Its chief Cities.

There are found in *Arabia* the Desart two Cities of the name of *Anna* or *Anua*, one on the *Euphrates*, and the other on the River *Astan*, not far from the Gulph of *Balsora*: this last is least famous; the other is the most considerable of the Province, seated both on the one and the other Bank of the *Euphrates*; but the greatest part and the richest is on the *Arabian* side. There is in all about 4000 Houses, which have been much ruined in the late Wars between the *Turks* and *Persians*. The City contains divers Isles, on one of which is a Castle. At *Suskanna*, a Borough upon the great Road between *Anua* and *Aleppo*, *Texera* saith, That the *Women* are as fair as *Angels*; if he had likewise said as wise, and had spoken truth, all *Men* from the four Corners of the World had been obliged to go to seek them. 3. *Mexat Ali*, that is, the Oratory of *Ali*, had once 6 or 7000 Houses, when the Sect of *Ali* bore sway in those quarters: there remains at present not above 500 Inhabitants. 4. *Mexat Ocem*, that is, the Oratory of *Ocem*, is not walled, nor hath above 4000 Houses. *Saba*, now *Simiscasac*, according to the opinion of *Guillandin*, is the place from whence the Three *Wise-men* departed to go to *Bethlem*, to adore the *Saviour of the World*.

This *Arabia* the Desart, according to some, hath divers *Lords*, which command it, and which for the most part are Vassals or Tributaries to the Great *Turk*; who holds likewise a part. But these People being more inclined to the *Mahometan* Sect of *Ali*, which is that of the *Persians*, than to that of *Omaz*, which is that of the *Turks*, are more affectionate to the *Persians* than to the *Turks*; and some of these *Lords* likewise hold of the *Persians*.

Others give all *Arabia* the Desart to one King, and will have the City, or rather the Court of that Prince, to have a wonderful disposition and scituation; and that the Prince can make it all a March or Walk when and as often as he pleases, which is still by going thither where they may best find food for their *Horses* and *Camels*; and they say, that the place being chosen, they dispose the Quarters and Streets after the ordinary manner: and at the same time pitch all the Tents; that of the Prince in the midst, and the others about alwaies in the same fashion; that part which is towards the North, South, East, or West never changing. And the Quarters and Streets have their Names and their Tents in the same form; insomuch that who once knows the order, may easily find any which inhabit therein.

This moving City, or rather this *Court Errant*, contains not only the *Militia* of the Prince, which are above 2000 Men, but likewise a great number of their *Nobility*, *Merchants*, *Artizans*, and divers Strangers which follow this Court.

Arabia the Happy bounded.

ARABIA the Happy is a great *Peninsula*, which stretcheth it self from the Mountains which divide it from the other two parts of *Arabia* to the *Ocean*, being 3, 4, and in some places 500 Leagues long and broad. The Gulph

of

of *Balſora*, and *Ormus*, otherwiſe the *Perſian* Gulph, waſhes it on the left ſide; the *Red Sea*, or Sea of *Mecca*, otherwiſe the *Arabian* Gulph on the right; and the *Oriental* or *Indian* Ocean, which is there called the Sea of *Arabia* on the Front.

Arabia the Happy may aptly be ſo called by reaſon of the fruitfulneſs and richneſs of the Soil, which produceth plenty of *Corn*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, *Odoriferous Spices*, great increaſe of *Cattle*; alſo abounding in *Gold*, *Pearls*, *Balſom*, *Myrrhe*, *Frankinſence*, ſeveral ſorts of *Drugs*, together with divers uſeful and beneficial Commodities. Alſo ſeated in an exceeding healthful and temperate Climate, and inriched with many pure and pleaſant Streams and Fountains, whoſe Waters are Medicinal. Its fertility and commodities.

Theſe People are very faithful and punctual in their Promiſes, boaſting of their Nobility, as being deſcended from *Jupiter*; hating any baſe or mechanical Art, but applying themſelves, ſome to graſing of Cattle, and others to Merchandize. Here it is held Adultery for a Man to enjoy any Woman, ſave thoſe of his own Kin, as his Siſters, Mother, Couſins, and the like; whom alſo they take as Wives. Here in this Country are great quantities of *Oſtriches*, which for the moſt part abide in the Deſarts. Its People.

The Ancients mentioned a great number of different People, Cities, and Kingdoms; and we at this day find the ſame. The *Turks* poſſeſs one part, the *Perſians* another, but much leſs than the *Turks*. The *Sultan*, or *Xecque* of *Mecca*, another; and divers Princes, People, and ſome Republicks, the reſt.

Its chief Cities towards the *Red Sea* are, *Medina*, or *Medina-Elnabi*, or *Talnabi*, that is, the City of the Prophet; and *Mecca*: this laſt the Birth-place, that the Burial-place of *Mahomet*. *Medina*, though ſeituated in a barren and deſolate place, adjoyning on *Arabia* the Stony; yet by reaſon of its being the Sepulchre of that vile Impoſtor *Mahomet*, is become a fair City (though not containing above 6000 Houſes) being a place of great Trade and reſort, by reaſon of the Pilgrims which hither flock to pay their blind Devotion. This *Sepulchre* or *Tomb*, wherein their Prophet lieth, is encloſed within an *Iron-Grate*, and covered with *Green Velvet*, having the ſupply of a new one every year from the *Grand Signior*, and the old one being the Fees of the Prieſts, they cut into little ſhreds and pieces, which they ſell for great Relicks to the Pilgrims, which brings a great Revenue to them. In this Temple there are about 3000 Lamps of *Gold* and *Silver*, wherein is Balſom, and other ſuch rich Odours, Oyntments, and Oils, which are continually kept burning. Thus much for his *Tomb*: now a word or two concerning his *Life*. Its chief Places. *Mahomet's* Tomb.

He was (as I ſaid before) born at *Mecca*, diſtant from *Medina* about 60 Leagues, ſeated alſo in a barren Soil; but of great reſort and Traffick, abounding in the Commodities of *Perſia* and *India*, which from hence are tranſported on *Camels* to *Egypt*, *Paleſtine*, *Syria*, and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions. The City is very fair, filled with about 6 or 7000 well built Houſes, having a very ſumptuous *Temple*; the place not Walled, except by *Mountains*, between which there are four paſſages, which give entrance and iſſues to the City. Here it is made death for any *Chriſtian* to approach within five miles. But to proceed: The Father of this Impoſtor was an Idolatrous *Pagan*, and his Mother as perverſe a *Jeweſs*; at the age of two years he was left to the tuition of his Uncle, who after he had kept him to the age of 16 years, to quit himſelf of further charge and trouble, ſold him to the *Iſhmaelites*, who in their Markets ſold him again to a rich Merchant; who at firſt was employed about ſervil work, till at laſt the Merchant perceiving him to be of ſo ripe a wit and ſolid judgment, advanced him from his Kitchin to be his Factor, ſending him with his *Camels* laden with Merchandize, into *Egypt*, *Perſia*, *Syria*, and other places; in which he was ſo fortunate, that he gained his Maſter a great Eſtate, together with no ſmall fame and credit to himſelf. He was of perſonage low, but comly, with which his Miſtreſs was ſo much taken, that upon the death of her Husband, his Maſter, ſhe ſoon married him, and endowed him with her wealth. He was much troubled with the *Falling-ſickneſs*, which he ſaid were *Heavenly raptures*, in which he had converſion A ſtory of the life and death of the Impoſtor *Mahomet*.

with the Angel *Gabriel*; he was well skill'd in *Magick*, by which he taught a *white Pigeon* which he kept to feed at his Ear, where he put *Barly-corns*; and this *Pigeon* he reported was the *Holy Ghost*, which instructed him in the Law he afterwards publiſhed, which was a new Religion, whereby he might bring the *Jews*, *Gentiles*, and *Chriſtians* into one form of Religion; where, in a Cave not far from *Mecca*, with the help of *Sergius* a *Neſtorian* Monk, and the aid of a certain *Jew*, he made the *Alcoran*; a Book ſo highly adored by them, that on the Cover is written, *Let none that are unclean touch this Book.* 3. *Ziden*, ſeated on the *Red Sea*, and in the midſt of all the Coaſt of *Arabia*, ſerves for a Port to *Mecca*, from which it is diſtant 40 miles; well built, rich, and of great reſort, which hath been walled and fortified ſince the *Portugals* have made themſelves known, and are become powerful in the Eaſt. 4. *Egra*, by the *Arabians* called *Algier*; ſeated on the *Red Sea*, ſerving for a Port-Town to *Medina*, from which it is diſtant about three days Journey.

Mecca, *Medina*, and a good part of *Arabia the Happy* doth belong to *Xeriff*, deſcended from *Haſcem*, great Grandfather to *Mahomet*, and for this reaſon both the *Turks* and *Perſians* do much reſpect him, ſuffering him freely to enjoy his Eſtates without his paying Tribute to either: for on the contrary, the *Turk* cauſeth to be given him a third part of the Revenues of *Egypt*, that the Pilgrims which go to *Mecca* may be protected againſt the *Arabs Beduins*, who by their incurſions much trouble thoſe quarters; and not only Pilgrims, but likewiſe Emperours, Kings, and *Mahometan* Monarchs, often make him great Preſents. 5. *Zibit*, near the Mouth of the *Red Sea*, is fair, rich, well built, and of a good Trade in *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Perfumes*, &c. It was once the Seat of a Kingdom till the *Turk* ſeized it, when he did *Aden*, cauſing the King of this place to be hanged at the Yards-arm of his Ship, and the others head to be ſtricken off. Seated nigh the *Red Sea* in a large Plain, being the reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*.

Aden, and its great Trade.

6. *Aden* is the ſtrongeſt, faireſt, and moſt pleaſant City of all *Arabia*; encloſed with Walls towards the Sea, and Mountains towards the Land. On the top of theſe Mountains are many Caſtles of a curious proſpect; it hath about 6000 well built Houſes, and inhabited by a *miſcellany* of People, as *Arabians*, *Turks*, *Indians*, *Perſians*, and *Ethiopians*, which here reſide for the benefit of that great Trade, which is here driven from ſeveral parts of the World. It is ſcituate without the *Red Sea*, at the beginning of the great Ocean, and by the induſtry of the Inhabitants is made an Iſland, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which commands the Road. This City or Iſland is now become the Magazine for the Commodities of *India*, *Perſia*, and *Arabia*.

Other Cities in *Arabia*.

Above *Aden*, and farther in the main Land, are many fair Cities, as *Laghi*, *Agiaz*, *Almachazane*, *Sanaa*, and others, ſubject to the *Xecque* of *Mecca*. *Laghi* is not far from the Sea; *Agiaz*, or *Hagias*, ſometime gave its name to theſe quarters. *Almachazane* is ſeated on the top of a very high Mountain, and of a difficult acceſs; it hath a Ciſtern capable to hold Water to furniſh a 100000 Men: The *Xecque* oftimes keeps Court here. *Sane*, or *Sanaa*, ſtands at the foot of a Mountain, and is one of the greateſt, faireſt, and ſtrongeſt of *Arabia*, having many *Vineyards*, *Meadows*, and *Gardens* within its Circuit. Its Houſes are well built, its Vineyards and Gardens well cultivated, its Walls 10 Cubits high, and its Ramparts 20 Cubits thick. Its Territory is watered with many Fountains, produceth excellent Fruits, and feeds the beſt Horſes of *Arabia*.

Kingdom and City of *Fartach*, its People and Trade.

Towards the Eaſt, and almoſt 150 Leagues from *Aden*, is *Fartach*, a Kingdom and City near the Sea, and having a Cape of the ſame name. The *Tarquins* are valiant, and their King defends himſelf couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*, having ſeen their treatment to his Neighbours of *Aden* and *Zibit*. The Ports of *Dolfar*, (which is the *Turks*) and *Peſcher*, are the moſt renowned of this Coaſt, and ſend forth the beſt *Frankinſence* of *Arabia* in great quantity. Higher on the Coaſt, and farther on the Land, are the Cities and Kingdoms, or as they call them, the *Sultanies* of *Gubel haman*, *Alibmahi*, *Amazirifden*, and others.

The

The reſt of the Coaſt unto *Cape de Raz-al-gate* is very barren; from *Cape de Raz-al-gate* unto that of *Moccandon*, the Soil is the beſt of all *Arabia*; and ſome would here alone confine the name of *Hyaman*, which ſignifies *Happy*. There are here many fair Cities, both on the Sea-coaſt and higher in the Land; one of chief Traffick between the Eaſt and *Arabia the Happy*, was formerly called *Sohar*; but this Trade was after tranſported to *Ormus* on the *Perſian* ſide. In our time it was reſtored to the *Arabian* ſide, to wit, at *Maſcates*, held by the *Portugals*: *Sohar* and *Maſcates* are between the Capes of *Raz-al-gate*, and *Moccandon*, and are not above 20 Leagues diſtant from each other. Within the Land are *Masfa*, a City and Kingdom, *Mirabat*, *Sour*, or *Lyr*, and others. Other Cities and Kingdoms.

Beyond the Cape *Moccandon*, and advancing towards the Mouths of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, among many other places we have *Elcatif*, or *El-Catif*, a famous Port, and which communicates its name to the adjacent Gulph, which the ancients called *Sinus Perſicus*, and we at preſent the Gulph of *Balſora* and *Ormus*.

Near *Elcatif* is *Bahar*, whoſe Territory is called *Bahareim*, or *Baharem*; and the Iſle and City before *Bahatem*, farther in the land, is *Maſcalat*, a City and Kingdom; *Jemen*, likewiſe a Kingdom and City, according to ſome; *Lazach*, or *Laſſach*, likewiſe a Kingdom and City; where are of the beſt Horſes of *Arabia*, as at *Sanaa*. *Laſſach*, *Elcatif*, and ſome other are the *Turks*; *Elcatif* is the ancient *Gerra*, and that part of the Gulph neareſt the City called *Gerraticus Sinus*, and the Iſle of *Barem* is the ancient *Tylos*.

There yet remains ſome Cities, of which ſome have their *Kings* or *Sultans*; others live in *Republick*, which is very rare in *Aſia*. Towards the middle of *Arabia* are the *Arabs Bengebres*, a free People, and which live only of the Prey and Tribute they force from their Neighbours; yet poſſeſs they 200, or 250 Leagues of Country, and are for the moſt part in the Mountains. The *Beduins* towards *Mecca* are of the ſame nature. The *Arabs Bengebres*, a free People.

Round about *Arabia* are a great number of *Iſles* which belong unto it, which are diſperſed either in the *Southern Ocean*, *Red Sea*, or the *Perſian Gulph*.

In the *Southern Ocean* are found three Iſles, which bear the name of *COCCONATI*, ſeven by the name of *ZENOBII*, and two by the name of *Inſulæ AGATHOCLIS*; and laſtly, *CURIA* and *MURIA*, where there is found *white Tortoiſes*, whoſe Shells are great curioſities. *Arabian* Iſles in the Southern Ocean.

In the *Red Sea* theſe Iſlands; 1. *CANARAN*, very hot, but fruitful. 2. *DALAQUA*, being the largeſt of all, in length 125 miles, and not above 12 broad, having a City of the ſame name, where they gather *Pearls*; And, 3. and laſtly, the *Samaritan* Iſlands. In the *Red Sea*.

In the *Perſian* Gulph theſe Iſlands are found: *BAHAREM*, the moſt famous, becauſe it hath the *Pearl-fiſhing*, the beſt in the Oriental parts. This Iſle is between *Balſora* and *Ormus*, about a 100 or 120 Leagues from *Balſora*, and 150 from *Ormus*: It is near the Coaſt of *Arabia*, and directly oppoſite to the Coaſt of *Elcatif*, which is the *Turks*; but the Iſle of *Baharem*, which is ſtill the *Perſians*, once belonged to the Kingdom of *Ormus*. The Waters here are almoſt all ſalt; but near *Manama*, the Capital City of the Iſland, there are Springs of Freſh-water at the bottom of the Sea, which the *Divers* go and fetch, gathering it into *Borracho's* or *Goats-skins*, with much cunning, and bringing it forth of the *Sea*, do afterwards ſell it. The *Pearls* of this Iſle are very much eſteemed, both for their largeneſs and roundneſs; and this fiſhing is yearly worth 500000 *Ducats*, beſides the value of 100000 and more, which is diverted. Thoſe of the Iſle of *GIONFA* are of no great value: thoſe of the other neighbouring Iſles are leſs; except it be at *MASCATES*, 60 Leagues from *Ormus*. They fiſh here all *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*; if they begin ſooner the *Pearls* are unripe, and not hard enough. In the *Perſian* Gulph.

The Air of all *Arabia* is very healthful, but hot; nor Rains it in ſome places above twice or thrice in 3 or 4 years: but the abundance of the Dew makes their Fruits excellent.

The People of *Arabia*, their Manners, &c.

The People for the most part are of a mean stature, lean, swarthy complexioned, effeminate voices, very swift of foot, and expert in the Bow and Dart. They first exercise themselves in Manufactures, using all sort of Trade and Traffick far off; and some addict themselves to Learning, particularly to *Philosophy*, *Physick*, the *Mathematicks*, and to *Astrology*; there have been amongst them many *Grammarians*, *Rhetoricians*, *Historians*, and *Interpreters* of the *Alcoran*, which is in their Tongue, and which hath made the *Arabick* Language spread itself through all the East, at least in the most Southerly parts of *Asia*, and part of *Africa*, but little in *Europe*.

Those which range the Country are great Wanderers, and greater Thieves; they are divided into many Families, which know each other, and how to distinguish the one from the other. Every Family, how numerous soever it be, hath a principal *Xecque*, that is, a Chief, which conducts and commands them, they living almost in the same manner as the 12 Tribes of *Israel* did in the *Desarts*: They preserve a good Intelligence amongst themselves, their chief design being only upon Strangers. They assault likewise the *Caravans*, if they think themselves able enough to master them, or snatch any thing from them.

Their *Horses* commonly are little, lean, and sparing Feeders; yet couragious, swift, and of great labour: They are so skilful in managing them, that they command them as they please; and themselves are so active, that at full speed they will shoot an Arrow within the breadth of a Shilling, take from the ground those Arrows they have shot, and avoid an Arrow flying directly towards them; nor do they manage less skilfully the Sling, either in charging, retiring, or flying.

The first rise of *Mahometism*.

Mahomet came not into the World till about the year 570 after *Christ*, and began not to publish and shew abroad his Doctrine till a little after the year 600; a Doctrine intermixed with *Christianity*, *Judaism*, and *Paganism*, that he might draw both the one and the other; and which established its principal end in Delights, carnal and sensual Pleasures, whereto the Oriental People were very much inclined; and withal he found the means to make use of Arms for the establishment of this Doctrine; his *Califs* or Successors in a short time carried their Government and Religion into the best parts of *Asia* and *Africa*, and into some places of *Europe*.

Its People are almost all *Mahometans*. There are some *Greek Christians* towards the Mounts of *Sinai* and *Horeb*; likewise towards the *Red Sea*, and in the Desarts of *Arabia* the Stony, and *Arabia* the Desart. *Arabia* the Happy is unhappy in having the fewest; yet the *Portugals* hold *Mascates*, *Calasates*, and some places about it, which are *Catholicks*.

PER-

PERSIA, or the Empire of the SOPHY of PERSIA, with its several Provinces, as they lie

Towards the CASPIAN Sea, or Sea of BACCU and SALA, which makes the Northern part of PERSIA; and are those of

- Servan,
  - Tauris,
  - Sammachi,
  - Servan,
  - Ardevil,
  - Serga,
  - Bacon,
  - Bakoera.
- Gilan,
  - Raft,
  - Gaxhar,
  - Mazandaran,
  - Layon,
  - Mosun,
  - Gilan,
  - Cassabi,
  - Gadiour.
- Dilemon,
  - Allamoed,
  - Dilemon,
  - Thalekan.
- Tabareſtan,
  - Asterabad,
  - Zariach,
  - Maglasen.
- Gorgian,
  - Gorgian,
  - Obscoen,
  - Damegan,
  - Semnan.
- Rhoemus,
  - Beſtan,
  - Beyad,
  - Zabrawar,
  - Thous,
  - Massinon,
  - Feraway.

In the MIDDLE; to wit, those of

- Churdiſtan,
  - Nakſiwan,
  - Merend,
  - Choy,
  - Maraga,
  - Salmas,
  - Ourmaya,
  - Cormaba.
- Ayrack, or Yerack-Agemi,
  - Hiſpahan,
  - Casbin,
  - Saksania,
  - Dankane,
  - Hamadan,
  - Hrey,
  - Sauwa,
  - Kom, or Com,
  - Kargh,
  - Caſhan,
  - Yesd.
- Choraſan,
  - Thabs Gilack,
  - Kayem,
  - Thon,
  - Zuzan,
  - Mexar,
  - Nichabour,
  - Zarchas,
  - Firabad,
  - Maruwe,
  - Bonregian,
  - Balch,
  - Herat.
- Sableſtan,
  - Zarang,
  - Boſt,
  - Necbesact,
  - Giſna-Caſſaby.
- Tocharestan, ——— Thaalan.
- Candahar, ——— Candahar.
- Paranes, ——— Grees.
- Bach, ——— Balch,
  - Souster,
  - Askar Moukeran,
  - Ardgan,
  - Hawecz,
  - Ramhormoz,
  - Siapour,
  - Saurac.

Towards the South, and waſhed by the ARABIAN, or INDIAN Ocean; and by the Gulph of BALSORA and ORMUS; and are those of

- Fars,
  - Chiraef,
  - Aſtackar,
  - Lar,
  - Darabegred,
  - Stahabonon,
  - Gombroun.
- Kherman,
  - Cherman,
  - Giroft,
  - Zirgian,
  - Mocheſton,
  - Guadel,
  - Nahyan,
  - Paranis.
- Sigiſtan, ——— Siſtan.
- Mackeran,
  - Mackeran,
  - Basir.
- Ormus, ——— Ormus.

Together with ſeveral ISLES, as they lie in the Gulph of BALSORA, and nigh unto PERSIA; the chief among which are,

- Queixome.
- Pulor.
- Coyar.
- Ficor,
- Lar.
- Mulugan.
- Garge.

PER-

PERSIA.

THE Kingdom or Empire of the *Sophy* of the *PERSIANS* is one of the moſt famous and greateſt of all *Aſia*; it extends it ſelf from the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* on the Weſt, almoſt to the River *Indus* on the Eaſt; and from the Gulph of *Perſia* and the *Arabian* and *Indian Sea*, which bounds it on the South, unto the River *Gehon*, and to the *Caſpian Sea*, now the Sea of *Baccu*, or *Tabareſtan*, which are its Northern limits; ſo containing about 600 Leagues of length, and 500 of breadth, being ſeated under the third, fourth, fifth, and ſixth *Climats*. Nevertheleſs this is but a part of the ancient Empire of the *Perſians*; for the *Aſſyrians* having ordinarily held in *Aſia* all that which both *Turk* and *Perſian* at preſent poſſeſs; and that Monarchy having begun under *Ninus*, and laſted under thirty and odd Kings 13 or 1400 years, ending in *Sardanapalus*, divided itſelf into that of the *Medes* and *Babylonians*, who continued it little leſs than 300 years, afterwards the *Perſians* made themſelves Maſters of it: and theſe during 200 and odd years, which they Reigned, remitted to it the beſt part of what the *Medes* and *Babylonians* had poſſeſſed. But when they would have paſſed into *Europe*, and have ſeized on *Greece*, the *Macedonians* and *Greeks* leagued themſelves together, and naming *Alexander* King of *Macedon* their Chief, deſcended into *Aſia*, ſeveral times defeated *Darius*, ruined the Empire of the *Perſians*, and gave a beginning to that of the *Macedonians*.

The extent, bounds, ſeituation, &c. of *Perſia*.

The *Perſian* Empire formerly much larger than now it is.

Alexander the Great held this Empire but few years, and dying, it was divided among many of his Captains; who took in the end the title of *Kings*, and waged War againſt each other, till the *Romans* ſeized the Weſtern, and the *Parthians* the Oriental part of that Monarchy; theſe *Parthians* freed themſelves from the Rule of the *Macedonians* 250 years before the Birth of *Jeſus Chriſt*, and Reigned near 500 years. *Artaxerxes* reſtored the *Perſians* 228 years after *Chriſts* Nativity. The *Caliphs* of *Bagdat* became Maſters about the year 650. The *Tartars* in 1257, or 58. The *Turcomans* in 1478. *Xa*, or *Xecque Iſmael-ſophy* re-eſtabliſhed the *Perſians*, a little after the year 1500; and though they poſſeſs only the Oriental part of the ancient Empire of the *Perſians*, yet it is ſtill very great and powerful.

The ſeveral Parts, or Regions of *Perſia*.

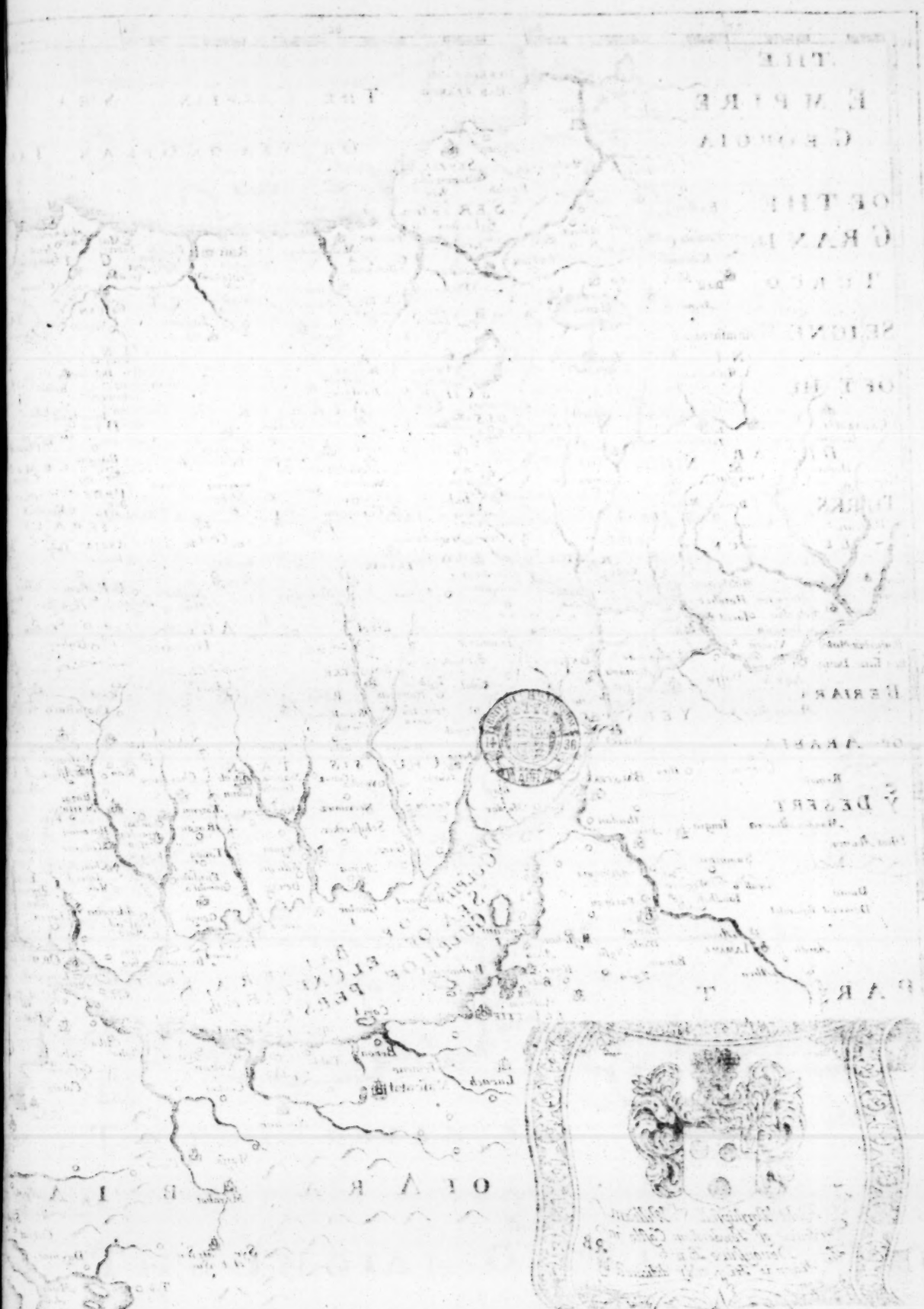
And we find at preſent under it, all that the Ancients knew under the names of *Media*, *Hircania*, *Margiana*, *Aſſyria* in part, *Parthia*, *Aria*, *Paraponiſa*, *Chaldea*, or *Babylonia* in part, *Suſiana*, *Perſia*, *Caramania*, *Drangiana*, *Arachoſia*, and *Gedroſia*; all theſe Regions taken apart being great, fair, rich, and populous.

The Province of *Servan*.

The Province of *SERVAN* hath for its principal City, 1. *Tauris*, being the Summer-Seats of the *Perſian Sophies*, containing in Circuit about 16 Miles, and including above 150000 Inhabitants, before its being ſo often taken, and retaken by the *Turks* and *Perſians*. It is ſtrongly fortified, ſeated about ſix days Journey from the *Caſpian Sea*, in a cool and wholſom Country, and encompaſſed with ſeveral great Towns of note, famous for their Manufactories. The People in this part being more addicted thereunto, than unto the Sword.

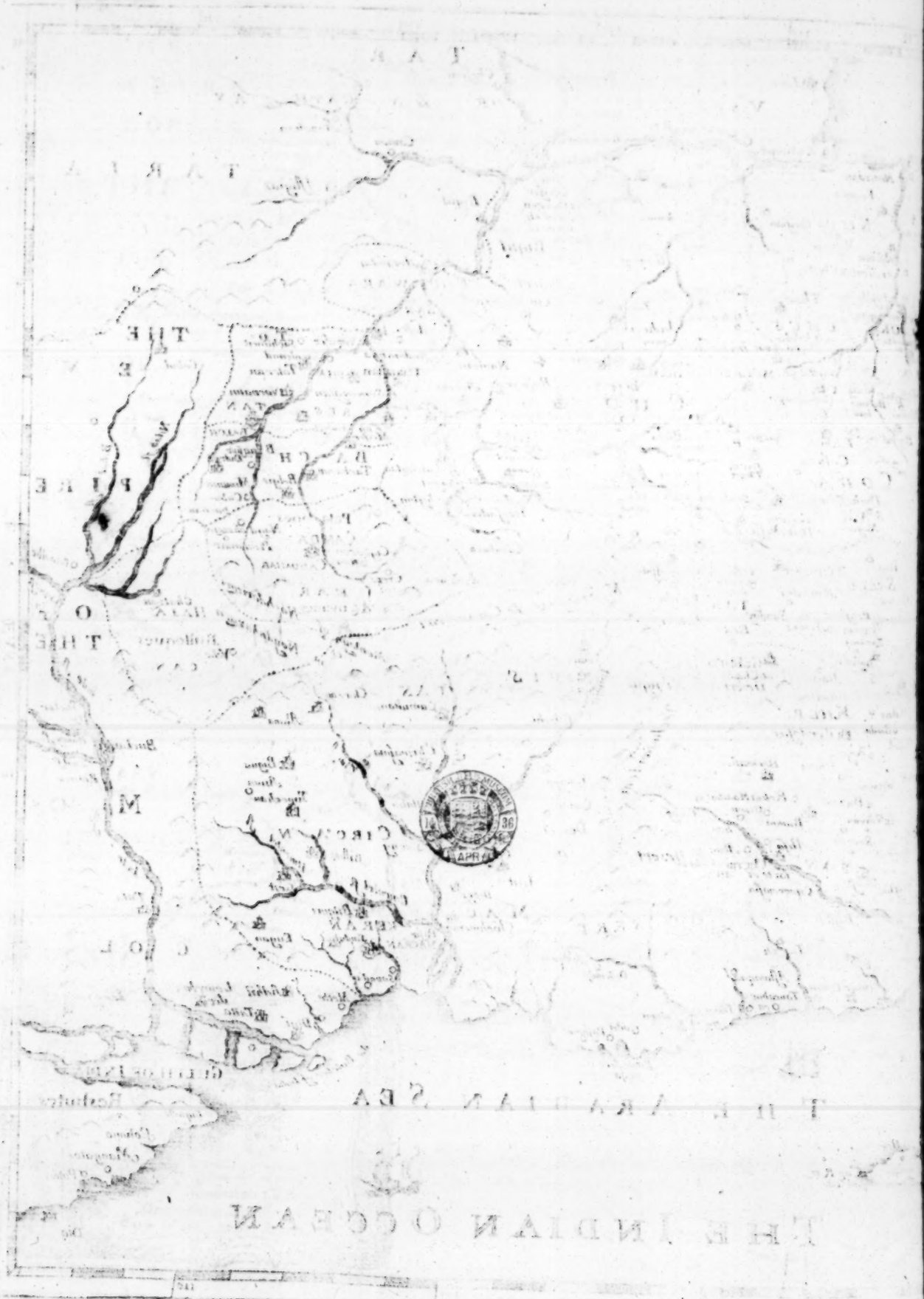
Its Commodities.

The Commodities that are here found, are *Silk*, raw, and in ſeveral Manufactures; *Cottons*, *Wool*, *Galls*, *Alum*, ſome *Spices* and *Drugs*, with ſeveral other Commodities. 2. *Sammachi*; And, 3. *Servan*, once both the Metropolis of



A MAPP OF THE EMPIRE OF THE SOPHIE OF PERS
Sanson Geographer to ye French King

WITH ITS SEUERALL PROUINCES. Designed by Monc.



Metropolis of this Province, abounding in *Silk* and excellent *Carpets*, to which the People are wholly addicted. 4. *Ardevil*, was the Signory and Birth-place of *Xeque Aidar*, Father *Ismael Sophy*, who reſtored this Empire to the *Perſians* about the year 1500. Here are many Tombs of the laſt Kings of *Perſia*: 5. *Bocca*, a place of ſo great trade, that the *Caſpian Sea* oft takes its name: Near the City there is a Spring of *Black Oil*, which ſerves to burn throughout all *Perſia*.

The Province of GILAN, or GUETLAN, contains five Governments, of which the chief Cities are *Raſt*, *Gazbar*, *Layon*, *Gilan*, *Moſun*, and *Gadiour*, beſides about 30 fair and rich Cities; *Mazandaran*, which ſome ſeparate from, others joyn to *Gilan*, hath in its Government 25 Cities, and in the City of *Mazandaran* about 50000 Souls. All theſe quarters would have revolted in 1594. but *Xa Abbas* ſoon brought them to their duty, and chaſtiſed them for their offence. Province of *Gilan*, and its chief places, &c.

The Province of DILEMON hath its Metropolis of the ſame name; then *Allamoed*, *Gowar*, and *Thalekan*. In the deſcription that thoſe of the Country give us of theſe places, *Allamoed* ſeems to anſwer to *Dilemon*. Province of *Dilemon*.

The Province of TABARESTAN extends more than 60 Leagues on the Coaſt of the *Caſpian Sea*, which is often called TABARESTAN from the name of this Province. It ſtretches 100 Leagues up the Land, containing in its Territory 12 fair Cities; of which *Aſterabad*, or *Starabat*, which hath ſomething of common with the name of the Province, is the principal; then *Maglaſen*, *Zariach*, and others: this Country affords quantity of *Silk*. Province of *Tabariſtan*.

The Province of GORGIAN touches not the Sea, the chief City is of the ſame name; then *Obſcoen*, *Damegan*, and *Semnan*. *Gorgian* anſwers to the ancient *Hircania* Metropolis. Province of *Gorgian*.

The Province of RHOEMUS is in the Eaſt of TABARESTAN and GORGIAN: Its chief Cities are, 1. *Beſtan*; then 2. *Beyad*; 3. *Zabzawer*; and 4. *Thous*, higher in the Land; 5. *Feraway*; 6. *Maſinon*, and others toward the Sea and Mouth of the River *Gehon*. *Naſſir Eddin*, that excellent *Mathematician*, was a Native of *Thous*, who drove *Muſtalzin* from his *Caliphat* or dignity of *Babylon*, becauſe *Mulſtalzin* had demanded of him, *Where were his Horns*. So dangerous it is to mock a man of Spirit and Courage. The City of *Thous* is eſteemed very conſiderable, being large, and encompaſſed with a noble Wall, adorned with ſtately Structures, and among others with about 200 or 300 Towers, diſtant from one another a Muſquets-ſhot. It is famous for the ſtately Sepulchre of *Iman Riſa* of the Family of *Ali*, one of the Twelve *Perſian* Saints, where great Devotions and Ceremonies are performed by them, which brings in a great Revenue to this City. Province of *Rhoemus*.

The Province of CHURDISTAN is divided into three Parts or Provinces, of which *Salmas* is the chief City of the firſt, *Maraga* of the ſecond, and *Cormaba* of the third. Beſides which there are a great number of fair Cities, as 1. *Nakziovan*, 2. *Choy*, 3. *Guienche*, &c. *Salmas* is near the Salt-Lake of *Kannudhan*, which yields Fiſh only at a certain time of the year. This City hath under its Juriſdiction 20 other ſtrong and fair ones; yet is not without thoſe wandring People which live under their Tents. *Maraga* is 3 or 4 days Journey from *Tauris*, 5 or 6 from *Salmas*. Near *Maraga* the *Perſians* were defeated by the *Saracens*, about the year 650, and their Monarchy fell into the hands of the *Califfs*. *Cormaba* is on the Eaſt of *Tigris*, and not far from *Bagdad* and *Moſul*. Its Inhabitants are eſteemed the true *Curdes*, as good at incurſions as the *Arabs*, who loſe nothing they can catch. Near *Choy* are the *Calderonian* Champains (of *Chelder*,) renowned for the Battle between *Selim*, Emperour of the *Turks*, and *Iſmael Sophy* of the *Perſians*; where this laſt, who had till then almoſt always been Victor, was defeated and loſt a great Battel; and after it *Tauris*, where was his wife *Tallucanum* and his Treaſures: but whilſt he prepared new Forces, the *Turks* retired to *Amaſia*. At *Guienche*, formerly a City and a Kingdom, contains likewiſe 7 or 8 fair Cities, the *Can Curdogli* cauſed to be builded one of the faireſt and ſtrongeſt Towers that is in *Perſia*; beſides the Stone, making uſe of the Heads Province of *Churdiſtan*.

of

of 540000 *Turks*, which he had defeated in thoſe quarters, and which he cauſed to be bruiſed among the Morter.

Province of *Ayrack*, its Commodities, &c.

The Province of *ATRACK* is the faireſt and richeſt of *Perſia*. The *Sophies* have for ſometime paſt made here their reſidence; formerly at, 1. *Caſbin*, at preſent at 2. *Hiſpahan*, which are two great Cities; 3. *Caſſian*, 4. *Hamadan*, 5. *Dankana*, 6. *Sauwa*, 7. *Com*, 8. *Yeſd*, 9. *Soltania*, 10. *Hrey*, 11. *Cochera*, 12. *Kargh*, with ſeveral others, are likewiſe very fair. Near *Hrey* is gathered excellent *Manna*. *Soltan* hath great quantity of the faireſt Fountains, and takes its name from the *Soltans*, which ſometimes reſided here. *Yeſd* yields the richeſt and faireſt *Tapeſtries* in the World. Near this City, and on the Mountain *Albors*, there are yet ſome worſhippers of *Fire*, which have uſed it above 3000 years. *Hamadan* hath born the title of a Kingdom, and had 15 Cities under it. *Caſian* produceth many *Silk* and *Cotton* Manufactures, and hath drawn to it all the Traffick that was at *Com*, not ſuffering any Vagabonds or Beggars. *Com* hath been as great as *Conſtantinople*; but *Tamerlain* having ruin'd it, it could never regain its ſplendor. The Inhabitants addict themſelves to labour in their Vineyards and Gardens. Its Bridge is of Stone, and the faireſt in all *Perſia*. *Casbin* was the reſidence of *Xa-Thamas*, when the *Turks* had taken *Tauris*: Some eſteem it the ancient *Arſacia*, others *Ecbatana*. It is not well built, but great, and filled with no leſs than 100000 Souls; its fair *Palace*, its many *Bazars*, and its *Atmaiden*, are remarkable. *Bazars* are places or great Streets, where there are but one ſort of Merchants; the *Atmaiden*, or greater Market, which is about a mile in Circuit.

Hiſpahan the chief City of *Perſia*.

Hiſpahan, the Metropolitan City of the *Perſian* Monarchy, ſeated in the *Parthian* Territory, which in its ſcituation is pleaſant and delightful; in its Soil, fruitful, and well watered by the River *Sindery*; in its Air, ſerene and healthful; and for bigneſs, is now become the greateſt City in all *Perſia*, whoſe Walls are in circumference a reaſonable days Journey. Its buildings, which are many, (ſcarce containing leſs than 75000 Houſes) are proud and elegant, and was ſaid to be once ſo populous, that it gave entertainment to 500000 Inhabitants. But after a certain Revolt, (for which they were ſeverely chaſtiſed by the command of the Prince) it hath not had ſo great a quantity of People; yet it is exceeding populous, and much frequented by Strangers; rich in Trade, eminent for all ſorts of Exerciſe, and more magnificent as being the reſidence of the *Sophy* of the *Perſians*, who had here built divers Palaces, which are inhabited by his Nobles; ſo rich and ſtately, with Gardens ſo delightful and magnificent, that not the induſtry of man, nay, ſcarce his thought can comprehend or imagine any thing more beautiful. This City, beſides its Walls, is fenced about with a Ditch, and defended by a ſtrong Caſtle. The chief buildings are the *Palaces*, the *Moſques*, the *Hummums* or *Hot-houſes*, and the *Mydan* or *Market-place*, which without diſpute is the faireſt, richeſt, and nobleſt Building in the World, being about 1000 Paces in length, and 200 in breadth: The inſide reſembles our *Exchange*, being filled with Shops, where all ſorts of rich Commodities are vended; and ſuſtained by Arches; and below, furniſhed with ſuch things, both for Food and Rayment, as the Country affordeth. On the Weſt-ſide are ſeated two ſtately *Palaces* or *Seraglio's*, for the King and his Ladies, far exceeding in ſtate and magnificence all other the proud Buildings in this City; the Walls being of *Red Marble*, and pargetted with divers colours, and the whole Palace paved with fretted and Checkered work, over which it is ſpread with ſtately *Carpets*; the Windows are made of *Alablaſter*, and *white* and *ſpotted Marble*; and the Poſts and Wickets of maſſy *Ivory*, checkered with glittering *Ebony*, ſo curiouſly wrought in winding knots, that it may ſooner ſtay than ſatisfie the eyes of the Beholder. To which ſtately Structure there is joyned a no leſs pleaſant and delightful Garden, wherein are no leſs then 1000 ſeveral Fountains, Brooks, and Rivolets, furniſhed with ſtore and variety of curious Fruits, together with what elſe may make a place delightful. The great place of the City is before the Palace, where the *Sophy* ordinarily reſides. The Fruits in and about this City are the beſt in the World; their Vines yield in nothing to thoſe of the *Canaries*:

Its Palaces and Seraglio's, exceeding ſtately and delightful.

Their

Their *Horſes* and *Mules* are fair and good; their *Camels* ſo ſtrong, that they carry almoſt twice as much as thoſe of other places. They have permitted in this City ſome *Monaſteries* of *Chriſtians*, as of *Carmelites*, *Auguſtine Fryars*, *Capuchins*, and others.

The Inhabitants do all their affairs on Horſ-back, as well publick as private, in the buying and vending of their Commodities. But the Slaves never ride, which makes the difference betwixt them. This City being the reſidence of the *Sophy*, and being inhabited by ſo many eminent perſons, which always attend this Monarch, makes it to have a great Trade, and be much frequented by Merchants almoſt from all places; as *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, *Portugals*, *Arabians*, *Indians*, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, &c. whereby it is furniſhed, not only with all the Native Commodities of *Perſia*, as *Gold* and *Silver*, *Raw Silk*, in ſuch great quantity, that they furniſh moſt part of the Eaſt; as alſo other places, ſome *Drugs* and *Spices*, *Wine*, *Fruits*, &c. Alſo ſundry curious *Manufactures*, as, *Carpets*, *Arras-work*, *Hangings*, &c. *Cloth* of *Gold* and *Silver*, Fine *Cotton Cloths*, with ſeveral other Commodities which are here made; but alſo with thoſe of *Arabia*, *India*, *China*, and *Turky*, which hither are brought in exchange for theirs, by *Caravans* or *Camels*, *Dromedaries*, and *Mules*, by reaſon they want the benefit of the *Sea*. They had formerly the benefit of ſeveral good Ports, as, *Tauris* and *Balſora*, but now in the cuſtody of the *Grand Seignior*, together with ſome others: The Ports that they now enjoy, and make uſe of, are *Ormus* and *Jaſques*. In this City is erected a *Column* or *Pillar*, compoſed of the Heads or Skulls of *Men* and *Beaſts*, being about twenty foot in circumference at the *Baſis*, and exalting it ſelf near ſixty foot in height. Now the reaſon of erecting of this terrible and horrid *Column* and *Monument*, was this. The People ſurfeiting with Luxury, through their Pride and Impudence, denied their duty to their Soveraign, not only in refuſing to contribute a ſmall ſum of money (being towards the extirpation of the *Turks* and *Tartars*, who did much annoy the Kingdom) but alſo audaciouſly oppoſed his entrance; whereupon he vowed revenge: And having made a forcible entrance, in his rage fired a great part of the City, pillaged each Houſe, and in two days he put to the Sword near 30000; and to terrifie others, erected a *Column* or *Pillar* of their Heads.

The Inhabitants of this City negotiate their affairs on Horſe-back. *Hiſpahan* and its Commodities.

The Province of *CHORAZAN*, is the greateſt of all *Perſia*; ſome divide it into *Cohazan*, *Chorazan*, and *Chowarazan*, which others eſteem to be the ſame. It hath every where a great number of brave Cities, as, *Kahen* or *Kayem*, which yields great ſtore of *Saffron*. 2. *Thon* abounds in *Silk Manufactures*. 3. *Meſched* or *Mexat*, is the chief of *Chorazan*, and ſhews the Tombs of many *Perſian* Kings. It is about twelve miles in compaſs, and hath about 100000 Inhabitants. Its Territory is fertile, its Inhabitants well made, ſtrong, and warlike. 4. *Herat* is likewiſe called *Salgultzar*, that is, The City of *Roſes*; it producing greater quantities then any City in the World beſides. It yields likewiſe *Rhubarbe* and *Vines*, which laſt a long time: and ſo much *Silk*, that there are ſometimes 3 or 4000 *Camels* loaden in one day. 5. *Nichabur* ſo near to *Rhoemus*, that ſome conceive it belonging to it; others make it a particular Province: The City hath been much better peopled then now it is. *Tamerlane* here, and hereabouts, put to death in one day about 400000 perſons. 6. *Bouregian*, is near a great Lake of the ſame name: This Lake receives many Rivers, but like the *Caſpian Sea*, ſends not one to the *Ocean*. But let us return to the more Southerly parts of *Perſia*; we will ſay nothing here of *Terack*, ſince the *Turk* at preſent holds it, with ſeveral others.

Province of *Chorazan*, its chief Cities & Commodities, &c.

The Province of *CHUSISTAN*, anſwers to the Ancient *Suſiana*, the Soyl is ſo fruitful, that it often yields 100 or 200 for one. Its Cities are *Souſter*, *Ardgan*, *Haweez*, *Asker-Moukeran*, and others. 1. *Souſter* is the Ancient *Suſa*. Here the Prophet *Daniel* had the *Viſion* concerning the determination of the *Perſian* Monarchy, and the beginning of the *Grecian*; and where *Ahaſuerus* kept his great Feaſt, which continued 183 days, for his Princes and Lords, imitated to this day by the *Sultans* of *Perſia*, who do annually entertain their Nobles, where *Ahaſuerus* kept his Court, when *Eſther* demanded

Province of *Chuſiſtan*, its chief places, &c.

grace, in favour of the *Jews*; and there where *Mordecai* was exalted to the place and charge of *Haman*, who was hanged on the same Gibbet which he prepared for *Mordecai*. It is held, that the ancient Palace was built by *Memnon* (Son of *Tithonus*, who in the *Trojan* Wars was slain by the *Thessalans*,) of the spoyls of the Great *Thebes* in *Egypt*; and that with such expence and magnificence, that the stones were bound together with *Gold*; but whether this be true or false, without doubt, it was very rich; for it is said, that *Alexander* found here 50000 Talents of uncoyned *Gold*, besides *Silver Wedges* and *Jewels* of an inestimable value. This City is of about 25000 paces in circumference, and is the residence of the *Sophy* in the Winter season. 2. *Ardgan* a fair City, on the borders of this Province, and not far from *Hispahan*. 3. *Haweez* called by the *Arabian* of *Nubia*, *Abuaz*, and made chief of the Cities of *Chusistan*, which he calls *Churdistan*. He places next to it *Askar-Mocran*, *alias Askar-Moukeran*, on the River *Mesercan*, where there was a Bridge supported by twenty Boats. 4. *Tostar* with a River of the same name. And 5. *Sauvac* with some other.

The Persians observe great Feasts.

The heats in these parts, in the Summer season, are so great, especially towards the South part of the Mountain; that the Inhabitans are forced to forsake the Cities, and retire themselves into the Mountains for coolness.

Province of Fars, its chief places, fertility &c.

The Province of *FARS* or *FARC*, formerly *Persia*, now a particular Province, hath a great number of large, rich, and beautiful Cities. As 1. *Chiraef*, which is said to be about 20000 paces in circumference; where sometimes the *Sophy* hath made his residence, scituate in a large and pleasant Plain, well built, and beautified with fair Gardens, and magnificent *Mosques*. Two of which are larger than the rest, and beautified with two Spires or Steeples, covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*: These *Mosques*, by reason of 1000 Lamps which are kept burning, are as light by night, as by day. This City for its good Wine, pleasant Fruits, gallant People, and above all, for its pritty Women, may compare with the best in all *Persia*. The Ladies here are so fair and pleasant, that *Mahomet* passing through these quarters, would not enter this City for fear lest he should lose himself in its delights. The Soyl is very good, and *Mastick* is gathered in its Forests. The Arms they make here, are excellent. 2. *Astachar* was one of the greatest of these quarters, as likewise in the time of the *Arabian of Nubia*. The ruines of its Castle *Chilminare*, shew the remains of the ancient Palace that *Alexander* the Great burned, at the solicitation of the Curtisan *Thais*. At the taking of which City, *Alexander* for his share found 120000 Talents of ready money, besides the Plate, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of a vast value: But its beauty did surpass it riches, having its Royal Palace built on a Hill, environed with a treble Wall; the first in height sixteen cubits; the second 30; and the third 60: All of them of Black polished *Marble*, with stately Battlements, on which were 100 Turrets. Nor was the outside more stately than the inside, which was built with *Cyprus* Wood, and beautified with *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ivory*, *Amber*, and such like. 3. *Lar* or *Laar*, hath been the chief of a Kingdom, and giveth name to the *Larins*, Pieces of very good *Silver* which they coyn. 4. Near *Stahabonon*, a pritty Town, the *Momnaki-Koni*, that is, the precious *Mony* is drawn out of a Rock; but it is onely gathered for the *Sophy*, who carefully keeps it: Being a most assured counter-Poyson or Antidote, and an excellent Salve against all Cuts or Ruptures, even within the body. *Bezar* comes likewise from this quarter. 5. *Chabonkera*. 6. *Darabegerd*: and 7. *Baesd*, are on the confines of *Fars* and *Kerman*. Some esteem them under the Province of *Fars*, others under that of *Kerman*; others make that a particular Province, which takes its name from the first of them, and which certainly is the greatest and the fairest. *Darabegerd*, as I believe, is the *Valasegerd* of the *Arab*, and the ancient *Pasagardæ*; there, where sometime resided, and where was the Tomb of *Cyrus*, who here by this place defeated *Astyages*, the last King of the *Medes*. And 8. *Gombrone*, seated on the Gulph of *Persia*, a fair Town, well frequented; and where the *English*, *Dutch*, and *Portugals*, keep

their

their *Factories* for the benefit and ſupport of the Trade; this place being now the Scale of Trade for all *Perſia* (as was formerly *Ormus* and *Jaſques*, being at preſent of little uſe.)

The Province of *KHERMAN*, of old *Caramania*, is one of the greateſt, but not one of the beſt of *Perſia*; yet they ſend forth ſeveral *Commodities*, as *Steel*, *Tarqueſſes*, *Roſe-water*, *Tutty*, *Bourbatan*, *Hebe*, or *Kilworm*, of which they make the *Confection Alkermes*, *Sarmack*, which are black and ſhining *Stones*, which cures ſore eyes, and paints black. *Carpets* the beſt in *Perſia*, after thoſe of *Teſed* (thoſe of *Chorazan* hold the third degree.) *Arms* which the *Turks* buy at any rates, and *Scimitars*, which will cut a *Head-peece* without blunting the edge. The Country is ſomewhat uneven and Mountainous, which cauſeth barrenneſs; but the Vallies are very fertil and delightful, every where adorned with *Flowers*, and eſpecially *Roſes*, of which they make a great Revenue. Amongſt its Cities, which are many, 1. *Cherman*, which communicates its name to the Province, makes a great quantity of *Cloth* of *Gold* and *Silver*; As alſo thoſe *Scimitars* aforementioned. 2. *Zargian*. 3. *Nahyan*, and others, are likewiſe in ſome reputation; but the Coaſt of *Ormus* is of great eſteem, after it *Mocheſtan*. 4. The City of *Ormus* is ſeated in an Iſle at the Mouth of the Gulph of *Perſia*, being in compaſs about 20 miles; the City well built, and ſtrongly fortified, ſeated at one end of the Iſle, being in compaſs about two miles, adorned with a fair Market place, and ſome Churches; famous throughout the World for the great Trade, there negotiated; but of itſelf, exceeding barren, and only compoſed of Salt Rocks, of which their Houſes and Walls are made; and in the *Summer*, is found ſo exceſſive hot, that the Inhabitants are forced to ly and ſleep in *Wooden Ciſterns* made for the purpoſe, and filled with Water, where both the Men and Women ly naked up to their Chins. In this Iſland there is no freſh Water, but what they fetch from other places there adjoyning, which they keep in *Ciſterns*; from whence they likewiſe get other Proviſion for their Food, being ſeated not above 12 miles from the Continent. The *Commodities* that are here found, are the rich *Gems* and *Spices* of *India*; The *Tapiſtries*, *Carpets*, &c. of *Perſia*; the *Grograms*, *Mohairs*, and *Chamblets*, of *Turky*; the *Drugs* of *Arabia*, &c. The People hereof, in their Religion, in their perſons and habit, have ſomething of the *Arabians* in them, but more of the *Perſians*. 5. *Mocheſtan* is the ordinary reſidence of the Kings of *Ormus*, becauſe it is cool, its Waters excellent to drink, and its Land fruitful in Corn and Fruits, which is not found in the Iſland. 6. *Guadell:* and 7. *Patanis*, are the moſt famous Ports of the Coaſt.

Province of *Kherman*, its Commodities, chief places, &c.

The Iſle and City of *Ormus* with its Trade and Commodities.

The People of *Ormus*.

The Province of *SABLESTAN*, incloſed with Mountains, between *Chorazan* and *Khermon*; it anſwers to *Caramania Deſerta*; yet it hath many Cities and inhabited places, amongſt others, *Zarany* towards *Khermon*. 2. *Boſt*. 3. *Necheſaet*, and 4. *Giſna-Caſſaby*, towards *Chorazan*. Some place here *Balaſan*, from whence come the *Balais Rubies*.

Province of *Sableſtan*.

The Province of *SIGISTAN*, *SISTAN*, or *SAGESTAN*; *PATANES*, *CANDAHAR*, and *MACKERAN*, are the moſt Eaſterly Provinces of all *Perſia*, and neareſt the mouth of the *Indus*. *Siſtan* is the chief City of *Sigiſtan*; *Mackeran* of *Mackeran*, which is ſeated on the Sea; and alſo *Baſir*, which ſeems to keep its ancient name *Parſis*. The River *Ilmenel*, waters all theſe Provinces, and falls into the *Indian Ocean*, not far from the Gulph of *India*. Alſo *Grees* is the chief of *Patanes*, and *Candahar* of *Candahar*.

Province of *Sigiſtan*, *Siſtan*, *Candahar*, and *Mackeran*.

Theſe are the Eſtates of the *Perſians*, and we are to obſerve, that his principal neighbours are, the *Turks* on the *Weſt*, the *Tartars* on the *North*, the *Mogols* on the *Eaſt*, and the *Portugals* on the *South*, in and about the *Gulf* of *Ormus*. Theſe laſt cannot deprive him of any great part, their deſign being only to maintain their commerce in the *Indies*, yet they ceaſe not to perplex him on the *Sea*; and have divers times taken and retaken *Ormus* from him. The *Mogols*, the *Tartars*, and the *Turks*, are troubleſom neighbours unto him, and oft times his Enemies; becauſe they are powerful and capable to ſeiſe on whole *Provinces*; which he recovers rather by ſtrength, then otherwiſe:

The Neighbors of the *Perſians*.

For it muſt be confeſſed, that the *Perſians* are more Active in their Arms, then all their Neighbours, except the *Portugals*: And they are likewiſe eſteemed more courteous to ſtrangers, more civil in their converſation, and more exact in their Policy and Government, then all the *Mahometans*. And if we would compare the manners of the *Turks*, with thoſe of the *Perſians*, we ſhould find a great difference, and often much contrariety: For the *Perſians* are courteous to ſtrangers, the *Turks* abuſive: The *Perſians* eſteem ſtudy, the *Turks* neglect it: The *Sophies* of the *Perſians* hold in honor, their Brothers and Kinſmen, the *Turks* oft put them to death: The *Perſians* have amongſt them great quantity of Nobles, the *Turks* make account of none but the Officers ſent them from the Port: The *Perſians* have the Cavalry, the *Turks* the better Infantry: both the one and the other are *Mahometans*, but they explain their *Alcoran* ſo diverſly, that that alone is capable to carry them to the ruine of one or the other Empire, if they could effect it; and it ſeems, that the diſpoſition of the one, and the other eſtate is very different, cauſed by their contrary manners, which makes them follow Maxims quite different from one another.

The *Perſians* much different from the *Turks*.

The Empire of the *Turks* is divided into many parts, cut aſunder by ſeveral Seas, one upon the neck of another, and bygre at navigable Rivers; as the *Danube* in *Europe*; the *Nile* in *Africa*, and the *Euphrates* in *Aſia*; which gives it great advantages, both for Trade, and the tranſport of its Forces: Whilſt the Empire of *Perſia*, conſiſting of an entire and ſolid Maſs, full of Mountains in the middle of the Countrey; few navigable Rivers, and thoſe which are diſtant one from the other, and falling into divers Seas, that they can have no communication one with another. Trade cannot be commodious, but abroad; and if they have occaſion to tranſport any Troops from one Coaſt to another, it cannot be done without the expence of much time and pains: And it is for this reaſon, the *Perſians* ſerve themſelves more of Cavalry, who at a need, are able to put into the field One hundred thouſand Horſe, and they have for the moſt part ready, 30, 40 or 50000: They entertain little Infantry, and thoſe for the moſt part are ſtrangers.

The *Perſian* forces conſiſts in Cavalry.

The Empire of *PERSIA*, is of a large, and of ſo different a nature, as one would not take it to be the ſame, being in ſome places very barren, cold, and comfortleſs, ſcarce affording either Food for Man o rBeaſt, as are the *North* parts which ly betwixt *Mount Taurus*, and the *Hircanian-ſea*, whereas *Southerly* it is very fruitful, the Soil rich, affording plenty of Corne, Wine, and all things neceſſary for the uſe of man, being pleaſant, full of rich Paſtures which are ſtored with abundance of Cattle, the Country watred with ſtreams. The *Perſians* are of a low ſtature, yet have great limbs, and ſtrong, they are of an *Olive* colour complexion, hawked nos'd, and black hair'd, which they ſhave every eight days, and thoſe which have not black hair naturally, by art make it ſo, as being in great eſteem amongſt them, they paint their hands and nails of a reddiſh colour. In their habit they follow much of the *Turks*, their clothes have no proportion to their bodies, hanging looſe and large, much in the faſhion of the Womens; their *Mendits*, by the *Turks* called *Turbants*, are made of *Cotton*, *Cloth* or *Silk*, *Stuff*, which is fine and of ſeveral colours, which they wear on their heads, as we do Hatts, many of them wear them of Red, but the Prieſts, as alſo his other Garments are white, their Garmentsthey girt about their waiſts with a Scarf; under theſe Garments they wear breeches like our drawers, their ſtockings are for the moſtpart made of Cloth without any ſhape in them their ſhoes are picked toed, and like ſlippers; by reaſon of their often putting them off and on, not wearing them in Houſes. The Women wear much finer Stuffs then the men, and have nothing to ty about their waiſts, their drawers, ſtockings, and ſhifts are like thoſe of the men; they wear their hair looſe about their ſhoulders in ſeveral treſſes, having no other Ornament except it be 2 or 3 rows of *Pearls*, which they faſten to their fore-head, and ſo hangs down on each ſide of their face to be faſtned to their chin; the young Maids wear rings, and bracelets about their hands and armes, alſo rings with precious ſtones in their right noſtrills, as the *Tartarian* Women do. The Women in the Streets goe with white Vails over their faces, down to their knees. The People in this Nation

The Empire of *Perſia* of a different Soyl.

The People of *Perſia*, and their habits.

tion as well Men as Women, according to their degrees in honour, or riches do exceed in coſtly habits, in which they are exceeding neat and curious, not admitting ſo much as a ſpot upon their Clothes, which neatneſs they likewiſe obſerve in their Houſes, which are for the moſt part well furniſhed; as alſo in their meats and drinks, which are excellent, delightful and curious. They are great diſſemblers, and much addicted to ill language if provoked to it. They are of a good nature, and very ſenſible of kindneſs done to them; but where they hate, are mortal enemies: They are couragious and good Souldiers, great haters of Cowards; very ingenious, of a ready Witt, and ſound Judgment, much addicted to reading ſeveral Authors, which tend to the knowledg of *Poetry*, *Philoſophy*, the *Law*, *Medicine*, ſeveral of the *Mathematicks*, as *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Aſtronomy*, and its influences, as *Aſtrology*, which they give much credit unto. Theſe and the like *Arts* and *Sciences* are ſtudied and taught young Students at ſeveral *Colledges* and *Univerſities*, by experienced perſons in the ſame, who there reſide. They are very ingenious in Fire and Water-works, are great lovers of their pleaſure, in ſeveral recreations, as *Hawking*, *Hunting*, *Riding a tilt*, &c. they are very complementory, obliging, and curteous, eſpecially to ſtrangers, not addicted to covetouſneſs, uſury being forbidden amongſt them; they are generally much given to Luxury, not contenting themſelves with ſeveral Wives, but muſt alſo have the uſe of Concubines, which is allowed them; they are alſo given to *Sodomy*; but *Adultery* they ſeverely puniſh. When a young man deſires to marry, and hath heard of a maid as he thinks he can love, he hath ſome of his friends to treat with her parents or friends about it; for the maid is not to be ſeen, and if they agree, then they proceed to Articles, which is to be performed by the friends of the Bridegroom, it not being there the cuſtom for the man to receive a portion with her, as it is here with us, but contrarily, the Dower which by both of their friends is agreed on, he either ſends unto her two or three days before the conſummation of the Marriage, which is either in Money or Goods, as a recompence to her Parents or Kindred, for their care in her education; or elſe engages to pay her if in caſe a Divorce ſhould happen, which is uſual amongſt them upon a diſlike or diſagreement, as being allowed of by their Law, this done their Agents, in the name of the betrothed couple, go to their Prieſts or Eccleſiaſtical Judge, who being ſatisfied that it is done by the mutual conſent of their friends, marries them by the ſaid Agents, but very privately: the Marriag day being agreed upon, the Bridegroom ſends his Bride ſeveral toyes, as Pendants, Bracelets, Rings or the like Ornaments; alſo ſeveral diſhes of meat, for the entertainment of her friends and relations; who about the evening brings the Bride to the Bridegroom, being mounted on a *Horſe*, *Mule* or *Camel*, being covered with a Vail of *Crimſon Taffety*, over her face down to her knees, and accompanied all the way with Muſick, and being entred the *Moſque*, the *Muloy* demands their liking; then the Bride requireth three things, *viz. Bed-right*, *Food* and *Rayment*; and the Parents having declared their conſent, the Prieſt encircles them with a cord, conjoynes their hands, takes a reciprocal Oath, and calls *Mahomet* to witneſs, which ended the *Caddi* enrolls their names, with the day of the month, year and hour of the day of their Nuptial, and ſo diſmiſſes them; and being come to the Bridegrooms Houſe, they take her off, and lead her into a room where ſhe and her friends ſup, the Bridegroom and his friends being in another room, and after ſupper is ended, they conduct her to another room where ſhe is to ly, to which the Bridgroom is ſoon brought, where he receiveth his firſt ſight of her, the campany with-drawing themſelves out of the room, he falls to his embracing her, and after the firſt enjoyment of her, he leaves her, and goeth to his friends, to ſpend ſome hours in their company; if he finds that ſhe hath loſt her virginity before, he hath power to cut off her Ears and Noſe, and to turn her, and her relations and friends out of doors, which is a great diſgrace unto her and them; but if ſhe be a pure Virgin, then he ſends the tokens of it, by an ancient Woman, to her relations, and then for joy they continue their entertainments three or four days together, having ſeveral divertiſements, as *Muſick*, *Singing*, *Dancing*, or the like, the next day after their Marriage,

Their manners diſpoſitions, &c.

Their Marriages.

Marriage, they both wash and bathe themselves, they are allowed by the Law four Wives, (of which the first hath the preemency,) but they must be of their own Religion; and for *Concubines*, they may be of any Religion, and have the liberty of taking as many as they please, paying them a certain stipend or salary, as they shall agree by the week, moneth, or longer, as they shall agree, at the end of which term, they are quit from their Obligation; and may leave each other without another agreement made betwixt them, the men are exceeding jealous of their Wives, insomuch as they are forbidden the liberty of society with any man, which custom is used among the *Italians*.

Men allowed many Women.

Their Feasts are munificent

In their Feasts they are very stately, having not only all varieties of Meats, as *Flesh*, *Fowles*, *Fish*, *Baked-meats*, with excellent *Wine*, and great attendance, but also pleasant *Fruits*, stately *Banquets* of *Sweetmeats*, and to make their entertainments compleat, they are furnished with curious *Musick*, as well Vocal as Instrumental, their Rooms or Halls, where they make these entertainments, are very spacious, and curiously adorned with stately *Hangings* of *Tapestry*, and beautified with varieties of *Paintings*, but most of them being naked Figures which amongst us would be accounted unseemly, their rooms being perfumed with sweet *Odors* and *Waters*, so that nothing is wanting for the pleasing of the senses; their way is to sit upon the ground on *Carpets*, being the Custom of the *Turks* and other *Eastern* Countries so to do; being also used to *Collations* in afternoons and nights, wherein they have excellent *Fruits*, *Sweetmeats*, *Wine*, *Musick* and *Dancing*. They are great lovers of Women, insomuch that at their Feasts they are always furnished with them, being such as they call *Dancing-women*, who being brought up in *Dancing*, *Singing*, and playing on *Instruments*, make it their imployment so to do at Feasts; these Women for the most part are very handsom, and richly attired, having about them costly *Jewels*, *Pendants*, *Rings*, having about their legs *Bells*, like *Morris-dancers*; and he who hath a desire to enjoy a Woman, riseth from his Seat, and taketh which of these *Dancing-women* he most fancies, and goes into a private room, and after he hath enjoyed her to his content, he comes to his place, and the Woman goes to *Dancing*, without any shame to the one, or notice taken of the other. They are much given to drink *Wine*, *Tea*, and *Coffee*.

They are much addicted to Women.

The *Persians* very superstitious.

The *Persians* are very strict, superstitious, and ceremonious in their Religion, (as the *Turk* is, but differ much from them in the exposition of their *Alcoran*) as in their *Pilgrimages* to *Mecca*, in their *Sacrificings*, in their observing of days, on some of which they will not do any business, either tending to profit or pleasure, refraining from all Acts of Sin as nigh as they can, and one of these days they hold to be the next *Wednesday* before the *Vernal Equinox*, by which they begin their new year, in their processions, and celebrated Festivals in commemoration of their several Saints, which they perform with great devotion, mixt with no less state in their several Sepulchers, where their Saints are interr'd, which are very large and magnificent Structures, so rich in Gold and Silver, with which it is adorned, as well in Lamps and Candlesticks, as otherwise, that it can hardly be expresst; in which places they have their Priests, which attend and offer up their devotions and explain the *Alcoran*, which they read out of Books, which they have in their *Library* being Manuscripts either upon Paper or Parchment, being curiously bound, neatly painted within, and covered with Plates of Silver or Gold, carved or imbossed, or with paintings; also the *Persians* have not the same *Miracles*, the same *Saints*, the same *Mosques*, and the same Ceremonies as the *Turks* have; they use *Circumcision*, but not till the Children are 7, 8 or 9 years old, they are very devout, especially in their prayers, which they use five times a day, as being obliged by their Religion so to do; also in their Prayers for the dead, over their Graves which devotion is used during the time of their *Lent*, which they keep for a month, in which time they neither eat nor drink betwixt Sun-rising and Sun-setting, but in the nights they eat and drink what they please; yet for a sum of money they may have a dispensation: they interr their dead within three hours after the life is departed, unless it be in the night, so that then they let the corps alone untill the morning, they wash or bathe the bodies of their dead, before they

Their Religion

they are interred, in a great Ceſtern, which they have for the ſame purpoſe near the Church, to which place they are carried on a Bier in their Clothes, and after they are ſtript and Waſht, they put them in clean linnen, anoint them, and ſo bear them to the Grave, being accompanied with his Friends, Relations, Servants, &c. in this order; firſt goeth thoſe of his blood, next his *Varlets*, who go naked to the Waiſt, the reſt in troozes, who to expreſs their love, ſcratch, and burn their Breaſts, Arms, and other parts, ſo that the blood oft iſſueth forth; then follow many youths on whoſe ſhoulders are affixed ſome texts taken out of the *Alcoran*, together with Elegies of the deceaſed, in the next place follow ſeveral perſons of the beſt ranck, each holding a cord that is affixed to the *Hearſe*; and on every ſide abundance of People bearing in their hands, Garlands of Flowers, Lawrels, and ſuch things as befit the Seaſon, then follow ſome Horſe-men half naked, who oft times maſſacre their carcaſſes, and in the laſt place follow weeping-Women, that is, ſuch as are hired to weep and howle, the better to provoke others to paſſion; and being brought to the Grave, the Prieſt after he hath performed ſeveral Ceremonies which he readeth out of the *Alcoran*, the Corps is interred with his head towards *Mecca*, his face towards Heaven, and his armes expanded, (as they ſay) to imbrace their Prophet *Mahomet*, placing two Stones, one at the head, and the other at the foot of the Grave, on which are ingraven in *Arabick* Characters, the perſons name, quality and time of burial, and ſo take their leave, but for a good while ceaſe not to viſit the Grave twice a day, beſeeching *Mahomet* to ſuccour him againſt his two bad Angels, of whom they have this opinion; So ſoon as the Corps is interred, there are two hiddeous Devils aſſaile him, the one they call *Muengar*, which is armed with an Iron Club, and the other *Quarequar*, armed with a Hook of Flaming braſs, and in this horrid poſture, they view the Carcaſs, and in an inſolent manner, command him to raiſe his head, to fall proſtrate upon his knees, and begg his ſoul, which then re-enters the body, and gives an account unto them of all the actions of his life, and upon examination and confeſſion, if it appear that his life was good, they vaniſh away like Spirits, and two good Angels come (apparelled in white) to be a comfort unto him, and protect him untill the day of doom, not ſtirring from him, but ſitting one at his head, and the other at his feet. But on the contrary, if it happen that his life is found bad, then theſe Infernal Imps are his tormentors, the one knocking him on the head ſuch blows with his Iron Club, as beats him (as they ſay) ten yards into the Earth, and the other drags him up with his Flaming hook; and thus is he knockt down by one, and dragged up by the other, untill *Mahomet* ſends him a deliverance; and this (as Sir *Tho. Herbert* relateth in his book of Travels) is their belief, which if it be true, I doubt they will have many a ſound knock and torne place before their delivery. To perſons of quality, they obſerve more Ceremonies than to thoſe of the ordinary degree, making Feaſts on the third, ſeventh, and fortieth day after the Corps is laid in the Grave, at which Feaſts they are charitable to the poor in their Almes Deeds.

Ceremonies in their burials.

The King of *Perſia* governs by an abſolute power, diſpoſing of the lives and eſtates of his Subjects as beſt pleaſeth him, making his Will his Law, not any one daring ſo much as to murmure, though his actions are never ſo much unjuſt. Their Kings come to the Goverment by ſucceſſion, and not by election, inſomuch that if the King hath no Children which are lawfully begotten as by his Wives, for want of ſuch thoſe of his Concubines ſhall ſucceed him.

The King of *Perſia* his power.

Upon the Coronation of their Kings, amongſt other Ceremonies, he is preſented with a Crown, by one of their chiefeſt Lords, which he takes putting it to his forehead, and after kiſſing it thrice in the name of *Mahomet*, and of *Aaly*, he delivers it to the grand Maſter of the Kingdom, who puts it on his head, the People making great ſhouts and acclamations, kiſſing his feet, and preſenting him with great preſents, which done, the reſt of the day they ſpend in feaſting and other jovialties, but in all their Ceremonies there is not ſo much as an Oath impoſed upon him; as, for his well governing them, and keeping

The Coronation of their Kings.

keeping and preſerving their fundamental Laws, and other of their rights; as amongſt us done, but all being left to his ſole power, as being abſolute.

There are belonging to the Court ſeveral Officers, as *Chancellor*, *Secretary* of *State*, *Controller*, *Maſter* of the *Horſe*, *Maſter* of the *Ceremonies*, together with ſeveral other Officers, as amongſt our Courts are found. The Adminiſtration of Juſtice is decided by the King, but firſt tried by the ſecular Judges who examine the ſame, and deliver up their opinion to the King. They have ſeveral ſtrict and ſevere puniſhments, which they inflict upon the offenders according to the hainouſneſs of their crimes, for ſome offences they cut off the Ears or Noſe, ſometimes the Feet or Hands, for others to be beheaded, for ſome again, they are tyed between two boards and ſo ſawed aſunder, with ſeveral other cruel deaths which are too tedious to name. In their Military affairs they are very experienced, their Army conſiſting only of Horſe, who have for their Armour Darts and Javelins, yet have they ſome in the nature of our *Dragoons*, which are mounted on Horſes, who have Muskets for their Arms; as for an Army of Foot, together with the aſſiſtance of great Guns by them, is not ſo much ſet by, as being troubleſom, and a detarder of them from their ſpeedy and great marches, they are very expert in all ſtratagems of War, which gives them a great advantage over their enemies.

Their Courts of Judicature, and their Juſtice.

Their Military Affairs.

Here doth inhabit a ſort of People called *Gaurs*, and are of a much different Religion from the *Perſians*, obſerving divers Ceremonies peculiar to themſelves. In their Baptiſm they uſe no Circumſition, inſtead of which they waſh the Child, &c. At their Nuptials after the Prieſt hath ſaid ſome Prayers, he takes water, waſhes both their fore-heads, and gives the Benediction. When they are ſick they make Confeſſion to the Prieſt, and beſtow their Almes in hopes of Pardon of their Sins. They bury not their dead, but carry them to certain encloſed places, where they faſten them to high Stakes, with their faces towards the Eaſt. They bear a great adoration to Fire. They are exceeding cleanly in all things, and waſh often in *Cows-piſs*, which they hold to be a good purification. Upon confeſſion of their Sins to their Prieſts, they are conſtrained to Penance, in which ſeveral Ceremonies are obſerved. They have ſo great eſteem for Doggs, that when any die they are carried out, and prayers are made for them.

They have great quantity of all ſorts of Cattle, Grain and Fruits. Amongſt their Fruit-trees, they have great quantities of white and black *Mulberry-trees*, which grow not above 5 or 6 foot high, ſo that one may eaſily reach up to the branches, and in the Spring time, when theſe Trees begin to ſhoot forth their leaves, they begin to hatch their Silk-worms, which they do by carrying the ſeed under their arm-pits in little baggs, which in ſeven or eight days will receive life, then they put them into a wooden diſh, upon the *Mulberry-leaves*, which they once a day change, and take a great care that they be not wet, at the end of five days they ſleep three, after which they diſpoſe of them into Rooms or Barns, prepared for the ſame purpoſe, upon the beams of theſe buildings they faſten laths, or ſuch like pieces of wood, upon which they lay *Mulberry-branches*, which hath the leaves on, whereon they put the Silk-worms ſhifting them every day, and as they grow in bigneſs, ſo oftner to twice or thrice a day; before they begin to ſpin, they ſleep about eight days more, after which they begin, and in 12 days they have finiſhed their Cod, the biggeſt they make choiſe of for ſeed; all the reſt they caſt into a Kettle of boyling Water; into which they often put a whisk made for the purpoſe, to which the Silk ſticks which they immediately wind up; and that which they keep for Seed, they lay upon a Table, out of which, in the ſpace of fifteen days comes forth great Buggs, which afterwards turn to things like *Butter-flies*, which in a few days they gender and lay Eggs, and then die, not eating any thing from their firſt ſpinning; which is much, for things to live ſo great a while without eating any thing: And of theſe Silk-worms thus ordered they make a great Revenue.

A diſcourſe of Silk-worms, and making of Silk.

INDIA, or the EAST INDIES, which (according to its form and disposition of its Estates) may be divided into three several Parts; to wit,

The Empire of the GREAT MOGOLL, which comprehendeth that which is upon the Main Land, wherein are contained several Kingdoms or Provinces; the chief of which are,

- Cabul, — Cabul.
- Attock, — Attock.
- Multan, — Multan.
- Candahar, — Candahar.
- Buckor, — Buckor-Suckor.
- Tatta, — Tatta, Diul.
- Soxet, — Janagir.
- Cassimere, — Sirinaker.
- Bankish, — Beihar.
- Kabarei, — Dankalar.
- Naugracut, — Naugracut.
- Siba, — Seresegar.
- Jamba, — Jamba.
- Bakar, — Bikaner.
- Samball, — Samball.
- Gor, — Gor.
- Kanduana, — Barabantaka.
- Patna, — Patna.
- Jesual, — Rajapore.
- Udessa, — Jekanac.
- Mevat, — Narvall.
- Pitan, — Pitan.
- Guzurate, or Cambaya, — Surat, Barochæ, Cambaya, Armadabad, Diu.
- Chitor — Chitor.
- Malway, — Rantipore.
- Candis, — Brampore.
- Berar, — Shapor.
- Gualeor, — Gualeor.
- Narrar, — Gehud.
- Pengala, — Bengala, Chatigan, Goura, Halabass, Satigan.
- Lahor, — Lahor.
- Jenupar, — Jenupar.
- Jesselmere, — Gisslemere.
- Bando, — Bando.
- Delly, — Delly.
- Agra, — Agra.

The Peninsula of INDIA without the GANGES, and Westwards, and between the Mouths of the INDUS and the GANGES; with its several Kingdoms, or Countries of

- DECAN, — Amedanager, Chaul, Visapor, Paranda, Goa, Doltabad.
- GOLCONDA, — Golconda, Musulipatan.
- BISNAGAR, or NARSINGUE, — Onor, Bisnagar, Trivalur, Gingi, Negapatan, Sadraparan, or Fort St. George, Maliapur, Geldria, Madure, Tutucori, and Manancor.
- MALABAR, — Calicut, Cochin, Cananor, Coulan, Cranganor, Cerate, Cota, Changanara.

The Peninsula of INDIA within the GANGES, and Eastwards; wherein are contained several Kingdoms, Countries, Isles, &c. the chief among which are

- PEGU, — Pegu, Brema, Canarane, Ava, Tinco, and Prom.
- SIAN, — Odiaa, Banckock, Lugor, Martaban, Camboya, Sacotray.
- Peninsula of MALACCA, — Tanasserin, Juncalaon, Queda, Pera, Malacca, Ilior, Patane.
- COCHIN-CHINA, — Palocacein, Keccio.
- ISLES in the Gulph of SIAN, among which are — Macara, Panian, Goereinficos.
- ISLES in the Gulph of BENGALA, among which are, — Chubedu, Chudube, Durondiva, Dos Cocos, Andemaan.

keeping and preſerving their fundamental Laws, and other of their rights; as amongſt us done, but all being left to his ſole power, as being abſolute.

There are belonging to the Court ſeveral Officers, as *Chancellor*, *Secretary* of *State*, *Controller*, *Maſter* of the *Horſe*, *Maſter* of the *Ceremonies*, together with ſeveral other Officers, as amongſt our Courts are found. The Adminiſtration of Juſtice is decided by the King, but firſt tried by the ſecular Judges who examine the ſame, and deliver up their opinion to the King. They have ſeveral ſtrict and ſevere puniſhments, which they inflict upon the offenders according to the hainouſneſs of their crimes, for ſome offences they cut off the Ears or Noſe, ſometimes the Feet or Hands, for others to be beheaded, for ſome again, they are tyed between two boards and ſo ſawed aſunder, with ſeveral other cruel deaths which are too tedious to name. In their Military affairs they are very experienced, their Army conſiſting only of Horſe, who have for their Armour Darts and Javelins, yet have they ſome in the nature of our *Dragoons*, which are mounted on Horſes, who have Muskets for their Arms; as for an Army of Foot, together with the aſſiſtance of great Guns by them, is not ſo much ſet by, as being troubleſom, and a detarder of them from their ſpeedy and great marches, they are very expert in all ſtratagems of War, which gives them a great advantage over their enemies.

Their Courts of Judicature, and their Juſtice.

Their Military Affairs.

Here doth inhabit a ſort of People called *Gaurs*, and are of a much different Religion from the *Perſians*, obſerving divers Ceremonies peculiar to themſelves. In their Baptiſm they uſe no Circumſition, inſtead of which they waſh the Child, &c. At their Nuptials after the Prieſt hath ſaid ſome Prayers, he takes water, waſhes both their fore-heads, and gives the Benediction. When they are ſick they make Confeſſion to the Prieſt, and beſtow their Almes in hopes of Pardon of their Sins. They bury not their dead, but carry them to certain encloſed places, where they faſten them to high Stakes, with their faces towards the Eaſt. They bear a great adoration to Fire. They are exceeding cleanly in all things, and waſh often in *Cows-piſs*, which they hold to be a good purification. Upon confeſſion of their Sins to their Prieſts, they are conſtrained to Penance, in which ſeveral Ceremonies are obſerved. They have ſo great eſteem for Doggs, that when any die they are carried out, and prayers are made for them.

They have great quantity of all ſorts of Cattle, Grain and Fruits. Amongſt their Fruit-trees, they have great quantities of white and black *Mulberry-trees*, which grow not above 5 or 6 foot high, ſo that one may eaſily reach up to the branches, and in the Spring time, when theſe Trees begin to ſhoot forth their leaves, they begin to hatch their Silk-worms, which they do by carrying the ſeed under their arm-pits in little baggs, which in ſeven or eight days will receive life, then they put them into a wooden diſh, upon the *Mulberry-leaves*, which they once a day change, and take a great care that they be not wet, at the end of five days they ſleep three, after which they diſpoſe of them into Rooms or Barns, prepared for the ſame purpoſe, upon the beams of theſe buildings they faſten laths, or ſuch like pieces of wood, upon which they lay *Mulberry-branches*, which hath the leaves on, whereon they put the Silk-worms ſhifting them every day, and as they grow in bigneſs, ſo oftner to twice or thrice a day; before they begin to ſpin, they ſleep about eight days more, after which they begin, and in 12 days they have finiſhed their Cod, the biggeſt they make choiſe of for ſeed; all the reſt they caſt into a Kettle of boyling Water; into which they often put a whisk made for the purpoſe, to which the Silk ſticks which they immediately wind up; and that which they keep for Seed, they lay upon a Table, out of which, in the ſpace of fifteen days comes forth great Buggs, which afterwards turn to things like *Butter-flies*, which in a few days they gender and lay Eggs, and then die, not eating any thing from their firſt ſpinning; which is much, for things to live ſo great a while without eating any thing: And of theſe Silk-worms thus ordered they make a great Revenue.

A diſcourſe of Silk-worms, and making of Silk.

INDIA, or the EAST INDIES, which (according to its form and disposition of its Estates) may be divided into three several Parts; to wit,

The Empire of the GREAT MOGOLL, which comprehendeth that which is upon the Main Land, wherein are contained several Kingdoms or Provinces; the chief of which are,

- Cabul, — Cabul.
- Attock, — Attock.
- Multan, — Multan.
- Candahar, — Candahar.
- Buckor, — Buckor-Suckor.
- Tatta, — Tatta, Diul.
- Soxet, — Janagir.
- Cashmere, — Sirinaket.
- Bankish, — Bechar.
- Kabares, — Dankalar.
- Naugracut, — Naugracut.
- Siba, — Seresegar.
- Jamba, — Jamba.
- Bakar, — Bikaner.
- Samball, — Samball.
- Gor, — Gor.
- Kanduana, — Barabantaka.
- Patna, — Patna.
- Jesual, — Rajapore.
- Udessa, — Jekenac.
- Mevat, — Narvall.
- Pitan, — Pitan.
- Guzurate, or Cambaya, — Surat, Baroche, Cambaya, Armadabad, Diu.
- Chitor — Chitor.
- Malway, — Rantipore.
- Candis, — Brampore.
- Berar, — Shapor.
- Gualeor, — Gualeor.
- Narrar, — Gehud.
- Pengala, — Bengala, Chatigan, Goura, Halabass, Satigan.
- Lahor, — Lahor.
- Jenupar, — Jenupar.
- Jesselmere, — Gisslemere.
- Bando, — Bando.
- Delly, — Delly.
- Agra, — Agra.

The Peninsula of INDIA without the GANGES, and Westwards, and between the Mouths of the INDUS and the GANGES; with its several Kingdoms, or Countries of

- DECAN, — Amedanager, Chaul, Visapor, Paranda, Goa, Doltabad.
- GOLCONDA, — Golconda, Musuliparan.
- BISNAGAR, or NARSINGUE, — Onor, Bisnagar, Trivalur, Gingi, Negapatan, Sadraparan, or Fort St. George, Maliapur, Geldria, Madura, Tutucori, and Manancor.
- MALABAR, — Calicut, Cochin, Cananor, Coulan, Cranganor, Corate, Cota, Changanara.

The Peninsula of INDIA within the GANGES, and Eastwards; wherein are contained several Kingdoms, Countries, Isles, &c. the chief among which are

- PEGU, — Pegu, Brema, Canarane, Ava, Tinco, and Prom.
- SIAN, — Odiaa, Banckock, Lugor, Martaban, Camboya, Sacotray.
- Peninsula of MALACCA, — Tanasserin, Juncalaon, Queda, Pera, Malacca, Ihor, Patane.
- COCHIN-CHINA, — Palocatein, Keccio.
- ISLES in the Gulph of SIAN, among which are — Macara, Panian, Goereinficos.
- ISLES in the Gulph of BENGALA, among which are, — Chubeda, Chudube, Durordiva, Dos Cocos, Andemaan.

The Empire of the GREAT MOGOLL; with its several Kingdoms, or Provinces, as they lie

- Weſtwards, and towards PERSIA, from the firſt Streams of the INDUS unto its falling into the Sea, are thoſe of
  - Cabul, — Cabul, Ghidel.
  - Attock, — Attock, Pucko.
  - Multan, — Multan, Seerpore.
  - Candahar, — Candahar, Gusbecunna.
  - Buckor, — Buckor-Suckor, Kauree.
  - Tatta, — Tatta, Diul, Lourchander.
  - Hajacan, — Chatzan, Dunki.
  - Soret, — Janagar, Cacha.
- On the North, and between the Mountains which divide this Empire from TARTARIA, or between the Springs of the GANGES and the INDUS, are
  - Caſſimere, — Syrinakar, Chonab.
  - Bankiſh, — Beiſhar.
  - Kakares, — Dankalar, Purhola,
  - Naugracut, — Naugracut, Callamaka.
- On this ſide, or without the GANGES; where are thoſe of
  - Siba, — Hardware, Serenegar.
  - Jamba, — Jamba, Balcery.
  - Bakar, — Bikaner.
  - Samball, — Samball, Menepore, Chappergar.
- Within the GANGES, are thoſe of
  - Gor, — Gor.
  - Kanduana, — Barakanzaka.
  - Patna, — Patna.
  - Jeſual, — Rajapore.
  - Udeſſa, — Jekanac.
  - Mevat, — Narvall.
  - Pitan, — Pitan, Camojo.
- Southernly, and towards the Gulphs of BENGALA and CAMBAYA, and the Peninſula of INDIA within the GANGES, are thoſe of
  - Guzurate, or Chambaya, — Surat, Baroche, Cambaya, Armadabad, Agra, Diu, Brodra, Cheytepour, Biſantagan, Mangalor, Jaquete.
  - Chitor, — Chitor, Chitapur.
  - Malway, — Rantipore, Ougel, Narvar.
  - Candis, — Brampore, Mandow, Pala.
  - Ranas, — Gurchitto.
  - Berar, — Shapor.
  - Gualeor, — Gualeor, War.
  - Narvar, — Gehud.
  - Bengala, with its Parts of
    - Patan, — Bengala, Chatigan, Goura, Patana, Tanda, Daca, and Bannara.
    - Prurop, — Ragmehel, Holobaſs.
    - Bengala, — Satigan, Mandaran, Ougely, Xore, Belleſor, and Angara.
- In the Middle of the EMPIRE; and are thoſe of
  - Lahor, — Lahor, Fetipore, Temmeri, and Guzurat.
  - Jenupar, — Jenupar, Sirima, Tanaſſer.
  - Hendowns, — Hendowne, Mearta.
  - Jeſſelmere, — Giſſemere, Moulto, Radinpore.
  - Bando, — Bando, Toury, Aſmere.
  - Delly, — Delly, Acarnapori.
  - Agra, — Agra, Secandra, Fetipore, Scanderbade, and Ilay.

The

The Peninſula of INDIA without the Ganges: In which are the ſeveral Kingdoms, or Countries of

- DECAN, with its Parts of
  - Decan, particularly ſo called,
    - Amedanager,
    - Chaul,
    - Dabul.
  - Cunkan,
    - Viſapor,
    - Soliapor,
    - Paranda,
    - Goa,
    - Pagode,
    - Zanguizara.
  - Balaguate,
    - Liſpor,
    - Beder,
    - Dolzabad.
- GOLCONDA,
  - Golconda,
  - Muſulipatan,
  - Guadavari,
  - Vizapatan,
  - Narſingapatan,
  - Orixa,
  - Palhor,
  - Calecote.
- BISNAGAR, or NARSINGUE; with its Eſtates and Coaſts of
  - Canara,
    - Onor,
    - Gortopa,
    - Barcelor,
    - Baticala,
    - Magalor,
    - Bacanor.
  - Biſnagar, particularly ſo called,
    - Biſnagar,
    - Narſingue,
    - Vellur,
    - Cangevaran,
    - Cirangapatan,
    - Trivalur,
    - Tripity.
  - Gingi,
    - Gingi,
    - Cindarnbaram,
    - Chittapatama.
  - Tanjaor,
    - Tanjaor,
    - Caſtan,
    - Trinidi.
  - Maritim Places in BISNAGAR, GINGI, and TANJAOR, bearing and known by the name of the Coaſt of Chormandel.
    - Negapatan,
    - Triminapatan,
    - Trangabar,
    - Coloran,
    - Fort St. George, or Sadrapatan,
    - Maliapur,
    - Paliacate,
    - Chiricole,
    - Muſulipatan,
    - Calerur,
    - Gueldria,
    - Pentapouli.
  - Madure,
    - Madure,
    - Brimaom,
    - Periapatan,
    - Punicale.
  - Maritim Places of MADURE, and called the Coaſt of Peſcheria,
    - Jacancury,
    - Manapar,
    - Vaipar,
    - Trichandur,
    - Chereacale,
    - Tuticori,
    - Iſle of Kings,
    - Bembar,
    - Calecure,
    - Manancor,
    - Canameira.
- MALABAR, with its ſerveral Kingdoms, or Provinces, to wit,
  - On the Sea, or Coaſt of Malabar, as
    - Calicut, — Calicut.
    - Cochin, — Cochin.
    - Cananor, — Cananor.
    - Coulan, — Coulan.
    - Chambais, — Chambais.
    - Montigue, — Montigue.
    - Badara, — Badara.
    - Tanor, — Tanor.
    - Cranganor, — Cranganor.
    - Porca, — Porca.
    - Calecoulan, — Calecoulan.
    - Travancor, — Travancor.
    - Cotate, — Cotate.
  - In the High Land, as
    - Cota, — Cota.
    - Auriola, — Auriola.
    - Cottagan, — Cottagan.
    - Bipur, — Bipur.
    - Coucura, — Coucura.
    - Panur, — Panur.
    - Curiga, — Curiga.
    - Muterte, — Muſerte.
    - Marta, — Márta.
    - Batimena, — Batimena.
  - In the Mountains, as
    - Mangat, — Mangat.
    - Paru, — Paru.
    - Pimienta, — Pimienta.
    - Changanara, — Changanara.
    - Trivalar, — Trivalar.
    - Panapelli, — Panapelli.
    - Angamala, — Angamala.
    - Ticancutes, — Ticancutes.
    - Punhali, — Punhali.
    - Caranarette, — Caranarette.
    - Pande, — Pande.

The Peninsula of INDIA within the Ganges: In which are the Kingdoms, Countries, Isles, &c. of

- PEGU, with its Kingdoms or Parts of
  - Martavan,
  - Mahar,
  - Tangu,
  - Marfin,
  - Jangoma,
  - Brama,

  Pegu, Brema, Canarane, Pandior, Manchanelle, Caffuri, Boldia, Ava, Tinco, Prom, Tolemis, Largata, Tipoura, Chacomas, Maon, Artican, Dogoa, Ledoa, Cofmi, Xara, Dunbecaon, Chibolle.
- SIAN, with its Kingdoms or Eſtates of
  - Sian — Odiaa, Banckock, Ogmo, Lugor, Mirgui, Sacotay, Juropian.
  - Martaban — Martaban, Macuma, Cuidad de los Reyes, Macaon.
  - Jangoma — Jangoma.
  - Camboia — Camboya, Ravecca, Langor, Carol, Tarvaha.
- Peninſula of MALACCA whoſe Parts
  - Towards the Gulph of BENGALA, and Weſtwards, are
    - Tanaſſerin — Tanaſſerin.
    - Junckſion — Janckaon.
    - Queda — Queda.
    - Pera — Pera.
    - Malacca — Malacca.
  - Towards the Gulph of SIAN, and Eaſtwards, are
    - Ihor — Ihor.
    - Pahang — Pahang.
    - Patane — Patane.
    - Singora — Singora.
    - Brodelong — Brodelong.
    - Ligor — Ligor.
- COCHIN-CHINA, with its Kingdoms, People, &c. of
  - COCHIN-CHINA, particularly ſo called, with its Provinces of
    - Chiampaa — Pulocicoin.
    - Ranran — Baday.
    - Pulocanbis — Naroman.
    - Quagiva — Ciomoy.
    - Cacciam — Cacciam, Faifo, Turaon.
    - Sinuva — Sinuva.
  - TUNQUIN, with its Parts or Provinces of — Bochin, Ghean, Tinhoa, Beramar, Kedom, Kenam, Kethay. — whoſe chief place is Keccio.
  - The People called the Layes.
  - The Kingdom of Ciocangue.
  - The People called the Gueyes, Timocoves.
- ISLES ſeated in the Gulph of SIAN, viz. — Macara, Panian, Cara, Goeteinficos, Tyamcieſi, Coſyn.
- ISLES ſeated in the Ocean, called the Gulph of BENGALA; viz. — Chubedu, Chudube, Leoloa, Dos Alevantados, Durcondiva Siriaoa, Sobodlas, Dos Cocos, Andemaon, Dos Caboſes, Taſſaſſeri, Tavay, Alta, Crara, Caremubar, Raza, Dos Sombreros de Palm, Siano, Sambilano, Batun, Pera, Pinaon, Ganal de St. Jorge, Nicubar.

IN-

105
110
115
120
125
Nor
130
40
35
30
25
20
15
10
5
TARTA
ZAGATAY
KAKARI
PART
BALCH
CAMDA
OF HAR
Aguvanes
HAIA
CAN
Bulloque
MULTAN
Multan
Rahia Tabbon
CAS SI
MER E
BANKI
SCH
GRA
Attock
Rah Bossoc
CUT
Rahia Tallu
Decamper
chan
IAMBA
IENU
HENDOWNS
PAP
BACAR
DELLY
Delly
SAMBOL
AGRA
Agra
BUC KOR
Tesselmeer
BAN
IESSEL
Asmere
DO
MERE
NAR
GUA
CEYLEOR
VAR
MAL
PRUROP
SORET
CHITOR
WAY
Gulph
of India
Reibutes
Amadabad
BERAR
BENGALA
GUZU
RAT
Cambaya
Gulph of Cambaya
Surat
Damen
Daman
Par
Ori
XA
Orixa
GOL
taspha
Golconda
CON
DE
CAN
PENIN
SULA
of
INDIA
Goa
Cana
BISNA
Barcelor
Tamu
ADR
Fort St. George
THE
with
out
the
MAL
Cahout
Divandurou
EN
GAN
GES
LABA
Isle
Tragatan
Tranquimale
of
Ceylan
or
ARCHIPE
LAGO
or the
Isles of
MAL
DI
OCEAN
Æquator, or Æquinoctial Line

A General Mapp of the East: Indies Comprehending the Estats or Kingdoms of the Great Mogol, the Kingdoms & Estats of Decan, Golconde, Bisnagar, Malabar &c in the Peninsula of India with out the Ganges. & the Kingdoms Isles of Pegu, Sian, Malacca, Cochinchina & in the Peninsula of India within the Ganges with the Isles of Maldives.
by Monsieur Samson
135
140
145
150
155
40
35
30
25
20
15
10
5
East
Tropick of Cancer
Gulph of Bengala
Gulph of Cochinchina
PEGU
Lanjang
PENINSULA
INDIA
the GANGES
Isles of Andemaon
Malacca
BORNEO
Borneo
CHINA
CHIAMPA
Cambaia
Line

PART
PERSIA
BALCH
CANDAHAR
MULTAN
BUCKOR
HENDOWNS
DELLY
AGRA
BACAR
SAMBOL
IAMBA
BERAR
GUZURAT
CANBAY
GOLCONDA
PENINSULA
INDIA
Gulph of India
Gulph of Cambaya
Gulph of Bengala
Resbutes
Cambaya
Surat
Damam
Goa
Calicut
Cochin
Cranganor
Cape Comori
Ceylan
Isle of Ceylan
Maldivia
Mogapatan
Pulicate
Negapatan
Sumatra
Java
Equator or Æquinoctial Line
Francis Lamb Scul.

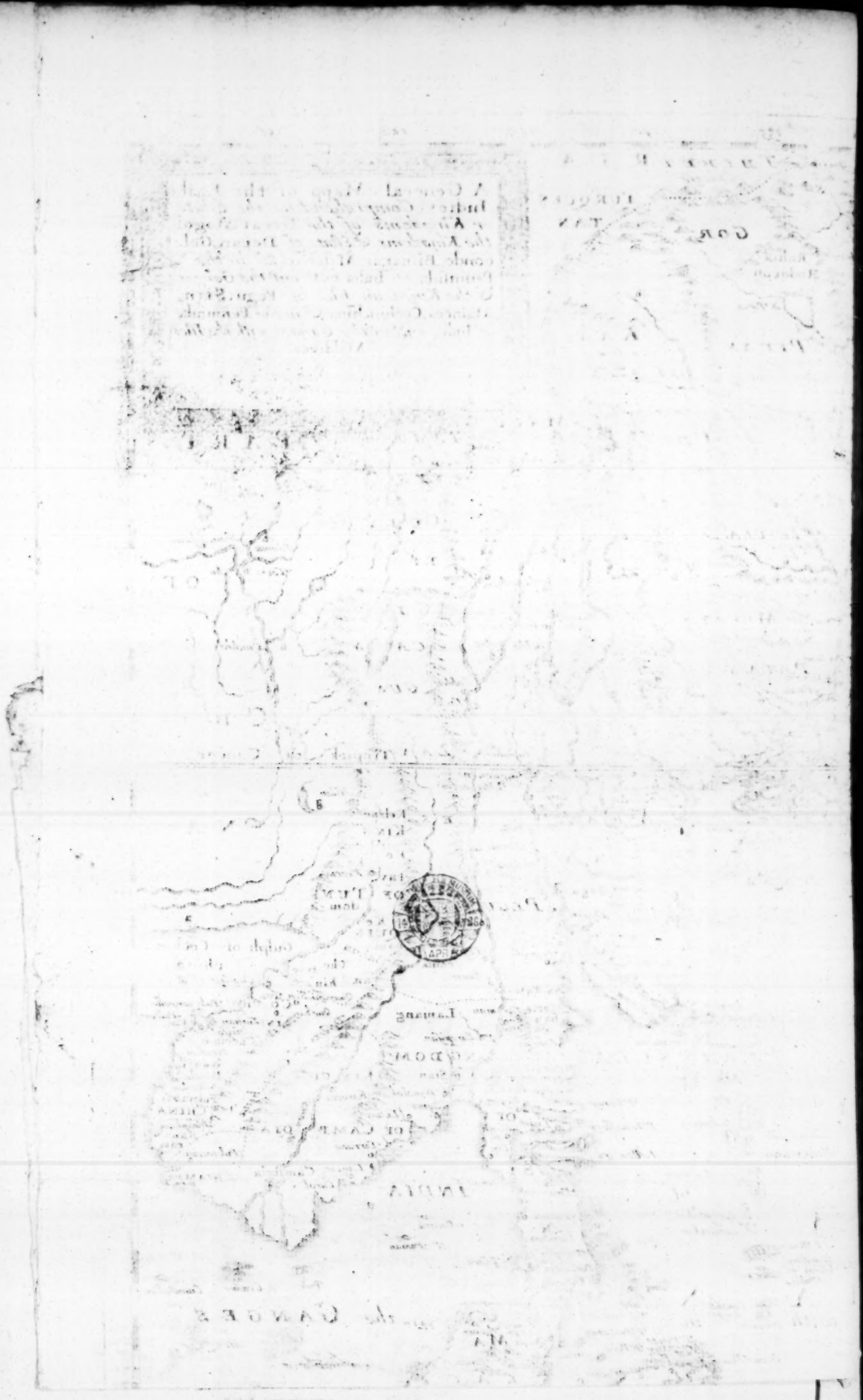
To the Honorable
and Court of Committ
Marchants tradeing in
This Mapp is humbly

A General Mapp of the East-Indies *Comprehending the Estats or Kingdoms of the Great Mogol, the Kingdoms & Estats of* Decan, Golconde, Bisnagar, Malabar &c. *in the* Peninsula *of* India *with out the Ganges. & the Kingdoms Isles of* Pegu, Siam, Malacca, Cochinchina &c. *in the* Peninsula *of* India *within the Ganges. with the Isles of* Maldives.

by Monsieur Sanson

TURQUES TAN
GOR
PITAN
KAN
DUANA
MAUG
UDE
SA
ATNA
IESULA
MEVAT
PATAN
TIMO
CO:
VES
PART:
GULY
ES
CI
CA
N
GUS
LAY
OF:
CHI:
Tropick of Cancer
Gulph of Bengala
ARA
CAN
PEGU
Pegu
Martaban
PENINSULA
KINGDOM
Siam
KING
OF
TUR
dom
QUIN
Gulph of Cochinchina
Lanjang
KING
OF CAMBODIA
CHAMPA
CHINA
Isles of Andeman
INDIA
AN
with in the GANGES
ISLES OF
ISLE
OF
Malacca
BORNEO
Borneo
Line
SON
DA
135
140
145
150
20 East

the Governer Deputy
ies of the Company of
to the East Indies
dedicated by Ric: Blome.



INDIA,
OR THE
EAST-INDIES.

INDIA, of which we treat at preſent, is that which the Ancients have known under the name of *India*, or the *Indies*, and which the Moderns call the *Aſiatick*, or *Eaſt-Indies*; becauſe they likewiſe call *America*, though very improperly, the *Weſt Indies*; theſe lying Weſt, thoſe Eaſt from our Meridian. But under the name of *Eaſt Indies* divers Authors comprehend all the moſt Oriental parts of *Aſia*, that is to ſay, all that is above and beyond the River *Indus*, from whence the Country takes its name; and likewiſe *China*, and the Iſles of *Aſia*, which are in the *Oriental Ocean*, paſs under the name of theſe *Indies*. Its Name.

But leaving *China* and the Iſles of *Aſia* apart, we may divide *India*, both becauſe of its Form and the diſpoſition of its Eſtates, into three ſeveral parts; of which, the firſt ſhall comprehend that which is upon the Main Earth, the reſt ſhall be in two *Peninſula's*; of which, the moſt Weſtern, and between the Mouths of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſhall be called *The Peninſula of* India *without the Ganges*; and the moſt Oriental, and beyond the *Ganges*, ſhall be called *The Peninſula of* India *within the Ganges*. Its bounds, and diviſion into Parts.

We will eſteem in the firſt part, that which the Great *Mogoll* at preſent poſſeſſes, and what is engaged in his Empire. In the two *Peninſula's* we ſhall have a great number of Kingdoms and Principalities; neither the one nor the other having leſs than fifty, which by little and little are reduced into a leſs number, the ſtrongeſt becoming Maſters of the weakeſt. Thus the great *Mogoll* made himſelf Maſter of 35 or 40 Kingdoms, of which ſome had before ruined many others.

The Empire of the GREAT MOGOLL.

OF the ſeveral Provinces, or Kingdoms, under the Empire of the Great *Mogoll*, as appears in the *Geographical Table* of the Empire apart, have their Names common with thoſe of their chief Cities, and are all rich, and ſince their ſeparation they compoſe fair and powerful Eſtates: And firſt with *Cabul*.

CABUL, whoſe chief City bears the ſame name, is the moſt advanced towards *Perſia*, with *Usbeck* or *Zagathai*. The Springs of *Nilab* and *Behat*, which fall into the *Indus*, and poſſibly likewiſe of *Indus*, are in this Kingdom or Province. The City of *Cabul* is great, but the Houſes low; its ſtrength lying in the two *Fortreſſes*, and in the great Road of *Labor* to *Samarcand* in *Usbeck*; and to *Tarchan*, the chief City of *Caſcar*, from whence they bring *Silk*, *Musk*, and *Rhubarb*, from *China* and *Cathay*. Kingdom or Province of *Cabul*.

ATTOCK

Attock. *ATTOCK* is on the *Indus*; Its City is fair, the Fortreſs good; and when the Limits of the Eſtates of the Kings of *India* lay between *Lahor* and *Attock*, it was of greater conſideration than poſſibly it is at preſent.

Multan. *MULTAN* is rich, by reaſon of the fruitfulneſs of its Soil and Traffick, which the Rivers of *Indus*, of *Behat*, of *Nilab*, and of *Rawey*, which fall into the *Indus*, do much enrich. The City of *Multan* is great, ancient, and not above two or three Leagues diſtant from the *Indus*. Its principal Commodities are *Sugar*, *Galls*, *Opium*, *Brimſtone*; ſeveral Manufactures of *Silk* and *Wool*, &c.

Candahar. *CANDAHAR* is far engaged towards *Perſia*, its chief City being ſo called, which is great, and of ſome Trade.

Buckor. *BUCKOR* hath for its chief City *Buckor-Suckor*, which lies along the River *Indus* (which runs through the Province) which makes it very fertil. The City is of an indifferent extent, and of ſome Trade.

Tatta. *TATTA*, whoſe chief City bears the ſame name, is divided by the River *Indus* into ſeveral Iſles. In this City and Province are held to be the moſt induſtrious Tradeſmen of the whole Kingdom, by reaſon of which here is found a good Trade, drove by Merchants of ſeveral Countries.

Buckor, there where the Rivers of *Rawey* and *Caul* fall into the *Indus*, and between *Multan* and *Tatta*; and *Tatta* where *Sinde* goes, between *Buckor* and the Sea: *Lourebander* and *Diul* ſerve for Ports to *Tatta*. *Lourebander*, there where the *Indus* begins to divide it ſelf into ſeveral Branches; *Diul* on the great Sea. Moreover *Din* and *Diul* are two different places, being diſtant 150 Leagues from each other. *Diu* in the Kingdom of *Guzurate* or *Cambay*, belongs to the *Portugals*: *Diul* in that of *Tatta*, is the Great *Mogolls*, who keeps there a Governour.

Hajacan. The Province of *HAJACAN*, Weſtwards of the *Indus*; of very ſmall account, having no places worthy of note.

Sorat. *SORET* is ſeated between the Kingdoms of *Tatta* on the Weſt, of *Guzurate* on the Eaſt. It hath for its chief City *Janagar*; the Province is but of little extent, but very fruitful, rich, and well Peopled.

Caſſimere, Bankiſh, Kakares, Naugracut. *CASSIMERE* or *QUERIMUR*, *BANKISH*, *KAKARES*, and *NAUGRACUT*, are between the River *Indus* and *Ganges*; all encompaſſed with the Mountains of *Bimber* towards the *Indus*, of *Naugracut* towards the *Ganges*, of *Caucaſus* towards *Tartaria*, of *Dalanguer* which croſſes them, and ſeparates the one from the other; and they, the Foreſts of theſe Mountains, which yielded ſo much Wood for the Veſſels which *Alexander* the Great cauſed to be builded, to deſcend the *Indus*. And theſe are at preſent thoſe Forreſts which give ſo much divertiſement of chaſe to the Great *Mogoll*. *Sizinaket*, or *Sirinakar*, though unwalled, is the chief City of *Caſſimere*; *Beiſhar* of *Bankiſh*; *Dankalar*, and *Purhola*, of *Kakares*; and *Naugracut* of *Naugracut*. In this laſt the Temple of the Idol *Marta* is paved, Wanſcotted, and Seiled with Plates of *Gold*: And in *Callamacka* there are Fountains very cold, and near to Rocks, from whence ſeem to flaſh out flames of fire.

Siba. The Province of *SIBA* hath for its chief City *Hardware*, which gives its riſe to the River *Ganges*; and *Serenegar* on the River *Manſa*.

Jamba. The Province of *JAMBA* gives name to its chief City.

Bakar. The Province of *BAKAR* lieth on the Weſt of the *Ganges*, and hath for its chief City, *Bikaner*.

Sambal. The Province of *SAMBAL* takes its name from its chief City ſo called.

This Province is likewiſe called *Doab*, that is, two Waters; its ſcituation being between the *Ganges* and *Semena*: which, together with the three Provinces laſt mentioned, are without, or on this ſide the *Ganges*, reaching almoſt from its Spring-head unto the River *Semena*, or *Gemeni*.

Gor. The Province of *GOR* takes its name from its chief City, and gives its riſe to the River *Perſelis*, which falls into the *Ganges*; the Province being very Mountainous.

Kanduana. The Province of *KANDUANA* hath for its chief City *Karakantaka*. This Province, and that of *Gor*, which is beyond the *Ganges*, doth end the Eſtates

ſtates of the *Mogoll* towards the North, meeting with the *Tartars* of *Turqueſtan*.

The Province of *MEVAT* is very barren, whoſe chief City is *Narval*, which ends it towards the People called *Maug*; and others which we eſteem to be in the *Peninſula* of *India*, which is in the *Ganges*. *Mevat.*

The Province of *UDESSA*, is the utmoſt of the *Mogolls* Territories towards the Eaſt, which is alſo within the *Ganges*; its chief place is *Jebanac*. *Udiſſa.*

The Province of *PITAN* is on the Weſt of *Jamba*, being very Mountainous, whoſe chief City gives name to the Province. The River *Randa* runs through the City and Province, and falls into the *Ganges*. *Pitan.*

The Province of *PATNA* is fruitful, whoſe chief City is ſo called, ſeated on the River *Perſely*; but we have a very feeble and incertain knowledge of all theſe Parts or Kingdoms; but thoſe which are towards the South, and particularly *Guzurate* or *Cambaya*, and *Bengala*, are better known. *Patan*

The Province of *GUSURATE*, by the *Portugueſe* called the Kingdom of *CAMBAYA*, hath more than 30 great Trading Cities, and is without doubt the nobleſt, greateſt, richeſt, and moſt powerful Province of all the *Mogolls* Country, yielding a yearly Revenue of 15 or 20 Millions of *Gold*; and its King hath brought into the Field 150000 Horſe, and 500000 Foot, 1000 Camels, &c. The Country likewiſe is eſteemed the moſt fertil of all *India*; producing all ſorts of *Grains*, *Fruits*, and *living Creatures*, quantity of *Drugs*, *Spices*, and *precious Stones*, not having any Mines of *Gold* or *Silver*, but three Plants which bring it an ineſtimable quantity; as well from the Gulph of *Perſia* and the *Red Sea*, as from all the Coaſts of *India* and *China*. Theſe Plants are *Cotton*, *Anniſeed*, and *Opium*: beſides which there are varieties of other rich Commodities, as *Oil*, *Sugar*, *Indico*, *Ambergreece*, *Soap*, *Comfits*, *Medicinal Drugs*, *Paper*, *Wax*, *Hony*, *Butter*, *Salt-Peter*, Manufactures of *Cotton*, *Linnen-Cloth*, *Carpets*, *Cabinets*, *Coffers*, *Caſes*, with a thouſand other curioſities, which its Inhabitants know how to make and ſell, being the ableſt Merchants of *India*. *Guzurate*, or *Cambaya*, exceeding rich and fertil. Its Commodities and Trade.

They are likewiſe of a good Spirit, and addicted to Letters; ſerve themſelves of all ſorts of Arms, yet know nothing of Nobility, but by abundance of Riches: They are all *Pagans* or *Mahometans*. The *Pagans* for the moſt part are *Pythagoreans*, holding the immortality of the Soul, and that it paſſes from one body to another: for which reaſon they ſo much honour Beaſts, that they eat them not, but keep Hoſpitals to receive ſuch as are ſick and lame. The *Cows* here are in ſuch eſteem with them, that a Merchant *Banian* (according to the report of *Texera*) ſpent 10 or 12 thouſand Ducats at a Nuptial, marrying his *Cow* with his Friends *Bull*. This Kingdom is in part *Peninſula*, between the Gulphs of the *Indies* and *Cambaya*, and in part on the Main, which ſtretches it ſelf towards *Decan*. This Province though of a large extent, yet hath above 120 Leagues of Sea-Coaſt, on which it hath ſeveral fair and rich Cities, and of a good Trade: As alſo great quantities of Inland Towns and Cities, the chiefeſt whereof are, *viz. Surat*, ſeated on the River *Tapta*, which falls into the Sea 12 miles below the City. It is a City no leſs great and rich, than populous and famous, and enjoyeth as great a Trade as any City in *India*; being much frequented by the *Engliſh* and *Dutch*, where they have their Preſidents and Factories, and where they have their Houſes for the negotiation of their affairs, which are ſpacious and well built. This City is built four ſquare, its Houſes flat, after the *Perſian* mode, and reaſonably beautiful, having the benefit of pleaſant Gardens: It hath ſeveral *Moſques*, but none deſerves commendation; it is defended by a ſtrong Caſtle, and hath a ſtrong Wall on all ſides, except on that which is ſeated on the River, and for its entrance hath three Gates: Its Port is ſix miles from the City, where the Ships are unladen, and the Commodities brought to the City by Land. The Inhabitants are either *Benjans*, *Bramans*, or *Mogolls*; but there are ſeveral other Nations which here reſide, as *Perſians*, *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Armenians*, *Jews*, &c. driving a Trade; but none comparable to the *Engliſh* or *Dutch*. Its other places of note are, 1. *Brodra*, ſeated on a ſandy Plain upon a ſmall Its Inhabitants Pythagoreans. Its extent by Sea. *Surat.* *Brodra.*

a ſmall River, well fortified with Walls and Forts, the Inhabitants being for the moſt part *Dyers*, *Weavers*, and other workers of *Cottons*, for which it is the chiefeſt place in the whole Province. The Governour of this City hath alſo under its Juriſdiction about 210 Towns and Villages. 2. *Barocke*, 12 Leagues from *Surat*, and 8 from the Sea, ſeated ſtrongly on a Mountain with Walls of *Free-ſtone*; it is well Peopled, moſt following *Dying*, *Weaving*, and making of *Cottons*, as they do at *Brodra*. About this City are very fertil Fields, which bring forth *Wheat*, *Barly*, *Rice*, and *Cotton*, in great abundance; and out of the Mountains they find the *Agats*. 3. *Cambaya*, ſeated on a River, and on a Sandy place, encompaſſed with a Wall of *Free-ſtone* about 10 Leagues in circuit; its Streets are ſtrait and broad, its Houſes fair and large, having 12 Gates for entrance, 3 large Market-places, and 4 ſtately Ciſterns, large enough to keep Water for the Inhabitants all the year long. They have alſo about this City 15 or 16 publick Gardens, for the recreation of the Inhabitants, being places of great pleaſure and delight. The Inhabitants are for the moſt part *Pagans*, *Benjans*, or *Rasboutes*. This City is at the bottom of its Gulph, and ſo famous, and of ſo great Traffick, that the Kingdom ſometimes bears its name, being frequented by moſt Nations, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* keep a Factory. 4. *Amadabad* is the Metropolis of *Guzurate*, being about 7 Leagues in compaſs; a place of good ſtrength, the Buildings are very ſtately and fair, eſpecially the *Moſques*, the *Governours* Houſe, and other publick Places; the Streets are large and many; is very populous, and of a great Trade, abounding in divers *Indian* Commodities. It is ſeated on a ſmall River, which falls into the *Indus* about 45 Leagues from *Surat*, and is by the *Engliſh* compared to *London*. Here the Merchants pay no Cuſtom; the Governour of this City is Vice-Roy of all *Guzurate*, being anſwerable for what he doth to none, but the Great *Mogoll*; he liveth in a greater ſtate than any King in *Europe*: his Court large and ſtately; his attendance great, not ſtirring abroad without great pomp and ſtate, as in his attendance of Nobles, and others, in his Guards of Horſe and Foot, in his *Elephants* with brave furniture, together with ſeveral playing on certain Inſtruments of Muſick. His Revenue is exceeding great, which by ſome is accounted to be about Ten Millions of *Gold* yearly: out of which he is at great expences, as in the maintaining the charge of the Kingdom, his own expences, and the keeping 12000 *Horſe* and 50 *Elephants*, for the *Mogolls* ſervice. In and about this City there are great quantities of pleaſant Gardens, plentifully ſtored with variety of *Fruit-trees*. 5. *Diu* is in an Iſland of the ſame name, and lieth about 20 Leagues from the River *Indus*, and not far diſtant from the main Land. It is now ſubject to the *Portugals*, who have ſtrongly fortified it. This City is well built, indifferent big, and hath a great and good Haven, being a place of great Trade, and having a concourſe of Merchants of divers Nations, by reaſon of which it brings a great profit to the King of *Portugal*, whoſe chief Commodities are *Cotton-Linnen* of ſundry ſorts, which we call *Callicoes*, *Cocos-Oil*, *Butter*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Sugar-Candy*, *Iron*; ſeveral ſorts of curious *Desks*, *Cheſts*, *Boxes*, *Standiſhes*, which they make of Wood neatly carved, guilded, and variouſly coloured, and wrought with *Mother of Pearl*; alſo excellent fair *Leather*, which is artificially wrought with *Silks* of all colours, both with *flowers* and *figures*, which is there (and elſewhere) uſed inſtead of *Carpets* and *Coverlids*. 6. *Biſantagan*, by reaſon of the fertility of the Country there adjacent, is of good repute, well peopled, having in it about 20000 Houſes. 7. *Cheytepour*, is ſeated on a ſmall River, the Inhabitants being *Benjans*, who by Profeſſion are *Weavers*, who make great quantities of *Cotton-Linnen*. Here are alſo ſeveral other Cities of leſs note, as *Naſſary*, *Gaudui*, and *Balſara*, which are under the juriſdiction of *Surat*, from which they are not far diſtant. 8. *Agra*, ſeated on the River *Gemini*, which falls into the *Ganges*; of a very large extent, and ſtrongly fortified with a Wall and a great Ditch. Its Houſes are fair, it Streets ſpacious; ſeveral being inhabited by thoſe of one Trade, each Trade having its Street alloted it. It hath a fair Market-place, and hath for the accommodation of Merchants and Forreigners about 80 *Caravanſeraes* or *Inns*, which

Barocht.

Cambaya.

Amadabad, the Metropolis of *Guzarett.*

The City of *Diu*, its Trade and Commodities.

Agra, a pleaſant City, and much frequented by the *Mogol.*

which are large Houſes, wherein are good Lodgings, and Ware-Houſes for their *Goods*. In this City there are about 70 great *Moſques* or *Churches*, beſides divers little ones; in the greateſt of which are ſeveral *Tombs* of their *Saints*. Here are alſo a great quantity of *Baths* or *Hot-Houſes*, which are much uſed amongſt them.

The Great *Mogoll* doth often change his dwelling; ſo that there is ſcarce any City of note, but what he hath abode in, and where he hath not *Palaces*, but there is none which hath his preſence ſo much as this, it being the moſt delightful of all others, where he hath a ſumptuous *Palace*, as alſo ſeveral *Gardens* and *Houſes* for his retirement without the City. His *Palace* is ſeated upon the River *Gemini*, and if ſome Authors may be credited, is about 2 Leagues in compaſs; it is very ſtrong, being encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall, and a great Ditch, or Moat, having at every *Gate* a *Draw-bridge* which are ſtrongly guarded. For the deſcription of this *Palace*, I muſt be beholding to *J. Albert de Mandelſlo*, in his Book of *Travels*, where he ſaith, That being entred in at the *Gate*, there is a ſpacious *Street* with *Shops*, which leads to the *Mogolls Palace*; to which there is ſeveral *Gates* which are called by ſeveral names. Under the *Gate* called *Ciſtery*, is the place of *Judicature*, to which is adjoyned a place where all *Ordinances* and other *Writs* are ſealed, and where the *Records* are kept: At the entrance of this *Gate* is the ſpacious *Street* aforeſaid. The *Gate* called *Achobarke Derwage* is a place of great reſpect with them, and it is the place that the *Singing* and *Dancing Women* are lodged at, who are kept for the diverſion of the great *Mogoll*, and his Family; theſe *Women* dance before him naked. There is another *Gate* which they call *Derſame* which leads to a *River*, to which he comes every morning to worſhip the *Sun* at his riſing: Near this place it is, that his *Nobles* and *Officers* about his Court, come every day to do their ſubmiſſion to him; to which place he comes every day, except *Fridays* (which is ſet apart for their Devotions, (as *Sunday* is with us) to ſee the fighting of *Lions*, *Elephants*, *Bulls*, and the like fierce *Beaſts*, which are here uſed for his recreation.) He ſpeaketh of another *Gate* which leadeth into the *Guard-Hall*, through which, at the farther end of a Paved *Court*, under a *Portal*, there is a row of *Silver Pillars*, where there is a continual Guard alſo kept to hinder all people, except great *Lords*, to enter any farther, it leading to the *Mogolls* Lodgings, which are exceeding rich and magnificent; but above all is his *Throne*, which is made of maſſie *Gold*, and inriched with *Diamonds*, *Pearls*, and other precious *Stones*: Above the place where this *Throne* ſtandeth, is a *Gallery* where he ſheweth himſelf everyday, and receiveth the complaints of thoſe who have received any injury; but they muſt be ſure to prove it, elſe he runs a great hazard of his life, to trouble him vainly. But in his inner Lodgings there is no perſon to enter, ſave the *Eunuchs*, who wait upon the *Ladies* in his *Seraglia*, which is about 1000. Among the ſeveral fair Structures which are within this great incloſure, there is one great *Tower*, rich without (being covered with *Gold*) but not to compare to the wealth within; in which, are 8 ſpacious Vaults, which are filled with *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Precious Stones* of an Ineſtimable value.

This City of *Agra* gives name to a Province or Kingdom which is of a fertile Soyl, and well peopled and frequented, and ows its beauty and enlargement to *Ekebar*, Emperor of the *Mogolls*. The *Palace* of the Great *Mogol*, as I ſaid before, is of 2 Leagues circuit; the other *Palaces* of *Princes* and *Lords*, which are alſo ſeated along the River, ſtretching towards the *North*, are all proudly built, but not of ſo large an extent; that of the Great *Mogolls* being the faireſt, richeſt, and moſt magnificent of all the *Eaſt*. On the other ſide is the City of *Secandra*, about 2 Leagues long, almoſt all inhabited by *Merchants*. *Fetipore*, that is, *Deſire accompliſhed*, 12 Leagues from *Agra*; and towards the *Weſt*, is likewiſe one of the works of *Ekebar*, who having obtained Children to ſucceed his Eſtates, cauſed this place to be built for pleaſure, with a very ſtately *Palace* and *Muſqueito* or *Temple*; but its ill Waters have cauſed it to be abandoned. *Biana* to the *Weſt* of *Fetipore*, hath the beſt Wood of all *India*. *Scanderbad* on the *Weſt* of *Bayana*, hath been the Reſidence of ſome *Kings*, and the *Caſtle* above it is very advantagiouſly ſcituated, where *Xa Selim* kept himſelf, till ſuch time as *Ekebar* had ſtreightly beſieged him, and forced him to retire into the Moun-

Province of *Agra*.

a ſmall River, well fortified with Walls and Forts, the Inhabitants being for the moſt part *Dyers*, *Weavers*, and other workers of *Cottons*, for which it is the chiefeſt place in the whole Province. The Governour of this City hath alſo under its Juriſdiction about 210 Towns and Villages. 2. *Barochе*, 12 Leagues from *Surat*, and 8 from the Sea, ſeated ſtrongly on a Mountain with Walls of *Free-ſtone*; it is well Peopled, moſt following *Dying*, *Weaving*, and making of *Cottons*, as they do at *Brodra*. About this City are very fertil Fields, which bring forth *Wheat*, *Barly*, *Rice*, and *Cotton*, in great abundance; and out of the Mountains they find the *Agats*. 3. *Cambaya*, ſeated on a River, and on a Sandy place, encompaſſed with a Wall of *Free-ſtone* about 10 Leagues in circuit; its Streets are ſtrait and broad, its Houſes fair and large, having 12 Gates for entrance, 3 large Market-places, and 4 ſtately Ciſterns, large enough to keep Water for the Inhabitants all the year long. They have alſo about this City 15 or 16 publick Gardens, for the recreation of the Inhabitants, being places of great pleaſure and delight. The Inhabitants are for the moſt part *Pagans*, *Benjans*, or *Rasboutes*. This City is at the bottom of its Gulph, and ſo famous, and of ſo great Traffick, that the Kingdom ſometimes bears its name, being frequented by moſt Nations, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* keep a Factory. 4. *Amadabad* is the Metropolis of *Guzurate*, being about 7 Leagues in compaſs; a place of good ſtrength, the Buildings are very ſtately and fair, eſpecially the *Moſques*, the *Governours* Houſe, and other publick Places; the Streets are large and many; is very populous, and of a great Trade, abounding in divers *Indian* Commodities. It is ſeated on a ſmall River, which falls into the *Indus* about 45 Leagues from *Surat*, and is by the *Engliſh* compared to *London*. Here the Merchants pay no Cuſtom; the Governour of this City is Vice-Roy of all *Guzurate*, being anſwerable for what he doth to none, but the Great *Mogoll*; he liveth in a greater ſtate than any King in *Europe*: his Court large and ſtately; his attendance great, not ſtirring abroad without great pomp and ſtate, as in his attendance of Nobles, and others, in his Guards of Horſe and Foot, in his *Elephants* with brave furniture, together with ſeveral playing on certain Inſtruments of Muſick. His Revenue is exceeding great, which by ſome is accounted to be about Ten Millions of *Gold* yearly: out of which he is at great expences, as in the maintaining the charge of the Kingdom, his own expences, and the keeping 12000 *Horſe* and 50 *Elephants*, for the *Mogolls* ſervice. In and about this City there are great quantities of pleaſant Gardens, plentifully ſtored with variety of *Fruit-trees*. 5. *Diu* is in an Iſland of the ſame name, and lieth about 20 Leagues from the River *Indus*, and not far diſtant from the main Land. It is now ſubject to the *Portugals*, who have ſtrongly fortified it. This City is well built, indifferent big, and hath a great and good Haven, being a place of great Trade, and having a concourſe of Merchants of divers Nations, by reaſon of which it brings a great profit to the King of *Portugal*, whoſe chief Commodities are *Cotton-Linnen* of ſundry ſorts, which we call *Callicoes*, *Cocos-Oil*, *Butter*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Sugar-Candy*, *Iron*; ſeveral ſorts of curious *Desks*, *Cheſts*, *Boxes*, *Standiſhes*, which they make of Wood neatly carved, guilded, and variouſly coloured, and wrought with *Mother of Pearl*; alſo excellent fair *Leather*, which is artificially wrought with *Silks* of all colours, both with *flowers* and *figures*, which is there (and elſewhere) uſed inſtead of *Carpets* and *Coverlids*. 6. *Biſantagan*, by reaſon of the fertility of the Country there adjacent, is of good repute, well peopled, having in it about 20000 Houſes. 7. *Cheytepour*, is ſeated on a ſmall River, the Inhabitants being *Benjans*, who by Profeſſion are *Weavers*, who make great quantities of *Cotton-Linnen*. Here are alſo ſeveral other Cities of leſs note, as *Naſſary*, *Gaudui*, and *Balſara*, which are under the juriſdiction of *Surat*, from which they are not far diſtant. 8. *Agra*, ſeated on the River *Gemini*, which falls into the *Ganges*; of a very large extent, and ſtrongly fortified with a Wall and a great Ditch. Its Houſes are fair, it Streets ſpacious; ſeveral being inhabited by thoſe of one Trade, each Trade having its Street alloted it. It hath a fair Market-place, and hath for the accommodation of Merchants and Forreigners about 80 *Caravanſeraes* or *Inns*, which

Barochе.

Cambaya.

Amadabad, the Metropolis of *Guzaratte.*

The City of *Diu*, its Trade and Commodities.

Agra, a pleaſant City, and much frequented by the *Mogol.*

which are large Houſes, wherein are good Lodgings, and Ware-Houſes for their *Goods*. In this City there are about 70 great *Moſques* or *Churches*, beſides divers little ones; in the greateſt of which are ſeveral *Tombs* of their *Saints*. Here are alſo a great quantity of *Baths* or *Hot-Houſes*, which are much uſed amongſt them.

The Great *Mogoll* doth often change his dwelling; ſo that there is ſcarce any City of note, but what he hath abode in, and where he hath not *Palaces*, but there is none which hath his preſence ſo much as this, it being the moſt delightful of all others, where he hath a ſumptuous *Palace*, as alſo ſeveral *Gardens* and *Houſes* for his retirement without the City. His *Palace* is ſeated upon the River *Gemini*, and if ſome Authors may be credited, is about 2 Leagues in compaſs; it is very ſtrong, being encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall, and a great Ditch, or Moat, having at every *Gate* a *Draw-bridge* which are ſtrongly guarded. For the deſcription of this *Palace*, I muſt be beholding to *J. Albert de Mandelſlo*, in his Book of *Travels*, where he ſaith, That being entred in at the *Gate*, there is a ſpacious *Street* with *Shops*, which leads to the *Mogolls Palace*; to which there is ſeveral *Gates* which are called by ſeveral names. Under the *Gate* called *Ciſtery*, is the place of *Judicature*, to which is adjoyned a place where all *Ordinances* and other *Writs* are ſealed, and where the *Records* are kept: At the entrance of this *Gate* is the ſpacious *Street* aforeſaid. The *Gate* called *Achobarke Derwage* is a place of great reſpect with them, and it is the place that the *Singing* and *Dancing Women* are lodged at, who are kept for the diverſion of the great *Mogoll*, and his Family; theſe *Women* dance before him naked. There is another *Gate* which they call *Derſame* which leads to a *River*, to which he comes every morning to worſhip the *Sun* at his riſing: Near this place it is, that his *Nobles* and *Officers* about his Court, come every day to do their ſubmiſſion to him; to which place he comes every day, except *Fridays* (which is ſet apart for their Devotions, (as *Sunday* is with us) to ſee the fighting of *Lions*, *Elephants*, *Bulls*, and the like fierce *Beaſts*, which are here uſed for his recreation.) He ſpeaketh of another *Gate* which leadeth into the *Guard-Hall*, through which, at the farther end of a Paved *Court*, under a *Portal*, there is a row of *Silver Pillars*, where there is a continual Guard alſo kept to hinder all people, except great *Lords*, to enter any farther, it leading to the *Mogolls* Lodgings, which are exceeding rich and magnificent; but above all is his *Throne*, which is made of maſſie *Gold*, and inriched with *Diamonds*, *Pearls*, and other precious *Stones*: Above the place where this *Throne* ſtandeth, is a *Gallery* where he ſheweth himſelf everyday, and receiveth the complaints of thoſe who have received any injury; but they muſt be ſure to prove it, elſe he runs a great hazard of his life, to trouble him vainly. But in his inner Lodgings there is no perſon to enter, ſave the *Eunuchs*, who wait upon the *Ladies* in his *Seraglia*, which is about 1000. Among the ſeveral fair Structures which are within this great incloſure, there is one great *Tower*, rich without (being covered with *Gold*) but not to compare to the wealth within; in which, are 8 ſpacious Vaults, which are filled with *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Precious Stones* of an Ineſtimable value.

This City of *Agra* gives name to a Province or Kingdom which is of a fertile Soyl, and well peopled and frequented, and ows its beauty and enlargement to *Ekebar*, Emperor of the *Mogolls*. The *Palace* of the Great *Mogol*, as I ſaid before is of 2 Leagues circuit; the other *Palaces* of *Princes* and *Lords*, which are alſo ſeated along the River, ſtretching towards the *North*, are all proudly built, but not of ſo large an extent; that of the Great *Mogolls* being the faireſt, richeſt, and moſt magnificent of all the *Eaſt*. On the other ſide is the City of *Secandra*, about 2 Leagues long, almoſt all inhabited by *Merchants*. *Fetipore*, that is, *Deſire accompliſhed*, 12 Leagues from *Agra*; and towards the *Weſt*, is likewiſe one of the works of *Ekebar*, who having obtained Children to ſucceed his Eſtates, cauſed this place to be built for pleaſure, with a very ſtately *Palace* and *Muſqueito* or *Temple*; but its ill Waters have cauſed it to be abandoned. *Biana* to the *Weſt* of *Fetipore*, hath the beſt Wood of all *India*. *Scanderbad* on the *Weſt* of *Bayana*, hath been the Reſidence of ſome *Kings*, and the *Caſtle* above it is very advantagiouſly ſcituated, where *Xa Selim* kept himſelf, till ſuch time as *Ekebar* had ſtreightly beſieged him, and forced him to retire into the Moun-

Province of *Agra*.

tains. The name of this place, and likewiſe this of *Secandra*, directly oppoſite to *Agra*, retain ſomething of the name of *Alexander*.

Province of *Labor.* The Province of *LAHOR* or *PENGAB*, is large, very fertile in all ſorts of *Fruits* and *Grains*, which makes it conſiderable, its chief City bears the name of the Province; and I believe this City to be the ſame with *Alexandria Bucephalus*, which *Alexander* the Great built, and named of his name and that of his Horſe *Bucephalus*. The Ancients place it by the River *Hydaſpes*, which may at preſent be *Bowey*. The City hath been ſo much enlarged by *Xa Selim*, that it contains 24 Leagues of circuit. It is very pleaſantly ſeated, eſpecially towards the River, on which it hath many delightful *Gardens*: Its *Fortreſs* is good, is adorned with many ſtately *Palaces* and great Houſes where their *Nobles* and perſons of quality reſide; among others, that of the *Kings*, which is (though ſeated within the City,) yet ſeparated from it with a high Wall, being magnificent, and adorned with great quantities of fair *Pictures*. Here is alſo by reaſon the *Inhabitants* are *Mahometans*, abundance of *Moſques* and *Bathing-places*, for their ordinary purifications, which is a ceremony much uſed amongſt them. Here it is by many thought, that *Noah* ſeated himſelf after his coming out of the *Ark*; and likewiſe, that from hence *Ophir* and *Havilah*, Sons of *Joktan*, removed towards the *Ganges* and *Malacca*. This Province is eſteemed one of the moſt pleaſant Countreys in all *India*, being ſo well ſhaded with *Mulberry* and other *Trees*, whoſe verdure is no leſs delightful to the eye of the beholder, then refreſhing to the wearied *Traveller*, under whoſe *Boughs* he may reſt, and ſhade himſelf from the ſhallure of the *Sun*. At *Fetipore*, not far from *Lahor*, the *Sultan Ganſron*, the Son of *Selim*, but a Rebel, was by his Father defeated; from whence the place had its name, which ſignifies *Deſire accompliſhed*: As the other *Fetipore* near *Agra* was built by *Ekebar*, after having obtained Children to ſucceed him in his Eſtates. This Countrey bears the name of *Peng-ab*, that is, five Waters, by reaſon it is watred with five different Rivers.

Province of *Delly.* The Province of *DELLY* gives name to its capital City, which is on the Road from *Lahor* to *Agra*; watred by the River *Gemini* or *Semena*. Before the *Mogolls* deſcended into all theſe quarters, the Kings of *India* made it their Reſidence, were here Crowned, and here had their *Tombs*: There are yet found ſome very fair *Obeliſques*, believed to have been erected in the time of *Alexander* the Great, and the *Greeks*.

Kingdom of *Bengala.* The Kingdom of *BENGALA* occupies all the lower part of the *Ganges*, and may be divided into three parts. *Prurop* on this ſide the *Ganges*, *Patan* beyond it. The particular name of *Bengala* may be given to that which lies between the Branches of the *Ganges*, and along the Coaſt. This Kingdom hath been divided into 12 Provinces, which have been ſo many Kingdoms, and which took their names from their principal Cities; but we have no certain knowledg either of their names, or ſituations. *Bengala* likewiſe is placed by ſome between the Branches of the *Ganges*, by others beyond it: Some eſteem *Chatigan* its chief City, when as others will have it to be *Goura* on the *Ganges*, higher in the Land, and more then 100 Leagues from the *Sea*. However it be, *Bengala* is of ſo great *Traffick*, and ſo rich, that the Kingdom and Gulf of *Ganges*, on which it is at preſent, is called the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. The City of *Chatigan* is pleaſantly ſeated on a fair and large River, whoſe imboſure is not far diſtant from that of the *Ganges*. This River hath ſo fierce a Current, that *Boats* and *Veſſels*, without the help of *Sails* or *Oars*, are driven in 24 hours about 100 Miles; ſo that thoſe who have no occaſion to paſs up and down this River, are forced to faſten their *Veſſels* to certain *Trees* or other things which are for the ſame purpoſe fixed along the ſhore. By which means they are ſheltered from the violence of the *Tides*, which elſe would ſpoyl them. Here are ſeveral other Cities, as *Ragmehel*, *Daca*, *Banara*, *Tanda*, *Patana*, *Holobaſſe* on the joyning of *Gemini* and *Ganges*, is one of the faireſt and greateſt Cities of *India*, and I eſteem it in the place of the Ancient *Palibothra*, where the ſtreams of the *Jomanes* and *Ganges* do meet, with other Citi es of leſs note.

This

This Kingdom of *Bengala* extends it ſelf 300 *Leagues* from *Eaſt* to *Weſt*, and ſometimes 200 from *North* to *South*, having no leſs then 150 *Leagues* of Coaſt, which is much frequented by *Merchants* of ſeveral Countries, which hither come for their *Commodities*, which by reaſon of the temperatneſs of the *Air*, and the fertility of the *Countrey* do here abound. The *Inhabitants* are courteous, but deceivers: Their *Kings* have been eſteemed as rich and as powerful as any in *India*. The extent of *Bengala*. Its Inhabitants.

Between the Kingdoms of *Cambaya* and *Bengala*, are thoſe of *Candis*, *Chitor*, *Malway*, *Berar*, *Gualeor*, *Narvar*, *Ranas* and *Berar*. *Brampore* is the chief City of *Candis*, ſeated on the River *Tapta*, which deſcends into the *Gulph* of *Cambaya*, below *Surat*. The City is great, but ill built, unhealthful, and a place which hath been unfortunate to many Children of the Great *Mogolls*. In the old City of *Mandow*, are the *Sepulchres* and *Remains* of the *Palace* of its Ancient *Kings*; the new City is better built, but leſs. Province of *Candis*.

The Province of *CHITOR*, with its City of the ſame name, is quite engaged in the Mountains, which meet in the way of *Amedebat* and *Cambaya* to *Agra*. The City was of 5 *Leagues* circuit, before *Ekebar* took it from *Raja Cana*, and ruined it. It hath now little more then the *Remains* of 100 and odd *Temples*, and of a great number of Buildings which have been ſtately and magnificent. The *Caſtle* was in a place ſo advantagious and ſtrong, that the *Kings* of *Delli* could never take it; and *Sultan Alandin* was conſtrained to raiſe the ſiege, after having been 12 years before it. Province of *Chitor*.

The Province of *MALWAY*, hath its Territory fruitful, and for its principal place *Rantipore*, others put *Ugen* or *Ougell*. Its chief Fortreſs is *Narvar*, whoſe City is near the Spring-head of a *River*, and at the Foot of Mountains of the ſame name, and which ſtretch themſelves from the Kingdom of *Guzurate*, unto that of *Agra* and *Narvar*; and in theſe Mountains abide ſome Princes which obey not the *Mogoll*. Province of *Malway*.

The Province of *GUALEOR* takes its name from its chief City, where there is one of the beſt *Cittadels* or *Fortreſſes* of the Eſtate, wherein the *Mogoll* confines ſuch as are Priſoners of *State*, and thoſe *Lords* of which he hath any jealouſie; and where he alſo keeps a great part of his Treaſure. Province of *Gualeor*.

The Province of *RANAS*, hath for its chief place *Gurchitto*, ſeated on a high Hill. Province of *Ranas*.

The Province of *NARVAR*, hath for its chief City *Gehud*, ſeated on a *River* which falls into the *Ganges*, and touches on the Mountains of *Narvar*. Province of *Narvar*.

The Province of *BERAR*, hath for its capital place *Shapor*, which reaches Southward, and touches that of *Guzurate*, and the Mountain of *Rana*. Province of *Berar*.

In the midſt of all the *Mogolls* Eſtates, are the provinces of *JENUPAR*, *HENDOWNES*, *JESSELMERE* and *BANDO*. The Province of *Jemupar*, takes its name from its chief City. *Hendowns* of *Hendowns*, which is towards the *Indies*. *Jeſſelmere*, whoſe chief City is ſo called, in whoſe *Caſtle Ammer* in 1548. *Zimlebege*, Wife of *Hymayon*, flying into *Perſia* Lay in of *Ekebar*, who reſtored the *Mogolls*, and made their Eſtates ſo great and powerful in the *Indies*. And laſtly, the Province of *Bando*, whoſe chief City bears the ſame name, is between the Cities of *Jeſſelmere*, *Delli* and *Agra*, at 70 or 80 *Leagues* from the one and the other, beſides its City of the ſame name. *Aſmere* is famous for the *Sepulchre* of *Hogimondee*, a *Mahumetan*, whom the *Mogolls* eſteem a *Saint*, and there where *Ekebar* made his devotions, to the end he might obtain a Son to ſucceed in his Eſtate; and afterwards cauſed to be ſet up at every *Leagues* end, a Pillar of Stone, and ſeveral Lodgings to be built on the way, to receive *Paſſengers* and *Pilgrims*. Several other Provinces.

Theſe are the Provinces or Kingdoms which the Great *Mogoll* poſſeſſes; whoſe *Empire* ſtretches from *South* to *North* 500 *Leagues*, and from *Weſt* to *Eaſt* 6 or 700, is bounded either with Mountains or the Sea. Its Neighbours are the *Usbeck*, the *Caſcar*, the *Thibet*, and the *Turqueſtan*, parts of *Tartary* towards the *North*; the People of *Maug*, and others which have been of *Pegu*, towards the *Eaſt*; the *Perſians* towards the *Weſt*; and the Kingdom of *Decan* and *Golconda* towards the *South*. The *Indian Ocean*, where are the *Gulfs* The extent bounds, &c. of the Great *Mogolls* Countrey

of *Indus* and *Cambaya* on one ſide, and that of *Bengala* on the other ſide, waſh the reſt.

The *Tartars* & *Perſians*, very troubleſome to the *Mogol*.

Of all his Neighbors, the *Tartars* and *Perſians* are the moſt powerful: The *Tartars*, nevertheleſs, being divided into many Eſtates, where they border on him, are more likely to damage him by Inroads, then by open War. The *Perſian* regained from him *Candahar*, ſome years paſt: which he loſt not again, till he had at the ſame time to deal with the *Mogolls*, and *Turks*. The others have much ado to defend themſelves againſt him; as the Kings of *Golconda* and *Decan*; this laſt having loſt ſome part of his Eſtates, and the other giving him ſome preſent in the way of Tribute.

But the great *Mogoll* would make nothing to ſeiſe both theſe *Kingdoms*, if he were not often perplexed with inteſtine War; and if there remained not in his Eſtates divers *Princes*, which they call *Rahias* or *Kings*; and many people of whom he cannot abſolutely diſpoſe, neither the one nor the other obeying him, or paying any Tribute to him, but by conſtraint; and the greateſt part paying it only when and how they pleaſe, and ſometimes not at all. Amongſt theſe

Petty Kings & people under the *Mogoll*.

little Kings and People are the *Rahia Boſſou*, who reſides at *Temery*, 50 Leagues from *Lahor*. The *Rahia Tulluck Chan*, who reſides at *Naugracut* 80 Leagues from *Lahor*. The *Rahia Decomperga* is 150 Leagues from *Agra*, reſiding at *Calſery*; the *Rahia Manſa* is 200 Leagues from *Agra*, reſiding at *Serinigar*. The *Rahia Rodorou* is beyond the *Ganges*, reſiding at *Camayo*. The *Muggi* likewiſe beyond the *Ganges* to the *South* of *Rahia Rodorou*, is very powerful as well as the two laſt; between the *Armes* of the *Ganges*, is a Prince of the ancient family of the Kings of *Delli*, who likewiſe maintains himſelf. Above *Caſſimere* the *Rahia Tibbon* acknowledges neither *Mogoll*, nor *Tartar*; deſcending often, and making incurſions both on the one and the other. The People called *Balloches* or *Bulloques*, do unpuniſhed live like Vagabonds in the *Province* of *Haiacan*; likewiſe the *Aguvanes*, and the *Patanes* in *Candahar*, likewiſe the *Quilles* or *Colles*, and the *Reſbutes* in the *Mountains* between *Cambaya* and *Decan*, and ſometimes the *Colles* of *Decan*, the *Rebuſtes* of *Cambaya*, and the *Patanes* of *Candahar* have raiſed Tribute.

Theſe *Kings* and *People* are almoſt all *Pagans*, deſcending from divers *Kings* and *People* which poſſeſſed divers parts of the *Indies* before the *Mogolls*. There is one *Rahia* of the *Colles* above *Amadebat*; another the *Rahia Partaſpha* near *Breampure*, who hath ſome time taken and pillaged *Cambaya*. The *Rahia Rana* reſides at *Gorchitto*; and after having well defended himſelf againſt the ancient Kings of *India*, yields now ſome Tribute to the *Mogoll*.

Mogol very potent.

Yet is the Great *Mogoll* one of the greateſt, and moſt powerful *Princes* of *Aſia*; he can bring into the field 200000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, and 2 or 3000 *Elephants*; he gives penſions to the greateſt part of the *Princes*, *Lords*, *Nobles* and *Gentry* of the Country, on condition that they keep for his ſervice, ſome 1, ſome 2, 3, 4, 5, ſome 10, ſome 100, ſome 1000 and upwards of Horſes, which are to be always in readineſs; his Armies nevertheleſs conſiſt for the moſt part of 100000 Horſe, and 200000 Foot; and this beſides his ordinary Garriſons. His Subjects are ſtrong and robuſtious, uſe all ſorts of *Armes*, go freely to all occaſions, wanting nothing but Order and Policy. They have no conſiderable Forces at *Sea*, ſince the *Portugalls* hold from them in the Kingdom of *Cambaya*, the City and Fortreſs of *Diu*, *Daman*, *Baſaim* of the Iſle of *Saltette* near *Benſaim*, the Fort of *Manora*, and the Rock of *Aſſerim*.

The Country ſtored with Cattle, Fowle, and Fiſh.

The whole Country is ſtored with ſeveral ſorts of tame and wild Creatures, as *Buffes*, *Oxen*, *Cowes*, *Sheep*, *Deer*, *Wild-Aſſes*, *Bores*, *Hares*, &c. Variety of *Fowl* and *Fiſh*; here are alſo found *Crocodiles*, ſome of which are 30 foot long; *Cormorants*, and *Bats* as big as *Crows*.

The *Mogols* guard.

The great *Mogolls* ordinary Guard conſiſts of about 12000 men, beſides 600 of his life guard; he never ſtirs abroad to hunt, take the Air or the like, without the attendance of about 10000 men of all degrees; beſides to make his ſtate the greater, there are 100 *Elephants* richly trapt, and covered with *Scarlet*, *Velvet*, or the like; on theſe *Elephants* there are ſeated two men, the one to guide him, and the other which ſupports a large *Banner* of *Silk*, richly embroydered

broydered with *Gold* and *Silver*; but on ſome of the *Elephants* which go foremoſt, inſtead of carrying *Banners*, they play upon *Simbretts*, and other ſuch like *Inſtruments*; after theſe 100 *Elephants*, comes the *Mogoll*, either mounted on an excellent *Perſian* Horſe, or elſe in a *Coach*, or *Sedan*, attended by his *Nobles* and other *Courtiers*, after whom come about 500 *Elephants*, *Camels*, and *Wagons* which are to carry the *Baggage*; for commonly he encamps in the *Field*, in which he takes great delight by reaſon of the coolneſs, as alſo by reaſon few Cities are able to give entertainment to ſo great a retinue; and beſides his going thus to hunt or take the Air, he often changes the place of his abode according to the ſeaſons of the year. The *Mogoll* celebrates with great pomp and ſtate the firſt day of the year. They have ſeveral *Feſtival daies* which they keep in great triumph, wherein they have ſeveral divertiſements of ſports and recreations, and eſpecially the birth day of the *Mogoll*. The language which the Great *Mogoll*, and moſt people of quality ſpeak, is the *Perſian* tongue. The Inhabitants are very expert at the bow. The diſeaſes which are common amongſt them, are *Fevers*, and the *Bloody Flux*. Their Horſes are not good, but their *Oxen* are excellent, being here uſed inſtead of *Horſes*, which are very mettleſome. As in this great extent of ground (which we call the *Mogolls* Country) there are ſeveral ſorts of People, ſo likewiſe are there divers ſorts of *Religions*, ſome of which I ſhall ſpeak a word or two of.

His State and great attendance.

The *Benjans* are *Pagans*, they uſe neither *Circumciſion* nor *Baptiſme*; they believe there is a God who created them, and made the Univerſe; but they worſhip the *Devil*, believing that God created him to govern the world, and do miſchief to mankind, to which end in all their *Moſques* they have the figure of him in Statues of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ebony*, *Ivory*, *Marble*, *Stone* and *Wood*; this figure in ſhape is ugly and horrid to look on; it is placed on a Table of Stone, which ſerves for an *Altar*, and receives the Offerings which are made to the *Pagode*; on the right ſide of this Table is placed a Trough, in which thoſe who intend to do their devotions waſh and Purifie themſelves; and on the other ſide there is a Cheſt in which is put their Offerings, nigh to which in the wall is a Veſſel, out of which the *Braman* or *Prieſt* takes out a kind of yellow ſtuff, with which he marks the foreheads of them; this *Braman* ſits at the foot of the *Altar*, from whence he riſeth often to ſay Prayers. In their *Moſques* they always burn Lamps, and about the Walls of them are abundance of Figures, as *Beaſts*, *Devils*, &c. which they adore. They much uſe as a part of their Religion corporal purification, bathing themſelves every day. They are very ingenious, ſubtil, and civil, there being no trade but what they apply themſelves unto, and are very expert in the adulteration of all *Commodities*. They are civil in their *Apparel*, but their *Children* go naked untill the age of 5 or 6 years, and at 7, 8, 9 or 10 years of age they marry them, ſeldom ſtaying untill the age of 12, eſpecially the female ſex, as thinking it a great ſhame to live ſo long unmarried; and in their marriages they obſerve ſeveral ceremonies. The Men are not only permitted to marry twice, or thrice in caſe of mortality, but alſo if their Wives prove barren; but the firſt hath a preeminence as being mother of the Family; their Sons are Heirs to their Fathers Eſtates, but withall they muſt maintain the Mother, and take to Wife their Siſters.

The *Bramans* or *Prieſts* are of great authority, and highly reſpected amongſt them, inſomuch that the *Benjans* will hardly engage themſelves in any matter of concernment, without the advice and approbation of them. Theſe *Prieſts* beſides their expounding the myſteries of their Religion according to their fancies (which ſoon take impreſſion in the minds of theſe ſuperſtitious people) have an overſight of Schools where Children have their education. When the men are to go a journy they deſire the *Braman* to have a care of their Wives, untill they return, and to ſupply their places; another cuſtom they have, that when any are married, the Bride is brought to the *Braman*, and he is earneſtly requeſted to enjoy the firſt fruits of her, without which they think the marriage is not bleſt, and for ſo doing he hath gifts preſented him according to the qualities of the perſons.

The *Benjans* believe the tranſmigration and immortality of the Soul, thinking that

that the Soul of a good man is departed into the body of a *Chicken* or a *Pigeon*; that of a wicked or cruel man into a *Lion*, *Tiger* or *Crocodile*, that of a glutton into a *Swine*, that of a crafty man into a *Fox*, &c. for which reason they neither eat nor kill any thing that hath life; nay they are so far from destroying them, that on the contrary they will purchase them of the *Mahometans*, and set them at liberty, and for those that be lame, or sick, they have Hospitals for them as in *Persia*.

J. Albert de Mandelslo, in his Book of Travels saith, that the *Benjans* are divided among themselves, into 83 principal Sects, besides an infinite number of others; those of most note as comprehending all the others, are those of *Samarath*, *Ceurawath*, *Bisnow* and *Goeghy*.

The *Parsis* and their Religion.

Besides the *Benjans* there is another sort of *Pagans* whom they call the *Parsis*, who for the most part reside by the Sea-coast, addicting themselves to *Trades* and *Commerce*; they believe that there is one God, preserver of the Universe, who acts alone and immediately in all things; but he hath as they fancy about 30 several Servants, to whom he giveth an absolute power over the things which he hath entrusted them with, but withall they are obliged to give an account unto him; and for these Servants they have a great veneration, who have each their particular charge, as one having the Government of the *Earth*, another of *Fruits*, another of *Beasts*, another of Military affairs: Others who have influences on men, some giving understanding, others wealth, &c. Another who takes the possession of the *Souls* departed; which conducts them to the *Judges* where they are examined, and according to their good or evil deeds, receive their *Sentence*, and are carried by the good or bad *Angels*, who attend the *Judges* to *Paradise* or *Hell*, where they think they shall abide until the end of the world, which will be 1000 years; after which time, they shall enter into other Bodies, and lead a better life then they did before. Another hath the goverment of *Waters*, another of *Metals*, another of *Fire*; which they hold *Sacred*, &c

They have no *Mosques* or publick places for their *Devotion*; they have a very great esteem of their *Teachers* and *Doctors*, allowing them a plentiful Estate. Their Widows are suffered to marry a second time. *Adultery* and *Fornication* they severely punish. They are forbidden the eating of any thing that hath life. *Drunkenness* they likewise strictly punish. These People are much given to *Avarice*, and circumventing those they deal withal. The *Mahomitans* or *Mogolls* that here inhabit are of a good stature, have their Hair black and flaggy, but are of a clearer Complexion then the other sort of People aforementioned. They habit themselves something like the *Persians*; their *Garments* about their *Waists*, are close to their *Bodies*, but downwards wide; they use *Girdles* and their *Shoos* and the Covering of their *Head*, is much the same with those of the *Turks*. And they are likewise distinguished by their *Clothes*, which according to the degree and quality, and the person, doth exceed in richness. They are very civil, ingenious, and reserved, yet are expensive in their *Apparel*, *Feastings*, and great lovers of *Women*. And so much for the *Mogolls* Countrey.

Their habit & behaviour.

The Peninsula of INDIA *without the Ganges.*

Its bounds.

THe *Peninsula* without the *Ganges*, is between the Mouths of *Indus* and *Ganges*, and advances from the *East* of the Great *Mogoll*, unto the eighth degree of *Latitude*, on this side the *Æquator*. The *Ocean* or *Indian Sea* washes it on three sides; to wit, the *Gulf* of *Bengala*, once *Gangeticus Sinus*, on the *East*; the *Gulph* of *Cambaya*, anciently *Barigazenus Sinus*, and the *Sea* which regards *Arabia*, on the *West*; towards the *South*, that which regards *Cylan* on one side, and the *Maldives* on the other.

We

We will divide this *Peninſula* into four principal parts, which ſhall be *Decan*, *Golconda*, *Narſingue* or *Biſnagar*, and *Malabar*. The three firſt, and the greateſt, have each their King; or if there be more, they depend and hold of one alone: The fourth and laſt part, hath likewiſe formerly been a *Kingdom* alone; at preſent is many, but which hold one of another. Its parts.

DECAN.

THe Kingdom of *DECAN* is waſhed on the *Weſt*, by the *Indian Ocean*, the *Gulf* of *Cambaya*. It is divided into three others, which they call *Decan*, *Cunkan* and *Balaguate*; the two firſt on the Coaſt. *Balaguate* is Eaſtward of the other two up in the Land, and compoſed of *Vallies* which are below, and between the *Mountains* of *Gate*; beyond which, are the Kingdoms of *Golconda* and *Narſingue* or *Biſnagar*. Kingdom of *Decan*.

In the particular *Decan*, are the Cities of *Amedanagar*, *Chaul*, *Dabul*, &c. In *Cunkan* are the Cities of *Viſapor*, *Soliapor*, *Goa*, *Paranda*, *Pagode*, &c. Likewiſe in *Balaguate*, *Liſpor*, *Beder*, *Doltabad*, *Hamedanager*, *Viſapor* and *Beder*, are the principal Cities, and thoſe where the *Dealcan* or *Idalcan* makes his reſidence; but none more conſiderable then *Goa*, though they are fair, well built, large, and populous. Its chief places

Goa is a City as fair, rich, and of as great Traffick as any in the Eaſt; being ſituated in an Iſland of the ſame name, which the Rivers of *Mandova* and *Guari* make at their falling into the *Sea*. *Alphonſo Albuquerque* took it in the year 1510. and ſince the *Portugals* have eſtabliſhed themſelves ſo powerfully, that their *Vice-Roy*, a *Biſhop*, and their *Council* for the *Eaſt-Indies* have here their Reſidence. The *Commodities* found in this City (being the Staple of the Commodities of this part of the *Indies*, as alſo of *Perſia*, *Arabia*, *China*, *Armenia*, &c.) are *Precious Stones*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Pearls*, *Silk* raw and wrought, *Cotton*, of which they make ſeveral *Manufactures*; alſo *Spices*, *Druggs*, *Fruits*, *Corn*, *Iron*, *Steel*, with divers others which the ſaid Countreys afford, but the *Natural Commodities* of *Goa* are not conſiderable. Beſides their great Traffick with ſeveral Nations, their *Riches* and *Policy* which they obſerve, *Vincent Blanc* makes account that its *Hoſpital* is the faireſt, the beſt accommodated and ſerved, and the richeſt of any, making it exceed that of the *Holy Spirit* at *Rome*, and the *Infermerica* at *Malta*, which are the beſt of all *Chriſtendom*. Their *Streets* large, their *Houſes* fair, eſpecially their *Palaces* and *Publick Buildings* which are very magnificent: Their *Churches* are ſtately and richly adorned; their *Windows* are beautified with *Mother* of *Pearl*, and *Shells* of *Tortoiſes* of divers colours; which are ingeniouſly cut in neat Works. This City is in compaſs above 15 miles, and though it is without *Gates* or *Walls*, yet by reaſon of its *Caſtle*, *Forts*, and the ſtrength it receiveth from the Iſland, is a place of great ſtrength and force: It hath a great and good *Haven*, which they make their *Harbor* for their *Indian Fleet*, by which they command the *Seas* there abouts. The *Portugals* here live in all manner of delight and pleaſure; and with a pride and preſumption ſo great, that the leaſt and moſt beggerly among them, take to themſelves the titles of Gentlemen of the Houſe and Chamber of the *King*, *Kngihts*, *Eſquires*, &c. being very highly conceited of themſelves, and exceeding proud and ſtately, but withal very civil and courteous; no perſon of quality walks the *Streets* a-foot, but are carried by their *Slaves* in a *Palanquin*, or ride on *Horſes*, and the Women ſeldom go abroad publickly. Both Sexes are extreamly given to *Venery*, by reaſon of which, the *Pox* is very frequent among them, of which abundance dies: Their Women have an exceſſive love to white Men, and will uſe their uttermoſt endeavours to enjoy them. The Men are ſo jealous of their Wives, that they will ſcarce ſuffer their neareſt *Relations* to ſee them, by reaſon they are ſo much deſirous of the enjoyment of Men, and they ſo much of them. Its riches beauty, &c. Its ſtrength.

In their *Apparel*, as alſo in the furniture of their *Houſes*, they are very coſtly. The Women are here delivered without pain, and not having the uſe

of

of a *Midwife*, or any one but her ſelf; and no ſooner is ſhe delivered, but ſhe is about her occaſions, not obſerving the cuſtom among us, in keeping their Chamber a month together. Moſt of them live to the age of 100 years, and that in perfect health; but theſe are not the *Portugals*, but are the Natives which are *Pagans* and *Benjans*. To this City do reſort *Merchants* from *Arabia*, *Perſia*, *Armenia*, *Cambaya*, *Bengala*, *Siam*, *Pegu*, *China*, *Java*, *Malacca*, and from ſeveral other Countries, it being the *Staple* of all *Indian Commodities*. In the heart of the City, is a Street, where every morning, from ſeven to nine, not only the *Merchants* meet for the vending and buying of *Commodities*, which are here ſet forth for ſale, like our *Fairs*; but alſo the *Gentry* of the City meet, as well to hear news, as to ſatisfie their fancies in the ſight of the *Commodities*: And beſides this *Street*, every *Trade* hath its particular *Street*, one *Trade* not intermixing with another.

Beſides *Goa*, the Land of the *Bardes*, the Iſles of *Salſette*, of *Coran*, of *Divar*, and ſome other Lands about *Goa*, are the *Portugals*: As likewiſe, the City of *Chaul*, on the Coaſt, where they have a great *Trade* of *Silk*; and from theſe places they have their proviſion brought them, and that at very eaſie rates; for the Iſland of it ſelf is ſo barren, that it will ſcarce produce any thing.

Decan taken altogether, hath one King alone, which they call *Idolcan* or *Dialcan*. The Great *Mogoll* hath taken from him ſome places in the particular *Decan*, and the *Portugals Goa*, *Chaul*, and ſome other places on the Coaſt. This Prince is yet powerful, at leaſt in regard of the *Indians*: He hath taken *Dabul* from the *Portugals*, and ruined it. He once beſieged *Chaul*, and divers times *Goa*, leading in his Armies near 200000 men. In fine, he made Peace with the *Portugals*; the *Vice-Roy* of the *Eaſt-Indies* for the Crown of *Portugal*, having always an *Ambaſſador* at the *Idolcans* Court, and the *Idolcan* having one at *Goa* with the *Vice-Roy*. And though this Prince is ſo powerful in men, and ſo well provided with *Ammunition*, and his *Artillery* greater and better then any Prince about him, yet is he become Tributary to the Great *Mogoll*.

Its Commodities. All the Country is good, fruitful, watered with ſeveral Rivers, hath ſtore of precious *Stones*, of *Cotton* and *Silk*, of which they make divers *Manufactures*; of *Pepper*, of *Fruits* and other *Commodities*.

The Inhabitants or Natives of the Country are *Pagans*, and for the moſt part *Benjans*, but eat any kind of *Fleſh*, except that of an *Ox*, *Cow*, *Buffe*, *Swine* or *Wild-Bore*. A *Swine* they abhor, but have a great veneration for a *Cow* or an *Ox*. But as to the manner of their life, as in their *Marrriages*, *Interments*, *Purifications*, and other *Ceremonies* in their *Religion*; as alſo in their *Habits* and *Houſes*, which are very mean, their *Houſes* being made of *Straw*, and withal, ſmall and low; having no light but what enters in at the door, which is not ſo high as a mans Waiſt: In which, their chiefeſt furniture and houſhold-ſtuffs, are *Mats* to lie upon in the night, on which they alſo eat their *Meat*; their *Diſhes*, *Drinking-cups*, &c. are made of *Fig-leaves*, which they daub and plaiſter together. In theſe, and the like *Ceremonies* and *Cuſtoms*, they imitate the *Benjans* aforementioned, The reſt of the people which here inhabit, are *Mahometans* and *Jews*, which here enjoy the freedom of their *Religion*, but the Subjects of the King of *Portugal* are *Catholicks*, thoſe of the *Engliſh Proteſtants*.

GOLCONDA.

THe name of *GOLCONDA* hath been known but for few years; nevertheleſs this is a powerful and rich Kingdom; but which hath been confounded with the name of *Orixa*. It is upon the Gulph of *Bengala*, which it regards towards the Eaſt and South, neighbouring on the *Mogolls* and the Kingdom of *Bengala*, towards the North. It ſtretches 200 Leagues on the Coaſt in length, and near 100 up in the Land in breadth. It yields 20 Millions of yearly Revenue, is very well peopled, and its People addicted to all ſorts of Manufactures. They make *Cotton Pintado's* ſo artificially, and with ſuch lively colours, that it is eſteemed better than *Silk*. They build great Ships, trade to *Mecca*, *Aquem*, *Bengala*, *Pegu*, and throughout all the *Indies*. The Kingdom of *Golconda*; its bounds and extent.

There are in this Eſtate 66 *Caſtles* and *Fortreſſes*, where the ordinary Garriſons are kept; and theſe *Caſtles* are on inacceſſible Rocks, which they call *Conda*. *Golconda*, which the *Perſians* call *Hidrabrand*, is the chief and reſidence of the King; it is diſtant from the Port of *Muſulipatan* about 60 Leagues, which is a fair City ſeated on an Arm of the Sea; adjoyning to the Kingdom of *Biſnagar*, and not far from *Cape Guadavari*. Hath its Air pleaſant, its Soil fruitful, of about 5 or 6 Leagues circuit; nor doth its King yield much to the Great *Mogoll* in Riches, *precious Stones*, in ſtore of *Elephants*, or all ſorts of magnificence. But his Eſtates being much leſs, and his People leſs warlike, conſtraineth him to ſend him every year 400000 *Pagodes* in form of Tribute. Its chief places or Fortreſſes.

This Country moreover hath no Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, or *Copper*, ſome it hath of *Iron* and *Steel*, but many of *Diamonds* and other *precious Stones*, ſo rich and abundant, that in 1622 the King cauſed it to be ſhut up, and the labour to ceaſe, fearing leſt the too great quantity ſhould make them neglected. Others ſay, for fear it ſhould draw the Great *Mogoll* into his Eſtates. The Country rich in Diamonds and Precious Stones.

Condapoli; its chief *Fortreſs* is ſo great, that in circumference it contains ſix others; and theſe ſix are one above the other, each having *Wood*, *Fruits*, and *Land* ſufficient to maintain the Garriſons deſtined for their defence, which amount to 12000 Men. *Candavara* is another *Fortreſs*, 15 or 16 Leagues from *Condapoli*; and thence at certain intervals there are *Towers*, on which with certain Lights they give ſignal of all that paſſes in the Country. On the Sea-Coaſt or Gulph of *Bengala*, are ſeated ſeveral Towns, ſome of which are well known by Merchants; as *Guadavari*, which gives name to a Cape, on which it is ſeated, *Vixapatan*, *Narſingapatan*, *Pulacate*, *Palhor*, *Manicapatan*, *Calecote*, *Caregara*; on the Cape *Segogora*, or *Das Palmas*, *Polarin*, *Contiripatan*, and others. The *Portugals* have a *Fortreſs* at *Maſulipatan*, which is one of the beſt Ports of the Country; the City is not walled, and belongs to the Prince.

The Air is every where healthful, the Soil fertil, producing twice or thrice a year *Grains*, *Fruits*, *&c.* almoſt all different from ours. Their Seaſons are diſtinguiſhed in three manners; they have very great heats in *March*, *April*, *May*, and *June*; and that is their Summer. Much Rain in *July*, *Auguſt*, *September*, and *October*; and that is their Autumn. Freſh Weather, or little heat in *November*, *December*, *January*, and *February*, which is their Spring: For Winter they have none. One of their principal Revenues comes from *Salt*, which alone yields 1800000 *Pagodes*, or ſo many Crowns. Their other Revenues are drawn from ſeveral Commodities; amongſt the reſt *Diamonds*, of which all above 5 *Carats* belong to the Prince; nor dare any keep them on pain of death. The Air and fertility of the Country.

BISNAGAR, or NARSINGUE.

The Eſtates of Biſnagar, and its Parts.

SOuth of *Decan* and *Golconda* are the Eſtates of *BISNAGAR* otherwiſe *NARSINGUE*; theſe two places being the principal ones of the Realm. *Narſingue*, not far from the Port of *Paleacate*, about the midſt of the Coaſt of *Choromandel*: *Biſnagar*, towards the Mountains of *Gate*, and near *Canara*. The whole Eſtate is divided into three principal quarters, and theſe 3 quarters into 7 Kingdoms, and extends it ſelf on two different parts of the *Indian* Sea, on the Gulph of *Ganges* or *Bengala*, towards the Eaſt; and on the Gulph of *Indus* or *Cambaya*, towards the Weſt. On this ſide, the Coaſt is 65 Leagues long; in the other 250.

The three principal quarters are called *CANARA*, *BISNAGAR*, and *CHOROMANDEL*. *Canara* occupies all the Weſtern Coaſt, between the Eſtates of *Decan* and *Malabar*; *Biſnagar* and *Choromandel* hold all the Eaſtern Coaſt: the laſt towards the Coaſt of the *Peſchery*, and Iſle of *Ceylan*; and the firſt towards *Golconda*. *Canara* hath the Kingdoms of *Onor* and *Baticala* on the Sea, and that of *Borſopa* farther in the Land, which ſtretches to the Mountains of *Gate*. *Biſnagar* hath the Kingdoms of *Tienlique* and *Biſnagar*; *Choromandel*, thoſe of *Choromandel* and *Tamul*.

The chief Cities and Fortreſſes.

Onor, *Baticala*, and *Gorcopa*, are the capital Cities each of their Kingdoms; the two firſt to one, the laſt ſubject to a particular King; but all Tributaries to *Biſnagar*. Thoſe four on the Eaſt and Gulph of *Bengala*, are immediately ſubject to the King of *Biſnagar*, except that the *Portugals* hold *Maliapur* and *Negapatan*. But moreover the Eſtates of the *Naicques*, of *Tanjaor*, of *Gingi*, and of *Madure*, are eſteemed to be of *Biſnagar*, becauſe they make part of it, and are likewiſe at preſent Vaſſals and Tributaries of the King of *Biſnagar*. Formerly theſe *Naicques* were only Governours of the Quarters they at preſent poſſeſſe, theſe Governours revolting, and each ſeiſing his Government. The Kings of *Biſnagar* having long made War upon them, to reduce them to their duty: They in the end remained *Naicques*, that is, *Hereditary Lords*, and abſolute over thoſe Quarters, paying ſome Tribute to the Kings of *Biſnagar*.

The City of *Gingi* is eſteemed one of the greateſt and faireſt of *India*, in the midſt of which is a Fortreſs, and in that Fortreſs a Rock almoſt inacceſſible; they give likewiſe to this *Naicque* the City of *Cindambaram*, after it *Chiſtapatama*; and on the Coaſt of *Choromandel*, *Coloran*, the Princes of *Trinidi* and *Salavarca*, are ſubject to him.

The *Naicque* of *Tanjaor* hath his Eſtate between thoſe of *Gingi* and *Madure*, and near the Port of *Negapatan*, which belongs to the *Portugals*. Beſides *Tanjaor* and *Caſtan* in the Upland, the Cities of *Triminapatan*, of *Trangabar*, and of *Triminavez*, belong unto him.

The *Naicque* of *Madure*, beſides *Madure* his capital City and a very fair one, holds almoſt all the Coaſt of the *Peſcheria*, and the little Iſle of *Manar* near *Ceylan*. This Coaſt extends from the Cape of *Comori* unto the Cape of *Negapatan*, viewing in the Ocean the not far diſtant Iſle of *Ceylan*: And the name of the *Peſcheria* hath been given it, by reaſon of the *Pearls* which they yearly fiſh there for about the end of *March* and the beginning of *April*; and this Fiſhing endures only 15 or 21 days, there being then about 50 or 60000 Perſons employed either to fiſh, or to keep the Fiſhermens Veſſels from trouble. Theſe *Pearls* are expoſed to ſale in *July*, *Auguſt*, and *September*. *Tutucori* and *Manamcor*, are the beſt Cities of this Coaſt, which is of 75 Leagues length, where there is about 25 Cities. The people of *Paravas* are mixed along the Coaſt, and live in ſome form of a Republick, paying ſome rights to the *Naicque* of *Madure*; and theſe are they that fiſh for the *Pearls*: this fiſhing being all the riches of the Country, which of it ſelf is neither fertil nor pleaſant, but dry and ſcorched.

The King of Biſnagar very powerful.

Yet is the King of *Biſnagar* very powerful, formerly marching againſt the *Idalcan*, it hath been accounted that he had in his Army 40000 Horſe, 700000 Foot, and 700 *Elephants*. His chief City is *Biſnagar* or *Viſnagar*, a City very beautiful, ſeated in a temperate Air, and by reaſon of the fertility of the Country

Country about it, which brings forth ſundry Commodities naturally, beſides the induſtry and ingenuity of the Inhabitants in ſeveral Manufactures; but eſpecially in their fine *Cotton-Linnen*, which they make of divers colours, and interwoved with ſeveral ſorts of *Loom-works* and *flowers*, which are eſteemed better than *Silk*. Alſo the goodneſs of its Haven, hath made it a place of as great Commerce as any City on the Coaſt of *Choromandel*; though at *Muſulipatan* the *Engliſh* have ſettled a Factory (both for the providing and lading hence the Commodities of the Country,) more by reaſon of its ſcituation, than for the goodneſs of place, it being of no beauty nor grandure; its Houſes being low and ill built, and its Streets not many, and thoſe that are, narrow and ill contrived; but above all it is ſeated in a barren Soil, by reaſon of the extraordinary Heat, which here rages from *March* to *July*; then from *July* to *November*, the great Rains and Winds, which reign continually, ſo that their Temperate weather is but from *November* to *March*.

An *Engliſh* Factory at *Muſulipatan*.

Vincent le Blanc ſaith, That the City of *Biſnagar* is able to ſet forth 100000 Horſe; next to it *Narſingue*, on the ſide of a little Hill towards the Sea; *Tripity*, not far from *Chandegry*; and *Cangevaran*, not far from *Maliapor*, or *St. Thomas Trivalur*, is famous for the great number of its Idols. *Cirangapatan* is between *Chandegry* and *Mangalor*, which is on the Coaſt of *Canara*: the Fortreſs of *Vellur*, between *Chandegry* and *Narſingue*, was the Kings Court in 1609. All the Country is healthful, rich, and fertil in *Corn* and *Fruits*, breeding ſtore of *Cattel* and *Fowl*; and *Diamonds* are found in the Mountains of *Gate*, near *Chandegry*, and in other places quantity of *Amethyſts* and *white Saphirs*. They have all ſorts of *Beaſts*, both tame and wild: their *Elephants* are docil, their People healthful and well diſpoſed, but not couragious. The *Pepper* of *Onor* is eſteemed the moſt weighty and the beſt of all theſe quarters: the *Portugals* lade from thence 7 or 8000 *Quintals* a year. *Baticala*, a Port of *Rice* of ſeveral ſorts, different both in price and goodneſs; the *black Rice* is eſteemed more healthful, and better than the *white*.

The fertility, temperature, &c. of the Country.

Between *Peleagate* and *Narſingue*, there is an obſcure and deep Valley full of Trees, which ſtill drop water like thoſe in the Iſle of *Ferr* in the *Canaries*: near this Valley there is abundance of *Sugars*, whoſe *Canes* preſt ſerve to feed Beaſts, among which *Hogs* moſt delight in them, which makes them contract a ſavour rather of *Sugar* than *Salt*; yet are they worth little.

Some give the King of *Narſingue* but 10 or 1200 *l. Sterling* of yearly Revenue, whereas others report him to have 10 or 12 Millions of *Gold* yearly, which is moſt likely. He entertains ordinarily 40000 *Naires*, 20000 *Horſes*; and for the ſervice of his Houſe 12 or 15000 Perſons, 1000 *Horſes*, and 800 *Elephants*.

The Revenue of the King.

Almoſt all the People are *Idolaters*, ſome *Mahumetans*, and a few *Catholicks*. The *Jeſuites* have two reſidences, one at *Chandegry*, and the other at *Vetlur*, to no ſmall benefit. Amongſt the Cuſtoms of theſe *Barbarians*, they have the inhuman cuſtom for the Women to burn themſelves with the Corps of their deceaſed Husbands. *Texera* ſaith, that the *Naique* of *Madure* deceaſing in his time, his 400 *Wives* and *Concubines* caſt themſelves into the ſame Fire; and burnt themſelves with the Kings Body. There was 375 burnt with the *Naique* of *Taujaor*, in the year 1600, and as many or more with the laſt *Naique* of *Gingi*.

Its People.

As for the form and cuſtom obſerved in the burning of theſe ſilly wretches, I ſhall borrow from Sir *Tho. Herbert*, as he hath it in his book of *Travels*, *p.* 362. where he ſaith, that the *Husband* being dead the *Wife* prepares her ſelf for her Funeral, habiting her ſelf in tranſparent *Lawn*; her Noſe, Ears, and Fingers ſhe adorns with *Precious Stones*, &c. but her Legs, Thighs and Arms ſhe fettereth with Chains, which they hold as expreſſions of Love; in one hand ſhe holds a Ball, and in the other a Noſegay of Flowers, both as Emblems of *Paradiſe*: and being thus habited, ſhe is accompanied to the place by all her Relations, Friends, and Acquaintance; and all the way going the *Branchman* or *Prieſt* denotes the joys ſhe is to poſſeſs, together with the aſſurance of enjoying her Husband in the *Elyſium*: which words do much excite her to valour; ſo that when ſhe cometh to the place, ſeeth the flame,

Here the Women burn themſelves with the Corps of their deceaſed Husbands.

and the Carcaſs of her dead Husband, whom ſhe longeth to be with in *Elyſium*, being as it were like a hot-headed Lover, tranſported with joy, ſhe takes leave of her Friends and Relations, and jumps into the flame, in which the Corps of her Husband was firſt put, which ſoon unites in Aſhes; during which time they have ſeveral ſorts of Muſick: and to make the Ceremony the better, their *Branchman* exhorts them not to quit their Husbands, caſting ſtore of *ſweet Wood* and *Oil* into the fire, to take away the unſavoury ſmell; and this Law was made, becauſe the Women did frequently poyſon their Husbands upon any diſcontent, and ſo took others: but as *Linſcot* ſays, this is only a Cuſtom for their Nobles and Prieſts, it being prohibited to the meaner People. A Cuſtom, I think, not greatly to be deſired by any; and beſides this *Heatheniſh* Cuſtom, they have ſeveral others as bad and Idolatrous, *Satan* having here diſplayed his Banner of Impiety, being a People for the moſt part averſe to Law and Morality. Likewiſe the Cuſtom which they obſerve in their Marriages is as ſtrange; for the *Branchman*, with a *Cow* and the *Man* and *Woman*, go together to the Water-ſide, where the Prieſt (after he hath muttered a ſhort Prayer) joyns their hands to the *Cows* Tail, and having poured upon them hallowed *Oil*, he forceth the *Cow* into the River, where ſhe continueth a good while, and being come out they unty them; and this they hold for a ſolemn Marriage, and ſacred for ever, the *Cow* being a creature which by them is highly eſteemed and reverenced.

The Coaſt of *Choromandel*, and its Trade.

Among the places which are on the Coaſt of *Choromandel*, *Negapatan*, and *Maliapur*, belong to the *Portugals*, and formerly they alone of the *Europeans* had all the Traffick; now the *Hollanders* hold *Gueldria*, the *Engliſh* the Fort *St. George*, called by the *Indians Sadrapatan*; and both have their Factors throughout the Coaſt. *Megapatan* is great of Trade, though ſeated in an unhealthful Climate, uttering many valuable Merchandizes: They gather *Rice* in quantity ſufficient to ſerve their Neighbours. *Maliapur* a ſmall, but well known Town on this Coaſt, is the place where thoſe of the Country believe that St. *Thomas* was Martyred and interr'd; and there were many *Chriſtians* who called it *St. Thomas*, when the *Portugals* entred the *Indies*; they are ſtill a conſiderable body, and may eaſily be made return to true *Chriſtianity*. The old City is ruined, the new was rebuilt by the *Portugals*, where there is a Chapel dedicated to *St. Thomas*; and it is erected into a Biſhoprick under the Archbiſhop of *Goa*.

MALABAR.

Malabar, its fertility, commodities, &c.

MALABAR is the laſt of the four parts we have propoſed in the *Peninſula* of *Indus* without the *Ganges*; the leaſt in Continent, but not in goodneſs. All the Country is healthful, fruitful, and rich: It hath little *Wheat*, but inſtead of it, it hath great plenty of *Rice*, *Mayz*, and other *Grains*, *Fruits*, quantity of *Drugs* and *Spices*, *Precious Stones*, *Silk*, *Ginger*, *Caſſia*, and abundance of all ſorts of *Beaſts*, yields *Wood*, and ſuch fair Trees for the *Maſts* of great *Ships*, that *Norway* boaſts not better; yet its greateſt Riches conſiſts in its *Pepper* and *Precious Stones*.

Its Limits.

Some extend *Malabar* from the River of *Aliga*, or from the Cape of *Ramos* unto that of *Comorin*; but all that is between the River of *Aliga* and *Cangerecora*, having already paſſed under the name of *Canara*, where the Kings are Tributaries to him of *Biſnagar*; we will follow the others, who limit *Malabar* between the River of *Cangerecora* and the Cape of *Comorin*; where there are many Kings, all once ſubject to the *Samorin* of *Calicut*: At preſent thoſe of *Calicut*, *Cochin*, *Cananor*, and *Coulan*, are the moſt powerful.

The Coaſt of *Malabar*, and its Parts or Kingdoms.

The Coaſt of *MALABAR* is about 125 Leagues in length, and is divided into ſeveral Kingdoms, of which the King of *Cananor* holds 20 Leagues, he of *Calicut* 25, he of *Cochin* 15, and he of *Coulan* with *Travancor*, 40 and odd; the reſt is poſſeſſed by many. Thoſe of *Chambais*, *Montigue*, and *Badara*, are very near one another, and between *Cananor* and *Calicut*: Thoſe of *Tanor* and *Cranganor*, are between *Calicut* and *Cochin*: Thoſe of *Porca*

and

and *Calecoulan* are between *Couchin* and *Coulan*; and he of *Travancor*, between *Coulan* and *Cape Comorin*, near which the Country is not ſo good as the reſt of *Malabar*.

In the High-lands are thoſe of *Cota* near *Cananor*, of *Auriola*, of *Cottagan*, of *Bipur*, of *Coucuran*, of *Panur*, and of *Curiga*; above *Calicut*, *Tanur* and *Cranganor*; Thoſe of *Muterte*, of *Marta*, and *Batimena*, towards *Cochin*: In the Mountains are thoſe of *Mangatt*, of *Paru*, of *Pimienta*, of *Changanara*, of *Trivilar*, of *Panapelli*, of *Angamale* (where there was an *Archbiſhop of Chriſtians of St.* Thomas, reduced to a *Biſhoprick*; and transferred to *Cranganor*:) two of the *Ticantutes*, of *Punhali*, of *Caranaretto*, and others. The people called *Maledus*, and thoſe of the Mountains *Pande* live in the form of a Republick. *Cotate*, near *Cape de Comori*, is of the Kingdom of *Travanco*, and hath good trading. *Calicut* is eſteemed able to bring more than 100000 men into the Field; *Cananor* few leſs, *Cochin* and *Coulan* each 50000. They uſe little Cavalry, becauſe the Country is low, moiſt, and divided by many ſtreams. *Calicut* pretends to have ſome authority over all the Kings of *Malabar*, for which thoſe of *Cananor*, *Cochin*, and *Coulan*, to which *Travancor* is ſometime paſt united, ſeem to care little at preſent, a good part of the reſt ſtill hold for him.

Cananor, beſides what it poſſeſſes in the firm Land, holds likewiſe ſome Iſlands among the *Maldives*, for having aſſiſted one of their Kings againſt his Rebells; he poſſeſſes for the ſame reaſon the Iſle of *Malicut*, 35 or 40 Leagues to the Northward of the *Maldives*: and the five Iſles of *Diavandorou*, likewiſe 30 Leagues North from *Malicut*. All theſe Iſles are ſmall, *Malicut* of only 4 Leagues circumference, the others each 6 or 7: they are more healthful than the *Maldives*, their Inhabitants rich, and trade to the Continent, to *Malabar*, and to the *Maldives*, and elſewhere.

Cochin hath gained ſome reputation ſince it allied it ſelf with the *Portugals*, by whoſe means it is freed from the tribute it ought to the King of *Calicut*, and hath drawn to its Eſtates the greateſt trade of all *Malabar*; and the City is ſo increaſed, that it is not now inferior to *Calicut*.

The chief Cities.

And in all theſe Kingdoms aforementioned, contained in (and along the Coaſts of) *Malabar*, there are ſeveral good, large, and well built Cities, being well inhabited, rich, and of a conſiderable trade; but thoſe of moſt note in the ſaid Kingdoms are called by the ſame names, as that in *Calicut*, *Calicut*; that in *Cananor*, *Cananor*, &c.

The Natives and Inhabitants of *Malabar*.

The Original Inhabitants of *Malabar*, are divided into *Bramenis*, *Nayres*, and *People*. The *Bramenis* are the *Prieſts*, *Sacrificers* to *Idols*; ſome addict themſelves to *Arms* with the *Nayres*, others to trade; but to whatſoever vocation they apply themſelves, they have a particular manner of living. The *Nayres* addicted themſelves wholly to *Arms*. The *People* meddle only with labour, Manufactures, Fiſhing, &c. and are like Slaves.

Beſides the *Natives*, there are many Strangers, who live only on the Coaſt, and theſe are called *Malabares*, whence the name is communicated to the Country. Theſe *Malabares* are *Mahumetans*, whereas the others are *Pagans*, and very Superſtitious, worſhipping an *Idol* ſeated on a Brazen Throne, and Crowned, but of a horrid form, enough to fright one; and unto this *Idol*, beſides their *Religious Ceremonies*, they offer up the Virginity of all their Daughters before they are married, or elſe to their *Prieſts*. This *Idol* having in the place of his Privy parts, a ſharp bodkin of Gold or Silver faſtned, on which the Bride is forcibly ſet, which by reaſon of the ſharpneſs forceth great ſtore of blood to come; and if, though by her Husband, ſhe proves with Child the firſt year, they believe this *Idol* got it, which they highly eſteem; but by reaſon of the pain, the *Prieſts* by enjoying them firſt, doth quit them from the other, out of which two, all are ſerved: they commonly marry at 10 or 12 years of age; they are very black, and well limbed; they wear their Hair long, and curl'd about their ſhoulders; they go naked, having only a cloth about their middle to hide their nakedneſs, which hangs down to their knees; they are treacherous, cruel and bloody-minded; there are likewiſe ſome *Jews*, and ſince the *Portugals* have ſet footing, many *Chriſtians*, beſides thoſe which they call of St. *Thomas*; theſe being of the Mountains, and thoſe of the Coaſt.

The

The Peninſula of INDIA, within the GANGES.

Its bounds.

THE *Peninſula* of *India*, which is beyond or within the *Ganges*, is our third and laſt part of the *Aſiatique*, or *Eaſt-Indies*. We will give unto it all that reſts of *India* unto *China*, and bound it on the Eaſt by *China*, and by the Sea of the *Philippine* Iſlands; on the South with that *Sea*, which flows amongſt the Iſlands of *Sonde*; On the Weſt by the *Sea* or *Gulf* of *Bengala*, and by the Eſtates of the *Mogoll*; and on the North we will ſtretch it as far as the *Tartars*: ſo that it will take up all *India* beyond the *Ganges*, what is poſſeſſed by the *Mogoll* excepted.

It Kingdoms and parts.

We have in this *Peninſula* a great number of Kingdoms, which we will conſider under the three Principal ones; *viz. Pegu*, *Sian*, and *Cochinchina*. Under the name of *Pegu* we will range all thoſe Eſtates and Kingdoms which lie upon the River, which deſcend from the Lake of *Chiamay* unto *Pegu*; under the name of *Sian*, all the Eſtates and Kingdoms which are about *Sian*; and under that of *Cochinchina*, all that is neareſt to and on the Weſt Weſt of *China*. This laſt part is moſt Eaſterly of the three, the ſecond moſt Southerly, and the firſt more to the Weſt; and this hath almoſt all been ſubject to the King of *Pegu*; the other to the King of *Sian*, and the laſt was part of *China*.

PEGU.

The Kingdom of *Pegu*, and its parts.

THE Kingdom of *PEGU* when in its ſplendor was ſo rich and powerful, that ſome would equal it to *China*. *Vincent Blanc* ſaith that it contained two *Empires*, and 26 Kingdoms or Crowned Eſtates; I believe that the two *Empires* were *Pegu* and *Siami*, or poſſibly *Sian*, this having been ſubject or tributary to *Pegu*: and the *Kingdoms* are *Martavan*, *Manar*, *Tangu*, *Marſin*, *Jangoma*, and *Brama*, whoſe chief Cities are *Pegu*, *Brema*, *Canarane*, *Pandior*, *Caſſubi*, *Ava*, *Boldia*, *Mandranelle*, *Tinco*, *Prom*, *Dunbacaon*, *Tolema*, *Maon*, *Arracon*, *Largaray*, *Caſſubi*, *Ledoa*, *Tipoura*, *Xara*, and *Chacomas*. The greateſt part of theſe Eſtates taken apart, are rich, and powerful, being able to ſet forth to War, ſome 2, ſome 3, ſome 400000 men. They have in many places Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Precious Stones*, beſides *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Herbs*, *Fowl*, and *Beaſts*, which are here found excellent. The *Kingdoms* of *Tangu* and of *Brama* are the moſt powerful; ſince this hath ſometime ſeized, and the other with that of *Arracan* ruined the Eſtates of *Pegu*.

Brama and its fertility, and chief places.

Brama beſides its Mines of *precious Stones*, hath *Benjamin*, *India-Lake*, and certain *Herbs*, from which they take *Silk*; they make divers *Manufactures*, particularly *Caps* much eſteemed. *Ava* abounds in all ſorts of *Victuals*, hath divers *Metals*, *Muſk*, and *Rubies*. *Canelan* hath the fineſt *Rubies*, *Saphires* and other *Stones*. *Prom* hath *Lacque* and *Lead*. *Tinco* fetches many Merchandizes from *China*. *Vincent Blanc* eſteems the City of *Canarana* as rich and magnificent as any in *India*; he places it between the Rivers of *Jiama*, and of *Caypoumo* or *Pegu*, giving it four Leagues Circuit, and making it Metropolis of the Kingdom of *Caypoumo*, which is likewiſe called *Canarana*. This Country hath *Turqueſſes*, and *Emeralds* the faireſt of all the Eaſt. *Caſſubi* is in a Plain, bounded with high Hills, from whence deſcend many ſtreams, which water the Plain, where there are excellent *Fruits*, among the reſt *Pomegranates* the largeſt and beſt of *India*, excellent *Raiſins* and *Manna*, which muſt be gathered before Sun-riſe, which elſe diſpatches it. Their Mountains are filled with ſavage *Beaſts*, where they get the *Skins* and *Furs* of *Ermines* and *Sables* of divers ſorts, all very exquiſite. The people of *Tranſiana* are fair, and white; the *Women* exceeding beautiful, and the *Men* very proud: They have *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, and *Diamonds*; their King keeps ordinarily 50000 Horſe, 1000 Elephants,

plants, and paies his tribute to the King of *Pegu* in Horſes, which are very excellent. Their *Foreſts* have many *Wild Beaſts*; among the reſt, that which gives the *Bezoar*. The Inhabitants of *Boldia* are eſteemed the moſt honeſt and civil of all theſe quarters: So that they cannot but be people of Trade; and indeed all theſe Kingdoms have divers *Commodities* which make them rich.

Pegu exceeding rich in Gold, Silver, and Precious Stones.

The Kingdom of *Pegu*, which hath commanded, and had for Subjects or Tributaries almoſt all theſe Eſtates, and likewiſe others towards *Siam*, and *Siam* it ſelf, cannot but be extreamly rich and powerful. And truly, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Pearls*, and *Precious Stones*, have been as common in the *Courts* of the Kings of *Pegu*, as if all the *Orient* had brought all its Riches thither. The *Floors* of *Buildings*, the *Moveables*, and the *Veſſels*, with which they ſerved themſelves for divertiſement, were ſo inriched within and without, with *Gold* and *Azure*, that it is not imaginable, if we did not know this to be the *Aurea Regio*, and likewiſe the *Argentea Regio* of *Ptolomy*: Yet this muſt be believed to have been long ſince; but however, that it is at preſent the richeſt Country of all the *Indies*: And for the ſame reaſon, one of the beſt peopled, and moſt powerful.

Its fertility and Commodities.

This Country, by reaſon of the overflowing of the River *Pegu*, which runs through the Kingdom, makes it become exceeding fruitful, and of a fat and rich ſoyl; ſo that it produceth great abundance of *Grains*, *Fruits*, and other products of the Earth in great plenty. Alſo *Beaſts*, *Fowl*, and *Fiſh*, great ſtore of *Civet-Cats*, from whom they take *Civet*, *Lacque*, which is made by *Ants* (as *Bees* make *Wax* with us) *Gold*, *Silver*, *Precious Stones*, *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Lead*, *Sugar*, &c. This Kingdom hath plenty of good Towns and Cities, its *Metropolis* bearing the name of the Kingdom. It is divided into the *Old* and the *New*; the one and the other together make a Square; being encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall, and a great Ditch well fortified, having on each ſide five *Gates*, beſides many *Turrets* richly beautified. It is large, ſtrong, rich, and ſtately; the King and his Nobility and Courtiers takes up the *New City*, which is ſeparated from the *Old* by a Wall and Ditch well watered; in which are kept many *Crocodils* for the watching the place by night: The *Wall* hath ſeveral *Gates* on all ſides, for the convenience of the people to paſs in and out. The *Streets* are very fair, ſtraight, and ſo broad, that fifteen men may ride a-breaſt on both ſides. The *Houſes* well built, having before every door *Palm-trees*, which are ſet, not only to make a pleaſant ſhow, but alſo to keep the Paſſengers from the heat of the *Sun*, which is very great.

The City of *Pegu*, the chief of the Kingdom, deſcribed.

The *Palace Royal* is ſeated in the midſt of the City, having its particular Wall, Moat, and other Fortifications; the *Palace* being very ſtately and large, the greateſt part of the *Buildings* being ſuſtained by *Pillars* of *Jet*, and all the *Stones* ſo ſhining, that thoſe which are without, repreſent the Neighbouring *Gardens* and *Foreſts*; and thoſe which are within the *Paved Chambers*, other *Rooms*, and the *Ceilings* above, ſo well, that one ſeemeth to walk on *Gold* and *Azure*. Nor doth this his ſtately *Palace* exceed his Magnificence and Pomp, without which he is never ſo much as ſeen. The *Old City* is inhabited only by *Merchants*, *Artificers*, and *Sea-men*, where there is great ſtore of *Warehouſes* ſtrongly built of *Brick* to prevent fire (which the City is much ſubject unto,) in which the *Merchants* keep their *Goods*. And for the better encreaſe of *Trade*, the *King* doth conſtitute Eight *Brokers*, whoſe Offices are to look after and ſell the Goods, as well of *ſtrangers*, as the *Inhabitants*; giving a very juſt account thereof: For which, they are allowed two pence *per Cent*. The like is obſerved in the buying of *Commodities*. And theſe *Brokers* by their places, are obliged to provide *Strangers* or *Merchants* with a *Houſe*, and orders certain *Maids* of the City to go to him, that out of them he may make his choice; which done, he contracts with her friends to pay them a certain ſum for the uſe of her, as they can agree, which is not great; and this *Maid* ſerveth him as his *Servant* by day, doing what he commandeth; and as his *Wife* by night: And at the expiration of the term agreed upon, he leaveth her, and ſhe goeth to her Friends without any diſgrace at all.

The Palace Royal.

The People, their Habit.

The People are of a mean ſtature, nimble and ſtrong, great lovers of *Women*, which takes them from warlike affairs, in which they are not very expert. Their *habit* is but mean, contenting themſelves for

for the most part, with a piece of *Linnen* to cover their nakedness; they all black their *Teeth*, because they say *Dogs* teeth are white. They are generally all *Pagans*, and believe that *God* hath under him several other *Gods*; that he is the *Author* of all good which arriveth to mankind: But he leaveth all evils which belong to man, to the *Devil*; by reason of which, they so much adore and fear him, lest he should hurt them; which *God*, being good, they say, will not. Their *Devotion* they perform on *Mundays*, their *Priests* going about with *Tin-basons*, making a noise to waken the *People*, and inviting them to their *devotions*, in which they chiefly exhort them to *Morality*, as to avoid *Theft*, *Adultery*, *Murder*, &c. and to love *Vertue*. They have a great esteem for their *Priests*, who live a very solitary and exemplary life. They have Five principal *Feasts* which they observe very strictly, ceremoniously, and with great state and pomp. They that Marry buy their *Wives* of their *Parents*; and when he is weary of her, he may send her home, but must lose the Money he paid for her: But if she leave him, as she may do, then he may receive the Money paid for her.

Their belief.

Marriage not kept during life.

SIAN or *SIAM*.

Kingdom of *Sian*, its parts.

THe Kingdom of *SIAN*, and those Estates, which we will comprehend under the name of *Sian*, are to the *North* of *Pegu*. We may consider them in two principal parts; of which, one shall retain the name of *Sian*, and the other that of *Malacca*. This latter is a *Peninsula*, which extends it self from the first degree of *Latitude*, unto the 11 or 12; from whence the first advances it self into the Main Land, unto the 19 or 20 degree on this side the *Equator*. They reach then each 250, and together 4 or 500 Leagues from South to North. But the *Peninsula* of *Malacca* is very streight, not being above 10 or 12 Leagues broad in the *Isthmus*, which separates it from *Sian*; in other places 20, 30, 40, and sometimes 80. *Sian* is almost of an equal length and breadth.

Its extent.

Under the name of *Sian*, separated from the *Peninsula* of *Malacca*, we comprehend the Kingdoms of *Sian*, *Martaban*, *Jangoma*, and *Camboya*; under the name of *Malacca*, those of *Tanacerin*, *Juncalaon*, *Singora*, *Queda*, *Pera*, *Patane*, *Pan*, *Malacca*, *Ihor*, and others, as in the *Geographical Table*.

The chief places of the particular *Sian*.

The Kingdom of *Sian*, especially so called, hath several Cities of note, *viz.* First, *Odiaa* which some call *Sian*; the *Metropolis* being a City of a large extent, a place of so great strength, that in 1567. they stoutly defended themselves against an Army of 1400000 fighting Men, which the King of *Pegu* brought against them, for twenty Months together: By reason of which, together with several other mutations that have since hapned amongst them, the City hath been much eclipsed of its former beauty, splendor, and riches; yet by reason of its commodious scituation on the River *Menam*, is still a place of great *Trade* and *Commerce*, is rich, and populous. The Houses are built very high, by reason of the annual overflowing of this River about the Month of *March*: So that it covereth the *Earth* for about 120 Miles in compass; which renders these Countries very fruitful, as the *Nile* doth *Egypt*. During this Inundation, Its *Inhabitants* retire to the upper Rooms of their Houses; and to every House there is a Boat, or other Vessel belonging; by which means, they negotiate their affairs, until the River returns to her usual bounds.

Its Commodities and Trade.

The principal *Commodities* of this City, or indeed of the Kingdom, are *Cotton-Linnens* of several sorts, *Benjamin*, *Lacque*, of which they make excellent *Hard Wax*; Also that costly Wood which the *Portugals* call *Palo Dangula*, and *Calamba*, which is weighed against *Silver* and *Gold*; for rich *Perfumes*; and the Wood *Sapon*, used by *Dyers*; also *Spices*, some *Drugs*, *Diamonds*, *Gold*, *Camphora*, *Bezar-Stones*, *Musk*, *Porcelaine*; and lastly, that excellent *Wine*, or *Distilled Liquor*, which they call *Nipe*, which they make of *Cocos* or *Indian Nuts*, being of great esteem over all *India*, and elsewhere.

Its other places are *Bankock*, noted for excellent *Pepper*. *Lugor* seated on the Sea-shore, and *Socotay*, famous for having a *Temple* only made of Metal, which

is

is 80 Spans high, and answerable in length and breadth, being adorned with abundance of Idols, built by one of their Kings at his coming to the Crown.

The Kingdom of *MARTABAN*, towards the Gulph of *Bengala*, is contiguous to *Pegu*, to which it hath been subject, at present is to *Sian*. This Kingdom hath many Ports frequented for Trade; for besides its *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Oils*, and *Medicinal Herbs*, it is rich in Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Steel*, and *Copper*. It hath *Rubies*, *Lacques*, and *Benjamin*, &c. And they make Vessels of *Earth*, which they call *Martabanes*, of which some are so great, that they hold a Bushel. This is a kind of *Porcelain* varnished with black, and wherein they keep *Water*, *Wine*, *Oil*, and all sorts of Liquors; and for this reason they are esteemed in all the East. *Martaban*, its commodities, &c.

JANGOMA, on the confines of *Pegu*, *Siam*, and *Brama*, hath been subject or tributary sometimes to one, and sometimes to another. It hath *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Musk*, *Cotton*, of which they make Manufactures, *Pepper*, &c. Its People are more addicted to Horse than Foot service. *Jangoma*, and its commodities.

CAMBOJA is the last and most Southerly part of the *Peninsula*, which is between the Gulphs of *Sian* and *Cochin-china*. The principal Cities are *Ravecca* and *Camboja*, of which the Kingdom takes its name, which is under the 10*th* or 11*th* degree of *Latitude*, and on the principal and most Easterly branch of the River *Menam*, which (as it is believed) comes from *China*; but it should be said from some Regions formerly subject to, or which were part of *China*. *Camboja*.

The People in their Manners and Customs resemble those of *Sian*, whose Subjects they have been, and whose Tributaries but lately they were. Its People.

MALACCA.

IN the *Peninsula* of *Malacca* are divers Kingdoms, which are taken notice of in the *Geographical Table*; which all (except the City of *Malacca*) are likewise tributary to that of *Sian*. *Tenasserin* is a Country of Trade, by reason of its *Archipelago*, which contains several *Islands*; and of its *Isthmus*, which facilitates the transportation of Merchants from one Sea to another; and of its Ports, which are commodious. Its other places are *Juncalaon*, *Zueda*, *Pera*, and *Malacca*, all which places afford *Nipe* of *burning Wines*. *Peninsula* of *Malacca*; its parts, commodities, &c.

IHOR is beyond *Cape de Sincapura*, and on the utmost point of the *Peninsula*: Its chief City was taken and ruined by the *Portugals* in 1603, who took from thence 1500 Brass Cannons. The King of *Ihor* for revenge besieged *Malacca* in 1606 with 60000 Men, but was constrained to raise his Siege; there are some petty Kings which are his Tributaries. *Pahang* hath *Lignum Aquila* and *Calamba*, near to that of *Cochin-china*; of *Camphire*, like to that of *Borneo*; *Gold*, but of a lower alloy than ours; *Petra Porea*, of near as much vertue as the *Bezoar* against poyson; *Diamonds*, *Nutmegs*, *Mace*, &c. *Ihor*, its chief places and commodities.

PATANE within few years is grown famous, the Kingdom being frequented by divers Nations, particularly by the *Chinois*, who bring thither *Porcelaine*, divers Manufactures and Instruments of Husbandry; instead of which they carry back *Timber* for Building, *Cordage* made of *Cocos*, *Rice*, and divers *Skins*, &c. The *Peppex* is excellent, but dearer than at *Bantam*. Their *Saroy-Boura*, that is, the matter of *Swallows Nests*, which we shall speak of in *Cochin-china*, is much sought after. The Soil is good, producing Fruit every Month in the year. Their *Hens*, *Ducks*, and *Geese*, often lay Eggs twice a day. Amongst an infinite number of Fowl they have *white Herons* and *Turtles* of various colours, like *Paroquetoes*. *Patane*, and its Trade.

Patane, *Singora*, *Brodelong*, and *Ligor*, are on the same Gulph, which may be called also by *Patana*, and makes part of that of *Sian*: *Patane* and *Ligor* towards the two ends; *Singora* and *Brodelong* in the midst, and at the bottom of this Gulph; and these two last are head Cities of Provinces (others call them Kingdoms) under *Sian*; the two first Kingdoms are tributary to *Sian*: They have nothing particular above *Patane*, to which they are all united.

The City of *Patane*, and its Trade.

The chief City of *Patane* takes its name from its Kingdom ſo called, ſeated on the Sea-ſide betwixt *Malacca* and *Siam*. Its Houſes are well and handſomly built, either of *Timber* or *Canes*. The *Palace Royal* is encompaſſed with a *Palliſado*, and its *Moſques* are made of *Brick*. This City (as alſo the whole Kingdom) is very populous, and enjoying a good Trade. Its People are inclined to a Swarthy brown complexion, well proportioned, ingenious, uſing Arts, eſpecially *Navigation*; but above all, great lovers of *Women*. The Country affordeth moſt of the *Indian* Commodities, by reaſon of which it hath a good Trade.

The City of *Malacca*, and its Trade.

Malacca, a City and Kingdom, is at preſent the moſt famous of all thoſe which of the *Peninſula* we have comprehended under the name of *Malacca:* It hath been ſubject to the King of *Sian*. A particular King had made himſelf Maſter of it, before that the *Portugals* entred the *Indies*; the Country remaining ſtill to the Kings of *Sian*. That which hath made this City great, rich, and powerful, (though the Air be unhealthful, and the Soil almoſt barren) is the advantage of its ſcituation, being ſeated on the River *Gaſa*, which is about 3 Leagues broad, and in the center of the firm Land, and of all the Iſlands of the *Eaſt Indies*, commanding a Streight, which is the Key which makes it the Staple of all the *Indian* and *China* Commodities; by reaſon of which it is a place of great Traffick, and very populous, containing about 12000 Families, beſides Strangers. Its Houſes are low, and not over curiouſly built, and the Streets narrow; the City is about 2 miles in length, and of half the breadth, being a place of good ſtrength, and defended by a ſtrong Wall and Caſtle; is watered by the River *Gaza*, and the chiefeſt place of pleaſure is the *Buzzar*. Before, and nigh to this City, are the Iſlands by the *Portugals* called *Ilha de Naos*, and *Ilha de Pedra*. The uſance of divers Nations of the *Indies* hath ſo faſhioned the *Malayois* Language, that it is the beſt and moſt elegant of all others.

Arbor triſtis, a great rarity.

Among the Rarities of *Malacca*, or rather among the wonders of the World, may be counted *Arbor triſtis*, or the *Sad Tree*, which bears Flowers only after Sun ſet, and ſheds them ſo ſoon as the Sun riſes, and this it doth every Night throughout the whole year. Theſe Flowers are almoſt like to (but fairer and more odoriferous than) *Orange Flowers*. Some of theſe Trees have been tranſported and brought as far as *Goa*, and ſome other places of the *Indies*; but no care could ever preſerve them unto *Europe*.

The People of *Sian*, their habit, diſpoſition, &c.

The Provinces of this Kingdom of *SIAN* are very populous, eſpecially thoſe which have the benefit of the Sea or navigable Rivers; but inhabited by different People, but for the moſt part well proportioned, of a Swarthy complexion, more addicted to *Venus* than *Mars*; ingenious, but lazy, unconſtant, and deceivers. Their habit is a painted Cloth, which they wear about their middle, and hangeth down to their knees; beſides which the Men wear ſhort Shirts, and the Women cover their Breaſts with a piece of Linnen, which they tie about their Necks, all obſerving one faſhion; the Perſons of Quality being only known by their attendance. Their *Marriages*, *Burials*, and other Ceremonies, are much the ſame as thoſe aforeſaid; they bring up their Children very well, inſtructing them in Arts: by which, according to their abilities, they are advanced to preferment. In their Puniſhments they are ſevere and different, according to the nature of the crime.

Their Arms.

His Army doth conſiſt of his own Subjects in the nature of our *Trained-Bands*, which are to be ready upon all occaſions, and not of a ſtanding Army. Their Arms are *Bows* and *Arrows*, *Swords*, *Pikes*, and *Bucklers*; they have no *Fire-Arms*; their *Horſe* is not good, their chief ſtrength conſiſting in their *Elephants*.

The Kings of *Sian* abſolute Monarchs, are rich, powerful, and live in great ſtate.

The Kings of *Sian* are eſteemed abſolute Monarchs in their Dominions, making and breaking Laws as they pleaſe; impoſing Taxes on their Subjects; puniſhing, condemning and ſeiſing the Eſtates of thoſe who ſpeak or act contrary to their minds; make War and Peace as often as they pleaſe. Theſe and the like actions he doth of himſelf, without conſent of any; yet he hath a Council, which are his Nobles, of whom he will hear their Opinions and Advice, but act as beſt pleaſeth him. He hath but one Wife, who bears the title of a Queen, but hath many Concubines. In his Apparel

and

and Attendance he is very magnificent and ſtately, not ſtirring abroad without great pomp; by reaſon of which, as alſo through his auſterity, he hath great veneration ſhewed him. His Revenue is very great; he beſtoweth his Honour or Preferment on thoſe who beſt pleaſe him, not regarding Birth and Education, it being not hereditary. For the adminiſtration of Juſtice, moſt Cities have their Juriſdictions and Judges.

This great Kingdom is not in all places alike; for in ſome parts it is covered with Wood, in others Mountainous, and to the Sea-ſide, Marſhy, Flat, and Fertil, affording divers and rich Commodities, as aforementioned; and being plentifully furniſhed with *Rivers*, *Bays*, and *Harbours*, for the conveniency of ſhipping.

COCHIN-CHINA, TUNQIN, &c.

Cochin-china, its bounds and extent.

I Eſteem under the Name of *COCHIN-CHINA* taken in general, all that lies to the Eaſtward of the Kingdoms of *Camboja*, *Siam*, *Pegu*, and *Ava*, &c. to the Weſtward of *China*, and the Gulph of *Cochin-china*; and which is waſhed on the South with the *Oriental Ocean*, and bounded on the North by thoſe high Mountains which limit *Tartary*; extending it ſelf from the 9*th* degree of *Latitude* on this ſide the *Equator*, unto the 34*th* or 35*th* towards the North, which make more than 6000 Leagues; the breadth not being above the 8*th* or 10*th* part of its length.

Its Name, why ſo called.

The name of *Cochin-china*, according to ſome, ſignifies *Weſt China:* ſo the Natives of the Country call it *Onam* or *Anam*, that is, the *Occidental Quarter*; and this extends to the view of *China*, of which it was once part, and whoſe *Language*, *Manners*, *Cuſtoms*, *Government*, *Religion*, and other Ceremonies they yet retain, (which having occaſion to treat of in *China*, as more convenient, for brevities ſake I omit them here, referring the Reader to the deſcription of *China*.) But theſe Quarters being retired from the ſubjection of the *Chinois* above 800 years ago, were a little after as eaſily divided into divers Eſtates. The name of *Cochin-china* being kept in the moſt Southern parts; that of *Tunquin* having taken the middle and more Northernly parts, paſſing under the name of the People called *Lays*, the Kingdom of *Ciocangue*, the People *Gueyes*, *Timocoves*, &c. who have in part taken and received the manners and barbarouſneſs of the *Tartars*, their Neighbours.

Its parts and chief places.

Cochin-china likewiſe is divided into *Chiampaa* and *Cochin-china: Chiampaa*, between *Camboja* and *Cochin-china*, regards the Iſles of *Sonde* towards the South; the *Philippines* towards the Eaſt, and touches on *Tunquin* to the North. Its principal City bears the ſame name, according to moſt Authors; but according to others, *Pulocacein*. It hath nothing which is not common to *Cochin-china*, and therefore we ſhall ſay no more.

Cochin-china particularly taken, is better known than all the neighbouring Countries, becauſe it is wholly upon the Sea, having 150 Leagues of Coaſt, and not above 40 or 50 in breadth, between the Mountains of *Kemois* (a barbarous People) and the Sea. Its Provinces are deſcending from North to South: *Sinuva*, *Cacciam*, *Quangiva*, *Quingin* or *Pulacambis*, and *Ranran*. The two firſt touch upon *Tunquin*, the laſt touch on the Kingdom of *Chiampaa*. The King makes his ordinary reſidence in the Province of *Sinuva*, or at *Cacciam*, Cities of the ſame name with their Provinces.

Its fertility, commodities, temperature, and people.

All the Country is fertil, abounding in *Rice*, *Fruits*, and *Herbs*, breeding many *Fowls* and *Beaſts*, and the Sea excellent *Fiſhes*. It produces *Cinnamon*, *Pepper*, *Lignum Aquilæ*, *Calamba*, and *Benjamin*. Its temperature is pleaſant, though under the *Torrid Zone*; the Air healthful, and the Soil ſo abundant in all things, that the Inhabitants have no knowledge either of Contagion or Famine. They have *Gold*, *Silver*, *Silk*, *Porcelain*, and divers other valuable Commodities. All ſorts of Nations frequent its Coaſt, by reaſon of the goodneſs of its Ports; and becauſe its Inhabitants are Courteous, Liberal, kind to Strangers, and faithful in their dealings.

They are couragious, and more warlike than those of *Tunquin* or *China*, handling all sorts of Arms with no small activity. They are Idolaters: *Christianity* was introduced in 1620, and began to flourish; but their Kings have of late very much persecuted them.

Several Rarities here found.

Amongst the particularities and rarities of the Country, we must place the *Lutt*, an Inundation, which in Autumn covers with its Waters almost all the Country; it renews from 15 to 15 days, remaining only 3 days at a time, making the Earth so fruitful, that it brings forth its increase twice or thrice a year. Their *Saroy-Boura*, or matter wherewith certain *Swallows* make their Nests, which after those Birds leave dry and hardned, they gather in great quantities, which being steeped and moistned in Water, serves for Sawce to all sorts of Meat; and as formerly *Manna* communicating such a variety of taste, that it seems to be composed of *Cinnamon*, *Gloves*, *Pepper*, and other Spices. Their *Lignum Aquilæ* and *Calamba* come from the same Tree; the first from the Trunk of a young Tree, the last from the Trunk of an old Tree: but this last is much more esteemed than the other, both for its odour and vertue. A pound of it on the place where it is beaten down is worth 5 *Ducats*, being brought to the Port, 15 or 16; and if transported to *Japan*, 200. If some piece be found to make a whole Pillar, it is worth 3 or 400 *Ducats* the pound. The *Lignum Aquilæ* amongst other things, serves to burn the dead Bodies of their Kings, Princes, and Priests.

Wood as heavy as Iron, and which consumes not, except burnt.

Among the Wood they use for Buildings, there are two sorts which they call uncorruptible, whether in Water or Earth; their Trees they call *Thins*: the Wood of the one is near as black as *Ebony*, the other near the colour of *Yew*. Both the one and the other taken out of the Bark is smooth and glib, so solid and weighty, that it sinks to the bottom of the Water, and serves also for Anchors for *Ships*. They make Pillars, on which they erect their Buildings; and before the time of the *Lutt*, they drive Joists and Planks between those Columns, and with *Canes* and *Reeds* accommodate divers Apartments, which they take away in the time of those Inundations, that the Water may run the freer.

TUNQUIN.

The Kingdom of *Tunquin*, its bounds, extent, and situation.

THe Kingdom of *TUNQUIN* is part on the Sea, and part on the Main Land; it bounds on the Sea at the bottom of the Gulph of *Cochin-china*, there where it divides *China* from *Cochin-china*, and hath about 150 Leagues of Coast. On the Land it extends it self from the seventeenth degree of *Latitude*, on this side the *Equator*, unto the twenty third, which are likewise 150 Leagues from North to South: Its breadth being only about 100 Leagues from East to West.

Its Parts.

This Kingdom contains Seven Provinces, of which the three most Southernly are, *Bochin*, *Gehan*, and *Tinhoa*; the four most Northernly are, *Beramar*, *Kedom*, *Kenam*, and *Kethay*. *Bochin* touches on *Cochin-china*, and the two other advance along the Gulph towards the North; amongst the four last, *Beramar* and *Kedun* are towards *China*, *Kenan* and *Kethay* towards the People *Layes*. The King of *Tunquin* ordinarily entertains a Militia of 50000 Men, taken from the three Southernly Provinces, and paid by the four Northern, because these last lately revolted, and the other remained in obedience.

The King very powerful.

Its chief Places.

Kecchio is the chief City of the Kingdom, where the King ordinarily resides. It is not above twenty miles in circuit, but hath a Million of Inhabitants. Some Authors will have it called *Tunquin*, that is, the Court of the West, and that the Kingdom took its name from it. The Land hath beautiful *Plains*, and watered with many great *Rivers*; which with the *Rains* and melting of the *Snow*, which descends from the Mountains that separates it from the *Layes*, the Kingdom of *Ciocangue*, *China*, and *Cochin-china*, make it fruitful

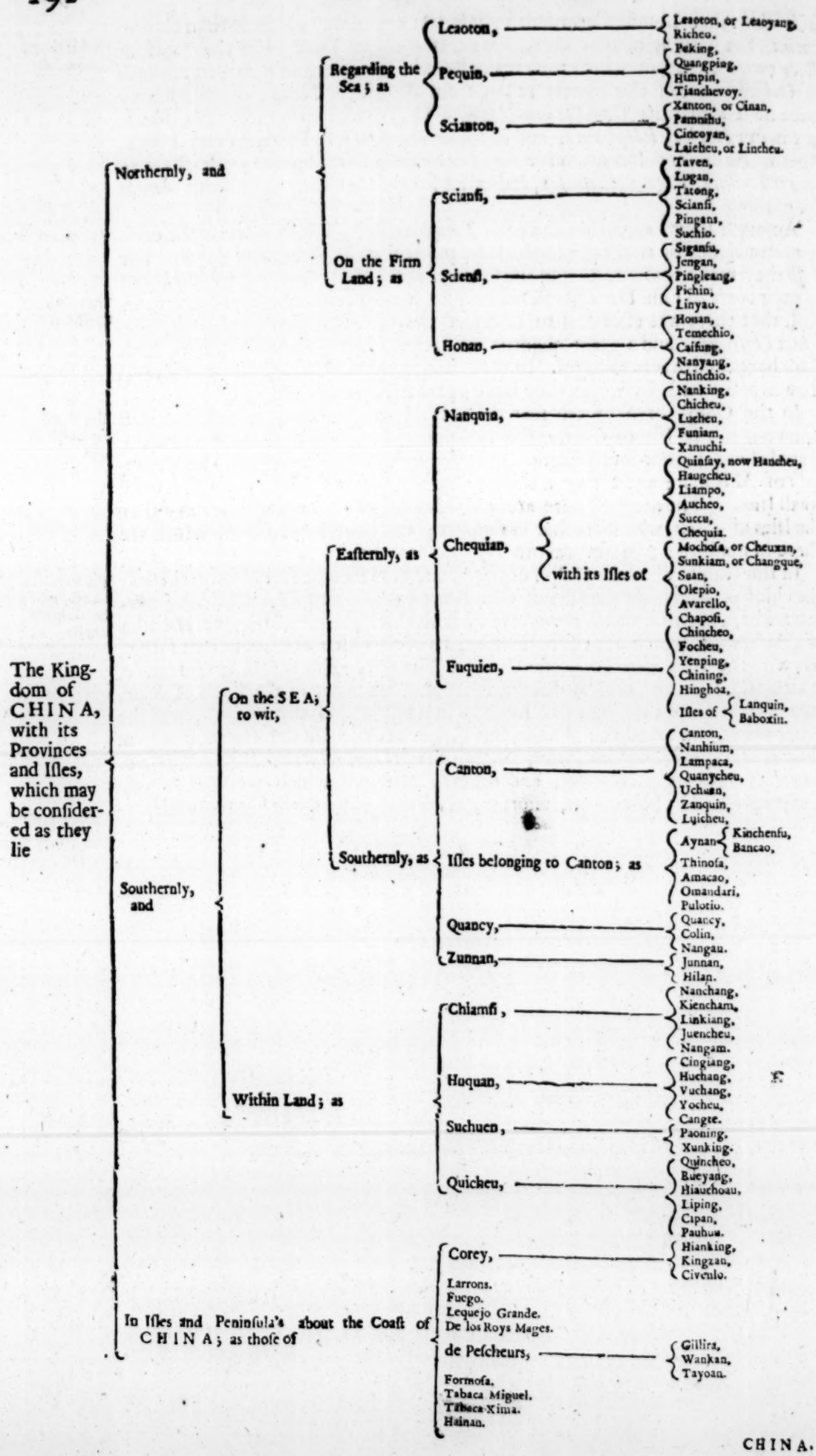
fruitful by their Inundations, rendring it better and more abundant than *Cochinchina*. Yet hath it neither *Corn*, *Vines*, nor *Olive Trees*; but they gather *Rice* twice a year, of which they make Bread; they fetch in *Wine*, and inſtead of *Oil* make uſe of the matter taken from *Swallows* Neſts, of which they have no leſs quantity than *Cochin-china*. They have neither *Aſſes* nor *Sheep*, but many *Horſes*, *Elephants*, and *Rhinocerotes*, whoſe Fleſh, Skins, Bones, Teeth, Nails, and Horns, ſerve for Antidotes againſt Poyſon; they have ſo much *Pullain*, *Pigeons*, *Turtles*, and other Fowl, that they give them almoſt for nothing. Its fertility and commodities.

Amongſt their Fruits they have fair *Pomgranates*, which beyond the ordinary excellency of that Fruit hath here a particular and delightful Juice. For *Fiſh* they make account, that in the Seaſons there daily goes 10000 *Barks* out of their Ports to Fiſh. The *Catholick Religion* was ſo introduced here ſome years paſt, that there was eſteemed to be more than 200000 *Chriſtned Souls*, 200 great *Churches*, and a great quantity of *Chapels* and *Oratories*: there hath ſince happened divers changes. In theſe Kingdoms the *Portugals* have ſeveral Towns and Cities, by which they have a great Revenue. They embrace Chriſtianity.

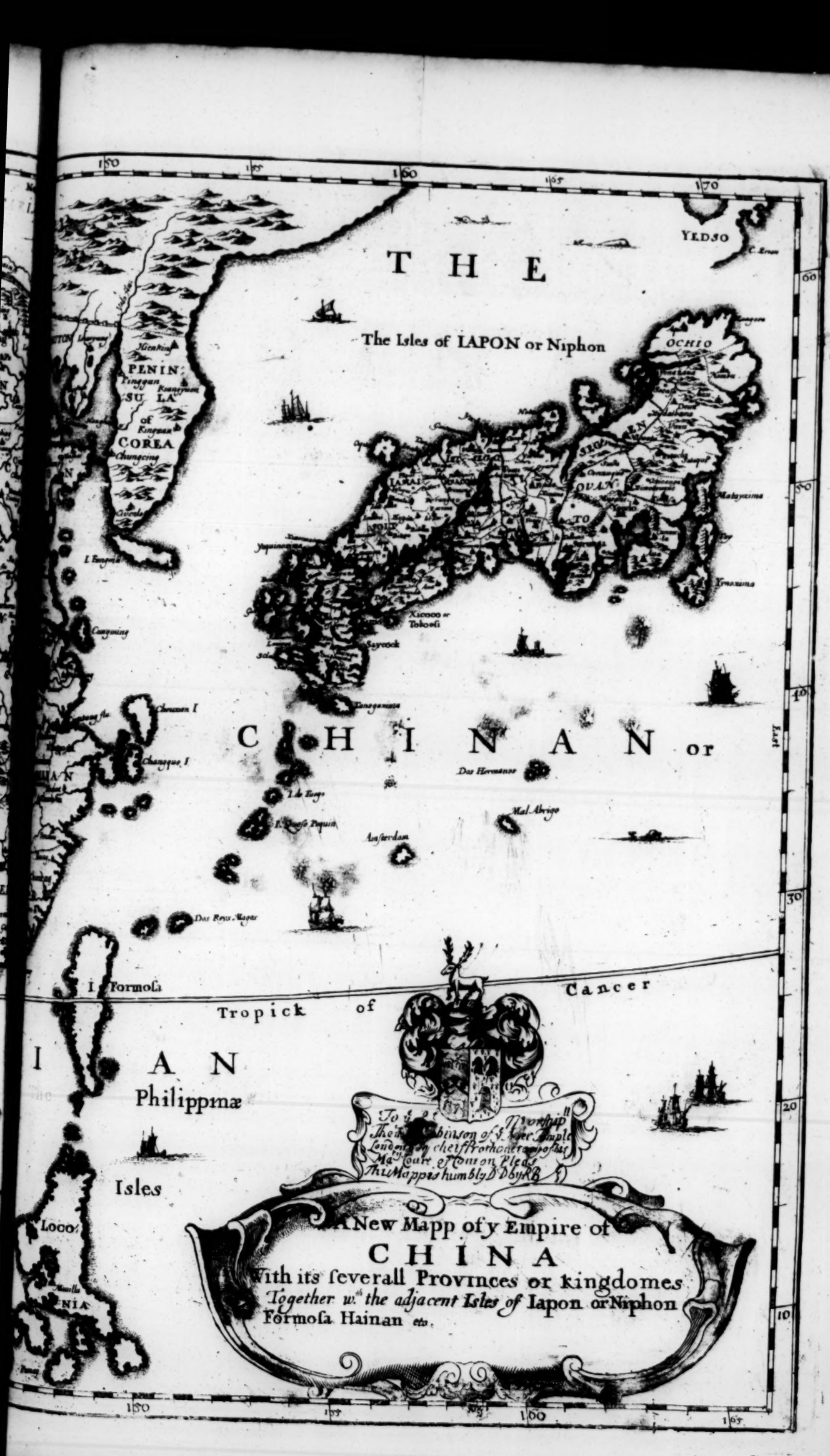
In the Gulph of *Sian* are ſeated ſeveral Iſles, ſome of which are well known; as the Iſle of *Goeteinficos*, about 27 Leagues long, and 15 broad, ſeated about three or four Leagues from *Ligor* and *Bordelong*, in the *Peninſula* of *Malacca*; and between this Iſle and the Land of *Malacca* lieth ſeveral ſmall Iſles. The next of note are the Iſles of *Macaria* and *Panian*; then the Iſles of *Cara*, which are four in number; and the Iſles of *Coſyn*, which are three in number; with ſeveral others of no account. Iſles ſeated on the Gulph of *Sian*.

In the Gulph called the Gulph of *Bengala*, are likewiſe ſeated ſeveral Iſles; the chief of which are the Iſles of *Chubedu*, *Chudube*, and *Ledoa*, of *Dos Alevantados*, *Aligada*, and *Durondiva*, whoſe chief place is *Siriaon*; the Iſles of *Andemaon*, which are 10 in number, two of which are indifferent large; likewiſe the Iſles *dos Cocos*, *dos Caboſes*, *Tanaſſeri*, *Tavay*, *Alta*, and *Craro*, which ſaid Iſles are not far diſtant from the Sea-ſhoar of the Land of *Sian*, two of which are each about 20 Leagues in length; and the one 10, and the other about 7 in breadth. Alſo in this Gulph are the Iſles of *Caremubar*, of *Raza*, *dos Sombreros de Palm*, *Siano*, *Sambilano*, *Batun*, *Pera*, *Pinaon*, *Canal de St. Georgo*, *Nicubar*, and others; many of which are well known and frequented by Merchants, affording ſeveral of the *Indian* Commodities. Iſles ſeated in the Sea, called the Gulph of *Bengala*.

The


The Kingdom of CHINA, with its Provinces and Isles, which may be considered as they lie
Northernly, and
Southernly, and
Regarding the Sea; as
On the Firm Land; as
Leaoton,
Pequin,
Sciamton,
Sciansi,
Scienſi,
Honan,
Leaoton, or Leaoyang,
Richeo.
Peking,
Quangping,
Himpin,
Tianchevoy.
Xanton, or Cinan,
Pamnihu,
Cincoyan,
Laicheu, or Lincheu.
Taven,
Lugan,
Tatong,
Sciansi,
Pingans,
Suchio.
Siganfu,
Jengan,
Pingleang,
Pichin,
Linyau.
Honan,
Temechio,
Caifung,
Nanyang,
Chinchio.
On the SEA; to wit,
Within Land; as
Eaſternly, as
Southernly, as
Nanquin,
Chequian,
with its Isles of
Fuquien,
Canton,
Isles belonging to Canton; as
Aynan
Thinoſa,
Amacao,
Omandari,
Pulotio.
Quancy,
Zunnan,
Chiamſi,
Huquan,
Suchuen,
Quicheu,
Nanking,
Chicheu,
Lucheu,
Funiam,
Xanuchi.
Quinſay, now Hancheu,
Haugcheu,
Liampo,
Aucheo,
Succu,
Chequia.
Mochoſa, or Cheuxan,
Sunkiam, or Changque,
Saan,
Olepio,
Avarello,
Chapoſi.
Chincheo,
Focheu,
Yenping,
Chining,
Hinghoa,
Isles of
Lanquin,
Baboxin.
Canton,
Nanhium,
Lampaca,
Quanycheu,
Uchuan,
Zanquin,
Lyicheu.
Kinchenfu,
Bancao,
Quancy,
Colin,
Nangan.
Junnan,
Hilan.
Nanchang,
Kiencham,
Linkiang,
Juencheu,
Nangam.
Cingiang,
Huchang,
Vuchang,
Yocheu,
Cangte.
Paoning,
Xunking.
Quincheo,
Rueyang,
Hiauchoau,
Liping,
Cipan,
Pauhuu.
In Isles and Peninſula's about the Coaſt of CHINA; as thoſe of
Corey,
Larrons.
Fuego.
Lequejo Grande.
De los Roys Mages.
de Peſcheurs,
Formoſa.
Tabaca Miguel.
Tabaca Xima.
Hainan.
Hianking,
Kingzan,
Civculo.
Gillira,
Wankan,
Tayoan.

TANCHUT
PART OF
Desart of Lop
Sandy Desart of Xamo
TIBET
SISAN
Kia Lake
Yellow R.
SCIANSI
PEQUIN
Honan
HONAN
Nanyang
Cinglang
HUQUANG
QUICHEU
Rueyang
QUANGSI
CHIANSI
Nanchang
FUQUIEN
CANTON
Canton
Bengala
CAMBOIA
Arracam
Pegu
PEGU
Lao
TUNQUIN
Lincheu
Couchinchina
SIAM
DIA
R. Ognog
HAINAN ISLE
I. Prata
Siam
C. de los Reys
C. de Liam
Tonchin
Langor
Champa
Tanacerim
Simbedang
Bays
TSIOMBA
OCEAN
INDIA
W. Hollar fecit 1669.
West
Sou
Pa
120
125
130
135
140
60
50
40
30
20
10


THE
The Isles of IAPON or Niphon
YEDSO
OCHIO
PENIN
SU LA
of
COREA
CHINAN or
Tropick of Cancer
I. Formosa
Philippinæ
Isles
A New Mapp of y Empire of
CHINA
With its severall Provinces or kingdomes
Together w.th the adjacent Isles of Iapon or Niphon
Formosa Hainan etc.

CHINA.

CHINA is on the East of *Asia*, and of all our Continent; and if we consider its greatness, fruitfulness, riches, the great number and politeness of its Inhabitants, the beauty of its Cities, its Manufactures, and for having had the inventions of *Silk*, *Printing*, *Paper*, *Artillery*, &c. it is worthy of note. The Kingdom of *China*.

Ptolomy knew this Country under the name of *Sinarum Regio*; but it hath been observable by us, that the *Chinois* knew not any thing of that name; and that when this great Empire falls from one Family to another, he that begins the Family gives such a new name as he pleases to the Kingdom: and these names are very specious; as formerly it had the name of *Than*, that is, *Boundless*; *Tu*, that is, *Repose*; *Hin*, which signifies, *Great*; *Sciam*, which is an *Ornament*; *Cheu*, that is, *Perfect*, and so others: The Family that reigns at present gave it the name of *Miu*, that is, *Brightness*; and the last Kings of the same Family have added *Ta*, which is, *Kingdom*, so that *Ta-Min* signifies the *Kingdom of Brightness*. The People neighbouring upon *China* take little heed of the changing of these names; but on the contrary, some name it in one manner, and some in another: Those of *Cochin-china* and *Siam* call it *Cin*, from whence we have formed the name of *China*; those of *Japhan*, *Than*: the *Tartars*, *Han*: the *Saracens* and *Mahometans* of the West call it *Cathay*; under which name is likewise comprehended the Eastern part of *Tartary*. Its several Names.

Its greatness extends from the 18*th* or 19*th*, unto the 43*th* or 44*th* degree of *Latitude*: and from 147 to 166 degrees of *Longitude*, and in some places from 145 to 172; that is about 24 degrees of *Latitude*, which amount to 600 Leagues from North to South; and 18 or 20, and sometimes 25 degrees of *Longitude*, which amount to 4, 5, or 600 Leagues from West to East: some Authors have esteemed this Kingdom greater; but the Father *Jesuites* have observed the height of *Pequin*, and its most Northern parts. Its extent.

It contains 16 Provinces, all rich, plentiful, and which might well merit the name and title of Kingdoms; they are subdivided into 28 Regions, or less Provinces, of which some have 12, some 15 fair Cities; amongst which are 180 great Cities, 319 great Towns, and 1212 lesser; in all 1771 Cities and fair Towns. The number of its Provinces, Parts, Cities, and Towns.

However it be a great number, there is the same likewise of lesser places; insomuch that in *Anno* 1557 there was found in *China* more than 40 Millions of Men which paid Tribute or Tax: In 1616 there was near 60 Millions. Among which the *Women*, *Young men* under 20 years, *Eunuchs*, *Souldiers*, *Officers*, *Sick people*, and those of the Kings kindred were not comprehended, which together would amount to a very great number. *China* very populous.

There are accounted likewise Tributaries to the King of *China*, 3 Kings towards the East, 53 towards the West, 55 towards the South, and 3 towards the North, which are 114; and many have assured his Revenue to be 150 Millions of Gold *per annum*. Divers Kings subject to the King of *China*.

The bounds of this great Monarchy are very advantagious, the Sea washing it on the South and East, where there are divers little *Islands* and *Rocks* along the Coast; a Mountain of above 500 Leagues long being its Northern bounds, and great sandy Deserts and Forests, mixt with Mountains, limit it on the West unto the South Sea: these were its natural defence; but upon the *Tartars* often invading *China* bounded.

invading them, and being at once Master of 33 important Towns, and fearing leſt they ſhould be quite ſubdued, concluded a Peace with the *Tartars*, agreeing to pay them 2000 *Picos* of Silver for the defraying the charges of their Army, and they to return home and render up the 33 Towns to the *Chinoiſes*. This Peace continued a good while; but they fearing the incurſion of the *Tartars* again, the King at a general Council with his Peers, for their further peace and ſafety did agree to build a Wall about their Kingdom, or rather Empire, which might ſerve for a Bulwark againſt all Invaders, in purſuance whereof there was raiſed 10000 *Picos* of Silver, which at 1500 *Ducats*, each *Pico* amounts to 15 Millions of *Gold*; and entertained 25000 Men to carry on this work, whereof 3000 were appointed as Overſeers of the reſt; and thus in the ſpace of 27 years, they quite finiſhed the circumference of the Wall, which is 70 *Jaos*, in length each *Jao* being 3 Leagues, which is 650 miles. This Wall is 30 foot high and 10 foot broad, being made with Lime, Sand, and Plaiſtered on the outſide, by means whereof it is ſo hard, that it is Cannon proof; inſtead of *Bulwarks* it hath *Watch-Towers* 2 Stages high, flancked with high Buttreſſes as thick as a Hogſhead, and exceeding ſtrong; the expences for the performing of this Work was divided into 3 parts, of which the Commonalty paid one, the Prieſts and Iſles of *Aynan* another, and the King and Peers the other: and in this great encloſure there are but 5 Entries, in which both the King of *China* and *Tartary* keep Garriſons; in each of which the *Chinois* continually keep at great expences about 6000 Horſe, and 1000 Foot, which for the moſt part are all Strangers of different Nations bordering upon this Empire, which are kept for defence thereof, when occaſion ſhall ſerve; in all this length of Wall there is 320 Companies, each of them containing 500 Souldiers, which in all are 160000, beſides Officers, &c. which will make up the number 200000, and are all maintained at the Kings charge; but moſt of theſe are Malefactors, which doth much leſſen the pay, they working for nothing. But for all this ſtrong Wall, and their great care in keeping it, the *Tartars* of late have almoſt over-run all *China*. Beſides its extent, the great number of its people, and the Forces of this Kingdom, the Soil is generally exceeding rich and fertil, and abounding in all things; and ſo divided by Rivers and Navigable Channels, that ſome have affirmed that there are as many River-boats in *China*, as in all the World beſides.

A Wall about *China*.

They have all ſorts of Grains and Fruits, except the *Olive* and the *Almond*, inſtead of which they have many others not found elſewhere; and moreover their Grains, Fruits, as alſo their Plants and Herbs, are far beyond ours in excellency and goodneſs, and their Flowers more beautiful and various than ours. This Country produceth all ſorts of living Creatures, as Beaſts and Fowl, both tame and wild; and ſo excellent, that the fleſh of their *Camels*, *Mules*, *Aſſes*, *Dogs*, &c. are ſweet, and good to eat; all Proviſion is here found ſo plentiful, that a fat *Cow* is not worth above 10 Shillings, a *Buffier* a Crown, a *Hog* 2 Shillings; all ſorts of Fowl they ſell by the pound, the common rate after their Feathers are off, being not above 2 Pence; and Fiſh they have in ſuch great plenty, as well in their Rivers as in the Sea, that they are not worth the ſelling. The like may be ſaid of their Grains and Fruits, which are found in as great abundance; they have alſo as great plenty in divers rich Commodities, as in excellent *Sugar*, *Wax*, *Hony*, all ſorts of *Spices*, ſeveral *Drugs*, *Rice*, *Wool*, *Wines*; great quantities of *Silk* and *Cotton*, of which they make a great number of different Manufactures. They have all ſorts of Metals, but their *Gold* and *Silver* is of a lower alloy than ours; and therefore it is that they ſo much eſteem *Engliſh Gold*, and *Priſtols* and *Rials* of *Spain*: they have much *Rhubarb* and *Amber*, quantity of *Musk Civet*, which would be the beſt in the World, if they did not falſifie it: their *Camphire* is not near ſo good as that of *Borneo*, and their *Pearls* are all *Barroques*. They have much *Saltpeter*, with which they make (beſides *Gunpowder*) a thouſand devices and artificial Fires. They have ſo great plenty of *Salt*, that the Cuſtom only in the Town of *Canter*, (as Mr. *Lewis Roberts* reports) doth bring in to the King 180 thouſand *Ducats* yearly.

Its Fertility and Fruits.

Its Commodities.

They

They have abundance of very fine Inventions, of which some are common with us, but which they had before us; as the disposition of their *Pousts*, their *Paper* which they make of the bark of *Bambus* or *Canes*, but so thin, that it will bear *Ink* on both sides. In their writing they make use of *Pencils*, and not *Pens*, which by reason of the smoothing of the *Paper*, they cut their *Characters* exceeding neat, their writing consisteth only of *Characters*, which make so many *Syllables*, and the *Syllables* so many different names, whose significations are various; of these *Monosyllables* they have neer 60 or 80000, they write from top to bottom, advancing their lines from the left hand to the right, and almost all their knowledg consists only in reading well. In their *Printing*, they are so expert, that they can take away, augment, or change as much or as little as they please in a moment. Their *Artillery* which they dismount by pieces, and their *Chariots* which they make run with a Saile, &c. Their *Manufactures* of *Silk*, which they say they have had 3 or 4000 years. They make use of *Tables* and *Seats* when they eat, and of *Beds* when they repose, which their Neighbours do not. Their *High-ways* are straight, paved, and cut sometimes out of the *Mountains*. They have *Salt* which they extract from the Sea-water and from Mines. They make and subtract their *Sugar*, *Honey* and *Wax*, from diverse things. to wit, from *Bees*, from the fruit of certain *Trees*, and from certain little *Worms* they keep in those *Trees*; and this sorts is the best, the whitest, and its *Candle* burns the cleerest of all.

The *Chinoisses* very ingenious

Their way of writing.

Those things which they have most particularly, are their *Drinks*, which they make with the leaves of certain *Shrubs*; a *Gumm*, and an excellent *Varnish*, which they get from the *Barks* of *Trees*. Also their *Porcelain*, which they make of *Earth*, in the Province of *Quiamsi*, of which they make excellent *Cups*, *Dishes*, &c. far exceeding *Glass-Metal*.

The *Chinoisses* are for the most part well shaped, of a good Stature; they have commonly broad faces, flat noses, little eyes; they never cut the hair of their heads, but on the contrary they wear little or no *Beards*; and as to their complexion they differ according to the *Climat* under which they abide, as those in the Province of *Pequin* lying in the most Northern part of *China*, are of a fair complexion like the *English*, when as those towards the South, as in the Province of *Canton*, &c. are like the *Moors* of *Barbary*; their Women are handsom, yet make use of *Paint*; they seldom are seen abroad.

Their shape & stature.

They wear their Garments very long, with long loose sleeves; those of the Northern Provinces make use of *Furs*, and those of the Southern wear *Silk*; but persons of quality are richly habited and adorned with many *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*. They are great lovers of Women, as also of their bellies, commonly eating thrice a day, their diet being good and cleanly drest, and they as neat in eating it, making use of *Knifes* and *Forks*.

Their habit.

They are very ingenious, and much more industrious and Politick then their Neighbours, having the use and understanding of *Arts* and *Sciences*, both liberal and Mechanical, as *Philosophy*, *Physick*, *Astronomy* concerning the *Heavens* and *Stars*, the *Eclipses* of the *Sun* and *Moon*, &c. in the which they have abundance of vain fancies. Also they are expert in *Musick* and making of *Musical Instruments*, *Navigation*, *Architecture*, *Painting*, *Sculpture*, making of *Clocks*, casting of *Metals* in *Images*, *Medals* or the like; these with several other inventions too tedious to name, they had the benefit of before us; yet are they not in that perfection as they are with us. And as for *Armes*, they have their courage so low, that both the *Souldiers* and the *Commanders* submit themselves to the whip, when they have been wanting in their duty; so that it was said that when the *Tartars* assaulted them, it sufficed them only to have shewed them the whip, to have put them to flight, as the *Scythians* their predecessors once served their slaves, who during their long absence had married their *Mistresses*. It is likewise reported that the *China Horses* could not suffer the weighing of the *Tartarian Coursers*; and the *Chinois Cavaliers* being of the same humor, they were more likely to run than fight.

They are addicted to *Arts* and *Sciences*.

Not good Souldiers.

Moreover the *Chinois* are very ceremonious, courteous, and great complementers, for which they have ſeveral Printed Books which they teach their children, not paſſing by any one, that they know, without kind ſalutations; and if they happen to eſpy any friend which comes out of the Country, beſides their kind greeting, his firſt queſtion will be to ask him whether he hath dined or ſupped; which if he hath not, he will carry him to a *Tavern*, and give him a treatment of *Fleſh*, *Fowle* and *Fiſh*; and if he hath din'd, a collation of *Fruits* and *Conſerves*.

They are alſo very coſtly in their *Feaſts* and *Entertainments*, as in variety of *Meats*, *Fruits*, *Preſerves*, to which may be added other delights; as *Muſick*, *Singing*, *Dancing*, *Plaies*, and other paſtimes. And for perſons of quality they obſerve more ſtate, ſome *Feaſts* laſting about 15 or 20 days.

They have ſeveral days which they make great account of in *Feaſtings* and merriments, but above all others, their *New years day*, which is in *March*, where alſo their *Prieſts* are preſent at their rejoycings, adding to the ſolemnity of the day Sacrifices which they make to their Gods.

In their *Marriages* they are alſo very expenſive in their *Feaſts*; for the *Bridegroom* receives no other Portion from her friends, then what they beſtow in their entertainments; but on the contrary, he gives her a Portion, which ſhe gives to her friends in thankfulneſs for their care in her education.

Their Religion and belief

The *Chinois* may be held as *Pagans* and *Idolaters*, not knowing the true *Religion*, but worſhipping *Idolls*; they invoke the *Devil*, they hold the immortality of the *Soul*, and after this life it goeth to eternal bliſs, or torment; they alſo hold a kind of *Purgatory*, and that their friends and relations upon their prayers and ſupplications, may have ſome eaſe, for which purpoſe they have a day ſet apart for the performing of this ceremony. They have four orders of *Religious* men; they obſerve all one faſhion, but are diſtinguiſhed by their colour; they all ſhave their beards and heads, they make uſe of *Beads*, and ſay their *Matins*, &c. as the *European Monks* do. *Mandelſloe* ſaith that they are much addicted to incantations and charmes, not doing any thing of concernment, without they have firſt conſulted it by their charmes; and if they prove not according to their deſire, they will raile and abuſe their *Gods* with ſcurrilous language, fling them down, beat them, whip them, and tread upon them; but when their choler is aſſwaged, they will cogg with them, give them good words, and pretend ſorrow; and if the charme favour them, then they offer to them *Geeſe*, *Ducks*, boiled *Rice*, &c. Theſe charms are commonly two ſmall pieces of wood, one ſide being flat, and the other being hallow, which they fling upon the ground; and if it happen that the round ſide of both, or of one is downwards, they take it for an ill omen; if uppermoſt, for good. They believe that all things viſible and inviſible were created by Heaven, who by a *Vicegerent* governs the Univerſe, another who governs all *Sublunary* things; they alſo add three principal *Miniſters*; one looks to the production of *Fruits*, and the generation of *Men* and *Animals*, another governs the *Air*, and cauſeth *Rain*, &c. and the other governeth the *Waters* and *Sea*.

Their funeral Ceremonies.

Mandelſloe ſaith alſo, that at their *Funerals* they have ſeveral ceremonies; as ſoon as any perſon is deceaſed, they waſh his body, put on his beſt Clothes, and ſet him in a Chair, where his Wife, Children, and other Relations kneeling down about him, take their leave of him, which done, they put him into the Coffin, ſet it upon a Table, covering him with a Winding-ſheet, which reaches to the ground, on which they draw the Picture of the deceaſed, where they leave him 15 days, during which time in ſome other Room they ſet on a Table *Wine*, *Fruit* and *Lights*, for the *Prieſt* who watcheth; after which time, they carry the Corps to the Burial place, his Relations commonly mourning for a year.

The King governs by his own Will.

The Government of the Kingdom or Empire of *China*, is wholly at the power of the King, either to change, take away, or augment Laws, when and as oft as he pleaſes; yet doth he not execute any rigorous Laws upon them, ſcarce acting or impoſing any thing upon his Subjects, without the Advice of his Council of State; beſides this Council of State, he appoints others, as well for

the

the Administration of Justice, as for the oversight of other affaires in the Kingdom; but they neither inflict any punishment to Criminals, or determine any thing of themselves, but make their report to the King, who decides the same.

They are very circumspect how they condemn any person, not passing their sentence, till the offence is found so clear and evident, that the offendor is not able to justifie himself, they use fair means first for the finding out of the truth; and if that will not do, they then inflict several tortures upon them; their executions are various and more cruel according to the offence committed; some being hanged, some they impale, some they burn; their greatest punishment is inflicted on thieves, which they much abhor. Debtors they imprison; for which purpose there being so many, there is in every great City several Prisons, in which they are strictly kept and lookt unto; by reason of which that their lives may not be burthensome unto them, they have in their Prisons, *Gardens*, *Courts*, *Walks*, *Fish-ponds*, *Drinking-houses* and *Shops*, which furnish the Prisoners with such things as they have occasion for.

Kings of *China* hereditary.

The Dignity of the Crown of *China* is hereditary, falling to the eldest Son of the King after his decease; the King they highly reverence, calling him the Son of Heaven, the Son of God, or the like, not that they think him so, but being the chiefest of men, they esteem him dear to the Gods, and as a gift of Heaven.

The *Chinois* have many Books and descriptions of their Kingdom: observing exactly all that their Provinces particularly possess: what is the extent, quality, and force of each, how many Cities they have, how many Officers, how many men which study, how many which bear Armes, who pay Tribute, and a Thousand particularities; of which however writers have recounted to us but few things, scarce can we gather the Names of the sixteen *Provinces*, and of some Cities and Rivers; these Names being so diverse in several Authors, that it is a difficulty to reconcile them, we will say something of them giving them those names which seem to us best received.

The division of *China* into Provinces.

CHINA is divided into two principal parts, Northern, and Southern: there are six *Provinces* in the Northern part, and ten in the Southern: The River *Jamchucquian* traverses these; and the River *Caramoran* those. Of the six Northern parts, three are washed by the Sea, as *Leaoton*, *Pequin* and *Scianton*, and of these three, the two first touch the great Wall or Mountain; the three other *Provinces* are on the firm Land; as *Scianſi*, *Scienſi*, and *Honan*, likewise of these three, the two first touch the great Wall; amongst the ten Southern ones, there are six on the Sea; three towards the East, as *Nanquin*, *Checquian*, or *Aucheo* and *Fuquien*; and three towards the South, as *Canton*, *Quancy*, and *Junnan*; the other four *Provinces* are up in the Land, and are called *Chiamſi*, *Huquan*, *Suchuen*, and *Quichen*. And of these *Provinces* in order.

Province of *Leaoton* described.

The Province of *LEAOTON* is almost quite separated from the rest of *China*: Its chief City bears the same name; this City, as also most of the Cities in *China*, is well built, and of one form, being square, and with good Walls made of *Brick*, and plaistered over with *Porcelain*, which renders it exceeding hard and strong; they are commonly broad, and having the benefit of several *Towers*, as well for beauty as defence. Its Soil amongst other things produces the Root *Ginſen*, which preserves the well in health and strength; strengthens and restores health to the sick; they sell it commonly at double its weight of *Silver*. Its *Inhabitants* are less civilised then the rest of *China*, but more robustious and proper for Warr. Its other places of most note are *Richeo*, and *Chincheo*, and both seated on the Sea.

Province of *Pequin*, and its chief places.

The Province of *PEQUIN*, though of great fertility, yet by reason of its popu usness, occasioned by the residence of the Kings of *China* in its principal City *lo Xunthienfu* by us called *Pequin*, makes it that it cannot furnish *Mayz*, *Wheat*, *Rice*, and other *Provisions* enough for its *Inhabitants* and resort of People; which defect is supplied from the adjacent *Provinces*. The City of

Xunthienfu or *Pequin* is of a vaſt bigneſs, containing within its *Walls* (made of *Free-ſtone*, and ſtrongly fortified with *Bulwarks*) which are in circumference near 30 *Leagues*, about 3300 *Pagodes* or *Temples*, wherein are continually ſacrificed a great number of *Wild-Beaſts* and *Birds*: Theſe *Pagodes*, eſpecially thoſe of the Order of the *Menegrepos*, *Conquiays* and *Talagrepos*, who are the *Prieſts* of the 4 Sects of *Xaca*, *Amida*, *Guzan* and *Canon*, are ſumptuous Structures. To the *Wall* which encompaſſeth this City, for the conveniency of its *Inhabitants* are 360 Gates, to each of which is joyned a ſmall Fort where a Guard is continually kept, as alſo a Regiſter, to take the names of all Perſons that paſs thereat. The *Streets* are long, broad, and well compoſed, and its houſes fair and lofty; each of the chief *Streets* having its *Captain* and other *Officers*, who are to look after the ſame, which every night are ſhut up by Gates. Here are about 120 *Aquæducts* or *Canals*, which traverſe the City, upon which are near 1800 fair Bridges ſuſtained on Arches. Without the City in a tract of 7 Leagues long and 3 broad, are about 80000 *Tombs* of the *Mandarins*, which are ſmall *Chapels*, richly beautified, nigh unto which are about 500 great *Palaces*, which they call the *Houſes* of the *Sun*, which are inhabited by thoſe that can no longer bear *Armes* for the *Emperour* of *China*; either through age, ſickneſs or other infirmities. Alſo here are about 1300 ſtately *Houſes* inhabited by *Religious Men* and *Women*. There are ſeveral *Streets* of a great length, only poſſeſſed by People of one profeſſion, as one by near 14000 *Taverns*; another by innumerable many *Courtizans*, and another by about 24000 *Oarmen*, which belong to the *Emperours Panourers*. Here are alſo 32 great *Colledges* for thoſe that ſtudy the *Laws*. Likewiſe there are abundance of large *Houſes*, with ſpacious incloſures of *Gardens*, *Woods*, provided of *Game*, near this City, which ſaid *Houſes* or rather *Inns*, ſerve only to give entertainment to people of all degrees, by ſeeing of *Plaies*, *Combates*, *Bulbaitings*, &c. and the *Palace Royal* of the *Emperour*, which is in this City for its largeneſs, fairneſs and richneſs, is not inferior to any in the *Eaſt*; this City being his reſidence for the Northern Provinces, as *Nanquin* is for the Southern.

And thus much for the City of *Pequin*; its other chief places are, firſt, *Tianchevoy*; ſecondly, *Himpin*; and thirdly, *Cichio*, ſeated on a fair River about 70 Miles from the *Sea*.

The Province of *Scianton*, its fertility, &c.

The Province of *SCIANTON*, is between that of *Pequin* and *Nanquin*; it is well watered with Rivers, which makes it very fertile, abounding in ſo great plenty of al ſorts of *Fleſh*, *Fowl*, *Fiſh*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. that its *Inhabitants*, which are eſteemed about ſeven Millions of Perſons, cannot devour the encreaſe but are forced to furniſh other Provinces; they have alſo great ſtore of *Silk*, and other rich *Commodities*. It hath ſeveral great Cities, the chief of which are, 1 *Xinton*, not far from the *Sea*; 2 *Pamnihu*, 3 *Cincoyan*, and 4 *Linceu*, ſeated in an Iſle ſo called: Beſides which, here are found in this *Sea*, 9 other Iſles, moſt of which do belong to this Province, and are well known, affording many of the *China Commodities*.

The Province of *Sciansi*, its fertility and chief places.

The Province of *SCIANSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Canſas*, hath many *Mountains*, by reaſon of which it is not ſo fertile, as that of *Pequin*; neither is it ſo large, ſo populous, nor ſo pleaſant; yet with the induſtry of the *Inhabitants*, it produceth *Corn*, *Rice* and *Mayz*; but in recompence it breeds great quantity of *Cattle*, and hath ſo many *Vines*, that it furniſhes the whole Kingdom with *Pickled Grapes* and *Raiſins*. It hath likewiſe two ſorts of *Mines*; the one of *Brimſtone*, the other of *Stones* which burn, and may be called *Coals*. In the *Sulphur Mines* they make little holes, to draw out heat enough to boyl any thing they need. The *Mines* of *Coals* are inexhauſtible, encreaſing from time to time: and theſe *Coals* well prepared, will keep fire day and night without being touched.

In this Province are about 90 Cities and great Towns, ſix of which are of conſiderable note; as, 1 *Scianſi*, 2 *Taven*, 3 *Lugan*, 4 *Talong*, 5 *Pingans*, 6 *Suchio*; all which are well built and very populous.

The

The Province of *SCIENSI* or *XEMSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Soyohin*, *Mendoza*, *Sinsay*, is the most Westward of all the Six Northern Provinces, and the greatest of all the 16 Provinces; *Siganfu* is esteemed its chief City; the great *Mountain* and *Wall* doth bound it from the *Tartars*; the *Soyl* is dry, yet yields good store of *Wheat*, *Mayz* and *Barley*, but little *Rice*; it feeds much *Cattle*, and the *Sheep* are sheared thrice a year, in *Spring*, *Summer* and *Autumn*; their first shearing is the best: It yields *Musk*, which is the *Navel* of a *Beast*, of the bigness of a *Hinde*. They have *Gold*, which they gather amongst the *Sand of the Rivers*; for the *Mines*, though it hath some, yet they are not open. It produceth divers *Perfumes* and *Rhubarb*, which they carry into *Persia*, and other places: And it is through this Province, that the *Caravans* come from the *West*. The Province of *Sciensi* described.

This Province is very populous, and is well stored with great Towns and Cities, having 8 great Cities, as, 1 *Siganfu*, its *Metropolis*, afore spoken of, 2 *Jengun*, 3 *Pingleang*, 4 *Pichin*, 5 *Lynyao*; with a great many of less note.

The Province of *HONAN*, which *Purchas* calls *Oyman*, is very fertile, and the Climate very temperate; the freest from *Mountains*, and the farthest from the *Sea*. It produceth the best *Fruits* in the World, as well those known to us in *Europe*, as others; and that in so great quantity, that they are scarce valued. The *River* of *Caramoran* after having divided the Provinces of *Scianfi*, and *Sciensi* takes its course through the middle of *Honan*, and discharges it self into the *Sea*, by the Province of *Nanquin*. It comprehendeth 7 great Cities, the chief of which bears the name of the Province; its other chief places are, 1 *Temichio*, 2 *Caifung*, 3 *Nanyang*, and 4 *Chinchio*, besides about One hundred less ones, all well inhabited. Hitherto we have surveyed the six Northern Provinces of *China*; we come now to the 10 more to the *South*. The Province of *Honan*, and its chief places

The Province of *NANQUIN* is the faireſt and richeſt, and its *Inhabitants* the most civilised of all the Kingdom; and the Kings of *China* did always make their residence at *Nanquin*, till of late they have made it at *Pequin*. It comprehends 14 great and fair Cities, *viz.* 1 *Umthienfu* or *Nanquin*, which is the *Metropolis* of the Province, 2 *Chicheu*, 3 *Lucheu*, 4 *Funiam*, and 5 *Zanuchi*, all which are very populous; some of which have about 200000 people, which only work in making of *Calicoes*: All which are commodiously seated on arms of the *Sea*, which make several Isles. And beside these Cities, there are about 100 small ones of less note: I shall only speak something of *Nanquin*. The Province of *Nanquin* its Cities.

Umthienfu or *Nanquin*, as we call it, yet ceases not to be the greatest, fairest and richest City of the whole Kingdom, next to *Pequin*. The form and Symmetry of its *Buildings* in its *Palace*, in its *Temples*, in its *Gates*, in its *Towers*, and in its *Bridges*, as likewise in its publick and particular *Houses*, and their Ornaments, are wonderful. It is situate upon the *River* of *Batampina*, and upon an indifferent high Hill; so that it commands all the Plains there adjacent. The circumference is 8 Leagues, 3 long, and 1 broad, all encompassed with a strong *Wall* of hewed *Stone*; about which there are 130 *Gates*, at each of which there is kept a *Porter* with two *Halberdiers*, whose Office is to take the names of every one that passes every day in and out; and besides the strong *Wall*, there are for further defence 12 *Forts* or *Cittadels*. In this City there are accounted above 800000 *Houses*, besides 80000 *Mandarins Houses*, 60 great *Market places*, 130 *Butchers Shambles*, each containing about 80 *Shops*, 8000 *Streets*, whereof 600 are fairer and larger then the rest; all which are broad, straight and well disposed, and are compassed about with *Ballisters* of *Copper*: The *Houses* are about two stories high, and built of *Wood*, except those of the *Mandarins*, which are composed of *Hewed Stone*, and encompassed with *Walls*, and *Ditches*, over which they have *Stone Bridges*, with rich *Gates* and *Arches*. The *Houses* or rather *Palaces* of the *Chaems*, *Auchacys*, *Aytans*, *Tutons*, and *Chumbims*, which are Governors of the Kingdoms or Provinces of the Empire of *China*, under the Emperor, are stately Structures of about 6 or 7 stories high, and richly adorned with *Gold*, in which are kept their *Magazins* for *Arms*, *Ammunition*; as also their *Treasuries*, their *Wardrops*, and their *Fine* The City of *Nanquin* described.

For-

Porcelain, which by them is ſo highly eſteemed. Here are about 2300 *Pagodes*, a thouſand of which were *Monaſteries* for Religious Perſons, which are exceeding rich. Here are alſo about thirty great *Priſons* which will contain about two or three thouſand Priſoners a-piece: Alſo a great *Hoſpital* for the relief of the Poor. At the entrance of every principal Street, for the ſecurity of the *Inhabitants*, there are *Arches* and *Gates* which are kept ſhut every night; and in moſt of the chief Streets are pleaſant *Fountains*.

In this City there is accounted about ten thouſand Trades for the working of *Silks*, which from thence are ſent all over the Kingdom; which at every *New* and *Full Moon*, amongſt divers other *Commodities*, are vended at *Fairs* in ſeveral places of the City. Its Traffick and Commerce bring thither ſo great a multitude of People, that its Streets are ſcarce able to be paſſed for the throng. Its *Commodities* and *Manufactures* are in ſo great eſteem, that they utter better then others; and all the neighbouring Countries make a great number of *Manufactures*.

The Revenue which the King receives from this *Province* is exceeding vaſt, the *Inhabitants* paying into his *Exchequer* Sixty Millions of *Crowns* yearly; beſides great *Exciſes* upon all *Commodities*, if *Mandelſloe* may be believed; and if he receiveth ſo much out of one *Province*, judge what a vaſt Revenue he hath from all the *Provinces*, many of which are no ways interior to this.

The Province of *Chiquian*.

The Province of *CHEQUIAN* which *Purchas* calls *Eſſiram*, paſſes likewiſe for one of the beſt *Provinces* of *China*. The pleaſant Rivers which run through it, and the many good *Ports*, with its Iſles it hath on the Coaſt, doth facilitate the utterance of its *Merchandizes*; and particularly, both *Raw Silk*, and prepared in *Thred*, and in *Stuffs*, which it diſtributes to the other *Provinces* of *China*, and throughout all the World; the other *Provinces* of *China*, not having enough for their uſe. Of this *Silk* there is one ſort which is reſerved to be employed in divers works mixed with *Gold*, with great art and curioſity, and thoſe are only for the Kings *Palace*. This *Province* hath about ſeventy Cities, of which ſix are of conſiderable note, as 1 *Quinſay*, now called *Hamceu*, once the *Metropolis* of *China*; 2 *Liampo*, a fair City ſeated on the Sea; 3 *Aucheo* alſo commodiouſly ſeated on the Sea; 4 *Scanutanu* an In-land City, 5 *Chequian* alſo an In-land City, but fair, well built, and frequented; and 6 *Succu*, ſeated on the Sea, and about 25 Leagues from the City of *Nanquin*.

Its chief places

All which are fair, ſtrong, well built, and very populous Cities, but not comparable to *Quinſay*, of which a word or two.

The City of *Quinſay* deſcribed.

Quinſay or *Hamceu*, as I ſaid before, was once the *Metropolis* of *China*, being (if we may give credit to *Authors*,) 100 miles in circuit, and having in the midſt thereof, a *Lake* of about 30 miles in compaſs, in which are two fair Iſlands, and in them two ſtately *Palaces* adorned with all neceſſaries, either for Majeſty or Conveniency; the City having variety of ſtately *Palaces*. Its *Houſes* as well private as publick, are fair and well built, having abundance of *Pagodes*, the Streets large, well ordered and paved with *Free-ſtone*. To this City are ſaid to belong about 10000 Sail of great and ſmall Veſſels, which are inhabited by People, who there negotiate their affairs, and remove from one place and City to another, as their occaſions ſerve them. There are ſaid to be in this City about 15000 *Prieſts*, and beſides the vaſt number of *Inhabitants*, there are about 60000 perſons which are employed in working of *Silk*. But this City, ſince *Pequin* and *Fanquin* are become the Reſidence of the King and Court, hath much loſt its former ſplendor.

This *Province* is obſerved to have a great number of *Temples* magnificently built, and the *Lake Sihu* bordered with ſtately *Palaces*, and encompaſſed with *Hills* covered with *Trees* and rare *Plants*. A place ſo pleaſant and delightful, that the greateſt and richeſt of the *Province* paſs here their time, and expend their goods.

There are alſo in this *Province* whole *Foreſts* of *Mulberry-trees*, by reaſon of which they have the greateſt product of *Silk*, of any *Province* in *China*; which they furniſh ſeveral Kindoms with, as well in *Europe*, as in *Aſia*.

Along

Along the Coaſt of this Provi nce are ſeated ſeveral Iſles, ſome of which are very conſiderable, as *Mochoſa* and *Sunkiam*, which is about 25 Leagues broad, and as many long; nigh to the ſhore of which ly ſeveral others, but of a leſſer bigneſs. Its other Iſles, are 1. *Suan.* 2 *Olepio*, 3 *Avarella*, and 4 the Iſles of *Chapoſi*, which are a body of ſeveral ſmall Iſles.

The Province of *FUQUIEN* is not ſo fertile as *Chequin* and *Canton*, between which it is ſituated. Its *Inhabitants* endeavour to repair that default by their Trade with Strangers, and principally with *Japan*, the *Philippines*, *Fermoſa* or *Fair Iſland*, which is directly oppoſite to their Coaſt. The *Earth* produceth *Gold*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Sugar*, *Calamba*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, *Quickſilver*, *Precious Stones*, *Fruits*, *Grains* and *Cattle*; alſo *Silk* and *Cotton*, of which they make divers *Manufactures*, as alſo they make all ſorts of *Paper*. The Province of *Fuquien*. Its Commodities and chief places.

There are in this Province ſeveral Cities of note, but its chief are 1 *Focheu*, ſeated on a fair *River* not above 17 Leagues from the *Sea*; 2 *Chincheo*, alſo commodiouſly ſeated on a fair *River* or *Arm* of the *Sea*, from which it is diſtant about 10 Leagues, 3 *Tenping*, 4 *Chining*, and 5 *Hinghoa*.

The *Inhabitants* of *Fermoſa* are almoſt all *Savages*, the *Spaniards* have built one *Fortreſs* on the Eaſt ſide, and the *Hollanders* another on the Weſt ſide and towards the Continent, which they call *Zealand*. The *Air* is temperate, and healthful, which makes the Province become very populous; and along the Coaſt are ſeated ſeveral Iſles, as *Lanquin*, *Baboxin*, &c.

The Province of *CANTON* or *QUANTUNG*, though one of the leaſt Provinces of *China* in extent, yet by the reaſon of the goodneſs of its *Soyl*, and the conveniency of its ſituation, being the firſt that preſents its ſelf to thoſe of *Europe*, *Africa* and *Aſia*, which come to *China*, it abounds in *Wheat*, *Rice*, and other *Grains*, *Sugar*, *Gold*, *Precious Stones*, *Pearls*, *Steel*, *Quick-ſilver*, *Silk*, *Salt-Peter*, *Calamback-wood* and *Copper*, *Iron* and *Tin*, of which they make curious Veſſels, which they varniſh with *Charam*, and which are brought to *Europe*. They make alſo the Barrels of their *Guns* in that nature, that though they are never ſo much laden, yet they do not break. The Province of *Canton*, its fertility, commodities, &c.

The *Inhabitants* are very civil, induſtrious and ingenious, but they are better in imitation then invention; being in the firſt ſo great maſters, that there is no rarity or manufacture whatſoever that comes to their ſight, but they will exactly pattern as well as the *Europeans*; and in all manner of *Goldſmiths* work they far exceed them. Its Inhabitants.

In this Province are obſerved to be three things which are not in the other Provinces, that is, Men which ſpit *Blood* continually; *Mountains* without *Snow*; and *Trees* always green. Three things noted in this Province.

In this Province are about 80 Cities both ſmall and great, the chief whereof are 1 *Quangcheu* or *Canton*, under which I ſhall include the Trade of *China*, as being the chiefeſt place of *Traffick*. It is well built, of great *Traffick*, rich and very populous; to which the *Portugals* have a great Trade, being commodiouſly ſeated on an *Arm* of the *Sea*. Its chief places

2. The Iſland and City of *AMACAO* is ſeated oppoſite to the City of *Canton*, on the North ſide of a *Bay*, which is at the mouth of the great *River* of *Canton*, which iſſueth out of the Lake of *Quancy*. This place is inhabited by the *Portugals*, intermixed with the natural *Chinois*; their particular Trade is with the City of *Canton*, which may be counted the Staple of all the *China Commodities*, whether they are permitted to come twice a year; at which time there are *Fairs* kept for the vending of their *Commodities*, which they carry to *Malacca*, *Goa*, and ſo into ſeveral parts of *Europe*. But though they are admitted the liberty of Trade, yet are they denied the freedom of lying in the City at nights; neither to enter the Walls without ſetting down their names in Books, which are kept by perſons at each Gate for the ſame purpoſe, which when they depart at night, they croſs out. The Iſle and City of *Amacao* and its Trade.

Its other chief places are 1 *Xuquin*, a *Maritime* City, 2 *Luichen*, alſo ſeated on the *Sea*, very commodious for *Traffick*, and oppoſite to the Iſle of *Aymin*, from which it is diſtant about 5 Leagues, 3 *Lampaca*, alſo ſeated upon the *Sea*, and 4 *Nanhium* ſeated far within Land, and among the *Mountains* which parts this Province from *Chiamſi*.

The

The Isle of *Ayman*, & its commodities.

The Isle of *AYNAN* is also comprehended under this Province, and is the greatest of all the Islands that belong to *China*. It is distant from *Amacao*, on the South 50 or 60 Leagues; it is almost as long as broad, having 50 Leagues from South to North, where it almost joyns upon the Southern Coast of *China*, and on the other side regards *Cochinchina*. It abounds in *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Tame* and *Wild Beasts*: The *Sea* hath *Pearls*, *Lignum Aquilæ* and *Calamba*. Their *Craw-fish* taken out of the *Water* die, and grow hard like a *Stone*; which being reduced to *Powder*, serves for a remedy against many diseases. The *Earth* hath *Mines* of *Gold* and *Silver*, for which the *Inhabitants* care little. In the midst of the Island, the People are likewise half *Savages*: The chief City is *Kincenfeu*, seated on the *Sea-shore*, and regarding the Province of *Canton*.

The Province of *Quancy*, and its chief Cities.

The Province of *QUANCY*, which *Purchas* calls *Guansa*, enjoys the same temperament with *Canton*, yields the same *Commodities*, and with the same plenty, but is not so much frequented by *Merchants*, nor hath scarce any confluence of *Strangers*; the reason is, because its *Rivers* loose and discharge themselves all in the Province, and at the City of *Canton*, which forces them to pass through the hands of those of *Canton*, to utter their *Merchandizes*, and receive those of others. In this Province there are Ten large Cities, of which *Quancy* is chief, all well built and very populous, besides about one hundred small ones.

The Province of *Zunnan*, and its chief places

The Province of *ZUNNAN*, which *Purchas* calls *Vanam*, is the last on the South Coast, where it is washed by the Gulf of *Cochinchina*, and on the West, where it touches on the Kingdom of *Tunquin*, and on divers People beyond those *Mountains* which inclose the West of *China*. The Women have here the liverty to go in publick to buy and sell, which those of other parts of *China* do not. It hath *Mines* which yield a kind of *Amber* redder and less pure then ours; but which hath some particular vertue against *Fluxes*. Besides this, it transports few *Merchandizes* into other places. This Province hath likewise good store of small and great Cities, the chief of which bears the name of the Province, and *Hilan*, seated on a Lake so called, which is in form of a *Crescent*.

The Province of *Chiamsi*, its Trade & chief places.

The Province of *CHIAMSI*, which *Purchas* calls *Lansay*, is inclosed with *Mountains*, which have their passages open to the Neighbouring Provinces, and particularly on the Coast of *Canton*. On the *Mountain* of *Muilin* there is a great concourse for the carriages of *Merchandizes*, which are transported from *Canton* to *Nanquin*, which is done by mounting the *River* of *Canton*, unto the foot of the *Mountain*: From whence the carriages being taken out of the Vessels, are loaden, and born upon Mens backs to the other side of the *Mountain*, where there is found another navigable *River*, which crosses the Province *Kiamsi*, till it falls into the famous *Jamchuquiam*, which leads to *Nanquin*, and the *Sea*.

This Province is so peopled, that a part of its *Inhabitants* are constrained to spread themselves through all other Provinces of *China*, to seek their fortune. It is in one of the Cities of this Province that they make *Porcelain*; the Water here being fit to give it perfection: The Earth is fetched from other places, beaten and fashioned at the same time; the tincture they most commonly apply, is *Azure*, some lay on *Vermilion*, others *Yellow*. In this Province are 12 great Cities, besides about sixty small ones, its chief City being called *Nanciam*, seated on a Lake, as is *Quianhanfu*, and others. Its other chief places are, 1 *Kienchan*, 2 *Linbiang*, 3 *Juencheu*, 4 *Nangam*.

The Province of *Huquam*, and its Commodities.

The Province of *HUQUAM* is so abundant in *Rice*, that it is able to furnish a good part of *China*: It is likewise rich in *Oyls* and *Fish*. The *Jamchuquian*, and many other *Rivers* and *Lakes* cross it on all sides, and carry its *Commodities* towards *Nanquin*, and to *Quincheu*. It is very populous, containing 15 great Cities, and about 100 small ones, the chief of which are, 1 *Chingiang*, 2 *Huchang*, 3 *Suchang*, 4 *Tocheu*, &c.

The

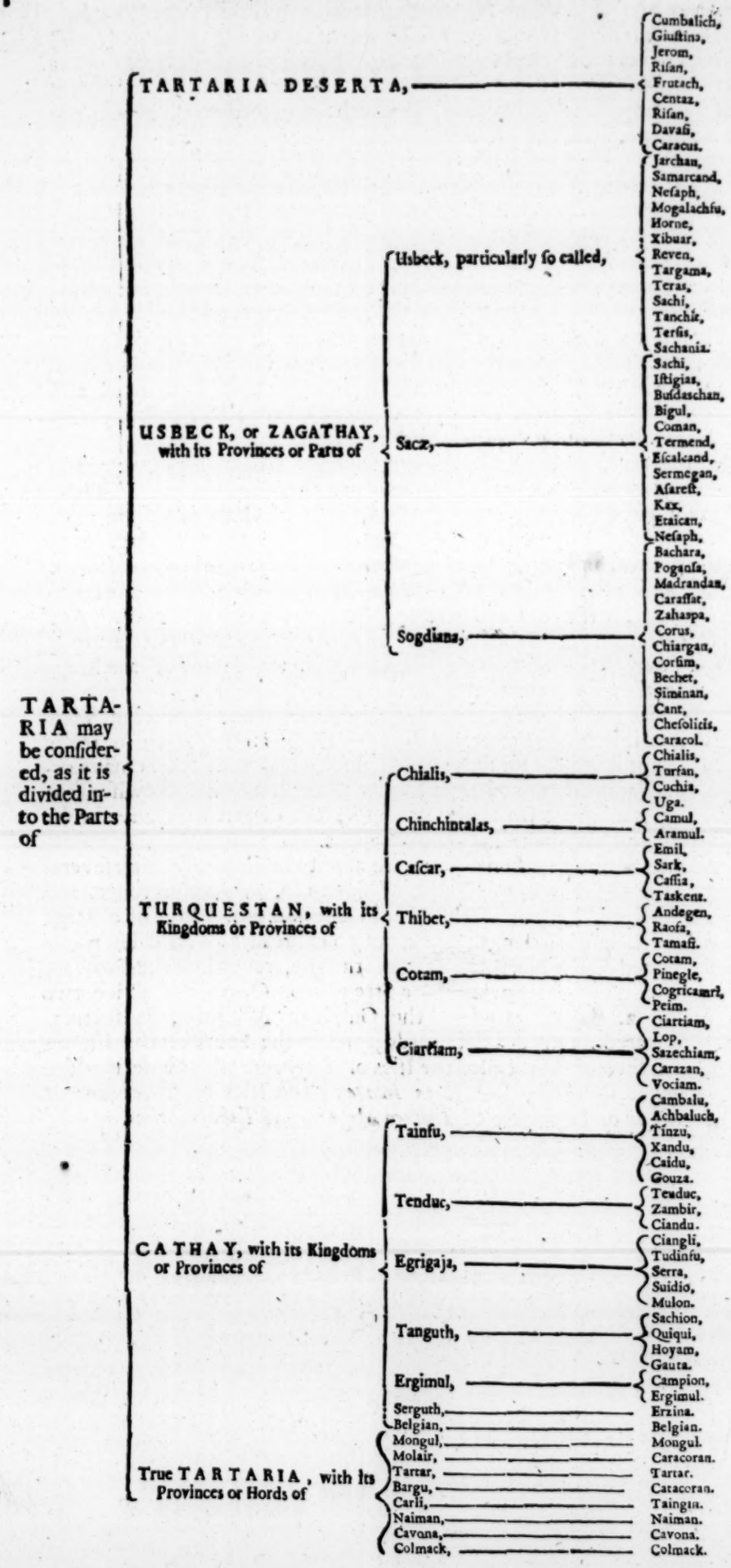
The Province of *SUCHUEN*, which *Mendoza* calls *Susuan*; *Purchas*, *Soin*, is one of the leſſer Provinces o the Kingdom; it is high ſcituated, and pours down its Rivers into the Neighbouring Provinces. Here is found good ſtore of *yellow Amber*, and excellent *Rhubarb*. Its chief Cities are in number 8, together with about 120 leſſer ones; all which are exceeding populous, the chief bearing the name of the Province. The Povince of *Suchuen* deſcribed.

The laſt of the Provinces I have to treat of is *QUICHEU*, or likewiſe *CUICHEU*, according to *Purchas*. It borders on the People *Timocoves*, *Gueyes*, the Kingdom of *Ciocangue*, and the People called *Layes*: Here is that famous Lake *Cincui-Hai*, from whence comes divers Rivers which water *China*. They make here quantity of Arms of all ſorts, to ſerve againſt thoſe People which border upon them which once belonged to *China*; but which now, for the moſt part, are Enemies to it. This Province is Hilly and uneven, which makes it not very fertil in *Corn*, *Fruits*, *&c.* but it hath abundance of *Quickſilver*; and alſo it breeds the beſt *Horſes* of any Province in all *China*. Cities in this Province are very few, there being not above 15, both ſmall and great; the chief of which are, 1. *Quicheo*, ſeated on the River *Tanchuquian*. 2. *Rueyang*. 3. *Hiauchoau*. 4. *Liping*. 5. *Cipan*, *&c.* The Province of *Quichea*, and its chief places.

All theſe Provinces, or rather all theſe Kingdoms of *China*, are governed by divers Magiſtrates, which thoſe of *Europe* call in general *Mandarins*. Theſe are perſons that have Patents, whom the King or chief Officer of State doth chuſe, after knowledge of their capacity and honeſty; the degrees given to *Students*, the general and particular *Governments*, the charges of the *Militia*, the receipt of, and management of *Revenues*, the building and repairing of *Publick Buildings*, the *Civil* and *Criminal Juſtice*, are in their hands. And there are *Appeals* from one to the other, according to the order and nature of Affairs. The *Council of Eſtate* always reſides near the perſon of the King, and hath a general eye over the Kingdom.

But it ſhall ſuffice; what we have ſaid of *China* let us finiſh by ſaying, That we have deſcribed it as it was before the *Tartars* made an irruption in 1618. Theſe *Tartars* kept it wholly for ſome years, ſince which the *Chinois* have repulſed them, and have eſtabliſhed their former eſtate, receiving likewiſe *Chriſtianity* with hopes of great fruits and progreſs; but of late they have broke into *China* again, and have committed great Spoils.

Beſides the Iſles already ſpoken of, here are about the Coaſt of *China* ſeveral others, as the Iſle of *Corey* in the Gulph of *Nanquin*, of good account, and well frequented, affording many of the *China* Commodities. It is of a large extent, being 100 Leagues in length, and about 50 in breadth. Its chief places are, *Tauxem*, ſeated on the Northern part of the Iſle, regarding the Province of *Leaoton*; from which it is parted by a Stre ght or Gulph not above two Leagues broad. 2. *Corey*, ſeated on the Gulph of *Nanquin*, Southernly. 3. *Taſoran*, alſo ſeated on the Sea Eaſtwards; and on the South of this Iſle are ſeated a Body of ſeveral Iſles, called the Iſles of *Larrons*. Likewiſe the Iſles of *Fuego*, *Lequeio Grande*, *Les Roys Mages*; the Iſles of *Peſcheurs* or *Fiſhers*; of *Pakan* or *Formoſa*; of *Tabaco Miguel*, and *Tabaco Xima*. The Iſles about *China*.


TARTARIA may be considered, as it is divided into the Parts of
TARTARIA DESERTA,
Cumbalich, Giuſtina, Jerom, Riſan, Frutach, Centaz, Riſan, Davaſi, Caracus.
USBECK, or ZAGATHAY, with its Provinces or Parts of
Usbeck, particularly ſo called,
Jarchan, Samarcand, Neſaph, Mogalachſu, Horne, Xibuar, Reven, Targama, Teras, Sachi, Tanchit, Terſis, Sachania.
Sacz,
Sachi, Iſtigias, Buſdaschan, Bigul, Coman, Termend, Eſcalcand, Sermegan, Aſareſt, Kax, Etaican, Neſaph.
Sogdiana,
Bachara, Poganſa, Madrandan, Caraffat, Zahaspa, Corus, Chiargan, Corſim, Bechet, Siminan, Cant, Cheſolicis, Caracol.
TURQUESTAN, with its Kingdoms or Provinces of
Chialis,
Chialis, Turfan, Cuchia, Uga.
Chinchintalas,
Camul, Aramul.
Caſcar,
Emil, Sark, Caſſia, Taskent.
Thibet,
Andegen, Raoſa, Tamaſi.
Cotam,
Cotam, Pinegle, Cogricamri, Peim.
Ciartiam,
Ciartiam, Lop, Sazechiam, Carazan, Vociam.
CATHAY, with its Kingdoms or Provinces of
Tainfu,
Cambalu, Achbaluch, Tinzu, Xandu, Caidu, Gouza.
Tenduc,
Tenduc, Zambir, Ciandu.
Egrigaja,
Ciangli, Tudinfu, Serra, Suidio, Mulon.
Tanguth,
Sachion, Quiqui, Hoyam, Gauta.
Ergimul,
Campion, Ergimul.
Serguth, Erzina.
Belgian, Belgian.
True TARTARIA, with its Provinces or Hords of
Mongul, Mongul.
Molair, Caracoran.
Tartar, Tartar.
Bargu, Catacoran.
Carli, Taingia.
Naiman, Naiman.
Cavona, Cavona.
Colmack, Colmack.

TAR-

To the Right Worshipfull Sr. Iames Shaen of Shyne in Surrey Knight and Baronet.
This Mapp is humbly D.D. by R. Blome.
THE SEPT
EM PIRE of RUSSIA
KOLMACKI
NAGAIA HORDA
KOLMACHI
THE CASPIEN SEA or the SEA of GILAN, TABARESTAN &c.
THE EMPIRE of PERSIA
the EMPIRE
GREAT MO
OBDORA
BAIDA
TAR
TARIA
CAFRA KING DOME
DESERT
KITHA
ISKO
CHAZAL
TIBRET
TOBROT
Thomas Bromsford Sculp

A MAPP of y Kingdome of TARTARY By Monsieur Sanson.
TRIONAL GLACICK and
ICK OCEAN or the
RTARIAN
SEA
THE
TARTARIAN
SEA
aux Arabes
Tartin Prou
BARGU
MEDITÆ
CIORZA
BARS:
CARIA
COL
UE
MON:
GUL
MONGULS:
Tartar
MAGOG
CAVONA
MELAIR
NAIMAN
TARTARIA
MOTRICK
Desert of Bel:
STIN:
BELGIAN
GIU
KAI
MA
CHI
SERGUTH
Chinese in talas
EGRIMUL
Campion
CATHAY
Cambalu
Chialis
Aramul
TAN
GUTH
EGRIGAIA
TAINFU
Turfan
GHAR
QUES
Desert of
Lop
Chiartiam
Pein
Cotam
Peuko
Chete
Hochm
Hohom
Pempan
Feriam
Hoquay
Sarichian
Caracan
Mechendan
Karahotanka
Vociam
PART
THE
KINGDOME
of CHINA
Tenduc
Chinan
Changan
Taiyuen
Cuenganfu
Lanchin
Cinchee
Corey
Tenduc
Cambalu
Tainfu
Cuenganfu
Chinchee
Corey

TARTARY.

TARTARY, or *TARTARIA*, is ſeated in the moſt Northern part of all *Aſia*, and extends it ſelf from Eaſt to Weſt, from the River *Volga* and *Oby*, which ſeparates it from *Europe*, unto the Streight of *Jeſſo*, which ſeparates it from *America*; and from South to North, from the *Caſpian* Sea, the River *Gehon*, and the Mountains of *Caucaſus* and *Uſſonte*, &c. which divides it from the more Southernly part of *Aſia*, unto the Northern *Frozen* or *Scythian* Ocean. *Tartary*, its extent.

It reaches in length from the 19*th* unto the 180*th* degree of *Longitude*, which is the half of our *Hemiſphere*; and in breadth, from the 35*th* or 40*th* unto the 70*th* or 72*th* degree of *Latitude*, which is half the breadth of all *Aſia*: So that it may contain 1500 Leagues from Weſt to Eaſt, and 7 or 800 from North to South. Its length and breadth.

Its poſition is almoſt entirely in the *Temperate Zone*; nevertheleſs its more Southern parts being in the midſt of this *Temperate Zone*, and the reſt advancing to the *Cold* or *Frozen*; and its Southern parts being almoſt all bounded with very high Mountains, which keeps off the heat of the mid-day Sun, and renders it more cold towards the North; We may ſay, that *Tartary* in general hath its temperature much more cold than temperate. Its Poſition.

Its Neighbours are the *Moſcovites*, on the Weſt; the *Perſians*, the *Indians* or the *Mogolls* and the *Chinois*, on the South; the reſt is waſhed by that Sea of which we have little knowledge; ſome place towards the Eaſt, the Streight of *Anian*, which ſhould ſeparate it from *America*; others, the Streight of *Jeſſo*, which divides it from the Land or Iſle of *Jeſſo*, which is between *Aſia* and *America*, as we ſhall declare after *Japan*. Some eſteeming the *Northern Ocean* in one manner, and ſome in another. Its Neighbours

The name of *Tartaria* is apparently taken from the River, *Quarter*, or *Hord* of *Tartar*; from whence theſe People being iſſued, have over-run and made themſelves known in all parts of *Aſia*. Others take it from the word *Tatar* or *Totar*, which in the *Syriack* ſignifies *Remnant* or *Forſaken*, becauſe they eſteem them the *Remnant* of the *Jews*, of which *Ten Tribes* were tranſported into *Media* by *Salmanzer*. They muſt then add, that theſe *Ten Tribes* paſſed from *Media* into *Scythia*, which is not obſerved by the Ancients. However it be, the *Perſians* yet call this Country *Tartar*, and its People *Tatarons*; the *Chinois*, *Taguis*. Its Name, why ſo called.

The People which poſſeſs this Country differ ſomething from one another, as well in *Perſonage* as in *Religion* and *Manners*; but for the moſt part they are of an indifferent Stature, ugly Countenances, thick Lips, hollow Eyed, flat Noſes, broad Faced, very ſtrong, ſtout, valiant, and good Warriers; very active, vigilant, and exceeding quick of Foot; patient in all Afflictions; they are very rude, barbarous and revengeful, not ſparing their Enemies, whom in revenge they eat, firſt letting out their Blood, which they keep, uſing it as *Wine* at their Feaſts. Its Inhabitants

Their Habit is very mean, which is for the moſt part made of courſe ſtuff, which reaches but to their Knees; yet are they very proud, deſpiſing all other Nations, and thinking their *Cham* to be the greateſt Prince in the World; whom they greatly fear and reverence, being no better than his Slaves. They are very naſty and ſluttiſh, much given to drink, of a treacherous and thieviſh nature. Their Habit.

Religion. In matters of Religion, they are generally *Pagans* and *Mahumetans*, which about the year 1246. crept in amongſt them, which ſince hath ſpread it ſelf over their Country, and intermixing with *Paganiſm*; yet hath it not ſo much prevailed as to extinguiſh *Chriſtianity*, which was firſt planted amongſt the *Scythians* (which were the Ancient people of *Tartary*) by the preaching of two of the Apoſtles, St. *Philip* and St. *Andrew*, which of latter years hath much loſt it ſelf, and not only by the prevailing of the *Neſtorian* Sect, but chiefly for want of inſtructing the People in the true Orthodoxal points of *Chriſtian Religion*.

Dyet. Their Food is mean and very ſluttiſhly dreſt; yet uſe they entertainments, and refuſe nothing but *Swines fleſh*, and eat all without *Salt*. They are much given to *Hawking*, and other Sports; but not much to Arts or Literature: The *Women* are much of the nature with the *Men*.

Their form of Government. The Government (as *Heylin* obſerveth) is Tyrannical, their great *Cham* or *King* being Lord of all, in whoſe breaſt lieth their Laws, taking the Eſtates and Lives away of whom he pleaſeth; whom they ſo much reverence, that they call him *the ſhadow of Spirits*, and *Son of the Immortal God*, and eſteem him the Monarch of the whole World. In their execution of Juſtice they are very ſevere, puniſhing every ſmall offence with ſudden death. His Revenue without doubt muſt be very great; for beſides the ſole trade of *Pearl-fiſhing*, which upon pain of death none dares to fiſh for, beſides thoſe employed by him; alſo all the *Gold* and *Silver* that is either found in, or brought into the Kingdom, he doth aſſume to himſelf; as alſo the Tenth of all things that the Country doth produce; and alſo what elſe he thinketh fit, as being (as I ſaid before) Lord over them all.

The Revenue of the *Cham*.

Here the Men have the liberty of 2 or 3 Wives, which they never chooſe but out of their own Tribe: and every Tribe hath a Chief, who is one of the Nobility of the Country, and carries for his Banner a *Horſes-Tail* faſtned to a *Half-Pike*, and died of the colour belonging to his Tribe.

Their Forces. As concerning the Forces that the Great *Cham* is able to raiſe, they may be ſuppoſed to be very great, by that which may appear by *Tamerlanes* Army, which conſiſted of a 1200000 Horſe and Foot; beſides, if we conſider what a diſturber he hath been, and how he hath enlarged his Territories of his Neighbours, as the *Chinois*, the *Moſcovites*, &c. we may judge him powerful; but as his power is great on Land, it is as weak by Sea, ſcarce being Maſter of any *Ships*, and as little doth he regard them, though other Princes eſteem them as a great ſecurity to their Kingdom.

Tartary divided into parts. I ſhall divide *Tartary* into five principal Parts; which are, *Tartaria* the Deſart, *Usbeck* or *Zagathay*, *Turqueſtan*, *Cathay*, and the True *Tartaria*; the firſt and laſt are the moſt Northern, barbarous, and unknown. The others more Southerly, are better civilized and known, having abundance of fair Cities, and driving a good Trade.

TARTARIA the Deſart anſwers to the ancient *Scythia intra Imaum*; *Usbeck* or *Zagathay* to the ancient *Bactriana* and *Sogdiana*; both the one and the other new Name retaining, in my opinion, ſomething of the ancient; *Sogdiana* of *Zagathay*, and *Bactriana* of *Usbeck*: *Turqueſtan* to the ancient *Scythia extra Imaum*: *Cathay* is the *Serico Regia*. As for the True *Tartary* it is unknown unto the Ancients, or at leaſt it holds the moſt Northern part of the one and the other *Scythia*.

Tartaria Deſerta, its bounds. *Tartaria Deſerta* is bounded on the Weſt with the Rivers *Volga* and *Oby*, which divides it from *Moſcovy* on the Eaſt, by Mount *Imaus*, which ſeparates it from the True *Tartaria*, and from *Turqueſtan*; on the North by the *Septentrional* Ocean; on the South by the *Caſpian* or *Tabareſtan* Sea, by the River *Cheſell*, and by certain Mountains which joyn themſelves with *Imaus*, and divide it from *Usbeck* or *Zagathay*. All the Country is inhabited by Peoples or Tribes, which are Troops or Bands which they call *Hordes*, having very few Walled places, whither they only retire themſelves when forced; for they have no ſettled ſtay or abode, but wandring perpetually, carrying and driving with them their *Tents*, *Chariots*, *Families*, and all they poſſeſs, ſtopping

Its People, and the manner of their abode.

ſtopping only there were they find the beſt food for their Cattel, to which, as alſo in Hunting and War, they moſt addict themſelves. They Till not the Earth, though it be good and fertil; and hence it is that this is called *Tartary the Deſart*. The chief places in this part are; 1. *Cumbalich*, ſeated on a Lake. 2. *Girſtina*, ſeated between the two other Lakes, which are conjoyned together by a River. 3. *Jerom*, on a branch of the River *Oby*. 4. *Riſan*, ſeated on the River *Jaick*. 5. *Frutach*. 6. *Centan*. 7. *Caracus*. 8. *Organci*, and 9. *Davaſi*. The People that inhabit in this part, have their riſe from three ſeveral Originals, which are diſpoſed of into many ſeveral parts; as, 1. The *Circaſſians*, which are for the moſt part *Chriſtians*, and border upon the *Euxine* Sea. 2. The *Samoyeds*, who are altogether *Idolaters*, inhabiting towards the Northern Ocean: and, 3. *Tartars*, which are *Mahometans*, and ſeated betwixt both the other. And thoſe again are ſubdivided into divers *Tribes* or *Hordes*; the chiefeſt of which are, 1. The *Nagajan Tartars*, which are held to be more fierce and cruel, and better Warriers than the other *Tartars*, but void of all Arts; deſpiſing *Mony*, or the uſe of *Corn*, accounting *Mares-milk* and *Horſe-fleſh* their beſt dyet, which they are not over-curious in dreſſing, it ſufficing if it is only heated, though with the Sun: and this *Horde* paies yet ſome Tribute to the great Duke of *Moſcovy*, to whom likewiſe part of this *Tartaria Deſerta* belongs. 2. The *Thumenenſes*, who are alſo a warlike People, and much addicted to *Divinations* and *Sorceries*. 3. The *Zavolhenſes* are very powerful. The *Kirgeſſi* are alſo very ſtrong and warlike; they are partly *Gentiles*, and partly *Mahometans*: They care not to bury their Dead, becauſe of their ſo after removing, thinking never to ſee them more, and ſo leaving them hanging upon Trees. The Country is very fertil, if tilled, being fit to produce ſeveral good Commodities, and is alſo very fit for Traffick, having commodious Havens; and if they would addict themſelves to it, would ſoon gain a good Trade with ſeveral other Nations.

The *Nagajan Tartars*, &c.

USBECK, or *ZAGATHAY*, extends it ſelf from the *Caſpian* Sea unto *Turqueſtan*, and from *Perſia* and *India* unto *Tartaria Deſerta*: poſſeſſing all that is upon the Rivers of *Cheſel*, and of *Gehan* or *Albiamu*.

Usbeck, its bounds.

Its People are the moſt civil and ingenious of all the Weſtern *Tartars*, fierce in War, being ſtrong and active, patient in labour, not much addicted to vices, Theft they puniſh ſeverely; they have a great trade with the *Perſians*, to whom they have ſometimes been Subjects, ſometimes Enemies, and ſometimes in good Intelligence; and with the *Indians*, where they have likewiſe ſomething to do; and with *Cathay*, where they utter their much prized *Manna*, bringing back *Silk*, which they make into Manufactures, and ſell in *Moſcovy*.

Its people. Their trade.

This part of *Tartary* did contain ſeveral Provinces: 1. *Zagathay*, eſpecially ſo called. 2. *Sacæ*. 3. *Sogdiana*, with ſome other of leſs note, in all which are not many conſiderable Cities, the moſt famous of which are *Samarcand*, which was both the Cradle and Grave to *Tamberlan* the Great, from whom the Great *Mogolls* boaſt themſelves to be lineally deſcended, who enriched it with the faireſt Spoils of *Aſia*, and adorned it with an *Academy*, yet in ſome repute among the *Mahometans*: Alſo *Bachara* and *Budaſchan*, and alſo *Balick*, according to ſome; but which I eſteem in *Choraſan*, which hath divers times been in the hands of the *Chams* of *Usbeck*. *Badaſchian* is likewiſe on the Frontiers of *Choraſan*, *Bochara* or *Bachara*, where lived *Avicenna* one of the moſt famous *Philoſophers* and *Phyſicians* of all the Eaſt. The Country is of a different Soil; that of *Zagathay* is indifferent fertil, which is much augmented by the induſtry of the Inhabitants, who are likewiſe held the moſt ingenious, being lovers of Arts, and well skilled in Manufactures, by reaſon of which they have a good trade with Merchants, which come from ſeveral places. *Sacæ* is very barren, and ill manured, and full of wild *Deſarts*, *Forreſts*, and Uninhabited places, by reaſon of which the Inhabitants remove their Herds of Cattle from place to place, where they can find beſt food for them. *Sogdiana* hath very rich Paſtures, and watered with many good Rivers, which much conduces to its fertility; in which, as alſo in *Zagathay*, are ſeveral Towns

Its parts, chief places and fertility.

and

and Cities; as 1. *Jarchan.* 2. *Sachi.* 3. *Iſtigias.* 4. *Buſdaſchan.* 5. *Bachara:* and 6. *Pbganſa*, which laſt is ſeated on the Sea.

Turqueſtan, its bounds and chief places.

TURQUESTAN lies East from *Usbeck* or *Zagathay*, West from *Cathay*, North from *India*, and South from True *Tartary*. It is ſubdivided into ſome Kingdoms, of which the beſt known are *Caſcar*, *Cotam*, *Chialis*, *Ciartiam*, *Thibet*, *Chinchintalis*, &c. A part of their chief Cities being of the ſame name. Some name *Hiarchan* inſtead of *Caſcar*, and *Turon* or *Turphan* inſtead of *Chialis*, for the chief Cities of the Kingdom. That of *Caſcar* is the richeſt, moſt fertil, and beſt cultivated of all: That of *Ciartiam* is eſteemed the leaſt, and all ſandy, having in recompence many *Jaſpars* and *Caſſidoines*; but that of *Caſcar* hath likewiſe excellent *Rhubarb*, and in great quantity. Thoſe of *Cotam* and *Chialis* have *Corn*, *Wine*, *Flax*, *Hemp*, *Cotton*, &c. *Thibet* is more advanced towards the *Mogolls* of *India*, and the moſt engaged in the Mountains of *Imaus*, *Caucaſus*, and *Uſſontes*. It hath many *wild Beaſts*, *Muſk*, and *Cinnamon*; and they make uſe of *Coral* inſtead of *Mony*. The Relations which have been given in 1624 and 1626, have made this Eſtate ſo great and rich, that they would confound it with *Cathay*: but thoſe of 1651 make the Region very cold, and always covered with *Snow*; eſteeming its King wholly barbarous, and leſs powerful than him of *Serenegar*, who is only a *Rahia* in the Eſtates of the Great *Mogoll*: ſo little aſſurance is there in the moſt part of theſe Relations. The other places of note in *Turqueſtan* are, *Camul*, *Turfan*, *Emil*, *Sark*, *Caſſia*, *Andegen*, *Raoſa*, *Cotain*, *Peim*, *Finegle*, *Lop*, *Ciartiam*, *Sazechiam*, and *Vociam*; and in this part is the Lake of *Kithay*, which is 65 Leagues in length, and 40 in breadth.

Its fertility and commodities, &c.

Cathay, its bounds.

CATHAY is the moſt Eaſtern part of all *Tartaria*, and eſteemed the richeſt and moſt powerful Eſtate. It is contiguous to *Turqueſtan*, on the Weſt, to *China* on the South, to True *Tartary* on the North; and on the Eaſt is watered by the Streight of *Jeſſa*.

Some eſteem all *Cathay* under one only Monarch or Emperour, whom they call *Chan* or *Ulacan*, that is, Great *Cham*, and ſpeak him one of the greateſt and richeſt Princes in the World. Others account divers Kings, but all Subjects to the Great *Cham*. The Country is much frequented, well tilled, and in moſt places very fertil, abounding in *Wheat*, *Rice*, *Wool*, *Hemp*, *Silk*, *Muſk*, *Rhubarb*, great Herds of *Camels*, of whoſe Hair they make *Chamlets*, and abundance of *Horſes*, with which they furniſh other Countries, and eſpecially *China*, with what other things can be deſired. *Cambalu* is eſteemed its Metropolitan City, in which the Great *Cham* reſides, pleaſantly ſeated in a fertil Soil, and on the River *Palyſanga*, which hath its courſe through the City, which is ſeated in the midſt of the Country, being as it were the center to others. This City, beſides its Suburbs, is eſteemed to be 28 miles in circuit, being as it were four ſquare, each Angle being 7 miles in length, all encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall 10 paces thick; to which, for entrance into the City, there is at each Angle 3 Gates, to every one of which there is a Palace; beſides in every Angle a more ſumptuous Palace, in which the Armour of the Garriſon Souldiers are kept, which are accounted 1000 of each Gate. The Buildings are (for the moſt part) of *Free-ſtone*, and very proportionably built; the chief Streets large, and ſo ſtrait, that one may ſee from one Gate to the other, which gives it a gallant proſpect.

Its fertility and commodities.

Its chief place *Cambalu*.

The Great *Chams* Palace.

In the midſt of this City is a ſtately Palace, where the Great *Cham* reſides, together with his *Queens* and *Children*. This *Royal Palace* is four ſquare, and of a vaſt bigneſs, having beſides its Out-walls ſeveral other encloſures; adorned with ſtately Structures, beautified with pleaſant *Walks*, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Fiſhponds*, with ſeveral other places for Recreation. His Attendance, State, and Riches, is great. Without the Walls are 12 Suburbs, each 3 or 4 miles in length, adjoyning to each of the 12 Gates; and in theſe Suburbs the *Merchants* and *Strangers* reſide, each Nation having a ſeveral *Cane* or *Store-houſe*, where they both lodge and exerciſe their Trade, bartering their Commodities for one anothers, being of a great Trade, and frequented by *Merchants* and *Strangers* of ſeveral Countries, but more eſpecially by the *Perſians*, *Chinois*, *Indians*, and

Its Trade and Commodities.

and the *Tartars* themſelves, which renders it very populous, it being the chief place for Trade in all *Tartary*, abounding not only in thoſe Commodities aforeſaid, but alſo in the Spices of *India*, the Gems of *Pegu* and *Bengala*, the Drugs of *Arabia*; alſo the *Carpets*, *Tapeſtries*, *Silks* and *Manufactures* of *Perſia*, &c.

Their Monies.

The *Mony* currant here, and throughout this large Territory, is very different, neither is it made of *Gold*, *Silver*, or *Copper*, as with us; but of the middle Bark of the *Mulberry Tree*, which being made ſmooth and firm, they cut round into great and ſmall pieces, on which they imprint the *Kings Mark*, as we do on our Mony; and theſe pieces, according to the bigneſs and thickneſs, are valued at a certain rate, and are paſſable for the buying of all Commodities; and it is deemed death for any one to counterfeit, or make any of this Mony. But in ſome places under the Great *Chams* juriſdiction, they uſe poliſhed *Coral* inſtead of Mony: and in other places they uſe twigs of *Gold*, which is diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral parcels by weight, but without Stamp or Character, and this is held in caſe of great importance: they alſo uſe in ſome places *Porcelain* inſtead of *Mony*; likewiſe they make a kind of Mony of *Salt*, which they boil until it be congealed hard, and then make it up into round lumps, on which is put the *Princes* Stamp. And theſe are the ſeveral ſorts of Mony which paſſeth amongſt them; yet by reaſon of the Trade that this place hath with other Countries there adjacent, their Coyns are here found currant, as are thoſe of the *Grand Signior*, as alſo thoſe of *Moſcovy*.

Beſides this *Palace* aforementioned, he hath another which is eſteemed the principal of his abode, which is not far from this City, which Merchants are not permitted to enter; the Palace is called *Zaindu*, being four ſquare, and, if Authors may be believed, every Square is 8 miles in length, and within this Quadrant is another, whoſe ſides are 6 miles in length, and within that another of 4 miles ſquare, and this is eſteemed the very Palace it ſelf, and between theſe ſeveral Walls are ſtately *Walks*, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Fiſh-ponds*, *Parks*, *Forreſts*, *Chaſes*, for all manner of pleaſures and game, as alſo ſeveral other places for all manner of Courtly and Military exerciſes. This Palace is exceeding richly built, having many ſumptuous Edifices; his attendance great, 12000 Horſe being his daily guard, beſides an exceeding great number of other Attendance and Servitures.

Tanguth, and its chief places.

The greateſt and moſt potent Parts or Kingdoms of *Cathay*, are *TANGUTH*, whoſe chief City is *Campion*; where the *Caravans* of Forreign Merchants ſtop, it not being permitted them to go farther; a City well built, and where the *Chriſtians*, in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had 3 fair Churches; but of later time have much loſt themſelves through the great increaſe of the *Gentiles*, who have here ſeveral Monaſteries, where they keep and worſhip their Idols, where they have alſo ſeveral Religious perſons only dedicated to their ſervice; and this Kingdom hath much *Rhubarb*. The Kingdom of *TENDUC*, with its City of the ſame name, furniſhes *Cloth of Gold* and *Silver*, *Silks*, *Chamlets*, &c. and it is thought that *Preſter John* reſided in theſe quarters; there being yet a particular King, who is a *Chriſtian*, but of the Sect of the *Neſtorians*, and ſubject to the Great *Cham*.

Tenduc.

Thainfur.

THAINFUR is known for the great number of its *People*, for the excellency of its *Vines*, for the goodneſs of its *Arms*, and of its *Cannon*, &c. for the reſt, all great Travellers count Marvels, of the greatneſs, power, and magnificence and riches of this Great *Cham*; of the extent of his Eſtates, of the Kings ſubject to him, of ſo many Ambaſſadors always in his Court, of the reverence and reſpect bore him, of the power and infinite number of his Men of Arms; but it is ſo far from *Europe*, that we could ſcarce believe them, till he made ſeen his power in 1618, having poſſeſſed the Ports and Paſſages of that great Mountain and Wall which ſeparates *Tartaria* from *China*; caſting an infinite number of Men into the great Kingdom, taking and pillaging its faireſt Cities, and almoſt all its Provinces, forced the King of *China* to retire himſelf into *Canton*; leaving him in poſſeſſion of not above 1 or 2 of its Provinces: But the relations of 1650 gives the King of *China* re-entrance into the greateſt part

The ſtate and power of the Great *Cham*.

'eſt part of his Eſtates; its other parts are, *Egrigaja*, whoſe chief places are *Serra* and *Mulon:* alſo *Egrimul*, whoſe chief place is ſo called; then *Serguth*, whoſe chief place is *Erzina*; and laſtly, *Belgian*, whoſe chief place is ſo called.

The People of *Cathay*.

The People in this part of *Tartaria* are generally ſtrong of body, ſtout, warlike, and couragious, though in the greateſt dangers; alſo very active, and patient in afflictions, ingenious, and given to Manufactures, more civil and courteous to Strangers than the reſt of the *Tartars*; loving to wear good Apparel, and feed deliciouſly, which the others are negligent of; in Stature they are but of a mean ſize, but well proportioned, and of an indifferent good Complexion.

Their Religion.

In matter of Religion they are either *Gentiles*, *Chriſtians*, or *Mahometans*, which latter is moſt uſed, it being publickly and generally allowed amongſt them, in which Religions they obſerve ſeveral Ceremonies, not much different from thoſe of other Countries, eſpecially in *Chriſtianity* and *Mahometiſm*.

The True *Tartary* deſcribed.

The True and Ancient *TARTARY*, is the moſt Northern of all the parts of *Tartary* taken together, and likewiſe the coldeſt, the moſt untilled, and moſt barbarous of all: nevertheleſs it is from hence that the *Tartars* iſſued in the year 1200, and having made themſelves Maſters of 6 *Hordes* moſt adjacent to theirs, have ſince made themſelves known, and have carried their Arms and their Government into the greateſt and faireſt parts of *Aſia*. This is the place where the *Ten Tribes* are ſuppoſed to have reſted, which were tranſported into *Media*; and ſome ſay, that the name of *Dan*, *Nepthalim*, and *Zebulon*, are yet found amongſt them; but it is eaſie to forge what names men pleaſe in parts wholly unknown. The *Kingdoms*, *Provinces*, or *Hordes* of the Great *Mogoll*, of *Bargu*, *Tartar*, *Nayman*, *Annibi*, &c. are the moſt known. Some Authors place here *Gog* and *Magog*, which others will have to be in the Eſtates of the *Mogoll*, and of *China*, and towards *Maug*, above the Lake of *Chiamay*.

Its Commodities.

The principal Riches of the True *Tartary* conſiſts in their *Cattle* and *Furs*, among which moſt eſteem is had of their *white Bears*, *black Foxes*, *Sables*, &c. they live on *Milk* and *Fleſh*, of which they have great plenty, neither caring for *Fruits* nor *Grains*; and in a word, have ſtill ſomething of the ancient *Scythian*. Some amongſt them have their *Kings*; others live by *Hordes*, or *Communalties*; almoſt all are *Shepherds*, and the greateſt part ſubject to the Grand *Cham* of *Cathay*.

The chief places in this part of *Tartary*, do commonly take their names from their *Kingdoms*, *Provinces*, or *Hordes*, in which they lie.

The

- The ISLES of JAPON, which may be considered under
  - The GREAT ISLE of JAPON, or NIPHON, with its Parts of
    - JAMAYOIT
      - Nagato
      - Amanguchi
      - Juami
      - Jezuma
      - Aqui
      - Bingo
      - Bitchu
      - Bigen
      - Mimalaca
      - Janaba
      - Foqui
      - Isle of Oqui
    - JETSENGO
      - Meaco
      - Vacasa
      - Vechiten
      - Tamba
      - Tango
      - Oxaca
      - Sacay
      - Cavachi
      - Ixe
      - Xima
      - Quinocum
      - Isle of Avangi
    - JETSEGEN
      - Yomda
      - Inga
      - Voari
      - Mino
      - Xinano
      - Micava
      - Taroni
      - Yetchu
      - Canga
      - Noto
      - Isle of Sando
      - Nivata
    - QUANTO
      - Yendo
      - Conzuque
      - Cai
      - Surunga
      - Idzu
      - Sangami
      - Canzula
      - Ava
    - OCHIO
      - Aquita
      - Aizu
      - Voxu
      - Fitachi
      - Ximotzuque
      - Isles of: Mataxima, Toy, Ynoxima
  - The ISLE of XICOCO, or TOKOESI
    - Sanuqui
    - Tosa
    - Xyo
  - The ISLES of XIMO, or SAYCOCK
    - Figen
    - Bugen
    - Funay
    - Bungo
    - Fingo
    - Nanaqui
    - with the Isles of: Firando, Fica, Goto, Amacusa

- The PHILIPPINE ISLES, which may be comprehended under
  - Great, as the ISLES of
    - LUSON: Manille, Luson, Cagajon
    - MINDANAO: Mindanao
    - PARAGOYA: Damacan, Mindora
  - Small, and lying
    - Between the Great ISLES, as
      - Mindora
      - Luban
      - Banton
      - Masbate
      - Rebujan
      - Negoas
      - Cebu — Ville de Jesus
      - Bohol
      - Mazaa
      - Panay
      - Coyo
    - Eastwards, as
      - Pondam
      - Carandanis
      - Paracells
      - Tandaya — Achen
      - St. John — St. Jouri
      - Das Palmas
    - Southwards, as
      - Taylaya
      - Carangaon
      - Sagyan
      - Soloz
      - Tagyma
    - Westwards, as
      - Candagari
      - Kapull
      - Philippina
    - Northwards, as — Babuyones

THE Oriental Isles OF ASIA.

The Oriental Isles of *Asia*.

THE Isles of *Asia* are as many in number, and as great, rich, and populous as those of all the rest of the World. They are spread here and there, in the great *Oriental* or *Indian Ocean*, and for the most part about the *Indies*. I shall divide them into 5 Parts or Bodies, and call the Isles of *Japan*, those which are on the East of *China*; the *Philippine* Isles, those which are likewise on the South East of *China*; the Isles of the *Moluccoes*, those which are to the South of the *Philippines*; the Isles of the *Sound*, those which are to the West of the *Moluccoes*; and I put for the fifth *Ceylan* and the *Maldives*, which are East, and South-East from *Cape Comori*, the utmost point of *Malabar*. There are moreover many Isles which belong to *Asia*, but not to compare with these; of which we shall also speak a word as occasion offers.

The Isles of *Japan*, are on this side the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; the *Philippines* between the *Tropick* and the *Equinoctial* Line; the *Moluccoes*, the Isles of the *Sound*, and the *Maldives*, are about this Line, returning from East to West.

The Isles of JAPAN *or* JAPON.

The Isles of *Japan*.

WE call the Isle or Isles of *Japan*, a certain multitude of Isles, and of different bigness, which are on the East of *China*, distant from it about 100 Leagues; and so are seated in the most *Oriental* part of our *Continent*. They stretch together in length about 300 Leagues from West to East, and from South to North 40, 50, 60, and sometimes 100 Leagues in breadth.

Amongst these Isles there are 3 very considerable. The first and which is much greater then the two others, is called by us *Japan* or *Japon*; by its *Inhabitants*, *Hippon* or *Niphon*, which signifies *The Spring of Light*, *or of the Sun*: A name proper for it, since it lies to the East, and Sun-rising of all *Asia*, and of all our *Continent*. The second is called *Ximo*, that is, a *Low Country* or *Saycock*; that that is, *Nine Kingdoms*. The last *Tokoesi* or *Xicoco*, that is, *Four Kingdoms*.

We must likewise make account that these three great Isles are cut asunder by several Channels, which divide them into several Isles; but because these Channels are very narrow, these parts are esteemed pieces contigious in regard of the others, where the Channels, or rather the Arms of the Sea which divide them, are much larger.

They

They have all those *Fruits*, *Trees*, *Herbs* and *Beasts*, which we have in *Europe*, with several others not known amongst us; as also abundance of several *Fowls*, both tame and wild; the surface of the *Earth* is well clothed with *Woods* and *Forests*, in which are found very lofty *Cedars*; and the bowels of the *Earth* stored with divers *Metals*, as *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, *Iron*, &c. though not so good as in the *Indies*, except it be their *Silver*, which is excellent and abundant. Their *Pearls* are great, red, and of no less esteem then the white ones. These with several *Manufactures* which are here made, are the chief *Commodities* of this Island,

Chief places. *Meaco* described.

In this Island are several Cities of some note; as 1 *Meaco*, seated in the midst of the great Isle of *Japan*, a fair and large City, formerly 21 miles in compass; but now by reason of their Wars, it is reduced to the third part of what it was, in which the *Jesuites* did formerly esteem it to have 180000 Houses, and judged it to have near 100000 when they were there. This City is the ordinary residence of the *Triumviri*, or the three principal Magistrates, which rule or sway the affairs of these Islands; of whom the first is entituled the *Dayri* or *Voo*, that is, the *Emperor*, who hath the care of *Civil Affairs*; the second is the *Cube* or King of *Tenza*, who is chief of the *Militia*, managing the *Affairs* of *Peace* or *War*; and thirdly the *Zazo* or *Xaca*, who is chief in *Religion* and *Sacred matters*. The City is divided into the higher and lower; the one and the other together were not above 20000 paces long, and 8 or 10000 paces large. The *Palace* of the *Dayri* was in the higher City, great, stately and adorned with all things which may add to its luster; and the *Houses* or *Palaces* of his *Conges*, with the *Houses* of the chief *Lords* of all *Japan*, were about that of the *Emperor*. The lower City was almost contigious to *Fuximi*, which serves for a Fortress to *Meaco*. This City, as most or all those in these Islands, are unwalled; but its *Streets* in the night are chained up, and a *Watch* of two men at each end of every *street*, who are to give account of the transactions that happen in the night. Its *Streets* are large and well composed, its *Houses* well built, and most of *Wood*; all their *Pagodes* are made of *Wood*, they are neither large nor high; and in these *Pagodes* they have several ill-shapen *Figures*, to which they address their *Prayers*, and bestow on them great gifts in way of *Alms*, which their *Priests* make use of. *Nobunanga* was the first that lessened this City, which he did by burning a part of it in 1571 and since it hath received divers jostlings of ill fortune. 2. *Amangucki*, a *Maritime* City, and the faireſt of the Kingdom of *Nangato*, hath been formerly well known for its Trade, containing few less then 10000 Families. It was burned in 1555 during some revolt; it was builded again, and again burnt, and afterwards rebuilt. These fires happen often in *Japan*, the greatest part of their building being of *Wood*; but the wood is very neat and curious, marbled, &c. *Nangasaki* was the most famous of the Isles of *Saycock*, and there are a great number of fair Cities through all *Japan*.

The Palace of the *Dayri*.

Amongst these Cities, that of *Sacay*, on the South of *Meaco*; which *Ferdinand Mendez Pinto* (provided that he doth not lie) says, he hath known not to have depended upon any King or Lord, but was governed of it self, in form of a Republick, created all its Magistrates and Officers; and he assures us, that all the Masters of Families rich or poor, make themselves be called Kings and Queens; and their Children Princes and Princesses. This liberty and vanity is observable if it be true.

The City of *Tendo*.

Mandelslos in his Book of *Travels*, makes mention of a City called *Tendo*, which he makes to be a fair, large, and well built City; in which, he saith, there is a *Castle* about two Leagues in compass, being strongly fortified with 3 *Walls*, and as many *Moats*: The building is very irregular but fair, having to the *Walls* abundance of *Gates*: Within the last *Gate*, he saith, there is a *Magazin* of *Arms* for 3 or 4000 men, on which all the *Streets* that are fair and broad take their rise; in which said *Streets*, on both sides, are many magnificent *Palaces* for the *Nobles*. In the midst of this *Castle*, is seated the *Emperors Palace*, having belonging to it many stately edifices and apartments, as *Halls*, *Chambers*,

Galleries, *Gardens*, *Orchards*, *Groves*, *Fish-Ponds*, *Fountains*, *Courts*, &c. as also several *Select Houses* for his *Wives* and *Concubines*. And here is his ordinary Residence, being in the *Province* of *Quanto*, about 120000 paces from *Meaco*, between which are abundance of stately and magnificent *Palaces* and *Houses*, for the entertainment of the *Emperor* in his journey between *Jendo* and *Meaco*: But the most beautiful *Palace* next to *Tendo*, is that of *O Jaca* on the Sea, and South of *Meaco*; the buildings of *Tendo*, are so beautified with *Gold*, as well without as within; that at a distance it seems to be rather a *Mountain* of *Gold* than a building.

The Mountains of *Japan*.

Amongst the *Mountains* of *Japan*, there are two very well known. *Figenojama*, four Leagues from *Meaco*, renowned for its height, which stretches it self above the Clouds; and *Juy* or *Juycan* in the Kingdom *Hietcheu*, which vomits *Fire* in great abundance, as some time did *Ætna* in *Sicilia*, *Vesuvius* at *Naples*, and the Isles of *Volcan* and *Strongoli* among those of *Liparia*: And on the top of this *Mountain*, the *Devil*, in a white and shining Cloud, shews himself in divers forms, but only to such of his *Votaries* as live about this *Mountain* an abstemious life, like the ancient *Hermits*, as in Fasting, undergoing many austerities, and compleating the Vow they made for this purpose.

The People of *Japan* their dispositions.

The Country hath hot and medicinal Waters in several places; the common Waters are healthful; the *Inhabitants* of a good stature, strong and active; in complexion they are inclining to an *Olive* colour, well disposed, judicious, apt to learn, of sound memories, subtile in their dealings, more inclined to *Arms* then *Letters*, though they become perfect in both, having many *Academies* and *Universities*: They are ambitious of glory, patient in affliction, hating *Idleness*, *Gaming*, or all ill-husbandry; as also slandering, swearing, lying, theft, and generally all vices, which they severely punish, and oftentimes to death.

Their *Arms* are esteemed the most excellent of all the *Indies*, they being more valiant and warlike then the *Chinois*, and more patient of labour; one of their Kings conceived no less then that he could conquer *China*, and to that purpose levied 2 or 300000 men, which went against it, and brought back good booty. They have long used the *Art* of *Printing*, they are very civil, and much given to visits and entertainments; they delight in rich and costly furniture in their *Houses*, with the adornment of *Pictures*, *Cabinets*, *Arms*, &c. They are very punctual in performing their promises.

Their Religion and belief.

In matters of *Religion* they are for the most part *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the *Sun*, *Moon* and *Stars*, giving adoration to *Wild Beasts*; but they chiefly worship the *Devil*, and that partly for fear of hurting them: To which purpose, they have in all their *Pagodes*, which are numerous, several ill-shapen Figures which they pray to. And to these *Pagodes*, there belongeth a great many *Priests*, to whom they shew a great respect, and allow a good subsistence who by their habit are known from other persons, and live a very strict life, abstaining from *Flesh*, even to the use of *Women*.

Amongst them they have several *Sects*, which possibly are so many different ways in performing their *Devotions*, in which they are not over strict, nor over devout. Some of them believe the immortality of the Soul, that the Body is reduced to its first principles, and becomes dust and ashes; and that the Soul is either raised to joy, or condemned to eternal sorrow, believing the *Resurrection*; and that at its return into the World, it shall find good or evil, according to its actions: Whereas others make no account of the dissolution of the World nor put any difference between the Souls of Men and Beasts.

They are very jealous of their *Wives* and *Concubines*, not admitting them the liberty of walking abroad, or society with men at home; they are very modest, and not given to meddle with any kind of business that appertains to their *Husbands*. *Adultery* they severely punish, but *Fornication* is permitted amongst them: They are very indulgent to their Children, and give them good education: They are very tender of their honor, being shie of doing any thing which may eclipse it; and as they will give no injuries to others, so they will take none.

Their

Their *Emperor* dwels in great ſtate and pomp, having attendance of *Nobles* and others: He is highly eſteemed and reverenced of his Subjects, even to adoration. In his Government he is in a manner tyrannical, having in his power, the Lives and Eſtates of his Subjects, though he doth not often ſhew it; his Revenue is exceeding great, and his power, as hath been ſpoken of before, very ſtrong. The ſtate power, &c. of the Emperor.

All his Nobles (which are very many) live exceeding ſtately, and have great Revenues: And when any of them happen to die, they have a cuſtom, that about 20 or 30 of their Slaves do voluntarily kill themſelves to wait upon the Souls of their deceaſed Lords, which they hold to be a great honor to them, and a diſcharge of their fidelity and love they bear to them.

But there are many defaults obſerved in their government, and in their manner of living: The great number of their Kings and their Princes, which ſtill endeavour to make themſelves great; The Revolts and Rebellions, to which thoſe people are ſubject on the leaſt occaſion; The principal form of the Government, which is almoſt wholly tyrannical. The little care they have of Tillage, and of keeping fowl at home, or Flocks in the Field, makes them often want needfull Food. And it is obſerved, That they have many manners and cuſtoms different, and often contrary to ours, or thoſe of their Neighbors: As when they go out of the houſe, they leave off their Cloak, which they put not on again, till they come in; whereas we leave it off in the houſe, and put it on abroad. When they meet a friend, they ſalute him by putting off their Shoo, and ſhaking their foot; we ſalute by uncovering the head. In walking they give the left hand, eſteeming it moſt honourable, whilſt we believe the right ſo to be. Receiving a friend at home, they remain ſeated on the ground; we ſtand till he who comes to ſee us is ſeated. The *Earth* covered with *Mats*, ſerves for *Bed*, *Table* and *Seat*, (for they uphold themſelves on their knees, on that *Mat*, when they eat;) our *Bed*, *Table* and *Seat*, are raiſed from the ground, for our repoſe or eating. They eſteem *Black Hair* and *Black Teeth*; we *Fair Hair* and *White Teeth*. They mount on Horſe-back from right to left; we from left to right. They ſet the name of their Family before their proper name; we our proper name before that of our Family. They will not that thoſe Women they take in Marriage ſhould bring any riches; here we ſeek after thoſe who have moſt. So ſoon as their Women are married, they have no longer liberty to go abroad; here more then before. *Black* is their ſign of joy, and *White* of mourning; *Black* our mourning, and *White* our joy. Their richeſt *Tapeſtries* are *Mats*, thin, cloſe, and of divers colours; ours of *Wool*, *Silk*, and oftentimes of *Gold* and *Silver*. Their *Stone Buildings* have neither *Morter* nor *Plaiſter*; here they build not without both. They deſpiſe all *Precious Stones*, and eſteem more their *Veſſels* of *Earth*, which ſerve to keep their *Drink*; which we make little eſteem of, but much value *Precious Stones*. They drink nothing but what is hot; thoſe moſt delicate with us is cool. Their *Phyſick* is ſweet and odoriferous; ours bitter and unpleaſant. They never let their ſick Blood; which with us is very common upon the leaſt occaſion. Theſe with ſeveral other cuſtoms, contrary to ours, do they obſerve amongſt them, which are too long to ſet down. Nor want they fine Reaſons to ſuſtain their Cuſtoms better then ours; they ſay we muſt conſerve our Blood, as one of the principal ſuſtainers of our Life; that we muſt not give a ſick perſon that which is diſpleaſant, troubleſom, and ſometimes affrights him to ſee, much more to drink or eat; that hot water augments the natural heat, opens the conduits, and quenches thirſt; that cold cloſes the Pores, begets the Cough, weakens the Stomach, and quenches natural heat; that their *Veſſels*, of which they make ſuch eſteem, are neceſſary for many things in a Family, which *Precious Stones* are not; that their buildings may be eaſily taken down, carried other where, and erected in another manner, when they will; which ours cannot, &c. The *Japanoiſes* differ in many Cuſtoms from other Nations.

Amongſt their Manners, there are ſome very good; they hate *Games* of *Hazard*; they are very patient in bad fortune; they maintain themſelves honeſtly in their Poverty; ſuffer not themſelves to be tranſported with Paſſion; ſpeak not ill of the abſent; know not what it is to ſwear, lye, or ſteal; ſuffer

easily all incommodities of heat, cold, famine, or thirst; yet all this, rather to get the honor of being esteemed constant and vertuous, then being so truly; for they are subject to *Vices*, as well as their Neighbors. But let us leave their Manners, and speak a word of their *Government*, which of late hath encountred a diversity, and deserves to be known.

The general Estate of all these Isles, was not long since divided into 66 Kingdoms; of which the Isle of *Japan* alone had 47, which with some little Neighbouring Isles was made up 53, that of *Ximo* or *Saycok* had 9 according to its name, and *Chicock* the other four.

The Estate of these Isles.

At present the order is much changed; the whole Estates are fallen into the hands of one alone, as it hath been formerly; and is divided into 7 *Provinces*, or principal parts; and those 7 parts subdivided into many others; which ought to pass under the name of Lordships; some of which yet retain the name of Kingdoms, others of Dutchies, Principalities, *&c.*

Those which command in the lesser parts, are called generally *Tones*. *Caron* ranges them in six different degrees, and calls them *Kings*, *Dukes*, *Princes*, *Knight-Barons*, *Barons* and *Lords*, which according to our degrees of honour are distinguished by *Kings*, *Princes*, *Dukes*, *Marquisses*, *Earls* and *Barons*. *Caron* makes 21 *Kings*; some of which possess 1 or 2, and some 3, and in all 30 and odd of the 66 ancient Kingdoms. After the *Kings*, he puts 4 *Dukes*, 6 *Princes*, 17 *Knight-Barons*, 50 *Barons*, and 41 *Lords*, giving each a Revenue of at least 100000 *Livers per annum*, and so augmenting to the greatest to whom he gives 10 Millions and more; and makes account that the *Cube* or *Cesar* of *Japan* spends at least 100 Millions of Crowns yearly, as well in the expence of his house, as in his *Militia*, and what he disburses to the *Tones*.

The parts of *Japan*.

The names of the 7 principal parts, into which the Estate of *Japan* is divided, are *Saycock*, *Xicoco*, *Jamasoit*, *Jetsengo*, *Jetsegen*, *Quanto* and *Ochio*. *Saycock* with the Isles which belong to it, is the neareſt to *China*; *Chicock* is on the East of *Saycock*; the other five parts are in the great Island, and extend themselves advancing from East to West. *Jamosoit* being the most Western part of all, and answering to the 12 Kingdoms, which the King of *Nangato* or *Amanguci* hath formerly possessed. *Jetsenco* and *Jetsegen* together make the middle of the great Island, and apparently that which passed under the name of *Tenza*, and contained 20 others. *Quanto* and *Ochio* advance themselves from the East, unto the streight of *Sangaar*, which divides *Japan* from the Land of *Jesso*, of which more anon; *Quanto*, comprehended 8 Kingdoms, and *Ochio* the rest, and in these parts there are abundance of Cities and Towns, which I have observed in my *Geographical Tables*.

But because the diversity of names of *Dayri* or *Emperor*, of *Cube* or *Cesar*, of *Tones* or *Kings*, *Princes*, *Dukes*, *&c.* may breed some confusion; to give a more particular knowledge, we will say succinctly, that before the year 1500 there was in all *Japan* only one Soveraign, which they called *Voo* or *Dayri*, that is *Emperour*.

The Isle or Land of JESSO.

The Isle of *Jesso*.

After the Isles of *Japan*, let us speak a word of the Isle or Land of *Jesso*, *Yedzo* or *Jesso*, for divers Authors write its name differently, some calling it the Isle, some the Land aboveſaid, and to the East of *Japan*, in the manner that the *English*, *Portugals* and *Hollanders* describe it, this Land must extend from *Asia* to *America*: They say that from *Tessoy*, which is the most Western point of it, opposite to *Coray*, and near *Tartary*, advancing towards the East, it is 60 days journey to the *Province* of *Matzumay*; and that from *Matzumay* unto the most Easterly point, and neereſt *America*, it is likewise 90 days journey; so that it is 150 days journey from one end to the other; which after only 8 Leagues a day will be 1200 of our Leagues. Its breadth is not spoke of.

The

The Streight of *TESSOI*, which separates this Isle from *Tartary*, hath great currents, caused by the discharging of several Rivers which come from the Northern parts, and from *Tartary* and *Jesso*. The other streight which separates it from *America*, may in all likely-hood be that *Anian*; and those two streights, limit the two extremities of *Jesso*, towards the midst, must be the Province of *Matzumay* and apparently beyond the Streight, which separates the Isle of *Japan*, from the Land of *Jesso*; and this streight may be called the streight of *Sangaar*, which is the utmost East-Land of *Japan*. The streight of *Jesso*.

The traverse, or traject of this streight is not above 10 or 12 Leagues; others say not above so many miles; others there are affirm it no streight, but an *Isthmus* which fixes *Japan* to *Jesso*; and that both the one and the other together are but one Isle; so difficult it is to find the truth of a thing so far distant.

This Isle or Land of *JESSO* is so great and vast, that the *Inhabitants* cannot but have different manners; those which are neareſt *Japan*, resembling the *Japanois*, those which are near *Tartary*, the *Tartars*; and those near *America*, their neighbouring *Americans*; and in all likelihood they are more barbarous then all their neighbours.

They are all *Idolaters*, covering themselves with the skins of *Beasts*, which they take in *Hunting*; having their bodies all hairy, and wearing their Beard and Mustachoes very long: they are Warlike, Cruel, and Formidable to the *Japanois*; In War they have no other remedy for their wounds, but washing them in salt water. Its Inhabitants.

The Land is little inhabited; it would be rich if it were well tilled; it hath many Mines of *Silver*, and quantity of excellent *Skins* and *Furs*, which make it appear that the *Earth* stretches to the Northward. They have some Trade with *Aquita*, which is on the East of *Japan*; but those of *Aquita* go seldom into *Jesso*, because they cannot with security reside with, or trust those *Barbarians*. Its fertility.

The PHILIPPINE *Islands, or of* LUSON *and the* MANILLES.

THe *PHIPPINE* Islands are so called by the *Castilians*, because they conquered them under *Philip* the second, King of *Castile*. The People of the East call them the Isles of *Luson*, because of the greatest and most famous of these Isles, which they call *Luson*, a principal City of this Isle, being likewise so called. The *Portugals* call them *Manilles*, from the City *Manilla*, at present the chief City of the Isle of *Luson*. They are in the *Oriental Ocean*, to the Southward of *China*, to the Eastward of *India*, North of the *Moluccoes*, and Westward of the Islands of *Theeves*: But they are 4 or 500 Leagues distant from these, not above 100 from *China*, and much nearer the *Moluccoes*, and the the Isles of the *Sound*. *Philippine* Isles. Their names. Situation.

Their scituation is between the *Equator*, and the *Tropick* of *Cancer*; to wit, from the 5 unto the 20 degree of *Septentrional Latitude*: and from the 155, unto the 170 *Meridian* or *Degree* of *Longitude*; and so contain 15 or 16 degrees of *Longitude* and *Latitude*, extending themselves in length and breadth 3 or 400 Leagues.

LUSON, *MINDANAO* and *PARAGOYA*, are the greatest: *Luson* towards the North, *Mindanao* towards the South, and *Paragoya* towards the West; so that they form almost an *Equilateral Triangle*. *Tandaya* otherwise *Philippina*, *Mindora*, *Panay*, *Masbate*, *Rebujan*, St, *John*, *Cebu* or the *Pintados*, *Negoas*, *Matan*, *Bohol*, and few others are of a lesser circuit. *Tandaya* is South-East from the most Southerly point of *Luson*; and the streight between is called of *Manilla*, not because of the City *Manilla*, more then 100 Leagues distant; but because of the Isles of *Luson*, which are called likewise of *Minilla*. *Mindora* on the South of the Isle of the Gulph, and City of *Manilla*: The rest are between *Luson* and *Mindanao*. The chief Isles and places described.

We

We might likewise make account of *Messane*, *Calegan* and *Buthuan*, near *Cebu*; of *Abuyo* and *Capuli*; of *Banton*, *Rebujan*, *Vireges*, *Marinduque* and *Luban*, between *Masbate* and *Mindora*; of *Iloques*, *Mauris*, *Coyo*, *Bankingle* and *Kapull*, between *Mindora* and *Paragoya*, and between *Paragoya* and *Mindanao*; of the *Little Philippine* on the West; of the *Babuyonnes* on the North; of *Catandanis*, *Paracalla*, *Linton*, and others on the East of *Luson*; of *Palmes* and St. *John* on the East of *Mindanao*. But we cannot name them all, there being so great a number, that some esteem them 1000 or 1200 of considerable note, and in all 10 or 12000.

Magellan was the first of the *Europeans*, who discovered these Islands in 1520 In 1564 *Don Lewis de Valasco*, *Vice-Roy* of *Mexico*, sent *Michael Lapez de Legaspes* to establish some *Spanish Colonies*; and facilitate by that means their Traffick from *Mexico* with *China* and *Japan*, who seised upon *Luson*, *Cebu*, &c. The *Spaniards* possess at present above 50 of them, among which, *Luson*, *Tenday* and *Cebu*, are the most famous.

The Isle of *Luson*.

Luson sometimes called *New-Castle*, begins before the 13, and ends after the 19 degree of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*, which are not above 6 degrees or 150 Leagues; but it stretches one of its points towards the East: So that from *Cape Bojador* towards *China*, unto that of *Caceres* towards *Tenday*, is more then 200 Leagues, passing cross the Isle. Its breadth is very unequal, and sometimes only 20, 25, and sometimes likewise 50, 60, and 75 Leagues.

Manille is its chief City, seated in the most Southernly part of the Island; well built, after the modern way; and its Houses are of *Free-stone*, strong, and so great, that the *Spaniards* have been forced to divide some part of it from the rest, to serve them for a *Cittadel*, in case of necessity; by which means, they are not at so great a charge in keeping of so great a number of Soldiers, as would otherwise be requisite for the security of the place. They have a good Port, the entrance into which is yet somewhat difficult, by reason of the Isles and Rocks of *Mirabelles*, at the opening of the Gulph or Bay of *Cavita* or *Cavite*, at the bottom of which, is *Manilla*. The *Governor* or *Vice-Roy* of these Isles, as also an *Archbishop*, who hath a *Spiritual Jurisdiction* over all the *Philippine* Islands, which he exercises by three *Suffragan Bishops*, and some *Priests* have here their Residence. This City is very populous, here commonly residing about 15000 *Chinois*, besides *Japoneses*, and a great number of *Spaniards* which drive a Trade, in several good *Commodities* which the *Earth* and their ingenuity produces, which are brought hither, as being the chief City, of which I shall speak anon.

The other Cities of the same Isle are *Cagajon* or *Nueva Segovia*, in the most Northern part; then *Caseres*, in the most Southern part of the Isle. The City of *Luson* is by all Authors described on the Coast, which regards *China*: And this name hath been most famous. Now it is difficult to know, whether *Luson* or *Manilla* are two Cities; *Linscot* thinks them one and the same.

The Isle of *Mindanao*.

Mindanao is composed of three different Isles, which are almost contiguous, the greatest, which is in the middle of the other two, retains the name of *Mindanao*, having about 100 Leagues of length, and little less of breadth. *Canola* towards the West, 75 Leagues long, and 25 or 30 broad. *Las Buenas Sennales*, or the *Good Ensigns*; or likewise St. *John* on the North East, hath only 25 or 30 Leagues of length and breadth: And these three together, are between the fifth and the ninth *Parallel* or degree of *Longitude*, and between the 162 and 169 *Meridian* or degree of *Longitude*, and contain little less then 200 Leagues from the Point of *Galere* on the West, to *Cape Bicajo* on the East.

They belong to divers *Mahometan* or *Pagan* Kings, who are all in good intelligence with the King of *Ternate* of the *Moluccoes*, and ill-affected to the *Portugals*. Their principal Cities are *Mindanao*, which others call *Tabouc*, *Siragas* or *Suriaco*, *Lomiaton*, or *Lomiatan*, *Dapito* and *Canola*. Of the scituation of other Cities, of which some Authors make mention, we have no assurance.

PARAGOYA or *CALIMIANES* of *Boterus*, is the same thing as *Calamian* of *Linscot*; and as *Puloam* or *Puloaym* of *Maginus*, and others: It begins almost at the 8, and ends not till the 11 *Degree* of *Latitude*, stretching it self from South-East to North-East, in length more then 100 Leagues, not having above 10, 15, or 25 of breadth. *Boterus* and *Pigafette* say, that it bears *Figs* half as long and as thick as ones Arm; and others, only of a *Palm* long, but better then that of *Dates*. Its King is Vassal to him of *Borneo*. The Isle of *Paragoya*.

TANDAYA is about the twelfth *Degree* of *Latitude*, and the 167 of *Longitude*; Its utmost length is about 50 Leagues, and its breadth about 40. It hath born alone the name of *Philippine*, for being the first discoverer of these Islands, and that name hath been communicated to the rest. It is esteemed the best and most pleasant of all; Fruitful, rich, easie to be approached, and its *Inhabitants* courteous. Its chief place is *Achan*. The Isle of *Tandaya*.

MINDORA is not much less then *Tandaya*, but not so famous; yet the Streight between the Isle of *Manilla* and *Mindora*, is called *Mindora*; from whence it may be judged, there is likewise a City of *Mindora* on that Streight and that this place hath formerly been famous. There are here Mines of *Gold*. The Isle of *Mindora*.

CEBU is in the midst of the *Philippines*. The *Spaniards* have built on the East Coast *Ville-Jesus*, under the 10 *Degree* of *Latitude*, and 165 of *Longitude*. The Port is good, and here it was that *Magellan* contracted Alliance with the King of this Isle, received him into the Protection of the King of *Castile*, and in his favour passed into the Isle of *Matan*, and made war upon its King, where he was killed. The Isle of *Cibu*.

All these Isles in general, are very fruitful, and yield a great quantity of *Grains*, of *Rice*, *Fruits*, *Wine*, *Honey*, *&c.* which are given almost for nothing. They have *Wine* of *Dates*, which yields not to those of *Grapes*, and which are as strong as *Sack*: They feed much *Cattle*, and *Fowl*, as *Oxen* and *Sheep*, which they carry into *New-spain*; *Hogs*, whose Flesh is excellent, *Goats*, *Pullain*, *&c.* They have many *Wild Beasts*, as *Stags*, and several sorts of *Venison*, *Wild Boars*, *Tygers*, *Foxes*, *Bears*, *Lions*, *Apes*, *Civet Cats*, *&c.* which inhabit in their *Forests* and *Mountains*; and in their *Rivers* they have *Crocodiles* and an infinite number of several sorts of *Fish*, which are likewise found in their *Seas*: Amongst others *Tortoises*, whose shels are much esteemed for the beauty, and variety of their colours, there being none found like these, and those of the *Maldives*. Their Fertility

They produce likewise *Gold*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Saffron*, *Wax*, *Cinnamon*, *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Sugar*, with several other *Metals*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, and *Precious Stones*. They fish *Pearls* on their Coasts, and particularly near to *Negros* and *Abujo*. Their Commodities.

But besides the cheapness and abundance of Victuals which these Isles afford, and the *Traffick* which they have so commodiously with *China*, and with *Mexico* or *New Spain*, hath made the *Spaniards* resolve to keep them: And therefore they built some *Fortresses* in 1589 and transported some Families from *New Spain*, with *Horses*, *Sheep*, and other *Beasts* to breed a Race. Its Trade.

The *Chinois* have a great Trade to these Islands, bringing hither all their *Commodities*, as *Silk*, *Cotton* of all colours, *Porcelain*, *Brimstone*, *Cannon Powder*, *Iron*, *Quick-silver*, *Steel*, *Copper*, and other *Metals*; also *Chests*, *Cabinets*, *Pictures*, *Laces*, *Coiffs*, *Vales*, and other curiosities for *Women*. Of all these *Commodities*, there remains a part in the *Philippines*, and the *Castilians* take away the other, and with the *Gold*, *Wax* and *Spices*, which they get in these Isles, carry them to *Mexico*: From whence they bring what is proper, both for the *Philippines*, for *China*, and the *East-Indies*. And this trade which is driven by the South, or *Pacifick Ocean*, is a great, and frequent, as that which is between *Spain* and *Mexico* by the *Ocean*, or *North Sea*.

- The MOLUCCO ISLES; which may be comprehended under the
  - The ISLES of the MOLUCCOES, particularly so called; as the Isles of
    - Ternate, — Gamma-Lamma, Nostra Sennora dello Rosaria.
    - Tidore, — Marieco, Castello Viejo.
    - Timor, — Nassaw.
    - Machian, — Tabillola, Mauricio.
    - Bachian, — Marigoram, Gammeduore.
  - The Greatest ISLES of the MOLUCCOES; as,
    - The Isle of the CELEBES, — Celebes, Ciaon, Bantachaja, Machasar.
    - The Isle of GILOLO, — Gilolo, Tolo, Ifiau, Jaffougo.
    - The Land of PAPOUS, — Baya Fonda, Baya de Ant-Boto.
  - Small ISLES about and between the Isles of CELEBES, GILOLO, and the Land of PAPOUS; as
    - On the South of CELEBES, are the Isles of
      - Buquerones.
      - Solayo.
      - Cobana.
      - Baton.
      - Cabinces.
      - St. Mathews.
      - Flores, — Lasataja, Batuliar.
      - Susu.
      - Malva.
      - Cabanazze, — Timor.
      - Solar, — Adonare.
      - Ombo.
      - Teralta.
    - On the East, and North-East of CELEBES, are the Isles of
      - Wawany.
      - Xulla.
      - Paugay.
      - Tafouro.
      - Meao.
      - Saranbal.
      - Syem.
    - Between the Isles of CELEBES and GILOLO, and on the South Coast, or Sea of the Land of PAPOUS, are the Isles of
      - Bouro.
      - Kilan.
      - Manipe.
      - Attabuti.
      - Ouby.
      - Sinomo.
      - Mesol.
      - Seram-Cambello.
      - Amboyna, — Amboyna.
      - Pulorin.
      - Puloway.
      - Celayon.
      - Guligiej.
      - Subiana.
      - Corer.
      - Away.
      - Tenimber.
      - Kedguey.
      - Aru.
      - Banda, — Londor, Ortattan, Comber.
      - Nassau, — Belgicque, Labetack.
      - Poloway. — Reve.
      - Gumanapy, — Gumanapy.
      - Pulorin.
    - On the North of GILOLO, are the Isles of
      - Morotay, — Sian.
      - Camafo,
      - Noba.

- The ISLES of LARRONS, or THEEVES, viz.
  - The ISLES of LARRONS, or THEEVES, particularly so called, where are the Isles of
    - Deserte.
    - Malabrigo.
    - Englese.
    - Angloise.
    - Mana.
    - Chemochoa.
    - Gregua.
    - Agan.
    - Artomagan.
    - Guagan.
    - Cheraguan.
    - Natan.
    - Sepan.
    - Matan.
    - Can.
    - Volia.
    - Botaba, and Bacim.
  - ISLES Westwards, and between the Isles of LARRONS and the PHILIPPINE Isles; as those of
    - Pulo-Vilan.
    - De los Arecifos.
    - De los Matelotes.
    - De Bidima.
  - ISLES Southwards of the Isles of LARRONS; as those of
    - Dancers.
    - Martyrs.
    - Birds.

THE

THE ISLES OF THE MOLUCCOES.

The Isles of *Moluccoes* many.

I Comprehend under the name of the *MOLUCCOES*, not only the Isles of *TERNATE*, *TIDORE*, *MOTILL* or *TIMOR*, *MACHIAN*, and *BACHIAN*, which are particularly called the *Moluccoes*; but likewise those of *GILOLO*, of the Land of *PAPOUS*, which lie on their East; of *CELEBES*, which are on their West; of them of *CEYRAM*, of *FLORES*, and *TIMOR*, which are towards their South, and several others thereabouts.

They make a Body of many and divers Isles, South of the *Philippines*, Eastwards of those of the *Sound*, West of *New Guiney*, and North of *Terra Australis*, and are under or near the *Equinoctial Line*, stretching themselves only to the third degree on this side that *Line*, and to the 10*th* or 12*th* beyond it, and extending themselves from East to West, from the 160*th* degree of *Longitude* unto the 180*th*; and thus they have together 15 degrees of *Latitude* and 20 ōf *Longitude*, which are almost 400 Leagues of breadth and 500 of length. The *English* were the first of any *Christians* that traded hither.

The Isles of *Celebes*, *Gilolo*, &c.

CELEBES, the Lands of *PAPOUS* and *GILOLO* are the greatest; then *CERAM*, *FLORES*, and *TIMOR*, those which are particularly called the *Moluccoes* are the smallest, *Celebes* is 200 Leagues long, and about 100 broad: *Gilolo* about 100 Leagues long, and near as broad: *Ceyram*, *Flores*, and *Timor*, each 60 Leagues long; but for the most part their breadth is not above a third or quarter of their length. The True *Moluccoes* are only 2,3,4, or 5 Leagues long, and 5,6,10,12, and 15 in circuit.

Their Commodities and Fertility.

Amongst all these Isles, the True *Moluccoes* are the most known by reason of their *Cloves*, with which they abound and furnish all *Asia* and *Europe*. They have neither *Grains* nor Mines of *Gold*, few *Beasts*, much excellent *Fruit*, and several *Spices*, as *Ginger*, *Cinnamon*, *Mace*, *Nutmegs*, &c. and divers *Drugs*; amongst others, a kind of *Wood*, that being put to the fire, burns, flames, and yet consumes not. The *Cloves* are their principal Riches; *Ternate*, *Tidore*, and *Machian* have the most, and *Bachian* fewer. *Ternate* yields yearly 400 *Bahars* of *Cloves*; *Tidore* and *Machian*, each 300: And in the great Harvests, which are but once in seven years, *Machian* yields 15 or 1600; *Tidore*, 12 or 1300; and *Ternate*, 1000 or 1200; each *Bahar* is 600 *li. Flemish*.

Their situation.

These Isles lie to the Westward along the Coast of *Gilolo*, so near the *Equator*, that the most Southerly part is not above 24 or 25 Minutes beyond that *Line*, nor the most Northerly above 48 or 50 Minutes on this side it: so that together they have not above one degree of *Latitude*, and about 10 or 12 Minutes, which maks 30 Leagues. Their *Longitude* is between the 10*th* and 30*th* Minutes of the 168 *Meridian*, or degree of *Longitude*.

The Isles of *Ternate*, *Tidore*, &c.

TERNATE is the most North; and from it Southward are, *TIDORE*, *TIMOR*, *MACHIAN*, and *BACHIAN*, for little account is made of the rest. *Bachian* is 15 or 16 Leagues circuit, *Ternate*, *Tidore*, and *Machian*, 10 or 12; *Timor*, 5 or 6. the rest less.

The Isle of *Ternate*, its chief places, fertility and commodities.

TRENATE is esteemed the principal Isle, being about 8 Leagues in circuit, and its Kings the most powerful, both of the True *Moluccoes* and of all that I have passed under the general name of *Moluccoes*; yet he suffers in *Ternate*, *Nostra Seniora della Rosario*, and *Gammalamme* in the hands of the *Spaniards*, *Ta-comma*, *Talucco*, and *Malayo* in the hands of the *Hollanders*, which are in good intelligence with him, as Enemies to the *Spaniards*. The chief place is called *Gamma-Lamma*, is seated on the Sea-side, more long than broad, and of an indifferent bigness; its *Houses*, *Mosques*, as also its *Palace-Royal*, are built of *Canes* or *Timber*; its Road and Haven is good, and frequented by Ships. The Country is not bad, yet it yields but little provision besides *Poultry* and *Goats*; it yields also excellent *Almonds*, and bigger than ordinary, and that in great plenty; they have also abundance of *Cloves*, and other *Spices*, some *Drugs*, with such other Commodities as are found in the rest of the Islands.

The Isle of *Tidore*, and its chief places, &c.

TIDORE, (those of the Country say *Tadura*, which signifies Beauty) is a little greater than *Ternate*, and as fruitful. Here the People are very industrious in pruning and watering the *Clove-trees*, by which means they are exceeding fair and strong. Here grows white *Sandall-wood*, which is held the best in all the *Indies*. Here are also found the *Birds of Paradise*. It hath its particular King. The *Spaniards* hold *Taroula*, *Castello-Viejo*, and *Marieco*, which the *Hollanders* have sometimes taken. *Timor* or *Mothir* was once so ill treated by the *Spaniards*, that its Inhabitants abondoned it and retired to *Gilolo*. The *Hollanders* built the Fort of *Nassau*, and have invited near 2000 of its Inhabitants to return. *Machian* as well as *Timor*, belongs to the King of *Ternate*; the *Hollanders* hold *Taffasso*, *Tallibola*, *Nubaca* or *Naffaquia*, and *Mauritio*; it is peopled with about 9 or 10000 persons.

The Isle of *Bachian* described.

BACHIAN, or *BAQUIAN*, is the greatest of all the *Moluccoes*, but ill peopled, and having but few *Cloves*; but in recompence it hath plenty of *Fruit*, and its Sea stored with *Fishes*. It is divided by several little Channels scarce navigable, which yet divide it into many parts, of which *Marigoram* is in the midst of the others, where the King of this Isle resides. The *Hollanders* hold on the Coasts the Forts of *Gammeduore* and *Laboua*, both once called *Barnevelt*. This Isle is of an indifferent large extent; the King is absolute, the Soil good, and would become very fertil, if the Inhabitants would leave off their Idleness, and give it Tillage.

MACHIAN is indifferent large and fertil, and well inhabited; its chief places are, 1. *Taffaso*. 2. *Tabillola*. 3. *Mauricio*: and 4. *Nubaca*.

TIMOR, *Motir* or *MOTIL*, is of a less compass, and Triangular. Its chief place is *Nassaw*.

The Isle of *Gilolo* described.

GILOLO or *BATOCHINE* extends it self to the second *Degree* on this side, and only to the first beyond the *Equator*: It hath then 3 *degrees* of *Latitude*. Its *Longitude* begins a little after the 168*th Meridian*, and reaches to the 172, which are near 4 *Degrees*, which amount to little less than 100 Leagues of length and breadth; but it is composed but of 4 *Peninsula's*, of which one advances towards the North, the other three towards the East; and of these three, the middle one reaches so near the Land of *Papous*, that there is but a Streight between them.

Its People, and chief places.

It is subject in part to the King of *Ternate*, in part to the Kings of *Gilolo* and *Loloda*. It hath *Savage People* on the North part, where is the Coast of *More*, and in some Mountains in the middle of the Country; and the City of *Mamaye* is in form of a *Republick*. The City of *Gilolo* is not above six Leagues from *Ternate* towards the North. Those of *Gilolo*, *Sabugo*, and *Aquilamo*, are near together Eastward of *Tidore*, and on the West Coast of *Gilolo*. On the other side, and towards the East, are the Fortresses of *Tolo*, *Isiau*, and *Jaffougo*; these six places are in the *Spaniards* hands. The *Hollanders* hold

Sabou

Sabou and *Coma*; *Sabou* a little above *Gilolo*, *Tacoma* or *Cuma* on one of the three Eastern points.

The Air of *Gilolo* is intemperate hot, which makes it unhealthful; the Soil not very fertil, yet hath it great plenty of *Rice*, *wild Hens*, and other Fowls. On its Shoars it hath *Shell-fish*, whose Meat in taste is much like *Mutton*, and about the Isle plenty of Trees, which they call by the name of *Sagou*; from which they have a Fruit which they make their Bread of; of the Sap or Juice they make a pleasing Drink, which they use instead of Wine; and of a Hair which grows on its Bark they make their Cloaths. It hath but few *Cloves*, neither have they many Cattle, except *tame* and *wild Hogs*. The People are well proportioned, but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, the rest *Mahometans*. The Air.

CELEBES is composed of many Islands so near the one to the other, that they are commonly esteemed but one. They are fruitful in all Provisions, especially *Rice*; they yield *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Saunders*, and *Cotton*; feed much Cattle, and their Sea affords plenty of *Fish* and *Pearls*. The Air is healthful, though almost in the same scituation with *Gilolo*, except that they advance to the *6th* degree of *Latitude* towards the South. They are well peopled, and its People are tall and comly. They are *Idolaters*, and much addicted to *Piracy*. Here is esteemed to be six principal Kingdoms; of which that of *Macasar*, which gives sometimes a name to all these Isles, is the most powerful; that of *Cion* the second; then those of *Sanguin*, *Cauripana*, *Getigan*, and *Supar*. the greatest Cities are *Macasar* and *Bantachia*, 30 or 40 Leagues one from the other; as also *Celebes*, seated on the Sea. The Isle of *Celebes* described.

The Land of *PAPOUS*, that is, of *Blacks* is little known, yet is no other than *New Guiney*, and other than the Isle of *Ceyram*, though some would confound it with them. This last is to the Westward of it, and the other to the Eastward; both the one and the other more towards the South. There are some *Whites* among its Inhabitants, but few; all lean, deformed, and Traytors. They have *Gold*, *Ambergreece*, and *Birds of Paradise*, with which they pay Tribute to their Kings, and to the King of *Ternate*. The Land of *Papous*.

CEYRAM hath the same qualities, and its Inhabitants like to *Papous*, and well peopled. *Flores*, *Solar*, *Malva*, *Susu*, *Timor*, *Ombo*, *Terralta*, &c. are divers Isles under the 8*th*, 9*th*, and 10*th* degrees of South *Latitude*, and which advance from the 160*th* unto the 175*th* degree of *Longitude*. *Timor* (an other than that *Timor* of the *Moluccoes*) is the most esteemed. It produces store of Grains and Fruits, feeds many Cattle and Fowl; amongst its Drugs and Spices, it hath *Ginger*, *Cinnamon*, and whole Forrests of *white* and *yellow Saunders*. Its Inhabitants are Idolaters, half *Savages*, and had the use of Fire but lately. *Malva* on the West of *Timor*, hath quantity of *Pepper*. *Solar* is other than *Soloe*, or *Solayo*. This last is 10 Leagues from *Celebes*, and between the *6th* and *7th* degree of *Latitude*; that 15 or 16 Leagues from *Timor*, and between the 8*th* and 9*th* degree of *Latitude*. The City *Adonare* is the residence of the King of *Solor*, and there is a great trade for *Saunders* between this Isle and *Cabanazza* in *Timor*. *Solor* hath likewise *Gold* and *Pearl*. The Isles of *Ceyram*, *Flores*, &c.

Almost in the midst of these Isles, which we call in general the *Moluccoes*, are those of *Amboyna* and *Banda*, which are but small, yet are in great esteem. Those of *Amboyna* are, *Amboyna*, *Veranula*, *Hittou*, *Noesan*, and some others.

The Isle of *AMBOYNA* hath its chief City of the same name, which is of some considerable note, besides several other small Towns and Villages. This Island was first discovered by the *Portugals*, who had here the command of a Castle and other Forts, which the *Hollanders* took in 1605, and have possessed likewise the Fortress of *Coubella*, *Lovio*, and the Redout of *Hittou*, in the Isle of *Hottou*. The *Spaniards* dispossessed them a little after 1620, and the *Hollanders* have regained them since, where they drive a great and profitable Trade. The Land at first was barren, but by their industry it is now become very fertil, producing *Rice*, *Sugar*, quantity of *Fruits*, especially *Lemmons* The Isle of *Amboyna*, its fertility and commodities.

mons and *Oranges*, *Coco-Nuts*, *Bonanas*; several *Spices*, but principally *Cloves*, of which alone they receive great profit. Here it was that the *Hollanders* did once, with a never to be forgotten cruelty and barbarousness, murther the *English* that resided and traded thither, on purpose to gain the whole Trade to themselves.

Its Inhabitants. The Inhabitants were heretofore *Brutish Cannibals*, insomuch as they would eat one another, though their neareſt Relations, when age or sickness seised them; and all *Pagans*: but since by reason of the Commerce they had with the *Persians* and *Arabians*, *Mahometism* is somewhat received amongst them, as also *Christianity*, by reason of the *Portugals* and *Dutch*; which in time may come to some perfection, though at present it is but very small. But notwithstanding they make use of their *Paganish* Superstitions, adoring the *Devil*, who appears to them when they invoke him; in which they are very superstitious and ceremonious. They are much given to *Sorcery* and *Conjurations*, very prophane, barbarous, not given to Arts or Literature. They are naturally unfaithful, thievish, covetous, stupid, and very timerous. In their *Marriages* they make no great Ceremonies, taking one anothers words, which as slightly they evade, leaving one another upon the least occasion of offence, and are free for another.

The Isles of *Banda*, *Nera*, and *Gumanapi* described. The Isles of *BANDA* are three principal ones. *Banda*, which communicates its name to the rest, *Nera* and *Gumanapi*, and 3 or 4 lesser ones, *Wayer*, *Poloway*, and *Pulorin*; some add *Poelsetton*, the most Western of all. *Banda* hath the Cities or Towns of *Londor*, *Ortatan*, and *Combor*; *Nera* hath that of *Nera* and *Labetach*; *Gumanapi* hath only one of its name, underneath a Mountain which vomits *Fire*; *Nera* is the chiefest of all. The *Hollanders* hold in the Isle of *Nera* the Forts of *Nassau* and *Belgica*, and in the Isle of *Poloway* the Fort of *Revenge*.

These Isles are unhealthful; the *Nutmegs* and *Mace*, which these Isles produce, make them frequented by Strangers. These Fruits they gather thrice a year, in *April*, *August*, and *December*.

Besides these Isles already spoken of, there are these following which are ranged and numbred with those of the *Moluccoes*, and are found as they lie, either on the Coast or Shoar of the Isles *Celebes*, *Gilolo*, or Land of *Papous*, to participate of their *nature*, *temperature*, *soil*, or the like; which I have taken notice of in the *Geographical Table*.

Its People. The Inhabitants are *Mahometans*, in which they are very zealous and superstitious, not entring into their *Mosques* without washing their Feet; and when they are there, very fervent in their Prayers, which they use often. They are very obstinate, and the Men are much given to idleness, minding their Recreations, and leaving their affairs to their Wives. The People are here observed to live to a great Age. The People of all these Isles, which have passed under the names of *Moluccoes*, are of different humors; those which are on the Coasts most frequented by Strangers, are the most civil; yet others more barbarous. And on the Coast they are either *Mahometans* or *Christians*, the rest *Idolaters*; but the *Spaniards* and *Portugals* on one side, and the *Hollanders* on the other, do much trouble these Islands, making themselves Masters now of one, and then of another; for the most part making War betwixt themselves, or with the Islanders; among which there are divers Kings, some subject to the *Portugals*, and others to the *Hollanders*.

Their Kings. Amongst all these Kings the most powerful is he of *Ternate*, to whom belong *Ternate*, *Mothir*, and *Bachian*; likewise *Cayoa* and *Gazea*, amongst the True *Moluccoes*; and thereabout, those of *Meao*, where are built his *Carcoles*, that is, *Vessels of War*; *Tofoura*, *Xullo*, *Buro*; those of *Amboyna*, among which *Ceyram* seems to be comprized: Then part of the Land of *Papous*, part of *Gilolo*, and the *Celebes*, whose Kings are tributary to him. *Argensola* saith, That in 70 Islands, which are in his Estates, he can raise 200000 Men; and that he keeps ordinarily a great number of *Carcoles*, with many *Cannons*, and all things necessary; and that the Captains of his Militia are aged Men, which have been bred and educated in Arms.

The Isles of LARRONS, *or* THE EVES.

The Isles of *Larrons* described,

WE have almost nothing to say touching the Isles of *THE EVES*. They are 16 or 20 different Isles, which continue from about the 8*th* unto the 20*th* and 21*st* degree of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*, and are almost all under the 188 *Meridian*. Their names, scituation and greatness, a guess may be given of by the *Chart*.

The Isle of *Dancers*, of *Martyrs*, of *Birds*, &c. Towards the South those of *Pulo Vilan*, *De los Arecifos*, *De los Matelotes*, and *Bidima*, &c. are towards the West, and between the *Larrons* and *Philippines*: The *Volcanis* towards the North, where there is *Cochineal*: *Malpelo* towards the North-East, but indeed rather towards the East, and seeming to belong to *America*. Also the Isles of *Bacim*, *Botaba*, *Volia*, *Can*, *Mata*, *Sepan*, *Natan*, *Chereguan*, *Guagan*, *Artomagan*, *Agan*, *Gregua*, *Chemochoa*, *Mana*, *Englese*, *Angloise*, *Malabrigo Deserte*, &c.

All these Isles are poor, having little to live on; scarce any tame Beasts, no Metals; the Inhabitants are naked, active, great Thieves, particularly of *Iron*.

The

- The ISLES of the SONDE; which may be comprehended under
  - Great ISLES, and particularly called the Isles of the SONDE; and such are those of
    - SUMATRA, with its Kingdoms of
      - Achem, — Achem, Daya.
      - Pacem, — Pedir, Pacem.
      - Aru, — Aru, Bancalis.
      - Baras, — Baras, Batham.
      - Camper, — Camper.
      - Guadahyri, — Guadahyri.
      - Priaman, — Priaman, Potenban.
      - Menancabo, — Menancabo, Baracapas.
      - Jamby, — Jamby, Votabours.
      - Baras. — Baros, Palimbam.
    - BORNEO, — Borneo, Hormata, Bendarmassin.
    - JAVA, with its Kingdoms or Cities of — Bantam, Jacatra, Sura, Japara, Tuban, Jortan, Panarucan, Balambuan, Depresado, Surbaja, Sidajo, Saraboy, Carovang, Materan.
  - Small ISLES; and may be considered as they lie
    - On the Coast of JAVA; among which are those of
      - Madura, — Madura.
      - Baly, — Bali.
      - Pater Noster.
      - Mulusura.
      - Luboc.
      - Gracioſa.
      - Sapy.
      - Cariman Java.
      - Selam.
    - On the West, and South-West Coast of SUMATRA; as
      - Engano.
      - Naſſau.
      - Good Fortune.
      - Calippes.
      - Nays.
      - Gavia.
      - Oura.
      - Cocos.
    - Between SUMATRA and BORNEO, are those of
      - Pedra.
      - Bruca.
      - Bitam.
      - Linga.
      - Monpin, — Banca.
      - Billeton.
      - Lucubare.
      - Suronton.
    - On the North-West, North, and North-East Coast of BORNEO; and belonging to it are the Isles of
      - Tomveta.
      - Timbolan.
      - Ananiba.
      - Matuma.
      - Tigaon.
      - Tiga.
      - Ciumbabon.
      - St. Maria.
      - St. Michael.
      - Zolo.
      - St. John.
      - Boquerano.

- The ISLES of CEYLAN, with its Kingdoms, Cities, and Isles, as they lie
  - North-Easterly, and on the Sea; as,
    - Jafanapatan.
    - Trimquilemale.
    - Baticalo.
  - Westerly, and on the Sea; as,
    - Punto Gallo.
    - Colombo.
    - Chilao.
  - Within Land; as,
    - Jala.
    - Ceitavaca.
    - Candea.
    - Das ſette Corales.
  - Isles about, and close to CEYLAN, as
    - Manar, — Manar.
    - Grande.
    - Barra de Cardiva.

- The ISLES of the MALDIVES, as they are know bny the Names of the ATTOLLONS of
  - Tilla don Matis.
  - Milla doſe Madoſe.
  - Padypola.
  - Malos Madou.
  - Ariatollon.
  - Male Atollon.
  - Poulisdou.
  - Molucque.
  - Nillandoux.
  - Collomadous.
  - Adoumathis.
  - Sovadou.
  - Adou, and Pove Molucque.

THE

THE ISLES OF THE SOUND.

THE Isles of the *SOUND* are those of *Sumatra*, *Borneo*, *Java*, the greater and lesser, and others: They are underneath and about the *Equator*, advancing on this side, to the seventh and eighth degree of *Latitude*, towards the North; and beyond it, unto the ninth or tenth degree of South *Latitude*; beginning at 135 *Degrees* of *Longitude*, Westward, and ending about the 160 Eastwards: So that they are together 16 or 18 *Degrees* of *Latitude*, which are 400 and odd Leagues; and 24 or 25 *Degrees* of *Longitude*, which are 600 or thereabouts. The Isles of the *Sound*. Their situation.

The *Portugals* called them the Isles of the *Sound*, because they are to the South of *Malacca*, as *Pyrardus* saith. I believe rather, because of the *Streight* of the *Sound*, which is between the two chief, and best known of these Islands, to wit, *Sumatra* and *Java major*; or else, because of the Port of *Bantam*, which is called of the *Sound*, being the best Port, and of the greatest concourse that is in all these Islands. Their Name.

The Island of *SUMATRA* is 10 or 12 Leagues from the *Peninsula* of *Malacca*, and extends from the sixth *Degree* of *Latitude* on this side, near to the sixth on the other side the *Equator*, which are about 11 or 12 *Degrees* of *Latitude*; but it lying from North-west to South-east, stretches from its Northerly point towards *Achem*, unto that of *Labansamora* towards the South, and on the *Streight* of the *Sound*, near 400 Leagues, being not above 50, 60, or at most 80 broad. The Isle of *Sumatra*, its situation.

Some Authors divide it into 4, others into 10, and others into 30 *Kingdoms*. It is to be believed, that it had sometimes more, sometimes less, or that the least were Vassals or Tributaries to the greatest. At present those most famous are *Achem*, which holds likewise *Pedir*, to which it hath been subject, and *Pacem* on the Northern Coasts towards *India*; *Camper* almost underneath *Palimbam*, *Jamby*, *Guadahyri*, *Priaman*, *Baras*, and *Manancabo*, beyond the *Equator*: All which are the Seats of so many of their Kings. But a word or two of *Achem*, which is of the greatest esteem. Its parts.

The City of *Achem* is seated on the side of a very broad River, and in a large Plain: It hath neither Gates nor Walls to defend it self, but a Castle, which is the Palace Royal, which is fortified with a good Wall and Pallisado, and well armed, and so seated, that it commands the whole City: They enter into this Castle or Palace by seven several Gates, one after another, which are guarded by Women that are expert at their Weapons, which are also the ordinary Guard of the King's Person; and without the leave of the King, or his Guard, none are suffered to enter the Pallisado. The Buildings in this Castle are but mean, which are the same with those of the City, which by reason of the often overflowing of the River, are built upon Piles, and The City of *Achem* described.

covered with *Coco Leaves*, but the furniture which is rich and costly. On two sides of the *Castle*, there are pleasant *Forests*, well stored with *Apes*, *Herns*, and all manner of *Birds*, and other delights, in which the *King* recreates himself; as also in *Cock-fighting*, *Hunting* the *Elephant*, or *Bathing Himself* in the *River*. In all which, he seldom is without a Company of *Women*, in whom he most delighteth. He observes great state, seldom shewing himself; he is much reverenced by his Subjects, whom he uses no better than Slaves: In his *Laws* he is very severe; and in his *Punishment* cruel. His *Government* being absolute and meerly arbitrary. His *Revenue*, without doubt, must be great, by reason of the rich *Commodities* that are found here. He is so powerful, that in 1616 he put to Sea 60000 Men of War, in 200 Ships and 60 Galleys, with store of Cannons and Ammunition, to make War against the *Portugals* in *Malacca*; and he alone drove them from the *Fort* which they had in *Pacem*; and hindred them from taking footing in *Sumatra*.

The Fertility, Commodities, &c. of these Isles.

The *Air*, by reason of the great heats, is very unhealthful, but withal, is very fertile, abounding in *Rice*, *Millet*, *Oyl*, *Beefs*, *Goats*, *Sheep*, *Fowls*, *Fish*, store of *Fruits*; also it is rich in *Gold*, though of a lower alloy, in *Silver*, *Copper*, *Iron*, *Tin*, in *Precious Stones*, in *Silks*, in several *Spices*, as long and common *Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Cinnamon*, *Cloves*, *Nutmegs*,; also in Medicinal *Drugs*, in *Wax*, *Honey*, *Camphire*, *Cassia*, *Bezar*, *Lignum*, *Musk*, *Civet*, *Amber*, *Alloes*, whole *Woods* of *white Sandale*, abundance of *Cotton*, &c.

The *Hollanders* are in good intelligence with the people, and Kings of *Sumatra*; and particularly with him of *Achem*: They have no place or Fortress in the Isle, but at *Jambay*, a Kingdom, City, and River of the same name; in one degree and fifty minutes beyond the *Equator*. They have built on this River, and 25 Leagues from the Coast, a House to accommodate their Traffick with the Islanders: Their Trade is for the most part *Pepper*, which they send from this House to the Sea by *Canoes*. The *Inhabitants* are many of them good Artificers and expert Mariners; they are for the most part *Gentiles*, yet of late *Mahometism* hath crept in amongst them: They are of an Olive colour Complexion, flat-faced, but indifferent well proportioned, and content themselves with a mean habit.

The Isle of *Borneo*, its situation, and fertility.

The Island of *BORNEO*, like to *Sumatra*, is part on this side, and part beyond the *Equator*; but it reaches on this side unto the seventeenth degree of North *Latitude*, and beyond only to the fourth of South *Latitude*. Its Form is almost round, having only 250 Leagues from North to South, and little less from West to East; containing in its Continent more than *Sumatra*, or any other Isle we have knowledge of in *Asia*; but it is not so well inhabited, nor of so great Trade as *Sumatra*, yet more fertile, and besides the same Commodities hath quantity of *Myrabolans*. Its *Forests* are full of Trees, which bear the most excellent *Camphire* in the World, which is uttered in the *Indies*, being too dear to be brought farther: That which comes to us from *China*, is so falsified, and of so little value, in respect of that which comes pure from *Borneo*, that one hundred pounds of the one, is not worth one pound of the other. It hath also plenty of *Provision*. *Borneo*, *Bendarmissin*, *Lave*, and *Hormeta*, are the fairest Cities, or at least the best known of the Isle; for we yet know nothing of the Eastern Coast. *Borneo* is on a *Salt Lake*, or rather at the bottom of a Gulf of the *Sea*, as *Venice* is, and is on the North-West of the Island. Its Houses are built of *Wood*, and upon *Piles*, and are accounted to be 20 or 25000. Through every *Street* runneth a Channel or River of Water; the *Palace* of the *King*, and the *Houses* of the principal *Lords* are of *Stone*, and on the firm Land. *Bendarmassin* and *Lave* are towards the South, regarding the great *Java*, and both belong to the same *King*: They build many *Juncos* at *Bendarmassin*. The River of *Succadan*, and the Neighbouring *Forrests* furnish them easily with *Wood*, and all that is necessary for the building of those *Vessels*. *Lave* is near a River of the same name; and this River, as *Succadan*, yields *Diamonds*. *Hormeta*, is described by the *Hollanders* on the Coast, Westwards of the Isle, and they esteem it to have 2 or 3000 Houses.

The

The Inhabitants are great, of an Olive colour, of a good countenance; their Women brown and chaſte, a thing very rare in the Neighbouring Iſlands. They trade little to diſtant places, being more inclined to Theft and Piracy, then to Trade; exerciſing this only with their Neighbours, the others with ſtrangers far off. They are expert in all ſorts of Arms, of good Wits, and capable of Arts. Their Apparel is much the ſame with the *Indians*, which is a Linnen Cloth about their privy Parts, and on their Heads Turbets. In their Religion they are either Mahometants or Gentiles. Its Inhabitants

About *Borneo* are a great quantity of little Iſles, *Bonquerano* 3 *Degrees*, *St. John* 4. *Jolo* or *Zolo* 5. *Tagyma* 6. and *Combahan* 8 *Degrees* of *Latitude:* This laſt is on the North of the Gulph, and City of *Borneo*; near that Gulph is *Pulogitgan*, &c. all theſe Iſlands belong to the King or Kings of *Borneo*. Several ſmall Iſles.

The two Iſlands of *JAVA Major* and *Minor* are to the South of *Borneo:* however there is much diſpute about the ſeat of the little one, the greater lies from the ſixth, unto the eighth, ninth, or tenth *Degree* of South *Latitude*, for we know not its certain breadth: And from the 145 *Meridian* beyond the 155, this length being 250 Leagues, and its breadth little leſs. We have ſcarce knowledge of any but the North-coaſt of this Iſland, none at all of its Southern. Iſles of *Java Major* and *Minor*, their ſituation, length, and breadth.

Along the North-Coaſt of *Bantam*, where is one of the greateſt Trades of all the *East-Indies*, and where the Merchants of the *East-India* Company of *England* have their reſidence, and where once there was a like Company for the *Hollanders*, which they have tranſported to *Jacatra* or *Batavia*. *Bantam* is at the foot of a Hill, from which deſcend three Rivers; of which one paſſes through the middle, the others long, and on the two ſides of the City, communicating by divers Channels, convenient for the *Mahometans*, who believe themſelves purged from their ſins, as often as they waſh, but all too ſhallow for Ships to ſail in; the Walls of the City are of Brick of no great ſtrength, as alſo are their Gates, which makes them have the greater care in guarding them: The City is indifferent great, yet have they but three principal Streets, and theſe all but upon the Caſtle; at every corner of the Streets there ſtands a guard, and at Sunſet they make faſt all paſſage Boats, ſo that in the night there is no ſtirring in the Streets. The Houſes are but meanly built, either of Reeds or Straw, and covered with *Coco* leaves; but for preſervation of Goods, they have Storehouſes made of Stone; they have ſeveral places or Markets for the ſale of Commodities, as alſo an Exchange where Merchants meet. The City of *Bantam* deſcribed, with its great trade.

The Commodities of *Bantam* are theſe of the Iſle, as all ſorts of *Druggs*, *Pepper*, *Sugar*, *Preſerved Ginger*, and all ſorts of *Sweet-meats*, both wet and dry; *Rice*, *Honey*, &c. Its Commodities.

Alſo in this City is found ſeveral good Commodities, which are the product of other places, which are here had at eaſie rates, *viz. Spices*, *precious Stones*, *Ammunition*, *Sandal-wood*. *Silk* both raw and wrought into ſeveral *Fabricks*, as *Velvets*, *Sattins*, *Damask*, *Cabinets*, *Lacque*, *Porcelain*, *Callicoes*, *Frankinſence*, *Camphora*, *Benjamine*, &c.

It is governed by a Supream or Sovereign Prince, whom they entitle the *Mattaran*, and hath four Deputies or Tetrarchs his Subordinates. It is very well peopled; the Houſes of perſons of quality are better built then the reſt, having ſquare Courts at their entrance, and commonly there is a *Moſque* belonging to every one of them, as alſo a Ciſtern to waſh themſelves in. The Palace is indifferently well built, ſhewing ſome kind of State; here the *Chineſſes* (who are great traders to this City, bring in moſt of the Commodities except *Pepper*, *Cotton*, *Wool*, and *Rice*) have a place of meeting for their worſhip.

Fifteen or twenty Leagues from *Bantam* is *Jacatra*, now *Batavia*, ſince the *Hollanders* have builded this on the ruins of the other, where they had a fair *Magazine*: The King of *Jacatra* aſſiſted by ſome *Engliſh*, beſieged it about the year 1618. the *Hollanders* defended themſelves till *March* 1619. that their General *Koen* returning from the *Moluccoes* raiſed the The Cities of *Jacatra*,

siege; took and ruined *Jacatra*, and rebuilt *Batavia*, with a very good Cittadel: This place is at present the Seat or Court of the General and Councellors of the *East-India* Company, for the *United Provinces*.

Japara. Continuing along the Coast, and 100 or 120 Leagues from *Batavia* is *JAPARA*, a City and Kingdom with a good Port, and a fair River. *TUBAN* 20 or 25 Leagues from *Japara*, likewise a City and Kingdom, and *Jortan.* Gulph: Fifty Leagues farther is the City, River, and Port of *Jortan*, which is of great concourse, for those that go or return from *Bantam* to the *Moluccoes*, and from the *Moluccoes* to *Bantam*; *Passaruam.* *Passaruam* is 20 Leagues from *Jortan*, and *Panarucan* yet 8 Leagues farther: This makes the most Easterly point of *Java Major*: *Balambuan* is 12 or 15 Leagues from *Panarucan*, inclining towards the South. All these Cities have each their Kings. *Balambuam.* *Balambuan* regards the Isle of *Baly*, and the streight that is between them, takes its name from *Balambuan* as the most famous. Many *Portugals* remained at *Panarucan* to facilitate the Commerce they had of the *Moluccoes*, of *Amboyna*, *Banda*, *Timor*, &c. with *Malacca*, or those places they possess on this side, *Panarucan* being in the way between. Near this City a Sulphurous Mountain cast forth such great quantity of Stones and Cinders in 1588, that 10000 persons were stifled.

Maderan described. In the midst of the Isle of *JAVA*, and towards the South Coast is the City of *Maderan* or *Materan*, the residence of the most powerful King of *Java*: This City is 100 Leagues from *Bantam*, 100 or 120 from *Balambuan*, and only 35 or 40 from *Japara*. This King once commanded the whole Isle; he yet commands those Kings which are in the High-land, and on the South Coast: Those on this side have freed themselves from his Rule, rendring him only certain Duties, yet some places he holds on this Coast.

The Isle of *Java Minor.* We have no certain knowledge of *JAVA Minor*, if we do not esteem it to be those Isles to the East of *Java Major*, and whose Northern Coast we only know. *Mark Paul* of *Venice*, who made the first Relation, saith that it contained 2000 Leagues Circuit, which would be more then our great *Java*, as we know it at present; he saith it had eight Kingdoms, of which he had seen six; gives to the soil the same qualities with the great one; but that its Inhabitants were more savage, and some Man-eaters: we shall presently speak a word or two of both *Java*'s.

The Isles of *Baly* and *Madura.* On the East of *Java* is *BALY* Isle, which hath not above 40 Leagues Circuit, yet is peopled with 600 thousand Souls, hath its particular King, rich, and magnificent. *Madura* Isle on the North-East of *Jortan* in the *Java Major*, is likewise full of people; Its Cities are very fair; hath its particular King; its people are wicked and perfidious.

Its People. The people of all these Isles are *Mahometans* on the Coast, up in the Country great Idolaters; and some Man-eaters. They have many Kings, and have hitherto been able to hinder the *Spaniards*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*, from building on their Coasts; yet these last have lately got *Batavia*, which they bravely maintain.

The people are corpulent, of a middle stature, broad-faced, little eyes; they wear long hair, of a Chestnut complexion; they are addicted naturally to theft, stout and couragious, very malicous when angred, very proud, deceitful, and great lyars; their cloathing is as the other *Indians*, that is, only a piece of cloth tied about their privy parts. Yet some exceed, whereas others go quite naked. They yet retain divers barbarous Customs and Ceremonies, as well in matters of Religion as otherwise. Their weapons are the Bow and Arrows, the Dart, the Lance, and Shield, and Crizes, a strange and cruel weapon.

Its Fertility. The Country or Islands are very fertile, affording very many rich Commodities, as hath been spoken of already, which are all very excellent; they have several sorts of both tame and wild Beasts, abundance of Fowls and Fishes, among the rest Oysters, which if *Mandelsloes* may be credited, weigheth 300 pound weight; among their Serpents they have *Crocodiles* very large; and for their Fruits, they may compare with most places, as well for the fairness, pleasant tastes, as for the great variety of them. This

This Isle is much troubled at some part of the year with dreadful Thundrings and Lightnings.

Let us now make a short observation on the one and the other *Java*, and the neighbouring Isles and Countries, according as *Mark Paul* of *Venice* hath described them. It seems that his *great Java* must be the Isle of *Borneo*, his Isles *Sondor* and *Condor* must be *Pulo Londor*, his Province of *Beach*, the *Peninsula* of *Malacca*, his Isle *Patan*, that of *Sumatra*, and his *Java minor* our present *Java major*: And it is to be believed that *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Java* are likewise the three *Sindes* of *Ptolomy*.

The Isles of CEYLAN, *and the* MALDIVES.

NOt far from the Cape of *Comori* are the Isles of *CEYLAN* on one side, and the *MALDIVES* on the other. *Ceylan*, 60 Leagues towards the East; and the *Maldives* 150 between the East and the South. The Isles of *Ceylan*, and the *Maldives*.

CEYLAN is the *Trapobane* of the Ancients, though *Ptolomy* makes it unmeasurably greater then *Ceylan* is now found. Its scituation is on this side the *Ganges*, and near *Cape Comori*, of old *Comaria Extrema*; likewise near *Cape de Cael*, of old *Gori* or *Caligicum promont.* and on the streight of *Manar* or *Quilao*, of old *Argaricus Sinus*, near which, or a little farther, is the Land of *Madura*, of old *Madura Regia Pandionis*, and divers other particulars making sufficient proof. *Ceylan*, its scituation and extent.

The *Indians* name it *Teneraſin*, that is, the Land of *Delights*; the *Arabs Zeilan Dive*, that is the Isle of *Ceylan*. It extends it self from 6 to 10 *Degrees* of *Latitude*, and so comprehends four whole *Degrees*, which makes 100 Leagues from South to North: It hath but two *Degrees* and a half, or little more of *Longitude*, which amounts to sixty and odd Leagues from East to West: The whole Circuit is about 300 Leagues; its form is almost Oval, or rather like a Pearl or Pear, whose tail is North, and its head South.

Some place in this Isle 7 Kingdoms, others 9, and others more; that of *Jafanapatan* is the most Northerly; those of *Trinquilemale*, and *Baticalo* are the most Easterly; those of *Chilao* and *Colombo* the most Westerly; and that of *Jaba* the most Southward; those of *Candea*, of *Sette Coralles*, and *Ceitavaca*, hold the middle. *Candea* is at present the most famous; those of *Colombo* and *Ceitavaca* have sometimes been the residence of Kings, which have commanded all the Island. Its parts.

At present the *Portugals* hold *Colombo*, *Chilao*, *Manar* Isle and Fortress, *Jafanapatan*, and some other places on the Coast, which regard the streight of *Chilao* and *Manar*. *Columbo* and *Chilao* are not above 60 Leagues, or little more, from *Cape Comori*, *Manar* 25 or 30 Leagues from *Cape de Cael*, and *Jafanapatan* 15 or 20 from the *Cape* of *Negapatan*. The *Portugals* here inhabit.

The best Ports of this Isle are those of *Gallo*, *Columbo*, and *Chilao*: That of *Galla* is one of the best known of all *India*, because all that come, or go, are constrained to make the point of *Gallo*, for fear of falling on the Banks of the *Maldives*: Some years past the *Hollanders* took this important place from the *Portugals*.

The Air is so temperate, and the Land so fruitful, that some esteem it the Earthly Paradise. Its Fruit, Herbs, and Plants have a marvellous pleasant odor; its *Cinnamon* is the best in the World, and particularly towards *Colombo* and *Ceitavaca*, there is found much *Cardamom*, *Areca*, *Nutmegs*, *Pepper* and other Spices, and several Druggs, also *Lignum Aquilæ*, *Lignum Serpentis*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Brass*, *Iron* and other Metals; though the Mines are not wrought; many precious Stones, among others those which the *Portugals* call *Cats-eyes*; they have no *Diamonds*, but many *Pearls*, which they fish for in the streight between this Island and the Continent. The Soil produces Corn, Oyl, Wine, Cotton, abundance of *Rice*, several roots for Diers. Among Its Air, Fertility, and Commodities.

mong their Beasts their *Elephants* are so excellent, and so docile, that those of other places bear honour to them as to their Superiours. They have great plenty of Fowls, Cattle; and their Rivers yield great store of Fish.

As concerning the Coyns, Weights, and Measures of the Isles of *Ceyland*, and the *Maldives*, I have no certain account thereof, wherefore I omit them.

The Inhabitants. The Islanders are generally great, black, deformed, having their Ears long, and their Nostrils large, for the rest well disposed and active, great Dancers, insomuch that they may furnish all *India* with Comedians and Juglers; they are rich, and smother themselves in delights, all things agreeing to it, yet are they inclined to War. In those places possessed by the *Portugals* are many Christians, the rest Idolaters or Mahometans.

The MALDIVES.

The Isles of the *Maldives*, their situation, and parts or *Attollons*. THe *MALDIVES* take their name from *Male* the chief City of these Islands, and *Dive* which signifies an Island; they are an infinite number of very little Islands, all seated in the *Indian* Ocean, on this side *Cape Comori*, beginning at the eighth *Degree* of Northern *Latitude*, and not ending till the third or fourth of the South, the *Equinoctial Line* passing over them, so that they extend in length 300 Leagues, in breadth not above 15, 20 or little more.

They are divided into thirteen *Attollons*, separated the one from the other by certain Channels, and containing each a great number of little Isles: From hence the King of *Maldives* terms himself King of 13 Provinces, and 12000 Isles; though there be many less, and the most of them desart, and which the Sea covers when it is high.

The disposition of these *Attollons* is admirable; then their Banks, their Entrances, their Currents; the *Attollons* are almost round, or Oval; each having 30,40, or 50 Leagues circuit; and succeeding one another from North, North-west, to South, South-east, there resting between them but certain Currents, large, little or more, but all dangerous.

These *Attollons* are each encompassed with a great bank of stones, there being no human Art could better wall a place, then these banks do their *Attollons*, the Sea breaking its waves against the banks, and within the *Attollons* there being a perfect calm, and but little depth of water. The entrances are certain open places of 40, 50, some of 100, 200 common paces, which the Author of Nature hath given to every *Attollon*; that is four to each, to facilitate their passage from one *Attollon* to another; for the Currents which are between the Channels, being carried six Months to the East, and six Months to the West; it was impossible to pass from one *Attollon* to another, if there were but two openings, one opposite to another. These Currents moreover are so rapid, that when it is calm, and when the wind goes with them, they carry a Vessel sometimes to *Malabar* and *Ceylan*, and sometimes to *Sumatra*, without possibility of stopping of it; and on the other side, even to *Arabia* and *Africa*.

The names and order of these *Attollons* descending from North to South, are *Tilladou Matis*, that is the high point, and by the *Spaniards*, *Cabeza das Ilhas*, head of the Islands; then *Milla doue*, *Madoue*, *Padypola*, *Malos*: *Caridon*, *Ariatollon*, *Male Attollon*, where is the Isle of *Male Pouliſdou*, *Moluque*, *Nillandoux*, *Collomadoux*, *Adoumatis*, *Souadou*; *Addou* and *Poue Moluque*, the two last being esteemed but one.

The largest Channels, and there where the Currents are the strongest, are those of *Malos*, *Madoue*, *Caridon*, *Aldou*, and *Sovadou*. *Francis Pirard* a great Traveller was shipwrackt on the first, and remained five years in the *Maldives*, where at leasure he learned the tongue, situation, and manners of the Inhabitants, and hath set out a publick description of every particular.

The

The King of these Isles resides in the Isle of *Male*, which is one of the greatest, though not above a League and a half in Circuit: It is one of the most fruitful, and seated in the middle of the *Longitude* of three Islands. Strangers frequent it, because of the Court. There are no Cities through all, their disposition being sufficiently commodious; their situation denotes a great heat, yet the days being equal to the nights, and the nights subject to great Dews, they refresh the Earth; so their Summers are without rain, and their Winters without ice; but these pouring down rain with a constant West South-west wind, the Feaver among the *Maldives* is very common, and dangerous to Strangers, whom it often kills in few days.

There grows neither *Rice* nor *Wheat*; yet are Provisions better cheap than in the rest of the *Indies*. They have *Rice* from the Continent, and gather at home *Millet* in abundance, and the Grain of *Bunbi*, like to *Millet*, but black. They have much *Fruit*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Oranges*, *Bananes*; and above all, so great abundance of that *Nut* of *India*, called *Cocos*, that no Country in the World hath so much. All the *Levant* is furnished hence, lading every year several Ships. They have many *Animals*, little *Beef* or *Mutton*; no *Dogs*, for they abhor them: Quantity of *Fish*. Provision very plentiful.

They have many little Shells, which pass in many places for Money, and they lade yearly 30 or 40 Ships with these Shells for *Bengala* only, besides what they lade for other parts. Their *Tortoise Shells* are much esteemed at *Cambaya*, because they are smooth, black, and well figured; with which they make *Combs*, *Cases* of *Looking-glasses*, &c. Their *Tavarcarre* or *Cocos*, particularly of the *Maldives*, is very Medicinal, and of greater value then their *Amber-greece*, and their black *Coral*. The King alone is to have this *Tavarcarre* and *Amber-greece*, not permitting his Subjects to trade in it. Shells pass instead of Money.

There is brought to the *Maldives*, in exchange of their Commodities, *Rice*, *Cloth*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Oyl*, *Areca*, *Iron*, *Steel*, *Spices*, *Porcelain*, *Gold* and *Silver*, which come not thence again. Its *Inhabitants* make use of all sorts of *Arms*, yet their King is neither rich, nor powerful, except in his Isles, and in regard of his own Subjects.

Amongst the rarities of this Isle, their *Candou* and their *Coco*'s are observable. They make Planks of the Wood of *Candou*, with which they draw out of the Sea all sorts of weights, though of 10000 pound. Their Tree is as great as our *Walnut-Tree*, leaved like the *Aspin*, and as white, but very soft: It bears no Fruit; they make Fisher-boats of it, and with rubbing two pieces of this wood together, kindle fire as we do with a Flint and Steel; yet it neither burns nor consumes. The Coco-Nut and Tree of great use for several things.

As for the *Coco*'s or *Walnut* of *India*, it furnishes them with all things necessary for mans life; they extract from it *Wine*, *Honey*, *Sugar*, *Milk*, *Oyl*, and *Butter*. Its Kernels they eat instead of Bread, with all sorts of Meat; the Leaf being green, serves for Paper to write; being dry, they fold it in little Bands, and make *Panniers*, *Dossers*, *Umbrello's*, *Hats*, *Coverlids*, and *Carpets*; the Sprig which is the middle of the Leaf, being dry, hardneth, and of it they make *Cabinets*, *Chests*, and other Moveables; of the Shell, which incloses the Fruit, they make *Ladles*, *Spoons*, *Plates*, *Cups*, &c. They may build a whole House out of these Trees; the Trunk may serve for Beams and Joynts; the Branches cut in two or three for Pails, to pail in Gardens or Houses, and for Laths to cover them; and the Leaves sewed together and disposed in ranks upon those Laths, cast off the Water as well as our Tiles. They build likewise many Ships only out of the *Coco-Tree*; the *Keel*, *Sides*, *Planks*, *Pins*, *Hatches*, *Masts* and *Yards*, *Cordage*, *Anchors*, *Sails*, and even all the Utensils of a Ship, are taken from this *Tree*; and sometimes their Lading, whether for Provision or Moveables, or to furnish Rigging for other Ships, is likewise taken out of this *Tree* alone.

And so much for the *Eastern Isles* and all *Asia*.

- AFRICA, as it is divided into
  - AFRICA, or LIBYA,
    - Exteriour or Outward, and comprehendeth
      - BARBARY, which containeth the Kingdoms of
        - Morocco, — Morocco.
        - Fez, — Fez, Sala.
        - Telenſin, — Telenſin.
        - Algier, — Algier, Bugia.
        - Tunis, — Tunis.
        - Tripoli, — Tripolis.
        - Barca, — Barca.
        - Deſart of Barca, — Ammon.
      - BILIDULGERID, which containeth ſeveral Kingdoms and Provinces, the chief of which are,
        - Sus, or Teſſet, — Teſſet.
        - Darha, — Darha.
        - Segellomeſſa, — Segellomeſſa.
        - Tafilet, — Tafilet.
        - Tegorarin, — Tegorarin.
        - Zeb, — Nefta.
        - Bilidulgerid, — Fezzen, Gademes.
      - EGYPT, which is divided in
        - Sayd, or Bechria, — Cairo.
        - Errif, — Alexandria, Roſetta.
        - Coaſt of the Red Sea, — Sues, Grodol.
    - Interiour, or Inwards, and comprehendeth
      - ZAARA, or SAARA, where are the Kingdoms and Cities of
        - Zanhaga, — Tegaſſa.
        - Zuenziga, — Zuenziga.
        - Targa, — Targa.
        - Lempta, — Lempta.
        - Berdoa, — Berdoa.
        - Goga, — Goaga.
        - Borno, — Borno.
      - The Land of NEGROES, where are the Kingdoms, People or Countries
        - On this ſide the Niger, as of
          - Gualate, — Gandia.
          - Genehoa, — Genehoa.
          - Tombut, — Tombuta.
          - Agades, — Agades.
          - Canun, — Cano.
          - Caſſena, — Caſſena.
          - Gangara, — Gangara.
        - Between the branches of the Niger, as of
          - The Jaloſes People, — Solul.
          - The Biatares People, — Biatares.
          - The Souſos People, — Beria.
        - Beyond the the Niger, as of
          - Melli, — Melli.
          - Mandinga, — Mandinga.
          - Gago, — Gago.
          - Guber, — Guber.
          - Zegzeg, — Zegzeg.
          - Zanfara, — Zanfara.
      - GUINEE, with its Kingdoms, Parts, and chief Places of
        - Melegutte, — Bugos.
        - Particular Guinee, or the Ivory Coaſt, — St. George de la Mina, Cape of Palmes.
        - Benin, — Benin.
  - ÆTHIOPIA,
    - Higher, or under Egypt, and comprehendeth
      - NUBIA, where are the Kingdoms, Countries, and Cities of
        - Bugia, — Bugia.
        - Jalac, — Jalac.
        - Nuabia, — Nuabia.
        - Dancala, — Dancala.
        - Cuſa, — Cuſa.
        - Gorham, — Gorham.
        - Damocla, — Damocla.
        - Somna, — Somna.
      - The Empire of the ABISSINES, where are ſeveral Kingdoms, Countries, and Cities; the chief of which are,
        - Tigremahon, — Chaxumo.
        - Barnagaſſo, — Barva.
        - Angota, — Angotina.
        - Dancala, — Degibeldara.
        - Amara, — Amara.
        - Bagamedri, — Baza.
        - Ambian, — Amaſen.
        - Damute, — Damute.
        - Agag, — Agag.
        - Cafates, — Cafates.
        - Narea, — Zeb.
        - Ambiam, — Ambiam.
      - BARBARY, or ZANGUEBAR, which is divided into
        - Zanguebar, with its Kingdoms and Cities of — Mozambique, Quiloa, Quilmanca.
        - The Coaſt of AJAN, with its Kingdoms and Cities of — Adea, Adel, Magadoxo.
        - The Coaſt of ABEX, with its chief Places and Iſles of — Arquico, Suaquen.
    - Lower, or Interiour, and comprehendeth
      - CONGO, with its ſeveral Kingdoms or Provinces; the chief of which are,
        - Loango, — Loango.
        - Pemba, — Pemba.
        - Angola, — Engaze.
        - Bamba, — Bamba.
        - Songo, — Sonho.
      - The Coaſt and Country of CAFRES, with its ſeveral Eſtates, Kingdoms, Capes, Ports, and Iſles; the chief of which are the — Cape of Good Hope, Cape of St. Nicholas, Port of Caraſcalis, Iſles of St. Chriſtophers, Iſles of St. Lucia.
      - MONOMOTAPA, with its Kingdoms and chief Places of
        - Monomotapa, — Monomotapa.
        - Butua, — Butua.
        - Monoemugi, — Agag.
        - Zefala, — Zefala.
        - Chicanga, — Zimbaos.
  - In divers ISLES
    - In the Mediterranean Sea, — Malta, — Valetta.
    - In the Weſtern Ocean, as the
      - Canary Iſles, — Canaria.
      - The Iſles of Cape Verd, — St. Jago.
      - The Iſle of St. Thomas, — Pavoaſan.
    - In the Eaſtern Ocean, as
      - Madagaſcar, — Vingagora.
      - Zocotora, — Zocotora.

AFRICA.

AFRICA is a *Peninſula* ſo great, that it makes the Third and moſt Meridional part of our Continent. It approaches ſo near to *Spain*, that only the Streight of *Gibraltar* divides them; and touches ſo little upon *Aſia*, that only an *Iſthmus* of 30 or 40 Leagues, between the *Red Sea* and the *Mediterranean*, joyns them together.

Beſides this *Iſthmus*, *Africa* is bounded on all ſides by the Sea, as appears by the Map. The *Latins* called it moſt commonly *Africa*, and the *Greeks*, *Libya*; yet both the one and the other are indifferently found in the Authors of the one and the other Tongue. The firſt was given by one *Afer*, deſcending from *Abraham* and *Kethura*; others ſay, of one *Afer*, Son of the *Libyan Hercules*; or (according to the *Greeks*) it is taken from Ἀφρη φρίκης, that is, *Sine Frigore*, becauſe (according to its ſcituation) it muſt be without Cold. According to the *Arabs* the name ſhould be taken from *Ifriquia*, that is, *Divided*; becauſe were it not for that *Iſthmus* which joyns it to *Aſia*, it were quite divided from our Continent. According to the *Punick* Tongue it ſignifies the Land of *Corn*, for the abundance of *Grains* gathered in that particular part called *Africa*.

Its Bounds.

Its Name.

The name of *Libya*, is taken either from *Libya*, the Daughter of *Epaphus*, the Son of *Jupiter*; or from *Libya*, one of the three Lakes which deſcend into the River *Triton*; or from λίβος, which in the ancient *Greek* Idiom ſignifies *Black*, becauſe its Inhabitants are Black; or from *Lub*, which among the *Arabs* ſignifies Thirſt, becauſe a good part of the Country wants Water. But theſe Hiſtories, Fables, and Etymologies, are taken from divers Authors of divers Tongues; and for different Reaſons there may be new ones found or made, to content thoſe which are covetous of them.

The Form of *Africa* is near Triangular, yet it advances four *Promontories* to the four principal places of the World. *Cape Bona*, towards the North; the *Cape of Good Hope*, towards the South; *Cape Guard a Fuy*, towards the the Eaſt; and *Cape Verd*, towards the Weſt: the three laſt are on the Ocean, and the firſt on the *Mediterranean* Sea.

Its Form and Promontories.

Its length, taken from *Cape Verd* to *Cape Guard a Fuy*, is about 2000 Leagues. Its breadth, from *Cape Bona* to that of *Good Hope*, is about 1800 Leagues; but

Its length and breadth.

but both its length and breadth, are found much leſs in all other places.

Its Scituation. Its ſcituation is under or about the *Torrid Zone*; the *Equinoctial Line* paſſing over it, and cutting it in two, though unequal parts. The moſt part of *Africa* is between the two *Tropicks*, which it out paſſes 11½ Degrees, and and 15 Degrees on one and the other ſide, to wit, 11½ Degrees beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*, and 15 on this ſide that of *Cancer*.

How Inhabited. It is every where inhabited, though not ſo well as *Europe* or *Aſia*; whether by reaſon of the inſupportable Heats which reign there, or becauſe it hath many Countries dry and without Water; or becauſe it hath others, where there is much *Sand* eaſily removed by the Wind, often burying Men in it; or by reaſon of the great number of venemous, fierce, and cruel Beaſts, which are found through the whole; or becauſe they ſell and tranſport one another for Slaves, I leave to judge.

It is moreover obſervable, that it is freſher and cooler under and about the *Equator*, than under and about the *Tropicks*. The reaſon is, becauſe the *Sun* makes two Summers and two Winters, under and near the *Equator*; and that the Nights are equal to the Days, which is a great refreſhment.

Its Diviſion. Divers Authors divide *Africa* in a very different manner; yet moſt agree to make firſt the Diviſion into two great parts, calling that *Oriental* which is on the Eaſt of the *Nile*, and that *Occidental* which is on the Weſt; others by the *Equator*, calling it *Northern* on this ſide, and *Southern* on the other ſide the *Equator:* Others by the *Colours* of the People, obſerving that on this ſide the Tropick of *Cancer* they are *white*, and beyond it *black*. But all theſe Diviſions have many faults, to avoid which, and to make our Diviſion of *Africa* into two great Parts, agree with that of ancient Authors, and with the diſpoſition in which the Country is now found, I draw a Line from the Gulph of St. *Thomas* unto the extremity of *Egypt*, on the *Red Sea*. This Line carried along where the Eſtates are diſtinguiſhed one from the other, divides *Africa* into two equal parts, cuts no Eſtate in two; and that which is on this ſide is called by the Ancients, and by the Modern more preciſely, *Africa* or *Libya*; that which is beyond this, is called both by the one and the other *Ethiopia*.

This firſt Diviſion will facilitate thoſe of the other parts, dividing *Africa* or *Libya* into two, and *Ethiopia* likewiſe into two; *Africa* or *Libya* into the higher and farther, in regard of us; and exteriour and interiour in regard of thoſe of the Country. *Ethiopia* into high and low, according to the Moderns, or into *Ethiopia* under *Egypt*, and *Ethiopia* Interiour, according to the Ancients.

Its Parts, and their bounds. In the Higher and Exteriour *Africa* or *Libya* we have *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, and *Egypt:* In the Farther and Interiour *Africa* and *Libya*, *Saara* or *Deſart*, the Country of the *Negroes* and *Guinny*. In the Higher *Ethiopia*, or under *Egypt*, are *Nubia*, *Abiſſina*, and *Zanguebar:* In the Lower or Interiour *Ethiopia*, *Congo*, the *Mono-Motapa*, and the *Cafres*.

Barbary extends it ſelf along the *Mediterranean Sea*, from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*, and is bounded on the South by Mount *Atlas*. *Billedulgerid* lies along this Mountain, likewiſe from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*, bounded on the South by *Saara* or *Deſart*. *Egypt* is only one Valley, from the *Cataractes* of *Nile* unto the *Mediterranean Sea*. This laſt part hath retained its ancient name; the other two put together, anſwer to what the Ancients called *Mauritania*, *Africa proprie dicta*, and *Libya* likewiſe *proprie dicta:* ſo that the moſt Weſtern parts of *Barbary* and *Billedulgerid* together make *Mauritania*, the Middle *Africa*, and the moſt Eaſtern *Libya*.

Likewiſe *Saara* or *Deſart*, the Country of the *Negroes* and *Guinny*, ſtretch themſelves from the *Ocean* unto the High and Low *Ethiopia:* And the moſt Weſtern part of *Saara* anſwers to the ancient People *Gatuli*, the Eaſternly part of *Garamantes*. The Country of the *Negroes*, to *Nigritarum Regio: Guinny* to many People, of which the moſt famous have been the *Perorſi*. This *Guinny* is 750 Leagues long: The Country of the *Negroes* near 1000: *Saara*, *Billedulgerid*, and *Barbary*, each 11 or 1200 Leagues; their

their breadth being only 100, 200, or 300 Leagues. The length of *Egypt* from South to North is not above 200 Leagues. Its breadth, if we esteem it only the Valley along the *Nile*, is very narrow; and sometimes only 5, 10, sometimes 12 or 15 Leagues.

We have divided *Ethiopia* into the Higher and the Lower, placing in the Higher, *Nubia*, *Abissina*, and *Zanguebar*; in the Lower, *Congo*, *Mono-Motapa*, and *Cafres*. *Nubia* is for the most part on this side, and to the West; *Abissina* above, and *Zanguebar* beyond the *Nile*, and in the most Easterly part of *Ethiopia*. *Congo* makes the most Western part of *Ethiopia*; the *Mono-Motapa*, and *Cafres*, the most Southern: This on the Coast, the other within Land.

Nubia, *Abissina*, and *Zanguebar* together, answer to the *Ethiopia sub Egypto* of *Ptolomy*; *Nubia* to the most Northern part, and nearest to *Egypt*; *Abissina* more Southern; *Zanguebar* to that which is on the Coasts, and there where *Ptolomy* describes the Regions of *Barbary*, *Azania*, and *Troglo-ditica*; which answer to the particular *Zanguebar*, on the Coast of *Ajan*, and the Coast of *Abex*; which we esteem under the general name of *Zanguebar*. In the Lower *Ethiopia*, *Congo* answers to the *Hesperii Æthiopes*, the *Mono-Motapa* to *Agisymba Regio*, the *Cafres* to the *Anthropophagi Æthiopes*.

The Coast of *Cafres* reaches 1200 Leagues; the *Mono-Motapa* is 4, 5, or 600 long and broad; *Congo* 6 or 700 long, and 300 large; *Nubia* 400 long, and 200 broad; *Abissina* 7 or 800 long, and 4 or 500 broad; The Coast of *Zanguebar* stretches 15 or 1600 Leagues, with not above 100 of breadth, like to that of *Cafres*.

The Mountains of *Africa* are in great number, and very remarkable, both for their height, extent, the Metals wherewith they abound, and other particulars. The most famous are *Atlas*, those of the *Moon*, and *Serre Lione*. Its chief Mountains, *viz.*

Atlas was the most famous Mountain among the *Ancients*, who believed it bounded the World on the South. Its name was taken from *Atlas*, King of *Mauritania*, whom *Perseus* turned into a Mountain, by making him see the Head of *Medusa*; and becaufe he had been an *Astronomer* the Poets feigned, that he bore up the Heavens. It is true, this Mountain is so high that it seems to touch the Skies; it extends it self from the *Great Sea* or *Occidental Ocean*, to which it hath given the name of *Atlantick*; even near to *Egypt*, for the space of more than 1000 Leagues, leaving *Barbary* on the one side, and *Billedulgerid* on the other; casting forth branches under divers names on both sides. There is the Great and Little *Atlas*. *Atlas*.

The Mountains of the *Moon*, now of *Beth*, are higher than any of *Europe*, and are alwaies covered with *Snow* and *Ice*: But these Mountains make divers branches towards the *Cape of Good Hope*; they are called *Picos Fragosos*; towards the East of *Congo*, the Mountains of *Chrystal*; above the Lakes of *Zaire* and *Zafflan*, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and of *Salt-Peter*; and it may well be, that the highest between *Abissina*, the *Mono-Motapa* and *Cafreria*, retain the name of the Mountains of the *Moon*. The Mountains of the *Moon*.

The Mountains of *Serre Lione*, by the *Portugals*, *Sierre Lioa*, are the *Chariot* of the *Gods* of the Ancients: And this name was given, because from their top they send forth continual *Lightnings* and *Thunders*, as if the *Gods* could not march with less noise. Their principal ridge is between the Country of the *Negroes* and *Guinny*, where they make two Branches; one advancing into the Farther *Africa* or *Libya*, and the Higher *Ethiopia*; the other between the Higher and Lower *Ethiopia*: this seeking the Mountains of the *Moon*, the other *Atlas*. The Mountains of *Serre Lione*.

The largest and most famous Rivers of *Africa* are the *Nile* and the *Niger*; the *Nile* hath been known in all times. Ancient and Modern Authors have been troubled to tell where its Head-spring is, and more to give the reason of the Increase and Decrease of its Waters; we will speak something of it in *Egypt*. Its course is 1200 Leagues in a strait line, and little less than 2000 in its turnings: It descends from the Lake *Zaire*, traverses the Higher *Ethiopia*, Its chief Rivers, *viz.* The *Nile*.

Nubia, and *Egypt*, and falls with ſeveral Mouths into the *Mediterranean*; about the middle of its courſe it embraces the Iſle of *Meroe* or *Gueguere*: And this Iſle hath many Eſtates and Signories, and may boaſt it ſelf the greateſt and faireſt of all River Iſles that we have knowledge of.

The *Niger*. The *Niger* hath its Springs in the Kingdom of *Damont*, above the Lake *Niger*, and not far from the *Nile*, when it is out of the Lake of *Zaire*. This *Niger* doth in ſome part divide the Higher *Ethiopia* from the Lower, approaches *Nubia*, and the Countrey of the *Negroes*; hitherto rolling its ſtreams from South to North, till loſing it ſelf in the Earth, it riſes again near the Lake *Borno*; turns its courſe, and continues it to the Weſt, traverſing the whole Country of the *Negroes* 200 Leagues from the Sea, it divides it ſelf into many Branches, which have divers names, and falls into the *Ocean* between the 11*th* and 16*th* degrees of *Latitude*. Its courſe is a little longer than that of the *Nile*; its ſtreams more violent, and hath the ſame property of overflowing and fatning the Earth; engenders the ſame Creatures, but not ſo ſtrong; hath grains of *Gold* in its Sand: But the Country which it traverſes is neither ſo well habited, rich, nor known, as that of the *Nile*. Some believe the *Nile* and the *Niger* come from the ſame Springs, and that they begin not to divide but between the Higher and Lower *Ethiopia*; one continuing its courſe towards the North, the other turning from Eaſt to Weſt: So the *Arab* of *Nubia* calls both, *Nile*; and to diſtinguiſh them adds, *Nile* of *Egypt*, and *Nile* of the *Negroes*.

The *Zaire*. The other Rivers of *Africa* are not to compare with theſe. *Zaire* in *Congo* may be conſidered for the quantity of Waters it ſtreams down, and for the greatneſs of its Mouth at the Sea, and ſo ſome others: but let us paſs to the *Promontories*.

Its Promontories. We have already touched a word or two on the principal ones, to wit, the Capes of *Bona*, *Hermea*, *Promontorium*, *Cape Verd*, *Arſinarium Prom*, *Gard a huy*, *Aromata Prom*; (this Name was given, becauſe of the *Drugs* and *Spices* of the Eaſt, which paſſed before this Cape to deſcend by the *Red Sea* into *Egypt*, and from *Egypt* into the *Mediterranean*, and through all the Weſt.) and of the *Cape of Good Hope*, of which the *Greeks* and *Latins* have had no certain knowledge, much leſs thoſe before them; nevertheleſs we find ſome Authors among the Ancients, who would make it appear that the *Barbarians*, that is, the ſtranger Nations, have made (or cauſed to be made) the Circum-navigation of *Africa*, which could not be done without knowing of this Cape.

The Emperours and Kings which poſſeſs *Africa*. The Kings, Emperours, or Princes, which at preſent poſſeſs *Africa*, are in very great number; the moſt powerful and conſiderable are the Great *Turk*, or *Sultan* of the *Ottomans*, who holds all *Egypt*, a great part of *Barbary*, and almoſt all the Coaſt which touches the *Red Sea*. The *Negus* of the *Abiſſines*, who poſſeſſes the faireſt and greateſt part of the Higher *Ethiopia*: the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco*, which have held thoſe two Kingdoms in *Barbary*, and likewiſe *Dara*, and *Segelmeſſe* in *Billedulgerid*. The King of *Tombutt*, among the *Negroes*: the *Mona's* or *Mani*, that is, Kings of *Congo*, *Monotapa*, and *Emugi*; and the *Sobi* of *Angola*, in the Lower *Ethiopia*; he of *Adel*, in the Coaſt of *Ajan*; beſides which there are many *Xeques* of the *Arabs*, many free and vagabond People, who (for the moſt part) live without Chiefs, Faith, or Law.

The Kings of *Caſtile* and *Portugal* hold many places on the Coaſts of *Africa*; thoſe of *Caſtile* hold ſome on the *Mediterranean Sea*; thoſe of *Portugal* hold a great number on all parts of the *Ocean*, which encompaſſes *Africa*; but the *Hollanders* have taken ſome from them, and others are delivered to the *Engliſh*.

Languages or Tongues ſpoken in *Africa*. Amongſt a great number of different Tongues that are in *Africa*, the three or four principal and moſt general ones are the *Beribere* or *African*, which comes from the Ancient *Punick*, the *Arabick* and *Ethiopian*. The *African* and *Arabick* extend themſelves through all *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, *Egypt*, and *Saara*, according as the People of theſe Countries, deſcend from the

Africans

Africans or *Arabs*. The *Ethiopian* is in the greateſt part of *Ethiopia*; if it be not on the Coaſts, where the commerce and confluence of Strangers hath long ſince changed the Tongue: But the *Negroes* ſeem to have a particular Language. Theſe Tongues have divers Idioms, and very different the one from the other; all (or at leaſt the three firſt) deſcending from the *Hebrew*, or Tongues derived from it.

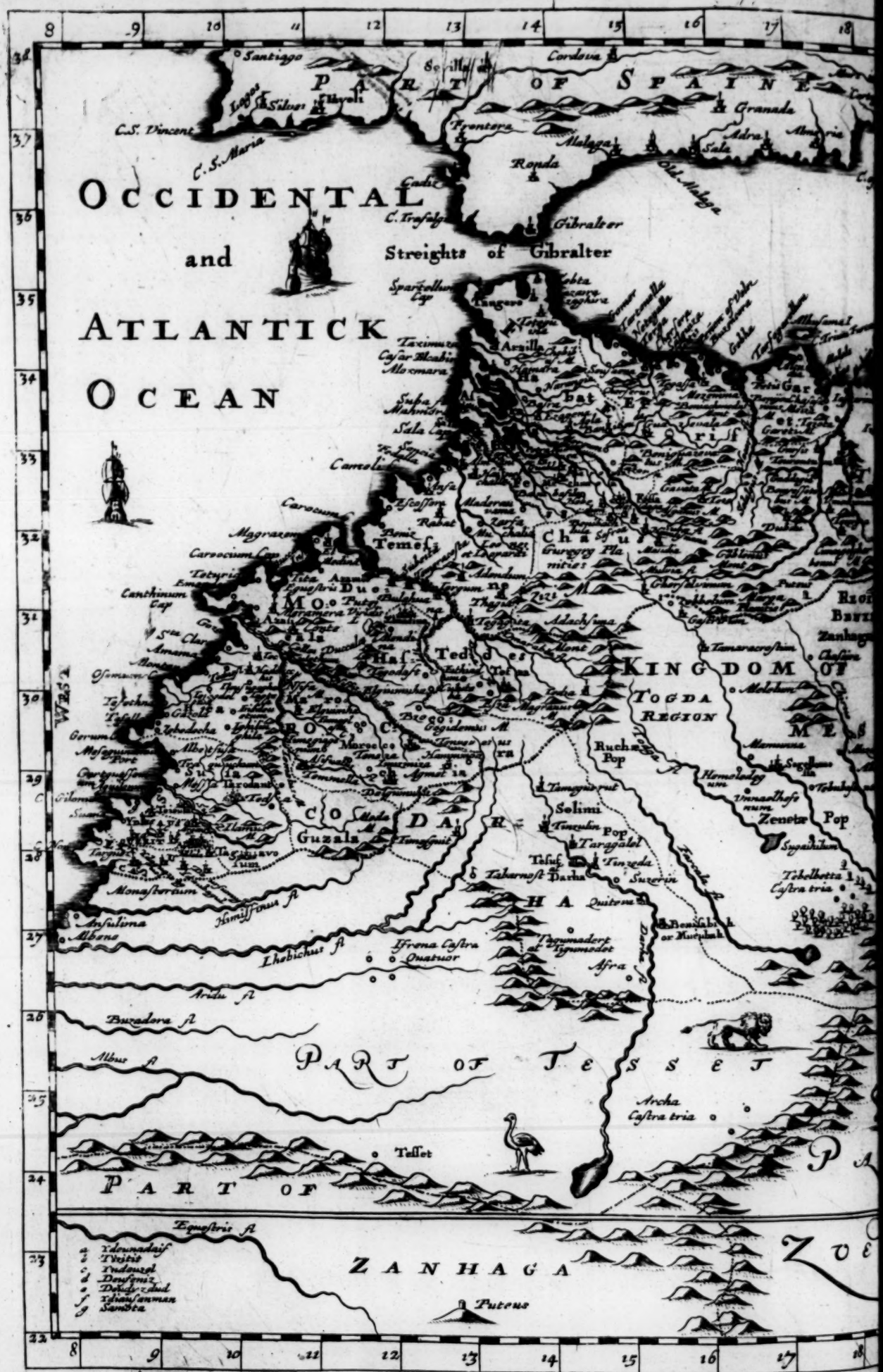
The Religions which have courſe in *Africa* may be reduced to four; *Mahometiſm*, *Paganiſm*, *Chriſtianity*, and *Judaiſm*. *Mahometiſm* poſſeſſes *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, *Egypt*, *Zaara* or the *Deſart*, part of the *Negroes*, and a good part of the Coaſt of *Zanguebar*. *Paganiſm* holds part of the *Negroes* and *Nubia*, *Guinny*, and almoſt all the Lower *Ethiopia* (I comprehend the *Cafres* with the *Pagans*,) part of *Zanguebar*, and ſome mixture otherwhere. *Chriſtianity* holds in *Africa* almoſt the whole Empire of the *Abiſſines*, part of *Egypt*; but the moſt part *Schiſm aticks*; and along all the Coaſts of *Africa*, where the *Portugals* are the ſtrongeſt, they have introduced *Chriſtianity*: as in *Congo*, *Angola*, and ſome Coaſts of the *Cafres* and *Zanguebar*. As for *Judaiſm*, it is ſcattered in many Cities on the Coaſts of *Barbary*; as at *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Algier*, &c. Likewiſe in *Egypt*, and on the confines of the *Abiſſines* and the *Negroes*, they have the Kingdom of *Ximen* tributary to the *Abiſſines*; but the *Jews* are but a ſmall number in *Africa* in compariſon of the others. I make account that *Africa* being divided into 16 equal parts, *Mahometiſm* would poſſeſs 5 or 6, *Paganiſm* 6 or 7, *Chriſtianity* 3, and *Judaiſm* only one. Their Religions.

AFRICA, as it is at this day known, may be divided into theſe 8 parts following, *viz.* 1. *Barbary*, (in which is found the Kingdoms of *Morocco*, *Fez*, *Algier*, *Telenſin*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Braca*.) 2. *Billedulgerid* or *Numidia*. 3. *Egypt*. 4. *Zaara* or *Libya Interiour*, in which is comprehended the Country of the *Negroes*, *Guinny*, with ſome certain Iſles. 5. *Nubia*. 6. The Empire of the *Abiſſines*, or the higher or greater *Ethiopia*, in which I comprehend *Zanguebar*. 7. *Ethiopia* the Lower, in which are found the Kingdoms of *Congo*, the Empire of the *Monomotapa*, the Land of *Cafres*: And 8. and laſtly, the Iſles of *Africa*. And of theſe in order. Its diviſion into Parts, as at this day known.

Under

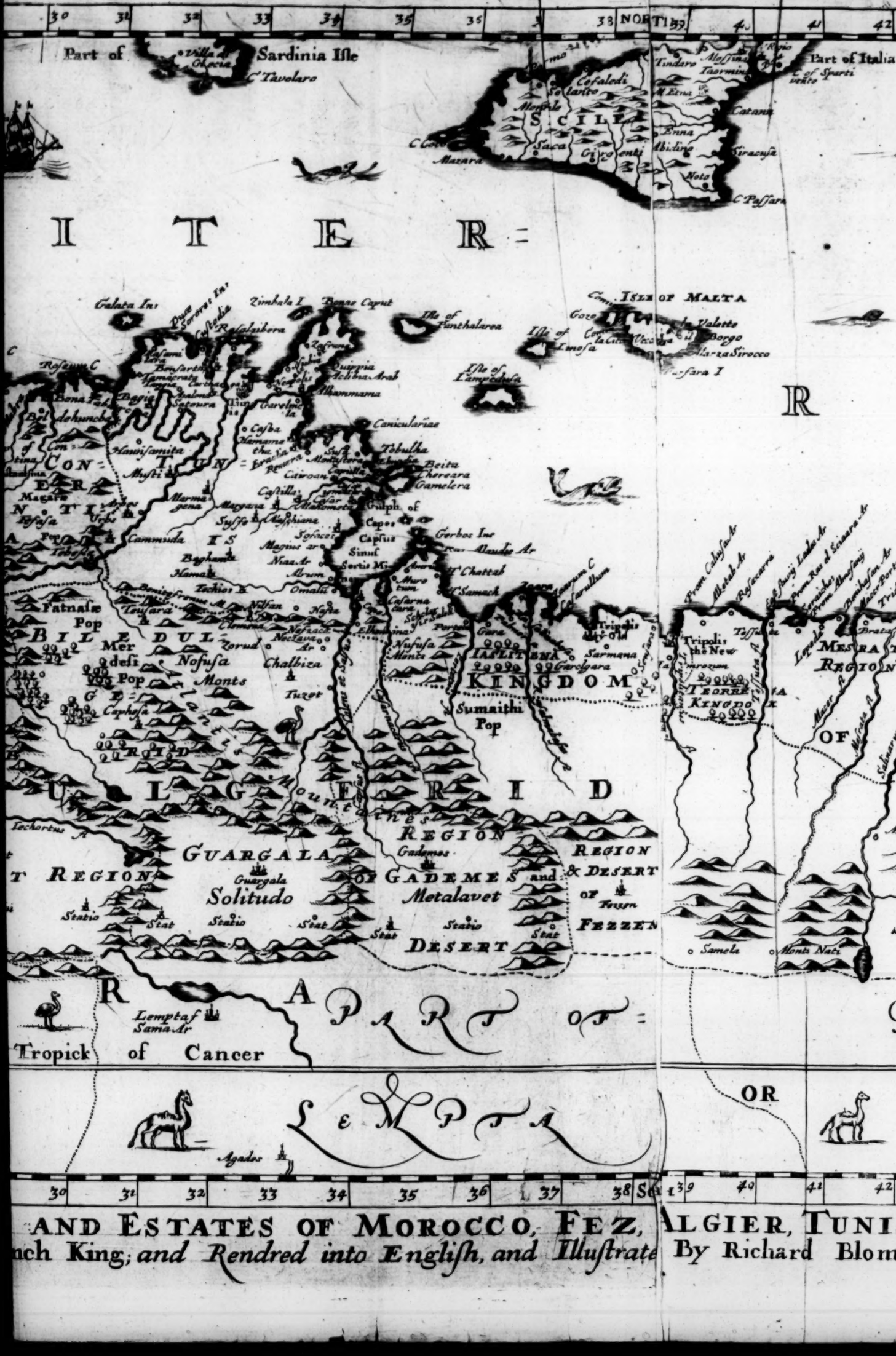
- Under the Name of BARBARY, are comprehended ſeveral Kingdoms, to wit,
  - The Kingdom of MOROCCO, wherein are ſeveral Provinces; and which may be conſidered as they lie
    - On the Sea, as
      - Suſa, ——— Taradante, Meſſa, Tagavoſtum, Tojouta, Gartgueſſemum.
      - Hea, ——— Tedneſt, Teculethum, Goza, Teſethna.
    - Within Land, as
      - Guzula, ——— Guzula.
      - Morocco, ——— Morocco, Agmet, Elguimha, Temelia.
      - Haſcora, ——— Elmadina, Tagodaſt.
      - Teldes, ——— Teiza, Tedza.
      - Ducala, ——— Azamor, El Medina, Aſafi.
  - The Kingdom of FEZ, with its ſeveral Provinces; which may be conſidered as they lie
    - On the Ocean, as
      - Temeſne, ——— Anfa, Almanſor, Rabatt, Adendum.
      - Fez, ——— Fez, Mahmora, Salla, or Sally.
      - Aſgar, ——— Cafar-el-Cabir, Lharais.
    - On the Streight of Gibraltar,
      - Habat, ——— Arzila, Tangier, Tettinguina.
    - On the Mediterranean Sea, as
      - Errif, ——— Gomer, Bedis.
      - Garret, ——— Mellila, Fetis.
    - Up within Land, as
      - Chaus, ——— Teza, Dubdu, Garſis.
  - The Kingdom of ALGIER, with its Provinces; which may be conſidered as they lie
    - On the Weſt, as
      - Telenſin, with its Quarters: Telenſin, Hanghad, Beni-Raſid — Telenſin, Oran, Marſalquibir, Guagida, Batha.
      - Tenez, ——— Teneſa, Serſela, Meliana.
    - In the Middle, as
      - Algier, ——— Algier, Temendfuſta, Teddeles.
    - On the Eaſt, as
      - Bugia, ——— Bugia, Chollum, Gergelum, Steffa.
      - Conſtantina, ——— Conſtantina, Bona, Tabarca, Tebeſſa.
  - The Kingdom of TUNIS, with its Governments; and which may be conſidered as they lie
    - On the Sea, and are Maritim, as
      - Benſerta, ——— Benſerta.
      - Goletta, ——— Tunis, Goletta.
      - Souſa, ——— Suſa, Hamametha.
      - El-Media, or Africa, ——— El-Media.
    - Within Land, as
      - Beija, or Bege, ——— Beija.
      - Urbs, ——— Urbs, Arbes, Muſti, Marmagena.
      - Cayroan, ——— Cayroan, Caſsa, Hama.
  - The Kingdom or Province of TRIPOLI, whoſe chief Maritim places are thoſe of — Capes, El-Hamma, Tripolis the New, Lepeda, Tripolis the Old.
  - The Country of BARCA, or LIBYA, which may be divided into
    - The Kingdom of BARCA, as it regards the Sea, and makes the moſt Eaſtern Coaſt of BARBARY, whoſe chief places are — Camera, Bernichum, Torachara, Tolometa, Zadra, Barca, Cayroan, Boni-Andreas, Muſelomarus, Albertonus, Roxa, Ripæalba.
    - The Deſart of BARCA, within Land, more Southward, and under the Tropick of Cancer; whoſe chief places are, — Ammon, Gorham, Augela, Alguecher, Ernet, Serta, Aſcor, Ebaida, and Couza.

M O-



A GENERALL MAPP OF THE COAST OF ARBA
SEGELMESSE, AND DARHA; With the Circumjacent Count

ARBARIE, WHERE IN ARE THE KINGDOMS, AND ESTA
Counteries. By Mounsieur Sanson *Geographer to the* French King; *and*


Part of Sardinia Isle
Part of Italia
ITER
Isle of MALTA
Valetta
Borgo
Marza Sirocco
Cefaledi
Catana
Siracusa
Noto
C Passaro
Galata Ins
Zimbala I
Bonas Caput
Isle of Lampedusa
Isle of Linosa
Canicullariae
Tebulba
Beita
Thereara
Gamelera
Gulph of
Capes
Gerbos Ins
Cammuda
Baghanda
Hamala
Omalu
Patnase
Pop
Nefusa
Monts
Chalbiza
Tuzot
Sumaithi
Pop
KINGDOM
Tripolis the New
Sarmana
Garelgara
Tessaura
Lemptaf
Sama Ar
Tropick of Cancer
REGION
GUARGALA
Guargala
Solitudo
GADEMES
Gademes
Metalavet
DESERT
FEZZEN
Samela
Monts Nati
Agados
OR
AND ESTATES OF MOROCCO, FEZ, ALGIER, TUNI
nch King; and Rendred into English, and Illustrate By Richard Blom

NIS, AND TRIPOLIS: ALSO THE KINGDOMS, ESTA
lome: *By his Majeſties Especiall Command.*

London *Printed for* Ric: B

Lepante
Athens
Cephalonia
Corinto
Zante
Argos
Megalopoli
Malvasia
Lacedemonia
Cerigo
Candia
Candia or Creta
C. Salamoni
Stampalia
Nicaria
Palmosa
Nicsia
Paria
Pergolo
Zinara
Leinta
Crio
Nicsari
Piscapia
Limon
Scarpanto
Serphino
Policandra
Leinta
Tiura
Tiresia
Milo
Nio
Rachia
Falconera
Sittia
C. of Sidero
C. Palio
Verapolo
Girapetra
Canea
Chisamo
Fenice
Sfachia
Turlura
Standia
Cerigo
Malvasia
Messene
Colochina
Modon
C. Matapan
Zea
Fermonia
Thermia
Salamina
Egina
Pisaro
Patras
Dyme
Argos
Megalopoli
Lacedemonia
Malvasia
Cerigo
Milo
Serphino
Policandra
Tiresia
Tiura
Leinta
Rachia
Nio
Pergolo
Paria
Nicsia
Nicaria
Palmosa
Zinara
Leinta
Crio
Nicsari
Piscapia
Limon
Scarpanto
Stampalia
Falconera
Sittia
C. of Sidero
C. Palio
C. Salamoni
Verapolo
Girapetra
Candia
Canea
Chisamo
Fenice
Sfachia
Turlura
Standia
Cerigo
Malvasia
Messene
Colochina
Modon
C. Matapan
Zante
Cephalonia
Corinto

ESERTS OF BARCA, EGIPT, LIBYA, BILEDULGERID

Francis Lamb Sculpt

MOROCCO.

THE Kingdom of *MOROCCO* is the most Western part of *Barbary*, bounded by the *Ocean*, the River *Sus*, Mount *Atlas*, and the River *Ommiraby*: The *Ocean* washes it on the West; the River *Sus* separates it from *Tesset* on the South; Mount *Atlas* divides it from *Darrha*, and *Segelmesse*, on the East; and the *Ommiraby* from the Kingdom of *Fez*, on the North. Kingdom of *Morocco*, its bounds.

It is divided into 7 *Provinces*: those of *Sus*, *Hea*, *Guzula*, and *Morocco*, are between the Rivers of *Sus* and *Tensift*; the two first on the *Sea*, and the other within *Land*. The Provinces of *Teldes*, *Hascora*, and *Ducala*, are between *Tensift*, and *Ommiraby*: the two first up in the *Land*, the other on the *Ocean*: and these three last stretch towards the North and East; the four first towards the South and West. Its Provinces.

1. The *Province* of *Sus* is about the River *Sus*, and is sometimes extended as far as *Cape de Non*. *Taradante*, not far from *Atlas*, is esteemed the chief City of this Province, its *Governours* and *Kings* having here made their residence; much enriched of late by the *English* and *French Merchants*, who have here a Staple for their *Sugars*. The *Town* is large and well built, seated in a spacious Plain, which affordeth great plenty of *Sugar*. 2. *Messa*, at the flux or mouth of the River *Sus*, it is composed of three little *Cities* walled apart; and betwixt which the River passes. 3. *Tejent*, seated higher; and on the same River, on a spacious Plain, is likewise composed of three Towns, each distant a Mile from each other, having their Temple common in the midst of the three. 4. *Tedsa*, beyond the River *Tagavost*, containing about 8000 *Houses*; its chief Ornament being a fair *Mehometan* Temple. 5. *Capo d' Aguer*, seated on a Promontory so called, and is a place of great importance. Province of *Sus*, its chief places, &c.

The Fortress, and City of *Guarguessen* in the midst of the Coast, and on a branch, which this Mountain under the name of *Idevacall*, stretches into the *Sea*, belongs to the Crown of *Portugal*.

The Province of *Guzula* is to the East of *Sus*; to the South of *Hea*, and *Morocco*; to the West of the Province or Kingdom of *Darrha*; and to the North of *Tesset*. Here are observed to be no walled *Cities*, or *Fortresses* of note: but it hath many *Burroughs* and *Towns* of 1000 or 1200 *Houses*: where there are *Markets* kept thrice a week, and a great *Fair* yearly, which lasts two Months, to which many *People* from most parts of *Africa* do resort. The chief place bears the name of the *Province*; the *People* are rude and barbarous, and with much ado are subject to the King of *Morocco*. In the Country are many rich Mines of *Gold*, *Brass*, *Iron*, and other *Metals*. Province of *Guzula*, its bounds and chief Places.

The *Province* of *Morocco*, particularly so called, lies all between the Rivers of *Asifnuall*, and *Tensift*; from their Springs at the Mount *Atlas*; until they meet about 15 or 20 Leagues from the Sea, *Asifnual* divides it from *Guzula*, and *Hea*; *Tensift* from *Hascora*, and *Ducala*. The City of *Morocco* is the chief of the whole Kingdom, and hath been a long time in great esteem, and once accounted the Metropolis of all *Barbary*, and reckoned amongst the greatest Cities in the World. At which time it had twenty four, or twenty five *Gates*, being in circuit 12 Miles, and contained about one hundred thousand Families. It is strongly girt about with Walls, and adorned within with many publick and private *Buildings*; as, its *Palace*, which Province of *Morocco*, and its chief Cities.

Morocco, its Trade and Commodities.

which they name the *Alcaſar*. Its *Churches* or *Moſques* are very fair, eſpecially one, which is held the greateſt in the World, ſeated in the midſt of the City, adorned with many ſumptuous Pillars, which were brought out of *Spain* when the *Moors* had the poſſeſſion of the Country. It hath a very large and ſtrong *Caſtle*, eſteemed as big as a reaſonable Town. Here is alſo a *Burſe* for Merchants, who trade hither. But of late, by reaſon of the defacement and Spoils which it hath ſuffered by the *Arabians*, together with the removal of the Seat Royal to *Fez*, now the Metropolis of all *Barbary*, it hath loſt much of its ſplendor, a great part of the City being deſerted, ſo that they make uſe of but 4 or 5 Gates; neither is that part ſo populous, rich, nor hath ſo good a Trade as formerly. 2. *Agmett*, ſeated on a River of the ſame name; and at the meeting of divers paſſages which deſcend from Mount *Atlas* in the Plains of *Morocco*, hath been very fair and populous, and its Hills and Valley about it ſo fertil, and beautified with pleaſant Gardens, that it was called the Little *Morocco*; at preſent it is almoſt Deſart. 3. *Elgiumuha*, near the Mountain, and on the River *Secſiva*. 4. *Imegiagen*, ſeated on a Mountain very ſteep on all ſides: And, 5. *Tenezze*, a Town of ſome note. All which are ſtrong places, and very advantagiouſly ſcituated.

Province of *Hea*, its fertility, People, and chief places.

HEA, Weſt of *Morocco*; a Province Mountainous and Woody, yet watered with many good Rivers; the Soil indifferently fertil, and would produce ſeveral good Commodities, were it inhabited by induſtrious People; theſe being a ſort of idle and in a manner barbarous, altogether ignorant of Arts, except ſome Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read; as alſo ſome *Chirurgions*, who are chiefly employed in the circumciſion of their Children; they are generally very courteous to Strangers, but very contentious among themſelves. Its chief Cities are, 1. *Tedneſt*, once a place of good eſteem, ſeated on the River *Savens*. 2. *Hadequis*. 3. *Teguleth*: and, 4. *Tejeut*, places of good note and Trade, the firſt containing about 1000 Houſes, having the benefit of a good Port, and beautified with a fair *Moſque*, with ſome Hoſpitals. But about the year 1500 they were much ruined by the *Portugals*, in whoſe poſſeſſion they are, who have ſince ſomewhat added to its former Eſtate. *Tedneſt* hath about 1600 Houſes, the moſt part *Jews*, which are eſteemed the chiefeſt. In the Mountains, *Teſegdelt* is moſt conſiderable, containing above 1000 Families, and well ſcituated; its Walls being no other than thick Rocks. So are *Ileuſugagen*, *Tegteſſe*, *Eitdeſet*, *Culejat*, &c. ſcituated upon Mountains, and of good ſtrength. *Tefethna*, on the Coaſt, and at the Mouth of a River of the ſame name, hath a Port, where there is ſome Trade. The Iſle of *Mogadour*, near the Cape of *Ocem*, is diſtant from the Coaſt two little Leagues. The Kings of *Morocco* have built here a Fortreſs to keep ſome Mines of *Gold* and *Silver* which are in the neighbouring Mountains.

The Iſle of *Mogadour*.

Its Mountains well inhabited.

The Mountains of *Aidvacall* or *Idevacall*, near *Cape de Guer*; of *Demenſera*, near the Province of *Guzula*, and *Gebel el Haden*, near the *Tenſit*, take up a part of the Province; and are ſo well inhabited, that the laſt can ſet forth 12000 fighting Men, the firſt 20000, and the other 25000.

Provinces of *Haſcora* and *Teldes*, and their chief places.

Its People.

North of the Province of *Morocco* are thoſe of *Haſcora*, and *Teldes* ſeparated the one from the other by the River *Quadel Habid*. *Tefza* is the chief City of *Teldes*, and near the River *Derna*, which falls into the *Ommiraby*; a rich City, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan Moſques*; and its Walls were made of a kind of Marble. 2. *Elmadine* is the chief City of *Haſcora*, peopled with about 10000 Families, ſcituate in a pleaſant Valley, and begirt with Hills; it is well built; its Inhabitants are civil, ingenious, and addict themſelves to Arts, Traffick, and Manufactures: the Women are fair, as in 3. *Tagodaſt*, which is on a Mountain, whoſe Foot is waſhed with many little Streams, which water their Gardens. 4. *Elgiumuha*, towards the South, built by the People, and in a like ſituation with *Tagodaſt*. And, 5. *Bao*, likewiſe a City of ſome Trade. Between the Mountains *Teldes* hath more than 50 walled Towns, built near the ſtreams of the River *Darha*. Theſe Provinces are fertil, having rich Fields, feed a great quantity of *Goats*, of whoſe Skins are made the *Cordovants*, and of their Hair, plain and watered

Cham-

Chamlets; alſo ſtore of *Cattle*, *Grains*; excellent *Fruit* amongſt others their *Grapes* as big as *Pullets-eggs*; they have plenty of *Fowl*, and their *Rivers* breed ſtore of *Fiſh*. The fertility & Commodities:

Ducala the moſt Northern part of *Morocco*, and poſſeſſes that which is between the *River Tenſift*, and *Ommiraby*: a Land fruitful for *Grains*. Its beſt Cities are, 1. *Azamor* where the *Ommiraby* enlarges and forms a Gulph to disburthen it ſelf into the *Sea*, which before the *Portugals* became maſters of it, had above 5000 Houſes. It fell again into the hands of the *Moors*, and entirely reſtored, having a ſtrong Garriſon. 2. *Elmadine* towards the *Sea*, and in a fair Plain, hath been eſteemed the Capital of the Country. 3. *Magrizena-Sanut*, which they have fortified; and on the ſame Coaſt have diſmantled *Tite*, the eaſier to fetch in Tribute thence, and from the Neighboring places. 4. *Aſafi* or *Satfy* not far from *Tenſift*, is ſtrong, and hath a good Trade, where the *French* hath a Conſul. Province of *Ducala*.

The Kingdom of *Morocco* hath ſuffered great changes, within theſe few Centuries of years; having been often united, and as often ſeparated from that of *Fez*. And ſometimes likewiſe its South parts, *Sus* and *Gurula* have made a Kingdom apart. Its principal Ports are thoſe of *Meſſa Azafi*, *Mazagan* and *Azamor*. Its *Promontories* thoſe of *Guer*, *Ocem*, *Cantin* and *Carvos*. Its *Rivers*; the *Sus*, which waters its Southern parts; *Tenſift* which divides the Eſtate in 2 equal parts; and *Ommiraby* which ſeparates it from the Kingdom of *Fez*. Kingdom of *Morocco*. Its chief Ports, Promontories and Rivers.

The *Air* of the Plains, and Fields of *Morocco* is much hotter then in *Europe*, that of the *Mountains* according to their height is more or leſs cold. In general this Kingdom is provided with all things neceſſary for mans life; they have *Grains* and *Pulſe* in abundance; as alſo *Fruits* which are excellent, eſpecially their *Grapes*. They have likewiſe *Flax*, *Hemp*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Copper*, *Marble*, *Cordovants*, *Amber*, *Chamlets* and many good *Manufactures*. Its Air, Fertility and Commodities.

The Kingdom of FEZ.

THe Kingdom of *FEZ* lies between that of *Morocco* and the *Mediterranean*; and between the *Ocean*, and the Kingdom of *Telenſin* or *Argiers*. Kingdom of *Fez*.

Its *Provinces* are *Temeſne*, *Fez* and *Azgar* on the *Ocean*; *Habat* on the *Streight*; *Errife* and *Garret* on the *Mediterranean Sea*; and *Chaus*, all up in the Land. Its Provinces.

Temeſne extends its ſelf from *Mount Atlas*, unto the *Ocean*, hath formerly been ſo flouriſhing, that it numbred 40 Great Cities, more then 100 middle ſized, and 300 little ones, beſides an infinite number of Villages. Province of *Temeſne*.

Beſides the Inteſtine Wars of the Country, the *Portugals* have divers times level'd and ruined the faireſt Cities of the Coaſt: as *Anfa* and *Al-Manſor* in 1468. and afterwards *Rabatt* likewiſe ſuffered their Incurſions and Plunders. *Rabatt* and its *Fortreſs*, are on a Riſing ground between the *River* of *Buragrag*, and the *Sea*. King *Manſor* cauſed it to be built after the Modell of *Morocco*; but much leſs, and made it one of the moſt conſiderable places of all *Barbary*, erecting many *Palaces*, *Temples*, *Hoſpitals*, *Colledges*, *Baines*, *Shops*, &c. and without the South *Gate* a *Tower* as high as that of *Morocco*; it was very populous and of a good Trade. And becauſe the Waters round about were ſalt, he made an *Aquæduct* as beautiful as thoſe about *Rome*. But at preſent theſe fair *Edifices* are almoſt ruined, it being poſſeſſed with not above 500 families, and much ſouldiery becauſe of the Neighbourhood of the *Portugals*; moſt of the ground within the Walls being turned into *Gardens*, *Vineyards*, and *Meadows*.

Anfa on the Coaſt, and in a delightful Plain, hath been one of the moſt famous Cities of *Africa*, for its Trade with the *Engliſh* and *Portugals*; but its being addicted to Pyracy, was the cauſe of its ruine, as of that of *Al-manſor* on the *River Guir*.

Within the Land, *Muchaila* on the *Guir*, and in the Road from *Morocco* to *Rabat*, hath been rich, well built, with a great Territory, and fruitful in *Grain*. It was ruined by the Kings of *Morocco*; and is not known at present, but for the Tomb of one of their *Morabuts* whom they esteem a Saint, and where the Country people lay in pledg their *Ploughs* and Instruments of labour, which no persons dare touch. They have another *Morabut* near *Thagia*, whom they believe to work Miracles, and to preserve them when they are met by *Lions*; a place much frequented by those of *Fez*, as being the Sepulcher of one of their Prophets to which they go in exceeding great numbers in *Pilgrimage*. *Adendum* towards the *Sea*, well walled, and fenced on one side by a *Lake* or *Pool*. *Tegeget* above the *Ommiraby* hath store of *Grains*, where the *Arabs* have a *Toll*, once of great note.

The Ornament of this Province, and of the whole Kingdom (nay we may say of all *Barbary*) is *Fez*, which the *Mahometans* call the Court of the West: It is 100 Thousand paces from the Ocean, and as much from the *Mediterranean*. Its form is a long square, of which the middle is in a Plain, the two ends on Hills; and without several Suburbs, some of 500, some 1000, and others of 2000 Houses. This City bears the name of *Fez*, from the abundance of *Gold* which was found in the digging the Foundation thereof. It hath 12 principal *Quarters* or *Regions*, 62 great places for Trade, and much frequented by *Merchants*, of divers Nations who are allowed a publick meeting place for their *Commerce*, and lodging for their residence, and also *Store-Houses* for their *Commodities*; this place may rather be called a Court, than an Exchange, it being inclosed within a strong Wall, in which are 15 fair *Streets*, for several Nations to meet and reside for the better negotiating of their affairs; to this inclosure there are 12 *Gates* which every night are shut up and kept guarded at the Cities charge for the security of their *Goods* and *Persons*. Its Houses are well built, hath abundance of *Temples*, amongst which about 50 are well built, and beautiful. The greatest and most sumptuous of all, is seated in the heart of the City, containing about a Mile in Circuit, hath 31 great high *Gates*; and round about are several *Porches* containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth, under which are the publick *Store-houses* of the City: The *Tower* is sustained by 35 Arches in length, and by 20 in breadth: All the *Temple* hath 900, and almost all these pieces enriced with *Marble*. Its Revenue is 200 *Duckats* a day, others say 400, which are either 75 or 150 thousand *Duckats* yearly. Within and without the City there are above 200 *Hospitals*, of which 25 are for the sick people of the Country, among which one can daily provide for 2000 Persons, others are for strangers; but their Revenues are much squandred, and they give nothing but the Bed and Coverlet, but in some Food for three daies. There is likewise 200 *Banias* or *Stews*, 200 *Inns*, of which some have more then 100 *Chambers*, 400 *Mils* which daily work 1200 *Mules*. Among its *Colleges*, the building of that of King *Habu Henon* cost 500 thousand *Duckats*, being a most curious and delicate Building, all enriched with *Mosaicque* work of *Gold*, *Azure* and *Marble*; its *Gates* are of *Brass*. In this *Colledge* are abundance of stately Buildings, as *Cloisters*, *Halls*, *Baines*, *Hospitals*, &c. It hath a stately *Library*, in which besides other Books are 20000 Volumes in *Manuscript*. They have 150 publick necessary houses built so commodiously, that the Waters carry away the ordure. To its Walls it hath 86 *Gates* which serve for entrance into the City.

The New City of *Fez*.

South East of the old *Fez* is the new City, at a Mile or 1200 paces distance; this is almost only for the House, and for the Officers of the King. The Palace where he ordinarily resides, and the Palaces of the principal Lords, the *Mint*, a stately *Temple*, &c. are in the first quarter. The Officers of the Court, and the Captains of the guard hold almost all the second, and the Kings Guards alone had formerly the third. Now a good part of this last quarter is possessed by *Jews* and *Goldsmiths*; and part of the second, by divers *Merchants* and *Artisans*.

In

In this City of *Fez*, (as generally throughout these parts) they have abundance of *Conjurers*, *Fortune-tellers*, *Juglers*, and *Inchanters*, who are in some War esteem amongst them. Its People are of a duskish or blackish complexion, of sly, Stature tall, and well proportioned; they are of an active disposition for and Horse-manship, otherwise excessive idle; they are very subtle, close, perfidious, inconstant, proud, much addicted to Luxury, and therefore by consequence very jealous of their Wives, whom they keep with great severity, and that the more according to their external graces; they are very revengeful if injured, and hard to be reconciled. In their gait they have much of the *Spaniard* in them; in their Apparel they go very sumptuous and rich, but their Food is but very gross.

As to their Religion they are either *Mahometans* or *Heathens*; and are for the most part inclined to *Literature* and *Arts*. Their Religion.

In this City are four sorts of Magistrates: one for the *Canon-Law*, one for the *Civil-Law*, another for *Marriages* and *Divorcements*; and another as an *Advocate*, to whom they make their appeal. In the *Administration* of *Justice* they are more or less severe, according to the hainousness of the offence. Their Magistrates and Justice.

In their Marriages they observe many Ceremonies; as being agreed, they are accompanied to the Church by their *Parents*, *Relations*, and *Friends*; which Ceremony being ended, they are invited to two Banquets, the one at the *Bridegrooms* cost, and the other at the *Brides Relations*; which being done, the *Bridegroom* causeth the *Bride* to be conducted to his House with *Musick* and *Torches*, being accompanied with their *Friends*; and being entred the House, she is immediately lead to the Chamber door; and delivered by her *Father*, *Brother*, or some of her *Kindred* to his *Mother* (if living) who there waits for her coming, who immediately is redelivered to him; who forthwith conducts her to a private Chamber, where he enjoyeth her; and if she is found to be a Virgin, which will appear by the blood which will proceed, which perceiving they drie up with a Napkin, and carry in their hands to shew the Company, with great joy; and then they make Feasts, and are very merry: But if there contrary, and that no blood is caused, then they judge her Virginity lost; and thereupon the Marriage is frustrated, and with great disgrace she is turned home to her Parents. This with several other Ceremonies are omitted in the Marriage of a Widow.

Here the Women at the death of their Friends assemble themselves together, habit themselves in *Sack-Cloth* and *Ashes*, and sing a *Funeral Dirge* to the praise of the Deceased; and at the end of every verse, howl and crie; and this they do for seven daies together; during which time her Friends send in Provisions, and come and comfort her; for their custom is not to have any meat dresst in the House of Mourning, during the said time, especially untill the Corps is interred.

1. The City of *Mahmora* fell into the hands of the *Portugals* in 1515, was presently retaken by the King of *Fez*, who defeated 10000 Christians, and gained 60 pieces of *Artillery*. The Kings of *Spain* likewise made themselves Masters of it 1614 and have fortified it because of the goodness of the Port. 2. *Sala* or *Sally*, hath been the residence of some Kings of *Fez*. It is composed of two Cities, the Old and the New; and hath a great Trade with the *English*, *French*, *Hollanders* and *Genoueses*. Its Fortress is on a rising ground, with a high Tower which discovers the Sea. In the Castle the King *Mansor*, and others his successors, have their magnificent Tombs.

The place was taken by the *Castilians*, and retaken from them some years past; and afterwards abundance of the *Moors* of *Granado* driven from *Spain*, retiring thither, have fortified and enriched it with their Piracies. 3. *Mechnese* between *Sally* and *Fez*, is in the middle of a Plain, where for 5 or 6000 paces, there is only *Gardens* filled with excellent Fruits. The City is well built, its *Streets* large and well ordered. Its *Inhabitants* liberal, and civil, but alwaies in jealousie against those of *Fez*. Divers *Aqueducts* bring water to the City, and furnish the *Temples*, *Bains*, *Hospitals* and *Colledges*, and private Houses.

Province of *Asgar.*

Asgar is a Province between the Rivers of *Suba*, and *Lusus* or *Lixa*, on the Coast; it extends itself far up the Land, towards the City of *Fez*, and hath fair and fertile Fields, with an Air so pleasant, that formerly the Kings of *Fez* passed here a part of the Spring in Hunting. 1. *Elgiumba* or *Elgiubma*, in the way from *Fez* to *Larrache*, and formerly the fairest of the Provinces; serves now only as the *Granary*, where the *Arabs* store up their Corn. 2. *Casar-el-Cabir*, a place of pleasure which *Mansor* caused to be built between the *Fens*, the *Forests*, the *Sea*, and the *River*, may now have about 1500 Houses, adorned with a stately *Hospital*, a *Colledg*, and many *Temples*. The Battel which *Don Sebastian* King of *Portugal* lost, was here fought. In which it is observable, that the three Chiefs of the Armies, which that day met, all died, *viz.* *Don Sebastian* of *Portugal*, in the field of the Battel; *Muley Mahomet* of *Fez*, in favor of whom *Don Sebastian* passed into *Africa*, was drowned passing the River of *Mucazin* to save himself in *Arzile*; and *Abdelmelech* of *Morocco*, the Conqueror, died with labour and pains, or with the sickness with which he was seised before the Battel; all three competitors for this Kingdom; with several others of eminent quality. 3. *Lharas* or *Larrache*, once *Lixos*; which some among the Ancients say, was greater then the *Great Carthage*, and hath made the Royal Residence of *Antæus*, whom *Hercules* defeated, and from whence he brought the *Golden Apples*, gathered in the *Hesperides Gardens*. It is at present one of the principal Fortresses of the Kingdom, and hath often been attempted by the *Portugals* and *Spaniards*.

Province of *Habat.*

The Province of *Habat* is part on the *Ocean*, part on the *Mediterranean Sea*, and holds all the streight of *Gibraltar* on the *African* side, opposite to *Spain* in *Europe*.

The principal Cities of this Province are, *Arzila*, which the *Portugals* took in 1471, carrying away all its inhabitants, and among the rest *Muley Mahomet el Oataz*, then seven years old, after King of *Morocco*, who remembring more his imprisonment, then the liberty he had from *Spain*, in the year 1508 raised 10000 *Moors*, besieged, and took the City of *Arzila*, and the *Castle*, the *Portugals* hardly defending themselves in a *Tower*, which was yet relieved, the *City* and *Castle* retaken, and the *Moors* well beaten. The *Portugals* afterward, and under some pretext, abandoned this place, which *Muley Mahomet* called the *Black*, returned it to *Don Sebastian*, King of *Portugal* in 1578, but which the *Xeriffs* retook again, and do at present possess. The City is great and strong, with a Port on the Ocean; the soyl produces more fruits and Pulse, then Grain and Wood. 2. *Tangier*, of old *Tingis*, hath been the most famous among the Ancients, builded, as they say, by *Antæus*; and so renowned, that the neighbouring *Mauritania* took from it the name of *Mauritania Tingitana* and the Streight, of *Fretum Tingitanum*; yet were its *Bishop* and *Government* united not long since to that of *Ceuta*, where they had their residence, till the dis-union of the Estates of *Portugal* and *Castile*; *Ceuta* remaining in the hands of the *Spaniards*; *Tangier* and *Cazar Ezzaghir* returning to the *Portugals*. The former of the two last is now delivered into the hands of the *English* upon the marriage of *Donna Catharina*, *Infanta* of *Portugal*, with our Soveraign Lord King *Charles* the Second, of happy memory. Where we have a good Fort and Mold, for the convenience of shipping; by which means, it may be in time a place of a considerable Trade. It is made a very strong place since the *English* have been masters of it, and doth contain about 1500 Houses well built; they have pleasant Gardens. Near to this place it is said, that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus*, a monstrous *Giant* of 64 Cubits high. 3. *Tettuan* or *Tetteguin*, hath not above 800 Houses, which are as well built as any in *Barbary*; and a good part of the *Moors* driven from *Granada*, being retired thither, it is maintained in a good estate; they are continually coursing on the Sea, and keep many Christians their Slaves.

In this Country are abundance of other Cities, though of no such considerable note as those aforementioned. Its Mountains which are counted about 8, are inhabited by the Tribes of *Gumera*, who drink Wine, though contrary to the Law of *Mahomet*, and pay some 3, some 4, others 6000 Duckats yearly. That

of

of *Rahon* hath *Vineyards*, and its *Inhabitants* make quantity of *Sope* and *Wax*. *Benifenſecare*, beſides its *Wax*, yields *Hides* and *Linnen-Cloth*; and on its *Srturday Markets*, the *Chriſtians* muy *Trade*. *Benihurus* is almoſt diſ-inhabited, by reaſon of the Neighborhood of *Gazar Ezzaghir*, under whoſe government it hath been. *Chebib* on the contrary, is much augmented, after that the *Portugals* took *Tangier*, the ancient *Inhabitants* of this retiring thither. *Benicheſſen* hath its *Inhabitants* addicted to *Arms*; as likewiſe *Quadres* near the Streight, and *Bemguerdarfeth* near *Tittuan*, to whoſe government they are obedient, ſerving againſt the Garriſon of *Ceuta*. They have formerly furniſhed the Kings of *Granada* with a great power, and among them with one *Helul*, whom their *Poems* and *Romances* eſteem the terror of all *Spain*. *Angera* hath *Flax*, of which they make *Linnen-Cloth*; as alſo *Timber* fit to build Ships.

Errif above the *Mediterranean Sea*, and between the *Rivers* of *Gomer* and *Nochor*, advances it ſelf in the Land as far as the Mountain which ſeparates it from the Provinces of *Fez* and *Chaus*. It is very Mountainous and Woody; it is little fruitful in *Grain*, abundant in *Barley*, *Vines*, *Figs*, *Olives* and *Almonds*: Hath quantity of *Goats*, *Aſſes* and *Apes*; few *Sheep* or *Oxen*. The Houſes are only of one Floor, and ill covered; the *Inhabitants* are valiant but much addicted to drink. Its Cities are almoſt all on the Coaſt, as *Gomer*, *Terga*, *Bedis*, *Mezemma*, and others. The moſt part ill inhabited by reaſon of the Neighborhood of the *Spaniards*. 1. *Gomer* is ſeated on a River of the ſame name, 2. Thoſe of *Terga* uſe much Fiſhing, uttering their *Salt-Fiſh* to the *Inhabitants* of the Mountains; but at preſent almoſt quite deſerted. 3. *Bedis* or *Belis*, with its *Caſtle*, its *Palace*, and its *Port*, is in ſome eſteem, and maintains ſome *Gallies*: But much moleſted by the Fort of *Pennon de Velez*, which the *Spaniards* hold in an Island not above 1000 or 1200 paces from *Bedis*. 4. *Mezemma* ſeated on a Mountain, formerly great and well peopled, hath now nothing but Walls. The Mountains have *Vines*, *Barly*, *Horſes*, *Goats*, *Fruits*, &c. Some pay ſome tribute, and others none at all. That of *Beniguazeval* can arm 25000 men, hath quantity of *Towns*, and a City famous among them, and a *Volcano* which continually caſts forth fire. *Suſaon* is one of the moſt fruitful and moſt pleaſant places of *Africa*. Its people under their *Xeque* keeping themſelves in liberty. Province of *Errif*.

Garret poſſeſſes the reſt of the Coaſt upon the *Mediterranean Sea*, unto the River *Mulvia*, which ſeparates it from *Telanſin*. *Mellila* hath been its chief City, at preſent in the hands of the *Caſtilians*; as is *Chaſaſa*, and both the one and the other have their Port; that of *Mellila* much better, and may count 2000 Houſes, ſerves as a paſſage to the Traffick between thoſe of *Fez*, and the *Venetians*. There are excellent *Mines* of *Iron* in the neighborhood. The middle of this Province is Mountainous. Its extremity towards the South, joyning to the Province of *Chaus*, is untilled, and without Water. Province of *Garret*.

The Province of *Chaus* is ſo great, that it contains a third part of the Kingdom: The Rivers of *Cebu* or *Suba*, of *Mulvia*, of *Nocor*, and ſome others have here their Springs at the foot of divers Branches of the *Atlas*. This Country is but meanly inhabited, conſidering its bigneſs; and its people fierce and warlike, to which they are addicted, not caring much for Traffick or Tilling their Ground, which if well ordered, would produce ſeveral good Commodities. Among its Cities, *Tezza* is the chief, and is eſteemed the Third of the Kingdom of *Fez*, and makes no leſs then 5000 Houſes. The Nobility have here many rich *Palaces*, but the private Houſes are not fair. It is adorned with 3 *Colledges*, 23 *Baniaes*, many *Hoſpitals*, about 100 *Moſques* or *Temples*, among which there is one greater, though not richer then that of *Fez*. It hath a magnificent *Caſtle*, and the Kings *Marins* ſometimes made here their reſidence, and gave it to their ſecond Son; as well becauſe of the beauty of the City, and the civility of its *Inhabitants*; as for the goodneſs of the Air, and the abundance of all ſorts of Fruits, which they gather there. 2. *Turet* is beyond the River *Mulvia*, and on the River *Quhas*; ſo advanced on the Frontiers, that the King of *Fez* and *Telenſin* have often carried it, the one from the other. It is ſeated on a Hill in the Province of *Chaus*.

the midſt of a Plain, but encompaſſed about with *Deſarts*, very advantagiouſly incloſed with ſtrong *Walls*; well built within, and filled with about 3000 Houſes. 3. *Dubdu* is on the ſide of a high Mountain, from which many Fountains deſcend, and run through the City. 4. *Garſis*. And 5. *Haddaggia* are on the *Mulvia*. 6. *Gherſelvin* only is beyong the *Atlas*, and on the borders of *Segelleſſe*, it is handſom within, but beautiful without, &c.

The Inhabitants of its Mountains.

Among the *Inhabitants* of the *Mountains*, there are ſome rich, who pay little or nothing; others poor and over burthened with Tribute. The Plains of *Sabbelmarga*, hath almoſt nothing but *Charcoal-men*, by reaſon of the adjacent *Woods*; that of *Aſgari-Cameren*, *Shepherds*, becauſe the *Graſs* grows all the year; that of *Guregra*, *Husbandmen*, the Land being proper for *Grain*.

A ſtrange Bridge.

In this Province there is a remarkable *Bridge* over the River *Sebu*, which runs between Rocks ſo high, that this *Bridge* is 150 yards from the Water. It is a *Basket* or *Pannier* hung upon two Cords, which turn upon two Pullies faſtned to the ends of two great Piles of Wood, on each ſide of the Valley: And thoſe who are in the *Basket* (there may go about ten perſons) draw themſelves from one ſide to other by the Cords which are made of *Sea-Bulruſh*, as well as the *Basket*.

The Country of *Fez* and *Morocco* of a different nature.

The Kindoms of *Fez* and *Morocco*, ought to be conſidered in four ſorts of Lands, *Mountains*, *Vallies*, *Plains*, and *Coaſts*; and the moſt part of their Provinces have theſe four ſorts. The *Mountains* are almoſt all in the hands of the *Arabs* and *Bereberes*, who live partly free, partly tributary. The *Vallies* are almoſt all the ſame, according as they are more or leſs engaged in the *Mountains*, or near the *Plains*. The *Plains* are all obedient. The *Coaſts* in part belong to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*, in part to the *Portugals* and *Spaniards*; theſe holding what is on the *Mediterranean Sea*, the others on the Ocean. So that conſidering the Continent of theſe two Kingdoms, even when they were united, there was always a quarter or third part which obeyed not the *Xeriffs*, or Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*. But if they had been abſolute in theſe two Kingdoms, they might eaſily have brought into the field One hundred thouſand Horſe, and more then ſo many Foot.

The *Moors* of this Kingdom, and their diſpoſition.

The *Moors* of *Fez* and *Morocco*, are well diſpoſed, ſtrong, Active, and yet melancholly; they may marry four Wives, and repudiate them when they will, giving them the Dowry they promiſed when they eſpouſed them. And if they would be rid of them better cheap, they treat them ill; and theſe Women may forſake their Husbands, quitting their Dowry. Beſides theſe four Wives, they may have as many *Concubines* as they can keep; but the Law permits them not to lie but with the one or the other of the four Wives. Perſons of Eſtate ſpend ſo much on their Weddings, that they ſay commonly, That the Chriſtians ſpend the greateſt part of their Goods in *Law-ſuits*; the *Jews*, in their *Paſchal-Feaſts*; and the *Moors* in their *Nuptials*. They enterr their dead in *Virgin-Earth*, that is, where no perſon hath been before enterred, fearing leaſt at the general Reſurrection it ſhould be difficult to unmix all their pieces.

Arabs here inhabiring which much annoy the Countrey.

Beſides theſe *Moors*, in the Eſtates of *Fez* and *Morocco*, there are many *Arabs* which go by *Cabilles* or *Lineal Deſcent*; and which make War and Peace as they pleaſe, between themſelves, and with the *Moors*: Wandering continually, and pillaging now one Coaſt, and then another. They either aſſault or convoy the *Caravans* according to their intereſt; ſometimes ſerving the Kings of *Morocco*, ſometimes making War upon them. Thoſe that are in the higheſt Mountains of *Atlas*, are ſo rude and barbarous, that the Ancients have believed them to be *Satyrs*, *Pans*, *Ægipans*, that is, *Half Devils*. In ſome Cities there are quantity of *Jews*; almoſt no *Chriſtians*, except they be Slaves, or ſome *Merchants*.

The

The Kingdom of ALGIER *and* TELENSIN.

THe Kingdom of *ALGIER* is at preſent the moſt famous, or rather the moſt infamous on the whole Coaſt of *Barbary*: As well for its Riches and Forces, as for thoſe Pyracies it exerciſes towards the *Chriſtians*, and the barbarouſneſs it uſeth towards its *Captives*. The Kingdom of *Algier*.

Its name is taken from the principal City, ſeated in the midſt of its Coaſt on the *Mediterranean Sea*; towards the Weſt, it is ſeparated from the Kingdom of *Fez*, by the Rivers of *Zhas* and *Mulvia*; towards the Eaſt, divided from that of *Tunis*, by the *Guad-il-Barbar*. The Northern Coaſt is waſhed by the *Mediterranean Sea*; the South confined by the Mountains of *Atlas*, which divide it from *Segelmeſſe*, *Tegorarin*, and *Zeb*, parts of *Billedulgered*. Its length from Weſt to Eaſt, is near 300 Leagues, its breadth 50, 60, or 75 Leagues.

We will divide it into five parts, of which that of *Algier* ſhall make the middle one; *Telenſin* and *Tenes* ſhall be on the weſt; *Bugia* and *Conſtantina* on the Eaſt. The *Turks* (as *Grammajus* ſaith) hath eſtabliſhed 20 Governments, whereof 10 are on the Coaſt, and 10 others within Land. On the Coaſt there are 5 Weſtward of *Algier*, and 5 Eaſtward of *Algier*. *Sargel*, *Tenes*, *Marſalquibir*, *Hunain*, and *Hareſgol*, advance towards the Weſt: *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Gigell*, *Conſtantina*, and *Bona*, towards the Eaſt. Of the 10 Governments which are within Land, *Grammajus* places 6 in the Mountains of *Telenſin*, or *Benraſid*, *Tenes*, *Algier*, *Bugia*, *Conſtantina*, and *Bona*. Theſe names of Mountains being taken from Cities, neighboring on them, and almoſt all on the Coaſt. The 4 Governments remaining are, *Steffa*, *Necab* or *Necaus*, *Mezella* or *Meſila*, and *Muſtin*, which are the names of their chief places. Its Diviſion and parts.

But *Grammajus* not contenting himſelf with this diviſion within Land, makes yet other 10; of which, 4 he calls Kingdoms, and which are only Tributary. *Huerguela* or *Guergela*, *Cuco*, *Tricarta* or *Techcort*, and *Labes*. 2 *Provinces*, *Beniraſid*, and *Tebeſſe*. 2 *Dynaſties* or *Signiories*, *Meliana*, and *Angat*: And likewiſe 2 *Kingdoms* ſubject, *Telenſin* and *Tenes*. Of theſe 10 pieces, *Telenſin*, *Angat*, *Benirori*, *Tenes* and *Meliana*, are towards the Weſt; *Coco*, *Labes* and *Tebeſſe*, towards the Eaſt; *Guerguela* and *Techcort*, far towards the South.

Theſe 2 laſt are ſo engaged in *Billedulgerid*, that I cannot well deſcribe them with the Kingdom of *Algier*, though they be Tributary to it. And the *Governments* or *Provinces* within Land, are ſo near, and ſometimes ſo engaged with thoſe of the Coaſt, that I will not change the order I have taken to conſider this Kingdom in 5 principal parts; in each part obſerving the *Governments*, *Provinces* and *Kingdoms* therein. *Hunain*, *Hareſgol* and *Marſalquibir*, on the Coaſt; *Telenſin*, *Hanghad* and *Beniraſi*, within Land, ſhall compaſs the quarter of *Telenſin*. *Tenes* and *Sarſell*, on the Coaſt, and *Meliana*, within Land, ſhall be the quarter of *Tenes*. *Algier* on the Coaſt, and *Cuco*, within Land, that of *Algier*. *Bugia* and *Gilgili*, on the Coaſt, *Steſe*, *Labes*, *Necaus* and *Meſila*, withing Land, that of *Bugia*. *Bona* on the Coaſt, *Conſtantina* and *Thebeſſe*, within Land, that of *Conſtantine*.

The City of *Telenſin*, which thoſe of the Country now call *Tremecen* and *Tilmiſan*, hath once been chief of a Kingdom of the ſame name; of which, the *Provinces* of *Telenſin*, *Tenes*, *Algier* and *Bugia*, were the parts. The City is not above ſeven or eight Leagues diſtant from the *Sea*: It hath been one of the greateſt and faireſt of all *Barbary*. This may appear in that there remains but eight *Moſques* of conſideration, it having had 250; but four *Bania*'s of 160; but two *Inns* for the *Franks*, and four for the *Moors* of 34; but ſix *Hoſpitals* of thirty or forty. It had 16000 Houſes about the year 1000, 20000 about the year 1200, 25000 in the year 1550, and the *Jews* had ten great *Synagogues*. The divers changes which it ſuffered, and the rude treatment which they received from the *Turks*, hath made many of its *Inhabitants* retire into *Fez*, and ſome other where, which hath reduced it low. That which remains, is Province of *Telenſin*.

mag-

magnificent, its Houſes better built, its *Streets* more large and ſpacious, its *Gardens* more embelliſhed: Its People more civil, and its *Merchants* of better credit then thoſe of *Algier*. It hath a *Citiadel* built after the *Modern Fortifications*. 2. *Humain*, which others call *Humanbar* and *Unhaim*, is the ancient *Artiſiga*. Its Port is not great, but good; its Land hath much *Figs*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomgranates* and *Cotton*; of which, the *Inhabitants* make divers *Manufactures*. In 1535 this place was ruined by the *Caſtilians*, and not reſtored till long after. 3. *Hareſgol* is the ancient *Siga*, a *Roman* Colony, the reſidence of *Syphax*, (ſometimes King of this Country) before he ſeiſed the Eſtates of *Maſſanaſſa*: Its ſcituation is on a Rock, whoſe foot is waſhed by the *Sea*, and hath no communication with the firm Land, but on the South ſide. This City hath been much greater then it is; the takings and retakings which it ſuffered by the Kings of *Fez*, by the *Califfs*, by the *Moors*, by the *Caſtilians*, and by the *Arabs* reduced to the eſtate it is at preſent under the Kings of *Algier*, who kept a Garriſon in its *Caſtle*. 4 *Oran* and *Marſa-el-Quibir*, which belongs to the *Marquiſate* of *Oran*, are in the hands of the *Catholick* King. *Oran* which the *Africans* call *Tuharan*, the *Arab* of *Nubia*, *Vaharan*, is the *Curſa* of the ancients; and *Marſa-el-Quibir*, there *Portus Magnus*, ſince this name ſignifies, the great *Port*. This was taken by the *Marqueſs* of *Comares*, in the year 1505; the other by the *Cardinal Ximenes*, in the year 1509. At the taking of this laſt, the *Caſtilians* loſt only 30 men, killed 4000 *Moors*, and delivered 20000 *Chriſtian Captives*. This City of *Oran* before it was taken, had above 6000 Houſes, abundance of *Temples*, *Hoſpitals*, *Canes*, *Bania's*, &c. and had ſometimes been the reſidence of the *Catholick* Kings: The *Venetians*, *Genoueſe*, *Catalonians*, &c. having here ſo great a Trade, that its riches and power inclined its *Inhabitants* to deny Tribute to the Kings of *Telenſin*, and to make ſome incurſions on the Coaſt of *Spain*, which was the cauſe of their loſs. At preſent it is a *Suffragan Biſhoprick* to the *Archbiſhoprick* of *Toledo*; it hath ſome *Convents* and *Hoſpitals*, among others one very rich. It is ſtrongly ſeated on the *Mediterranean Shore*, powerfull at *Sea* in their *Gallies*, and is a place of ſome Trade, affording moſt of the Commodities the Country produceth. 5. *Maſalquibir* hath one of the faireſt, greateſt and moſt ſecure Ports that is in all *Africa*. The Government or *Marquiſate* of *Oran* comprehends likewiſe ſome *Caſtles* and *Mountains*, where there are good Garriſons which keep the Neighborhood in jealouſie. *Mazagran* with its *Caſtle* on the Coaſt, is in the hands of the *Moors*.

Humain,

Hareſgol

City of Oran.

Marſalquibir.

Province of Anghad.

The Quarter of *ANGHAD* or *RANGUAD*, though for the moſt part deſart, yet hath ſome fertile places, where are the Cities *Guagida*, and others. *Guagida* hath yet about 3000 Families, its Land fruitful in *Grains*, and watred with many *Rivers*. The Deſart is poſſeſſed by the *Arabs*, and amongſt them many *Lions*, *Wild-Boars*, *Stags*, and above all *Oſtriches*, in hunting of which, the *Arabs* often exerciſe themſelves, making profit of their Feathers, eating their Fleſh, and currying their Skins to carry their *Baggage* in. They keep the heart to make uſe of in *Charms* or *Witchcrafts*, the Fat to mix in their *Medicaments*, and the Nails or the Horn to make *Pendants* for the Ears, to deck themſelves with, when they utter the other parts.

Province of Benſraſid.

BENI-RASID or *BENIRAXID*, hath ſome Plains towards the North, many Mountains toward the South, is fruitful almoſt every where, and hath three or four places of ſome conſideration in theſe Mountains. 1. *Beni-Arax*, of Old *Bunebora*, is not walled, it contains more then 2000 Inhabitants. 2. *Calaa* or *Calat-Haoara*, of Old *Urbara*, between two Mountains, is ſtrong. 3. *Moaſcar*, of Old *Victoria*, hath a *Caſtle* where the Governor of the Country reſides. 4. *Batha*, of Old *Vaga*, on the River *Mina*, having been ruined by the *Inhabitants* of the Mountain of *Guanſeris*, ſome *Morabut* out of their opinion of his ſanctity, reſtored it in *Anno* 1520. And 5. *Medua*.

The

The Province of *TENES* is between that of *Telenſin* and *Algier*, to whoſe Kings it hath been ſubject ſometimes to one, and ſometimes to others, and ſometimes it ſelf hath born the Title of a Kingdom. Its principal places on the Sea are, *Teneſa* and *Sargel*; within Land, *Meliana*. 1. *Teneſa*, part on the ſide of a Hill, and part on a Plain deſcending to the Sea; hath a *Caſtle* and a *Palace*, formerly the abode of its Kings or Lords, now of its Governours: Its Inhabitants are addicted to Traffick. The Country, both in the Mountains and Plains, yields them *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Hides*, *Wax*, *Hony*, and ſome other Commodities. 2. *Briſcha*: and 3. *Serſela*, Eaſt of *Tenneſa*, and between *Tennes* and *Algier*, have many *Roman* Antiquities. The firſt is the ancient *Icoſima*, the other is *Ruſubricari*. This hath ſuffered divers Ruins; the *Moors* driven from *Granada* rebuilt it, and enriched it with their Piracies, with their *Silks* and *Fruits*. The Inhabitants both of the one and the other, are for the moſt part *Weavers*. 4. *Meliane*, or *Malliana*, is on a Mountain, where yet the moſt part of the Houſes have their *Fountains* and *Wall-nut Trees*. 5. *Mezume*, is adorned with a *Caſtle*, a *Palace*, and a fair *Temple*. 6. *Teguident* hath a large circuit, which had been empty, had not ſometime ſince a *Marabut* repeopled it. Theſe two places are by ſome eſteemed in the Quarter of *Telenſin*. Among the Mountains *Beni-Abucaid*, is near to and of the appurtenances of *Tennes*. *Guanſeris* can ſet forth 2 or 3000 Horſe, and 15 or 16000 Foot.

Province of *Tenes*, its chief places, fertility and people.

The Quarter of *ALGIER* comprehends likewiſe that of *Couco*, in the Mountains of *Eguiel-Vandaluz alias Couco*, and *Tubuſuplus*, which is the principal place, built on the top of a Rock, craggy on all ſides. It may contain about 1600 Houſes: the Kings or Lords of the Country reſide here, and have oft diſputed their liberty with the Kings of *Algier*. Theſe Mountains are two or three days Journey long, and their approaches very difficult: They yield *Olives*, *Grapes*, and eſpecially *Figs*, of which the King makes his principal Revenue; *Cattle*, *Iron*, *Saltpeter*; and the Plains afford *Corn*, and every where Springs of Running-water. The People are *Bereberes* and *Azuages*, well armed and couragious. The Metropolis of the Kingdom is *ALGIER*, at preſent the moſt famous place of all the Coaſt of *Barbary*, either for its Riches and Power, or for the extent of its Eſtates. It is ſeated on the declenſion of a Mountain in form of a Triangle, ſo that from the Sea all its Houſes appear one on the top of another, which renders a moſt pleaſant proſpect to the Sea. Its circuit is not above 3400 Geometrical paces, fortified with ſome ill-diſpoſed *Baſtions*; but the Iſland, which was before it, is joyned to the City ſome years paſt; where is built a *Pentagone*, the better to ſecure the Port and Iſland, and keep it from being fired, as in 1596, 1606, &c. It is a City not ſo large as ſtrong, and not ſo ſtrong as famous: Famous for being the receptacle of the *Turkiſh* Pirates, who ſo much domineer over the *Mediterranean Sea*, which too often proves to the great damage of all Merchants who frequent thoſe Seas. This City hath at preſent 12 or 15000 Houſes; it had not when *J. Leon* of *Africa* wrote above 4000. The Streets are but narrow, but the Houſes fair and well built, yet one which runs along the Sea is fair and large; they count 100 *Moſques*, whereof 7 are very ſumptuous; 5 Houſes or Lodgings of *Janizaries*, capable to hold each of them 600 Men; 62 *Bania's*, of which two are very beautiful; 100 Oratories of *Turkiſh Hermits*, and almoſt as many publick *Schools*. Out of the City are many Tombs of *Turks*, *Moors*, and *Jews*; the burying place of the *Chriſtians* is without ornament. Among theſe Tombs is remarkable that of *Cave*, Daughter of *Julian*, Earl of *Bæthica*, who having been raviſhed by *Roderic* King of the *Goths*, was the cauſe of the *Moors* deſcent into *Spain*. It hath almoſt no more Suburbs, the City being encompaſſed with many Hillocks and riſing Grounds, whoſe ſides and Vallies are covered with 12 or 15000 fair Gardens, abounding with ſtore of pleaſant Fruits, with their Fountains and other places of delight. Beyond theſe Hills is the Plain of *Moteja*, 15 or 16 Leagues long, and 8 or 10 broad, very fruitful in Grains. This place is famous for the Shipwreck which *Charles* the Fifth here ſuffered,

The Quarter of *Algier*, and its parts and places.

The City of *Algier* deſcribed.

Here *Charles* the Fifth suffered Shipwreck.

who beſieging this Town, loſt in its Haven at one Tempeſt (as *Heylin* noteth,) beſides a great number of *Karvels* and ſmall *Boats*, divers ſtrong *Gallies*, 140 *Ships*, a great many Pieces of *Ordnance*, about half his *Men*, and ſuch great quantity of gallant *Horſes*, that in *Spain* they had almoſt like to have loſt their race of good and ſerviceable *Horſes*.

The Cities, 1. *Temeudfuſta*, about 7 or 8 Leagues from *Algier*, with a good Port: and, 2. *Teddeles*, 18 or 20 are the beſt places of the Coaſt: the firſt anſwers to the ancient *Jomnium Municipium*, the other to *Ruſipiſir*; likewiſe *Municipium*. 3. *El Col de Mudejares*, of old, *Tigiſi*, is newly repeopled by the *Moriſque Mudejares* of *Caſtile* and *Andaluſia*; and the *Tagartins*, which were of *Valentia*: It is 8 or 10 Leagues from *Algier*, beyond the River *Selef*, which they here call the River of *Saffran*. 4. *Gezaira*, a City ſeated on the Sea-ſhoar. 5. *Menſora*: And 6. *Garbellum*, both Sea Towns.

The Fertility and People of *Algier*.

The Air about *Algier* is pleaſant and temperate: The Land hath excellent Fruits, as *Almonds*, *Dates*, *Oils*, *Raiſins*, *Figs*, ſome *Drugs*, &c. The Plain of *Metetia* is ſo fertil, that ſometimes it yields 100 for one, and bears twice a year good Grains. In the moſt Deſart Mountains are found Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, quantity of fierce *Beaſts*. The Country affords excellent *Barbary Horſes*, alſo *Eſtridge Feathers*, *Wax*, *Hony*, *Caſtile Soap*, &c. Beſides they have good quantities of moſt Commodities, which by reaſon of their Piracy they take from other Nations, to the great inriching of the place, moſt of the Inhabitants living by it, ſetting out Veſſels in Partnerſhip and ſharing the Gains, ſelling the Commodities and the Men they take as Slaves in open Markets. The Natives of *Algier* are fairer, and not ſo brown as the *Moors*; but the City is filled with all ſorts of Nations. The *Janizaries* make the greateſt part of the *Militia*: The *Turks* have the chief Trade, who are found to tranſport ſeveral Commodities to other Countries; but there are many of the *Moors* driven from *Spain*, and others who have retired themſelves from the Mountains; many *Arabs*, *Jewiſh*, and *Chriſtian Slaves*. The number of the Inhabitants of this City cannot be eſteemed by the 12 or 15000 Houſes it contains; for there are ſome Houſes where are found 100, 200, or 300 Perſons; the *Chriſtian Slaves* only amount to about 30 or 40000 within and about the City; and there are no leſs than 6000 Families of *Renegadoes*. But the Right Honourable the Earl of *Sandwich*, late General of the *Engliſh* Fleet, by order from King *Charles* the Second, put out to Sea with a Fleet of Ships, ſcoured thoſe Seas, forced them to deliver up all the Slaves, who were Subjects in any of the Kings Dominions, as well as *Engliſhmen*, and brought them to very honourable terms: By which they are not to ſeize or ſtop any *Engliſh* Ship, but give them free liberty of Trading where they pleaſe; and the like Peace is made with *Tunis*, and other of the *Turks* Territories: But theſe perfidious People ſoon violated it.

Province of *Bugia*, its chief places and fertility.

The Province of *BUGIA* is between the Rivers *Major* and *Sefegmar*. This on the Eaſt, that on the Weſt. On the Coaſt are two principal places, *Bugia* and *Ghegel*; in the Land are *Steffa*, *Labes*, *Necaus*, and *Meßila*, in ſome conſideration. 1. *Bugia* is a great City, its circuit capable of 20000 Houſes, but hath not above 8000; but that which is uninhabited is Mountainous and inconvenient: It was built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain, which regards the Sea; now the chief City of this Province. Its Streets and Houſes are in good order; it is adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome *Monaſteries* and *Colledges* for Students in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for the relief of the Poor: Its *Caſtle* is good and ſtrong, ſeated on the River *Guad al Quibir*, that is, *Great River*. 2. *Ghegel*, formerly famous, is now only a Borough of 500 ill-built Houſes. Its *Caſtle* is very good; its Land hath little *Corn*, ſtore of *Hemp*, *Figs* and *Nuts*. They hold this place to have been the beginning of the fortune of *Barbaroſſa*. 3. *Labez* makes a ſeparate Eſtate above *Bugia*, and conſiſts only in Mountains of ſo difficult acceſs, that the Kings of *Algier*, and the *Turks*, can ſcarce force them to pay Tribute. The chief Fortreſs of theſe Mountains, and the reſidence of their King or *Xeque*, is *Calaa*. The others are, 4. *Coco de Teleta*; 5. *Tezli*, at the foot of the Mountain.

Theſe

Theſe Mountains have little Corn or Fruit; they can raiſe 5000 Horſe, 5000 Harquebuſiers, and 20000 Men, armed after their mode; all valiant, and better defenders of their liberty than thoſe of *Couco*. 6. *Necnus*. 7. *Meſila*, are beyond the *Abez*, but near the ſame River. *Necaus* is the moſt pleaſant place of all *Barbary*: It hath ſomething of particular in its publick Buildings; every Houſe hath its Garden ſo embelliſhed with *Flowers*, *Vines*, *Fruits*, and *Fountains*, that it ſeems a Terreſtrial Paradiſe. 8. *Chollum*. 9. *Gergelum*, &c.

Province of *Conſtantina*, its parts and chief places.

The Province of *CONSTANTINA* hath ſometime had its Kings. This is the New *Numidia*, of the Ancients the moſt Occidental part of the True *Africa*, and which touches on *Mauritania* to the Weſt, the River *Sugefmar* making the ſeparation. This Province comprehends three quarters, of which that of *Conſtantina* extends to the Sea, and a good way in the Land; that of *Bona* likewiſe on the Sea, but little on land; that of *Tebeſſa* is farther in the Land, touching on *Billedulgerid*.

The City of *Tebeſſa*.

1. *Tebeſſa*, formerly *Thebeſte*, ſurpaſſes (as they ſay) all other Cities of *Barbary* in three things: In the force of its *Walls*, beauty of its *Fountains*, and great number of its *Wall-nut Trees*. In counter-change its Inhabitants are brutiſh, its Houſes ill built, and its Air unwholſom.

The City of *Bona*.

2. *Bona*, of old *Hippo Regnis*; ill inhabited at preſent, part of its Inhabitants being retired into the Mountains: hath been famous to Antiquity for its greatneſs, but much more for its Biſhop St. *Auguſtine*, ſo famed among the Doctors of the Church. It hath ſuffered great changes under the *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Moors*, and afterwards under *Barbaroſſa*.

3. *Tabarca*, a City and Iſle is of this Government, likewiſe the Hills and Mountains of *Bona*, where are gathered much Fruits of *Jujubes*, *Grains*, and ſtore of *Cattle*; and the Coaſt hath red, white, and black *Corral*, which the *French* near to *Bona*, and the *Genoueſe* near to *Tabarca*, go to fiſh for. The Family of the *Lomolins* in *Genoua* having a Fortreſs in the Iſle of *Tabarca*, the *French* a Baſtion between *Tabarca* and the Point of *Maſcara*; the one and the other for the ſecurity of their Fiſhing and Commerce.

The City of *Conſtantina*.

4. *Conſtantina*, which the *Moors* called *Cuſuntina*, the Ancients *Cirta Julia*, is a great City, not having leſs than 8000 Houſes. Its ſcituation on a Mountain, which hath but two Advenues, the reſt being Precipice, makes it ſtrong. The River *Sufegmar* waſhes the foot of the Mountain; its Caſtle ſtands to the North, *Collo* and *Sucaicada* (on the Coaſt) are under the Government of *Conſtantina*, likewiſe the Mountains which extend themſelves to the *Mediterranean Sea*, and to the confines of *Bona*. The Country about *Conſtantina* is fertil, its Mountains tilled. *Collo* hath its Inhabitants more civil than thoſe of *Conſtantina*, thoſe having no trade but with thoſe of *Billedulgerid*, the others with thoſe of *Europe*. The Inhabitants of the Mountains can raiſe about 40000 Men, and maintain themſelves almoſt in liberty, both againſt the Kings of *Algier* and the *Arabs*.

The City of *Cirta*.

5. *Cirta*, in the *Roman* Hiſtory, was the reſidence of many Kings of *Numidia*; among others of *Maſſiniſſa*, afterward of *Syphax*, who drove *Maſſiniſſa* from his Eſtates, and ſettled himſelf at *Cirta* with his Wife *Sophonuba*, who had been promiſed to *Maſſiniſſa*. This Woman a little after having perſwaded *Syphax* to favour *Carthage*, of which ſhe was againſt the *Romans*; drew their Arms into his Eſtate, where *Scipio* defeated and took *Syphax* Priſoner, *Maſſiniſſa* beſieged, and took *Cirta* where *Sophonuba* was; who had ſo many attractions, and ſo much cunning, that in the ſame day ſhe beheld her ſelf Captive and Wife to *Maſſiniſſa*: But ſhe killed her ſelf ſoon after, that ſhe might not fall into the *Romans* hands, and be led in Triumph through *Rome*. 6. *Stora*: and, 7. *Mabra*, both Maritim Towns.

The Kingdom of TUNIS.

The Kingdom of *Tunis*, and its division into Governments.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS*, beſides its particular Province, hath ſometimes extended it ſelf over *Conſtantina* and *Bugia* on one ſide, and over *Tripoli* and *Ezzab* on the other. At preſent it hath only its own Province, and ſomething in *Billedulgerid*.

This Kingdom of *Tunis* is divided into 4 Maritim Governments, and 3 or 4 Inland ones. The Maritim are, *Biſerta*, *Goletta*, *Souſa*, and *Africa*; *Begge*, *Urbs*, *Cayroan*, and part of *Billedulgerid*, are the third or fourth within Land. Altogether extend themſelves from the River *Guad il Barbar*, unto that of *Capes*: this ſeparating them from the Kingdom of *Tripoli*, the other from the Province of *Conſtantina*.

The chief Rivers of *Tunis*.

The River *Guad il Barbar*, or *Hued il Barbar*, takes its ſource near *Urbs*, which it waters with a Channel made on purpoſe, and diſcharges it ſelf into the Sea near *Tabarca*. In its courſe it makes ſo many turnings and windings, that it muſt be paſſed 25 times in the Road between *Bona* and *Tunis*, and that with much difficulty and danger, there being no Bridges, and ſcarce any Boats to Ferry over. The River *Capes*, of old *Triton*, deſcends from *Billedulgerid*, and waters at firſt a very Sandy Country, leaves *Capes* on the Right, and on the Coaſt of *Tripoli*, and disburthens it ſelf into the Little *Syrtes*, now the Gulph of *Capes*. *Magrada*, another River, hath its Spring likewiſe in *Billedulgerid* on the Confines of *Zeb*, which it waters in part, waſhes *Tebeſſa* of the Province of *Conſtantina*, cuts the Kingdom of *Tunis* into two almoſt equal parts, and disburthens it ſelf in the Sea near *Garilmeſſe*, between *Tunis* and *Hammamet*. Its increaſes are ſometimes extraordinary, and all of a ſudden, ſo that Travellers are often forced to wait ſome days for a paſſage.

The Government or City of *Benſerta*.

BENSERTA, of old *Utica*, is a City but of an indifferent greatneſs, but ſtrong, and peopled with about 6000 Families. It looks Eaſtward on a Gulph ſo called, which is about 16000 Paces long, and 8000 broad. Here is a fair *Burſe* or *Exchange* for Merchants; two great *Priſons* for their Slaves, and ſome *Baſtions* to defend the Port, which is good and large. This place is famous for the death of *Cato*, ſirnamed *Uticenſis*, who for fear of falling into the hands of *Cæſar*, here ſlew himſelf; and is of note in the *Carthaginian* Wars.

The Government or City of *Goletta*.

The Government of *GOLETTA* is much eſteemed, becauſe of the neighbouring *Carthage*; or rather becauſe of *Tunis*, whoſe Key it is. It is a Fortreſs built in the neck of the Gulph between *Tunis* and the Sea, by which all muſt neceſſarily paſs: And it hath given occaſion to build a Fort on the top of a Hill, whoſe foot is waſhed by the Sea. There was heretofore the old Fort, and the new; the Old was only an intrenched *Baſtion*, guarded by 30 or 40 *Janizaries*; the New is great, well fortified and furniſhed with all things neceſſary. A Fountain of Running-water croſſes the place, ſo that it ſeems rather a City than a Fortreſs. *Charles* the Fifth took this Fort in 1535, which the *Turks* retook in 1574. Under this Fort was it, that General *Blake* with the *Engliſh* Fleet, fired the Pirate Ships of *Tunis* in 1654. *Tunis*, at the bottom of this Gulph, is at preſent one of the faireſt Cities of *Barbary*; it counts 8 Gates, 8 chief Streets, which are croſſed by abundance of others, 10 Places or Markets, more than 300 Temples and Synagogues of the *Jews*, and many Oratories, ſome likewiſe for the *Chriſtians*; 150 *Bania's* or *Hot-Houſes*; 86 *Schools*; 9 Colledges, where Youth is nouriſhed and inſtructed at the publick expence; 64 Hoſpitals, and a great number of *Canes* or *Inns* for *Merchants* and *Chriſtians*, &c. The Buildings of the *Royal Palace* are magnificent; it had long ſince 10000 Houſes, and is much increaſed ſince the *Moors* of *Granada* were driven out of *Spain*. Among its Inhabitants are many *Merchants*, *Apothecaries*, *Druggiſts*, *Confectioners*, *Cooks*, *Bakers*, *Butchers*, and above all, *Drapers* and *Weavers*, &c. Their common Bread is kneaded with Oil, of which

The City of *Tunis*.

which they have abundance, and utter quantity into *Egypt*. Their Linnen and Manufactures have vent through all *Africa*: It is a place of great Traffick, and much frequented by Merchants of Foreign parts, affording several other good Commodities, as *Gold*, *Saffron*, *Wax*, *Oil*, raw and salted *Hides*, variety of *Fruits*, *Wool*, *Spunges*, *Hard Soap*; they have also a great trade for *Horses* and *Ostrich Feathers*, &c. and above all for *Christian Slaves*. Commodities most vendible here are, *English Cloths*, *Perpetuanoes*, *Iron*, *Lead*, &c. They have no Water either of Well or of Fountain, (except that which is reserved for the *Bassa*,) but make use of Cisterns and Rain-water: They are fain to have their Mills turned by their Slaves, or by Oxen. The *Arab* of *Nubia*, *Sanutus*, and some others, esteem *Tunis* to answer to the Ancient *Tarsis*. This place (as *Heylin* noteth) is observable in the History of the *Holy Wars*, for the Sieges and Successes of two of our *English* Princes, *viz. Edward* the First, in his Fathers life time, and *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*; by both of which the City was forced to a composition. But the Ruins of *Carthage*, from which *Tunis* had its increase are remarkable, because of the Antiquity, Scituation, Greatness, and Power of this City. The beginning of it is given to *Dido*, the *Phœnician*, who inclosed with the Wall the Quarter or Castle of *Byrsa*, which is two miles and a half in Circuit, which in the Country they still call *Bersat*, and *Byrsa* signifying a *Hide* to the *Greeks*, and a *Fortress* to the *Phœnicians*; the one agrees with the Fable that *Dido* had bought, and builded the place on the greatness and extent of an *Oxes Hide*; the other, to the scituation and advantage of the place where this Fortress was built. This Scituation, and the goodness of the neighbouring Port, drew so many People, that it became one of the fairest Cities in the World. Its circumference in its splendor was 360 *Stadia*, like to that of *Babylon*, and its Inhabitants have been so rich and powerful, that they disputed with the *Romans* for the Empire of the World, being once called the Lady and Mistress of *Africa*. The particular power of this City was not known till the third and last *Punick* War; when after having had to do with *Massinissa*, to whom they yielded a good part of their Estates, after having granted and put into the *Romans* hands their *Ships* of War, their *Elephants*, their *Arms*, and their *Hostages*, which were demanded: when they commanded them to leave the City, and to inhabit from the Sea-Coast, despair made them resolve on the War. They made other Arms, built new Ships, the Women and Virgins giving their Hair to make Cables and Cordage, and defended themselves yet 3 or 4 years. It was afterwards restored, and at divers times; but the *Vandals*, and in the end the *Arabs*, have wholly ruined it, there not remaining above 7 or 800 Houses of *Fishermen*, *Gardiners*, &c.

Its Trade and Commodities.

Tunis received its splendor from the ruins of *Carthage*.

The Government of *SOUSA* contains the Cities of 1. *Hammametha*, which communicates its name to the neighbouring Gulph, at the bottom whereof it is scituated; its Walls are strong, and its Harbour safe. 2. *Susa* is in a higher and lower City; the former on a Rock, and of difficult access; the last on the Sea, with a good Port, where are laded great quantities of *Oils*: both the one and the other well built. The Duke of *Savoy* made an enterprize on them in 1619. 3. *Monastero*, so called, because there was once a famous Monastery of the Order of *St. Augustine*. The Riches about *Susa* is in *Olives*, *Pears*, and other Fruits and Pastures for Cattle. The ordinary Food for the Inhabitants is *Barly-bread*, the Country affording no other Grain. The Inhabitants of *Susa* and *Hammametha* addict themselves to Traffick, others to Whitning of *Cloth*; they make *Charcoal*, and draw some profit from their Fishing.

The Government of *Sousa*, its Cities, People, &c.

The Government of *AFRICA*, or *EL-MADIA*, hath nothing considerable; but this place may be made far better than it is. Its scituation is in a *Peninsula*, which touches not the Main but by an *Isthmus* of 2 or 300 Paces, where there is likewise some Marsh; and on this side the City is invested with a double Wall and good Ditches. Its Port within the City is capable to lodge 50 *Gallies*; but its entrance is so narrow, that a *Galley* is forced to lift up its *Oars* to pass.

The Government of *Africa*, or *El-Madia*.

The

The Coasts about *Susa* and *Elmedia* have been well known in the *Roman* History, in the time of the Wars between *Cæsar* and the Party of *Pompey*. *Cæsar* landed at *Rhuspina*, now *Susa*, *Adrumetum*, now *Hammametha*, being in the Enemies hands; and in the beginning had divers little favourable encounters thereabout. In the end he happily defeated both *Scipio* and *Juba*, near to *Thapsus*, now *Elmedia*; and after that defeat, *Cato* despairing slew himself at *Utica*, now *Benserta*: *Scipio* saved himself in some Ships; but being met by *Cæsars* Fleet, passing his Sword through his Body, he precipitated himself into the Sea. *Juba* would have retired to *Zama*, where he had left his Wives, Children, and Treasures; but *Zama* having refused to open him the Gates, He and *Petrejus* retired into a House in the Fields, where they killed themselves. During this War, and almost upon the landing of *Cæsar*, hapned near *Hammametha* a thing incredible, which was, that 30 *Gaul-Horsmen* assaulted a Post of 2000 *Mooriſh Horſe*, put them to rout, and pursued them into the City.

The Coasts about *Sousa* and *Elmedia*, and what Transactions hapned there.

For *Zama*, or *Zama Regia*, it is far distant from the position which *Ptolomy* gives it, and from that of *Ortelius*, which we at other times, and which all others have since followed. This Author places it 500000 Paces from *Carthage*, and 600000 from *Adrumetum*; but it appears both by the *Roman* History, and by the *Itinerary Table*, not to be distant from *Carthage* above 100, or 120000 Paces, and from *Adrumetum* 100000 Paces, or little more.

BEGGE or *Beija*, and *URBS*; this in the Road from *Tebessa* to *Tunis*, that in the way from *Constantina* to *Tunis*; are both seated in fair Plains, so fertil in Grains, particularly *Begge*; that those of *Tunis* say, that if they had two *Begges*, they would yield as many *Corns* as there is *Sand* in the Sea; and nigh to *Urbs* is *Camud*, *Arbes*, *Musti*, and *Marmagen*; all fair Cities.

The Governments or Cities of *Begge* and *urbs*.

CAYROAN, of old, *Thesdrus*, ought as it seems to be among the Maritim Governments, since it holds on the Coast *Tobulha*, *Asfachusa*, and some other places; but its principal place being on the main Land, its Government is likewise esteemed to be within the Land. This City is seated in a Sandy-plain, which affords neither Grain, Fruit, nor scarce any Water but what is preserved in Cisterns; it is about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and about 36 from any part of the Sea. It was first built by *Hucha*, who was the first that conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*; who adorned it with a stately *Mosque*, supported on Pillars of *Marble*, of which two or three are very fair ones, and of a prodigious greatness, who also placed in it a Colledge of *Priests*, and now in much esteem, being the residence of a *High Priest* of the Law of *Mahomet*: and to this place (from all parts of the Country) the Corps of their chief Men are brought to be interred; who believe, that by the Prayers of those *Priests*, they shall find a shorter way to Heaven, than if interred at any other place. Its Inhabitants are now reduced to about 4 or 500 Families. Not far from *Cayroan*, are the Mountains of *Zaghoan* and *Guesset*, the last not above 12000 Paces distant; both the one and the other have divers foot-steps of *Roman* Buildings. But I believe it was from the last that *Scipio* considered the Battel between *Massinissa* King of *Numidia*, and *Asdrubal* chief of the *Carthaginians*; and of this encounter *Scipio* would sometimes say to his Friends, That he was the third who had had the pleasure to see a famous Battel, without having run any resigoe; to wit, *Jupiter* from the top of Mount *Ida*, and *Neptune* from some eminence in the Isle of *Samothrace*, who beheld the Battels between the *Trojans* and *Greeks*; and himself this between *Massinissa* and the *Carthaginians*. The other Cities of this Kingdom of *Tunis*, and towards *Billedulgerid*, are *Caffa*, *Hama*, *Techios*, *Neifa*, and *Nafta*.

The Government or City of *Cayroan*.

Mountains of *Zaghoan* and *Guesset*.

The

The Kingdom of TRIPOLI.

THE Kingdom of *TRIPOLI* takes up the juſt moiety of the Coaſt of *Barbary* from *Capes* unto *Egypt*, and divides it ſelf into two principal parts or Provinces, which bear likewiſe the Title of Kingdoms, to wit, *Tripoli* and *Barca*. *Tripoli* is between the two *Syrtes*, now the Sands or Banks of *Barbary*. Theſe are Gulphs of different greatneſs, but of the ſame nature; infamous for the Shipwreck of Veſſels loſt on their Flats or Rocks: among which the depth of the Water is very unequal, and changes often, there being ſometimes much, ſometimes a little, and ſometimes none at all. The Little *Syrtes*, now the Gulph of *Capes*, ſeparates *Tripoli* from *Tunis*: The Great *Syrtes*, now the Gulph of *Sydra*, divides it from *Barca*; this towards the Eaſt, the other towards the Weſt, and on the South it is bounded with *Billidulgerid*, and on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*. Its principal Cities are *El-Hamma*, *Capes*, *Zoara*, the two *Tripolies*, Old and New, *Sarmana*, *Lepeda*, &c. 1. *El-Hamma* is in the Land, *Capes* and the reſt on the Sea; between *El-Hamma* and *Capes* is a Lake excellent againſt Leproſie. 2. *Capes* of Old *Tacapa* hath good Walls, and a good Caſtle; but its Port dangerous, and incapable to receive either many or great Veſſels; it is ſcituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the Leſſer *Syrtes*. 3. *Zoara*, of old *Piſida*, between *Capes* and *Tripoli*, hath its Land ſo dry, that the Inhabitants are forced to water it, and yet will ſcarce produce any thing ſave *Barley* and ſome *Fruits*; among which, *Lotos*, with which they make an excellent *Metheglin*, but it laſts good not above 9 or 10 days. *Fleſh* is here very ſcarce, they not having wherewith to feed Beaſts. The *Arabs* frequent their *Markets*, and ſerve them with *Wools*, wherewith they make *Cloaths* and other Manufactures. 4. *Tripoli* the Old, of old *Sabrata*, and which the *Arab* of *Nubia* calls the *Tower of Sabrat*, hath only ſome Hamlets, and Remnants of fair and ſtately Edifices. 5. The New *Tripoli*, of Old *Oea*, is better maintained, though it hath many Ruins, by reaſon of the divers changes it hath had. The diſpoſition of its places, Streets, and the order of its Buildings is agreeable, being adorned with many fair *Moſques*, *Colledges*, *Hoſpitals*, &c. The Inhabitants ſubſiſted only on their Commerce, which is of what they got from their *Palm-Trees*, *Lotos*, and *Linnen-Cloth*, which they uttered in *Africa*, *Sicily*, and *Malta*; beſides their black and *Ethiopian Slaves*, which they ſold; till of late they have much enriched themſelves by Piracy, it being the uſual retreat for Pirates, who infeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to *Chriſtian Merchants* on the Coaſts of *Italy*, *Sicily*, and elſewhere. 6. *Lepeda* is in ſome repute, as it was in the time of the *Arab* of *Nubia*, and more under the *Romans*: Farther is the Great *Syrtes*, at the bottom of which is the Iſle *Sydra*, which communicates its name to the Gulph; and on the Firm Land are the Tombs of *Philenes* or *Aræ Philenarum*, which ſet the Limits between *Africa* and *Libya*; and afterwards between the Eſtates of the *Carthaginians* and the *Cyrenians*; and in fine, of the Eaſtern Empire againſt that of the Weſt: And, 7. *Sebeicum*, a City near the Sea-ſhoar, nigh to which are three ſmall Iſles. Along the Coaſt are ſome Iſles, among which that of *Gerbes* is well known; formerly it was joyned to the Firm Land by a Bridge. It had two Cities; now hath nothing but one Caſtle worth notice, and many Hamlets which gather little Corn, but much Fruits; among the reſt *Lotos*, ſo ſweet and pleaſant, that the Companions of *Ulyſſes* having taſted them, ſought no longer to go into their Country. This Iſle hath about 18000 Paces circuit, yields one of the greateſt Revenues to the King or Baſſa of *Tripoli*, by reaſon of the confluence of Merchants, who fetch thence *Cloth* and divers *Stuffs*, and carry them to *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, &c. one of the principal parts of the Revenue of the ſame *Baſſa*, is the *Saffron* of the Mountain of *Garian*, which is on the South of *Tripoli*: And this *Saffron* is found the faireſt, and the beſt of all others.

Kingdom of *Tripoli*.

Its chief places and people.

Tripoli, and the Trade thereof.

The Iſle of *Gerbes* deſcribed.

BARCA.

BARCA.

Barca, on the Coasts of *Barbary* described.

THE reſt of the Coaſt of *Barbary*, is now known under the name of *BARCA*; it is bounded on the Eaſt with *Egypt*, on the South with the Deſart of *Nubia*, on the Weſt with *Tripoli*, and on the North with the *Mediterranean Sea*, which is alſo ſome of its Weſtern bounds. The Ancients called it particularly *Libya*, comprehending that which is farther in the Land, and which we call the Deſart of *Barca*, and divided this *Libya* into the *Cyrenaick*, the *Marmarick*, and *Libya* Exteriour. This laſt being the neareſt to *Egypt*; the *Cyrenaick* to *Tripoli*; and the *Marmarick* reſting for the middle. Likewiſe the moſt Northern and Maritim part of the *Cyrenaick*, hath paſſed under the name of *Pentapolis*, becauſe it had five fair Cities; to wit, 1. *Bernichum*. 2. *Torochara*. 3. *Ptolemais*, now *Ptolometa*: and 4. *Boni-Andreas*; and theſe four are on the Sea; the fifth, *Cayroan*, within Land. This, by much the moſt famous, was a Colony of the *Lacedemonians*, and hath yielded Learned Men: Its ſcituation is on an eminence that diſcovers the Sea; and its Campaign, as of thoſe other Cities, is moiſtned by divers Waters; and their Soil ſo fruitful, that ſome have eſteemed the *Heſperian Gardens* with their *Golden Apples* about *Berenice*. Its other chief Towns and Cities are, 1. *Barca*, an Inland City of ſome account, 2. *Melela*. 3. *Careora*. 4. *Camera*. 5. *Zunara*. 6. *Avium*: and 7. *Saline*. All Maritim Towns and Cities, and of ſome account.

Battus gave the firſt beginning to *Cyrene*, and he and his Succeſſors reigned near 200 years; after which the City was ſometimes in Liberty, and ſometimes under Tyranniſm: Among which *Nicocrates* having put to death *Phædimus*, Husband of *Aretaphila*, to eſpouſe her; ſhe endured him ſometime her Husband, and that until ſhe had occaſion to gain the Brother of *Nicocrates*, named *Leander*; to whom ſhe gave her Daughter in marriage, and by his means rid her ſelf of *Nicocrates*, and ſoon after (by the means of her Daughter) of *Leander* alſo, and ſo ſet the City at liberty; which endured till the time of *Alexander* the Great, when the Country fell to the *Ptolomies*, Kings of *Egypt*; afterwards, to the *Romans*, to the *Soldans* of *Egypt*, and to the *Turks*; having almoſt always followed the Fortune of *Egypt*. But at preſent *Barca*, not far from *Cayroan*, is the moſt famous of this Quarter, and hath given its name to the Kingdom. The *Arab* of *Nubia* makes much account of it in his time, and lays out divers ways, and gives the diſtances from this place to others farther in the Deſart. Moreover this quarter of five Cities is called by ſome *Meſrata*, and its Inhabitants eſteemed rich. They trade both with the *Europeans*, *Negroes* and *Abiſſines*, fetch from them *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Civet*, *Musk*, and *Slaves*, which they tranſport into *Europe*, beſides their Native Commodities; and bringing from *Europe*, *Corn*, *Linnen*, *Woolen Cloth*, &c. which they carry to the *Negroes*, *Abiſſines*, and elſewhere. Its other chief places in the Kingdom of *Barca* are, 1. *Doera*. 2. *Forcella*. 3. *Salinæ*. 4. *Luchun*. 5. *Solana*. 6. *Muſolomarus*. 7. *Cartum*. 8. *Albertonus*. 9. *Roxa*. 10. *Raibba*; and, 11. *Ripæalba*. All Maritim Towns and Cities; and moſt of which having good and commodious *Roads*, *Ports*, and *Havens*, and well frequented and inhabited.

The fertility of the Country, its Trade and Commodities.

Between *Cayroan* and *Alexandria*, there is on the Coaſt the Port of *Alberton Parætonium*, which is conſiderable both for its goodneſs and greatneſs: And ſometimes the Ancients have called it *Ammonia*, becauſe from hence was a way to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*. This Temple hath been very famous among the *Pagans*. *Bacchus* returning from *Aſia*, which he had overcome, cauſed it to be built in honour of his Father, who under the ſhape of a *Ram* had ſhewed him, as he paſſed with his Army, where to find Water in thoſe Deſarts; and he firſt conſulted the Oracle, and put it in ſuch repute

repute, that divers other *Heroes* afterwards conſulted it. *Perſeus*, when he was ſent to fetch the Head of *Meduſa*, the *Gorgon*: *Hercules* going from *Mauritania*, where he had overcome *Antæus*, towards *Egypt*, where he was to defeat *Buſiris*. *Alexander* the Great, to make it believed he was likewiſe the Son of *Jupiter*, and that the Empire of the World was deſtin'd to him. But *Cambyſes*, the Son of *Cyrus*, having a deſign to pillage this Temple, beheld his Army periſh in theſe Deſarts, and was ſaved himſelf only to ſee his own madneſs, and to die unhappily by his own Weapon. About this Temple there are ſome Springs of Running-water, and ſome Trees, which makes this quarter pleaſant. Among theſe Waters, that which they called the *Fountain of the Sun*, had this particular quality, that it was very hot at Midnight, and very cold at Noon-day; the cold increaſing from Morning till Noon, and diminiſhing until Evening; and from thence the heat increaſing till Midnight, and diminiſhing until the Morning. There were three ſeveral ways which they uſed ordinarily to go to this Oracle: the ſhorteſt was by *Alberton*, which (as we have ſaid) was upon the Coaſt, and from whence it was but 1300 *Stadia*, which are about 162000 Paces. Another way was from *Cayroan*; from whence it was 3000 *Stadia*, or 375000 Paces. *Pliny* ſaith, 400000; the difference is 25000 Paces. The longeſt way was from *Memphis*, from whence it was 3600 *Stadia*, or 450000 Paces. Theſe are 180 Leagues for this laſt, 150, or little more, for the ſecond, and 65 for the firſt. All theſe ways are very difficult, the Country being only Deſarts of *Sands*; ſo dry, that the Wind moves them like the duſt of the High-way, and that in ſo great a quantity, that they are able to interr *Carravans*. And if there be any Habitations in theſe Deſarts, and where there is any Springs of Water, they are diſtant one from the other 40, 50, 60, ſometimes a 100 Leagues; and theſe Habitations have little or nothing, ſince that of *Hammon*, the moſt conſiderable, is not above 80 *Stadia*, or 4 Leagues circuit; and yet it had a King, a Great Prieſt, &c.

The Deſart of *Barca*, with its chief Places and People deſcribed.

In the Deſart of *BARCA* there are ſome Parts peopled and frequented amongſt thoſe vaſt and floating *Sands*; as, 1. *Angela*, where there are three Cities, and many Villages; and their People have a great power againſt the *Serpents*, and therefore may anſwer to the Ancient *Bilii*, (if the South-wind have not buried theſe in the *Sand*, for reſolving to make upon him, becauſe he had dried up all their Waters.) 2. *Serta*, which hath been once a great City, but at preſent reduced to Ruins. 3. *Alquechet*, which hath three Cities, and ſome Villages; and poſſibly *Elchochat* or *Eleocath*, is the ſame; or if they be two, they anſwer to the ancient *Oaſis Magna*, and *Oaſis Parva*. Its other chief places are, *Sabia*, *Ernet*, *Couzza*, *Aſcor*, *Angela*, *Ebaida*, *Gorham*, and *Ammon*, ſpoken of before. Among theſe Deſarts are many *Arabs*, of which ſome are powerful in Horſe and Foot, and will not ſuffer any Cities, except of ſome *Africans*, which pay them Tribute.

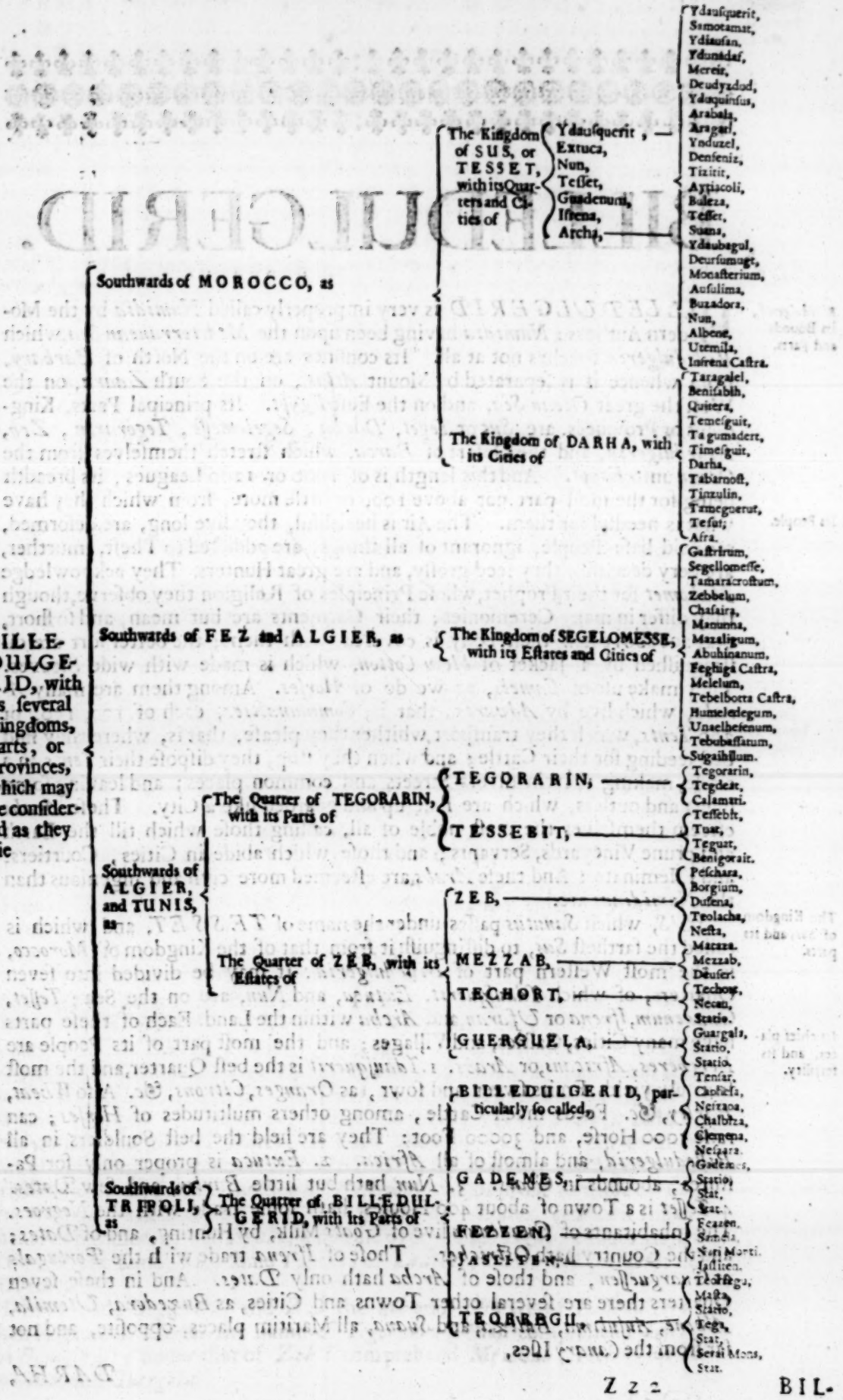
The People of Barbary.

At preſent the People of theſe Deſarts are in part *Africans* or *Bereberes*, part *Arabs*, and all extreamly barbarous. And ſince we are faln on theſe People, and that we have here the occaſion, let us ſay, That *Barbary*, *Billedulgerid*, and likewiſe *Znaxa*, and part of *Nubia*, are for the moſt part inhabited by theſe two ſorts of People. The *Africans* and *Bereberes* are, the Natural Inhabitants of the Country, or at leaſt have been long ſeated there. They are divided into five principal Races, to wit, of *Zanhagia*, *Muſmuda*, *Zeneta*, *Haora*, and *Gumera*: And theſe five Races are ſubdivided into more than ſix hundred Branches or numerous Lines, which diſtinguiſh themſelves very well the one from the other, being very curious to keep the Antiquity of their Race, and to know from what People they are deſcended.

The Race of the *Arabs* which inhabit in *Barbary*.

The *Arabs* paſſed into *Africa* in the year of Grace 999, or the 400 of the *Æra* of *Mahomet*: and there was but three Races which paſſed, *viz.* thoſe of *Eſquequin* and *Hilel*, coming from *Arabia Deſerta*, and that of *Maquil* from *Arabia the Happy*, they might make together 50000 Fighting men; but they ſo multiplied afterwards, that the Race of *Eſquequin* hath eight or nine principal Lines, under which are many Branches, which they call *Heyles* or *Cob-Heyles*, that is, *Aſſemblies*, and live by *Advares*, which are like *Boroughs*, of 100, 150, or 200 Tents, which they carry along with them, and diſpoſe as they think fit; they may make together about 40000 Horſe, and 400000 Foot, in 1200 *Advares*. The Race of *Hilel* is divided into 11 Lines, theſe Lines into many Branches, and may make 30000 Horſe, and 150000 Foot. The Race of *Maquil* hath 23 Firſt or Second Lines, and may raiſe about 30000 Horſe and 400000 Foot; which are for the three Races 100000 Horſe, and near a Million of Foot. We cannot find how many *Advares* or *Communalties* are in the two laſt Races.

And theſe *Arabs* are on all Coaſts among the *Bereberes*; yet ſo, that they have their Habitations diſtinct the one from the other, ſome in one quarter, ſome in another of the ſame Province. And it is to be obſerved, that there are *Bereberes* and *Arabs* ſtill in the Cities, and others ſtill in the Field; but theſe are accounted the moſt Noble, becauſe the freeſt, often reaping the Harveſt of their Neighbours labour.


BILLEDULGERID, with its several Kingdoms, Parts, or Provinces, which may be considered as they lie
Southwards of MOROCCO, as
The Kingdom of SUS, or TESSET, with its Quarters and Cities of
Ydausquerit, Extuca, Nun, Tesset, Guadenuni, Ifena, Archa,
Ydausquerit, Samotamat, Ydiausan, Ydunadaf, Mereiz, Deudyzdod, Ydaquinsus, Arabala, Aragarl, Yduzel, Denseniz, Tizitit, Aytiacoli, Buleza, Tesser, Suana, Ydaubegul, Deursumagt, Monasterium, Ausulima, Buzadora, Nun, Albene, Utemila, Infrena Castra.
The Kingdom of DARHA, with its Cities of
Taragalel, Benisabih, Quitera, Temesguit, Tagumadert, Timesguit, Darha, Tabarnost, Tinzulin, Tamegnerut, Tesut, Afra.
Southwards of FEZ and ALGIER, as
The Kingdom of SEGELOMESSE, with its Estates and Cities of
Gastritum, Segellomesse, Tamaracroftum, Zebbelum, Chasaira, Manumha, Mazaligum, Abuhinanum, Feghiga Castra, Melelum, Tebelborta Castra, Humeledegum, Unaelbesenum, Tebubassatum, Sugaibilum.
Southwards of ALGIER, and TUNIS, as
The Quarter of TEGORARIN, with its Parts of
TEGORARIN,
Tegorarin, Tegdest, Calamuri.
TESSEBIT,
Tessebit, Tuat, Teguzt, Benigorait.
The Quarter of ZEB, with its Estates of
ZEB,
Peschara, Borgium, Dussena, Teolacha, Nesta, Mazara.
MEZZAB,
Mezzab, Deuser.
TECHORT,
Techort, Necan, Statio.
GUERGUELA,
Guargala, Statio, Statio.
Southwards of TRIPOLI, as
The Quarter of BILLEDULGERID, with its Parts of
BILLEDULGERID, (particularly so called,
Tensar, Canfesa, Nefrana, Chalbira, Clemena, Nefsara.
GADEMES,
Gademes, Statio, Stat, Stat.
FEZZEN,
Fezzen, Semda, Nari Morti, Jadiren.
TASILTEN,
Tesilga, Malta, Statio,
TEGORARGU,
Tega, Stat, Serri Mons, Stat.

BILLEDULGERID.

Billedulgerid, Its Bounds and Parts.

BILLEDULGERID is very improperly called *Numidia* by the Modern Authors: *Numidia* having been upon the *Mediterranean Sea*, which *Billedulgerid* touches not at all. Its confines are on the North of *Barbary*, from whence it is ſeparated by Mount *Atlas*, on the South *Zaara*, on the Weſt the great *Ocean Sea*, and on the Eaſt *Egypt*. Its principal Parts, Kingdoms or Provinces, are, *Sus* or *Teſſet*, *Darha*, *Segelomeſſe*, *Tegorarin*, *Zeb*, *Billedulgerid*, and the Deſart of *Barca*, which ſtretch themſelves from the *Ocean* unto *Egypt*. And this length is of 1000 or 1200 Leagues, its breadth being for the moſt part not above 100, or little more, from which they have what is needful for them. The Air is healthful, they live long, are deformed, are held baſe People, ignorant of all things, are addicted to Theft, murther, are very deceitful, they feed groſly, and are great Hunters. They acknowledge *Mahomet* for their Prophet, whoſe Principles of Religion they obſerve, though they differ in many Ceremonies; their Garments are but mean, and ſo ſhort, that not above half their body is covered with them; the better ſort are diſtinguiſhed by a Jacket of *blew Cotton*, which is made with wide Sleeves. They make uſe of *Camels*, as we do of *Horſes*. Among them are many *Arabs*, which live by *Advares*, that is, *Communalties*, each of 100, 150, or 200 *Tents*, which they tranſport whither they pleaſe, that is, where they find beſt feeding for their Cattle; and when they ſtop, they diſpoſe their *Tents* in a circle, making therein divers Streets and common places; and leaving ſome inlets and outlets, which are ſhut up and guarded like a City. Theſe *Arabs* eſteem themſelves the moſt noble of all, calling thoſe which till the Earth and prune Vineyards, Servants; and thoſe which abide in Cities, Courtiers, and Effeminate: And theſe *Arabs* are eſteemed more civil and ingenious than the *Numidians* are.

Its People.

The Kingdom of *Sus*, and its parts.

SUS, which *Sanutus* paſſes under the name of *TESSET*, and which is called the fartheſt *Sus*, to diſtinguiſh it from that of the Kingdom of *Morocco*, is the moſt Weſtern part of *Billedulgerid*: It may be divided into ſeven Quarters, of which *Idauſquerit*, *Extuca*, and *Nun*, are on the Sea; *Teſſet*, *Guadenum*, *Ifrena* or *Ufaran*, and *Archa* within the Land. Each of theſe parts have many Cities, Caſtles, and Villages; and the moſt part of its People are *Bereberes*, *Africans*, or *Arabs*. 1. *Idauſquerit* is the beſt Quarter, and the moſt fruitful, yields Fruits ſweet and ſowr, as *Oranges*, *Citrons*, &c. Alſo *Wheat*, *Barley*, &c. Feeds much Cattle, among others multitudes of *Horſes*; can raiſe 5000 Horſe, and 30000 Foot: They are held the beſt Souldiers in all *Billedulgerid*, and almoſt of all *Africa*. 2. *Extuca* is proper only for Paſtures, abounds in *Goats*. 3. *Nun* hath but little *Barley*, and few *Dates*. 4. *Teſſet* is a Town of about 400 Houſes, hath ſome Trade with the *Negroes*. The Inhabitants of *Guadenum* live of *Goats* Milk, by Hunting, and of *Dates*; and the Country hath *Oſtriches*. Thoſe of *Ifrena* trade with the *Portugals* at *Guarguеſſen*, and thoſe of *Archa* hath only *Dates*. And in theſe ſeven Quarters there are ſeveral other Towns and Cities, as *Buzedora*, *Utemila*, *Albene*, *Auſutima*, *Baleza*, and *Suana*, all Maritim places, oppoſite, and not far from the *Canary* Iſles.

Its chief places, and its fertility.

DARHA,

DARHA is on the East of *Tesset* and *Morocco:* It is divided commonly into three parts, of which the chief retains the name of *Dara*; the other are, *Taffilet* and *Ttata*, which pass likewise under the name of *Taffilet*. All these parts have been divers times under the Dominion of the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco*. *Darha* is about a River of the same name; and where the River doth overflow it, it is indifferent fruitful. Among its chief Cities are, 1. *Benisabih*. 2. *Quitera*, *Tagumadert*, from whence came the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco*. 3. *Taragalel*, of 4000 Houses, and a *Jewry* of 400. 4. *Tinzulin*, the most spacious of all. 5. *Timesguit*, of 2000 Families: And, 6. *Tesuf*, once the Royal City of all these Quarters, now in Ruins. The Kingdom of *Darha*, and its chief places.

TAFFILET hath born the Title of a Kingdom, as well as *Dara*; and its chief City of the same name hath more than 2000 Families of *Bereberes*. To this place (as *Heylin* observeth) did *Mahomet* the Second, Son of *Mahomet Ben Amet*, and second King of *Morocco*, of this Family, confine his eldest Brother *Amet*, having took him Prisoner in *Anno Dom.* 1544. *Ttata* is for the most part esteemed under *Taffilet*, though near upon as great. The Land belonging to the one and the other, are harsh and Mountainous, and scituated between *Dara* and *Segelomessa*: *Taffilet* toward *Morocco*, from whence it is separated from Mount *Atlas*: *Ttata* towards the *Saara* or *Desart*, where is that of *Zuenziga*. The Kingdom of *Taffilet*, with its chief places.

SEGELOMESSA is one of the greatest and best Provinces or Kingdoms of all *Billedulgerid*. Its chief City bears the same name, is made famous by the *Arab* of *Nubia*: It hath been ruined and rebuilded within 100 and odd years; it is seated in a Plain, and on the River *Ziz*: Where, and on those of *Ghir*, *Tagda*, and *Farcala*, are likewise some other Cities; more than 300 walled Boroughs, and a great number of Villages. The Rivers overflow, and make fertil the Country, as doth the *Nile* in *Egypt*. The Inhabitants may raise about 120000 Men to bear Arms: they have sometimes been subject to their Lords, sometimes to the Kings of *Fez* and *Morocco*; now are partly divided into Lines and Communalties, and partly subject to the *Arabs*. The Kingdom of *Segelomessa* described.

Under the name of *Segelomessa* we will pass with *Sanutus* 12 or 15 little Estates, which have but few Cities or walled Towns, and some Villages; Poor, and almost all subject to the *Arabs*. *QUENEG* hath 3 Cities, of which *Zebbellinum* the chief, is on a very high Rock, and holds the passage of *Segelomessa* to *Fez* by Mount *Atlas*. *Gastrirum*, another City, is on the side of a Mountain. *Tamaracostum* is on a Plain. Besides these Cities there are about 12 Towns, and twice as many Villages. They have sometimes aided the *Xeriffs* of *Fez* and *Morocco* with 8000 Men. *Helel* is the principal of its quarter, and the residence of the Lord of *Malgara*. *Mamma* the chief of *Rheteb*, is peopled with *Moors* and *Jews*, all Merchants and Artizans. These places are on the *Ziz*, descending from the *Atlas* towards *Segelomessa*. *Subail*, *Humeledegi*, and *Ummelhefen* make each their Estate apart. The last is on the way from *Segelomessa* to *Dara*. The Land is quite Desart, covered with Sand and black Stones. *TEBELBETTA* hath 3 Cities, 12 Villages: *FARCALA*, 3 Cities, 5 Villages: *TEZERIN*, 5 Cities, 15 Villages: *BENIGOMIA*, 8 Cities, 15 Villages; the Cities *Mazalig*, *Abulinanum*, and *Ghasaira*, make each their Estate: *BENIBESSERI*, *GUAHDH*, and *FEGHIGA* have each 3 Cities, and some Villages. Those of *Feghiga* addict themselves to Traffick and Letters; gather quantity of *Dates*, as doth likewise *Guachda*: An excellent Mine of *Iron* employs those of *BENIBESSERI*, in carrying it to *Segelomessa*: A rich Mine of *Lead*, and another of *Antimony*, yields profit to those of *Chassair*, who carry them to *Fez*: the others bear only *Dates*, and their Inhabitants are oppressed by the *Arabs*, who rule over them. *Togda*, besides its Labourers of the Land, hath some Tanners of *Leather*, and the Soil yields Grain and Fruits. Several small Estates in and about *Segelomessa*.

I have made *Tegorarin* and *Zeb* the 4*th* and 5*th* Parts of *Billedulgerid*, taken in general. Under the name of *Tegorarin* I shall comprehend *Tesebit* and *Benigorait*; under that of *Zeb* I comprehend *Mezzab*, *Techort* or *Techortina*, and *Guergela*.

TEGO-

Quarter of *Tegorarin* described.

TEGORARIN hath more than 50 Cities or walled Towns, and 100 or 150 Villages; the chief of which are, *Tegorarin*, *Tuat*, and *Tegdeat*. The Country is abundant in *Dates*, yields *Corn* when watered; feeds no Cattle, except it be a few *Goats* for their Milk. Its People addict themselves to Trade, fetch *Gold* from the *Negroes*, which they carry into *Barbary*, and bring from thence several Commodities to carry to the *Negroes*: Receiving Strangers with delight, and letting nothing be lost that they can leave with them to enrich their Country. *Tesebit* or *Tesevin* hath 4 Cities, 28 Villages; the most part of the Men are black, the Women only brown and comly. All poor, as likewise in the Desart of *Benigorait*.

Province of *Zeb*, and its chief places.

The Province of *ZEB* is more to the East than *Tegorarin*, it touches the Kingdom and Province of *Algier* and *Bugia*, near *Mesila*, on the North, is divided from the Regions of *Mezzab*, *Techort*, and *Guergela*, towards the South, by divers Mountains. Its principal Cities are five, *Pescara*, *Borgium*, *Dusena*, *Nesta*, *Teolacha*, and *Macaxa*. One part of these Cities were ruined when the *Arabs* entred into *Africa*, a part by *Barbarossa*; the most part afterwards restored. At present the *Turks*, the Kings of *Couco* and *Labes*, and the *Arabs*, receive some Tribute from them. The Inhabitants of *Pescara* live in the Fields in the Summer, being constrained to abandon the City by reason of the multitude of *Scorpions*, whose biting is mortal; as is that of the Black *Scorpions*, which are towards *Calaa* in the Kingdom of *Labes*: yet here the Inhabitants taking but two drams of a little Plant, it cures them though bitten, and preserves them a whole year (saith the *Arab* of *Nubia*) from biting. *Borghia* is well peopled, hath many Artizans and Labourers. The Water which passes at *Deusen* is hot, as likewise that which passes at *Nefta*. The Inhabitants of *Teolacha* are proud and haughty.

Quarter of *Mezzab*, its chief places, &c. described.

The Quarter of *MEZZAB* is to the South of that of *Zeb*, and is a great passage from divers parts of *Barbary* to go towards the Land of the *Negroes*; which makes those of the Country trade on the one, and the other side. They have six walled Towns, and a great number of Villages; are Tributary to some *Arabs*.

The Estates of *Techort* and *Guerguela*.

The Estates of *Techort* and *Guerguela* have each their Prince or King; they have sometimes been free, sometime Subjects or Tributaries to *Morocco*, *Telensin*, *Tunis*, and in fine to the Kings of *Algier*, to whom they give a certain number of *Negroes* in form of Tribute. Each Estate takes its name from its chief City; besides which they have each of them many walled Towns, and about 100 or 150 Villages, and about 150000 Duckats of Revenue: They can raise 40 or 50000 Men, but they are but bad Souldiers. *Techort*, though on the top of a Mountain, and having 2500 Houses, was yet taken by the *Turks* of *Algier* with a very few people and 3 Pieces of Cannon. They have abundance of *Dates*, from whence flows their Riches; they want *Corn* and *Fish*, they treat *Christians* favourably, and are more civil than their Neighbours.

Quarter of *Billedulgerid*, with its parts and chief places.

BILLEDULGERID, or *BELED-ELGERED*, that is, the *Country of Dates*, is a particular Province of *Billedulgerid* taken in general. This Province is above the Coast of *Tripoli*, and we add the Quarters of *Teorregu*, *Jasliten*, *Gademez*, and *Fezzen*. The particular *Billedulgerid* is so rich in *Dates*, that it takes thence its name, and hath communicated it to the neighbouring Countries, and to all that part which is above *Barbary*. Its principal Cities are *Tensar*, *Caphsa*, and *Nessana*, and a great number of Villages. *Teorregu* hath 3 walled Towns and 26 Villages, of which the chief bears the name of *Teorregu*. *Jasliten* 3 or 4 Towns and 30 Villages, and the chief so called. *Gademez* hath 16 walled Towns, and about 60 Villages, the chief of which have *Gademes* and *Statio*. *Fezzen* more than 50 Cities or walled Towns, and above 100 Villages. The two last Estates are free, the other subject to the *Turks*, or to the Kings of *Tunis* and *Tripoli*. *Caphsa*, of old, *Capha*, which is believed to be built by the *Libyan Hercules*, is put by some among the Governments of *Tunis*.

EGYPT may be divided into three Parts, and then

- The first shall contain the Twelve Cassilifs or Governments within EGYPT; as
  - In the Higher EGYPT, the Cassilifs of
    - GIRGIO, — Asna, Barbanda, Girgio, Said, Chiana.
    - MANFELOUT, — Manfoura, Azioutha.
    - ÆBENSUEF, — Fium, Munia, Benisuaifa.
    - MINIO, — Affuana, Chana, Minio, Ichmina.
    - CHERKEFFI, — Almoona, Paulicella, Anthium.
    - FIUM, — Fium, Colosa.
    - GIZA, — Geza.
    - CAIRO, — Cairo, Sues, Elmenat, Larnabula, Antonii, Emelcocena.
  - In the Lower EGYPT, the Cassilifs of
    - MANSOURA, — Heroa, Manfoura, Belbefa, Sahidum, Berelles, Mefela, Elboera, Tenexa, Faramida, Caffia.
    - GARBIA, — Damiata, Perra, Bourles, Beltina, Migna, Elmala, Demanboura.
    - MENUFIA, — Menufia.
    - BASBEIH, or CALIOUBIEH, with the Territory of ERRIF, or ALEXANDRIA, — Tareta, Zuga, Fuoa, Sebenneta, Alexandria, Turris, Bochira, Arabum, Rofetto, Aracona, Tania, Turamania, Alhaman, Democuria.
- The Second Part shall contain the Cities seated on the RED SEA; among which are those of — Buge, Zibid, San, Coffir, Fiffe, Dacari, Suguam, Libelezaita, Azirut, Groddi.
- The Third shall be the Cassilif or Government of
  - BONHERA, or BAERA, without the True EGYPT, and in LIBYA, but under its Jurisdiction; whose chief places may be considered as as they lie
    - On the Sea, among which are those of — Ripealba, Roxa, Lagoftium, Albertonus portus, Solona, Mufulomara, Trabochus portus, Patriarcha portus, Salinæ, Favara, Forcella, Bon Andreas, Doera, Laaneum, Zadra, Tolometa, Taochara, Berzebona, Berdichum, Careora, Camera, Avium portus, Salinæ.
    - Within Land; as — Cayroan, Barca, Soluc, Alcahune, Nachel, Maghar Alacquin.

EGYPT,

EGYPT.

OF all the parts of *Africa*, *EGYPT* is the neareſt, and only contiguous to *Aſia*, and this Neighbourhood hath perſwaded ſome Authors, both Ancient and Modern, to eſteem *Egypt* either in whole, or in part, in *Aſia*. At preſent we hold it all in *Africa*, and give for its bounds the *Red Sea*, and the *Iſthmus* which is between the *Red Sea* and the *Mediterranean*, on the Eaſt; the Deſarts of *Barca* on the Weſt, *Nubia* on the South, and the *Mediterranean Sea* on the North. The *Nile* alone waſhes this Region through its whole length, which is from its *Cataracts* to the Sea, about 20 Leagues or more; its breadth not being above half ſo much, and of that breadth, that which is between the Mountains, which incloſes the Valley of *Nile* on the Eaſt, and the Coaſt of the *Red Sea*, is but Deſart; there being nothing inhabited but the Valley, which lies on both ſides the *Nile*, incloſed with Mountains, and very narrow in the higher part of *Egypt*, but enlarging it ſelf much more as it approaches the Sea. Of this Figure which the Country makes, the Ancients have taken occaſion firſt to divide it into high and low; after into high, middle, and low: Higher, which they called *Thebais*, by reaſon of *Thebes*, at preſent *Saida:* Middle, which they called *Heptanomos*, by reaſon of the 7 *Nomi*, *Provoſtſhips* or Governments it contained, at preſent *Bechria*, or *Demeſor:* Lower, and more particularly *Egypt*, and ſometimes *Delta*, the beſt part of the lower having the form of a Greek Δ, the two ſides of which were incloſed by the branches of the *Nile*, and the third by the Sea, and this part is now called *Errif*. The *Romans* changed ſomething in the number, and in the names of theſe Provinces, which we ſhall now omit.

Egypt bounded.

Its Diviſion and Names.

At preſent *Egypt* is divided into 12 principal *Caſſilifs*, *Sangiacats* or Governments, of which five anſwer to the Higher *Egypt*, *viz. Girgio*, *Manfelout*, and *Æbenſuef*, on the left hand of the *Nile*; *Minio* and *Cherkeſſi* on the right, ſtill deſcending the *Nile*; two, with the Territory of *Cairo*, anſwer to the Middle *Egypt*, *viz.* the *Caſſilifs* of *Fium* and *Giza* on the left, and *Cairo* with its Territory on the right hand of the *Nile:* then four others anſwer to the Lower, *viz. Manſoura*, *Garbia*, *Menoufia*, *Callioubech*, or *Basbieh*, with *Alexandria* and its Territory: for the *Caſſilif* of *Bonhera*, or *Baera*, is out of the limits of the ancient and true *Egypt*, and in *Libya*, which paſſes commonly under the name of the Kingdom of *Barca*.

Egypt of great Antiquity.

EGYPT is very famous in that they would make us believe, that the firſt Men were here formed; and as there are yet formed a great number of Creatures, which appears when the Inundation of the *Nile* diminiſhed; ſaying, that the Gods, after them the Heroes, and in fine, Men have reigned for almoſt an incredible number of years. Of theſe Gods there are three degrees, of which *Pan* was the moſt ancient of the eight firſt, *Hercules* of the 12 ſecond, and *Denis* of the third. They divide the times of their men Kings by *Dynaſties*, that is, Dominations of divers Families; and give ſo great a number to their Kings, and ſo great a time to their Reigns, that they muſt have beginning long before the Creation of the World; and likewiſe by their account, their Gods and Hero's had reigned before Men the ſpace of 20 or 25000 years: They attribute the foundation of moſt of their Cities to their *Gods*, *Hero's*, and *Kings*; and theſe they make, and build many *Labyrinths*, *Pyramids*, *Obeliſques*, *Coloſſes*, &c. not knowing how to expend their Treaſures, or employ their People.

In

In the History of the Kings of *Egypt*, one *Seſoſtris* or *Seoſtris*, ſubdued all *Europe* and *Aſia*, if we will believe them. *Joſeph* an *Hebrew* ſervant, and after maſter of the Houſe of *Potipher*, from the priſon, roſe to ſuch favour with the King, that he alone had almoſt the whole Government of the Kingdom, eſtabliſhed his brothers in *Egypt*; and their deſcendants multiplied ſo that in the end, the Kings of *Egypt* became jealous and fearful, leſt they ſhould make themſelves maſters of the Kingdom, another *Seſoſtris* ſubdued *Syria*, *Aſſyria*, *Media*, the Iſles of *Cyprus*, &c. and was eſteemed as much, or more then any of his predeceſſors. *Mephres* or *Memnon* it was that dedicated his Statue to the Sun, which it ſaluted at its riſing, and ſhewed ſome ſigne of Joy, ſo artificial was it made. *Buſiris* treated the *Hebrews* ſo ill, that he left him the name of an infamous Tyrant. *Cenchres* was the *Pharaoh* who was drown'd in the *Red Sea*. *Proteus* gave occaſion to ſay that he turned himſelf into a *Lion*, ſometimes into a *Bull* or *Dragon*, &c. by reaſon of his different arming his head, or poſſibly for his different actions. *Rempſis* had no other care but to keep up riches,. *Chemnis* cauſed to be built the firſt and greateſt *Pyramid*, imploying therein three hundred ſixty thouſand men, for the ſpace of twenty years, of which more anon. *Seſac* or *Seſouchis*, armed four hundred thouſand Foot, ſixty thouſand Horſe, and One thouſand two hundred Chariots againſt *Rehoboam*; took and pillaged *Jeruſalem* and its *Temple*. *Boccho-ris* though weak of body, was ſo prudent, that he gave Laws to the *Egyptians*. This was he that leagued himſelf with *Hoſea* againſt *Salmanazar* King of the *Babylonians*. *Sevecho* or *Sebeko* reigning in *Egypt*, *Sennacherib* King of the *Aſſyrians* being come to aſſault him, an infinite number of *Wild Rats*, knawed in one night the *Arrows* in the *Quivers*, and the *Strings* or *Cords* of the *Bows*, and the *Thongs* of the *Aſſyrians Armes*, which cauſed on the morrow both their flight, and overthrow. *Necao* or *Necaus* began the Channel between the *Nile*, and the *Red Sea*, paſſed by the *Meridional* or *Æthiopian Ocean*, by the *Occidental* or *Atlantick Ocean*, reentred by the ſtreight of *Gibraltar*, and returned into *Egypt*, at the end of three years; he vanquiſhed *Joſias* King of *Judea*, and was alſo vanquiſhed by *Nebuchodonozar*. *Apryes* happy in his beginnings, was in the end defeated by thoſe of *Cyrene* in *Libya*; and ſaw all *Egypt* revolt, who choſe for their King *Amaſis*, under whoſe reign there were counted twenty thouſand Cities in *Egypt*, as *Pliny* ſaith. Under this *Amaſis*, the Eſtate fell into the hands of the *Perſians*, after to the *Macedonians* (*Greeks*,) and then to the *Romans*, &c. Among the Kings of *Perſia* who ruled in *Egypt*, *Cambyſes* was the firſt and beſt known; among the *Macedonians* and *Greeks*, *Alexander* the great; after whom the Kings of *Egypt* took the names of *Ptolomies*, from the name of him who firſt bore the title of King after *Alexander*, but after the *Romans* had to do with the affairs of *Egypt*, there was nothing more remarkable of their Hiſtory but *Cleopatra*; after whom *Auguſtus* reduced this Kingdom to a *Roman* Province: and it remained under the *Romans*, and under the *Emperours* of the Eaſt, near ſeven hundred years, till about the year of Grace ſix hundred and forty, that the *Arabs* ſeiſed it under their *Califs*, who reſided firſt at *Medina*, then at *Bagdad*, *Damaſcus*, and ſometime at *Cairo*. The *Soldans* aboliſhed this *Califate* in *Egypt*, and among them the *Chriſtians* have but too well known one *Saladine*, who drove them out of a great part of the *Holy Land*. Among theſe laſt *Soldans*, *Campſon*, *Gaurus* and *Tomombey* were eſteemed valiant, yet were ſo ill ſerved, that the *Turks* under their Emperour *Selimus*, became Maſters of *Egypt* in 1518, and do yet poſſeſs it.

The Tribute they pay to the *Baſſa*.

At preſent the *Port* ſends a *Baſſa* to command in *Egypt*, and the 12 *Caſſilifs* or *Governours* of the Country depend on this *Baſſa*, and are as it were only his Farmers: They give him every year a certain number of *Purſes*, (every *Purſe* of 750. or 760 *Lion dollars*) ſome 25, 30, 40, ſome only 10 or 12, according to the goodneſs of the Country, or the greatneſs of their *Caſſilifs* or *Governments*, ſome having only 40 or 50 Towns, other 100, 200, 300 and more: beſides theſe *Purſes* for the *Baſſa*, they give to the *Tihaja* or *Haja* (who is as it were his *Chancellor*) and other Officers, about the ſixth, or at leaſt the fifth part of what

they give to the *Bassa*. And for the Prince, or *Grand Signior*, some pay 6 tithes more, others ten times more then they give to the *Bassa*; and besides these *Purses* they furnish a certain number of *Ardeps*, or measures of *Grain*, *Pulse*, &c. The constant Profit or Revenue that the *Grand Signior* draws from this Kingdom is 1800000 *Zeccheens* yearly, each *Zeccheene* is valued at 9*s*. sterling, which is 8 millions and 10000 *l*. sterling, and this Revenue is divided into 3 equal parts, of which one is allotted for the furnishing and accommodating the Annual Pilgrimage to *Mecha*; the second goes for the payment of the Souldiers and Officers, with other necessary charges for the management of the Kingdom; and the third and last goes clear into his *Chequer*.

The *Grand Signiours* revenue from *Egypt*.

The *Cassilif* of *Girgio*, or of *Sait* is one of the best and richest; it passed not above 100 years since for a Kingdom, and received its *Bassa* from the *Port*. It hath likewise its *Dievan*, disposes its *Cassilifs*, or under-Governments, which lie in its extent, the Soyl is fruitful, bears much *Corn*, and feeds many *Cattle*. The *Cassiliffs* of *Manfelout*, and *Benesuef*, are not so great but better peopled, and worth little less then that of *Girgio*. On the other side of the *Nile* are those of *Minio* and *Cherkessi*. which have as large an extent as the other 3 together; but are incomparably less as to the goodness, scarce yielding the tenth part of what the others do; so great difference is there in being at the foot, and on the East of a Mountain. These 5 *Cassilifs* answer to the higher *Egypt*, or the *Thebais* of the Ancients; in which are a great many Cities, Walled Towns and Villages, as are generally found throughout all *Egypt*, as anon I shall have occasion to treat of. Those *Cassilifs* of *Fium* and *Giza* with the Territory of *Cairo* to the middle. The *Cassilifs* of *Fium* and *Giza* have very good Earth, and which is easily watred by the *Nile*; it yields store of *Grain*, *Fruits*, as *Raisins*, &c. *Flax*, *Milk*, feeds many *Cattle*, &c. but the *Cassilif*, or *Governour* of the last hath not a free sword, that is, hath not power of life and death as he pleases, as the others have, being out of the course of the *Arabs*, and too near *Cairo*, of which a word or two.

The several Cassilifs in *Egypt*.

City of *Cairo* described.

This City of *CAIRO* hath for a long time been all the Ornament of *Egypt*: It was the Residence of the *Sultans*, is now of the *Bassa*, some make it very great, others much less; the first compose it of 4 parts, to witt, Old *Gairo*, New *Cairo*, *Boulac* and *Charafat*; there being some void places between each; they say that these 4 parts together with their Suburbs may be about 10 or 12 Leagues long, and 7 or 8 broad; nor give they it less then 25 or 30 Leagues Circuit. They count 16 or 18000 Streets, 6000 *Mosques*, and if the particular *Oratories* be comprised above 20000, as also they account about 200000 Houses, among which are divers *Bazars* or *Markets*, *Canes* or *Magazines* of certain *Merchandizes*, many *Hospitals*, and magnificent structures. The *Castle* is great, strong, and well fortified, scituate on the top of a Rock, which overlooks the City, and discovers the Plain on all sides, even to the loss of sight. The buildings, paintings, and other Ornaments which yet remain, do testify the magnificence of the *Soldans*. This Castle (as *Heylin* noteth) for largeness, may rather be held for a City, then a Castle, enclosed with high and strong Walls, and divided into many Courts, in which were stately buildings, but now hath lost much of its glory; being in part destroyed by *Selimus*; that which now remains, serveth for the Court or habitation of the *Bassa*. In and about this City, are abundance of delicate *Orchards*, which are places of great delight in which are excellent *Fruits*, *Walks*, &c. and nigh to this City, there is a pleasant Lake which is much frequented by the *Inhabitants*, who for their recreation pass some time daily on this Lake in boates, for their further mutual society, and seeing their friends and acquaintance.

Cæsar Lambert his description of *Cairo*.

Cæsar Lambert of *Marsillia* in his relations of the year 1627, 28, 29, and 32, saith, that *Cairo* (separated from the other Cities and Towns) is not so great as *Paris*, (and if an eye witness of both may be believed he speaks truth) and takes for witnesses some eminent *French Gentlemen* then at *Cairo*; who confesses that joyning it to the Cities and Boroughs adjacent, it may with reason be called *Grand Cairo*; but however he maintains this

this to be but almoſt the ſhadow of *Cairo*, as it was 100 and odd years ſince, ſo much is the trade diminiſhed, and that according to the report of the people of the Country. He ſaith likewiſe that the *Caſtle* hath been much greater, and more magnificent then it is at preſent, and obſerves ſeveral foot-ſteps of proud buildings, now of no uſe; and after all, ſaith, that this is not ſtrong.

Sandys in his book of *Travels* among other remarkable things, makes this deſcription of it, ſaying, that this great City called *Grand Cairo*, is inhabited by *Moors*, *Turks*, *Negroes*, *Jews*, *Coptites*, *Greeks* and *Armenians*, who are obſerved to be the pooreſt, and yet the moſt laborious, the civilleſt and honeſteſt of all others; they are not ſubject to the *Turk*, neither do they pay him any Tribute of Children, as other *Chriſtians* do; and if they happen to be taken in Wars, they are freed from bondage; and this priviledge they gained, by a certain *Armenian* that foretold the greatneſs and glory of *Mahomet*. Here he ſaith they hatch Eggs by artificial heat, and that in exceeding great numbers, which they do in this manner. In a narrow entry, on each ſide are 2 rows of Ovens, one over the other. On the floors of the lower they lay *Flax*, over thoſe *Mats*, and upon them *Eggs*. The floors of the upper Oven, are as roofs to the under, being grated over like kilns, onely having tunnels in the middle, which have covers over them. Theſe gratings are covered with mats, and on them they lay dry and pulverated dung of *Camels*, &c. three or four inches thick, at the farther and higher ſides of theſe upper Ovens are trenches of *Lome*, which are about a handful deep, and two handfuls broad, and in theſe they burn the aforeſaid dung, which yieldeth a gentle heat, without any fire, under the mouths of the upper Ovens are conveyances for the ſmoak, having round roofs, with vents at the top to open and ſhut; and thus ly the *Eggs* in the lower Ovens for the ſpace of eight daies, turning them daily, and looking that the heat be gentle and moderate, then they put out the fire, and put the one half into the upper Ovens, then they ſhut all cloſe, and let them alone ten daies longer, at which time they become hatched.

Sandys his deſcription of *Cairo*.

The hatching of Chickens.

I ſhall conclude my deſcription of this City, with ſome obſervations which Sir *Henry Blunt* hath obſerved during his abode there, firſt, he ſaith that there are *Moſques* and *Oratories* to the number of thirty five thouſand, ſome of which are very ſtately and magnificent; next he ſaith there is twenty four thouſand noted Streets, beſides by-Streets and Lanes, and ſome of theſe Streets are about two miles in length, and to all theſe Streets, at each end, there is a Door which every night is lockt up and kept guarded, by which means tumults, robberies, fire or the like is prevented; and without the City to hinder the Incurſions of the *Arabs* from abroad, there doth alſo watch every night four *Saniacks*, with each of them one thouſand horſemen, the number of men that do every night guard this City is twenty eight thouſand. This City is built, he ſaith, after the *Egyptian* manner, high, and of large rough ſtones, with part of Brick, the Streets are but narrow, but as the Houſes decay, they are rebuilt after the *Turkiſh* manner, mean, low, and made of Mud and Timber; yet their *Palaces* are ſtately, with ſpacious Courts, wherein are fair Trees to keep them from the heat of the Sun; alſo other Courts belonging to their *Palaces* adjoyning to curious Gardens, wherein are variety of excellent fruits, and watred with Fountains, nor want they any ſtate in their Edifices, which are vaſt, lofty, and very magnificent. This City notwithſtanding its greatneſs, he ſaith, is ſo exceeding populous, that the people paſs to and fro, as it were, in throngs; near to this City are *Joſephs* 7 *Granaries*, now brought to ruines, yet 4 of them are ſo repaired, as they are made uſe of to keep the publick Corn. On the South end of this City, he ſaith, there yet remaineth a round Tower, wherein *Pharaohs* daughter lived when ſhe found *Moſes* in the River which runs hard by it.

Sir *Henry Blunt* his deſcription of this City *Cairo*.

South Weſt of *Grand Cairo*, on the other ſide of the *Nile*, about four Leagues diſtance, ſtands the three oldeſt and greateſt *Pyramides*; the *Jews* affirming them to be built by *Pharaoh*, who was drowned in the *Red Sea*; the faireſt for himſelf, the next for his Wife, and the leaſt for his only Daughter. The greateſt of the three, and chief of the Worlds Seven Wonders,

is made in form *Quadrangular*, leſſening by equal degrees; the Baſis of every Square, is 300 paces in length; and ſo leſſening by degrees, aſcending by 350 ſteps, each being about 3 feet high; the Stones are all of a bigneſs, and hewed four ſquare. And in this, as alſo in the others, there are ſeveral Rooms. There are alſo about 16 or 18 other *Pyramides*, but of leſs note, and not ſo ancient as theſe 3 aforeſaid are, which I ſhall paſs by. Nigh to this City, in the Plain, is the place where they did inter their dead; in which, they uſed ſuch art, that the bodies of their dead remain to this day perfect ſound; and theſe we call *Mummies*. The places where theſe bodies ly, are about ten fathom under ground in Vaults; either in the Sand, or upon an open ſtone: The Earth is full of dry Sand, wherein moiſture never comes; which together with their art of Embalming them, doth thus preſerve the bodies for ſome thouſand years paſt. In the breſt of theſe *Mummies* is ſet a ſmall *Idol*, ſome of one ſhape, ſome of another, with *Hieroglyphicks* on the back ſide of them. This City of *Grand Cairo* was formerly of a very great Trade, but that which hath now ruined it, as likewiſe that of *Alexandria*, is the diſcovery of the *Eaſt Indies* by the *Cape of Good Hope*; by which, the *Engliſh*, *Portugals* and *Hollanders*, at preſent go to theſe *Indies*, and bring into the Weſt all thoſe *Drugs*, *Spices*, *Precious Stones*, *Pearls*, and a thouſand other *Commodities* which came before by *Aleppo*, or by *Egypt*; but paſſing by *Cairo*, let us come to the other *Caſſilifs*.

The *Caſſilifs* in the lower *Egypt*.

In the lower *Egypt*, are thoſe of *Garbia*, *Menufia*, and *Callioubech*, within the *Delta*, and between the Branches of the *Nile*. That of *Manſaura*, without, and Eaſtward towards the *Holy Land*, and *Arabia*: Likewiſe without, and Weſtward of the *Nile*, is the *Caſſilif* of *Bonhera* or *Baera*, which ſtretches it ſelf from the *Nile* unto the *Cape of Bonandrea*. This laſt *Caſſilif* is almoſt quite out of *Egypt*, though within its Government, and the length of its *Sea Coaſt*, not leſs then that of all *Egypt* along the *Nile*: But that which is diſtant from the *Nile*, is ſubject to the *Arabs*, and very Deſart; that which is near it is better worth. Its Governor is obliged to Mannel a *Callech* or *Channel* of 100000 paces in length, to carry water from the *Nile* to *Alexandria*; and when a new *Baſſa* arrives in *Egypt*, this Governor hath likewiſe to furniſh him with *Horſes* and *Camels* for himſelf, his Train and Baggage, and to defray his charges from *Alexandria* unto *Cairo*. But ſince the Wars with the *Venetians*, the *Baſſa's* have generally come round by Land, and not adventured by Sea to *Alexandria*. Among the Deſarts of this *Caſſilif*, thoſe of St. *Macaire* have had 360 and odd *Monaſteries*: And here is likewiſe to be ſeen, a *Lake* of *Mineral Water*, which converts into *Nitre*, the *Wood*, *Bones*, or *Stones*, that are thrown into it.

The *Caſſilifs* of *Callioubech*, *Menouſia* and *Garbia*, being between the Branches of the *Nile*, and out of the courſe of the *Arabs*, ought to be eſteemed the beſt in *Egypt*; and particularly, the laſt which yields more abundantly *Sugar*, *Rice*, *Milk*, *Grains*, *Oyl*, *Flax*, *Herbs*, *Honey*, *Fruits*, &c. And *Maala*, one of its principal Cities, which they call the *Little Medina*, is a place of great devotion with them, where they hold yearly a famous Fair, which the Governor opens with great pomp, obſerving many Ceremonies. The *Caſſilif* of *Manſoura* doth produce the ſame *Commodities*, but not in ſo great a quantity, though of a greater extent then *Garbia*; but more over it yields *Caſſia*. Theſe four or five *Caſſilifs* take up the whole Coaſt of *Egypt*, and of its Government, and on this Coaſt are the Cities of *Alexandria*, *Roſetto*, *Damiata*, and ſome others.

The City of *Alexandria*.

Alexandria, among the *Turks*, *Scanderia*, was built by the command of *Alexander* the Great, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after the conqueſt of *Egypt*; and the Moddel traced by the *Architect Dinocrates*, who for want of other matter, made uſe of *Wheat-flower* to mark out the circuit; which was taken for a good *Augury*. It was afterwards beautified by many, but eſpecially by *Pompey*. It is ſcituated Weſtward of the *Delta*, over againſt the Iſle of *Pharos*, and built upon a Promontory, thruſting it ſelf into the *Sea*; with which, on the one ſide, and on the other, the *Lake Mareotis*. It is a place of good defence; its circuit is about 12000 paces, adorned with many

many ſtately *Edifices*, among which, the moſt famous was the *Serapium*, or the *Temple* of their god *Serapis*. Which for curious workmanſhip and the ſtatelineſs of the Building, was inferior to none but the *Roman Capitol*, then the *Library* erected by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*; in which there were 200000 Volums, which *Demetrius* promiſed to augment with 300000 more. And this in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar* was unfortunately burnt. And this is that *Philadelphus* who cauſed the *Bible* to be tranſlated into *Greek* by the 72, *Interpreters*, which were ſent him by the *High Prieſt Eleazar*. In this City, in *Anno* 180, *Gantenus* read *Divinity* and *Philoſophy*, who, as it is thought, was the firſt inſtitutor of *Univerſities*. This City hath been enriched with 400 high and ſtrong *Forts* and *Towers*; and the *Ptolomies* or *Kings* of *Egypt*, having made here their reſidence after the death of *Alexander* the Great, and cauſed many ſtately and magnificent *Palaces* to be built: Under the *Houſes* are *Ciſterns* ſuſtained with *Pillars* of *Marble*; as alſo Pavements for their refreſhment, being their Summer habitation; their ancient cuſtom, by reaſon of the heat, being to build their Houſes as much under ground as above, the upper part ſerving for their Winter habitation. It was their cuſtom alſo to erect great *Pillars* of *Marble* or *Porphyry*; among others, that of *Pompey*, which ſtands upon a four ſquare Rocky Foundation without the Walls, on the South ſide of the City: It is round, and of one intire piece of *Marble*, and of an incredible bigneſs, being above One hundred foot high, not far from the place where he was ſlain in a Boat at Sea, and where his aſhes were laid. In this City are alſo two ſquare *Obelisks*, full of *Egyptian Hieroglyphicks* of a vaſt bigneſs, and each of one entire piece of Stone; ſaid to be thrice as big as that at *Rome*, or that at *Conſtantinople*. Near theſe *Obelisks*, as Sir *Henry Blunt* relateth, are the ruines of *Cleopatra's Palace*, high upon the ſhore, with the private Gate, whereat ſhe received *Mark Antony* after their overthrow at *Actium*. And he ſaith, That about a bow ſhoot further, upon another Rock on the ſhore, is yet a round *Tower*, which was part of *Alexanders Palace*. This City, after the *Romans* were Maſters of *Egypt*, was maintained ſo rich, ſo well peopled, and ſo powerful, that it was eſteemed the ſecond of their Empire: And when the *Arabs* ſeiſed it, there was counted 12000 Sellers of *Herbs*, 4000 *Bathing-houſes*, 400 *Play-houſes*, &c.

Thus was the former ſtate of this City, but at preſent almoſt a heap of ruines, eſpecially, the Eaſt and South parts; not the moyety of the City being inhabited. And were it not for ſome conveniencies of Trade, or the like, more then any pleaſure of the place, by reaſon of the evil Air which reigns there, it would be ſoon left wholly deſolate. It is now inhabited by a mixture of Nations, as *Turks*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Moors*, *Copties* and *Chriſtians*. Now remarkable for a *Moſque*, in which St. *Mark*, their firſt *Biſhop*, was ſaid to be buried: Yet their reſts ſtill within, and near the City, many *Obelisks*, *Columns*, Footſteps of proud Buildings, &c.

Raſchit or *Roſetto*, a pritty little City, ſeated on the *Nile*, four miles from the *Mediterranean Sea*; a place of no ſtrength, but of a great Trade, and well furniſhed with ſeveral ſorts of *Commodities*. Its Buildings are ſtately, both within and without, and is only defended by a *Caſtle*, being without Walls, or other Fortifications. This City in ancient times, was noted for a place of all kinds of *Beaſtlineſs* and *Luxury*. The City of *Roſette*.

Damiata is a fair City, and its Land excellent, famous for the often Sieges laid unto it by the *Chriſtian* Armies, in *Anno* 1220. Who for 18 Moneths continuance, did ſtoutly defend themſelves; till in the end, the Enemy hearing no noiſe, ſome of them did adventure to Scale the Walls, who finding no reſiſtance, the Army marched in; who then found in every houſe and corner, heaps of dead bodies, and none to give them burial; and ſearching them, found them to die of *Famine* and of the *Peſtilence*, which grievouſly raged amongſt them: Which lamentable ſpectacle, muſt needs add terror to the beholder. This City was built, as ſome Authors ſay, out of the ruines of *Peluſium*, which was built by *Peleus*, the Father of *Achilles*; who for the murther of his Brother *Phocus*, The City of *Damiata*,

was,

was by the gods commanded to purge himself in the adjoyning *Lake*. This place (as *Heylin* noteth) was the *Episcopal See* of St. *Isidore*, sirnamed *Peluſiotes*, whoſe Pious and Rhetorical *Epiſtles* are yet extant. And at this place *Ptolomy*, the famous *Geographer*, drew his firſt breath. And theſe three Cities, after *Cairo*, are at preſent the faireſt of *Egypt*. There are abundance of other Cities which are yet in ſome repute; as *Suez* and *Coſſir*, ſeated on the *Red Sea*; *Suez* noted for its *Arſenal*; and *Coſſir*, for its reception of the *Merchandizes* of the Eaſt; and *Saiet*, a fair Town not far from *Cairo*, on the *Nile*, by ſome ſaid to be the dwelling place of *Joſeph* and *Mary*, whither they fled with *Chriſt* for fear of *Herod*; where are yet the ruines of a fair and beautiful *Temple*, which as they ſay was built by *Helena*, the Mother of *Conſtantine*, with ſeveral others too tedious to name. But to ſpeak truth, *Egypt* is nothing in regard of what it was under its firſt Kings, with ſeveral other, as I have ſet down in my *Geographical Tables*, as they are found in the ſaid Twelve *Caſſiliffs*; and are all commodiouſly and pleaſantly ſeated on the Banks of the *Nile*, which traverſes the whole Countrey, dividing it ſelf into ſeveral ſtreams, eſpecially in the Higher *Egypt*, where with ſeveral Mouths it falls into (or receives) the *Mideterranean Sea:* Alſo I have noted ſeveral Cities ſeated on the *Red Sea*, to which I refer the Reader.

The Lakes of *Bucheira* and *Moeris*.

In this Countrey are two *Lakes*, the one is called *The Lake of Bucheira*, in the Territory of *Alexandria*, and is about twelve Leagues in length, and ſeven in breadth; the other is called *The Lake of Moeris*, in the *Caſſiliffs* of *Giza* and *Fium*; and is about 27 Leagues in length, and 20, 15, 10, 5, and 3 in breadth.

Thus much for the Deſcription of the Countrey; In the next place, I ſhall treat of the *Inhabitants*, as to their *Laws*, *Religion*, *Cuſtoms*, *Antiquities*, *Hieroglyphicks*, *Stature*, *Habit*, &c. Alſo the *Fertility* and *Rarities* of the Countrey, amongſt which I ſhall end with the Deſcription of the *Nile*.

Their Laws & execution of Juſtice.

Their *Laws*, as to *Juſtice* and *Government*, are perfectly *Turkiſh*; and therefore I ſhall refer the Reader to the Deſcription of the *Turks*, as ye may find it treated of in the Deſcription of *Conſtantinople*, their *Metropolitan* City. Yet for rigor in their puniſhments, they exceed other parts of *Turkey*, and that by reaſon of the treacherous, malicious, and baſe diſpoſitions of them; their executions being different according to the quality of the Crime, for ſome offences they uſe flaying alive; for others impaling; cutting them off with a red hot Iron at the Waiſt; for others oynting with *Honey* in the *Sun*; alſo, ſome they hang by the Foot, and the like cruelties. The ancient People of this Countrey were *Heathens*, worſhipping the *Sun*, *Moon* and *Stars*, ſacrificing to *Apollo*, *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, and the reſt of the gods; alſo attributing divine honors to *Serpents*, *Crocodiles*, as alſo to *Garlick*, *Onions*, and *Leeks*. But the god which thay moſt adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black *Ox*, with a white Star in his Fore-head, two Hairs only in his Tail, and the form of an *Eagle* on his back; but now *Mahometiſm* is much received amongſt them. The *Chriſtian* Faith was here firſt planted by St *Mark*, who was the firſt Biſhop of *Alexandria*. And theſe *Chriſtians* are all of the *Jacobites* Sect, obſerving the ſame Cuſtoms and Forms of Ceremonies in their *Religion*, as thoſe formerly treated of in *Aſia*.

Its antiquities.

Among the many *Rarities* or *Antiquities* of this Countrey, are the *Pyramides*; as alſo the *Obelisks* and *Columns* ſpoken of before; next on the Banks of the River *Nile*, ſtood that famous *Labyrinth* built by *Pſamnicus*; a place of an exceeding great bigneſs, containing 1000 Houſes, beſides 12 *Royal Palaces*, within an intire Wall, Which had but one entrance; but exceeding many turnings and windings, which cauſed the way to be exceeding difficult to find, the building being as much under ground as above. The buildings were of *Marble*, and adorned with ſtately *Columns:* The Rooms were fair and large, eſpecially a *Hall*, which was the place of their general Conventions, which was adorned with the Statues of their gods, and compoſed of poliſhed *Marble*. Not far from the *Pyramides* doth ſtand the *Coloſſus*, being in form of an *Æthiopian Woman*, which heretofore was adorned as a *Rural Deity*.

Tihs

This *Coloſſus* is of a vaſt bigneſs, and is made out of the natural Rock, together with huge flat Stones. Alſo the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, oppoſite to *Alexandria*; a place of a great bigneſs, and of great rarity and magnificence; its *Watch-Tower*, was of an exceeding great height, being aſcended by ſteps, and on the top of this *Tower* there were placed every night abundance of *Lanthorns* with Lights, for the direction of *Sailors*, by reaſon of the dangerouſneſs of the Sea on that Coaſt, being ſo full of Flats.

The *Egyptians* inſtead of *Letters*, made uſe of *Hieroglyphicks*; of which, an example or two ſhall ſuffice; *viz.* For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; for *Eternity*, they painted the *Sun* and *Moon*; for a *Year*, they painted a *Snake* with his *Tail* in his *Mouth*; for any thing that was abominable, they painted a *Fiſh*; with a thouſand more in the like nature too tedious to name. They are ſaid to be the firſt that invented *Arithmetick*, *Geometry*, *Muſick*, *Philoſophy*, *Phyſick*; and by reaſon of the perpetual ſerenity of the Air, found out the courſe of the *Sun*, *Moon* and *Stars*; their *Conſtellations*, *Riſings*, *Settings*, *Aſpects* and *Influences*; dividing by the ſame, Years into Moneths, grounding their divinations upon their hidden properties. Alſo the firſt *Necromancers* and *Sorcerers*. Theſe People are much given to *Luxury*, prone to *Innovations*, *Cowardly*, *Cruel*, *Faithleſs*, *Crafty* and *Covetous*; much addicted to *Fortune telling*, wandring from one Countrey to another, by which cheating tricks they get their livelihood: But theſe people are not the ſame as the ancient *Inhabitants* were, being a Miſceline of other Nations as aforeſaid, theſe People not addicting themſelves to *Arts* or *Letters*, as the former did. They are of a mean ſtature, active, of a tawny complexion, but indifferently well featured; and their *Women* fruitful in Children, ſometime bringing two or three at a time. Their ſeveral Hieroglyphicks.

Their habit is much after the *Turkiſh* dreſs, in which they are not over curious. Their habit.

They have in this Countrey a Race of *Horſes*, which for one property may be eſteemed the beſt in the World; that is, they will run without eating or drinking, one jot, four daies and nights together: And there are ſome *Egyptians*, which with the help of a Sway bound about their body, and carrying with them a little Food to eat, are able to ride them. For ſhape, theſe *Horſes* do not ſurpaſs others; and for this property they are held ſo rare, and eſteemed at three years of age, to be worth 1000 pieces of Eight, and ſometimes more: And for this breed of *Horſes*, there are Officers appointed to look after them, and to ſee the *Foles* of them, and to regiſter them in a book with the colour, *&c.* which they receive from the teſtimony of credible perſons, to avoid cheats. But theſe *Horſes* are not fit for any other then ſuch a Sandy Countrey, by reaſon of their tender feet.

But let us come to the *Nile*, which is the principal piece in all *Egypt*: I hold it for one of the moſt conſiderable Rivers of the World. The length of its courſe, and the divers Mouths by which it diſcharges it ſelf into the *Sea*. Its inundation at a perfixed time, the quality of its Waters, and the fertility and richneſs it leaves where it paſſes, are my inducing Reaſons. It begins towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, ends on this ſide that of *Cancer*, running for the ſpace of above 45 degrees of *Latitude*, which are 11 or 1200 Leagues in a ſtreight line, and more then 2000 in its courſe, croſſes a great *Lake*, embraces the faireſt River *Iſland*, and waters the richeſt *Valley*, we have knowledge of. Among its *Inhabitants* this is particular, that naturally ſome are black and ſome white; and that in the ſame time, the one have their Summer, or their Winter; when the others (which is not known elſewhere) have their Winter, or their Summer. Its true Spring is likewiſe almoſt unknown; it is certain that the River that comes out of the *Lake* of *Zair*, and takes its courſe towards the North, is that which we call the *Nile*: But this *Lake* receives a number of Rivers which deſcend from the Mountains of the *Moon*. To tell whether any of theſe Rivers bears the name of *Nile*, and which they be, cannot be done: Though there have been Kings of *Egypt*, *Roman* Emperors, *Sultans*, and Kings of *Portugal*, which have made the ſearch.

In

In ſum, and according to *Ptolomy*, who hath ſaid as much as any hitherto, it muſt be that moſt advanced towards the South, and which waſhes at preſent the City of *Zambery*, croſſes the *Lake* of the ſame name, or of *Zair*; the City of *Zair* being likewiſe on the ſame *Lake*. At the coming out of the *Lake*, the *Nile* paſſes between the Kingdoms of *Damout* and *Goyame* in the *Abiſſines*; receives a little on this ſide the *Equator*, the *Zafflan*, which comes out of the Lake of *Zafflan*; near the Iſle of *Mero* or *Gueguere*, the *Cabella* or *Taguezzi*, which deſcends from the *Lake* of *Barcena*; and at the entrance into *Egypt* of the River *Nubia*, which croſſes *Nubia*, and comes from *Saara* and *Billedulgerid*; and apparently anſwers to that, which *Juba* believed to be the true *Nile*. Theſe 3 Rivers are the greateſt of all thoſe which disburthen themſelves in the *Nile*, and carry a great many others. But in *Egypt* the *Nile* remains alone, paſſes between two ranks of Mountains, approaching the Sea, the Valley enlarges, and the *Nile* divides it ſelf into many Branches, and glides by many Mouths to the Sea. The Ancients made account of ſeven, nine, or more, now except in the time of Inundation, there are only two principal ones, which paſs by *Roſetto* and *Damiata*; and three leſſer by *Turbet*, *Bourles* and *Maala*: Theſe not being Navigable, but during the Inundation; the others always. This Inundation of the *Nile* is wonderful, ſome attribute it to certain *Eteſian* winds, that is, North-Weſt, which repulſe the current, and make it ſwell: Others to the quantity of *Snows* which melt; and to the continual *Rains* which fall there, where the *Nile* hath its beginnings, or there where it paſſes. Others will have the Ocean thento ſwell, and under ground communicate its waters to the *Nile*, &c. But there are ſo many different opinions touching the cauſe of this Inundation, and ſo many Reaſons are given *pro* and *con*, that a whole treatiſe might be made of it.

Its Inundation and effects.

This Inundation begins about the ſixteenth or ſeventeenth of *June*, increaſes for the ſpace of forty daies, and decreaſes for other 40 days; ſo that its greateſt height is about the end of *July*, and it ends about the beginning of *September*. If it begins ſooner or later (which is obſerved by certain Pillars in the Towns; and particularly in the Caſtle of *Rhoda*, which ſtands in a little Iſle oppoſite to old *Cairo*, and where the *Baſſa* reſides, during the ſolemnity of opening the Channel, which paſſes through and fills the Ciſterns of *Grand Cairo*; and in the Fields by the *Aſpes*, *Tortoiſes*, , *Craw-fiſh*, *Crocodiles*, &c. who remove their Eggs or Young from the Banks of the *Nile*, immediately before the Inundation, and lay them there where it will bound) they give judgment, whether there will be more or leſs Water; and the people are advertiſed, to the end, they may take order for what they have to do.

The King *Mæris* had expreſly cauſed to be dug the *Lake* of *Mæris*, to receive the Waters of the *Nile*, when it had too much, or to furniſh it when too little: At preſent they remedy it when little, by *Channels*, advanced towards the higher Countrey, that they may be water'd: When too much, by certain *Flood-Gates* which they open to let the Water ſlide away.

For the effect of this Inundation, is, That all that the *Nile* covers with its Water, is made fruitful, and no more. It Rains ſometimes in the Lower *Egypt*, very little in the Higher, and not ſufficient to moiſten the Earth; but when the *Nile* increaſes too much, or too little, it doth hurt: At 12 Cubits, it is yet Famine; at 15 or 16 ſufficient; at 18 or 20 abundance. The little cannot moiſten the higheſt Lands, and neareſt the Mountains. That which lies too long, leaves not time to Sow the lower Grounds; but the little, or none at all, is more dangerous then the too much; and often beſides the Famine, preſages ſome other misfortune near. So before the death of *Pompey*, there was little; before that of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*, none at all.

Moreover, the Dew which cauſes this inundation, is imperceptible, as the ſame Author ſays: He aſſures us however, that ſo ſoon as it falls, the Air is purified, and all *Diſeaſes* and *Peſtilential Feavers* of the Countrey, (which are there very riſe) ceaſe; which makes it appear that theſe Waters are excellent, and indeed all Authors agree, that the Waters of the *Nile* are ſweet, healthful, nouriſhing, and that they keep a long time without corrupting; ſo that they be diſcharged from the Mud and Sand they bring along with them

them from the Grounds, through which they paſs. The firſt Kings of *Egypt* made ſo much account of them, that they drank nothing elſe than the Waters of *Nile*; and when *Philadelphus* married his Daughter *Berenice* to *Antiochus Theos*, King of *Aſſyria*, he gave order, That from time to time there ſhould be the Water of *Nile* carried her, that ſhe might drink no other. And the fruitfulneſs which theſe Waters cauſe, is not only known by their making the Earth ſo exceeding fertil, (which otherwiſe is as barren) ſo that if they do in a manner but throw in their Seed, they have four rich Harveſts in leſs than four Months; and in that they produce and nouriſh an infinite number of ſtrange Creatures, as *Crocodiles*, which from an Egg no bigger than that of a *Gooſe*, cometh to be 20, 25, and ſometimes to 30 foot long: His Feet are armed with Claws, his Back and Sides with Scales ſo hard not to be pierced; but his Belly ſoft and tender, by reaſon of which he receiveth many times his deaths wound: His Mouth is exceeding wide, hath no Tongue; his Jaws very ſtrong, and armed with a ſharp ſet of Teeth as it were indented: His Tail is equal to his Body in length, by which he infoldeth his prey and draws it in the Water: At the taking of his prey he gives jumps, and it is a pretty while ere he can turn himſelf; ſo that if it be not juſt before him, it may eſcape him. Four Months in the year it is obſerved to eat nothing, which is during the Winter Seaſon; the Female is ſaid to lay one hundred Eggs at one time, which ſhe is as many days a hatching; and they will live to the age of one hundred years, and growing to the laſt. Alſo this River breedeth *River-Horſes*, of old called *Hippopotami*; they have great Heads, wide Jaws, and armed with Tusks as white as *Ivory*; they are proportioned like a *Swine*, but as big in Body as a *Cow*; ſmooth Skinned, but exceeding hard. Alſo *River-Bulls*, about the bigneſs of a *Calf* of a Twelve month old, and in ſhape like a *Bull*. Alſo here are found abundance of great and ſmall *Fiſhes*. And laſtly, the fruitfulneſs of theſe Waters is ſhewed, in that the *Women* and *Cattle* which drink thereof are very fruitful, ordinarily bringing forth their Children and Young by two and three, and ſometimes by four and five at a time.

Its Water exceeding nouriſhing.

The only creature in ye world, that moveth its upper jaw.

There are yet many fine things might be ſaid of the *Nile*, as its divers *Names*, its *Cataracts*, *&c.* But we have likewiſe omitted many things which might be ſaid of *Egypt*, which hath been famous in Holy Writ as well as in Prophane, and which would ſwell into a Volume. Let us end with ſaying ſomething of the fertility of the Country, what Commodities it produces and communicates to other Countries.

It is plentifully furniſhed with ſeveral *Metals*; the Ground along the *Nile* produceth abundance of *Corn*, *Rice*, *Pulſe*, and other Grains, that it may well be termed the Granary of the *Turkiſh*, as it was formerly of the *Roman Empire:* and it feeds much *Cattle*, produceth great plenty of *Fiſh*, hath ſtore of *Fowls*, yields excellent *Fruits*, *Lemmons*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Figgs*, *Cherries*, *&c.* Alſo, *Capers*, *Olives*, *Flax*, *Sugars*, *Caſſia*, *Sena*, *Oil*, *Balſom*; ſome *Drugs* and *Spices*, *Wax*, *Civet*, *Elephants Teeth*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Linnen Cloth*, with ſeveral good Manufactures; alſo *Hides*, beſides the *Aſhes* of two little Weeds growing about *Alexandria*, whereof quantity are tranſported to *Venice*; and without which they cannot make their *Chryſtal-Glaſſes*. We may add, that *Incenſe*, *Coffee*, and other Commodities of *Arabia* and *India*, paſs through this Country, to be tranſported into the Weſtern parts of *Turky*.

The fertility of the Country, and its Commodities.

Throughout the Countrey they have abundance of *Palm-Trees*, which may be reckoned among the Rarities of the Country, and that for ſeveral Reaſons. Theſe Trees are obſerved always to grow in couples, Male and Female: They both thruſt forth Cods full of Seeds; but the Female is only fruitful, but not except it grows by the Male, and having his Seed

Its Palm-Trees, and the nature of their growing, &c.

mixt with hers, which they do not fail to do at the beginning of *March*. The Fruit it bears is known by the name of *Dates*, which in taſte reſemble *Figs*. The *Pith* of theſe Trees is White, and called the *Brains*, which are in the uppermoſt parts. And this is held an excellent *Sallad*, in taſte much like an *Hartichoke*; of the Branches they make *Bedſteads*, *Lattices*, *&c.* Of the outward Huſk of the Cod, *Cordage*; of the inner, *Bruſhes*; and of the Leaves, *Fans*, *Feathers*, *Mats*, *Baskets*, *&c.* This Tree is held among them to be the perfect Image of a Man, and that for theſe Reaſons: Firſt, becauſe it doth not fructifie, but by *Coiture*: Next, as having a *Brain* in the uppermoſt part, which if once corrupted (as Mans) doth periſh and die: And laſtly, in regard that on the top thereof grow certain Strings which reſemble *Hair*; the great end of the Branches appearing like *Hands* extended forth; and the Dates as *Fingers*. And ſo much for *Egypt*.

LIBYA

- LIBYA INTERIOR, which doth comprehend
  - ZAHARA, or SAARA, with its Parts or Provinces of
    - ZANHAGA — Tegaſſa.
    - ZUENZIGA — Zuenziga, Ziz, Ghir.
    - TARGA — Hair, Targa.
    - LEMPTA — Lempta, Dighir, Agades.
    - BERDOA — Berdoa.
    - BORNO — Borno, Kaugha, Amaſen.
    - GAOGA — Gaoga.
  - The Land of NEGROES, with its Parts or Kingdoms, as they lie
    - On this ſide the Niger, as
      - GUALATA — Gualata, Angra, Arguyn.
      - GENEHOA — Genehoa, Walade, Ganar, Samba-Lamech.
      - TOMBUT — Tombut, Salla, Beriſſa, Guegneve.
      - AGADES — Agades, Dughir, Mara.
      - CANUM — Cano, Taſſana, Germa.
      - CASSENA — Caſſena, Nebrina, Tirca.
      - GANGARA — Gangara, Semegonda.
    - Between the Branches, and about the Mouth of the Niger, as
      - JALOFFES, GAMBIA, CASANGUAS, BIAFARES — Emboule, Lambaya, Yagoa, Berſola, Nabare, Beſu, Cateheo, Boyla, Codan, Julieto.
    - Beyond the Niger, as
      - MELLI — Melli.
      - SOUSOS — Beria.
      - MANDINGUE — Mandinga, Tocrur.
      - GAGO — Gago, Dau.
      - GUBER — Guber.
      - ZEGZEG — Zegzeg, Channara.
      - ZANFARA — Zaufara, Reghebal.
  - GUINY, and regarding the Atlantick Ocean; with its Parts or Kingdoms of
    - MELEGUETTE, with its chief Places, as they lie
      - On the Sea, as — Bugos, Timaa, Bagga, Serbora, Maſſah, Faly Hamaya, Samwyn, Crou, and Growaly.
      - Within Land, as — Bolombere, Quinamora.
    - GUINY, particularly ſo called, or the IVORY or GOLD Coaſt, with its chief places, as they lie
      - On the Sea, as — Tabo, Taboe Petoy, Wetoe, Moure, Naſſau, St. George del Mina, Cormantir, Berku, Pompena.
      - Within Land, as — Laboure, Uxoo, Quinimburm, Acanes Grandes, Dauma, Abaüraus, Adios, St. Laurenco, Zabandu, Buma, Boggia, Jamo.
    - BENIN, with its chief Places, as they lie
      - On the Sea, as — Popou, Jackeyn, Locbo, Focko, Bobi, Bodi, and Ceſge.
      - Within Land, as — Benin, Qaverre, Arovon, and Curamo.

ZAHARA,

That is, DESART.

Zahara, its name, and deſcription of the Country.

IN our *Africa* or *Libya Interior*, we have placed *ZAHARA*, the Country of the *NEGROES* and *GUINY*. *Zahara* is an *Arab* name, and ſignifies *Deſart*; and this name is taken from the quality of the Country: ſo the *Arabs* divide the Land into three ſorts, *Cehel*, *Zahara*, and *Azgar*. *Cehel* hath only Sand, very ſmall, without any Green. *Zahara* hath Gravel and little Stones, and but little Green. *Azgar* hath ſome Marſhes, ſome Graſs and little Shrubs. The Country is generally hot and dry; it hath almoſt no Water, except ſome few Wells; and thoſe Salt: if there fall great Rains the Land is much better. But beſides the leanneſs of the Soil there is ſometimes ſuch vaſt quantities of *Graſshoppers*, that they eat and ruin all that the Earth produceth. Through this Country the *Caravans* paſs, which adds no ſmall advantage unto it. It is ſo barren and ill inhabited, that a Man may travel above a week together without ſeeing a Tree, or ſcarce any Graſs; as alſo without finding any Water, and that Water they have is drawn out of Pits, which oft-times is covered with Sand, and taſtes very brackiſh, ſo that many times Men die for want of it; which knowing the defect, thoſe Merchants which travel in this Country, carry their Water, as well as other Proviſions, on their *Camels* backs.

Its People.

The People are *Bereberes* and *Africans*, likewiſe *Abexes* and *Arabs*; of which the firſt are ſeated in the moſt moiſt places, the others wander after their Flocks: Some have their *Cheques* or *Lords*, almoſt all follow *Mahometiſm*. Though the Air be very hot, yet it is ſo healthful, that from *Barbary*, the Country of the *Negroes*, and other places, Sick people come as to their laſt remedy.

Its diviſion and parts deſcribed.

This great *Deſart* is divided into ſeven principal Parts, of which the three Weſtern are, *Zanhaga*, *Zuenziga*, and *Targa* or *Hair*: The four towards the Eaſt are, *Lempta*, *Berdoa*, *Gaoga*, and *Borno*. Almoſt every part reaches the full breadth, and all together make but the length of this *Deſart*.

Zanhaga.

ZANHAGA is moſt Weſtward, and touches the *Ocean*; with this Deſart are comprehended thoſe of *Azaoad* and *Tegazza*. This laſt yields Salt like Marble, which is taken from a Rock, and carried 2, 3, 4 or 500 Leagues into the Land of the *Negroes*, and ſerves in ſome places for Money, and for this they buy their Victuals. Theſe People uſe it every moment, letting it melt in their Mouths, to hinder their Gums from corrupting; which often happens, either becauſe of the heat, which continually reigns; or becauſe their food corrupts in leſs than nothing. In the Deſart of *Azaoad*, and in the way from *Dara* to *Tombut*, are to be ſeen two Tombs, the one of a rich Merchant, and the other of a Carrier: The Merchants Water being all gone, and ready to die for want, buys of the Carrier (who had not overmuch) one Glaſs full, for which he gave him 10000 *Ducats*; a poor little for ſo great a Sum: but what would not a man do in neceſſity? yet at the end the Carrier repented his bargain, for both the one and the other died for want of Water before they could get out of the Deſart. Thoſe near the Sea have ſome Trade with the *Portugals*, with whom they change their Gold of *Tibar* for divers Wares.

The

AFRICA or LIBIA ULTERIOUR Where are the COUNTRIE of NEGROES and GUINE Kingdoms Deſigned by Monſieur Sanſon Geo into Engliſh by Richard Blome By the Kings Eſp

the COUNTRIES of SAARA DESERT
With the Circumjacent Countries and
Geographer to the French King and Rendered
Especiall Command *Printed for* Richard Blome

The Country or Desert of *ZUENZIGA*, under the name of which passes that of *Cogdenu*, and is more troublesom and dangerous than that of *Zanhaga*, as also more destitute of Water; and yet it hath many People, among others certain *Arabs*, feared by all their Neighbours, and particularly by the *Negroes*, whom those *Arabs* take and sell for Slaves in the Kingdom of *Fez:* But in revenge, when they fall into the hands of the *Negroes* they are cut into so many pieces, that the biggest that remains are their two Ears. Its chief places are *Zuenziga* and *Ghir*. *Zuenziga.*

The Desart of *TARGA* or *HAIR* (some esteem this last the name of the Principal Place, and the other of the People) is not so dry nor troublesom as the two others. There are found many Herbs for Pastures, the Soil indifferent fruitful, and of a temperate Air. They have some Wells, whose Water is good. In the Morning there falls store of *Manna*, which they find fresh and healthful, of which they transport quantity to *Agades*, and other places. Its chief places are *Targa* and *Hair*. *Targa.*

LEMPTA is likewise esteemed the name of a People, and its principal place also *Digir*. This Desart is dry, and more troublesom than that of *Targa*; and its People haughty, brutish, and dangerous to them that cross it, going from *Constantina*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, to the *Negroes*. *Lempta.*

BERDOA is no less Desart than that of *Lempta*; but it hath *Dates* about those places, which are inhabited, and which are well furnished with Water. They count three little walled Cities and some Towns, the chief bearing the name of the part. *Berdoa.*

BORNO and *GOAGA* are scarce Desart. They have each their King. He of *Borno* is of the Race of *Berdoa*, and his People part Black, part White, are civil, and drive some Trade. But they have likewise their Wives and Children in common, and scarce any Religion, as formerly the *Garamantes*. The King of *Goaga* descended from a *Black Slave*, who having seized on the estate of his Master, after having bought some Horses, ran over the Neighbouring Countries, traded for some time for *Slaves* against *Horses*, whom he made mount on his, and became Master of this Estate more than 200 years ago. Part of his People are *Christians*, as those of *Egypt*; but ignorant, and almost all Shepherds. The chief places in *Borno* are, *Amasen*, *Kaugha*, and *Borno*; the two former seated in the Lake *Semegda:* The chief place of *Goaga* bears the same. *Borno and Goaga.*

The Land of NEGROES.

THE *Negroes* are People about the River *Niger*, which hath taken its Name from these People; and these People from their Colour, and not the People from the River, as some have believed. They are divided into many Parties or Kingdoms, of which some are on this side, others beyond, and others between the Branches of the *Niger*. We have placed on this side the Kingdoms of *Gualata*, *Genehoa*, *Tombut*, *Agades*, *Canum*, *Cassena*, and *Gangara*. Beyond, those of *Melly*, *Sousos*, *Mandingue*, *Gago*, *Guber*, *Zegzeg*, and *Zanfara*. The Land of *Negroes*, its Name, People, and Parts described.

Between the Branches, and about the Mouths of *Niger*, are a great number of People, Kingdoms, and Signiories. The principal People are the *Jaloffes*, between the Branches of *Senega* and *Gambea*; the *Casanguas*, between St. *Domingo* and *Rio Grande*; and the *Biafares* beyond and along *Rio Grande*. The most famous Kingdoms of the *Jaloffes* are those of *Senega* and *Gambea:* Among the *Casanguas*, those of *Casamanse* and *Jarem*; among the *Biafares* those of *Guinala*, *Biguba*, and *Besegue*. All these Kingdoms and People, and likewise the others which are about the *Niger*, are so little known, that some think it not worth the pains to set down their Names. We will speak only of what shall seem most remarkable.

GUA-

Kingdom of *Gualata.*

GUALATA is one of the leaſt, having in it not above three Towns, of which *Guadia* is the chief; beſides ſome few Villages. Fruitful in *Dates*; they are coal black; live in a mean condition, and without any form of Government or ſettled Laws. They have no Gentry among them, but to their power are civil to Strangers.

Kingdom of *Genehoa.*

GENEHOA is rich in *Grain*, *Cotton*, *Cattle*, and *Gold*; for which they have a good trade with the Merchants of *Barbary*; and by reaſon of the overflowing of the *Niger*, the Soil is very fertil; yet have they not many Towns: that moſt known is where their King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal to the King of *Tombut*, beareth the name of the Kingdom. And here it is that their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants inhabit. The Prieſts and Doctors wear white Apparel, and for diſtinction all the reſt wear black or blew *Cotton*. Its other places are, *Samba-Lamech*, *Ganar*, and *Walade*.

Kingdom of *Tombut.*

TOMBUT hath quantity of *Gold*, is well watered with the *Niger*, which makes it very fruitful, eſpecially in Grains, and it hath good Paſtures, which feed many Cattle. The chief place gives name to the Kingdom, ſcituate on a branch of the River *Niger:* It is the reſidence of their King, who hath a fair Palace, built of Lime and Stones, all the reſt of the Houſes (except one fair Church) is made of Mud, and Thatched. It is well filled with Merchants, who drive a good Trade betwixt this and *Fez*. This King, within this 100 and odd years, hath ſubdued and made tributary a great part of the *Negroes*, is magnificent in his Court, of the *Mahometan* Religion, keeps ordinarily 3000 Horſe for his Guard, and hath marched againſt the *Xeriffs* of *Morocco* with 300000 Men. Its other places are *Salla* and *Beriſſa*, alſo ſeated on the *Niger*, *Gugneve*, *Carogoli*, and *Caſſali*.

Kingdom of *Agades.*

AGADES hath great quantities of Cattle, and are much given to graſing and looking to them, making it their livelyhood, uſing the Ancients cuſtom of Tents, and removing up and down for the conveniency of freſh and good Paſture for their Cattle; and among their Moveable Towns their chief bears the name of the Kingdom in which the King reſideth, who is Tributary to him of *Tombut*. Its other places are, *Deghir*, *Mayma*, and *Mura*, ſeated on a Lake of the *Niger*.

Kingdom of *Canum.*

CANUM, beſides its Cattle, hath *Grain*, *Rice*, *Cotton*, and *Fruits*; hath Springs of Running-water, as alſo a good River, which iſſueth forth many little Rivulets; it is well ſtored with *Wood*, is very populous; and hath ſeveral Towns; the chief being *Cano*, wherein is the Palace of their King, who is alſo Tributary to him of *Tombut*. This Town is environed with a Wall of Chalk-Stone, of which moſt of the Houſes are built, and well frequented by Merchants. Its next chief place is *Germa*.

Kingdom of *Caſſena.*

CASSENA is craggy, barren, and very Woody; yet it yields ſome ſtore of *Barley* and *Millet*. The People live very meanly, wanting many things that the other Kingdoms have plenty of; and their Houſes and Towns are as poor, among which *Caſſena* is the chief, next *Nebrina* and *Tirça*.

Kingdom of *Gangara.*

GANGARA is rich in *Gold*, hath not many Towns, the chief whereof bears the name of the Kingdom, in which the King reſideth, being alſo the habitation of many Merchants; and its King is very abſolute, and hath a great Revenue. His Militia is in ſome eſteem among the *Negroes*, being obſerved to keep in continual pay 500 Horſmen, and 7000 Men which uſe *Bows* and *Scimitars*. The next is *Semegonda*, ſeated on a branch of the *Niger*.

Kingdom of *Melly.*

MELLY is a ſpacious and fruitful Kingdom, ſeated all along on a branch of the River *Niger*, which makes it very fertil in *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Dates*, *Fruits*, *Cotton*, *Wool*, &c. And by reaſon of the conveniency of the ſaid River, hath a good Trade for their Commodities with other Countries. Its chief Town takes its name from the Kingdom, containing about 6000 Houſes, indifferently well built, but unwalled. It is the Seat-Royal of their King; they have likewiſe here a famous *Colledge*, and many *Temples*, which are well furniſhed with Prieſts and Doctors, who read the *Mahometan* Law, and under whom the youth of this Kingdom, as alſo thoſe of *Tombut*, and other parts of the *Negroes* are educated. Theſe People are eſteemed the moſt ingenious, the wittieſt, and

moſt

most civil to Strangers of all the *Negroes*. Their King is also tributary to the King of *Tombut*.

SOUSOS hath divers petty Kingdoms, and all subject to their *Concho* or *Emperour*; among which, that of *Bena* hath seven others under it. Its quarter is Mountainous, covered with Trees, and well watered with Rivers. It hath some Towns; its chief takes its name from the Kingdom, and yields *Corn*, *Cattle*, *Fruits*, *&c.* Kingdom of *Sousos*.

MANDINGUE begins at the River *Gambea*, and reaches near 200 Leagues up in the Land: They have quantity of *Gold*, good *Ships* of War, and *Cavalry*; and there are divers Kings or Lords in *Guiny*, which are his Tributaries. Kingdom of *Mandingue*.

GAGO hath store of *Gold*, *Corn*, *Rice*, *Fruits*, and *Cattle*, but no *Salt* besides what is brought from other places, and which is ordinarily as dear as *Gold*. The People are idle and ignorant, but bear so great a respect to their King, that how great soever they be, they speak to him on their knees; and when they are faulty, the King seises on their Goods, and sells their Wives and Children to Strangers, who remain Slaves all their lives. But besides these, there is here (as well as in other parts of the *Negroes*) great Traffick for Slaves, either of certain Neighbouring people, which those of the Country can take, or of the Malefactors of the Country, or of the Children whom the Fathers or Mothers sell, when they are in need, or when they please them not. And these Slaves are bought by many people of *Africa*; but more by the *Europeans*, who transport them into the Isles of St. *Thomas*, *Cape Verd*, the *Canaries*, *Brasil*; and the *English*, to the *Barbadoes*, *Carolina*, *Jamaica*, and elsewhere for Slaves. They have many Towns and Villages, among others that of *Gago* is the chief, and is the residence of their King; as also of many Merchants, and containing about 4 or 5000 Houses, but unwalled. Kingdom of *Gago*.

GUBER is well fenced with Mountains, doth produce *Rice* and *Pulse*; and above all, have exceeding great flocks of *Cattle*, from which they get their livelyhood. This Kingdom is very populous, and well stored with Towns, its chief bearing the name of the Kingdom, which is well inhabited by Merchants, and containing about 6000 Houses; being also the residence of their King. The People are ingenious, good Artificers, and make several rich Manufactures. Kingdom of *Guber*.

ZEGZEG and *ZANFARA* are barren, the People idle and ignorant, have some Towns, whose chief are so called; the Land yields, *Corn*, *Grass*, *&c.* and feeds great quantities of Horses. And the Kingdoms of *Zegzeg* and *Zanfara*.

The Country of the *Negroes* is esteemed as fertil as those watered with the *Nile*. It bears twice a year, and each time sufficient to furnish them with *Corn* for five whole years; which makes them not sow their Lands, but when they judge they shall have need. They keep their *Corn* in Pits and Ditches under Ground, which they call *Matamores*. The fertility of the Land of the *Negroes*.

GUINEA, or *GUINY*.

GUINY is the Coast of *Africa*, which is found between the River *Niger* and the *Equinoctial Line*. Some give it a larger extent, some a less: There are they who begin it on this side the *Niger*, and continue it unto the Kingdom of *Congo*. We have comprehended in the Country of the *Negroes* that which is about the *Niger*; and in the Lower *Æthiopia*, that which is beyond the Gulph of St. *Thomas*: And so *Guiny* will remain between the Cape of *Serre Leon*, which will bound it on the West, and against the *Negroes*, to the River of *Camarones*, which is on the East, will separate it from the Lower *Æthiopia*. This Coast right from East to West is 7 or 800 Leagues long, and not above 100 or 150 in breadth. The form being much more long than broad, we will divide it into three principal parts, which we will call *MELEGUETE*, *GUINY*, and *BENIM*: This the most Eastward, the first the most West, and The Coast of *Guiny*, its extent and bounds. Its parts described.

and the other in the middle; yet each of these three parts separated make the breadth, and the three together the length of this *Guiny*. After this *Guiny* we will speak something of what is on this side towards the *Niger*, and of some Isles which are beyond, as St. *Thomas*, &c. Under the name of *MELEGUETE*, we comprehend that which is between the Capes of *Serre Leon* and of *Palmes*: Under the particular name of *GUINT* we esteem not only that which is between the Capes of *Palmes* and of *Three Points*; but likewise that which advances to the River *Volta*, and beyond, where the Kingdom of *Benim* begins, and ends not till the River *Camerones*. Of these 3 parts *Guiny* is the largest and best known, communicating its name to the rest. Its Coast, which is between the Capes of *Palmes* and that of *Three Points*, is called the Coast of *Ivory*; that which is beyond the Cape of *Three Points*, the Coast of *Gold*: for the abundance of *Gold* and *Ivory* found in the one and the other.

The Parts of *Melegueta* and *Guiny*.

The Coast of *IVORT* is very commodious, and well inhabited. The *English*, *French*, *Hollanders*, and *Hanse-Towns* trade likewise in divers Ports on the same Coast; fetching thence, *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Hides*, *Wax*, *Amber-greece*, &c. On the *Gold* Coast are divers Kingdoms or Realms, as of *SABOU*, *FOETU*, *ACCARA*, and others. The Kingdom of *SABOU* is esteemed the most powerful of all, and that his Estates extend sixty and odd Leagues on the Coast, and near 200 up in the Land. In 1482 the *Portugals* built on the Coast of *FOETU* the Fort of St. *George de la Mina*, and long time after the *Hollanders* that of *Nassau*, adjoyning to the Town of *Moure*, on the Coast of *Sabou*; the one and the other to maintain their Traffick. Its other places, and which are within Land are, *Labore*, *Uxoo*, and *Quinimburm*.

The *Ivory* and *Gold* Coasts, and their Trade.

MELEGUETE took its name from the abundance of *Meleguete*, here gathered of divers sorts: It is a Spice in form like *French Wheat*; some of a taste as strong and biting as *Pepper*: from which the *Portugals* receive great gain, but the *English*, *French*, and *Hollanders* bring it. The *Portugals* call it *Pimienta-del-Rabo*; the *Italians*, *Pepe della Coda*; *Tail Pepper*, that is, *Long Pepper*. Of their *Palm Trees* they make *Wine* as strong as the best of ours: They have likewise, *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Cotton*, &c. Its chief place is *Bugos*, on the Cape of *Sierre Leonne*.

The Part of *Meleguete*.

The Kingdom of *BENIM* hath more than 250 Leagues of the Coast; Cape *Formoso* dividing it into two parts: That which is on the West forms a Gulph, into the middle of which the River *Benim* disburthens it self; and more to the West that of *Lagoa*: That which is on the East extends it self on a right line, where the *Rio Real de Calabari*, and the *Rio del Rey*, disburthen themselves near to that of *Camarones*, which ends the Estate towards the East. This last part is more healthful than that of the particular *Guiny*, the Inhabitants living 100 years and more. The Land produces the same Fruits, and feeds the same Beasts with *Guiny*, and its People are more courteous to Strangers. Their principal City, so called, is esteemed the greatest and best built of any, either in *Guiny* or the Land of the *Negroes*. Its King is powerful, and very loving to his Subjects; they are all much addicted to Women, the King being said to keep about 5 or 600 Wives, with all which, twice a year he goeth out in great pomp, as well for Recreation, as to shew them to his Subjects; who according to their abilities do exceed; Those of the gentile or better sort keeping 20, 30, 40; others 50, 60, or 70: and those of the poorest rank 5, 10, or 12. Their Custom both for Men and Women, till they are married, is to go naked, and after their cloathing is only a Cloth, which is tied about their Middles, and hangs down to their knees. Its other chief places are, *Ouwerre*, *Focko*, *Boni*, and *Bodi*.

The Kingdom of *Benim*, with its Inhabitants described.

The Soil of *Guiny* is generally fertil, the most part bearing twice a year, because they have two Summers and two Winters. They call it Winter when the Sun passes their *Zenith*, and that the Rains are continual. All the whole Country is very fertil, abounding in *Corn*, *Rice*, *Millet*, and in many sorts of *Meleguete*; in Fruits, as *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Lemmons*, *Pomegranates*, *Dates*, &c. Also in *Gold*, both in Sand and in Ingots, in *Ivory* or *Elephants Teeth* in great

The Soil of *Guiny*.

Its fertility and commodities.

great abundance, in *Wax*, *Hides*, *Cotton*, *Amber-greece*; they extract *Wine* and *Oyl* from their *Palm-Trees*; and of this *Oyl*, and the *Ashes* of the *Palm-Tree*, they make excellent *Soap*. They have many *Sugar-Canes*, which are scarce at all Husbanded: They have *Brasil-Wood*, better then that which cometh from *Brasil*: they have abundance of *Wood*, proper to build and Mast Ships; and *Pearls*, which they find in *Oysters*, towards the *River Des Ostros*, that is, of *Oysters*; and of St. *Anne*, between the Branches of the *Niger*. And for these good *Commodities* in way of Barter, they truck or take course *Cloth*, both *Linnen* and *Wollen*; *Red Caps*, *Frize Mantles* and *Gowns*; *Leather Baggs*, *Sheep-skin Gloves*; *Guns*, *Swords*, *Daggers*, *Belts*, *Knives*, *Hammers*, *Axheads*, *Salt*, Great *Pins*, little pieces of *Iron*, which they convert to several uses; *Lavers* and great *Dutch Kettles* with two handles. *Basons* of several sizes, *Platters*, *Broad Pans*, *Posnets*, *Pots*, &c. made for the most part of *Copper*, which are sometimes *Tinned* within. Some of which *Utensils* are made of *Tinn*, and others of *Earths*, which are here desired: Also *Looking-Glasses* *Beads*, *Corals* and *Copper*, *Brass* and *Tinn Rings*, which they wear about them for their adornment. *Horse-tails* which they use to keep away the *Flies* which annoy them, as also when they Dance. And lastly, certain *Shels* which pass instead of *Money*; having here, and in many other Countries, no current *Money* of *Metal*, as the *Europeans* have; but make use of those *Shells*, which they hang in bundles upon strings; for which they buy in their *Markets* such things as they want. Commodities here found.

Among their *Beasts* they have *Elephants*, which are said to be the biggest of all four footed *Beasts*: Of nature they are very gentle, docile, and tractable; they live to a great age, seldom dying till the age of 150 years. They are very serviceable, both in War and Peace, and as profitable by reason of their Tusks. It is said, That when the *Male* hath once seasoned the *Female*, he never after toucheth her. Next the *Elephants* may be reckoned the *Musk-Cats*, which with Springs they take in the *Woods*, when they are young, and keep them in *Hutches*, and take from them the *Musk*, which they keep in *Glasses* or *Pots*, and so vend it: And these *Cats* they vend to the *English* and other Nations at good rates. Then their *Apes*, *Monkeys* and *Baboons*, which are strong and lusty being taken and brought to it young, serve like men: They send them to fetch Water at the River, make them to turn meat at the Fire, serve at Table to give Drink; but they must be very watchful, otherwise they will do mischief, and eat the meat themselves; and these are much beloved by their *Women*, doing the duty of *Men*, which they are as desirous of themselves, and hating *Men*. Again, there are some of these *Monkeys* or *Apes*, which love *Men* and hate *Women*. They have variety of *Birds*, among which, they have several sorts of *Parrots* which are brought to talk. Their *Fruits* are excellent, as *Oranges*, *Lemmons*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Dates*, *Annanas* or *Pynes*, which for smell and taste, resembleth all *Fruits*. *Trennuelis*, a *Fruit* so delicate and delicious that 'tis thought it was the *Fruit* in *Paradise* which was forbidden *Adam* and *Eve* to eat of. *Iniamus*, *Battatas*, *Bachonens*, the *Palm-Tree*, and above all here is a *Tree* called the *Oyster Tree*, by reason of its bearing *Oysters* thrice every year; a thing, if report may be credited, is true; and if true, very strange. Its Beasts and their nature. The *Elephant*, The *Musk-Cats* *Monkeys*, *Apes*, and *Baboons*. Its *Birds*. Its Fruits.

The *Inhabitants*, especially before the coming of the *Portugals*, were rude and barbarous, living without the knowledge of a *God*, *Law*, *Religion*, or *Government*, very disingenious, and not caring for *Arts* or *Letters*. They are much addicted to *Theft*, and take it for an honor, if they can cheat or steal any thing, (though not considerable) from a *White Man*. They are very perfidious, *Lyars*, given to *Luxury*; in matter of *Justice*, they are indifferent severe, punishing ofttimes with death; but paying a fine will free them; and the place of *Judicature* is in the open *Market Place*. Their Food is gross and beastly, as is their *Habitations*, mean and beggerly. They go naked, save about their Waist they tye a piece of *Linnen*; yet very proud and stately: They are of a *Corpulent body*, *flat nosed*, *broad shouldred*, *white eyed* and *teeth'd*, *small eared*, &c. In matters of *Religion*, they are great *Idolaters*, worshiping Its *People*. Their disposition. Their Justice. Their Food and Apparel. Their Stature Their Religion & belief.

Beasts, *Birds*, *Hils*, and indeed, every strange thing which they see; they hold there is two Gods, one doth them good, and the other hurt; and these two Gods, they say, fight together. Also they believe there is a God, which is invisible, which they say is black; yet of late they have tried many *Forms of Religion*, as *Judaism*, *Mahometism* and *Christianity*; but care not much for any. Nevertheless, some of them believe they die not, and to that end, give their dead bodies something to carry with them into the other World. They keep their *Fetissoes day*, that is, one day in seven for a day of rest, as their *Sabbath*, which is on a *Tuesday*, (a day that no other Nation in the World keeps) very strict; at which time, they offer Meat and Drink to their *Fetisso* or *God*, on a four square place, covered with *Wires* or *Fetissoes straws*, which the *Birds* (by them called *Gods Birds*) devour. During which time, the *Fetissero* sits upon a Stool with a *Pot* of *Drink* in his hand, using several *Ceremonies*.

Their Marriage, their abode.

Amongst their *Barbarous Customs* they have one very good, and that is, when their *Daughters* are of a fitting age to marry, they put them into *Houses*, which are in the nature of *Monasteries*, where for a year they are educated by *Old Men* of good repute amongst them. And at the expiration of the said year, they are brought well habited (according to their *Custom*) and accompanied with *Musick*, and *Dancing*; and when a *Young-man* makes choise of any of them, he bargains with her *Parents*, and satisfies the *Old Man* that educated her, for his pains and charges (which is not much) and then takes her to *Wife*. The Portion being thus paid, they meet one another naked, and the *Woman* swears to be faithful to the *Man*, both at *Bed* and *Board*, and so the *Marriage* is concluded: But the *Man* sweareth not, being at liberty; so that upon the least offence, he may put her away, or force her to pay a Fine of so many *Potoes* of *Gold*: And according to the ability of a *Man*, he may buy and keep as many *Wives* as he pleaseth; among which, the eldest is subservient to the youngest. The *Man* never lieth with any of his *Wives*, neither eateth with them, but on *Tuesdays*, which is their *Sabbath*. And although the *Husband* commands, yet the *Wife* is the *Purse-bearer* until she be with *Child*, and ready to be delivered; at which time, being stark naked, and in the *Field*, among the *People*, she throweth the bag to her *Husband*, until taking a handful of *Manniget* and a spoonful of *Oyl*, she goeth abroad the next day, as well as if she had not been with *Child*, or suffered any pain; and then feasteth her Neighbors, circumciseth the *Child*; and after it hath lain sprawling upon the ground two or three daies, she taketh it, and carrieth it on her shoulders, like those which we call *Gipsies*; and when the *Child* is about four years of age, the *Mother* bringeth it to the *Father*, who teaches it to *Swim*, make *Nets*, *Fish* and *Row*, giving it nothing but what it can earn; and when it can be master of so much *Gold* as will purchase *Linnen* to make it a *Wastcloth*, it is rich.

How they bring up their Children.

Their War.

In *Guiny* there are several Petty Kingdoms who make War one against the other; during which War, they destroy and burn the Countrey, to the end that the enemy may find no succour, removing their *Goods* to a Neighboring Kingdom, with whom they have peace; and the whole Kingdom surrounds the King, for his defence and safeguard; and thus they march.

Their Weapons.

Their Weapons are the *Bow* and *Arrows*, with which they are so expert, that they can shoot within the breadth of a *Shilling*. Also they make use of the *Poniard*, the *Dagger*, the *Shield* and *Turbant*. In which Wars, those they kill, they eat; those they take, they make *Slaves*; and such are those, that the *English*, *Dutch* and other Nations buy of them; and whom they subdue, they take *Hostages* from.

The Riches, Revenue, State and Power of their Kings.

Their Kings are not over-rich, that Revenue which they have comes from the *Customs* and *Tithes* upon *Goods*; as also in the two *Ounces* of *Gold* paid by every Man that lieth with anothers *Wife*: Likewise, in *Fines* levied for *Theft* for their ransom; and lastly, in the *Sixpenny* forfeitures for bringing their *Weapons* within any of their Cities: Neither do they live in great pomp and grandure; a poor Cottage with us, being with them a Princes Palace. Yet they are had in such reverence, that none cometh to speak with them (though of their *Nobility* and *Gentry*) but must crawl upon the hands and knees,

knees, and ſo deliver their buſineſs unto them. But the *White Men* are had in ſo much reſpect (though never ſo poor) that they ſit cheek by jowl by their Kings. Upon the Coronation day, as alſo upon the Quarter days, when the Kings receive their Cuſtoms, they make a maguificent Feaſt which laſteth for two or three days; at which times they have all the varieties in their way as the Countrey will afford; and many of them are held very powerful.

And here, on this Coaſtof *Guiny*, the *Dutch* have been great Traders, having ſeveral Holds and Factories, but of late in *Anno* 1663 and 64, the *Engliſh* have had many ſtruglings with the *Dutch*, whom they have pretty well ſubdued; and have now ſettled their ſeveral Factories, and are incorporated into a Society at *London*, called the *Royal African Company*, who have many Factories and ſettlements, driving a very conſiderable Trade, to the great benefit of the Nation.

Iſles of St. THOMAS, *&c.*

BEtween *Guiny* and the *Lower Æthiopia*, is a Guph, where are the Iſles of St. *THOMAS*, *Princes Iſland*, *Fernand Poo*, *Annobon* or *Bon Anne*; and farther in the *Great Sea*, St. *Matthew*, the *Aſcention*, St. *Helena*, *&c.* Theſe Iſles have their names from the day whereon they were diſcovered: That of the *Prince*, becauſe its Revenue was deſigned for the Prince of *Portugal*; that of *Fernand Poo*, from him that diſcovered it.

The Iſland of St. Thomas deſcribed.

But of all theſe Iſlands that of St. *THOMAS* is by much the greateſt, and the beſt: Its form is almoſt round, it is thirty, others ſay forty; others, and with more appparent truth 60000 Paces Diameter; which are 180600 Paces, or 65 Leagues circuit, ſeated under the *Æquator*; and by reaſon of the exceſſive heats which are there predominant: The Air is found very prejudicial and unhealthful to ſtrangers, eſpecially to the *Europeans*, who ſcarce ever reach to the age of fifty years, and the Women much leſs: Yet the Natives of the Countrey live commonly 100 years, and without ſickneſs. They have no Rain but only in *March* and *September*, yet by reaſon of the Dews, which at all other times of the year falls, the Earth is well moiſtned, ſo that it brings forth all ſorts of *Fruits*, *Roots* and *Pot-Herbs*; but their principal riches is their *Sugars*, of which, they have ſometimes exported 150000 *Arrobes*, each *Arrobe* being 32 *l.* weight, which is five Millions of pounds yearly: Alſo *Ginger*, *&c.* there is carried them in exchange for their *Commodities*, *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Cheeſe*, *Stuffs*, *Beads*, *Drinking-glaſſes*, *Corn-Flower*, and little white Shels which ſerve for Money in *Æthiopia*, as in *Guiny*, *&c.* They Trade in the Neighbouring Coaſts, where are the Rivers of *Barca*, *Gampo*, St. *Benito*, St. *Juan*, and the Iſle of *Coriſco*: Thoſe *Grains* and *Vines* which they would have ſown and Planted, have not thriven, the Earth being too fat. They make their Bread of divers Roots; have their Wood from *Palm-Trees*: They feed much Fowl, have abundance of ſeveral ſorts of Fiſh, both great and ſmall, among others, *Whales*. They have alſo great ſtore of four-footed Beaſts, among others, their *Hogs* bear the Bell; which being fed with *Sugar-Canes*, after the Juyce is drawn out, grow fat, and become ſo excellent, that their *Pullain* is accounted for no value to them, even for ſick people. The middle of the Iſle is filled with Mountains, which are loaden with a great number of Trees, which are always covered with Clouds, which ſo moiſten the Trees, that from them falls ſo much freſh water, as makes many little ſtreams, which waters all parts of the Iſland. The *Portugals* have built the City *Pavoaſan*, containing about 7 or 800 Houſes, and ſome Forts, to defend the Port: They have erected a Biſhoprick, and do allow of no Religion, but the Chriſtian. This Town is well frequented by *Portugal* Merchants, who trade in the Commodities aforeſaid. The Inhabitants are *Negroes*, and very black.

Princes Island. *PRINCES ISLAND* hath a little City, and the Inhabitants live conveniently; the Isle being fruitful, yielding *Fruits*, *Sugar*, some *Ginger*, &c. Once taken by the *Hollanders*, who for some reasons soon abandoned it.

The Island of *Annobon*. The Island of *ANNOBON* yields *Sugars*, *Cottons*, *Cattle*, and excellent Fruits especially large *Oranges*. In this Isle there is a Town of 100 or 120 Houses of Blacks, who are governed by some few *Portugals*.

The Isle of St. *Hellena*. The Island of St. *HELLENA* was first discovered by the *Portugals* upon the 21 of *May*; on which day, is celebrated the memory of St. *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine* the Great; from whom it took its name. This Isle is so fertile, that it is observed no place in all *Europe* yields the like plenty; for with manuring and cultivating the Earth, it produceth excellent Fruits, which are here found all the year: It hath great store of *Barbary Hens*, *Feasants*, *Partridges*, *Pigeons*, *Quails*, *Peacocks*, with several sorts of small Birds in great plenty; it hath also *Goats*, *Swine*, &c. Yet this Isle is not inhabited, but serves for the *English*, *Portugals*, *Spaniards* and *Hollanders*, to refresh themselves in going, but for the most part in returning from the *Indies*; it being sufficient to furnish Ships with Provision for their Voyage; here being *Salt* to preserve the Meat from stinking; and besides, the Air is so healthful, that they often leave their sick people there, who in a short time are restored to perfect health; and by the next Ships that put in there, are taken in again. During which time, they find wherewithal to feed them: But some years ago, the *Hollanders* ruined all that was good, only to spite the *Spaniards*, who afterwards did the same, that the *English*, *Hollanders*, &c. might have no profit by it. This Island is well furnished with good Waters, which alone is a great refreshment to Ships.

Other Isles not inhabited. The Islands of *FERNAND POO*, St. *MATTHEWS*, and *ASCENSION*, are also not inhabited, and of no great account, nor much known; which we shall pass by, saying only, that they have some *Fowls*, *Wild Beasts*, and their Seas yield *Fishes*.

NUBIA.

Nubia and its bounds. *NUBIA* is bounded on the North, West and South, almost every where with Mountains; which separate it from the Desart of *Barca* and *Egypt* on the North; from *Saara* and the *Negroes*, on the West; aud from the *Abyssins*, on the South; the rest towards the East, is bounded in part by the *Nile* which separates it from the Isle of *Gueguere*; in part by an Imaginary Line, which separates it from divers Provinces; of which, some belong to the *Turks*; who hold all that is on the *Red Sea*, which they have taken from the *Abyssins*.

Its length and breadth. Its chief places *NUBIA* thus taken, makes a long square, whose length from South-West, to North-East, is about 400 Leagues; and its breadth from South-East, to North-West, almost every where, 200 Leagues. The chief Cities of *Nubia*, are, *Cusa*, *Gualva*, *Dançala*, *Jalac* and *Sula*, according to the *Arab* of *Nubia*: Moreover and in the same Author, I find that *Tamalma*, *Zaghara*, *Mathan*, *Angimi*, *Nuabia*, *Tagua*, and some others fall likewise in *Nubia*; and by some Authors *Gorham*, which some would put among the *Negroes*, should be likewise in *Nubia*, because it is on the *Nile*: There where it can have no communication with the *Negroes*, who ought to be upon, and about the *Niger*. Likewise *Damocla*, towards the *Negroes*, and *Bugia* towards *Egypt*, ought to be esteemed in *Nubia*.

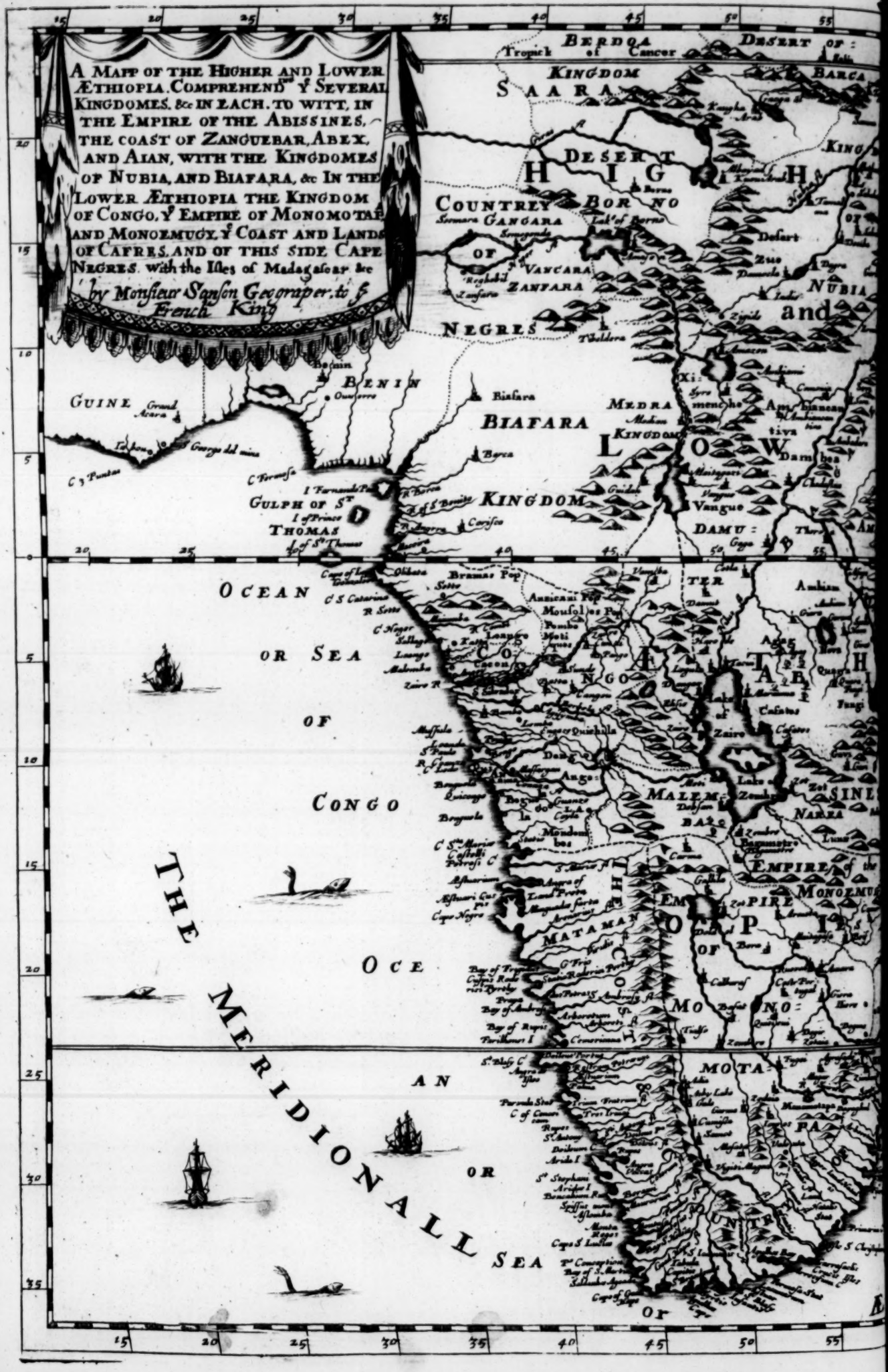
The City of *Gorham*. *Gorham* is on the *Nile*, and on the Coast of the Isle *Gueguere*. *Sanutus* makes a Kingdom, a Desart, and a People of this name, and extends them almost all the length of the Isle *Gueguere*; not making any mention of the City of this name, nor *John Leon* of *Africa*, nor the *Arab* of *Nubia*, nor *Vincent Blanck*, who saith, he hath been in these quarters, and speaks only of the Desart of *Gorham*. Other Authors make mention of this City, and describe it on the *Nile*. *Sanutus* saith, that there are found *Emeralds* in those Mountains, which bound *Gorham* on the South.

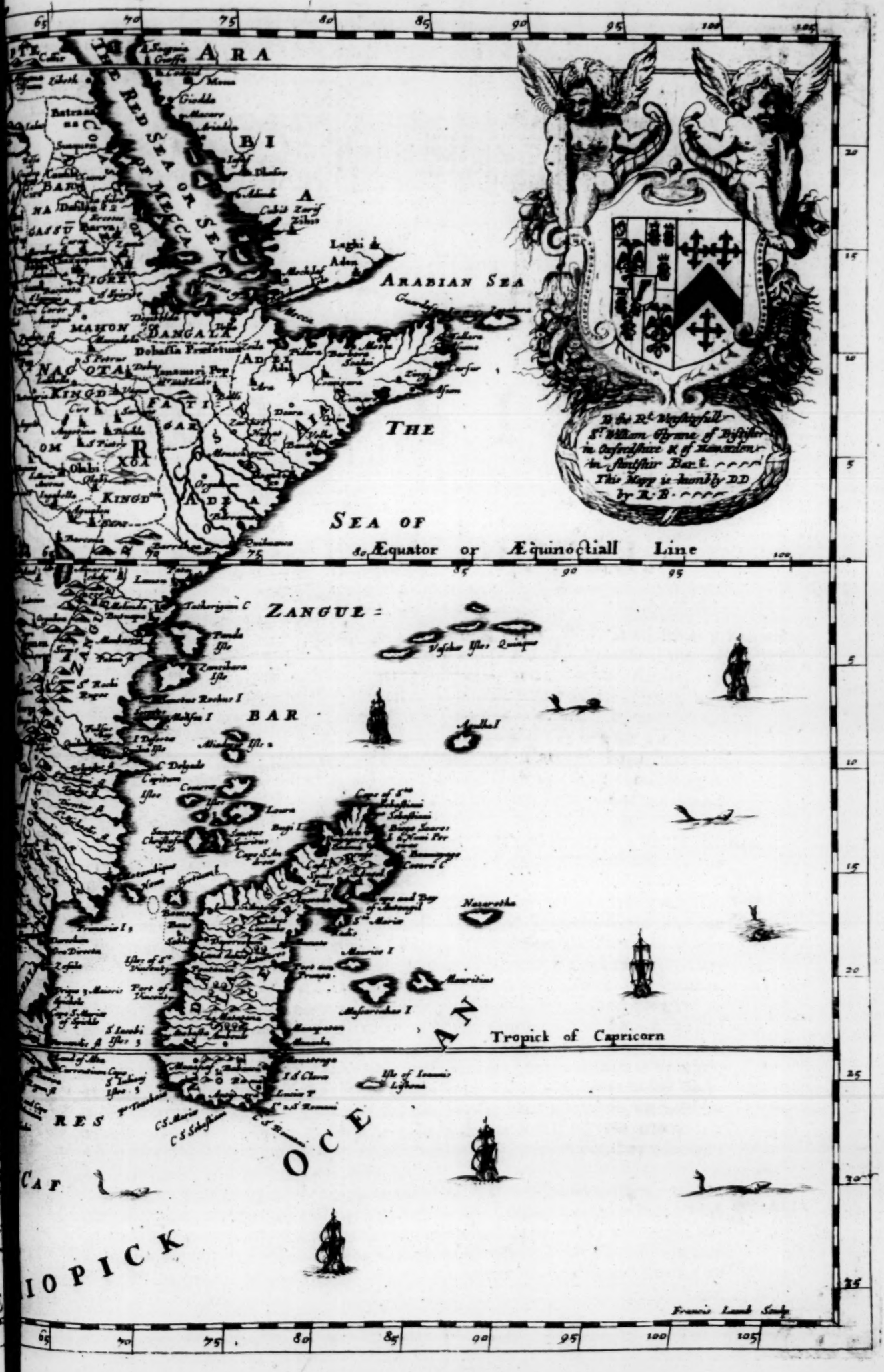
Except

Except only *Gorham*, the *Arab* of *Nubia* obſerves the diſtances between all the other Cities which we have taken notice of; and ſaith, that *Tamalma* hath many Inhabitants, no Walls; makes little account of *Mathan* and *Angimi*: Moreover, he eſteems *Mathan* the Reſidence of the King of *Canem*, who holds here many Cities; makes *Zaghara* better, and ſaith, it hath ſome Trade, *Tagua* and *Nubia* more, from which laſt the Region and People took their names. *John Leon* and *Sanutus* after him, eſteems *Dancala* or *Dangala*, the chief of the Kingdom, ſeated on the *Nile*, and that it hath about 10000 Families. And he ſaith, its Houſes are built with Chalk, and covered with Laths or Boards: The Inhabitants civil and rich, driving a good Trade through all *Egypt*, even to *Cairo*; whither they carry *Arms*, *Cloths*, *Civet*, *Sanders* and *Ivory*. They have a certain *Poyſon* worth 100 *Ducats* an *Ounce*, which they ſell only to ſtrangers, which promiſe not to uſe it in the Countrey. And alſo *Bugia* ſeated on the *Nile*, a City of ſome account and Trade; as is *Jalac*, *Gualva* and *Cuſa*, alſo ſeated on the *Nile*.

The Empire of the ABISSINES or the HIGHER ÆTHIOPIA, wherein are comprehended divers Kingdoms, Countreys, Coasts, Isles, &c. which may be considered as they lye

- Northernly and towards EGYPT, as
  - The Kingdom of NUBIA with its Estates and Cities of
    - Gorham,
    - Jalac,
    - Mathan,
    - Gualva,
    - Dancala,
    - Cuſa,
    - Zaghara,
    - Bugia,
    - Angimi,
    - Tamalma,
    - Sula,
    - Tagua.
- North-Eaſternly and towards the Red Sea, as
  - The Coaſt of ADEX which comprehendeth the
    - Kingdom of BARNAGASSO.
      - Suaquen,
      - Ercocco,
      - Carna,
      - Corberia,
      - Barva,
      - Zama.
    - ISLES of
      - Bahia,
      - Suaquem,
      - Mire,
      - Macruma,
      - St. Peitre.
  - The Coaſt of AJAN which comprehendeth the
    - Kingdom of ADEA
      - Brava,
      - Magadoxa,
      - Barraboa,
      - Quilmanca.
    - Kingdom of ADEL
      - Adel,
      - Zeila,
      - Barbora,
      - Meta.
    - ISLE of
      - Zocotora.
- Eaſternly and towards the Sea of ZANGUEBAR; as
  - The Coaſt of ZANGUEBAR with its Eſtates and Cities of
    - Mongale,
    - Chelicia,
    - Pate,
    - Lamon,
    - Angos,
    - Mongalo,
    - Melinda,
    - Mombaze,
    - Angos,
    - Quiloa.
    - Mozambique,
    - Darcelum.
  - ISLES about the Coaſt of ZANGUEBAR, as
    - Monfia,
    - Santus Rochus,
    - Zanzibara,
    - Penda.
- Southernly, Weſternly and towards the Kingdom of CONGO or the LOWER ÆTHIOPIA, where are the Kingdoms or Provinces of
  - TIGREMAHON
    - Chuxumum,
    - Saibana
  - ANGOTA
    - Angotina,
    - Bugano,
    - St. Maria.
  - XOA
    - Xoa.
  - FATIGARA
    - Mundinæ,
  - CANCALA
    - Degibeldara,
    - Degibelcora.
  - BAGAMEDRI
    - Chilcut,
    - Ermita,
    - Azuga,
    - Baza,
    - Machanda,
  - GOYAME
  - AMBIAN
    - Cemenia,
    - Ambiami,
    - Amaſen,
    - Syre.
  - DAMBEA
    - Ambadara,
    - Chedaſian.
  - VANGUE
    - Matagazi,
    - Vangue.
  - DAMOUT
    - Damute,
    - Harode,
    - Gaga.
  - AMARA
    - Amara,
    - Fungi,
    - Baræna,
    - Burn.
  - AMBIAM
    - Ambiam,
    - Therva,
    - Azuga,
    - Ougne,
    - Loſa,
    - Seſila,
    - Agola.
  - GEMEN
    - Gemen,
    - Dara,
    - Jaſlan.
  - GORGA
    - Gorga,
    - Bara,
    - Gafar.
  - GAVI-GASA
    - Gaſabella.
  - NAREA
    - Falaccia,
    - Gavi,
    - Zet.
  - GAFATES
    - Caſates,
    - Mauraua.
  - FUNGI
    - Fungi.
  - QUARA
    - Quara,
    - Nova.
  - AGAG
    - Agag,
    - Gorava,
    - Giarva.


A Mapp of the Higher and Lower Æthiopia. Comprehend Y Several Kingdomes. &c In Each. To Witt, In the Empire of the Abissines, the coast of Zanguebar, Abex, and Aian, with the Kingdomes of Nubia, and Biafara, &c In the Lower Æthiopia the Kingdom of Congo, Y Empire of Monomotapa and Monoemugy, Y Coast and Lands of Cafres. And of this side Cape Negres. with the Isles of Madagascar &c
by Monsieur Sanson Geograper. to Y French King
Tropick of Cancer
Berdoa
Desert of
Kingdom
Saara
Barca
Desert
Country
Bornu
Gangara
Vancara
Zanfara
Negres
Nubia and
Benin
Guinel
Biafara
Medra
Kingdom
Low
Damba
Kingdom
Vangue
Damu
Gulph of St Thomas
I of Prince
I of St Thomas
Ocean
or Sea
of
Congo
The Meridionall Sea
Ocean
or
Congo
Empire of
Monoemugi
Matamanna
Monomotapa
Empire of
Monomotapa
Monomo
Mota
Pa
Sinl
Narra
Zaire
Zaire R
Zaire
Zaire
Zaire


RED SEA OR SEA OF MECCA
ARABIAN SEA
THE
SEA OF
Æquator or Æquinoctiall Line
ZANGUE
Tropick of Capricorn
OCEAN
ETHIOPICK
To the Rt Worshipfull
Sr William Glynne of Bishopsh
in Oxfordshire & of Hawarden
in Flintshir Bart.
This Mapp is humbly DD
by R. B.
Francis Lamb Sculp

THE EMPIRE OF THE ABYSSINS, Or, THE Higher Æthiopia.

ABYSSIN, or the Empire of the *ABYSSINS*, is commonly called the Higher and Great *ÆTHIOPIA*; becauſe it makes the greateſt and better part of the one, and the other *Æthiopia*; and is the greateſt and moſt conſiderable Eſtate of all *Africa*, under one name. It extends it ſelf on this ſide, and beyond the *Equinoctial Line*; from the Mountains of the *Moon*, and the Springs of the *Nile*, even near unto *Egypt*; and from the Kingdoms, and Eſtates of *Congo*, and the *Negroes*, unto the Coaſts of *Zanguebar*, *Ajan* and *Habex*. Its greateſt length from South to North, is 800 Leagues. Its breadth from Weſt to Eaſt, 4, 5 and ſometimes 600, and in Circuit about 2500. Empire of the *Abiſſins*, its extent, length, & breadth.

Some divide this great Eſtate into many Kingdoms and Provinces, as are ſet down in the *Geopraphical Table* of the Higher *Æthiopia*; we ſhall obſerve the moſt known. Its parts.

BARNAGASSO ſignifies King of the *Sea*, becauſe formerly all this Kingdom or Government held all the Coaſt of the *Red Sea*, from *Egypt* unto the Kingdom of *Dancala*; which is 250 *Leagues*; At preſent the *Turks* hold this Coaſt, where are *Suaquen*, *Mezzua*, *Arquico* which we will deſcribe with *Zanguebar*, under the name of the Coaſt of *Habex*. *Barva* or *Daburova* is eſteemed the chief of *Barnagaſſo*; after which ſome put *Canſila*, *Daffila*, and *Emacen*: others eſteem *Canſila* and *Daffila* Provinces or Governments, and *Emacen* a City of the Government of *Daffila*, 20 *Leagues* from *Barva*; 50 from *Suaquen*. *Chaxumo* is the chief of *Tigre*; a fair City, and according to the common opinion, the Ordinary Reſidence of the Queen of *Sheba* or *Saba*, that came to ſee *Solomon*. Both the City and Quarter of *Sabain*, not far from *Chaxumo*, ſeem to retain the name. There are every where, here abouts, found a great many fair Churches: *Angotine* is a City in the Kingdom of *Angota*, and here they uſe *Salt*, or little pieces of *Iron* inſtead of *Money*. Kingdom of *Barnagaſſo* deſcribed.

The Kingdom of *AMARA* is famous, by reaſon of its Mountain, where the Children, and neareſt of Kinred to the *Grand Negus* are guarded: This Mountain is very high, of a great circuit, and whoſe approaches are very difficult, being craggy on all ſides, and eaſie to defend; which made this uſe be made of it, to keep thoſe which may cauſe any commotion in the Eſtate. The top of the Kingdom of *Amara* deſcribed.

the Mountain is formed into a great Plain, where there are fair *Buildings*, many *Ciſterns*, a rich *Monaſtery*, &c. Some ſpeak wonders of this Mountain, and that the *Grand Negus* being deceaſed, they take thence him who is the true interior, if he be capable to govern the Eſtate, if not the ſecond or third, &c. in order. Others ſay that there are no ſuch things as they put here, neither *Monaſtery*, *Library*, *Gold*, *Precious Stones*, &c.

Kingdom of *Bagamedri* with its Provinces &c. deſcribed.

BAGAMEDRI is ſubdivided into Provinces, like to *Tigre*; hath a greater extent, and ſhould be better, lying along the *Nile*. The Prince reſides often at *Dambea*, which is beyond the *Nile*, as well as *Damout*. Some place the Springs of the *Nile* in *Goyame*, others in *Caſates*. The one and the other Kingdom being about the Lake of *Zaire*. *Goyame* where this Lake reduces it ſelf into a River, which is the *Nile*: *Caſates* on one of the principal Rivers of thoſe that fall into the Lake; which apparently ſhould be called the *Nile*. *Narea* is between the Lake of *Zaire* and *Zafflan*; which are two Lakes, from whence deſcend the principal Rivers which make the *Nile*.

The Air fertility, commodities, &c. of the *Abiſſin*.

The Air of *Abiſſin* is very temperate conſidering its ſituation. *Tigremahon* particularly is eſteemed ſo, by reaſon of the Northern Winds which refreſh it. All the Country is in Plains, except ſome Mountains, which are eſpecially towards its bounds. The Soyl is generally good, fruitful in *Grains* and *Pulſe*, of which, it hath excellent, not known to us; they have few *Vines*, as alſo few *Herbs*, the *Graſſhoppers* much annoying them. The Land feeds many tame and wild *Beaſts*; and much *Fowl*, among others an infinite number of *Turtles*. Their *Rivers* have *Crocodiles* and *River-Horſes*, which they call *Gomaras*; it is a hardy *Fiſh*, and will aſſault men in the Water. It hath much *Metals*, as *Gold*, *Silver*, *Lead*, *Tin*; and the Mountains ſo full of *Sulphur*, that they may afford wherewith to make *Salt-peter* more then any Country in the World, *Tigremahon* hath *Mines* of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Copper* and *Sulphur*: *Damout* hath more *Gold*, then all the reſt: *Bagamedri* and *Goyame* hath likewiſe *Gold*.

Its People.

The *Inhabitants* are generally black; ſome more, ſome leſs; they are (for the moſt part) of a good ſtature, flat noſed, woolly haired, of a nimble ſpirit, and very jovial. They have ſcarce any thing of Literature, neither do they much deſire to attain to any. They *Coyn* neither *Gold* nor *Silver*, but receive it by weight. Some Authors make this Prince ſo rich, that there is ſcarce any in the World hath ſo much preſent *Gold* in his *Coffers*. *Sanutus* faith, that he once offered to the Kings of *Portugal* a Million of Drams of *Gold*, and as many men to exterminate the *Infidels*. And Queen *Helena* writing to *Emanuel* of *Portugal*, and ſpeaking for her Grand-child *David*, ſaith, that if the King of *Portugal* would furniſh them with 1000 Veſſels of *War* and *People* fit for the *Sea*, that ſhe would on her part, furniſh them with all things neceſſary for the *War*, and give them 200 Millions of *Gold*; and that ſhe had *Men*, *Gold* and *Proviſions*, in ſuch great number and plenty, as there were *Sands* in the *Sea*, or *Stars* in the *Firmament*.

Its Kings very rich and powerful.

Zaara, King of *Æthiopia*, led againſt *Aſa*, King of *Judah*, 90000 Foot, and 10000 Horſe; which are 100000 Men. *Pliny* eſteems the Iſle of *Meroes* alone have 250000 Men fit to bear Arms; and 400000 *Artiſans*. At preſent, the *Grand Negus* is held able to raiſe a Million of Men; and *Barnagas* alone to furniſh 200000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe. The Prince is always in the Field, and 5 or 6000 *Tents* attending on him, where are are *Churches*, *Hoſpitals*, *Shops*, *Taverns*, &c. which furniſhed with all things neceſſary for himſelf, and his Train.

There are ſcarce any *Fortreſſes* in the Countrey, except where Mountains of themſelves make them. The *Neighbors* to this Eſtate, are the *Turks*, who hold all the Coaſt of *Haber* on the *Red Sea*, the King of *Adel*, and ſome others, on the Coaſts of *Ajan* and *Zanguebar*; the *Monomotapa*, or the *Monoemugi*, towards the Mountains of the *Moon*; the *Congo*, or ſome Eſtates neighboring on *Congo*, and the *Negroes* towards the Weſt; ſome Kings of *Nubia*, towards the North. Except the *Turks*, the *Abiſſins* having no *Civil War*, can eaſily reduce the greateſt part of them to reaſon, or at leaſt, hinder them from moleſting him.

ZAN-

ZANGUEBAR.

UNder the name of *ZANGUEBAR*, I comprehend all the Coasts of the Higher *Æthiopia*: And these Coasts are on the *Æthiopian Ocean*, and the *Red Sea* or Gulph of *Arabia*. I subdivide them into three parts, the Coast of *Zanguebar*, the Coast of *Ajan*, and the Coast of *Abex*. The Coast of *Zanguebar* extends it self from the *Cafres* to under the *Equator*, for the space of 5 or 600 Leagues: That of *Ajan* is between the *Equator* and the Streight of *Bab-el-Mandel*, likewise 600 Leagues: The Coast of *Abex* advances from that Streight to *Egypt*, and hath not above 4000 Leagues. The first part was called by the Ancients *Barbaria Regio*, the second *Azania Regio*, and the last *Trogloditica Regio*. *Zanguebar*, its Coasts or Parts, and their Situation.

The particular Coast of *Zanguebar* towards the East regards some Isles, among which that of *Zanguebar*, which hath communicated its name to the Coast, and then those of *Penda* and *Monsia* are the best known. *Maffy* makes mention here of the Isle and City of *Querimba*, and *Texera* of *Anisa*; the one and the other possibly, answer to some of those which *Sanutus* calls St. *Rocq* and *Monsia*, which (he saith) are four Islands, two great and two small. *Zanguebar.*

Penda and *Zanguebar* are the greatest, and according to the form *Sanutus* gives them, are each of 100 Leagues circuit, *Monsia* 50, and the others much less. All, and particularly *Zanguebar*, produceth quantity of Grains, as *Rice*, *Millet*, &c. quantity of Fruits, as *Citrons*, *Oranges*, &c. and many *Sugar Canes*, which they know not how to refine; nor want they Fountains of fresh Water. *Aniza* and *Querimba* hath *Manna*, but not so much esteemed as that of other places. *Penda.*

On the Coast are the Estates or Kingdoms of *Mongale*, on one of the branches of *Cuama*, *Angos* or *Angouche*, on another Branch, or on another River of the same name, *Mozambique* Isle and City on the Coast, as likewise *Quiloa* and *Mombaze*. *Melinda* is no Isle, but on the Coast: so are *Lamon*, *Pate*, &c. *Mongalo* and *Angos* are little considerable; their Inhabitants black, *Mahometans* and *Pagans*; they traffick in *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Calicoes*, and *Silk*. The Isle and City of *Mozambique* is on that Coast of *Africa* which regards the Isle of *Madagascar* towards the East, and just between the Capes of *Good Hope* and *Guardafuy*, near 1000 Leagues from the one and the other, some account is made of this City and its Fort, for the goodness and depth of its Port, though small; but of a very important retreat for the Vessels of *Portugal*, after they have passed the Cape of *Good Hope*, where oft-times the Heat, or the working or motion of the Ship distempers many Men, who refresh themselves here, there being a very good Hospital, and a Magazin always furnished with what ever is needful, to finish their Voyage to the *East Indies*; this Port serving them going to the *Indies*, as the Isle of *Sancta Helena* doth in their return. The whole Isle is not above a League and half in circuit. Its City is not so beautiful as many have believed it, but of a good Trade, wealthy and well frequented by the *Portugals*. Its Castle is good, since it hath sustained divers Assaults of the *Hollanders*. The Soil is dry, hath none, or very little Fresh-water; but the great number of Fruits, as *Cocos*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, as others common to the *Indies*; and the quantity of Cattle, as *Oxen*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Hogs*, &c. which are found here, recompence these Inconveniences. Their *Figs* are long and large, being excellent and healthful. The Tree sprouts, and dies every year; it shoots forth but one Branch, where many *Figs* ripen one after another, so that they are found to continue almost all the year: the Leaves are so great, that two will cover a person of a moderate Stature: dying, it leaves a Root, which shoots forth another *Fig-Tree* the year after Isle and City of *Mosambique* described.

Their *Swines-fleſh* is ſo healthful, that Phyſicians order it for Sick people? Their *Pullain* are good and delicate, though their *Feathers*, *Fleſh*, *Blood*, and *Bones*, are very black, and if boiled in Water as black as *Ink*. Here they are ſaid to have *Sheep*, whoſe Tails weigh about 25 pound weight.

Kingdom of *Quiloa*, its chief places, &c.

QUILOA is 150 Leagues, or little more from *Mozambique*, in a ſtrait line: and near 250 by Sea: It hath two Cites, the Old and the new; the Old on the main Land, the New in an Iſland, divided from it by a ſmall Channel: This laſt is much the faireſt; its Houſes high, magnificent, and well furniſhed; accompanied with Gardens, where they gather excellent Fruits throughout the whole year. The Kings of *Quiloa* once commanded all the Coaſt into *Mozambique* and *Sofala*; but this Eſtate hath received a great change ſince the coming of the *Portugals* into theſe quarters. Its Inhabitants are yet rich, and have a great traffick for *Gold*, which they bring from the Main Land, where there is near as much as on the Coaſt of *Sofala*; as alſo *Silver*, *Ambergreece*, *Pearls* and *Musk*: They are part black, part white; theſe coming from *Arabia*, and are *Mahometans*; the others of the Natives are partly *Idolaters*: both the one and the other go clad after the *Arab* or *Turkiſh* manner; the richeſt wearing Cloaths of *Gold* and *Silver*, *Silks*, *fine Calicoes*, and *Scarlet*, inriching the Guards of their *Swords* and *Daggers* with fair *Pearls* and *Precious Stones*, as the Women do their *Ear-Pendants* and *Bracelets*. They are very comly, of a civil behaviour, neat in their Houſes, and love to go in rich Apparel. Here the People are obſerved to uſe a ſtrange cuſtom to thoſe of the Female Sex, which is not uſed by any other Nation or People, ſave themſelves; which is that they ſow up the Privy-parts of the Female Children, only leaving a ſmall vent for the iſſuing forth of their Urine. And thus ſowed, they keep them carefully at home until they be married; and thoſe that are by their Husbands found not to have this ſign of their *perpetual Virginity*, are ſent to their Parents with all kind of ignominy, and by their Parents are as diſgracefully received. The Country, though unhealthful to the *Europeans*, ought to be eſteemed good, ſince the Inhabitants are rich, the Soil fruitful in *Grains* and *Fruits*, feeding many *Beaſts* and *Fowl*. Its Foreſts full of Game, and its Neighbouring Sea full of excellent Fiſh.

Its People.

The Iſle and City of *Mombaze*.

MOMZAMBE is 150 Leagues from *Quiloa*, ſeated on a little Hill, and an in Iſland, at the bottom of a Gulph, where great Ships may ride ſafe at Anchor. This City was formerly great, being about a League in circuit, encompaſſed with a ſtrong Wall, and fortified with a good Caſtle; well Peopled, of a good Trade; its Streets in good order, and its Houſes high, and well built with *Stone* and *Chalk*, appearing almoſt all towards the Sea. It was found out when *Vaſco de Gama* was in the *Indies*, and afterwards taken and retaken divers times by the *Portugals*, who keep a Fort by reaſon of the goodneſs of the Haven, and to maintain their trade. The Iſle of *Mombaze* is but ſmall.

The Kingdom of *Melinda* deſcribed.

MELINDA is another Kingdom, but of a ſmall extent; yet made conſiderable by the good intelligence it hath always preſerved with the *Portugals*. Since *Vaſco de Gama* paſſed there the firſt time in 1489, until this preſent, which hath ſtood it in good ſtead; the Neighbouring States having been taken, pillaged, and burned divers times. This kept entire, maintaining its Trade with the *Portugals*, and with the Eaſt: Its chief City bears the name of the Kingdom, ſeated in a fruitful and delightful Soil, yielding great plenty of *Rice*, *Millet*, *Fleſh*; good ſtore of Fruits, as *Lemmons*, *Citrons*, *Oranges*, *&c.* But not well furniſhed with *Corn*, the greateſt part whereof is brought out of *Cambaya*, a Province in *India*. This City is fair, well Walled, and the Houſes built after the *Mooriſh* manner, with many Windows and Terraſſes. The Inhabitants on the Sea Coaſts are of the *Arabian* breed, and of the ſame Religion. Thoſe of the Inlands, which are the Original Natives, are for the moſt part *Heathens*, and of an *Olive colour*, but inclining to *white*; and their *Women* of a very *white Complexion*, as in other places. They are ſaid to be more civil in their Habit, Courſe of life, and entertainment in their Houſes,

Its People.

Houſes, than the reſt of this Country; and great Friends to the *Portugals*, who return the like kind uſage to them. This Kingdom of *Melinda* is not diſtant from *Mombaza* above 30 Leagues by Land, and 60 by Sea; whoſe People are of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with thoſe of *Melinda*.

The Eſtates of *LAMON*, *PATE*, and *CHELICIA*, and likewiſe ſome others, are under the Government of *Melinda*. *Panebaxira*, King of *Lamon*, and Brother to the King of *Chelicia*, ſurprized in 1589 *Roch Brito*, Governour of *Melinda*, and ſome other *Portugals*, whom they ſold to the *Turks*. The Admiral *Thomas Souſa Cotinho* aſſaulted them, took, and cut off the Head of the King of *Lamon*, quartered the others, and hung them up in divers places to ſerve for example. Theſe Kings are almoſt all *Mahometans*; yet here are found ſome few *Chriſtians* which inhabit among them. Eſtates of *Lamon*, *Pati*, and *Chelicia*.

We have obſerved on the Coaſt of *Zanguebar* but five or ſix different Eſtates or Kingdoms; there are ſome others, but of leſſer note, and all Tributary, or in good Intelligence, and trading with the *Portugals*.

The Coaſt of *AJAN* contains the Republick of *BRAVA*, which *Sanutus* calls *Barraboa*; then the Kingdoms of *MAGADOXA*, *ADEA*, and *ADELL*: ſome of their People on the Coaſt are White. *BRAVA* is well built, an indifferent Mart; rich, and pays Tribute to the *Portugals*. It is the only Republick at preſent in *Africa*, being governed by 12 Councellors or Stateſmen. *MAGADOXA* is its chief City, and hath ſometimes been ſo powerful, that it ruled over all this Coaſt; it is ſcituate in a delightful and fruitful Soil, and neighboured by a ſafe and large Haven, which is much frequented by the *Portugals*, and is very rich, affording *Gold*, *Hony*, *Wax*, and above all *Abyſſin* Slaves, which by the *Portugals* are held in great value; for which they bring them in exchange the *Silks*, *Spices*, *Drugs*, &c. of *India*. The Coaſt of *Ajan* deſcribed.

ADEA extends it ſelf but little towards the Sea: The Country is fertil in Grains, as *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Rice*, &c. It is well ſhaded with Woods and large Forreſts, which are plentifully furniſhed both with Fruits and Cattle, beſides a great increaſe of *Horſes*. The Inhabitants are of the *Mahometan* Religion, and follow the *Arabians* in many of their Cuſtoms, from whom they were deſcended, keeping much of their Language, and in their Habit naked, ſave only from the middle downwards. Of Complexion, for the moſt part of an *Olive colour*, and well proportioned; not very expert in Arms, except in poyſoned Arrows. Its other chief places are *Barraboa* and *Quilmanca*, ſeated on the Sea, which is called the Coaſt of *Ajan*, as is *Magadoxa*. Its People.

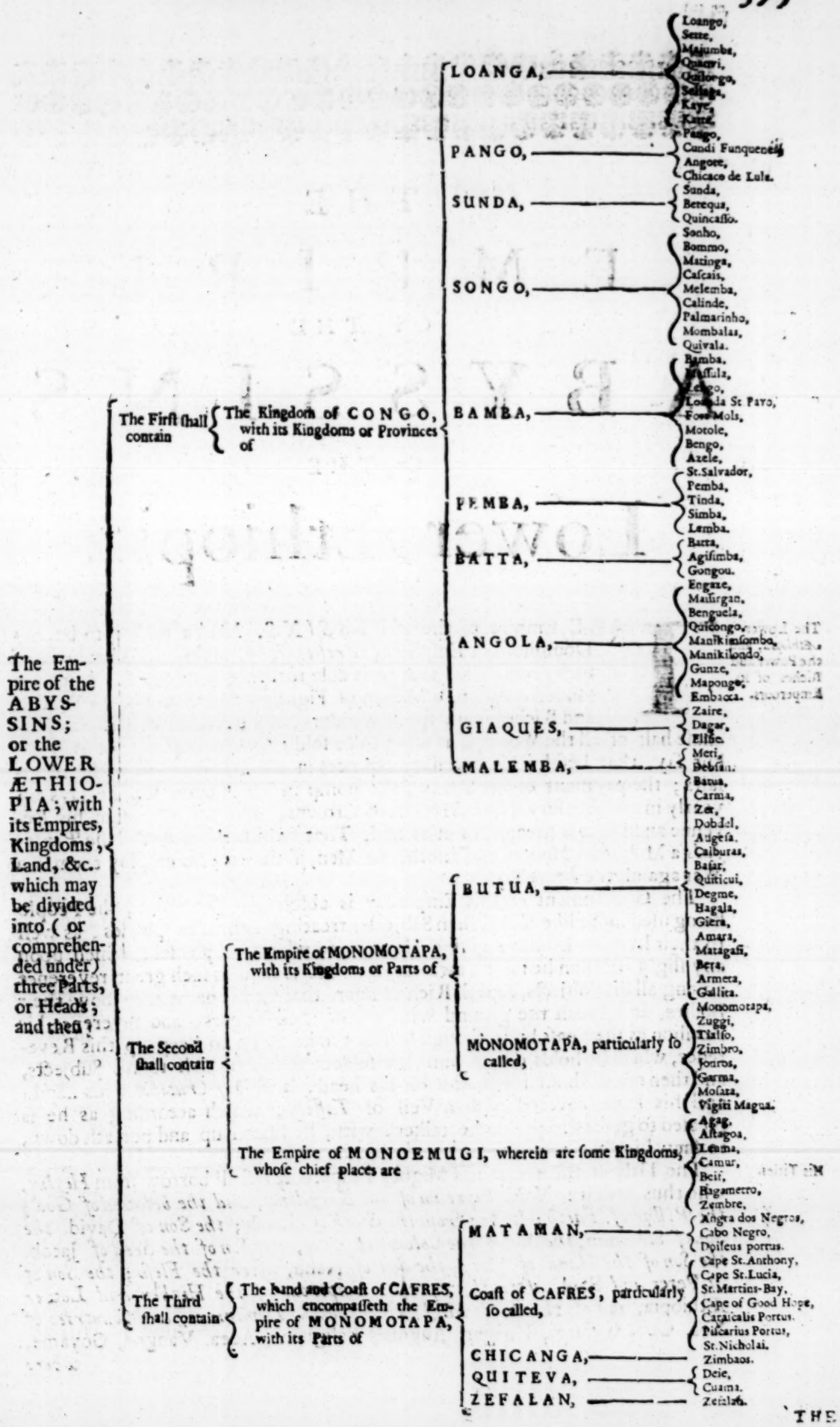
ADELL within theſe few years is become the moſt powerful of all theſe Kingdoms: Its Eſtates extending both on the *Arabian* Gulph or *Red Sea*, and on the Great *Ocean*, ſtretching 200 Leagues on each ſide; Cape *Guardafuy* ending both the one and the other towards the Eaſt, regards in the Sea the Iſle of *Zocotora*, famous for the quantity and goodneſs of the *Aloes* here gathered, which they call *Zocotorin*; about which are ſeveral other Iſles, but not ſo conſiderable, being ſmall, and many not inhabited. The *Arab* of *Nubia* would make us believe, that *Alexander* the Great was in this Iſland, drove thence the Inhabitants, and planted *Greeks* the better to manage the *Aloes*, which *Ariſtotle* had ſo much prized to him. Its chief City takes its name from the Kingdom; its others places of moſt note are, 1. *Zeila*, of old, *Avalis*, and its Gulph *Avalatis Sinus*, is one of the beſt places of the Kingdom of *Adell*, though about the City there wants Water; yet the Country farther off furniſhes *Wheat*, *Barley*, *Millet*, *Oil* of *Seſamum*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Fruits*, *Gold*, *Ivory*, and *Incenſe*. They ſell to the *Turks* and *Arabs* abundance of *Abyſſin* Slaves, which they take in War; and in exchange receive *Arms*, *Horſes*, &c. This *Zeila* is a noted Port Town, well frequented with Merchants, by reaſon of the variety of good Commodities that it yields. Once of great beauty and eſteem, till in the year 1516 it was ſacked and burned by the *Portugals*; before which it was eſteemed the moſt remarkable Empire of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* Trade. 2. *Barbora*, and 3. *Meta*, are two of the moſt noted Sea-Port Towns in all *Adell*, both under the *Turks* Juriſdiction. The firſt is ſeated on the ſame Sea Coaſt, as *Zeila* is, well frequented

by Merchants, nigh to a lofty Promontory, which they call Mount *Fellez*: And the laſt is ſeated near the Cape of *Guardafuy*. The People inhabiting on the Sea Coaſts are deſcended from the *Arabs*, and of the *Mahometan* Religion; but thoſe towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Æthiopick* Race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

The Coaſt of *Abex*, with its chief places and Iſles.

The Coaſt of *ABEX* hath for its principal places, *Aquico*, of old *Magnum Littus*, *Maczuma* Iſle, *Macaria Inſula*, and *Suaquem Ptolomais Ferarum*. The *Turk* hath a *Baſſa* at *Suaquem*, and ſome ſay another at *Maczuma* or *Aquico*. *Suaquem* is in the midſt of the Coaſt of *Africa*, which lies on the *Red Sea* or *Arabian* Gulph, diſtant from *Sues* in *Egypt*, which ends this Gulph, 250 and odd Leagues; and from *Babel-Mandel*, which begins it, 260, or little more: So the Authority of this *Baſſa* extends almoſt quite over this Sea. The Iſle of *Maczuma* hath good Paſtures, feeds much Cattle: *Aquico* is almoſt oppoſite to *Maczuma*, and both have commodious Havens. Its other chief places are, *Canſila*, *Daffila*, *Emacen*, *Barba*, *Zama*, *Corberia*, and *Carna*. About this Coaſt of *Abex* are ſeveral other Iſles, as *Bahia de Cabras*, *Suaquem*, *Mire*, *Meger*, *Ballaccia*, *Maczua*, *St. Peitre*, with ſeveral others not worth the naming.

All this Coaſt of *Abex* hath been under the Government of *Bernagaſſo* in *Abyſſin*, and belonged not to the *Turk* till within this hundred years. A Country dry, untilled, but of ſome Trade: the People fierce, retaining much of their ancient Barbariſm. They Fiſh *Coral* near the Iſle of *Suaquem* and *Aquico*; they frequently paſs from *Suaquem* to *Ziden*, in *Arabia*, which ſerves for a Port to *Mecca*, and is about 100 Leagues over. This is the Traject which the *Arab* of *Nubia* deſcribes between *Adhab* and *Giodda*, which anſwer to *Suaqnem* and *Ziden*.


The Empire of the ABYSSINS; or the LOWER ÆTHIOPIA; with its Empires, Kingdoms, Land, &c. which may be divided into (or comprehended under) three Parts, or Heads; and then
The First shall contain
The Kingdom of CONGO, with its Kingdoms or Provinces of
LOANGA,
Loango, Sette, Majumba, Quanvi, Quilongo, Sellaga, Kayo, Kame.
PANGO,
Pango, Cundi Funqueneé, Angote, Chicaco de Lula.
SUNDA,
Sunda, Berequa, Quincaſſo.
SONGO,
Sonho, Bommo, Matinga, Caſcais, Melemba, Calinde, Palmarinho, Mombalas, Quivala.
BAMBA,
Bamba, Muſſula, Lenge, Loanda St Paul, Foss-Mols, Motole, Bengo, Azele.
PEMBA,
St. Salvador, Pemba, Tinda, Simba, Lemba.
BATTA,
Batta, Agiſimba, Gongou.
ANGOLA,
Engaze, Maſurgan, Benguela, Quiſcongo, Manikimſomba, Manikilondo, Gunze, Mapongo, Embacca.
GIAQUES,
Zaire, Dagar, Elire.
MALEMBA,
Meri, Debſan.
The Second ſhall contain
The Empire of MONOMOTAPA, with its Kingdoms or Parts of
BUTUA,
Banua, Carma, Zer, Dobdel, Angeſa, Caiburas, Baſar, Quiticui, Degme, Hagala, Giera, Amara, Matagaſi, Beta, Armeta, Gallita.
MONOMOTAPA, particularly ſo called,
Monomotapa, Zuggi, Tiaſſo, Zimbro, Jouros, Garma, Moſara, Vigiti Magua.
The Empire of MONOEMUGI, wherein are ſome Kingdoms, whoſe chief places are
Agag, Altagoa, Lema, Camur, Beir, Bagametro, Zembre.
The Third ſhall contain
The Land and Coaſt of CAFRES, which encompaſſeth the Empire of MONOMOTAPA, with its Parts of
MATAMAN,
Angra dos Negros, Cabo Negro, Doiſeus portus.
Coaſt of CAFRES, particularly ſo called,
Cape St. Anthony, Cape St. Lucia, St. Martins-Bay, Cape of Good Hope, Cataficalis Portus, Piſcarius Portus, St. Nicholai.
CHICANGA,
Zimbaos.
QUITEVA,
Deie, Cuama.
ZEFALAN,
Zefalo.

THE

THE EMPIRE OF THE ABYSSINS, Or, THE Lower Æthiopia.

The Lower *Æthiopia*, and the Power and Riches of its Emperours.

THE Empire of the *ABYSSINS*, *Heylin* makes to be the Dominions or Empire of *Preſter John*, and ſaith, That he is of ſuch great force, that he is able to bring into the Field upon a ſudden occaſion, a Million of Fighting Men; and of his Wealth and Riches many ſpeak wonders, ſome ſaying he is able to purchaſe half of all the World, if it were to be ſold: Others make it not ſo great, but ſay, that beſides his neceſſary expences in the management of State Affairs; the payment of his Army, the pomp in his Court, &c. he lays up yearly in his Treaſury Three Millions of Crowns. But without doubt his Revenue and Force is great; for it is ſaid, That he himſelf proffered the *Portugals* a Million of Money, and another of Men, if they would employ them in a War againſt the *Infidels*.

The Government of this Emperour is abſolutely Tyrannical, the People being uſed more like Slaves than Subjects, treating them as he pleaſes, as well to their lives as Eſtates; giving Honours to whom he pleaſes, which upon any ſlight occaſion he taketh away again. He is held in ſuch great reverence among all his Subjects, as well Rich as Poor, that at his name they bow their Bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his Pavilion as they paſs by it, though he is not in it. And to keep up this Reverence, which he holds due to him, he ſeldom ſhews himſelf to his Subjects, and then not without his *Crown* on his head, a *Silver Crucifix* in his hand, and his Face covered with a Veil of *Taffety*, which according as he is pleaſed to grace the perſon he talketh with, he lifteth up and putteth down, to ſhew him his Face.

His Titles.

The Title of this Great and Mighty Emperour, I ſhall borrow from *Heylin*, who thus hath it: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of God; the Pillar of Faith; ſprung from the Stock of* Judah; *the Son of* David, *the Son of* Solomon, *the Son of the Colomn of* Sion, *the Son of the Seed of* Jacob, *the Son of the Hand of* Mary, *the Son of* Nahu, *after the Fleſh; the Son of St.* Peter *and* Paul, *after the Spirit: Emperour of the Higher and Lower* Æthiopia, *and of the moſt Mighty Kingdoms, Dominions, and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Caffares, Fatigar, Angotæ, Balignazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyame,

where

where the Fountains of Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vagucum, Tigremean, Sabaim, *the Birth-place of the Queen of* Sheba; Bernagaſſum; *and Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of* Egypt.

They profeſs the *Chriſtian Religion*, which was firſt made known unto them by the Eunuch of Queen *Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangeliſt*, and more generally received by the Preaching of St. *Matthew* the Apoſtle. Since which they have much ſwerved from the purity of the true Religion, by their many corrupt Opinions which are crept in amongſt them; as they uſe Circumciſion both to their *Males* and *Females*, when they are Children; and they Baptize their *Males* 40 days, and their *Females* 80 days after Circumciſion: That Infants dying unbaptized, are ſanctified by the Womb, by vertue of the *Euchariſt* which the Mother receives after her Conception: They adminiſter the *Euchariſt* to Infants, preſently after they are Baptized. They Baptize themſelves in *Ponds* and *Lakes* every *Epiphany-day*, as ſuppoſing that to be the day that *John* Baptized *Chriſt* in *Jordan*. They hold, that the reaſonable Soul of Man is derived from their *Firſt Parents* by Seminal Propagation. They acknowledge but one Nature, and one Will in *Chriſt*. After the receiving of the Sacrament, they hold it unfitting to Spit until Sun-ſet. Thoſe *Beaſts* which in the *Old Law* are held unclean, are ſo eſteemed with them. They keep their *Sabbath-day* on *Saturdays*: they allow their *Prieſts* no yearly means or ſtipends, neither do they ſuffer them to beg; but they are forced to get their livelyhoods by the ſweat of their brows, and labour of their hands. They accept only of the three firſt *General Councils*. They have moreover a Book, which is writ in eight Volumes (and as they ſay) by the Apoſtles aſſembled at *Jeruſalem* for that purpoſe, the Contents thereof they moſt ſtrictly keep. Their Religion.

We have divided *ÆTHIOPIA* into the Higher and Lower; eſteemed the Higher, that which is towards the North and the Eaſt; the Lower, that which is towards the South and Weſt. We have ſuccinctly diſcourſed of the Parts of the Higher, proceed we now to the Lower.

This Lower *ÆTHIOPIA* extends it ſelf from the River of the *Camarones*, where the bottom of the Gulph of St. *Thomas* is, and ſo turning about the Capes of *Negro*, *Bona Eſperanza*, and *Des Carientes*, into the River of *Cuama*; which bounds it from *Zanguebar*, part of the Higher *Æthiopia*, as the other doth from the Kingdom of *Benim*, part of *Guiny*, which is in *Libya Interior*. We have likewiſe ſubdivided this Lower *Æthiopia* into three parts, *viz.* into *Congo*, *Monomotapa*, and the Country of the *Cafres*. We may yet ſubdivide theſe three Parts, each into two others, which will make ſix. The firſt ſhall be what is between *Guiny* and *Congo*; the ſecond, *Monomotapa* and *Mono-Emugi*; and the laſt, the Land of *Cafres* on this ſide, and Weſtward; and the Land of *Cafres* beyond, and Eaſtward of the Cape of *Good Hope*. Between *Guiny* and the Kingdom of *Congo* there are divers Kingdoms, and divers People: The *Ambofins* and *Camarones* are on the Sea; then the Kingdoms of the *Capones*, the Country of *Angra*, the three Kingdoms of *Cacombo*, *Gabom*, and *Pongo*; of which this laſt is moſt powerful. Among theſe Eſtates are the Capes of *Lopo Gonſalves*; up in the Land are the Kingdoms of *Biafra*, *Medra*, *Dauma*, &c. Lower *Æthiopia*, its extent and bounds. Its diviſion and parts.

The Land of *AMBOSINS* and *CAMARONES*, are near the River of *Camarones*; a Country very fertil. The Lands of *Capones* and *Angra* are pleaſant, becauſe of the many freſh Streams which water them. The firſt are poor, the *Capones* are malicious, thoſe of *Angra* addicted to Arms. The Eſtates or Kingdoms which are about the Cape of *Gonſalves*, have their People of the ſame Tongue, the ſame Religion (who are Idolaters,) and the ſame Manners; and their Kings and Lords are in peace, and in good intelligence with one another: Thoſe neareſt the Sea are the moſt courteous and civil, by reaſon of the confluence of Strangers; and when they trade with thoſe of *Europe*, they white their Faces with Chalk; their beautiful Garments are made of *Mats*, tiſſued with the Rind of certain Trees, and properly accommodated. Thoſe of *Biafra* more advanced in Land, are very barbarous, addicting Its People.

addicting themselves to *Witchcrafts*, and sometimes sacrificing their Children to Devils. Those of *Medra*, *Dauma*, and some others further off, are almost quite unknown, and possibly not worth regard. The *Portugals* traded here alone a long time, and possessed several Parts on this Coast: within few years the *Hollanders* have taken divers places from them, some of which they have since retaken.

The Kingdom of CONGO.

Kingdom of *Congo*, with its Parts or Kingdoms described.

BEyond the *Equinoctial Line* and unto Cape *Negro*, lies the Kingdom of *CONGO*, under the name of which we comprehend many others, which have been Subjects, Tributaries, or Allies to the King of *Congo*; as are the Kingdoms of *Loanga* and the *Anziquaines*, to the North; of *Cacongo*, and the People *Gallas* or *Giaquas*, to the East; of *Angola*, *Malemba*, *Matamam*, and others, to the South.

Kingdom of *Loango* described.

The Kingdom of *LOANGA* hath its principal City of the same name; others say, *Banza Loango*, or simply *Banza*; it is seated on the Sea, as is *Quilongo*, *Quanvi*, and *Majumba*. It comprehends six Provinces, and is throughout indifferent fertil in Grains; affords excellent Fruits, Wine of *Palms*; breeds many Cattle, and all things necessary for life is found here; it is well stored with *Elephants*, having more than any other Country in these parts; they have quantity of *Ivory*, but have neither *Gold* nor *Silver*. The Country is very hot, by reason of its lying under the Line; but indifferent healthful and well peopled. Their King once subject, writes himself now but *Ally* to the King of *Congo*, and is called *Mani-Loango*, and the Governours of the six Provinces, likewise *Mani*, that is, *Lord* of such or such a Province. Their Subjects are all *Bramas*, who by Religion are *Heathens*.

Kingdom of *Congo*, and its Provinces.

The Kingdom of *CONGO* may be said to be the fairest of the Lower *Æthiopia*, though those of the *Monomotapa*, and *Mono-Emugi*, have more extent, yet hath he alwaies been esteemed the most Polite; hath had all his neighbours Subjects, and the most part yet his Allies. It may have in length 200 Leagues, and about 120 on the Coast. It is subdivided into six great Provinces, to wit, *Bamba*, *Songo*, *Sunda*, *Pango*, *Batta*, and *Pemba*: which together hath 30 or 40000 little Towns.

Songo, *Sunda* and *Pango* lies upon, and mounting from the Sea up the River *Zaire*. *Bamba*, *Pemba* and *Batta* are towards the River of *Coanza*, and the Lake of *Aquilonda*; these three last making the most Southern parts, the three other the most Northern of the Kingdom: and all take their names from the principal places where the Governours of the Provinces reside.

Bamba.

The Country of *BAMBA* is well stored with *Beasts* and *Birds*, both tame and wild; well watered with Rivers, hath Mines of *Silver*, and its People exceeding strong. Its chief places are, *Bamba*, on the River *Loze*; *Motole*, on the River *Dorati*; *Bengo*, also *Pavo*, *Lengo*, and *Mussulo*, on the Sea.

Songo.

SONGO lies on both sides the River *Zaire*, which sends forth many turbulent Streams, and hath so many Islands that one part of it hath very little to do with the other; its chief places are *Sonho*, nigh to *Cape de Pedro*, and on a branch of the *Zaire*; also *Bommo*, *Mativga*, *Cabinde*, *Malemba*, and *Cascais*, which three last are on the Sea.

Sunda.

SUNDA is indifferent fertil, hath several rich Mines of Metals, among the rest the Inhabitants set the greatest esteem upon *Iron*, by reason that of it they make their Materials for War; it is parted by the *Zaire*. This Country furnishes forreign Merchants with several rich *Furs*, as *Sables*, *Martrons*, &c. Its several chief places are, *Sunda*, *Betequa*, *Iri*, and *Quincasso*.

Pango.

PANGO is but barren, its Inhabitants barbarous, but strong in Arms: Its chief places are *Pango*, *Candi-Funquenes*, and *Angote*; and this Country is watered with the River *Zaire*.

BATTA

BATTA is also of a barren Soil, and its People also barbarous, but indifferent well skill'd in Arms; and that being forced to it rather to defend themselves, than to offend others. Its chief places are *Batta*, *Agisymba*, and *Gongou*. *Batta.*

PEMBA is held to be the richest and pleasantest Province of all *Congo*, being very fertil in *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. hath good Water; the Air is healthful; the Inhabitants, since the *Portugals* sat footing there, are become very civil, imitating them both in Behaviour and Apparel. Its chief City called *Banza*, that is, the Court, and which the *Portugals* call St. *Salvador*, is the residence of the King, seated on an eminence, which discovers the Country on all sides. This scituation together with its being in the middle of the Estate, gives it a great advantage; some esteem it to have 10000 Inhabitants, others 100000: possibly those understand 10000 Families, and those 100000 Souls; for the King being powerful, and his Court always great, there cannot but be multitudes. The Isle and City of *Loanda*, on the Coast of *Bamba*, were not long since in the hands of the *Portugals*; now the *East India* Company of the *United Provinces* have seized it. Its other chief places are *Simba*, *Pemba*, on the River *Danda*, *Lemba* and *Tinda*. *Pemba.* Its chief places.

The most famous Rivers of this Kingdom are the *Zaire*, the *Lelunda*, the *Danda*, and the *Coanza*; the three last descend from the Lake of *Aquilonda*; the *Zaire* from the Lake of *Zaire*, from whence descends likewise the *Nile*; the *Zaire* hath 400 Leagues course, is very rapid, by reason of the many Cataracts or great falls which it hath from the Mountains; at its entrance into the Estates of *Congo* it enlarges it self much, embraces quantity of Islands, and at its Mouth hath no less than 8 or 10 Leagues breadth, yet presses its Waters 15 or 20 Leagues farther into the Sea, and that with so great a violence, that its Waters retain their natural sweetness, without being corrupted or intermingled with the Salt-waters of the Sea. The Rivers *Danda* and *Coanza* are Navigable, and receive great Ships. The Isle of *Loanda* is near the Mouth of the last: It is observed, that when the Sea is high the Springs of Running-water are fresh, and when the Sea falls they become salt. The chief Rivers of *Congo.*

The *Congolans* are naturally very sweet and easie, able and strong, but dull and idle: they will not take the pains to tame Beasts for service, nor to employ their fine Stones in Buildings, nor make their Birds of Prey for Hawking; yet make they curious *Cloths*, *Velvets*, *Damasks*, *Brocats*, &c. They have no harmony in their Instruments of Musick, but a confused mixture of many cords or strings and many Voices content them; their Money is of *grey shells*, taken on the Coast of the Province of *Bamba*, and these Shells (especially the Females) are much esteemed, even in other Kingdoms, and almost through all *Æthiopia*. Their *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Waters*, *Fowl*, Sea and River *Fish* are excellent. They have store of *Elephants*, Mines of *Silver*, *Iron*, *Chrystal*, *Marble*, *Jaspar*, *Porphyre*, &c. They know not their Histories but by the Reigns of their Kings, and without specifying the time, for they have no Letters, much less Learning; and hereupon some would make us believe, that *Emanuel* of *Portugal* having sent a famous Ambassador into *Congo* with many Presents, among others three fair Books excellently bound, and which contained the *Cannons*, the *Laws Imperial*, the *Ordinances*, *Civil Right*, the *Infortiate*, the *Rubricks*, &c. and with these Books, many Doctors of Law to teach the knowledge of them; and when the King of *Congo* did understand the subject that these fair Books contained, and knew the profession of the Doctors, he was so surprized that he remained sometime silent; but in the end he caused these Books to be burned, saying, *That he feared they would overthrow the very foundation of his Estate; and that he contented himself to judge according to reason, and need no other Interpreter than Common sense*; but withal protesting, *that he would remain a good and intire Friend to* Emanuel *King of Portugal*; and so sent back his Doctors. The Author of the Essay of the *Wonders of Nature* applies this story to the King of the *Abyssins*: It is much at one; let us return to *Congo*. Its People. Its Fertility.

They ſay, that the Province of *Bamba* can furniſh at a need 400000 ſtrong and Warlike men; the other Provinces are no leſs, nor poſſibly worſe peopled than this, but leſs addicted to Arms. This being eſteemed the Bulwark of the Kingdom, affected to the ſervice of their Prince, and ſo ſtrong, that at one blow of a Sword they can ſtrike off an *Oxes head*, or cut a Slave in two. Their *Elephants* are ſo great, that ſome of their Teeth are found to weigh 200 *l.* and they make ſuch eſteem of their Tails when they are old, that ſometimes they exchange three Slaves for one Tail. They make of them divers Ornaments and Cords for their Inſtruments of Muſick. The Kingdom falls only to the Males, and in default of Legitimates to Baſtards: to ſhun all proceſs, all Riches belong to the King, who diſpoſes of them to whom he pleaſes, keeping to himſelf a certain Revenue. Chriſtianity hath been introduced about 150 years ago, but not without much difficulty in its beginning.

Eſtate of *Cacongo.*

Eaſt of *Congo*, and South of *Anziquaines*, is the Eſtate of *CACONGO*; and South of *Cacongo* are the *Giaques* or *Jaggas*, which the *Abyſſins* call *Gallas*, and others *Imbagolas*. Theſe People are Vagabonds, Cruel, Men-eaters, like to the *Anziquaines* and *Moceveies*, living only on what they ſteal from their Neighbours. The great *Jagge* diſpoſes abſolutely, both of their *Idolatry* and their *War*.

Kingdom of *Angola.*

The Kingdom of *ANGOLA*, once *Abonda*, is between *Congo* on the North, *Mataman* on the South, *Malemba* on the Eaſt, and the Sea on the Weſt. This Kingdom hath 100 Leagues of Coaſt, to wit, from the 10*th* unto the 4*th* degree of *Meridional Latitude*; and that which continues unto *Cape Negro*, and belongs to divers Lords, tributary to it. The principal City of the Country is *Engaze*, and likewiſe *Dongo*, which Modern Authors place at the meeting of many Rivers: It is 75 or 80 Leagues from the Sea. The Mountains of *Cambamba*, rich in Mines of *Silver*, are in this Country, which the *Portugals* cauſe to be laboured. Its other chief places are *Maſſirgan*, on the River *Coanza*; *Benguela*, ſeated on the Sea, on the Bay of *Thora*; and *Quicongo*, a Sea-Port Town.

Its Trade.

Through the whole Country there is a great traffick for *Slaves*, 20 or 25000 yearly being tranſported from the Port of *Loanda*. There are ſuch multitudes in this Kingdom, that the *Grand Soba* (as they ſay) can in a moment raiſe 100000 Men; and that in *Anno* 1584, he raiſed 1200000. In *Anno* 1585, 600000. Yet theſe laſt were put to flight by 200 *Portugals* at the head of 10000 *Æthiopians*. The firſt by 150 *Portugals* at the head of 8 or 10000 *Congolans*, which may make us judge of the goodneſs of their Militia.

The Kingdom is divided into *Provinces* or *Mirindes*, which have each their *Sobas*, which a 100 years ago, or little more, were only Governours for the Kings of *Congo*, now ſubject all to the Great *Soba* of *Angola*, who makes only ſome Preſent to the King of *Congo*. Its People uſe the ſame *Tongue*, *Mony*, and *Arms*, with thoſe of *Congo*.

The Empire of the MONO-MOTAPA.

The Empire of the *Mono-Motapa*, its extent, ſtate, and power of their Kings.

THE *MONO-MOTAPA*, that is, the *Emperour*, *King*, or *Sovereign* of *Motapa*, is (according to *Vincent Blanc*) called by his People *Tabaqui*, and poſſeſſes an Empire ſo great, that it is made of 1000 Leagues circuit: It is ſaid by him, that this Prince deports himſelf with gravity, and that there is no acceſs to his perſon but with very great ſubmiſſions: That he is always adorned with *Chains* and *Precious Stones*, like to a Woman, or rather like a Spouſe: Is pleaſed to receive Preſents, but gives little; keeps a great *Seraglio* of Women, which it is forbid to approach; and one part of his Guard (according to ſome) is likewiſe compoſed of *Women*, who are active at their Arms, and couragious. He calls his principal City *Madrogan* (which is the *Mono-Motapa* of others) where his Royal Palace is, which is magnificent and great, flanked with *Towers* without, with four principal Gates; within hung with

with Tapeſtries of *Cotton* mixed with *Gold*, and adorned with many rich and ſtately Moveables. This Prince is always clothed after the manner of his Predeceſſors, nor may he change any thing, except the Ornaments of his Neck and Buskins. He wears no Forrein Stuffs for fear of *Poyſon* and *Witchcraft*; his Drink is Wine of *Palm* diſtilled with *Manna*, *Amber*, and *Muſk*. He ſpends much in *Odours* and *Perfumes*, making them be mixed in thoſe Lights which are carried before him, and which ſerves where he is. His Court hath a great many Officers, which ſerve with order and ſilence; beſides which, they are thronged with People. His Officers are eaſily known, becauſe they carry the *Talmaſſara* on their Shoulder, more or leſs enriched, according to their condition or degree of place; but all in the ſame faſhion with the Kings. The Inhabitants are all black, of a mean ſtature, active, and ſuch good Footmen, that they are ſaid to out-run Horſes: They are couragious, addicted to Arms, as alſo to Trade. The Commonalty cover themſelves but below the Waiſt, for which their Apparel is made of *Skins* of Beaſts, *Cotton*, *Cloth*, or the like; but the better ſort have *Cloths* and *Stuffs*, which are brought them from the *Indies*: The *Maids* cover nothing of their Body till they are married. Their Houſes are of *Wood*, or *Earth* whited, faſhioned like a *Clock*, or rather like a *Bell*. Thoſe of the greateſt Lords are the higheſt. They have as many *Wives* as they pleaſe; but ſhe who is the firſt eſpouſed is always the chief, and her Children alone inherit the Fathers Goods and Eſtate. The *Women* are here uſed very reſpectfully, none offering ſo much as to take the Wall of them. The *Maids* are here not thought fit to be married, till their *Menſtrua* or *Natural Purgations* ſhews their ability for Conception, which makes them ſolemnize with a great Feaſt their firſt *Flux*. They have no *Priſon* in all the Country, but all Affairs are determined and ended on the place, ſo ſoon as they are convicted of the fact or crime; but above all Offenders, thoſe for *Theft*, *Adultery*, and *Witchcraft*, are the moſt ſeverely treated. And this ſudden execution of Criminals, makes the King to be reverenced by his Subjects. *Chriſtianity* found here ſome difficulties at the beginning; at preſent it is eſtabliſhed by the conſent of the King, who hath likewiſe permitted the *Portugals* to work the Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, which in this Country are in great quantity, and ſo rich, that there are ſome who call this Prince, *The Emperour of Gold*. Not only the Mines, but likewiſe the Rivers have *Gold* in their Sand: among which, thoſe of *Dos Infantos*, of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and of *Cuama*, towards their Springs, which are towards the Lake *Zachaf*; but thoſe of the Country care for no more of it, than is neceſſary to truck for what they have need of.

His Habit, &c.

Its Inhabitants.

The *Woods* have great ſtore of *Elephants*, which yields them *Ivory*; as alſo other Beaſts. Hath rich *Paſtures*, which are well furniſhed with *Cattle*, hath *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Fowl*, is well watered with many *Rivers*, in which are abundance of *Fiſh*. The *Air* is temperate, except that their Winter is colder than may be expected in that Climate, by reaſon of the Mountains which encloſe it on all ſides, and croſs the Country: And their Winter is in the ſame time when we have our Summer, to wit, when the *Sun* is about the *Tropick* of *Cancer*.

Its Fertility.

The *Mono-Motapa* is ſaid to be one of the moſt powerful Princes of *Africa*, if we conſider the greatneſs of his Eſtate, his Riches, and the great number of Princes which hold of him, or are under his Dominion. They yearly receive the Fire which the *Mono-Motapa* ſends them, or upon refuſal are accounted Rebels. But all theſe People, though hardy and addicted to Arms, are unexpert in them: ſo that their Number would do them little good, if aſſaulted by the *Europeans*. They believe only in one God, and puniſh with death *Idolaters* and *Sorcerers*.

The power of the King.

But a word or two of the chief places of this Empire, and firſt of the Kingdom or Province of *BUTUA*, whoſe chief places are, *Butua*, *Carma*, *Gallita*, *Zet*, ſeated an the Lake *Zachaf*; *Dobdel*, *Calluras*; *Tialſo* and *Zimbra*, both under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*; *Baſat*, *Quiticui*, *Armeta*, *Maitagaſi*, *Boro*, *Amara*, *Giera*, and *Hagala*; moſt of which are Cities of ſome account, and ſeated on Rivers.

The chief places in the Empire of the *Mono-Motapa*.

The chief places in *MONO-MOTAPA*, particularly so called, are *Mono-Motapa*, the chief of the Empire; *Zuggi*, *Touros*, and *Mosata*. The chief in *ZEFALA* bears the same name, seated in an *Isthmus* so called. The chief in *QUITEVA* is *Cuama*, seated on the River so named. About the Shoar of *Zefala* are several Isles, among which three bear the name of *UCIQUE PARVÆ*; three of *UCIQUE MAJORES*; and two of *SPICHELLÆ*; and farther, a *Sea*; and towards the Isle of *Madagascar* is the Isle of *BAIXOS DE INDIA*. The chief place of *SEDANDA* is so called: And the chief places of *CHICANGA* are, *Zimbaos* and *Buro*. And these are the Parts comprehended under the Empire of the *Mono-Motapa*.

The Empire of the *Mono-Emugi*.

The *Mono-Emugi*, that is, *Lord of Emugi*, hath his Empire or Estates between the *Abyssins*, the *Cafres*, the *Mono-Motapa*, and the *Zanguebar*; so that it is about the Mountains of the *Moon*. The *Giaques* or *Zaggas*, which joyn to *Congo*, are likewise esteemed subject to this Empire: He hath often War with the *Mono-Motapa*, of which he seems once to have been a part, is in peace with the King of *Zanguebar*, that he may have commerce to the Sea, for he hath much *Gold*, *Silver*, *Ivory*, and the same Commodities as *Mono-Motapa*; but its People are more barbarous and brutish. The chief places in the *Mono-Emugi* are, *Agag*, *Astagoa*, *Leuma*, *Camur*, *Beif*, *Bagametro*, and *Zembre*, seated on the bottom of the Lake *Zaire*.

CAFRERIA, *or the Land of* CAFRES.

The Land of *Cafreria* described.

CAFRERIA, or the Land of *CAFRES*, makes the most Southern Coast of all *Æthiopia*, winding like a Semicircle about the *Cape of Good Hope*; some begin it from *Cape Negro*, and continue it unto the River of *Cuama*: this separating it from *Zanguebar*, and the other from *Congo*, or what we have esteemed with *Congo*. Others begin it and end it with the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, as well on this side as beyond the *Cape of Good Hope*. I esteem under the name of *Cafres* all the Coasts which environ the *Mono-Motapa*, both towards the West, South, and East: so that we may call these *Cafres*, *Occidental*, *Meridional*, and *Oriental*. This distinction being taken in regard of the natural scituation in which these People are from the *Mono-Motapa*; or we may chuse rather to consider them in *Occidental* or *Oriental*, as we have already done; the *Cape of Good Hope* then keeping the one from the other. It hath formerly been believed, that these People had neither *Kings*, *Law*, nor *Faith*, and therefore were called *Cafres*, that is, *without Law*. But it hath since been known, that they have divers *Kings* and *Lords*; as those of *Mataman*, where there are divers *Metals*, *Chrystal*, &c. And of *Melemba*, among the *Occidentals*; those of *Chicanga*, *Sedanda*, *Quiteva*, and *Zefala*, among the *Orientals*; and others we know not, towards the South and *Cape of Good Hope*.

On the Coast of *Cafres* are these places and Isles, *viz.* *St. Nicolai*, *Piscarius*, the Port of *Carascalis*, the *Cape of Good Hope*, St. *Martins Bay*, and the *Cape of St. Lucia*. Also these Isles, 4 bearing the name of *St. Lucia*, 2 of *St. Christophers*, 5 of *Crucis*, and 3 of *Aride*. Many of which, as likewise the *Capes*, are well known by Sea-men, especially the *Cape of Good Hope*. All these Coasts of *Cafreria* are bounded within Land by a Chain of Mountains, formed by the Mountains of the *Moon*, and which inclose *Mono-Motapa*. That part of these Mountains which advance towards the *Cape of Good Hope*, are called by the *Portugals*, *Picos Fragos*, that is, *Watry Points* or *Rocks*.

The *Cape of Good Hope*.

This *Cape* is the most remarkable piece in *Cafreria*; the most Southern point of *Africa*, and of our Continent; and the most famous *Promontory* of the whole World. *Vasco de Gama* knew it in 1498, and after having doubled it, found the way by the *East-Indies* to the *Great Sea*; and from hence the *Portugals* boast to have been the first that had the knowledge of this Cape. But we have made appear in the general discourse of *Africa*, that the Ancients have both known and spoke of it. Near the *Cape of Good Hope*, and farther towards the South, is the

the *Cape of Needles*, which should be more famous, since it is more Southernly than the other by 12 or 15 Leagues: But the name, *Cape of Good Hope*, is given to all that Head of Land which is the most Southern of *Africa*.

The Air, Fertility, Commodities, &c. of the Country.

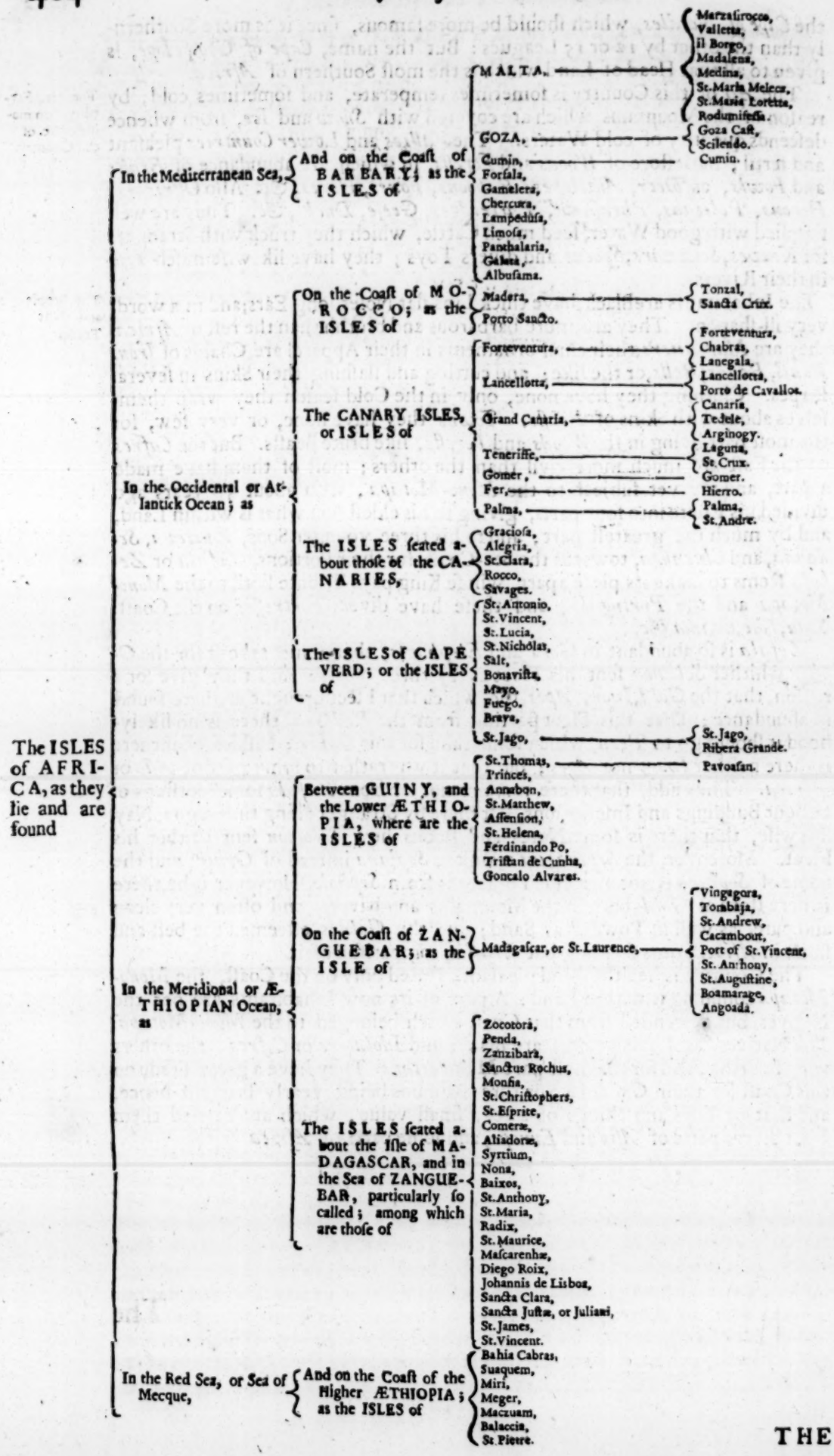
The *Air* of this Country is sometimes temperate, and sometimes cold, by reason of the Mountains which are covered with *Snow* and *Ice*, from whence descends quantity of cold Waters. The *Vallies* and *Lower Countries* pleasant and fertil; hath store of *Woods* and *Forests*, in which are abundance of *Beasts* and *Fowls*, as *Deer*, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, *Foxes*, *Hares*, &c. Also *Ostriches*, *Herons*, *Pelicans*, *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, *Geese*, *Ducks*, &c. They are well supplied with good Water, feed much Cattle, which they truck with Strangers for *Knives*, *Scizzars*, *Spoons*, and divers Toys; they have likewise much *Fish* in their Rivers.

The People and their Trade.

The Inhabitants are Black, have thick Lips, flat Noses, long Ears; and in a word, very ill-shapen. They are more barbarous and brutish than the rest of *Africa*, they are *Man-eaters*; their chief ornaments in their Apparel are, Chains of *Iron*, *Brass*, *Beads*, *Bells*, or the like; and cutting and slashing their Skins in several shapes. Clothing they have none, only in the Cold season they wrap themselves about with Skins of *Beasts*. *Towns* they have none, or very few, for the most part living in the *Woods* and *Forests*, like brute Beasts. But the *Cafres* on the East are much more civil than the others; most of them have made a part, and are yet subject to the *Mono-Motapa*, who about 50 years ago divided his Estate into four parts, giving to his eldest Son what is within Land, and by much the greatest part; and to his three younger Sons, *Zuiteva*, *Sedanda*, and *Chicanga*, towards the Sea-Coast, for their Portions. *Cefala* or *Zefala* seems to make its piece apart, whose King pays Tribute both to the *Mono-Motapa* and the *Portugals*; and these have divers *Fortresses* on the Coast, *Sena*, *Tete*, *Cuama*, &c.

Zefala is so abundant in *Gold* and *Elephants*, that some take it for the *Ophir* whither *Solomon* sent his Fleet every three years: And they give for a reason, that the *Gold*, *Ivory*, *Apes*, &c. which that Fleet brought, are here found in abundance; That this Fleet parting from the *Red Sea*, there is no likelyhood it should go to *Peru*, which some take for this *Ophir*; besides, that there is there neither *Ivory* nor *Apes*; but that it was rather to some part of *Asia* or *Africa*. They add, that there remains not far from *Zefala* some footsteps of ancient Buildings and Inscriptions, left there by Strangers long time ago: Nay likewise, that there is some Notes and Books how *Solomon* sent thither his Fleet. Moreover, the *Septuagint* translate *Sophira* instead of *Ophir*, and the name of *Sophira* is not overmuch different from *Sopholo*. However it be, there is here store of *Gold* both in the Mountains and Rivers, and often very clean and pure, as well in Powder as Sand; and this *Gold* is esteemed the best and finest in *Africa*, ours seeming but *Brass* in comparison of it.

The Country is healthful and pleasant, seated only on the Coast, the *Mono-Motapa* confining it within Land: A part of its now Inhabitants are not the Natives, but descended from that Coast which belonged to the *Mono-Motapa*. The Natives (as I said before) are Black, and *Idolaters* or *Cafres*, the others very swarthy, and for the most part *Mahometans*. They have a great Trade on this Coast for their *Gold*, two or three Millions being yearly brought hence, and that for Toys and things of a very small value, which are carried them from divers parts of *Asia* and *Europe*, and some parts of *Africa*.


The ISLES of AFRICA, as they lie and are found
In the Mediterranean Sea,
And on the Coast of BARBARY; as the ISLES of
MALTA,
Marzaſiroco,
Valletta,
il Borgo,
Madalena,
Medina,
St. Maria Meleca,
St. Maria Loretta,
Rodumiſella.
GOZA,
Goza Caſt.
Scilendo.
Cumin,
Cumin.
Forſala,
Gamelera,
Chercura,
Lampedùſa,
Limoſa,
Panthalaria,
Galeta,
Albuſama.
In the Occidental or Atlantick Ocean; as
On the Coaſt of MOROCCO; as the ISLES of
Madera,
Tonzal,
Sancta Crux.
Porto Sancto.
The CANARY ISLES, or ISLES of
Forteventura,
Forteventura,
Chabras,
Lanegala.
Lancellotta,
Lancellotta,
Porto de Cavallos.
Grand Canaria,
Canaria,
Tedele,
Arginogy.
Teneriffe,
Laguna,
St. Crux.
Gomer,
Gomer.
Fer,
Hierro.
Palma,
Palma,
St. Andre.
The ISLES ſeated about thoſe of the CANARIES,
Gracioſa,
Alegria,
St. Clara,
Rocco,
Savages.
The ISLES of CAPE VERD; or the ISLES of
St. Antonio,
St. Vincent,
St. Lucia,
St. Nichólas,
Salt,
Bonaviſta,
Mayo,
Fuego,
Brava,
St. Jago,
St. Jago,
Ribera Grande.
In the Meridional or ÆTHIOPIAN Ocean, as
Between GUINY, and the Lower ÆTHIOPIA, where are the ISLES of
St. Thomas,
Pavoaſan.
Princes,
Annabon,
St. Matthew,
Aſſenſion,
St. Helena,
Ferdinando Po,
Triſtan de Cunha,
Goncalo Alvares.
On the Coaſt of ZANGUEBAR; as the ISLE of
Madagaſcar, or St. Laurence,
Vingagora,
Tombaja,
St. Andrew,
Cacambout,
Port of St. Vincent,
St. Anthony,
St. Auguſtine,
Boamarage,
Angoada.
The ISLES ſeated about the Iſle of MADAGASCAR, and in the Sea of ZANGUEBAR, particularly ſo called; among which are thoſe of
Zocotora,
Penda,
Zanzibara,
Sanctus Rochus,
Monfia,
St. Chriſtophers,
St. Eſprite,
Comeræ,
Aliadoræ,
Syrtium,
Nona,
Baixos,
St. Anthony,
St. Maria,
Radix,
St. Maurice,
Maſcarenhæ,
Diego Roix,
Johannis de Lisboa,
Sancta Clara,
Sancta Juſtæ, or Juliani,
St. James,
St. Vincent.
In the Red Sea, or Sea of Mecque,
And on the Coaſt of the Higher ÆTHIOPIA; as the ISLES of
Bahia Cabras,
Suaquem,
Miri,
Meger,
Maczuam,
Balaccia,
St. Pietre.

THE

THE ISLE OF MADAGASCAR, OR St. LAURENCE.

Isle of *Madagascar*, with its length and breadth.

THE Isle of *MADAGASCAR*, or *St. LAURENCE*, is much greater than any about *Africa*, if not the greatest of both Continents. It stretches it self from a little on this side the 12*th* unto a little beyond the 26*th* degree of *Meridional Latitude*, which are more than 14 degrees of *Latitude*; but sloping from North North-West to South South-East, it is from *Cape St. Sebastian* to that of *St. Romain* about 400 Leagues long. Its breadth ought to be considered at twice; in that part neareſt the *Equator* it is 60 or 75 Leagues broad; in that part towards the South the least breadth passes 120, and stretches sometimes to 150 Leagues.

Its Commodities and Trade.

Our last Relations say, That it hath Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Copper*, *Iron*, *Rocks* of *Chrystal*, and excellent *white Marble*; that there are found *Emralds*, *Saphirs*, &c. many sorts of *Gums* and *Rozins*, especially great store of that *Gum* which the *Druggists* call *Dragons Blood*, which they extract out of the *Flowers* of a certain Tree which grows there. They have also *Talque*, *Cotton*, *Indico*, *Sugar Canes*, *Saunders*, *Ebony*, *Ivory*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Hides*. Their Ground yields *Salt*, *Salt-Peter*, and in most places *Grains*; and upon their *Sea Coasts* is found abundance of *Ambergreese*. And for these, and several other Commodities that are here found, are brought them in exchange, *Corals*, *Pater-Nosters*, *Chains*, *Beads*, *Bracelets*, *Glass-Pendants*, and divers Toys, &c.

Its People and their abode.

Its Inhabitants are for the most part Black or very Tawny, and some White, which in all appearance came from *Asia*: They are of a good Stature, and well shaped, are very tractable and courteous to Strangers, and more especially to the *French*, than any other *Europeans*; are addicted to idleness, and not caring to cultivate the Earth; their Clothing is only a piece of *Cotton-cloth* of several colours, which they fasten about their Middles, and hangs down to their knees; and on their Heads, a Cap made of the Bass of a Tree; besides which, they adorn themselves about their Neck, Arms, Legs, &c. with those Toys aforesaid. Their Feeding is exceeding gross; their Houses are no better than Hog-sties, or little Huts made of Branches of Trees, except those of their Princes which are made of Wood; but of no large size, nor over handsom: They lie upon Mats; and their Cloth which they wear about them in the day, serves for a Coverlid in the night. They are *Heathenish*, and given to Adoration, (some say they adore the *Devil*) using Sacrifices, which they do in the Woods, not having Churches; they have no *Civil Form* of Government, but he that can make the greatest party, and hath the greatest Family, is in most esteem and command, to which end they have as many Wives as they can keep, to increase their Progeny. They

The Isle very plentiful of Cattle.

They have a great number of *Oxen*, *Sheep*, *Kids*, *Hens* of divers sorts, and quantity of *Rice*; they make Wine with *Hony* and certain *Roots*, which is so strong that they are frequently drunk with it; they have for the most part those Beasts that are found among us; but yet all with some difference: Their *Oxen* have between their Neck and Shoulders a great lump of Fat, which they esteem excellent: Their *Sheep* have their Tails 20 Inches about, and as much in length: Their *Goats* are very high, and their *Hogs* little. They have *Salamanders*, *Camelions* of divers colours; *Apes* of many kinds, and believe that these *Apes* would speak, but for fear they should be compelled to labour. They have *Crocodiles* and *Tortoises*, of which some have their Shells so great, that they will cover 10 or 12 Persons; and they find sometimes 5 or 600 of their Eggs as big as *Hens Eggs*: their Flesh is delicate and fat, in taste resembling *Veal*. They have other *Tortoises* which are only 3 or 4 foot diameter; and their Shells being polished are figured with divers colours, of which they make *Cabinets*, little *Boxes*, and other pretty Moveables esteemed in the *Indies* and in *Europe*.

Their Fowls.

Their *Pheasants* are stronger and fairer than ours, their *Partridges* bigger, and of divers colours: They have *Paroquets* as big as *Crows*, and black; another middle sort, and some as little as our *Larks*; the one and the other of divers colours: They have *Singing-Birds* not yielding to those of the *Canaries*. Their *Bees* are little, their *Hony* excellent; their *Ants* flie, and leave on the Bushes where they light a *white Gum*, which they use instead of *Glue*. Their *Colibri* or *Fly-Bird* scarce weighing two *Bees*, so little is it, feeding only on the Dew it sucks from Flowers. They catch in their Seas an infinite quantity of *Fish*; among others, *Skates* so great, that they are able to satisfie 300 persons one meal. Their *Date-Trees* supply them with *Drink*, their *Orchards* with *Fruits*, their *Cotton* with whereof to make *Thred* and *Stuffs* for Clothing, their *Indico* with a Blew colour, their *Tamarind* refreshes them; their *Rape* or *Balasier* blacks their *Teeth*, which by them is esteemed a great Beauty; they gather *Aloes* from several Trees. One of the principal riches of the Country is *Ebony*, both for its beauty, smoothness, and black colour, and for the flame and odour it yields in the fire: Its *Sap* infused in Water, heated and taken luke-warm, purges Flegm, and cures Venerial distempers.

Their Fruits.

Among their Fruits they have *Damsons* twice as big as ours; *Minabolans* of many kinds, *Anana's*, *Citrons*, *Oranges*, *Pomegranates*, *Grapes*, *Dates*, *Coco-Nuts*, &c. They gather *Maniguet*, *Ginger*, and divers *Roots*, which they eat instead of Bread, and which serves for divers other uses; they have quantity of *Rice*, *Millet*, *Beans*, *Pease*, *French-Beans*, both red, white, green, and all sorts of *Pulse*. The *Sensitive Herb* is found among the *Tapates*, whose Leaf touched, they all close and shut up one within another, hanging towards the ground, and not raising up nor opening themselves again till a good while after, and that by little and little.

Its chief places.

The Isles hath many good Roads and commodious Ports, and every where are found good Water and Victuals; but the Air is unhealthful to the *Europeans*, by reason of the great Heat which here reigneth, it lying under the *Torrid Zone*; yet the *French* have established a Colony sometimes in one place, and sometimes in another. The Bay of *Anton-Gil*, or of St. *Anthony*, is the best in all the Island. On the same Coast, and farther towards the North, is *Boamarage*; more towards the South *Angoada*, and continuing *Cacambout*, *Manialoufe*, *Manajara*; or the Port of *Prunes*, *Matatane*, *Manapate*; or the Port of *Gallions*, *Manatenga*, *Anamboul*, *Romac*, near the Port St. *Cuce* and *Antipere*; or *Sancta Clara* near *Cape St. Romain*. All these places or Ports are builded with *Wood*, covered with *Leaves*, and inclosed with *Pallisadoes*, as throughout all the Isle. On the other side towards the West, and directly opposite to the Coast of *Africa*, are *Vingagora*, *St. Andrew*, the *Bay* of *Pracel*, *St. Vincent*, *St. James*; the Port or Gulph of *St. Augustine*, the best next to *Antongil*, *Tombaja*, &c. The middle of the Isle rises into Mountains covered with Wood, where is *Ebony*, *Saunders*, *Orange-Trees*, *Citron-Trees*, &c.

About

About *Madagascar* are a great many of Isles, as that of *SANCTA MARY*, near the *Bay* of *Anton-Gil*, about ten or twelve Leagues in circuit, is fair and fertile; affords store of Provisions, and *Potters Earth*, and their *Seas* quantity of *Whales*, which they catch by darting on them a certain *Iron* fixed to the end of a Cord; which when they have tired themselves, they make to the shore; and of these *Whales* they make *Oyl*, with which, as also with their *Provisions* and *Potters Earth*, they drive a Trade. The Isle of *Sancta Mary* described.

The Isles of *COMERES*, are Five principal ones, as *St. Christophers*, *St. Esprit*, *Loura*, *Comera*, and *Gasidsa*. The *Inhabitants* of this last are perfidious; the others more civil, and under one King alone, who resides at *Ansuvanny*, where there is some Trade; the most part are *Mahometans*; the *Soil* is pleasant and fertile, because of the Rivers which descend from the *Mountains*, and water their *Fields*. They have all sorts of *Birds*, they have no *Iron*; they fetch from *Madagascar*, *Rice*, *Millet*, *Amber-greece*, and *Slaves*, which they transport into *Arabia*, and the *Red Sea*; from whence they bring *Stuffs*, and *Indian Habits*, *Amsium* or *Opium*. The Isles of *Comres* described.

In 1613. the *Hollanders* touched on this Island, and received great refreshment. It is observed, that for a Quire of common *Paper*, they had an *Ox*; for a common *Looking-Glass* another; for a Dozen of *Little Bells* which they fastned to *Hawks Legs* another; for a *Bar* of *Iron*, three *Oxen*, *&c.*

The Isle *MAURICE* or *SANCTA APPOLLINA*, between 19 and 20 degrees, seems to have been inhabited before the *Hollanders* established a *Colony*: It is about 15 Leagues in compass. *Mandelslo* saith, that this Island hath a good *Haven*, both deep and large enough for fifty Sail of great Ships to harbor in, which makes it to be very pleasant, having many *Mountains* which are well cloathed with *Trees*, and always green; among which, some are so lofty, that they seem to overtop the *Clouds*. And its *Valleys* as pleasant and green, and adorned with several sorts of *Trees*, as well those that bear *Fruits*, as *Cocoes*, *Dates*, *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *&c.* as those which yield none; as great quantity of excellent *Ebony*, and other *Trees*; some of whose wood is Yellow, others Red, others mixt; and all with fair and lively colours. The Leaves of their *Palm-trees* are large enough to cover a man; the *Birds* are here so tame, that they suffer themselves to be taken with the hand, or killed with a stick. They have *Tortoises* strong enough to bear a man, but fourfooted *Beasts* they have none. The Isle of *Mauric* described.

Besides these Isles aforesaid, there are several others which are seated about the Isle of *Madagascar*, as Two bearing the name of *Deigosoares*: Two by the name of *Nunni Pereiræ*: Three by the name of *Deigo Roix*: Four by *Sancta Clara*: Two by *St. Romanus*: Three by *St. Julianus*: Three by *St. Jacobus*: Nine by *St. Vincent*: Three by *St. Christophers*: Three by *Comora*: And eight by the name of *Bugi*.

Also the Isles of *Boamarage*, *St. Anthony*, *St. Maria Radix*, *Mascarenhæ*, *Johannis de Lisboa*, *Syrtium*, and *Mosambicha-Nova*, with some others.

Between the Isle of *Madagascar*, and the main Land, about 70 Leagues from the Isle, 100 from *Cefala*, and 150 from *Mozambique*, are the Banks of *India* infamous for Shipwracks, and particularly for that of the Admiral *Fernando Mendoza* in 1586. The *Banks* and *Rocks* are of sharp Stones, and with divers points like to *Coral*, some black, others white, others green, but all horrible even to behold. The Banks of *India* very dangerous for Shipwracks.

There rests a great number of Islands to the North and East, and between the North and East of *Madagascar*, and among these Isles many *Banks* and *Rocks*. We will omit a particular description of them, as unnecessary, and only say, that the *French* have often designed to establish a powerful Colony in the Countrey; encouraged by its Commodities, and the great Commerce it is like to maintain.

The Isles of CAPE VERDE.

The Isles of *Cape Verde* described, *viz.*

ONe hundred and fifty Leagues from *Cape Verde*, and towards the West, are a body of Islands which extend themselves from 13½, unto the 19 degree of *Latitude*, and from 153½, unto 157 or thereabout of *Longitude*. They are called in general the Isles of *Cape Verde*, because that *Cape* is the neareſt main Land to them. Amongſt theſe Iſles there are 10 in ſome conſideration, though a part of them not inhabited; they are ranged almoſt in form of a *Creſſant* or *Semi-Circle*, of which, the convex part regards the Continent, and the two Points, the *Ocean*: That which makes the Point towards North and Weſt, is that of St. *Antonio*, which thoſe of St. *Vincent*, St. *Nicholas*, and *Sancta Lucia* follow, advancing between Eaſt and South; then thoſe of *Salt*, *Bona Viſta*, and *Maya*, deſcend from North to South, and are the moſt Eaſterly of all: Thoſe of St. *Jago*, of *Fuego*, and *Brava*, the moſt Southern; returning from Eaſt to Weſt, and advancing a little towards the South. So that St. *Anthony* and *Brava* make the two Ends or Points towards the Weſt; *Bona Viſta* makes the middle of the half Circle towards the Eaſt.

St. Nicholas.

SANCTA LUCIA, St. *NICHOLAS*, and St. *JAGO*, are the greateſt, having each 100 or 120000 paces of length; 15, 20 or 30000 of breadth; and 200 or 250000 paces of circuit. St. *Anthonio* and St. *Vincent* are leſs by more then half, and not of above 100000 paces in circuit; the reſt, which are the leaſt, have not above 30, 40 or 50000 paces. I make no account of ſeven or eight others, whoſe names have not been given us, and which are rather *Rocks* than *Iſles*.

St. Jago.

St. *JAGO* is the greateſt and the chief of all, having a *Biſhops* ſeat in the City of the ſame name; beſides which, are *Ribera Grande*, with a good *Port* towards the Weſt, *Praya* towards the Eaſt, St. *Mary* towards the North, all with their *Ports*. Some place likewiſe St. *Thomas*, whoſe *Port* is dangerous, others St. *Domingo*, others St. *Michael*: poſſibly theſe fall under ſome of the others. *Ribera Grande* hath 500 Houſes; the Air is unhealthful, the Land hilly, but the Valleys fruitful in *Grains*, *Vines*, *Fruits*, *Sugar Canes*, *Millons*, &c. Feeding much *Fowl* and *Cattle*, and particularly *Goats* in abundance: Theſe *Beaſts* bringing forth young every four Moneths, and three or four at a time; and the *Kids* are very fat and delicate.

Sancta Lucia, St. Vincent, St. Anthony.

SANCTA LUCIA is the beſt peopled after that of St. *Jago*. St. *Nicholas*, St. *Vincent*, and St. *Anthony*, have been eſteemed Deſert, yet they appear to have many Inhabitants, though not ſo many as they could feed: The Ships of the *United Provinces* paſſing here in 1622. found in that of St *Anthony* 500 perſons, *Men*, *Women*, and *Children*, all *Æthiopians*. St. *Vincent* and St. *Nicholas*, had no leſs. At *Mayo* theſe *Æthiopians* are ſtrong, and of good ſtature; but it is to be believed, that every where are ſome *Portugals* to keep the reſt in aw.

Salt. Bona Viſta.

The *Iſles* of *SALT*, of *BONA VISTA*, of *MAYO*, and of St. *JAGO*, yield ſo great quantity of *Salt* which is made naturally of the Water, which the Sea from time to time leaves, that beſides what they conſume in the Countrey, they laded every year more then 100 Ships, which is tranſported into other Countreys; and yet there remains ſix times as much, which becomes uſeleſs. It is reported, that the Iſle of *Mayo* could make alone, lading for two thouſand Sail of Ships yearly; and the others not much leſs. The other richeſs of the Countrey lies in the Skins of their *Goats*, which are in ſo great quantity through all theſe Iſles, that many flocks are ſeen of 1000 Head. The Skins are ſent to *Braſil*, *Portugal*, and other places, and make excellent *Cordovants*. The Fleſh is ſalted in the Countrey, and ſold to Ships going and returning from *Braſil* to the *Indies*. Beſides the *Salt* and *Goats* which are the principal riches of the Countrey, they have many *Wild Horſes*, *Oxen*, *Apes*, &c. alſo *Cotton*, whereof they make ſeveral *Manufactures*.

Alſo

Also *Rice*, and many sorts of *Grains*. Among their *Fowl*, they have one kind particular to them, which they call *Flamencos*; the Feathers of their Bodies are all White, and those of their Wings Red as Blood. Their *Tortoises* are not above two or three foot long; they come out of the Sea, and lay their Eggs in the night, covering them with Sand, and the heat of the Sun hatches them. In *Fuego* and *Brava* they gather *Wines* which yield little to those of the *Canaries*. *Fuego, Brava.*

Between the Islands of *Cape Verde*, and the main *Land*, inclining towards the *Canaries*, the *Sea* is called *Sargasso*, because from the 20 to the 24 degree and for the length of 30, 40 or 50 Leagues, the *Sea* is covered with an herb like to that which is found in the bottom of Wells, and which the *Portugals* call *Sargasso*. This Herb, except that it is more Yellow, resembles *Sea-Parsley*, bearing certain *Grains* or *Fruit* at the end, but of neither taste nor substance. Many have been much troubled to know from whence these Weeds come, which are distant from the Isles, and from the firm Land more then 60 Leagues, and in a part of the Sea, where there is no bottom found: Nevertheless, they are so close, and in so great quantity, that the Water seems rather a Meadow or Green Field, then a Sea. *Ships* which fall among these *Weeds*, had need of a good Wind to disingage themselves; and I believe it was these which hindred *Sataspes* from finishing his course about *Africa*, and were the cause of his misfortune. This *Sataspes*, Son of *Teaspes*, one of the *Achemenides*, having ravished the Daughter of *Zopyrus*, the Son of *Magabises*, was condemned by *Xerxes* to be crucified. His Mother, the Sister of *Darius*, caused this punishment to be changed into another, to wit, he was caused to make the Circumnavigation of *Africa*; which could not be done without great difficulty and hazard. He embarked in *Egypt*, passed the Pillars of *Hercules*, entred into the *Occidental Ocean*, and passed far to the South, along *Africa*; but knowing that it would yet require much time and pains to end this course, he returned into *Egypt*, and thence to the Court, where he said he had met with somewhat that hindred his Ship from passing farther. *Xerxes* took him for a liar, and made him suffer the death he was before condemned to. But to continue: The Position wherein the Isles of *Cape Verde* are now found, answers much better to the Position of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolomy*, then that of the *Canaries*. *Ptolomy* places his *Fortunate Isles* between the 10 and 16 degree of *Latitude*; the *Isles* of *Cape Verde* are between the 13 and 19; the *Canaries* beyond the 26. The *Meridian* of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolomy*, is at 8 degrees of *Longitude* from the Coast of *Africa*, and towards the West. The least *Meridian* of the Isles of *Cape Verde*, is at 8 degrees of *Longitude* from the same Coast, and towards the same side. The least *Meridian* of the *Canaries* touches the Coast of *Africa*. *Ptolomy* confines his *Fortunate Isles* under one *Meridian*, and extends them from South to North, between the tenth to the sixteenth parallel or degrees of *Latitude*, which are five degrees of *Latitude*. The Isles of *Cape Verde* are not justly under one *Meridian*, but under two or three, and extend themselves from the 13 to the 19, which are five degrees of *Latitude*. The *Canaries*, on the contrary, are all couched from West to East, and almost under the same parallel or degree of *Latitude*, which is the 27; lengthning themselves from the first to the 6 of *Longitude*. These four Reasons are very strong to prove, that the Isles of *Cape Verde* do rather answer to the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolomy*, then the *Canaries*. Their distance in regard of the *Æquator*, is not different from that of the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolomy*, but three degrees; that of the *Canaries*, is 15. Their distance in regard of the Coast of *Africa*, agrees with that of the *Fortunate Isles*, not with that of the *Canaries*. The disposition of their scituation from South to North, approaches near to that of the *Fortunate Isles*; and the number of the degrees of *Latitude* which they contain, absolutely agrees with it. The scituation of the *Canaries* from East to West, and the little *Latitude* they contain, are much contrary. Notwithstanding all these Reasons, we shall yet make it appear, that oft-times we must not conclude on the Positions of *Ptolomy*, and that the *Canary Islands* The *Sargasso* Sea. A story of *Sataspes*. The Isles of *Cape Verde*.

answer to the *Fortunate* Islands of *Ptolomy*, and the Ancients, and not these of *Cape Verde.*

Let us speak first a word of the *Madera's* and *Porto Sancto*, which belong to the Crown of *Portugal* as well as those of *Cape Verde.* But before I pass to the *Madera's*, a word or two concerning its Inhabitants, who *Mondelsso* maketh to be black, corpulent, but well proportioned; he saith, they are envious, mischievous, and dangerous people; for the most part *Pagans*, worshipping the *Moon*, and adoring the *Devil*, whom they call *Cammate*: Some of them are *Mahometans*, as far as Circumcision. They marry many *Wives*, whom they make to labour like *Slaves*, as well in the Fields as in their Houses; and they are accustomed to such hardship, that as soon as they are delivered, they go and wash themselves and the Child in the Sea or next River. They are not admitted to sit at meals with their Husbands, but wait till they have din'd or supt. They believe the Resurrection of the Dead, but withal think that they shall rise *White*, and trade there as the *Europeans* do. He saith, they are great *Drunkards*, and their debauches are always at the Funeral of their Friends, which commonly lasts four or five days together: During which time they do nothing but drink and weep in remembrance of their Friend departed. They are very turbulent and quarrelsome, being always at wars with their Neighbours; their *Arms* are the *Bow*, and a kind of *Lance*, in which they are very expert. He saith also, that the greatest Marks of their Victories, are the *Privy-parts* of their Enemies, which they cut off, and give to their *Wives* who wear them as *Neck-laces*, which by them are esteemed far beyond *Pearl.*

The Fertility. The Countrey is indifferently fruitful; hath store of *Cattle*, as *Oxen*, *Beuffles*, *Elks*, &c. whose *Hides* they have a good Trade for; as also for *Elephants Teeth*, *Wax*, *Rice*, *Amber-greece*, *Sugar Canes*, *Cotton*, whereof they make several *Manufactures*, *Cordovants*, &c.

MADERA Island.

The *Madera* Isle first discovered by the *Portugals.* THe Isle of *MADERA* or *MADEIRA* as the *Portugals* say, is under the 32 degree of *Latitude*; about 25 Leagues long, 8 or 10 broad, and 60 of circuit. It was discovered in 1420 by *John Gonsalvo* and *Tristan Vaez*, under the *Auspicies* of *Henry Infanto* of *Portugal*; and under the same *Johannes Zarco*, and likewise *Tristan Vaez*, discovered *Porto Sancto* in 1428. The one and the other were Desert, and particularly *Madera* was so covered with *Wood*, that they were fain to set it on fire to make room for what they would Till. The *History* saith, that this fire lasted six or seven years, before it ran through all the Island and consumed the *Woods*; and among the first *Inhabitants*, some were constrained to save themselves in the Water, to avoid the heat of the Earth; but yet their design so well succeeded, that the Earth, for a long time after, yielded sixty for one; which by little and little, diminished to 50, 40, 30, and possibly now to twenty five for one. The Air is almost always temperate, many *Fountains*, and seven or eight *Rivers* so refresh this Countrey, that it is very pleasant and fertile. The *Vines* bear more bunches of *Grapes* than *Leaves*, and their wine is strong and racy; their *Wheat* excellent, though the Countrey be Mountainous: Their *Sugars* delicious, bearing the Bell from all others; they have much *Fowl*, as *Hens*, *Pigeons*, *Quails*, *Partriges*; they have quantity of *Fruits*, as *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Dragons Blood*, *Cordevants*, *Cedar-wood*, with which they make all sorts of *Joyners* work so artificially, that it is transported into *Europe*, and elsewhere. Those *Mountains* and *Woods* which are restocked, have *Wild Boars*, &c. Its principal Towns, are *Tunchal* or *Touzal*; the chief of the Island, and a *Bishoprick*, *Moncherico* or *Monchico*, and *Sancta Crux.* All the Island contains 36 *Parishes*, 5 or 6 *Religious Convents*, 4 *Hospitals*, 6 or 7000 *Houses*, and about 25000 *Persons*; so many *Castles* and *Gardens* in the *Field*, that it seems a Garden of Pleasure.

Its Air, Fertility, and commodities.

Its chief places.

The

The Isle of *PORTO SANCTO* or the *Holy Port*, hath almost the same Commodities with *Madera*, but is not above 8 or 10 Leagues in circuit; hath no Fortress, which was the reason that in 1606. the *Pyrates* took away 6 or 700 persons. *Madera* answers to the Ancient *Cerne Atlantica*, and some have esteemed *Porto Sancto* to answer to the Ancient *Ombrio* or *Inaccessibilis*; but we shall shew the Countrey in the *Canaries*. *Porto Sancto.*

The CANARY Islands.

THe *CANARY* Islands are Westward of *Africa*, almost opposite to the *Capes* of *Bojador* or *Non*; they are to the number of Seven, seated between the 26 and 28 degrees of *Latitude*; and between the 5 and 6, or little more of *Longitude*. If we comprehend some little Isles above *Lancelotta*, and likewise the *Salvages*, they would reach to the 29 or near the 30; if likewise the *Madera*, and *Porto Sancto*, they would pass beyond the two and thirtieth degree of *Latitude*. But there are few Authors esteem the *Salvages*, almost none the *Madera*, among the *Canaries*, because this last is too far distant and belonging to the Crown of *Portugal*; the *Canaries* to the Crown of *Castile*; and the *Salvages* being Desert, almost no account is made of them. And now we shall make it appear, that the Body of the *Seven Isles* of the *Canaries*, answers in all things to the Body of the *Seven Fortunate Isles* of the *Ancients*. The Canary Islands described, viz.

We have before set down those Reasons which might make us believe, that the Isles of *Cape Verde* might answer to the *Fortunate Islands*, but now shall produce others, and those stronger for the *Canaries*. In the *Occidental* or *Atlantick Ocean*, and to the West of *Africa*, *Ptolomy* makes account of only one Body of Islands, which he describes to the number of six. We find now in that *Ocean*, and not far from *Africa*, three different Bodies of Islands, and each very considerable; to wit, the *Azores*, the *Canaries*, and those of *Cape Verde*. Of these, the *Canaries* are neerest to *Africa*, and the most Eastern; the *Azores*, the farthest and most Western; and those of *Cape Verde* do remain in the middle, as to *Longitude*: And moreover, those of *Cape Verde* are the neerest the *Æquator*, and most Southernly; the *Azores* the farthest off, and most northernly; and the *Canaries* in the midst, as to *Latitude*. Canary Isles, the Fortunate Isles of the Ancients, & why.

Now the one of these three Bodies of Islands must answer to the *Fortunate Isles* of the *Ancients*, and of *Ptolomy*, placed in the first *Meridian*; and among *Modern Authors*, if there be any which would give the first *Meridian* to the *Azores*; and others to those of *Cape Verde*; and others to the *Canaries*; it is for the most part out of the belief they have, that one or the other answer to those *Fortunate Isles*.

Ptolomy having made account but of one body of Islands in the *Occidental Ocean*, it is more likely to be that which is neerest the Main Land, and *Gades*, then those farther off. This reason makes for the *Canaries*. *Pliny*, *Solinus*, *Capella*, and others, have made account of three different Bodies of Islands in this *Ocean*; to wit, the *Fortunate Islands*, the *Gorgades* or *Gorgons*, and the *Hesperides*, placing their *Fortunate Isles* near the Coast of *Mauritania*, the *Gorgades* two days sail from the Coast, and the *Hesperides*, forty days sail farther then the *Gorgades*, and at the bottom of some *Gulf*; so that these answer, either to the *Azores*, or to the Isles of St. *Thomas*, in the bottom of the *Æthipian Ocean*; or rather to the *Antilles* or *Caribes* in the *Gulf* of *Mexico*, as we shall speak more in another place: They cannot answer to the *Canaries*, nor can the *Gorgades* answer to others than those of *Cape Verde*; the *Canaries* then remain for the *Fortunate*: This is another reason for the *Canaries*. But the goodness of the *Air*, the fruitfulness of the *Soyl*, their *proximity* to the Coast of *Africa*, the names and particularities of every one of the *Fortunate Isles*, absolutely concluded them the *Canaries*.

The

The *Fortunate Isles* received this name from the *Ancients* only, because of the healthfulness of the *Air*, and fruitfulness of the *Soyl*. The *Canaries* are excellent healthful, the *Azores* little, and the Isles of *Cape Verde* not at all healthful; likewise the *Canaries* have the best *Grains*, *Wines*, *Fruits*, &c. that are in the *World*, which they transport every where. The *Corn* of the *Azores* will not keep, and their *Wines* are consumed in the Countrey, not being strong enough to be transported to other places. In the *Isles* of *Cape Verde*, the Inhabitants can scarce gather *Corn* and *Wine* necessary; exporting nothing but *Salt* and *Goats Skins*. *Pliny* esteems some of his *Fortunate Isles* 8000 paces from the Coast of *Africa*; the *Azores* are 300 Leagues; those of *Cape Verde*, 150: Among the *Canaries*, *Forteventura* is not above 10 or 12 Leagues from *Cape Bojador*. The *Air*, *Soyl*, and *Neighborhood* to the Coast of *Africa* makes then for the *Canaries*: Let us proceed to confer their old and new names, and other particulars. *Ptolomy* calls his *Fortunate Isles*, *Aprositos*, that is, *Inaccessibilis*; *Heræ*, that is, *Junonis Insula*, *Pluitalia*; *Ortelius* reads *Pluitalia*, *Casperia*, *Canaria*, *Centuria*, which interpreters write *Pinturia*. *Pliny*, *Solinus*, and *Capella*, call them *Ombrio*, *Junonia*, *Junonia Minor*, (instead of which, *Ortelius* puts *Theode*) *Capraria*, *Nivaria*, and *Canaria*.

In the numbring of these Isles; *Pliny* and his two *Apes* or *Copiers*, *Solinus* and *Capella*, agree upon six, changing little in the rank, names, and number of *Ptolomy*; but *Pliny* makes mention of one *Pluvialia*, among his *Fortunate Isles*, a little before he comes to number the other Six. This *Pluvialia* must then be a Seventh, and possibly *Theode* the 8.

Conferring the *Fortunate Isles* of *Ptolomy*, with those of these three Authors, we shall find that his *Aprositos* answers to their *Ombrio*; his *Heræ Insula*, to their *Junonia*: There is nothing answers to their *Junonia Minor*, or *Theode*, whether they be two different, or only the same *Island*: His *Pluitalia* answers to the *Pluvialia* of *Pliny*, which the two others did not know; his *Casperia* to their *Capraria*; his *Canaria*, to their *Canaria*; and his *Centuria* or *Pinturia*, to their *Nivaria*. Some names being corrupted by others.

At present it will be hard to judge which of the *Canaries* answer to each of the *Ancients* *Fortunate Isles*; yet let us see if we can effect it, and do it better then others have done; there is no difficulty for the Great *Canary*, since it retains its ancient name: The *Isle* of *Ferr* also most apparently answers to the *Pluitalia* of *Ptolomy*, or rather to make all particulars better accord with the *Pluvialia* of *Pliny*, where he saith, *Non esse aquam nisi ex imbribus*, as at this day according to the common opinion, it hath no Water, but what distills from a certain Tree, always covered with Clouds. The *Isle* of *Teneriffe* likewise, whose Pike is always covered with Snow and Clouds, may answer to their *Nivaria*, *quæ nomen accepit à perpetua nive*. *Nebulosam*, saith *Pliny*; *ab aere Nebuloso*, saith *Solinus* and *Capella*. There remain four or five *Islands* wherein will lie the difficulty, *Aprositos*, *Junonia*, *Junonia Minor*, *Theode*, if it be other then *Junonia Minor*, and *Capraria*.

Pliny seems to joyn this *Capraria* with *Pluvialia*, and saith after *Sebosus*, *Junoniam abesse à Gadibus* 150000 *pa. ab ea tantundem ad occasum versus Pluvialiam*, *Caprariamque*. Seeing the great distance he gives between these *Isles*, and from East to West, it may be said, that *Pluvialia* and *Capraria* are the most Western of the *Fortunate Isles*; *Junonia* the most Eastern; and that of the *Isles* of *Ferr* and *Palma*, being the most Western of the *Canaries*; that of *Ferr* being already allowed for the *Pluvialia*; *Palma* will rest for the *Capraria* of *Pliny*. On the other side, *Junonia* being the most Eastern, and 750000 paces from *Gades*, it must either answer to the *Forteventura* or *Lancelotta*, which are the most Eastern of the *Canaries*, and 6 or 700000 paces from *Gades* or *Cadiz*. But *Pliny* and *Solinus* make mention of two *Junonias*, of which, one being less than the other, we will give *Lancelotta*, which is the least, for their *Junonia Minor*; and *Forteventura* the Greater, for the other *Junonia*: And it seems in this passage, *Pliny* would observe those he met with first, from the nearest to the Coast, to the farthest off. Of the *Seven Canary Islands* we have given Six, which answer to the other Six among the *Fortunate*

tunate Isles. There remains the *Isle* of *Gomer*, among the *Canaries*; and *Ombrio* or *Aprositos*, among the *Fortunate Isles:* This might make it be judged, that none must answer to the other; but there are many reasons to the contrary. The name of *Aprositos*, that is, *Inaccessible*, or of *Ombrio* and *Ombriona*, as *Capella* writes it, shews, that this Isle hath been in a manner unknown, in regard of its Neighbors; nay, it seems impossible to be landed upon. *Gomer* is between the *Isles* of *Ferr*, *Palma*, and *Teneriffe*; these three having been known, *Gomer* being in the midst and near these *Islands*, must likewise be known; and the Port of *Gomer* being one of the best, and most frequented of the *Canaries*, it cannot answer to the *Aphrositos* of the *Ancients*. Let us therefore leave this *Gomer* for *Theode*, and say,

That farther in the *Sea*, and about 100 miles, or, as others say, 100 Leagues from the *Canaries*, is an *Isle* they call *San Borondon*: Authors say, that those which think not of it, find it sometimes by chance; but that it is never found by those who expresly seek it: However it be, it is held for truth, and *Vincent Blanc* assures us, that from the top of *Teneriffe*, whence may be seen all the *Canaries*, this is likewise sometimes seen, yet that those which attempt to go to it, cannot find it, though with great pains; whether it be that the Fogs hide it, or that some Current carries them from it; and for this reason they have given it the name of *Fortunada*, *Incontada*, and *Nontrovada*, &c. After all these particularities, I can doubt no longer, but this Isle is the *Aprositos*, *Inaccessible*, and the *Ombrio*, that is, the shadow of the *Ancients*. And so the whole body of the *Canaries*, will answer to the whole Body of the *Fortunate Isles*, without adding the *Madera*; and from hence we have reason to place the first *Meridian* in the *Canaries*, as *Ptolomy* hath placed it in the *Fortunate Isles*, since these first answer to the last; which will give a great facility to the reconcilement of *Ancient* and *Modern Geography*, otherwise not to be done. Let us proceed to what each of the *Canaries* may have at present considerable, beginning with those nearest the main Land.

The Isle of *Forteventura* described.

Forteventura, once *Erbania*, is not far distant from the *Cape Bojador*, above 10 or 12 Leagues; from the Great *Canary* 16 or 18; from *Lancelotta* 6. Its greatest length is 25 Leagues, 15 or 16 its greatest breadth. In the middle, it streightens so much, that there remains only a League or two from one *Sea* to another: And this part was crossed with a Wall, which separated the Island into two Estates, when it was discovered. The Land is partly Mountainous, and partly in Plains; fruitful in *Wheat* and *Barley:* Along the Coast glide many streams of *Fresh Water:* and along these streams are the *Tarhais Trees* crooked and soft, which bear *Gum*; of which is made pure white *Salt*. In the Countrey, besides the *Palm Trees*, which bear *Dates*, the *Olive Trees*, *Mastick Trees*, and the *Orsolle*, a Grain for Dying, there is a kind of *Fig-tree*, from which they have *Balm* as white as *Milk*, and which is of great vertue in *Physick*. They make *Cheese* of their *Goats Milk*, with which the Countrey is so well stocked, that they may afford more then 50000 yearly; and besides the profit made of their *Skins*, and their *Fat*, (each *Beast* yielding 30 or 40 pound) their *Flesh* is excellent. The *Ports* of this Island are not proper, but for smaller Vessels. Its chief places towards the *Sea*, are *Forteventura*, *Ricquerocque*, *Chabras*, *Baltarhays*, *Lanegala*, *Pozonegro*, and *Tarafalo*. Most of which are well frequented by *Merchants*, especially by the *English*, who of late are incorporated into a joynt Fellowship and Stock; and not only to this Isle, but to all the *Seven Canary Isles*.

The Isle of *Lancelotta*.

LANCELOTTA is 16 or 18 Leagues long, and 10 or 12 large: The access to it, is difficult on the North and West Coast; the Countrey is plain towards the East, and the Continent where its *Town* and *Ports* are, as *Cayas* or *Lancelotta*, *Porto de Nayos*, and *Port de Cavallos:* These last are near one to the other; the Isle hath the same properties with that of *Forteventura*.

The

The *Great Canary Isle.*

The *GREAT CANARY* is almost equal in length and breadth, which is about 18 or 20 Leagues. It is the principal of these Islands, both because of its greatness, fertility, and the goodness of its Air; and because the *Governor* and *Bishop* of these Islands, whose yearly Revenue is 12000 Ducats, have their Residence in the City *Canaria*, which is fair, its Inhabitants well clad, and civil; and how hard soever it rains, its streets are dry, being only Sand. Its other places are *Tedele*, *Galder*, *Argores*, *Gusa*, and *Del Douze Ingennos*, or *Twelve Sugar Engines*. This Island it exceeding fruitful, and the *Soyl* so fertile, that they have two Harvests in one year, reaping their *Wheat*, *Barley*, and other *Grains* in *February* and *May*. Their *Wheat* is excellent, and its Bread very white; but from the excellency of its *Fruits*, as *Oranges*, *Citrons*, *Pomegranates*, *Figs*, *Olives*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Peaches*, *Melons*, *Potato's*, and above all, from its *Wine*, which is far beyond that of *Spain*. (Which among all others, bears the Bell with us in *England*.) From these we may judge of the goodness of the Island. They have also several other good Commodities, as *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar-Canes*, *Cheese*, and *Wood*, in great abundance; and breeds such plenty of *Cattle*, that the *Leather* is not one of the least Commodities they vend to other Nations, as *Spain*, *England*, *Holland*, &c. They have also store of *Fowl*; it is well covered with *Firr Trees*, *Dragon Trees*, *Palm Trees*, &c. And its *Rivers* well filled with *Fish*; but above all, they have *Plantons* which delights in Water; it is cut and shoots forth yearly into three or four Branches; each Branch bears 30 or 40 *Apples*, resembling a *Cucumber*; they incline to black; being ripe, they eat more deliciously then any *Comfit* in the World.

Its Inhabitants, chief places, fertility, commodities, and Trade.

The Isle of *Teneriffe*, with its high Pike *Teitha*, described.

TENERIFFE, which some call *Enfer*, is distant from the *Grand Canary* 16 or 18 Leagues, towards the North-West: Its utmost length is about 24 or 25 Leagues, and 12 or 15 its greatest breadth. The Land is raised in little Hills, and towards the middle, is the Pike of *Teitha* or *Terreira*, a streight and round Mountain, which reaches in height 45000 *English* paces, which is 45 miles, (some make it not so high, others higher;) but all agree that it is the highest Mountain in the World; even so high, that it may be seen in a clear day 60 Leagues distance at Sea; and from the top of it, a man may easily discover, and count all the other *Canary Islands*, though some of them be above 50 Leagues distance from this. It often casts forth fire and Sulphur: Its *Summit* is in form of a *Sugar Loaf* or sharp point, called the Pike of *Teneriffe*: For two or three miles about it, are only *Cinders* and *Pumice Stones*; two or three Miles lower, all is covered with *Snow* throughout the year, though there never fall any in those Islands; and yet lower are found the great *Trees Vintaico*, whose Wood is very weighty, and never rots in Water. Under these *Trees Laurels* cover almost 10 or 12 miles of the Countrey, where the *Singing Birds* of the *Canaries*, known among us by the name of *Canary Birds*, warble their pleasant notes. The foot of the Mountain casts forth divers Branches, and extends it self into a good part of the Island, which abounds more in *Corn*, then any of the rest; and sometimes it alone feeds them all. The Countrey between *Rotana* and *Realejo*, is so fruitful and pleasant, that its like can scarce be found in the World, such quantity it produces of *Grains*, *Wines*, *Fruits*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Sugar*, *Flax*, *Silk*, &c. And from hence they have their *Vines* which they carry to the *West Indies*; the best of which grow on the Coast of *Ramble*. There are certain *Shrubs* which yield a liquor like to *Milk*, which after it is thickned, makes an excellent *Gum* called *Taybayba*. From the *Dragon Tree*, cut towards the Root, they draw a red liquor which they call *Dragons Blood*, well known to *Apothecaries*. Its principal City *Laguna* so called, because of the Lake near to it, is 4 or 5 Leagues from the *Sea*, contains two parishes, and is the residence of the *Governor* of the Island. The other Cities, are *Santta Crux*, *Rotana*, *Rajalesa*, *Carachico*, and *Adeca*. When it was discovered, its Kings to the number of seven dwelt in *Caverns*, and the bodies of their dead were set up about *Caves*, where they became as dry as Parchment; among which, the most honorable had a stick put in their hand, and a vessel of *Milk* before them.

Its Fertility.

Its chief places

GOMER

GOMER is 8 or 9 Leagues from *Teneriff*, is 10 or 12 Leagues long. Its chief City of the same name, often receives the *Indian Fleet*, and furnishes them with *Corn*, *Fruits*, *Sugar*, and *Wines*, as well as those of *Teneriff*, and *Canaria*. The Countrey is high, plain, bears many *Dragon-trees*, feeds small Cattle. Its Roads are deep and large: The People of this Isle were formerly more barbarous than those of the other *Canary* Isles, using many strange Customs not known elsewhere; among which they held it for a great sign of *Hospitality*, to let their Friends lie with their Wives, and receive theirs in testimony or return of kindness. The Isle of *Gomer* described.

The Isle of *FERR* is the most West of all the *Canaries*, distant from *Palma* 15 or 16 Leagues; from *Gomer* only 5 or 6. This Isle in reason should be well known, many persons having been there, and many Authors treated very amply of it; yet I will a little shew the diversity found touching the greatness, and quality of the soyl; as also the Water with which the Isle is served. Its chief place is called *Hierro*, seated on the Sea shore. Here is found plenty of *Hogs*, *Goats*, and *Sheep*; also of *Beasts*, *Fowl*, *Fruits*, and quantity of *Grains* and *Sugar Canes*, and hath much *Cattle* which yield abundance of Milk and Cheese. Here is said to be no fresh Water, only in the middle of the Isle there grows a Tree, whose Leaves are much like those of the *Olive*, which being alwaies covered with Clouds, drops from its Leaves into a *Cistern* which is underneath it, very good Water; and in such great abundance, that it suffices all the Inhabitants; as also all the Cattle and living Creatures in the *Island*. One *Jackson* an *Englishman*, who reports to have seen, considered, and measured this Tree in 1618, saith, That the water falls into a *Pond* containing 20000 Tuns, which in one night is filled; and that from this *Pond* the water is by divers Channels conveyed into other *Ponds* or *Cisterns*, through the whole *Isle*, which is very well peopled: some say it hath in it about 8000 people, and above 100000 head of *Cattle*, which for an *Island* but of six Leagues Circuit is very well; for if the Tree be in the middle of the *Isle*, it cannot be above a League distant from any extremity; and moreover more than 20000 Tuns of water, for 100000 months will be a Tun a day, for every five months, which is too much drink, if they drink nothing but water. Isle of *Ferr* described. A Tree whose Leaves destil Water, which serves the Isle, there being no Rain or Rivers.

These particulars are contradicted by others. *The Conquest of all these Isles* saies *many Trees*, not one alone, otherwise it would be immortal. *Sanutus* saith, that the Cloud begins to rise about noon, and in the evening quite covereth the Tree, which at the same time destills water, drop by drop along the trunk, branches and leaves; and that it continues so till day. Others say, that this water falls from Noon all night, until a little after the Sun be risen. But most will have the Cloud perpetually about the Tree, and that it destills continually. *Suarez* makes the *Pond* or *Cistern* of not above 20 Tuns. The relations of 1602. say, two *reservers*, each 20 foot square; but neither *Suarez* nor others makes any mention of other *reservers* in the *Isle*; but will have this water in one place alone whither all go to fetch it. But let us pass from the *Ocean*, into the *Mediterranean Sea*, and come to *Malta*, which is one of the best, but none of the least considerable pieces of *Africa*. Nigh unto these 7 *Islands*, called the *Canary Isles*; are the Isles of *Roco*, *Santa Clara*, *Gratiosa*, *Alegria*, and the two *Savage Isles*.

PALMA is distant from *Gomer*, 12 or 15 Leagues to the North West. It is round or oval, and its Circuit about 25 Leagues: Abounds in *Corn*, *Wine*, *Sugars*, and all sorts of *Fruits*. It is well stored with *Cattle*, and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spanish Fleet* that pass to *Peru* and *Brasil*. The City of the same name, hath great confluence, by reason of its *Wines*, loaden for the *West-Indies*, and other places. Its best, and like to *Malvoisie*, is made about *Brenia*, whence are taken more than 12000 Pipes yearly; also St. *Andre*, and *Tassa Corde*, are on the Sea. It hath little Corn, which is brought from *Teneriff*. Four *Sugar Engines*: the Church of *Palma*, and the Governors House, are esteemed fair.

The Island of MALTA.

The Isle of *Malta*.

THe *Isle* of *MALTA* is in the middle of the *Mediterranean Sea*, and almost at an equal distance from the main Land of *Asia*, and *Europe*. It is about 600 Leagues from the Coast of *Souria*, and 500 from the Streight of *Gibralter*: This Streight beginning the *Mediterranean Sea* towards the West; and that Coast ending it towards the East. Likewise from *Malta* to the

Its scituation.

neareſt firm Land of *Europe*, which is *Italy*; and to the neareſt Coaſts of the firm Land in *Africa*, which are the Coaſts of *Tunis*, and *Tripoly*, (theſe bounding the *Mediterranean Sea* on the South, that on the North) is 80, 90, and near 100 Leagues.

The Antients have eſteemed it rather in *Africa*, then in *Europe*, and the opinion hath been followed by almoſt all modern Authors: though it be neareſt the Iſle, and Kingdom of *Sicily*, which is in *Europe*, and from which it likewiſe holds, then to *Africa*: and though it be in the hands of the *Knights* of *Malta* who are all *Europeans*, the native tongue of the Country, and moſt of their Cuſtoms, have alwaies more reſembled thoſe of *Africa*, than *Europe*.

The Iſle famous for being the ſeat of the Knights of *Malta*.

This *Iſle* at preſent is very famous, not for its greatneſs, nor for its fertility, neither for Antient renown; but by reaſon it is the reſidence of the Great *Maſter*, and *Knights* of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, whom at preſent we call of *Malta*, where they have ſettled ſince they loſt *Rhodes*: and becauſe it ſerves as a powerful Rampire for all Chriſtendom, and particularly for *Sicily* and *Naples*.

Its length and breadth.

The length of the *Iſle* is not above 20, or 25000 paces, its breadth 10, or 12000, and its Circuit about 60000 paces, which are 20, or 25 *Italian* miles in length, 10, or 12 in breadth, and 60 in Circuit. The *Soil* except the Antient City of *Malta*, is almoſt all ſtones, craggy, and dry: yet it produces

Its ſoil and Commodities.

Wheat, *Barley*, *Cummin*, and all ſorts of *Fruits*; among others *Figgs*, *Apricocks*, *Citrons*, *Melons*, *Grapes*, &c. It feeds *Horſes*, *Aſſes*, *Mules*, *Hogs*, *Goats*, *Sheep*, *Hares*, *Conies*, *Hens*, *Partridges*, *Quails*, *Faulcons*, and other *Birds* of prey. And its *Beaſts*, *Fowl*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, as likewiſe their *Capers*, *Honey*, and *Cotton*, of which they make *Cotton Cloth*, and ſeveral *Manufactures*, are excellent; yet it wants much *Corn*, and *Wine* for the neceſſary food of its Inhabitants, which are 75 or 80000 ſouls: and among which there are about 15 or 16000 *Souldiers*, beſides the *Knights*, ſo that they are conſtrained to fetch their proviſion from *Sicily*, which they have at a certain rate, and with priviledge to pay no Cuſtom.

Its Inhabitants.

The natural *Inhabitants* of this *Iſland* are ſaid to be miſerable, churliſh, and uncivil *people*, of complexion, not leſs tawny then the *Moors*; uſe the *African* Language, but follow the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, which the *Knights* are bound to defend. Their women are fair, who are debarred the ſociety of men, and go veiled, as not deſiring to ſhew themſelves, and are guarded after the *Italian* manner; they have here a great many of *Curtizans*, which are tolerated, who for the moſt part are *Grecians*, who ſit at their doors playing on Inſtruments, &c. to intice men in to them.

Its Ports, Roads, and chief places.

On the Coaſts of this *Iſle*, and beginning by *Malta*, and turning towards the Eaſt, South, and Weſt, &c. to make the Circuit, the *Ports*, *Roads*, and *Harbours*, which preſent themſelves, are *Marza*, or *Marza-ſcala*: then *Marza ſirocco*, where the *Turks* landed the 19 of *May* 1565, when they had a deſign to beſiege *Malta*. The Great Maſter *Vignacour* hath ſince cauſed to be built two *Forts*, which defend the entrance,; and a third upon that *languet* or tongue of land, which advances into the middle of the Port, enough to hinder any for the future from caſting Anchor there in quiet; continuing towards the Coaſt which regards the South, and far towards the Weſt, is nothing but *Rocks*, except it be a little *Bay* or *Golfe* of *Pietra Negre*, others call it *Pietra Sancta*, where the 5 of *July* arrived the firſt ſuccour in favour of *Malta*. This relief was but of ſix hundred men, who paſſed from *Pietra Sancta* to the old City and from thence

thence to the Bourg *Il-Borgo*, which the *Turks* beſieged, after having taken the *Fort* of St. *Elmo*, and this aſſiſtance ſerved much to the defence of that place. *Pietra Sancta* regards towards the South, the Rock of *Forfolo* or *Furfurà*. Towards the Weſt are the *Golfes* or *Bayes* of *Anteofega*, the *Iſlanders* call it *Hayntofeca*, then *Muggiaro* where the *Turks* firſt caſt Anchor the 18 of *May* 1565. Between the Weſt and North is the *Bay* or *Port* of *Melecca*, where the great relief arrived the 7 of *December* following. *Melecca* regards the Iſland of *Goza*, and in the ſtreight or channel between both are the Iſles of *Cumin*, and *Cuminat*. This part of the Iſle about *Melecca* is almoſt divided from the reſt, by the *Golfe* or *Port* of the *Saline Vecchie*, or *old ſaltpits* towards the Eaſt; and that of *Muggiaro* towards the Weſt; and if the *Turks* had ſeized the paſs which is between them, this aſſiſtance had proved vain. Next to the *Golfe* of the old *Saline*, is the Creek and Chapel of St. *Paul*, where according to common tradition he was ſhipwrackt: next is the Creek of new *Salines*, and the Creek of St. *George*, where the *Turks* diſ-imbarked their Ammunitions to ſerve to aſſault the Fort St. *Elmo*. And in fine, the Ports of *Marza Maſſetto*, and *Marza grande* are thoſe where at three ſeveral times have been builded, and fortified three Cities, and divers Forts contiguous to each other. *Il Borgo*, or the *Bourg* is 2000 paces in Circuit, the Iſle of *Sengle* 1500, each of 1000, or 1200 houſes, the one and the other ſo well fortified, that they received 70000 Cannot ſhot, and ſuſtained an incredible number of aſſaults of 60 or 70000 *Turks*. The *Arſenal* for the *Gallyes* is yet in the *Bourg*, but there reſides there only *Malteſes*, and *Mariners*, and in the Iſle of *Sengle Mariners* and *Souldiers* of Fortune.

The Iſle hath oft withſtood the fury of the *Turks*.

The great *Maſter* and the *Knights* reſide at preſent in the City of *Valetta*, which is now by much the moſt conſiderable of theſe Cities, both for its force, the advantage of its ſcituation, and the beauty of its publick and private buildings. It is built upon *Montit Sceberros*, which forms a *Languet* of Land all of a Rock; and between the Ports of *Marza Maſſetto*, and *Marza grande* commanding on all ſides, and into all parts of the one and the other Port, and its ditches to the landward, which are cut out of the Rock, which are exceeding broad, of a very great depth, ſtrongly flankt, and well fortified. The Walls are ſtrong, joyn to the Rock, and are about 60 foot high, and are well provided with *Guns*, &c. againſt any occaſion. It contains above 2000 houſes, which are for the moſt part uniform, builded of Free-ſtone; they are commonly two ſtories high, flat at top, and with *Tarraſſes*. The *Market place* is ſpacious, from whence ſeveral fair Streets do take their riſe; to every houſe there is a *Ciſtern* to preſerve water for their occaſions; beſides theſe houſes there are ſeveral ſtately Structures, as the *Great Maſters Palace*, which is a gallant Edifice, having a *Tower* which overlooketh the whole Iſland; the *Hall* or *Chamber* of *Aſſemblies* where they ſit in Council, is curiouſly adorned and painted, wherein their Fights both by Sea and Land, as well at home as abroad, are lively repreſented; and this as alſo the *Armory*, which may on a ſuddain Arm 20 or 25000 men, are in the *Great Maſters* Palace; then the Churches of St. *Paul*, and St. *John Patron of the Order*, the one the ſeat of a Biſhop, and the other of a Prior, are magnificent; likewiſe the ſeven *Alberges* of the *Knights* like ſo many Palaces, where the Commanders of the ſeven tongues treat the Cavaliers at the expence of the Order. The *Arſenal* near *Porto Reale* is as well furniſhed with all ſorts of Munition as any in Chriſtendom. Alſo the *Hoſpital* of St. *Johns* towards the Caſtle of St. *Elmo* doth merit fame, not only for its buildings which are curious, but for the entertainment there given to thoſe that fall ſick, where the *Knights* themſelves lodge when *ſick* or *wounded* to receive cure, where they are exceeding well attended, have excellent good dyet, ſerved by the *Junior Knights* in ſilver, and every Friday viſited by the *Grand Maſter*, accompanied with the great Croſſes: a ſervice which was from the firſt inſtitution commanded; and thereupon called *Knights Hoſpitallers*. Here are, as *Sandys* ſaith, three *Nunneries*, one for *Virgins*, another for *Baſtards*, and the third for penitent *Whores*.

The reſidence of the *Great Maſter*.

Castle of St. Elmo.

The Castle of St. *Elmo* is at the end of the City of *Valetta* towards the Sea, and at the opening of two Ports. During the siege of *Malta* it was taken, and sackt by the *Turks*, after having wasted 18000 *Cannonshot*, given divers assaults, and lost 4000 men of their best *Militia*, among others *Dragut*, one of their most famous *Coursaiers*. The *Christians* lost 1300 men among whom many *Knights*. But this *Fort* was restored to a far better Estate than before: and is separated from the City only by a *ditch* cut likewise in the *Rock*; on the other side, and on the point of the *Borgo* is the Fort of St. *Angelo*; and likewise above the *Borgo*, and the Isle of *Sengle*, have been made new works to hinder the *Turks* from lodging there.

Besides these three *Cities*, and the *Forts* about them, the ancient City of *Malta*, *Medina*, is in the middle of the Island, on an easie ascending hill, and in an advantagious scituation. The *Turks* assaulted it in 1551 but soon retired. The *Bishop* of the Isle hath here his residence; and near the City is yet the *Grotte* and *Chapel* of St. *Paul* where they believe he preached, and where he lay when he suffered *shipwrack*, and this place is of great account among them.

The Isle very strong and well provided for War.

All these *Cities* and *Forts* have 250 or 300 pieces of *Cannon* on their Rampart; and their *Magazins* are so well provided with *Powder*, *Shot*, *Wood*, *Buket*, *Salt-meats*, and all *Provisions*, and *Ammunition*, that they call it *Malta Flor del Mondo*, *Malta* the Flower of the World: being provided alwaies with *Ammunitions* and *Provisions* for a three years siege; yet this is to be understood, not only because of its *Fortifications*, and *Ammunitions*, but likewise because of its force, and the resolution of its *Knights*.

The Order of Knighthood first instituted.

This order of *Knighthood* according to *Sandys*, received their denomination from *John* the charitable *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*; though vowed to St. *John Baptist* as their Patron. Their first seat was the Hospital of St. *John* of *Jerusalem*, built by one *Gerrard*, at the same time when the *Europeans* had something to do in the *Holy-Land*, where they received such good success, and became so famous that they drew divers worthy persons into this society; which by Pope *Gelasius* the second, was much approved of. He saith, that one *Raymond* was the first Master of this Order, who did amplifie their Canons, and entituled himself *The poor servant of Christ, and Guardian of the Hospital in Jerusalem*; and at the allowance of one *Honorius* the second, were apparelled in black garments, signed with a *White-Cross*; this Order we have said began at *Jerusalem*, and at first meddled not but with the Government of the *Hospital* of St. *John*, and were called *Fryers Hospitallers*, or simply *Hospitallers*, as those of the *Temple Templers*; but when these *Hospitaliers* were constrained to make profession both of *Hospitality* and *Arms*, they were called *Knights Hospitallers*, or *Knights* of the *Hospital* of St. *John of Jerusalem*; after the loss of *Jerusalem*, they held their Convent in the City and Fortress of *Margatt*, then in *Aicre* or *Ptolomaido*; and all the *Latine Christians* being driven from the *Holy Land*, and from *Souria*, they retired into *Cyprus*. But during their stay in *Cyprus*, they gained *Rhodes*, and established themselves there so powerfully, that they were called *Knights* of *Rhodes*. *Margaret* was taken from them in 1285. *Aicre* in 1291. little less than 200 years after *Godfrey* of *Bulloin* had Conquered the *Holy Land*, and this order began before; after the loss of *Aicre* they lived in *Cyprus* from 1291 to 1309. in which year they took, and settled in *Rhodes*, and maintained it more than 100 years, sustaining four sieges, till in 1522 *Sultan Solyman* became Master of *Rhodes*; they then retired into *Europe*, now into one place, and then into another, and in fine to *Malta*, which *Charles* the fifth gave them in 1530. with some little neighbouring Isles, as likewise the City of *Tripoly* in *Barbary*, which they could keep no longer then 1551. that place being too far engaged in the Enemies Country. These *Knights* are of divers *Nations*, and are divided into eight *Tongues*, to wit of *Province*, of *Auvergne*, of *France*, of *Italy*, of *Arragon*, of *England*, of *Germany*, and of *Castile*; so that the three first are in *France*, and the last in *Castile*; each *Tongue* contains many *Priories*, and each *Priory* many *Commanderies*; these three *Tongues* which are in *France*, have near 300 *Commanderies*. The other five *Tongues* which are in *Italy*, *Arragon*, *England*, *Germany*, and *Castile*, made near 400.

These Knights oft forced to remove their habitations.

but

but there are no more in *England*, the Kings of *England* when they confiscated the goods of the Church, having likewise seized the *goods* and *Commanderies* of the *Knights* of *Malta*; and in *Germany* a part of these *Commanderies* being fallen into the hands of *Lutherans*, and *Calvinists*, serve no longer: so that at present *France* alone furnishes little less than half the *Commanderies* of *Malta*. *England.*

And it hath been observed that from the first establishment of this *Order*, unto this very present, of 57 great *Masters*, there hath been 37 *French*, only 4 or 5 *Italians*, 7, or 8, *Spaniards*, and 11 whose Nation and Tongue the History could not observe; but apparently the most part were *French*, since this *Order* began by the *French*; of these 34 known, 12 were in the *Holy-Land*, and in *Souria*, 13 in *Rhodes*, and 9 in *Malta* unto Father *Paul* of *Lascaris*; of every one there is a *Grand Prior*, who lives in great reputation in his Country, who orders the affairs of their *Order*; and for *England*, St. *Johns* by *Clarkenwell* in times past was a mansion of the *Grand-Prior*. There are several Councels among these *Knights*, as that for deciding of differences which may happen among them; the Councel of *War*, the General *Chapter*, which may augment, or moderate the Authority of the great *Master*, renew the Ordinances and Government of the *Religion*, or their Order, and which is held every five years. Their Government.

The Ceremonies used in *Knighting* are these which follow; first being cloathed in a long loose garment, he goeth to the *Altar* with a *Taper* in his hand of *White Wax*, where he kneeleth down, and desires the Order of the Ordinary; then in the name of the *Father*, the *Son*, and the *Holy Ghost*, he receiveth a sword, therewith to defend the *Catholick* Church, to repulse and vanquish the enemy, to expose himself to death for the Faith, to relieve the oppressed, and all by the power of the Cross, which is defigured by the cross hilt, then is he girt with a belt, and thrice struck on his shoulders with his sword, which signifies that he is cheerfully to suffer all afflictions for the honour of *Christ*: who taking it of him, flourisheth it aloft three times, as a provokement to the adversary, and then sheaths it again. Then he that gives him *Knighthood*, doth exhort him to get true honour by laudable and couragious *actions*, to be vigilant in the *Faith*, &c. then two other *Knights* of the said *Order*, do put on a pair of gilt *spurs*, which doth signifie that he should do no ignoble action for gain, and to value *Gold* no more than dirt; and thus with a *Taper* in his hand he goes to *Mass*, where he is excited to *Hospitality*, to works of *Piety*, redemption of *Christian Captives*, &c. Also he is asked whether he is resolved to live among them, to quit the Authority of secular Magistracy, to revenge their injuries, whether he be of any profession, whether a *freeman*, joyned in *Matrimony*, or vowed to another *Order*; and having answered thereunto, upon the receipt of the Sacrament he vows in this order: *I vow to the Almighty God, to the Virgin Mary his immaculate Mother, and to St. John Baptist, perpetually by the help of God, to be truly obedient to all my superiours, appointed by God and this Order, to live without any thing of mine own, and withal to live chastly*; which done he is received as a member of them; besides other prayers, they are commanded to say daily 150 *Pater-nosters*, for such as have been slaves in their *Wars*. None are admitted to this Order, but those who can prove their Gentility for six descents, which is examined and approved by the Knights of their Nation; they remain a year upon approbation, before they are admitted into the Society, where they come very young, that they may the sooner come to a *Commendum* at home. Their *habit* as we noted before, are black Cloaks, with large white Crosses of fine linnen set on the shoulder place; but in time of *War* they wear Mandilions of Crimson with the said White Crosses set behind and before, and about their necks they wear a Riband with a branch of the Cross. If one of these *Knights* be convicted of a Capital offence, he is in the first place publickly degraded in the Church of St. *John*, where he received his *Knighthood*; also strangled, or thrown into the Sea. There are of these *Knights* 1000, whereof 500 alwaies reside in this Island; the other 500 dispersed throughout *Christendom*, at their several *Seminaries*, which upon The Ceremonies performed in making these Knights.

any

any ſummons are to make their perſonal appearance; every Nation do feed by themſelves in their ſeveral *Alberges*, and ſit at table like *Friers*. Of theſe there be 16 of great authority (*Councellors of State*,) called the *Great Croſſes*, out of whom the Officers of their Order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellor*, the Maſter of the *Hoſpital*, *&c.* are choſen, and who together with the *Maſter* puniſhes the tranſgreſſors as aforeſaid. Now when the Great *Maſter* hapneth to die, they ſuffer no veſſel to go out of the Land, until another be choſen, leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their election, which is thus performed, The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two *Knights*, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*; and theſe 16 from among themſelves chuſe 8, and theſe 8 chuſe a *Knight*, a *Prieſt*, and a *Frier ſervant*, and they three out of the 16 *great Croſſes*, elect the Great *Maſter*, who being thus choſen, is ſtiled *The moſt illuſtrious and moſt reverend Prince*, the Lord Friet *A. W.* great Maſter *of the* Hoſpital of St. *John* of *Jeruſalem*, Prince of *Malta* and *Goza*. The Great *Maſter* being thus choſen, and received with theſe and many other noble Ceremonies, hath a great power over all the Commanders and Officers of the *Order*; he aſſembles the *Councels*, calls the Officers of *Juſtice*, who exerciſe in his Name, and execute under his Seal; he *Coins money*, diſpoſes of *Treaſure*, *impriſons*, and ſentences the *faulty*, pardons the *Condemned*, creates Knights of Grace, confers even to the eighth dignity of the Great *Croſs*, *&c.* In the *Councel* and at *Table* he ſits under a Canopy of State, and is bravely attended, and ſerved by *Knights* according to their Order, and without Fee, and doth all the acts of Soveraignty, and hath a great revenue to ſupport his Dignity.

Their poſſeſſions.

Beſides *Malta*, the Great *Maſter*, and the *Knights* of *Malta* poſſeſs the Iſles of *Cumin*, and *Cumiot* which are very little; *Forfola* or *Furfura*, which is but a Rock, (and when they would jeſt with any among them, or play on ſome young *Knight*, they call him *Prince* of *Forfola*,) The Iſle of *Goza* of which the Great *Maſter* takes the title of *Prince*; this is the *Gaulos* or *Gaudos* of the Antients; and to this day called *Gauſditch* by its Inhabitants, and *Gauſdoſch* by the *Moors*. It is about 6 or 8000 paces from *Malta*, and about 20000 paces in Circuit, its form approaching to an Oval. Its *Fortreſs* is on an uncommanded hill, and the Town beneath it; all the Iſle though mountainous is peopled not by *Villages*, but by *Hamlets*, and *houſes* ſcattered here and there, the Air being very good, and the land watered with many ſtreams. It may aſſiſt *Malta* with its *Corn*, *Fruits*, *Muttons*, *Hares*, *Fowl*, *Honey*, *&c.* they take here excellent *Faulcons*; and that which is preſented to the *Vice-Roy* of *Sicily* in the name of the Great *Maſter* of *Malta*, and for *Malta*, likewiſe thoſe which are preſented to the King of *France*, are for the moſt part taken here.

This Iſle of *GOZA* was taken, and pillaged by the *Turks* in 1551, who carried near 4000 ſouls Captives, there remaining almoſt as many. At preſent it is reſtored, and the Caſtle well fortified, and all the approaches of the Iſle defended with ſome Forts. Its *Governour* is one of the *Knights* whom the Grand *Maſter* ſends from three years to three years; the Inhabitants ſpeak *Arab*, or *Moreſco*, as at *Malta*, have the ſame manners, and are all *Catholicks*.

Likewiſe *LAMPEDOZA*, and *LINOSA* or *Limoſa* diſtant from *Malta*, about 10000 paces, belong to theſe *Knights*, but both are eſteemed deſart. Weſt of them and towards the *Cape* of *Bona* is the Iſle of *Pantaleria*, which belongs not to the *Knights*, but to the *Catholick King*; but becauſe we have not remembred it before, we will here ſpeak a word of it. Its Circuit is about 30000 paces. Its City, and Port regard *Sicily* towards the North; and *Malta* towards the Eaſt. Above the City is a Caſtle or Rock, which nature hath made craggy, and inacceſſible on all ſides. The Land bears little *Corn*, quantity of *Pulſe*, and *Kitchin-herbs*; produceth abundance of *Cotton*, *Anniſeeds*, *Figgs*, *Melons*, *Capers*, and excellent *Grapes*, *&c.* The *manners*, *habit* and *tongue* of the *Iſlanders* retain much of the *Moors*, yet they are all *Catholicks* like to *Malta*, and under the *Vice-Roy of Sicily*. In the midſt of the Iſland, and in a *Cave* is a *Pitt*, which exhales continually an obſcure vapour, which ſpreading it ſelf on all ſides on the *Rock*, diſſolves into water, and diſtills with ſuch abundance,

that

that it furniſheth all the Inhabitants have need of not only for their drink, and other uſes, but for their *Beaſts*; nor is there any other freſh water in the Iſle, the Land being dry, reddiſh, and ſo hot that a naked foot can ſcarce ſuffer it.

For the reſt the *Knights* of *Malta* are alwaies in Arms againſt the *Moors*, *Mahometans*, and all the *Pyrates* of the *Mediterranean Sea*, and by their expeditions with thoſe few *Gallies*, they have delivered out of their hands a great number of *Chriſtian Captives*, reduced many *Mahometans* to the *Chriſtian Faith*, maintain their Arms in good reputation, and on all occaſions which preſent themſelves, whether of their own, or with other *Princes* of *Chriſtendom*, they freely employ and venture both their *lives* and *goods* in favour of *Chriſtians* in general and particular. Knights alwaies in Wars.

But it is time to finiſh *Africa*, and to ſay that if we would have believed certain Authors among the Antients, this *Africa* had been repreſented to us with unſupportable *heats*, unſufferable *droughs*, fierce and cruel Beaſts, perfidious Men, horrible and afrightful Monſters, whereas time, which daily diſcovers things unknown to the Antients, hath made us ſee that the greateſt *heats* of *Africa* have ſome *refreſhments*; that the drieſt *ſands* have ſome *wells*, ſome *waters*; that the vaſteſt *ſolitudes* have ſome *green fields*, ſome *Fruits*; that the Beaſts are not ſo dangerous, but that Men may defend themſelves from their fury; nor the Men ſo *faithleſs*, but that they have *Commerce* and *Society* among themſelves, as alſo with *Strangers*; that their *Dragons*, *Serpents*, *Griffons*, *&c.* are for the moſt part imaginary. And moreover, the generoſity of its *Lyons*, the docility of its *Camels*, the Feathers of its *Eſtriches*, the odour of its *Civets*, the ſwiftneſs of its *Barbes*, the agility of its *wild Aſſes*, the greatneſs of its *Elephants*, the ſtrength of its *Eagles*, the diverſity of its *Parroquets*, and the wantonneſs of its little *Monkeys*, *&c.* recompence the miſchief which other Beaſts may do. And though there are as yet ſome people fierce, and Man-eaters, the moſt part of the others are very ingenious and tractable. The *Egyptians* have long ſince ſufficiently made known their cunning in *Sciences*, *Arts*, and *Arms*, ſo have the *Carthaginians*, *&c.* and the Antients eſteemed the *Æthiopians* the moſt innocent and juſteſt men in the world, believing the *Gods* ſometimes banqueted with them. Beſides there are many particulars worthy of obſervation in *Africa*; what City was ever fairer, or more magnificent than *THEBES*, in the higher *Egypt*? Than *MEMPHIS* in the middle? Or *ALEXANDRIA* in the lower? Out of *Egypt*, what City was ever richer, more powerful, or more proud than *CARTHAGE*, except *Rome*? And at preſent *FEZ* is ſo ſplendid, that there is no City in *Europe* to be compared with it; though many believe it not to compare to *CAIRO* in *Egypt*: Among the Seven Wonders of the World, ſome place three in *Egypt* alone, the *Statue* of *MEMNON* at *Thebes*, the *PYRAMIDES* near *Memphis*, and the *PHARUS* of *Alexandria*.

Not only theſe beautiful Works, and fair Cities, not only the infinite quantity of *Gold*, and other *Metals*, *Precious ſtones*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Spices*, *Druggs*, *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Sugars*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Cordovants*, *Amber*, *Ambergreece*, *Elephants-teeth*, *Eſtriches-feathers*, *Saffron*, *Coral*, *Civet*, *Muſk*, *Incenſe*, *Coffee*, *Capers*, *Olives*, *Ivory*, *Silk*, *Cotton*, *Flax*, *&c.* of which they make *Velvets*, *Silks*, *Damasks*, *&c.* a thouſand ſeveral *Manufactures* which are found there, ought to make us account *Africa* very conſiderable: but its extent which is little leſs than *Aſia*, twice as great as *Europe*. Its poſition is in the Southern part of our Continent; the South is eſteemed after the Eaſt, before either North or Weſt: It was the portion of *Cham*, ſecond Son to *Noah*, which may make us judge it the ſecond in greatneſs and goodneſs. Its firſt *Monarchies* have been known before thoſe of *Europe*; ſome will ſay before thoſe of *Aſia*. *Arts*, *Sciences*, *Letters*, and *Laws*, have been in great reputation here, before they paſſed into *Greece* or the reſt of *Europe*. Commodities of *Africa*.

AMERICA,

- AMERICA as it is divided into
  - SEPTENTRIONAL, which may be divided into
    - CANADIANE where there shall be
      - The ARCTICK LANDS, as
        - Iſland — Belleſted.
        - Groenland, — Bearefort.
        - North Wales, — Sea-horſe-point.
        - South Wales, — Hudſons Bay.
      - CANADA, or NEW FRANCE, whoſe chief parts and people are thoſe of
        - Eſtotiland, — Hope advanced.
        - Saguanay, — Quebec.
        - Canada, — Mont Real.
        - Acadie, — Martengo.
        - New England, — Boſton.
        - Mary Land, — Marys town.
        - Virginia, — James town.
        - Carolina, — Charles town.
        - The Hurons, — St. Peter.
        - Iſle of Bermudas, — Southampton.
        - Florida, — St. Hellens.
    - MEXICANE, with it Audiences, Provinces, &c. of
      - MEXICO with its Provinces and chief places of
        - Mexico, — Mexico.
        - Panuco, — Panuco.
        - Mechoachan, — Mechoacan.
        - Thaſcala, — Thaſcala.
        - Guaxaca, — Antequera.
        - Tabaſco, — No. ſen. de la victoria.
        - Jucatan, — Merida.
      - GUADALAJARA with its Provinces of
        - Gudalajara, — Guadalajara.
        - Xalifco, — Compoſtella.
        - Chiametlan, — St. Sebaſtian.
        - Cullacan, — St. Michael.
        - Cinaloa, — St. John.
        - Los Zacatecas, — Zacatecas.
        - New Biſcay, — St. John.
        - Quivira, — St. Fee.
        - Anian, — Anian.
        - Cibola, — Cibola.
        - California, — Port de Montere.
      - GUATEMALA with its Provinces, &c. of
        - Guatemala, — St. Jago de guate mala.
        - Vera Pax, — Vera Pax.
        - Soconuſco, — Guevetlan.
        - Chiapa, — Cui dad Real.
        - Honduras, — Valladolid.
        - Nicaragua, — Leon.
        - Coſtarica, — Cartago.
        - Veragua, — la Conception.
      - St. DOMINGO with its Iſles, the chief of which are
        - Cuba, — St. Jago.
        - Jamaica, — Sevilla.
        - Hiſpaniola, — St. Domingo.
        - Soana, — St. Germaine.
  - MERIDIONAL, which may be divided into
    - PERUVIANE where three ſhall be
      - TERRA FIRMA, with its Provinces, &c. of
        - Panama, — Panama.
        - Carthagena, — Carthagena.
        - St. Martha, — St. Martha.
        - Rio de la Hacha, — Rio de la Hacha.
        - Venezula, — Venezula.
        - New Andalouſia, — Comana.
        - Paria, — Macureguara.
        - Caribes, — Taupuramanen.
        - Guiana, — Macurewaray.
        - Popayan, — St. Fee de Antiochia.
        - Granada, — St. Fee de Bogara.
      - PERU with its Audiences of
        - Peru, — Quito.
        - De los Quixos, — Baeſa.
        - Paſamores, — Loyola.
        - Lima, — Lima.
        - De la Plata, — de la Plata.
        - Chili, — Copiapo.
        - Magellanick Land, — St. Phillip.
    - BRAZILENE, where there ſhall be
      - BRAZILE with its Capitaines, or Governments of
        - St. Vincent, — Sanctos.
        - Rio Janiero, — Sebaſtian.
        - Spiritu Sancto, — Spiritu Sancto.
        - Porto Seguro, — Porto Seguro.
        - los Iſleos, — Los Iſleos.
        - Baya de los Sanctos, — St. Salvador.
        - Seregippe, — Seregippe del Rey.
        - Fernambuco, — Olinda.
        - Tamaraca, — Tamataca.
        - Parayba, — Paraybа.
        - Rio Granda, — De los tres Reys.
        - Siara, — Siara.
        - Maranhan, — Junipara.
        - Para, — Para.
      - PARAGUAY or, RIO de la PLATA, with its Provinces, &c. of
        - Paraguay, — Paraguay.
        - Chaco, — Chaco.
        - De la Plata, — Aſſumption.
        - Tucoman, — St. Jago del Eſtera.
        - Urvaig, — la Conception.
        - Parana, — St. Ignatious.
        - Guayr, — Ouidad Real.

AME-

AMERICA.

AMERICA is a Continent different from that wherein we inhabit, or which we call Ours; for the ſurface of the *Globe* being deſcribed into two *Hemiſpheres*, divided by the firſt *Meridian*; *America* is in that *Hemiſphere* which is oppoſite to ours.

The Voyages of *Columbus*, *Cabral*, and *Veſputius* into *America*.

In 1492, and ſome ſucceeding years, *Chriſtopher Columbus*, a *Genoueſe*, for and in the name of *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*, and *Iſabella* Queen of *Caſtile*, made divers Voyages into the Iſlands which are before this Continent, and diſcovered part of the Coaſts of the Continent. In 1501 *Alvares Cabral*, for and in the name of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, Navigating along the Coaſt of *Africa*, on a Voyage to the *Eaſt-Indies*, ſome Eaſtern Winds carried him ſo far to the Weſt, that he diſcovered the Coaſt of a main Land, which was afterwards called *Brazil*; where a little after *Americus Veſputius*, a *Florentine*, was expreſly ſent with a particular charge to diſcover this Country: In which he was ſo happy, that his name was given to that part of the Coaſt which he diſcovered; and in fine, to the whole Continent. From theſe Voyages of *Columbus*, *Cabral*, and *Americus Veſputius*, the *Spaniards* pretend to be the firſt who diſcovered, or cauſed to be diſcovered, and gave knowledge of this Continent.

America known by the Ancients.

The *Greeks* and *Latins* have given fair teſtimonies, that the Ancients have had ſome knowledge of *America*. *Plato* in his *Timæus*, and in his *Critias*, calls it the *Atlantick Iſle*, and eſteems it as great or greater than *Aſia* and *Africa* together. It ſeems that *Plato* (or *Solon*, or the Prieſt of *Egypt*, &c.) had knowledge of the greatneſs, ſcituation, and form of the two parts of *America*; ſo well they agree to *Aſia* and *Africa*: the Northern *America* with *Aſia*, the Southern with *Africa*.

America bounded.

AMERICA is almoſt divided into two parts, of which one is between the *Equator* and the North; the other, in regard of us, is towards the South, and part under the *Equator*.

After *Plato*, *Theopompus*, either in his Treatiſe of *Wonders*, or in his *Hiſtory*, makes mention of another Continent beſides ours, and touches divers particulars: Among others, that its greatneſs is ſo vaſt that it was not wholly known; that its Men were greater, ſtronger, and lived longer than we; that

A New Mapp of AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALE

Designed by Moüsieur Sanson Geographer to the French King, and Rendred into English, and Illustrated by Richard Blome. By his Majesties Especiall Command.

London,
Printed for Richard Blome

AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALE

Francis Lamb Sculp

AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALE

To the Rt Honble Anthony Earle of Shaftesbury Baron Ashley of Wimbourne St Giles. and Lord Cooper of Pawlet. This Mapp is most humbly D.D. by R.B.

THE NORTH SEA

THE SOUTH SEA

AMERICA

ARTICK LANDES

GROENLAND

NEW GROENLAND

OLD GROENLAND

ISLAND

NEW DANEMARCK

CANADA

NEW FOUND LAND

NEW FRANCE

NEW MEXICO

FLORIDA

VIRGINIA

MARYLAND

CALIFORNIA

ISLES OF ANTILLES

CARIBE ISLES

Baffins Bay

Hudsons Straights

Hudsons Bay

Gulph of Hudson or Hudsons Bay

South Walles

Estotiland

Terre de Labrador & New Britanie

Gulph of S. Laurences

Sea of Canada or S. Laurens

Lack Superieur

Lack of Tin

Gulph of California

Sea of Mexico

Tropick of Cancer

Azores

Bermudas Isles

Isles of Luca

Isles of Corvo

Isles of Barbadas

Isles of Barbados

Glacicke Sea

Artick Circle

Apaches of Navajo

Apaches

Vaqueros

Quivira

Xabotaj

Tobosas

Passamates

Conchos

Panuco

Zacatecas

Guadalaxara

Mechoacan

Thascala

Guaxaca

Yucatan

Gulfe of Honduras

Honduras

Nicaragua

Costarica

Veragua

Darien

Venezuela

Martha

Cubs

Hispaniola

Jamaica

Barbadas

Barbados

Grenada

Tobago

Caribe Isles

Iroquois

Algonquins

Nadoussis

Nadouessis

Mascoutins

Illinois

Chichagamias

Etechemins

Acadia

Canada

Gaspey

Sague nay

Irinis Nadous

Rhinous

Attickamegues

Monsonis

Assistaronis

Paouitigoueiouac

Ontario L. of S. Laurens

Mon Royal

Richelieu R.

Chaplain L.

Nipissiriniens

Algomquins

Hurons

Iroquois

Mohegans

Delaware Bay

Chingoteo

Fetis I.

Chesapeack

Powhatan R.

Albemarle

Pomejac

Secotan

Port Royal

Charles Town

Ashley R.

Cape Feare

Cape Florida

Bahama

Lucayonegue

Cimato

Gatao

Guanahani or S. Salvador

Isabella

Yuma

Jamaica

Tortuga

Margarita

Curaco

Bonayre

Roca

Oruba

Aruba

Buenaventura

Trinidad

Cape Farwell

Cape Christian

Cape Desolation

Cape Discord

Resolution I.

Buttons Isle

Elizabeth Foreland

Leicester Point

Frobisher Streights

Meta Incognita

Frobishers Mines

Frobishers Farthest

Frobishers Bay

Frobishers Streights

Hudsons Streights

Hudsons Mines

Hudsons Farthest

Hudsons Bay

Hudsons Isles

Hudsons Sea

Hudsons Cape

Hudsons Point

Hudsons Foreland

Hudsons Isle

they had *Gold* and *Silver* in ſo great quantity, that they made leſs account of it than we do of *Iron:* That they had a great number of Cities, and among others two very great ones, and of Cuſtoms much different; the principal aim of the one being to War, and the other to Religion; which I eſteem agreeing with *Cuſco* and *Mexico*, which we have ſo found when firſt known to us; *Mexico* more inclined to War, and *Cuſco* to the adoration of its Divinities.

AMERICA having been known to the Ancients under divers names, and all theſe names preſerved till now, there remains to know from whence the People of this *America* ſhould deſcend, whether from *Europe*, *Aſia*, or *Africa*.

It is to be believed, that the firſt of our Continent which were carried into *America*, were ſo either by chance or by force; the Eaſtern Winds having driven them from the Coaſt of *Africa* or *Libya*, where they ſailed, and carried them ſo far into the Weſt that they have found theſe Lands.

And it is likewiſe to be believed, that of thoſe which have been ſo carried, ſome have been unfurniſhed of Victuals for ſo long and impremeditated a Voyage, and ſo have been conſtrained to eat ſome among them to preſerve the reſt, as others ſince have done. And thus *America* may have been peopled by divers Nations, and at divers times, and according to the Parts from whence they were, according to the hunger and neceſſity they ſuffered upon the Sea, they became more or leſs barbarous. And that ſome have been carried by chance or force from our Continent to the other, we may judge both by Ancient and Modern Hiſtories. *Diodorus Siculus* makes mention of certain *Phœnicians*, (*Ariſtotle* had ſaid almoſt the ſame before of the *Carthaginians*) who ſayling along the Coaſt of *Africa* or *Libya*, were carried far into the *Occidental* Ocean, where they found a very great Iſle, diſtant from our Main Land many days ſail, and the Country as beautiful as that of *Toſcany*, ſo that ſome of *Carthage* would here have ſettled; but that the Republick prohibited any more to paſs, fearing leſt it ſhould weaken their Eſtate, commanding thoſe which were paſſed to retire, and aboliſhing as much as they could the knowledge of their Country; yet with deſign to retire thither, if they ſhould become ſo unfortunate as to fall under the *Romans* ſubjection. Thoſe particulars which Authors apply to this Iſle, agree better with *America Meridionalis*, which is almoſt an Iſle, than with the Iſles on this ſide it.

How *America* became firſt peopled by thoſe of our Continent.

Beſides theſe Authorities of the Ancients, the accident which arrived to *Alonzo Zanches de Guelva*, in *Adalouſie*, or whatever other Pilot he was, who landing at the *Madera*, where was *Chriſtopher Columbus*, who told him how he had been carried by force into the Weſt, which he had diſcovered, and how he had returned: And the like accident which happened to *Cabral* in 1501, (as we have already ſaid) makes it ſufficiently appear how the ſame thing may have hapned to other Saylors; and particularly to thoſe Nations on this ſide, which lie upon the Ocean, as the *Moors*, *Spaniards*, *Celtes*, and *Bretons*, &c. And thoſe who traded on the Ocean, as the *Phœnicians*, *Carthaginians*, and *Tyrrhenians*; and this is the more eaſily, becauſe between the two *Tropicks*, the Eaſtern Briſes or Winds do for the moſt part blow, and eaſily carry, nay ſometimes force Ships from Eaſt to Weſt. It is true, that it is hard to turn from Eaſt to Weſt by the ſame courſe: And poſſibly from theſe two ſo different things the Poet took occaſion to ſay,

——— Facilis deſcenſus Averni;
Sed revocare gradum ſuperaſque revertere ad auras,
Hoc opus, hic labor eſt.

Underſtanding it eaſy to deſcend from our Continent into the other, which we eſteem the Lower *Hemiſphere*; but hard to return from that to ours, which we eſteem the Higher: the means to return with leaſt difficulty not being found out but with time; and after having (and that at divers times) eſſayed all courſes, which is, by diſingaging themſelves from between the *Tropicks*, which ſome attribute to *Pedrarias de Avila*, who about the year 1514 began to give

Rules

Rules for the time of parting; and the courſe was to be held, to go from our Continent to the other: and likewiſe the time and courſe to return from the others to ours.

Since ſome have paſſed from this world of our Continent, and by our Coaſt into the other Continent: It may likewiſe be believed, that others have paſſed from the other Coaſt, that is to ſay, from *Aſia*. Whence it comes that ſome believe, that the Inhabitants of *Peru* and *Mexico*, deſcend rather from the *Chinois* and *Japanois*, than from the *Europeans* or *Africans*.

But this ſubject will be too tedious to handle, let us therefore content our ſelves to ſpeak a word or two of this *America* in general, before we deſcend to particulars.

AMERICA conſidered in its whole Body, is part on this ſide, and part beyond the *Equator*: It ſtretches it ſelf to near 54 degrees beyond, and extends it ſelf to 80 or more on this ſide, which are more than 130 degrees of *Latitude*; our Continent not having much more than 100: But the breadth of *America* is very unequal, this Continent being compoſed of two great *Peninſula's*, almoſt divided the one from the other by the *Equator*; its breadth here is not in ſome places of above 30, 40, or 50 Leagues, though in other places 1000 or 1200, and poſſibly much more in *America Septentrionalis*, if the Land of *Jeſſo* be contiguous to it. The bigneſs of *America*.

This Land of *JESSO*, or *TEDSO*, is between *America* and *Aſia*, and we know not yet whether it joyn upon *Aſia* or *America*, or make a Piece apart; if it be divided both from the one and the other, and that *New Denmark* and *Greenland* are upon it, as there is much reaſon to believe, it makes a Piece not leſs than the three parts of our Continent, or of the two of the other; but poſſibly it makes a third part of the other Continent: Let us proceed to the two parts of *America*, as they are eſteemed and known at preſent. The ſituation and Land of *Jeſſo*.

AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS.

AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS, is that part of *America* which is not only the moſt Northern of the two *America's*, but likewiſe doth all lie between the *Equator* and the North; it extends it ſelf from the 8*th* or 10*th* degree of *Latitude*, even beyond the *Artick Circle*; and if we comprehend the *Artick Lands* with *America*, it advances at leaſt to the 88*th degree* of *Latitude*, which are 70 *degrees* for its height from South to North. Its length from Weſt to Eaſt poſſeſſes near all the *degrees* of *Longitude* of the other *Hemiſphere*, to wit, from about the 180*th*, where ours end, even beyond the 300*th*, which is the end of the other. The length and breadth of *America Septentrionalis*.

The *Mer del Nort* is on the Eaſt of it, the *Mer del Sud* on its Weſt; towards the North its bounds are unknown, there being Land found even beyond the 80*th degree* of *Latitude*, with appearance that they extend yet farther towards the *Pole*: ſo that we cannot judge to what *degree*, or whether it be contiguous to *New Denmark* and *Greenland*, or whether it be in Iſlands; and on the South it makes *America Meridionalis*. Its bounds.

We will divide this *America Septentrionalis* into *Canadiana* and *Mexicana*. Under the name of *Canadiana* is underſtood that part of *America* which is about *Canada*, where the *Engliſh*, *French*, *Hollanders*, *Danes* and *Swedes* have divers Colonies: And under the name of *Mexicana*, that part of *America* which the King of *Spain* doth almoſt alone poſſeſs, and where he hath eſtabliſhed abundance of Colonies, ſubdividing *Canadiana* into the *Artick Lands*, and *Canada* or *New France*; and *Mexicana* into *New Mexico*, and *Mexico* or *New Spain*. Its diviſion, according to Mont. Sanſon.

Of theſe four parts, *Mexico* or *New Spain* is the moſt advanced towards the *Equator* and the South, the *Artick Lands* towards the North, the other two parts reſt in the middle; *Canada* or *New France* towards the Eaſt, and *New Mexico* towards the Weſt. The firſt is under and about the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, Its ſituation.

the ſecond under or about the *Polar Circle*, the two others lie from 25 or 30 unto 60 *degrees* of *Latitude*; ſo that the firſt is within or very near the *Torrid Zone*, the ſecond within or near the *Frozen Zone*, and the two in the middle quite in the *Temperate Zone*.

The firſt and moſt Southernly ought to be called *Mexico* or *New Spain*; *Mexico*, becauſe *Mexico* is by much the faireſt City, and the Dominion of the ancient Kings of *Mexico* extended over the beſt part of it: *New Spain*, becauſe the King of *Spain* poſſeſſes near all of it, having eſtabliſhed a great many Colonies; a *Vice-Roy*, divers *Archbiſhops*, *Biſhops*, *Audiences*, and *Governments*: the Natives of the Country that are left, being almoſt all Tributaries to him.

Arctick Lands. The ſecond may be called the *Arctick Lands*, becauſe it approaches the *Arctick Pole*, and is for the moſt part comprehended within the *Arctick Circle*: theſe are but little known. We underſtand well that they are divided by ſome *Streights*, and that it apparently conſiſts in many and divers Iſles, which hath been the cauſe a Paſſage hath been ſought to go this way to *China* and the *Eaſt-Indies*. The Natives do here enjoy a full and entire liberty, the People of *Europe* not thinking it worth their pains to eſtabliſh Colonies.

Canada, or *New France.* Of the two middle parts, the moſt Eaſternly and neareſt to *Europe*, ought to be eſteemed under the general name of *Canada* or *New France*: of *Canada*, becauſe in that particular Region the *Europeans* firſt Landed; of *New France*, becauſe the *French* did firſt eſtabliſh themſelves here before any other *Europeans*. The moſt Weſtern and fartheſt from *Europe* may in general be called *New Mexico*, becauſe the *Spaniards* of *Mexico* or *New Spain* diſcovered it not till after they had been ſometime ſettled in this other.

Of theſe four parts of *America Septentrionalis*, to wit, *Mexico* or *New Spain*, *New Mexico*, *Canada* or *New France*, and *America Arctica*: *New Spain* is waſhed by *Mer del Nort*, and *Mer del Sud*: *America Arctica* likewiſe by both Seas; *New France* only by *Mer del Nort*, and *New Mexico* only by *Mer del Sud*.

Theſe four great parts are ſubdivided into many leſs, which we call *Regions*, *Peoples*, *Provinces*, &c. We will obſerve the chief of them the moſt clearly and ſuccinctly as poſſibly we can; but becauſe *New Spain* touches on *America Meridionalis*, we will begin our *America Septentrionalis* by the *Arctick* and *New France*; ſo proceeding to the one and the other *Mexico*, that we may paſs in order to the parts bordering on *America Meridionalis*. And likewiſe, becauſe the *Arctick Lands* of *America* are very little known, and that we cannot judge to make a particular diſcourſe of them, we will content our ſelves to ſpeak ſomething here before we paſs to the other parts.

That part of *America* which is compriſed for the moſt part between the *Arctick Pole* and *Circle*, or which at moſt deſcends unto the *60th* or *55th degree* of *Latitude*, is named according to our method, *America Arctica*. In all this part we know only ſome *Coaſts* and *Gulphs* of that which is moſt towards *Europe*: There we have the Iſles of *Iſeland* and *Groenland*, we might likewiſe put *Shetland*, which we know not whether Iſles or parts of the New Continent, as we are likewiſe ignorant of all the reſt of *America Arctica*.

Iſland. *ISELAND*, ſubject to the King of *Denmark*, is 150 Leagues long, and
Its Inhabitants little leſs than 100 broad. Its Inhabitants are very luſty, and live above an 100 years; they ſcarce addict themſelves to any thing but the feeding of their *Beaſts*, and *Fiſhing*. The Coaſt toward the South is much better, and beſt inhabited. The Governour of the Iſland reſides at *Belleſted* on the Coaſt, *Scalhold* and *Holdon*, within Land, are *Biſhops Sees*. The Mountains of *Hecla* and *Helga* often vomit Fire, though the Circle of the *Pole Arctick* paſſes over this Iſland, and incloſes part of it in the *Frozen Zone*, leaving the other in the *Temperate*, if that can poſſibly be, which lies ſo contiguous and near to the *Frozen*; yet doth it not hinder them from enjoying many rare things in their *Mountains*, in their *Lands*, in their *Fountains* and *Rivers*, in their *Beaſts*, and in their *Fiſh*. *Iſeland* doth (in my Judgment) apparently anſwer to the *Thule* of the Ancients, though ſome Authors of the Country maintain the contrary.

Belleſted, Scalhold, and Holdon, its chief Towns.

GROEN-

GROENLANDT, that is, *GREENLAND*, hath been long known to those of *Iseland* and *Norway*. Account is made that one *Torwald*, and his Son *Errick* of *Norway*, passed into *Iseland* about the year 800; and that from *Iseland*, *Errick* and his Son *Lieffe*, passed a little after into *Groenlandt*, where they established some Colonies of *Norwegians:* And the same History saith, that *Lieffe* had some Combats with the Ancient *Sekreglingres* and Native Inhabitants of the Country, and that those of *Norway* held but a small part in the East Coast of *Groenlandt*, the *Sekreglingres* keeping the rest within the Country; and that what the *Norwegians* possessed and knew in *Groenlandt*, was not the hundreth part; but that there were divers People, governed by several Lords, of which the *Norwegians* had no knowledge. *Groenlandt*, or *Greenland.*

They say, that in several parts of *Groenlandt* there are Lands which bear as good *Wheat* as any Ground in the World; and *Chestnuts* so large, that their Kernels are as big as *Apples*; that the Mountains yield *Marble* of all sorts of colours; that the *Grass* for Pastures is good, and feeds quantities of great and small Cattle; that there are *Horses*, *Stags*, *Wolves*, *Foxes*, Black and White *Bears*, *Beavers*, *Martles*, &c. That the *Sea* is full of great Fishes, as *Sea-Wolves*, *Dogs*, and *Calves*, but above all of *Whales*; that the *white Bears* live more on the Sea than on the Land; and that as the Black ones feed only on Flesh, the White ones do on Fish, and are especially greedy of *little Whales*, which causes a great Antipathy between them and *Whales*, who pursue them wherever they can scent them: That their Fish *Marhval* carrieth a *Tooth* or *Horn* so strong and long, that it fights against and pierces the *Whale*, as the *Rhinoceros* does the *Elephant:* and they assure us, that the Horn is of the same greatness, form, and matter, and hath the same properties as those which we here esteem in the *Unicorns*. Its Fertility. The *Marhval*, a strange kind of Fish.

The *Norwegians* and *Danes*, who sometime since have passed into *Groenlandt*, say, that the Language of its Inhabitants is so different from that of *Norway* or *Denmark*, that there is little appearance they could descend either from the one or the other; and that if formerly there have been any Colonies of *Norwegians*, they are quite extinct. In 1636 the *Danes* which went thither to Trade, demanded by signs, if beyond that ridge of Mountains there were any Men; the *Savages* made them to understand, they were innumerable, higher, and stronger than they; and that they used great *Bows* and *Arrows*, and would not have any Commerce, nor suffer the sight of Strangers. The Habits of those with whom the *Danes* traded (some of which they brought into *Denmark*) were of Skins of *wild Beasts*, their *Shirts* of the Entrails of *Fish*, and their *Wastcoats* of the Skins of *Birds* with their Feathers. Its Inhabitants

These same Relations make mention of an Old and New *Groenlandt*; this descending towards the South, the other mounting towards the North; but that some years since the North Seas have been so loaden with *Ice*, that the first ones not being melted before Winter, and the other having continued from time to time, to add to them, and lie in heaps one upon the other, the *Sun* in the end hath not had power to break them, and in succession of time this way hath been stopt up, and the communication of *Iseland* with Old *Groenlandt* lost.

CANADIANE; In which may be considered

- The ARCTICK LANDS, called AMERICA ARTICA, with its chief places; and such are,
  - ISELAND,
    - Bellefted,
    - Schalhod,
    - Holdon.
  - GROENLAND,
    - Beareford,
    - Madder Point,
    - Trime Point,
    - Watulick Foreland,
    - Warwick Sound,
    - Cape Farwel,
    - Refolution Isle.
  - NORTH WALES,
    - Scahoric Point,
    - Cape Pembrook.
  - SOUTH WALES,
    - Hudſons Bay,
    - James Bay,
    - Cape Henretta Marie.
- CANADA, & NEW FRANCE, with its chief Parts and Places; and ſuch are thoſe of
  - Sir Tho. Smiths Foreland,
  - Merchants Iſles,
  - Cape Charles,
  - King James Foreland,
  - ESTOTILAND,
    - Cape Prince Henry,
    - Hope advanced,
    - Ganſe Bay,
    - Slapers Haven,
    - Clapnuts Bay,
    - Orang Bay,
    - Hollandſche Bay.
  - SAGUANA,
    - Quebeck,
    - Tadouſac,
    - Bay Savage,
    - Breſt,
    - Port de Quartier,
    - Port de St. Nicholas,
    - Chichekedec,
    - Port Neuf,
    - Jaus Coudres,
    - Iſle of Orleance,
    - Sillery.
  - CANADA,
    - Mont Real,
    - Richelieu,
    - Point Verte,
    - Croipapequiac,
    - Cape de l'Eveſque,
    - Aſſumpſion Iſle,
    - Iſle of Plate,
    - Iſle of Birds,
    - Iſle of Ramee,
    - New-found-land,
    - Iſle of Brien,
    - Iſle of Cap. Breton,
    - Iſle of St. John.
  - ACADIE,
    - Martengo,
    - Macomode,
    - Paſpay,
    - Port de Roſignol,
    - Cape de Sable,
    - Port Royal,
    - Cape de Mines,
    - Iſles of { Forchu, de Sable.
  - NEW ENGLAND,
    - Boſton,
    - Plimouth,
    - Charles-Town,
    - Dorcheſter,
    - Cambridge,
    - Ulielands Iſle,
    - Long Iſle.
  - MARY-LAND,
    - Maries Town,
    - Calverton,
    - Herrington.
  - NEW YORK,
    - New York.
  - VIRGINIA,
    - James Town,
    - Elizabeth Town,
    - Dales Gift,
    - Wicocomoco,
    - Pouhatan,
    - Bermuda,
    - Secotam,
    - Cape Henry,
    - Smiths Iſle,
    - Iſle of { Paquiwock, Croatoan, Wokokon.
  - CAROLINA,
    - Charles-Town.
  - The HURONS,
    - St. Peter,
    - St. Francis,
    - Alexis,
    - St. Michael,
    - St. Joſeph.
  - Iſle of BERMUDES,
    - Southampton,
    - Harington,
    - Pagets.
  - FLORIDA,
    - St. Hellens,
    - Port Royal,
    - St. Matthews,
    - St. Auguſtine,
    - St. Jago.

CANADA,
OR
New France.

UNder the name of *CANADA*, or *New France*, we esteem that which is on both sides the great River of *Canada* or *St. Laurence*, with the Isles that are before its Mouth, unto, and so far as this River is known; and from the Gulphs and Streights of *Davis* and *Hudson*, unto *New Spain* or *Mexico*. In this extent we have the Isles of *New-found-land*, *Terra di Librador*, *Canada*, which communicates its name to the rest, *Acadia*, *Saguenay*, the *Irocois*, the *Hurons*, the *Algonquins*, with about a hundred other sorts of people, whose names are known.

New-found-land.

The Isles of *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, or according to the *Biscains*, of *Bacallaos*, that is, of *Cod-fish*, are so called by reason of these Fishes here found in such great quantity, that sometimes they seem to hinder the sayling of Ships; in like manner are they found in the Gulph or Bay of *St. Laurence*. Besides the *Cod-fish* here are other sorts of Fish in great plenty, as *Thornback*, *Ling*, *Salmons*, *Oysters*, &c.

The greatest of these Isles, and which commonly takes the name of *New-found-land* is 4 or 5 Leagues circuit. It is scituate betwixt the degrees of 46 and 53 of *Northern Latitude*, and is severed from the Continent of *America* by an Arm of the Sea, and is distant from *England* about 600 Leagues. A Country ill-inhabited towards the East and South, the Inhabitants being retired farther within Land; but the *English* have of late settled some Colonies to maintain their Fishing-Trade. The Natives are of a reasonable good Stature, and well proportioned; but full-ey'd, broad-faced, beardless, and of an *Oker* complexion, not over ingenious; their Houses are very mean, and their Apparel and Furniture worse. The Country being for the generality reputed fertil, if well cultivated, and would yield good Grains; is enriched by Nature with plenty of *Fish*, *Fowl*, and *wild Beasts*, and is blest with a wholsom Air, though the rigour of the Winter season, and the excess of Heats in Summer do something detract from its due praise.

Its Inhabitants.

East of *New-found-land* is a great Bank, a thing as remarkable as any in all *Canada*. This Bank is much different from those which are covered with Water when the Sea is high; uncovered and dry on an Ebb: Saylors must shun such Banks like death. This, which we now speak of, is like a Country overflown, always covered with the Sea, and having at least 20, 30, or 40 Fathom water, for the depth is unequal. Off from this Bank, on all sides, the Sea is no less than 200 Fathom deep; and yet this Bank is three Leagues long, 20, 25, and sometimes 50 broad. It is on this Bank that the (*New-found-landers*, (that is, those Ships that go to fish for *Cods* of *New-found-land*) do for the most part stop and make their freight.

About

About this great Bank, and more towards the Main Land than the Ocean, there are ſome others much leſs, but of the ſame nature. It is almoſt incredible how many Nations, and of each how many Sail of Ships go yearly to fiſh for theſe *Cods*, with the prodigious quantity they take; a Man being able to take 100 of them in the ſpace of an hour. They fiſh with Hooks, which are no ſooner thrown into the Sea, but the greedy Fiſh ſnapping the Bait is taken by the Hook, and drawn on Ship-board they lay him preſently on a Plank; one cuts off his head, another guts it and takes out its biggeſt bones, another ſalts and barrels it, &c. Which being thus ordered, is hence tranſported by the *Engliſh* and other *European* Nations into all parts of *Europe*, as alſo into the other three parts of the World. They Fiſh only in the day time, the *Cod* (as they ſay) not biting in the night; nor doth this Fiſhing laſt all Seaſons, but begins a little before Summer, and ends with *September:* In Winter the Fiſh retires to the bottom of the deep Sea, where Storms and Tempeſts have no power.

The manner of Fiſhing.

Near *New-found-land* there is another kind of fiſhing for the ſame Fiſh, which they call *dried Fiſh*, as the other *green Fiſh*. The Ships retire into ſome Port, and every Morning ſend forth their *Shallops*, one, two or three Leagues into the Sea, which fail not to have their load by Noon, or a little after: They bring them to Land, lay them on Tables or Planks, and order it as the other; but after the Fiſh hath been ſome days in ſalt, they take it forth, expoſing it to the Air and Wind, lay it again in heaps, and return it from time to time to the open Air till it be dry. That this Fiſh may be good, it muſt be dried in a good and temperate Air; Miſts moiſten it, and make it rot; the Sun hardens it and makes it yellow.

Another kind of Fiſhing.

At the ſame time they fiſh for *Cods*, green or dry, the Fiſhers have the pleaſure of taking *Fowl*, without going forth of their Veſſels. They take them with a Line as they do fiſh, baiting the Hook with the *Cods* Liver; theſe Fowl being ſo greedy, that they come by flocks, and fight who ſhall get the Bait firſt, which ſoon proves its death: and one taken, the Hook is no ſooner thrown out again, but another is catch'd in the like nature. But enough of theſe, and of *Cod-fiſhing*.

In the year 1623, Sir *George Calvert*, Knight, the *Principal Secretary of State*, and afterwards Lord *Baltimore*, obtained a Patent of part of *New-found-land*, which was erected into the Province of *Avalon*, where he ſettled a Plantation, and erected a ſtately Houſe and Fort at *Ferry-land*, where he dwelt ſome time: And after his death it fell to his Son, the Right Honourable *Cæcilius*, late Lord *Baltimore*, alſo Proprietor of *Mary-land*.

CANADA taken particularly, is on the Right hand, and towards the lower part of the great River; and its name is communicated both to the River and Neighbouring Country. This River is the largeſt of *America Septentrionalis*, and one of the faireſt in the World: It is about 200 Fathom deep, and at its Mouth 30 Leagues broad. Its courſe (according to the report of thoſe of the Country) is already known for 4 or 500 Leagues; and there is ſome likelyhood that we may in the end diſcover, that the Lake which ſeems to be its head-Spring, diſburthens it ſelf into the Sea by two or three different courſes; one towards us, which is that of *Canada*; another towards the Weſt, and above *California*; the third towards the North, and into the *Chriſtian Sea*; and that the Mouth of this may ſhew us the way we have ſo long ſought, to go to the *Eaſt-Indies* by the Weſt.

The River *Canada*.

The People with whom the *French* trade here are the *Canadans*, the *Hurons*, the *Algonquins*, the *Attiquameques*, *Nipiſiriniens*, *Montagnets*; thoſe of *Saguenay*, *Acadia*, &c. And to this purpoſe they have divers Colonies on the great River at *Tadouſac*, at *Quebeck*, at *Three-Rivers*, at *Sillery*, at *Richelieu*, at *Montreal*, and without the Bay of *Chaleur*, at *Miſcou*, at *Port-Royal*, &c. This Trade is only managed by Exchange; they give the Skins of *Bevers*, *Otters*, *Martles*, *Sea-Wolfes*, &c. for *Bread*, *Peaſe*, *Beans*, *Plumbs*, *Kettles*, *Cauldrons*, *Hatchets*, *Arrow-heads*, *Pinchers*, *Coverlids*, &c. But to inſtruct them in Chriſtianity, many *Eccleſiaſticks* of Religious Orders have had divers diſburſe-

People with whom the *French* Trade. Their Colonies.

disbursements, and residences; likewise an *Hospital* and *Seminary* of *Ursilines*: The *Jesuits* have the chief care of these Houses.

North of *Canada* is *ESTOTTILAND*, or *TERRA DE LABRADOR* near *Hudsons* Streight; it is called sometimes the Land of *Cortereal*, and sometimes *new Britany*; however, I esteem it a part of *new France*; the Country is Mountainous, Woody, full of wild *Beasts*, well furnished with *Rivers*, rich in *Metals*, of a fertil Soil in most places, and would produce *grains*, *fruits*, *&c.* if its Inhabitants would give it tillage. South of *Canada* are *New England*, *New York*, *Maryland*, *Virginia*, and *Caroline*; of which in Order. *Estottiland.*

NEW ENGLAND, North of *Maryland* according to the report of Captain *Smith*, hath seventy miles of *Sea Coast*, where are found divers good *Havens*, some of which are capable to harbour about five hundred sail of Ships from the fury of the *Sea* and *winds* by reason of the interposition of so great a quantity of small *Isles* which lie about the Coast to the number of about two hundred. And although it be seated in the midst of the *Temperate Zone*, yet the Climate is more uncertain as to *heat*, and *cold*, than those *European Kingdoms* which lie *parallel* to it. Yet the Air is found very healthful and agreeable to the *English*, which hath occasioned the settlement of divers Potent *Colonies* here who live very happily, and drive a considerable *Trade* for their *provisions* to our *American Plantations*, especially to the *Barbados*. This Country is Inhabited by divers sorts of people, the chief amongst which are the *Bessabees* about the River *Penobscot*; and the *Massachusetes*, a great Nation, and every one are governed by their particular Kings, and do much differ in *Customs* and *Manners* from one another, as they do in the other parts of *America*, living generally at variance with each other; Their chiefest riches is in their *Furrs* and *Skins* which they sell to the *English* in truck for Commodities; they are for the most part ingenious, well disposed, and with little pains would be brought to *Christianity*. This Country is for the generality of a fertil soil, is well watered with Rivers, hath plenty of *Fish*, as *Cod*, *Thornback*, *Sturgion*, *Porpuses*, *Haddock*, *Salmons*, *Mullets*, *Herrings*, *Mackeril*, *Plaice*, *Oysters*, *Lobsters*, *Crab-fish*, *Tortoise*, *Cockles*, *Muscles*, *Clams*, *Smelts*, *Eels*, *Lamprons*, *Drums*, *Alewives*, *Basses*, *Hollibuts*, *Sharks*, *Seals*, *Grampus*, *Whales* *&c.* Here are great variety of *Fowl* as *Pheasants*, *Partridges*, *Pigeons*, *Heathcocks*, *Oxeyes*, *Geese*, *Turkeys*, *Ducks*, *Teal*, *Herns*, *Cranes*, *Cormorants*, *Swans*, *Brants*, *Widgeons*, *Sheldrakes*, *Snipes*, *Doppers*, *Blackbirds*, *Loon*, *Humbird*, with divers others too tedious to name. They have also great plenty of *Beasts* both tame and wild, as *Cows*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Swine*, and *Horses*; and for wild *Lyons*, *Bears*, *Wolves*, *Foxes*, *Martins*, *Rackoons*, *Mooses*, *Musquasus*, *Otters*, *Bevers*, *Deer*, *Hares*, *Coneys*, *&c.* Amongst the hurtful things the *Rattlesnake* is the most dangerous; and here are several sorts of stinging Flies which are very troublesom to the Inhabitants. Here are sundry sorts of *trees*, as the *Oak*, *Cyprus*, *Pine*, *Cedar*, *Chesnut*, *Walnut*, *Firr*, *Ash*, *Elm*, *Asp*, *Alder*, *Maple*, *Birch*, *Sassafras*, *Sumach*, *&c.* also several *Fruit-trees*, as *Pomgranates*, *Maracocks*, *Puchamins*, *Olives*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Plumbs*, *Cherries*, *Grapes*, with those common in *England*. And their ground also produceth *Potatoes*, *Carrots*, *Turnips*, *Parsnips*, *Onyons*, *Cabbages*, with most of the *Roots* and *Herbs* found in *England*, The *soil* being very agreeable for them. But the *fruits* are not found here so good as in *Virginia*, nor in *Virginia* as in *Caroline*, as lying more Southwards, and having the greater influence of the Sun. This *Country* affordeth several rich *Furrs*, hath *Iron*, *Amber*, *Pitch*, *Tarr*, *Masts*, *Flax*, *Linnen*, *Cables*, and *Grains* in great plenty. The *English* which now Inhabit this Country are very numerous and powerful, having a great many Towns several of which are of considerable account, and are governed by *Laws* appropriate to themselves, and have their Courts of *Judicature*, and assembling together, each *Town* having two *Burgesses* for the looking after the affairs of the *Colony*. And as to matters of *Religion* and *Church Government*, they are very strickt, and make a great show, being much of the stamp of the ridged *Presbyterians*. Amongst their Towns these are of chief note. 1. *Boston*, commodiously seated for *New England* described. The Native Inhabitants. Their Fish. Fowls. Beasts. Trees. Fruits. Its Commodities. Government.

Its chief Towns.

Traffick on the *Sea Shore*; at preſent a very large and ſpacious Town, or rather a City being compoſed of ſeveral well ordered *ſtreets*, and graced with fair and beautiful houſes, which are well inhabited by *Merchants*, and *Tradeſmen* who drive a very conſiderable *Trade*; It is a place of great ſtrength, having two or three hills adjoyning, on which are raiſed *Fortifications* with great Pieces mounted thereon which are well guarded. 2. *Charles Town* ſeated on and between the Rivers *Charles* and *Miſtick*; it is beautified with a large and well built Church, and near the River-ſide is the *Market place* from which runs two *ſtreets*, in which are divers well built houſes. 3. *Dorcheſter*, an indifferent Town ſeated near the Sea. 4. *Cambridge* commodiouſly ſeated on a River, doth conſiſt of ſeveral *ſtreets*, and is beautified with two *Colledges*, and hath divers fair and well built houſes. 5. *Reading* commodiouſly ſeated about a great Pond, and well Inhabited. 6. St. *Georges Fort* ſeated on the mouth of the River *Sagadebock*. 7. *New Plymouth*, ſeated on the large *Bay* of *Potuxed*. With divers other Towns of ſome account, moſt of which bear the Names from thoſe of *England*; but amongſt the *Indians* are known by other names.

New York deſcribed.

NEW-IORK, formerly *New Netherland* is ſeated betwixt *New England* and *Virginia*; It is now called *New York* from his *Royal Highneſs* the Duke of *York* the Proprietor thereof, by grant from his *Majeſty*. It is a Country of a fertile ſoil, is well watered with *Rivers*, and is found to produce the ſame *Beaſts*, *Birds*, *Fowls*, *Fiſh*, *Fruits*, *Trees*, *Commodities*, &c. and in as great plenty as *New England*, ſo they need not be taken notice of here. This Country is alſo poſſeſſed by ſundry ſorts of people, not much unlike thoſe of *New England*, and are very expert at their *Bow* and *Arrows*, which is their chief weapon of War; are found to be of a ready wit, and very apt to learn what is taught them; in their Religious *Rites* divers ceremonies are obſerved amongſt them, and are ſaid to worſhip the *Devil* whom they much fear; their *Prieſts* being little better than *Sorcerers*, who ſtrangely bewitch thoſe ſilly people. When any woman findeth her ſelf quick with child ſhe keepeth her ſelf chaſt from man until her delivery, the like ſhe obſerveth in the time of her giving ſuck, a ſtrange Cuſtom which our *European Dames* would not well reliſh; upon the leaſt offence the man turneth away his wife, and marrieth again, and the Children begotten by her ſhe keepeth; *Fornication* is here permitted; they are very dutiful to their Kings, they believe the tranſmigration of the *ſoul*, and concerning the Creation of the world have ſtrange fooliſh opinions. They are much addicted to *ſports*, *recreations*, and *dancings*, and obſerve *Feſtival times*. Their habit is but mean as the reſt of the *Indians*, yet do they paint and beſmear their faces with ſeveral colours, which they hold Ornamental; their dyet and *habitations* are alſo mean; Here is one very conſiderable Town now called *New York*, being well ſeated both for ſecurity, trade and pleaſure in a ſmall Iſle called *Mabatan* regarding the Sea made ſo by *Hudſons River*, which ſeparates it from *Long Iſland*: The Town is large containing about 500 well built houſes, and for Civil Government it hath a *Major*, *Aldermen*, *Sheriff*, and *Juſtices* of the *Peace*, for ſecurity of the Town here is raiſed a *Fort* called *James Fort*, a place of conſiderable ſtrength; The Town is Inhabited by *Dutch* as well as *Engliſh*; and hath a conſiderable Trade with the *Indians*, and is like to be a place of conſiderable Account.

Its Native Inhabitants.

Province of *Maryland* deſcribed.

MARTLAND, is South of *Virginia*, from which it is ſevered by the River *Patowmeck*. The *Bay* of *Cheſopeak*, giving entrance to Ships into *Virginia*, and *Maryland* paſſeth through the heart of this Province, and is Navigable for about 200 miles, into which fall the Rivers of *Patowmeck*, *Patuxent*, *Severn*, and *Saſqueſahanough*, which lie on the Weſt ſide of the *Bay*, and to the Eaſt thoſe of *Choptanke*, *Nantecoke*, *Pocomoke*, with ſome others to the great improvement of the *ſoil*. The Country of late years ſince the felling the Woods, and the people accuſtoming themſelves to *Engliſh dyet*, is very healthful and agreeable to their Conſtitutions few dying at their firſt coming, of the *Countreys diſeaſe* or *ſeaſoning*; and as to temperature of the *Air*, the Heats in Summer nor the Colds

in

in winter are offensive to its Inhabitants. The soyl is rich and fertil naturally producing all such *Commodities* as are found in *New England*, and doth abound in the said several sorts of *Beasts*, and *Fowl*, both tame and wild; hath also the same *Fish*, *Fruits*, *Plants*, *Roots*, *Herbs*, *Trees*, *Gums*, *Balsams*, *&c.* but the *Fruits* are more excellent and in greater plenty; here *Mulberry trees* grow wild, and were the people industrious, the *Silk trade* might be soon brought to perfection, but their imployment is altogether taken up in planting and ordering their *Tobacco*, which is the only and Staple Commodity of the *Countrey* which they vend for such necessaries as they have occasion for. They yearly freighing about one hundred sail of Ships therewith. The Natives as to their *Complexion*, *Stature*, *Costoms*, *Laws*, *Religions*, *Dispositions*, *Habit*, *Dyet*, *&c.* are much the same with the *Indians* in the other parts of *America*, and are of divers *Tribes* or sorts of People, and each governed by their particular King. This *Province* of *Maryland* is by Patent granted to the Right Honourable the Lord *Baltimore* and to his Heirs and Assigns, being absolute Lord and Proprietor of the same, having Royal *Jurisdictions* and *Prerogatives* both Military and Civil, as making of *Laws*, pardoning of Offences, conferring of Honours, Coyning of Money, *&c.* and in acknowledgment thereof paying yearly to his Majesty and his Successors two *Indian Arrows* at *Windsor Castle* on *Easter Tuesday*. This Province is severed into ten Counties, *viz.* five Eastwards, and five Westwards of *Chesopeak Bay*, and in every County there is held an inferiour Court every two months for small matters, from which there lyeth Appeals to the *Provincial* Court at St. *Maryes*, and each County have their *Sheriffs*, and *Justice* of the *Peace*. The *English* which are reckoned about 16000 have begun of late to build some Towns, which 'tis hoped in few years will come to good perfection, as *Calverton*, *Herrington*, and *Harvy-Town*, all commodiously seated for the benefit of Trade, and conveniency of Shipping, but the principal Town is St. *Maryes*, seated on St. *Georges River*, beautified with several well built houses, where his Lordship *Charles* Lord *Baltimore*, hath his House, and where the general *Assemblies* and *Provincial Courts* are held, and publick *Offices* kept. But his Lordship's general Residence is at *Mattapany* about eight miles distant, where he hath a fair and pleasant house.

Its soil. Trade. People. Division of the Province into Counties. Government.

VIRGINIA is said to be first discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* (as indeed all this tract of Sea Coast) and was so named by Sir *Walter Rawleigh* in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, who then Reigned; but before it was brought to any perfection much time was spent with no small expence, and loss of mens lives. And about the Reign of K. *James*, a Patent was granted to certain persons, as a *Corporation*, and called the Company of *Adventurers of Virginia*; but upon divers misdemeanours and miscarriages about the year 1623, the Patent was made void, and hath been since free for all his *Majesties Subjects* to Trade unto. It is scituate Southwards of *Maryland*, and hath for its Eastern limits the *Atlantick Ocean*. It is blest with a good Air, and the Clime of late since the clearing of *woods* is found very agreeable to the *English*, so that few die of the *Country disease* called *seasoning*. The soil is so fertil that an Acre of ground commonly yields 200 bushels of *Corn*, and is very apt to produce what is put therein, as *English Grains*, *Roots*, *Seeds*, *Plants*, *Fruits*, *&c.* besides those appropriate to the Country and other adjacent parts of *America*; and it is observed that their *Fruits* (which are in great abundance and of various sorts) for goodness may compare with those of *Italy* or *Spain*, which are esteemed the best in *Europe*. They have great abundance of *Beasts*, *Fowl*, and *Fish*, which I have taken notice of in *New England*, and their *Turkeys* are said to weigh about six stone; amongst their small *Birds* is the *Mock-Bird* which counterfeiteth the notes of all *Birds*, for which it is esteemed excellent. The *Commodities* which this Country doth or may produce, are *Flax*, *Hemp*, *Woad*, *Madder*, *Pot-Ashes*, *Hopps*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Rapeseed*, *Annice-seed*, *Silk* (if they would make it *Mulberry Trees* here growing in so great plenty) several sweet *Gums* and excellent *Balsomes*, *Alome*, *Iron*, *Cop-*

Virginia by whom first discovered. Its Bounds. Its Fertility. Its Beast, Fowl and Fish much the same as in *New England*. Its Commodities.

Copper,; ſeveral ſorts of *Woods*, *Plants*, &c. uſed by *Dyers*, *Pitch*, *Tarr*, *Roſin*, *Turpentine*, ſundry ſorts of rich *Furrs*, *Elk-skins*, and other *Hides*, but above all *Tobacco*, which is their principal *Commodity*, and the ſtandard by which all other Commodities are prized ; but it were to be wiſhed the *Inhabitants* would imploy their time about other Commodities as well as *Tobacco*, and they would ſoon find the profit, and their *Tobacco* would not be ſuch a drugg as now it is. This *Countrey* is well watered with ſeveral great and ſtrong *Rivers* which looſe themſelves in the *Gulph* or *Bay* of *Cheſopeak*, which gives entrance for Shipping into this Countrey, as well as to *Maryland*; and is a large and capacious *Bay* found very commodious for *Shipping*, being ſaid to run up into the Country Northwards above 200 miles; amongſt the Rivers thoſe of moſt note are *Pawhatan* now *James* River, found Navigable about 150 miles; *Pamaunke* now *York* River, alſo large and Navigable about 60 miles ; and *Rapahanock* which is long and Navigable about 120 miles; And near or adjoyning to theſe Rivers for the conveniency of Shipping the *Engliſh* are ſeated, and have ſome Towns, the chief of which is *James Town* commodiouſly ſeated on *James* River, a neat Town, and beautified with well built *Brick Houſes*, and here are kept the Courts of *Judicature*, and *Offices* of publick concern for the *Countrey*. Next to *James Town* may be reckoned *Elizabeth*, a well built Town, ſeated on the mouth of a River ſo called. Alſo *Dales-gift*, *Wicocomoco*, *Bermuda*, and others. The *Governour* of this Country is ſent over by his *Majeſty*, and the Country is governed by *Laws* agreeable with thoſe of *England*; and for the better obſerving the ſame, the Country poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*, is divided into the Counties of *Caroluck*, *Charles*, *Gloceſter*, *Hartford*, *Heurico*, *James*, *New Kent*, *Lancaſter*, *Middleſex*, *Nanſemund*, *Lower Norfolk*, *Northampton*, *Northumberland*, *Rapalianock*, *Surrey*, *Warwick*, *Weſtmorland*, the Iſle of *Wight*, and *York*, and in each of theſe Counties are held petty Courts every Month, from which there may be Appeals to the *Quarter Court* at *James Town*. As to the *Natives* which here Inhabite, they are much of the nature of thoſe already treated of, ſo I ſhall omit them here. Only ſay that it is the Habitation of divers ſorts of *Indians*, which have no dependance upon each other, being of particular *Tribes*, and having their peculiar King to govern them, every *Indian Town* being the habitation of a King, and theſe people do rather live at enmity than amity together.

Its rivers.

Its chief places.

Its diviſion into Counties.

Its ſcituation bounds.

CAROLINA a Colony not long ſince eſtabliſhed by the *Engliſh*, and is that part of *Florida* adjoyning to *Virginia*, in the *Latitude* of 36 *degrees*, and extendeth it ſelf to that of 29, which makes it extream Southern bounds; on the Eaſt it is waſhed with the *Atlantick Ocean*, and on the Weſt it hath that large tract of Land which runneth into the *Pacifick Ocean*. It is a Country bleſt with a wholſom and temperate Air, the *heat* in *Summer*, nor the *cold* in *Winter* (which is ſo much as to check the growth of *Plants*, *Trees*, &c. the ſeveral *fruits* and *plants* having their diſtinct ſeaſons) being no waies troubleſome to its *Inhabitants*, but very agreeable to the *Engliſh*; and being found thus healthful hath occaſioned ſeveral perſons to remove from the *Bermudes* to ſettle here, who dwelling in ſo pure an Air durſt not venture in any other *Country*. Nor do thoſe from the *Bermudes* only remove hither, but from moſt of the *American Plantations*, as well as from *England*, it being eſteemed by all one of the beſt Colonies that ever the *Engliſh* were Maſters of, for here is altogether Health, Pleaſure, and Profit, centered together, which cannot be met with in ſo large a meaſure in any other part of the *Indies*. This Country has firſt Inhabited by the *Engliſh* about the year 1660, and became a *Proprietorſhip*, which his preſent Majeſty *King Charles* the Second, granted by Patent to the Right Noble *George* Duke of *Albemarle*, the Right Honourable *Edward* Earl of *Clarendon*, *William* Earl of *Craven*, *Anthony* Earl of *Shaftsbury*, *John* Lord *Berkley*, Sir. *George Cartwright*, Sir *Jo. Colleton*, and Sir *William Berkley*, and to their Heirs and Succeſſors; and the ſaid Lords *Proprietors* having by their Patent power to Eſtabliſh a *Government*, and make *Laws* for the better regulation thereof, and the inviting of *Inhabitants*, have formed a *Model* ſo well framed for the good and welfare of the Inhabitants, that

The Proprietors.

it

it is esteemed by all judicious persons without compare. The Natives of *Carolina* according to the observation of one *Ledener*, (who made three several journeys from *Virginia* to *Carolina* about the Year 1670, for a discovery of those parts, and the nature and disposition of the *Inhabitants*) are said to be of a ready wit and good understanding, they instruct their Children in such things as relate to their *Families*, and *Country*, which is so preserved from Generation to Generation. They worship one *God*, as Creator of all things, to whom their *High Priest* offers Sacrifice, but believes he hath something else to do than to regard *Humane affairs*, committing them to lesser *Deities*, *viz.* to good and evil *Spirits*, to whom their inferiour *Priests* make their *devotion* and *Sacrifice*. They believe the *transmigration* of the *soul*, and when any one dieth they interr with them *provisions* and Housholdstuff for the next World, which they fancy to be beyond the *Mountains*, and *Indian Ocean*. In their *Marriages* they are very Superstitious; for the generality they are of a good and honest meaning, much addicted to mirth and dancing, and above all are much prone to Honour and Valour which they place above all other vertues. They are great favourers of the *English*, living together in love and friendship, and upon all occasions ready to contribute their assistance unto them. The Country is by them divided into several Kingdoms, and the people in the one keep no correspondence with those that border upon them, often waging War against one another. The Soil is rich and fertile, and produceth excellent *Fruits*, as *Apricocks*, *Peaches*, *Grapes*, of which the *English* have made good *Wine*; *Olives*, of which good *Oyl* is made; *Wallnuts*, *Apples*, *Pears*, *Plumbs*, *Cherries*, *Figgs*, *Mulberries*, *Strawberries*, *Water-Mellons*, *Marachocks*, *Quinces*, and other *Fruits* known to us in *Europe*, which for goodness are no waies inferiour to them, and in the Southern part *Oranges*, *Limes*, *Pomegranates*, and *Pomecitrons*, and the earth is generally very apt to produce and bring to maturity *Corn*, all sorts of Garden *Herbs*, *Roots*, &c. The *Commodities* which this Country doth and may produce are *Wines*, *Oyls*, *Silk*, *Mulberry-trees* growing wildly, *Cotton*, *Indico*, *Ginger*, *Tobacco*, Masts for Shipping which for length, streightness and bigness are the best in the World, &c. And it is believed that here may be made more *Wines*, *Oyls* and *Silk* than *England* will vent. Besides the *Mulberry-trees*, here are *Cedar*, *Oak*, both white and red, *Poplar*, *Bay*, *Ash*, *Pine* with divers others whose names are not yet known. The Woods are well stored with *Pheasants*, large *Turkeys*, *Partridges*, *Turtle-Doves*, *Pigeons*, great variety and plenty of small Birds, also *Deer*, *Hares*, *Conies* &c. The Country is well watered with Rivers, which with the Sea sufficiently furnish the Inhabitants with excellent Fish and such common in *Virginia*; here are great plenty of wild *Fowl*, as *Geese*, *Cranes*, *Herons*, *Swans*, *Curlews*, *Heath Cocks*, *Oxeys*, *Brants*, *Dotterels*, *Widgeons*, *Teal*, *Duck* and *Mallard* in an undestroyable quantity. Here are at present two considerable Settlements, *viz.* at *Albemarle* River in the North, and at *Ashley* River in the middle of the *Country* which is likely to be the scale of *Trade* for the whole Country as being very commodiously seated for Shipping, and in a healthful place.

The Native Inhabitants.

Its Fruits.

Commodities.

Its Trees.

Fowls.

In all these parts, which we have passed under the name of *CANADA*, the the people are very barbarous, having neither *Religion*, nor *Learning*. Divers people have diversity of Languages: they count their years by the course of the *Sun*, their months by that of the *Moon*, their four Seasons by any remarkable thing hapning in them. They are of a middle stature, well proportioned, disposed to running and swimming, of an olive or tawny colour, because they go for the most part naked, often anointing themselves with a certain Oyl to hinder the Flies from tickling them; they wear few Ornaments on their bodies, though their Women do; making themselves *Necklaces*, *Bracelets* and *Scarfs*, formerly of *Fishes*, *Shells*, *Porcelain*, &c. now of *Glass*, *Chrystal*, and Toys, carried hence.

The Peop'e of *Canada*.

They make Feasts at their Marriages, at their Victories, at the reception of their friends; and take much *Tobacco*. They eat sometimes the flesh of their enemies which they have taken in the War, and fed well before, whom they kill

Customs observed among them.

kill with exceſſive cruelties. They uſe Bows and Arrows, in which they are very expert.

FLORIDA.

FLORIDA may be eſteemed a part of *New France*, ſince the *French* were the firſt that eſtabliſhed there any Colony, by the conſent of the people of the Country. It may likewiſe be eſteemed part of *New Spain*, ſince at preſent the *Caſtilians* have two Colonies under the Juriſdiction of the Audience of S. *Domingo*, one of the four Audiences of *New Spain*, but theſe two Colonies are ſo weak, and ſo near the one to the other, and the Country is ſo that that is not conſiderable. We may ſay, that *Florida* is between *new France*, and *new Spain*, and that it extends it ſelf from the River of *Palmas*, which bounds it from the Province of *Panuco* in *new Spain*, unto the River *Jordan*, which divides it from *Virginia*, which I have eſteemed in *Canada* or *New France*. The greateſt part of its Coaſt is on the Gulph of *Mexico*, which flows on its South: Another part on *Mer del Nort*, which waſhes it on the Eaſt: Between this Gulph and the Sea, *Florida* ſtretches out a *Peninſula* towards the South; where the *Cape* of *Florida* is not diſtant from the Port of *Matnaſas* in the Iſle of *Cuba*, above 35 or 40 Leagues. The more Weſtern Coaſt of *Florida*, reaches 450 Leagues, the Eaſtern 150; the *Peninſula* between both, advancing 150 Leagues from the Coaſt, and not being above 60 or 75 Leagues broad, makes yet another Coaſt of 350 Leagues; ſo that all *Florida* hath not much leſs than 1000 Leagues of Coaſt on the Sea.

Its Coaſt.

The *Caſtilians* have no Colony on the Gulph of *Mexico*, nor on the Coaſt, where the *French* have formerly been. Thoſe two Colonies they have here, are St. *Auguſtine*, and St. *Mathew*, 15 or 16 Leagues one from the other, on the Eaſtern Coaſt of the *Peninſula*, and there where it approaches the Coaſt, where the *French* had ſettled: the North and Weſt of *Florida* is encloſed with Mountains, which divides it from *New France*, and *New Mexico*. St. *Auguſtine* which is the beſt, and ſtrongeſt of the two Colonies, was taken and pillaged by Sir *Francis Drake* in *Anno* 1585.

Florida firſt diſcovered by the *Engliſh*.

FLORIDA was firſt diſcovered in 1496 by the *Engliſh*, under the Conduct of *Sebaſtian Gabott*, whom *Henry* the Seventh, King of *England*, ſent to ſeek by the Weſt a paſſage to fall into the Eaſt: he contented himſelf to have ſeen the Country yet unknown, and to make report thereof to his Maſter; afterwards better ſearched into by *John de Ponce* of *Leon*, who in 1512 would have eſtabliſhed a Colony for his Maſter the King of *Caſtile*, were it not for the reſiſtance of the Country made againſt him, who oftentimes made him retreat, and at laſt forced him to return to *Puerto Ricco* of which place he was Governour; where, on a deſperate wound in his laſt encounter, which he there received, he ended his life. In 1524 *Lucas Vaſques* of *Aillon*, and ſome other *Spaniards*, landed divers times at *Florida*, with no other deſign than to take away its Inhabitants, whom they tranſported to *Hiſpaniola*, and *Cuba* to work in their Mines, wherein they had already conſumed the greateſt part of its Inhabitants. *Pamphilus Narvaes* was likewiſe there in 1528, who traverſed it as far as the *Mountains* of *Apalachi*, where he hoped to find Gold. The moſt famous landing that the *Spaniards* have ever made in *Florida* was in 1534, under the conduct of *Ferdinando Soto*; who being rich with the ſpoils he had gained, in his Conqueſt of *Peru*, led hither 350 Horſe, and 900 Foot, with which force he traverſed *Florida* almoſt on all ſides, without endeavouring to bind a Colony; much moleſting thoſe of the Country, by whom he was in like manner turmoyled, during the many years he coaſted it; till in the end, not finding thoſe riches he expected, he died with grief, and was buried at the bottom of a River, for fear leſt his body ſhould fall into the hands of his Enemies. His people returned in 1543, there remaining about 30 Horſe, and 300 Foot. All the advantage *Soto* received by his travel, was, the giving the

Alſo by *John de Ponce* and others.

Ferdinand Soto his landing here.

the name of *Florida* to the Country, either becauſe he arrived there the day of *Paſquæ Floriæ*; or becauſe that, landing, he found the *herbs* and *flowers* in their prime and verdure. In 1549 the Emperor *Charles* the Fifth, and the Council of the *Indies* thought it not good to ſend any more *Armed men*, but rather ſome *Religious perſons*, to ſweeten the fierce humours of theſe barbarous people. *Lewis* of *Barbaſtre*, of the Order of St. *Benedict* went with ſome other *Fathers*; but preſently thoſe of the Country ſeized and maſſacred him, with his two Companions, fleaing them, and hanging their skins at the doors of the *Cabanes*; the reſt ſaved themſelves, by retiring into thoſe Ships that brought them.

Lewis of *Barbaſtre* a *Benedict* maſſacred here.

The *French* were not in *Florida*, ſave under the Reign of *Charles* the Ninth. *Francis Ribaut* was ſent in 1562. He made alliance with thoſe of the Country, and built the Fort *Caroline* on the River *May*. *Ribaut* being returned to *France*, with promiſe to bring thither more people: but too long delaying his return, his men grew diffident and mutinous, and built a ſtrange kind of Veſſel, and with the ſmall ſtock of proviſions they could ſtow in her, put to Sea, where they endured ſo great want, that they were forced to caſt lots to eat one another; which fell firſt to him who had been the cauſe of their diſcord.

Rene Laudoniere returned in 1564, reſtored the Fort *Caroline*; but the *Caſtilians*, jealous to ſee this eſtabliſhment near their *New Spain*, reſolved to drive them thence: they landed with ſhow of no deſign againſt the *French*; but their intentions were otherwiſe, for in the end they ſurprized the *Fort*, out of which *Laudionere* could ſcarce ſave himſelf, took *Ribaut* on the Sea who had before been Shipwrack'd; hanged the Souldiers, and flead *Ribaut*, as *Leſcarbott* ſaith.

An Exploit of the *Spaniards*.

In 1567 *Dominic de Gourgues*, a *Gaſcon*, and of *Mont de Marſan*, made an attempt of his own head to revenge this Affront: he put to Sea at his own expence, with a hundred and fifty Souldiers, and eighty Mariners; landed in *Florida*, and with the aid of thoſe of the Country, who affected the *French*, retook *Caroline* from the *Spaniards*, with two other Forts which they had new built; cauſed them to be hanged on the ſame trees whereon they had hanged the *French*; razed the Fort, and returned into *France* in 1568, where he had no ſmall trouble to clear himſelf for his exploit.

Another by the *French*.

Florida being between the twenty fifth or thirtieth and fortieth Degrees of *Septentrional Latitude*, the Countrey cannot chuſe but be good, their Woods and Foreſts are well cloathed with trees, as lofty *Cedars*, large *Oaks*, *Cyprus* and *Bays*, trees of a large proportion, alſo great ſtore of that wood called by the *French Siſſafras*; as alſo another tree called *Eſquine*, the Bark of which trees are an excellent remedy for many diſtempers, eſpecially the *French* Diſeaſe. And in theſe Forreſts and Woods are found all ſorts of *Beaſts* and *Fowl*; the Country is well ſtored with ſeveral ſorts of *Fruits*, as *Grapes*, *Cherries*, *Plumbs*, *Mulberries*, *Cheſnuts*, &c. It is enriched with Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*, but in no great plenty, nor much regarded by the Natives. It is well watered with freſh Streams, which are ſtored with variety of *Fiſh*, and *Crocodiles*, which they eat; they have all ſorts of *Fowl* and *Veniſon* as we have. The people are of an *Olive-colour*, great ſtature, but well proportioned; their hair is black which they wear very long; their women do far exceed other adjacent Nations in handſomneſs, which makes them much deſired by Strangers, and their ſhape and beauty is more diſcernable in that they go naked till their *Purgations*, and afterwards only they make uſe of skins of *Beaſts*, taken in hunting, which they embelliſh with *Feathers*, of divers colours, which they tie about their waiſts, and hangs down to their knees, only to hide their *Privities*; and their *Arms*, *Back*, *Breaſt*, *Knees*, and other parts which are expoſed to ſight, are ſtained with ſeveral ſorts of Paintings, not to be waſhed off, which is eſteemed a great ornament among them. They bear ſome reverence to the *Sun* and *Moon*; they are accounted very *crafty*, *cunning*, *deceitful*, *revengeful*, and much addicted to War; their Arms are *Bow* and *Arrows*, as are almoſt all the *Americans*; they know the nature of their *Herbs*, and

The fertility of *Florida*.

Its Inhabitants, as to their Stature, Habit, Cuſtoms, &c.

and have Flowers of fine colours; they pass a part of the year in the Woods, where they live on *Hunting*; and part near the *Lakes*, *Rivers* and *Sea* where they *Fish*. They have a Custom among them, that is, the Women when their Husbands die, do cut of their hair, and strew it on his Sepulcher, and are restrained from marrying again till their hair is long enough to cover their Shoulders. The Country yields great plenty of *Mayz*, which is their natural bread, which they sow and reap twice in one year: this *Grain* they gather, and put into publick places, and distribute it to every Family as occasion requires.

The manner of their *Whale* Fishing.

Their *Whale Fishing* is made with a cunning and boldness, which those of *Europe* dare not attempt. The *Fisherman* having discovered one, enters into his *Canott*, then leaps upon his back, and there riding takes his time to plunge a stick into one of his nostrils; and what ever endeavour he uses, though he plunge under water, he holds fast; and expecting his rising, fastens another stick on the other side, and then retires with a cord fastned to these sticks; the *Whale* not able to breath, grows weak; and then by little and little, he draws it to the shore; where assisted by his Companions, he cuts it in pieces, drying it to make Flowr, and of that Flowr Bread, which lasts a long time.

The people of *Florida* are governed by their *Paraousti's*, who lead them to War where they kill the men, but preserve the women and children; they have their *Jovona's*, or *Sacrificers*, who serve as *Physicians*, and to whom they bear honour. Their *Paraousti's* being dead, are interred with many Ceremonies; living, are much feared and obeyed. They have many wives, among which one is esteemed the chief, whose children may hope for the charge and dignity of their Father.

The House of *Paraousti Ovade* (when Captain *Albert* was there to beg of him some provisions; besides divers moveables and ornaments) was hung as high as a Pikes length with *Tapestry*, made of rare *Feathers*, and of most beautiful colours, composed of such Artifice, that they were worth the most part of ours. The Coverlid of his Bed was white, tissued in divers copartiments, and with a fringe of Scarlet about it.

Rivers in Florida.

Rivers of most note in *Florida* are: 1. *Rio de Flores*. 2. *Rio de Spirito Sancto*. 3. *Rio de Neives*. 4. *Rio Grande*. 5. *Rio Secco*. 6. *Rio Garunna*. 7. *Rio Charente*. 8. *Rio Axona*, and some others.

Chief Towns.

Chief Towns (or rather Cottages) in *Florida*, are: 1. St. *Hellens*. on a promontary so named. 2. *Port Royal*, a good and well frequented Haven, seated on the mouth of a River so named. 3. St. *Matthews*, 4. St. *Augustine*. 5. St. *Philip*. 6. St. *Jago*, once (if not at present) possessed and fortified by the *Spaniards*, with some others of less note.

The

The ISLES of BERMUDES.

EAst of *Virginia* and *Florida* we have the Isles of *BERMUDES*, so called from *John Bermudes*, a *Spaniard*, by whom it was first discovered; also called the *Summer-Islands*, from the Shipwreck which one Sir *George Summers*, an *English-man*, there suffered: It is about 15 or 1600 Leagues from *England*, 400 from *Hispaniola*, and only 300 from the neareſt Coaſt of *Virginia* and *Florida*. Of theſe Isles the greateſt, called St. *Georges*, is five or six Leagues long, and almoſt throughout not above a quarter, third, or half a League broad; the others are much leſs. All together make a body which form a Creſſant, and incloſe very good Ports; as thoſe of *Southampton*, *Harrington*, *Pagets*, the Great *Sound*, *Dover*, and *Warwick*. Its Parts.

The Air is almoſt always ſerene, ſometimes moiſt and hot, but very healthful, agreeing well with the *Engliſh* Bodies, who have here at divers times ſettled and eſtabliſhed a fair and powerful Colony, and have ſtrongly fortified the Approaches, which at preſent are very difficult; and the Earth is exceeding fertil, yielding two Crops a year; their *Mayz* they gather in *July* and *December*: They have excellent Fruits, as *Oranges*, *Dates*, *Mulberries*, &c. They have plenty of *Tortoiſes*, which is their ordinary food, and the *Hogs* which the *Spaniards* formerly carried thither are excellent, and much increaſed; they have many *Sea-birds*, and other Fowl; they have no freſh Water but that of Wells and Pits, there being neither Fountain nor Stream in theſe Iſlands. They have no venemous Beaſts, their *Spiders* not being poyſonous, but of ſundry and various colours; and in the Hot weather they make their Webs ſo ſtrong, that oftimes Birds are entangled and catched in them. *Cocheneil* and *Tobacco*, with ſome *Pearls* and *Amber*, are their principal Riches, for which they have a good trade. Their Governour is ſent them by the King of *England*, who governs them by our *Engliſh Laws*, whom they alſo own as their Supream; and it is obſerved, that ſcarce any are found to die but with Old age. Its Air. The Earth fertil. No venemous Beaſt here. Its chief Commodities.

- MEXICANE, with its ſeveral Audiences of
  - MEXICO, whoſe Provinces, with their chief Places, are thoſe of
    - FLORIDA — St. Hellens, Port Royal, St. Matthews, St. Auguſtin, St. Jago, Naguater.
    - MEXICO, particularly ſo called — Mexico, Chulula, Tezcuco, Quitlavaca, Queretaro, Meſtitlan, Cuyocan, Acapulco.
    - PANUCO — St. Jago de los Valles, Panuco, St. Lewis de Tempoa.
    - MECHOACAN — Mechoacan, Colima, St. Philip.
    - THASCALA — Thaſcala, los Angelos.
    - GUAXACA — Antequera, Spiritu Sancto.
    - TABASCO — Noſ. Sen. de la Victoria.
    - JUCATAN — Merida, Campeche.
  - GUADALAJARA, whoſe Provinces, with their chief Places, are thoſe of
    - GUADALAJARA — Guadalajara, St. Maria de las lagos.
    - XALISCO — Compoſtella, la Purification, Xaliſco.
    - CHIAMETLAN — St. Sebaſtian.
    - CULIACAN — St. Michael, Piaſtla.
    - CINALOA — St. John.
    - LOS ZACATECAS — Zacatecas, Nombre de Dios.
    - NEW BISCAY — St. John, St. Barbara.
    - QUIVIRA — St. Fee.
    - ANIAN.
    - CIBOLA — Cibola.
    - CALIFORNIA — Port de Montere, Port de Roque.
  - GUATEMALA, whoſe Provinces, with their chief Places, are thoſe of
    - GUATEMALA — St. Jago de Guatemala, St. Salvador, la Trinidad, St. Michael, Xeres.
    - VERA PAX — Vera Pax.
    - SOCONUSCO — Guevetlan.
    - CHIAPA — Cuidad Real.
    - HONDURAS — Valadolid, Gratias di Dios, Truxillo, St. George de Olancho.
    - NICARAGUA — Leon, Granada, Jaen.
    - COSTARICA — Cartago, Nicoya, Caſtro de Auſtrio.
    - VERAGUA — la Conception, Trinadad, Sancta Fee, Parita.
  - St. DOMINGO; In which are the Iſles of ANTILLES, or CAMERCANES, otherwiſe called the Iſles of LUCAYES, and the CARIBE Iſles; the chief among which are thoſe of
    - CUBA — St. Jago, St. Spiritus, Porto del Principe, Sr. Chriſtophoro.
    - JAMAICA — St. Jago, Port Royal, Paſſage, Melilla.
    - HISPANIOLA — St. Domingo, Porto del la Plata, St. Jago, Monto Chriſto.
    - SAONA — St. Juan del puerto Rico, St. Germain.
    - BOREQUEM — St. Juan del Puerto Rico.
    - St. CRUX.
    - St. CHRISTOPHERS — Sandy point, Baſſe terre.
    - NIEVES.
    - ANTEGO.
    - MONT SERRAT.
    - GUADELOUPE.
    - MARIGALANTE.
    - MARTINIQUE.
    - St. OLOUZIA.
    - BARBADOS — St. Michaels, Little Briſtol, St. James, Charles Town.
    - St. VINCENT.
    - GRENADO.
    - BARBADA.
    - ANGUILLA.
    - DOMINICA.

MEXICO,
OR
New Spain.

MEXICO, or *NEW SPAIN*, is the faireſt and moſt famous part of *America Septentrionalis*, and ſometimes the *Spaniards*, comprehended under this name all that *America:* We may eſteem that which belongs to the Catholick King for the greateſt part; in which we ſhall have ſeveral Provinces, and all compriſed under four *Audiences* or *Courts* of *Parliament: viz.* that of *St. Domingo*; of *Mexico*, which bears the particular name of *New Spain*; of *Guadalajara*, or *Nova Gallicia*; and of *Guatimala*.

The Audience of *St. DOMINGO* hath under it all thoſe Iſlands which are before the Gulph of *Mexico*; then *Florida* which is North-Weſt of them, and in *America Septentrionalis*; and *Venezuela*, New *Andalouſia*, and *Rio del Hacha*, which are towards the South of them, and in *America Meridionalis*. The Audience of *St.Domingo.*

The Audience of *MEXICO* hath the Provinces of *Mexico*, *Panuco*, *Mechoacan*, *Tlaſcala*, *Guaxaca*, *Tavaſco*, and *Jucatan*. That of *Panuco* is North of *Mexico*; *Meochan*, Weſt; *Tlaſcala*, Eaſt; *Guaxaca*, *Tavaſco*, and *Jucatan*, continuing likewiſe towards the Eaſt. The two laſt lie wholly upon *Mer del Nort*; *Guaxaca*, and *Tlaſcala*, on the two Seas of North and South; *Mexico* and *Mechoacan* only on that of the South, and *Panuco* on that of the North. The Audience of *Mexico*, and its Provinces.

The Audience of *GUADALAJARA* contains the Provinces of *Guadalajara*, *Xalaſco*, *Los Zacatecas*, *Chiametlan*, *Cinaloa:* ſome add *New Biſcany*, and others likewiſe *Cibola*, *Quivira*, *Anian*, *California*, *&c. New Biſcany*, and *Los Zacatecas*, touch not the Sea; *Guadalajara*, little; to wit, between *Xaliſco* and *Chiametlan:* and theſe begin on *Mer del Sud.* Others advance themſelves far into that which they call *Mer Vermejo* or the *Red Sea*, the Iſle of *California* being on the other ſide. The Audience of *Guadalajara*, and its Provinces.

The Audience of *GUATIMALA*, South-Eaſt of that of *Mexico*, continues between the Seas *del Nort* and *del Sud*, advancing towards *America Meridionalis*. The Audience of *Guatimala*, and its Provinces.

There are under it the Provinces of *Guatimala*, *Soconuſco*, *Chiapia*, *Vera Pax*, *Honduras*, *Nicaragua*, and *Caſtorica:* and theſe two laſt lie on both Seas; *Honduras* and *Vera Pax* on the Gulph of *Honduras*, towards the *Mer del Nort*; *Chiapa*, within Land; *Guatimala*, and *Soconuſco*, on the *Mer del Sud*.

The Audience of *MEXICO*, ſo called from its principal City; now known by the name of *Nova Hiſpania*; and by this City of *Mexico* the *Spaniards* began to make themſelves abſolute Lords of all theſe Quarters. Which before their arrival was very populous; but in the ſpace of 16 or 17 years, deſtroyed above ſix Millions of its Inhabitants by cruel and unchriſtian-like deaths, as

roaſting ſome, cutting off the Members of others, putting out the Eyes of others, caſting others alive to be torn in pieces and devoured by *wild Beaſts*, and the like horrid deaths; and only to act their Tyranny over them, rather than to reduce them to obedience, which might have been otherwiſe obtained without ſhedding ſo much Blood. This City was called by its ancient Inhabitants *Tonoxtitlan*, and was the reſidence of their Kings, and is at preſent the faireſt of all *America*, ſeated in the midſt of a Lake, in ſome places 10 Leagues long, and 7 or 8 broad, having 25 or 30 Leagues circuit: It is not joyned to the Main Land, but by 3 Cauſ-waies, of which, that towards the Weſt is but 3 quarters of a League long; that towards the North a League and an a half, and the laſt, 3 Leagues. It was by this laſt that *Cortez* and the *Spaniards* made their approaches, and took the City. All this *Lake* is ſalt; but there falls into it another almoſt of the ſame bigneſs, which is freſh, and good to drink; both together are 45 or 50 Leagues circuit, in which are ſaid to be about 50000 *Wherries* continually ſeen to row and carry Paſſengers; they have about 50 *Burgs* or *Towns* on their Banks, whereof ſome have once been eſteemed great Cities: The ſalt Lake yields quantity of *Salt*, the other ſo much *Fiſh*, that its Fiſhing hath been farmed for 100000 Crowns yearly. In this City may be found 4000 Natural *Spaniards*, 30000 *Indians* or *Americans*, (there having heen formerly 200000) 20000 *Negroes*; and its Juriſdiction contains 250 *Towns*, of which ſome have their *Schools*; more than 3000 (ſome ſay 6000) *Eſtancia's*, that is, *Farms*; and in all 500000 *Americans* Tributaries. It is the reſidence of the *Vice-Roy* of *America Septentrionalis*, as alſo of an *Archbiſhop*, and many other Officers of Juſtice of the *Mint*, and of the *Inquiſition*. It hath a famous *Academy*, 150 *Monaſteries* for the one and the other Sex. It is diſtinguiſhed (as under its Ancient Kings) into theſe Quarters, which at preſent are called that of *St. John*, of *St. Maria the Round*, of *St. Paul*, and of *St. Sebaſtian*, and of *St. James*, formerly *Tlatelulco*. In this laſt, which is very great and the faireſt, is the Palace of the *Vice-Roy*, the Houſe of the *Archbiſhop*, the Court of *Audience*, the *Mint*, and other Offices. In this City of *Mexico* is a Cathedral Church, which was begun by *Cortez* with ſo much haſte, that to raiſe two Columns, for want of Materials they made uſe of the Stones which had made part of the *Statues* of the Idols. Here is alſo a *Printing-houſe*, ſeveral Houſes of *Jeſuits*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Orders; ſome *Colledges*, abundance of *Hoſpitals*, and other publick Buildings; all of great ſtate and beauty. They have here four things which are remarkable for Beauty, *viz.* their *Women*, their *Apparel*, their *Horſes*, and their *Streets*.

The City of *Mexico* deſcribed.

The reſidence of a *Vice-Roy*, &c.

Among thoſe places which are, or have been on the two Lakes of *Mexico*, *Chulula* is reckoned one of the faireſt; ſcarce excepting that of *Mexico*, with which it in times paſt contended as well for ſtate as bigneſs, once containing near 20000 Houſes, and beautified with ſo many *Temples* as there are days in the year. The People were ſaid to be ſo addicted to Idolatries, and ſo barbarous in their bloody Sacrifices, that it ſacrificed yearly no leſs than 5000 Infants of both Sexes on its Altars before its Idols. *Tezcuco*, once twice as great as *Sevil* in *Spain*; its Streets are fair and large, its Houſes ſtately and Beautiful, and adorned with many *Conduits* and *Aquæducts*, which furniſhed them with freſh Water; though ſeated on the brinks of the Salt-Lake of *Mexico*. *Quitlavaca*, built on divers little Iſlands like to *Venice*, was joyned to the Continent by a Cauſ-way made of *Flint-ſtones* of about a League long, but narrow; called by the *Spaniards*, *Venezuela*, containing about 2000 Houſes. *Iztalpalapa*, ſeated part on the Lake and part on the Banks, with a Paved way to *Mexico*, from which it is diſtant two Leagues: once a large City, having no leſs than 10000 well built Houſes, which were plentifully ſupplied with freſh Waters from its many Ponds, as well as its beautiful Fountains. *Queretaro* hath two Fountains, of which one is ſo hot, that its Waters at firſt burn, being cold, fatten Cattle; the other runs four whole years continually, and ceaſes other four whole years; having likewiſe this property, that it increaſes in dry, and diminiſhes in moiſt and rainy weather. *Meſſitlan*, once of good repute, containing

Chulula deſcribed.

Its Inhabitants

Tezcuco deſcribed.

Quitlavaca deſcribed.

Iztalpalapa deſcribed.

Queretaro deſcribed.

Meſſitland ibed.

Mr. deſcr.

taining about 30000 Inhabitants, ſeated on an high Hill, begirt about with pleaſant Groves and fertil Plains, which affords excellent Fruits, and very good Grains. *Cuyocan*, of about 50000 Houſes, and *Mexicaltzingo* of about 4000, both upon the Lake, were in times of *Paganiſm* adorned with many beautiful *Temples*, ſo rich, that at a diſtance they ſeemed to be made of *Silver*; but now their luſtre is decaied, moſt of them being converted to Monaſteries and Religious Houſes. *Cuyocan* and *Mexicaltzingo* deſcribed. *Acapulco*, a City and Port on *Mer del Sud*, ſeated on a ſafe and capacious Bay, full of convenient places or Docks for *Ships* to ride in, ſo that it is ſaid to be the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas; it is diſtant from *Mexico* 100 Leagues. The *Mexicans* keep here ſome Veſſels, and trade to the *Philippines*, and to *China*, from whence they are diſtant 3000 Leagues. *Acapulco* deſcribed.

The *Air* of *Mexico* is ſweet and temperate, though ſcituate under the *Torrid Zone*, the Heats thereof much qualified by the cooling Blaſts, which riſe from the Sea on three ſides of it, as alſo by the frequent refreſhing Showers, which always falls in *June*, *July*, and *Auguſt*, which is their hotteſt Seaſon of the year: The Soil is ſo fertil that they gather their Crop twice a year; yet want they good *Wine* and good *Oil* by reaſon of the Summer-Rains. It is believed, that no Country in the World feeds ſo much Cattle, ſome private perſons having 40000 *Oxen* or *Cows*, others 15000 *Sheep*, &c. and an infinite number of tame Fowl, as *Hens*, *Turkies*, &c. whence it comes that *Oxen*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Hogs*, and *tame Fowl* are hardly worth the buying. Their *Horſes* are excellent, the Race coming from the beſt of *Spain*. The Air of *Mexico*. Its fertility.

There are few Mines of *Gold*, though many of *Silver*, about *Mexico*; as thoſe of *Comana*, *Fuchuco*, *Archichica*, *Temozcaltepeque*, *Zacualpa*, *Taſco*, *Imiquilpo*, *Cu Tepeque*, *Talpajava*, *Zumpango*, *Guanaxuato*, and others. And theſe Mines are not ſo rich as thoſe of *Peru*; but eaſier wrought, and with leſs expence and loſs of Men. The principal Riches of the Country, after their *Silver*, *Gold*, *Iron* and *Copper*, are their *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Wool*, *Cotton*, *Sugar*, *Silk*, *Cocheneel*, the grain of *Scarlet*, *Feathers*, *Honey*, *Balm*, *Amber*, *Salt*, *Tallow*, *Hides*, *Tobacco*, *Ginger*, and divers Medicinal Drugs. The Natives of this Country are more ingenious than the reſt of the *Savages*, and are much civilized ſince the *Spaniards* had to do here; they are excellent in many Mechanical Arts, eſpecially in making fine *Pictures* with the Feathers of their *Cincons*, which is a little Bird living only on *Dew*, and place their Colours ſo well, that the beſt Painters of *Europe* admire the delicacy, they far exceeding a piece of Painting. They have ſome memories of their Hiſtories, make uſe of certain Characters inſtead of Letters of our Alphabet; their Tongue was extended ſo far as they could extend their Dominion, though in divers Provinces there were diverſity of *Languages:* They are excellent in refining of *Metals*, expert *Goldſmiths*, and curious in Painting upon *Cotton*. Mines in *Mexico*. Its Inhabitants

Among their Rarities of this Country there is a moſt admirable Plant called *Magney*, from which they extract ſeveral things; it hath on it about 40 kinds of Leaves, which are fit for ſeveral uſes; for when they are tender they make of them *Paper*, *Flax*, *Thread*, *Cordage*, *Girdles*, *Shoes*, *Mats*, *Mantles*, *Stuffs*, &c. upon them grow Prickles ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that they make uſe of them inſtead of *Saws*, alſo they ſerve for *Needles*. The *Bark*, if it be roaſted, maketh an excellent Plaiſter for Wounds; from the top Branches comes a kind of *Gum*, which is a ſovereign Antidote againſt Poyſon: from the top of the Tree cometh a Juyce like Syrup, which, if ſeethed, will become *Hony*; if purified, *Sugar:* they make alſo *Wine* and *Vinegar* of it, and it affordeth good Wood to build with. The Plant *Magney*, a very great rarity.

In this Country are two Mountains, one which vomits flames of Fire like *Ætna*, and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of *black Pitch*, and the other of *red*. The Kings of *Mexico* were rich and powerful in regard of their Neighbours, having no leſs than 2 or 3000 Men for their ordinary Guard, and having been able to raiſe 2 or 300000 Foot; among the 25 or 30 Kings, which were his Tributaries, ſome could arm 100000 Men; their Revenues vaſt, which they raiſed out all Commodities, as well of Natural as Artificial, which the King received in kind, partici-

participating of the Fruits of all Mens labour, and ſharing with them in their Riches. Their Palaces were magnificent, both that within the City, and thoſe in divers parts of the Kingdom; they kept great Attendance, lived in great Pomp, were much reverenced of their Subjects; in their Veſtments ſtately, being adorned with *Gold*, *Pearl*, and *Precious Stones*, wearing a rich Crown reſembling that of a *Duke*; their *Coronations* held with great pomp, at which times they uſed bloody Sacrifices of Men and Children, which for the moſt part were their Enemies, but ſometimes their own; their Temples were ſtately, with many Idols whom they worſhipped; which were attended with abundance of *Sacrificers* or *Prieſts*; and to excite their Souldiers to valour, they uſed three degrees of Honour or Orders of *Knighthood*, which according to their merit were conferr'd upon them; the firſt was diſtinguiſhed by a *red Ribband*, the ſecond called the *Tyger* or *Lion-Knight*, and the third the *Gray-Knight*; which among other things were priviledged to apparel themſelves in *Cotton* in a different habit, and to adorn themſelves with *Gold* and *Silver*, which things are prohibited to others.

The deſcent of the *Mexicans*.

Moreover, the preſent *Mexicans* deſcended not from the Ancient Inhabitants of the Country, but from divers People, which had their reſidence in the North, and not unlikely from that which we call *New Mexico*. The Hiſtory they produce of the manner how they came from theſe quarters at divers times, of the time which the one and the other, and particularly of him whom they laſt employed in their Voyages, thoſe Ceremonies they obſerved, and likewiſe the name of their chief *Mexi*, ſeems to accord ſomewhat with the Voyage of *Moſes* and the *Hebrews*, when he led them to the Land of Promiſe. Theſe People becoming Maſters of *Mexico*, formed a conſiderable Government, and gave it divers Kings. *Montezuma*, under whom *Ferdinand Cortez* entred the Country, was but the ninth in number.

The ſtory of the *Inca-Mango-Capac*, and his Wife *Coya Mama-Oelho*.

The *Inca-Mango-Capac*, and his Wife *Coya Mama-Oelho*, were the firſt that led them to a human and civil life, they made themſelves be believed to be Brother and Siſter; Children of the *Sun* and *Moon*; and that they had been ſent here below for the good of Men. And with this belief they withdrew them from the Mountains, Caves, and Forreſts, and gave them the firſt knowledge of the Law of Nature. *Inca-Mango-Capac* taught Men how to till the Earth, to graft *Plants*, to feed *Flocks*, to gather the beſt *Fruits*, to build *Houſes* and *Cities*, &c. *Coya Mama-Oelho*, learnt Women how to *Spin*, *Weave*, *Sow*, make *Habits*, &c. and above all inſtructed, that their principal care ought to be to ſerve and obey their *Husbands*, and feed and inſtruct their *Children*.

And theſe People finding themſelves in a better and more reaſonable way of living than before, eaſily ſubmitted themſelves to the Government of theſe *Inca's*; addicted themſelves to the Religion they taught them, which was to adore the *Sun*, as that *Star* which above all the reſt did moſt viſible good to *Men*, *Beaſts*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, *Plants*, &c. and ſo ſoon as theſe *Inca's* knew the affection of the People, they raiſed Arms, aſſembled Troops, and reduced to the ſame Government and the ſame Religion many neighbouring People; but ſtill more by ſweetneſs than force: and in the end, compoſed an Eſtate or Empire, which for its greatneſs and riches, and likewiſe for its Laws, was one of the moſt conſiderable of the World. And if we ſhould put in parallel the Politicks of the *Inca's* of *Peru*, or of thoſe of *Mexico*, with them of the *Greeks* and *Romans*; *Acoſta* maintains that theſe would have the advantage, and that the *Inca's* had ſo great a care of the good and repoſe of their Subjects, that there cannot be found in all Hiſtory any *King* or *Emperour* that ever bore himſelf with ſo much ſweetneſs, freedom, and liberality towards his People, as did the *Inca's*, Kings of *Peru* and *Mexico*. So ſoon as a Province entred under their Obedience, they made Channels every where to water the Lands; and that theſe Lands might be the more commodious for Tillage, they cauſed to be laid level what was unequal, evening by degrees what was too ſteep: The Lands proper for Tillage were divided into three parts, *viz.* for the *Sun*, for the *King*, and for the *Inhabitants* of the Country; and if theſe were

in

in ſo great number, that the third part of the Land was not ſufficient for their food, ſo much taken from the Third of the *Sun* and of the King, as was needful.

The Lands being equally parted according to the ability of every Family, the labour began with thoſe of the *Orphans*, *Widows*, the old and impotent, and *Souldiers* when they were in War; after theſe, every one laboured and cultivated his own: then thoſe of the *Curacca's* or *Governours*, which were to be after the Private perſons; thoſe of the *King* and of the *Sun* were the laſt. And this Order was ſo religiouſly obſerved, that a Governour having cauſed the Field of a Kinſman of his to be tilled before that of a poor Widow, was hanged in the Field he cauſed to be tilled before its degrees: ſo careful were they of the Poor. Beſides this labour for the Tillage of the Lands of the *Sun* and the *Inca's*, Private perſons were obliged to make *Cloaths*, *Hoſe*, *Shoes*, and *Arms* for the *Souldiers*, as alſo for thoſe whom Age or Sickneſs made incapable of Travel or Labour. The *Wool* or *Cotton* was taken from the Flocks; and on the Lands belonging to the *Sun* and the *Inca's*: and each Province gave only what was eaſie and common, and each Private perſon only his labour: young Men under 25 years, Men above 50: Women and Lame people were exempt from theſe Tributes. They made no account of *Gold*, *Silver*, or *precious Stones*, but for their adornment, beauty, and ſplendor, nor needing wherewith to buy Victuals or Cloaths; their Lands and ordinary Occupation yielding and furniſhing them with what ever was neceſſary. Yet if at their hours of leaſure they could diſcover any, they made a Preſent of it to their *Curaca's*: theſe to the *Inca*, when they went to ſalute him at *Cuſco*, or when the *Inca* viſited his Eſtates; and then it was employed either for the Ornaments of the *Royal-houſe*, or the Temples of the *Sun*. The Temple of the *Sun* at *Cuſco* was ſo ſtately, and enriched with ſo much *Gold*, *Silver*, and *precious Stones*, that it is incredible. In this Temple, beſides the principal Apartment which was for the *Sun*, there was others for the *Moon*, *Stars*, *Lightning*, *Thunder*, *Thunderbolt*, and *Rainbow*, which was the device of the *Inca's*. They eſteemed the *Stars* as waiting-Maids, which followed the *Moon*, and all the reſt Executioners of the Juſtice of the *Sun*; to whom alone they ſacrificed *Sheep*, *Lambs*, *Rabbits*, *Fowls*, *Spices*, *Herbs*, *Habits*, &c. beſides *Men* and *Children*, as was ſaid before. The *Prieſts* of this Temple were all Deſcendants of the *Inca's*. In the Temples of other Provinces it ſufficed, that they were deſcendants of the Priviledged *Inca's*, *Curaca's* or *Governours* of thoſe Provinces. They called Priviledged thoſe to whom the *Inca-Mango-Capac* had communicated this Title for them and their Children; but ordinarily the great Prieſt was *Uncle*, *Brother*, or one of the neareſt kin to the *Inca*.

The Temple of the Sun at *Cuſco*.

Their Sacrifices.

Their Prieſts.

To make appear the Riches in ſome reſpect of this Temple, that which incloſed the divers apartments of the *Sun*, *Moon*, *Stars*, &c. were all wainſcotted with Plates of *Gold*. The *Sun*, placed on his *Arter* towards the Eaſt, was of one Plate of *Gold* much thicker than the others, and the Figure in the ſame manner as our Painters here deſcribe it; *viz.* a round Viſage, environed with Rays and Flames. At the taking of *Cuſco*, this piece, or the Image of the *Sun*, fell to *Maneca ſerra de Lequiſano*, a *Caſtilian*; who being a great Gameſter, loſt it one Night at play; which made it to be ſaid, That he had plaid away and loſt the *Sun* in a dark Night, long before it was day. On the two ſides of the *Sun* were the Bodies of the *Kings* or *Inca's*, deceaſed, ranged according to their times, and enbalmed in ſuch manner that they appeared living: They were ſeated in Thrones of *Gold*, raiſed upon Plates of the ſame, and accommodated in degrees or aſcents: The Bodies of the *Queens* were according to the ſame order in the apartment, and on both ſides the Figure of the *Moon*, where all the *Ornaments*, *Doors*, *Wainſcots*, *Thrones*, &c. were of *Silver*. Near this Temple was a *Garden*, where the *Herbs*, *Plants*, *Flowers*, *Trees*, and where Beaſts of all ſorts, as alſo Birds, even to *Butterflies* and *Flies*, were of *Gold* and *Silver*; and ſo lively repreſented, that they ſeemed Natural. And there were likewiſe of theſe *Gardens* near the Palace of the *Inca's*, and near the

The richneſs of the Temple.

Houſes

Houſes of the Virgins vowed to the *Sun*. In all the Provinces there were Temples of the *Sun*, built after the model of thoſe of *Cuſco*, but not ſo rich: Here the Virgins that vowed to the *Sun* were taken from the *Curaca's*, or the faireſt in the Province: Of theſe the *Inca* or *King* might make uſe; but not of thoſe of *Cuſco*, being reſerved only for the *Sun*, and which the *Inca* himſelf might not ſee. Though theſe *Inca's* and their People adored not, nor made any Sacrifice but to the *Sun*, yet the moſt knowing among them eſteemed, much beyond the *Sun*, the *Pachachamac*, that is, the Author of the *Univerſe*; but whom, not ſeeing, they contented themſelves to adore in their inward parts. They had likewiſe ſome knowledge of the *Deluge*, believing that the Souls could not die, and that the Bodies ſhould revive. Their *Amauta's* or *Philoſophers* addicted their principal ſtudy to the *Morals*, cared little for the *Metaphyſicks*, *Medicine*, or *Aſtronomy*; yet obſerved the *Equinoxes*, the *Solſtices*, and called the *Eclipſes* the Anger of the *Sun*, and the Sickneſs or Sleepineſs of the *Moon*, from which they wakened her by making great noiſes. Their *Poeſies* were on divers honeſt Subjects; their *Comedies* and *Tragedies* on divers accidents of human life, or on the Victories and Triumphs of their *Inca's* or *Curaca's*. But we are entred too far into this matter: The *Inca G. de la Vega* ſaith, that there is Subject to many Volumes if we would recount all obſervable and good in the ancient Government of *Peru*, touching the Order eſtabliſhed, to know the number of Perſons that was in each City and each Province; what was its Revenue; what Forces might be raiſed; touching the *Judges*, the *Curaca's* or *Governour*, and other Officers of Policy or for the Militia; touching the publick Magazins for *Proviſions*, *Cloaths*, and *Arms*; touching their Ceremonies in their *Sacrifices*, in their *Feaſts*, in their *Funeral Pomps*; in their mourning a whole year after the death of their *Kings*; likewiſe in the eſtabliſhment of their *Colonies*; of their *Schools*; of their *Poſt-houſes* on great Rods, which they had built ſo ſtately that the *Romans* had not the like. But, as he ſaith, the beſt of theſe good Laws and Policy was aboliſhed when the *Spaniards* became Maſters of the Country; adding, that if there were Barbariſm before the reign of the *Inca's*, after them the *Spaniards* brought in another worſe than the firſt: The Inhabitants of the Country, for the moſt part, not having what was neceſſary for life, whatever labour or ſervice they rendred their Maſters; who ought to have contented themſelves with the Riches they had reaped, and may yet reap, from the goodneſs of the Country. The ranſom of *Atahualpa*, the pillage of *Cuſco*, and the firſt incurſion which the *Spaniards* made into *Peru*, yielded them the value of 20 Millions of *Ducats*; but *Pizarre* and *Almagre*, the two firſt *Spaniſh Chiefs* which conquered *Peru*, and put to death *Atahualpa*; and in likelyhood *Guaſcar*, likewiſe Brothers and *Inca's*, were ſo blinded with the *Gold* they found, and became ſo cruelly covetous, that each ſeeking to have all, they began between themſelves an unhappy War, and in the end murthered, hanged, ſtrangled, and beheaded one another till there was not left one of them, their Children or Brothers, &c. By which God ſeemed not only to have chaſtiſed their unbridled Ambition and inſatiable Avarice; but to revenge the Blood of the *Inca's* they had unjuſtly ſlain, and their ill treating the *Indians*.

The Opinion of the *Inca's*.

The *Spaniards* great enemies to the *Muniſans*.

The Province of *PANUCO* is 100 Leagues long, and as many broad, divided by a River of the ſame name into two almoſt equal parts: That which is Southward, and towards *Mexico*, is the moſt fertil and beſt tilled; the other towards the North, and *Florida*, being worſe. Likewiſe, that which approaches the Sea is worth much more than that within Land. The *Caſtilians* have eſtabliſhed only three Colonies, of which St. *Stevan del Puerto* is the Metropolis, ſeated on a River of the ſame name, and 12 Leagues from the Sea; the greateſt Town of Traffick in this Province, built by *Ferdinando Cortez* out of the Ruins of *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province till deſtroyed by him. Next, St. *Jago de los Valles*, likewiſe on the ſame River, ſcituate on an open Country, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of *Earth*. And, Thirdly, St. *Lewis de Tempico*, ſeated on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and near the

Province of *Panuco*, and its fertility.

Its Colonies and chief places deſcribed.

the Coaſt of the Gulph of *Mexico*. Theſe Colonies are ſo weakned by the incurſions of the Inhabitants, who now knock one on the head, and then another, that the beſt had not above ſixty Native *Spaniards*, *An.*1600. They have Mines of *Gold* in the Country, which are not wrought; good *Salt-pits*, out of which they draw the greateſt profit,&c.

The Province of *Mechoacan* and chief places deſcribed.

The Province and Biſhoprick of *MECHOACAN*, between thoſe of *Mexico* and *New Gallicia*, ſtretches on the Coaſt of *Mer del Sud* near 100 Leagues, advances within Land from that Coaſt to the *Zacatecas* near 150 Leagues. Places of moſt note are, 1. *Colina*, ſeated ten Leagues from the Sea, built by *Gonſalvo de Sandoval* in the year 1522. 2. *Zacatula*, on the *Mer del Sud*, and at the Mouth of a River of the ſame name. 3. *Mechoacan*, the Metropolis, which takes its name from the Province ſo called, now the Seat of the *Archbiſhop*. 4. *Zinzouza*, once the Seat of the Kings of *Mechoacan*. 5. *Pazcuaro*, once the Seat of the Biſhop. 6. *Valladolid*, ſeated near a *Lake* as large as that of *Mexico*, once the Seat of the *Archbiſhop*, till removed to *Mechoachan*. 7. *La Conception de Salaga*. 8. *St. Michael*, built by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*. 9. *St. Philip*, built by the ſaid *Velaſco* at the ſame time, to aſſure the way going from *Mechoacan* or *Mexico*, to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*: this way being often peſtered and frequented by the *Chichimeques*, *Otomites*, *Taraſques*, and other barbarous and as yet unconquered People, who greatly perplex and annoy the People that border upon them. Some place likewiſe in this Province the Cities of *Leon*, of *Zamora*, of *Villa de Lagos*, and about 100 Towns, of which many have their Schools.

The Soil of this Province, and its Commodities.

The Soil of this Province is very different, but every where fertil, and in moſt places yields ſuch great increaſe of all ſorts of *Grains*, *Fruits*, &c. that it hardly hath its fellow in the whole World. It produceth likewiſe *Cotton*, *Ambergreeſe*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Coppers* ſoft and hard; of the ſoft they make Veſſels, of the hard Inſtruments inſtead of *Iron*. They have *black Stones* ſo ſhining, that they ſerve them inſtead of *Looking-Glaſſes*. They have ſtore of *Plants*, *Medicinal Herbs*, *Mulberry-trees*, *Silk*, *Hony*, *Wax*, &c. The Country is ſaid to be ſo healthful, and of ſo ſweet an Air, that Sick people come hither to recover their health. It is well ſtored with *Rivers* and *Springs* of freſh Water, which makes their Paſtures exceeding rich and fat. *Cattle* and *Fowl* are here found in great plenty, and their *Rivers* and *Lakes* afford ſtore of *Fiſh*.

Its Air.

The vertue of the Plant *Gozometcath*.

Between *COLIMA* and *ACATLAN* is found the Plant *Cozometcath* or *Olacacazan*, which takes Blood-ſhot from the Eyes, preſerves the ſtrength of the Body, or reſtores it to the Weak, cures the Tooth and Head-ach, reſiſts all Poyſons; and in fine, is moſt excellent againſt all Diſeaſes. Thoſe of the Country will judge of the event of any Sickneſs whatſoever it be, when they apply the Leaf on the party: If they faſten eaſily, they ſoon hope a cure; but if they reſuſt or fall off, they expect nothing but a great and long ſickneſs or death.

The Province of *Thaſcala* with is Cities deſcribed.

THASCALA, or *LOS ANGELOS*, is between *Mexico* and the Gulph of *Mexico*, from whence it advances unto the *Mer del Sud*, ſtretching it ſelf on the Coaſt of this Sea 25 Leagues; on the other 75, or 80. Places of moſt note are, 1. *Thaſcala*, which gives name to this Province; once the Seat of a Biſhop, and once governed in form of a Common-wealth, and exceeding populous. It had four principal Streets or Quarters, which in time of War were each of them governed by a Captain; and in the midſt of theſe Streets it had a moſt ſpacious Market-place, which was always thronged with People for the negotiating of their Affairs: It is ſcituate on an eaſie aſcent betwixt two Rivers, encompaſſed with a large, pleaſant, and fruitful Plain, about 20 Leagues in compaſs. 2. *Los Angelos*, (or the City of *Angels*,) a fair City, built by *Sebaſtian Ramirez*, *Anno* 1531, now the *Biſhops* Seat. 3. *Vera Crux*, built by the ſaid *Cortez*, being a place of great concourſe by reaſon of its near ſcituation unto the Gulph, from whence it is a thorough-fare to the City of *Mexico*, which is diſtant from it 60 Leagues. Its Port of St. *Joan de Ulva*,

Ulva, though but bad, is in some esteem, being the best on the *Mer del Nort*; and held more commodious than that of *Mexico*. 4. *Zempoallan*, seated on a River of the same name, the Inhabitants whereof did *Ferdinando Cortez* good service in his conquest of *Mexico*. Beside those Towns or Cities, they count in this Bishoprick or Province 200 *Towns*, 1000 *Villages*, and 250000 *Indians* under its Jurisdiction, which are exempted from all extraordinary charge and imposition, because of their assisting the said *Cortez* in his conquest of *Mexico*. The Country is more hot than cold, fruitful in *Corn*, *Mayz*, *Sugar*, *Wine*, *Fruits*; feeds much *Cattle*, full of rich *Pastures*, well watered with fresh Streams. In the Valley of St. *Paul* was a Country man possest of 40000 *Sheep*, which were the product of only two, which were brought him from *Spain*. The Inhabitants are much of the same nature and condition with those of *Mexico* aforesaid.

The fertility of the Province.

The Province of *Guaxaca*, with its chief places described.

GUAXACA is between the *Mer del Nort* and *Sud*. The Plain of the Province makes a Lozenge, whose 4 sides are each 75 Leagues, or little more. Its Cities are, 1. *Antequera*, a Bishoprick, and which sometime communicated its name to the Province. It is seated in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, and adorned with stately Buildings, and beautified with a magnificent *Cathedral Church*, whose Columns are of *Marble*, and of a prodigious height and thickness. 2. *St. Jago*, seated in the Valley of *Nexapa*, but upon a lofty Hill. 3. *St. Ilefonso*, on a Mountain in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 4. *Spiritu Sancto*, in the Quarter and on the River of *Guaxacoalco*, near the *Mer del Nort*. 5. *Cuertlavaca*, of note for a *Labyrinth*, not far distant, hewed out of a Rock. 6. *Aquatulco*, a noted Port on the *Mer del Sud*, well frequented by those who transport the Merchandizes of *Europe* and *Mexico* to *Peru*; a place of great Riches till plundered by those two eminent Travellers *Drake* and *Cavendish*, both *Englishmen*; besides those places, there is said to be 300 Towns, and as many *Estancia's* or *Hamlets*, which are inhabited by the Natives of the Country, which pay Tribute to the *Spaniards*. The divers Quarters of this Province are all fertil, not only in *Grains*, but also in *Fruits*, *Cocheneil*, *Silk*, *Cassia*; and the Earth well stored with Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, and other Metals, and almost all the Rivers stream down *sand-Gold*. Here is also a kind of *Almond*, which they call *Cacao*, which they make use of instead of Mony.

The fertility and commodities of this Province.

The Province of *Tavasco* described.

TAVASCO is only a Coast of an 100 Leagues long, between *Guaxaco* and *Jucatan*, scarce 25 Leagues broad between the Province of *Chiapa* and the Sea; the Country is full of *Pools* and *Marshes* towards the Coast, *Wood* and *Forests* towards the Mountains; and the *Rains* being continual for 8 or 9 Months in the year, the Air is very humid; and its situation being much under the *Torrid Zone*, it engenders an infinite number of *Vermin*, *Gnats*, and *Insects*; yet the Soil is excellent, abundant in *Mayz* and *Cocao*, which is their principal Riches. There is observable here but one Colony of the *Spaniards*, which they call *Villa de Nuestra a Sennora de la Victoria*, so called because of the Victory *Cortez* gained in 1519 against those of the Country, when he went to the Conquest of the Kingdom of *Mexico*. It was called *Potonchan* when it was besieged, taken and sacked by *Cortez*; and it is observed, this was the first City in *America* which defended it self, and which suffered under the *Spaniards* Sword.

Its fertility and commodities.

Its chief Colony.

The Province of *Jucatan*, with its chief places described.

JUCATAN is the last Province of the Audience of *Mexico* towards the East. It is a *Peninsula* of about 400 Leagues circuit, situate between the Gulphs of *Mexico* and *Honduras*. The *Isthmus* which joyns it to the Main Land, is not above 25 or 30 Leagues over, from whence the Country continues enlarging it self from 50 or 75 Leagues breadth, and ends at *Cape de Cotoche*, which regards towards the East *Cape* St. *Anthony* in the Isle of *Cuba*, at the distance of 60 and odd Leagues.

The Coasts of *JUCATAN* are very much cumbred with little Isles, which often prove dangerous for Ships; but covered with abundance of *Sea-Fowl*, which those of the Neighbouring and far distant Countries come to chase. The Isle of *Cozumel*, to the East, hath formerly been famous for its Idol *Cozumel*, which all the People of the Neighbouring Continent went to adore.

The Isle of *Cozumel*.

And

And it was in this Isle, or the Continent near unto it, that *Baldivius* unfortunately saved himself, having been Shipwreckt near *Jamaica*, he had taken a little Boat (like to those used by Fisher-men, wherein going with about 20 of his Men, he was brought hither by the Sea; but no sooner had he set foot on Land, but he and his Men were seized by the Natives, who immediately led them to the Temple of their *Idols*, where they presently offered up, or sacrificed and ate him and four of his Men, and the rest they reserved till another time. Among these, *Aquilar*, who had seen the Ceremony, escaping with some others, fled to a *Cacique*, who treated him courteously for many years, during which time some died, others married in the Country. *Aquilar* in the end was fetched thence by *Cortez*, who was of no small use unto him in his Conquest of *Mexico*, because that he had learned their Tongue. The Air of *Jucatan* is hot, the Country hath scarce any Rivers, yet wants no Water, being supplied every where with Wells; within the middle of the Land are to be seen quantity of Scales and Shells of *Sea-fish*, which hath made some believe the Country hath been overflowed. They have scarce any of the Corn or Fruits of *Europe*, but some others of the Country; and quantity of *wild Beasts*, principally *Stags* and *wild Bears*; and among their Fowls, *Peacocks*. They have yet found no *Gold*, much less *Latten*; which makes it appear, that it is not true, that the *Spaniards* found here Crosses of *Latten*, there being none in all *America*. The Cities of *Jucatan* are four, *Merida*, *Valladolid*, *Campeche*, and *Salamancha*. 1. *Merida*, is the Metropolis, being the Seat of the Bishop and Governour for *Tavasco* and *Jucatan*, distant from the Sea on each side 12 Leagues: The City is adorned with great and ancient Edifices of *Stone*, with many Figures of Men cut in the Stones; and because they were resembling those which are at *Merida* in *Spain* that name was given it. 2. *Valladolid*, beautified with a very fair Monastery of *Franciscans*, and more than 40 thousand *Barbarians* under its Jurisdiction. 3. *Campeche*, scituate on the shoar of the Gulph; a fair City of about Three thousand Houses, and adorned with many stately and rich Structures, which in 1596 was surprized and pillaged by the *English*, under the Command of Captain *Parker*; who carried away with him the Governour, the Riches of the City, and many Prisoners; besides, a great Ship laden with *Hony*, *Wax*, *Campeche-Wood*, and other rich Commodities.

The Misfortune that befel *Baldivius* here.

The Air of *Jucatan*.

What it yieldeth.

Its Cities.

The Conquest of the Kingdom of *Mexico* was much easier to the *Castilians* than that of *Peru*; the Kingdom of *Peru* being Hereditary, and its *Inca's* loved, and almost adored by their Subjects; the Kingdom of *Mexico* being Elective, and its Kings hated, if not by those of *Mexico*, yet by all the neighbouring Estates, and envied by those might aspire to the Royalty. This diversity was the cause that *Motezuma* died, and the City of *Mexico* taken, there was nothing more to do or fear as to that Estate. In *Peru*, after the death of *Guascar* and *Atabalipa*, and some other *Inca's*, the *Spaniards* could not believe themselves safe so long as there was any remainder of the Race of these *Inca's*; which made them under divers pretexts persecute, banish, and put them to death. And so much for *Mexico* or *New Spain*.

The Audience of GUADALAJARA, or NEW GALLICIA.

Its Provinces.

THE Audience of *GUADALAJARA*, or Kingdom of *NEW GALLICIA*, makes the most Occidental part of *New-Spain*, and contains the Provinces of *Guadalajara*, *Xalisco*, *Los Zacatecas*, *Chiametlan*, *Culiacan*, and *New-Biscany*; some others add *Cibola*, and others likewise *California*, *Quivira*, *Anian*, &c. that is, the *Castilians* pretend to extend their Power to the farthest part of this New World.

The Province of *Guadalajara*, and its Cities described.

The Province of *Guadalajara* hath only two Cities or Colonies of *Spaniards*, viz. *Guadalajara*, and *Sancta Maria de los Lagos*, of which, the first is the chief of the Province, built in 1531 by *Nonnez de Guzman*, after he had finished his Conquest. It is the residence of the Kings Treasurers; dignified with the Courts of *Judicature*, the See of a *Bishop*; beautified with a fair *Cathedral Church*; a Convent of *Augustine Friers*, and another of *Franciscans*. It is scituate in a pleasant and fruitful Plain, and watered with divers *Fountains* and little *Torrents* not far from the River *Baranja*; the neighbouring Mountains having furnished them with Materials for their Buildings. *Santa Maria de los Lagos* was built by the same *Guzman*, and made a place of great strength, only to hinder the Incursions of the *Chichimeques*, who are a barbarous and untamed sort of People, who border upon them towards the North-East; who live upon the Spoils of other people, harbouring in thick Woods and private Caves for the better obtaining their Prey; which said Town keeps them in such awe, that they dare not molest them.

The Air of this Province. The Inhabitants, &c.

The Air of this Province is temperate and serene; except it be in their Summer, which is much troubled with Rains. The People (as generally throughout all *Gallicia*) are crafty, very docil in matters of Religion, inconstant, impatient of labour, much given to pleasures, delight in strong Drinks; their habit for the most part is a Shirt of *Cotton*, over which they wear a Mantle, which they fasten about their Shoulders: They are of a good Stature, and well proportioned, little subject to sickness, nor knowing what the Plague is, they ordinarily living 100 years. The Country is rather Mountainous than Plain, well furnished with Mines of *Silver*, *Copper*, *Lead*, and *Margasites*, &c. but none of *Gold*, *Iron*, or *Steel*: The Plains tilled yield ordinarily 100 for one of Corn, and 200 for one of *Mayz*; they have much *Pulse*, many *Olive-trees*, whose Fruit is often spoiled by the *Ants*, as their Grains are by *Pies*. These *Pies* are no bigger than our *Sparrows*, but in such quantity that where they alight, in a little time they devour the whole Crop. Almost all the Fruits of *Europe* are here found in great plenty, which for goodness surpass those of *Spain*. Their *Pastures* likewise are rich, and feed abundance of Cattle.

Its fertility and commodities.

The Province of *Xalisco*.

In the Province of *XALISCO* are the Cities of *Compostella*, the Metropolis of the Province, built by the said *Guzman*; once a *Bishops See*, till removed to *Guadalajara*; built in a Plain, but so barren, that it will scarce produce food either for Man or Beast, and with the disadvantage of so bad an Air, that made it to be soon left. *La Purification*, a small City, built also by the said *Guzman*, seated near the Port of *Natividad* on the Sea-side. And lastly *Xalisco*, so called from the Province; once of some account till destroyed by the said *Gazman*.

The Provinces of *Chiamtlan*, *Culiacan*, and *Cinaloa* described.

North-East of *Guadalajara* and *Xalisco* are the Provinces of *CHIAMETLAN*, whose chief City is St. *Sebastian*, seated on a River of the same name; nigh to which are many rich *Silver Mines*. The Province of *CULIACAN*, whose chief Cities are St. *Michael*, seated on the River of *Women*, built by *Guzman*, and *Piastla* seated on a River so called, about two days Journey from the Sea; well built, and of good esteem till the great damage it received from the *Spaniards* in their Conquest. And lastly, the Province of *CINALOA*, whose

whose chief City is St. *John*, an ancient Colony of *Spaniards*. There are every where rich Mines of *Silver*, plenty of *Provisions*, *Fruits*, *Mayze*, *Pulse*, and *Cotton*: their Inhabitants are great, strong, and warlike; and particularly in *Cinaloa*, where they have made the *Spaniards* abandon the City of St. *John*, who have rebuilded other-where that of St. *Philip* and *Jacob*.

The Provinces of *Los Zacatecas* and *New Biscany*.

North of *Guadalajara* are the Provinces of *LOS ZACATECAS*, and new *BISCANY*. Account is made of four Colonies in *Los Zacatecas*: 30 Towns and 4 famous Lodges near the Mines, of which the principal are *Los Zacatecas*, inhabited by *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciscans*. *Avino*, *Sombrarino*, *St. Martin*, and possibly St. *Luke*. The Cities are *Xeres de Frontera*, *Erena*, *Nombro de Dios*, besides that in the Isthmus of *Panaman* and *Durango*. There are no Cities spoken of in *New Biscany*, but only excellent Mines of *Silver*, at St. *John*, *Sancta Barbara*, and at *Endes*, which they esteem the best, built only for the benefit of the *Silver* Mines, which the *Spaniards* enjoy. The *Zacateca's* want both Water and Food, except towards *Durango* and *Nombro de Dios*: *New Biscany* hath *Cattle* and *Grain*. All these Provinces hitherto are not only of the Audience, but likewise of the Bishoprick of *Guadalajara*.

Above, and Northward of *New Gallicia* and the Audience of *Guadalajara*, we have quantity of People and Provinces little known: we call them in general *New Mexico*, because esteeming these quarters likewise under the name of *Mexico*, they make that part of *Mexico* latest known; others pass them all under the name of *New Granada*, and place here the City of *Granada*, which *Herrera* makes in *Cinaloa*, others in *Cibola*, and others in the Kingdom of *Mexico* taken particularly: so little assurance is there of the Relations of these quarters. However, here is observed divers People very different in their Languages, Manners, and Customs; some having fixed and settled Habitations, others wandring after their Flocks: among the first there are some that have many Cities, some containing in them about 30,40,or 50 Thousand Inhabitants, and in these Cities the Houses are built of Stone several Stories high.

New Mexico described.

New Mexico, taken particularly, hath 10 or 12 of these Cities, whose Houses have their Chambers, Halls, Parlours, and other Conveniences, very populous; among which the City called *New Mexico* is the chief, distant from *Old Mexico* about 500 Leagues, being the residence of the Governour, where the *Spaniards* keep a Garrison, and have changed its name to St. *Fogie*.

Province of *Cibola*.

Cibola hath seven Cities, each of 3, 4, or 500 Families, and (with those which remain in the Field) may make likewise 8 or 10 thousand Men. All these Inhabitants are addicted to War, their Country tilled, and abounding in all Victuals.

The Province of *Quivira* described. Its Inhabitants

QUIVIRA hath not many Houses, nor over stored with People, and those that do inhabit here are very rude and barbarous; the Men cover their Bodies with the Skin of an Ox ill accommodated, the Women only with their Hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them instead of a Veil to hide their nakedness: they live almost altogether on Raw-flesh, which they devour rather than eat, swallowing it without any chewing: They live in Hoords or Troops, resembling those of the *Tartars*; not having any certain abode, but remove from one place to another, staying where they find good Pasture for their Cattle.

The Province of *Anian* described.

ANIAN is yet poorer than *Quivira*: the *Spaniards* have long since over-run both the one and the other, but finding nothing of worth, neglected them; but after all, there are Opinions much contrary, touching the temperature, fertility, and scituation of these two Provinces; some making them cold and barren, others temperate and good.

California described.

CALIFORNIA hath a long time been esteemed to be only a *Peninsula*; but the *Hollanders* having taken on these Seas a *Spanish* Vessel, which had rounded it, and made the *Chart* of it, who saw that it was an Isle, which extends it self from South-East to North-West, and from the 23*th degree* of *Latitude*, to beyond the 45*th*, lying along the West side of *America*. Its length is of 7 or 800 Leagues: Its breadth under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, not above 20 or 25 Leagues; from whence it still enlarges it self unto 150 Leagues towards

wards the 40*th degree* of *Latitude*. The Air hath been found Cold, though in a ſcituation which ought to render it more hot than temperate. The Country ill peopled, they fiſh for *Pearls* in *Mer Vermejo*, and on the Eaſt of the Coaſts of *Caliſornia*, and likewiſe along and on the Coaſts of *New Granada*, or *New Mexico*.

Mark de Niza, a Franciſcan, his Relations of this place.

Mark de Niza, a *Franciſcan*, made a Voyage into theſe parts in 1529, and at his return recounted Marvels of what he had ſeen and underſtood; of People that wore about their Heads pieces of *Mother* of *Pearl*, of divers Provinces rich in *Gold*, of Cities and Houſes well built, whoſe Gates were adorned with *Turquoiſes* and other Stones. That the chief City of *Cibola* was greater than *Mexico:* That the Kingdoms of *Marata*, *Acu*, and *Tonteac*, were likewiſe very rich and powerful.

Alſo the deſcription of theſe parts by Vaſque de Cornada.

The Relation of this *Fryar* cauſed *Mendoza*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to ſend *Vaſque de Cornada*, Governour of *New Gallicia*, to ſearch out the truth. Who, far from finding the Riches he hoped for, found only people naked, very poor, rude and barbarous; ſome Cities he found indifferently well built, but ſadly furniſhed; aſſuring us that the Kingdoms of which the *Fryar* had made ſo much account of were almoſt all Imaginary. *Tonteac* being only a Lake, about which there were ſome few Habitations: *Marata* a thing inviſible, and *Acu* a beggerly Town, in eſteem amongſt them, only gathered ſome *Cotton*. Poſſibly the *Fryar* ſaid more than he had ſeen, that he might incite the *Spaniards* to ſend ſome Colonies hither, and have the Means to convert thoſe People: And *Cornada* leſs, becauſe he found not that preſent profit which he did in his Government: however it be, this contrariety, with thoſe we have obſerved touching the City of *Granada*, and the Provinces of *Quivira* and *Anian*, may make us ſee how dangerous it is to truſt thoſe that come from parts ſo remote and unknown, whatever ſpecious or fair Habit they wear, or whatever good Tongue they have, or whatever proteſtations they make of Truth.

The Audience of GUATEMALA.

THE Audience of *GUATEMALA* is between the Seas *Del Nort*, and *Sud*; and between divers *Iſthmus's* and *Tongues* of Land, which are found in the moſt Southernly part of *America Septentrionalis*. Its Provinces are *Guatemala*, *Soconuſco*, *Chiapa*, *Vera-Pax*, *Honduras*, *Nicaragua*, *Coſtarica*, and *Veragua*.

Its Provinces.

The Province of Guatimala, with its Cities, deſcribed.

GUATEMALA and *SOCONUSCO* are on the *Mer del Sud*, *Chiapa* within Land; *Vera-Pax* and *Honduras* on the *Mer del Nort*; *Caſtaria*, *Nicaragua* and *Veragua*, on both Seas. *Guatemala* hath 150 Leagues along the Coaſt, and advanceth within Land 30 or 40 Leagues. Here were built the Cities of *St. Jago*, of *Guatemala*, *St. Salvador* or *Curcatlan*, *La Trinidad* or *Conzonate*, *St. Michael*, and *Xeres de la Frontera* or *Chuluteca*; they are all upon, or little diſtant from the Sea: *Guatemala* is more advanced within Land, and yet the principal, being the Seat of the Biſhop and Court of *Audience*. In 1541 this City was almoſt overwhelmed by a deluge of boyling Water, which deſcending from that *Vulcan* which is above and near the City, threw down, and tumbled over all that it met with, as *Stones*, *Trees*, and *Buildings*; where it ſtifled many People, and among the reſt, the Widow of him who had conquered and ſo ill treated that Province. The City was rebuilt farther to the Eaſt, and may have near 100 Houſes, about 1000 Inhabitants, and its Country about 25000 *Indians* Tributaries. A certain private Perſon had once a ſtrange phancy came in his head, that there was a very rich Mine of *Gold* in this *Vulcan* of *Guatemala*, and that he needed but to find ſome way to put down a *Cauldron*, and draw out what he could wiſh for, as one doth Water out of a Well; he undertook the enterprize, and cauſed to be made great Chains of *Iron*, and a great *Cauldron*, ſo ſtrong, that he believed the fire could not damage it; he cauſed a way to be made to carry to

A ſtrange phancy of a private Perſon in theſe parts, and the event thereof.

the

the top of the Mountain his *Chains*, *Cauldron*, and *Machins*, which were to ſerve to let down and draw up his *Cauldron* full of *Gold*, which he believed to coyn at the bottom of the Mountain; but he found the Fire ſo violent, that in leſs than a moment of time he had neither *Chains* nor *Cauldron*. Which ſo perplexed him with grief and ſhame to ſee his own folly; having not only ſpent all his own Eſtate, but the beſt part of his Friends; ſo that he would have precipitated himſelf into the Mountain, had he not been hindred; but in a ſhort time he died for anger and grief.

The fertility of this Province, with its Commodities and Trade.

The Country is colder than the ſcituation may bear, and ſubject to *Earthquakes*; hath excellent *Balms*, liquid *Amber*, *Bezoar*, *Salt*, *Grains*; is full of rich *Paſtures*, which are well ſtocked with *Cattle*, plenty of *Cotton Wool*, excellent *Sulphur*, ſtore of *Medicinal Drugs*, and abundance of *Fruits*; among others *Cacao* in ſuch great plenty, that it yearly lades many Veſſels, which are tranſported to other places. The Country is more inclining to Mountains than Plains, but well watered with Rivers. The People are puſillanimous and fearful; the Men are expert at the Bow, and the Women at the Diſtaff: they are more civil, and embrace *Chriſtianity* more than their neighbouring Countries do, and are willing to receive Advice from the *Spaniards*, who are their Maſters.

Its Inhabitants

The Province of *Soconuſco* deſcribed.

SOCONUSCO hath only the little City of *Guevetlan* on the Coaſt, and nothing of particular or worthy to be noted in it; only it hath ſome *Grains*, feeds ſome *Cattle*, its Rivers have *Fiſh*, and its People more barbarous and rude.

The Province of *Chiapa* deſcribed.

CHIAPA is not over fertil in *Grains* nor *Fruits*, but the Country well cloathed with lofty Trees, and ſome of which yield *Rozin*, others *precious Gums*, and others bear Leaves, that when they are dried into powder make a Sovereign Plaiſter for Sores. The Country is full of *Snakes*, and other venemous Creatures. Places of moſt note in this Province are 1. *Ciudad-Real*, built by the *Spaniards*, ſcituate in a round Plain at the Foot of a Hill, and begirt with Mountains reſembling an *Amphitheater*; now the reſidence of a Biſhop, and governed by City-Magiſtrates, by them called *Alcaides*. 2. *Chiapa*, ſeated in the fruitfulleſt Valley of the whole Country. 3. *St. Bartholomews*, remarkable for having near it a great Pit, or opening of the Earth, into which if any one caſts a Stone, though never ſo ſmall, it makes a noiſe ſo great and terrible as a clap of Thunder. 4. *Caſapualca*, a ſmall Town, but famous alſo for a Well it hath, whoſe Waters are obſerved to riſe and fall according to the flowing and ebbing of the Sea.

Its chief places.

Some memorable actions of *Bartholomew de las Caſas* Biſhop of *Chiapa*.

Among the Biſhops of *Chiapa*, one was *Bartholomew de las Caſas*, of the Order of *St. Dominique*, who having ſeen the Cruelties with which the *Spaniards* treated the People of *America*, endeavoured by divers Remonſtrances to hinder it for the future, and to that end went into *Spain*; but finding no redreſs, wrote and printed a Treatiſe of their Cruelties, which was endeavoured to be ſuppreſt; but ſome Copies eſcaping, were tranſlated and reprinted in *Italian*, and other Languages.

The *Spaniards* cruelty towards the Natives.

There are in this Relation things that can ſcarce enter into the belief of man: He makes account, that in divers parts of *America* and its Iſles, the *Spaniards* had put to death in his time (which was fifty years after their Invaſion of it) 12 or 15 Millions of Perſons, by ſeveral cruel and unchriſtian-like Deaths, as by *Fire*, *Hunger*, *Boiling* of them, impaling them; by the *Halter* and *Sword*, as alſo in exceſſive Labours in the working in their Mines, in carrying of heavy Burthens, like *Horſes*, and the like Cruelties. He alſo ſaith, that they treated thoſe that remained worſe than Slaves, nay, worſe than Beaſts; cutting off the Ears of ſome, others Noſes or Hands; ſometimes cutting them alive into pieces and quarters to feed their Dogs, and learn them to devour theſe poor *Americans*; and if they found one of theſe Dogs killed, or a *Spaniard* knockt on the head in the Field, they would hang up a dozen of theſe miſerable People, in honour (as they ſaid) of the *Twelve Apoſtles*, or elſe put the neighbouring Country to Fire and Sword. He ſaith, that it was ordinary with them to abuſe *Boys*, to deflour *Virgins*, and to raviſh *Women*, whom

whom they ſold afterwards for a *Cheeſe:* and oft-times a hundred *Men* and *Women*, and ſometimes five hundred and more, for an *Aſs* or a *Horſe*. He obſerves, that a certain *Chacique* having eſcaped out of *Hiſpaniola* into *Cuba*, to ſhun the cruelty of the *Spaniards*, they becoming after Maſters of *Cuba*, and this poor *Chacique* falling into their hands, they condemned him to the Fire, where being incited by a *Fryar* to turn *Chriſtian*, that at leaſt after this life he might be ſaved in *Paradiſe*; when he underſtood that it was a place that the *Spaniards* went unto, he would not be a *Chriſtian*, nor go thither, ſo much he dreaded them. And he affirms, that the moſt part of theſe *Murthers*, *Burnings*, and *Pillages*, were voluntarily done to terrifie others, and make themſelves abſolutely obeyed; which they might as well have gained by fair means and gentle uſage. But let us return to what concerns our Audience.

Remarkable Fountains.

Near *Chiapa* are ſeveral Fountains, which have ſome ſingularities; as that aforeſaid, which riſes and falls with the flowing and ebbing of the Sea, though far from it. Another, that for three years together increaſes, though there be never ſo little Rain; and for three years after diminiſheth, though there be never ſo much: and ſo continues from three years to three years. Another there is, that falls in Rainy-weather and riſes in dry. And there is another that kills *Birds* and *Beaſts* that drink of it; yet cures thoſe Sick which demand violent Remedies. But we ſhould ſwell too large, if we ſhould ſpeak of all Singularities found in *America*.

The Province of *Honduras*, with its chief places, deſcribed.

HONDURAS and *NICARAGUA* are two great Provinces. *Honduras* is more than 200 Leagues long, and near 100 broad. *Nicaragua* little leſs. *Honduras* communicates its name to the Gulph which lies on *Mer del Nort:* Its chief places are, 1. *Valladolid*, of near an equal diſtance between the two Seas, ſcituate in a pleaſant and fruitful Valley, and on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*. 2. *Gratias di Dios*, ſcituate on a high ground, 30 Leagues Weſtward of *Valladolid*, and near the rich Mines of *Gold* of *St. Piedro*, and ſerveth for a place of defence for thoſe that work in the Mines, againſt the *Savages*. 3. *St. Juan del porto de los Cavallos*, once a famous Port, but through its Ruins is uninhabited. 4. *Truxillo*, ſeated on the aſcent of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, in a rich and fruitful Soil, with the benefit of an excellent Port. 5. *St. George de Olancho*, ſeated in the Valley of *Olancho*, noted for the *Golden Sands* that the River *Guayape* was ſaid to yield. The Country hath pleaſant Hills, and fruitful Valleys for *Grains*, *Fruits*, and rich *Paſtures:* It is well furniſhed with *Rivers*, hath Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*; but its greateſt profit is made by *Wool*, which it tranſports to other places.

The fertility of the Province, with its commodities.

The Province of *Nicaragua* deſcribed.

NICARAGUA hath five Colonies of *Spaniards*; the Country is deſtitute of Rivers, except that part which is towards *Veragua*, called *Coſta Rica*; the want whereof is ſupplied by a great *Lake* which ebbs and flows like the Sea. Upon its Banks are ſeated many pleaſant Cities and Villages, which are inhabited by the *Spaniards* and *Indians*; a Lake well ſtored with Fiſh, and as full of *Crocodiles*. The Air of the Country is healthful, though hot, the Soil fruitful and pleaſant; it hath *Fruits*, *Cows*, *Hogs*, *Sheep*, *Turkies*, *Pullain*, and ſo many *Paroquets* that they are hurtful: It yieldeth not much *Grain*, it hath plenty of *Cotton-Wool* and *Sugar-Canes*, and towards *Segovia* are ſome Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*. Its Inhabitants are of a good ſtature, active, very comformable to the *Spaniards* as well in Behaviour as Apparel. Its chief places are, 1. *Leon*, ſcituate on the aforeſaid *Lake* in a Sandy ſoil, but begirt with Woods: It is the reſidence of the Governour, as alſo the Seat of a Biſhop. 2. *Grenada*, on the ſame Lake, beautified with a fair Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, ſeated in a fruitful Soil, and well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*. 3. *Jaen*, ſeated at the end of the ſaid *Lake*. 4. *Segovia* the New is farther within Land, rich in Veins of *Silver*. 5. *Realeijo*, near the *Mer del Sud*, having the benefit of a good Port, by reaſon of which it is inhabited for the moſt part by *Shipwrights*, *Mariners*, and thoſe that depend upon Naval Affairs.

Its fertility in its Fruits, Cattle, Fowl, &c.

Its Inhabitants

Its chief places.

COSTARICA, and *VERAGUA*, are the two most Eastern Provinces of the Audience of *Guatemala*. In *COSTARICA* are the Cities of *Carthage*, seated between two Seas, where there are some places, which serve it for Ports: *Aranjues* and *Nicoya* are on the *Mer del Sud*, *Castro de Austria* within Land. The Province of *Costarica* described.

VERAGUA, hath towards the East the *Isthmus* of *Panama*, and was once under the Chamber of *Panama*; though this City be esteemed in *America Meridionalis*, and *Veragua* in the *Septentrionalis*: There are placed in this Province four or five Cities of *Spaniards*, *viz.* 1. *La Conception*, seated on the *Mer del Nort*, and is the Residence of the Governor. 2. *La Trinidad*, seated also on the said Sea. 3. *Sancta Fe* within Land, being the place where the *Spaniards* melt, refine, and cast their *Gold* into Barrs and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, seated on the *Mer del Sud*. And 5. *Parita*, seated on the said Sea. The Province of *Veragua* described.

The Country both of the one, and the other Province, is rude, mountainous, and little fertil, only for *Mayze* and Pot-herbs. In supply thereof, they have exceeding rich Mines of *Gold* and *Silver* in their Mountains, and *Sand-gold* in their Rivers; but there remain yet some Natives in these quarters, who still molest and annoy the *Spaniards*, killing and eating them when they can catch them.

The Isles ANTILLES, *or* CAMERCANES.

BEtween the two *America's Septentrionalis*, and *Meridionalis*, and before the *Gulph* of *Mexico*, are abundance of Islands of different greatness; *HISPANIOLA*, and *Cuba* are the greatest; *Jamaica*, *Boriquen*, and others of the middle sort; the rest, much less.

HISPANIOLA, is in the middle of these Isles: near 200 Leagues from West to East; and 50 or 60 from South to North. *Christopher Columbus* was the first that made discovery of this Isle, in his first Voyage that he made in 1492. being conducted thither by some of the Inhabitants of *Cuba*. There remain 10 Colonies of *Spaniards*, of which, 1. *St. Domingo* (built by *Bartholomew*, Brother to *Christopher Columbus*) is the chief, pleasantly seated, its houses well built, which for the most part are of Stone, its Haven is large and safe for Ships to ride in, it is enriched by the Residence of the *Governour*, the Court of *Audience*, the *See* of an *Arch Bishop*, the Chamber of *Accounts*, the *Treasury Court*; and, besides many Convents of Religious Houses, an *Hospital* endowed with a large yearly Revenue, a place of great Trade, till the taking of *Mexico*, and the discovery of *Peru*; since which time it hath much decayed, nor hath it yet recovered it self of the great loss and damage it sustained by Sir *Francis Drake*, in 1586. It now being Inhabited by not above 2000 Families, of which about 600 are Natural *Spaniards*, the rest *Mestiz*, *Mulatts*, *Negroes*, and *Canaries*. *Porto de la Plata* holds the second place by reason of its Commerce, and is well seated on a commodious *Bay*. Then 3. *St. Jago de los Cavallieros*, for the beauty of its scituation. 4. *El Cotuy* for its Gold Mines. 5. *Salvaleon de Yquey* for its *Sugars* and *Pastures*. 6. *Azua* likewise for its *Sugars*, being a noted Haven. 7. *St. Maria del puerto* for its *Cassia*. 8. *Monte Christo* for its *Salt*. 9. *La Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Christopher Columbus*, for whose sake it was made an *Episcopal See*, which at present is united to *St. Domingo*; and the last of the ten Colonies is *El Zeybo* seated on the Sea shore, but of small account. *Hispaniola*. *Christopher Columbus* the first discoverer of this Isle. Its Colonies.

So soon as the *Spaniards* were Masters of this Island, they caused to be brought from *Spain*, *Grains*, *Fruits*, and *Beasts* of all sorts. The *Grains* would not thrive in the Plains, by reason of the richness of the soil, the stalks taking away all the force of the seed; but when they found out the reason, they sowed them on hills, and there where the land was lean; so that then they yielded a great increase. The *Fruits* became excellent; and the *Beasts* multiplied in such manner, that they grew wild for want of proper owners, being hunted to death by any This Isle stocked by the *Spaniards*.

any one, only for their skins. The *Sugar Canes* brought from the *Canaries* yielded exceeding great profit. The Country for the moſt part flouriſhing and beautiful, the *Trees* and *Meadows* being alwaies in their Summer livery: and the ſoyl ſo fertil, that in the ſpace of ſixteen or eighteen daies, *herbs*, and *roots* will come to their perfection and ripeneſs, but the Mines of *Gold*, *Copper*, and other *Metals* which remained, are no longer wrought; the *Spaniards* having conſumed and periſhed in them, not only the moſt part of the antient Inhabitants of this Country, but likewiſe of the Neighbouring Iſles.

The Iſle of *Cuba* deſcribed.

The Iſle of *CUBA* is longer and ſtreighter than *Hiſpaniola*, near 300 Leagues from Weſt to Eaſt, and from South to North, only twenty five or thirty almoſt every where, ſo that in Continent, theſe two Iſles are almoſt equal, their qualities are likewiſe in many things correſpondent, as in their *Grains*, *Cattle*, and *Fruits*. The Air of *Cuba* is healthful, and its Forreſts furniſhed with the beſt Wood, for building of Ships: It feeds ſtore of *Pullein*, *Pigeons*, *Tortells*, *Partridges*, *Flamengo's*, Whoſe feathers are white when little, and of many colours when grown great. Its *Rivers* ſtream down more *Gold*, than thoſe of *Hiſpaniola*: Its Ports likewiſe greater and more ſafe; but yet there are more Rocks and Banks about *Cuba* than *Hiſpaniola*. For the greatneſs of the Iſle, it hath but few Cities, the chief of which are *St. Jago*, ſeated in the bottom of a capacious Bay, about two Leagues from the Sea, whoſe Port is eſteemed one of the beſt of all *America*; being the ſeat of a *Biſhop*, who holds from the *Arch Biſhop* of *St. Domingo*; and beautified with a *Cathedral Church*, and ſome *Religious houſes* near the City, and from the *Sierra de Cobre* they fetch *Copper*, yet the City is much ruined, and hath little trade. Towards *Baracoa*, its Mountains yield *Ebony* and *Braſile*; it hath this inconveniency that its Port cannot receive great Veſſels. The goodneſs of the Air the fertility of the Soil, and a pleaſant Plain hath made St. *Salvador* the beſt place of the Iſland, where they have a great trade; though off from the Coaſt. Near *Porto del Precipe*, a Haven-Town in the North parts of the *Iſle*, there are *Fountains* of *Bitumen* which they make uſe of inſtead of *Pitch*, to caulk their Ships, and the *Indians* for divers Medicines.

Its Fowls.

Its chief places deſcribed with ſome of their rarities.

The Port of *Havana*, having its entrance ſtreight and deep, receives the *Ocean* in form of a *Gulph*, capable to receive a thouſand Veſſels, and ſecure them from the fury of the Sea, or Winds. The two *Capes* which incloſe it, have their Caſtles to defend the entrance, and a third joyning to the City regards the opening of the Port; the *Ships* which return from *New Spain* into *Europe*, aſſemble together at *Havana*, where they are furniſhed with all things neceſſary either for *Food* or *War*; and diſpoſe themſelves to depart by the month of *September*, paſſing by the Channel of *Bahame*, which carries them into the *Ocean*.

Twenty five Leagues from *Havana*, towards the Eaſt, is the Port of *Matanca's*, that is *Maſſacres*; for that once thoſe of the Country here ſlew ſome *Spaniards*. In 1628 *Pieters Heyn*, General for the *Weſt India* Company, ſurprized the Fleet returning to *Spain*, and carried it in to the *Weſt India* Company: It was loaden with *Silver*, *Silk*, *Cochenell*, *Hides*, *Caſſonade* or *powder Sugar*, and divers other Merchandizes all of great value: This Prize was eſteemed worth near ſeven Millions of crowns; yet this great ſervice was but very ill recompenſed by the *Governours* of the ſaid Company.

A Vaſt Prize taken by *Pieters Heyn*.

Jamaica deſcribed.

JAMAICA is an *Iſle* of a large extent being from Eaſt to Weſt 170 miles in length, and from North to South where it is broadeſt about 70, being of an Oval form, and waxing narrower and narrower at both extream ends. It is ſeated betwixt the *Tropicks* in the 17 and 18 *degrees* of *Northern Latitude*, and beareth from off the Iſle of *Hiſpaniola* Eaſtwards about 35 Leagues. In the midſt of the Iſle from Eaſt to Weſt runs a continued ridge of lofty *Mountains* which are well ſtored with freſh *Springs* whence flow the many Rivers that ſo plentifully water the *Iſland*, to the great benefit of the Inhabitants. The Air is obſerved to be more temperate than any of the *Caribe Iſles*, and of as mild a temperature as any place betwixt the *Tropicks*, being alwaies refreſhed with cool breezes

Its ſcituation, Extent.

Well watered.

breezes, frequent *showers*, and great *dews* in the nights, that it may be deemed Temperate, and by its continual verdure exceeding delightful. The weather is less certain than in the *Caribe* Isles, the most observable wet seasons are in *November* and *May*, there being no seemable *Winter*, but by a little more *rain* and *thunder* in the Winter months; nor is there scarce any sensible lengthning or shortning of the Days or Nights. *Hurricanes* are here never known. This Isle in most parts (especially the North) is of a Fertil and rich soil, and liberally answers the *Cultivators* cost and pains for what is planted: The chief *Commodities* that it produceth are *Sugars*, which are so good that they out sell those of the *Barbados* 5 *s. per cent*; *Cocao* the richest Commodity of the *Island*. *Indico*, *Cotton*, *Tobacco* but indifferent, *Hides*, *Copper*, great variety of Woods for *Dyers*, also *Cedar*, *Brasilletto*, *Lignum vitæ*, *Ebony*, &c. *Tortoises* in exceeding great plenty, whose flesh is excellent good and nourishing, but those that are troubled with the *French man* it is dangerous to eat; *Salt*, *Salt-Peter*, *Ginger*, *Cod-pepper*, *Piemente* being an excellent *Aromatick spice*, of a curious *gusto*, having the mixt tast of divers Spices; *Cocheneil*, divers excellent *Druggs*, *Gumms*, and *Balsoms*, many of which are not yet known by their names. Here are greater abundance of *Cattle*, than in most of the *English* Plantations, as *Horses*, *Cows*, *Hoggs*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Asnegroes*, *Mules*, which came from the breed of those put into the Woods by the *Spaniards* when they were first Masters of the *Island*, which for want of Masters became wild; but since the *English* have had to do here they are much wasted to what they were. The *Bays*, *Rivers*, *Roads* and *Creeks*, are well stored with excellent *Fish* of sundry sorts appropriate to the *Indies*. Likewise great store of *Fowl* both tame and wild, the chief of which are *Ducks*, *Teal*, *Wigeon*, *Geese*, *Turkyes*, *Pigeons*, *Hens*, *Plovers*, &c. Here are great plenty of excellent *Fruits*, as *Oranges*, *Cocar-nuts*, *Pomegranates*, *Limes*, *Guavers*, *Mammes*, *Alumee-Supotas*, *Avocatas*, *Cashues*, *Prickle-Apples*, *Prickle Pears*, *Grapes*, *Sower sops*, *Custard-Apples*, *Dildoes*, *Plantains*, *Pines*, &c. And *Herbs*, *Roots*, and *Flowers* common to *England* grow here very well. Here are very noxious Beasts or Insects found, those most dangerous are the *Alegators*, some of which are fifteen and twenty foot long; here is also *Manchonele* which is a kind of *Crab*, likewise *Snakes* and *Guianas*, but not poysonous; as also *Muskettoes*, and *Merry-wings*, a sort of stinging Flies found very troublesome to the Inhabitants. The Diseases that Strangers are most incident unto are *Dropsies* (occasioned by ill Dyet, Drunkenness, and Sloathfulness) *Calentures* too frequently the product of Surfeits, also Fevers, and Agues; but it is experimentally found that if a good Dyet and moderate Exercises are used, without excess of Drinking, they may enjoy a competent measure of health; and the reason of the great mortality of the Army at their arrival, was the want of Provisions, together with an unwillingness to labouror exercise, joyned with discontent. This *Island* is divided into Fourteen Precincts, Divisions or Parishes, many of which are well Inhabited, especially the Southern part, so far as the ridge of Mountains, which runneth in the midst, nor are its Southern parts (especially near the Sea) without Plantations, though not so thick as about St. *Jago*; and of late years the Island is much increased in its Inhabitants and Plantations, being likely to prove the Potentest Colony the *English* are Masters of in *America*, being able to bring into the Field upon occasion about eight or ten thousand men. This Isle abounds with goods *Bays*, *Roads*, and *Harbours*, the chief amongst which are *Port Royal* formerly *Cagway*, seated on the extream end of that long point of Land which makes the *Harbour*, which is exceeding commodious for Shipping, and secured by a strong Castle, and land lock't by a point of land that runs twelve miles South-East, from the main of the *Island*, having the great River that runs by *los Angelos* and St. *Jago*, falling into it, where Ships do commonly water, and conveniently wood. The *Harbour* is two or three Leagues broad in most places, with good Anchorage, and so deep, that a Ship of one thousand Tun may lay her sides to the Shoar of the point, and load and unload with Planks afloat, which commodiousness doth make it much resorted

The Weather.

Its fertility and commodities.

Great plenty of Cattle.

Fish. Fowl.

Fruits.

Herbs and Roots.

Hurtful things.

Diseases.

Its division in to Precincts or Parishes.

Its chief places. *Port Royal.*

unto, and as well Inhabited by the *Merchants*, *Store-house-keepers*, and other Inhabitants, this being the only noted place in the Isle for Traffick and resort, being said to contain about 12 or 1500 well built houses, which are as dear rented as if they stood in well traded streets in *London*; yet its scituation is very unpleasant and uncommodious, having neither *Earth*, *Wood*, or *fresh water*, but only made up of a hot loose sand, which renders it more unhealthful than up in the Country, and Provisions are very dear, about 12 miles up in the Land from this Town is St. *Jago*, or St. *Jago de la vega*, which when the *Spaniards* were Masters of it was large, containing about 2000 houses, which were destroyed and reduced to about 500, when the *English* first seized the *Isle*, and here the Governour resideth, and where the chief *Courts* of *Judicature* are held, which makes it to be well resorted and inhabited, where they live in great pleasure, recreating themselves in their Coaches and on Horseback in the evenings in the *Savana* near adjoyning, as the Gentry do here in *Hide-Park*. The present Governour is his Excellency *Charles* Earl of *Carlile*, Viscount *Howard* of *Acorpeth*, Lord *Dacres* of *Gilsland*, one of the Lords of his Majesties most Honourable Privy Council, a person for prudence and noble qualifications every way befitting such a place.

St. *Jago*.

Six miles Southward of this Town is seated *Passage* at the mouth of the River, which at six miles course falleth into the Harbour of *Port Royal*; it contains about twenty houses only serving for the conveniency of passage from *Port Royal* to St. *Jago*. Its other places are *Port Morant* in the Eastern point, a very capacious and secure Harbour, and hereabout is a Potent Colony of the *English* seated. *Old Harbour* a good *Bay* for Ships to ride in. *Port Negril* in the extream Western point, very commodious and secure to windward, in which Men of War do often ply when they look for the *Spanish Ships*; not far from which place was seated the old Town of *Melilla*, founded by *Columbus*. *Port Antonio*, seated on the North, a very safe Land lock't Harbour, at the mouth of which lyeth a small *Isle* wholly taken up by the said Earl of *Carlisle*; with divers other good *Bays* and *Harbours* along the Coast. Its other chief places are *Sevilla*, seated in the North part of the *Isle*, once beautified with a *Collegiate Church*, whose Chief bore the title of *Abbot*, amongst whom was *Peter Martyr*, who described the History of the *West Indies* by *Decades*. And *Mellilla*, seated on the North East, where *Columbus* mended his Ships at his return from *Veragua*.

Passage.

Port *Morant*.

Old *Harbour*.
Port *Negril*.

Port *Antonio*.

Sevilla.

Mellilla.

This *Island* was of considerable importance to the *Spaniards*, by reason that all his *Plate-Fleet* which comes from *Carthagina*, steer directly for St. *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*, and from thence must pass by one of the ends of this Isle to recover *Havana*, which is the common Rendezvous of this whole *Armado*, before it returns home through the *Gulph* of *Florida*; nor is there any other way, whereby to miss this *Island*, because he cannot in any reasonable time turn it up to the windward of *Hispaniola*; which though with great difficulty it might be performed, yet by this means he would lose the security of his said united *Fleet*, which meet at *Havana*, from all the parts of the *Bay* of *Mexico*, *Nombre de Dios*, and elsewhere, accompanying each other home.

The Isle *Boriquem*, with its chief places described.

BORIQUEM, is little less either in Circuit, or Fruitfulness than *Jamaica*. St. *Juan del Puerto Rico* is the Residence of a *Bishop*, and a *Governor*: It hath an excellent *Port*, which sometimes communicates its name to the *Island*: *El Arricibo*, and *Guadianilla* or St. *Germain*, are the other Cities; all the *Isle* hath few *Ports*, it is traversed by a Chain of Mountains, which cut it from West to East; here is found a *white Gum*, which they use instead of *Pitch*, to caulk their *Ships*; and instead of *Tallow*, to make *Candles*; and for want of other *Medicaments*, for *Wounds* and *Sores*, besides its *Gold*, *Sugars*, and *Gayac*; it hath many *Salt-Marches*. These four Isles are the greatest, and chiefest of the *Antilles*; the rest are numerous, and ought to be considered under the names of the *Lucays*, and *Caribes*. The *Lucays* are North of *Cuba*, and *Hispaniola*; of which, *Lucayon* is the chief, the greatest, and the most Northernly of all; *Bahama* gives its name to the Channel, which is between

twe en the Isles and *Florida*; a Channel so rapid, that, in despite of the Winds, it carries Ships from South to North, or rather from South-West, to North-East *Guanahani* is the first Land which *Columbus* discovered near *America*, and named it St. *Salvador*, because he had been in danger to have been cast into the Sea by his own men, in the fear they had, that they should find no Land.

The CARIBE ISLES.

THe *CARIBES* or *CANIBALS ISLANDS*, are so called from its Native *Inhabitants*, who were *Canibals* or *Men eaters*, and these are a great Body of Isles forming a Demy-Circle towards *America Meridionalis*, the chief of which are set down in the *Geographical Table*, and which I shall take notice of, and first with *Barbados*.

BARBADOS, the most considerable Colony the *English* are Masters of amongst all the *Caribe Isles*. Its scituation is in the North *Latitude* of 13 *degrees* 20 *minutes*; and although but of a small Circuit, not exceeding eight Leagues in length, and 5 in breadth where broadest, yet it is a Potent Colony, and able on occasion to Arm about 10000 Fighting men, which with the natural strength of the Isle, is able to give resistance to the powerfullest Foe. It is exceeding fertil, bearing Crops all the year long, and the trees always cloathed in their *Summer* livery, but the two seasons for Planting is in *May* and *November*, but the *Sugar Canes* are Planted all the year round. And here are found to grow in great plenty excellent *Fruits*, as *Oranges* both sweet and sower, *Pomgranates*, *Citrons*, *Lemmons*, *Limes*, *Macows*, *Grapes*, *Juniper Apples*, *Momins*, *Acosous*, *Papayers*, *Monbains*, *Icacos*, *Raysins*, *Cherries*, *Cocos*, *Indian Figgs*, *Plantins*, *Bonauves*, *Guavers*, *Castard Apples*, *prickle Pears*, and *Apples*, *Millons*, both land and water, and *Pine Apples*, the rarest Fruit in the *Indies*. They have great plenty of *Fish* and *Fowl*, common with *Jamaica* and other places in the *Indies*, and have also a competent stock of *English Cattle*, and *Horses*, but something dear, by reason they imploy their Grounds better than to breed upon; and most *roots*, *herbs*, and *seeds*, and *flowers* common with us in *England* are found to thrive, and grow very well. The *Commodities* that this Isle produceth are *Sugars*, *Indico*, *Cotton*, *Wool*, *Ginger*, *Fustick*, and *Logwood*, but especially, *Sugar*, *Indico*, *Cotton*, and *Ginger*; lading yearly therewith 200 sail of Ships both great and small, to the great enrichment of the *Inhabitants*, and profit of *England*. This Isle lying so near the *Equinoctial Line*, cannot but be hot, yet not so but that travel and labour is sufferable, and that occasioned by the cool breezes of wind which riseth with the *Sun*, and bloweth fresher as the *Sun* mounteth up. And the Air is found very moist, so that all *Iron-tools* are much subject to rust. This *Isle* is not over plentifully watered with *Rivers*, or fresh *Springs*, there being but one that may appropriate that name, or rather a *Lake* which runneth not far into the Land, notwithstanding which defect the *Inhabitants* have no want of water, for the Land lying low, and even, there are several Ponds, and most houses have Wells or Cisterns, which holds the rain water. And here is a River called *Tuigh-River*, remarkable for that on the top of the water is gathered an Oyl which is made use of to burn in *Lamps*. Amongst the *Trees* here growing, (which for the most part are appropriate to the rest of the *Caribe Isles*) those of most note are the *Cedar*, *Redwood*, *Mastick*, *Locust*, the *Iron wood tree*, also the *Cassia Fistula*, *Coloquintida*, *Tamarind*, *Cassavie*, of which is made their Bread, the *Poyson tree*, and the *Physick Nut*, also the *Calibash*, the *Shell* of whose Fruit serveth like *Goards* to carry liquid things in; the *Mangrass tree*, the *Roucou*, of whose Bark is made Ropes, as also Flax which being spun is imployed to several uses; the *Lignum Vitæ*, and the *Palmeto*. Here are several *Insects* and *Animals*, as *Scorpions* as big as *Rats*, but no waies hurtful, *Lizards* so harmless that they frequent the houses,

Barbados.

Its strength.

Fertility.

Fruits.

Fish and Cattle.

Commodities.

Its Trees.

Its Insects and Animals.

ſes, and love the company of men; *Land Crabs* in great abundance which are good to eat. Alſo *Muſkettoes*, *Cockroches*, and *Merrywings*, which are very troubleſom in the night in ſtinging.

Its Diviſion and Towns.] This Iſle is ſevered into Eleven *Precincts* or *Pariſhes*, in which are fourteen *Churches* and *Chapels*; beſides many places which may not improperly be called Towns, as compoſed of a long and ſpacious ſtreet, and beautified with fair houſes, and of late years the whole Iſle is ſo taken up, that there is no ſuch thing as any waſt ground. Its chief *Towns* are 1. St. *Michaels*, formerly called the *Bridge Town*, or *Indian Bridge*, ſeated at the bottom of *Carliſle Bay* which is very deep, capacious, and ſecure, fit to give Harbour for about 500 Veſſels at one time. The Town is large and long, containing ſeveral Streets, and graced with above 500 well built Houſes. It is very populous, being the Reſidence of the *Governours*, the place of *Judicature*, and the *ſcale* of *trade*, where moſt of the *Merchants* and *Factors* in the Iſle have their *ſtore-houſes* for the negotiation of their affairs, in the ſupplying the Inhabitants with ſuch Commodities as they have occaſion of, in exchange of theirs the product of the Iſle. For the ſecurity of the Ships here are two ſtrong *Forts* oppoſite to each other, with a *Platform* in the midſt which commands the *Road*, all Fortified with great *Guns*, &c. 2. *Little Briſtol* formerly *Sprights Bay*, hath a commodious Road for Ships, which is ſecured by two powerful Forts, and is a place well reſorted unto. 3. St. *James* hath the conveniency of a good Road for Ships, which is well ſecured by a large *Platform* and Fortified *Breaſt-works*; It is a Town of a good *trade*, well Inhabited, and the more, as being the place where the Monthly Courts for the Precinct is kept. And 4. *Charles Town*, ſeated on *Oyſter Bay*, well ſecured by two ſtrong *Forts* with a *Platform* in the midſt; this Town having the accommodation of a weekly *Market*, and being the place where the Monthly Courts are kept for the Precinct, makes it to be well Inhabited, and frequented.

Its ſtrength. This Iſle is of a great ſtrength as well by Nature as Art, being ſheltered with Rocks and Shoals, and where it is not thus defended by nature it is fortified with *Trenches* and *Rampiers*, with *Palliſadoes*, *Curtains*, and *Counter-ſcarfs*, and for its further Defence hath three *Forts*, one for a *Magazine*, and the other two for *Retreats*; they have alſo a ſtanding *Militia*, conſiſting of two Regiments of Horſe, and five of Foot; which are alwaies to be ready at

Its Inhabitants, beat of *Drum*, or ſound of *Trumpet*. The Inhabitants of this Iſle may be ranged under three ſorts, *viz. Maſters*, *Chriſtian Servants*, and *Negro-ſlaves*, which are very numerous. The *Maſters* for the moſt part live at the height of pleaſure. The *Servants* after the expiration of five years are Freemen of the Iſle, and employ their times according to their *abilities*, and *capacities*; and the *Negro-ſlaves* are never out of *Bondage*, and the Children they get are likewiſe perpetual Slaves. Theſe poor creatures, although they have ſuch extream hard uſage for Dyet, Apparel, or Lodging, and are held to ſuch hard labour, and ſo ill treated by their *Maſters* or *Overſeers*, yet are well enough contented with their conditions, and where they meet with kind Maſters think nothing too much to do for them, ſo that it is great inhumanity and pity to wrong them. Every *Sunday*, (which is the only day of reſt to them, and ſhould be ſet apart for the Service of God) they employ either in getting of the Bark of Trees, and making of Ropes with it, which they truck away for Shirts, Drawers, or other conveniencies, or elſe ſpend the day in *dancing*, *wreſtling*, or other *meriments*.

Iſle of St. *Chriſtophers* deſcribed. St. *CHRISTOPHERS*, ſo called from *Chriſtopher Columbus* the firſt diſcover thereof, ſeated in the *Latitude* of 17 *degrees* 25 *minutes*. In Circuit about 75 miles; the *ſoil* is light and ſandy, and very apt to produce ſeveral ſorts of *Fruits*, *Proviſions*, and Commodities, as *Sugar*, *Tobacco*, *Cotton*, *Ginger*, &c. This Iſle by reaſon of its ſeveral great and ſteep Mountains (in the midſt from which ſpring the Rivers which plentifully water the Land, many of which are hot and ſulphurous) with horrid *Precipices*, and thick *Woods*, renders it impaſſable through the midſt. On the Sea ſide is a *Salt pit*, not far from which is a ſmall *Iſthmus* of Land, which reacheth within a mile and a half

of

of the Isle of *Nevis*. This Isle is very delightful, and of a most delectable Prospect, for if the Eye be directed downwards from the top, it hath a prospect of curious *Gardens*, which gently descend to the *Sea* side; and in regard of the continual ascent of the *Isle*, the lower stage or story doth not debar the eye of the pleasant prospect of that which lyeth at a remoter distance, which is terminated by those high *Mountains*; and that which makes the prospect the more delectable in the several *Plantations*, are the fair *houses* covered with glazed Slate. This Isle is divided into four *Cantons* or *Quarters*, two of which are possessed by the *English*, and two by the *French*, which parts are not so well watered as those of the *English*, but better for *Tillage* and not so *hilly*. The *English* have two fortified places, one commanding the great *Haven*, and the other a descent not far from *Point de Sable*; and the *French* have four strong *Forts*, the chief of which Commands the Haven and is called *Basse Terre*. And for the better security of each other, constant guard at their *Forts* are kept. In the parts belonging to the *English*, are five *Churches* for Divine Worship. The chief place belonging to the *French* is at *Basse-Terre*, being a Town of a good bigness, and garnished with well built *houses*, where the *Merchants* have their *store-houses*, and is well Inhabited, here is a large and fair *Church*, also a *publick Hall* for the Administration of Justice, a fair *Hospital* for sick people, and a stately *Castle*, which is the residence of the *Governor*, of a most pleasant situation on the foot of a high Mountain not far from the *Sea*, having spacious Courts, delightful *walks*, and *Gardens*.

NIEVES, or *MEVIS* not far from St. *Christophers* as before noted; of a small extent not exceeding 18 miles in Circuit; In the midst of the Isle is a Mountain of a great height, but of an easie access, and well clothed with *wood*, and about this Mountain are the *Plantations* which reach to the *Sea-shoar*. Here are divers springs of fresh water, and one of a hot and Mineral quality, not far from whose Spring head are *Baths* made, which are much resorted unto. It is indifferent fertil, and hath store of *Deer* and other Game for *Hunting*, and is found to produce the same *Commodities* as the rest of the *Caribe Isles*. It is a well Governed Colony of the *English*, and its Inhabitants which are esteemed about 3 or 4000 live a good quiet and contented life, and free from want of *Food*, or *Rayment*; for Divine Worship here are three *Churches*, and for its security hath a Fort and a publick *Store-house*. This Isle (as the rest of the *Caribe's*) is troubled with *Muscheto's*, *Chigos*, *Murigoins*, and other *stinging Flies*, which are found troublesom to the Inhabitants. *Nieves* described.

ANTEGO, an Isle about 6 or 7 Leagues in length, and as much in breadth in many places; it is seated in the *Latitude* of 16 *deg.* 11 *minutes*, it hath some few Springs of fresh water, but hath many *Cisterns* and *Ponds* for the preserving of *Rain water*; It is encompassed with Rocks which makes its access difficult and dangerous. Here are plenty of wild Fowl, and Fish, nor is there any want of tame *Cattle*. It is in the Possession of the *English*, but thinly Inhabited, not exceeding 8 or 900. *Antego*.

St. *VINCENT*, seated in the *Latitude* of 16 *deg.* about 20 miles in length, and 15 in breadth, of a fertil soil, yielding abundance of *Sugar Canes*, which grow naturally without planting; It affords many safe Roads and convenient Bays for Shipping, is well watered, but the *English* who are Masters of it, have made as yet no great settlement. St. *Vincent*.

DOMINICA, seated in the *Latitude* of 15 ½ *deg.* about 12 Leagues in length, and 8 in breadth; It is very Mountainous, but hath fertil Valleys affording good *Tobacco*, which is the chief Commodity. It is a Colony of the *English*, but not considerable. *Dominica*.

MONTSERAT, In the *Latitude* of 17 *deg.* a small Isle of about 10 miles in length, and less in breadth, very Mountainous, but interlaced with fertil Valleys. It is much Inhabited by the *Irish*, who have a *Church*. *Montserat*.

ANGUILLA, in the *Latitude* of 18 *deg.* 21 *min.* about 10 Leagues in length, and 3 in breadth: It is a poor beggarly Isle, Possessed by about 2 or 300 *English*, but said not worth the keeping. *Anguilla*.

BAR-

Barbada. *BARBADA*, in the *Lat.* 17 ½ *degree*, an Isle of no great extent, not exceeding 15 miles in length; of a fertil soil, yet of no account to the *English* who are Possessors thereof.

Sancta Crux. *SANCTA CRUX*, Inhabited by the *French*, the Isle is woody and mountainous, and not well provided with fresh waters, and of no considerable note.

Guadaloupt. *GUADALOUPE*, about three Leagues in length, possessed by the *French*, of good *Anchorage* in most parts of the adjoyning Sea, and of some note for its fresh water, which it furnisheth *Ships* with in their necessity, to finish their Voyages.

Grenado. *GRENADO*, but a small Isle (being not above six miles in length) in form of a *Cressent*, the two horns being not above a mile asunder, it is possessed by the *French*, said to be of a fertil soil, and well clothed with Woods, and hath a commodious Haven.

And now I shall be bold to say that *Hispaniola*, *Cuba*, and the Neighbouring *Isles*, answer to the *Hesperides* of the Antients. All agree that the *Hesperides* were 40 daies sail from the *Gorgades*, and the *Gorgades* only two from the Coast of *Africa*. The *Isles* of *Cape Verde* answer to the *Gorgades*, as we have made appear in *Africa*. From these *Isles* to those of *Hispaniola*, and *Cuba*, is at present 25 or 30 daies sail, which may well be 40 of the Antients; and moreover there is no *Isles* in the *Atlantick Ocean* beyond these. And when the Antients place these *Hesperides* in one *Gulph* alone, as *Capella* doth, or in more, as *Solinus* doth, they seem to mean the *Gulph* of *Mexico*, which contains many other lesser. And if *Pliny* seems to make account but of two *Hesperides*, and others of many more, *Pliny* understands *Hispaniola* and *Cuba* alone, in regard of which the rest are little considerable; *Solinus* and *Capella* intend in general the body of these *Islands*. But let us proceed to *America Meridionalis*.

AMERICA MERIDIONALIS.

The degrees of Latitude, and Longitude of *America Meridionalis*. *AMERICA MERIDIONALIS* is the most Southern part, or *Peninsula* of *America*; which extends it self from about the 12 *degree* on this side of the *Æquator*, unto the 54 beyond it, which are 66 *degrees* of *Latitude*: and from the 291, or 92, where is *Porto Viejo*, unto about the 350, where there is *Cape St. Augustin*, which are 57, or 58 *degrees* of *Longitude*. It reaches then from South to North, 1650 Leagues; from West to East, little less than 400.

Its bounds. Its bounds on the North and East, are the *Mer del Nort*: towards the South the *Magellanick Sea*; And on the West, the *Mer del Sud*, or *Pacifick Sea*.

Its form approaches near a Triangle, whose sides are almost equal; from *Porto Viejo* to *Cape St. Augustin* are 1400 Leagues; from *Cape St. Augustin*, to *Cape Freeward* in the middle of the streight of *Magellan*, are 1500 Leagues, and from that *Cape* to *Porto Belo*, 1600. Its scituation is for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, part under the *Antartick temperate Zone*; of that which is under the *Torrid Zone*, the greatest part is beyond the *Æquator*, the less on this side; so that the greatest part of these people have their seasons contrary to ours: The Coasts of this Country are all known more or less, the Inlands very little.

America Meridionalis divided into parts. *AMERICA MERIDIONALIS* may be divided into *PERUVIANA*, and *BRASILIANA*, subdividing *Peruviana* into *Terra Firma*, and *Peru*; and *Brasilidna*, into *Brasile*, and *Paraguay*; the first division is taken by a line which from the mouth of the *Amazona*, goes to seek the utmost part of *Chili* towards the South, and this line divides *America Meridionalis* into two equal parts; the one belonging almost wholly to the *Castilians* alone, and the other for the most part to the *Portugals*: These have their *Vice-Roy* in St. *Salvador*, a capital City in the *Bay* of *All-Saints*, and almost in the middle of the Coast of *Brazile*; the other in *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, that is, the Kings, at present a capital City, and in the middle of the Coast of *Peru*.

We

We may yet divide the *Terra Firma*, into *Terra Firma* and *Guiana*; *Peru* into *Peru* and *Chili*; *Brazil* into the Coaſt of *Brazil*, and Main Land of *Brazil*; *Paraguay* into *Paraguay*, and the *Magellanick Lands*. Of this *America Meridionalis*, *Brazil* poſſeſſes all that is towards the Eaſt; *Terra Firma*, and *Guiana*, that which is towards the North; *Paraguay* and the *Magellanick Lands*, that which advanceth towards the South; and *Peru* and *Chili* are towards the Weſt, in regard of *Brazil* and *Paraguay*. The *Caſtilians* poſſeſs almoſt all *Terra Firma*, nothing at all in *Guiana*; they hold *Peru* and *Chili* between the *Andes* and *Mer del Sud*, ſcarce any thing beyond thoſe Mountains; beſides their *Vice-Roy*, who reſides at *Lima* or *Los Reyes*, they have eſtabliſhed in what they poſſeſs, many *Archbiſhopricks*, *Biſhopricks*, *&c.* for the rule of the Church; many *Audiences* and Seats of *Juſtice*, for the Secular and Civil Power; and many Governments for the *Militia*.

Parts poſſeſſed by the *Caſtilians*.

The *Archbiſhops* are thoſe of *Lima*, in *Peru de la Plata*, in *Los Charcas*, and of *St. Fe de Bogota*, in the new Kingdom of *Granada*. The *Archbiſhop* of *Lima* hath for Suffragans the Biſhops of *Cuſco*, *Quito*, *Arequipa*, *Truxillo*, and *Guamanga*, all in *Peru*. The Archbiſhop *de la Plata* hath for Suffragans the Biſhops of *Baranca*, or *Sancta Crux* in *La Sierra*, *Cividad della Pax* in *Chiquiago*, St. *Jago del Eſtero* in *Cucuman*, *Buenos Ayres* in *Rio della Plata*, *Noſtra Sacra de l'Aſſumption* in *Paraguay*, *Panama* in *Terra Firma*, or *Caſtilla del Oro*, St. *Jago del Eſtremadura*, and the Imperial in *Chili*. The Archbiſhop of *Sancta Fe de Bogota* in new *Granada*, hath for Suffragans the Biſhops of *Popayan*, of *Carthagena*, and of St. *Martha* in their Provinces of the ſame name.

The Archbiſhops and their Suffragans.

In the Dioceſs of the Archbiſhops and Biſhops are a very great number of *Pariſhes*, *Chapels* of *Eaſe*, *Monaſteries*, *&c.*

The Audiences under the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru* have formerly been thoſe of *Panama* in *Terra Firma*, of *Sancta Fe de Bogota*, in the new Kingdom of *Granada*; of *Quito* and *Lima* in *Peru*, *de la Plata* in *Los Charcas*, and *de St. Jago de Eſtremadura* in *Chili*: That of *Panama* and of *Chili* ſubſiſts no longer, but are reduced into Governments. Of theſe Governments there are here eleven, *viz. Panama*, *Carthagena*, *St. Martha*, *Popayan*, the new Kingdom of *Granada*, *los Quixos*, *Paſſamoros*, *los Charcas*, *Tucuman*, *Chili*, and *Rio de la Plata*. *Peru*, wherein are *Lima*, *Quito*, and *Cuſco*, is not among theſe Governments, but depends immediately on the Vice-Roy.

But before we leave *America Meridionalis*, let us ſpeak a word or two touching that part which is towards *Mer del Sud*, there is found a great diverſity between that near this Sea and that within Land: that which is neareſt the Coaſt is for the moſt part plain, and above the Plains are many Hills, or rather Mountains; after theſe Mountains there are other Plains and beautiful Vallies, and then Mountains almoſt inacceſſible, which are thoſe that bound *Chili* and *Peru* towards the Eaſt. It ſcarce rains in the Plains, often in the firſt Mountains, ſometimes between the two ranks of Mountains; and ſnows often between the two laſt Mountains: The Soil of the Plains of the firſt Mountains and of thoſe between the two ranks of Mountains, are fruitful and pleaſant; the laſt are only Rocks, barren, extreamly cold both in Winter and Summer, and almoſt always covered with Snow. And that which is obſervable, theſe Mountains beginning near the Streight of *Magellan* make two Branches; which one in the ſight of the other traverſe all the length of *America Meridionalis*: and ſo they are in the ſame Parallel, yet of quality and temperament ſo different, that each Region hath its *Beaſts*, *Grains*, and *Fruits* unlike, nay the Men tranſported from the one can ſcarcely live in the other. But let us proceed to its Parts.

TERRA-FIRMA.

Terra firma, ſo called by *Chriſtopher Columbus.*

UNder the name of *TERRA-FIRMA* taken in general, we underſtand that part of *AMERICA MERIDIONALIS*, moſt advanced towards the North, and which touches *AMERICA SEPTENTRIONALIS* by the *Iſthmus* of *Panama*. This name of *Terra-Firma* is taken from *Chriſtopher Columbus*, not having diſcovered any but Iſles in his firſt and ſecond voyage; in his third and fourth he made a good part of theſe Coaſts, which judging to be Main Land, that name was given it.

Its extent.

It extends it ſelf from the *Iſthmus* of *Panama*, unto the mouth of the *Amazon*, near 1000 Leagues; its breadth, between the *Mer del Nort*, and the Eſtates which are along the *Amazon*, is not above 200 or 250 Leagues, or little more. This breadth being only the quarter of the length is the cauſe that we have divided this *Terra-Firma* into two parts, of which the moſt Occidental, and the beſt for the moſt part belongeth to the King of *Spain*; the moſt Eaſtern, and the leaſt, is almoſt all in the hands of the Natives; ſome *Europeans* having only ſettled ſome Habitations on the coaſt, and this may be called *Guiana*; the firſt is five or ſix hundred Leagues long, this about four hundred.

The *Spaniards* have eſtabliſhed in *Terra-Firma*, many Governments, *viz.* thoſe of *Panama*, *Carthagena*, *Sancta Martha*, *Rio de la Haches*, *Venezuela*, and of *Paria* or *Nueva Andalouzia*, on the Sea Coaſt of *Mer del Nort*; thoſe of *Popayan*, and the new Kingdom of *Granada* are within Land, or on the *Pacifique* Sea.

The Government or Province of *Panama* deſcribed.

The Government of *PANAMA*, and which particularly takes the name of *Terra-Firma*, is between the North and South Seas, placed in the *Iſthmus*, which joyns the two parts of *America* together. The Countrey is either low and miery, or mountainous and barren, and therefore very unfit to bear *Corn*, only ſome *Mayze* it yieldeth. Yet here is found good paſturage for *Cattle*, it is well watered with Rivers, ſome of which ſtream down Sand-gold. Its air is very unhealthful, by reaſon of the great heats and foggs it is ſubject unto.

Its chief places.

Its chief places are, 1. *Panama*, which takes its name from the Province, as the chief, being the reſidence of the Governour, honoured with a Biſhops Sea, which is Suffragan to the Arch-Biſhop of *Lima*, and the Courts of Judicature, and beautified with three fair Monaſteries, as alſo a Colledge of Jeſuites. It is ſeated on the Sea ſhore, and is a place of great reſort. 2. *Nombre de Dios* once famous, being made the Staple of ſuch commodities as were trucked betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*, which were brought hither by Sea, and ſo conveyed by Land to *Panama*, from whence they were ſhipped for *Peru*; and the like was done for thoſe Goods ſent from *Peru* to *Spain*; but by reaſon of the unhealthfulneſs, as alſo lying too open to the invaſions of the *Engliſh* or other Nations, it was removed to *Porto Belo*, a place of great ſtrength, built for that purpoſe by *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain*, ſeated on the North Sea, diſtant from *Panama* 16 or 20 Leagues, which makes this paſſage have a great trade between *Peru* and *Mexico*.

It was once propoſed to cut this *Iſthmus* to make a communication between the one and the other Sea, but the *Pacifique* Sea being found higher then *Mer del Nort*, this propoſition vaniſhed; that the *Mer del Sud* is higher then that *del Nort*, may be judged by the eye; the Lake of *Nicaragua*, the Rivers of *Paria* or *Orinoque*, of the *Amazones*, together with abundance of others, having their ſprings near *Mer del Sud*, and diſcharging themſelves into that *del Nort*, after a long courſe, which could not be but with a great declenſion.

The Iſles of *Pearls.*

At the opening of the *Gulf* of *Panama*, are the Iſles of *Pearls* once famous; the *Pearls* of *Gubagua*, and *de la Margarita* being at moſt not above eight or ten Carrats: there was found in theſe Iſles from 25 to 30, both round, oval, and in pairs, all excellent; whereas among the others few were found well formed, or without ſpot.

CAR-

CARTHAGENA is a *Peninſula* joyning to the firm Land by a Cauſway of 250 Paces, all Sandy. It is a place of great ſtrength, eſpecially ſince the damage it received by Sir *Francis Drake* in 1585. Its Port is one of the moſt famous of *America*, where the *Spaniſh Fleet* that goes to the *Weſt Indies* by Order puts in here, which makes it be of a great reſort, and is become very rich: Its Houſes are well built, and beautified with a *Cathedral Church* and 3 *Monaſteries*. The other Cities of this Government are, *St. Jago de los Cavalleros*, of old, *Tolu*, worthy of note for the moſt Sovereign *Balſom* of all theſe parts, little Inferiour to that of *Egypt*. *Mopoz*, near the confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalens*, *Sancta Maria*, and *la Conception*. The Air of this Government is moiſt, ſcarce healthful, the beſt is neat *Tolu*; there is brought from theſe quarters *Gold*, *Long-Pepper*, *Dragons-Blood*, excellent *Balm*, *Emeralds*, and *Slaves*. *Carthagena* deſcribed. Its Commodities and Trade

SANCTA MARTHA, ſo called from its chief City, is a Country unfit for tillage, being Mountainous and barren, yet ſome they have; it yields good Fruits, and hath *Gold*, *Saphirs*, *Emeralds*, *Jaſpar*, *Caſſidoins*, *Brazil-wood*: and the Sea yields *Pearls*. The Air in the Mid-land parts, by reaſon of the vicinity of Mountains, which are always covered with *Snow*, is very cold, and on the Sea-Coaſts as hot and ſcorching. Its chief places are, 1. *St. Martha*, ſcituate on the Sea-ſhoar, neighboured by a convenient and ſafe Haven, which is defended from the fury of the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it; it is honoured with an *Epiſcopal See*, but ſtill laments the Ruins it ſuffered from the *Engliſh* by Sir *Francis Drake* and Sir *Anthony Shirley*, in *Anno* 1595 and 96. 2. *Teneriff*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*. 3. *Tamalameque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villa de los Palmas*. 4. *Los Reyes*, ſcituate in the Vale of *Upar*, on the Banks of a rapid and deep River called *Guatapori*. 5. *La Ramada* or *Salamanca*, ſeated in the ſame Vale of *Upar*, about which are ſeveral Veins of *Braſs*. And, 6. *Ocanna*, or St. *Anna*, ſeated on the River *Ceſar*. Among the Governments of *America Meridionalis*, thoſe of *Rio de la Hacha*, of *Venezuela*, and of *Paria*, are of the Audience of *St. Domingo* in the Iſle of *Hiſpaniola*, which is of *America Septentrionalis*, yet their ſcituation makes us deſcribe them here. *St. Martha* deſcribed, with its Fruits, Commodities, &c. Its chief places.

RIO DE LA HACHA is Eaſt of *St. Martha*, of whoſe Biſhoprick it depends. This Government hath only the City of *Nueſtra Sennora de la Nieves*, or *de los Remedios*, and ſometimes alſo *Rio de la Hacha*. It yields *Gold*, *precious Stones*, *Salt*, and its Soil is fertil. *Rio de la Hacha* deſcribed, with its Commodities.

VENEZUELA had its name ſo given, for its being built on many little Iſles, and in a Lake, as *Venice* is. Its Air is ſweet and healthful, and the Soil ſo fertil in all ſorts of *Grain* and *Fruits*, and ſo well ſtocked with *Cattle*, that it is termed by other Countries a *Granary*, as indeed they find it ſo, it ſupplying their wants. It is well watered with Rivers; here is alſo *wild Beaſts* for hunting; and in the bowels of its Earth are rich Mines of *Gold* and other Metals. The other Cities are *Nueſtra Sennora de Carvalleda*, ſeated upon the Sea, but its Haven is very unſafe; nigh to this City there are Hills whoſe tops are ſaid for height to equalize thoſe of *Teneriff*. *St. Jago de Leon*, *Valenza la Nueva*, *Xeres la Nueva*, *Segovia la Nueva*, *Tucuyo*, and *Nueſtra Sennora della Pax*. *Segovia la Nueva* is more advanced towards the *Barbarian* people of any, its Soil is lean, but in recompence feeds many *Cattle* and *Veniſon*. The Lake of *Maraycabo*, near 100 Leagues circuit, is eſteemed in this Province. *Venezuela* deſcribed.

PARIA, or *New Andaluſia*, is on the River *Paria* or *Orinoque*, and is likewiſe called *Serpa* and *Comana* from the name of its principal City, which they call *Nueva Cordova*: They fiſh many *Pearls* along this Coaſt, before which are the Iſles of *Cubago*, *Margarita*, and the *Trinity* or *Trinidado*, formerly ſo famous for this fiſhing. Theſe Iſles are very barren, ſcarce affording ſuſtenance for its Inhabitants, which defect is ſupplied from the adjacent Countries, which made the *Spaniards* abandon them ſo ſoon as the ſaid Fiſhing left them. *Paria* deſcribed.

Popayan described.

The Governments of *POPAYAN*, and the New Kingdom of *Granada*, are towards *Peru*; that of *Popayan* is divided into two parts, the one answering to the Chamber of the new Kingdom of *Granada*, the other to that of *Quito* or *Peru*. The Air of all *Popayan* is generally healthful, and very fresh by reason of the Mountains. The Land is more proper for *Fruits* and *Pasture*, than for *Grains*; and, as in all the neighbouring Countries, here are likewise many Mines of *Gold* and other *Metals*.

Its Cities.

The Cities of *Popayan*, which answer to the new Kingdom of *Granada*, are five, but have formerly been ten; *Sancta Fe de Antequera*, *Calamanta*, *Arma*, *Sancta Anna de Anzerma*, and *Cartago*; all upon or near the River of *Sancta Martha*: the other five were *Antioquia*, St. *Sebastian de la Plata*, St. *Vincent de los Payezes*, *Neyva*, and *Villa de los Angelos*. The first was transported to *Sancta Fe de Antequera*, the others abandoned by reason of the continual Wars made upon them by the *Paezes*, *Pixos*, and *Manipa's*, who could not be tamed.

Other Cities in *Popayan*.

The Cities of the Government of *Popayan*, which answer to the Chamber of *Quito*, are nine. *Popayan*, which hath its name common with the name of the Country, seated on a pleasant River in the midst of a rich Plain, being the residence of the Governour, as also the See of a *Bishop*, and adorned with a *Cathedral* and a Monastery of *Fryars*. *Cali*, seated at the Foot of a high Mountain on the Banks of a River, and *Almanguer* on the sides of a plain, but barren Mountain. *Timana*, *St. Juan de Truxillo*, and *Guadalajara*, of *Buga* advance towards the East. *Madrigal*, otherwise *Chapanchica*, *St. Juan de Pasto*, and *Agreda*, or *Malaga* towards the West, and approaching near the *Mer del Sud*.

Granada, with its Cities described.

The new Kingdom of *GRANADA* lies almost all along the River *Magdelane*, and from its Springs to the middle of its course, are found a great many Cities, as *Sancta Fe de Bogata*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom of *Granada*, the residence of the *Governour*, and the See of an *Archbishop*; a City well inhabited by *Spaniards*, as well as the Natives. *St. Michael*, *de Sancta Fe*, about 12 Leagues from *Sancta Fe de Bogata*. *Tocayma*, seated on the Banks of the River *Pati*. *La Palma de los Colimas*, a Town built by the *Spaniards*. *Tunia*, built on the top of a Hill, being now a place of great strength, serving for a Fortress against the *Savages*; it is also a wealthy Town, enjoying a good Trade. *La Trinidad de los Musos*, seated on a River, of some note by reason of the Veins of *Chrystal*, *Emeralds*, and *Adamants*, that are in its adjacent Fields. *St. John de los Linos*, seated in a corner full of Veins of *Gold*, also *Velez*, *Ybagua*, *Mariquita*, and *Nuestra Sennora de los Remedios*, and these four last are on the left hand of the River, the other seven on the right. Distant from this River, and between the Governments of *Sancta Martha*, and *Venezuela*, are likewise *Pampelona*, rich in Mines of *Gold*, *Cattle*, and *Herbs*. *Merida* and *St. Christopher*: *Tudela*, between *la Trinidad* and *la Palma* hath been transported to *St. John de los Lianos*.

Gonzalo Ximenes, and *Ferdinand Cortez*, gained great Riches out of these parts.

In 1536 *Gonzalo Ximenes* over-run a great part of this new Kingdom of *Granada*, and made booty of about 250000 *Pezo's* of *Gold*, of which near 200000 were exceeding pure; and besides the *Gold* 1800 *Emeralds* of divers sizes. In another Incursion made by *Ferdinand Cortez* into these quarters, were found five *Emeralds* of a vast price. They were cut into divers fashions; one into the form of a *Fish*, another into a *Bugle* or small *Horn*, a third into a little *Bird*, a fourth into a *Bell*, whose Clapper was a large *Pearl*, fashioned like a *Pear*, and the last into a *Cup*; for which alone a *Genoese* Lapidary proffered 40000 Ducats, with hopes of gaining great profit by it.

Many rich Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, and other Metals.

The Air of this Government inclines to Heat, the Valleys have *Grains* and *Pastures*, but no *Wine*; the Mountains have many rich Mines of *Gold* and other Metals; the *Silver* Mines of St. *Agatha* are rich, those *de los Remedios* have store of *Gold*, and there are 12 or 15000 *Negroes* which labour in them. Those of *Musos* near *la Trinity*, and those of *Pampilona*, *St. Christopher*, and *Merida*, are likewise of some esteem; but above all, the Mine of *Emeralds* near *la Trinity*, where there is a Rock full.

GUIANA, taken in general, comprehends all that is found between the Rivers of *Orinoque* and of the *Amazons*; from the Mountains which are above the Lake of *Parima* unto the *Mer del Nort*. These Mountains towards the South divide it from what is above the River of *Amazons*: *Orinoque* divides it from *Terra-Firma*, or *New Andalousia*, on the West, and the River of *Amazons* from *Brazil* on the East. The length of this *Guiana* is near 400 Leagues, the breadth 150, and in some places 200; and if we would divide *Guiana* into *Guiana* and *Caribane*, this last would possess all the Coast, and *Guiana* the parts within Land. The Coast hath at divers times been frequented by the *Spaniards*, *English*, *Hollanders*, and *French*, who have all endeavoured to establish some Colonies, what in one place, what in another, and all with design to have commerce with those within the Country, where they hope to find a new *Peru*: I mean the Kingdom of *Manoa*, or *El Dorado*, which they esteem very rich in *Gold*. And they have observed exactly the *Rivers*, *Gulphs*, and *Capes*, which present themselves on this Coast. Among these Rivers the fairest and greatest are, *Essequebe*, *Brebice*, *Corretine*, *Marruvine*, *Cayanna*, the *Aparuvaca* or *Cape Ruvaca*, and the *Viapoco*. The Spring of the *Essequebe*, according to the report of its Inhabitants, is not above a days journey distant from the famous Lake of *Parima*, and thence takes its course for 20 days journey to the Sea, into which it discharges it self. It is interrupted by divers *Cataracts*, which hinders its being navigable for any considerable way, which causes the Inland Country not to be so perfectly discovered, as it might be were it otherwise. The *Brebice* and *Corretine* have little less course than the *Essequebe*, and no fewer *Cataracts*; the last hath its Mouth to the Sea very large, but not deep. The *Marruvine* is no less than 4 or 5000 Geometrical Paces broad at its Mouth, and the length of its course is esteemed to be 30 or 40 days journey. The *English*, who have mounted this River farther than any others, have observed abundance of Rivers which lose themselves in it; and say, that here is found the *Sensitive Plant* or *Herb*, which hath this natural property, to close if never so little touched; and to shut up its Flowers and fade if the least sprig be took from it, not opening its Leaves till a good while after. All these Rivers, for the most part, have their *Cataracts* under the same Parallel, within 4 or 5 *degrees* of *Latitude* on this side the *Equator*, which may make us judge that there is some ridge of Mountains, or at least a continued Eminence, which makes these Countries within Land, of a higher scituation than those Parts neighboured by the Sea. *Cayanna* hath likewise in it those Mountains which are near the Lake of *Parima*; and from its Spring to the Sea, is no less than 100 Leagues in a strait line, and twice as much according to its course: It embraces an Isle where the *French* have endeavoured to settle a Colony, which in time may come to good effect. *Apuruvaca* or *Caperuvaca* hath a longer course than *Cayanna*: It forms a great Lake not far from its Spring, and embraces an Island near its Mouth. When *Harcourt*, an *Englishman*, was on this River, he found many People, and those much different from one another. *Keymish*, another *Englishman*, who was with the worthy Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, who took so much pains to find out the Kingdom of *Manoa*, assures us, that in his time they could find no such People; which makes it appear, that these People are sometimes on one Coast, and sometimes on another. There are here found *Paroquetto's*, and other very rare and beautiful Birds, with pretty *Apes* and *Monkies*. *Viapoco* hath a longer course than the *Cayanna*, a shorter than the *Apuruvaca*; and like all the others of this Coast, suffers a fall 18 or 20 Leagues from the Sea, where it disburthens it self with other Rivers into a little Gulph of 7 or 8 Leagues wide, leaving on the Right hand *Cape de Condi*, or *d'Orange*. There is found along this River *Tobacco*, *Canes* from which *Sugar* may be extracted, and *Shrubs* which yield *Cotton*: and amongst the Beasts they have *Stags*, *wild Boars*, *tame Swine*, and *Beeves* which have no Horns, &c. But let us speak a word or two of the temperament and quality of the Soil of these Quarters, in which there is something extraordinary.

The length and breadth of *Guiana*.

Rivers in *Guiana*, with their Springs, Cataracts, length and breadth.

The *Essequebe*.

The *Brebice* and *Corretine*.

The *Maruvine*.

Cayanna.

The *Apuruvaca*.

The *Viapoco*.

It

The ſituation of *Guiana*.

It is true that *Guiana* is under, or very near the *Æquator*; that part which ſtretches moſt within Land, and the neareſt to the *Amazons*, is under the *Equator*: from that line the Coaſt ſtretches on this ſide unto the *8th degree* of *Latitude*; yet the greateſt part of this Coaſt lies under the *4th*, *5th*, *6th* and *7th* of theſe *degrees*, which is almoſt in the middle of the *Torrid Zone*, and conſequently ſeems to be in a Climate extreamly hot. But the Eaſtern-winds, which do almoſt continually blow upon the Coaſt, the Nights being equal with the Days, the large Rivers which refreſh and water the Country, the great Dews which fall, the height of their Mountains, the thickneſs of their Forreſts,&c. yield ſuch refreſhments as renders this Country one of the moſt pleaſant, and would be made (were it cultivated) one of the beſt and richeſt Countries in all *America*: They have two *Summers* and two *Winters*, their Summers during the *Æquinoxes*, and their *Winters* during the *Solſtices*; and to ſpeak truth, they have always either Spring or Autumn, their *Flowers* being always in their beauty, the *Trees* always in their verdure, and their *Fruits* fit to gather all the year long. The *Air* is ſo temperate and healthful, that thoſe of the Country live commonly 100 or 120 years, ſometimes 150, without being ſubject to any diſeaſe or ſickneſs. Proviſions coſt almoſt nothing, all ſorts of Game being had for only hunting; all ſorts of Fiſh are here very plentiful: They have ſeveral rich Commodities, as *Cotton*, *Cotton-Thread*, and Hamacks or Beds of *Cotton*, *China-wood*, *green Ebony*, *white* and *red Saunders*, *Dyers-ſtood*, *Brazil*, Medicinal *Oils*, *Jallop*, *Salſaparilla*, *Turbith*, *Gayac*, *Gommegutte*, *Gum-Arabick*, *Gum-Eleni*; a Balm excellent againſt the *Gout*, *Torqueſſes*, *Emeralds*, *Stag-skins*, *Tigers*, *Otters*, and *black Foxes*; grains of *Muſk* taken from *Lizards*, *Munkeys*, *Apes* and *Tamarins*, a little Beaſt of pleaſure ſo beautiful and joyful that one alone hath been ſold for 500 Crowns. The *Americans* themſelves loving to play with them, and putting about their Necks collars of *Pearls*, and Pendants of *Stones* in their Ears.

The fertility of the Country.

In the bowels of its Earth are Mines of *Copper*, *Tin*, *Lead*, and *Iron*, which are very rare in *America*; and to all appearance there are Mines of *Gold* and *Silver*; here is alſo *Roch-Alum*, *Chryſtal* of the *Rock*, *Azure*, and likewiſe *Dragons Blood*,*&c.*

That part of *Guiana* moſt advanced within Land, and which retains particularly the name of *Guiana*, is very little known; yet here ſhould be the Kingdom and City of *Manoa* or *El Dorado*, of which ſome have formerly made ſuch account; but not being found at preſent, is by moſt believed Imaginary.

The AMAZONE.

THE River *AMAZONE* is the greateſt and ſwifteſt, either in the one or other part of *America*, and it may be ſaid the largeſt of both Continents: From its Springs to its disburthenings into the Sea is 8 or 900 Leagues in a ſtrait line, and according to its courſe 11 or 1200; it receives, both on the Right and Left, abundance of Rivers, of which ſome have 100, 200, 300, others 4, 5, or 600 Leagues courſe. All the *Amazon* is inhabited by abundance of People, leſs barbarous than thoſe of *Brazil*, nor yet ſo much civilized as thoſe of *Peru* were: They eat not one another, for by their *Hunting*, *Fiſhing*, *Fruits*, *Corn* and *Roots*, they are furniſhed with what is needful either for Meat or Drink: they have ſome Idols particular to them, but pay them no adoration, contenting themſelves to expoſe them to publick view when they enterprize any Affair.

The *Amazon* inhabited by abundance of People.

Its beginning, Springs and Mouths.

The breadth of its Channel.

The *Amazon* begins at the Foot of the *Cordillier* Mountains, 8 or 10 Leagues from *Quito* in *Peru*, preſſing forward its ſtreams from Weſt to Eaſt: Its Springs and its Mouths are under or near the *Æquator*. The breadth of its Channel from *Junta de los Rios*, which is 60 and odd Leagues from its Springs unto *Maranhon*, is of one or two Leagues, and below *Maranhon*, two, three, or four, enlarging ſtill as it approacheth the Sea, where it makes an opening of 50 or 60 Leagues between the Capes *de Nort* and *Zaparare*; this

this on the Coaſt of *Brazile*, the other on the Coaſt of *Guiana*: Its depth likewiſe from *Junta los Rios* unto *Maranhon* is at leaſt 5 or 6 Fathom, in ſome places 8 or 10; from *Maranhon* unto *Rio Negro*, 10, 15 or 20, and from *Rio Negro* to the Sea 30, 40, 50, and ſometimes much more.

The courſe of the *Amazon* endeavoured to be found out by *Francis Orilhane*, *Pedro de Orſua*, and others, with the adventures & miſ-fortunes, which befel them.

One *Francis Orilhane* was the firſt that took any pains to know the courſe of this River. In 1540 he tranſported himſelf to *Junta de los Rios*, where he cauſed to be built a Veſſel proper to deſcend this River to the Sea: In 1541 he imbarqued himſelf with ſome Souldiers, had divers encounters in the way, but about the end of *Auguſt* he found the Sea, after which he haſted to *Spain* to make this diſcovery known unto the King. In 1549 he returned from *Spain* to the *Amazone*, where after his ſpending a long time upon the great Sea, being ſometimes beaten to and fro by the impetuoſity of the winds which cauſed great ſtorms, then retained as long by calms, which together with the loſs of a great many of his men, at length he entred into its mouth; yet after all theſe labours and miſeries, he was ſo unhappy, that not finding the true channel to remount the *Amazone*, he died with grief; having gained nothing for all his travel, labour and expence, but the honour that ſome give his name to the River, calling it *Orelhane*. After *Francis Orelhane*, the *Amazone* was let alone for a good continuance of time. In 1560 thoſe of *Lima* in *Peru*, tried it another way; they cauſed ſome to embark on the River of *Xauxa*, otherwiſe of *Maranhon*, which begins in *Peru*, below *Guanuca*, and about 150 Leagues from *Lima*, paſſes within 30 or 40 of *Cuſco*, and by a courſe of 5 or 600 Leagues deſcends into the *Amazon*, which hath ſcarce made 300 at this meeting, yet is found the larger; this voyage was likewiſe unhappy; for *Pedro de Orſua* Chief of this expedition was ſlain by his own men, and *Lopez de Aguyre* chief of the ſedition, finiſhed to deſcend to the Sea by the *Orinoque*, and landed at *La Trinity*, where he was arreſted, and chaſtiſed for his felony. In 1566 thoſe of *Cuſco* tried again the diſcovery of the *Amazone* by the *Amarumaye*, which could not ſucceed, there being two competitors for this expedition; who made war, fought, and weakned each other in ſuch manner, that there remained but a few to be knockt on the head by the *Chonchis*: *Maldonado* one of the Chiefs of this expedition, together with two Fryers eſcaped and brought the news; after this of *Maldonado* no more diſcovery of the *Amazon* was attempted till 60 or 70 years after. In 1635 *Jean de Palacios* reattempted this deſign, tranſporting himſelf, with ſome others to *Annete*, to ſee with what means he might ſerve himſelf to make this voyage; but in 1636 he was killed, and the greateſt part of his men returned; but two Friers and 5 or 6 Souldiers, put themſelves into a Skiff, with a reſolution to deſcend the River, and in the end arrived at *Para*, the chief Colonie of *Brazile* under the Crown of *Portugal*, where they told the news to *Piedro Texeira*, Captain Major of *Para*. Though *Brazile* was then in arms againſt the *Hollanders*, yet *Texeira* forbore not to equip 47 *Barques*; cauſed to be embarqued in them 70 *Portugals*, with 1200 *Indians*, who knew how to manage *Armes*; and likewiſe 800 *Boyes* and *Women* to ſerve them; with theſe he departed in *October* 1637. remounted the River, and was ſo happy, that he finiſhed his voyage even to *Peru*, left a part of his men there, where the River *Chevelus* falls into the *Amazone*; the reſt he left at *Junta de los Rios*, except himſelf, with ſome few perſons which came to *Quito*; where he made his report in *September*, 1638. The news being brought to *Lima* to the *Count* of *Chinchon*, *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*, he gave order to furniſh them with all things neceſſary for their return; and that the *Father Chriſtopher de Acogne*, a *Jeſuite*, and his companion ſhould go with them to carry the news to *Spain*. They parted from *Peru* in *February* 1639 and arrived at *Pera* in *December* following, and ſoon after *Father Chriſtopher de Acogne* carried the news to *Spain*, arriving there in 1640. and expoſed his relation to publick view.

Texeira happy in the diſcovery of the courſe of the *Amazone*.

These two last Voyages of *Texeira* mounting and descending the River, have given us a more ample and true knowledge of the *Amazon* than all those before him could do; and according to their report, all the Regions which are about the *Amazon* enjoy a temperate Air. The Eastern Winds which blow all day, the Nights equal to the Days, the annual Inundations like to those of the *Nile*, the great quantity of *Trees* and *Forrests*, which are upon or near the River, yield much refreshment, and keeps them from being troubled with thousands of ugly Insects, which they are pestred with at *Peru* and *Brazil*. They say, that the Leaves and Fruits of the *Trees*, the verdure of their *Herbs*, and the beauty of their *Flowers*, gives great delight to the Inhabitants all the year long. The Country (by reason of the Inundation of the River) is very fertil in *Grains*, hath rich *Pastures*, and their *Fruits*, *Plants* and *Roots* are in great plenty, and may compare with any Country in all *America*; their *Rivers* and *Lakes* are well stored with *Fish*, among others the *Sea-Calf* and *Tortoise* are very large and delicate. The Country is well cloathed with Woods, some Trees being 5 or 6 Fathom about, and along the River may be built as great Ships as any that swim on the Ocean. Their *Ebony* and *Brazil* is grown to an inexhaustible quantity; they have great store of *Cacoa* and *Tobacco*, plenty of *Sugar-Canes*, which they might easily husband, and abundance of other Commodities, without having regard to *Gold*, *Silver*, and other *Metals* which are found there.

The Country very fertil.

They have abundance of different Nations upon and about the *Amazon*; the most part of these Nations so well peopled, and their Villages so thick, that the last House of the one may easily hear the noise made in the first House of the other. Of these People, the *Homagues* are esteemed for their Manufactures of *Cotton-Cloth*: the *Corosipares* for their *Earthen Vessels*: the *Surines* for their *Joyners-work*: the *Topinamubes* for their *Power*. The *Bow* and *Javelin* being their general and common Arms.

Abundance of different Nations along the *Amazon*.

Among the Rivers that fall into the *Amazon*, the *Napo*, the *Agaric*, the *Putomaye*, the *Jenupape*, and the *Coropatube*, and with some others, have their *Sands* mixt with *Gold*; below *Coropatube* there are divers Mines of *Gold* in the Mountains of *Taguare*, Mines of *Silver* in that of *Picory*, and of divers *Stones* in that of *Paragoche*, and of *Sulphur* in many others.

Rivers that fall into the *Amazon*.

As for the *Amazonian Women*, and their Kingdom, from whence it is pretended this River took its name, many accounts have been made, and divers Relations given of it to *Quito*, *Cusco*, and other places; and possibly those of the Country would have frighted the *Castilians* and *Portugals* which have been on this River. But it is no otherwise, than that the Inhabitants of the Country being in Arms, there hath sometimes been some *Women* so couragious, as to be in their party; but there never was a whole Country or Kingdom of these *Women*. And in fine, they seek them so far within the Country, that they cannot be on the *Amazon*: so those may turn to a Fable, as well as those which the *Greeks* have formerly recounted to us of such Wonders.

The *Amazonian* Women.

PERU-

- PERUVIANE where there ſhall be
  - TERRA FIRMA, whoſe Governments or Provinces, with their chief places are thoſe of
    - PANAMA
      - Panama.
      - Nombre de dios.
      - Darien.
    - CARTHAGENA
      - Cartagena.
      - Mopox.
      - Sancta Maria.
      - la Conception.
    - St. MARTHA
      - St. Martha.
      - Teneriff.
      - Tamalameque.
      - Los Reys.
    - RIO de la HACHA
      - Occanna.
      - Rio de la Hacha.
      - Rancheria.
    - VENEZULA
      - Venezula.
      - Noſ. ſigno. de Carvalleda.
      - St. Jago de Leon.
      - Nueve Xeres.
      - Valenza la Nueve.
      - Segovia la Neuve.
      - Tucuyo.
      - Truxillo.
    - New ANDALUSIA
      - Comana.
      - Corduba.
      - Maurenabi.
    - PARIA
      - Macureguara:
      - Cateios.
      - Orinaque,
    - CARIBES
      - Taupuramunen.
      - Moreſhego.
    - GUIANA
      - Macurewaraj.
      - Manoa del dorade.
    - POPAYAN
      - Sancta Fee de Antiochia.
      - Calamanta.
      - Arma.
      - Anzerma.
      - Cartago.
      - Popayan.
      - Almanguer.
      - Timana.
      - Truxillo.
      - Guadalajara.
      - St. John de Paſto.
    - GRANADA
      - Sancto Fee de bogata.
      - St. Michael.
      - Tocayma.
      - Tunia.
      - Trinadad.
      - St. John de los lanos.
      - Velez.
      - Mariquita.
  - PERU, with its Audiences of
    - QUITO with its Provinces of
      - PERU.
        - Quito.
        - Rio bamba.
        - Porto Viejo.
        - Guayaquil.
        - Cuenca.
        - Loxa.
        - Zamora.
        - Yaen.
        - St. Michael.
      - de los QUIXOS,
        - Baeſa.
        - Archidona.
        - Avila.
        - Sevilla del Oro.
      - PAZAMOROS,
        - Loyola.
        - Valadolid.
        - St. Jago de las Montanas.
    - LIMA, whoſe chief places are
      - Lima.
      - Cuſco.
      - Arequipa.
      - Valverde.
      - Arnedo.
      - Leon de Guanuco.
      - la Parſilla.
      - Truxillo.
      - Miroflores.
      - Cachapoyas.
    - De la PLATA, whoſe chief places are,
      - de la Plata.
      - Potoſſi.
      - Oropeſa.
      - Sancta Crux de la Sierra.
  - The Country of the AMAZONS, or the people Inhabiting by the River AMAZONE, which are many, and of ſundry ſorts.
  - CHILI, whoſe parts or Juriſdictions take their names from their chief Cities in each part, as thoſe of
    - Copiapo.
    - Conception.
    - l'Imperial.
    - Villa Rica.
    - Valdivia.
    - Oſorno.
    - Caſtro.
    - St. Jago.
    - Serena.
    - de la Frontera.
  - MAGELLANICK LAND
    - St. Phillip.
    - de la Guadero.
  - TERRA DEL FUGO, or the ISLAND of MAGELLAND,

PERU.

The greatneſs of *Peru*.

PERU is an Empire or Kingdom, ſo rich, and great, that all *America Meridionalis*, or at leaſt the half of that *America*, ſometimes takes the name of *Peruviana*. *Peru*, taken more preciſely, extends it ſelf, more or leſs, according to the diverſity of Authors: It is for the moſt part between the *Equinoctial Line*, and the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, where it hath more then 600 Leagues length; and if we add the Part of *Popayan*, which is on this ſide the Line, and which depends on the *Chamber* of *Quito*, in *Peru*; and that part of *Tucuman*, which is beyond the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and which depends on the *Chamber de la Plata*, in *Peru*; its length will not be much leſs than a 1000 Leagues. Its breadth is likewiſe very diverſe, eſteeming what the *Spaniards* more abſolutely poſſeſs. Its breadth will not be above one hundred, or ſometimes two or three hundred Leagues; if we add all the Eſtates that lie upon the *Amazon*, unto the Confines of *Brazile*, we may make account of 6 or 700 Leagues of breadth. According to ſome Authors, this Country is divided into three Parts, and all different from one another; which Parts are, the *Hill-Countries*, the *Andes*, and the *Plains*. The *Hill-Countries* are twenty Leagues broad, at the narroweſt; the *Andes*, as much; and the *Plains*, Ten Leagues, and ſomething more; and each part extends it ſelf the whole length of the Country. The *Hill Countries* are bare and naked; the *Andes* well cloathed with Woods and Forreſts; and the *Plains*, well furniſhed with Rivers, together with the benefit of the Sea; yet, in many places, the earth is ſandy and dry, which makes it unfit for *Grains*, or *Fruits*. In the *Hill-Countries*, their Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*, during which time they have fair weather; and from *September* to *April*, which is their Winter, it raineth: This Part is much ſubject to Winds, which it receiveth from the Coaſt, which bringeth a difference in the weather; ſome Winds bringing *Snow*, others *Thunder*, others *Rain*, and others *Fair Weather*; and where there falleth but little *Rain*, it is obſerved to be the more Fertil in *Corn* and *Fruits*. On the *Andes*, it is ſaid to rain continually; whereas, in the *Plains*, ſeldom, or never; and their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*; ſo that when it is Summer here, it is Winter with thoſe in the *Hill-Countries*; And its obſerved, that a man, in one daies journey, may ſee Summer and Winter, ſo that at his ſetting forth he may be in a manner frozen, and before night ſcorched with heat.

Its length and breadth.

The parts of *Peru* are three, and all different from one another, as well in fertility, as otherwiſe.

Peru by the *Spaniards* divided into three Audiences, in which are ſeveral Provinces.

That part of *Peru*, beſt known, and on the *Mer del Sud*, hath been by the *Spaniards* divided into three *Audiences*, viz. *Quito*, *Lima*, and *De la Plata*: That of *Quito* is the moſt Northern; that of *De la Plata* the moſt Southern; and that of *Lima*, in the middle; and each of theſe *Audiences* hath divers Provinces. *Quito* holds part of *Popayan*, part of the true *Peru*, *Los Quixos*, or *La Canela*, *Pazamoros* or *Gualſongo*, and likewiſe St. *Juan de las Salinas*. That of *Lima*, holds the true *Peru*, where there were ſeveral Provinces, which the name of *Peru* hath ſwallowed up. And the *Audience De la Plata* holds the Provinces of *Tucuman*, and *De los Charcas*, and theſe Provinces comprehend aboundance of other leſſer ones, the knowledge of which is little neceſſary.

The

The *Audience* of *Quito* is about the *Equinoctial Line*, and is 200 Leagues long, and large. The Quarter of *Popayan*, ſubject to this *Chamber*, hath the Cities of *Popayan*, *Cali*, *Timana*, and others, which we have already treated of, with *Popayan*, in *Terra Firma*. The Quarter of *Peru*, ſubject to *Quito*, hath the Cities of, 1. St. *Franciſco del Quito*, or ſimply *Quito*; once one of the principal Cities of the *Inca's* of *Peru*, being the Regal Seat of their Kings, where they had a magnificent *Palace*. Its Streets are ſtrait, broad, and well ordered, and its Houſes well built; is adorned with a fair *Cathedral Church*, two *Convents* of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan Friars*, as alſo with the *Courts* of *Judicature*: once very large, but at preſent, it hath not above Five hundred Houſes of natural *Spaniards*, Two or three thouſand Houſes Inhabited by the *Natives*; and in its Territory near a hundred Villages, where the *Natives* alſo reſide; ſince the *Spaniards* became Maſters of *Peru*, they have made this a place of good ſtrength, being well Fortified, and as well ſtored with *Ammunition*. 2. *Rio Bamba*, of no note, except for its ancient *Palace* of the Kings of *Peru*. 3. *Cuenca*, ſeated in a Country well ſtored with Mines of *Gold*, *Silver*, *Braſs*, and Veins of *Sulphur*. 4. *Loxa*, ſeated in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley, between two Rivers, the Inhabitants are well furniſhed with *Horſes* and *Armour*, which is the chiefeſt part of their Wealth. 5. St. *Michael de Piura*, of no great account, except it be for its being the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted 6. *Peru*. in St. *Jago de Guayaquil*, of ſome note; ſeated near the influx of the River *Guayaquill*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea. 7. *Caſtro de Vili*, another Colony of *Spaniards*. 8. *Porto Viejo*, ſeated not far from the Sea-ſhore, but of no account, by reaſon of the badneſs of its air; its Port-Town is *Mantu*, nigh to which is a rich Vein of *Emeralds*. 9. *Juan*. And 10. *Zamora de los Arcaides*, both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*; and theſe are the *Cities*, or *Colonies*, which the *Spaniards* poſſeſs in the *Audience* of *Quito*, which have been eſtabliſhed, at divers times, and not long after the Conqueſt of *Peru*.

The Audience of *Quito* deſcribed. Its chief Cities.

The air of the Country is ſufficiently temperate, though under the *Line*, it is Fertil in *Grains* and *Fruits*, well ſtored with Cattle eſpecially with *Sheep*; and alſo plentifully furniſhed both with *Fiſh* and *Fowl*; but the Fertility of the Country is moſt ſeen about, or near *Quito*, and *Porto Viejo*; near *Lona* and *Camora* are Mines of *Gold*, near *Cuenca*, Mines of *Silver*, *Quick-ſilver*, *Copper* and *Iron*: Near *Porto Viejo*, Mines of *Emeralds*, and about *Guayaquil* is found *Salſaparilla*.

The fertility of the Country. Mines of Gold, Silver, and other Metals.

The Province or Country, *DE LOS QUIXOS*, otherwiſe *de la Canella*, is Eaſtward of *Quito*: Its chief Cities are, 1. *Baeſa*, built in 1559 by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*, Eaſtward of *Quito* about eighteen Leagues, now the Reſidence of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, twenty Leagues, South-Eaſtwards of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, ſo called in reference to *Rimerez de Avila*; and 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, all Colonies of *Spaniards*: The Country is Mountainous, rude, and unfertil; yet produceth a *Cinnamon-Tree*, which pruned, the *tree*, *bark*, and *leaves* are *Cinnamon*; but the *Fruit* is by much the beſt, and moſt perfect.

The Province *de los Quixos*.

PAZAMOROS, South of *de la Canella*, hath three Cities, or Colonies of *Spaniards*, *viz.* 1. St. *Juan de las Salinas*, or *Valladolid*; 2. *Loyola*, or *Cambinama*; And 3. St. *Jago de las Montannas*: The Air of the Country is ſaid to be healthful, the ſoil indifferent fruitful, and feeds many *Cattle*; and alſo abounds in Mines of *Gold*. *Los Quixos*, and *Pazamoras* depend as to their Spiritual Government on the Biſhop of *Quito*.

The Province of *Pazamoros*.

The *Audience* of *LIMA*, is at preſent moſt famous of all, by reaſon of the Cities of *Lima* and *Cuſco*; this having been formerly the *Metropolis* of the Empire of the *Inca's*, and the other being the preſent Reſidence of the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*; and this Audience comprehends the true *Peru*; the chief depending Cities, beſides *Lima* and *Cuſco*, are, 1. *Arnedo*, ſeated in a Valley among *Vineyards*. 2. *La Santa*, or *la Parſilla*, ſeated in a Valley, nigh to which are rich Mines of Silver. 3. *Truxillo*, ſcituate on the Bank of a ſmall, but pleaſant River, about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large, but

The Audience of *Lima*.

unsafe Haven, and in a pleasant Valley; the Town indifferently well built and large, and beautified with four *Convents* of several *Orders*. 4. *Miraflores*, about 5 Leagues from the Sea, in the valley of *Zanu*, of some note for the abundance of *Sugar Canes* that grow there. 5. *Cachapoyas*, or St. *Juan de la Frontiera*, of good account in former times for furnishing the Kings of *Peru* with handsom women. 6. *Leon du Guanuco*, rich and pleasantly seated, and beautified with some *Religious Houses*, a Colledge of *Jesuits*, and in former time with a stately *Palace* of the Kings. 7. *Areguipa* scituate at the foot of a flaming Mountain, in the valley of *Quilca*, made happy by a flourishing soil, and temperate air. 8. *Valverde* seated in a valley of the same name, which yields plenty of *Vines*, from which they make good *Wine*; the Town is indifferent large, being Inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards* besides Natives; and beautified with a fair *Church*, an *Hospital*, and three *Fryeries*.

The City *Lima* pleasantly seated.

Its Houses, Streets, &c.

The City of *Lima* is two Leagues long, and one broad, seated in a pleasant valley, being begirt with sweet *Fields* and delightful *Gardens*, below which is its Port *Collao*. The Houses in this City are well built, its streets large, and so ordered that most of the chief take their rise from the *Market-place*; It is said to consist of 10000 ordinary Families, besides Passengers, and those that come hither for trade, which are many, by reason the riches of *Peru* that yearly pass through this City to go to *Spain*, which hath not a little encreased its wealth. The City encloses

Hath many stately Edifices.

several fair *Edifices* and *Churches*, among which these following may not be forgotten: *viz.* The Palaces of the *Vice-Roy* and *Archbishop*, then the *Cathedral Church* built after the Model of that of *Sevil* in *Spain*, and endowed with an Annual Revenue of 30000 Ducats, also the Courts of *Judicature*, the *Colledges* and *Monasteries*; also its four *Hospitals*, to wit, one for the *Clergy*, another for the *Spaniards*, a third for the *Indians*, and the fourth for the *Widdows*: The air about this City is healthful, temperate, alwaies serene, and the soil the most fertil of all *Peru*.

The City of *Cusco*, with its several magnificent Palaces, and other Buildings.

Among the other Cities *Cusco* is the chief among those of the Provinces of the *Hill-Countries*, and the *Andes*, being by much the most famous; having been the Residence of the *Inca's*, or *Peruvian Kings*, who for the more beautifying this City ordered all their Nobility to build each of them a Palace for their Residence; at present it is of the greatest account in all this Country, as well for its beauty and greatness, as for its populousness, being said to be the habitation of about 3000 *Spaniards*, and 10000 *Natives*; besides Women and Children. Besides these Palaces, It is adorned with a *Cathedral*, and 8 *Parish Churches*, four *Convents* of *Religious Orders*, a *Colledge* of *Jesuits*, a stately *Temple* dedicated to the *Sun*, also several *Baths* about the City, and abundance of very fair Houses, in the *fields*. Its scituation is betwixt two pleasant and useful Rivers; and begirt with Mountains.

Its Fertility.

The Country for the most part is fruitful, they have good *pastures*, which are well stocked with *Cattle*, they gather abundance of *Coca*, have excellent *Venison*, and the Country generally well furnished with *Rivers*, in which they

Hath Mines of Gold and Silver.

take good *Fish*. It yields many Mines of *Gold* and *Silver* about *Cusco*, and particularly of *Gold* at St. *Juan del oro*, at *Oropesa Vermillion*; and *Quicksilver*, between *Arnedo*, and *Port de Guajara*, and likewise at *Barranca* are rich *salt pits*.

The Inhabitants of *Guanuco*, and of *Chachapoyas*, are the most civilized of *Peru*. There are yet every where a great number of these *Indians*, there being esteemed under the jurisdiction of *Truxillo*, 50000 Tributaries, 30000 in that of *Guanuco*, as many in *Guamanga*, 50000 in that of *Arequipa*, and 100000 in the jurisdiction of *Cusco*, &c. There are likewise others who yield no obedience to the *Spaniards*, among which are the *Manatiens* not far from *Cusco*, who maintain themselves in their Mountains; who often butcher and eat those *Spaniards* they can entrap.

The Province *de la Plata*, with its Cities described.

The Province DE LA PLATA, or *de los Chaecas*, is South of *Peru*, and under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*. It is divided into two or three other lesser parts, to wit, *de los Charcas*, *de la Sierra*, and of *Tucuman*, This last is quite beyond the *Tropick*, and we will describe it with *Paraguay*, or *Rio de*

la

la Plata, with which it ſhall beſt agree. The two others are for the moſt part on this ſide that *Tropick*. The chief City is *de la Plata*, that is of *Silver*; and this City gives ſometimes its name to the Province; is the Reſidence of an *Archbiſhop*; dignified with the ſeat of the *Governour*, the *Courts* of *Judicature*, and beautified with a fair *Cathedral*, beſides ſeveral *Religious Houſes*. The City is ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful ſoil. Its Houſes well built, and ſo large, that within its walls are the habitations of 800 natural *Spaniards*, beſide 60000 Natives Tributaries, under its Juriſdiction. Its Mines by reaſon of the incommodities of the waters, were abandoned ſo ſoon as thoſe of *Potoſi* were diſcovered, which, ſince this diſcovery, from a ſmall Village is now become a very conſiderable and large Town, of two Leagues Circuit, being inhabited by about 40 or 50000 *Spaniards*, beſides about 30000 Natives, and others, that work in the Mines. It is ſeated below the Mountain, which bears the ſame name, from whence they have their *Silver*. A City eſteemed free becauſe of its large and ample priviledges; the Officers for the *Treaſure* of the *Province* reſiding here, being alſo much frequented by *Merchants*, which come hither to trade for their *Silver*, bringing them ſeveral Commodities in exchange that they have need of, ſo that I may ſay, it is plentifully furniſhed with all *Commodities*, as well for delight, as neceſſity. The other Cities are *Neueſtra Sennora, de la Pax*, or *Villanueva*, *Oropeſa* and *Chicuito* a City of *Indians*; Then *Sancta Crux de la Sierra*; and in *Tucuman* St. *Jago del Eſtera*, *Neueſtra Sennora de Talavera*, and St. *Michael* of *Tucuman*.

That which is moſt obſervable in this Province are the Silver Mines, *de la Plata*, *de Porco*, and above all thoſe of *Potoſi*, being the moſt famous in the world, though yielding nothing but Silver. It is obſerved of this Mine, that it hath four principal *veins*, the firſt which is called the rich; was Regiſtred the 21 of *April* 1545. and the others in little time after. Theſe Enregiſters are made to take notice of the time granted to thoſe which diſcover the Mines, to whom they belong, defraying the charge, and paying to the King the right of a fifth part. It is ſaid that the rich Mine had its Metal out of the Earth, in faſhion of a *Rock*, or like a *Cheſt* of 300 Foot long, 12 or 15 broad, and 10 or 12 deep. And that which is likewiſe obſervable, is that all theſe *Veins* are towards the Sun riſing, and not one towards its ſetting: they have now exhauſted all that was the beſt and eaſieſt to take away, and the *Miners* are deſcended into the Earth, ſome to 500, others to 10, or 1200 Degrees of depth. The Rich *vein* yielded the moiety of good Silver; but now ſcarce will *Quintal* of *Ore* yield two Ounces of pure Silver; yet ſome will ſay that the *Catholick King* receives for his fifth part, near two millions of Crowns yearly. Account is made of 20000 men, working in theſe *Mines*, and of 50000 *Indians*, which go and come to the City of *Potoſi*, to trade.

This Province rich in Mines of Silver.

SANCTA CRUX DE LA SIERRA, or the *Holy Croſs* of the chief Mountain of its little Province, is Eaſt of *Potoſi*, but incloſed with many barbarous Nations on the Weſt and South; among others, the *Chiriguagues*, which are a ſort of People not to be reduced to order, though between *La Sierra* and *Tucuman*. The Country is hot, but ſometimes oppreſſed with cold and ſharp winds; the Land hath *Grains*, *Mayz*, *Wine*, and feeds much *Veniſon*.

The *Inca Garcilaſſo de la Vega* hath given us a very fine Hiſtory of *Peru*, of its *Inca's* or *Kings*, with their Riches, great Revenues, Policies, and Forces: as to their Wealth, it was ſhewed by the vaſt Treaſures which the *Spaniards* became Maſters of; all their moveables, beſides Rooms full of ſeveral ſorts of Images, being of Gold and Silver, together with ſeveral Rooms filled with Treaſure. Their Policy was ſhewed in the management of their Affairs, and enlargement of their Territories, treating their Subjects kindly and lovingly; and allowing them ſhare in the ſpoils of other Countries, meerly to endear them, and gain their affections; and by theſe, and the like means, they were much reverenced, and faithfully ſerved by their Subjects. And laſtly, as to their *Forces*, we may conclude them to have been great, if we look back upon their great and many victories they have gained, as alſo of the *Civil Wars* maintained between the firſt *Spaniſh Chiefs* that Conquered this great *Empire*, though

The riches of the *Inca's* of *Peru*. Their Policy. Their Forces.

Inhabitants. though with no ſmall pains, expences, and loſs of men. The People are ſaid to be of a ſtrong and healthy conſtitution, couragious and warlike, great Diſſemblers, ignorant of Letters, much given to *Drink*; were formerly ſo barbarous, that they adored only *Beaſts*, or thoſe inanimate things, which they might make uſe of, or which they feared might hurt them; ſacrificing not only *Fruits* and *Beaſts*, but likewiſe *Men* and *Women* taken in *War*, and ſometimes their own Children.

Two rare Plants worthy of note. Among the rarities of this Country, here is a Plant, which, if put into the hands of a Sick perſon, will immediately diſcover whether he ſhall die or recover; for, if he, at the putting it to his hand, look of a chearful countenance, then it is a ſign of his recovery; but if ſad, and troubled, a ſure ſign of death. They have another Plant, of which the North-part, regarding the Mountains, beareth its *Fruits* only in Summer, and the Southern-parts, towards the Sea, in the Winter ſeaſon only.

CHILI.

Chili bounded. Its length and breadth. *CHILI* is between *Peru*, which is North of it, and the *Patagons* which are on its South towards the Streight of *Magellan*, and between *Paragua*, and the *Magellanick-Land*, which are on the Eaſt of it, and the *Mer del Sud*, which waſhes it on the Weſt; its length, from North to South, extends from the 26 *Degree* of *Latitude*, unto the 46, and reaches 500 Leagues. Its breadth, from Weſt to Eaſt, is between the 296, and 302, and ſometimes 305, 306, 307 *Degrees* of *Latitude*; and ſometimes likewiſe ſtretches 500 Leagues. But the *Andes*, bounding it almoſt all along the Eaſt, theſe Mountains in ſome places advance ſo near the Sea, that they leave it but a ſmall breadth.

Chili divided into three quarters, which are ſubdivided into 13 Juriſdictions. *Chili* is divined into three Quarters, and theſe Quarters into thirteen Juriſdictions; one of the three Quarters retains the name of *Chili*, and contains the Juriſdictions of *Serena*, *Quillata*, and St. *Jago de Chili*, extending it ſelf from the River of *Copiapo*, unto that of *Maule*; where are on the Coaſt the *Ports* of *Copiapo*, of *Guaſco*, of *Coquimbo*, where Sir *Francis Drake* was repulſed, and of *Valpayraſo*, where he ſurpriſed a Veſſel laden with 25000 *Pezo's* of Gold of *Valdivia*, and a great quantity of *Wines*. The ſecond Quarter advances from the River of *Maule* unto that of *Gallegos*, and is called the *Imperial* from one of its principal Cities: The Juriſdictions of this part are thoſe of *Conception*, of *Ongol* or *de los Infantos*, of the *Imperial*, of *Villarica*, of *Valdivia*, of *Oſorno*, and of *Chilva*. The *Conception*, *Valdivia*, and *Chilva*, have their Ports of the ſame name; that of *Canten* ſerves for the *Imperial*: Theſe two Quarters of *Chili* and the *Imperial*, are between the *Mer del Sud* and the *Andes*. Beyond theſe Mountains in the laſt Quarter *Chicuito* or *Cuyo*, where are the Juriſdictions of *Mendoza*, and St. *Juan de la Frontera*. All theſe Juriſdictions take their Names from the principal Cities; beſides which they have ſome others:

Its chief Cities deſcribed. But a word or two of ſome of the chief Cities in *Chili*, and *firſt* of *Copiapo*, ſeated in a Fertil Valley of the ſame name, and neighboured by a good, but ſmall Haven. 2. *Conception*, ſeated in a capacious Bay, by which, and the Mountains which encompaſs it, which are well fortified, it is a place of good ſtrength, ſo that it is made the Reſidence of the Governour, where he hath a ſtrong Garriſon of *Spaniards*. 3. *L'Imperial*, ſcituate on the Banks of the River *Canten*, a place of great ſtrength and power, eſteemed one of the ſtrongeſt in this Country, and is the *See* of a *Biſhop*. 4. *Villa Rica*, 25 Leagues from the *Mer del Sud*, another Colony of *Spaniards*. 5. *Valdivia*, neighboured by a capacious and ſafe Haven, as alſo by rich Mines of Gold; another Colony of *Spaniards*. 6. *Oſorno* plentifully ſtored with Mines of Gold, but ſeated in a barren ſoil. 7. *Caſtro*, built on the Bay of *Ancud*, in a fruitful Iſland, about 50 Leagues in length, and 9 or 10 in breadth. 8. St. *Jago*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Topacalma*, at the Mouth whereof is a noted Haven, called, *Valparaiſo*.

And

and 9. *Serena*, ſcituate on the Banks of *Rio de Coquimbo*, not far from its influx into the Sea; a Town, though but ſmall, yet of good ſtrength, eſpecially, ſince it is become a Colony of *Spaniards*; rich alſo in Mines of *Gold*.

Chili very cold.

Chili in their Language, ſignifies Cold, which in regard of the Mountains of *Sierra Nevada de los Andes*, are ſaid to be extreamly cold; and where reigns a certain Wind, ſo ſharp, and piercing, that it inſenſibly extinguiſhes the natural heat, ſo that people often die in a moment; and then freezes, and hardens their bodies in ſuch manner, that they corrupt not.

Its Fertility.

The *Valleys* and the *Plains* neareſt the Sea, are well inhabited, and have the Air healthful, ſerene, and temperate; the ſoil exellent, and Fertil; though not without ſome difference, according as it is nearer or further from the *Equator*. The Quarter of *Chili* ought to be hotter, and that of the *Imperial* as hot as *Spain*: but the vicinity of the Mountains on one ſide, and the other, renders it a little colder than otherwiſe might be expected, as to the Climate; but yet hot enough to be one of the beſt Parts of *America*. The Valley of *Copiapo* yields ſometimes Three hundred for one; thoſe of *Guaſco*, and *Coquimbo* are held no waies inferiour to it; that of *Chili* is ſo excellent, that it communicates its name to the Country. Above theſe Valleys are Mines of *Silver*, *Quick-ſilver*, *Copper*, *Lead*, and great plenty of *Gold*; both in the Ingots, and Sand.

Mines of Gold, Silver and other Metals.

Valdivia gained great riches here.

Valdivia, who was here after *Almagre*, and who at the beginning ſucceeded better than his Predeceſſor had done, extracted a great quantity of *Gold* out of this Country; and cauſed to be wrought ſeveral Mines of *Gold*, ſo rich, that each *Indian* rendred him thirty or forty *Ducats* daily; and when he had employed but twelve or fifteen *Indians* in this work, they would have yielded three or four hundred *Ducats* a day; and in a month, about Ten thouſand; and in a year, about a hundred, or a hundred and twenty thouſand *Ducats*. This agrees with what the *Inca Garcilaſſo de la Vega* reports in his Hiſtory, ſaying that the Count *Valdivia* had for his Portion a part of *Chili*, and that his Subjects rendred him the yearly tribute of a hundred thouſand *Pezo's* of *Gold*.

The Avarice of *Valdivia* proves his ruin, and death.

But the thirſt after this Metal being inſatiable, and *Valdivia*, the more he received, the more ſtill he coveted, forced to work in theſe Mines thoſe *Indians*, who, not accuſtomed to ſo hard a labour, nor to ſerve ſo cruel a Maſter, reſolved to rid themſelves of him, and to caſt off their heavy yoke: In purſuance of which, thoſe of *Arauco*, and thereabouts, began the revolt; and after divers encounters, ſlew and took a hundred and fifty of his *Horſemen*.

Theſe *Arauques*, with their Neighbours, aſſembled themſelves to a Body of Twelve or thirteen thouſand men; who after having been divers times beaten by *Valdivia*, and in all likelihood of being quite ſubdued; at length, an old *Indian*, who in all poſſibility, had before obſerved the order which the *Spaniards* held in their *Battels*, adviſed them to divide their men into many Squadrons; and ſhewed them how each Squadron, one after another, muſt aſſault the *Spaniards*; and that the firſt Squadron being broken, muſt rally in the tail of the laſt; which ſucceeded ſo well, that in the end, they ſo wearied the *Spaniards*, and their *Horſes*; that when they began to think of a retreat, they were prevented, and utterly defeated. Some ſay, that *Valdivia* being fallen into their hands, was faſtened to a *Tree*, and his *Almoner* to another, ſo near together, that they might diſcourſe together, and condole one anothers misfortunes. And that the *Arauques*, from time to time, (though contrary to their cuſtom, to eat human fleſh) did cut off gobbets of fleſh from their *Leggs*, *Thighs*, and *Arms*, which they cauſed to be roaſted, boyled, or broiled, according to their ſeveral Appetites, which they did eat in the ſight of theſe poor tormented Creatures, whilſt they were finiſhing their daies in ſuch a lingring death: Others ſay, that they took off the top of his skull, and poured melted *Gold* into his *Brains*, *Mouth*, and *Ears*, making afterwards a *Gobiet* of his *Head*, and *Trumpets* of his *Bones*, &c.

After

The City of *Valdivia* taken and destroyed by the Natives, with others.

After the death of *Valdivia*, the *Spaniards* had great disadvantages in *Chili*, till that *Gracias de Mendoza*, son to the *Vice Roy* of *Peru*, had reduced part of these people to obedience, which continued for no long season; for in 1599, these people surprized the City of *Valdivia*, seized on the *gates* and chief *places*, invested every house, to the end nothing might escape their hands, set fire through all, killed and took prisoners 4 or 500 *men*, *women* and *children*, took the *Fort*, wherein were three hundred thousand *Pezo's* of *Gold*, besides which they carried away with them all the *Arms*, *Ammunition*, and *Artillery*.

After the taking of *Valdivia*, the *Imperial* was besieged, which they stoutly defended and maintained for the space of Twelve Months, and would have done longer, were it not for the Famine and sickness that so extreamly reigned amongst them, that reduced their Forces, together with the Inhabitants of the City, to about twenty men, who no longer able to defend themselves, submitted to the mercy of the *Arauques*; So that in the end, of 13 principal Cities that were in *Chili*, 6 or 7 were ruined; *viz. Valdivia*, *l' Imperial*, *Ongol*, *Chillian*, St. *Crux*, *la Conception*, and *Villarica*: *Osorno*, in time received relief: The men found in the taken Cities were knockt on the head; they permitted the ransom of women, one of whom they gave for a pair of *Spurs*, a pair of *Stirrups*, or a *Horses bridle*; for a *Sword* they would give half a dozen; but this commerce was soon Prohibited by the *Vice-Roy* of *Peru*; that *Arms* serviceable for War might not be put into the hands of these *Barbarians*.

Of those which they had got by means of this commerce, or which they gained at the taking of so many Cities, and in divers defeats of the *Spaniards*, they after made use, and became so dextrous, that they mounted on horseback, managed the *Lance*, *Musket*, *Halberd*, &c. and continued the War from 1599 to 1641 when the Marques *Vadez* made peace with them. During this *War* there hapned a thing worthy of observation; *to wit*, In 1614, a Ship of *Biscay* bringing relief to the *Spaniards* that were in the Fort of *Arauque*, it unfortunately fell out that it suffered a Shipwrack on the Coast, so that the men fell all into the hands of the *Arauques*, who immediately slew them all, save only the *Trumpeter*, who being about to pass the same Fate with his Fellows, thought he would once more sound before he died, which saved his life.

A sad disaster befel a Ship of *Biscay*.

The reason of their last revolt.

The reason of the last revolt of the *Arauques* was, that after having served the *Spaniards* for near 50 years, and being for the most part become Christians, the *Spaniards* had yet taken some of their *wives* and *children*, and sold them away into perpetual and cruel servitude, which made them not only resolve to cast off the *Spanish yoke*, but likewise to renounce *Christianity*.

Unde the name of *Arauques* are comprehended the Inhabitants of the *Mountains*, and *Valleys* of *Arauco*, *Tucapel*, and *Puren*; which are between the *Conception*, the *Imperial* and *Ongol*. Peace being made with these people, there rested in *Chili* none but the *Pulches* as enemies to the *Spaniards*: but these *Pulches* being beyond the *Andes*, they have little to do with them; and the Country is restored to a good estate, and the Cities better rebuilt.

The City *La Conception*, and *Valdivia* described.

LA CONCEPTION is at present walled with walls of stone, hath a *Citadel*; and because the Governour of the Province resides here, though the soil be ingrateful, the Inhabitants have so tilled, manured, and so embellished it with Gardens, that it is become one of the pleasantest abodes of *Chili*. *Valdivia* is scituated on an elevated ground, which with the addition of Art, is held one of the strongest in *Chili*.

The Jurisdiction of St. *Jago* hath under it more than 80000 *Indians*, which are divided into 26 *Partimiento's*, or parts; that of the *Imperial* hath as many; *Osorno* 200000, *Castro del Chilve* 12 or 15000 only, the other *Jurisdictions* more or less.

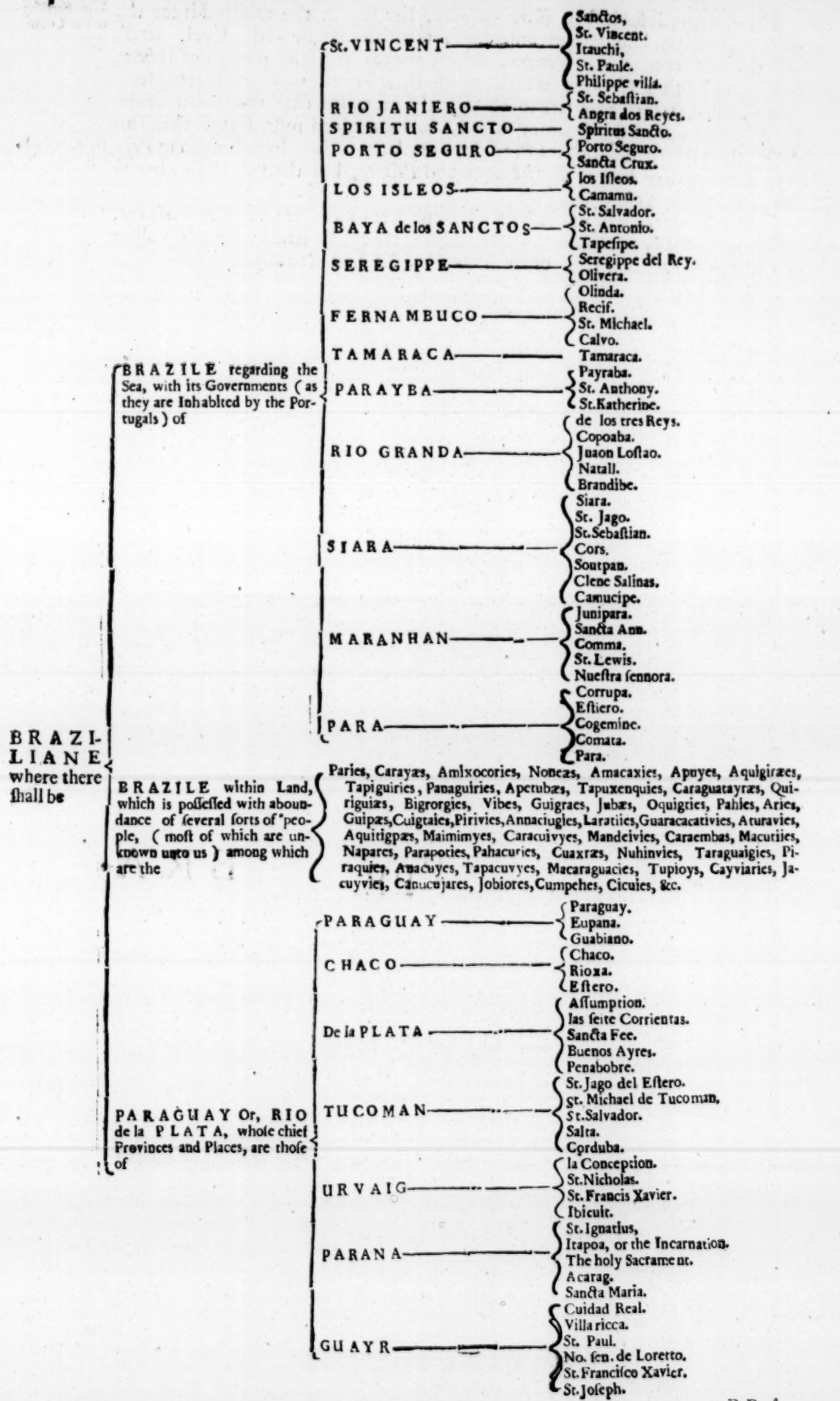
The Inhabitants of *Chili*.

The Natives of *Chili* are for the most part 6 Foot high, well proportioned, strong, active, warlike, and cruel when they have the advantage of their enemies; of a white complexion, their Garments for the most part are skins of *beasts*, their common *Arms* are *Bows* and *Arrows*.

The

The Country is ſubject to *Earth-quakes*, the ſoil in the midland is for the moſt part Mountainous, and unfruitful; towards the Sea-ſide, level, fertil, and well watered with *Rivers*, which makes it yield plenty of *Wheat*, *Mayz*, and other *Grains*; which, as alſo their *Vines*, were tranſported from *Spain* hither, which now are ſo abundantly increaſed that they often furniſh *Peru*. Nor doth any Country in all *America* afford more *Cattle* than this doth, their *Sheep* like thoſe of *Peru*, are very large; they have here long *Pepper*, abundance of *Honey*, good *Fruits* and *Plants*, but their chiefeſt riches is drawn from the *Gold* and *Silver*. The Fertility of the Country. Its Commodities.

In the Mountains of the *Andes*, though very cold, are 12 or 15 *Vulcans*, which perpetually vomit fire: Theſe *Vulcans* take their name from the Vallies where they have their riſe, or from Cities or Towns there adjacent.


BRAZILIANE where there ſhall be
BRAZILE regarding the Sea, with its Governments (as they are Inhabited by the Portugals) of
St. VINCENT
Sanctos,
St. Vincent.
Itauchi,
St. Paule.
Philippe villa.
RIO JANIERO
St. Sebaſtian.
Angra dos Reyes.
SPIRITU SANCTO
Spiritus Sancto.
PORTO SEGURO
Porto Seguro.
Sancta Crux.
LOS ISLEOS
los Iſleos.
Camamu.
BAYA de los SANCTOS
St. Salvador.
St. Antonio.
Tapeſipe.
SEREGIPPE
Seregippe del Rey.
Olivera.
FERNAMBUCO
Olinda.
Recif.
St. Michael.
Calvo.
TAMARACA
Tamaraca.
PARAYBA
Payraba.
St. Anthony.
St. Katherine.
RIO GRANDA
de los tres Reys.
Copoaba.
Juaon Loſtao.
Natall.
Brandibe.
SIARA
Siara.
St. Jago.
St. Sebaſtian.
Cors.
Soutpan.
Clene Salinas.
Camucipe.
MARANHAN
Junipara.
Sancta Ann.
Comma.
St. Lewis.
Nueſtra ſennora.
PARA
Corrupa.
Eſtiero.
Cogemine.
Comata.
Para.
BRAZILE within Land, which is poſſeſſed with aboundance of ſeveral ſorts of people, (moſt of which are unknown unto us) among which are the
Paries, Carayæs, Amixocories, Noneæs, Amacaxies, Apuyes, Aquigiræes, Tapiguiries, Panaguiries, Apetubæs, Tapuxenquies, Caraguatayræs, Quiriguiæs, Bigrorgies, Vibes, Guigraes, Jubæs, Oquigties, Pahles, Aries, Guipæs, Cuigtaies, Pirivies, Annaciugles, Laratiies, Guaracacativies, Aturavies, Aquitigpæs, Maimimyes, Caracuivyes, Mandeivies, Caraembas, Macutiies, Napares, Parapoties, Pahacuries, Cuaxræs, Nuhinvies, Taraguaigies, Piraquies, Anacuyes, Tapacuvyes, Macaraguacies, Tupioys, Cayviaries, Jacuyvies, Canucujares, Jobiores, Cumpehes, Cicuies, &c.
PARAGUAY Or, RIO de la PLATA, whoſe chief Provinces and Places, are thoſe of
PARAGUAY
Paraguay.
Eupana.
Guabiano.
CHACO
Chaco.
Rioxa.
Eſtero.
De la PLATA
Aſſumption.
las ſeite Corrientas.
Sancta Fee.
Buenos Ayres.
Penabobre.
TUCOMAN
St. Jago del Eſtero.
St. Michael de Tucoman.
St. Salvador.
Salta.
Corduba.
URVAIG
la Conception.
St. Nicholas.
St. Francis Xavier.
Ibicuit.
PARANA
St. Ignatius,
Itapoa, or the Incarnation.
The holy Sacrament.
Acarag.
Sancta Maria.
GUAYR
Cuidad Real.
Villa ricca.
St. Paul.
No. ſen. de Loretto.
St. Franciſco Xavier.
St. Joſeph.

BRA-

BRAZILE.

BRAZILE is most commonly taken for the most Eastern part of *America Meridionalis*. In 1501 *Alvarez Cabral* a *Portugal* sailing along the Coast of *Africa*, in his passage to the *East Indies*, by a great Tempest (the wind blowing Eosternly) he was driven into these parts; where he erected and left a Column whereon were affixed the *Arms* of *Portugal*, to remain to future ages, signifying that he took Possession of it for the Crown of *Portugal*. A little after, *Americus Vesputius* was expresly sent to make a more particular discovery of it, which so well succeeded that in a short time some Colonies of *Portugals* were here established, and the name of *America* was given it in honour to *Americus Vesputius*, which name was soon after communicated to all this new *Continent*; but this quarter particularly took the name of *Brazile*, by reason of the great abundance of that *wood* here found more than in other places.

A Column erected here by *Alvarez Cabral* a *Portugal*, with his Masters Arms therein.

BRAZILE, taken in its greatest extent, is one half of *America Meridionalis*, which some call *Brasiliana*, but which they divide into *Brazile*, and *Paraguay*: this *Brazile* separated from *Paraguay* begins at the River of *Amazones*, and extends it self to the Provinces of *Paraguay*: and though that be but from the first *deg.* of *Lat.* unto the 21; yet the Coast making a great *Demi-circle*, hath no less than 1200 Leagues. The *Mer del Nort* washes it on the North, South-East, and East; *Paraguay* and *Peru*, bounds the rest towards the South and West.

Brazile bounded.

The high Country is wholly unknown, and likewise part of the Coast. It hath every where abundance of *Barbarous people*, who make war with, and eat one another; the divers relations hitherto given us, make mention of more than 100 of these *peoples*, yet these are few in regard of those yet unknown. The most famous, and best known, are the *Margajas*, *Topinambous*, *Ovetacas*, *Paraibas*, *Petiguares*, *Tapouyes*, *Cariges*, *Morpions*, *Tobajares*, &c.

Great part of *Brazile* unknown.

The parts best known.

The *Portugals* have only seized on what they found most commodious on the Coast, and have from time to time placed divers *Governments*, which they call *Capitanies*. The most antient is that of *Tamaraca*, then of *Fernambuco*, now the most famous of all is that of the *Bay of all Saints*: they count Fourteen in all, which following the Coast, from the River of *Amazones*, towards *Paraguay*, are, *Para*, *Maranhan*, *Giara*, *Rio Grande*, *Parayba*, *Tamaraca*, *Fernambuco*, *Seregippe*, *Baya de Todos los Santos*, *los Isleos*, *Porto Seguro*, *Spiritu Sancto*, *Rio Janiero*, and St. *Vincent*.

The Governments or Capitanies which the *Portugals* hold.

Each *Capitany* hath depending on it, one or two more Colonies of *Portugals*. In the *Capitany* of *SAINT VINCENT*, the principal is *Santos*, seated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, distant from the Main, about three Leagues, accommodated with a very good Port, capable to receive Vessels of 400 *Tuns*. This Town is Inhabited with about two hundred Families of *Portugals*, who have beautified it with a fair *Church*, and two *Convents* of *Friers*; and since the assault that Sir *Thomas Cavendish* made upon it in 1591, they have environed it with a *wall*, and well Fortified it with strong *Bastions*. The next is *Saint Vincent*, which hath not above one hundred houses of *Portugals*, but its Port little commodious. The third and fourth Cities are *Itanchin*, and *Saint Paul*, beyond the Mountains, and Forrest, *Pernabiacaba*; which are very difficult to cross, the way being cut through the trees: the City is seated on the Top of a little hill, and neighboured by some Mines

Chief places in the Capitany of *St. Vincent* described.

of Gold, found in the Mountains; a Town of about one hundred houſes, and two hundred Families, beautified with a Church, two *Convents*, and a *Colledge* of *Jeſuits*. This *Capitany* wants *Salt*, *Wine*, and *Oyl*, but in recompence they have all ſorts of *Fruits*, and many Mines of *ſilver* about St. *Paul*.

The Capitany of *Rio Janiero* with its chief places deſcribed, and its Commodities.

The *Capitany* of *RIO JANIERO*, takes its name from its River; ſo called, becauſe it was entred into in the month of *January*. The *Portugals* have built the City St. *Sebaſtian*, at the mouth of the *Gulph*, which the River makes falling into the Sea; and Fortified it with ſtrong *Bulwarks*. And more to the Weſt, they have likewiſe built the City of *Angra de los Reyes*, and made it a ſtrong Colony. This *Capitany* hath much *Brazile-wood*, *Cottons*, and all *Proviſions*, but no *Sugar*. Theſe two *Capitanies*, *Rio Janiero* and St. *Vincent*, are on this ſide and beyond, or rather under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*.

The Capitany *del Spiritu Sancto*, with its Cities.

The *Capitany* *DEL SPIRITU SANCTO*, hath one of the beſt ſoils of all *Brazile*, well ſtored with *Cotton-wool*, but deficient in *Sugars*. Its River is called *Parayba* from a name common to three Rivers in *Brazile*; one is beyond St. *Vincent*, the ſecond this, and the laſt waters the *Capitany* of *Parayba*; that which waters *Spiritu Santo*, is pleaſant, but rapid. The City hath but two hundred and odd Families of *Portugals*. Its principal buildings are, a *Church* dedicated to St. *Francis*, a *Colledge* of *Jeſuits*, and a *Monaſtery* of *Benedictines*.

Porto Seguro, and its Cities.

PORTO SEGURO belongs to the Duke of *Aveiro*, and hath three Colonies, *viz.* 1. St. *Amaro*, or St. *Omers*, once of great account for making *Sugars*, where they had five *Sugar Engines*, for the ordering and making it, but deſerted by the *Portugals*, for fear of the incurſions of the *Savages*. 2. *Sancta Cruz*, a Town not very large, neither with a commodious Harbour. 3. *Porto Seguro* containing not above two hundred houſes, but held of ſome Antiquity. It is built on the top of a white *cliff*, which commands the Haven. The ſoil of this *Capitany* is ſo fertil in *Grains* and *Fruits*, that it furniſheth its Neighbours; It hath likewiſe *Sugar*.

Its fertility.

Los Iſleos with its chief places.

LOS ISLEOS, belongs to *Don Luco Giraldo*, a *Portugal*; Its chief Town is ſeated on a ſmall River, but neighboured by a great Lake of twelve Leagues circuit, from which this River takes its riſe, and contains not above 150, or 200 Families of *Portugals*. It hath a long time ſuffered perſecution, and the Colony almoſt loſt by the *Guaymures*, a race of the moſt ſavage and barbarous people of *Brazile*, which being driven out of their own Country fell into this *Præfecture*, which they had utterly ruinated, had not (as a *Jeſuite* tells us) ſome of the *Relicks* of St. *George* been brought hither; which ſeeing, the Planters re-took courage, and bravely repulſed theſe *Barbarians*. The River which waters this City turns eight or ten *Mills*, or *Sugar-Engines*.

Bayz de los Santos deſcribed.

The *Capitany del BAYA DE LOS SANTOS*, took its name from the *Bay* or *Gulph*, wherein is ſeated St. *Salvador* its principal City: This *Bay* having its mouth to the Sea, eight or ten Leagues wide, and its depth twelve, fifteen, or twenty fathom every where, encloſes many Iſles, of which the moſt outward to the Sea is *Taperico*: This Bay makes likewiſe divers openings, fifteen or twenty Leagues within Land, from whence it receives the Rivers of *Pitange*, *Cereſippe*, *Cachera*, and others, each with their little *Gulph*: This *Bay* is memorable for the raſh attempt of *Peter Heyns* a *Dutchman*, Admiral of a Fleet of the *United Provinces* for the *Weſt India-Company*, who in 1627 entred this *Bay*, where there were 26 ſail of *Spaniſh Ships*, four of which were men of *War*, all lying under the Protection of the *Caſtles* and *Forts*; who notwithſtanding the ſhots that he received from the *Forts*, *Caſtles*, and *Ships*, fell amongſt them with ſuch boldneſs, that he ſunk their *Vice-Admiral*, and took all, or moſt of the reſt, with a condition only of their lives. The City of St. *Salvador*, is in the moſt Northern part of the *Gulph*, ſeated on a little Hill, and towards the Sea; it regards its Ports made in a Demi-circle, whoſe two points, or extremities have each their Caſtle; St. *Antonio* towards the Sea, and *Tapeſipe* towards the *Bay*. This City all environed with a wall, is great and populous, and dignified with the Reſidence of the *Vice-Roy* of *Brazile*, for the Crown

A memorable Exploit of *Peter Heyns* a *Dutchman*.

The City of St. *Salvador* is fair, and beautified with many ſtately Edifices.

Crown of *Portugal*, as alſo with a *Biſhops See*, together with divers *Officers*. It is beautified with many *Churches* and *Religious Houſes*, but above all, the Colledge of the *Jeſuits* is magnificent. This *Capitany* is beſt peopled, and the richeſt of all *Brazile*: It hath 40 or 50 *Sugar-Mills*, the moſt of which are about this *Bay*; every where there is quantity of *Cotton*, and on the coaſt is found *Ambergreece*.

The *Capitany* SEREGIPPE DEL REY hath only a little City, and *Olivera* is that alone which gives it a degree amongſt the *Captains* of *Brazile*; and here is eſteemed to be ſome Mines of *Silver*. *Seregippe del Rey*, and its City.

The *Capitany* of FERNAMBUCK is one of the beſt of all *Brazile*, poſſeſſed by the *Albuquerques*. The *Portugals* have here eſtabliſhed Thirteen Colonies, among which *Olinda* is the chief, being a fair and pleaſant City, ſeated near the Sea-ſhore, but with no commodious Haven, only its entrance is defended by a Caſtle which is well Fortified; Account hath been made of two thouſand Families of *Portugals*, beſides the Clergy and the *ſlaves* which were in great number, which they imployed in their *Sugar-mines*; and among the *Portugals* two hundred Families, which poſſeſſed each twenty five, thirty, forty, or fifty thouſand *Cruſados*, and more; the chiefeſt Ornament of this City is the Colledge of the *Jeſuits*, built very rich and magnificent, and endowed with many Houſes in the City, many *Sugar-Engines*, and much Cattle in the field; alſo a Collegiate Church, with ſix or ſeven others, beſides *Chapels*, ſeveral *Monaſteries*, and *Hoſpitals*, &c. From the City a Tongue of Earth advances to the Sea, at the end of which is *Recif*, a well-peopled Town, where the *Ships* load and unload their *Merchandiſes*. The Capitany of *Fernampuck*, with its Colonies, and Cities deſcribed.

This place is become Famous in our time, having been for many years diſputed between the *Portugals*, and the *Hollanders*; but theſe have in the end been driven out by the other.

Beſides the Colonies, there are abundance of *Aldees* for the *Indians*; it is obſerved that every year there is laden from *Fernambuck*, 80, 90, and ſometimes a hundred Ships, the moſt part with *Sugars*, and ſome with *Brazile-wood*, and that only in the ſpace of four years, which were 1620, 21, 22, and 23, there was tranſported from *Angola* in *Æthiopia*, unto this *Capitany* 15 or 16000 *ſlaves* to work in their *Sugars*, and *Brazile*. Its Trade and Commodities.

The Soil is fat and fertil, the *Sugar Canes* coming of themſelves both on the Hills and in the Valleys, and the *Brazile-wood*, being brought in a prodigious quantity from the Forreſt *Gran Mato* of *Brazile*, 20 Leagues from *Olinda*. All theſe conveniencies, with the goodneſs of its *paſtures*, makes them call this *Capitany* the Paradiſe of *Brazile*. The Fertility of its ſoil.

But in 1630, 31, 32, the *Dutch Weſt-India Company* took, and ruined *Olinda*, and after it St. *Auguſtine*, and almoſt all the Fortreſſes, which the *Portugals* held in this *Capitany*: and were not driven out till within 9 or 10 years, but from time to time moleſted. *Olinda* and St. *Auguſtine* ruined by the *Dutch*.

TAMARACA is the moſt antient *Capitany*, but the ſmalleſt of all *Brazile*; that of *Fernambuck* encloſing it on one ſide, and *Parayba* on the other. Its Fertility is admirable; the Port *dos Francezes* is a place of no great note, but for its commodious *haven*, which is well defended by an impregnable *Caſtle*, which is ſeated on the top of an hill. The Capitany of *Tamaraca*, with its chief places deſcribed.

The CARAIBA of *Parayba*, had likewiſe beginning from the *French* in 1584, which ſoon after was ſeized by the *Portugals*, and its principal City *Parayba* was called by them, *Philippine*, or *Neuſtra Seignora da Nieves*; and by the *Hollanders* when they were Maſters of it, *Frederickſtad*: It is two or three Leagues from the Sea, there where the River *Parayba* falls, having two *Caſtles* on the two parts, which end it, and defend its entrances, that on the right hand is *Cape Delo*, where is the Fort St. *Katherine*, the other *Cape del Nort*, where is the Fort of St. *Anthony*. This City is walled, and is ſeated on the banks of the ſaid River; at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, not above three Leagues from the Ocean. This *Capitany* on the North touches *Rio Grande*, on the South *Fernambuck*, encloſing that of *Tamaraca*, on the Weſt: the River *Parayba*, dividing it into two equal parts; the Inhabitants addicting The Capitany of *Parayba*, with its chief City. The bounds of this Capitany.

them-

themſelves to till the fields, where they poſſeſs their *Heritages*, *Farm-houſes*, and *Ingenno's*, which are magnificently built. Theſe *Ingenno's* are the *Mills* which ſerve to bruiſe the *Sugar Canes*; they are built along the River, where are the Fields and Cloſes; in which lie the *Canes* and ſome *Copſes* from whence they fetch wood to boil the *Sugar*. And ſometimes, theſe *Ingenno's* are ſo great, and ſo ample, that they contain beſides the houſe of the Maſter which is well built, many others: either for the *Portugals*, which ſerve them, or for thoſe *Negroes* and *Slaves*, which belong unto them; and their number amounts to 50, 60, 80, and ſometimes to a hundred Families. There are a ſcore of theſe *Ingenno's* in the *Capitany* of *Parayba*. The Land is unequal being in *Mountains*, *Valleys* and *Plains*. The *Plains* are for the *Sugar*; the *Valleys* for *Tobacco*, *Mandioche* and *Fruits*; and the *Mountains* for *Wood*. The lands which are tilled, yield one hundred for one, their *paſtures* feed many *Flocks* of *Beeves*, *Sheep*, *Goats*, *Hoggs*, and *Horſes*, which are ſtrong and laborious. The Natives of the Country have ſome *Aldees*, that is, Villages, built after their mode, each Village having only four, five, or ſix houſes, but very long like *Halls*, where are 4, or 5, or 600, ſometimes 1000, 1200, or 1500 Inhabitants; their moveables being only their *Hamacao's*, which are their *Beds*, their *Bow* and *Arrows*, and ſome *Mandioche*. In each *Aldee* they have a Captain, which they chuſe among themſelves, and they give them a *Portugal* to ſee what paſſes: there are of theſe *Aldees*, in all the *Capitanies* of the *Portugals*, ſix principal ones in that of *Parayba*, as many in that of *Rio Janerico*, three in *Tamaraca*, three in *Fernambuck*, and ſo in others.

Its Inhabitants addicted to Tillage, and making of *Sugar*.

The nature and fertility of the land.

Their Cattle and Fowls. The habitations of the Natives.

The Capitany of *Rio Grande* deſcribed.

The *Capitany* of *RIO GRANDE*, was once poſſeſſed by the *French*, after they had quitted *R. Ganabara*: and here they made alliance with the *Petivares* in the year 1597. *Feliciano Ceca* of *Garovulaſco*, Captain of *Parayba* came to aſſault them; but without forcing them away that time; in 1601 they were quite expelled. The *French* had diſcovered an excellent Mine of *Silver* at *Copooba*, and another of *Emeralds*, near the Bay of *Moncourou*, between *Rio Grande*, and *Siara*, and rich *Salt-pits* near the Point *de Salinas*. The principal Fortreſs that the *Portugals* hold here, is *De los tres Reyes*, or *the three Kings*, on the right hand of the River.

The Coaſt of *Brazile* from *Cape de Frio*, until on this ſide of that of St. *Auguſtine*, and ſo to the middle of the head of *Potengi*, ſtretches from South to North, and continually regards the Eaſt. The reſt of this *Capitany*, and that of *Siara Maranhan* and *Para*, extend from Eaſt to Weſt, regarding the North, and are the neareſt to the *Equinoctial Line*. The Coaſt of theſe four laſt *Capitanies* hath no leſs extent on the Sea, than that of all the others together, but are worth much leſs.

The Capitany of *Siara*, with its Commodities.

The *Capitany* of *SIARA* is among many Barbarous People, and therefore not much frequented; yet is of ſome trade, by reaſon of the *Cotton*, *Chryſtal*, *Precious Stones*, and many ſorts of *Wood*, which are here found. They have likewiſe many *Canes* of *Sugar*, which are of no uſe, there being no *Sugar Engines* in the Country.

The Capitany of *Maranhan*, with its chief places.

The *Capitany* of *MARANHAN* is an Iſle, which, with ſome others, is found in a Gulph, about twenty five Leagues long, and broad. This Iſle hath forty five Leagues Circuit, hath twenty ſeven Villages, of which *Junaparan* is the chief, and in each Village four, five or 600 men, ſo that the *French* made account of 10000 men in this Iſland.

The fertility of the Country, with its Commodities.

The Air ſerene, temperate and healthful, the Waters excellent, and which ſcarce ever corrupt on the Sea. The Land as fruitful as any in *America*, yielding *Brazile-wood*, *Saffron*, *Cotton*, *Red-dye*, *Lake*, or Roſe colour, *Balm*, *Tobacco*, *Pepper*; and ſometimes *Ambergreaſe* is gathered on its Coaſt. The Land is found proper for *Sugar*, and if it were tilled, would produce *Grains*; ſome ſay, it hath Mines of *Jaſper*, and white and red *Chryſtal*, which for hardneſs ſurpaſſes the *Diamonds* of *Alenzon*: It is well watered with freſh Rivers, and pleaſant Streams, well cloathed with *Woods*, in which are ſtore of *Fowl*.

Its Inhabitants, and Apparel.

The people are ſtrong of body, live in good health, commonly dying with age; the women being fruitful till eighty years of age, both Sexes go naked until they

they are married, and then their apparel is only from the Waſt to the Knees, which is *Manufactures* of *Cotton*, or *Feather-works*, in which they are very ingenious.

The *Tapouy Tapere*, that is, the Country of the *Tapouies*, is another Iſle, Eaſt of *Maragnan*; at Full-ſea it is an Iſle; on the Ebb only, Sands ſeparate it from the Continent. The ſoil is yet better than that of *Maranhan*, it hath but fifteen Villages, the chief bearing the name of the Country; they are greater and better peopled than thoſe of *Maranhan*. The Country or the Iſle of the *Tapouies*.

Weſt of *Tapouy Tapere*, and on the firm Land, *Comma*, a City, River, and Country of the ſame name, is of no ſmall value; its fifteen or ſixteen Villages are as well peopled as thoſe of *Tapouy Tapere*. Between *Comma*, and *Cayetta*, which approaches *Para*, are divers people deſcending from the *Toupinambous*, as thoſe of *Maranhan*, and *Comma*, deſcend from the *Tapouyes*. The Country and City of *Comma*.

The *French* were likewiſe divers times poſſeſſed of the Iſle of *Maranhan*. *Ribaut* was here in 1594. *Ravardiere* in 1612. This laſt choſe a moſt commodious place in the Iſland, and built the Fort of St. *Lewis*; the *Portugals* drove them out in 1614, and built new Forts, St. *Jago*, and *Neuſtra Sennora*. Among the Rivers that fall into the Gulph of *Maranhan*, *Miari* is the greateſt, then *Taboucourou*.

The *Capitany* of *PARA* hath a ſquare Fort, ſeated on a Rock, raiſed four or five fadom from the neighbouring ground, and well walled, except towards the River; it hath four or five hundred *Portugals*, who gather in the Country *Tobacco*, *Cotton*, and *Sugar*. This *Capitany* holds beyond the Mouth of the *Amazone*, *Corrupa*, and *Eſtiero*, and among the Mouths of that River *Cogemine*. The Capitany of *Para*, with its Commodities.

Brazile hath an Air ſweet, and temperate, though under the *Torrid Zone*, the daies and nights being almoſt equal; the freſhneſs of the *Sea*, *Rivers*, and ordinary *Dews* contributing much to its wholſomneſs. They lie very ſubject to *Storms*, and *Thunders*; and if it lighten in the evening, it is without *Thunder*; if it *Thunder*, without *Flaſhes*. That which likewiſe proves the goodneſs of the Air, is, that their *Serpents*, *Snakes*, *Toads*, &c. are not venemous; but often ſerve for food to the Inhabitants: yet the ſoil is more proper for the production of *Fruits*, *Paſtures*, and *Pulſe*, than the *Grains*, or *Vines* of *Europe*. They carry them *Wine*, and *Flowr*, *Corn* being ſubject to ſpoil on the Sea. The *Natives* uſe *Rice* and *Manjoche* to make their Bread. They have likewiſe quantity of *Pulſe*, Trees which bear excellent *Fruits*, *Herbs*, Four-footed-*Beaſts*, *Birds*, and *Fiſh* in great abundance, many of which are not known to us; many ſorts of *Palm-trees*, which yield them great Commodities: they have ſome Mines of *Gold*, but more of *Silver*; but the riches of *Brazile* is drawn from the *Sugars*, and the *Brazile-wood*, which comes from their *Araboutan*, a mighty Tree, which bears no Fruit. They have abundance of *Parroquetos*; among their *Monkeys*, they have black ones, and of divers colours, the moſt part very pleaſant. The ſkin of the *Tapirouſſou*, curried, becomes ſo hard, that it makes Bucklers, not to be pierced by the ſtrongeſt ſhot Arrow. Of a temperate Air. Serpents, Toads, &c. not venemous here. Its fertility and Commodities.

The *Brazilians* are of a mean ſtature, groſs headed, large ſhouldred, of a reddiſh colour, their skins tawny; they live commonly to a hundred and fifty years, and free from diſeaſes, caring for nothing but War and Vengeance. They wander moſt part of their time in *Hunting*, *Fiſhing*, and *Feaſting*; in which *Manjoche* furniſhes them with *Bread*; *Cumin-ſeed*, with *Drink*; and and the *Fleſh* of *Beaſts*, or of their Enemies cut in gobbets, and ſome *Fiſh*, are their moſt excellent meats. The men are very cruel, forgetful of courteſies received, and mindful of injuries. The Women are very laſcivious, they are delivered with little or no pain, and immediately go about their affairs, and not obſerving the cuſtom of a Months lying in, as is uſed among us. They let their *hair* grow long, which ordinarily hangeth over their *ſhoulders*; both Sexes go naked, eſpecially, till Married: They are eſteemed excellent *Swimmers*; and *divers*, being able to ſtay an hour together under water. They *paint* themſelves with divers colours, all over the body, on which they leave The Inhabitants of *Brazile*, and what they are addicted unto; their Cuſtoms, &c. Their Habit.

no

no hair, not ſo much as on their *Eye-lids*, but only a Crown about their *Head*; and faſten a Bone, which is well poliſhed, and ſome little Stone, which is eſteemed amongſt them, in their upper *Lip*, and *Cheeks*. Others cut their skin in *Figures*, and mixing a certain tincture it never comes out. They make *Bonnets*, *Frontlets*, *Ruffes*, *Bands*, *Cloaks*, *Girdles*, *Garters*, and *Bracelets*, with *Feathers* of divers colours, which they work, and mix the colours together very excellently. The *Brazilians* which have ſtayed among the *Portugals*, are, for the moſt part, become *Chriſtians*; the others wander without *Religion*.

Some knowledge of the Sun, Moon, and Stars.

There is a great diverſity of Tongues among them; inſomuch, that *Jarric* aſſures us, that in his time he obſerved ſixty different ones; and though they have no *Sciences*, yet have they ſome knowledge of the courſe of the *Sun*, *Moon*, and *Stars*, giving them divers names, and calling the *Eclipſes* nights of the *Sun* and *Moon*.

The riches of *Brazile*.

All the Wood of *Brazile* belongs unto the King of *Portugal*, private perſons not being permitted to trade in it. Their riches come from *Whale-Oyl*, *Confects*, *Conſerves*, *Tobacco*, *Silver*, *Hides*, and other *Commodities*; but principally from *Sugar*, no Country in the World exporting ſo much as *Brazile* doth. The Iſle *Madera* hath but ten *Sugar Engines*, the Iſle of St. *Thomas* poſſibly leſs; but *Brazile* 4 or 500.

The names of *Meſtiz*, *Mulates*, *Cariboco*, *Criolo*, *&c.* Explained.

As for the names of *Meſtiz*, and *Mulates*, which divers times have been met with; it is to be obſerved, that the *Portugals* being long ſince here eſtabliſhed, and having from time to time cauſed to be tranſported a great many *Negroes*, as well Men as Women to ſerve them; This mixture of divers Nations, and divers colours, hath made them to diſtinguiſh their Children, and to call thoſe who came from Father and Mother of the *Europeans*, *Mozombo*; thoſe who came from an *European* and a *Brazilian*, *Meſtiz*, or *Mamelucco*; thoſe from an *European* and a *Negroeſs*, *Mulates*; thoſe from a *Brazilian* and a *Negroeſs*, *Cariboco*; thoſe from the Father and Mother of *Æthiopians*, *Criolo*. Moreover, it hath been known that an *Æthiopian woman* whoſe Huſband was likewiſe an *Æthiopian*, hath brought forth two Children, the one black, and the other white; and a *Brazilian Woman*, whoſe Husband was likewiſe a *Brazilian*, to bring forth two, the one white, and the other black: and oft-times blacks have whites, and whites blacks; and there are to be ſeen white *Æthiopians*, that is to ſay, in all the features of their face, and in their hair, all the proportions of an *Æthiopian*, but with skin and hair white.

Before *Brazile* lyeth a train of low Rocks, but of a ſmall breadth; but which continue almoſt all along the Coaſt, leaving but certain overtures by which the Rivers diſcharge themſelves into the Sea. *Ships* that go or return from *Brazile*, paſs neceſſarily by theſe overtures, or openings, which oft-times proves very dangerous.

PARA-

PARAGUAY or, Rio de la Plata.

THe Province of *PARAGUAY*, or *Rio de la Plata*, (other then the Province *de la Plata* in *Peru*) is on the River which those of the Country call *Paraguay*, the *Spaniards Rio de la Plata*, from whence it takes its name: We may comprehend under the name of *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*, all the neighbouring Provinces, and those which are on the Rivers falling into the *Paraguay*; and consider them in three, or in seven parts: To wit, in *Paraguay* or *Rio de la Plata*, which may make the higher, and lower part of that which is upon the River; *Into*, *Chaco* and *Tucuman*, which are on the Rivers, which descend on the right hand, and into *Parana*, *Guayr* and *Uraig*, which are on the Rivers which descend on the left hand: These are towards *Brazile*, and the *Mer del Nort*; the other two, towards *Peru* and *Chili*, and the two first in the middle.

The River of *Paraguay*, or *de la Plata*, hath its springs in the Lake of *Xarajes* on the confines of *Peru* and *Brazile*; and descending from north to South, turns in the end to South-East, receives a great many fair and large Rivers, among others, *Putomayo*, *Vermejo*, or *Salado*, and *la Carzarane* on one side, *Guaxarape*, *Parana*, and *Uraig* on the other. The River of *Paraguay* described.

The *Paraguay* falling into the Sea makes a *Gulf* of fifty and odd Leagues wide, between the Capes of St. *Mary* and St. *Anthony*; and an hundred and fifty Leagues within Land is ten or twelve, and descending farther fifteen, twenty or five and twenty Leagues broad; but of so little depth, and so cumbred with Rocks and Banks, that what with them, and the sudden storms which often rise from the South, sailing up it proves very dangerous.

The particular Province of *Paraguay*, in the highest part of the River is little known, nor have the *Spaniards* here any Colonies, yet it bears its name common with the River, and communicates it to all the neighbouring quarters: The People are not so barbarous as in *Brazile*; some addicting themselves to *Husbandry*, in which the men till and sow the ground, and the Women reap and gather in Harvest; others know how to make *Stuffs*, *Vestments*, spin *Cotton*, &c. The Province of *Paraguay* described. Its People.

Below *Paraguay* is the *Province dela Plata*, where the *Spaniards* have some Colonies; *viz.* 1. The *Assumption* being the chief place in this Countrey, is well built, and very well frequented, neighboured by a great Lake, in the midst of which is a great Rock, which exalteth its head about one hundred fathom above the water; this Town is said to be inhabited by three sorts of people: *viz.* 1 By natural *Spaniards* who are Masters of it, to the number of about four hundred families. 2. *Mulatos*, being those that are born of *Spaniards* and *Negro's*, of which there are said to be several thousands; and lastly, by *Mestizo's*, which are such as are begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the *Natives*, and these are not in such great number: The next Town of note is *Buenos Ayres*, seated on the ascent of a small Hill, on the Southern Bank of the River *de la Plata*, said to contain about two hundred families of *Spaniards*. It is encompassed with a Mud-Wall, but its chiefest strength is in its Castle, which is but small neither over-well provided with *Ordnance* and *Ammunition*; the other Towns are, *Las Siette Corrientes*, St. *Fe* and St. *Spiritu*, or *Torre di Gabboto*; the two last, and *Buenos Ayres*, are on the right side; the *Assumption*, and *Las Corrientes*, on the left, and this two hundred and fifty, or three hundred Leagues from the Sea; *Buenos Ayres* little less than an hundred; St. *Fe* little more; the *Assumption* alone is on the *Paraguay*, *Las Siette Corrientes* where the *Parana*, &c. falls into the *Paraguay*. The Province *de la Plata* with its Colonies described.

The signification of *Paraguay*, & *de la Plata*.

This name of *Paraguay* is given by the Natives of the Country, and signifieth a River of *Feathers*, either becauſe there are here found great quantities of *Birds*, whoſe *Feathers* are various and of divers colours; or becauſe thoſe of the Country, dreſs and adorn themſelves with thoſe *Feathers*. The name *de la Plata* hath been given by the *Spaniards*, and ſignifieth *Silver*; becauſe the firſt that came to them from *Peru*, came down this River.

Chaco deſcribed with its ſeveral Inhabitants.

CHACO hath its ſoil fat, fruitful, and enterlaced with many Rivers. It is inhabited by divers Nations, whoſe *Idioms* are very different. The *Tobares* have about fifty thouſand ſouls. The *Mathaguaici's* thirty thouſand, but not ſo valiant, as the *Chiriguanes*, a Nation much eſteemed, and which will not ſuffer the *Spaniards* to inhabit amongſt them; they are in continual War with the *Mathaguaici's*, making *Slaves* of as many as they can catch, which made theſe call the *Spaniards* to their aid. The *Motonios* and *Zipatalagars* have no fewer people then the *Tobares*, and all ſo valiant in War, that the *Chiriguanes* dare not aſſault them. There is likewiſe another Nation, whoſe Language, as they ſay, ſcarce yields to the *Latine*; but the beauty of the *Orechons*, is in the greatneſs of their *Ears*. The moſt part of theſe people are well-made, very tall, moſt of them being about ſix foot high, they are of an airy and lively ſpirit.

Tucuman bounded, and deſcribed.

TUCUMAN is very large, being no leſs then three hundred Leagues long and broad; yet it touches not the Sea on any ſide; *la Plata* bounds it on the Eaſt, *Chili* on the Weſt, *Peru* and *Chaco* on the North, and the *Magellanick Land* on the South. The Air and Soil ſhould be excellent; this Country diſingaging it ſelf from the *Torrid Zone*, and advancing towards the middle of the *Temperate Zone*; and almoſt all the Rivers having their courſes towards the Eaſt, which brings ſome refreſhment. And moreover they have but two ſeaſons in the year, each of ſix months: the *Summer* from about the twentieth of *March*, unto the twentieth of *September*, and the *Winter*, from *September* to *March*.

The *Tucumans* famous.

Among the People of theſe quarters, the *Tucumans* are the moſt famous, ſince they have given their name to the Province; then the *Zuries*, *Diaguites*, &c. The *Caſtilians* have eſtabliſhed here divers Colonies, that the Province *de la Plata* might have communication with thoſe of *Peru* and *Chili*. St. *Jago del Eſtero* formerly *Varco*, is in the mid-way between *Buenos Ayres* and *Potoſſi*; two hundred and fifty Leagues from this, and little leſs from the other. This place is honoured with the ſeat of the *Governour* of the *Province*, as alſo with a *Biſhops See*, and divers other Officers of the King. The Land is furniſhed with *Wool*, *Cotton*, *Wood*, with which they make and dye their *Manufactures*, *Cocheneile*, &c. which they carry to the neareſt *Capitanies* of *Brazile*, making great profit by them.

St. *Jago del Eſtero*.

Its Commodities.

Several places of note in the way to *Peru*, deſcribed, with their Commodities, & fertility of the Country.

After St. *Jago del Eſtero*; there is likewiſe on the way to *Peru*, 1. St. *Michael de Tucuman*, ſeated at the foot of a rocky Mountain, but near a fertile Soil, both for *Corn* and *Paſturage*. 2. *Nueſtra Sennora de Talavera*, ſcituate on the River *Salado*, in a fruitful Soil, abounding plentifully in *Cotton*, of which the Inhabitants make ſeveral *Manufactures*, in which they are ſo induſtrious, that they have gained by their Trade (to the Mines of *Potoſſi* a hundred and forty Leagues diſtant, and other places,) great riches. 3. *Las Juntas*. 4. St. *Salvador*. 5. *Salta*. 6. *Corduba*, on another ſide, and there where two great Waies meet, the one of *Buenos Ayres*, to *Potoſſi* by St. *Jago del Eſtero*, and the other of *Sancto Fe* and *Spiritu Sancto* to St. *Jago del Eſtremadura* in *Chili* by St. *Luyz*, which makes this place of ſome conſideration: Beſides that the Air is temperate, and the Soil fruitful and pleaſant, and which yields *Grains* and *Fruits*, it is well watred with freſh ſtreams, in which are good *Fiſh*. In their *Woods* they have *Fowls*, much *Veniſon* and other *Beaſts*; they have *Wine*, *Salt*, and in their Mountains appearance of ſome Mines of *Silver*. The Colony is of three hundred, others ſay ſix hundred *Spaniards*. Their principal trade is on *Peru* and *Chili* ſide. The Natives are much civilized both in habit and manners, imitating the *Spaniards*, from whom they are willing to receive inſtructions.

Its Inhabitants.

The

The Provinces of *PARANA, GUAYR* and *VRAIG* pass under the name of *Paraguay*, in the relations which the *Fathers Jesuits* give. It says, that these *Fathers* having long observed that there was an innumerable company of Souls, which might be converted to Christianity; they cast themselves among these *Barbarians*, learned their tongue, drew them from the *Woods*, *Mountains*, and hidden *Caves*; assembled them in divers habitations, and by this means lead them to a sociable life, taught them first *Tillage*, and the most necessary *Arts* and *Manufactures*; then to read and write, to musick, singing and dancing, but above all instructed them in the Christian Religion, and Piety. The provinces of *Parana, Guayr* & *Vraig*.

These *Habitations* are composed of near a thousand *Families*; and each *Family* besides the *Father*, *Mother*, and the *Children*; receive often some aged person, not able to work, or some *Orphan*. So soon as a *Habitation* is established, the Fathers introduce the Government they are to follow; give them *Magistrates* and *Officers*, chosen among the most capable of their Body, declare to them the polity and rules they are to observe, take care that the fields assigned to each family be tilled and sowed in due time, that their flocks be well kept; and if there happen any contest among them, what the *Fathers* ordain stands as a sentence without revocation. Several good orders observed by them.

Of these *Habitations*; *Parana* hath six, St. *Ignatius* on the River of *Tibiquari*, *Itapoa* or the *Incarnation*, and the *Holy Sacrament* on the River of *Parana*, *N. D. de Iguazu* on that of *Iguazu*, *Acaraig* or *la Nativita de N. D.* likewise on the *Parana*. The Air in all these *Habitations* is good, the Soil fertile, they have too much *Wood*, little *Pasturage*; and near *Iguazu* little *Fish*, by reason of the *Cataract*.

The Province of *Guayr* is under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, advancing it self unto *Brazile*. There hath been here, for a good continuance of time two or three Colonies of *Castilians*; *Cividad Real*, or *Ontiveros*, and sometimes *Guayr*, after the name of the Province. *Villarica*, and St. *Paul*, which some esteem in *Brazile*. The habitations for those of the Country, are *Nuestra sennora de Loretto*, and St. *Ignatius* on the *Parana*; St. *Francis Xavier L' Incarnation*, and St. *Joseph* on the *Tibagiva*; the seven *Arch-Angels*, and St. *Paul* in the Land of great *Tajoba*, towards *Brazile*. The province of *Guayr*, with its Colonies & Habitations described.

Below *Cividad Real*, there where is the separation of the two Provinces of *Parama* and *Guayr*, the River *Parana* makes a *Cataract*, as remarkable as any in the World. This River precipitating it self from a very high Rock, finds it self likewise engaged among very high Rocks for the space of fifteen or sixteen Leagues, where with a great declension it strikes against some, traverses others; divides its waters into many Branches, re-assembles them; and after having been so long in foam and froth, disingaged from these Rocks, it repasses; but in every hour of the day once only is heard, at the bottom of the River, a certain Lowing, which raiseth up the waters, but which endures but for a moment, and the River retakes its ordinary course, which is Navigable above and below the *Cataract*. The River *Parana*.

The Province of *Urvaig* is on the Sea, and between *Brazile*, and the Mouth of the *Paraguay*; it takes its name from the River of *Urvaig*, that is, of *Snails*, by reason of the prodigious quantity here found. Its habitations are, *La Conception*, there where the *Urvaig* falls into the *Paraguay*; St. *Nicholas*, on the River *Piration*; St. *Francis Xavier*, up within Land; and likewise on the *Urvaig*; *Ibicuit*, or the *Visitation*, on the *Paraguay*, and almost directly opposite to *Buenos Ayres*, on the other side. The province of *Urvaig* with its chief places described.

But there hath been no relation of these Parts since those of 1626, and 1627, which were Printed in 1636 in *Antwerp*, and in 1637 in *France*. If these people have since inclined themselves to Christianity, as those Relations say they had begun to do, no doubt, but they are by this time, all or the greatest part, Christians.

The Magellanick Land, and Iſland.

The *Magellanick-Land* bounded.

SOuth of *Chili*, *Tucaman*, and *Rio de la Plata*, lies a great Region, and a great many of Iſles, which we paſs under the name of the *MAGELLANICKS*. They make together the laſt, and moſt Southern part of *America Meridionalis*: waſhed on the Eaſt by the *Mer del Nort*, on the Weſt by the *Mer del Sud*, or the *Pacifique-Sea*; on the South by the *Magellanick-Sea*, which may in general be extended over all the Coaſts of theſe *Magellanick-Lands* and *Iſlands*.

The *Streight* of *Magellan* firſt diſcovered by *Magellan* the *Portugal*.

The ſtreight of *Magellan* only, formerly, rendred all theſe Quarters famous; becauſe that the People of *Europe*, and particularly the *Caſtilians*, ſeeking a paſſage other then that of the *Cape* of *Good-Hope*, to go to the *Moluccoes*, and *Eaſt-Indies*; *Magellan*, a *Portugal Gentleman*, but in the name and ſervice of the King of *Caſtile* for ſome diſcontent he had received in the payment of his wages in *Portugal*, was the firſt that found this Streight at the extremity of *America Meridionalis*; and who paſſing from *Mer del Nort*, unto that *Del Sud*, between the 21 of *October*, and the 27, or 28 of *November*; in the year 1520, gave means, not only to the *Caſtilians*, to pretend the diſcovery of the *Molucco's*, by the Weſt, againſt the *Portugals*, who boaſted to have firſt diſcovered them by the Eaſt: but likewiſe ſhewed a way to make the whole circuit of the *Terreſtrial Globe*, which certainly had never before been done.

The two openings of our Streight, as well towards us, and the *Mer del Nort*, as on the other ſide, and towards the *Mer del Sud*, are between the 52, and 53 *Degrees* of *Latitude*, the middle deſcending unto the 54. And the two *Capes* of the firſt opening, are that of the *Virgins*, on the right hand, and on the *Continent*; and that of St. *Severin*, or of St. *Eſpritt*, on the left, and in the *Magellanick Iſles*, or *Terra del Fogo*. The two *Capes* which end the other opening, are *Cape Victory*, on the right hand, and *Cape Deſired*, on the left.

The length & breadth of this Streight.

The length of this Streight is near two hundred Leagues; Its breadth only two, three, ſix, ten Leagues, and ſometimes more; incommodious for the moſt part, being ſubject to *Whirl-Pools*. The Waves of the *Mer del Sud* predominate for fifty and odd Leagues, the reſt is beaten on by thoſe of the *Mer del Nort*; and it is obſerved, that ſo long as the *Mer del Sud* predominates, the Streight is lockt between very high Mountains and Rocks, always covered with Snow, and which ſeem to touch on the other; which makes the approach difficult on this ſide, and withal, the Sea is exceeding deep. The bottom of that which is beaten by the *Mer del Nort*, is eaſily found, and the *Fields* and *Valleys*, according to the Seaſon, are very pleaſant, both on the one and the other ſide. And moreover, here the ſtreight much enlarges it ſelf, and hath ſtore of commodious *Ports* and *Roads*, not faſt diſtant from one another; where the waters likewiſe are good, and the *Wood* which is found in the Mountains, above the *Coaſt*, hath ſomething of *Cinamon*, and being put in the fire, renders an agreeable *Odour*.

So ſoon as the diſcovery of this Streight was known in *Spain*, the *Caſtilians* had a deſign to make themſelves Maſters of it; with an intent to hinder all other Nations from paſſing. In 1523 *Dom. Gutieres Carvajal*, *Biſhop* of *Plaiſance*, ſent in the name of *Charles* the fifth, four Ships, to make it more particularly; but this Voyage proved very unfortunate, for three of the Ships periſhed in the Streight, and the fourth retired (with no ſmall hurt) to *Lima*. In 1526 *Garſia de Loyoſa* was likewiſe here for the ſame intent, which proved alſo fatal; for the *Admiral* coming out of the Streight was loſt, as alſo ſome at the *Molucco's*. In 1535 one *Simon de Alcazova* entred it; but the mutiny which was among his people was the cauſe of his loſs and ill ſucceſs. *Dom. Gutiers*

Gutiers Carvajal, Biſhop of Plaiſance, ſent other three Veſſels, in 1539, of which the *Admiral* was loſt, one returned back, and the third paſſed on. Some others there were which went (all of which were *Caſtilians*) ſome by the Coaſt of *Spain*, others by the Coaſt of *Peru*; but none could ever find a way to ſeize this Streight, whereby to hinder a paſſage to others.

For in 1575 Sir *Francis Drake*, happily paſſed this Streight, came into the *Mer del Sud*, pillaged and burned along the Coaſt of *Chili*, and *Peru*, quantity of *Spaniſh* Veſſels, and making a very rich booty, he returned into *England*. Sir *Francis Drake* in this Streight.

This courſe of the *Engliſh* very much allarm'd *Peru*, and was the cauſe that the *Vice-Roy* ſent *Dom. Piedro Sarmiento*, to take full knowledge, and make report in *Spain* of all the *Coaſts*, *Harbours*, *Anchorages*, and particularly of places where *Forts* might be built, and *Colonies* eſtabliſhed in this Streight. This report made in *Spain*, *Dom. Diego de Valdes* was ſent with twenty three Veſſels, and twenty five hundred men. But this voyage was likewiſe unhappy; for ſeven or eight Ships, with about ſeven or eight hundred men, were loſt almoſt in ſight of *Spain*; alſo ſome others of his Ships, with about three or four hundred men, likewiſe periſhed during the Voyage; and *Valdes* returned into *Spain*, with ſeven or eight of his Ships. *Sarmento* with four remaining was at this Streight, built *Nombre de Jeſus* at the beginning of the Streight, and left there a hundred and fifty men, and began farther in the *Cividad del Rey Philippe*: but the want of many things, and the cold, too harſh for the *Spaniards*, made the laſt work ceaſe, and the men be brought back to the firſt Colony. *Pedro Sermiento* returning into *Spain*, fell into the hands of the *Engliſh*, near the Coaſt of *Brazil*; and on the other ſide, Famine, Miſeries, and the Cruelties of the Inhabitants of the Streight, ſoon deſtroyed the Colony he had left.

After *Drake*, many other *Engliſh* and *Hollanders* paſſed at divers times, and in divers years. *Spilbergen* in 1615. more happily then the reſt, having taken his time in *January* and *February*, which is the Summer of theſe Quarters, the Sun returning from *Capricorne*.

But in 1617 a hundred years after *Magellan*, *Iſaac le Maire*, a *Hollander*, having diſcovered another *Streight* incomparably more eaſie to paſs then that of *Magellan*, this only is now made uſe of, and called the *Streight Dele Maire*: It is between the 55 and 55½ degrees of *Septentrional Latitude*. It hath throughout 10 or 12 Leagues of length and breadth; and ſo ſoon as it is paſſed, there is found a very great *Sea*, there where we have formerly believed to be a *Land* ſo great, that ſome would make it a third *Continent* under the name of *Terra Auſtralis* or *Terra Incognita*, and *Magellanica*. The Streight *dele Maire* diſcovered by *Iſaac le Maire*, a *Hollander*.

The *Inhabitants* of the *Streight* of *Magellan*, *Maire*, and the *Magellanick Lands*, are very barbarous, having very ſharp and dangerous *Teeth*; they go almoſt naked, though in a Countrey very cold; they have neither *Religion* nor *Policy*; they are born white, but paint ſome part of their body red, and others black: And this Painting is a Band drawn ſtraight from Head to Foot, or elſe croſs their Body, or ſlooping; the reſt is in its natural colour, or elſe ſometimes varied with divers colours. They garniſh their *Arrows* and *Javelins* with *Fiſh-bones*, or with *Stones* very ſharp, of which they make their *Knives*; they uſe likewiſe *Clubs* and *Slings*. The *Inhabitants* of *Magellan*, *Maire*, and the *Magellanick Land*.

Amongſt theſe People are the *Patagons*, a particular Nation in the *Continent*, which ſome call the *Race* of *Toremen*. If report be true, they are the greateſt men, known at preſent in any part of the World: They are ſaid to be no leſs then ten foot high, and we are aſſured, that the greateſt men that were with *Magellan*, or with the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, that paſſed this *Streight*, reached but to their Girdle. The *Patagons* a ſort of people.

But

But it is time to leave *America*. The first expence made to go thither, was not of above 15 or 16000 Duckats, which were advanced by *Lewis de* St. *Ange*, Secretary of State, and not taken out of the Treasuries of the Kings of *Castile* and *Arragon*, who then protested they had not so much money to expend; yet notwithstanding this little hath returned them infinite riches. *Christopher Columbus* seised on *Hispaniola*, and the Neighbouring Isles a little after 1492. *Americus Vesputius* of *Brazil* in 1497. *Ferdinand Cortes* took *Mexico* in 1519. *Pizzarre*, *Peru* in 1529. So others have seised of divers parts of *America*, and still of those which are the best; and have brought thence so much *Gold*, *Silver* and *Riches*, that they have filled almost all *Europe*, and made those *Estates*, *Lordships* and *Commodities* on this side, which before were valued but at Twenty pence, Twenty shillings; or Twenty thousand pounds worth, now a hundred times as much.

The *Spaniards* have received great losses from the *English* and *Dutch*.

But we must confess, that these discoveries, and these conquests of new Lands hath cost *Spain* store of men, not so much in the War as on the Sea. In 1590. a hundred *Spanish* Ships laden with very great riches to return to *Europe*, passing in company near *Florida*, a tempest surprized them, and cast them all away, save one, whom *Linscot* reports to have seen in *Tercera*; and this Author assures us, that at the same time divers other Tempests, or divers *English Rovers* took away or sunk another hundred of *Spanish Ships*; so that of 220 parted the year before from *New Spain*, St. *Domingo*, *Havana*, *Cape Verde*, *Brazil*, *Guiney* and other places, not above 14 or 15 escaped shipwrack or the *English Rovers*.

Likewise after, and at other times, sometimes the *English*, sometimes the *Hollanders* have not only taken abundance of *Spanish Vessels* on the *Sea*, but likewise divers places on *Land*, and sometimes whole *Provinces* and *Islands*. The *Hollanders* held not long since a good part of *Brazil*; the *English* hold at present *Barbadoes*, *Jamaica*, and some other places in the *Isles* and *Lands* about it. And all those *Isles* which are on this side *Hispaniola*, are in the hands of the *English*, *French* and *Hollanders*, who likewise establish divers *Colonies* on the Coast of *Guiana*; which if they subsist, those *Isles* are not already more troublesome Thorns to *Mexico* and *Terra-Firma*, then these *Colonies* in *Guiana* will be to *Terra-Firma*, *Peru* and *Brazil*.

The Trade of *America* in general.

To give a small touch of the *Traffick* of this *New World*, it is observed to give imployment to many Ships of great burthen, and that of several Nations, as well *Europeans*, as others, by which they have gained much riches; in which, *England*, *Spain*, *France*, *Portugal*, *Holland* &c. have been large sharers. To sum up the rich staple commodities that it produceth, as also what Commodities they receive in exchange, will not be unnecessary.

Its Fruits and Commodities.

First then, Its Earth *yieldeth Grains*, excellent *Fruits*, *Plants*, *Sugar*, *Indico*, *Tobacco*, *Ginger*, *Long-Pepper* and other *Spices*, Several Medicinal *Drugs*, *Cotton*, of which, as also of the *Feathers* of their *Birds*, they make excellent and curious *Manufactures*. In the bowels of the *Earth* lie hid, in abundance of *Mines*, *Gold*, *Silver*, *Iron*, *Lead*, *Tin* and *Copper*; there is also plenty of *Quick-silver*, *Amber*, *Precious Stones*, *Pearls*, *Bezoar*, *Amber-Greece*, *Gum Arabick*, and several *Precious Gums*, *Cocheneile*, *Saffron*, *Chrystal*, excellent *Balsom*, *Rozin*, *Salt*, *Honey*, *Wax*, *Rich Furs*, *Ox-Hides*, *Tallow*, *Whale-Oyl*, *Dried Fish*, *Pitch*, *Tar*, *Jallop*, *Salsaperilla*, *Gayac*, *Turbith*. Several excellent *Woods*, as *Campeche*, *Brazil*, *Lignum Vitæ*, *Green Ebony*, *Cedar*, *Cypress*, *Firrs*, and excellent *Wood* for building of *Ships*.

Commodities sent them in exchange.

For these and other such rich commodities they take in exchange, *Beads*, *Necklaces*, *Bracelets*, and the like Toys; as also *Looking-Glasses*, *Ribbons*, *Needles*, *Pins*, and all sorts of *Haberdashery Ware*; also *Knives*, *Hatchets*, *Saws*, *Nails*, *Hammers*, and other *Instruments* made of *Iron*; with several other of the like cheap Commodities.

We have thus compriſed all that ſeemed moſt neceſſary concerning *America*: true it is, whole Volums might be made only touching the Nature and Propriety of their *Grains*, *Herbs*, *Plants*, *Fruits*, *Fowl*, *Beaſts* and *Fiſh*; which are all different from ours; yet thoſe which have been carried from hence, have thrived and multiplied exceeding well, either in one place or another: But of all our *Beaſts*, nothing ſo much aſtoniſhed them as our *Horſes*; and it was near a hundred years in *Peru*, and other parts of *America*, before thoſe *People* would be perſwaded to mount on them.

FINIS.

BRAZILIANA.

FINIS.